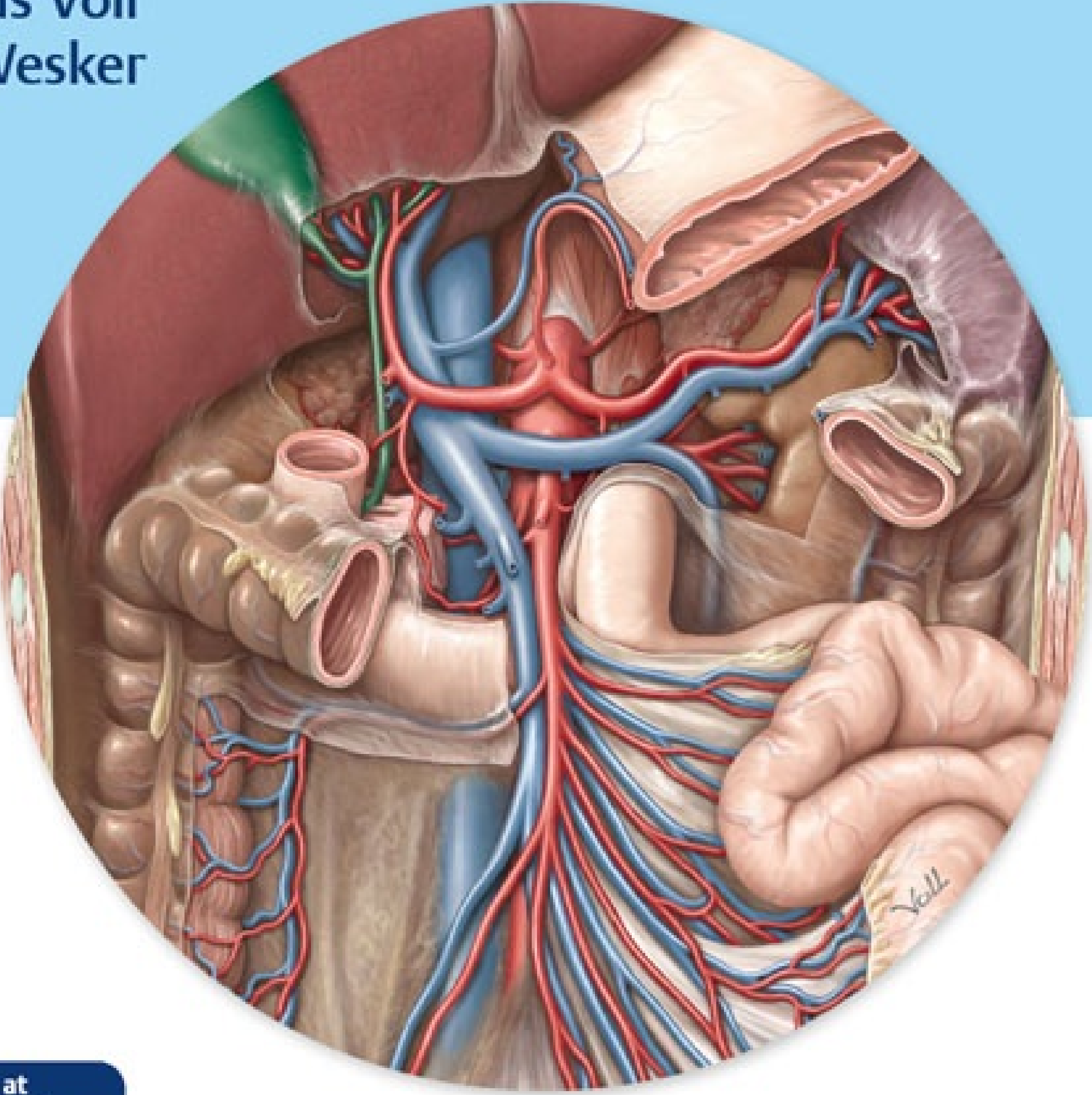
Anatomy
An Essential Textbook

Third Edition

Anne M. Gilroy

Illustrations by
Markus Voll
Karl Wesker



Online at
MedOne
Q&A

Thieme

To access the additional media content available with this e-book via Thieme MedOne, please use the code and follow the instructions provided at the back of the e-book.

Anatomy

An Essential Textbook

Third Edition

Anne M. Gilroy, MA
Professor Emeritus
Department of Radiology
University of Massachusetts Medical School
Worcester, Massachusetts

Illustrations by
Markus Voll
Karl Wesker

735 illustrations

Thieme
New York • Stuttgart • Delhi • Rio de Janeiro

Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. From: Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U, *THIEME Atlas of Anatomy*.
Development Editor: Judith Tomat
Production Editor: Barbara Chernow
Compositor: New Best-set Typesetters Ltd

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data is available from the publisher

©2021. Thieme. All rights reserved.

Thieme Medical Publishers, Inc.
333 Seventh Avenue, 18th Floor
New York, NY 10001, USA
www.thieme.com
+1 800 782 3488, customerservice@thieme.com

Cover design: Thieme Publishing Group

Printed in Canada by Transcontinental, Quebec 5 4 3 2 1

ISBN 978-1-68420-259-1

Also available as an e-book:
eISBN 978-1-68420-260-7

Important note: Medicine is an ever-changing science undergoing continual development. Research and clinical experience are continually expanding our knowledge, in particular our knowledge of proper treatment and drug therapy. Insofar as this book mentions any dosage or application, readers may rest assured that the authors, editors, and publishers have made every effort to ensure that such references are in accordance with **the state of knowledge at the time of production of the book.**

Nevertheless, this does not involve, imply, or express any guarantee or responsibility on the part of the publishers in respect to any dosage instructions and forms of applications stated in the book. **Every user is requested to**

examine carefully the manufacturers’ leaflets accompanying each drug and to check, if necessary in consultation with a physician or specialist, whether the dosage schedules mentioned therein or the contraindications stated by the manufacturers differ from the statements made in the present book. Such examination is particularly important with drugs that are either rarely used or have been newly released on the market. Every dosage schedule or every form of application used is entirely at the user’s own risk and responsibility. The authors and publishers request every user to report to the publishers any discrepancies or inaccuracies noticed. If errors in this work are found after publication, errata will be posted at www.thieme.com on the product description page.

Some of the product names, patents, and registered designs referred to in this book are in fact registered trademarks or proprietary names even though specific reference to this fact is not always made in the text. Therefore, the appearance of a name without designation as proprietary is not to be construed as a representation by the publisher that it is in the public domain.

FSC
www.fsc.org
100%
Paper from well-managed forests
FSC® C124385

This book, including all parts thereof, is legally protected by copyright. Any use, exploitation, or commercialization outside the narrow limits set by copyright legislation without the publisher’s consent is illegal and liable to prosecution. This applies in particular to photostat reproduction, copying, mimeographing or duplication of any kind, translating, preparation of microfilms, and electronic data processing and storage.

To my mother, Mary Gilroy, a woman of courage and love;
To Colin and Bryan, my strength and sanity;
And once more, to my Dad.

Contents

Acknowledgments

Preface to the Third Edition

I Introduction to Anatomic Systems and Terminology

1 Introduction to Anatomic Systems and Terminology
2 Clinical Imaging Basics Introduction
Review Questions: Introduction

II Back

3 Back
4 Clinical Imaging Basics of the Spine
Review Questions: Back

III Thorax

5 Overview of the Thorax
6 Thoracic Wall
7 Mediastinum
8 Pulmonary Cavities
9 Clinical Imaging Basics of the Thorax
Review Questions: Thorax

IV Abdomen

10 The Abdominal Wall and Inguinal Region
11 The Peritoneal Cavity and Neurovasculature of the Abdomen
12 Abdominal Viscera

13 Clinical Imaging Basics of the Abdomen
Review Questions: Abdomen

V Pelvis and Perineum

14 Overview of the Pelvis and Perineum
15 Pelvic Viscera
16 The Perineum
17 Clinical Imaging Basics of the Pelvis and Perineum
Review Questions: Pelvis and Perineum

VI Upper Limb

18 Overview of the Upper Limb
19 Functional Anatomy of the Upper Limb
20 Clinical Imaging Basics of the Upper Limb
Review Questions: Upper Limb

VII Lower Limb

21 Overview of the Lower Limb
22 Functional Anatomy of the Lower Limb
23 Clinical Imaging Basics of the Lower Limb
Review Questions: Lower Limb

VIII Head and Neck

24 Overview of the Head and Neck
25 The Neck
26 Meninges, Brain, and Cranial Nerves
27 Anterior, Lateral, and Deep Regions of the Head
28 The Eye and Ear

29 Clinical Imaging Basics of the Head and Neck

Review Questions: Head and Neck

Index

Acknowledgments

Special thanks to authors Michael Schuenke, Erik Schulte, and Udo Schumacher of the award-winning three-volume *Thieme Atlas of Anatomy* and illustrators Markus Voll and Karl Wesker for their work over the course of many years

For their careful and thoughtful review of the manuscript, thanks to

William J. Swartz, PhD
Department of Cell Biology and Anatomy
LSU Health Sciences Center
New Orleans, Louisiana

For their contributions to the problems sets, thanks to

Frank J. Daly, PhD
Department of Biomedical Sciences
University of New England
School of Osteopathic Medicine
Biddeford, Maine

Geoffrey Guttman, PhD
Department of Cell Biology and Anatomy
University of North Texas Health Science Center
Texas College of Osteopathic Medicine
Fort Worth, Texas

Contributor: Clinical Imaging Basics
Joseph Makris, MD
Department of Radiology
Baystate Medical Center
Springfield, Massachusetts

Krista S. Johansen, MD
Department of Medical Education
Tufts University School of Medicine
Boston, Massachusetts

Michelle Lazarus, PhD
Center for Human Anatomy Education
Monash University
Melbourne, Victoria, Australia

Preface to the Third Edition

Since publication of the original version of the *Anatomy – An Essential Textbook*, the intent has been to offer an accurate, current and user-friendly resource for students of anatomy. But beyond those basic considerations, the inclusion of clinical content, the exquisite illustrations, and the carefully planned organization are designed to inspire students to fully appreciate the intrinsic role that anatomy will play throughout their medical careers. The relevance of anatomy to medical diagnosis and treatment continually evolves and it is my hope that this text will equip students with a fundamental knowledge that will be instrumental not only in today's medical environment but in the medical world of the future.

As in the second edition, this book follows the general scheme of the original text. Basic concepts and a general overview of anatomic systems are covered in the first unit while subsequent units focus on regional anatomy. These include an overview of systems followed by chapters that focus more closely on the form and function of individual systems. Each unit includes a chapter on the practical application of regional imaging and an extensive question set.

In this third edition some helpful organizational changes have been included. A Table of Contents has been added at the beginning of each unit, listing chapters and sections as well as the tables and clinical boxes that appear within them. An effort has been made to coordinate with Thieme's fourth edition of the Atlas of Anatomy, often used as a companion resource. In this regard, readers will notice matching colored side tabs that allow quick access to similar units in both books. Note also that the chapter on the neck has been moved forward to immediately follow the introductory chapter in the Head and Neck unit. This new order follows the revised organization of the Atlas and mirrors the sequence of dissections in most gross anatomy programs.

Although the previous edition was rich with illustrations, over 100 new figures have been added with many others updated, including revised versions of all autonomic schematics. New topics in clinical and developmental anatomy, such as clinically important vascular anastomoses, spinal cord development, and common anatomic anomalies, are addressed throughout the text and an additional 50 clinical and developmental correlations are now illustrated with descriptive images, radiographs or schematics.

New content in several areas, such as defecation and fecal continence, structure of urethral sphincters, and the ulnocarpal complex of the wrist, expands, clarifies and updates existing text. The Clinical Imaging Basics chapters, first introduced in the second edition, proved to be popular with students and instructors and have been revised and enhanced with new images here. The self-testing sections in each unit have also been expanded with over 40 new USMLE-style question sets with detailed explanations.

As with each of the previous texts, this new edition came together through the work of a talented and dedicated team. I am exceedingly grateful to the steadfast support, patience and professional perspectives of Judith Tomat, Developmental Editor, Barbara Chernow, PhD, Production Editor, and Torsten Scheihagen, Senior Content Service Manager. Their guidance was unquestionably the most valuable asset throughout the project. Also, thanks to my colleague Joseph Makris, MD, who lent his experience as an educator and clinician to create the Clinical Imaging Basics chapters in the previous edition and further developed them for this edition.

A special acknowledgement goes to authors Michael Schuenke, Erik Schulte, and Udo Schumacher of the three-volume *Thieme Atlas of Anatomy* and illustrators Markus Voll and Karl Wesker whose work is seen throughout this text.

Finally, the design for each new edition has been motivated largely by user input. I deeply appreciate the many students and instructors who offered their comments, corrections and suggestions, with a particular thanks to William Swartz, PhD, for his very thorough and meticulous review. I look forward to their responses to this newest edition.

Anne M Gilroy
Worcester, Massachusetts

Unit I Introduction to Anatomic Systems and Terminology

1 Introduction to Anatomic Systems and Terminology

- 1.1 Structural Design of the Human Body
  - 1.1 Regional Subdivisions of the Body
  - 1.2 Functional Subdivisions by Organ Systems
- 1.2 Terms of Location and Direction, Cardinal Planes, and Axes
  - 1.3 General Terms of Location and Direction
- 1.3 Landmarks and Reference Lines
  - 1.4 Anterior and Lateral Reference Lines on the Trunk
  - 1.5 Landmarks and Transverse Planes on the Anterior Trunk
  - 1.6 Vertebral Spinous Processes and Posterior Landmarks
- 1.4 Connective and Supporting Tissues
- 1.5 The Integumentary System

- 1.6 The Skeletal System
  - 1.1 Anatomic Notes: Extra-Articular and Intra-Articular Structures of Synovial Joints
- 1.7 The Muscular System
- 1.8 The Circulatory System
  - 1.2 Anatomic Notes: Functional Aspects of the Circulatory System
- 1.9 The Lymphatic System
- 1.10 The Nervous System
- 1.11 Body Cavities and Internal Organ Systems

2 Clinical Imaging Basics Introduction

- 2.1 Radiographic Densities

Review Questions: Introduction

1 Introduction to Anatomic Systems and Terminology

Anatomy of the human body can be studied by inspection of all the systems that occupy a specific region or by considering the global aspects of a particular system throughout the entire body. The first approach tends to focus on anatomic relationships while the second is better suited to studying physiologic influences. Most systems, however, are conveniently confined to one or two regions, and in this text are discussed in the units devoted to those regions. Some systems, however, (those included in this chapter) are more pervasive throughout the body, and a fundamental under-standing of their basic organization is important before undertak-ing the study of the systems they support.

1.1 Structural Design of the Human Body

The most preliminary inspection of the human body reveals that it is structurally divided into a head and neck region, a trunk, and paired upper and lower extremities (limbs). Each is further divided into smaller regions **(Fig. 1.1; Table 1.1)**. These house the structures that make up the functional organ systems that perform the basic bodily functions **(Table 1.2)**. Although the pri-mary organ of a system is often confined to a single anatomic region (e.g., the brains resides in the head), systems extend beyond regional borders, both anatomically and physiologically, to inte-grate their influences on normal function and growth.

Table 1.1 Regional Subdivisions of the Body

Head
Neck
Trunk • Thorax (chest) • Abdomen • Pelvis

Upper limb

- Shoulder girdle
- Free upper limb

Lower limb

- Pelvic girdle
- Free lower limb

Table 1.2 Functional Subdivisions by Organ Systems

Locomotor system (musculoskeletal system)

- Skeleton and skeletal connections (passive part)
- Striated skeletal musculature (active part)

Viscera

- Cardiovascular system
- Hemolymphatic system
- Endocrine system
- Respiratory system
- Digestive system
- Urinary system
- Male and female reproductive system

Nervous system

- Central and peripheral nervous system
- Sensory organs

The skin and its appendages

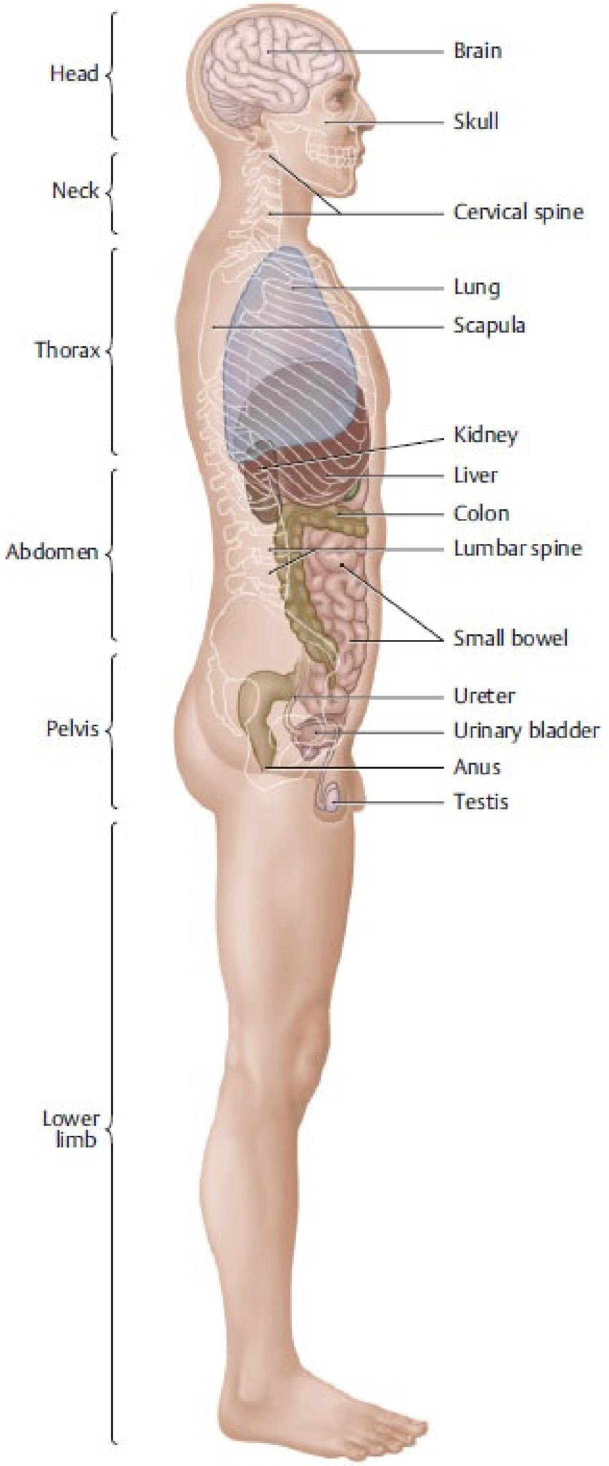

Head
Brain
Skull
Neck
Cervical spine
Lung
Scapula
Thorax
Kidney
Liver
Colon
Abdomen
Lumbar spine
Small bowel
Ureter
Pelvis
Urinary bladder
Anus
Testis
Lower limb

Fig. 1.1 Structural design of the human body: location of the internal organs.

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

1.2 Terms of Location and Direction, Cardinal Planes, and Axes

- All locational and directional terms used in anatomy, and in medical practice, refer to the human body in the **anatomic position,** in which the body is upright, arms at the side, with the eyes, palms of the hands, and feet directed forward **(Fig. 1.2, Table 1.3)**.
- Three perpendicular cardinal planes and three axes based on the three spatial coordinates can be drawn through the body **(Fig. 1.3)**.
  - The **sagittal plane** passes through the body from front to back, dividing it into right and left sides.

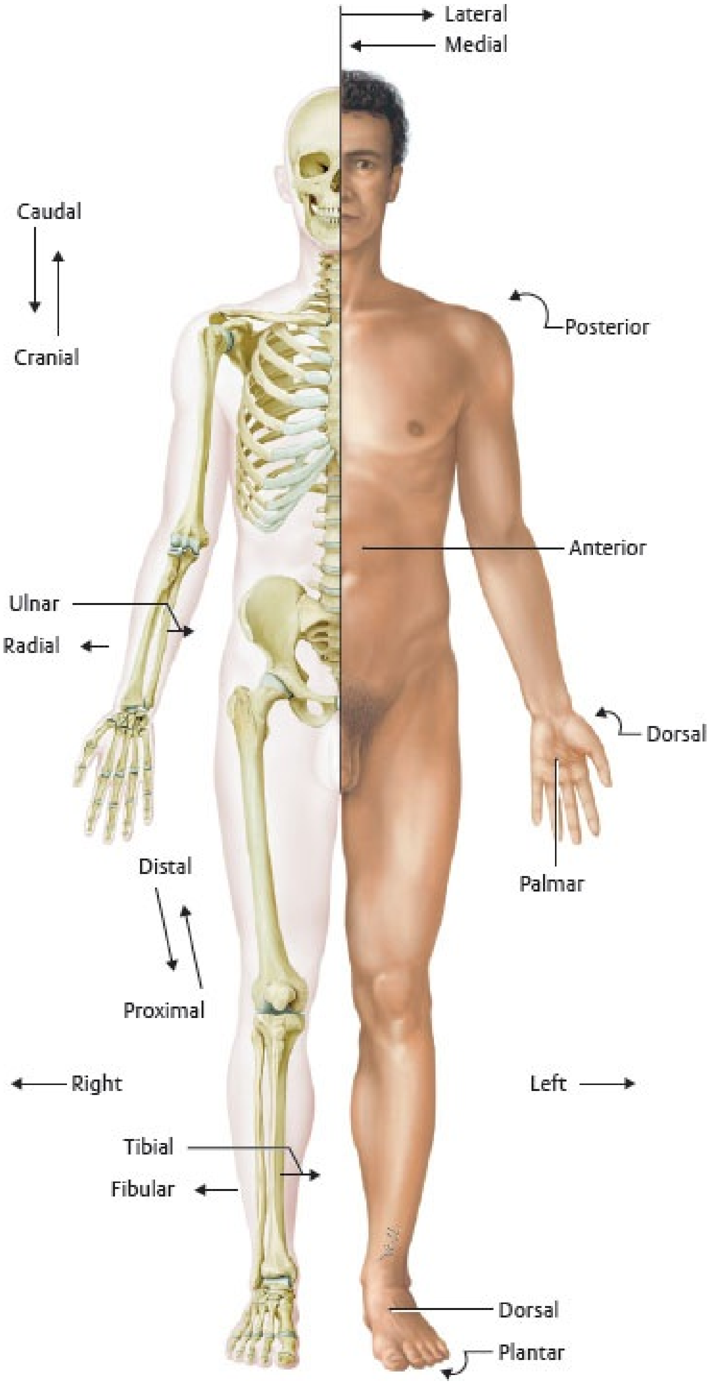

Lateral
Medial
Caudal
Cranial
Posterior
Anterior
Ulnar
Radial
Dorsal
Palmar
Distal
Proximal
Right
Left
Tibial
Fibular
Dorsal
Plantar

Fig. 1.2 Anatomic position.

Anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Table 1.3 General Terms of Location and Direction

Term	Explanation
Upper Body (Head, Neck, and Trunk)	
Cranial	Pertaining to, or located toward, the head
Caudal	Pertaining to, or located toward, the tail
Anterior	Pertaining to, or located toward, the front; synonym: ventral (used for all animals)
Posterior	Pertaining to, or located toward, the back; synonym: dorsal (used for all animals)
Superior	Upper or above
Inferior	Lower or below
Axial	Pertaining to the axis of a structure
Transverse	Situated at right angles to the long axis of a structure
Longitudinal	Parallel to the long axis of a structure
Horizontal	Parallel to the plane of the horizon
Vertical	Perpendicular to the plane of the horizon
Medial	Toward the median plane
Lateral	Away from the median plane (toward the side)
Median	Situated in the median plane or midline
Peripheral	Situated away from the center
Superficial	Situated near the surface
Deep	Situated deep beneath the surface
External	Outer or lateral
Internal	Inner or medial
Apical	Pertaining to the top or apex
Basal	Pertaining to the bottom or base
Sagittal	Situated parallel to the sagittal suture

Coronal	Situated parallel to the coronal suture (pertaining to the crown of the head)
Limbs	
Proximal	Close to, or toward, the trunk, or toward the point of origin
Distal	Away from the trunk (toward the end of the limb), or away from the point of origin
Radial	Pertaining to the radius or the lateral side of the forearm
Ulnar	Pertaining to the ulna or the medial side of the forearm
Tibial	Pertaining to the tibia or the medial side of the leg
Fibular	Pertaining to the fibula or the lateral side of the leg
Palmar (volar)	Pertaining to the palm of the hand
Plantar	Pertaining to the sole of the foot
Dorsal	Pertaining to the back of the hand or top of the foot

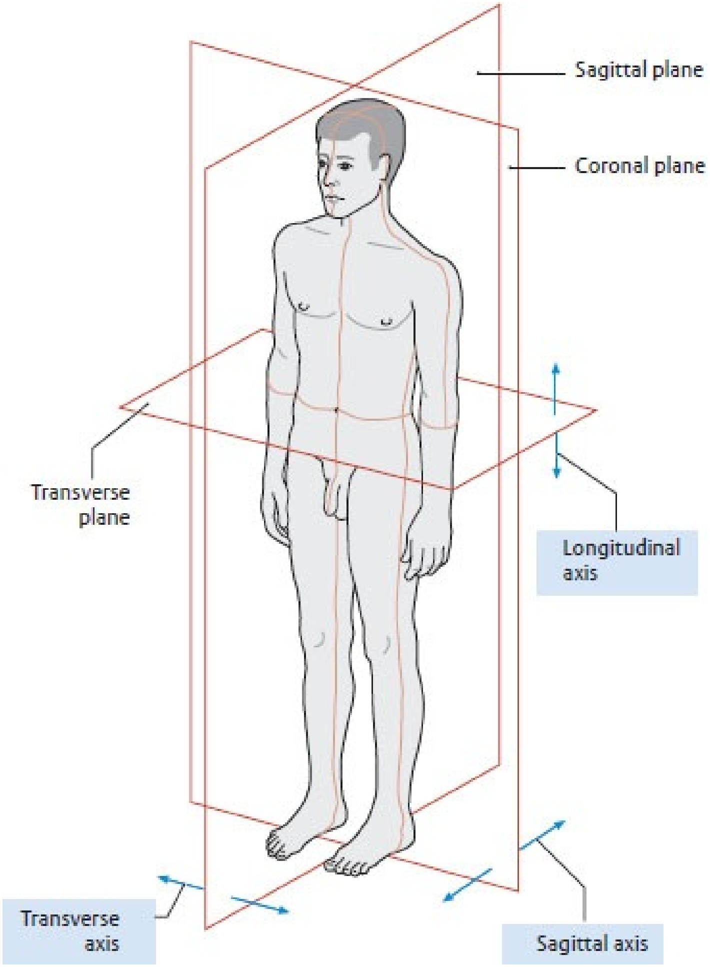

Sagittal plane
Coronal plane
Transverse plane
Longitudinal axis
Transverse axis
Sagittal axis

Fig. 1.3 Cardinal planes and axes.

Neutral position, left anterolateral view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- The **coronal plane** passes through the body from side to side, dividing it into front (anterior) and back (posterior) parts.
- The **transverse** (axial, horizontal, cross-sectional) **plane** divides the body into upper and lower parts. A particular transverse section is often given the designation of the corresponding vertebral level, such as *T4*, which passes through the fourth thoracic vertebra.
- The **longitudinal axis** passes along the height of the body in a craniocaudal direction.
- The **sagittal axis** passes from the front to the back (or the back to the front) of the body in an anteroposterior direction.
- The **transverse** (horizontal) **axis** passes through the body from side to

side.

1.3 Landmarks and Reference Lines

- In surface anatomy, palpable structures or visible markings on the surface of the body are used to identify the location of underlying structures. **Reference lines** are vertical or transverse planes that connect palpable structures or markings **(Tables 1.4, 1.5,** and **1.6;** see also **Fig. 1.5)**.

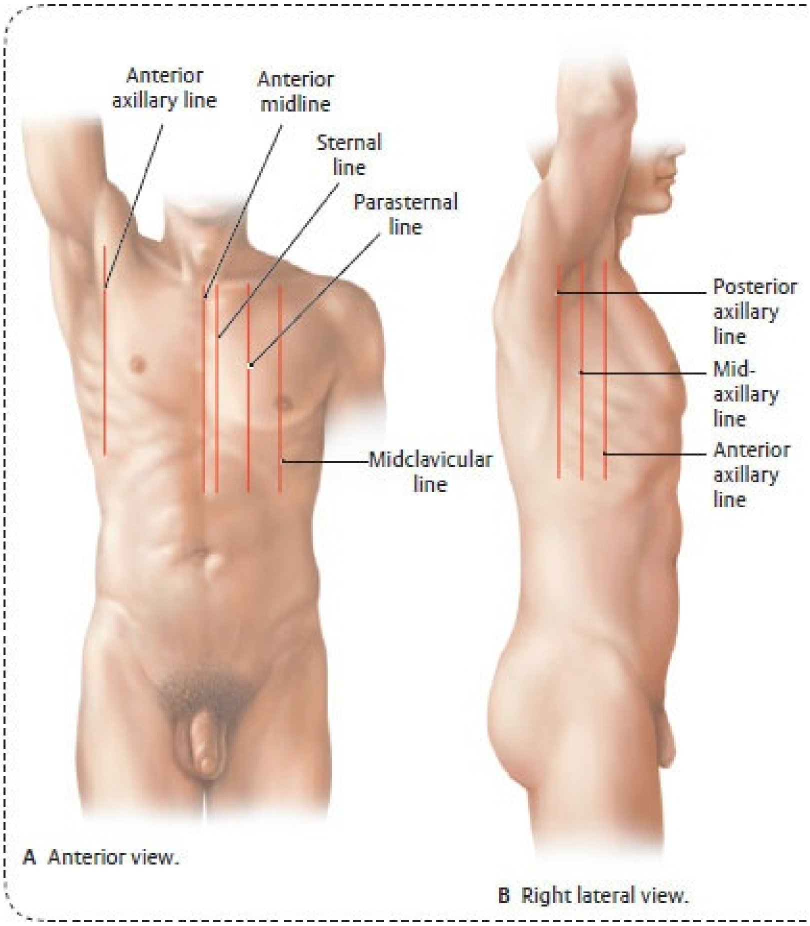

Anterior axillary line
Anterior midline
Sternal line
Parasternal line
Midclavicular line
Posterior axillary line
Mid-axillary line
Anterior axillary line
A Anterior view.
B Right lateral view.

Table 1.4 Anterior and Lateral Reference Lines on the Trunk

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Anterior midline	Passes through the center of the sternum
Sternal line	Passes along the lateral border of the sternum

Midclavicular line	Passes through the midpoint of the clavicle
Parasternal line	Passes through a point midway between the sternal and midcla- vicular lines
Anterior axillary line	Marks the anterior axillary fold formed by the pectoralis major muscle
Posterior axillary line	Marks the posterior axillary fold formed by the teres major muscle
Midaxillary line	Marks the midpoint between the anterior and posterior axillary lines

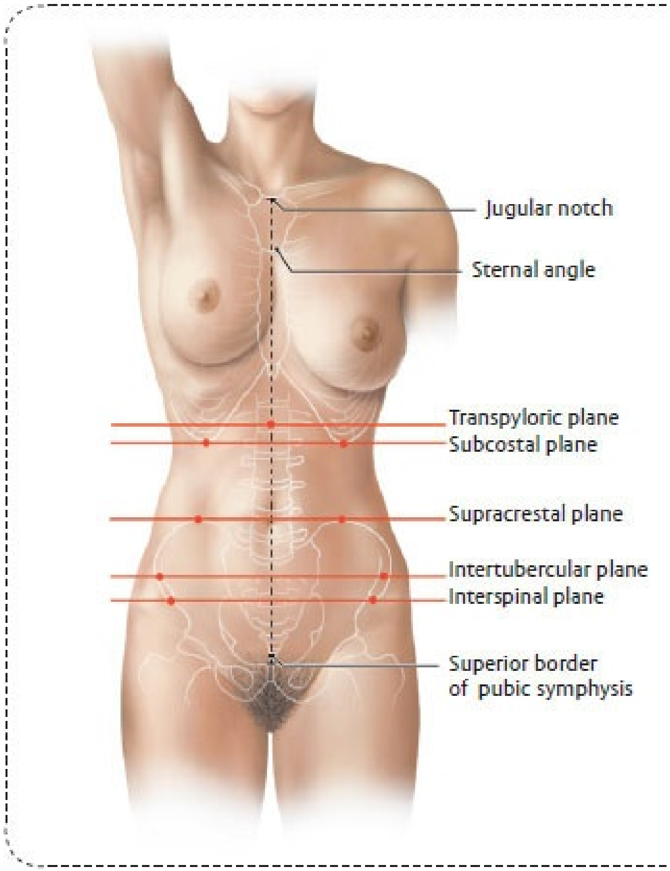

Jugular notch
Sternal angle
Transpyloric plane
Subcostal plane
Supracrestal plane
Intertubercular plane
Interspinal plane
Superior border of pubic symphysis

Table 1.5 Landmarks and Transverse Planes on the Anterior Trunk

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Jugular notch	Marks the superior border of the manubrium

Sternal angle	Marks the junction of manubrium and body of the sternum
Transpyloric plane	Passes through the midpoint between the jugular notch and pubic symphysis
Subcostal plane	Marks the lowest level of the thoracic cage, the tenth costal cartilage
Supracrestal plane	Connects the top of the iliac crests
Intertubercular plane	Passes through the iliac tubercles
Interspinal plane	Connects the anterior superior iliac spines

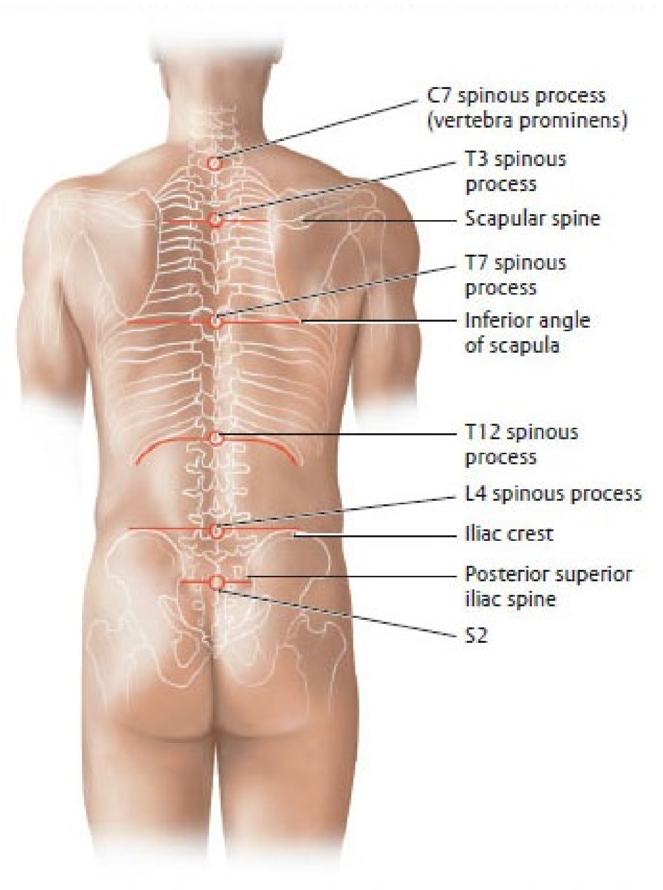

C7 spinous process (vertebra prominens)
T3 spinous process
Scapular spine
T7 spinous process
Inferior angle of scapula
T12 spinous process
L4 spinous process
Iliac crest
Posterior superior iliac spine
S2

Table 1.6 Vertebral Spinous Processes and Posterior Landmarks

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

C7	The vertebra prominens
T3	Level of the medial edge of spines of the scapulae
T7	Level of the inferior angles of the scapulae
T12	Level of the lower limit of the thoracic cavity
L4	Level of the iliac crests
S2	Level of the posterior superior iliac spine

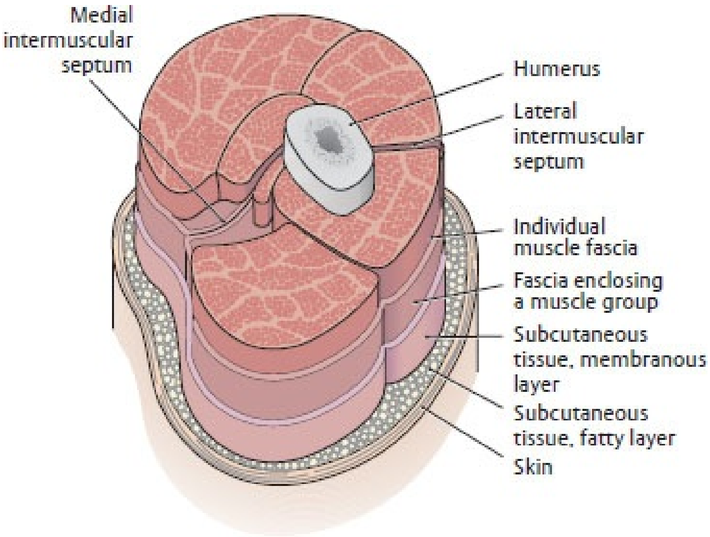

Medial intermuscular septum
Humerus
Lateral intermuscular septum
Individual muscle fascia
Fascia enclosing a muscle group
Subcutaneous tissue, membranous layer
Subcutaneous tissue, fatty layer
Skin

Fig. 1.4 Fascia.

Cross section through the right arm, proximal view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

1.4 Connective and Supporting Tissues

— Connective tissue comprises a variety of forms that are found throughout the body. Its common characteristic is a predomi-nance of extracellular material made up largely of fibrous proteins and an amorphous ground substance and widely spaced cells that may include adipocytes, fibroblasts, and mesenchymal stem cells as well as macrophages and lymphocytes. Bone and cartilage are specialized types of connective tissue.

- The classification of connective tissue types is based on the degree to which the fibrous components are organized.
  - Irregular types include
    - Loose, or areolar, connective tissue, which is widely distributed around vessels and nerves and within organs, where it binds lobes and groups of muscle fascicles. It provides support while allowing movement of structures.
    - Dense connective tissue, which supports structures under mechanical stress. It ensheathes muscles and nerves and forms the capsules of organs such as the testis.
    - Adipose tissue, or fat, which is found in specialized areas such as the subcutaneous tissue of the skin, the female breast, and padding on the soles of the feet and in the renal bed surrounding the kidneys.
  - Regular connective tissue, which is largely fibrous but may also contain elastin fibers, makes up the tendons, liga-ments, and aponeuroses as well as fascial layers that enclose muscles and underlie the skin.
- Fascia is a general term that has been redefined in recent years to describe any easily discernable connective tissue sheet or sheath. The most common usages pertain to the connective tissue layers between the skin and muscle, formerly known as the superficial and deep fasciae. New terminology refers to these layers as the **subcutaneous connective tissue** with two layers **(Fig. 1.4)**:
  - A **fatty layer** of varying thickness that lies deep to the skin, composed of loose connective tissue and fat, traversed by superficial nerves and vessels.
  - A **membranous layer** of dense connective tissue layer that lies under (deep to) the fatty layer and is devoid of fat. It forms an investing layer, which envelops neurovascular structures and muscles of the limbs, trunk wall, head, and neck. Invaginations of this layer form intermuscular septa that compartmentalize limb musculature into functional groups.

1.5 The Integumentary System

The skin (integument), the largest organ of the body, protects underlying tissue from biologic, mechanical, and chemical injury; regulates body temperature; and participates in metabolic pro-cesses, such as the synthesis of vitamin D.

— The skin is composed of
  - an outer waterproof avascular layer, the **epidermis,** which has a superficial layer of keratinized cells that shed continuously and a deep basal layer of regenerating cells, and
  - an inner richly vascularized and innervated layer, the **dermis,** which supports the epidermis and contains hair follicles.

1.6 The Skeletal System

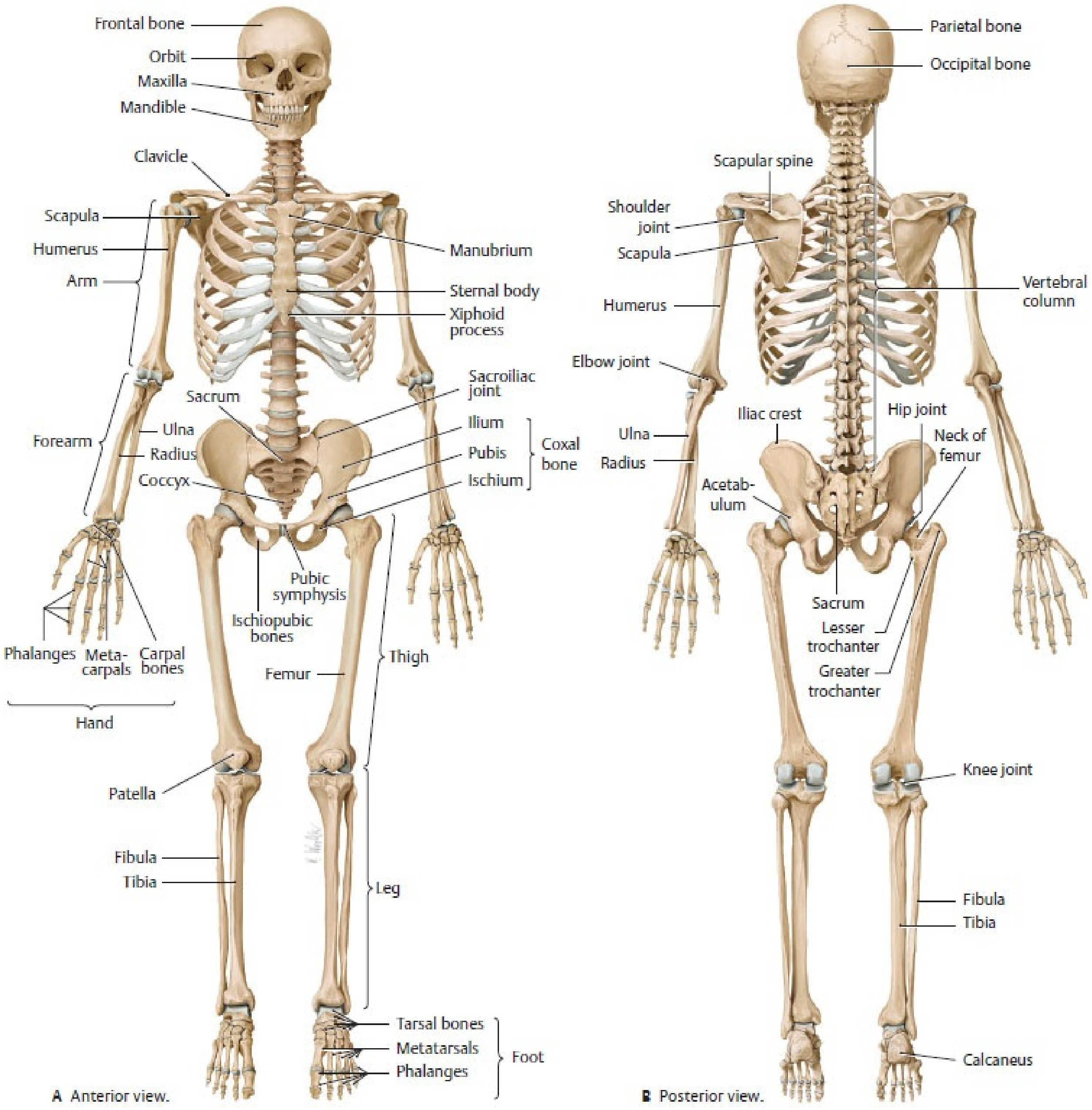
The bones and cartilages of the body, which make up the skeletal system, provide leverage for muscles and protect the internal organs. Bone is also the site for calcium storage and blood cell production.

— There are two anatomic divisions of the skeleton **(Fig. 1.5)**:
  - The **axial skeleton,** which consists of the skull, vertebrae, sacrum, coccyx, ribs, and sternum
  - The **appendicular skeleton,** which includes the clavicle and scapula of the pectoral girdle, the coxal bones of the pelvic girdle, and the bones of the upper and lower limbs

— **Periosteum** is a thin layer of fibrous connective tissue that coats the outer surface of each bone **(Fig. 1.6)**. **Perichon-drium** forms a similar layer around cartilaginous structures. These tissues nourish and assist in the healing of the underlying bone.

— All bones have a superficial layer of dense **compact** (cortical) **bone** that surrounds a less dense **cancellous** (spongy) **bone.** In some areas of the bone, a **medullary cavity** contains yellow (fatty) or red (blood cell or platelet-forming) **bone marrow.**

— Bones develop from **mesenchyme** (embryonic connective tissue) through two processes of ossification (bone formation).


Frontal bone
Orbit
Maxilla
Mandible
Clavicle
Scapula
Humerus
Arm
Manubrium
Sternal body
Xiphoid process
Sacroiliac joint
Sacrum
Forearm
Ulna
Radius
Coccyx
Ilium
Pubis
Ischium
Coxal bone
Pubic symphysis
Ischiopubic bones
Phalanges
Meta-carpals
Carpal bones
Hand
Femur
Thigh
Patella
Fibula
Tibia
Leg
Tarsal bones
Metatarsals
Phalanges
Foot
Parietal bone
Occipital bone
Scapular spine
Shoulder joint
Scapula
Vertebral column
Humerus
Elbow joint
Iliac crest
Hip joint
Neck of femur
Ulna
Radius
Acetab-ulum
Sacrum
Lesser trochanter
Greater trochanter
Knee joint
Fibula
Tibia
Calcaneus

A Anterior view.

B Posterior view.

Fig. 1.5 Human skeleton.

Left forearm is pronated, and both feet are in plantarflexion. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

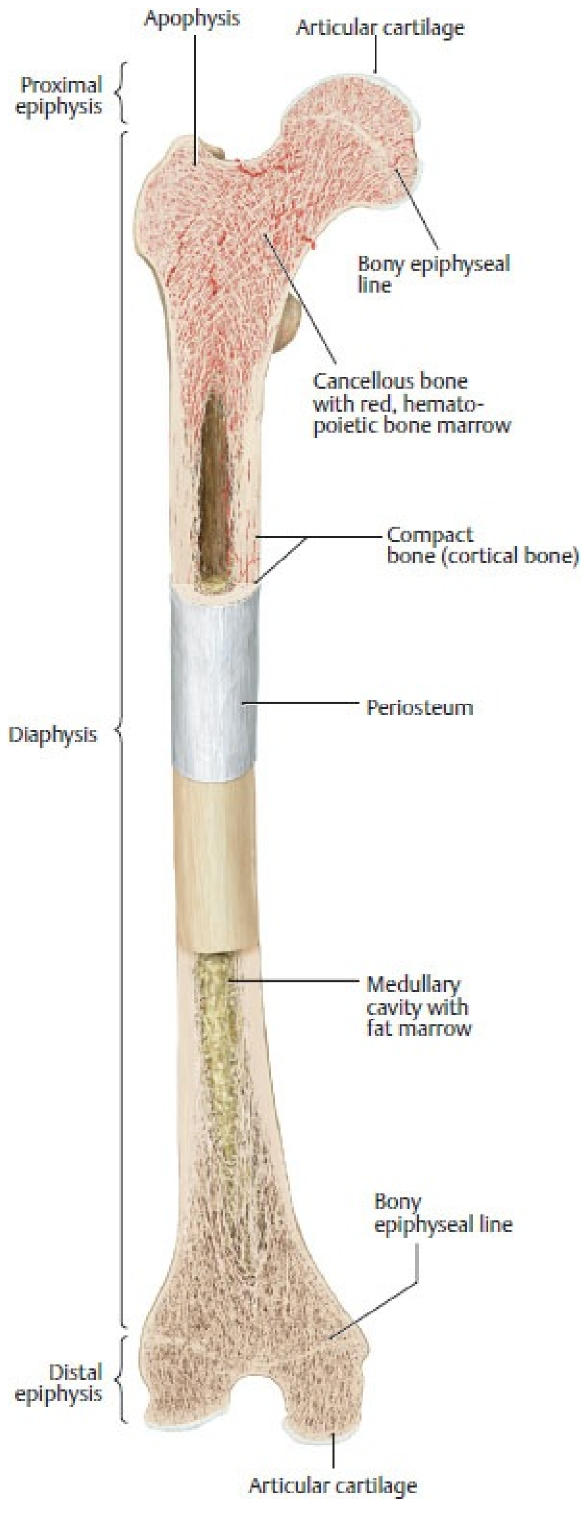

Apophysis
Articular cartilage
Proximal epiphysis
Bony epiphyseal line
Cancellous bone with red, hemato-poietic bone marrow
Compact bone (cortical bone)
Periosteum
Diaphysis
Medullary cavity with fat marrow
Bony epiphyseal line
Distal epiphysis
Articular cartilage

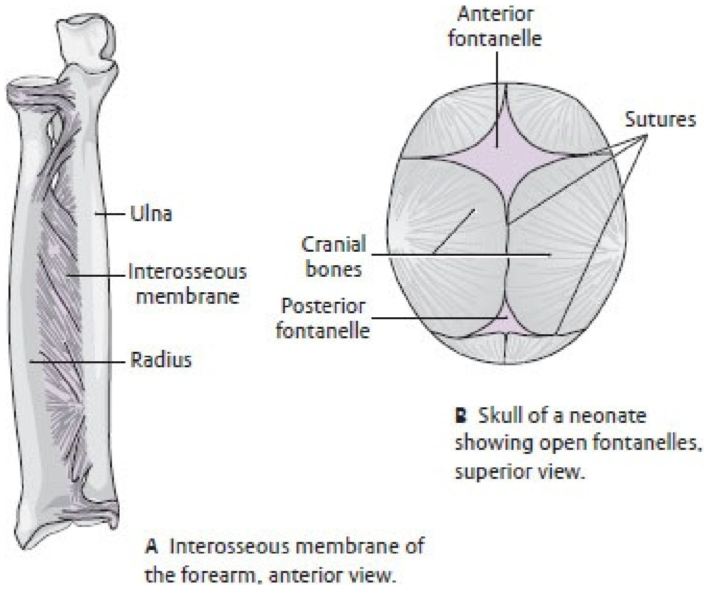
Fig. 1.6 Structure of a typical long bone.

Illustrated for the femur. Coronal cuts through the proximal and distal parts of an adult femur. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York:

Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

  - The clavicle and some bones of the skull develop by **membranous ossification,** in which the bones form through direct ossification of mesenchymal templates that are set down during the embryonic period.
  - Most bones, including the long bones of the limbs, develop by **endochondral ossification,** in which a cartilaginous template, formed from mesenchyme, is laid down during the fetal period. Over the first and second decades of life, bone replaces most of the cartilage.
    - Within each bone undergoing endochondral ossification, bone formation occurs first at a **primary ossification center,** which is in the **diaphysis** (shaft) of the long bones. **Secondary ossification centers** appear later at the **epiphyses** (growing ends) of the bones.
- Long bones of the skeleton increase in length through growth of the epiphyses and diaphysis on either side of the **epiphy-seal plate,** an intervening cartilaginous area. During child-hood and adolescence the epiphyseal plates gradually shorten as they are replaced by bone. In the adult these areas are completely ossified, and only thin **epiphyseal lines** remain.
- **Apophyses,** bony outgrowths that lack their own growth center, serve as attachment sites for ligaments or tendons. Specific apophyses are referred to as condyles, tubercles, spines, crests, trochanters, or processes.
- **Ligaments** are connective tissue bands that connect bones to each other or to cartilage. (Within the body cavities, the term *ligament* refers to folds or condensations of a serous or fibrous membrane that support visceral structures.)
- Joints are classified according to the type of tissue that connects the bones.
  - **Syndesmoses** (fibrous joints), such as those found in the sutures of the skull and interosseous membrane of the forearm, are united by fibrous tissue and allow minimal movement **(Fig. 1.7)**.
  - **Synchondroses** (cartilaginous joints) are united either by fibrocartilaginous segments, such as the costal cartilages of the ribs, intervertebral disks, and pubic symphysis **(Fig. 1.8A,B**), or by articular cartilage, often found in temporary joints, such as those that join the ilium, ischium, and pubis of the hip bone **(Fig. 1.8C)**. Subsequent fusion of these temporary joints creates **synostoses** (sites of bony fusion) **(Fig. 1.9)**.
  - **Synovial joints,** the most common type of joint, allow free movement **(Fig. 1.10**) and typically have

    - a **joint cavity** that is enclosed by a fibrous **joint capsule** and lined by a **synovial membrane,** which secretes a thin film of lubricating **synovial fluid;**
    - articulating ends of the bones that are covered by articular (hyaline) cartilage; and
    - extrinsic ligaments on the outer surface, which reinforce the joints.
    - Some synovial joints also contain intrinsic ligaments and intra-articular fibrocartilaginous structures.
- **Bursae** are closed sacs that contain a thin film of fluid and are lined with a synovial membrane. Commonly found around joints of the limbs, bursae cushion prominent bony processes from external pressure and prevent friction where tendons cross bony surfaces.

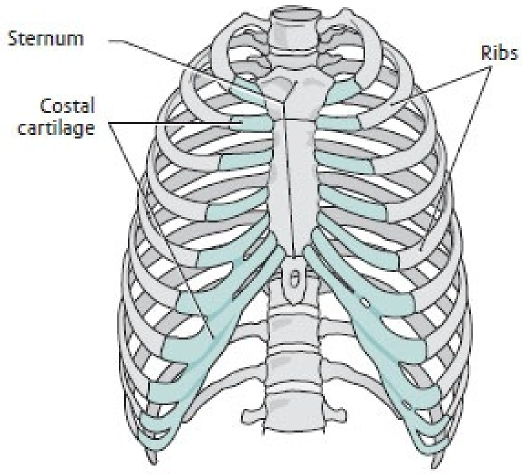


A Interosseous membrane of the forearm, anterior view.

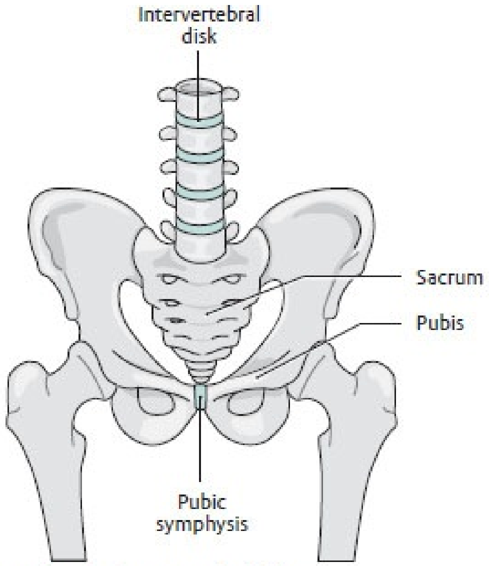
B Skull of a neonate showing open fontanelles, superior view.

Fig. 1.7 Syndesmoses

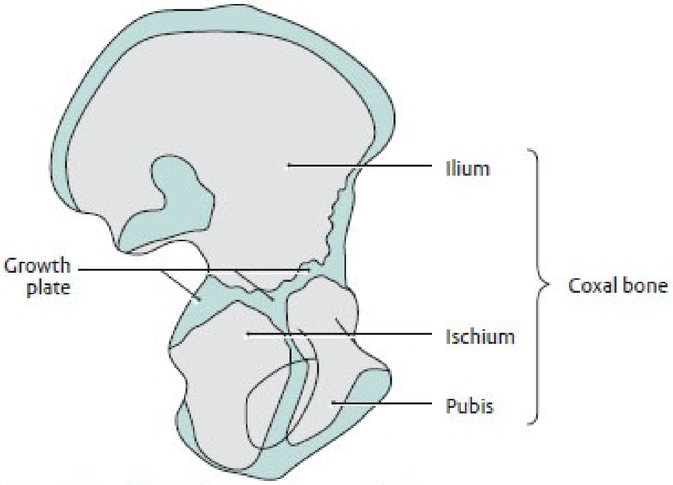
(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Sternum
Ribs
Costal cartilage

A Costal cartilages.


Intervertebral disk
Sacrum
Pubis
Pubic symphysis

B Pubic symphysis and intervertebral disks.


Ilium
Growth plate
Coxal bone
Ischium
Pubis

C Coxal bone before closure of the growth plates.

Fig. 1.8 Synchondroses

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

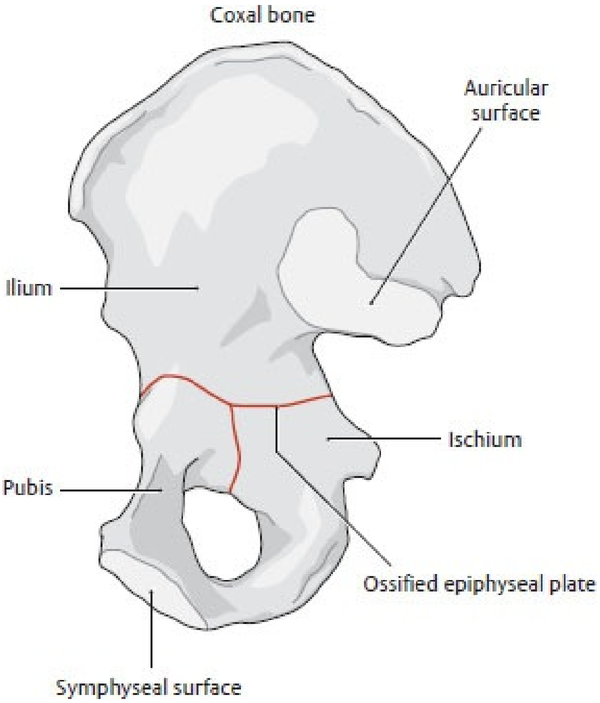
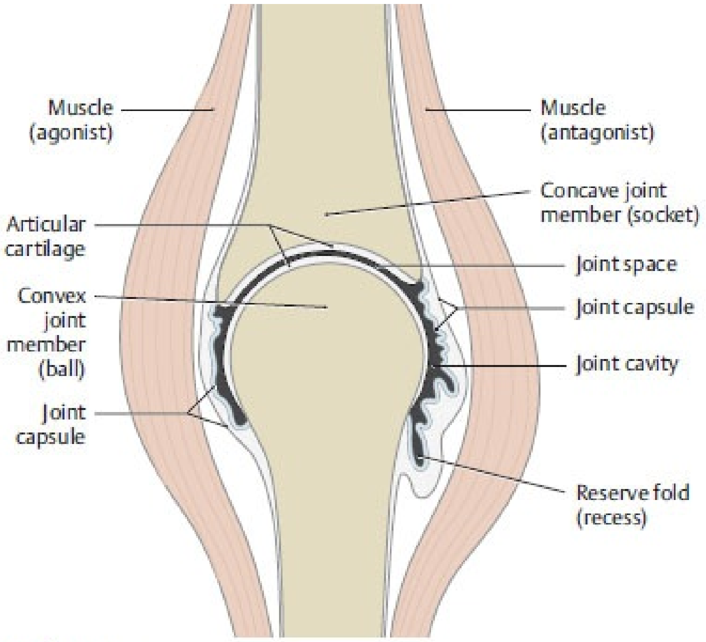
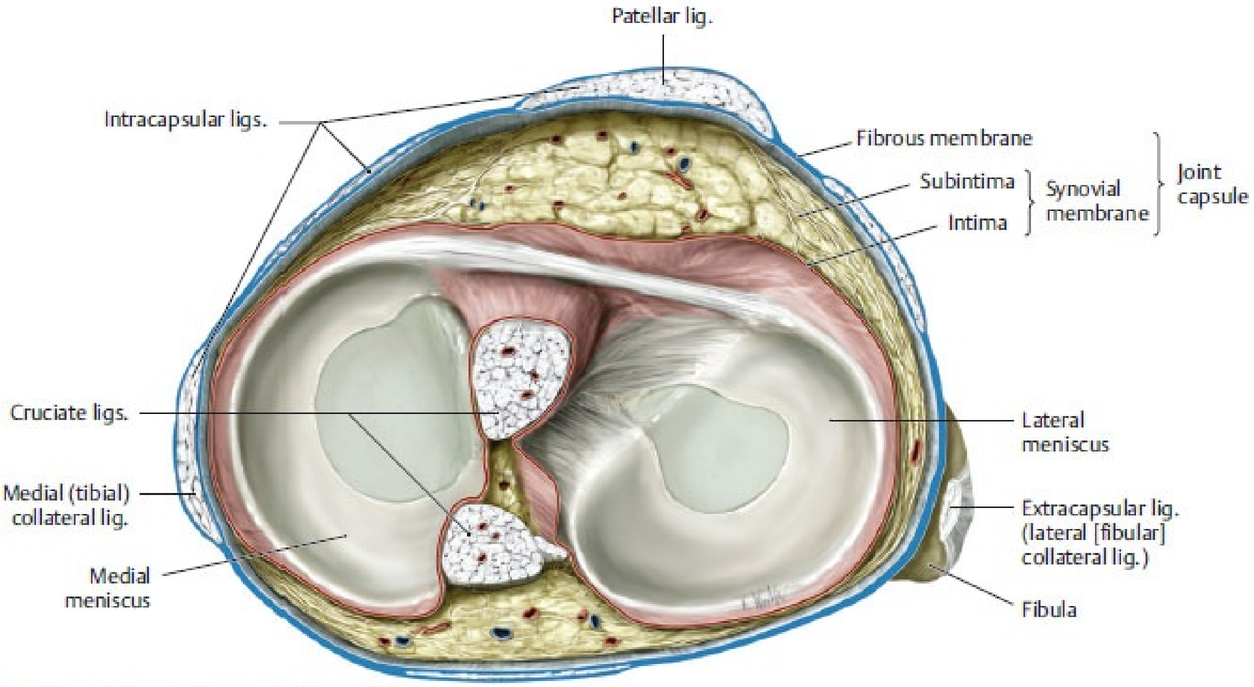

Coxal bone
Auricular surface
Ilium
Ischium
Pubis
Ossified epiphyseal plate
Symphyseal surface

Fig. 1.9 Synostoses.

Coxal bone (fusion of the ischium, ilium, and pubis). (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Muscle (agonist)
Muscle (antagonist)
Concave joint member (socket)
Articular cartilage
Joint space
Convex joint member (ball)
Joint capsule
Joint cavity
Joint capsule
Reserve fold (recess)

A Schematic.


Patellar lig.
Intracapsular ligs.
Fibrous membrane
Subintima
Intima
Synovial membrane
Joint capsule
Cruciate ligs.
Lateral meniscus
Medial (tibial) collateral lig.
Extracapsular lig. (lateral [fibular] collateral lig.)
Medial meniscus
Fibula

B Intracapsular structures of the knee joint.

Fig. 1.10 Structure of a synovial joint

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 1.1: ANATOMIC NOTES

EXTRA-ARTICULAR AND INTRA-ARTICULAR STRUCTURES OF SYNOVIAL JOINTS (SEE FIG. 1.10)

The joint capsule of a synovial joint is composed of an outer fibrous membrane and an inner synovial membrane. The intima (innermost lining) of the synovial membrane produces the synovial fluid, which lubricates and nourishes intra-articular structures.

— Ligaments of synovial joints act as primary joint stabilizers. They may be:
  - Extra-capsular (e.g., lateral (fibular) collateral ligament of the knee), which lie outside the fibrous capsule.
  - Intra-capsular, which run either within the fibrous membrane (e.g., medial (tibial) collateral ligament of the knee) or between the fibrous and synovial membranes (e.g., cruciate ligaments).

— Menisci, articular disks, and articular labra are intra-articular structures composed of connective tissue and fibrocartilage:
  - Menisci are crescent-shaped structures found in the knee joint. They act as shock absorbers and modify the incongruity of the articulating surfaces.
  - Articular disks divide joints into separate chambers and are found in the sternoclavicular and proximal wrist joints.
  - Articular labra are wedge-shaped structures that line the glenoid of the scapula and acetabulum of the coxal (hip) bone, thus enlarging the articular surfaces of the shoulder and hip joints.

1.7 The Muscular System

The muscular system is composed of muscles and their ten dons, which produce movement through contraction of muscle cells.

— **Muscle cells** are the structural units of the muscular system. Connective tissue binds muscle cells (fibers) together to form bundles, which in turn are bound together to form muscles **(Fig. 1.11).**

— A **motor unit** is the functional unit of muscles and describes the group of muscle fibers innervated by a single motor neuron. Motor units are relatively small in muscles that perform fine movements but larger in muscles that are responsible for maintaining posture or performing gross movements.

— Muscles function through tensing and contraction of the muscle fibers, which provide movement and stability
  - **Phasic contractions** can change the length of the muscle through shortening **(concentric contractions),** or lengthening **(eccentric**

contractions), or simply increas ing the muscle tension **(isometric contractions).**

- **Tonic contractions** contribute to stability of joints and position but do not provide any movements.
- **Reftexive contractions** are involuntary and are responsive to muscle stretch.

— Muscle tissue is classified by location (somatic or visceral), appearance (striated or nonstriated), and innervation (voluntary or involuntary).

— **Somatic, or skeletal muscles,** the most prevalent type, are found in the neck, trunk wall, and limbs, where they move and support the skeleton **(Fig. 1.12).** They are multinucleated, striated, and voluntary.

- Somatic muscle fibers are interwoven with three sheaths of connective tissue including the **endomysium,** the innermost sheath, which surrounds and condenses muscle fibers into primary bundles; the **perimysium,** which surrounds and condenses prima ry bundles into secondary bundles; and the **epimysium,** a loose connective tissue layer that surrounds the muscle and lies deep to the muscle fascia.
- **Muscle fascia** is the tough connective tissue sheath that encloses the muscle, maintains its shape, and allows frictionless movement between muscles and muscle groups.
- **Tendons,** dense fibrous bands, connect muscles to their bony attachments. **Aponeuroses** are tendons that form flat sheets, which attach the muscle to the skeleton, other muscles, or organs.
- Muscles shapes are described according to the arrange ment of the muscle fibers as pennate (uni-, bi-, multi-), fusiform, circular, convergent, or parallel.
- **Tendon (synovial) sheaths,** such as those found in the wrist and ankle, facilitate the movement of tendons over bone.Similar to a synovial joint capsule, they are com posed of an outer fibrous membrane lined with a two layered synovial membrane. The space between the synovial layers is filled with synovial fluid.

— **Visceral muscles,** considered involuntary, alter the shape of internal structures, such as the heart and gastrointestinal tract. There are two types:

- **Cardiac muscle,** which makes up the thick muscular layer (myocardium) of the heart, is striated.
- **Smooth muscle,** which found in the walls of blood vessels and hollow internal organs, is nonstriated.

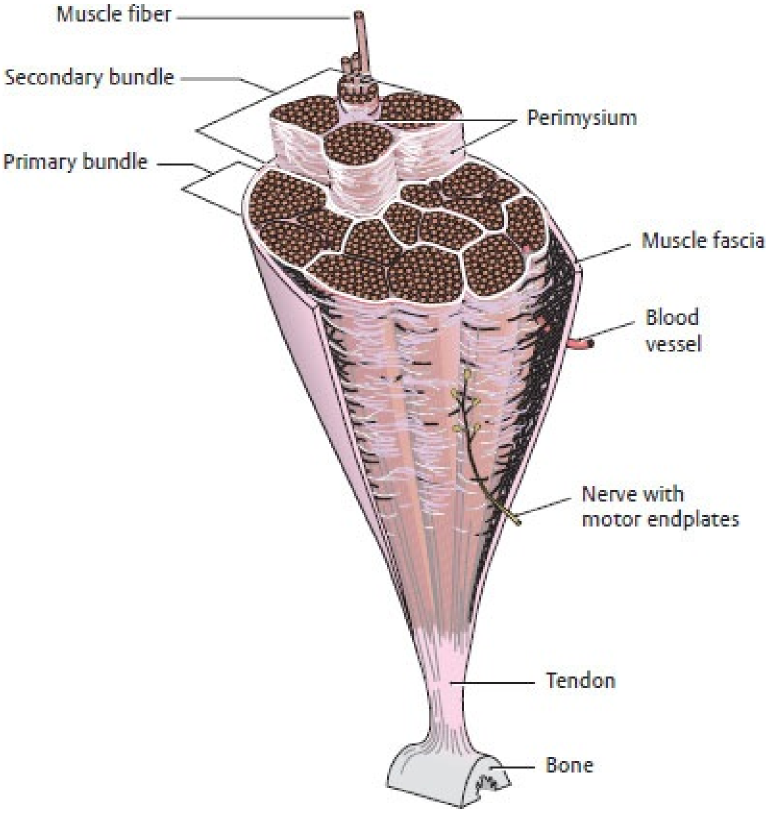
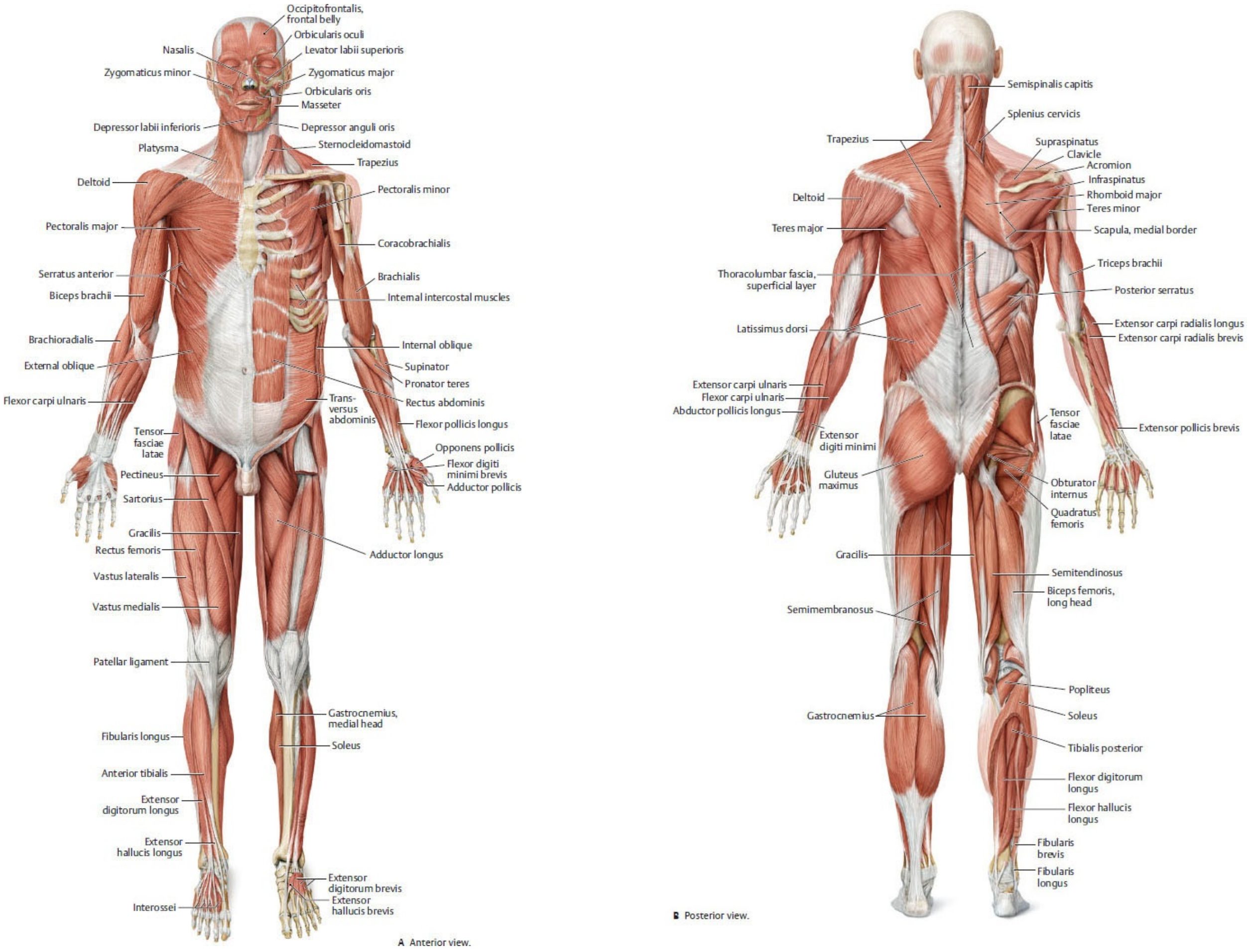

Muscle fiber
Secondary bundle
Primary bundle
Perimysium
Muscle fascia
Blood vessel
Nerve with motor endplates
Tendon
Bone

Fig. 1.11 Structure of a skeletal muscle.

Cross section through a skeletal muscle.(From Schuenke M. Schulte E. Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy.Vol 1. Illustrations by Vall M and Wesker K.3rd ed.New York:Thieme Publishers: 2020.)


Occipitofrontalis, frontal belly
Orbicularis oculi
Nasalis
Levator labii superioris
Zygomaticus minor
Zygomaticus major
Orbicularis oris
Masseter
Depressor labii inferioris
Depressor anguli oris
Platysma
Sternocleidomastoid
Trapezius
Deltoid
Pectoralis minor
Pectoralis major
Coracobrachialis
Serratus anterior
Brachialis
Biceps brachii
Internal intercostal muscles
Brachioradialis
Internal oblique
External oblique
Supinator
Pronator teres
Flexor carpi ulnaris
Trans-versus abdominis
Rectus abdominis
Flexor pollicis longus
Tensor fasciae latae
Opponens pollicis
Flexor digiti minimi brevis
Pectineus
Adductor pollicis
Sartorius
Gracilis
Rectus femoris
Adductor longus
Vastus lateralis
Vastus medialis
Patellar ligament
Gastrocnemius, medial head
Fibularis longus
Soleus
Anterior tibialis
Extensor digitorum longus
Extensor hallucis longus
Extensor digitorum brevis
Extensor hallucis brevis
Interossei
Semispinalis capitis
Splenius cervicis
Trapezius
Supraspinatus
Clavicle
Acromion
Infraspinatus
Deltoid
Rhomboid major
Teres minor
Teres major
Scapula, medial border
Triceps brachii
Thoracolumbar fascia, superficial layer
Posterior serratus
Latissimus dorsi
Extensor carpi radialis longus
Extensor carpi radialis brevis
Extensor carpi ulnaris
Flexor carpi ulnaris
Abductor pollicis longus
Tensor fasciae latae
Extensor pollicis brevis
Extensor digiti minimi
Gluteus maximus
Obturator internus
Quadratus femoris
Gracilis
Semitendinosus
Biceps femoris, long head
Semimembranosus
Popliteus
Gastrocnemius
Soleus
Tibialis posterior
Flexor digitorum longus
Flexor hallucis longus
Fibularis brevis
Fibularis longus

A Anterior view.

B Posterior view.

Fig. 1.12 Overview of skeletal muscles

Some superficia I muscles have been removed or windowed on both the left **(A)** and right **(B)** side of the body.Skeletal muscles (approximately 220 individual muscles) make up the active musculo skeletaI system. Two thirds of these muscles are found in the lower limb where they support the upright sta nee ofthe body against the force of gravity.They make up an average of 40% ofthe tota I body weight (varying with gender.age.and physical condition) but decrease in mass with age. (From Schuenke M. Schulte E. Schumacher U.THIEME Atlas of Anatomy. Voll.Illustrations by Vol! M and Wesker K.3rd ed. New York:Thieme Publishers: 2020.)

1.8 The Circulatory System

The heart and blood vessels, which make up the circulatory sys-tem **(Figs. 1.13** and **1.14)**, transport blood to tissues of the body for the exchange of gases, waste products, and nutrients.

- The muscular heart provides the pumping action that maintains the flow of blood through the vessels.
- The blood vessels of the circulatory system **(Fig. 1.15)** are classified as follows:
  - **Arteries,** which transport blood away from the heart and branch into many smaller **arterioles**
  - **Veins,** which carry blood toward the heart and are formed by the convergence of many small **venules**

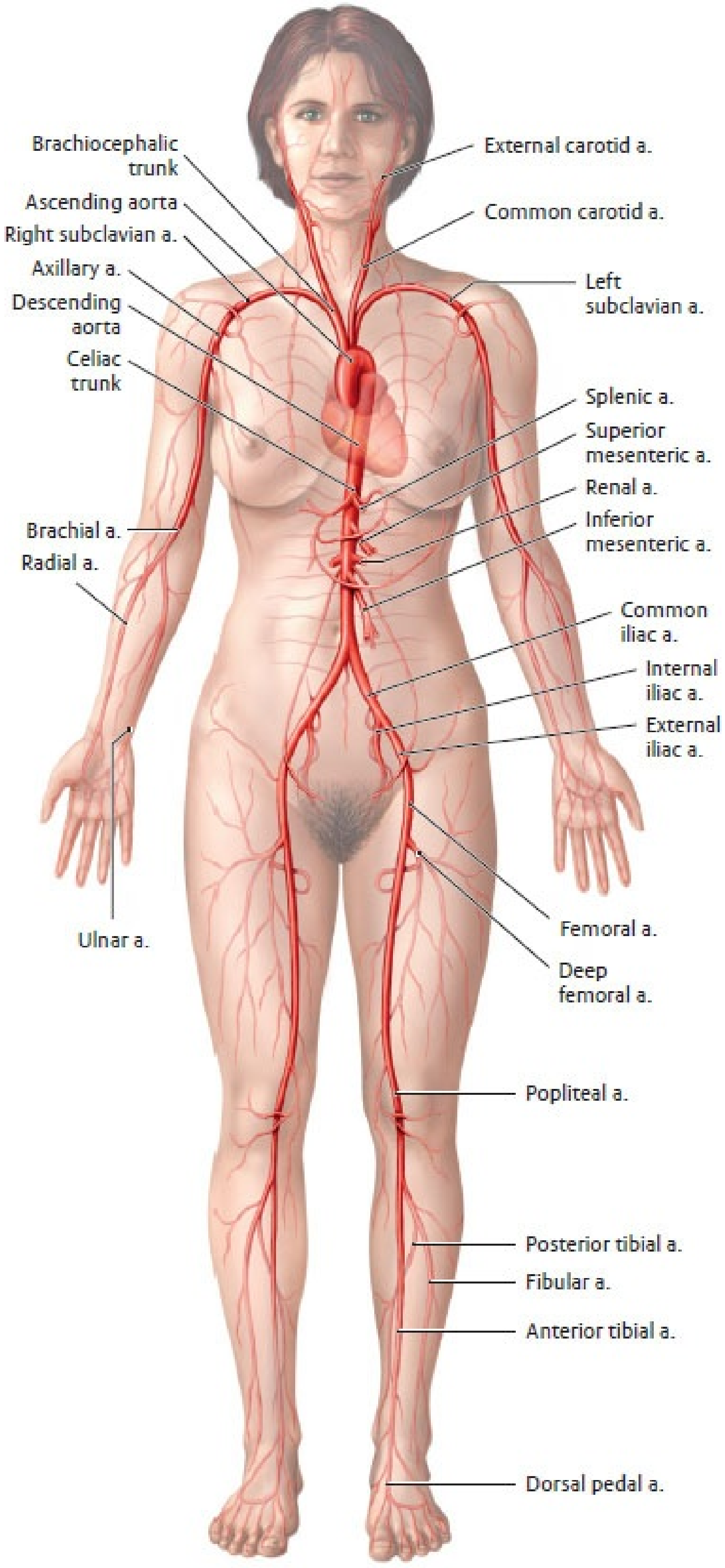

Brachiocephalic trunk
Ascending aorta
Right subclavian a.
Axillary a.
Descending aorta
Celiac trunk
Brachial a.
Radial a.
Ulnar a.
External carotid a.
Common carotid a.
Left subclavian a.
Splenic a.
Superior mesenteric a.
Renal a.
Inferior mesenteric a.
Common iliac a.
Internal iliac a.
External iliac a.
Femoral a.
Deep femoral a.
Popliteal a.
Posterior tibial a.
Fibular a.
Anterior tibial a.
Dorsal pedal a.

Fig. 1.13 Overview of the principal arteries in the systemic circulation.

Anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of

Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

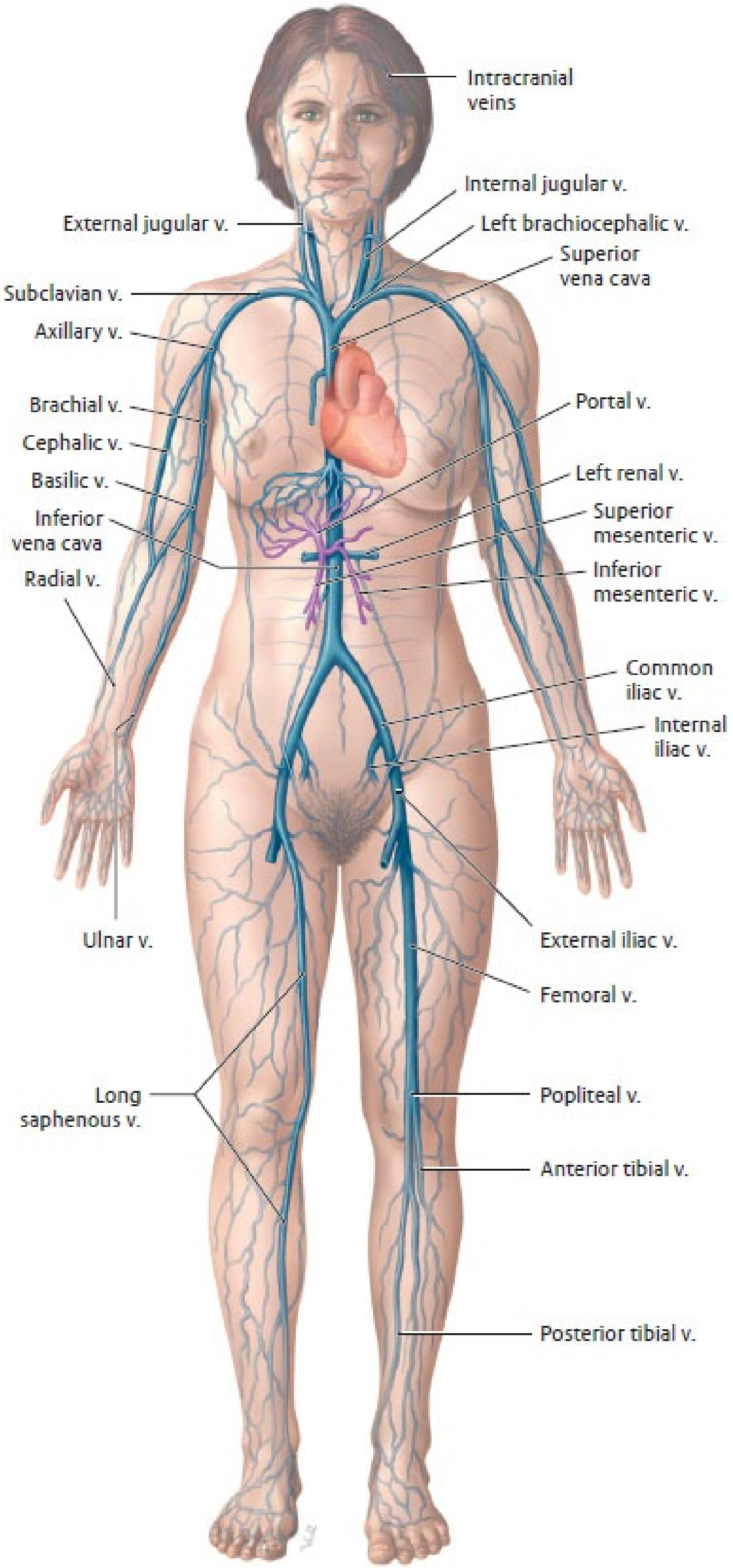

Intracranial veins
Internal jugular v.
External jugular v.
Left brachiocephalic v.
Superior vena cava
Subclavian v.
Axillary v.
Brachial v.
Portal v.
Cephalic v.
Basilic v.
Left renal v.
Inferior vena cava
Superior mesenteric v.
Radial v.
Inferior mesenteric v.
Common iliac v.
Internal iliac v.
Ulnar v.
External iliac v.
Femoral v.
Long saphenous v.
Popliteal v.
Anterior tibial v.
Posterior tibial v.

Fig. 1.14 Overview of the principal veins in the systemic circulation.

Anterior view. The portal circulation of the liver is shown in purple. Deep veins shown on the left limb, superficial veins shown on the right limb. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

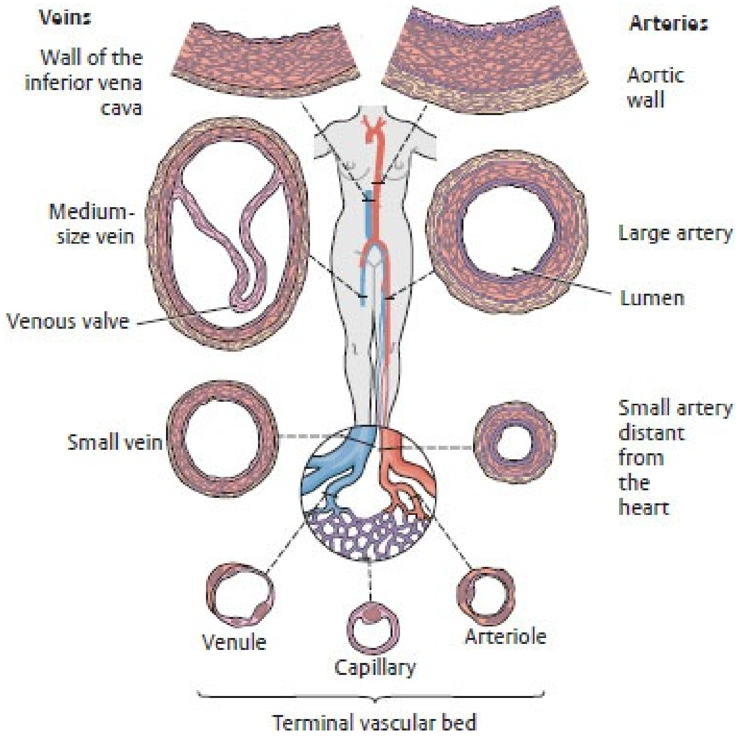

Veins
Wall of the inferior vena cava
Arteries
Aortic wall
Medium-size vein
Large artery
Lumen
Venous valve
Small vein
Small artery distant from the heart
Venule
Capillary
Arteriole
Terminal vascular bed

Fig. 1.15 Structure of blood vessels.

Blood vessels in different regions of the systemic circulation, shown in cross section. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

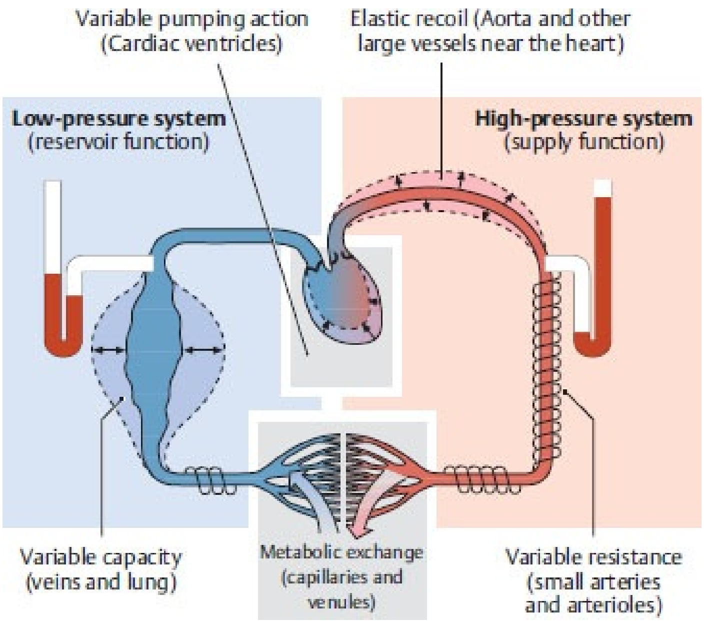

Variable pumping action
(Cardiac ventricles)
Elastic recoil (Aorta and other large vessels near the heart)
Low-pressure system
(reservoir function)
High-pressure system
(supply function)
Variable capacity
(veins and lung)
Metabolic exchange
(capillaries and venules)
Variable resistance
(small arteries and arterioles)

Fig. 1.16 Pressure gradients in the circulatory system.

(*Note:* No distinction is made between the systemic and pulmonary systems in the diagram; Klinke R, Sibernagel S. Lehbuch der Phyiologic. 3rd ed. Stuttgart: Thieme; 2001.)

BOX 1.2: ANATOMIC NOTES

FUNCTIONAL ASPECTS OF THE CIRCULATORY SYSTEM

Blood is transported through the circulatory system along a pres-sure gradient that is influenced by the size, number, and structure of the vessels through which it flows **(Fig. 1.16)**. Relatively high pressure is maintained in the arterial system. Large elastic type arteries can accommodate the intermittent volume ejected from the heart while more distal muscular arteries, through vasodila-tion (expansion) and vasoconstriction (contraction), can control vascular resistance and regulate local blood flow.

The venous system maintains a much lower pressure, and veins have comparatively thinner walls and larger diameters. They can accommodate up to 80% of the total blood volume and there-fore serve an important reservoir function. Return of venous blood to the heart is aided by factors such as (a) venous valves that prevent backflow, (b) arteriovenous coupling that transmits the arterial pulse to accompanying veins, and (c) the pumping action of surrounding muscles **(Fig. 1.17)**.

Terminal vascular beds, formed by the extensive branching of capillaries, connect the arterial and venous circulations. These vascular networks are characterized by a large increase in cross- sectional area and a corresponding decrease in the flow velocity, which is necessary for the exchange process between the blood and interstitial fluid. Flow through these vascular beds can be reg-ulated locally by contraction and relaxation of precapillary sphincters. Only one fourth to one third of capillary networks are perfused under normal resting conditions.

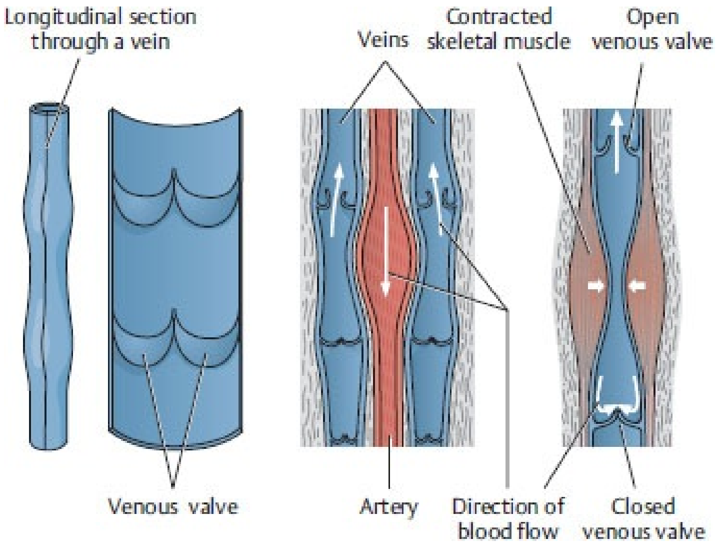

Longitudinal section through a vein
Veins
Contracted skeletal muscle
Open venous valve
Venous valve
Artery
Direction of blood flow
Closed venous valve

Fig. 1.17 Venous return to the heart

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

    - Many veins, particularly in the limbs, have multiple valves along their length to prevent backward flow due to gravity.
    - The veins are divided into **superficial veins,** which travel in the subcutaneous tissue and **deep veins,** which accompany the arteries. **Perforator veins** connect the superficial and deep venous circulations.
    - Veins are more numerous and more variable than arteries and often form venous plexuses (networks), which are named for the structure they surround (e.g., uterine venous plexus).
  - **Capillaries,** which form networks that intervene between the arteries and veins at the **terminal vascular beds,** where gas, nutrient, and waste exchange occurs
  - **Sinusoids,** which are wide, thin-walled vessels that replace capillaries in some organs, such as the liver

— The circulatory system has two circuits **(Fig. 1.18)**:

  1. The **pulmonary circulation** transports oxygen-poor blood from the right side of the heart to the lungs through **pulmonary arteries.** Oxygen-rich blood from the lungs flows back to the left side of the heart through **pulmonary veins.**
  2. The **systemic circulation** distributes oxygen-rich blood from the left side of the heart to body tissues through the systemic arteries (the **aorta**

and its branches). Oxygen-poor blood returns to the heart through the systemic veins (the **superior** and **inferior venae cavae** and their tributaries—sometimes referred to as the **caval system—** and the coronary sinus).

— A **portal circulation** is a route within the systemic circulation that diverts blood to a second capillary network before returning it to the systemic veins. The largest of these, the **portal system** in the liver, diverts blood from the gastrointestinal tract to the capillaries (sinusoids) in the liver before returning it to the systemic veins. A similar portal system is found in the pituitary gland.

— An **anastomosis,** a communication between blood vessels, allows blood to bypass its normal route and flow through an alternate, or collateral, route. Although blood volume through the anastomosis is usually minimal, it increases when the lumen of vessels along the normal route is obstructed.

— **End arteries** are vessels that lack anastomoses, such as the central retinal artery and renal arteries. Gradual narrowing of end arteries stimulates the formation of new vessels, but an abrupt obstruction of an end artery can cause necrosis (death) of the target tissue.

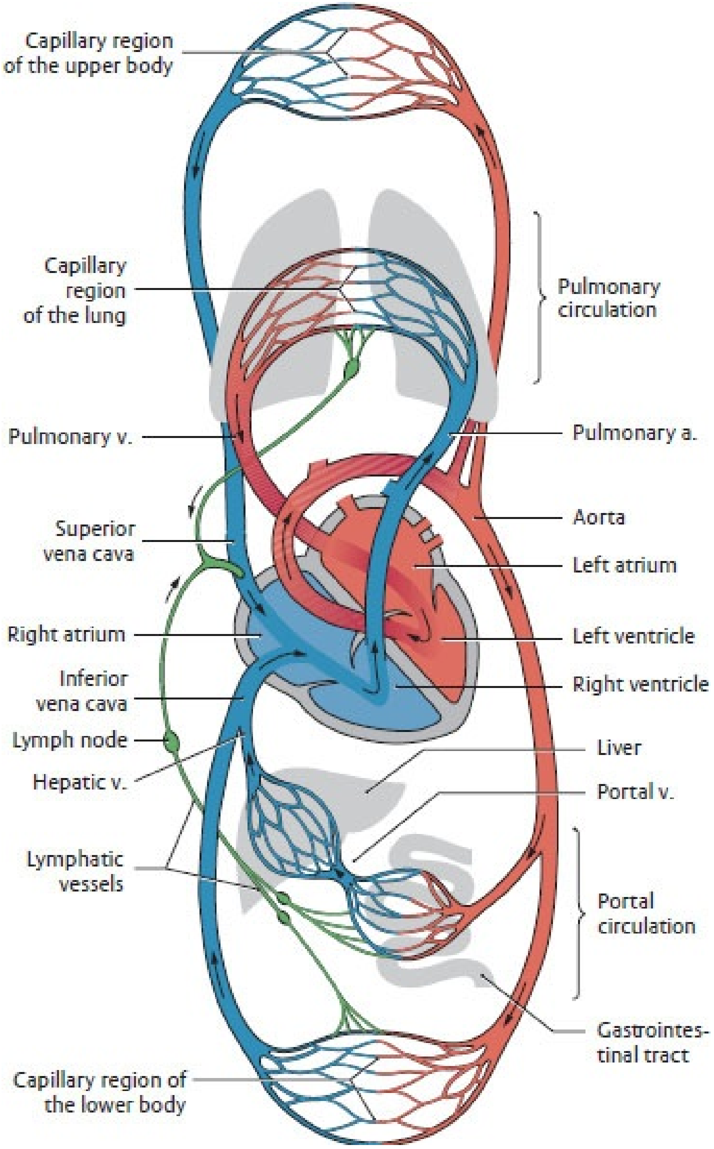

Capillary region of the upper body
Capillary region of the lung
Pulmonary circulation
Pulmonary v.
Pulmonary a.
Superior vena cava
Aorta
Left atrium
Right atrium
Left ventricle
Inferior vena cava
Right ventricle
Lymph node
Liver
Hepatic v.
Portal v.
Lymphatic vessels
Portal circulation
Gastrointes-tinal tract
Capillary region of the lower body

Fig. 1.18 Circulation.

Schematic showing the pulmonary and systemic circulations. The portal circulation through the liver is part of the systemic circulation. Arteries are shown in red, veins in blue, and lymphatic vessels in green. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

1.9 The Lymphatic System

The lymphatic system, which runs parallel to the circulatory sys-tem, consists of lymph, lymphatic vessels, and lymphoid organs.

— The lymphatic system performs the following functions:

  - Drains excess extracellular fluid from body tissues and returns it to veins of the systemic circulation
  - Mounts an immune response in the body
  - Transports fat and large protein molecules that cannot be taken up by venous capillaries
- Lymphoid organs and tissues that are part of the body’s immune system include
  - primary lymphatic organs: the thymus and bone marrow
  - secondary lymphatic organs: the spleen, lymph nodes, mucosa-associated lymphatic tissue (MALT), pharyngeal lymphatic (Waldeyer’s) ring, bronchus-associated lymphatic tissue (BALT) in the airway, and gut-associated lymphatic tissue (GALT)—such as Peyer’s patches and the vermiform appendix—in the gastrointestinal tract **(Fig. 1.19)**.

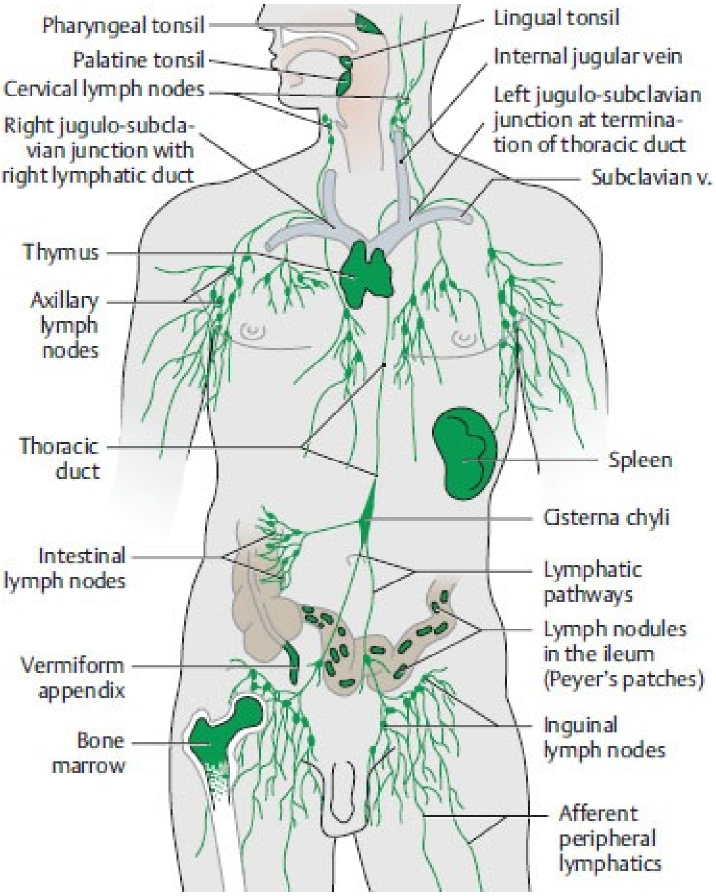

Pharyngeal tonsil
Palatine tonsil
Cervical lymph nodes
Right jugulo-subclavian junction with right lymphatic duct
Thymus
Axillary lymph nodes
Thoracic duct
Intestinal lymph nodes
Vermiform appendix
Bone marrow
Lingual tonsil
Internal jugular vein
Left jugulo-subclavian junction at termination of thoracic duct
Subclavian v.
Spleen
Cisterna chyli
Lymphatic pathways
Lymph nodules in the ileum (Peyer's patches)
Inguinal lymph nodes
Afferent peripheral lymphatics

Fig. 1.19 Lymphatic system.

The lymphatic system parallels the veins of the circulatory system and includes lymph nodes, lymphatic vessels, and lymphatic organs. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

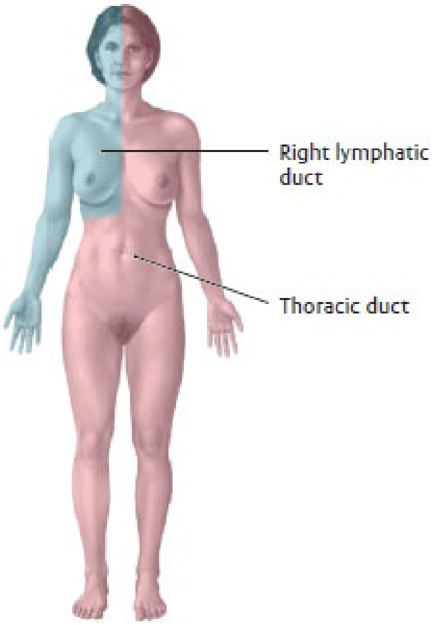


Fig. 1.20 Lymphatic drainage by body quadrants

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th Edition. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

— **Lymph,** extracellular fluid that is extracted by lymph capillaries and transported by lymphatic vessels, is a clear, watery substance similar to blood plasma.

— The conducting vessels of the lymphatic system include

- blind-ended **lymphatic capillaries** that begin in the tissues and drain to lymphatic vessels;
- **lymphatic vessels,** which are interposed with lymph nodes along their length and drain to lymphatic trunks; and
- two major **lymphatic trunks,** the thoracic duct (left lymphatic trunk) and right lymphatic trunk, which drain into large veins of the neck.

— The left lymphatic trunk, or **thoracic duct**, (~ 40 cm long), is the larger of the two major lymphatic trunks. It originates from the **cisterna chyli**, a dilated lymphatic vessel in the abdomen, and drains lymph from the right and left lower quadrants and left upper quadrant of the body. The smaller **right lymphatic duct** (~ 1 cm long) drains only the right upper quadrant of the body **(Fig. 1.20)**.

- Lymph carried by the thoracic duct and right lymphatic duct returns to the systemic venous circulation at the **left** and **right venous angles** (junction of the internal jugular and subclavian veins), also known as the **jugulosubclavian junction**, in the neck **(Fig. 1.21)**.
- Tributaries of the thoracic duct (left lymphatic trunk) include the:
  - left jugular trunk, which drains the left half of the head and neck

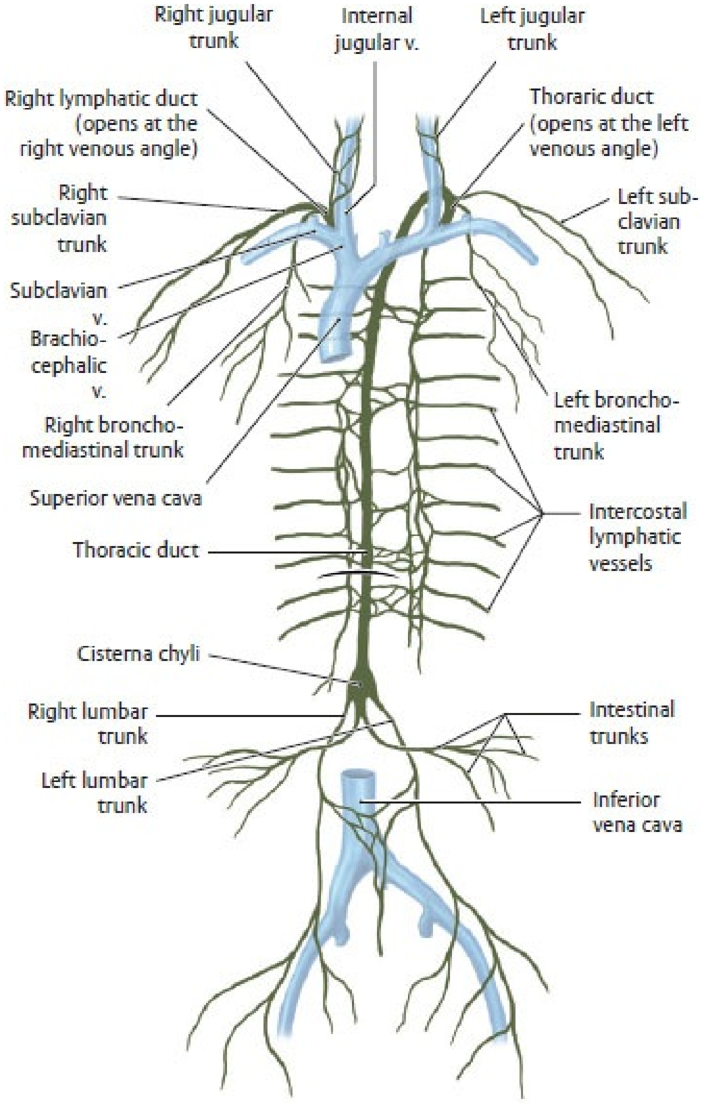

Right jugular trunk
Internal jugular v.
Left jugular trunk
Right lymphatic duct (opens at the right venous angle)
Thoraric duct (opens at the left venous angle)
Right subclavian trunk
Left sub-clavian trunk
Subclavian v.
Brachio-cephalic v.
Right broncho-mediastinal trunk
Left broncho-mediastinal trunk
Superior vena cava
Intercostal lymphatic vessels
Thoracic duct
Cisterna chyli
Right lumbar trunk
Intestinal trunks
Left lumbar trunk
Inferior vena cava

Fig. 1.21 Lymphatic pathways.

Anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

  - left subclavian trunk, which drains the left upper limb, left sides of the

  chest, and back wall
  - left bronchomediastinal trunk, which drains viscera of the left thoracic cavity (except from the lower lobe of the left lung, which can drain to the right lymphatic trunk). This trunk commonly empties directly into the left subclavian vein.
  - intestinal trunks from the abdominal organs
  - right and left lumbar trunks , which drain both lower limbs, all of the pelvic viscera, and walls of the pelvis and abdomen
- Tributaries of the right lymphatic duct include the:
  - right jugular trunk, which drains the right half of the head and neck
  - right subclavian trunk, which drains the right upper limb and right sides of the chest and back walls
  - right bronchomediastinal trunk, which drains the viscera of the right thoracic cavity. This trunk commonly empties directly into the right subclavian vein.

1.10 The Nervous System

The nervous system receives, transmits, and integrates informa-tion throughout the body through the conduction of nerve impulses. This complex system can be classified according to many different criteria. Although these classifications are somewhat artificial, they are useful for understanding the numerous inter-connections within the nervous systems **(Fig. 1.22)**.

- The nervous system has two major structural, or anatomic, divisions **(Fig. 1.23)**:
  - A **central nervous system** (CNS), which consists of the brain and spinal cord, where information about the body’s internal and external environment is processed
  - A **peripheral nervous system** (PNS), which consists of 12 pairs of cranial nerves, 31 pairs of spinal nerves, and autonomic (visceral) nerves; peripheral nerves transmit information between the CNS and target organs and tissues in the rest of the body.
- The nervous system can also be divided into functional divisions **(Fig. 1.24)**. Both the CNS and PNS contain compo-nents of each functional division.
  - The **somatic nervous system** controls voluntary functions such as contraction of skeletal muscles.
  - The **autonomic** (visceral) **nervous system** controls involuntary

functions such as gland secretion.

- **Nerve cells** or **neurons,** the functional unit of the nervous system found in the CNS and PNS, are specialized for conducting nerve impulses. They generate electrical signals, the action potential, and pass them on to other nerve or muscle cells. A variety of neurons can be described based on their appearance but the basic structure remains similar. The typical **neuron (Fig. 1.25A)** has
  - a **cell body** (soma). An aggregate of cell bodies in the CNS is called a **nucleus;** an aggregate of cell bodies in the PNS is called a **ganglion.**
  - multiple short branching **dendrites**, which receive information from other neurons and transmit impulses toward the cell body.
  - a single long **axon** or nerve fiber, which transmits impulses away from the cell body. Bundles of axons in the CNS form **tracts;** bundles of axons in the PNS form **nerves.**
- Neurons transmit electrical signals from cell to cell across junctions called **synapses**. At the synapse the electrical impulse of the **presynaptic** nerve fiber initiates the release of a chemical signal, or transmitter, which generates an electrical impulse in the receptor, or **postsynaptic** nerve cell **(Fig 1.25B)**.
- Neurons are classified by function as
  - **sensory** (afferent) **nerves**, which carry information regarding pain, temperature, and pressure to the CNS from peripheral structures.
  - **motor** (efferent) **nerves**, which transmit impulses from the CNS that elicit responses from peripheral target organs.
- **Neuroglia,** or **glial** cells, the non -neuronal cellular compo-nents of the nervous system, act as supporting cells and perform a variety of metabolic functions. Glial cells are responsible for producing the **myelin sheath**, a lipid-rich layer that surrounds axons and increases the speed of impulse conduction **(Fig. 1.26)**. The myelin-producing cells in the PNS are called **Schwann cells** and in the CNS are called **oligodendrocytes**.

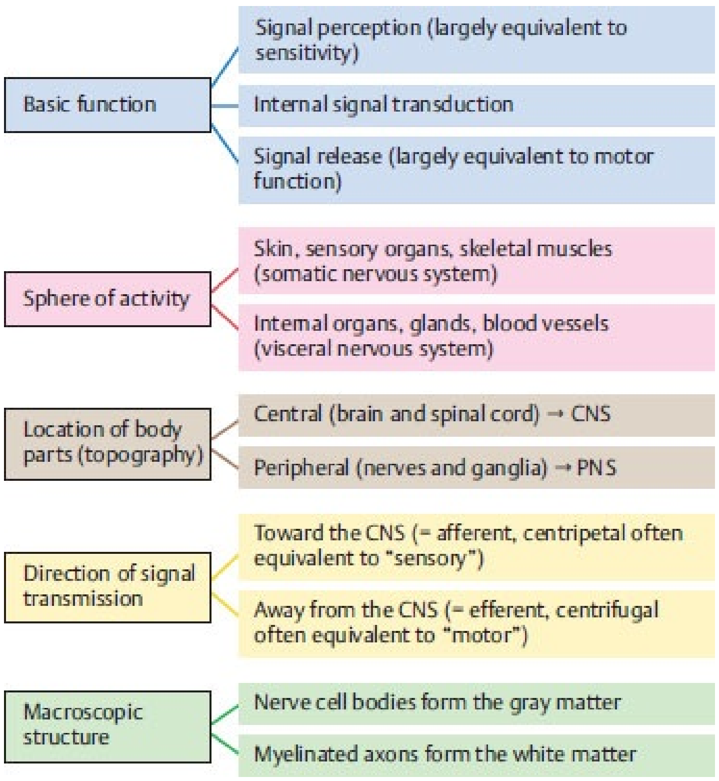

Basic function
Signal perception (largely equivalent to sensitivity)
Internal signal transduction
Signal release (largely equivalent to motor function)
Sphere of activity
Skin, sensory organs, skeletal muscles (somatic nervous system)
Internal organs, glands, blood vessels (visceral nervous system)
Location of body parts (topography)
Central (brain and spinal cord) → CNS
Peripheral (nerves and ganglia) → PNS
Direction of signal transmission
Toward the CNS (= afferent, centripetal often equivalent to "sensory")
Away from the CNS (= efferent, centrifugal often equivalent to "motor")
Macroscopic structure
Nerve cell bodies form the gray matter
Myelinated axons form the white matter

Fig. 1.22 Classification of the nervous system—overview

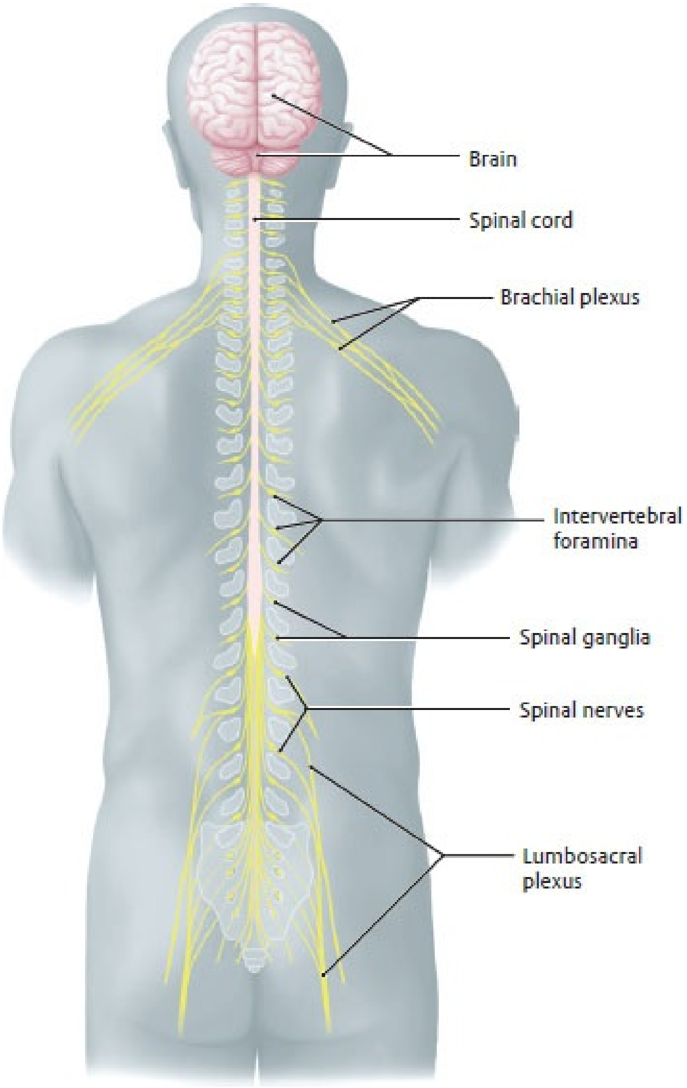

Brain
Spinal cord
Brachial plexus
Intervertebral foramina
Spinal ganglia
Spinal nerves
Lumbosacral plexus

Fig. 1.23 Topography of the nervous system.

Posterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

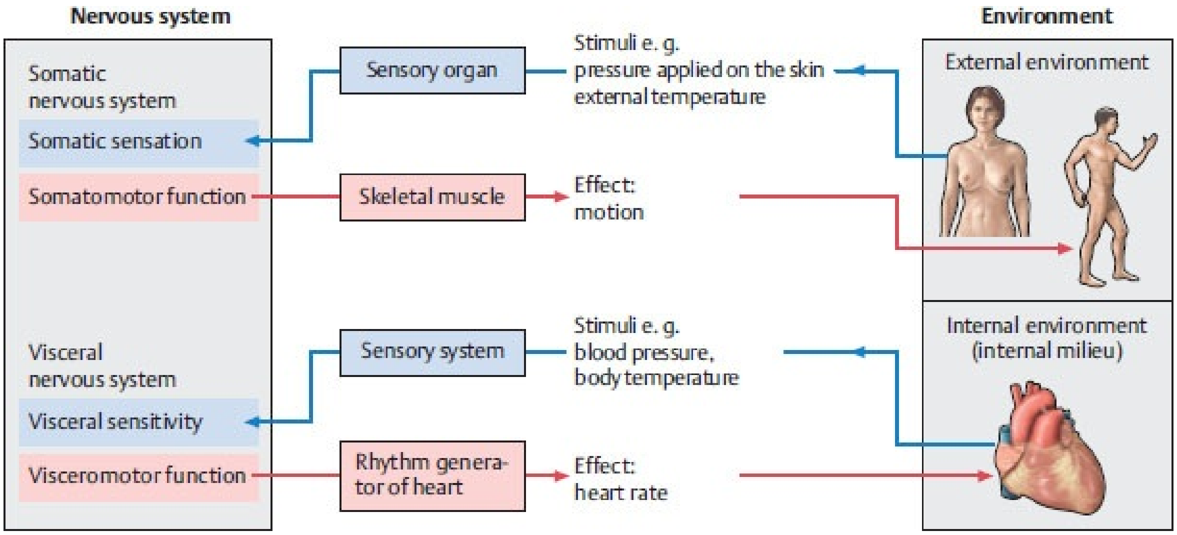
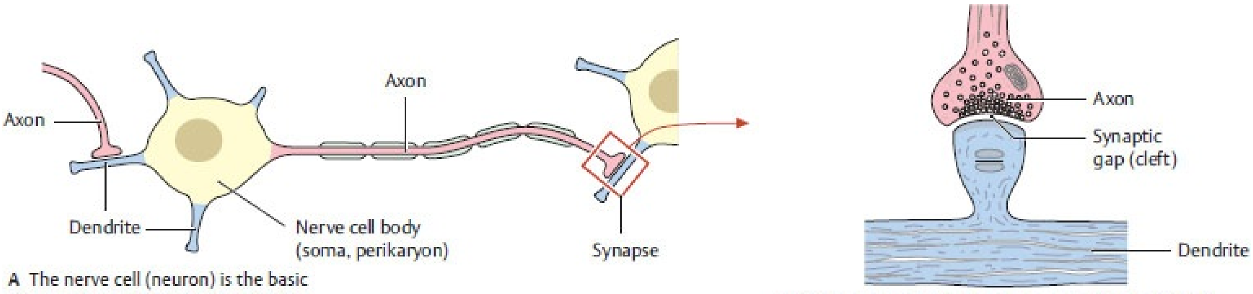

Nervous system
Somatic nervous system
Somatic sensation
Somatomotor function
Visceral nervous system
Visceral sensitivity
Visceromotor function
Sensory organ
Skeletal muscle
Sensory system
Rhythm generator of heart
Stimuli e. g. pressure applied on the skin external temperature
Effect: motion
Stimuli e. g. blood pressure, body temperature
Effect: heart rate
Environment
External environment
Internal environment (internal milieu)

Fig. 1.24 Functional classification of the nervous system


Axon
Dendrite
Nerve cell body (soma, perikaryon)
Axon
Synapse
Axon
Synaptic gap (cleft)
Dendrite

A The nerve cell (neuron) is the basic structural unit of the nervous system

B Neurons communicate at synapses where electrical signals initiate the release of neurotransmitters (chemical transmitters), which create an excitatory or inhibitory response at the target (postsynaptic) neuron.

Fig. 1.25 Nerve cell and synapse

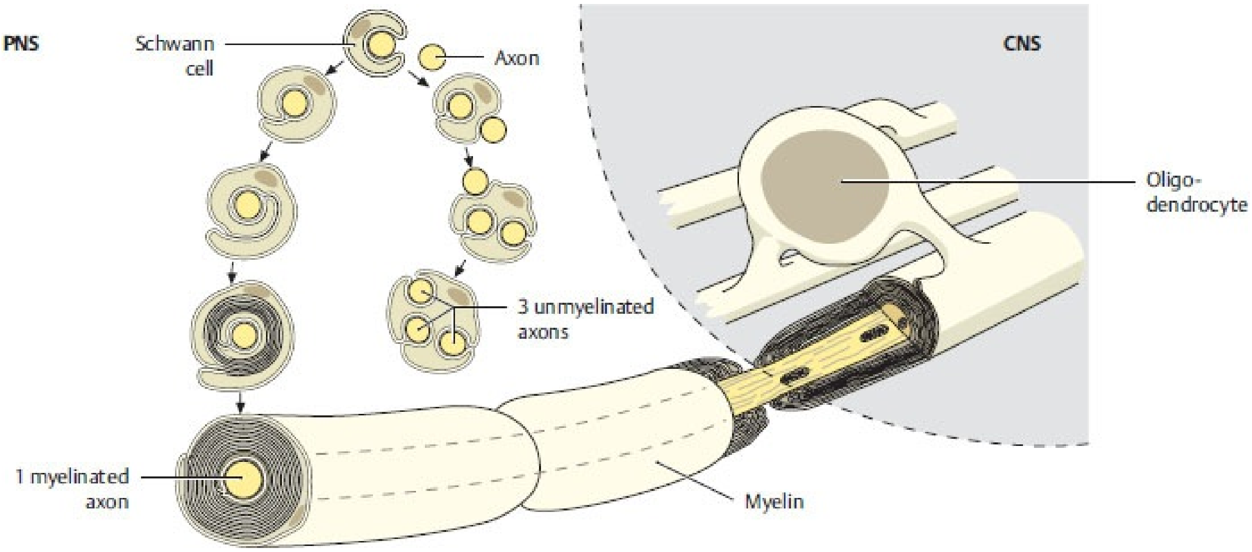

PNS
Schwann cell
Axon
3 unmyelinated axons
1 myelinated axon
Myelin
CNS
Oligodendrocyte

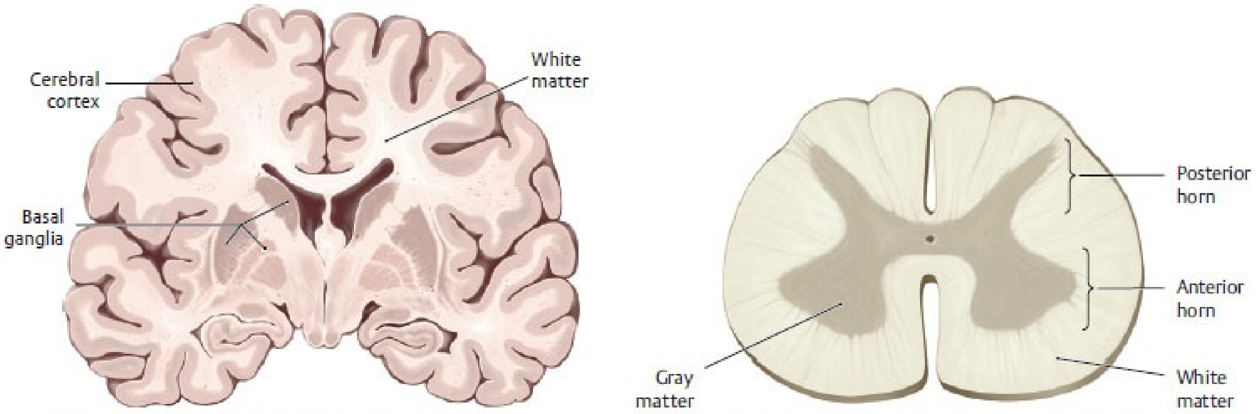
Fig. 1.26 Glial cells in the CNS and PNS.

Glial cells form myelin sheaths around axons. This increases the speed with which impulses travel in the nervous system. In myelinated axons, multiple layers of glial membrane surround a single axon forming a distinct myelin sheath. In unmyelinated axons, a glial cell surrounds and supports multiple axons without forming a myelin sheath. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

The Central Nervous System

The detailed anatomy of the central nervous system is most appro-priately described in texts on neuroanatomy, and therefore is not included in this text. However, because an appreciation of its struc-ture is essential to understanding the functioning of peripheral structures, a brief overview is included here, with further discus-sions to follow in Section 2.2 (spinal cord) and Section 18.2 (brain).

- The brain and spinal cord of the central nervous system **(Fig. 1.27)** consist of
  - **gray matter,** which contains the cell bodies, dendrites, and unmyelinated axons of neurons;
  - **white matter,** which contains the myelinated axons of neurons; and
  - neuroglial cells, which are abundant in both white and gray matter.
- The brain resides in the cranial cavity of the skull. The tissue of the brain consists of an outer **cerebral cortex** of gray matter, an inner core of white matter, and islands of gray matter deep within the brain known as **basal ganglia**. Axonal tracts of the white matter link regions of the brain with each other and with the spinal cord.
- The brain **(Fig. 1.28)** is subdivided into
  - **cerebral hemispheres**
  - **diencephalon**
  - **cerebellum**
  - **brainstem**
- The bony vertebral column encloses the spinal cord. Gray matter in the spinal cord is located centrally and is sur-rounded by white matter tracts. The gray matter forms an H-shaped area that consists of bilateral
  - **anterior horns,** which contain motor neurons;
  - **posterior horns,** which contain sensory neurons;
  - **lateral horns** in the thoracic and upper lumbar region, which contain visceromotor neurons**.**


Cerebral cortex
White matter
Basal ganglia
Posterior horn
Anterior horn
Gray matter
White matter

A Coronal section through the brain. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

B Transverse section through the spinal cord. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Fig. 1.27 Gray and white matter in the central nervous system.

Nerve cell bodies appear gray in gross inspection, whereas nerve cell processes (axons) and their insulating myelin sheaths appear white.

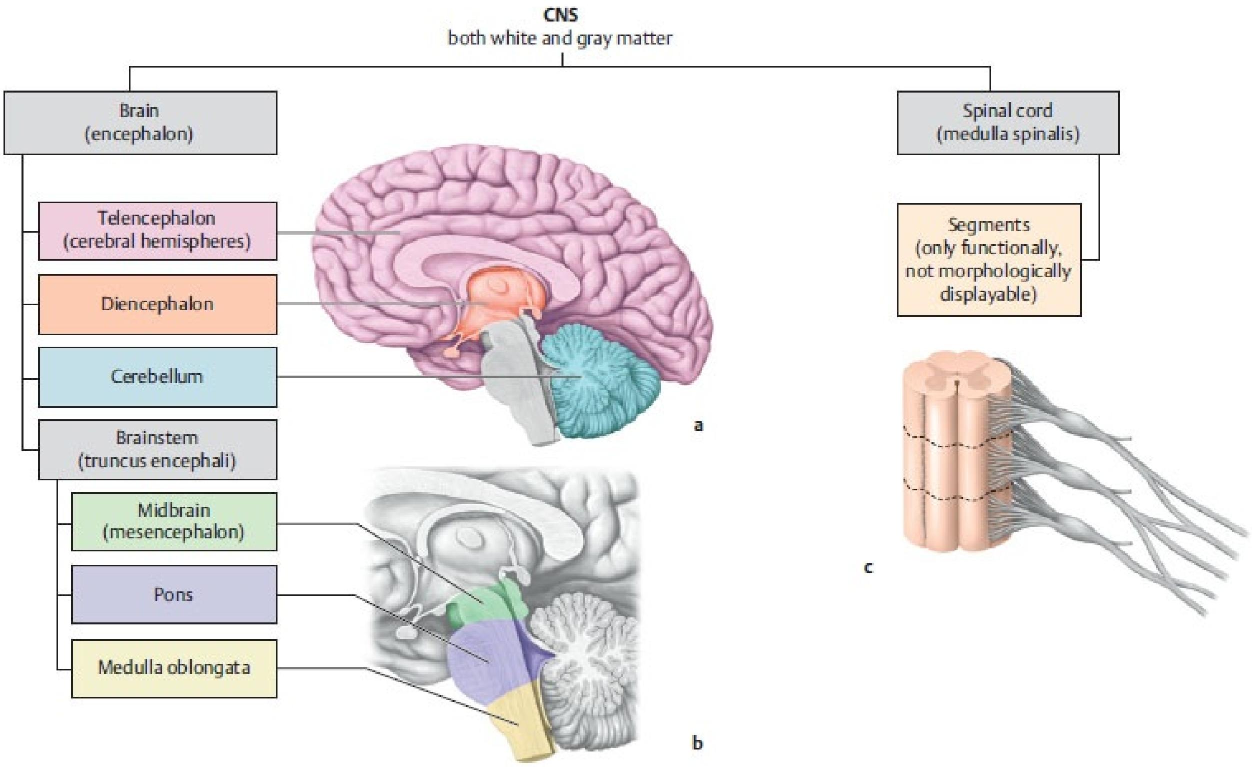

CNS
both white and gray matter
Brain
(encephalon)
Spinal cord
(medulla spinalis)
Telencephalon
(cerebral hemispheres)
Diencephalon
Cerebellum
Brainstem
(truncus encephali)
Midbrain
(mesencephalon)
Pons
Medulla oblongata
Segments
(only functionally, not morphologically displayable)
a
b
c

Fig. 1.28 Structure of the central nervous system.

A,B-Right side of brain, medial view. C-Anterior view of a section of the spinal cord. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th Edition. New York: Thieme

Publishers; 2020.)

The Peripheral Nervous System

- The peripheral nervous system includes the peripheral parts of the autonomic and somatic divisions. Components of each system **(Fig. 1.29)** are found in
  - 12 pairs of **cranial nerves** (traditionally designated, in order from cranial to caudal, by Roman numeral) that arise from the brain and primarily innervate structures of the head and neck. The **vagus nerve** (cranial nerve X) also innervates viscera of the thorax and abdomen.
  - 31 pairs of **spinal nerves** that arise from the spinal cord and exit the vertebral column through **intervertebral foramina** (openings between vertebrae). Spinal nerves are named for the section of the spinal cord from which they arise (e.g., T4 is the fourth segment of the thoracic part of the spinal cord).
- Most nerves of the peripheral nervous system are mixed nerves that contain both motor and sensory fibers **(Fig. 1.30)**.
  - The somatic nervous system contains a combination of fiber types:
    - **somatic sensory** (somatosensory) **fibers**, which transmit the information from skin and skeletal muscles
    - **somatic motor** (somatomotor) **fibers**, which innervate skeletal muscles
  - The autonomic nervous system contains only **visceral motor** (visceromotor) **fibers**, which innervate smooth muscle, cardiac muscle, and glands.
  - **Visceral sensory** (viscerosensory) **fibers** transmit information from smooth muscle, cardiac muscle, and internal organs. Although these often accompany the visceral motor fibers, they are generally not considered part of the autonomic system.
  - In addition to those named above, cranial nerves may also contain special fiber types that are associated with structures in the head:
    - **Special somatic sensory** (somatomotor) **fibers**, which conduct information from the retina of the eye, and auditory and vestibular apparatus of the ear
    - **Special visceral sensory** (viscerosensory) **fibers,** which transmit information from the taste buds of the tongue and olfactory mucosa
    - **Special visceral motor fibers** (visceromotor, branchio-motor), which innervate skeletal muscles that originate from the branchial arches

- The somatic component of the nervous system transmits the motor output to, and sensory input from, structures over which we have voluntary and conscious control. (Consider a simple activity like walking, in which we have control over the movement of our legs and are aware of the pain elicited by an arthritic knee joint or a splinter in the sole of the foot.)
- The autonomic component transmits the motor output to structures that function without conscious control. Its two divisions work to excite **(sympathetic)** or relax **(parasympa-thetic)** visceral responses based on internal and external stimuli. Together they work to maintain a stable (homeo-static) internal environment. (Consider the increase in heart rate when you have won the lottery and the crucial corre-sponding slowing of the heart rate when you need to sleep.)

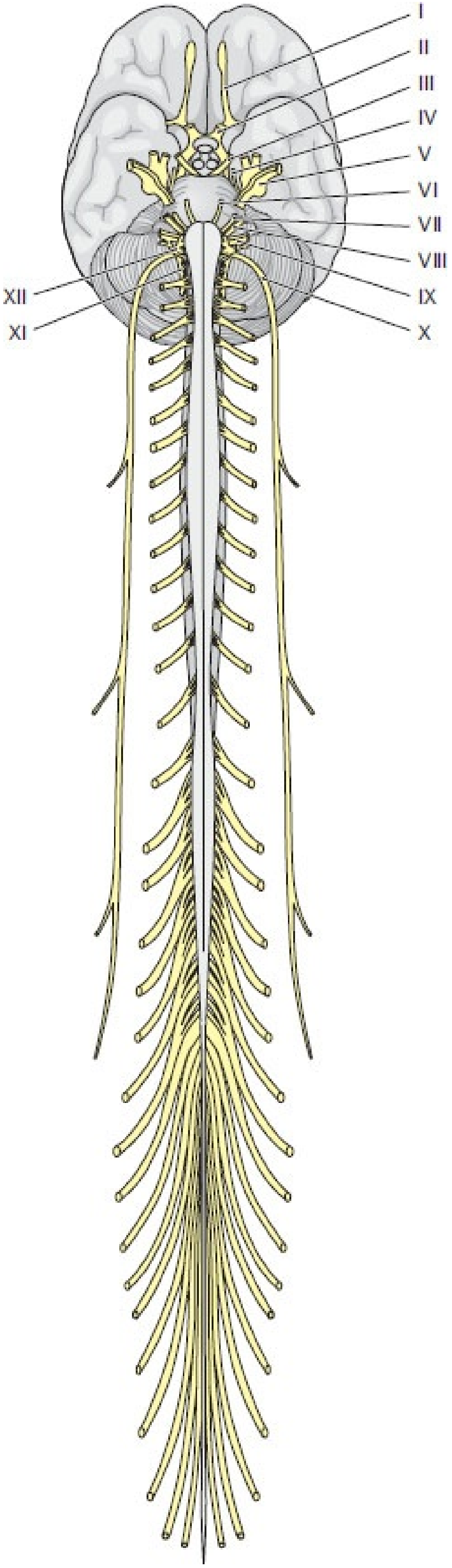

I
II
III
IV
V
VI
VII
VIII
IX
X
XII
XI

Fig. 1.29 Spinal nerves and cranial nerves.

Anterior view. Thirty-one pairs of spinal nerves arise from the spinal cord in the peripheral nervous system, compared with 12 pairs of cranial nerves that arise from the brain. The cranial nerve pairs are traditionally designated by Roman numerals. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th Edition. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

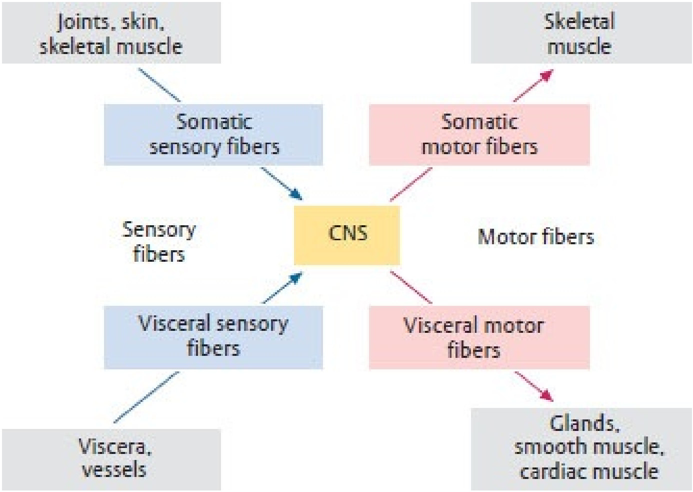

Joints, skin, skeletal muscle
Skeletal muscle
Somatic sensory fibers
Somatic motor fibers
Sensory fibers
CNS
Motor fibers
Visceral sensory fibers
Visceral motor fibers
Viscera, vessels
Glands, smooth muscle, cardiac muscle

Fig. 1.30 Information flow in the nervous system.

Fibers that carry information to the central nervous system (CNS) are called sensory or afferent fibers; fibers that carry signals away from the CNS are called motor or efferent fibers.

- The somatic and autonomic nervous systems each have their own network of nerves that transmit information between the CNS and PNS. Although somatic and autonomic nerves may travel together, the nerve fibers remain anatomically and functionally distinct.
- Most cranial nerves and all spinal nerves carry somatic nerve fibers; some also carry autonomic fibers:
  - parasympathetic fibers are carried by cranial nerves III, VII, IX, and X and spinal nerves S2–S4
  - sympathetic fibers originate at spinal cord levels T1–L2 but, via the sympathetic trunk, are distributed to, and travel with, spinal nerves at all levels.
- Nerves from each system typically form nerve plexuses (i.e., somatic nerve plexus, autonomic nerve plexus). Each contains nerves arising from multiple levels of the spinal cord.

  - Somatic plexuses are made up of large, distinct, easily identifiable nerve roots and give rise to nerves that are given descriptive names (median n., femoral n.).
  - Autonomic plexuses appear as dense mats of thin hair-like nerves that frequently extend peripherally along major arteries.
- Both somatic and autonomic nerves carry motor information from the CNS to a peripheral structure, but the type of target organ they innervate and the response they elicit is very different.
  - Somatic nerves initiate voluntary responses (such as contraction of the biceps).
  - Autonomic nerves initiate visceral responses (such as secretion of pancreatic juices).
- Somatic sensory and visceral sensory nerves carry sensory information from target organs to the CNS.
  - Sensations carried by visceral sensory fibers are vague and poorly localized (such as nausea).
  - Sensations carried by somatic sensory fibers are sharp and localized (such as a paper cut).
  - In all cases, the cell bodies of peripheral sensory neurons lie in sensory (spinal/dorsal root) ganglia that lie outside the CNS.
- **Splanchnic nerves** are nerves of the autonomic nervous system that innervate visceral structures (splanchnic refers to internal organs or viscera). They may carry either sympathetic or parasympathetic fibers (never both) and contain no somatic fibers. All splanchnic nerves contain visceral sensory and visceral motor fibers.

1.11 Body Cavities and Internal Organ Systems

The large organs of the endocrine, respiratory, digestive, urinary, and reproductive systems are housed in the thoracic, abdominal, and pelvic cavities. These large spaces are divided into serous cav-ities and connective tissue spaces.

- A serous cavity is a fully enclosed potential space that is lined by a serous (fluid secreting) membrane. The outer, or **parietal,** layer of this membrane lines the inner wall of the cavity. It is continuous with the inner, or **visceral,** layer that reflects from the wall to cover or enclose the viscera within the cavity. The large serous cavities include:
  - In the thorax
    - paired **pleural cavities**, which contain the lungs

    - a **pericardial cavity,** which contains the heart
  - In the abdomen and pelvis
    - a **peritoneal cavity**, which contains the gastrointestinal tract and its accessory structures
- Connective tissue spaces are potential spaces that lie outside the serous cavities. They are often defined by adjacent layers of fascia or may lie between opposing serous cavities. Major examples include:
  - The **deep cervical space** between fascial layers of the neck
  - The **mediastinum**, which lies between the pleural cavities in the thorax
  - The **retroperitoneal space**, which lies posterior to the peritoneal cavity in the abdomen, and its continuation into the pelvis below the peritoneum, where it is known as the **subperitoneal space**. Urinary and reproductive organs, as well as the major vascular structures, reside within these extraperitoneal spaces.

2 Clinical Imaging Basics Introduction

Imaging is the primary diagnostic method used by physicians in nearly all medical specialties. All physicians should have a basic understanding of radiology concepts and how imaging can be optimally utilized in the care of their patients. The clinical imag-ing basics covered in this text are meant to be a brief introduction to the extraordinary diagnostic and therapeutic capabilities of radiology. Although imaging can be quite daunting to the first year medical student who has yet to master anatomy, you are encour-aged to become familiar with the basics outlined here and in other introductory works. It is upon these basic fundamentals that you will build your foundation to better understand anatomy and physiology, and also to achieve the ultimate goal of using imaging to take the best care of your patients, regardless of which career path you choose.

The four most commonly used imaging modalities are

1. Radiographs (X-rays)
2. CT (computed tomography)
3. MRI (magnetic resonance imaging)
4. Ultrasound

X-Rays

— X-rays are a form of electromagnetic energy and are ionizing radiation. An x-ray tube generates energy in the form of photons, which are directed toward the patient. An electronic detector is positioned behind the patient, which detects the photons (x-ray energy) that pass through the patient to produce an image **(Fig. 2.1)**. The degree to which that energy is able to pass through different tissues of the body produces the light, dark, and intermediate grays that are seen on the image. Tissues are rendered as

- white when the energy is blocked (metal)
- black when the energy is not blocked (air)
- gray when the energy is partially blocked (soft tissues)

— The amount of x-ray energy passing through the body depends on the type of tissue encountered by the x-ray beam and the thickness of the tissues. Based on these principles, five densities can be identified on a radiograph **(Table 2.1)**.

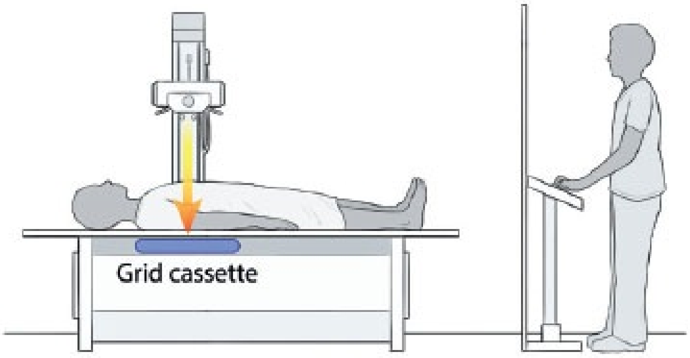


Fig. 2.1 Example of a simplified schematic of x-ray machine.
(From Gunderman R. Essential Radiology, 3rd ed. New York: Thieme; 2014.)

Table 2.1 Radiographic Densities

Tissue	Radiographic Density
Air	Dark black
Fat	Light black
Water and soft tissue	Shades of gray
Bone (calcium)	White
Metal	Bright white

— Additional descriptive terms are “opacity,” “density,” and “shadow,” which indicate a whiter area on the x-ray; “lucency” indicates a blacker area.

— The image created is a summation of shadows based on the type and thickness of tissues the x-ray photons encounter (**Fig. 2.2**). This summation of shadows creates a two-dimensional representation of the three-dimensional structure of the body. Because it is frequently difficult to determine the depth of a structure in a two-dimensional image, an additional orthogonal (right angle) projection may be required to mentally “construct” a three-dimensional visualization (**Fig. 2.3**).

— The position of the patient and direction of the x-ray beam are manipulated to optimize image quality and produce different physical and physiologic effects such as fluid moving to the most inferior (dependent) part of the patient due to gravity. The resulting image is described in terms of both patient position and x-ray beam direction, for example, upright frontal view

(**Fig. 2.4**) or supine lateral view. Standard patient positions include

- Upright (standing or sitting up)
- Supine (lying on back)

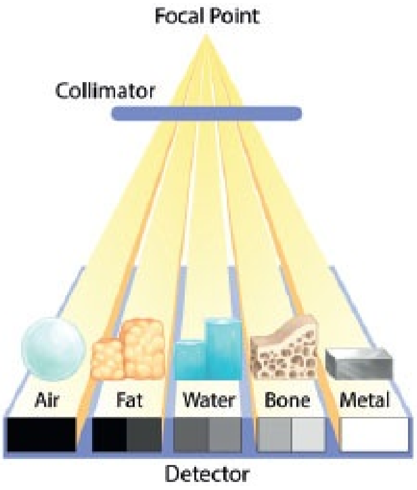


Fig. 2.2 The effects of density (tissue type) and thickness of tissue on the exposure of an x-ray image using the five basic x-ray densities..

Note that air virtually blocks none of the beam (all energy passes through), whereas metal virtually blocks all of the X-ray energy.

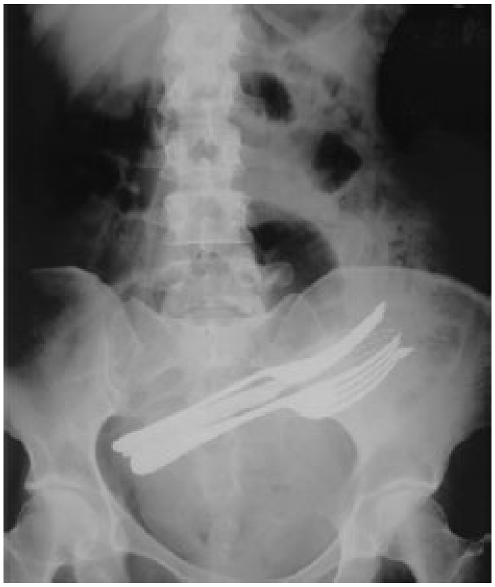


Fig. 2.3 Abdominal radiograph in a patient who swallowed multiple foreign objects. The objects are two forks, one plastic hairbrush with partially metallic bristles, and one plastic pen with a metallic tip. As the image is a summation of the shadows produced by the objects and the tissue, it is impossible to know based on this single x-ray if the objects are in front of or behind the patient, or if they are indeed inside the abdomen. Given the patient's history of swallowing foreign objects, however, we deduce that they are inside the gastrointestinal tract. A lateral view

(orthogonal to the frontal view) could confirm this. Using the frontal and lateral view can help triangulate the position of the objects and visualize the abdomen in three dimensions. (From Gunderman R. Essential Radiology, 3rd ed. New York: Thieme; 2014.)

  - Prone
  - Decubitus (lying on the side)
  - Oblique

Standard direction of x-ray beams include

  - Frontal (either PA or AP.) Note that the distinction between Posterior Anterior (PA) or Anterior Posterior (AP) x-ray beams is beyond the scope of this text, and we will refer to them collectively as a frontal view.
  - Lateral

— Radiographs are oriented in a standard fashion for viewing.

  - Frontal images are viewed with the patient in the anatomic position (always facing the observer). The patient's right side is seen on the observer's left and vice versa, and each side is labeled as R or L.
  - The lateral projection can be viewed with the patient facing either right or left, but you should be consistent with your viewing patterns. The lateral view is best used in conjunction with the frontal view to convey the 3-dimensional nature of the structure. The lateral view is also helpful in seeing "hidden" areas on the frontal view such as behind the sternum and heart.

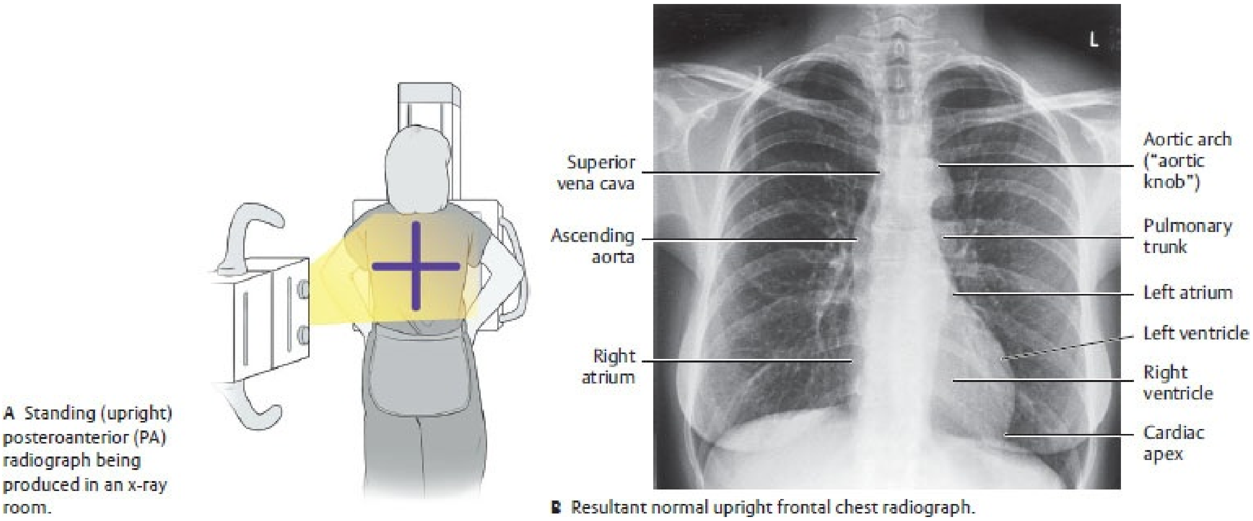
— When evaluating radiographs, a systematic approach is important and should include a checklist of major anatomic structures, which are discussed in the appropriate units.

CT (Computed Tomography)

— CT scans are created by rotating an x-ray beam around the patient. The computer reconstructs these data into image sets of consecutive sections or "slices" (think of a loaf of bread cut into slices). (**Fig. 2.5**; see also **Fig. 2.7**). Because the CT scan is made up of a large number of individual x-rays, the radiation dose is considerably higher. For this reason CT scanning is used judiciously.

— The images produced are based on the computer calculation of the x-ray attenuation of each pixel on each slice and expressed in Hounsfield units (Hounsfield was one of the discoverers of CT). Water is arbitrarily set to 0 Hounsfield units; more dense structures are more white (bone), and less dense structures are darker (air). However, CT can discrimi-nate more subtle shades of gray, black, and white than radiographs, which improves soft tissue detail. For example, CT can distinguish between fluid and organs and between blood and other types of fluids. When IV contrast is used, soft tissue detail/contrast is improved significantly.

- Individual CT slices are oriented in the transverse (axial) plane and, by convention, are viewed from the inferior perspective (looking from the feet toward the head) (**Fig. 2.6**). However, CT scanners can also generate a volume of data that can be viewed in any plane, including three dimensions (3D reconstruction). Additionally, individual images can be "windowed," which involves changing the brightness or the contrast, to optimize the appearance of structures with specific densities, such as a bone or soft tissue "window."


L
Superior vena cava
Ascending aorta
Right atrium
Aortic arch ("aortic knob")
Pulmonary trunk
Left atrium
Left ventricle
Right ventricle
Cardiac apex

A Standing (upright) posteroanterior (PA) radiograph being produced in an x-ray room.

B Resultant normal upright frontal chest radiograph.

Fig. 2.4 Positioning of patient and direction of x-ray beam..

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 2nd Edition. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2012.)

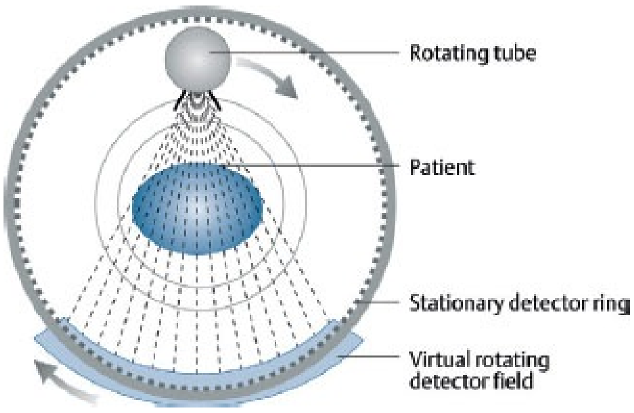

Rotating tube
Patient
Stationary detector ring
Virtual rotating detector field

Fig. 2.5 How computed tomography (CT) scanners work..
The x-ray tube rotates continuously around the patient, as the patient, lying on the table, slides through the machine. The curved x-ray detector is opposite to the x-ray tube and registers the amount of x-ray energy that passes through the body. Taking into account the tube position and patient position at each time point of measurement, the computer constructs a data matrix and ultimately a set of images. (From Eastman G, et al. Getting Started in Radiology. Stuttgart: Thieme; 2005.)

MRI (Magnetic Resonance Imaging)

- A magnetic resonance image is produced by the interactions of a strong magnetic field on the protons within cells and a radiofrequency energy pulse that disturbs the protons. These spinning protons produce a “signal” that is picked up by a receiver and converted via computerized mathematical manipulation into images.
- MRIs are especially useful because they lack ionizing radiation, produce superb soft tissue contrast, and can be oriented in any plane **(Fig. 2.7)**. The soft tissue contrast of MRI is far superior to other imaging modalities and is a key feature that makes MRI so powerful. Disadvantages include the high cost, long study acquisition time, and small confined space that patients must tolerate. MRI machines look similar to CT machines, but the tube that the patient slides into is smaller in diameter and longer.
- MRI images are traditionally viewed in the axial, sagittal, and coronal planes, but these can be skewed to optimize “out of plane” structures such as the heart. As in CT, axial images are viewed as if the patient is supine and the observer is looking superiorly from the feet (i.e., inferior view).
- An MRI exam consists of multiple sequences with each sequence highlighting different types of tissue. The same tissues can look different on different sequences. The two basic MRI sequences are T1 and T2 (T represents time constant).
    - T1 sequence: fluid appears dark (black).
    - T2 sequence: fluid appears bright (white).
    - Cortical bone usually appears black on all sequences.

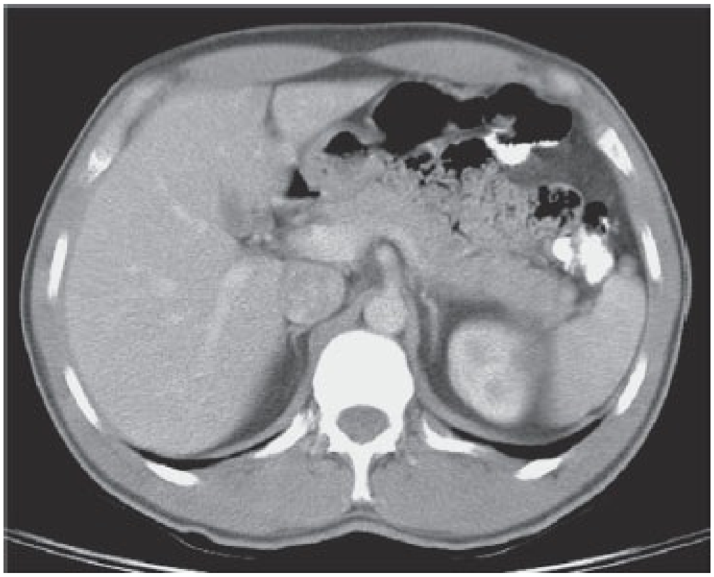


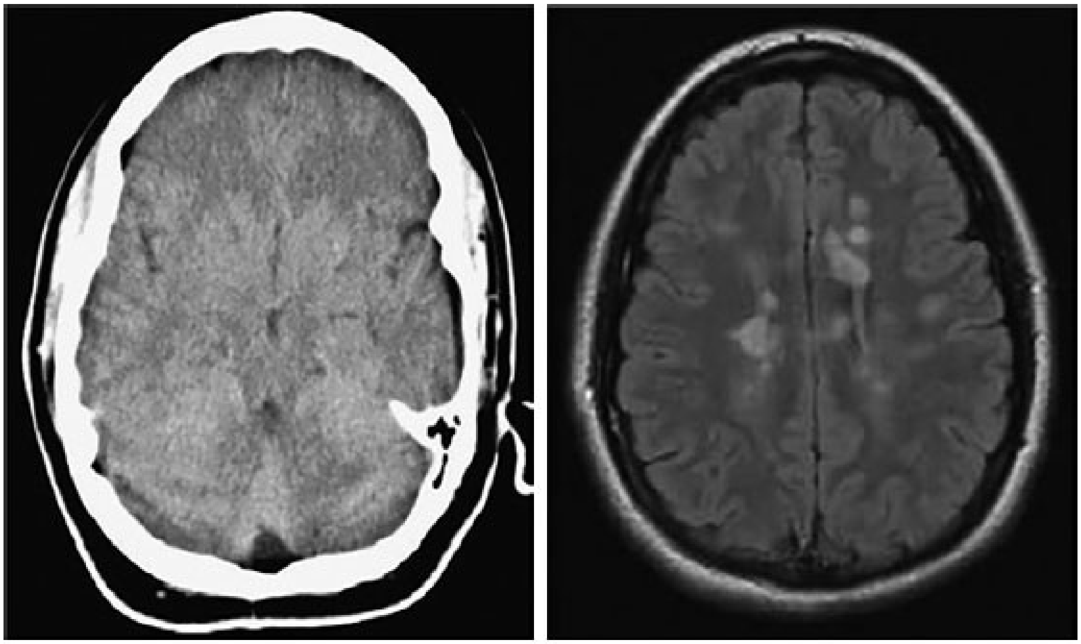
Fig. 2.6 Example of single axial slice from a normal abdominal CT..

This image is shown in soft tissue windows to highlight the solid organs and blood vessels. (From Moeller TB, Reif E. Pocket Atlas of Sectional Anatomy, Vol 2, 3rd ed. New York: Thieme; 2007.)

Ultrasound

- Ultrasound images are created by using a transducer, which emits high-frequency sound waves that penetrate the body. It then “listens” for the return echo, similar to the way sonar operates in a submarine **(Fig. 2.8)**. Because tissues of different densities attenuate the sound wave to different degrees, the returning echo produces an image of varying shades of gray **(Fig. 2.9)**.
- Ultrasound travels most easily through water, which appears black on the image, but it travels poorly through air and bone, which block the sound energy and appear white on the image. Common terms used to describe ultrasound images include *hypoechoic*, meaning blacker, and *hyperechoic* or *echogenic*, meaning gray or white.
- Ultrasound is relatively inexpensive and is radiation free, so it is used whenever possible and is the primary imaging modality in pediatrics, obstetrics, and when imaging both male and female gonads.
- Ultrasound images are displayed as a single slice, usually as a longitudinal or transverse section through the target organ, but also in any plane necessary to identify certain features or pathology.
- Note that the images are oriented to the organ itself, not the whole body.
- Ultrasound can also make use of the Doppler effect to identify and

characterize motion. In medical imaging, Doppler is primarily used to characterize flow in blood vessels and to assess heart physiology. Color Doppler encodes direction and velocity into colors. By convention, blood flowing toward the ultrasound transducer is red and blood flowing away from the transducer is blue (regardless of vessel type). Spectral Doppler gives a graphical representation of the speed of flow with respect to time and thus can demonstrate characteristics of arterial vs. venous flow and identify abnormal flow patterns.



A Axial slice of CT scan of the brain in a young woman with blurry vision. This scan is normal.

B Axial slice from an MRI at the same location in the same patient, showing bright spots in the white matter, indicating multiple sclerosis.

Fig. 2.7 Example of the improved soft tissue contrast and sensitivity of magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)..

(From Gunderman R. Essential Radiology, 2nd ed. New York: Thieme; 2000)

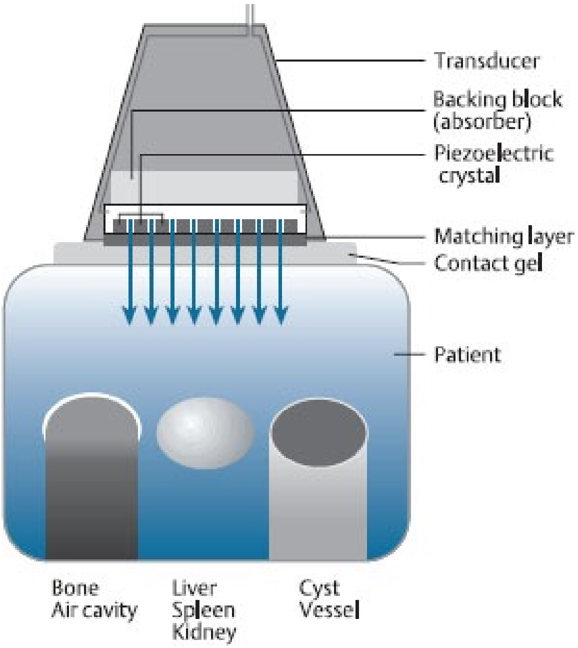

Transducer
Backing block (absorber)
Piezoelectric crystal
Matching layer
Contact gel
Patient
Bone
Air cavity
Liver
Spleen
Kidney
Cyst
Vessel

Fig. 2.8 Schematic of ultrasound probe held against patient’s skin..

Gel is used to acoustically couple the probe to the patient. Sound waves travel into the patient and are absorbed, reflected, or scattered based on type of tissue and tissue interfaces. The probe listens for the return echoes and the computer reconstructs the echoes into a two-dimensional image slice. (From Eastman G, et al. Getting Started in Radiology. Stuttgart: Thieme; 2005.)

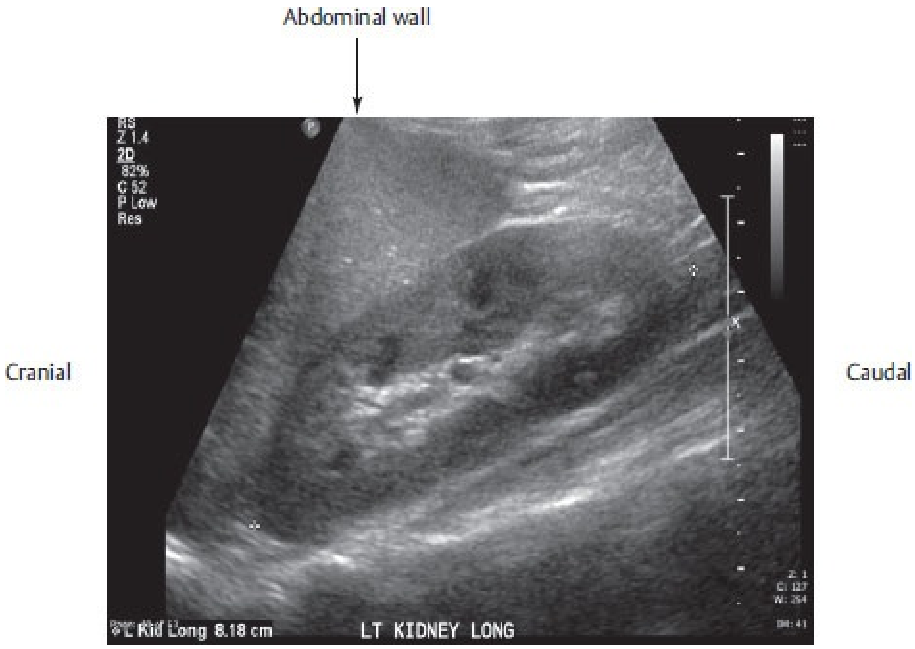

Abdominal wall
Cranial
Caudal
RS
Z 1.4
2D
82%
C 52
P Low
Res
L Kid Long 8.18 cm
LT KIDNEY LONG

Fig. 2.9 Example ultrasound image of a normal left kidney..

The probe was positioned on the abdomen such that the kidney could be seen oriented longitudinally. The image is through the mid-kidney. Ultrasound differentiates the renal pyramids, which are blacker because of higher relative water content. The renal sinus fat is shown to be whiter. Note the liver tissue anterior and superior to the kidney. (From Gunderman R. Essential Radiology, 3rd ed. New York: Thieme; 2014.)

Unit I Review Questions: Introduction

1. Which of the following is associated with membranous bone formation?

A. Primary ossification center
B. Epiphyses
C. Direct ossification of mesenchymal templates
D. Long bones of the limbs
E. Diaphysis

2. A portal system is associated with

A. venous shunts that divert blood toward the heart
B. the pulmonary circulation
C. arterial-venous anastomoses
D. capillary beds in the liver
E. lymphatic capillaries

3. In the anatomic position the

A. eyes are directed forward
B. palms are directed forward
C. body is erect with arms at the sides
D. feet are directed forward
E. All of the above

4. Which of the following is true of splanchnic nerves?

A. They synapse in ganglia near their target organ.
B. They innervate viscera of the abdomen.
C. They may carry sympathetic fibers.
D. They may carry parasympathetic fibers.
E. All of the above

5. A 43-year-old high school teacher complained to her physician of abdominal bloating and pelvic pain. Radio-graphic studies showed a large tumor involving her right ovary. Although the patient was scheduled for surgery to remove the tumor, the physician was concerned about the spread of the cancer along lymphatic channels. What is the lymphatic drainage pattern of pelvic viscera?

A. Ipsilateral drainage to the right and left lymphatic ducts
B. Contralateral drainage to the right and left lymphatic ducts
C. Bilateral drainage to the right and left lymphatic ducts
D. All pelvic viscera drain to the right lymphatic duct.
E. All pelvic viscera drain to the left lymphatic duct.

6. As an inexperienced medical student, you volunteer at an outpatient clinic where you're asked to assist in adminis-tering vaccines to its large homeless population. As you deliver these percutaneous (through the skin) injections, you recall your knowledge of subcutaneous connective tissue and understand that deep to the skin the needle will first pass through

A. a fatty layer of regular connective tissue
B. a fatty layer of areolar and adipose connective tissue
C. a membranous layer of dense connective tissue
D. two layers of dense connective tissue
E. a layer of fascia that is devoid of all superficial vessels and nerves

7. As a junior orthopedic resident, you are tasked with delivering a lecture to first-year medical students on the anatomy of joints. Which of the following statements might you include as a take-away point on your final summary slide?

A. Most synovial joints are stabilized by intrinsic ligaments and intra-articular structures such as menisci.
B. Synchondroses are defined as temporary cartilaginous joints that subsequently form synostoses, sites of bony fusion.
C. Synovial joints typically contain a joint space lined by a synovial membrane.
D. The complementary articulating surfaces of bones within a joint

provide the greatest stability.
E. Syndesmoses are fibrous joint

8. Which of the following pertains to visceral muscles?

A. The most prevalent type of muscle in the body
B. Tendons connect them to bony attachments
C. Tendon sheaths facilitate movement across joints
D. They include a striated type of muscle found in the heart
E. Aponeuroses attach them to other muscles or organs

9. After experiencing sudden unexplained weight loss and severe abdominal pain, your uncle sought advice from his primary physician. A CT scan revealed a 3-cm pancreatic tumor in the center of his abdomen. The physician explained that the pain resulted from pressure of the tumor on nearby nerves and ganglia associated with his sympathetic nervous system. The nerves transmitting the pain contain which type of fibers?
A. Special visceral sensory
B. Special somatic sensory
C. Visceral sensory
D. Somatic sensory
E. Special visceral motor

10. Which of the following imaging methods do not use ionizing radiation as its energy source?
A. Ultrasound
B. Radiographs
C. CT scan
D. MRI

11. Which of the following structures would be the darkest as seen on an x-ray?
A. Liver
B. Spleen
C. Heart
D. Gas-filled bowel loop
E. Fluid-filled bowel loop

Answers and Explanations

1. **C.** In the process of membranous ossification, embryonic mesenchymal templates are replaced by bone (Section 1.6).

A. A primary ossification center, usually in the shaft of the long bones, is the site at which endochondral ossifica-tion begins.

B. Epiphyses, located on either end of the long bones, are the secondary ossification centers for endochondral ossification.

D. Long bones of the limbs undergo endochondral bone formation, in which a cartilaginous template forms from the embryonic mesenchyme before being replaced by bone.

E. A diaphysis is the shaft of a long bone, which undergoes endochondral ossification.

2. **D.** The body’s largest portal system diverts blood from capillary beds in the gastrointestinal tract to secondary capillary beds in the liver before returning it to systemic veins (Section 1.8).

A. A portal system diverts venous blood from one capillary network to another, instead of allowing it to flow directly into systemic veins toward the heart.

B. A portal system is a venous system within the systemic (general body) circulation, but not within the pulmonary (lung) circulation.

C. A portal system diverts blood from one capillary network to another, unlike arterial-venous anastomoses, which divert blood away from capillary beds.

E. Lymphatic capillaries are restricted to the lymphatic system and are not involved with portal venous systems.

3. **E.** The anatomic position is the standard position of the body used in medical references. The body is upright, facing the observer, with arms at the side and the head, eyes, palms, and feet directed forward (Section 1.1).

A. Eyes are directed forward, and other positions are correct as well (E).

B. Palms are directed forward, and other positions are correct as well

(E).

C. Body is erect with arms at side, and other positions are correct as well (E).

D. Feet are directed forward, and other positions are correct as well (E).

4. **E.** All of the above (Section 1.10).

A. Splanchnic nerves synapse near their target organ either in prevertebral ganglia or in small ganglia on the viscera. B through D are correct also (E).

B. Splanchnic nerves are autonomic nerves that inner-vate viscera in the thorax, abdomen, and pelvis. A, C, and D are correct also (E).

C. Sympathetic fibers arise from the T1–L2 spinal cord to form thoracic, lumbar, and sacral splanchnic nerves. A, B, and D are correct also (E).

D. Parasympathetic fibers arise from the S2–S4 spinal cord and form pelvic splanchnic nerves. A through C are correct also (E).

5. **E.** The left lymphatic duct receives lymph from the entire body below the diaphragm, as well as from the left side of the thorax, head, and neck and the left upper limb. The right lymphatic duct receives lymph only from the right side of the thorax, head, and neck and the right upper limb (Section 1.9).

A. Viscera from the right and left sides of the pelvis drain to the left lymphatic duct.

B. All pelvic viscera drain to the left lymphatic duct.

C. All pelvic viscera drain to the left lymphatic duct.

D. Only the right upper quadrant of the body drains to the right lymphatic duct.

6. **B.** The needle would first pass through the most superficial layer of the subcutaneous connective tissue, which is composed of areolar and adipose tissues (Section 1.4).

A. Both areolar and adipose connective tissues, which make up the fatty layer, are irregular types of connective tissue.

C. The needle would pierce the membranous layer after first passing through the more superficial fatty layer.

D. Subcutaneous connective tissue is composed of a superficial fatty layer and deeper membranous layer.

E. The fatty layer is traversed by the superficial vessels and nerves.

7. **C.** Synovial joints typically have a joint space enclosed by a fibrous capsule lined by a synovial membrane (Section 1.6).

A. Most synovial joints are stabilized by extrinsic ligaments, although some also have intrinsic ligaments. Intra-articular structures are found in only certain joints, like the knee or shoulder.

B. While some synchondroses subsequently become fully fused (synostoses) many remain as cartilaginous joints.

D. Extrinsic ligaments are the primary stabilizers of most joints.

E. Syndesmoses are also found in the adult skull as well in the interosseous membranes that join bones of the forearm and leg.

8. **D.** The heart is made of cardiac muscle, one of two types of visceral muscles (Section 1.8).

A. Somatic, or skeletal muscle, is the most prevalent type of muscle.

B. Visceral muscles do not have tendons and are not attached to bones.

C. Tendon sheaths surround the tendons of somatic muscles to facilitate movement as they cross joints.

E. Aponeuroses are tendons that form flat sheets and are associated with somatic muscles.

9. **C.** Visceral sensory fibers transmit sensation from internal organs (Section 1.10).

A. Special visceral sensory fibers transmit only taste from the tongue and smell from the olfactory mucosa.

B. Special somatic sensory fibers transmit information only from the retina of the eye and auditory and vestibular apparatus of the ear.

D. Somatic sensory fibers conduct information from somatic structures, the skin, and skeletal muscles.

E. Special visceral motor fibers innervate only specific muscles that are derived from the branchial arches.

10. **A** and **D.** Ultrasound utilizes acoustic energy (high-frequency sound waves), and MRI uses radiofrequency energy within a high-strength magnetic field (Chapter 2).

B. Radiographs (or x-rays) utilize ionizing radiation in the form of high-energy electromagnetic waves.

C. CT scans utilize the same type of electromagnetic energy as x-rays.

11. **D.** The gas (air) in a gas-filled bowel loop does not attenuate the X-ray energy as much as soft tissues, so therefore will be rendered as darker gray (Chapter 2).

A, B, C, and **E.** The liver, spleen, heart, and fluid-filled bowel would all be similar densities on an x-ray. These are all “soft tissue densities,” which cannot be reliably differentiated by conventional radiography. Remember that CT has much higher soft tissue contrast than regular x-rays.

Unit II Back

3 Back

- 3.1 The Vertebral Column
  - 3.1 Developmental Correlation: Spinal Development
  - 3.2 Clinical Correlation: Abnormal Curvatures of the Vertebral Column: Kyphosis, Lordosis, and Scoliosis
  - 3.3 Clinical Correlation: Osteoporosis
  - 3.4 Clinical Correlation: Spondylolysis and Spondylolisthesis
  - 3.5 Clinical Correlation: Injuries of the Cervical Spine
  - 3.6 Clinical Correlation: Herniation of Intervertebral Disks
  - 3.7 Clinical Correlation: Age-Related Changes in Vertebrae
  - 3.8 Clinical Correlation: Metastasis and the Vertebral Venous Plexus
  - 3.1 Joints of the Vertebral Column

3.2 The Spinal Cord

3.9 Clinical Correlation: Lumbar Puncture, Spinal Anesthesia, and Epidural Anesthesia

3.10 Developmental Correlation: Developmental Changes of the Spinal Cord, Dural Sac, and Vertebral Column

3.3 Spinal Nerves

3.11 Clinical Correlation: Referred Pain

3.2 Effects of the Sympathetic and Parasympathetic Nervous Systems

3.4 Muscles of the Back and Suboccipital Region

3.3 Muscles of the Back and Suboccipital Region

4 Clinical Imaging Basics of the Spine

4.1 Suitability of Imaging Modalities for the Back and Spine

Review Questions: Back

3 Back

3.1 The Vertebral Column

The back includes the vertebral column, the spinal cord and spinal nerves, and the overlying muscles and skin.

General Features

— The vertebral column
  - encloses and protects the spinal cord,
  - supports the head and trunk,
  - provides an attachment for the limbs, and
  - transfers the weight of the body to the lower limbs. —— The vertebral column, which extends from its articulation with the skull to the coccyx, comprises 33 vertebrae and the intervening intervertebral disks, which are divided among five regions **(Fig. 3.1)**:
  - 7 cervical vertebrae
  - 12 thoracic vertebrae
  - 5 lumbar vertebrae
  - 5 fused sacral vertebrae
  - 4 (3–5) fused coccygeal vertebrae

— Within each region, individual vertebrae are identified by number, a designation often referred to as a **vertebral level** (such as T8 vertebral level).

— Vertebrae increase in size from the cervical to the lumbar regions and decrease in size from the top of the sacrum to the coccyx.

— When the vertebral column is viewed laterally, two types of curvatures are evident **(Fig. 3.2)**:
  - The **kyphotic curvatures** of the thoracic and sacral regions, known as primary curvatures, are curved posteriorly and are present before birth.
  - The **lordotic curvatures** of the cervical and lumbar regions, curved anteriorly, are secondary curvatures that develop postnatally.

— A **vertebral canal** passes through the center of the vertebral column and encloses the spinal cord, the spinal meninges (membranes surrounding the spinal cord), and the roots of the spinal nerves, and associated vasculature (see Section 3.2).

- **Intervertebral foramina,** openings between vertebrae, allow the passage of spinal nerves.
- Strong vertebral ligaments support the joints of the vertebral column while allowing flexibility of the trunk.
- Fibrocartilaginous intervertebral disks lie between the vertebral bodies of all vertebrae, except between C1 and C2. They act as shock absorbers for the spine and allow flexibility between vertebrae. With the vertebral bodies, they form the anterior wall of the vertebral canal.

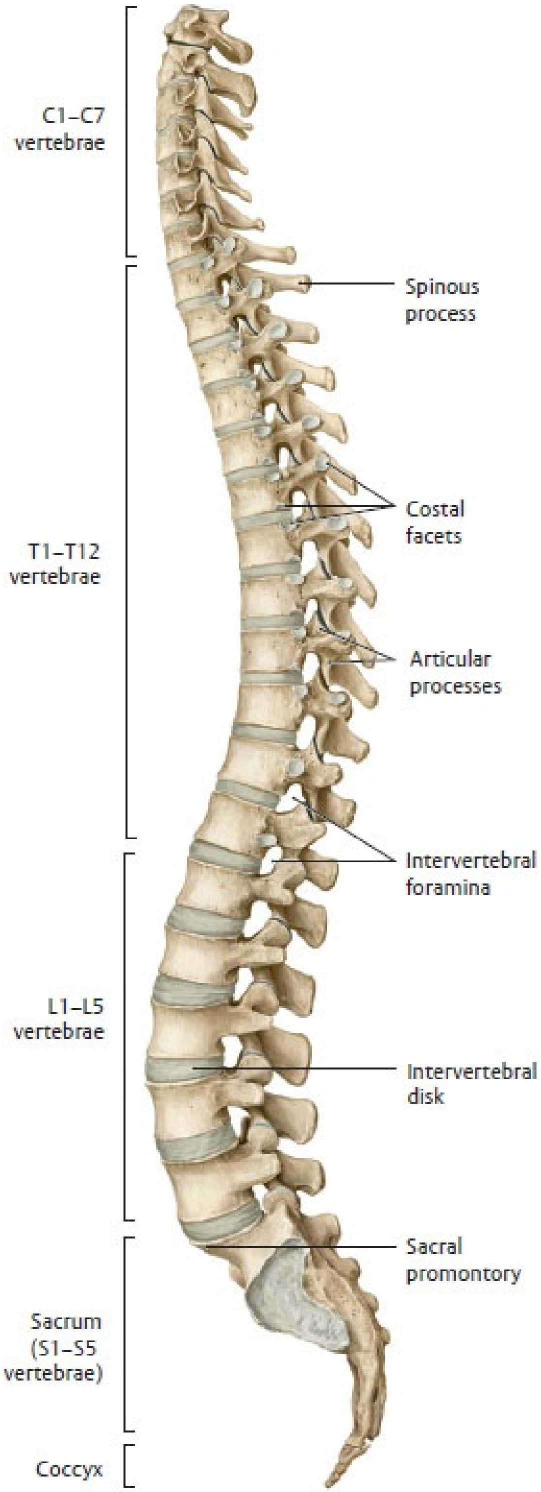

C1–C7
vertebrae
T1–T12
vertebrae
L1–L5
vertebrae
Sacrum
(S1–S5
vertebrae)
Coccyx
Spinous
process
Costal
facets
Articular
processes
Intervertebral
foramina
Intervertebral
disk
Sacral
promontory

Fig. 3.1 Vertebral column

Left lateral view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

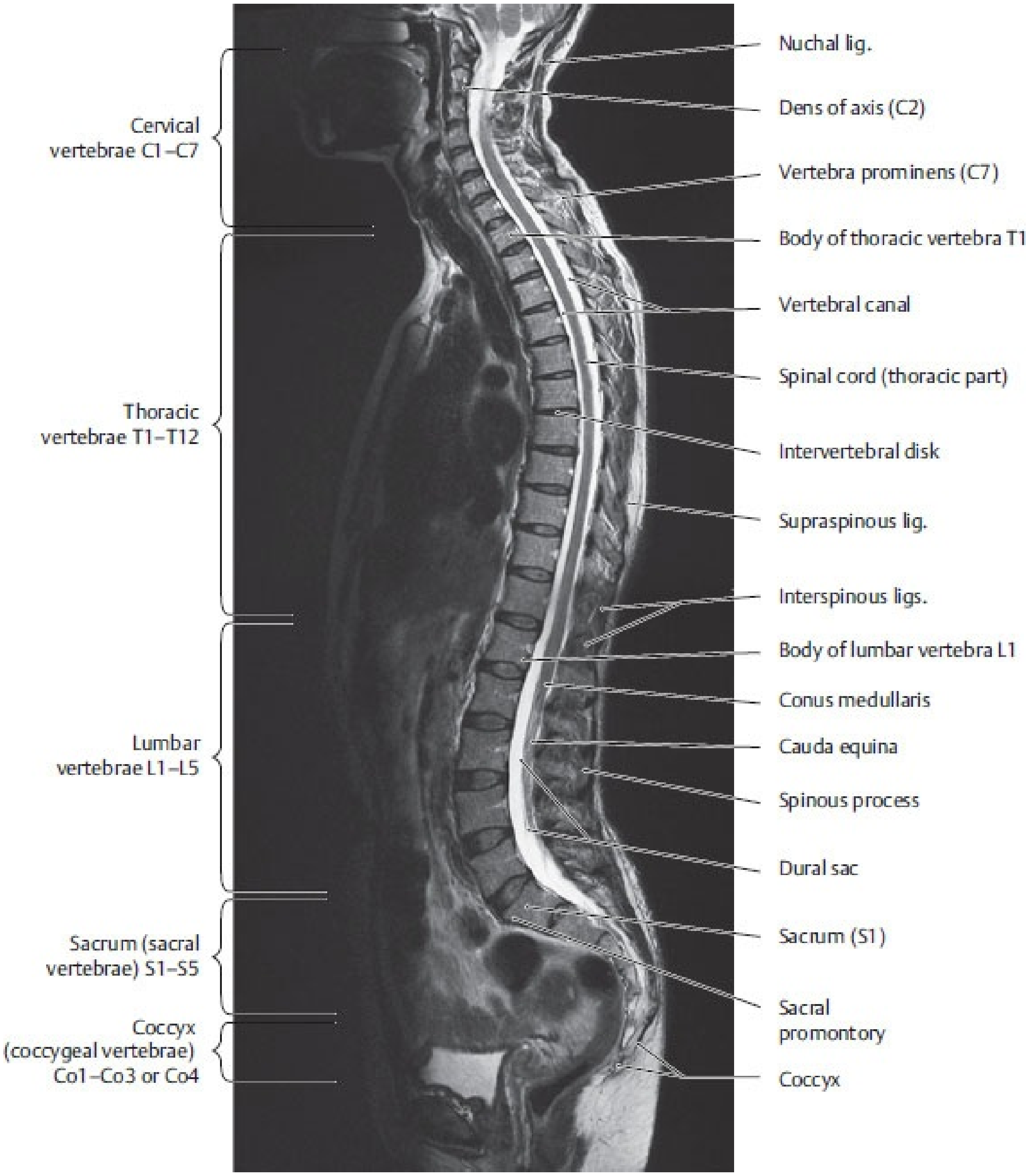

Cervical vertebrae C1–C7
Thoracic vertebrae T1–T12
Lumbar vertebrae L1–L5
Sacrum (sacral vertebrae) S1–S5
Coccyx (coccygeal vertebrae) Co1–Co3 or Co4
Nuchal lig.
Dens of axis (C2)
Vertebra prominens (C7)
Body of thoracic vertebra T1
Vertebral canal
Spinal cord (thoracic part)
Intervertebral disk
Supraspinous lig.
Interspinous ligs.
Body of lumbar vertebra L1
Conus medullaris
Cauda equina
Spinous process
Dural sac
Sacrum (S1)
Sacral promontory
Coccyx

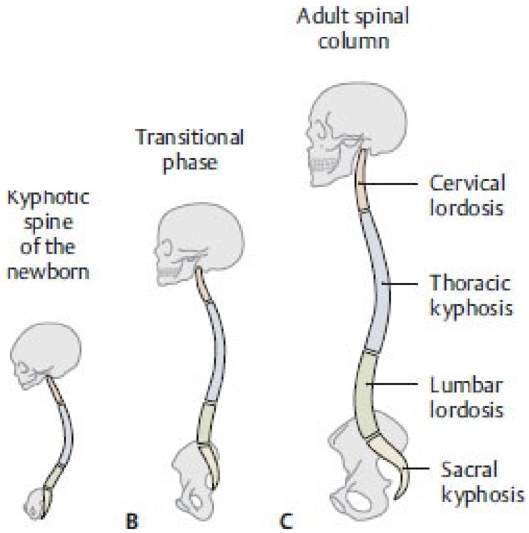
Fig. 3.2 MRI of the spine

Sagittal view. (From Moeller TB, Reif E. Pocket Atlas of Sectional Anatomy: The Musculoskeletal System. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2009.)

BOX 3.1: DEVELOPMENTAL CORRELATION

SPINAL DEVELOPMENT

The characteristic curvatures of the adult spine appear over the course of postnatal development, being only partially present in a newborn. The newborn has a ”kyphotic” spinal curvature (**A**); lumbar lordosis develops later and becomes stable at puberty (**C**).

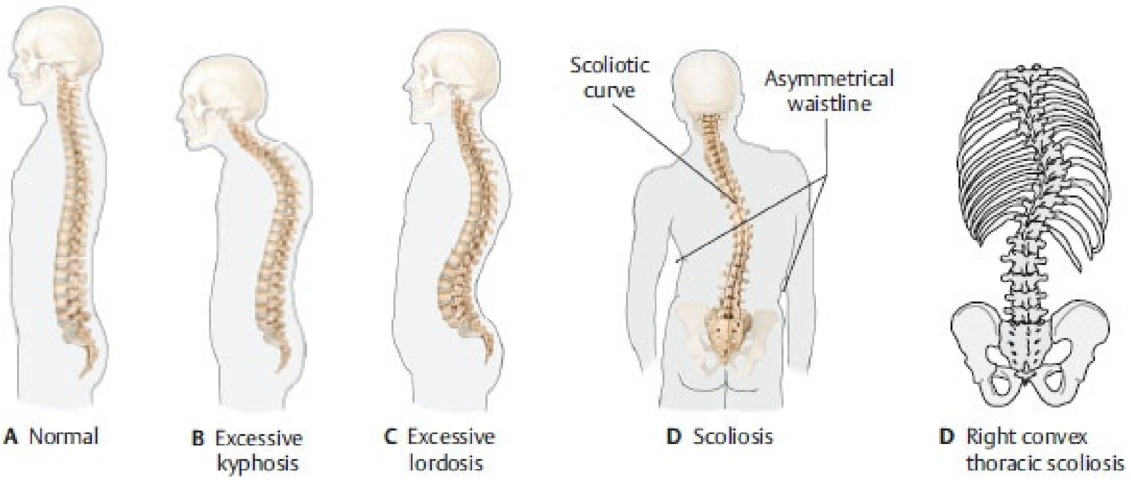

Adult spinal column
Transitional phase
Kyphotic spine of the newborn
Cervical lordosis
Thoracic kyphosis
Lumbar lordosis
Sacral kyphosis
A
B
C

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th Edition. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 3.2: CLINICAL CORRELATION

ABNORMAL CURVATURES OF THE VERTEBRAL COLUMN: KYPHOSIS, LORDOSIS, AND SCOLIOSIS

Kyphosis (“hunchback”), an excessive anterior curvature of the thoracic spine, is often seen in elderly women. Although it may be congenital or posture related, it is usually secondary to degenera-tive changes (collapse) of the vertebral bodies. Lordosis (“swayback”), an excessive posterior curvature of the lumbar spine, fre-quently develops as a temporary side effect during pregnancy, but in nonpregnant individuals it may have pathologic or even weight-related causes. Scoliosis is a lateral curvature of the spine and may be congenital or neuromuscular, caused by diseases such as cerebral palsy and muscular dystrophy.


Scoliotic curve
Asymmetrical waistline

A Normal **B** Excessive kyphosis **C** Excessive lordosis **D** Scoliosis **D** Right convex thoracic scoliosis

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th Edition. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 3.3: CLINICAL CORRELATION

OSTEOPOROSIS

The spine is the primary target for degenerative diseases of the skeleton, such as osteoporosis, in which the rate of reabsorption by osteoclasts exceeds that of bone formation by osteoblasts. The resulting loss of bone mass predisposes the individual to com-pression fractures of the spine.

Regional Characteristics of Vertebrae

Most vertebrae share a typical form **(Fig. 3.3)**, although specific features vary by region.

- Most vertebrae have the following:
  - An anterior vertebral body
  - A posterior vertebral arch formed by paired pedicles and paired laminae (the pedicles attach to the vertebral body, and the paired laminae join to form a spinous process)
  - Paired transverse processes that project laterally from the vertebral arch
  - Superior and inferior articular processes that articulate with the adjacent vertebrae
  - A vertebral foramen encircled by the vertebral body and vertebral arch (the combined vertebral foramina of all vertebrae form the vertebral canal)
- Cervical vertebrae, the smallest of all of the vertebrae, support the head and form the posterior skeleton of the neck **(Fig. 3.4)**. The seven cervical vertebrae are characterized as typical or atypical.
  - Typical cervical vertebrae **(Fig. 3.5A)**
    - C3–C6 have a small body, a large vertebral foramen, and often bifid (two-pronged) spinous processes.
  - Atypical cervical vertebrae
    - C1, the **atlas,** lacks a vertebral body and spinous process **(Fig. 3.5B)**. It has anterior and posterior vertebral arches that are connected on each side by **lateral masses.** C1 articulates superiorly with the occipital bone of the skull and inferiorly with C2.
    - C2, the axis, has a peglike **dens** projecting superiorly from its body that articulates with the anterior arch of C1 **(Fig. 3.5C)**.
    - C7, the **vertebra prominens,** has a long, palpable spinous process.

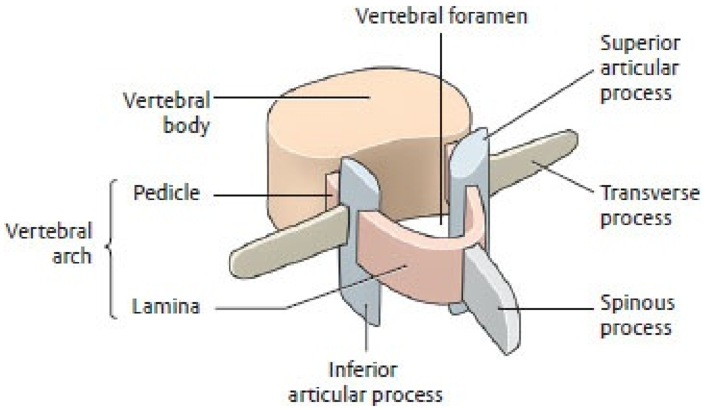

Vertebral foramen
Superior articular process
Vertebral body
Transverse process
Pedicle
Vertebral arch
Lamina
Spinous process
Inferior articular process

Fig. 3.3 Structural elements of a vertebra

Left posterosuperior view. With the exception of the atlas (C1) and axis (C2), all vertebrae consist of the same structural elements. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

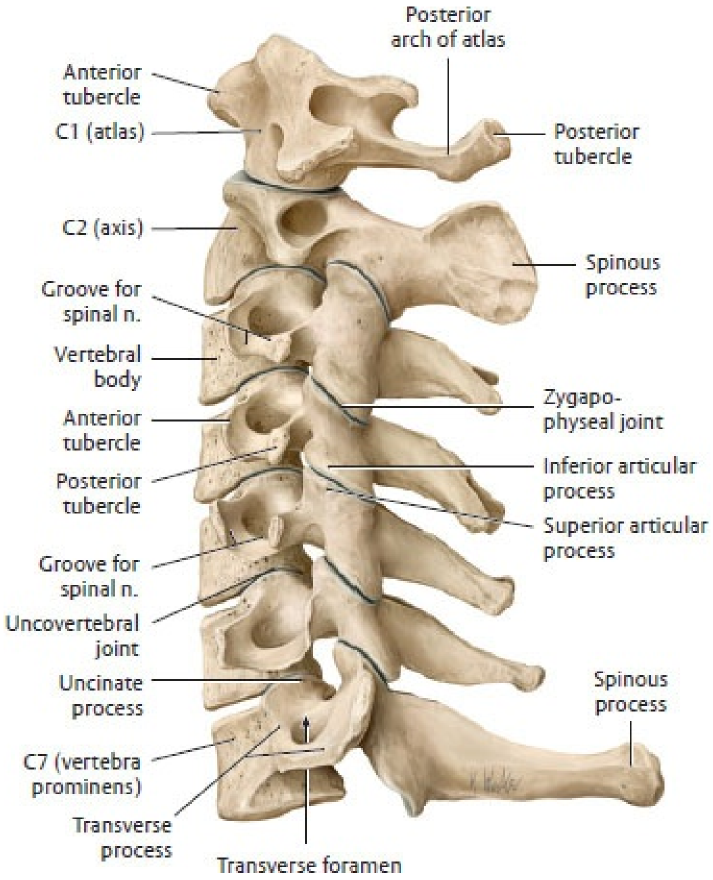
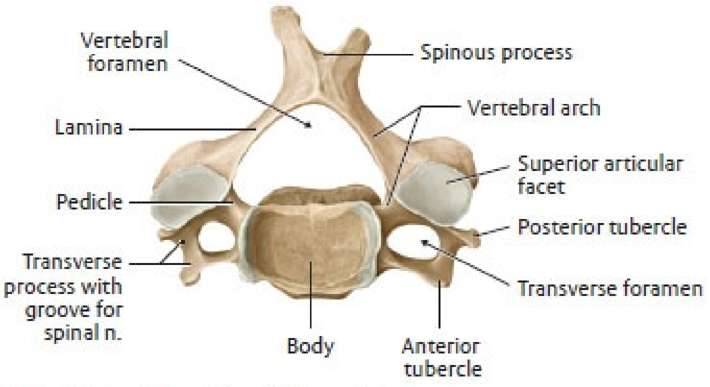

Posterior arch of atlas
Anterior tubercle
C1 (atlas)
Posterior tubercle
C2 (axis)
Spinous process
Groove for spinal n.
Vertebral body
Zygapo-physeal joint
Anterior tubercle
Inferior articular process
Posterior tubercle
Superior articular process
Groove for spinal n.
Uncovertebral joint
Uncinate process
Spinous process
C7 (vertebra prominens)
Transverse process
Transverse foramen

Fig. 3.4 Cervical spine

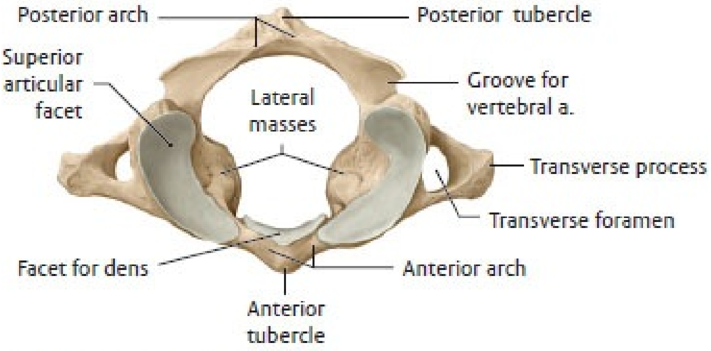
Bones of the cervical spine, left lateral view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson

BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

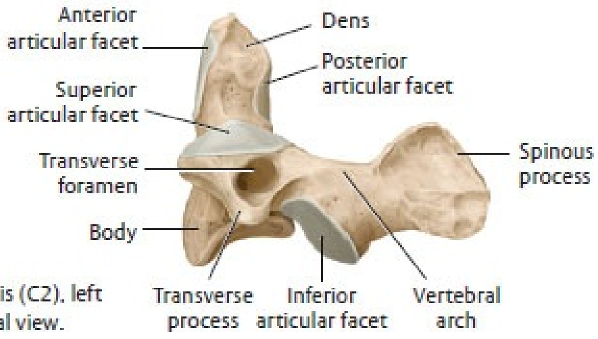
  - All cervical vertebrae have paired **transverse foramina,** openings formed by the anterior and posterior tubercles of each transverse process.
- Paired **vertebral arteries** ascend in the neck through the transverse foramina of C1–C6, pass through a groove on the posterior arch of C1, and enter the base of the skull through a large opening, the **foramen magnum.**
- Thoracic vertebrae **(Fig. 3.6)** have
  - long spinous processes that project inferiorly,
  - heart-shaped vertebral bodies,
  - **superior** and **inferior articular facets** that are oriented in the coronal plane, and
  - **costal facets** that articulate with the ribs.
- Lumbar vertebrae **(Fig. 3.7)**, the largest vertebrae, have
  - large bodies;
  - short, broad spinous processes; and
  - an **interarticular part** (pars interarticularis), part of the lamina between the superior and inferior articular facets, that forms the neck of the “Scottie dog” seen on oblique views of lumbar spine radiographs. It is a common site of vertebral fractures.
- The five sacral vertebrae are fused into a single bone, the **sacrum (Fig. 3.8),** which forms the posterosuperior wall of the pelvis and articulates laterally with the hip bones. The sacrum contains


Vertebral foramen
Spinous process
Vertebral arch
Lamina
Superior articular facet
Pedicle
Posterior tubercle
Transverse process with groove for spinal n.
Transverse foramen
Body
Anterior tubercle

A Typical cervical vertebra (C4), superior view.


Posterior arch
Posterior tubercle
Superior articular facet
Groove for vertebral a.
Lateral masses
Transverse process
Transverse foramen
Facet for dens
Anterior arch
Anterior tubercle

B Atlas (C1), superior view.


Anterior articular facet
Dens
Posterior articular facet
Superior articular facet
Spinous process
Transverse foramen
Body
Transverse process
Inferior articular facet
Vertebral arch

C Axis (C2), left lateral view.

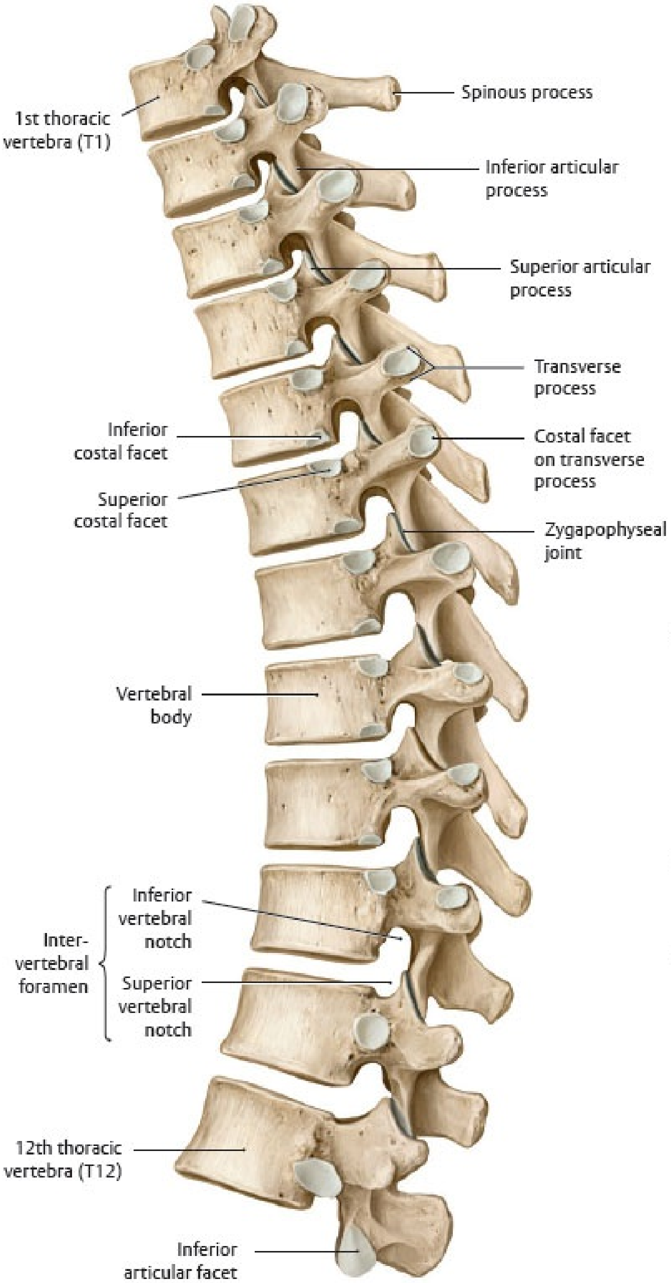
Fig. 3.5 Cervical vertebrae

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

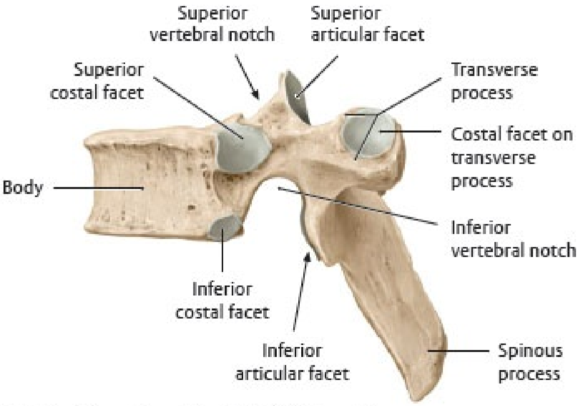
- the **sacral canal,** a continuation of the vertebral canal, which is open inferiorly at the **sacral hiatus;**
- the **median sacral crest,** the fused spinous processes of the sacral vertebrae;
- paired **medial sacral crests** that end inferiorly as the **sacral cornua** on either side of the sacral hiatus;

- four pairs of **anterior** and **posterior sacral foramina** for the passage of spinal nerve branches; and
- the **promontory,** formed by the anterior lip of the S1 vertebral body.

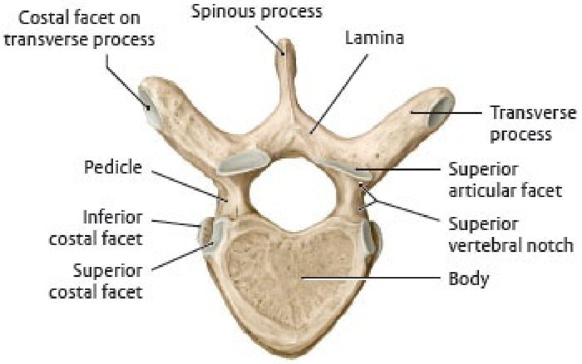
— The small coccygeal vertebrae, usually four (but this can vary from three to five), fuse into a single triangularly shaped bone, the **coccyx,** which articulates superiorly with the sacrum at the **sacrococcygeal joint.**


Spinous process
1st thoracic vertebra (T1)
Inferior articular process
Superior articular process
Transverse process
Inferior costal facet
Costal facet on transverse process
Superior costal facet
Zygapophyseal joint
Vertebral body
Inferior vertebral notch
Inter-vertebral foramen
Superior vertebral notch
12th thoracic vertebra (T12)
Inferior articular facet

A Bones of the thoracic spine, left lateral view.


Superior vertebral notch
Superior articular facet
Superior costal facet
Transverse process
Costal facet on transverse process
Body
Inferior vertebral notch
Inferior costal facet
Inferior articular facet
Spinous process

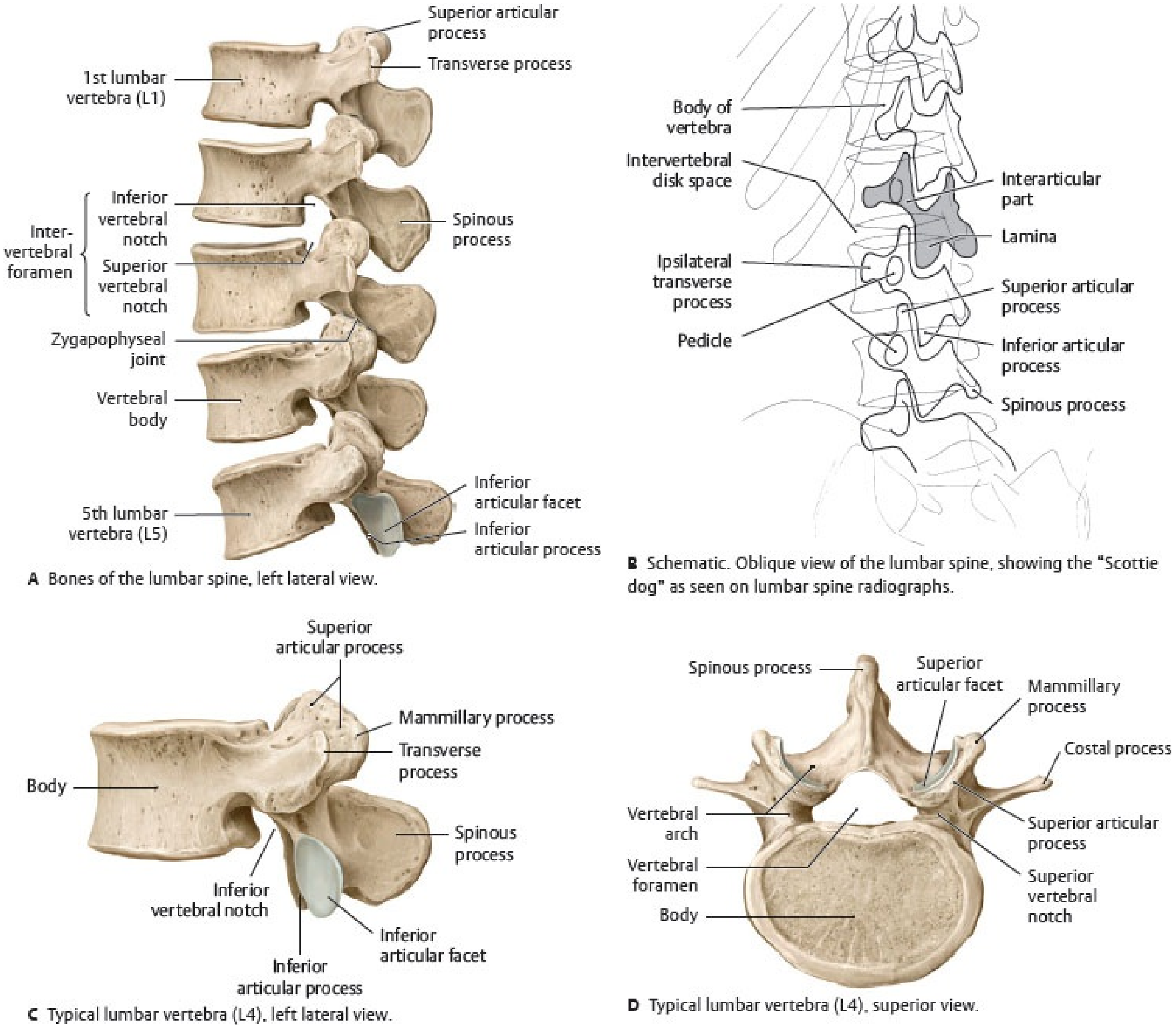
B Typical thoracic vertebra (T6), left lateral view.


Costal facet on transverse process
Spinous process
Lamina
Transverse process
Pedicle
Superior articular facet
Inferior costal facet
Superior vertebral notch
Superior costal facet
Body

C Typical thoracic vertebra (T6), superior view.

Fig. 3.6 Thoracic spine

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)



Superior articular process
Transverse process
1st lumbar vertebra (L1)
Inferior vertebral notch
Inter-vertebral foramen
Superior vertebral notch
Spinous process
Zygapophyseal joint
Vertebral body
5th lumbar vertebra (L5)
Inferior articular facet
Inferior articular process
Body of vertebra
Intervertebral disk space
Ipsilateral transverse process
Pedicle
Interarticular part
Lamina
Superior articular process
Inferior articular process
Spinous process
Superior articular process
Mammillary process
Transverse process
Body
Spinous process
Inferior vertebral notch
Inferior articular facet
Inferior articular process
Spinous process
Superior articular facet
Mammillary process
Costal process
Vertebral arch
Vertebral foramen
Body
Superior articular process
Superior vertebral notch

A Bones of the lumbar spine, left lateral view.

B Schematic. Oblique view of the lumbar spine, showing the "Scottie dog" as seen on lumbar spine radiographs.

C Typical lumbar vertebra (L4), left lateral view.

D Typical lumbar vertebra (L4), superior view.

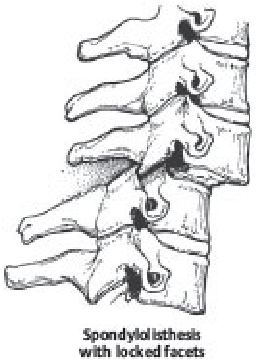
Fig. 3.7 Lumbar spine

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

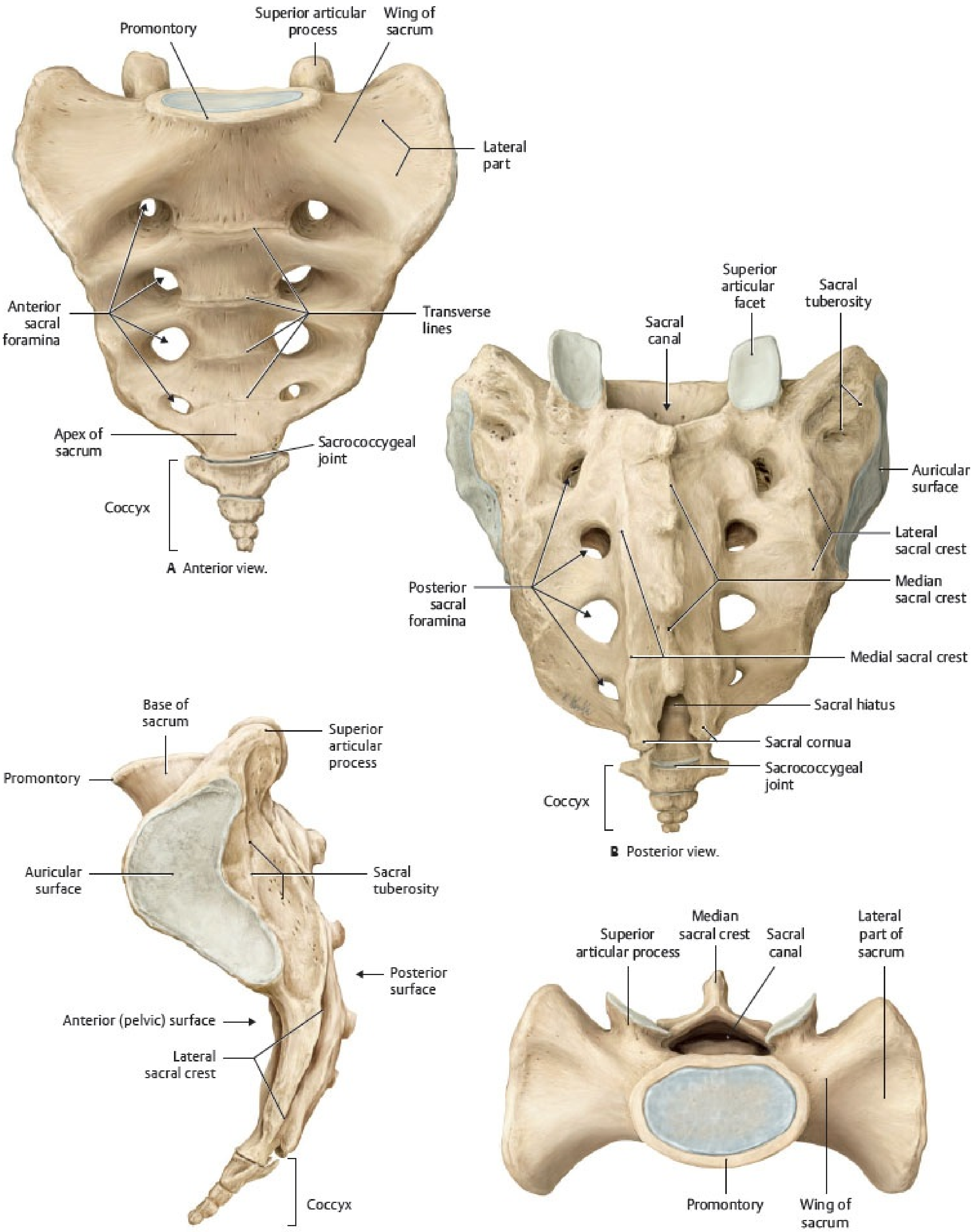
BOX 3.4: CLINICAL CORRELATION

SPONDYLOLYSIS AND SPONDYLOLISTHESIS

Spondylolysis is a fracture across the interarticular part of the lamina, usually at L5, and appears as a collar on the "Scottie dog" seen on lumbar radiographs. When the defect is bilateral, the verte-bral body may separate from its vertebral arch and shift anteriorly relative to the vertebra below it, a condition known as *spondylolisthesis*. Mild cases can be asymptomatic, but more severe cases compress the spinal nerves and cause pain in the lower limbs and back. Note: Spondylosis, a simi-lar-sounding name but unrelated condition, refers to age-related degeneration and the formation of osteophytes (see Box 3.7 Age-Related Changes in Vertebrae).



A 50% anterolisthesis of one vertebral body on another, with the inferior articular facets of the upper vertebra locked in front of the superior articular facets of the lower vertebra. Naturally, this anterolisthesis tends to compromise the vertebral canal and threatens the cord. (From Gunderman R. Essential Radiology, 3rd ed. New York: Thieme; 2014)


Promontory
Superior articular process
Wing of sacrum
Lateral part
Anterior sacral foramina
Transverse lines
Apex of sacrum
Sacrococcygeal joint
Coccyx
Superior articular facet
Sacral tuberosity
Sacral canal
Auricular surface
Lateral sacral crest
Median sacral crest
Posterior sacral foramina
Medial sacral crest
Sacral hiatus
Sacral cornua
Sacrococcygeal joint
Coccyx
Base of sacrum
Promontory
Superior articular process
Auricular surface
Sacral tuberosity
Posterior surface
Anterior (pelvic) surface
Lateral sacral crest
Coccyx
Median sacral crest
Superior articular process
Sacral canal
Lateral part of sacrum
Promontory
Wing of sacrum

A Anterior view.

B Posterior view.

C Left lateral view.

D Base of sacrum, superior view.

Fig. 3.8 Sacrum and coccyx

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Joints of the Vertebral Column

Joints of the vertebral column include articulations between adja-cent vertebral bodies and articulations between adjacent verte-bral arches. Joints also form between the vertebral column and the skull (**Table 3.1**). Individual vertebral joints allow small local movements, but the combination of these movements over mul tiple vertebral levels accounts for the considerable flexibility of the vertebral column.

- **Craniovertebral joints (Fig. 3.9)** are synovial joints between the skull and C1, and between C1 and C2:
  - Paired **atlanto-occipital joints** between the occipital bone of the skull and the atlas (C1) allow flexion and extension of the head (as when nodding “yes”).
  - **Atlantoaxial joints,** which include one median and two lateral articulations between the atlas and axis (C1 and C2), allow rotation of the head from side to side (as when saying “no”).

BOX 3.5: CLINICAL CORRELATION

INJURIES OF THE CERVICAL SPINE

The laxity of the cervical spine makes it prone to hyperextension injuries, such as “whiplash,” the excessive and often violent back-ward movement of the head, resulting in fractures of the dens of the axis and traumatic spondylolisthesis (see Box 3.4 Spondyloly-sis and Spondylolisthesis). Patient prognosis is largely dependent on the spinal level of the injuries.

- **Uncovertebral joints** form between the **uncinate processes** (lateral lips on the superior edges of the vertebral bodies) of C3–C7 vertebrae and the vertebral bodies immediately superior to them.
  - These joints, which are not present at birth, form during childhood, probably as a result of a fissure in the cartilage of the intervertebral disk that then assumes a joint-like character.

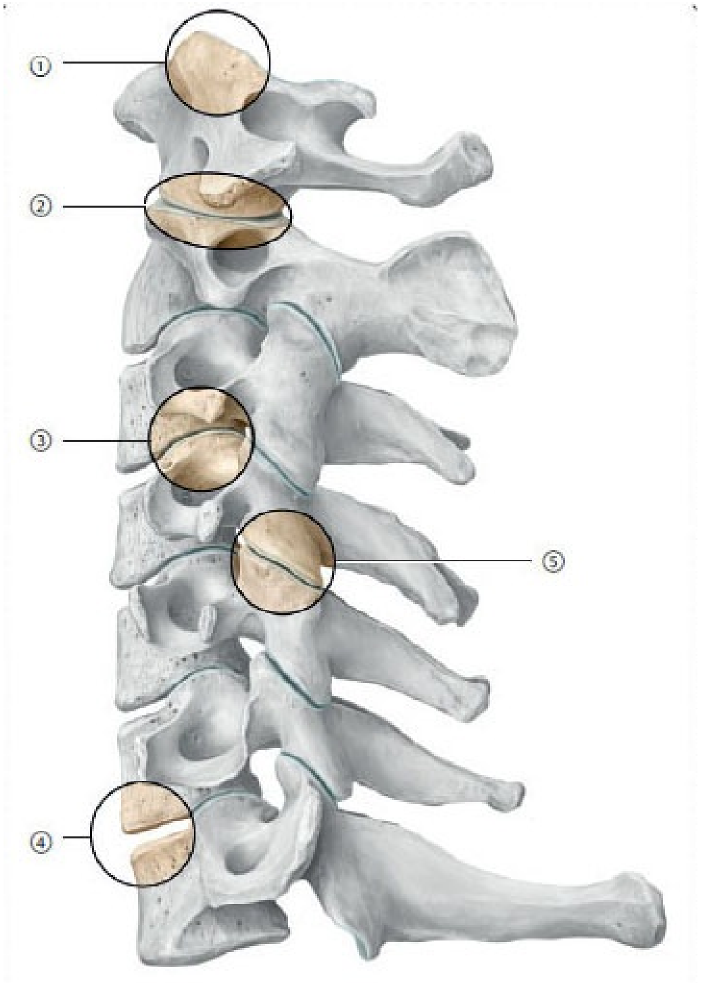
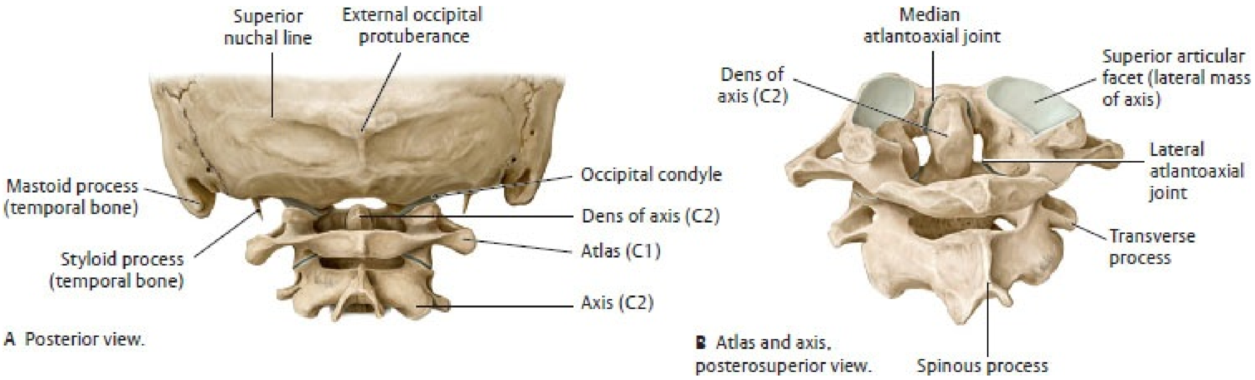


Table 3.1 Joints of the Vertebral Column

Craniovertebral joints		
①	Atlanto-occipital joints	Occiput-CI
②	Atlantoaxial joints	C1–C2
Joints of the vertebral bodies		
③	Uncovertebral joints	C3–C7
④	Intervertebral joints	C2–S1
Joints of the vertebral arch		
⑤	Zygapophyseal joints	C1–S1


Superior nuchal line
External occipital protuberance
Mastoid process (temporal bone)
Styloid process (temporal bone)
Occipital condyle
Dens of axis (C2)
Atlas (C1)
Axis (C2)
Median atlantoaxial joint
Dens of axis (C2)
Superior articular facet (lateral mass of axis)
Lateral atlantoaxial joint
Transverse process
Spinous process

A Posterior view.

B Atlas and axis, posterosuperior view.

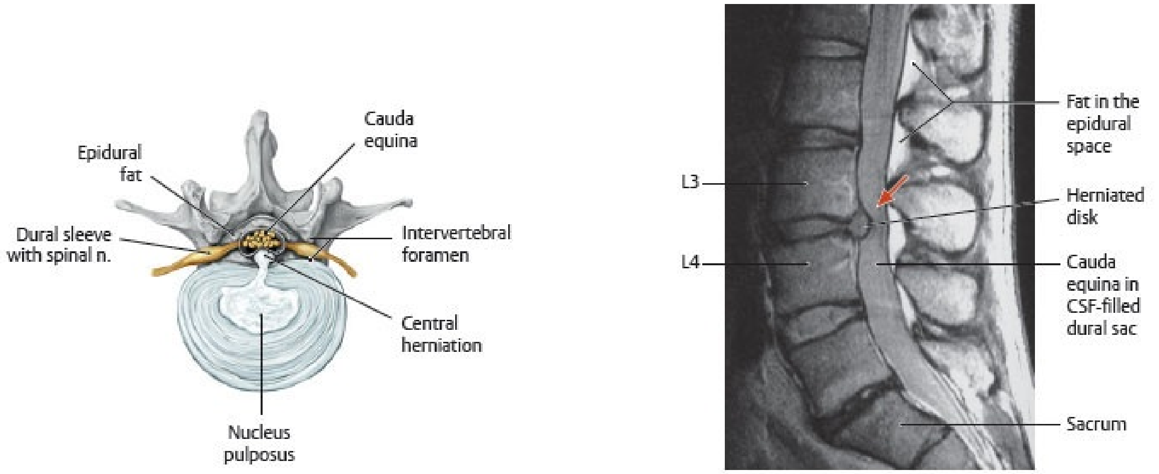
Fig. 3.9 Craniovertebral joints

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 3.6: CLINICAL CORRELATION

HERNIATION OF INTERVERTEBRAL DISKS

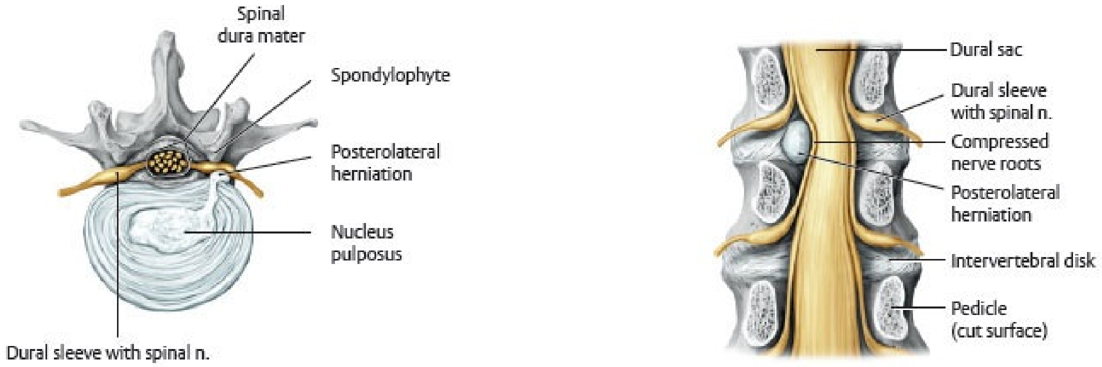
As elasticity of the anulus fibrosus declines with age, compressive forces can cause the nucleus pulposus to protrude through weak-ened areas. If the fibrous ring of the anulus ruptures posteriorly, the herniated material may compress the contents of the dural sac, but posterolateral herniations that compress spinal nerves are most common, particularly at the L4–L5 or L5–S1 level. In the lumbar region, where spinal nerves exit the vertebral canal above the IV disk, the hernia is likely to compress the spinal nerve inferior to that level (e.g., a herniation of the L4–L5 disk will impact the L5 spinal nerve), and pain is felt along the corresponding dermatome.


Epidural fat
Cauda equina
Dural sleeve with spinal n.
Intervertebral foramen
Central herniation
Nucleus pulposus
Fat in the epidural space
L3
Herniated disk
L4
Cauda equina in CSF-filled dural sac
Sacrum

A Superior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

B Midsagittal T2-weighted MRI. (From Jallo J and Vaccaro AR. Neurotrama and Critical Care of the Spine, 2nd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2018.)

Posterior herniation (A,B). In the MRI a conspicuously herniated disk at the level of L3-L4 protrudes posteriorly. The dural sac is deeply indented at that level. CSF, cerebrospinal fluid.


Spinal dura mater
Spondylophyte
Posterolateral herniation
Nucleus pulposus
Dural sleeve with spinal n.
Dural sac
Dural sleeve with spinal n.
Compressed nerve roots
Posterolateral herniation
Intervertebral disk
Pedicle (cut surface)

C Superior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

D Posterior view, vertebral arches removed. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Posterolateral herniation (C,D). A posterolateral herniation may compress the spinal nerve as it passes through the intervertebral foramen. If more medially positioned, the herniation may spare the nerve at that level but impact nerves at inferior levels.

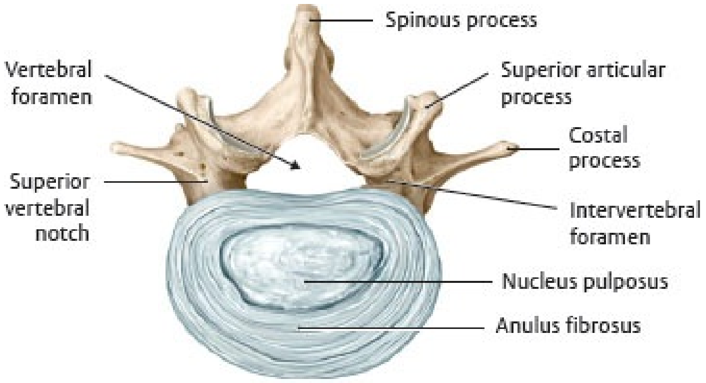

Spinous process
Vertebral foramen
Superior articular process
Costal process
Superior vertebral notch
Intervertebral foramen
Nucleus pulposus
Anulus fibrosus

Fig. 3.10 Intervertebral disk

Fourth lumbar vertebra, superior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

— **Intervertebral joints** form between **intervertebral (IV) disks** and the articular surfaces of vertebral bodies. There is no IV disk between C1 and C2, and those between sacral and coccygeal vertebrae are rudimentary.

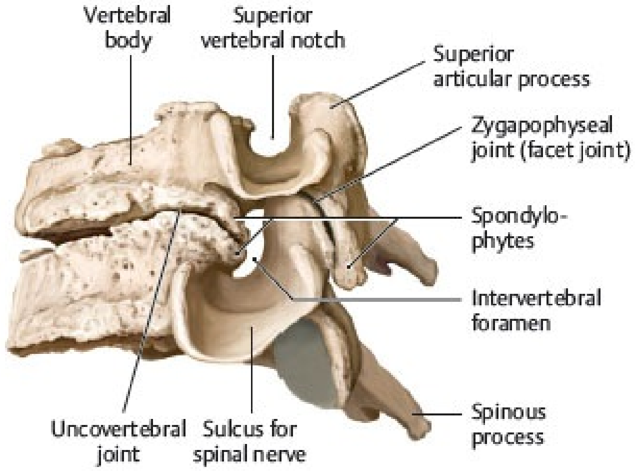
- The IV disks act as shock absorbers and are composed of an outer fibrous ring, the **anulus fibrosus,** and a gelatinous core, the **nucleus pulposus (Fig. 3.10)**.
- The height of the IV disk relative to the height of the vertebral body determines the degree of mobility of the joint; mobility is greatest in the

  cervical and lumbar regions.
  - The differences between anterior and posterior heights of the cervical and lumbar disks contribute to the lordotic curvatures.
- **Zygapophyseal joints,** also known as **facet joints,** are synovial joints that join the superior and inferior articular facets of adjacent vertebrae. The orientation of these joints differs among regions and influences the degree and direction of movement of the vertebral column.
  - In the cervical region, the joints are mostly in the horizontal plane and allow movement in most directions.
  - In the thorax, the joints largely lie in the coronal plane, limiting movement to lateral flexion.
  - In the lumbar region, the joints are in the sagittal plane, facilitating flexion and extension.

BOX 3.7: CLINICAL CORRELATION

AGE-RELATED CHANGES IN VERTEBRAE

With advancing age, a decrease in bone density and aging of the IV disks can lead to an increase in compressive forces on the ver-tebral joints. Subsequent degenerative changes can include the depletion of articular cartilage and the formation of osteophytes (bony spurs). Osteophyte formation at the periphery of the verte-bral bodies where they join the IV disks is known as **spondylosis**. Similar degenerative changes of the zygapophyseal joints indicate osteoarthritis, common in the cervical and lumbar spine but also manifested in the joints of the hand, hip, and knee.

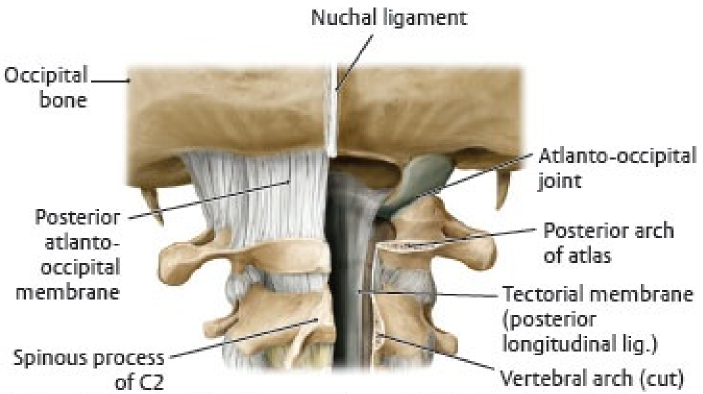

Vertebral body
Superior vertebral notch
Superior articular process
Zygapophyseal joint (facet joint)
Spondylophytes
Intervertebral foramen
Spinous process
Uncovertebral joint
Sulcus for spinal nerve

Advanced uncovertebral arthrosis of the cervical spine. (Drawing based on specimen from the Anatomical Collection at Kiel Univer-sity.) (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

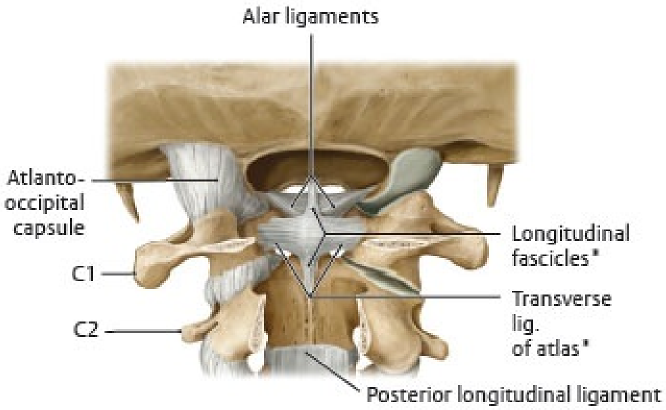
Vertebral Ligaments

Vertebral ligaments support the joints of the vertebral column.

— Ligaments that support the cranial vertebral joints **(Fig. 3.11)** include
  - the **atlanto-occipital membranes,** which connect the occipital bone of the skull to the anterior and posterior arches of the atlas (C1);
  - the **alar ligaments,** which secure the dens of C2 to the skull; and


Nuchal ligament
Occipital bone
Atlanto-occipital joint
Posterior atlanto-occipital membrane
Posterior arch of atlas
Tectorial membrane (posterior longitudinal lig.)
Spinous process of C2
Vertebral arch (cut)

A Posterior longitudinal ligament. *Removed:* Spinal cord; vertebral canal windowed.


Alar ligaments
Atlanto-occipital capsule
Longitudinal fascicles*
C1
Transverse lig. of atlas*
C2
Posterior longitudinal ligament

B Cruciform ligament of atlas (*). *Removed:* Tectorial membrane.

Fig. 3.11 Dissection of the craniovertebral joint ligaments

Posterior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

  - the **cruciform ligament,** formed by longitudinal fascicles (fibers) and a transverse ligament, which secures the dens against the anterior arch of the atlas.

— Two longitudinal ligaments **(Figs. 3.12** and **3.13)** join all of the vertebral bodies**:**

1. The **anterior longitudinal ligament,** a broad fibrous band extending from the occipital bone of the skull to the sacrum, attaches to the anterior and lateral surfaces of the vertebral bodies and IV disks and prevents hyperextension.
2. The **posterior longitudinal ligament,** a thin fibrous band extending from C2 to the sacrum along the anterior aspect of the vertebral canal, attaches primarily to the IV disks and offers weak resistance to hyperflexion. Superiorly, this ligament extends into the skull as the **tectorial membrane** (see **Fig. 2.15A**).

— Ligaments that join the vertebral arches of adjacent vertebra include the following:

- the paired **ligamenta flava,** which join the laminae of adjacent vertebrae on the posterior wall of the vertebral canal. They limit flexion and provide postural support of the vertebral column **(Fig. 3.14).**
- the **supraspinous ligament,** which connects the posterior ridge of the spinous processes **(Fig. 3.15)**
- the **nuchal ligament,** a finlike expansion of the supraspi-nous ligament in the neck that extends from the occipital bone to the spinous process of C7 **(Fig. 3.15)**

— Additional vertebral ligaments connect elements of the vertebral arches and spinous processes (see **Fig. 3.12**).

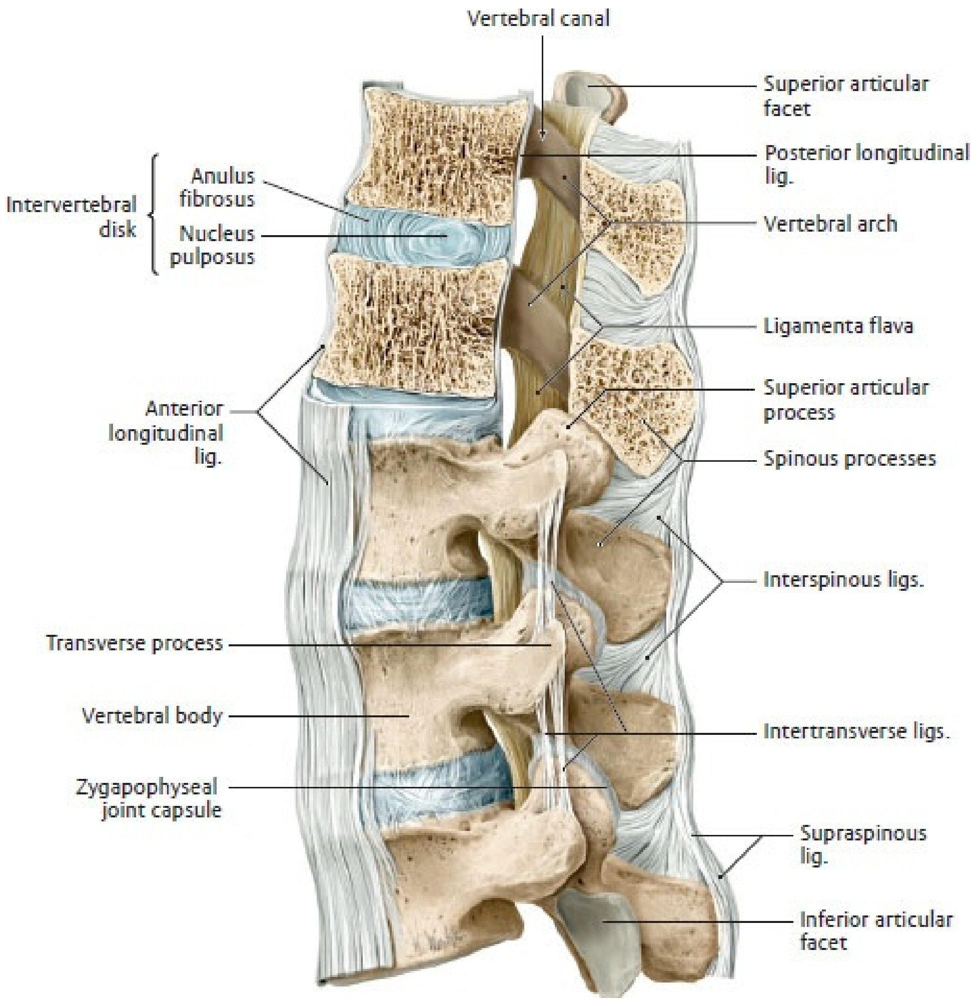

Vertebral canal
Superior articular facet
Posterior longitudinal lig.
Vertebral arch
Ligamenta flava
Superior articular process
Spinous processes
Interspinous ligs.
Intertransverse ligs.
Supraspinous lig.
Inferior articular facet
Intervertebral disk
Anulus fibrosus
Nucleus pulposus
Anterior longitudinal lig.
Transverse process
Vertebral body
Zygapophyseal joint capsule

Fig. 3.12 Ligaments of the vertebral column: thoracolumbar junction

Left lateral view of T11–L3, with T11–T12 sectioned in the midsagittal plane. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

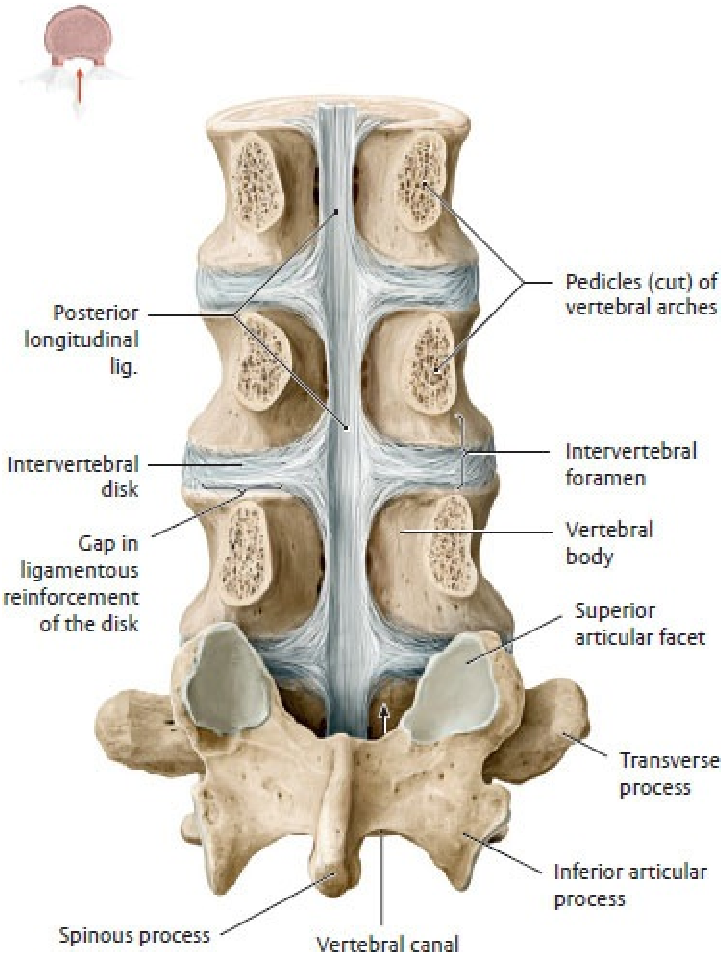

Posterior longitudinal lig.
Intervertebral disk
Gap in ligamentous reinforcement of the disk
Pedicles (cut) of vertebral arches
Intervertebral foramen
Vertebral body
Superior articular facet
Transverse process
Inferior articular process
Spinous process
Vertebral canal

Fig. 3.13 Posterior longitudinal ligament

Posterior view of opened vertebral canal at level of L2–L5. *Removed:* L2–L4 vertebral arches at pedicular level. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

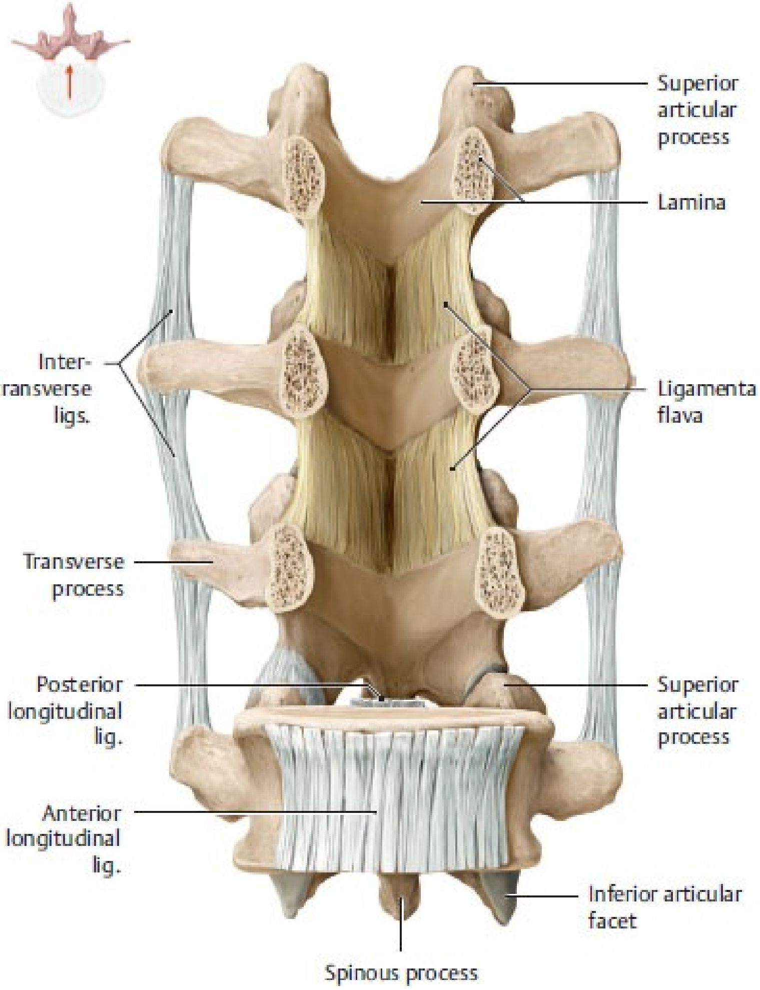
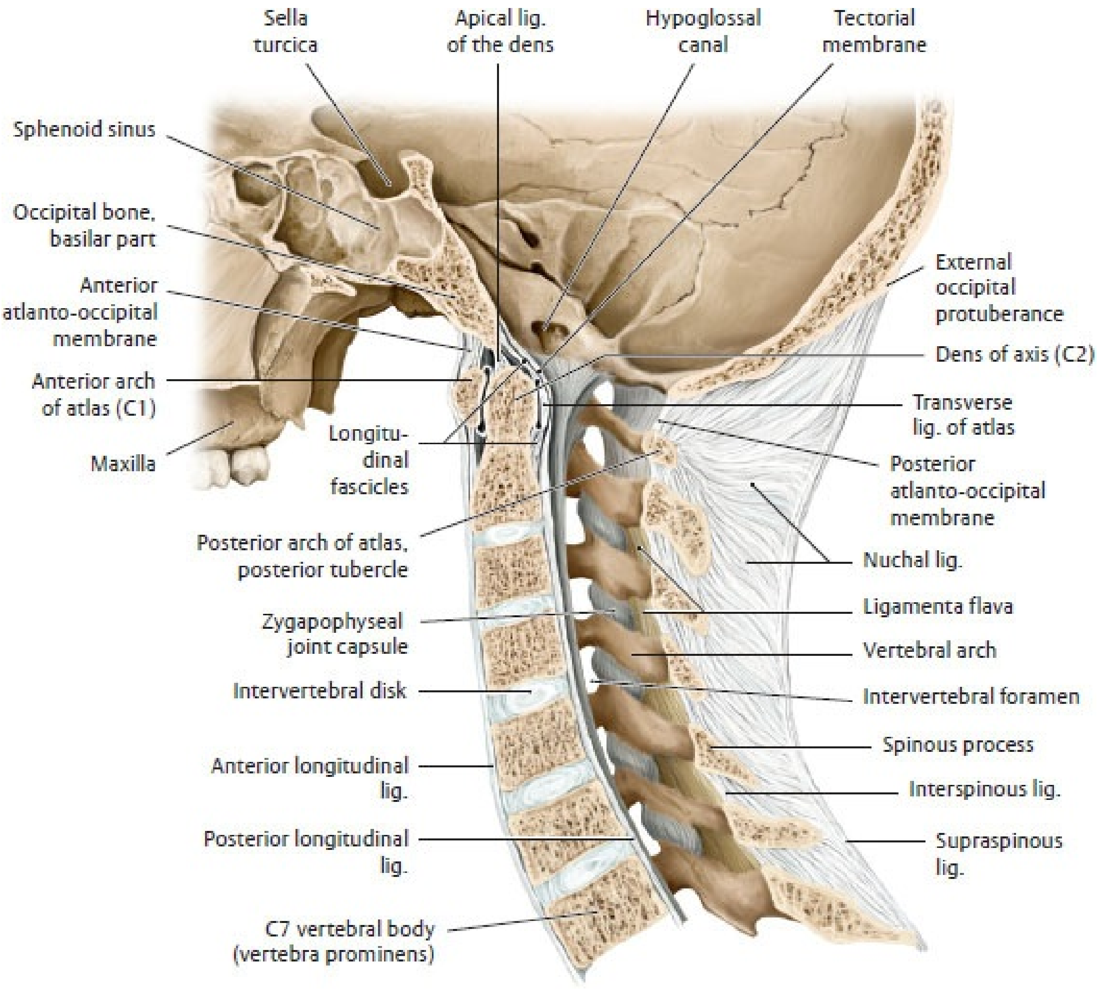

Superior articular process
Lamina
Inter-transverse ligs.
Ligamenta flava
Transverse process
Posterior longitudinal lig.
Superior articular process
Anterior longitudinal lig.
Inferior articular facet
Spinous process

Fig. 3.14 Ligamenta flava and intertransverse ligaments Anterior view of opened vertebral canal at level of L2-L5. Removed: L2-L4 vertebral bodies. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th Edition. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)



Sella turcica
Apical lig. of the dens
Hypoglossal canal
Tectorial membrane
Sphenoid sinus
Occipital bone, basilar part
Anterior atlanto-occipital membrane
Anterior arch of atlas (C1)
Maxilla
Longitudinal fascicles
Posterior arch of atlas, posterior tubercle
Zygapophyseal joint capsule
Intervertebral disk
Anterior longitudinal lig.
Posterior longitudinal lig.
C7 vertebral body (vertebra prominens)
External occipital protuberance
Dens of axis (C2)
Transverse lig. of atlas
Posterior atlanto-occipital membrane
Nuchal lig.
Ligamenta flava
Vertebral arch
Intervertebral foramen
Spinous process
Interspinous lig.
Supraspinous lig.

Fig. 3.15 Ligaments of the cervical spine

Midsagittal section, left lateral view. The nuchal ligament is the broadened, sagittally oriented part of the supraspinous ligament that extends from the vertebra prominens (C7) to the external occipital protuberance. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Neurovasculature of the Vertebral Column

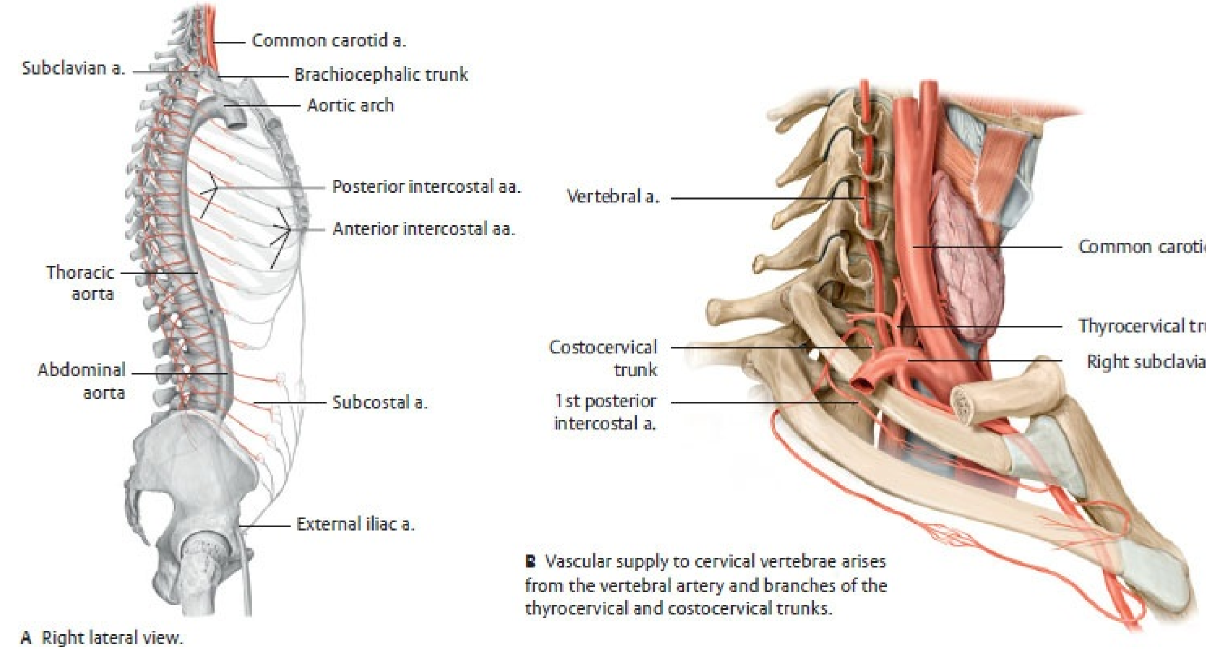
— The following arteries (Fig. 3.16) supply the vertebrae, vertebral ligaments, meninges, and spinal cord**:**
  - The segmental arteries, paired branches of the descending aorta such as the **posterior intercostal** and **lumbar arteries,** that arise in the thoracic and lumbar regions
  - Branches of the **subclavian artery** in the neck, including the supreme intercostal artery (which supplies the first and second intercostal arteries), and the vertebral and **ascending cervical arteries**

    - The **median sacral artery**, arising near the aortic bifurcation, and the **iliolumbar** and **lateral sacral arteries**, branches of the **internal iliac artery** in the pelvis
- The **vertebral venous** (Batson) **plexus** surrounds the vertebral bodies and drains the spinal cord, meninges, and vertebrae **(Fig. 3.17)**.
    - **Anterior** and **posterior external plexuses** surround the vertebrae, and **anterior** and **posterior internal plexuses** lie within the epidural space in the vertebral canal.
    - Both the internal and external plexuses drain into **intervertebral veins,** which in turn drain to **vertebral veins** of the neck and segmental veins (paired tributaries of the inferior vena cava and azygos system) in the thoracic, lumbar, and sacral regions.
    - The veins of the vertebral venous plexus have few valves; thus, there is free venous communication between the skull, neck, thorax, abdomen, and pelvis.
- Lymphatic drainage from the vertebrae and vertebral ligaments generally follows the arteries that supply each region and end in cervical, thoracic, lumbar, and sacral lymph nodes.
- Posterior rami, and meningeal branches of anterior rami, of spinal nerves innervate the vertebrae, vertebral ligaments, and spinal meninges.

BOX 3.8: CLINICAL CORRELATION

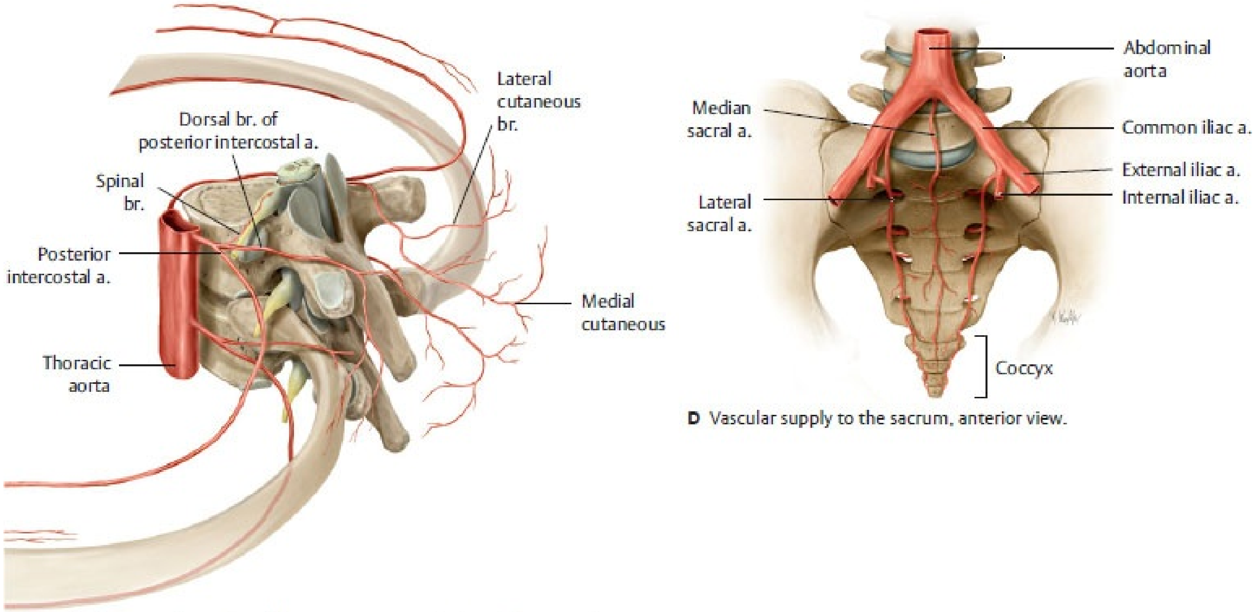
METASTASIS AND THE VERTEBRAL VENOUS PLEXUS

The vertebral venous plexus links the venous drainages of viscera in the thorax, abdomen, and pelvis and the venous sinuses of the brain. These communications have been identified as a likely route of metastases of carcinoma of the prostate (commonly), breast, and lung (less commonly) to the central nervous system and bone.


Common carotid a.
Subclavian a.
Brachiocephalic trunk
Aortic arch
Posterior intercostal aa.
Anterior intercostal aa.
Thoracic aorta
Abdominal aorta
Subcostal a.
External iliac a.
Vertebral a.
Common carotid a.
Thyrocervical trunk
Costocervical trunk
Right subclavian a.
1st posterior intercostal a.

B Vascular supply to cervical vertebrae arises from the vertebral artery and branches of the thyrocervical and costocervical trunks.

A Right lateral view.

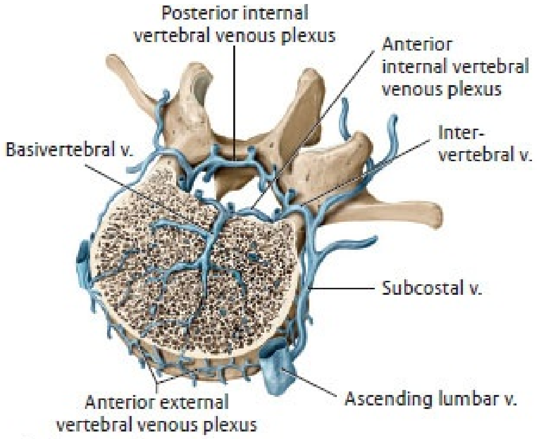

Lateral cutaneous br.
Dorsal br. of posterior intercostal a.
Spinal br.
Posterior intercostal a.
Thoracic aorta
Medial cutaneous
Abdominal aorta
Median sacral a.
Common iliac a.
External iliac a.
Internal iliac a.
Lateral sacral a.
Coccyx

D Vascular supply to the sacrum, anterior view.

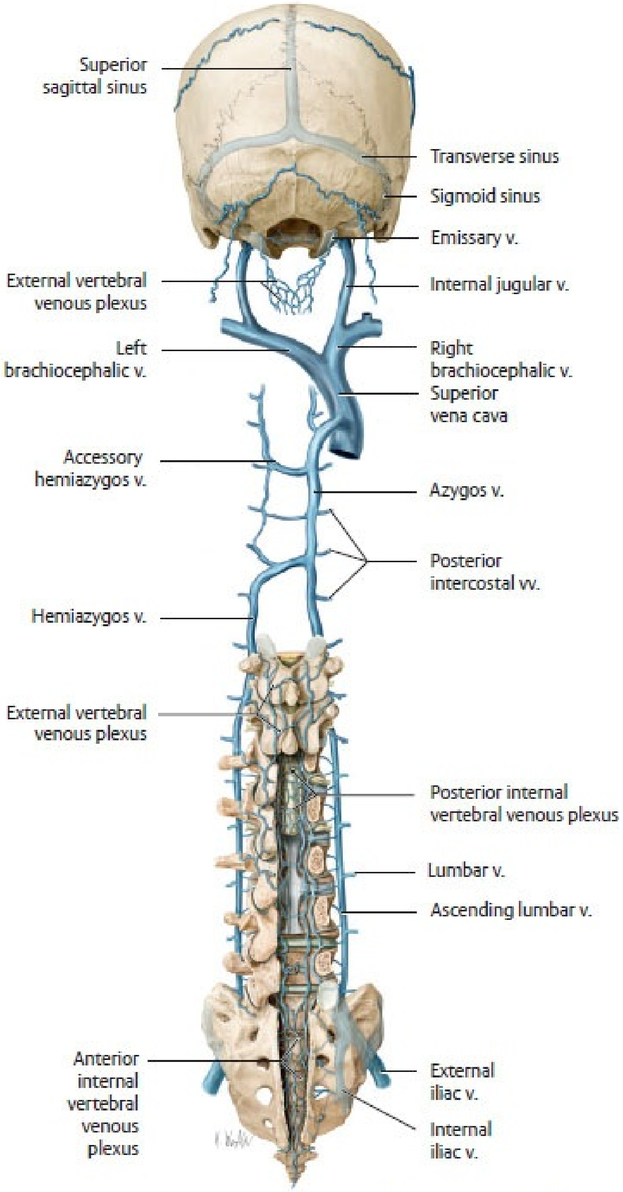
C Posterior intercostal arteries, oblique posterosuperior view. The posterior intercostal arteries give rise to cutaneous and muscular branches, as well as spinal branches that supply the spinal cord.

Fig. 3.16 Arteries of the trunk

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Posterior internal vertebral venous plexus
Anterior internal vertebral venous plexus
Inter-vertebral v.
Basivertebral v.
Subcostal v.
Ascending lumbar v.
Anterior external vertebral venous plexus

A Vertebral venous plexuses, superior view.


Superior sagittal sinus
Transverse sinus
Sigmoid sinus
Emissary v.
External vertebral venous plexus
Internal jugular v.
Left brachiocephalic v.
Right brachiocephalic v.
Superior vena cava
Accessory hemiazygos v.
Azygos v.
Posterior intercostal vv.
Hemiazygos v.
External vertebral venous plexus
Posterior internal vertebral venous plexus
Lumbar v.
Ascending lumbar v.
Anterior internal vertebral venous plexus
External iliac v.
Internal iliac v.

B Vertebral venous plexus, posterior view with vertebral canal windowed in the lumbar and sacral spine.

Fig. 3.17 Vertebral venous plexus

The intervertebral and basivertebral veins connect the internal and external venous plexuses, which drain into the azygos system. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

3.2 The Spinal Cord

The spinal cord is the part of the central nervous system that relays information between the brain and the body. The spinal cord, along with its spinal nerves, surrounding membranes (the **meninges)**, and associated vasculature, is enclosed within the vertebral canal.

Structure of the Spinal Cord

- The spinal cord, a slightly flattened cylindrical structure, is continuous with the brainstem. Within the vertebral canal, it extends from the skull base to a tapered end, the **conus medullaris**, at the level of L1 or L2 vertebra **(Fig. 3.18)**.

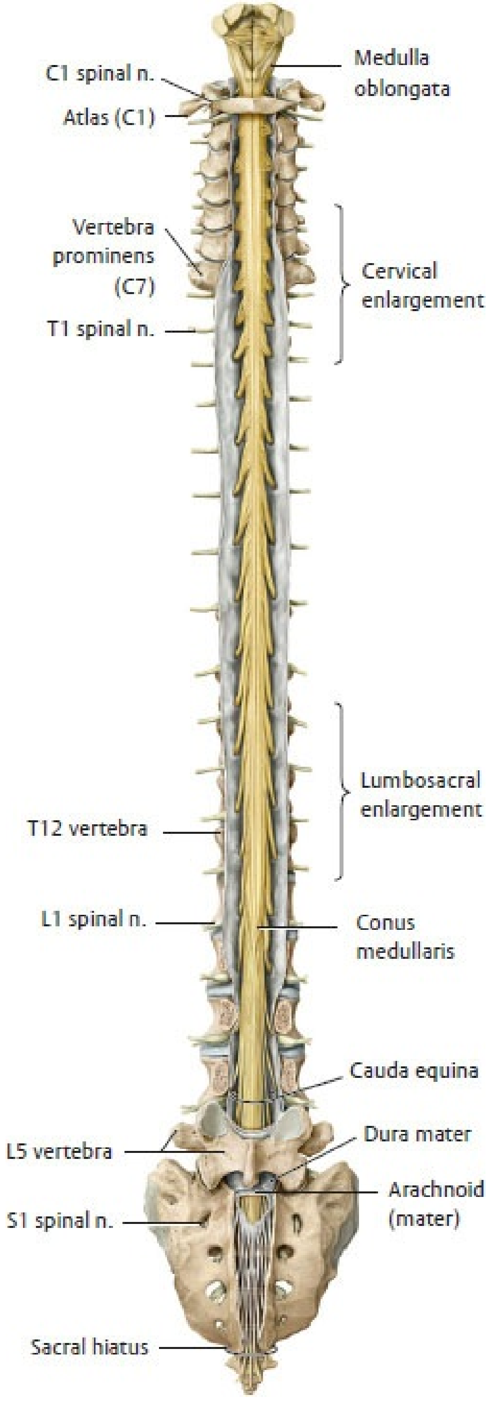

C1 spinal n.
Atlas (C1)
Medulla oblongata
Vertebra prominens (C7)
T1 spinal n.
Cervical enlargement
Lumbosacral enlargement
T12 vertebra
L1 spinal n.
Conus medullaris
Cauda equina
L5 vertebra
Dura mater
Arachnoid (mater)
S1 spinal n.
Sacral hiatus

Fig. 3.18 Spinal cord in situ

Posterior view with vertebral canal windowed. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

— Along its length, two swellings occur in the regions of the spinal cord that

innervate the limbs:
  - The **cervical enlargement** at C4–T1 is related to the brachial plexus, a plexus of nerves that innervate the upper limb.
  - The **lumbosacral enlargement** at T11–S1 is related to the lumbar and sacral plexuses, nerve plexuses that innervate the abdominal wall and lower limb.
- The spinal cord consists of 31 segments (8 cervical, 12 thoracic, 5 lumbar, 5 sacral, and 1 coccygeal), each of which innervates a specific area of the trunk or limbs. Each spinal cord segment is associated with a pair of **spinal nerves** that pass to and from the vertebral canal through the intervertebral foramina at the corresponding vertebral level. Both spinal cord segments and spine nerves are identified by region and number (e.g., T4).
- The adult spinal cord is considerably shorter than the vertebral column, occupying only the superior two thirds of the vertebral canal. As a result, most spinal cord segments do not lie adjacent to the vertebral level of the same number although the spinal nerves arising from those segments still exit through the corresponding intervertebral foramina **(Fig. 3.19)**.
- The spinal cord is surrounded by three layers, or **meninges**, and is suspended within cerebrospinal fluid.

Meninges of the Spinal Cord

The **spinal meninges** are membranes that surround the spinal cord and nerve roots and that contain the **cerebrospinal fluid** (a fluid that cushions and nourishes the brain and spinal cord) **(Fig. 3.20)**; see also Section 26.2).

- The three layers of spinal meninges are continuous with the meninges that surround the brain:
  1. **Dura mater,** a tough outer layer that forms the **dural sac** enclosing the spinal cord and extending along the nerve roots to the intervertebral foramina. The dural sac begins at the foramen magnum of the skull and ends at the level of S2.
  2. **Arachnoid mater,** a delicate middle layer that lines the dural sac and is connected to the underlying membrane by **arachnoid trabeculae** (strands of connective tissue).
  3. **Pia mater,** a thin layer that adheres to the surface of the spinal cord. **Denticulate ligaments,** transverse extensions of the pia mater, attach to the dura mater and suspend the spinal cord within the dural sac.
- The **filum terminale,** a thin cord of connective tissue invested by pia mater, extends from the conus medullaris to the apex of the dural sac. There it is surrounded by spinal dura mater and extends to the end of the vertebral

canal, where it anchors both membranes to the coccyx.

- Three spaces separate the layers of meninges **(Fig. 3.21)**:
    - The **epidural space** lies between the bony wall of the vertebral canal and the dura mater. It contains fat and the vertebral venous plexus.
    - The **subdural space,** a potential space between the dura and arachnoid layers, contains a thin film of lubricating fluid.
    - The **subarachnoid space** lies deep to the arachnoid layer and contains the cerebrospinal fluid which bathes the spinal cord and roots of the spinal nerves. This space expands inferiorly as the **lumbar cistern** between the end of the spinal cord at the L1/L2 vertebra, and the end of the arachnoid-lined dural sac at the S2 vertebra.

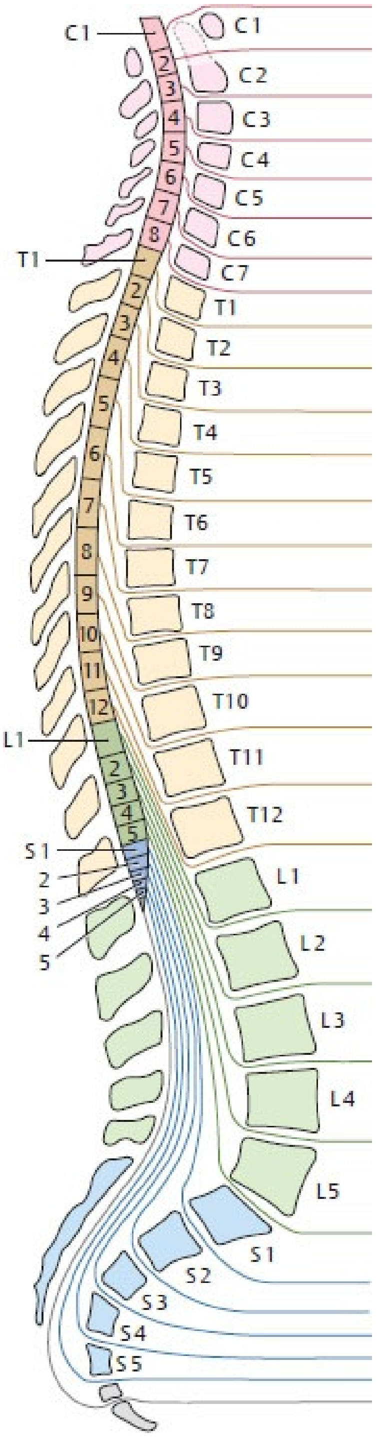

C1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
T1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
L1
2
3
4
5
S1
2
3
4
5
C1
C2
C3
C4
C5
C6
C7
T1
T2
T3
T4
T5
T6
T7
T8
T9
T10
T11
T12
L1
L2
L3
L4
L5
S1
S2
S3
S4
S5

Fig. 3.19 Spinal cord segments and vertebral levels

The spinal cord is divided into four major regions: cervical, thoracic, lumbar, and sacral. Spinal cord segments are numbered by the exit points of their associated spinal nerves. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed.

New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

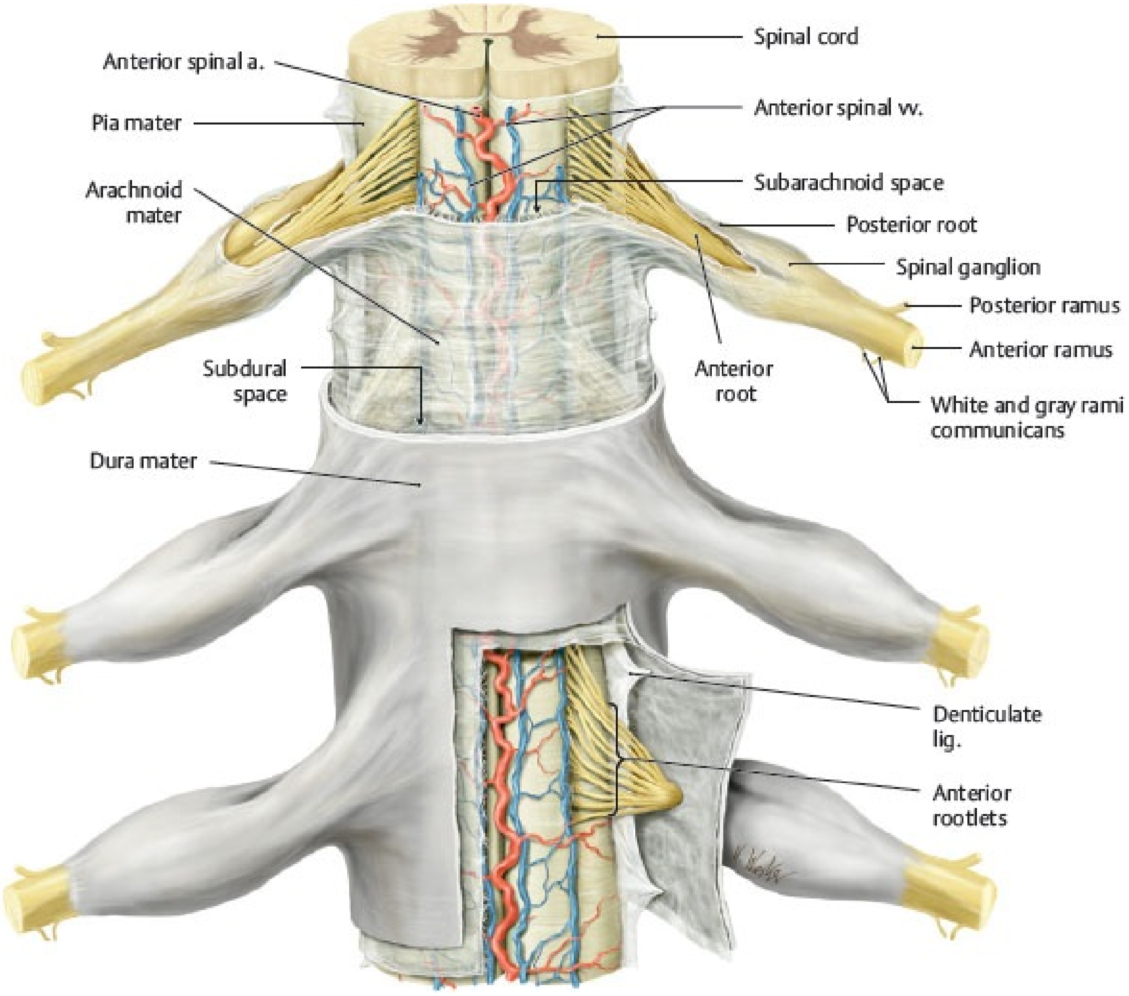

Spinal cord
Anterior spinal a.
Anterior spinal vv.
Pia mater
Subarachnoid space
Arachnoid mater
Posterior root
Spinal ganglion
Posterior ramus
Anterior ramus
Subdural space
Anterior root
White and gray rami communicans
Dura mater
Denticulate lig.
Anterior rootlets

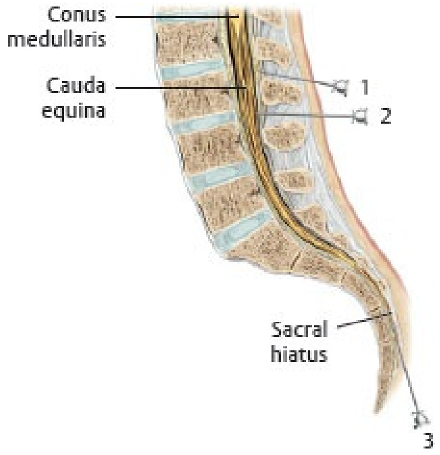
Fig. 3.20 Spinal cord and its meningeal layers

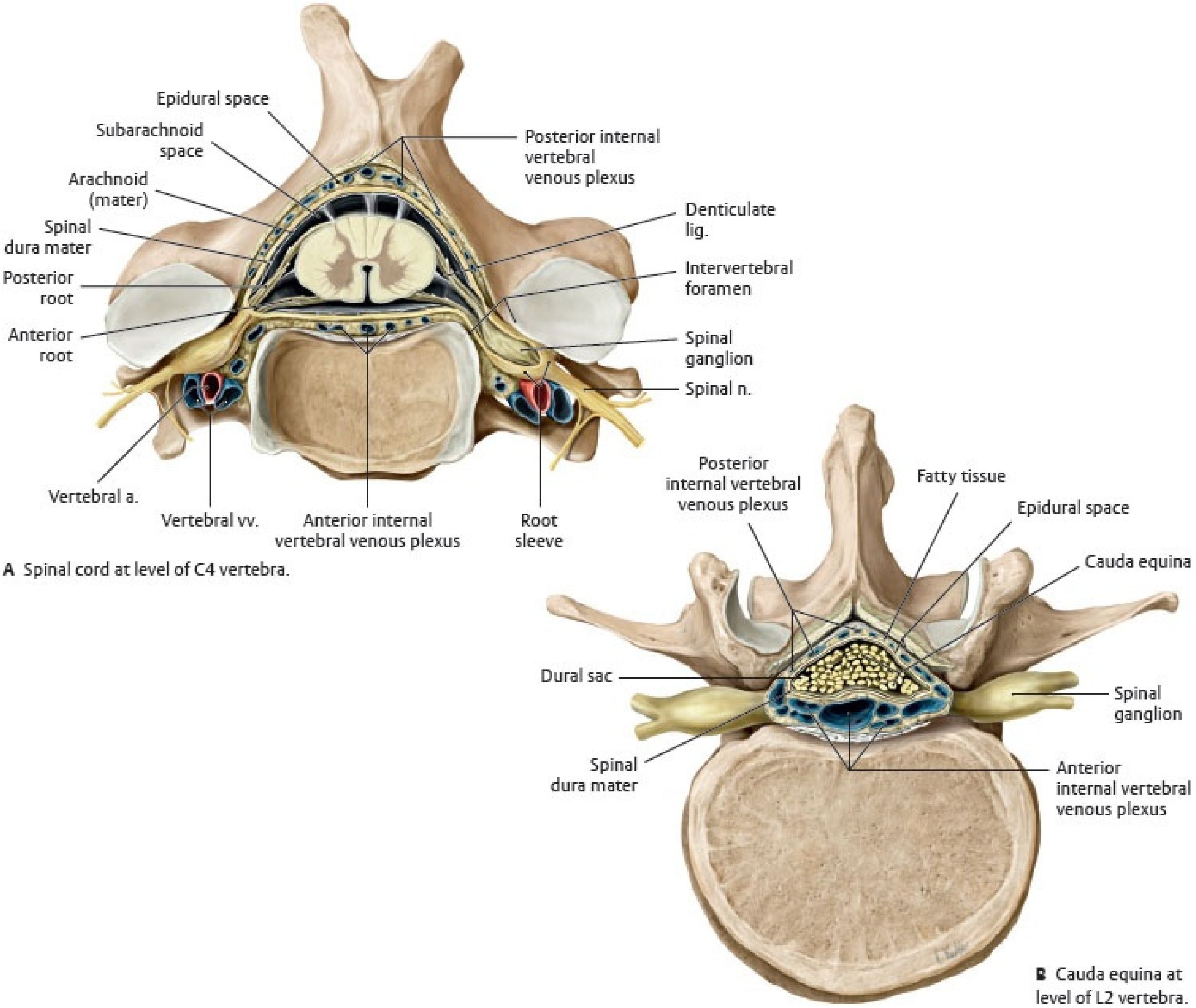
Posterior view. The dura mater is opened, and the arachnoid mater is sectioned. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 3.9: CLINICAL CORRELATION

LUMBAR PUNCTURE, SPINAL ANESTHESIA, AND EPIDURAL ANESTHESIA

A lumbar puncture, used to extract cerebro spinal fluid from the spinal subarachnoid space, is administered by inserting a needle between the spinous process of L3 and L4 (sometimes between L4 and L5). The nee-dle pierces the ligamentum flavum and wall of the dural sac before entering the lumbar cistern (*2*). The injection of a local anes-thetic for spinal anesthesia is also admin-istered in this manner. A similar approach may be used for epidural anesthesia (*1*), to anesthetize emerging spinal nerves, but the anesthetic is injected into the epidural space without entering the dural sac. A cau-dal approach through the sacral hiatus also allows access to the epidural space (*3*).


Conus medullaris
Cauda equina
1
2
Sacral hiatus
3


Epidural space
Subarachnoid space
Arachnoid (mater)
Spinal dura mater
Posterior root
Anterior root
Posterior internal vertebral venous plexus
Denticulate lig.
Intervertebral foramen
Spinal ganglion
Spinal n.
Vertebral a.
Vertebral vv.
Anterior internal vertebral venous plexus
Root sleeve
Posterior internal vertebral venous plexus
Fatty tissue
Epidural space
Cauda equina
Dural sac
Spinal ganglion
Spinal dura mater
Anterior internal vertebral venous plexus

A Spinal cord at level of C4 vertebra.

B Cauda equina at level of L2 vertebra.

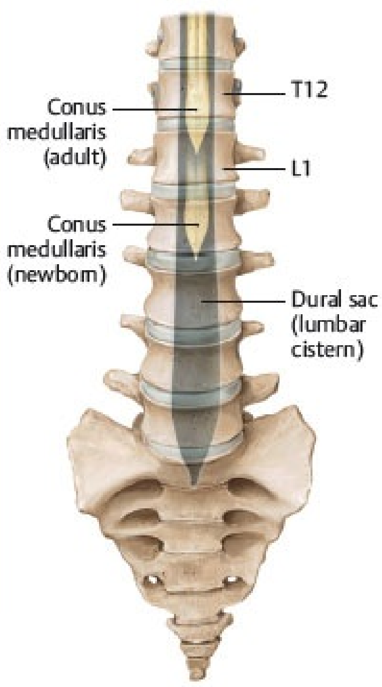
Fig. 3.21 Spinal cord in situ: transverse section

Superior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 3.10: DEVELOPMENTAL CORRELATION

DEVELOPMENTAL CHANGES OF THE SPINAL CORD, DURAL SAC, AND VERTEBRAL COLUMN

During postnatal development, the longitudinal growth of the vertebral column exceeds that of the spinal cord. At birth, the conus medullaris is at the level of the L3 vertebra, but in the average adult it lies at the level of the L1 or L2 vertebra. At all ages, the lumbar cistern of the dural sac extends into the sacral canal.



Anterior view.

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Blood Supply to the Spinal Cord

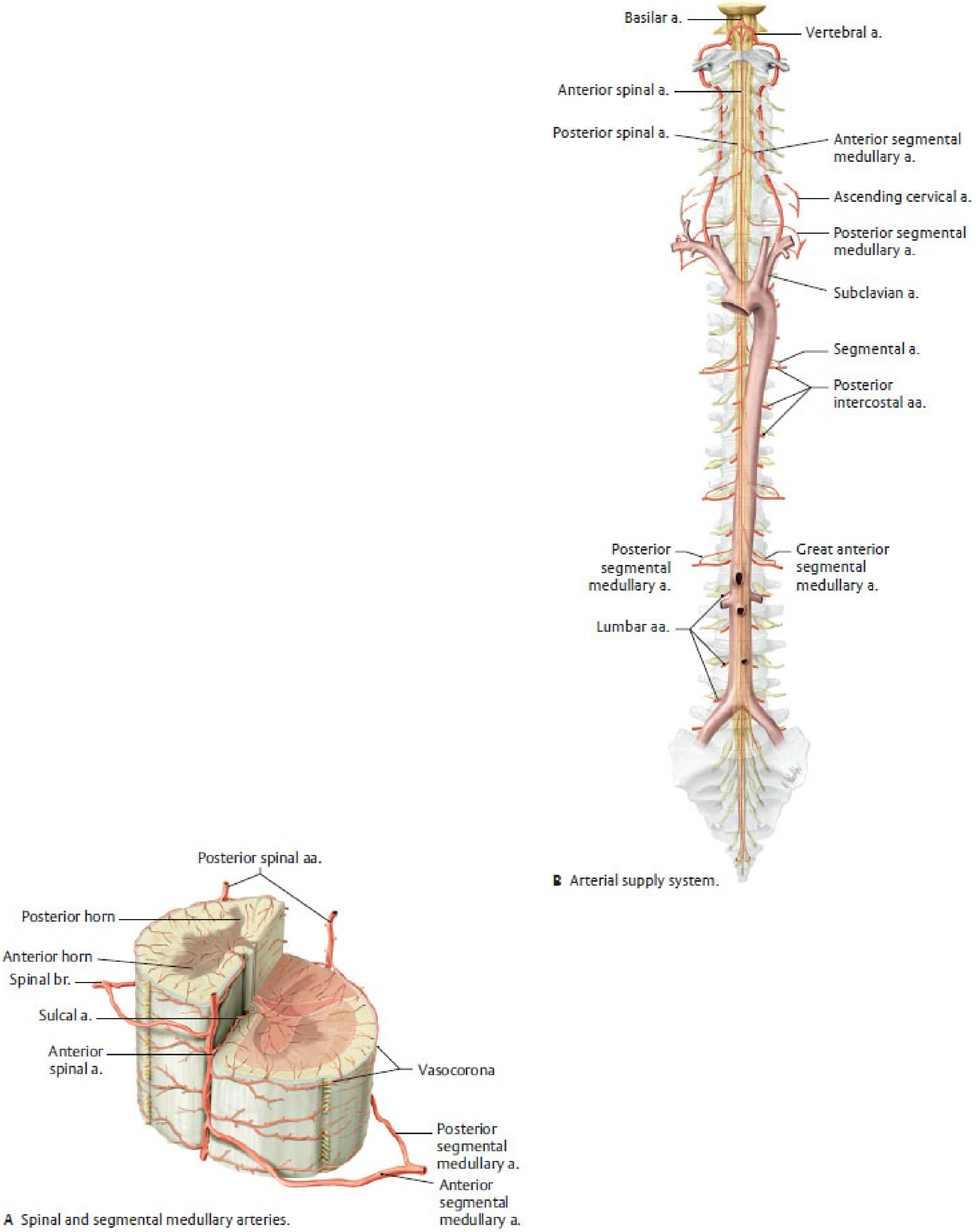
Arterial blood supply to the spinal cord arises from the vertebral arteries as well as from branches of the subclavian arteries and descending aorta **(Fig. 3.22)**.

— Longitudinal spinal arteries supply the superior part of the spinal cord.

- A single **anterior spinal artery** arises from the two vertebral arteries (branches of the subclavian arteries) and supplies the anterior two thirds

  of the spinal cord.
  - Paired **posterior spinal arteries** arise from the vertebral arteries (or one of their branches, the posterior cerebellar artery) and supply the posterior third of the spinal cord.
- **Anterior and posterior segmental medullary arteries** are large, irregularly spaced vessels that communicate with the spinal arteries.
  - They arise from branches of the subclavian artery and segmental arteries in the thoracic and lumbar regions.
  - The medullary arteries enter the vertebral canal through the intervertebral foramina and are found mainly at the cervical and lumbar enlargements.
- The **great anterior segmental medullary artery** (of Adamkiewicz), a single large, usually left-sided vessel, can provide an important contribution to the circulation of the lower two thirds of the spinal cord.
  - It arises as a branch of a lower thoracic or lumbar segmental artery.
  - It enters the vertebral canal through an intervertebral foramen in the lower thorax or upper lumbar region.
- The **anterior and posterior radicular arteries** are small arteries that supply the roots of the spinal nerves and the superficial gray matter of the spinal cord. They do not communicate with the spinal arteries.

Veins of the spinal cord, which are more numerous than the arter-ies, have the same distribution, anastomose freely with one another, and drain into the internal vertebral plexus **(Fig. 3.23)**.

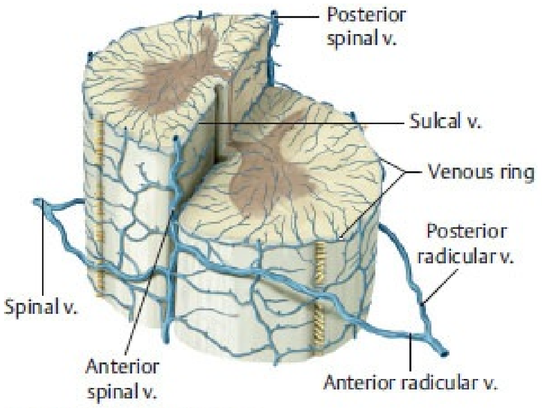

Basilar a.
Vertebral a.
Anterior spinal a.
Posterior spinal a.
Anterior segmental medullary a.
Ascending cervical a.
Posterior segmental medullary a.
Subclavian a.
Segmental a.
Posterior intercostal aa.
Posterior segmental medullary a.
Great anterior segmental medullary a.
Lumbar aa.
Posterior spinal aa.
Posterior horn
Anterior horn
Spinal br.
Sulcal a.
Anterior spinal a.
Vasocorona
Posterior segmental medullary a.
Anterior segmental medullary a.

A Spinal and segmental medullary arteries.

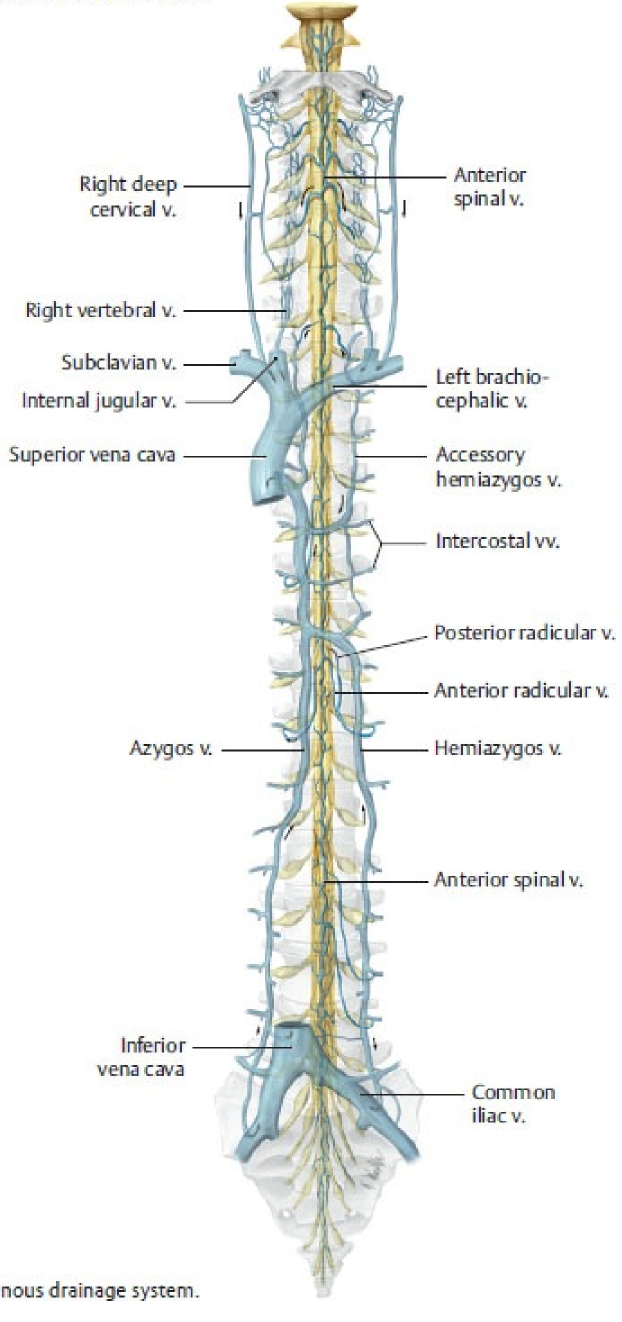
B Arterial supply system.

Fig. 3.22 Arteries of the spinal cord

The unpaired anterior and paired posterior spinal arteries typically arise from the vertebral arteries. As they descend within the vertebral canal, the spinal arteries are reinforced by anterior and posterior segmental medullary arteries. Depending on the spinal level, these reinforcing branches may arise from the vertebral, ascending or deep cervical, posterior intercostal, lumbar, or lateral sacral arteries. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Posterior spinal v.
Sulcal v.
Venous ring
Posterior radicular v.
Spinal v.
Anterior spinal v.
Anterior radicular v.

A Spinal and radicular veins.


Right deep cervical v.
Anterior spinal v.
Right vertebral v.
Subclavian v.
Left brachio-cephalic v.
Internal jugular v.
Superior vena cava
Accessory hemiazygos v.
Intercostal vv.
Posterior radicular v.
Anterior radicular v.
Azygos v.
Hemiazygos v.
Anterior spinal v.
Inferior vena cava
Common iliac v.

B Venous drainage system.

Fig. 3.23 Veins of the spinal cord

The interior of the spinal cord drains via venous plexuses into an anterior and a posterior spinal vein. The radicular and spinal veins connect the veins of the spinal cord with the internal vertebral venous plexus. The intervertebral and basivertebral veins connect the internal and external vertebral venous plexuses, which drain into the azygos system. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

3.3 Spinal Nerves

Spinal nerves transmit information between peripheral body tis-sues and the spinal cord. A single pair of spinal nerves arises from each spinal cord segment.

- There are 31 pairs of spinal nerves: 8 cervical, 12 thoracic, 5 lumbar, 5 sacral, and 1 coccygeal. Each pair is named for the spinal cord segment from which it arises.
- Spinal nerves are formed by the merging of **(Fig. 3.24)**
  - an **anterior root** carrying motor (efferent) fibers whose cell bodies are located in the anterior horn of the spinal cord, and
  - a **posterior root** carrying sensory (afferent) fibers whose cell bodies are located in a spinal ganglion located outside the spinal cord.
- Spinal nerves pass through the intervertebral foramina at the corresponding vertebral level.
  - Cervical nerves C1–C7 exit the vertebral canal superior to the vertebra of the same number (e.g., C4 spinal nerve exits between C3 and C4 vertebrae).
  - C8 spinal nerve exits below the C7 vertebra (between the C7 and T1 vertebrae).
  - Spinal nerves T1–Co1 exit the canal inferior to the corresponding vertebra.
- Because the spinal cord is shorter than the vertebral column, nerve roots from the lower spinal cord (L2–Co1) must descend below the conus medullaris within the lumbar cistern of the dural sac before exiting through the respective intervertebral foramina. This loose group of nerve roots within the dural sac is called the **cauda equina** (see **Figs. 3.19** and **3.21**).

Peripheral Nerve Pathways of the Somatic Nervous system

The somatic nervous system innervates structures under conscious control including the skin and skeletal muscles.

- As spinal nerves emerge from the intervertebral foramen, they split to form rami (branches) that contain both sensory and motor fibers (except C1, which contains only motor fibers) **(Fig. 3.24)**.
  - **Posterior rami** innervate skin and muscles of the posterior trunk, head, and neck.
  - **Anterior rami** form peripheral nerves and plexuses that innervate the rest of the body.
- Posterior rami do not form plexuses, and most are referred to by the spinal cord segment from which they originate (e.g., T4 posterior ramus). The suboccipital n. (C1), greater occipital n. (C2), and third occipital n. (C3) that innervate the scalp are the only individually named posterior rami **(Fig. 3.25A)**.
- Anterior rami have a larger distribution than posterior rami, and most have a more complex course **(Fig. 3.25)**.
  - Anterior rami of thoracic spinal nerves do not form plexuses but become **intercostal nerves,** which run in the spaces between ribs to innervate the thoracic and anterolateral abdominal walls.
  - Anterior rami of the cervical, lumbar, and sacral regions form plexuses that give rise to multi-segmental nerves that may carry only sensory or only motor fibers, or they may be mixed nerves, carrying both sensory and motor fibers. These nerves are usually given specific names (e.g., radial n., femoral n.). These somatic plexuses include:
    - Cervical plexus (C1–C4) innervates muscles of the neck and skin over the neck and scalp.
    - Brachial plexus (C5–T1) innervates the pectoral girdle and upper limb.
    - Lumbar plexus (L1–L4) innervates the lower anterior abdominal wall and anterior thigh.
    - Sacral plexus (L4–S3) innervates the gluteal region, posterior thigh, and leg.
- In somatic nerve plexuses, sensory nerve fibers associated with a single spinal cord segment are distributed among several peripheral nerves. Traveling from the periphery toward the spinal cord, the sensory fibers converge to enter the spinal cord via the posterior root. There they synapse with sensory neurons in the posterior horn of the spinal cord **(Fig. 3.26)**.
- Sensory roots from each spinal cord segment correspond to the sensory (cutaneous) innervation of a particular area of skin, known as a **dermatome** **(Fig. 3.27)**. Because sensory fibers from each segment are distributed

among multiple peripheral nerves, there is a large area of overlap between adjacent dermatomes. Thus, the lesion of a single sensory nerve root (such as by the impingement of a herniated disk) would have a minimal effect.

- Typically peripheral sensory nerves carry fibers from several spinal cord levels. Lesions of a sensory nerve, therefore, would affect a larger cutaneous territory covering multiple derma tomes **(Fig. 3.28)**.
- Cutaneous sensations transmitted by somatic sensory nerves include those of pain, pressure (touch), and temperature. Sensory nerves also transmit a sense of position, or **proprio- ception,** that provides information about the spatial position of the limbs.
- Similar to the distribution of sensory fibers in a plexus, motor fibers from multiple spinal cord levels may combine in a peripheral nerve to innervate a single skeletal muscle. In other cases, muscles may be innervated by a single spinal cord segment. Muscles are divided into two groups based on their innervation patterns **(Fig. 3.29)**:
    - **Monosegmentally** innervated muscles are innervated by motor neurons from a single spinal cord segment.
    - **Polysegmentally** innervated muscles are innervated by neurons whose nuclei extend over several spinal cord segments.
- **Myotomes** represent the muscle mass that is innervated by a single spinal cord segment. For example, although the femoral n. and the obturator n. both contain anterior rami of L2–L4, they innervate different muscles. The L2 myotome would comprise all of the muscle fibers innervated by the L2 spinal segment, whether carried in the femoral n. or obturator n.

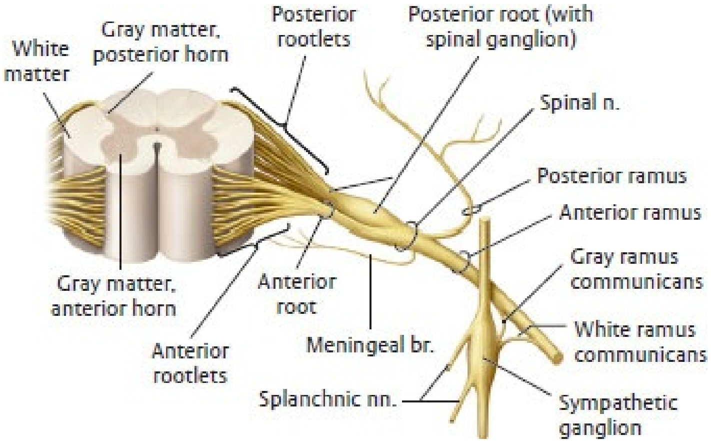
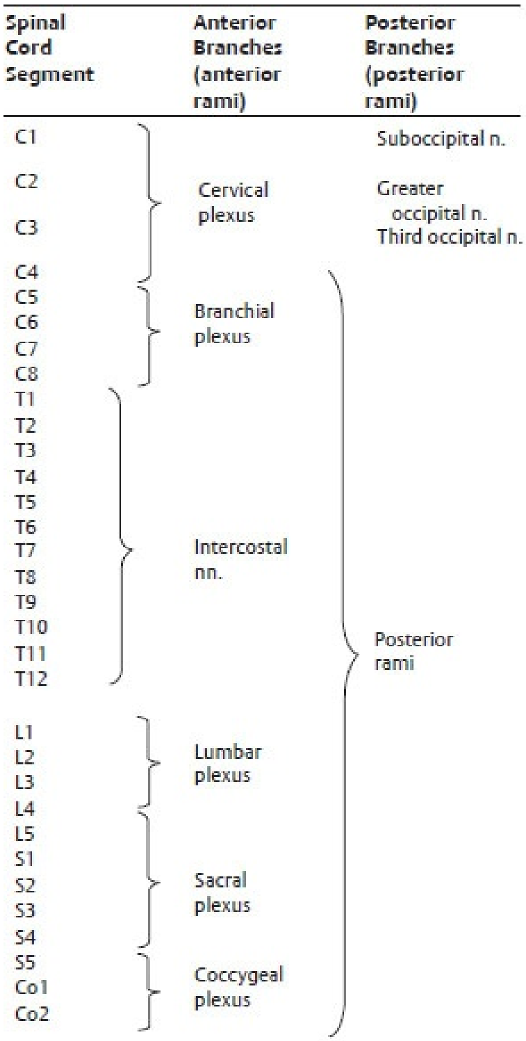

White matter
Gray matter, posterior horn
Posterior rootlets
Posterior root (with spinal ganglion)
Spinal n.
Posterior ramus
Anterior ramus
Gray ramus communicans
White ramus communicans
Sympathetic ganglion
Splanchnic nn.
Meningeal br.
Anterior root
Anterior rootlets
Gray matter, anterior horn

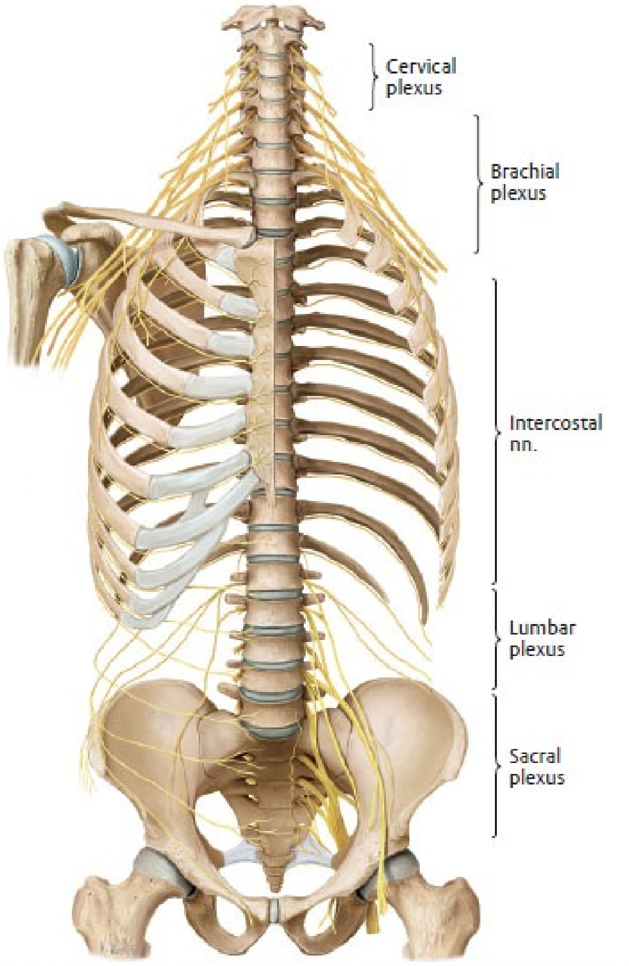
Fig. 3.24 Structure of a spinal cord segment

Anterior view. Spinal cord segments are defined as a section of the spinal cord that is associated with a single pair of spinal nerves. The nerves arise as anterior (motor) and posterior (sensory) rootlets that combine to form anterior and posterior roots, respectively. The two roots fuse within the intervertebral foramen to form a mixed spinal nerve. Subsequent branches of the spinal nerve contain both motor and sensory fibers (except the meningeal branch, which is only sensory). (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)



Spinal Cord Segment	Anterior Branches (anterior rami)	Posterior Branches (posterior rami)
C1	Cervical plexus	Suboccipital n.
C2		Greater occipital n.
C3		Third occipital n.
C4		Posterior rami
C5	Branchial plexus	
C6		
C7		
C8		
T1	Intercostal nn.	
T2		
T3		
T4		
T5		
T6		
T7		
T8		
T9		
T10		
T11		
T12		
L1	Lumbar plexus	
L2		
L3		
L4	Sacral plexus	
L5		
S1		
S2		
S3		
S4		
S5	Coccygeal plexus	
Co1		
Co2		

A Anterior and posterior branches of the spinal nerves.



B Nerves of the trunk wall, anterior view. *Removed:* Anterior part of the left half of the thoracic cage.

Fig. 3.25 Nerves of the trunk wall

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

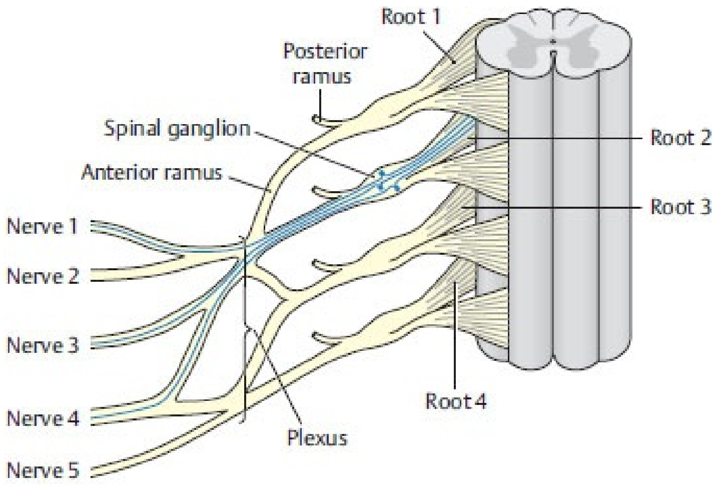

Root 1
Posterior ramus
Spinal ganglion
Anterior ramus
Root 2
Root 3
Nerve 1
Nerve 2
Nerve 3
Nerve 4
Nerve 5
Root 4
Plexus

Fig. 3.26 Principles of plexus formation: sensory nerves

The axons, which form the afferents from a dermatome, extend from that dermatome to a single root in the spinal cord. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th Edition. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

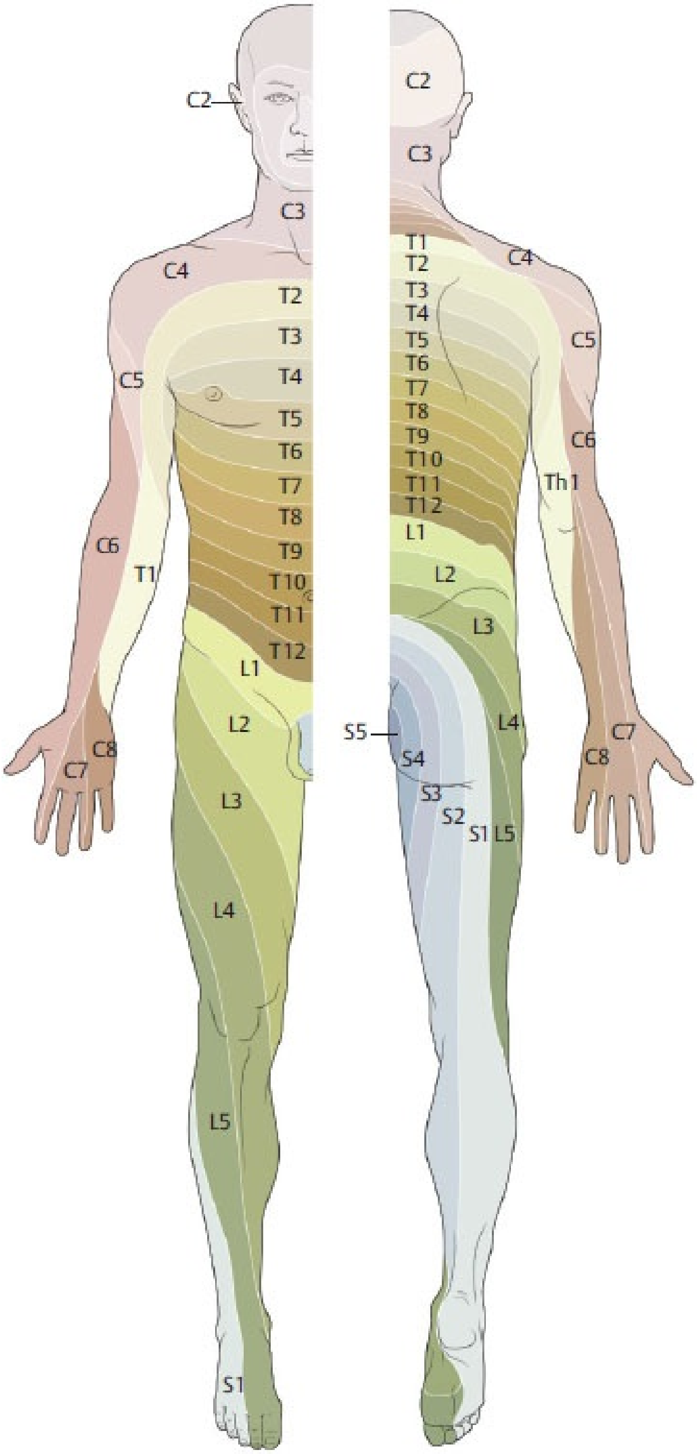

C2
C3
C4
T2
T3
T4
C5
T5
T6
T7
T8
C6
T9
T1
T10
T11
T12
L1
L2
C8
C7
L3
L4
L5
S1
C2
C3
T1
T2
C4
T3
T4
T5
C5
T6
T7
T8
T9
C6
T10
T11
Th1
T12
L1
L2
L3
L4
C7
S5
S4
C8
S3
S2
S1
L5

Fig. 3.27 Dermatomes of the head, trunk, and limbs

Each spinal cord segment innervates a particular skin area (dermatome). Dermatomes are band-like areas of skin innervated by a pair of spinal nerves arising from a single spinal cord segment. Since spinal nerve C1 carries only motor fibers, there is no corresponding dermatome. (From Schuenke M, Schulte

E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- Muscles that are innervated by a single segment of the spinal cord (monosegmental) can be evaluated clinically by testing a corresponding **reflex**. Reflexes, such as the patellar tendon reflex, are mediated by motor (efferent limb) and sensory (afferent limb) neurons that are located within a single seg-ment of the spinal cord.

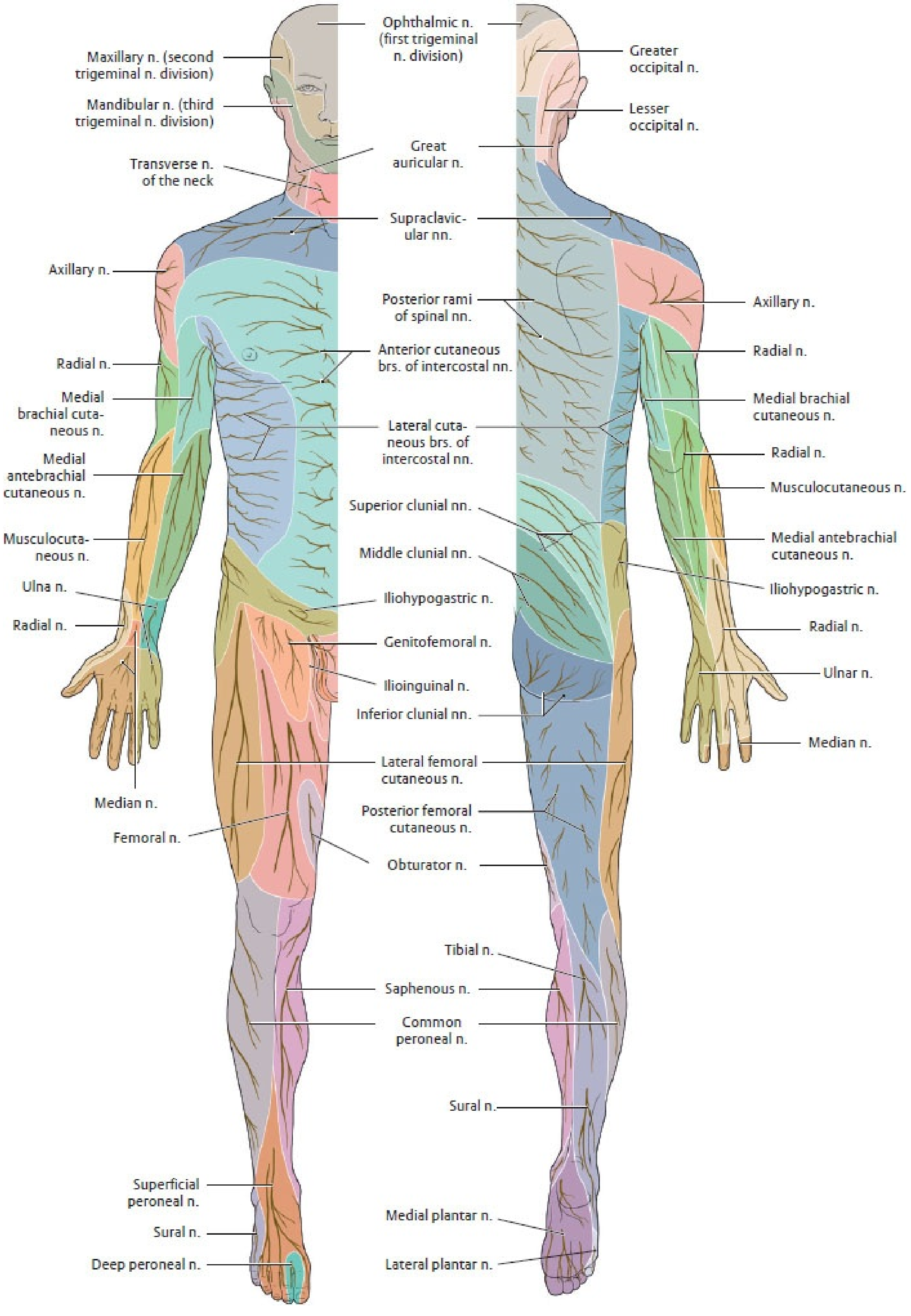

Ophthalmic n. (first trigeminal n. division)
Maxillary n. (second trigeminal n. division)
Greater occipital n.
Mandibular n. (third trigeminal n. division)
Lesser occipital n.
Great auricular n.
Transverse n. of the neck
Supraclavicular nn.
Axillary n.
Posterior rami of spinal nn.
Axillary n.
Anterior cutaneous brs. of intercostal nn.
Radial n.
Radial n.
Medial brachial cutaneous n.
Medial brachial cutaneous n.
Lateral cutaneous brs. of intercostal nn.
Radial n.
Medial antebrachial cutaneous n.
Musculocutaneous n.
Superior clunial nn.
Musculocutaneous n.
Medial antebrachial cutaneous n.
Middle clunial nn.
Ulna n.
Iliohypogastric n.
Iliohypogastric n.
Radial n.
Radial n.
Genitofemoral n.
Ilioinguinal n.
Ulnar n.
Inferior clunial nn.
Median n.
Lateral femoral cutaneous n.
Median n.
Posterior femoral cutaneous n.
Femoral n.
Obturator n.
Tibial n.
Saphenous n.
Common peroneal n.
Sural n.
Superficial peroneal n.
Medial plantar n.
Sural n.
Deep peroneal n.
Lateral plantar n.

Fig. 3.28 Pattern of peripheral sensory cutaneous sensation

Sensory loss patterns that are associated with a peripheral nerve lesion overlap multiple dermatomes. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

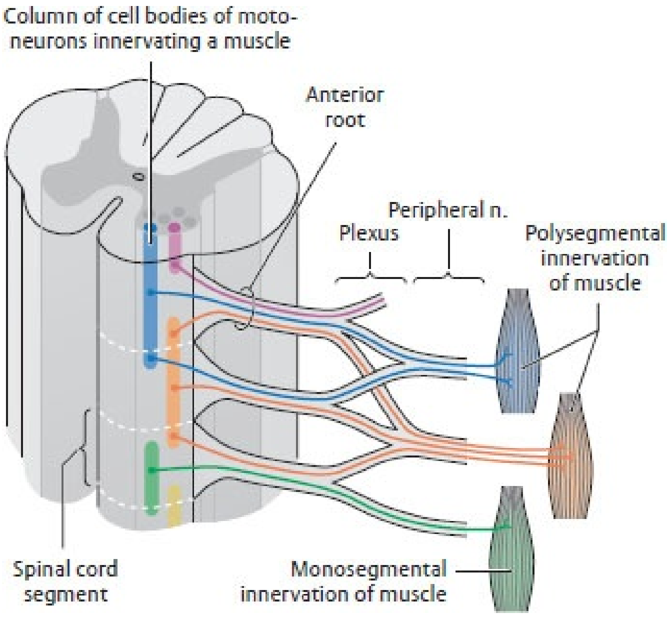

Column of cell bodies of moto-neurons innervating a muscle
Anterior root
Peripheral n.
Plexus
Polysegmental innervation of muscle
Spinal cord segment
Monosegmental innervation of muscle

Fig. 3.29 Monosegmental and polysegmental innervation

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Peripheral Nerve Pathways of the Autonomic Nervous System

The autonomic nervous system, the visceral part of the peripheral nervous system regulates the internal environment in response to both internal and external stimuli.

- Its two divisions often have antagonistic effects on the same organ and coordinate these responses to maintain a homeo-static internal environment (Fig. 3.30; Table 3.2):
  - The **sympathetic division** allows the body to respond to stress (“fight or flight”).
  - The **parasympathetic division** allows the body to maintain, or return to, a state of homeostasis (“rest and digest”).
- Nerve pathways of both the sympathetic and parasympathetic systems

consist of a two-neuron chain between the central nervous system (CNS) and the target organ: a proximal preganglionic (presynaptic) neuron and distal postganglionic (postsynaptic) neuron that synapse with each other in an intervening ganglion **(Fig. 3.31)**.

- Autonomic nerves often form dense plexuses, which travel to their target organs along arterial routes. Plexuses are named for the organs they innervate, such as cardiac or hepatic, or for the artery they follow, such as internal carotid, celiac, or renal.
- The sympathetic division is known as the thoracolumbar component because its nerves arise from the lateral horn of the spinal cord in the thoracic and lumbar regions (T1–L2). They exit through the intervertebral foramina with the motor fibers of the corresponding spinal nerves.
- In addition to sympathetic nerves, the sympathetic system includes paired **sympathetic trunks**, chains of **paravertebral ganglia** that contain the cell bodies of postganglionic sympa-thetic nerves**.** The trunks run along each side of the vertebral bodies from C1 to S5. The paravertebral ganglia are connected to spinal nerves via
  - **gray rami communicans,** which connect paravertebral ganglia at all levels (C1–S5) to the corresponding spinal nerve; and
  - **white rami communicans**, which connect only paraver tebral ganglia between T1 and L2 to the corresponding spinal nerve.
- Shortly after emerging from the vertebral column, the pregangli-onic sympathetic fibers leave the spinal nerve via white rami communicans to enter the paravertebral ganglion. From this point the sympathetic fibers can take three different routes:
  - They can synapse with the postganglionic neuron in the paravertebral ganglia at that level and return to the spinal nerve via the gray rami communicans. As part of the spinal nerve, these fibers will follow the sensory and motor fibers of the anterior and posterior rami to innervate structures in the dermatome.
  - They can course up or down within the trunk to synapse with ganglia at other levels. The postganglionic fibers then join the spinal nerves at those levels. This route allows sympathetic fibers to be distributed to spinal nerves along the entire length of the spinal cord, and thus to all regions of the body, even though they originate only from the thoracolumbar segment.
  - They can pass through the paravertebral ganglia without synapsing to form **thoracic, lumbar,** or **sacral splanchnic nerves**. These synapse in **prevertebral ganglia**, such as the celiac ganglion (see Section 11.2).

Postganglionic fibers contribute to autonomic plexuses in the thorax, abdomen, and pelvis that travel along periarterial routes to innervate viscera in those regions.

- The parasympathetic division is known as the **craniosacral** component because its nerves arise from the brain and the S2–S4 segments of the sacral spinal cord.
  - Preganglionic parasympathetic fibers that arise from the brain travel with cranial nerves III, VII, IX, and X and synapse in parasympathetic ganglia of the head or, in the case of the vagus nerve, ganglia near the target organ. The neural pathways involved are discussed in detail in Section 26.3.
    - The vagus nerve is the only cranial nerve that extends inferior to the neck. Its parasympathetic fibers reach as far as the transverse colon in the abdomen. Thus, it provides parasympathetic innervation to all thoracic viscera and most of the abdominal viscera.
  - Similar to sympathetic fibers in the thoracolumbar region, sacral parasympathetic nerves leave the spinal cord with the motor nerves of the corresponding somatic spinal nerves (S2–S4). These preganglionic parasympathetic fibers are known as **pelvic splanchnic nerves.** They con-tribute to autonomic plexuses in the pelvis and abdomen and synapse in small ganglia located close to, or within, their target organ.
- Smooth muscle in the skin and body wall (important for vasoconstriction, piloerection, gland secretion) does not receive any parasympathetic innervation. Sympathetic innervation is responsible for constriction of blood vessels; vasodilation results when sympathetic stimulation ceases.
- Visceral sensory fibers convey sensations from physiologic processes, such as distension of the bladder. Nociceptive (pain) fibers have been shown to accompany both sympa-thetic and parasympathetic nerves.
  - Nociceptive fibers from viscera travel in the splanchnic nerves to sympathetic ganglia and reach the spinal nerve by way of the white rami communicans. Like somatic sensory neurons, their cell bodies are located in spinal ganglia. They enter the posterior horn of the spinal cord through the posterior roots.
  - Nociceptive fibers traveling with cranial parasympathetic fibers have their cell bodies in the inferior or superior ganglia of the vagus nerve (cranial nerve X). Those traveling with sacral parasympathetic nerves have their cell bodies in the sacral spinal ganglia of S2–S4.

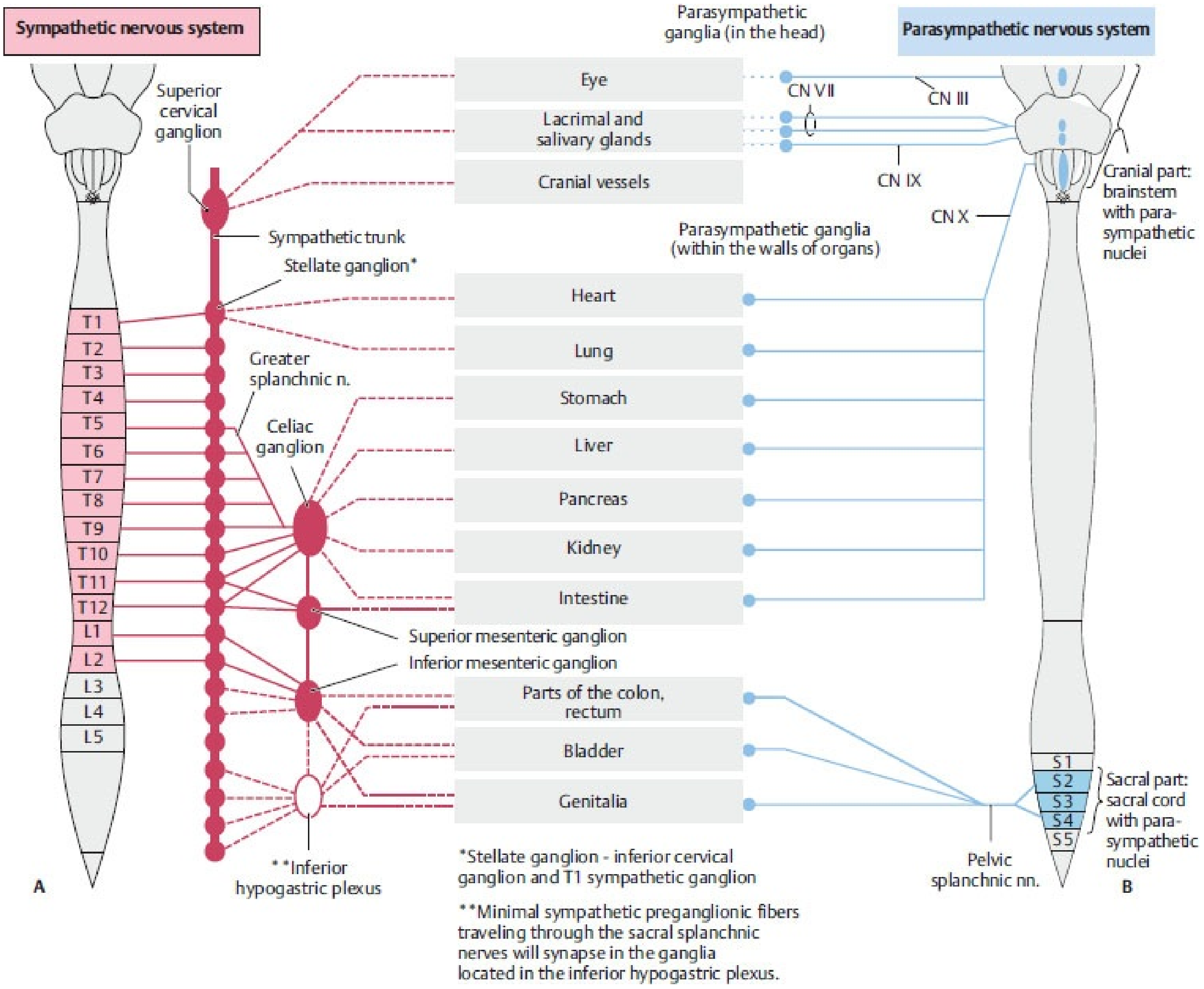

Sympathetic nervous system
Superior cervical ganglion
Sympathetic trunk
Stellate ganglion*
Greater splanchnic n.
Celiac ganglion
T1
T2
T3
T4
T5
T6
T7
T8
T9
T10
T11
T12
L1
L2
L3
L4
L5
A
Superior mesenteric ganglion
Inferior mesenteric ganglion
**Inferior hypogastric plexus
Eye
Lacrimal and salivary glands
Cranial vessels
Heart
Lung
Stomach
Liver
Pancreas
Kidney
Intestine
Parts of the colon, rectum
Bladder
Genitalia
Parasympathetic ganglia (in the head)
Parasympathetic ganglia (within the walls of organs)
Parasympathetic nervous system
CN VII
CN III
CN IX
CN X
Cranial part: brainstem with parasympathetic nuclei
S1
S2
S3
S4
S5
Sacral part: sacral cord with parasympathetic nuclei
Pelvic splanchnic nn.
B
*Stellate ganglion - inferior cervical ganglion and T1 sympathetic ganglion
**Minimal sympathetic preganglionic fibers traveling through the sacral splanchnic nerves will synapse in the ganglia located in the inferior hypogastric plexus.

Fig. 3.30 Autonomic nervous system

The autonomic nervous system is subdivided into **(A)** sympathetic (thoracolumbar) and **(B)** parasympathetic (craniosacral) divisions. Each utilizes a two -neuron pathway in which preganglionic neurons synapse with postganglionic neurons in peripheral autonomic ganglia. (From Gilroy AM, MacPher-son BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Table 3.2 Effects of the Sympathetic and Parasympathetic Nervous Systems

Organ	Sympathetic Nervous System	Parasympathetic Nervous System
Eye	Pupillary dilation	Pupillary constriction and

		increased curvature of the lens
Salivary glands	Decreased salivation (scant, viscous)	Increased salivation (copious, watery)
Heart	Elevation of the heart rate	Slowing of the heart rate
Lungs	Decreased bronchial secretions; bronchial dilation	Increased bronchial secretions; bronchial constriction
Gastrointestinal tract	Decreased secretions and motor activity	Increased secretions and motor activity
Pancreas	Decreased secretion from the endocrine part of the gland	Increased secretion
Male sex organs	Ejaculation	Erection
Skin	Vasoconstriction, sweat, secretion, piloerection	No parasympathetic innervation

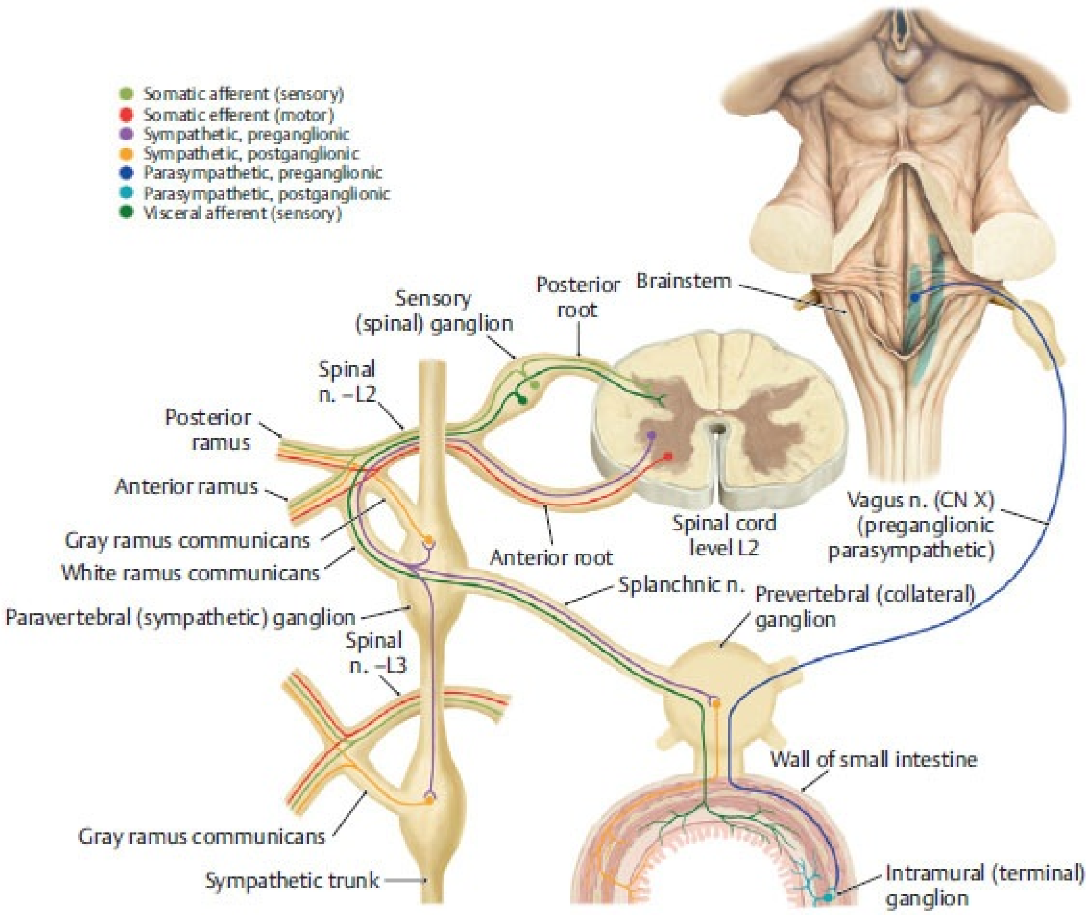

● Somatic afferent (sensory)
● Somatic efferent (motor)
● Sympathetic, preganglionic
● Sympathetic, postganglionic
● Parasympathetic, preganglionic
● Parasympathetic, postganglionic
● Visceral afferent (sensory)
Sensory (spinal) ganglion
Posterior root
Brainstem
Spinal n. –L2
Posterior ramus
Anterior ramus
Gray ramus communicans
White ramus communicans
Paravertebral (sympathetic) ganglion
Anterior root
Spinal cord level L2
Vagus n. (CN X) (preganglionic parasympathetic)
Splanchnic n.
Prevertebral (collateral) ganglion
Spinal n. –L3
Wall of small intestine
Gray ramus communicans
Sympathetic trunk
Intramural (terminal) ganglion

Fig. 3.31 Circuitry of the autonomic nervous system

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 3.11: CLINICAL CORRELATION

REFERRED PAIN

Referred pain is a sensation that originates from viscera but is perceived as if coming from an overlying or nearby somatic structure. It occurs because the somatic and visceral sensory fibers converge onto the same spinal cord segment. Diaphragmatic irritation from a splenic abscess, for example, is typically referred to the shoulder because both the diaphragm and the skin over the shoulder convey sensory information to C3–C5 segments of the spinal cord (**Fig. 3.32**).

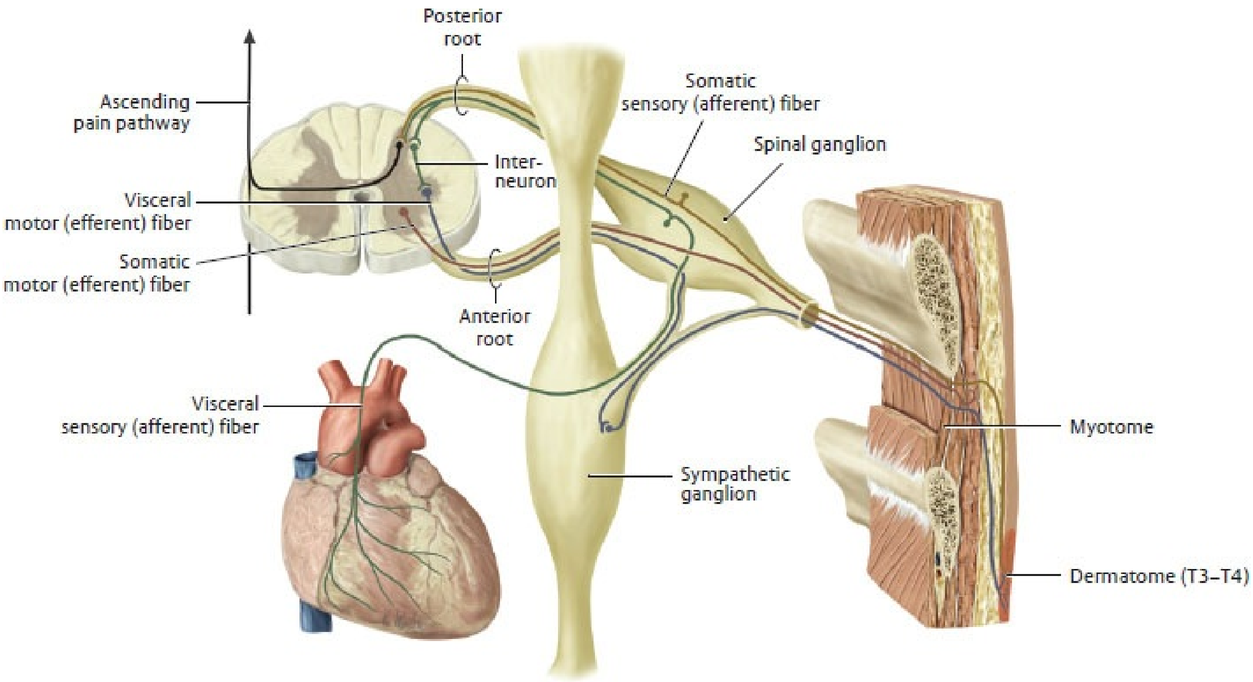

Posterior root
Ascending pain pathway
Somatic sensory (afferent) fiber
Spinal ganglion
Inter-neuron
Visceral motor (efferent) fiber
Somatic motor (efferent) fiber
Anterior root
Visceral sensory (afferent) fiber
Myotome
Sympathetic ganglion
Dermatome (T3–T4)

Fig. 3.32 Referred pain

It is believed that nociceptive sensory fibers from dermatomes (somatic pain) and internal organs (visceral pain) terminate on the same relay neurons in the spinal cord. The convergence of somatic and visceral sensory fibers confuses the relationship between the perceived and actual sites of pain, a phenomenon known as referred pain. The pain is typically perceived at the somatic site given that somatic pain is well localized while visceral pain is not. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

3.4 Muscles of the Back and Suboccipital Region

— **Extrinsic muscles,** the most superficial muscles that overlie the back, stabilize and move the upper limb. (See Chapter 19 for a discussion of the muscles of the upper limb.)
  - Extrinsic muscles include the trapezius, latissimus dorsi, levator scapulae, and rhomboid major and minor.

— **Intrinsic muscles,** which attach to vertebrae or ribs, move and support the vertebral column **(**Table 3.3**)**.
  - They are arranged in superficial, intermediate, and deep layers **(**Figs. 3.33 and 3.34**)**.
  - The superficial layer includes the **splenius** muscle group that covers

    the deeper neck muscles laterally and posteri-orly. These muscles extend and rotate the head and neck. They extend superolaterally from the spinous processes of cervical and upper thoracic vertebrae to the occipital bone and transverse processes of C1 and C2.

  - The intermediate layer includes the **erector spinae** muscle group that extends from the midline of the back to the angle of the ribs laterally. These large muscles are the main extensors and stabilizers of the thoracic and lumbar vertebral column. They include:
  - the **iliocostalis,** the most lateral column that arises from the **thoracolumbar fascia,** the sacrum, iliac crest, and ribs and extends superolaterally to the ribs and to cervical and lumbar vertebrae.
  - the **longissimus,** the middle column that arises from the sacrum, iliac crest, spinous processes of lumbar vertebrae, and transverse processes of thoracic and cervical vertebrae. It inserts superiorly on the temporal bone of the skull, to cervical, thoracic and lumbar vertebrae and to the ribs.
  - the **spinalis,** the most medial column that extends between the spinous processes of cervical and thoracic vertebrae.
- The deep layer includes short muscles at multiple verte-bral levels that produce small movements along the entire vertebral column**.** They are divided into a **transversospina-lis** muscle group and a **deep segmental** muscle group. The transversospinalis muscles extend between the transverse and spinous processes of the vertebrae. They include:
  - the **semispinalis** muscles, the most superficial group ◦◦ the **multifidus,** most prominent in the lumbar region ◦◦ the **rotatores,** the deepest muscles of the transversospinalis group, best developed in the thoracic region
- The deep segmental muscles are minor muscles of the back. They include the **interspinales** and **intertransversarii** that connect adjacent vertebrae, and the **levatores costarum** that connect vertebrae to ribs.

Table 3.3 Muscles of the Back and Suboccipital Region

Muscle Group	Innervation	Action
Intrinsic muscles of the back		
Superficial layer Splenius capitis	Posterior rami of cervical spinal nn.	Extend, rotate, and laterally flex the head

Splenius cervicis		and cervical spine
Intermediate layer (erector spinae) Spinalis Longissimus Iliocostalis	Posterior rami of spinal nn.	Extend and laterally flex the spine
Deep layer Transversospinalis group Rotatores (brevis and longus) Multifidus Semispinalis Deep segmental group Interspinals Intertransversarii Levatores costarum	Posterior rami of spinal nn.	Extend, rotate, and laterally flex the head and spine
Muscles of the suboccipital region		
Rectus capitis posterior major Rectus capitis posterior minor Obliquus capitis superior Obliquus capitis inferior	Suboccipital n. (C1, posterior ramus)	Extend and rotate the head

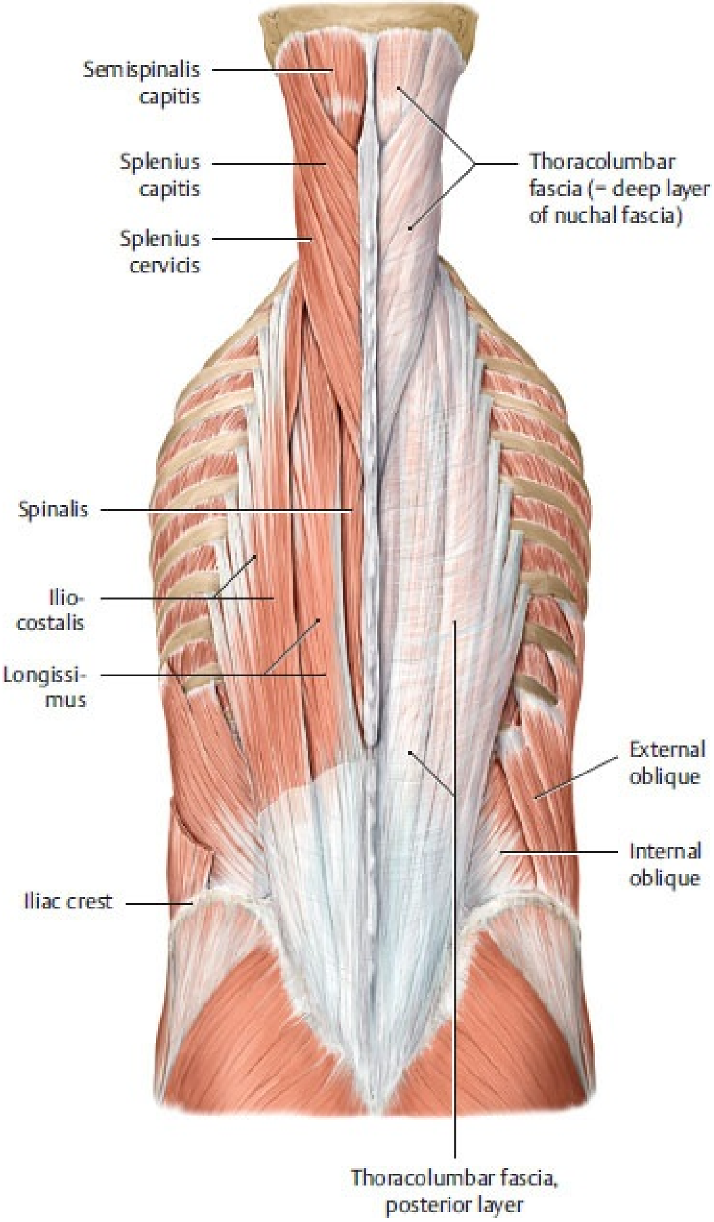
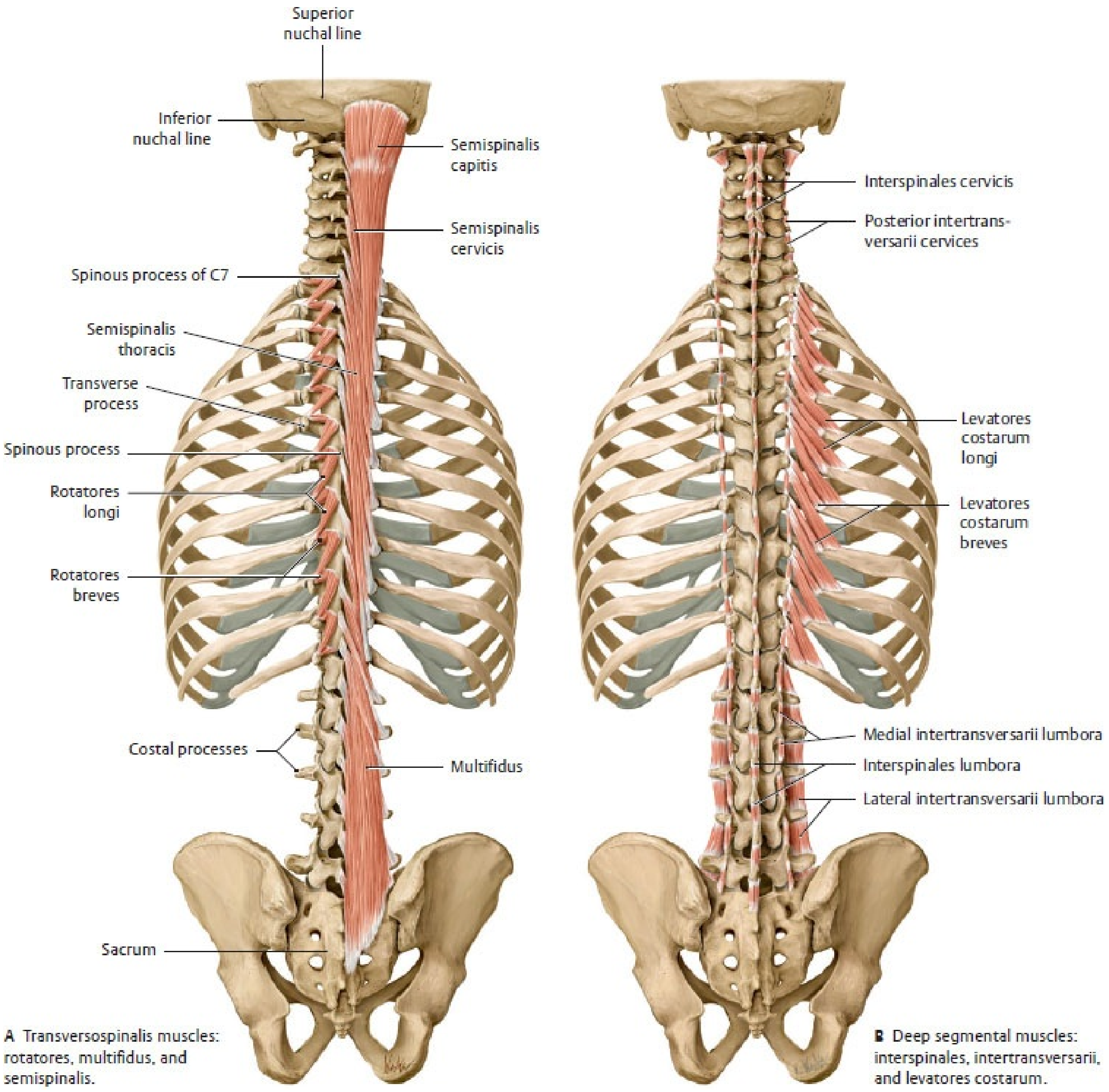

Semispinalis capitis
Splenius capitis
Splenius cervicis
Thoracolumbar fascia (= deep layer of nuchal fascia)
Spinalis
Ilio-costalis
Longissi-mus
External oblique
Internal oblique
Iliac crest
Thoracolumbar fascia, posterior layer

Fig. 3.33 Superficial and intermediate muscles of the back

Posterior view. *Removed:* Thoracolumbar fascia *(left)*. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Superior nuchal line
Inferior nuchal line
Semispinalis capitis
Semispinalis cervicis
Spinous process of C7
Semispinalis thoracis
Transverse process
Spinous process
Rotatores longi
Rotatores breves
Costal processes
Multifidus
Sacrum
Interspinales cervicis
Posterior intertrans-versarii cervices
Levatores costarum longi
Levatores costarum breves
Medial intertransversarii lumbora
Interspinales lumbora
Lateral intertransversarii lumbora

A Transversospinalis muscles: rotatores, multifidus, and semispinalis.

B Deep segmental muscles: interspinales, intertransversarii, and levatores costarum.

Fig. 3.34 Deep intrinsic back muscles

Posterior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- A deep fascia that encloses the intrinsic muscles runs laterally from the posterior midline to the cervical and lumbar transverse processes and to the ribs. This **thoraco-lumbar fascia** continues into the neck as the deep layer of the **nuchal fascia,** the posterior extension of the **cervical fascia** (see Section 25.2).

- Muscles of the posterior neck occupy the small **suboccipital compartment (Fig. 3.35)** that is inferior to the base of the skull and deep to the trapezius and intrinsic back muscles that extend into the neck. The suboccipital muscles arise from C1 or C2 and extend upward to insert on the occipital bone or transverse process of C1. All assist in the positioning of the head and are innervated by the suboccipital nerve, the posterior ramus of C1. They include the **rectus capitis posterior major, rectus capitis posterior minor, obliquus capitis inferior,** and **obliquus capitis superior.**
- Posterior intercostal and lumbar arteries (branches of the descending aorta and subclavian artery) supply the skin and muscles of the back.
- Posterior intercostal and lumbar veins accompany the corre-sponding arteries to drain muscles of the back. These veins are tributaries of the azygos system, which communicates with both the vertebral venous plexus and the vena cavae.
- Posterior rami of intercostal and lumbar spinal nerves supply the skin and intrinsic muscles of the back **(Figs. 3.36** and **3.37).**

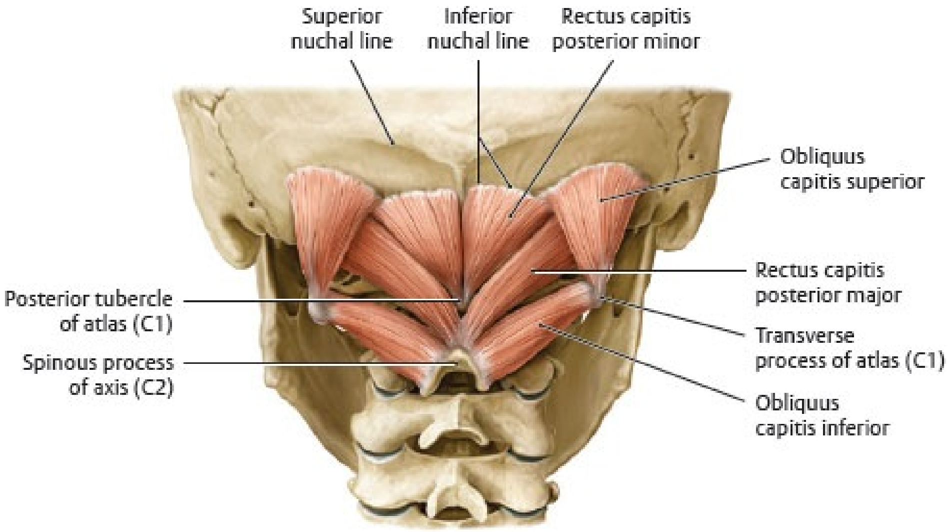
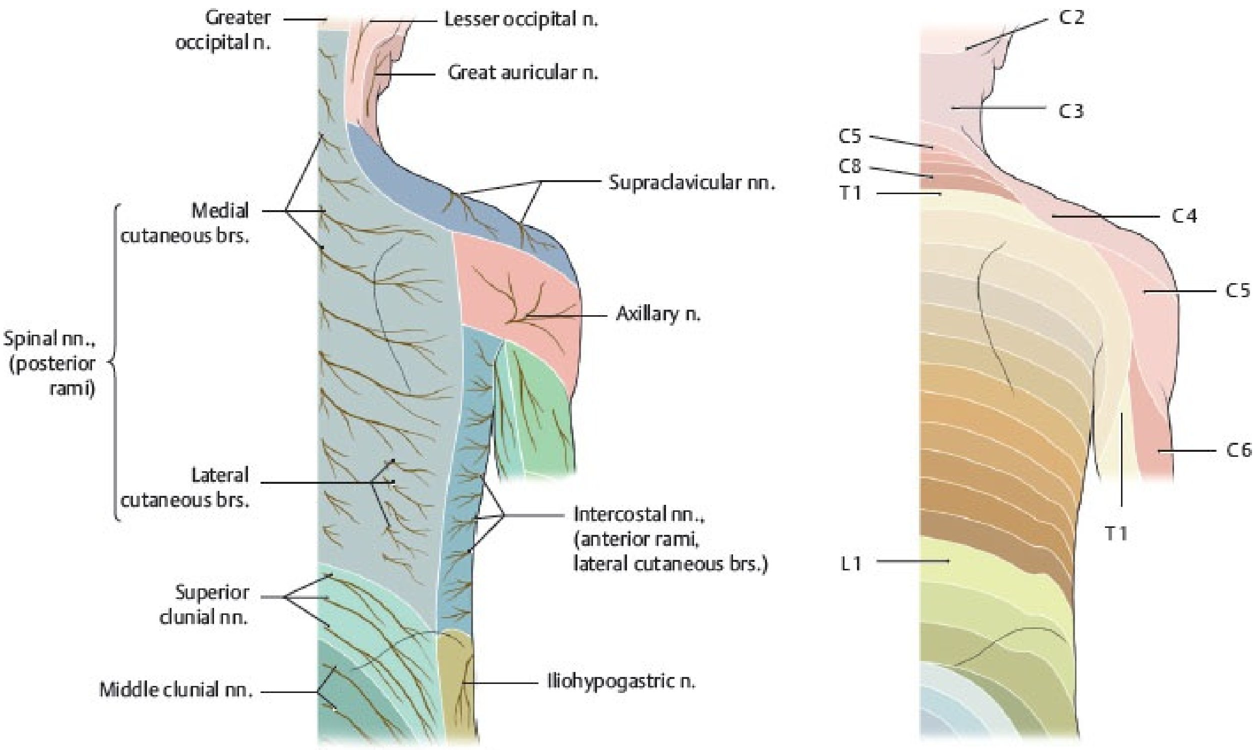

Superior nuchal line
Inferior nuchal line
Rectus capitis posterior minor
Obliquus capitis superior
Rectus capitis posterior major
Transverse process of atlas (C1)
Obliquus capitis inferior
Posterior tubercle of atlas (C1)
Spinous process of axis (C2)

Fig. 3.35 Short nuchal and craniovertebral joint muscles

Suboccipital muscles, posterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Greater occipital n.
Lesser occipital n.
Great auricular n.
Medial cutaneous brs.
Supraclavicular nn.
Spinal nn., (posterior rami)
Axillary n.
Lateral cutaneous brs.
Intercostal nn., (anterior rami, lateral cutaneous brs.)
Superior clunial nn.
Middle clunial nn.
Iliohypogastric n.
C2
C3
C5
C8
T1
C4
C5
C6
T1
L1

A Cutaneous innervation patterns of specific peripheral nerves.

B Dermatomes: segmental (radicular) cutaneous innervation of the back. *Note:* The posterior ramus of C1 is purely motor; there is consequently no C1 dermatome.

Fig. 3.36 Cutaneous innervation of the back

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

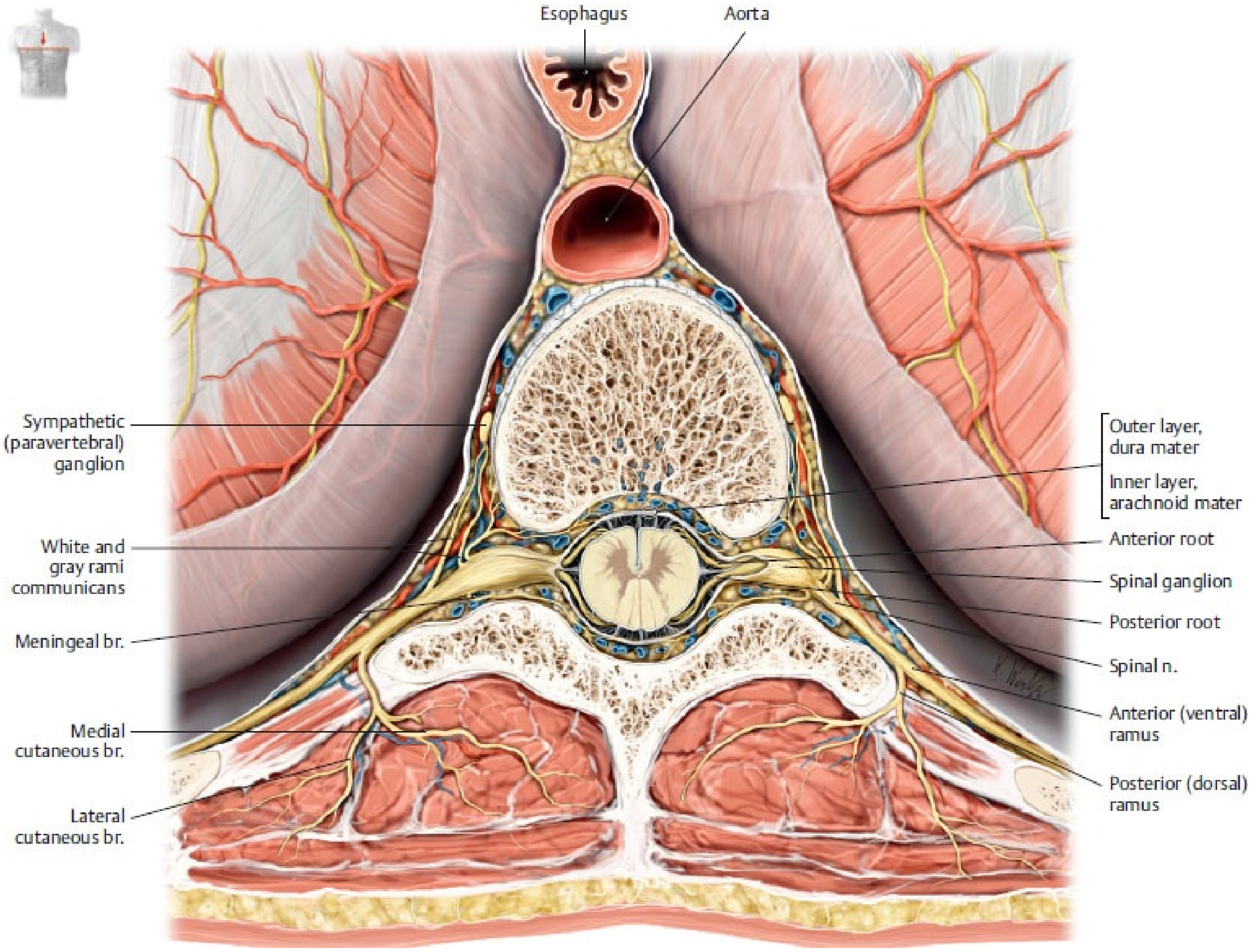

Esophagus
Aorta
Sympathetic (paravertebral) ganglion
White and gray rami communicans
Meningeal br.
Medial cutaneous br.
Lateral cutaneous br.
Outer layer, dura mater
Inner layer, arachnoid mater
Anterior root
Spinal ganglion
Posterior root
Spinal n.
Anterior (ventral) ramus
Posterior (dorsal) ramus

Fig. 3.37 Nerves of the back

Cross section through the vertebral column and spinal cord with surrounding musculature, superior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

4 Clinical Imaging Basics of the Spine

Radiographs provide a fast initial assessment of overall alignment of the spine and are often the first imaging study obtained in trauma patients. However, nondisplaced fractures may be invisi-ble on x-ray and only detected with the high resolution and detail of computed tomography (CT). Because x-ray and CT do not show soft tissues well, magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) is used for optimal evaluation of the spinal cord, nerve roots, ligaments, and intervertebral disks (**Table 4.1**). The fully developed adult spine is not suitable for ultrasound analysis as the bones of the verte-brae block the sound waves. In infants, the posterior aspect of the vertebral bodies are not yet ossified, allowing for sound transmis-sion into the spinal canal from the infant’s back (**Fig. 4.1**). This anatomic consideration, the infant’s small size, and the lack of radiation make ultrasound ideal for evaluation of the spinal cord and spinal canal in infants in the evaluation of developmental spi-nal anomalies, such as a tethered cord.

Table 4.1 Suitability of Imaging Modalities for the Back and Spine

Modality	Clinical Notes
Radiographs (X-rays)	Excellent for first-line evaluation of alignment of the vertebral column and assessment for fractures in trauma patients; vertebral anatomy is well depicted
CT (computed tomography)	Although important soft structures are not well seen, other anatomic relationships are seen with exceptional detail; more sensitive than radiographs for the evaluation of fractures (especially nondisplaced fractures) and injuries to the posterior structures
MRI (magnetic resonance imaging)	Best for evaluation of the disks, nerve roots, spinal cord, ligaments, and other soft tissues

Ultrasound	Used only in young infants whose spinal column is not fully ossified, allowing for excellent imaging of the infant spinal cord

Radiographic examination of the spine should include both frontal and lateral views. This is especially important for assessing alignment. Note that in both views the vertebral bodies appear as rectangles, the result of the “summation shadow” **(Figs. 4.2** and **4.3)**. The spinous processes and the pedicles of each vertebra, superimposed on the vertebral bodies, are easily seen on the fron-tal radiographs because of the brightness of the cortical edges. The facet joints are best assessed on the lateral view. CT provides supe-rior details of the bony anatomy and vertebral column. Addition-ally, images can be reconstructed into multiple planes and into three-dimensional images to optimize the evaluation of patho-logic conditions **(Fig. 4.4)**. MRI is extremely valuable in spine/back imaging. The superior soft tissue detail and contrast are invaluable for evaluation of the spinal cord, nerve roots, intervertebral disks, bone marrow of the vertebral bodies, and surrounding soft tissues **(Figs. 4.5** and **4.6)**.

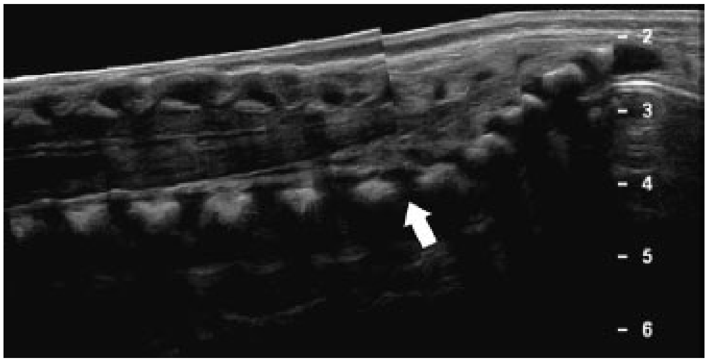


Fig 4.1 Infant spinal ultrasound.

Longitudinal view of a normal lower spine/spinal canal in an infant. Note the two successive images are “stitched” together at the L5-S1 level (arrow) to create this panoramic view. The probe is placed on the lower back of the infant and oriented as to center the spinal canal. (From Beek E, Van Rijn R, ed. Diagnostic Pediatric Ultrasound. 1st ed. New York: Thieme; 2015)

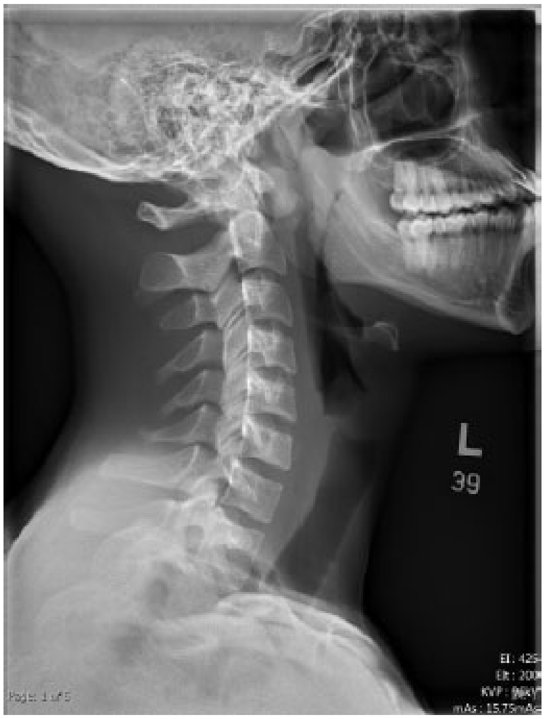


Fig. 4.2 Radiograph of the cervical spine

Left lateral view.

In a normal radiograph of the spine, the vertebral bodies appear roughly rectangular in shape and the corners of each vertebral body line up with the corners of the vertebral body above and below it. The intervertebral disk spaces are uniform from level to level and the spinous process of each vertebra is easily identified. (Courtesy of Joseph Makris, MD, Baystate Medical Center.)

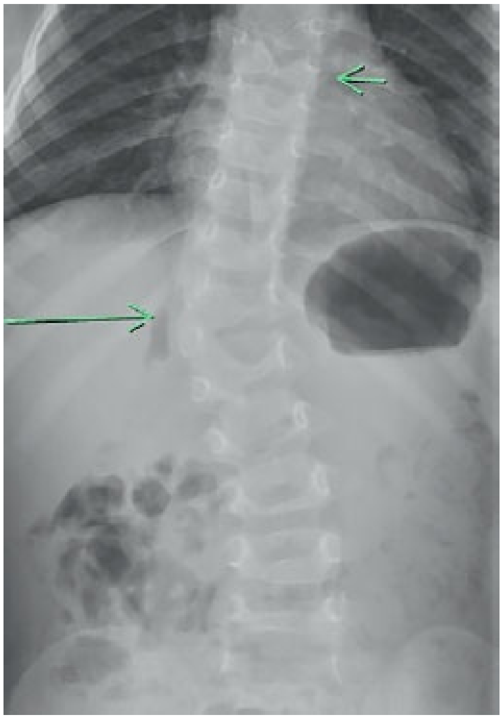


Fig. 4.3 Frontal view of the lower thoracic and lumbar spine in an infant

The inferior ribs can be seen articulating with lower thoracic vertebrae; the lower-most vertebral body with an adjacent rib is T12. Note the abnormal shape of the T12 vertebral body and that there are two pedicles on its right side (long arrow). Also note the abnormal shape of the T7 vertebral body (short arrow) with a central vertical cleft—this a “butterfly” vertebrae. Vertebral bodies should be rectangular, and each should have a small rounded pedicle visible on each side (small white circles due to the cortical bone). (Courtesy of Joseph Makris, MD, Baystate Medical Center.)

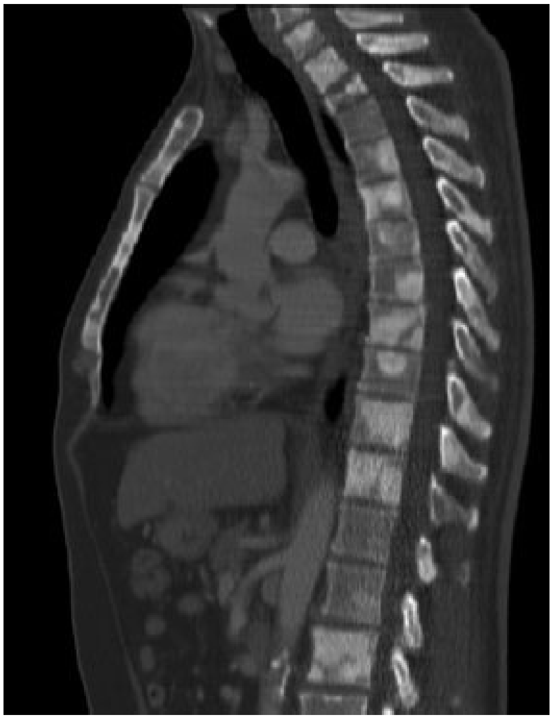


Fig. 4.4 CT reconstruction of the spine

Midsagittal section.

This midsagittal section represents a single slice of a digitally recon-structed CT scan. This image is a single slice of the midline that was digitally “reconstructed” in the sagittal plane from the original CT images. The spine is easier to evaluate in this plane because the relationships between vertebrae are better depicted. This image is presented in the “bone window,” which is best for evaluating the osseous structures. The multiple densities (whiter spots) throughout many of the vertebral bodies are metastatic lesions from prostate cancer, referred to as sclerotic or blastic lesions because there is increased bone at the metastatic focus. Although these may be visible on an x-ray of the spine, they are more obvious with CT. As with radiographs, the edges of each vertebral body should line up with the edges of the vertebral body above and below. (From Gunderman R. Essential Radiology, 3rd ed. New York: Thieme; 2014.)

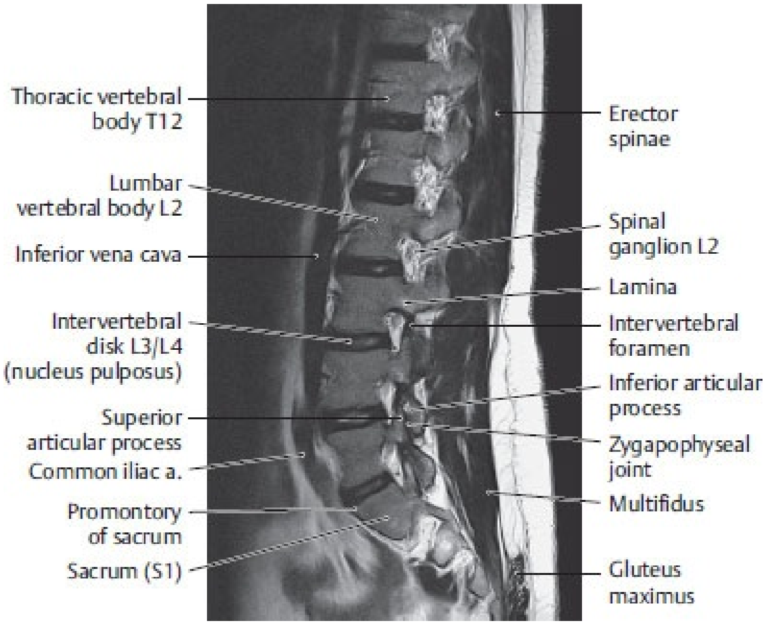

Thoracic vertebral body T12
Lumbar vertebral body L2
Inferior vena cava
Intervertebral disk L3/L4 (nucleus pulposus)
Superior articular process
Common iliac a.
Promontory of sacrum
Sacrum (S1)
Erector spinae
Spinal ganglion L2
Lamina
Intervertebral foramen
Inferior articular process
Zygapophyseal joint
Multifidus
Gluteus maximus

Fig. 4.5 MRI of the lumbar spine

Parasagittal section through the lateral edges of the vertebral bodies and the intervertebral foramina. Left lateral view.

(*Fat = white*, *muscles = black*, *nerve roots = light gray, bone = dark gray.*) This image demonstrates MRI's superior ability to show soft tissues, an advantage over radiographs and CT. The intervertebral foramina are clearly visualized with the dark nerve roots surrounded by fat within the intervertebral foramina. If this patient had a disk herniation, the disk tissue would be clearly visible intruding into the spinal canal. Note the white nucleus pulposus in the middle of the intervertebral disks. (From Moeller TB, Reif E. Pocket Atlas of Sectional Anatomy, Vol 3, 2nd ed. New York: Thieme; 2017.)

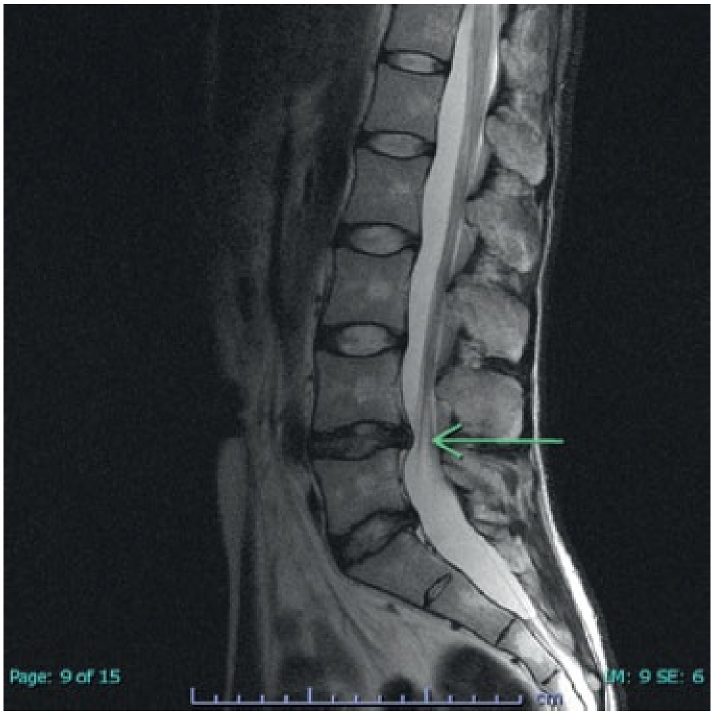


Fig. 4.6 MRI of the lumbar spine, herniated disc

Sagittal section through the mid-lumbar spine showing protrusion of the intervertebral disks into the spinal canal, most pronounced at the L4/L5 level. (Courtesy of Joseph Makris, MD, Baystate Medical Center.)

Unit II Review Questions: Back

1. During the surgical repair of an aortic aneurysm in a 62-year-old patient, the left T10 intercostal artery that supplied the great anterior segmental artery (of Adam-kiewicz) was inadvertently ligated. A likely consequence of this would be a disruption of the blood supply to

A. the cervical enlargement of the spinal cord
B. the lumbosacral enlargement of the spinal cord
C. the lower thoracic vertebrae
D. the deep intrinsic muscles of the back
E. the posterior one third of the spinal cord

2. A 57-year-old woman who runs a 4-mile route three times a week complained to her primary care physician of low back pain and an irritating paresthesia (tingling) along the inner aspect of her right leg. Electromyographic studies identified a lesion of her L4 spinal nerve on the right side. The L4 spinal nerve

A. carries only sensory fibers
B. contributes to both the lumbar and sacral nerve plexuses
C. contains sympathetic nerve fibers that innervate pelvic viscera
D. exits the intervertebral foramen between the L3 and L4 vertebrae
E. innervates intrinsic muscles and skin of the back via its anterior ramus

3. The filum terminale is best described as

A. an extension of the arachnoid mater that connects to the pia mater
B. a transverse ligament that suspends the spinal cord within the dural sac
C. an extension of the pia mater that descends within the lumbar cistern
D. a ligament that connects the spinous processes of the vertebrae
E. an extension of the pia mater that anchors the conus medullaris to the L2 vertebra

4. The nerves that descend within the lumbar cistern of the dural sac are called

A. lumbar plexus
B. sacral plexus
C. cauda equina
D. posterior rami
E. sacral spinal nerves

5. An 87-year-old man sees his primary care physician with a complaint of mental confusion and back pain. Although the physician considers that these symptoms may be a normal consequence of the patient's age, examination reveals that the patient has advanced prostate cancer that has spread to his brain and vertebral column. The probable route of metastasis is identified as the vertebral venous plexus, which

A. drains the vertebrae and intervertebral disks but does not drain the spinal cord
B. lies within the subarachnoid space
C. consists of veins with multiple valves along their length
D. consists of paired longitudinal veins within the vertebral canal
E. is a valveless system of veins

6. A 47-year-old construction worker presented to his physician with debilitating pain in his lower back and lower limb. Radiographic studies showed a herniated intervertebral disk at the L4–L5 vertebral level. Which of the following is true?

A. The herniated disk most likely signals a weakness of the anterior longitudinal ligament.
B. A posterior herniation of this disk could result in compression of the adjacent spinal cord.
C. Pain from this hernia would most likely be felt along the L4 dermatome.
D. The herniation is the result of a loss of elasticity of the anulus fibrosus, which allowed protrusion of the nucleus pulposus.
E. None of the above

7. The splenius muscle group

A. lies deep to the trapezius
B. is enclosed by the thoracolumbar fascia
C. extends the cervical spine and head
D. is innervated by posterior rami of cervical spinal nerves
E. All of the above

8. A 92-year-old woman remains mentally alert and physi-cally active but has lost several inches in height, and her posture is stooped forward. Her geriatrician explains that this exaggerated curvature is due to degeneration of the bodies of two of her thoracic vertebrae that often occurs in older women as a result of decreased bone density. The curvature exhibited by this patient is known as

A. scoliosis
B. spondylolysis
C. lordosis
D. kyphosis
E. spondylosis

9. The spinal cord terminates caudally as the

A. denticulate ligament
B. filum terminale
C. conus medullaris
D. lumbar cistern
E. sacral hiatus

10. Which of the following ligaments would prevent hyper extension of the vertebral column?

A. Anterior longitudinal ligament
B. Posterior longitudinal ligament
C. Ligamentum flavum
D. Alar ligament

E. Cruciform ligament

11. Which of the following vertebral characteristics is paired with the correct vertebral region?

A. Promontory—sacral
B. Vertebral prominens—thoracic
C. Dens—thoracic
D. Transverse foramen—lumbar
E. Costal facet—cervical

12. Parasympathetic stimulation is responsible for responses such as contraction of the pupil of the eye, slowing of the heart rate, and erection of the penis in the male. Which of the following statements accurately describes characteris-tics of the parasympathetic system?

A. Preganglionic fibers synapse in large sacral spinal ganglia.
B. Pelvic splanchnic nerves are parasympathetic nerves that arise from levels S2–S4 to innervate viscera of the pelvis.
C. Preganglionic fibers that arise from the brain travel with cranial nerves III, IV, V, and X.
D. Parasympathetic nerves in the skin innervate smooth muscle responsible for constriction of blood vessels.
E. Nociceptive (pain) fibers travel only with nerves of the sacral component of the parasympathetic system.

13. During the last month of her pregnancy, Janice confided to her obstetrician that she was very anxious about mother-hood and was particularly concerned about the pain that she knew accompanied the delivery. Her physician suggested she undergo a procedure that would provide a degree of anesthesia to lessen the discomfort. Her recommendation most likely involved

A. an injection of anesthetic into the epidural space
B. a lumbar puncture
C. an injection for spinal anesthesia at the T12–L1 level
D. an extraction of cerebrospinal fluid from the subarachnoid space

E. an extraction of cerebrospinal fluid from the lumbar cistern

14. The evaluation of reflexes is part of most standard physical exams. It measures the integrity of the nerve supply to muscles. A reflex, such as the patellar reflex, involves all of the following except:

A. primarily autonomic nerves that arise from the sympathetic trunk
B. a sensory (afferent) and a motor (efferent) limb that are located within a single spinal cord segment
C. only monosegmentally innervated muscles
D. only skeletal muscles
E. nerves that likely arise from a somatic nerve plexus

15. Valerie is an active 55-year-old executive who has recently experienced some pain and “cracking” in her neck. Although she can relieve the pain with ibuprofen, she’s noticed that the rotation of her head from side to side is a bit more limited than previously. During her yearly physical, an x-ray of her cervical spine showed a slight loss of bone density and the formation of osteocytes. Her physician explained that this was a common result of aging and recommended continued use of mild pain relievers and regular exercise. Which of the following best describes her condition?

A. a fracture of the dens of her second cervical vertebra
B. spondylolisthesis
C. spondylosis
D. spondylolysis
E. increased laxity of the cervical spine

16. Which statement correctly distinguishes between a dermatome and a myotome?

A. A dermatome carries only sensory fibers; a myotome carries only motor fibers.
B. Dermatomes are composed of somatic muscle fibers; myotomes are composed of smooth muscle.
C. Sensory nerves of dermatomes transmit sensation of pain, pressure, and temperature; sensory nerves of myotomes carry sensation of

proprioception (sense of position).

D. Each dermatome is innervated by a pair of spinal nerves from a single spinal cord segment; each myotome is innervated by a pair of spinal nerves from multiple spinal cord segments.

E. Lesions of a single spinal root would have a major impact on the corresponding dermatome; it would have minimal effect on the corresponding myotome.

17. A 45-year-old man has severe back pain and pain radiating down his left leg (sciatica). Your physical exam reveals relative weakness and decreased sensation on the left side. Which imaging modality would be best suited for evaluat-ing your suspicion that the patient has a herniated intervertebral disk?

A. MRI
B. CT
C. Ultrasound
D. Radiography (X-ray)

18. A teenager is complaining of neck pain after being in a motor vehicle accident. He is otherwise doing well. The cervical spine has been stabilized by a collar by the EMTs on the scene. Which imaging modality would you choose as a first-line assessment of the cervical spine?

A. MRI
B. CT
C. Ultrasound
D. Radiography (X-ray)

Answers and Explanations

1. **B.** The great anterior segmental artery (of Adamkiewicz) supplies the inferior two thirds of the spinal cord, which includes the region of the lumbosacral enlargement (T11–S1) (Section 3.2).

A. The great anterior segmental artery (of Adam-kiewicz) supplies the inferior two thirds of the spinal cord, which does not include the region of the cervical enlarge-ment (C4–T1).

C. Vertebrae are supplied by segmental arteries of the descending aorta, as well as by branches of the subclavian arteries and arteries of the pelvis.

D. Intrinsic muscles of the back get their blood supply from posterior branches of the intercostal and lumbar arteries.

E.The posterior spinal arteries that usually arise from the vertebral arteries in the neck supply the posterior third of the spinal cord.

2. **B.** The lumbar plexus includes anterior rami of spinal nerves L1–L4, and the sacral plexus includes anterior rami of spinal nerves L4–S4 (Section 3.3).

A. All spinal nerves carry both sensory and motor fibers

C. Sympathetic fibers are carried only in spinal nerves between T1 and L2.

D. Except for nerves in the cervical region, spinal nerves exit below the vertebra of the corresponding number; thus, L4 exits between the L4 and L5 vertebrae.

E. Intrinsic muscles and skin of the back are innervated by posterior rami of spinal nerves.

3. **C.** The filum terminale is a filament of pia mater that runs within the lumbar cistern with the cauda equina, from the conus medullaris to the end of the dural sac. Inferior to the dural sac, it is surrounded by spinal dura mater and extends to the coccyx (Section 3.2).

A. The arachnoid trabeculae connect the arachnoid mater to the pia mater.

B. Denticulate ligaments suspend the spinal cord within the dural sac.

D. The supraspinous ligament connects the spinous processes of all thoracic, lumbar, and sacral vertebrae. In the cervical region it expands as the nuchal ligament, a finlike ligament that attaches superiorly to the occipital bone.

E. The end of the spinal cord, the conus medullaris, lies adjacent to the L2 vertebra but is not attached to it.

4. **C.** Because the spinal cord is shorter than the vertebral column, spinal

nerves L2–Co1 descend as a group (cauda equina) within the dural sac before exiting at the appropri-ate intervertebral foramen (Section 3.3).

A. The lumbar plexus forms outside the vertebral canal on the posterior abdominal wall and contains only anterior rami of lumbar spinal nerves (L1–L4).

B. The sacral plexus forms outside the vertebral canal on the posterior wall of the pelvis and contains only anterior rami of L4–S4 spinal nerves.

D. The nerves of the cauda equina are spinal nerves, which contain both anterior and posterior rami.

E. The cauda equina contains both lumbar and sacral spinal nerves.

5. **E.** The vertebral venous plexus is a valveless system that allows

communication between the caval and azygos systems, which drain the trunk, and the venous sinuses of the brain (Section 3.1).

A. The vertebral venous plexus drains the vertebrae, meninges, and spinal cord.

B. The internal vertebral venous plexus lies in the epidural space. The external plexus surrounds the outside of the vertebral column.

C. The vertebral venous plexus is a valveless system that allows communication between the caval and azygos systems, which drain the trunk, and the venous sinuses of the brain.

D. The venous plexus consists of interconnecting veins that form an internal plexus within the vertebral canal and an external plexus that surrounds the vertebrae.

6. **D.** Loss in elasticity of the fibrous ring, which may occur with aging,

allows herniation of the nucleus pulposus (Section 3.1).

A. The anterior longitudinal ligament supports the vertebral bodies and disks anteriorly. The posterior longi-tudinal ligament supports the disks posteriorly where herniation normally occurs.

B. The spinal cord ends at L2 and is not present in this part of the vertebral canal.

C. The L4 spinal nerve exits the intervertebral foramen superior to the intervertebral disk and is usually unaffected by the herniation. The hernia would compress the next inferior spinal nerve, L5, and pain would be felt along that dermatome.

E. Not applicable

7. **E.** All of the above (Section 3.4)

A. The splenius muscles are superficial intrinsic back muscles that lie deep to the trapezius, an extrinsic muscle of the upper back. B through D are also correct (E).

B. All intrinsic back muscles, including the splenius group, are enclosed by the deep fascia of the back, the thoracolumbar fascia. A, C, and D are also correct (E).

C. Splenius muscles extend the cervical spine and head when working bilaterally. Unilaterally, they flex and rotate the head to the same side. A, B, and D are also correct (E).

D. The splenius muscles are innervated by the posterior rami of C1–C6 spinal nerves. A through C are also correct (E).

8. **D.** Kyphosis is an abnormal posterior curvature of the thoracic spine often seen in older women (Section 3.1).

A. Scoliosis is a lateral curvature of the spine.

B. Spondylolysis refers to a fracture or defect across the interarticular part of the lamina of the lumbar vertebrae.

C. Lordosis is an exaggerated anterior curvature of the lumbar spine often seen in pregnant women.

E. Spondylosis is a degeneration of the intervertebral disk and corresponding vertebral body that results in osteophyte formation.

9. **C.** The spinal cord terminates caudally as the conus medullaris. This usually corresponds to the L1–L2 vertebral level in an adult (Section 3.2).

A. Denticulate ligaments are transverse extensions of the pia mater that attach to dura mater and suspend the spinal cord within the dural sac.

B. Pia mater terminates caudally as the filum terminale.

D. The lumbar cistern is part of the subarachnoid space that lies between the conus medullaris and the inferior end of the dural sac.

E. The sacral hiatus is the inferior opening of the sacral canal, which is a continuation of the vertebral canal.

10. A. The anterior longitudinal ligament attaches the anterior and lateral surfaces of the vertebral bodies and interverte-bral disks and prevents hyperextension (Section 3.1).

B. The posterior longitudinal ligament attaches primarily to the intervertebral disks and produces weak resistance to hyperflexion.

C. The ligamenta flava join the laminae of adjacent vertebrae. They limit flexion and provide postural support of the vertebral column.

D. The alar ligaments secure the dens of C2 to the skull.

E. The cruciform ligament, formed by longitudinal fibers and a transverse ligament, secure the dens against the anterior arch of the atlas.

11. A. The anterior lip of S1 forms the promontory of the sacrum (Section 3.1).

B. The vertebral prominens is the C7 vertebra, named for its long palpable spinous process.

C. Only the C2 vertebra has a dens, the peg-like process that articulates with C1.

D. Only cervical vertebrae have transverse foramina.

E. Only thoracic vertebrae have costal facets where they articulate with the ribs.

12. B. Pelvic splanchnic nerves (S2–S4) form the parasympa-thetic component of the autonomic plexuses that innervate pelvic viscera (Section 3.3).

A. Preganglionic nerves synapse in small ganglia near, or within, their target organ.

C. Only cranial nerves III, VII, IX, and X carry parasym-pathetic nerves.

D. Vasoconstriction occurs through sympathetic stimulation. Blood vessels receive no parasympathetic innervation.

E. Nociceptive fibers travel with both cranial and sacral parts of the parasympathetic system, as well as with sympathetic splanchnic nerves.

13. **A.** Epidural anesthesia, often used during delivery, involves an injection of anesthetic into the epidural space (Section 3.2).

B. Lumbar puncture is used to extract cerebrospinal fluid and does not involve injection of anesthetic.

C. Injections into the spinal canal should be performed inferior to L2, below the level of the conus medullaris in order to avoid damage to the spinal cord.

D and **E.** Anesthesia of the relevant spinal nerves requires an injection of anesthetic, not the extraction of cerebrospi-nal fluid.

14. **A.** Autonomic nerves innervate only involuntary muscle and are not involved in reflexes (Section 3.3).

B. An intact reflex involves both sensory and motor limbs that are mediated at the spinal cord level.

C. Both the sensory and motor limbs of the reflex are located within a single segment of the spinal cord.

D. Only skeletal muscles are involved in reflexes. Smooth or cardiac muscles are innervated by autonomic nerves and not involved in reflexes.

E. Reflexes are conducted by somatic nerves, which most often (except intercostal nerves) form somatic nerve plexuses.

15. **C.** Spondylosis is an age-related condition characterized by loss of bone density and the formation of osteocytes (Section 3.1).

A. Only a traumatic incident, such the violent “whiplash” resulting from a car accident, normally results in the fracture of the dens.

B. Spondylolisthesis describes a condition in which a vertebral body is displaced anteriorly relative to the vertebral body below it.

C. Spondylolysis describes a fracture of one or both lamina of the vertebra. When bilateral, it may result in spondylolisthesis.

E. Increased laxity of the cervical spine makes the spine more prone to injury but is not a result of aging or cause of bone loss and osteocyte formation.

16. **A.** A dermatome is a band of skin, which is innervated by a sensory nerve from a single spinal cord segment. A myotome refers to the muscle mass that's innervated by a motor nerve from a single spinal cord segment (Section 3.3).

B. Dermatomes are bands of skin; myotomes refer to a group of skeletal (somatic) muscle fibers.

C. Sensory nerves of dermatomes transmit sensations of pain, pressure, temperature, and proprioception; myo-tomes are groups of muscle fibers innervated by motor nerves, which do not transmit sensory information.

D. Both dermatomes and myotomes are innervated by nerves from a single spinal cord segment.

E. Because of the considerable overlap among der-matomes, the loss of a single spinal nerve root would have minimal impact on sensation in that dermatome.

17. **A.** MRI is best for evaluation of the intervertebral disks, nerve roots, spinal canal, and surrounding soft tissues. In this case, MRI would show the herniated portion of the intervertebral disk extending into the neuroforamina and impinging on the exiting nerve root.

B. CT is highly sensitive for fractures and malalignment of the spine but does not have sufficient soft tissue contrast to reliably diagnose nerve root, spinal cord, and disk pathology.

C. Ultrasound has no role in the evaluation of the adult spine. Unlike in infants, the adult trunk is too large and the adult spinal column is too ossified to allow for an adequate sonographic window.

D. Radiography is best for evaluating overall spinal alignment and for displaced fractures but would not be helpful in identifying disk or other soft tissue pathology.

18. **D.** Radiographs would be the best choice here as they provide excellent evaluation of spinal alignment, are good for screening for fractures, and can be obtained quickly. If the x-ray is normal, you could then "clear" the cervical spine by a thorough physical examination of the neck after removing the collar.

A. MRI would be reserved for evaluating a patient with an abnormal physical exam or if the pain is persistent, or if physical exam cannot be reliably performed (unconscious).

B. Although CT is more sensitive for fractures and subtle malalignment, its use would be reserved for cases where the radiographs are abnormal or suboptimal in quality (e.g., very large patients), especially in children to reduce overall radiation exposure. CT is also often used in unconscious patients who cannot have a reliable physical examination.

C. Ultrasound has no role in the evaluation of spinal trauma.

Unit III Thorax

5 Overview of the Thorax

5.1 General Features

5.1 Major Structures of the Thoracic Cavity

5.2 Neurovasculature of the Thorax

5.2 Branches of the Thoracic Aorta

5.3 Peripheral Sympathetic Nervous System

5.4 Peripheral Parasympathetic Nervous System

5.1 Clinical Correlation: Superior Vena Cava Syndrome

6 Thoracic Wall

6.1 The Breast

6.1 Clinical Correlation: Carcinoma of the Breast

6.2 The Thoracic Skeleton

6.3 Muscles of the Thorax

6.1 Muscles of the Thoracic Wall

6.4 Neurovasculature of the Thoracic Wall

6.2 Clinical Correlation: Insertion of a Chest Tube

7 Mediastinum

- 7.1 Regions of the Mediastinum
  - 7.1 Contents of the Mediastinum
- 7.2 Anterior Mediastinum
- 7.3 Middle Mediastinum: Pericardium and Pericardial Cavity
  - 7.1 Clinical Correlation: Pericarditis
  - 7.2 Clinical Correlation: Cardiac Tamponade
  - 7.3 Clinical Correlation: Surgical Significance of the Transverse Pericardial Sinus
- 7.4 Middle Mediastinum: The Heart
  - 7.2 Borders of the Heart
  - 7.3 Position and Auscultation Sites of Cardiac Valves
  - 7.4 Developmental Correlation: Tetralogy of Fallot
  - 7.5 Clinical Correlation: Mitral Valve Prolapse
  - 7.6 Clinical Correlation: Aortic Valve Stenosis
  - 7.7 Clinical Correlation: Atrioventricular Heart Block
- 7.5 Middle Mediastinum: Neurovasculature of the Heart
  - 7.4 Branches of the Coronary Arteries
  - 7.8 Clinical Correlation: Angina
  - 7.9 Clinical Correlation: Coronary Artery Disease

- 7.10 Clinical Correlation: Coronary Artery Bypass Graft
- 7.6 Prenatal and Neonatal Circulation
  - 7.5 Derivatives of Fetal Circulatory Structures
  - 7.11 Developmental Correlation: Ventricular Septal Defect
  - 7.12 Developmental Correlation: Patent Ductus Arteriosus
  - 7.13 Developmental Correlation: Atrial Septal Defect
  - 7.14 Developmental Correlation: Coarctation of the Aorta
- 7.7 Superior and Posterior Mediastina
  - 7.15 Clinical Correlation: Achalasia

8 Pulmonary Cavities

- 8.1 The Pleura and Pleural Cavity
  - 8.1 Clinical Correlation: Pleuritis
  - 8.2 Clinical Correlation: Pneumothorax
  - 8.3 Clinical Correlation: Tension Pneumothorax
  - 8.4 Clinical Correlation: Pleural Effusion
- 8.2 The Lungs
  - 8.1 Structure of the Lungs
- 8.3 The Tracheobronchial Tree
  - 8.5 Clinical Correlation: Foreign Body Aspiration

- 8.6 Clinical Correlation: Atelectasis
- 8.7 Developmental Correlation: Neonatal Respiratory Distress Syndrome
- 8.8 Clinical Correlation: Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease

8.4 Mechanics of Respiration

8.5 Neurovasculature of the Lungs and Bronchial Tree.

- 8.2 Autonomic Innervation of the Lungs and Bronchial Tree
- 8.9 Clinical Correlation: Pulmonary Embolism
- 8.10 Clinical Correlation: Carcinoma of the Lung

9 Clinical Imaging Basics of the Thorax

- 9.1 Suitability of Imaging Modalities for the Thorax

Review Questions: Thorax

5 Overview of the Thorax

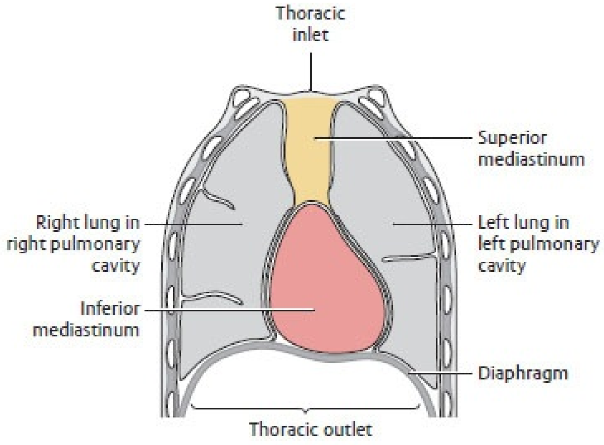
The thorax is the region of the trunk between the neck and abdo-men. The thoracic cavity, surrounded by a bony cage that protects the thoracic contents, is open to the neck through the superior thoracic aperture but separated from the abdomen at the inferior thoracic aperture by a muscular diaphragm. The viscera of the thorax include the primary organs of the respiratory and cardio-vascular systems, as well as components of the gastrointestinal, endocrine, and lymphatic systems.

5.1 General Features

- The thorax is divided into two lateral compartments, the **pulmonary cavities,** which contain the lungs and pleural sacs, and a central compartment, the **mediastinum,** which contains the heart, pericardial sac, trachea and bronchi, esophagus, thymus, and neurovasculature (**Fig. 5.1**; **Table 5.1**).
- **A pericardial sac** surrounds the heart, and a **pleural sac** surrounds each lung. These closed membranous sacs contain a thin layer of serous fluid that ensures frictionless move-ment, which is crucial to the function of these organs.
- The lungs are the organs of respiration. They communicate with the **tracheobronchial tree** (the passages for air between the lungs and outside environment) and the heart through the **hilum,** an indentation on the medial surface of each lung.
- The heart is a four-chambered muscular organ that functions as a dual pump that propels blood through the body. Each pump is made up of two chambers: a thin-walled **atrium** and a thick-walled **ventricle.**
- During a cardiac cycle, the right pump receives deoxygenated blood from the **systemic circulation** (circulation of blood through all regions of the body except the lungs) and directs it to the **pulmonary circulation** in the lungs. The left pump receives oxygenated blood from the pulmonary circulation and returns it to the systemic circulation for the distribution of

oxygen and nutrients **(Fig. 5.2)**.

- Coordinated contraction of atria and ventricles, known as the **cardiac cycle,** is self-moderated by specialized tissue within the cardiac muscle that makes up the heart’s **conduction system.**


Thoracic inlet
Superior mediastinum
Right lung in right pulmonary cavity
Left lung in left pulmonary cavity
Inferior mediastinum
Diaphragm
Thoracic outlet

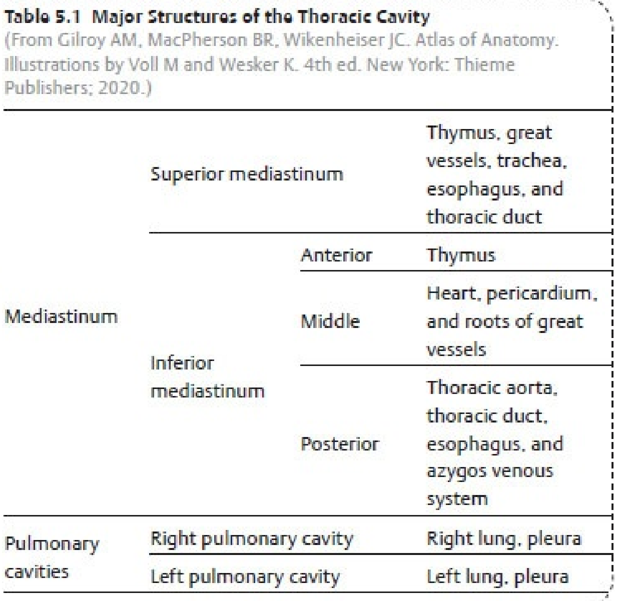
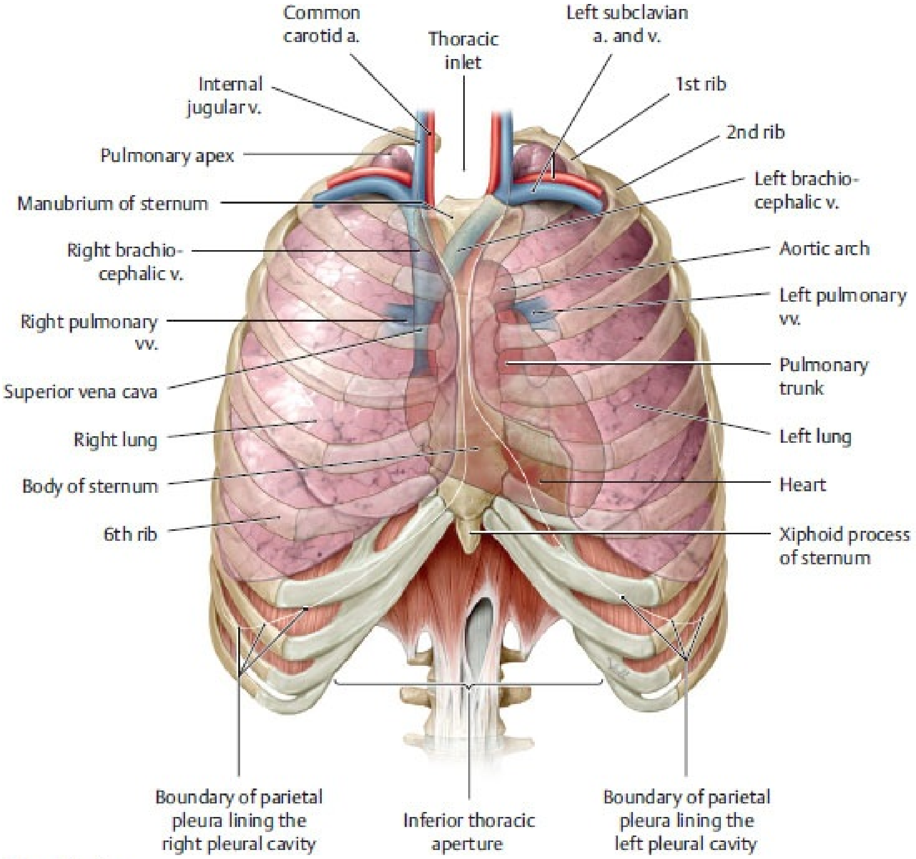


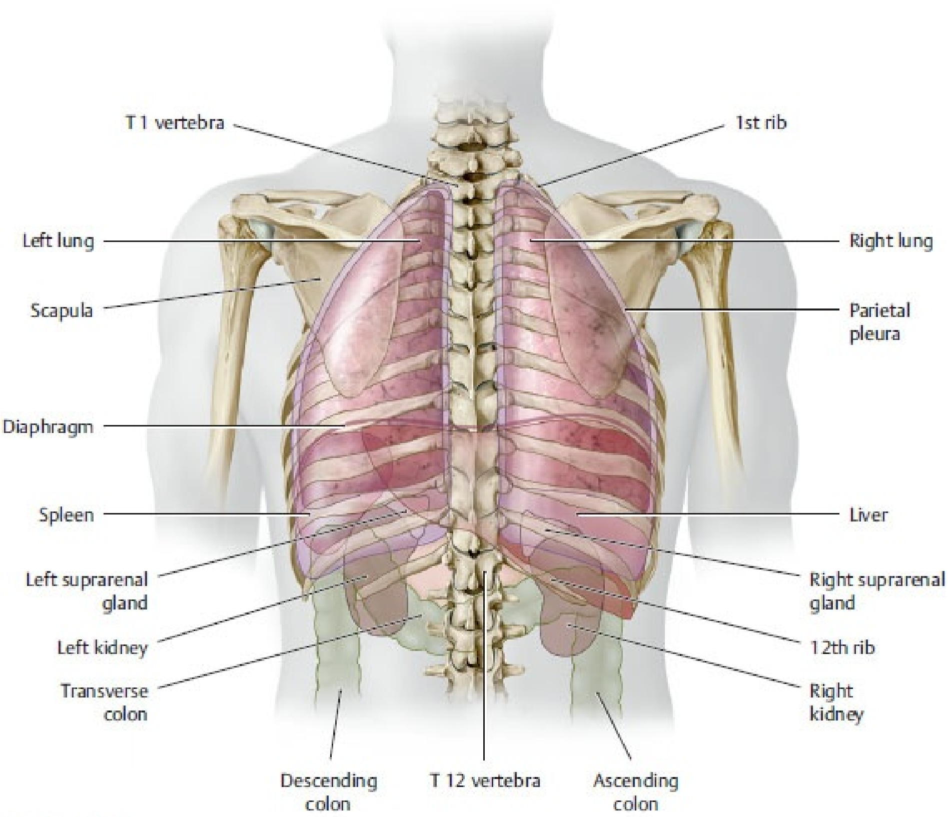
Table 5.1 Major Structures of the Thoracic Cavity

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Mediastinum	Superior mediastinum		Thymus, great vessels, trachea, esophagus, and thoracic duct
	Inferior mediastinum	Anterior	Thymus
		Middle	Heart, pericardium, and roots of great vessels
		Posterior	Thoracic aorta, thoracic duct, esophagus, and azygos venous system
Pulmonary cavities	Right pulmonary cavity		Right lung, pleura
	Left pulmonary cavity		Left lung, pleura


Common carotid a.
Thoracic inlet
Left subclavian a. and v.
Internal jugular v.
1st rib
2nd rib
Pulmonary apex
Manubrium of sternum
Left brachio-cephalic v.
Right brachio-cephalic v.
Aortic arch
Left pulmonary vv.
Right pulmonary vv.
Pulmonary trunk
Superior vena cava
Left lung
Right lung
Heart
Body of sternum
6th rib
Xiphoid process of sternum
Boundary of parietal pleura lining the right pleural cavity
Inferior thoracic aperture
Boundary of parietal pleura lining the left pleural cavity

A Anterior view.


T 1 vertebra
1st rib
Left lung
Right lung
Scapula
Parietal pleura
Diaphragm
Spleen
Liver
Left suprarenal gland
Right suprarenal gland
Left kidney
12th rib
Transverse colon
Right kidney
Descending colon
T 12 vertebra
Ascending colon

B Posterior view.

Fig. 5.1 Overview of the thorax

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers;

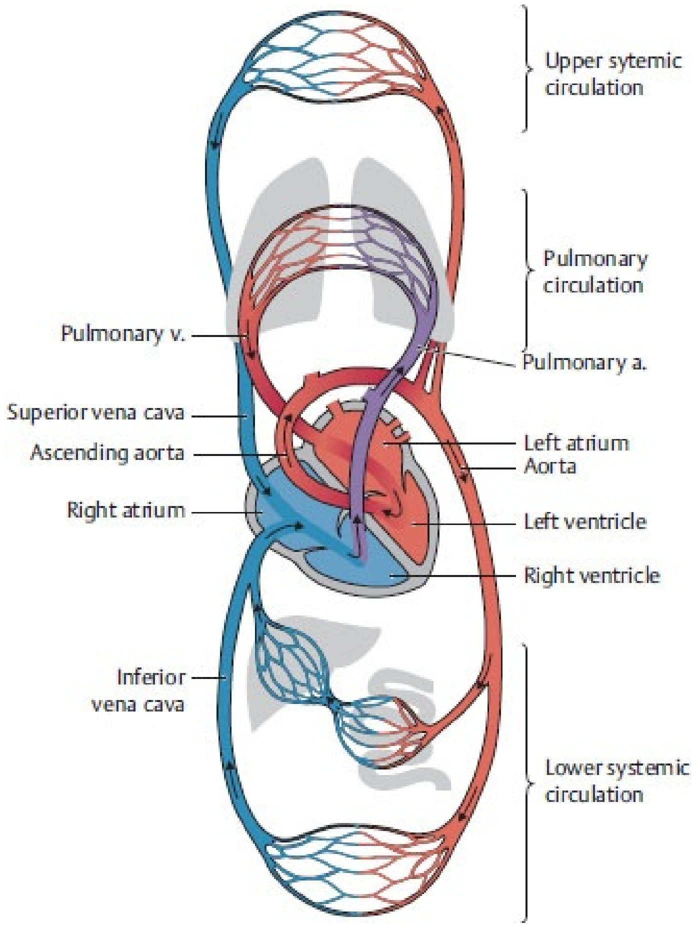

Upper sytemic circulation
Pulmonary circulation
Pulmonary v.
Pulmonary a.
Superior vena cava
Ascending aorta
Left atrium
Aorta
Right atrium
Left ventricle
Right ventricle
Inferior vena cava
Lower systemic circulation

Fig. 5.2 Systemic and pulmonary circulation

Red, oxygenated blood; *blue*, deoxygenated blood. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

5.2 Neurovasculature of the Thorax

The “great vessels,” which include the pulmonary arteries and veins, the aorta, the superior vena cava, and the inferior vena cava, direct blood into and out of the heart and lungs. Their branches and further details of their anatomy, along with more detailed descriptions of lymphatic drainage and nerves of the thorax, are discussed in Chapters 7 and 8 on the mediastinum and pulmonary cavities.

Arteries of the Thorax

- The **pulmonary trunk** directs deoxygenated blood from the right side of the heart into the pulmonary circulation. It arises from the right ventricle on the anterior surface of the heart, passes superiorly and posteriorly, and, under the arch of the aorta, divides into **right** and **left pulmonary arteries (Fig. 5.3)**.
- One pulmonary artery enters each lung, where it branches into generations of smaller vessels that accompany the respi-ratory passages. The pulmonary arteries transport deoxygen-ated blood to the small respiratory units in the lungs.
- The **thoracic aorta** arises from the left side of the heart and carries oxygenated blood that is distributed to the systemic circulation. It is divided into three sections **(Fig. 5.4)**:
    - The **ascending aorta** arises from the left ventricle of the heart and ascends to the level of the fourth thoracic vertebra. The right and left coronary arteries are its only branches.
    - The **aortic arch** (radiographically, the “aortic knob”) ascends anterior to the right pulmonary artery and the bifurcation of the trachea (where the trachea splits into right and left bronchi). It courses posteriorly and to the left, arching over the structures entering the left lung, and then turns inferiorly to descend to the left of the trachea and esophagus. It terminates on the left side of the T4 vertebral body. Three large branches arise from the arch:
        - The **brachiocephalic trunk,** which ascends posterior to the right sternoclavicular joint, where it bifurcates into the **right common carotid** and **right subclavian arteries**.
        - The **left common carotid artery,** which enters the neck posterior to the left sternoclavicular joint.
        - The **left subclavian artery,** which arises from the distal segment of the arch and enters the neck posterior to the left sternoclavicular joint.
    - The **descending aorta,** a continuation of the aortic arch, descends within the posterior mediastinum, where it passes posterior to the root of the left lung and anterior and to the left of the thoracic vertebral bodies. It passes into the abdomen through the diaphragm at T12. Its thoracic branches **(Fig. 5.5; Table 5.2)** are
        - the 3rd through 11th **posterior intercostal arteries** (the 1st and 2nd arise from the subclavian artery), which run anteriorly within the corresponding intercostal spaces (between the ribs), where they

    - anastomose with the anterior intercostal arteries; and
    - the visceral branches to the esophagus, trachea, bronchi, and pericardium.

— The **internal thoracic arteries** arise from the subclavian arteries in the neck and descend deep to the ribs on either side of the sternum. Their branches, which supply the thoracic and abdominal walls include **(Fig. 5.6)**:

- the **anterior intercostal arteries,** which run within the intercostal spaces;
- the **musculophrenic arteries,** terminal branches of the internal thoracic arteries, which arise at the level of the sixth costal cartilage and follow the lower margin of the rib cage laterally; and
- the **superior epigastric arteries,** terminal branches of the internal thoracic arteries, which run inferiorly to supply muscles of the anterior abdominal wall.

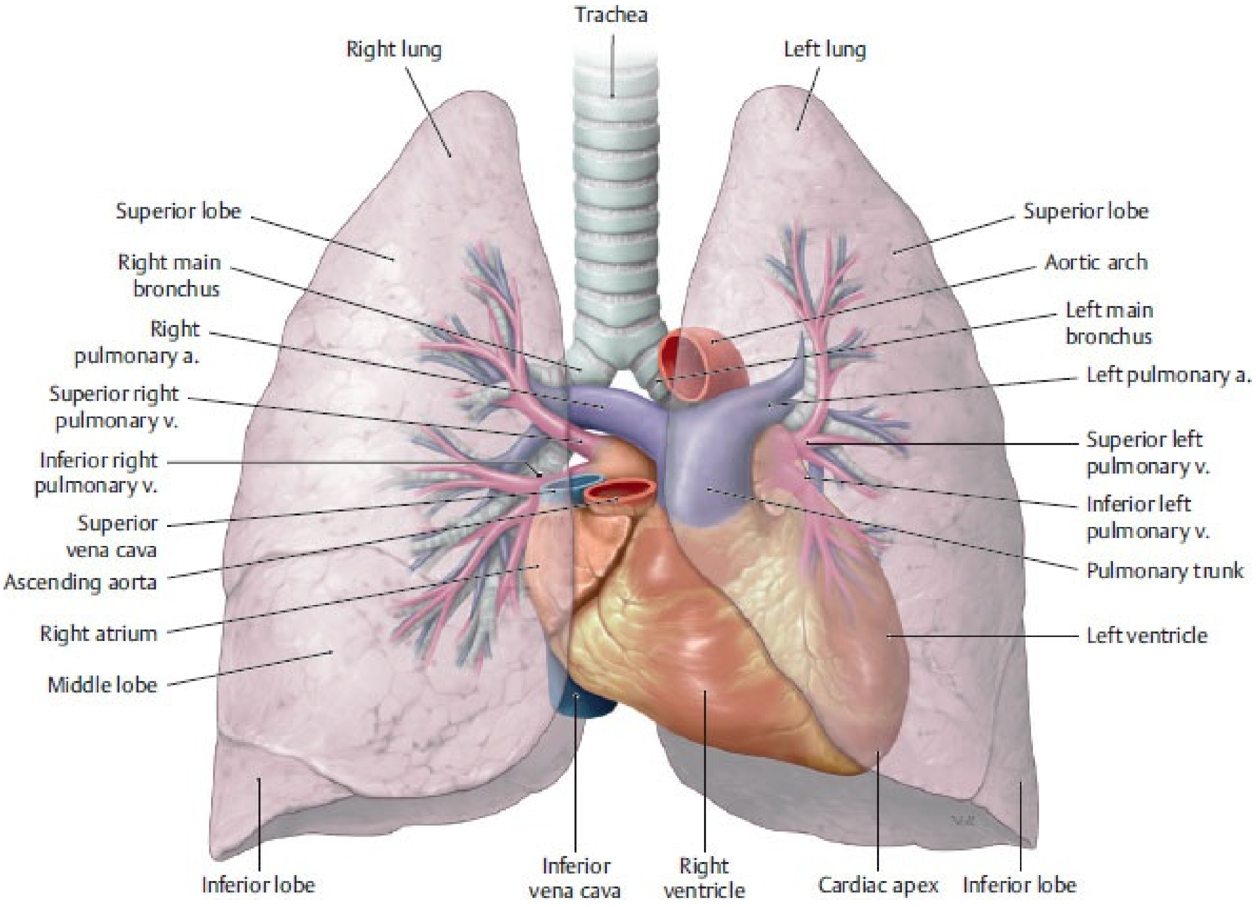
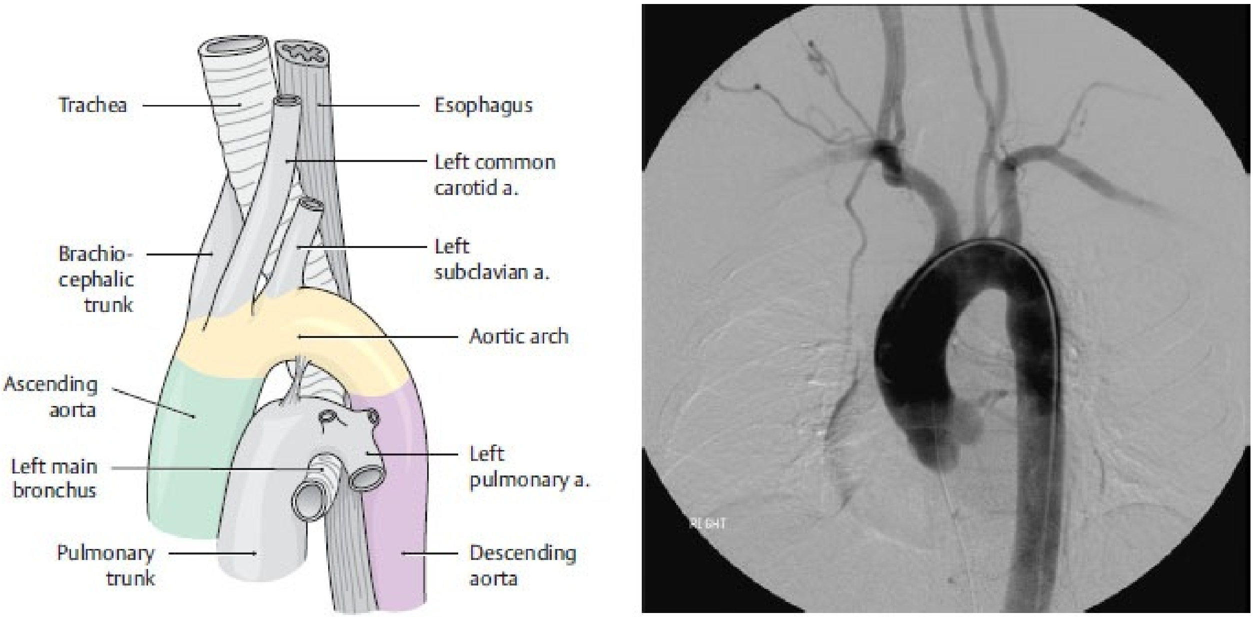

Trachea
Right lung
Left lung
Superior lobe
Right main bronchus
Right pulmonary a.
Superior right pulmonary v.
Inferior right pulmonary v.
Superior vena cava
Ascending aorta
Right atrium
Middle lobe
Superior lobe
Aortic arch
Left main bronchus
Left pulmonary a.
Superior left pulmonary v.
Inferior left pulmonary v.
Pulmonary trunk
Left ventricle
Inferior lobe
Inferior vena cava
Right ventricle
Cardiac apex
Inferior lobe

Fig. 5.3 Pulmonary arteries and veins

Distribution of the pulmonary arteries and veins, anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustra-tions by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Trachea
Esophagus
Left common carotid a.
Brachio-cephalic trunk
Left subclavian a.
Aortic arch
Ascending aorta
Left main bronchus
Left pulmonary a.
Pulmonary trunk
Descending aorta
RIGHT

A Parts of the aortic arch, left lateral view. *Note:* The aortic arch begins and ends at the level of the sternal angle (T4-T5). (From Gunderman R. Essential Radiology, 3rd ed. New York: Thieme; 2014.) (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

B Digital subtraction angiogram of the aortic arch. (From Gunderman R. Essential Radiology, 3rd ed. New York: Thieme; 2014)

Fig. 5.4 Thoracic aorta

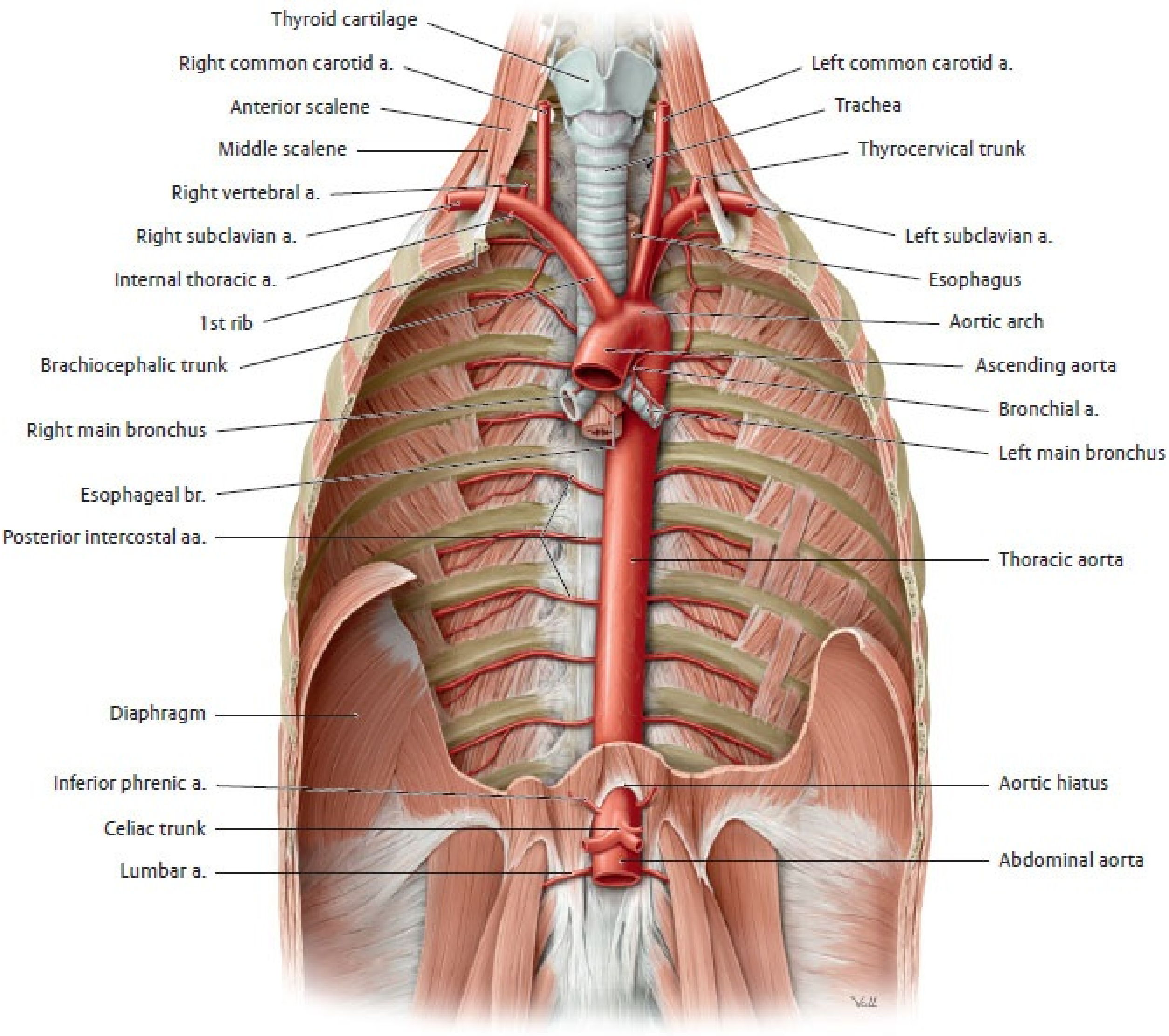

Thyroid cartilage
Right common carotid a.
Anterior scalene
Middle scalene
Right vertebral a.
Right subclavian a.
Internal thoracic a.
1st rib
Brachiocephalic trunk
Right main bronchus
Esophageal br.
Posterior intercostal aa.
Diaphragm
Inferior phrenic a.
Celiac trunk
Lumbar a.
Left common carotid a.
Trachea
Thyrocervical trunk
Left subclavian a.
Esophagus
Aortic arch
Ascending aorta
Bronchial a.
Left main bronchus
Thoracic aorta
Aortic hiatus
Abdominal aorta
Voll

Fig. 5.5 Thoracic aorta in situ, anterior view

Removed: Heart, lungs, and portions of the diaphragm. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Table 5.2 Branches of the Thoracic Aorta

The thoracic organs are supplied by direct branches from the thoracic aorta, as well as indirect branches from the subclavian arteries.

Part of aorta	Branches			Region supplied
Ascending aorta	Right and left coronary aa.			Heart, bronchi, trachea, esophagus
Arch of aorta	Brachiocephalic trunk	Right subclavian a.	(See left subclavian a. for complementary branches and regions supplied)	
		Right common carotid a.		Head and neck
	Left common carotid a.			
	Left subclavian a.	Vertebral a.		
		Internal thoracic a.	Anterior intercostal aa.	Anterior chest wall
			Thymic brs.	Thymus
			Mediastinal brs.	Posterior mediastinum
			Pericardiacophrenic a.	Pericardium, diaphragm
		Thyrocervical trunk	Inferior thyroid a.	Esophagus, trachea, thyroid gland
		Costocervical trunk	Superior intercostal a.	Chest wall
Descending aorta	Visceral brs.			Bronchi, trachea, esophagus
	Parietal brs.		Posterior intercostal aa.	Posterior chest wall
			Superior phrenic aa.	Diaphragm

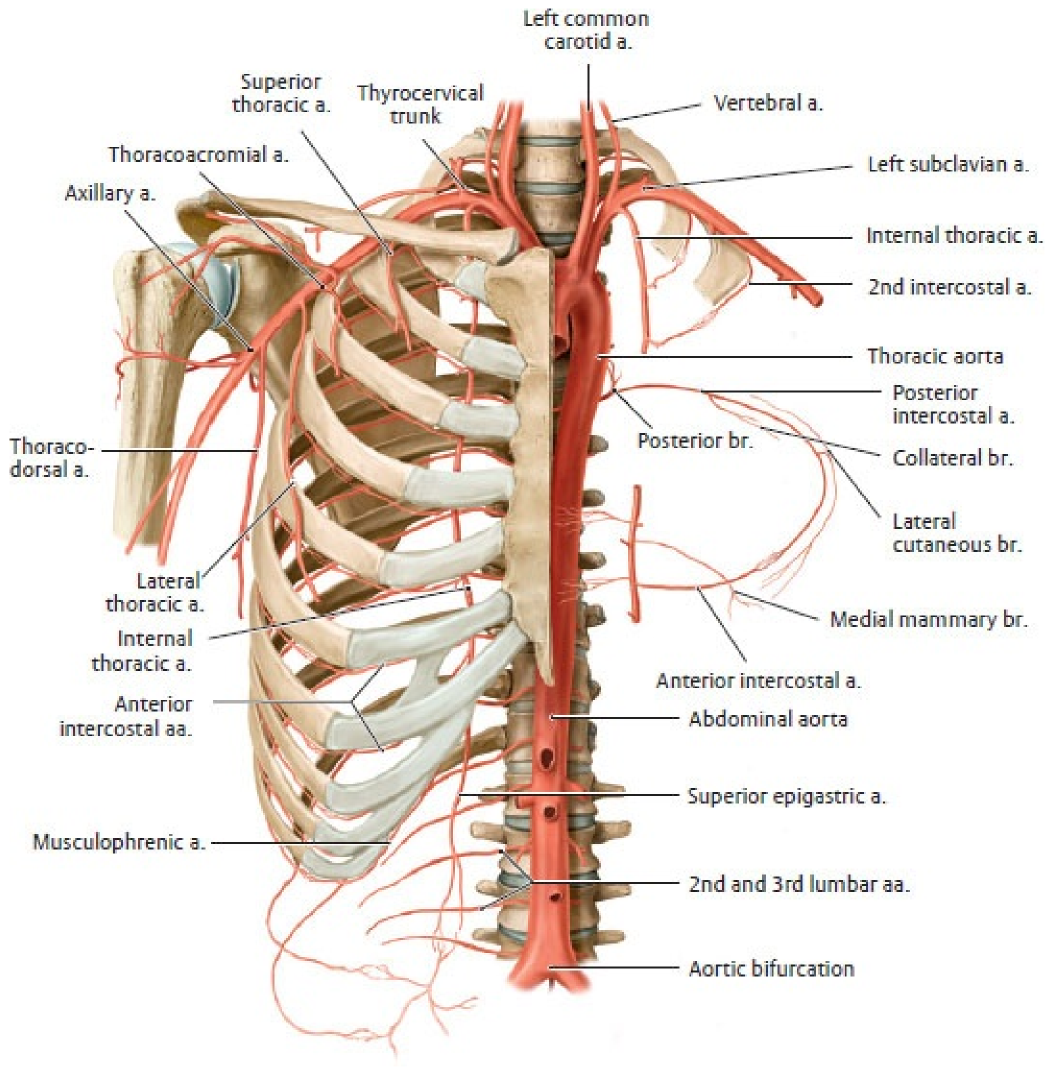

Left common carotid a.
Superior thoracic a.
Thyrocervical trunk
Vertebral a.
Thoracoacromial a.
Left subclavian a.
Axillary a.
Internal thoracic a.
2nd intercostal a.
Thoracic aorta
Posterior intercostal a.
Posterior br.
Collateral br.
Thoraco-dorsal a.
Lateral cutaneous br.
Lateral thoracic a.
Medial mammary br.
Internal thoracic a.
Anterior intercostal a.
Anterior intercostal aa.
Abdominal aorta
Superior epigastric a.
Musculophrenic a.
2nd and 3rd lumbar aa.
Aortic bifurcation

Fig. 5.6 Arteries of the thoracic wall

Anterior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Veins of the Thorax (Fig. 5.7)

- **Internal thoracic veins,** which receive the anterior intercos-tal veins, accompany the internal thoracic arteries and drain into the brachiocephalic veins of the superior mediastinum.
- The **right** and **left brachiocephalic veins,** which drain the head, neck, and upper limb, form behind the clavicle by the convergence of the internal jugular and subclavian veins. The left brachiocephalic vein, which is longer than the right, crosses the midline just anterior to the branches of the aortic arch and converges with the right brachiocephalic vein to form the superior

vena cava.

- The **superior vena cava,** which returns deoxygenated blood from the upper body to the heart, forms on the right side, posterior to the costal cartilage of the first rib by the junction of the brachiocephalic veins. It descends behind and to the right side of the aorta and drains into the superior pole of the right atrium.
- The **inferior vena cava,** which returns deoxygenated blood to the heart from the abdomen, pelvis, and lower limbs, enters the right atrium after passing through the diaphragm from the abdomen. Only a small portion, therefore, is located within the thorax.
- The **pulmonary veins,** two on each side (often three on the left side), carry oxygenated blood from the lungs to the left side of the heart (see **Fig. 5.3).**
- The **azygos system** drains veins of the thoracic and antero lateral abdominal walls **(Figs. 5.7** and **5.8)**.
  - The **azygos vein** ascends along the right side of the thoracic vertebral bodies as it drains the **posterior intercostal veins** of the thoracic wall on that side. It arches over the root of the right lung to empty into the superior vena cava.
  - The **accessory hemiazygos** and **hemiazygos veins** run along the left side of the thoracic vertebrae and drain the thoracic wall on the left side. They cross the midline inde-pendently (or they may join to form a single vessel) to drain into the azygos vein on the right side.
  - The azygos and hemiazygos veins are the continuations of the **ascending lumbar veins** in the abdomen, which communicate with the inferior vena cava. Thus the azygos system links the drainages of the superior and inferior vena cavae and provides a collateral (alternate) pathway for blood back to the heart.
  - **Mediastinal, esophageal,** and **bronchial veins** in the thorax, and the vertebral venous plexus (see Section 3.2) are also tributaries of the azygos system.

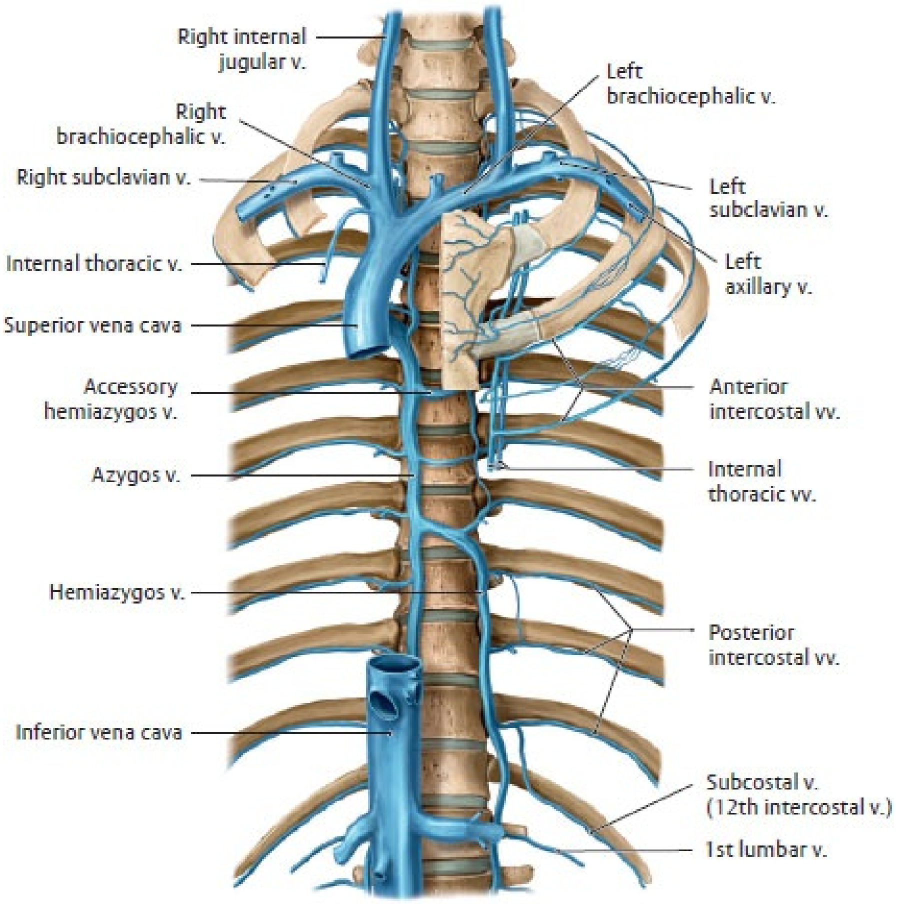

Right internal jugular v.
Left brachiocephalic v.
Right brachiocephalic v.
Right subclavian v.
Left subclavian v.
Internal thoracic v.
Left axillary v.
Superior vena cava
Accessory hemiazygos v.
Anterior intercostal vv.
Azygos v.
Internal thoracic vv.
Hemiazygos v.
Posterior intercostal vv.
Inferior vena cava
Subcostal v. (12th intercostal v.)
1st lumbar v.

Fig. 5.7 Veins of the thoracic wall

Anterior view with rib cage opened. *Removed:* Clavicle. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

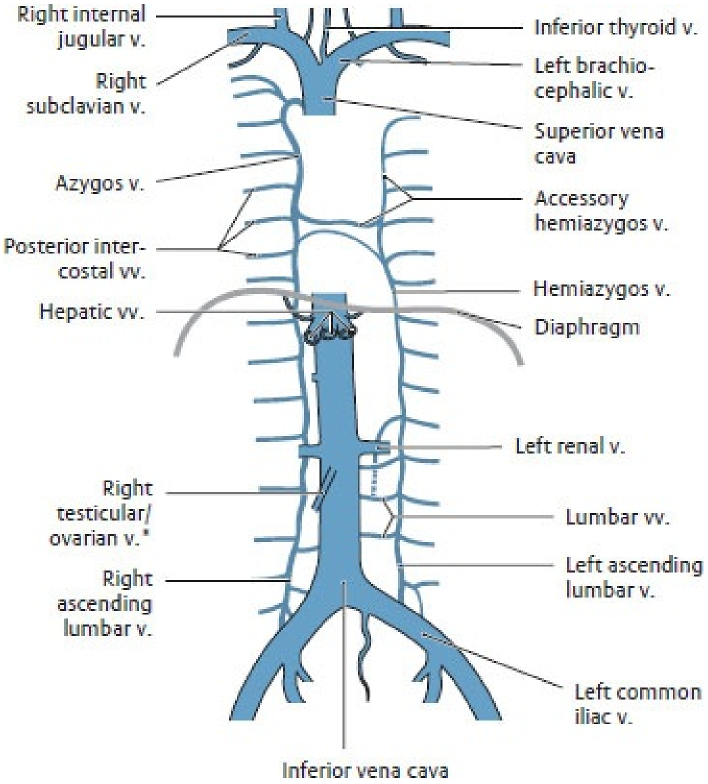

Right internal jugular v.
Right subclavian v.
Azygos v.
Posterior intercostal vv.
Hepatic vv.
Right testicular/ ovarian v.*
Right ascending lumbar v.
Inferior thyroid v.
Left brachiocephalic v.
Superior vena cava
Accessory hemiazygos v.
Hemiazygos v.
Diaphragm
Left renal v.
Lumbar vv.
Left ascending lumbar v.
Left common iliac v.
Inferior vena cava

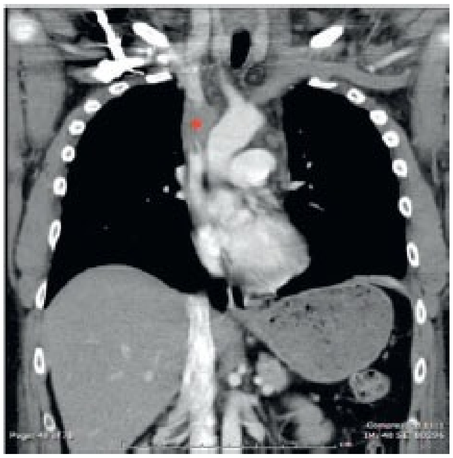
Fig. 5.8 Azygos system

Anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 5.1: CLINICAL CORRELATION

SUPERIOR VENA CAVA SYNDROME

The superior vena cava syndrome is an obstruction of the superior vena cava (SVC), which in the majority of cases is caused by mediastinal tumors such as metastatic lung carcinoma (the upper lobe of the right lung lies next to the SVC), lymphoma, breast cancer, or thyroid cancer. Noncancerous causes include thromboses (blood clots) that obstruct the lumen and infections that produce scarring. The onset of symptoms is usually gradual and includes dyspnea (shortness of breath) and swelling of the face, neck, and arms.



A coronal computed tomography (CT) scan image with intravenous (IV) contrast demonstrates a hypodense mass (*) occluding the superior vena cava (SVC), causing a swelling of the face and upper limbs. (From Gunderman R. Essential Radiology, 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2014)

Lymphatics of the Thorax (see Section 1.9)

- The **thoracic duct,** the main lymphatic vessel of the body,
  - drains the abdomen, pelvis, and lower limbs, and the left side of the thorax, head, neck, and left upper limb (except the lower lobe of the left lung; see Section 8.5);
  - enters the thorax from its origin in the abdomen and passes superiorly in the midline of the posterior mediastinum; and
  - terminates at the junction of the left subclavian and left internal jugular veins (jugulosubclavian junction or “venous angle”) in the neck.
- The **right lymphatic duct,** which has a variable form,
  - drains lymph from the right side of the thorax, the lower lobe of the left lung, the head, and neck, and the right upper limb; and
  - usually terminates at the junction of the right subclavian and right internal jugular veins (the jugulosubclavian junction).
- Lymph from most thoracic structures drains through chains of lymph nodes that empty into **bronchomediastinal trunks** in the mediastinum **(Figs. 5.9** and **5.10)**. This includes
  - parasternal and intercostal lymph nodes of the thoracic wall and superior surface of the diaphragm;
  - bronchopulmonary and intrapulmonary lymph nodes of the lungs and bronchi; and
  - tracheobronchial, paratracheal, and paraesophageal lymph nodes of the

heart, pericardium, trachea, and esophagus.

- The bronchomediastinal trunks may empty into the thoracic and right lymphatic ducts, but, more commonly, they empty directly into the subclavian veins in the neck.

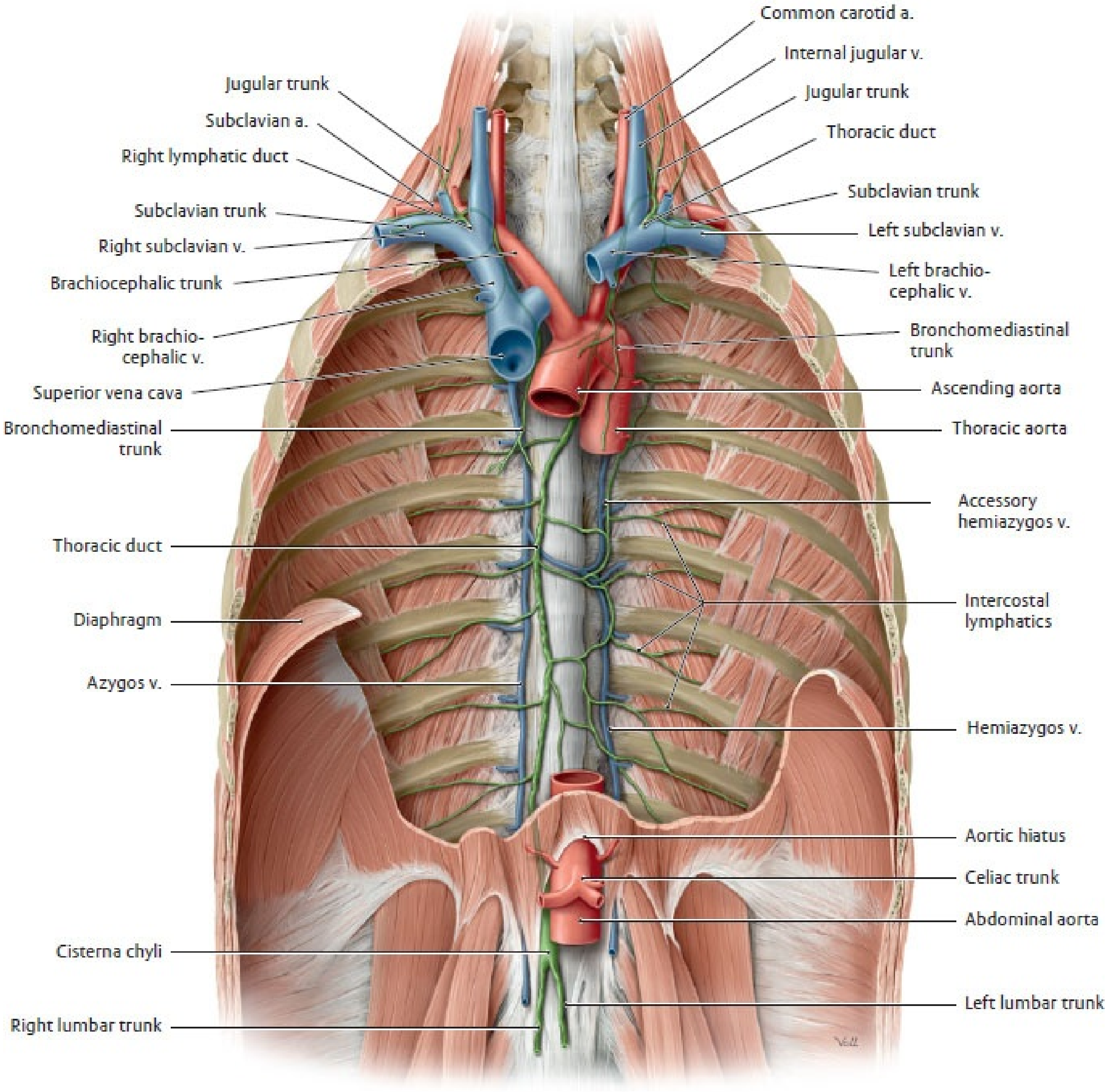

Jugular trunk
Subclavian a.
Right lymphatic duct
Subclavian trunk
Right subclavian v.
Brachiocephalic trunk
Right brachio-cephalic v.
Superior vena cava
Bronchomediastinal trunk
Thoracic duct
Diaphragm
Azygos v.
Cisterna chyli
Right lumbar trunk
Common carotid a.
Internal jugular v.
Jugular trunk
Thoracic duct
Subclavian trunk
Left subclavian v.
Left brachio-cephalic v.
Bronchomediastinal trunk
Ascending aorta
Thoracic aorta
Accessory hemiazygos v.
Intercostal lymphatics
Hemiazygos v.
Aortic hiatus
Celiac trunk
Abdominal aorta
Left lumbar trunk
Voll

Fig. 5.9 Lymphatic trunks in the thorax

Anterior view of opened thorax. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

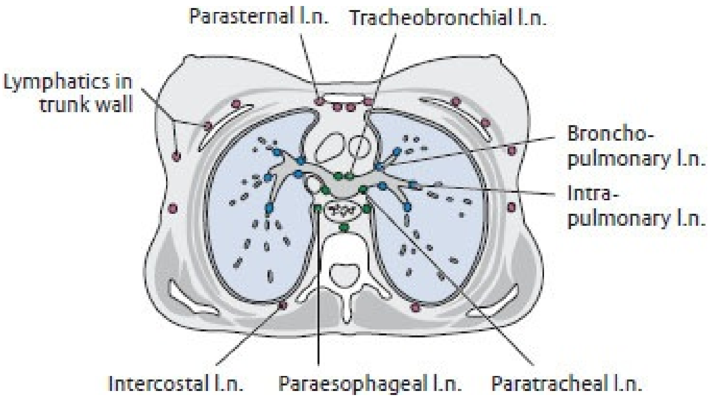


Fig. 5.10 Thoracic lymph nodes

Transverse section at the level of the tracheal bifurcation (at approxi-mately T4), viewed from below. Topographically, the thoracic lymph nodes can be divided into three broad groups:

— Lymph nodes in the thoracic wall *(pink)*
— Lymph nodes in the lung and at the divisions of the bronchial tree *(blue)*
— Lymph nodes associated with the trachea, esophagus, and pericardium *(green)*

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Nerves of the Thorax (Figs. 5.11, 5.12, 5.13, 5.14)

— Pairs of **posterior intercostal nerves** arise from the anterior rami of T1–T11 and pass along the inferior edge of the ribs on their deep surface.
  - The nerves innervate the muscles between the ribs, over-lying muscles and skin of the thoracic wall and the breast.

— **Phrenic nerves** arise in the neck from anterior rami of C3, C4, and C5 (“to keep the diaphragm alive”) and descend into the thorax.
  - On the right, the nerve runs along the superior vena cava; on the left, it descends along the lateral side of the aortic arch.
  - Both nerves pass anterior to the hila of the lungs as they descend to the diaphragm between the pericardial and pleural sacs.
  - The phrenic nerves provide motor innervation to the diaphragm and transmit sensory input from the mediasti-num, mediastinal and diaphragmatic pleura, and perito-neum on the inferior diaphragmatic surface.

— The **thoracic sympathetic trunks** run along either side of the thoracic vertebral column.

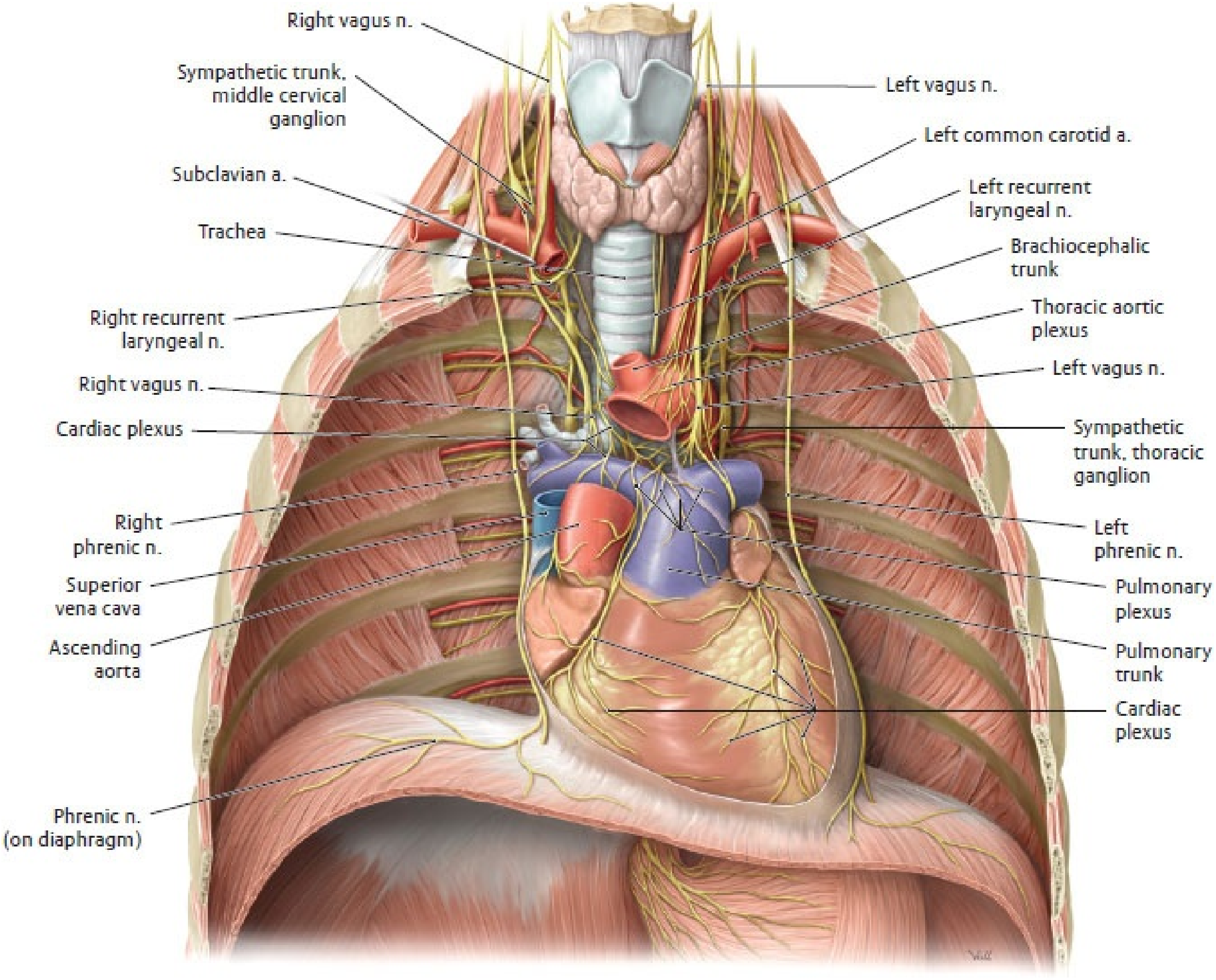

Right vagus n.
Sympathetic trunk, middle cervical ganglion
Subclavian a.
Trachea
Right recurrent laryngeal n.
Right vagus n.
Cardiac plexus
Right phrenic n.
Superior vena cava
Ascending aorta
Phrenic n. (on diaphragm)
Left vagus n.
Left common carotid a.
Left recurrent laryngeal n.
Brachiocephalic trunk
Thoracic aortic plexus
Left vagus n.
Sympathetic trunk, thoracic ganglion
Left phrenic n.
Pulmonary plexus
Pulmonary trunk
Cardiac plexus

Fig. 5.11 Nerves of the thorax

Anterior view of opened thorax. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

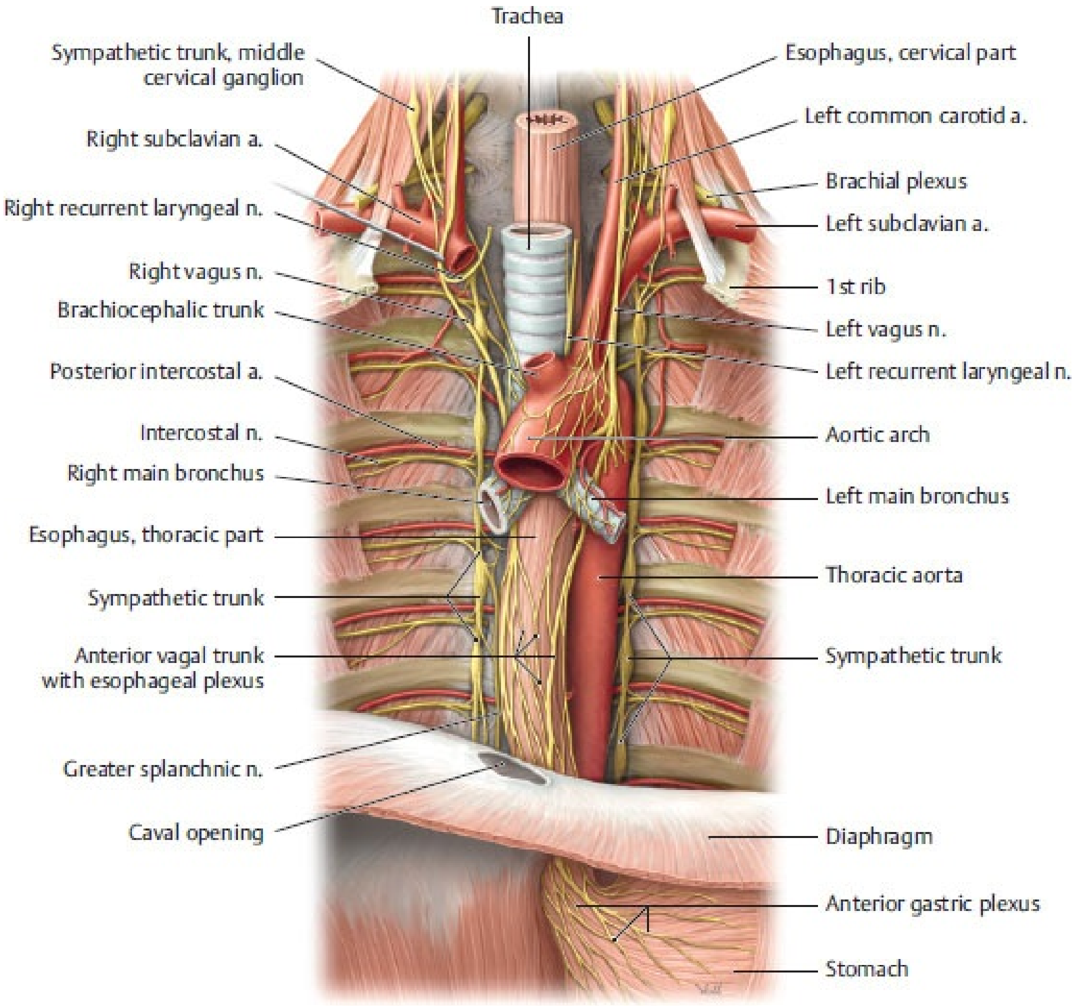
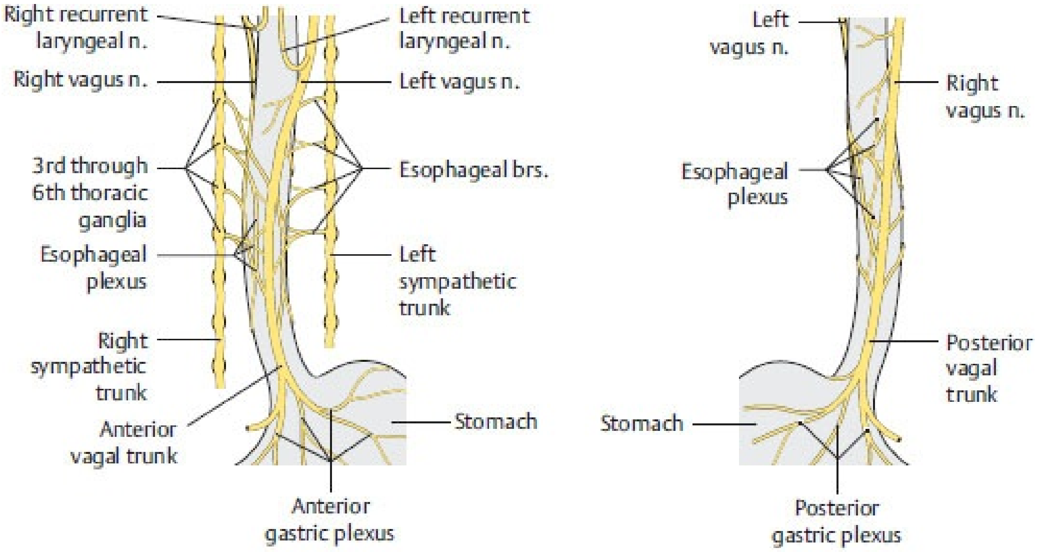

Trachea
Sympathetic trunk, middle cervical ganglion
Esophagus, cervical part
Left common carotid a.
Right subclavian a.
Brachial plexus
Right recurrent laryngeal n.
Left subclavian a.
Right vagus n.
1st rib
Brachiocephalic trunk
Left vagus n.
Left recurrent laryngeal n.
Posterior intercostal a.
Intercostal n.
Aortic arch
Right main bronchus
Left main bronchus
Esophagus, thoracic part
Thoracic aorta
Sympathetic trunk
Anterior vagal trunk with esophageal plexus
Sympathetic trunk
Greater splanchnic n.
Caval opening
Diaphragm
Anterior gastric plexus
Stomach

Fig. 5.12 Nerves of the posterior mediastinum

Anterior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Right recurrent laryngeal n.
Right vagus n.
3rd through 6th thoracic ganglia
Esophageal plexus
Right sympathetic trunk
Anterior vagal trunk
Left recurrent laryngeal n.
Left vagus n.
Esophageal brs.
Left sympathetic trunk
Stomach
Anterior gastric plexus
Left vagus n.
Esophageal plexus
Right vagus n.
Posterior vagal trunk
Stomach
Posterior gastric plexus

A Anterior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

B Posterior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Fig. 5.13 Esophageal plexus

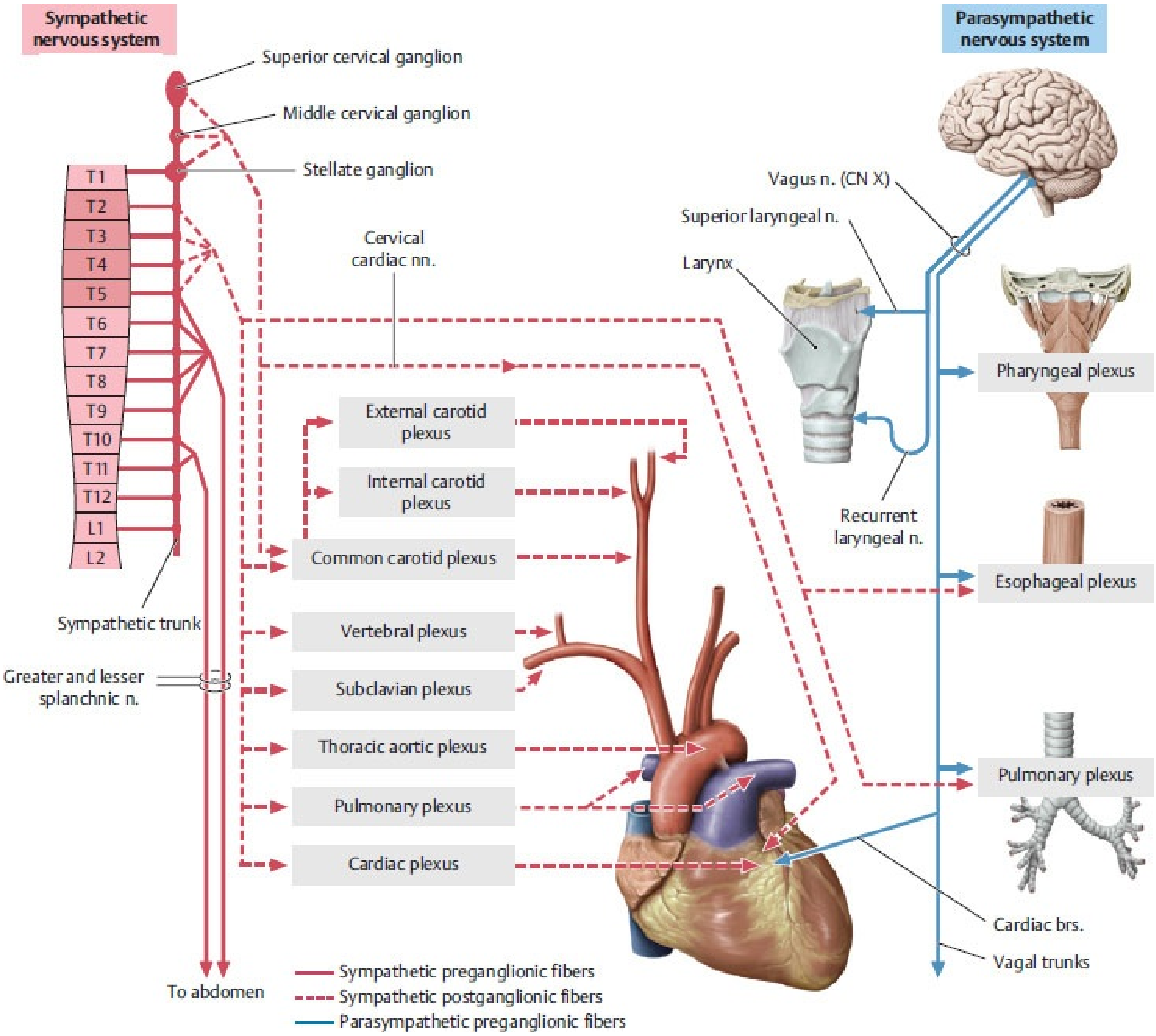

Sympathetic nervous system
Parasympathetic nervous system
Superior cervical ganglion
Middle cervical ganglion
Stellate ganglion
T1
T2
T3
T4
T5
T6
T7
T8
T9
T10
T11
T12
L1
L2
Cervical cardiac nn.
Vagus n. (CN X)
Superior laryngeal n.
Larynx
Pharyngeal plexus
External carotid plexus
Internal carotid plexus
Common carotid plexus
Recurrent laryngeal n.
Esophageal plexus
Sympathetic trunk
Vertebral plexus
Greater and lesser splanchnic n.
Subclavian plexus
Thoracic aortic plexus
Pulmonary plexus
Pulmonary plexus
Cardiac plexus
Cardiac brs.
Vagal trunks
To abdomen
Sympathetic preganglionic fibers
Sympathetic postganglionic fibers
Parasympathetic preganglionic fibers

Fig. 5.14 Sympathetic and parasympathetic nervous systems in the thorax

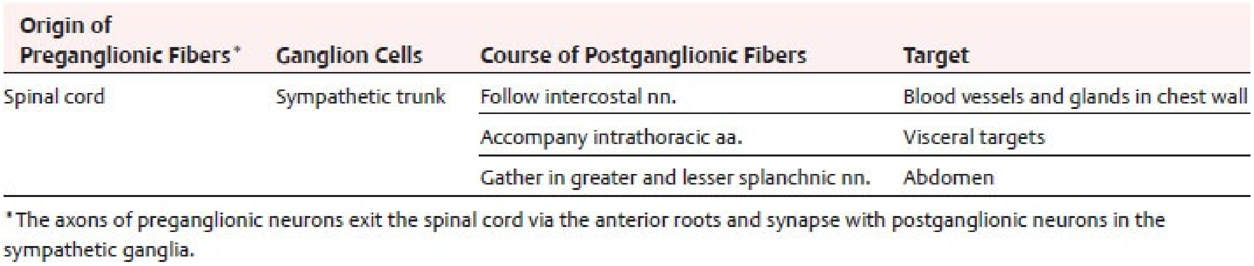
Schematic. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- Sympathetic (paravertebral) ganglia at each spinal level communicate with spinal nerves through white and gray rami communicans.
- The T1 ganglion may combine with the ganglion at C8 to form a large stellate (star-shaped) ganglion.
- Small splanchnic nerves, course medially from the sympathetic trunk, to contribute to the autonomic plexuses of the thorax, which innervate thoracic viscera.

— Three large additional splanchnic nerves arise from the thoracic sympathetic trunk on each side, the **greater (**T5–T9 or T10), **lesser** (T10–T11), and **least** (T12) **splanchnic nerves**, and course inferomedially along the thoracic vertebral bodies into the abdomen. They contain preganglionic fibers that synapse in prevertebral ganglia of abdominal autonomic nerve plexuses **(Table 5.3)**.

- The **vagus nerves** (cranial nerve X) descend from the neck into the thorax.
  - The right vagus courses behind the superior vena cava, medial to the arch of the azygos vein; the left vagus runs lateral to the aortic arch.
  - Both vagus nerves pass posterior to the hilum of the lung before merging on the wall of the esophagus.
  - The vagus nerves contribute parasympathetic fibers to the cardiac, pulmonary, and esophageal plexuses **(Table 5.4)**.
- The **left recurrent laryngeal nerve,** a branch of the left vagus nerve, passes under the aortic arch, posterior to the **ligamen-tum arteriosum** (see Section 5.6), and turns superiorly to ascend in the neck in the groove between the trachea and esophagus.

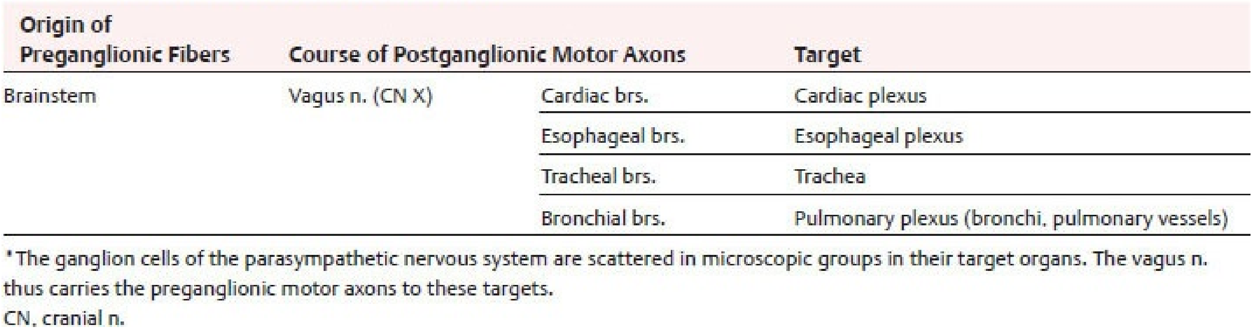
Table 5.3 Peripheral Sympathetic Nervous System



Origin of Preganglionic Fibers*	Ganglion Cells	Course of Postganglionic Fibers	Target
Spinal cord	Sympathetic trunk	Follow intercostal nn.	Blood vessels and glands in chest wall
		Accompany intrathoracic aa.	Visceral targets
		Gather in greater and lesser splanchnic nn.	Abdomen

*The axons of preganglionic neurons exit the spinal cord via the anterior roots and synapse with postganglionic neurons in the sympathetic ganglia.

Table 5.4 Peripheral Parasympathetic Nervous System



Origin of Preganglionic Fibers	Course of Postganglionic Motor Axons		Target
Brainstem	Vagus n. (CN X)	Cardiac brs.	Cardiac plexus
		Esophageal brs.	Esophageal plexus
		Tracheal brs.	Trachea
		Bronchial brs.	Pulmonary plexus (bronchi, pulmonary vessels)

*The ganglion cells of the parasympathetic nervous system are scattered in microscopic groups in their target organs. The vagus n. thus carries the preganglionic motor axons to these targets.
CN, cranial n.

  - The right recurrent laryngeal nerve, a branch of the right vagus, recurs around the subclavian artery in the neck and is not a thoracic structure.
- The **esophageal plexus** surrounds the lower esophagus.
  - It is composed of preganglionic parasympathetic fibers from the right and left vagus nerves and postganglionic fibers from the thoracic

sympathetic trunk.

  - **Anterior** and **posterior vagal trunks** arise from the plexus and pass into the abdomen, anterior and posterior to the esophagus.

— The **cardiac plexus (Fig. 5.13)**, which is located above the heart in the concavity of the arch of the aorta, continues along the coronary arteries. It innervates the conducting system of the heart and contains

  - preganglionic sympathetic fibers from T1 to T5 and postganglionic sympathetic fibers from cardiopulmonary branches of the cervical and thoracic sympathetic trunk;
  - preganglionic parasympathetic fibers from cardiac branches of the vagus nerve that arise in the cervical region and contributions from the recurrent laryngeal nerves; and
  - visceral sensory fibers that travel with sympathetic and parasympathetic nerves.

— The **pulmonary plexus** is a continuation of the cardiac plexus onto the bifurcation of the trachea and the bronchi that pene-trate the hilum of each lung.

  - It regulates the constriction and dilation of the pulmonary vessels and respiratory passages.
  - It transmits sensation from the lung and visceral, or inner, layer of the pleural sac that is adherent to the surface of the lung.

6 Thoracic Wall

A bony and muscular cage, which communicates superiorly with the neck and inferiorly with the abdomen, encloses and protects the thoracic contents. A superficial layer of extrinsic muscles overlies the thoracic cage, although these muscles act primarily on the upper limb. The breast, a derivative of the epidermis (outermost layer of skin), is a prominent superficial structure of the thoracic wall.

6.1 The Breast

General Features

The breast is made up of the **mammary gland,** a modified sweat gland, and its supporting fat and fibrous tissue **(Figs. 6.1** and **6.2)**. Breasts remain rudimentary in males but are prominent struc-tures of the female pectoral region.

- Female breasts extend from the lateral border of the sternum to the midaxillary line and overlie the 2nd through 6th ribs.
- The breast is embedded in the subcutaneous layer of the skin overlying the deep fascia of the pectoralis major and serratus anterior muscles.
- The **retromammary space** is a plane of loose connective tissue that separates the breast from underlying fascia of the pectoralis major muscle and allows movement of the breasts on the thoracic wall.
- The highest prominence of the breast, the **nipple,** is located at the center of the areola. Circularly arranged smooth muscle fibers cause erection of the nipple in response to cold or tactile stimulation. In men and young women, the nipple is at the T4 vertebral level, but in older women this location varies considerably.
- The **areola,** the pigmented skin surrounding the nipple, contains sebaceous glands whose oily secretions lubricate the area during nursing.
- An **axillary tail,** or small finger of glandular tissue, may extend into the axilla (armpit) along the lower edge of the pectoralis muscle.
- The volume of fat, not the volume of glandular tissue, largely determines the differences in breast size among women.

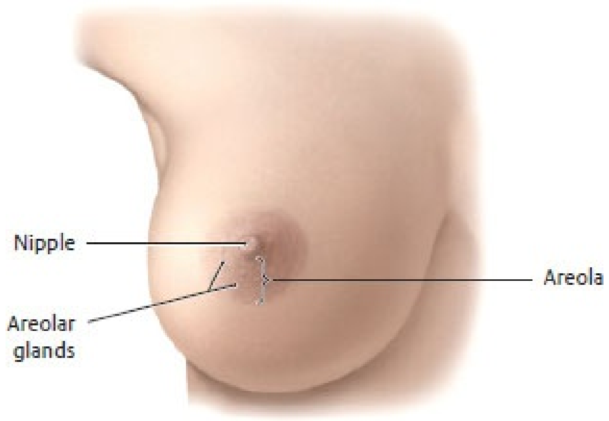


Fig. 6.1 Surface anatomy of the breast

Right breast, anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Mammary Gland

The mammary gland has two components:

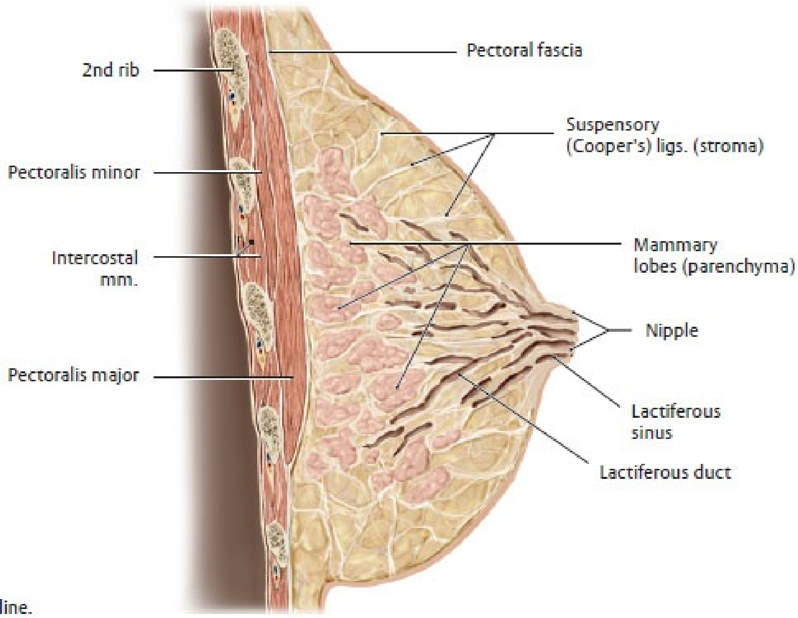
- The **parenchyma,** or milk-producing part of the gland (see **Fig. 6.2**)
  - The parenchyma consists of lobes divided into 15 to 20 lobules, which contain grapelike clusters of **alveoli,** hollow balls lined by secretory cells.
  - **Lactiferous ducts** in the parenchyma drain each lobule and open at the nipple. Deep to the areola, each duct has a small, dilated portion called the **lactiferous sinus** where, in lactating females, a small amount of milk is stored.
- The **stroma,** or fibrous framework, of the gland that separates the lobules and supports the lobes
  - Stroma is attached to the overlying dermis of the skin by **suspensory (Cooper) ligaments,** which are particularly strong on the superior surface of the breast.

Neurovasculature of the Breast

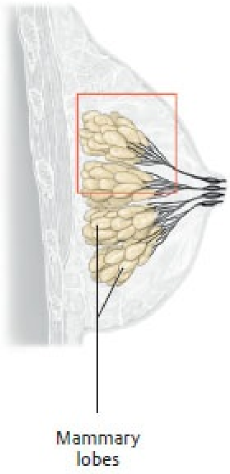
- Anterior intercostal branches and medial mammary branches (from perforating branches) of the internal thoracic artery, **lateral thoracic** and **thoracoacromial branches** of the axillary artery, and the 2nd, 3rd, and 4th posterior intercostal arteries supply the breast (see Sections 5.2 and 6.4).
- Venous blood drains primarily to the axillary vein but also to the internal thoracic vein.
- Most lymph (> 75%) from the breast drains (particularly from the lateral

quadrant) to axillary lymph nodes (**Fig. 6.3**); from there it travels to nodes around the clavicle and the ipsilateral lymphatic duct.

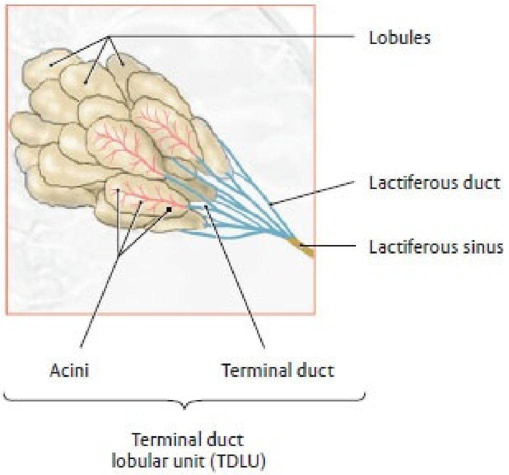
  - Some lymph may drain to deep pectoral nodes, where it joins the bronchomediastinal drainage in the mediastinum.
  - Medial portions of the breast may drain to parasternal nodes and to the contralateral breast; inferior segments may drain to abdominal nodes.
- The anterior and lateral cutaneous branches of the 4th, 5th, and 6th intercostal nerves innervate the breast.


Pectoral fascia
2nd rib
Suspensory (Cooper's) ligs. (stroma)
Pectoralis minor
Mammary lobes (parenchyma)
Intercostal mm.
Nipple
Pectoralis major
Lactiferous sinus
Lactiferous duct

A Sagittal section along midclavicular line.


Mammary lobes

B Duct system and portions of a mammary lobe. In the nonlactating breast (shown here), the lobules contain clusters of rudimentary acini.


Lobules
Lactiferous duct
Lactiferous sinus
Acini
Terminal duct
Terminal duct lobular unit (TDLU)

C Structure of a mammary lobe.

Fig. 6.2 Structure of the breast

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

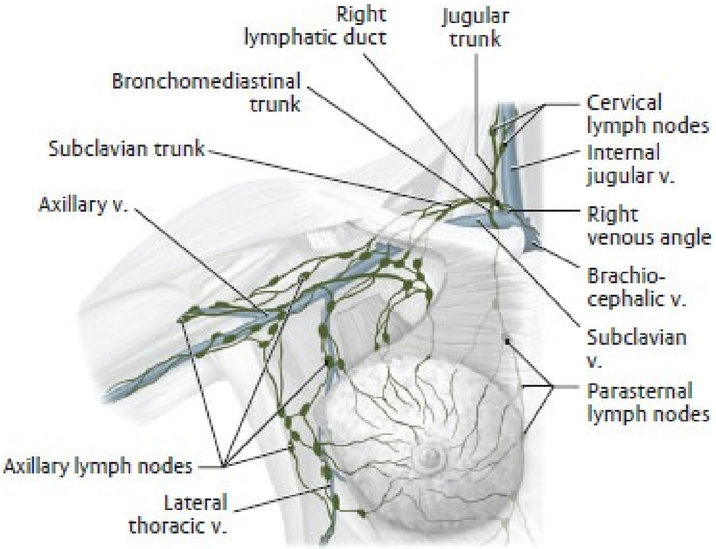

Right lymphatic duct
Jugular trunk
Bronchomediastinal trunk
Subclavian trunk
Axillary v.
Cervical lymph nodes
Internal jugular v.
Right venous angle
Brachio-cephalic v.
Subclavian v.
Parasternal lymph nodes
Axillary lymph nodes
Lateral thoracic v.

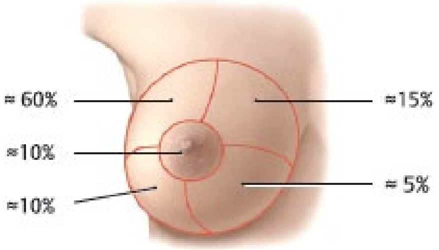
Fig. 6.3 Lymphatic drainage of the female breast

Anterior view. Axillary, parasternal, and cervical lymph nodes. Right thoracic and axillary region with the arm abducted. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 1st ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2007.)

BOX 6.1: CLINICAL CORRELATION

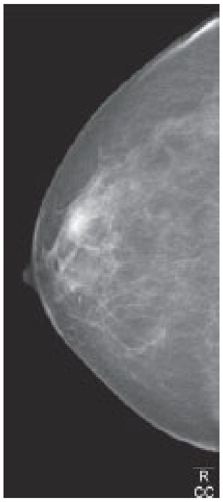
CARCINOMA OF THE BREAST

The most common type of breast cancer, invasive ductal carci-noma, arises from the lining of the lactiferous ducts. Typically, it metastasizes through lymphatic channels, most abundantly to axillary nodes from the supralateral quadrant but it may also travel to supraclavicular nodes, the contralateral breast, and the abdo-men. Obstruction of the lymphatic drainage causes edema, and fibrosis (shortening) of the suspensory ligaments can cause a pitted appearance of the skin. Through venous communication with the azygos system and vertebral venous plexus, breast cancer can metastasize to the vertebrae, cranium, and brain. Elevation of the breast with contraction of the pectoralis major muscle sug-gests invasion of the pectoralis fascia and retromammary space.

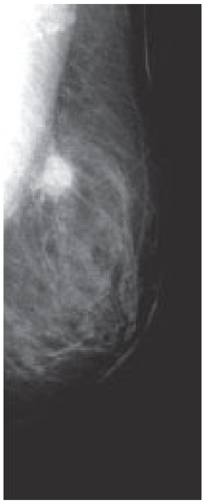


Origin of malignant breast tumors by quadrant

Right breast. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)



Normal mammogram (From Gunderman R. Essential Radiology, 3rd ed. New York: Thieme; 2014.)



This mediolateral-oblique mammogram demonstrates a spiculated mass in the upper outer quadrant, an infiltrating ductal carcinoma, in this 63-year-old woman. (From Gunderman R. Essential Radiology, 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2014.)

6.2 The Thoracic Skeleton

The thoracic skeleton protects the thoracic viscera and provides attachment for the upper limb. The thoracic cage includes the sternum, 12 pairs of ribs, and the 12 thoracic vertebrae (Fig. 6.4).

The Sternum

The **sternum** is a flat, elongated bone that has three parts:

1. The **manubrium,** which articulates laterally with the costal cartilages (cartilage that attaches the ribs to the sternum) of the 1st and 2nd ribs. A deep **jugular notch** separates the right and left sternoclavicular joints**,** where the manubrium articulates with the clavicles.
2. The **body,** which is fused superiorly with the manubrium at the **manubriosternal joint.** Laterally, the body articulates with costal cartilages of the 2nd to 7th ribs.
3. The **xiphoid process,** the lowest part of the sternum, which joins superiorly with the body of the sternum at the xiphis-ternal joint.

- The **sternal angle** is an important surface landmark on the anterior thoracic wall that provides orientation to the internal anatomy of the thorax. It is a palpable ridge that marks the fusion of the manubrium and body of the sternum. A horizontal plane through the sternal angle intersects
    - the articulation between the sternum and the costal cartilages of the 2nd ribs,
    - the division of the mediastinum into superior and inferior regions,
    - the origin and termination of the aortic arch,
    - the bifurcation of the trachea, and
    - the T4–T5 intervertebral disk.

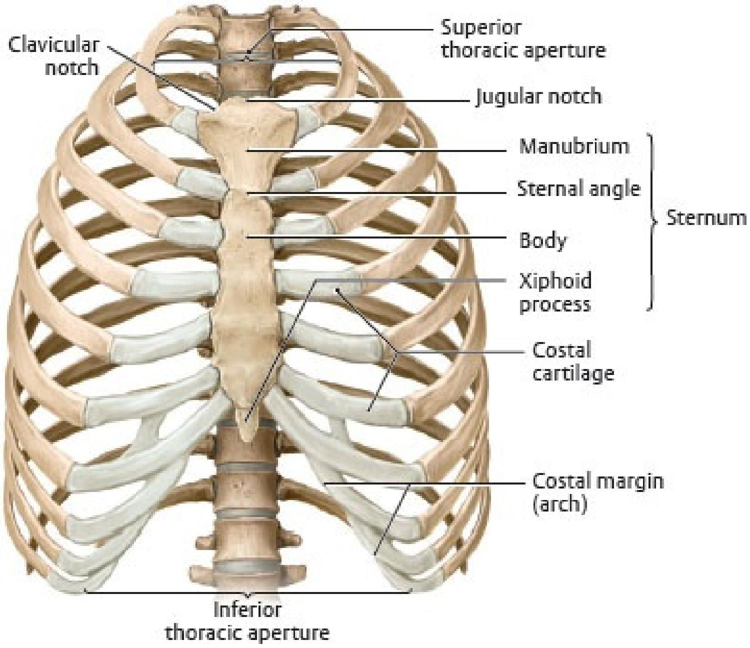

Clavicular notch
Superior thoracic aperture
Jugular notch
Manubrium
Sternal angle
Body
Xiphoid process
Sternum
Costal cartilage
Costal margin (arch)
Inferior thoracic aperture

Fig. 6.4 Thoracic skeleton

Anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

The Ribs

- The ribs are numbered 1 to 12 from superior to inferior, and each rib articulates with a thoracic vertebra of the same number.
- The ribs hang obliquely downward from their articulation with the vertebral column. Their anterior ends may be two to five vertebral levels lower than their posterior attachment.
- Ribs 1 to 10 articulate anteriorly with a cartilaginous segment called the **costal cartilage.**
- The ribs are classified according to the articulation of their costal cartilage with the sternum **(Fig. 6.5)**:
  - **True ribs** (1 to 7) articulate directly with the sternum via individual costal cartilages.
  - **False ribs** (8 to 10) articulate indirectly with the sternum through costal cartilages that are connected to the cartilage superior to it.
  - **Floating ribs** (11 and 12) have no connection to the sternum.
- Most ribs articulate at three joints **(Fig. 6.6)**:
  1. **Costochondral joints** between the bony segments of ribs 1 to 10 and their respective **costal cartilages**

2. **Sternocostal joints** between the sternum and costal cartilages of ribs 1 to 7 on each side
3. **Costovertebral joints** between the ribs and vertebrae. These joints may contain multiple articulations.
    - The **costal tubercle** of each rib articulates with the costal facet on its accompanying thoracic vertebra (see **Fig. 3.6**)**.**
    - The **heads** of ribs 2 to 10 articulate with the vertebra of the same number and with the vertebra superior to them. Ribs 1, 11, and 12 articulate only with their own vertebra.

Thoracic Apertures

— The thoracic cage has superior and inferior openings (see **Fig. 6.4**)**:**

- The **superior thoracic aperture (thoracic inlet)**, which is bounded by the T1 vertebra, the 1st ribs, and the manu- brium of the sternum. The thorax communicates with the neck through this opening.
- The **inferior thoracic aperture (thoracic outlet)**, which is bounded by the T12 vertebra, the 11th and 12th ribs, the **costal margin** (lower border of the thoracic cage), and the xiphoid process. A muscular diaphragm closes this aperture, separating the thoracic cavity from the abdomi-nal cavity.

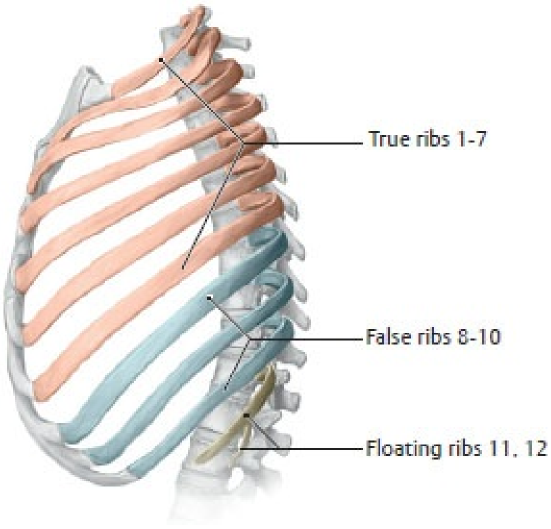


Fig. 6.5 Types of ribs

Left lateral view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

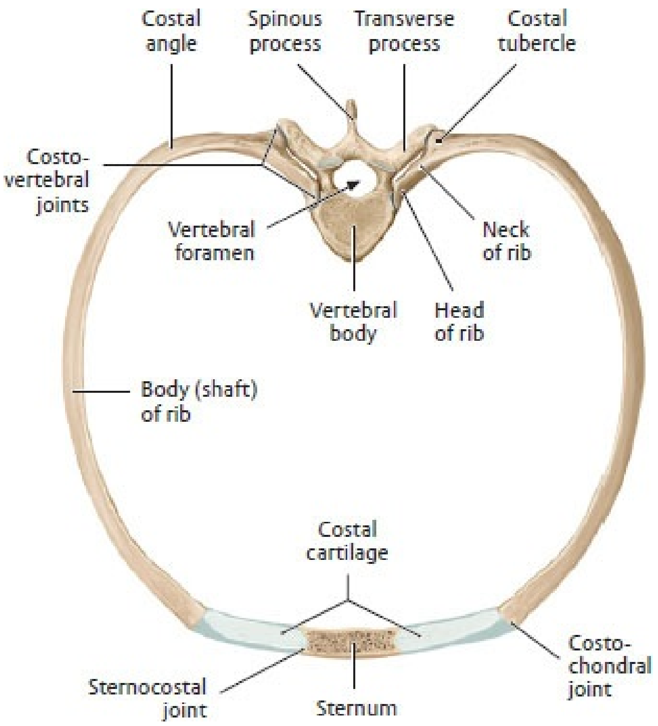

Costal angle
Spinous process
Transverse process
Costal tubercle
Costo-vertebral joints
Vertebral foramen
Neck of rib
Vertebral body
Head of rib
Body (shaft) of rib
Costal cartilage
Costo-chondral joint
Sternocostal joint
Sternum

Fig. 6.6 Structure of a thoracic segment

Superior view of 6th rib pair. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

6.3 Muscles of the Thorax

Muscles of the Thoracic Wall (Fig. 6.7; Table 6.1)

— Extrinsic muscles of the upper limb, including the **pectoralis major, pectoralis minor,** and **serratus anterior,** cover the thorax. Although they mainly move or stabilize the upper limb, these muscles also assist in movements of the ribs during deep inspiration. (See Chapter 18, Overview of the Upper Limb.)

— The **anterior scalene, middle scalene,** and **posterior scalene muscles** originate on the transverse processes of the cervical vertebrae and insert onto the 1st and 2nd ribs. They assist the intrinsic thoracic muscles during inspiration and are consid-ered extrinsic muscles of respiration.

— Intrinsic muscles of the thoracic wall are the chief muscles that move the ribs during respiration.

- The **intercostal muscles** occupy the intercostal spaces between the ribs. They extend from the inferior border of one rib to the superior border of the next inferior rib. The intercostal muscles move the ribs primarily during forced respiration. During quiet respiration, they stabilize the thoracic wall. They include

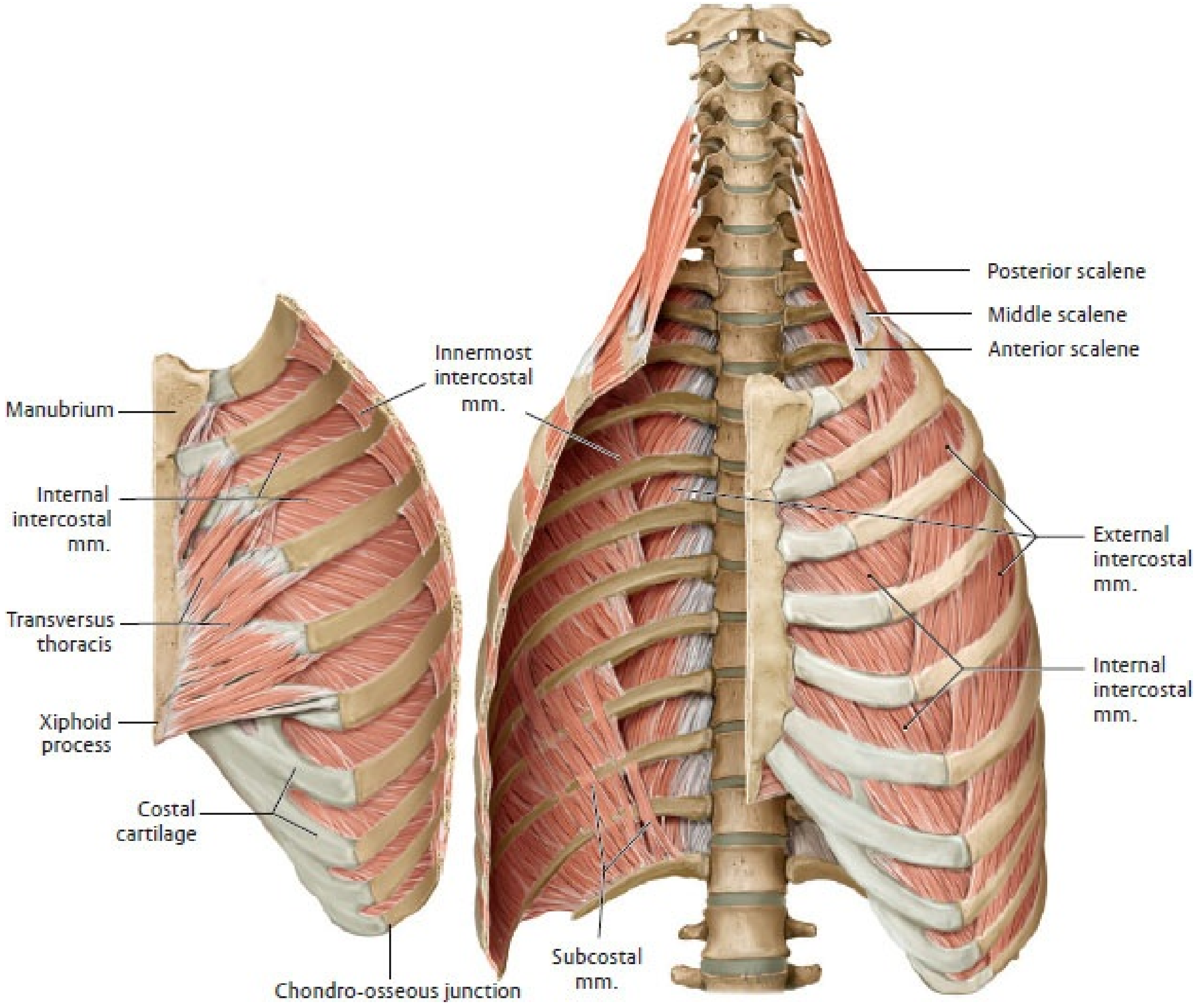

Posterior scalene
Middle scalene
Anterior scalene
Innermost intercostal mm.
Manubrium
Internal intercostal mm.
External intercostal mm.
Transversus thoracis
Internal intercostal mm.
Xiphoid process
Costal cartilage
Subcostal mm.
Chondro-osseous junction

Fig. 6.7 Transversus thoracis

Anterior view with thoracic cage opened to expose posterior surface of anterior wall. The external and internal intercostal membranes have been removed. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

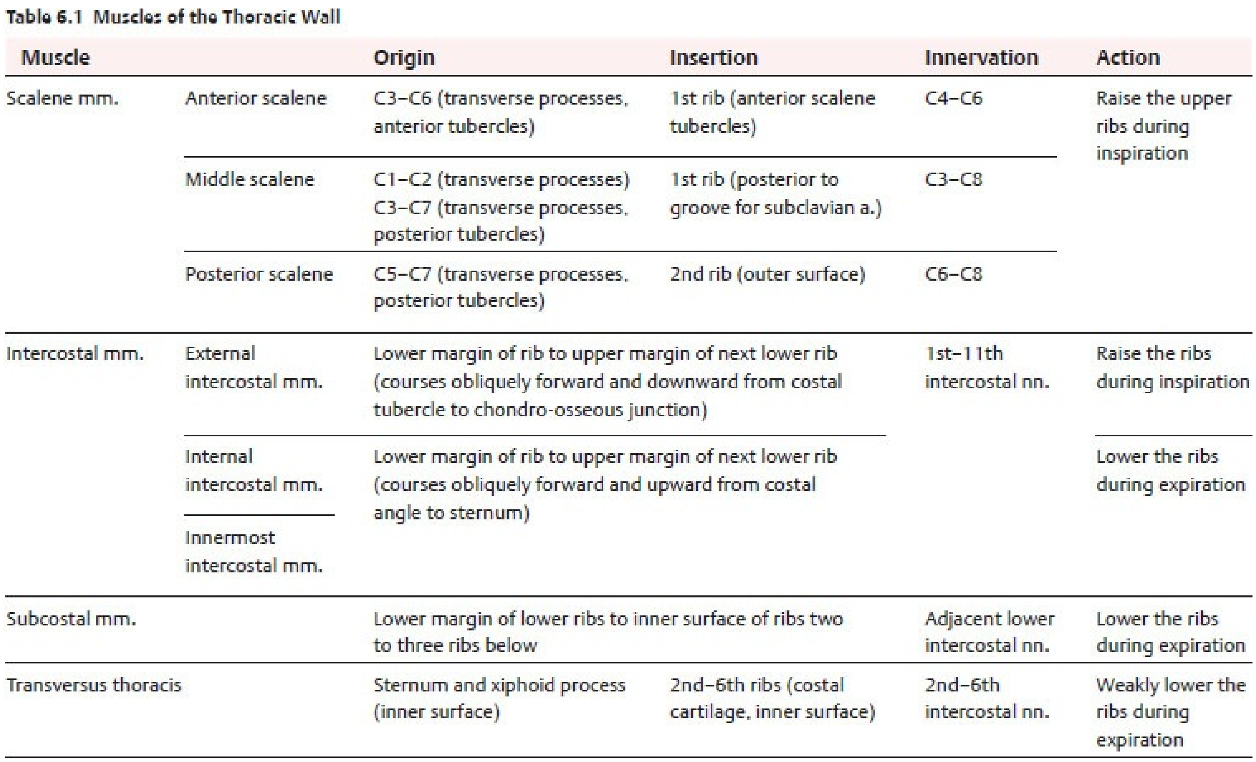


Table 6.1 Muscles of the Thoracic Wall

Muscle		Origin	Insertion	Innervation	Action
Scalene mm.	Anterior scalene	C3–C6 (transverse processes, anterior tubercles)	1st rib (anterior scalene tubercles)	C4–C6	Raise the upper ribs during inspiration
	Middle scalene	C1–C2 (transverse processes) C3–C7 (transverse processes, posterior tubercles)	1st rib (posterior to groove for subclavian a.)	C3–C8	
	Posterior scalene	C5–C7 (transverse processes, posterior tubercles)	2nd rib (outer surface)	C6–C8	
Intercostal mm.	External intercostal mm.	Lower margin of rib to upper margin of next lower rib (courses obliquely forward and downward from costal tubercle to chondro-osseous junction)		1st–11th intercostal nn.	Raise the ribs during inspiration
	Internal intercostal mm.	Lower margin of rib to upper margin of next lower rib (courses obliquely forward and upward from costal angle to sternum)			Lower the ribs during expiration
	Innermost intercostal mm.				
Subcostal mm.		Lower margin of lower ribs to inner surface of ribs two to three ribs below		Adjacent lower intercostal nn.	Lower the ribs during expiration
Transversus thoracis		Sternum and xiphoid process (inner surface)	2nd–6th ribs (costal cartilage, inner surface)	2nd–6th intercostal nn.	Weakly lower the ribs during expiration

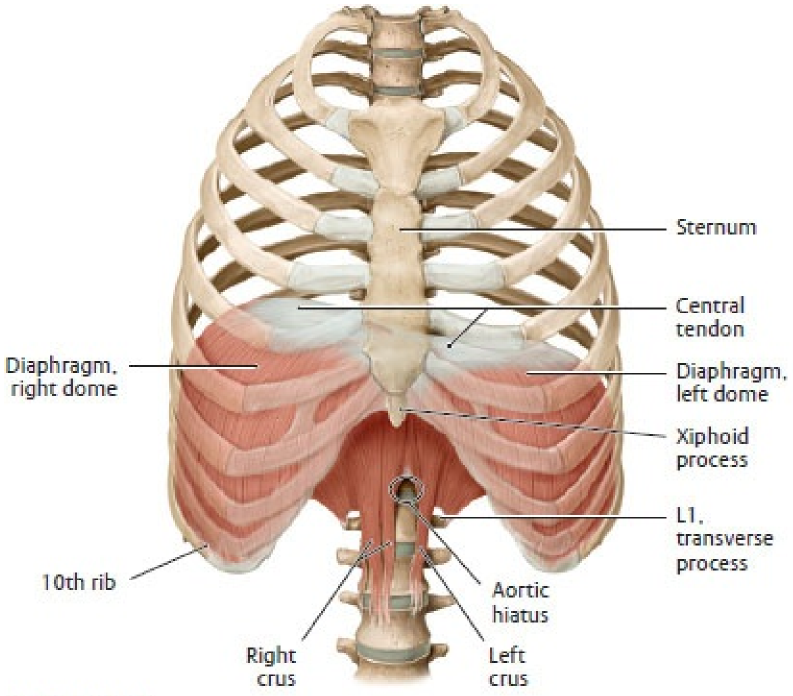
  - the **external intercostal muscles,** with fibers directed inferoanteriorly, which make up the most superficial layer
  - the **internal intercostal** and **innermost intercostal muscles,** which occupy the middle and deepest layers of the thoracic wall, respectively, with their fibers directed inferoposteriorly
- The **subcostal muscles** are most prominent along the lower thoracic wall, where they cross the inner surface of one or two intercostal spaces.
- The **transversus thoracic muscles** consist of four of five thin slips that extend superiorly and laterally from the posterior surface of the sternum to the ribs.

The Thoracic Diaphragm

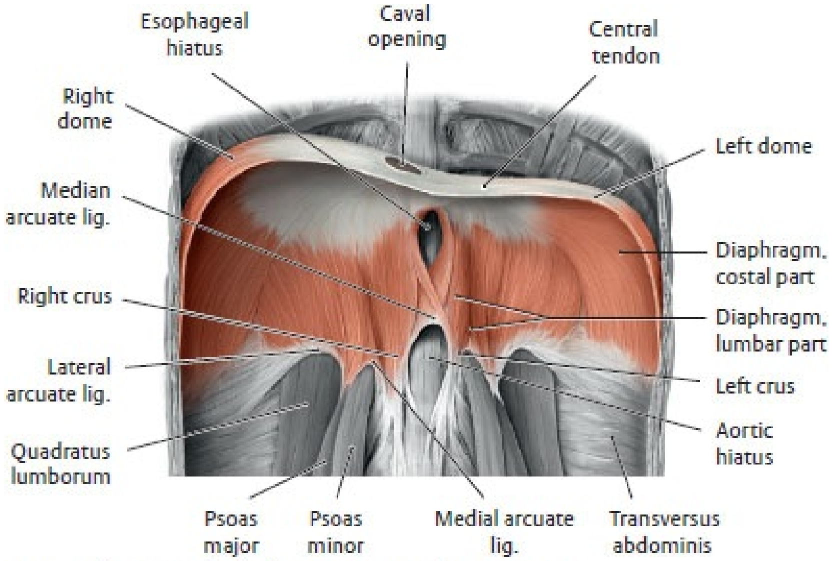
The **thoracic diaphragm** (or simply, the **diaphragm**), a musculotendinous sheet that separates the thorax from the abdomen, is the principal muscle of respiration. The diaphragm forms the floor of the thorax, the roof of the abdomen, and a portion of the posterior abdominal wall (**Fig. 6.8**).

— The skeletal muscle fibers of the diaphragm originate along the costal margin, the vertebral bodies of L1–L3, the **medial** and **lateral arcuate ligaments,** and the xiphoid process. They insert on the diaphragm's **central tendon**.

— **Right** and **left crura,** extensions of the posterior diaphragm, attach to the bodies of the lumbar vertebrae, with the right crus extending slightly lower than the left crus.


Sternum
Central tendon
Diaphragm, right dome
Diaphragm, left dome
Xiphoid process
L1, transverse process
10th rib
Aortic hiatus
Right crus
Left crus

A Anterior view.


Esophageal hiatus
Caval opening
Central tendon
Right dome
Left dome
Median arcuate lig.
Diaphragm, costal part
Right crus
Diaphragm, lumbar part
Lateral arcuate lig.
Left crus
Aortic hiatus
Quadratus lumborum
Psoas major
Psoas minor
Medial arcuate lig.
Transversus abdominis

B Coronal section with diaphragm in intermediate position.

Fig. 6.8 Diaphragm

The diaphragm, which separates the thorax from the abdomen, has two asymmetric domes and three apertures (for the aorta, vena cava, and esophagus). (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy.

Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

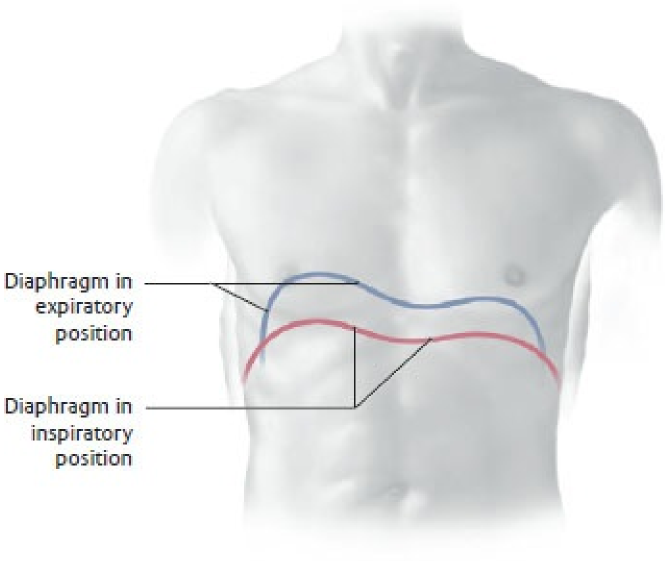

Diaphragm in expiratory position
Diaphragm in inspiratory position

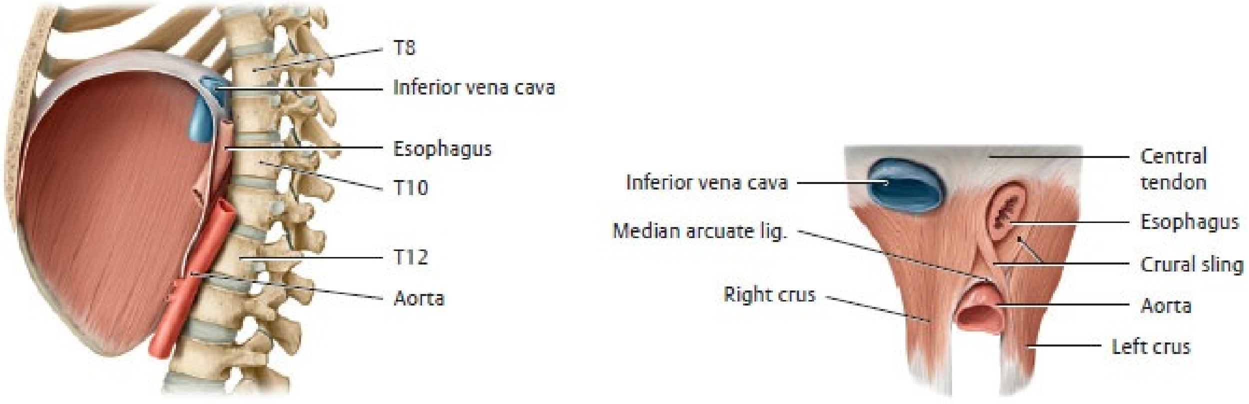
Fig. 6.9 Projection of the diaphragm onto the trunk

Anterior view. Position of the diaphragm in inspiration and expiration. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- The domes on the right and left sides of the diaphragm are asymmetric; the right hemidiaphragm is generally higher than the left.
- During full expiration the diaphragm is 4 to 6 cm higher than during full inspiration. During expiration it ascends to the level of the 4th or 5th rib on the right and slightly lower on the left, although this varies with respiration, posture, and body type **(Fig. 6.9)**.
- The diaphragm has three openings to allow the passage of structures between the thorax and abdomen **(Fig. 6.10)**:
  1. The **caval opening**, which is a passage for the inferior vena cava through the central tendon at the T8 vertebral level.
  2. The **esophageal hiatus**, which is an opening at the T10 vertebral level for the esophagus, the anterior and poste-rior vagal trunks, and left gastric artery and vein.It is usually formed by the right crus of the diaphragm (occasionally by the right and left crura) that, when contracted, forms a sphincter around the esophagus.
  3. The **aortic hiatus**, which is a passageway for the aorta between the right

and left crura as it passes behind the diaphragm at T12. The thoracic duct, and often the azygos and hemiazygos veins, also passes through this aperture.

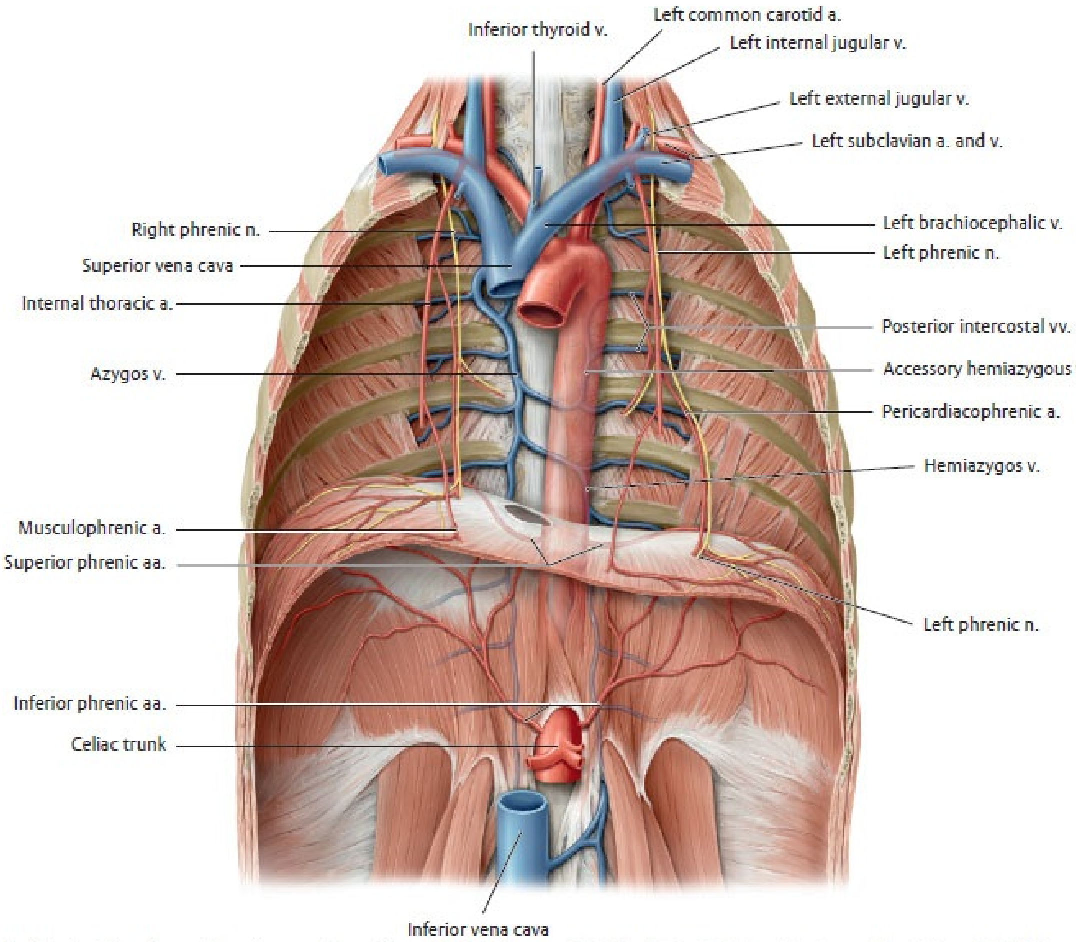
- The inferior phrenic arteries, branches of the abdominal aorta (or celiac trunk), are the primary blood supply to the diaphragm. The superior phrenic, pericardiacophrenic, and musculophrenic arteries make additional contributions **(Fig. 6.11)**.
- Venous blood drains to the azygos system through posterior intercostal and superior phrenic veins.
- The phrenic nerve (C3–C5) provides all of the motor and most of the sensory innervation to the diaphragm. The subcostal and lower intercostal nerves transmit sensory information from the periphery of the diaphragm **(Fig. 6.12)**.


T8
Inferior vena cava
Esophagus
T10
T12
Aorta
Inferior vena cava
Median arcuate lig.
Right crus
Central tendon
Esophagus
Crural sling
Aorta
Left crus

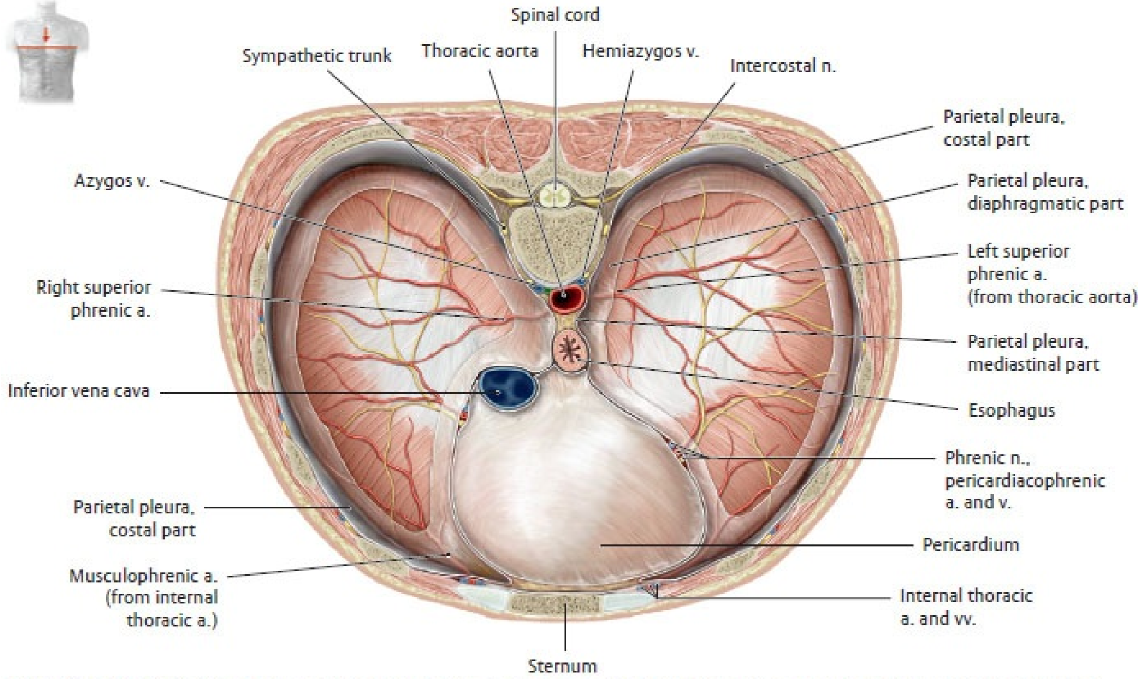
A Left lateral view of opened thorax. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

B Anterior view of the lumbar part of the diaphragm. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Fig. 6.10 Diaphragmatic apertures


Inferior thyroid v.
Left common carotid a.
Left internal jugular v.
Left external jugular v.
Left subclavian a. and v.
Right phrenic n.
Superior vena cava
Internal thoracic a.
Left brachiocephalic v.
Left phrenic n.
Posterior intercostal vv.
Azygos v.
Accessory hemiazygous v.
Pericardiacophrenic a.
Hemiazygos v.
Musculophrenic a.
Superior phrenic aa.
Left phrenic n.
Inferior phrenic aa.
Celiac trunk
Inferior vena cava

A Anterior view of open thoracic cage. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Spinal cord
Sympathetic trunk
Thoracic aorta
Hemiazygos v.
Intercostal n.
Parietal pleura, costal part
Azygos v.
Parietal pleura, diaphragmatic part
Left superior phrenic a. (from thoracic aorta)
Right superior phrenic a.
Parietal pleura, mediastinal part
Inferior vena cava
Esophagus
Phrenic n., pericardiacophrenic a. and v.
Parietal pleura, costal part
Pericardium
Musculophrenic a. (from internal thoracic a.)
Internal thoracic a. and vv.
Sternum

B Superior view of diaphragm. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Fig. 6.11 Neurovasculature of the diaphragm

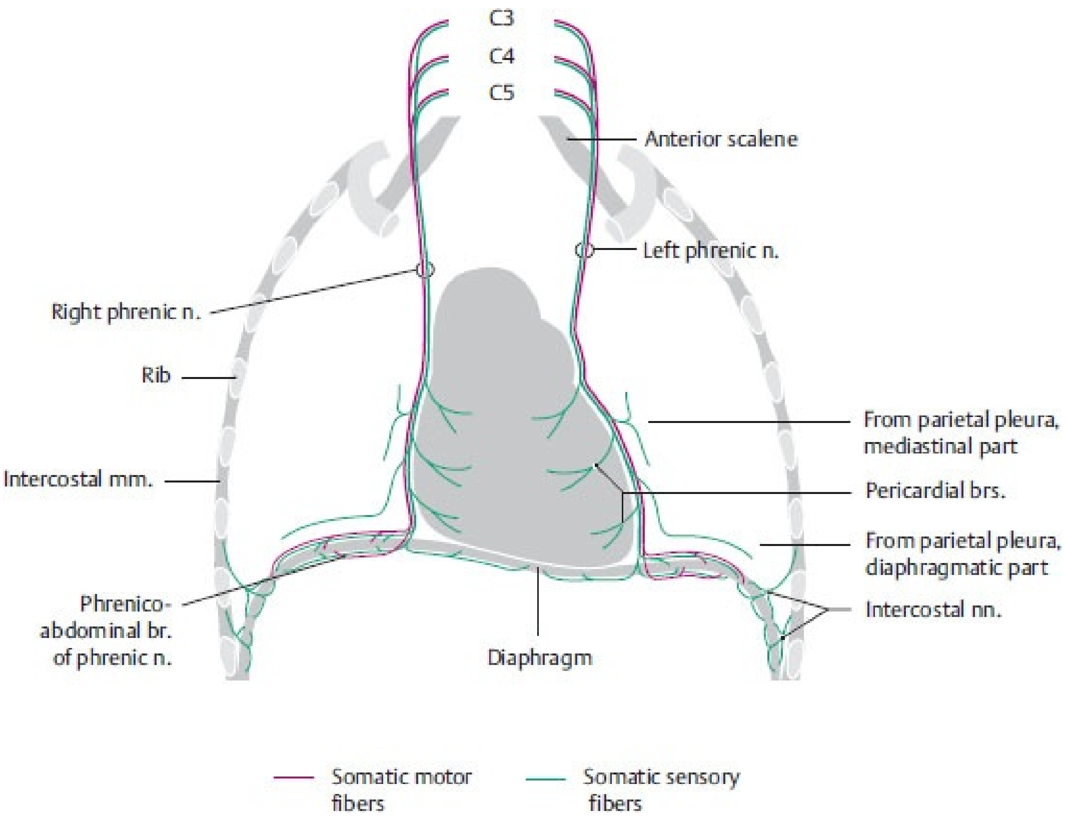

C3
C4
C5
Anterior scalene
Left phrenic n.
Right phrenic n.
Rib
From parietal pleura, mediastinal part
Intercostal mm.
Pericardial brs.
From parietal pleura, diaphragmatic part
Intercostal nn.
Phrenico-abdominal br. of phrenic n.
Diaphragm
Somatic motor fibers
Somatic sensory fibers

Fig. 6.12 Innervation of the diaphragm

Anterior view. The phrenic nerve lies on the lateral surface of the fibrous pericardium together with the pericardiacophrenic arteries and veins. *Note:* The phrenic nerve also innervates the pericardium. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

6.4 Neurovasculature of the Thoracic Wall

— Intercostal neurovascular bundles course along the inferior surface of the ribs within the costal groove (**Figs. 6.13**, **6.14**, **6.15**, **6.16**).

- Anterior intercostal arteries (branches of the internal thoracic arteries) and posterior intercostal arteries (branches of the thoracic aorta and subclavian arteries) supply the muscles and skin of the thoracic wall (**Fig. 6.14**).
- Intercostal veins drain primarily to the azygos system but also into the brachiocephalic and internal thoracic veins, which join the superior vena

cava (**Fig. 6.15**).

- The **thoracoepigastric vein** is a superficial vein that drains the subcutaneous tissue of the anterolateral thoracic and abdominal walls. It drains superiorly to the axillary vein of the upper limb and inferiorly to the superficial epigastric vein (**Fig. 6.16**).
- The thoracic wall is drained by three major groups of lymph nodes:
  - The **parasternal nodes,** which are scattered along the internal thoracic artery. They receive lymph from the breast, anterior thoracic wall, liver, and upper deep surface of the anterior abdominal wall.
  - The **intercostal nodes,** which are located in the inter-costal spaces near the heads and necks of the ribs. They drain the posterolateral part of the chest and mammary glands.
  - The **diaphragmatic nodes,** which are located on the superior surface of the diaphragm. They drain the central tendon of the diaphragm, the fibrous pericardium, and the superior surface of the liver.
- Intercostal nerves T1–T11 innervate the muscles of the thoracic wall. In the midaxillary line these nerves give off a lateral cutaneous branch that supplies the superficial muscles and skin of the thorax (**Figs. 6.17** and **6.18**).

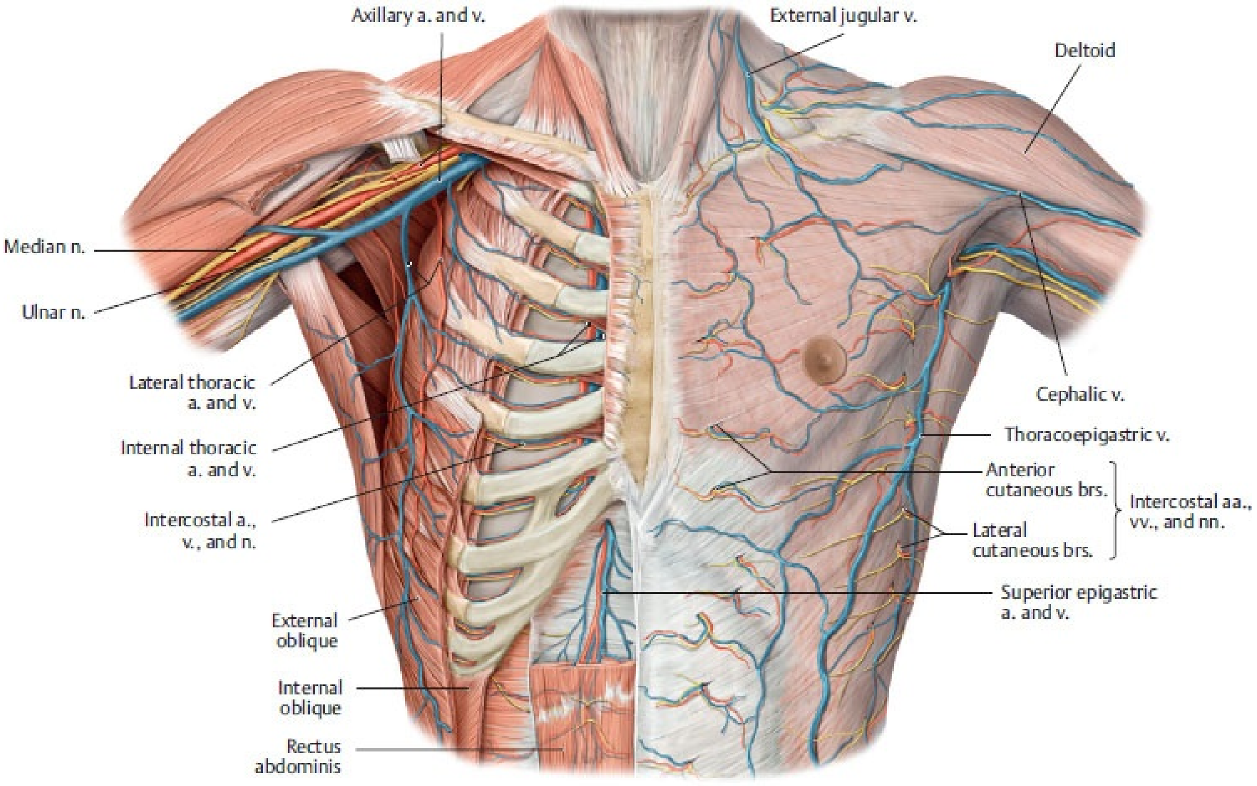
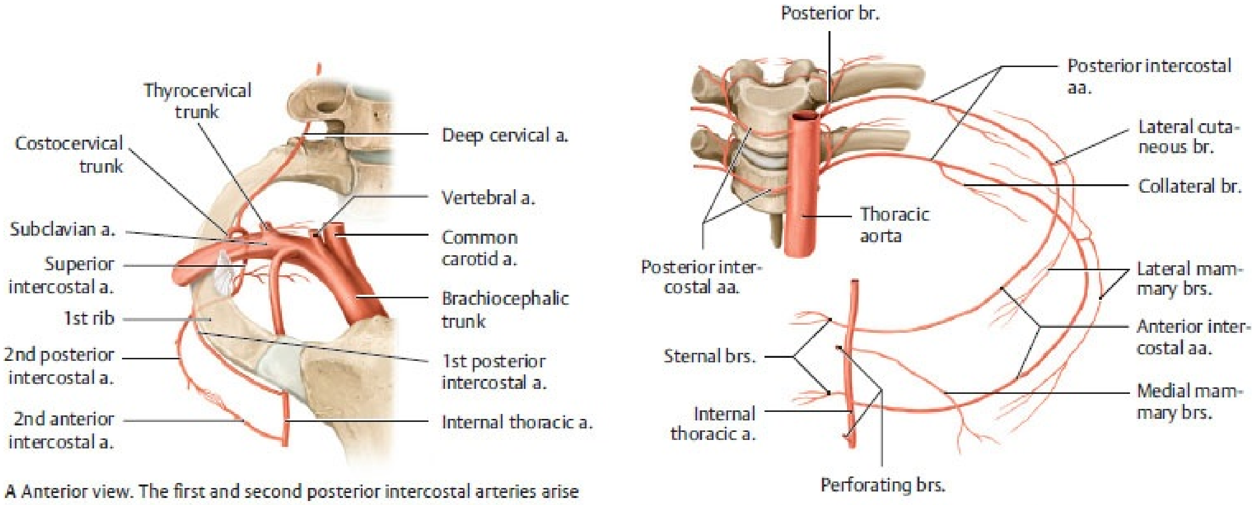

Axillary a. and v.
External jugular v.
Deltoid
Median n.
Ulnar n.
Lateral thoracic a. and v.
Internal thoracic a. and v.
Intercostal a., v., and n.
External oblique
Internal oblique
Rectus abdominis
Cephalic v.
Thoracoepigastric v.
Anterior cutaneous brs.
Lateral cutaneous brs.
Intercostal aa., vv., and nn.
Superior epigastric a. and v.

Fig. 6.13 Neurovascular topography of the thoracic wall

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Thyrocervical trunk
Costocervical trunk
Subclavian a.
Superior intercostal a.
1st rib
2nd posterior intercostal a.
2nd anterior intercostal a.
Deep cervical a.
Vertebral a.
Common carotid a.
Brachiocephalic trunk
1st posterior intercostal a.
Internal thoracic a.
Posterior br.
Posterior intercostal aa.
Lateral cutaneous br.
Collateral br.
Thoracic aorta
Posterior intercostal aa.
Lateral mammary brs.
Anterior intercostal aa.
Sternal brs.
Internal thoracic a.
Medial mammary brs.
Perforating brs.

A Anterior view. The first and second posterior intercostal arteries arise from the superior intercostal artery, an indirect branch of the subclavian artery.

B Anterior view. Posterior intercostal arteries 3–11 are segmental branches of the thoracic aorta.

Fig. 6.14 Course and branches of the intercostal arteries

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

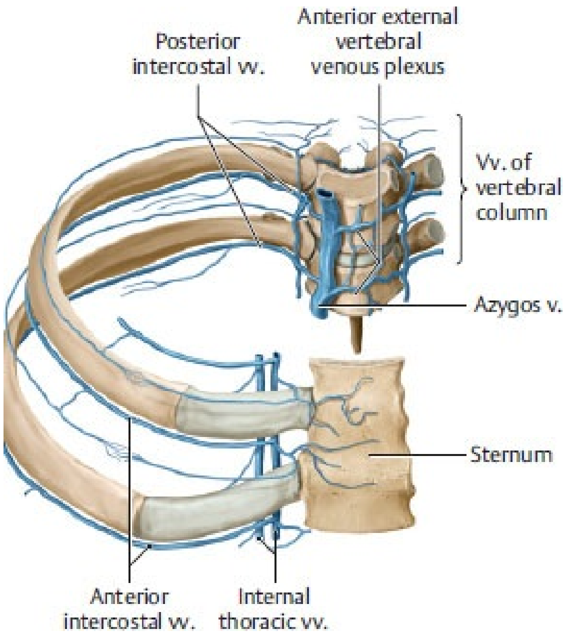

Posterior intercostal vv.
Anterior external vertebral venous plexus
Vv. of vertebral column
Azygos v.
Sternum
Anterior intercostal vv.
Internal thoracic vv.

Fig. 6.15 Intercostal veins

Anteriosuperior view. Vertebral column and rib segment. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

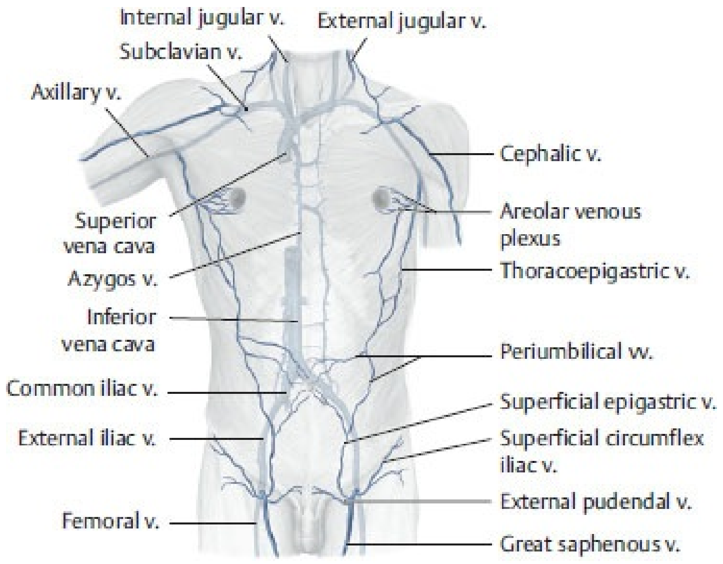

Internal jugular v.
External jugular v.
Subclavian v.
Axillary v.
Cephalic v.
Superior vena cava
Areolar venous plexus
Azygos v.
Thoracoepigastric v.
Inferior vena cava
Periumbilical vv.
Common iliac v.
Superficial epigastric v.
External iliac v.
Superficial circumflex iliac v.
External pudendal v.
Femoral v.
Great saphenous v.

Fig. 6.16 Superficial veins

Anterior view. The thoracoepigastric veins are a potential superficial collateral venous drainage route in the event of superior or inferior vena cava obstruction. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- The 7th through 11th intercostal nerves continue anteriorly from the intercostal space to innervate the anterior abdomi-nal wall.
- Landmark dermatomes on the thoracic wall include T4 at the nipple and T6 over the xiphoid process.
- Intercostal nerves and vessels are protected within the **costal groove** on the deep inferior edge of the ribs (see **Box 6.2**). Within this bundle of neurovascular structures, the nerve runs inferior to its accompanying vessels.

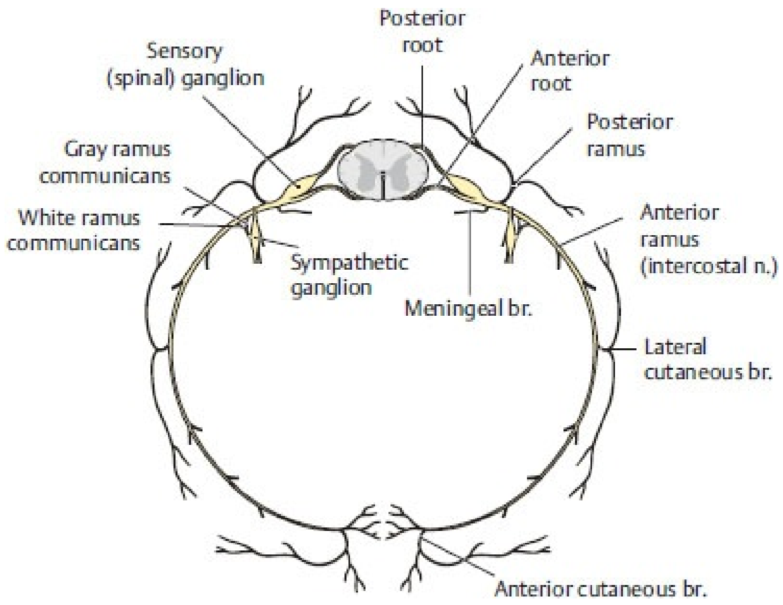
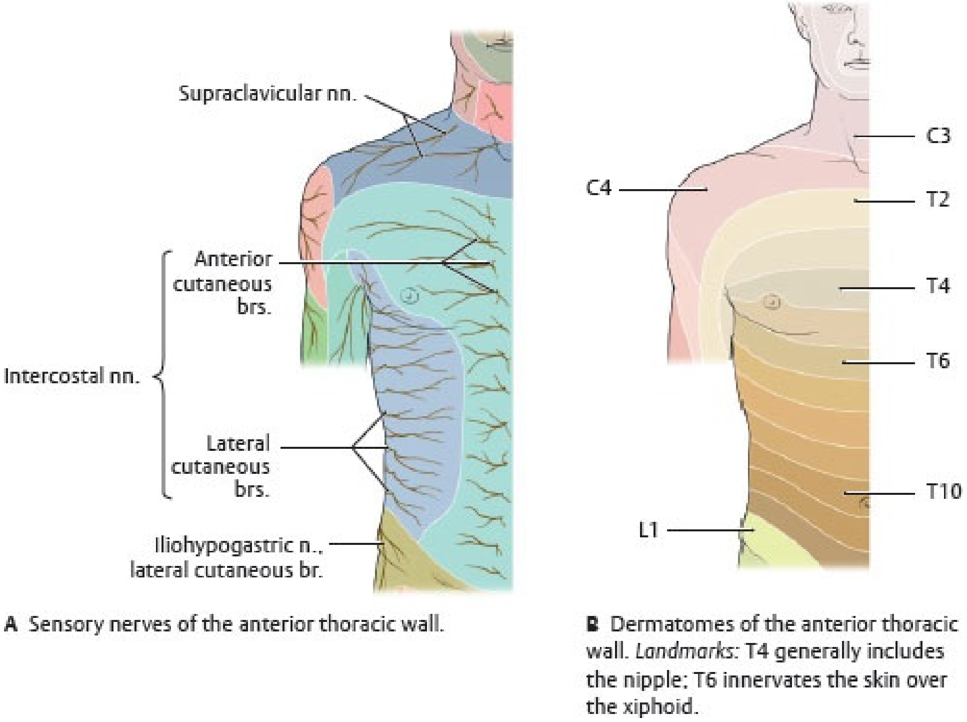

Posterior root
Sensory (spinal) ganglion
Anterior root
Posterior ramus
Gray ramus communicans
White ramus communicans
Anterior ramus (intercostal n.)
Sympathetic ganglion
Meningeal br.
Lateral cutaneous br.
Anterior cutaneous br.

Fig. 6.17 Branches of an intercostal nerve

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Supraclavicular nn.
Anterior cutaneous brs.
Intercostal nn.
Lateral cutaneous brs.
Iliohypogastric n., lateral cutaneous br.
C3
C4
T2
T4
T6
T10
L1

A Sensory nerves of the anterior thoracic wall.

B Dermatomes of the anterior thoracic wall. *Landmarks:* T4 generally includes the nipple; T6 innervates the skin over the xiphoid.

Fig. 6.18 Cutaneous innervation of the thoracic wall

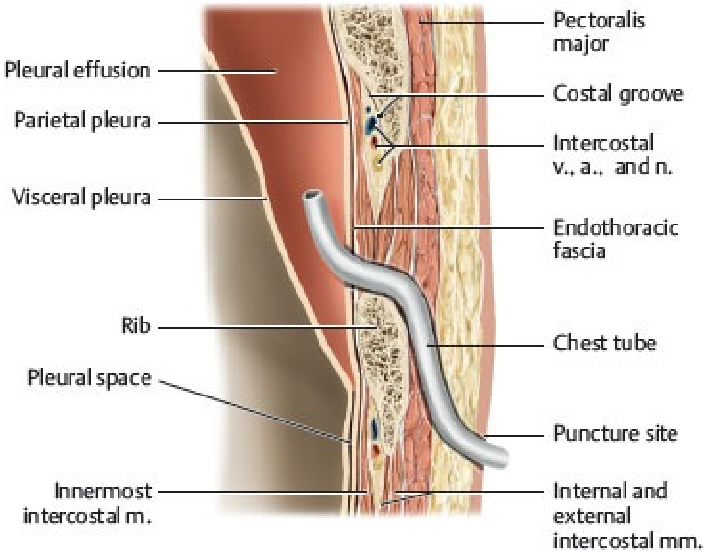
Anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of

Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 6.2: CLINICAL CORRELATION

INSERTION OF A CHEST TUBE

Abnormal fluid collection in the pleural space (e.g., pleural effu-sion due to bronchial carcinoma) may necessitate the insertion of a chest tube. Generally, the optimal puncture site in a sitting patient is at the level of the fourth and fifth intercostal space in the mid to anterior axillary line, immediately behind the lateral edge of the pectoralis major. The drain should always be intro-duced at the upper margin of a rib to avoid injuring the intercostal vein, artery, and nerve.


Pectoralis major
Pleural effusion
Costal groove
Parietal pleura
Intercostal v., a., and n.
Visceral pleura
Endothoracic fascia
Rib
Chest tube
Pleural space
Puncture site
Innermost intercostal m.
Internal and external intercostal mm.

Coronal section, anterior view

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th Edition. New York: Thieme Publishers;

7 Mediastinum

The **mediastinum** is the region within the thorax between the right and left pulmonary cavities **(Fig 7.1; see Table 5.1)**. The ster-num and the costal cartilages of ribs 1 through 7 form its anterior boundary, and the thoracic vertebrae form its posterior boundary. The mediastinum contains the heart, great vessels, and pericar-dium, as well as the esophagus, trachea, thymus, and associated neurovasculature **(Fig. 7.2)**.

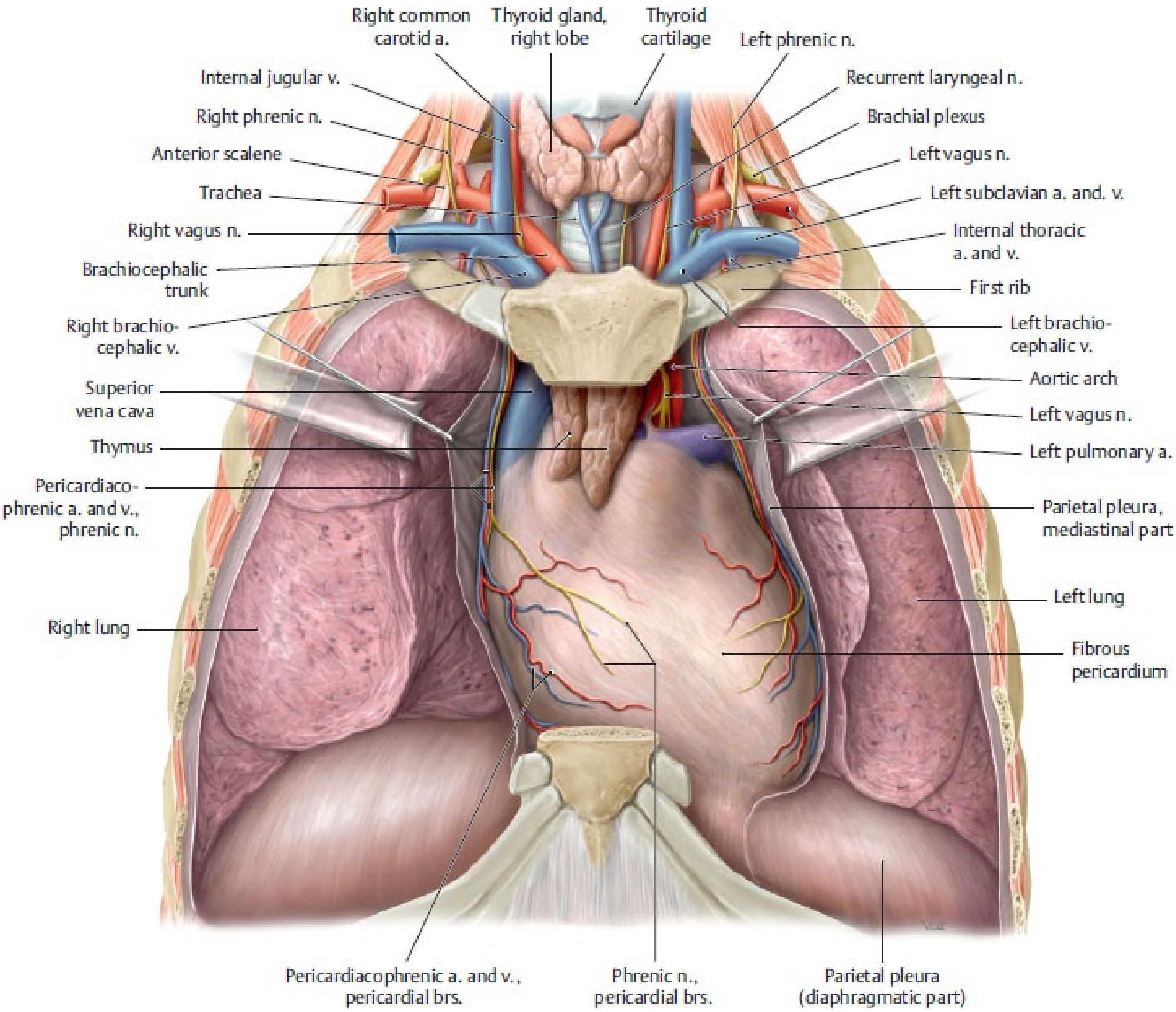

Right common carotid a.
Thyroid gland, right lobe
Thyroid cartilage
Left phrenic n.
Internal jugular v.
Recurrent laryngeal n.
Right phrenic n.
Brachial plexus
Anterior scalene
Left vagus n.
Trachea
Left subclavian a. and. v.
Right vagus n.
Internal thoracic a. and v.
Brachiocephalic trunk
First rib
Right brachio-cephalic v.
Left brachio-cephalic v.
Aortic arch
Superior vena cava
Left vagus n.
Thymus
Left pulmonary a.
Pericardiaco-phrenic a. and v., phrenic n.
Parietal pleura, mediastinal part
Left lung
Right lung
Fibrous pericardium
Pericardiacophrenic a. and v., pericardial brs.
Phrenic n., pericardial brs.
Parietal pleura (diaphragmatic part)

Fig. 7.1 Thoracic cavity

Opened thoracic cavity. *Removed:* Thoracic wall; connective tissue of anterior mediastinum. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

7.1 Regions of the Mediastinum (Table 7.1)

- A horizontal plane passing through the sternal angle (at the T4–T5 intervertebral disk) divides the region into a **superior mediastinum,** bounded above by the superior thoracic aperture, and an **inferior mediastinum** limited inferiorly by the thoracic diaphragm.
- The inferior mediastinum is further divided into
  - the **anterior mediastinum,** a narrow space posterior to the sternum and anterior to the pericardium;
  - the **middle mediastinum,** the largest section of the inferior mediastinum, which contains the pericardium, heart, and major vessels; and
  - the **posterior mediastinum,** a small area posterior to the pericardium and anterior to the 5th through 12th thoracic vertebrae.

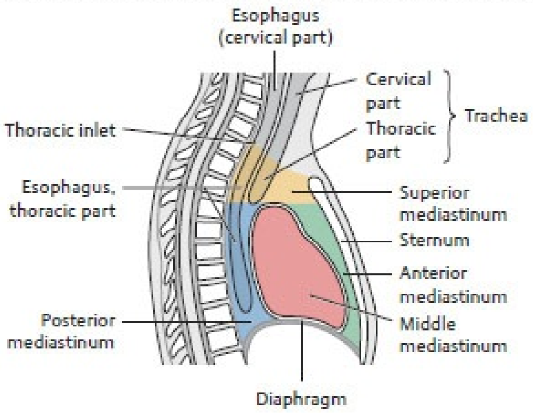
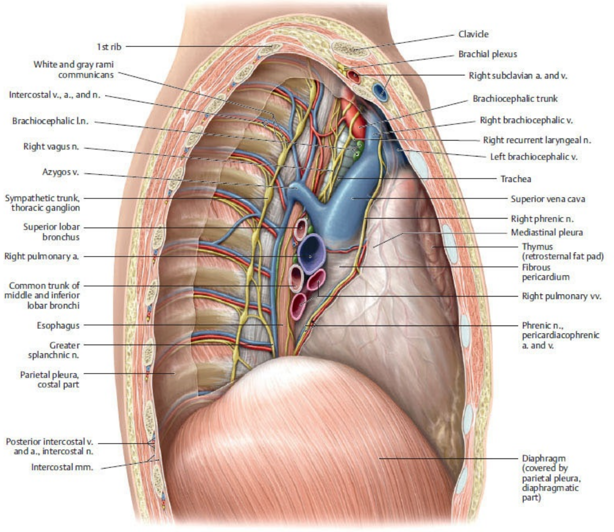
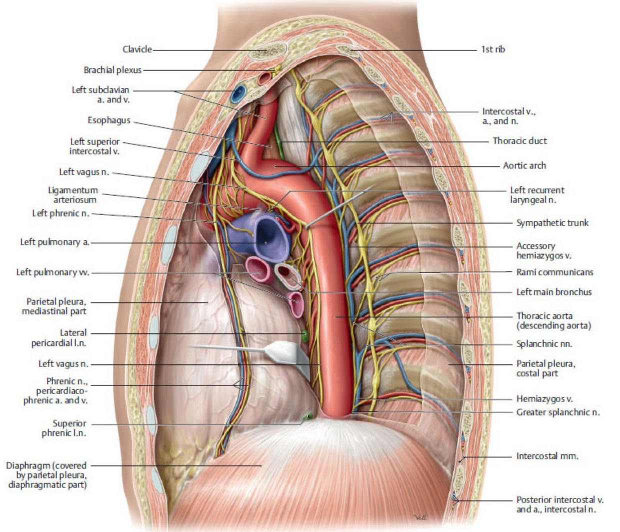

Esophagus
(cervical part)
Cervical
part
Thoracic
part
Trachea
Thoracic inlet
Esophagus,
thoracic part
Superior
mediastinum
Sternum
Anterior
mediastinum
Middle
mediastinum
Posterior
mediastinum
Diaphragm

Table 7.1 Contents of the Mediastinum
(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

		Inferior mediastinum		
	Superior mediastinum ●	**Anterior ●**	**Middle ●**	**Posterior ●**
Organs	• Thymus • Trachea • Esophagus	• Thymus, inferior aspects (especially in children)	• Heart • Pericardium	• Esophagus
Arteries	• Aortic arch • Brachiocephalic trunk • Left common carotid a. • Left subclavian a.	• Smaller vessels	• Ascending aorta • Pulmonary trunk and brs. • Pericardiaco-phrenic aa.	• Thoracic aorta and brs.
Veins and lymph vessels	• Superior vena cava • Brachiocephalic vv. • Thoracic duct and right lymphatic duct	• Smaller vessels, lymphatics, and l.n.	• Superior vena cava • Azygos v. • Pulmonary vv. • Pericardiaco-phrenic vv.	• Azygos v. • Accessory hemiazygos and hemiazygos vv. • Thoracic duct
Nerves	• Vagus nn. • Left recurrent laryngeal n. • Cardiac nn. • Phrenic nn.	• None	• Phrenic nn.	• Vagus nn.


1st rib
White and gray rami communicans
Intercostal v., a., and n.
Brachiocephalic l.n.
Right vagus n.
Azygos v.
Sympathetic trunk, thoracic ganglion
Superior lobar bronchus
Right pulmonary a.
Common trunk of middle and inferior lobar bronchi
Esophagus
Greater splanchnic n.
Parietal pleura, costal part
Posterior intercostal v. and a., intercostal n.
Intercostal mm.
Clavicle
Brachial plexus
Right subclavian a. and v.
Brachiocephalic trunk
Right brachiocephalic v.
Right recurrent laryngeal n.
Left brachiocephalic v.
Trachea
Superior vena cava
Right phrenic n.
Mediastinal pleura
Thymus (retrosternal fat pad)
Fibrous pericardium
Right pulmonary vv.
Phrenic n., pericardiacophrenic a. and v.
Diaphragm (covered by parietal pleura, diaphragmatic part)

A Parasagittal section, right lateral view. Note the many structures passing between the superior and inferior (middle and posterior) mediastinum.


Clavicle
Brachial plexus
Left subclavian a. and v.
Esophagus
Left superior intercostal v.
Left vagus n.
Ligamentum arteriosum
Left phrenic n.
Left pulmonary a.
Left pulmonary vv.
Parietal pleura, mediastinal part
Lateral pericardial l.n.
Left vagus n.
Phrenic n., pericardiaco-phrenic a. and v.
Superior phrenic l.n.
Diaphragm (covered by parietal pleura, diaphragmatic part)
1st rib
Intercostal v., a., and n.
Thoracic duct
Aortic arch
Left recurrent laryngeal n.
Sympathetic trunk
Accessory hemiazygos v.
Rami communicans
Left main bronchus
Thoracic aorta (descending aorta)
Splanchnic nn.
Parietal pleura, costal part
Hemiazygos v.
Greater splanchnic n.
Intercostal mm.
Posterior intercostal v. and a., intercostal n.
Voll

B Parasagittal section, left lateral view. *Removed:* Left lung and parietal pleura. *Revealed:* Posterior mediastinal structures.

Fig. 7.2 Mediastinum

Divisions of the mediastinum. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.) (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

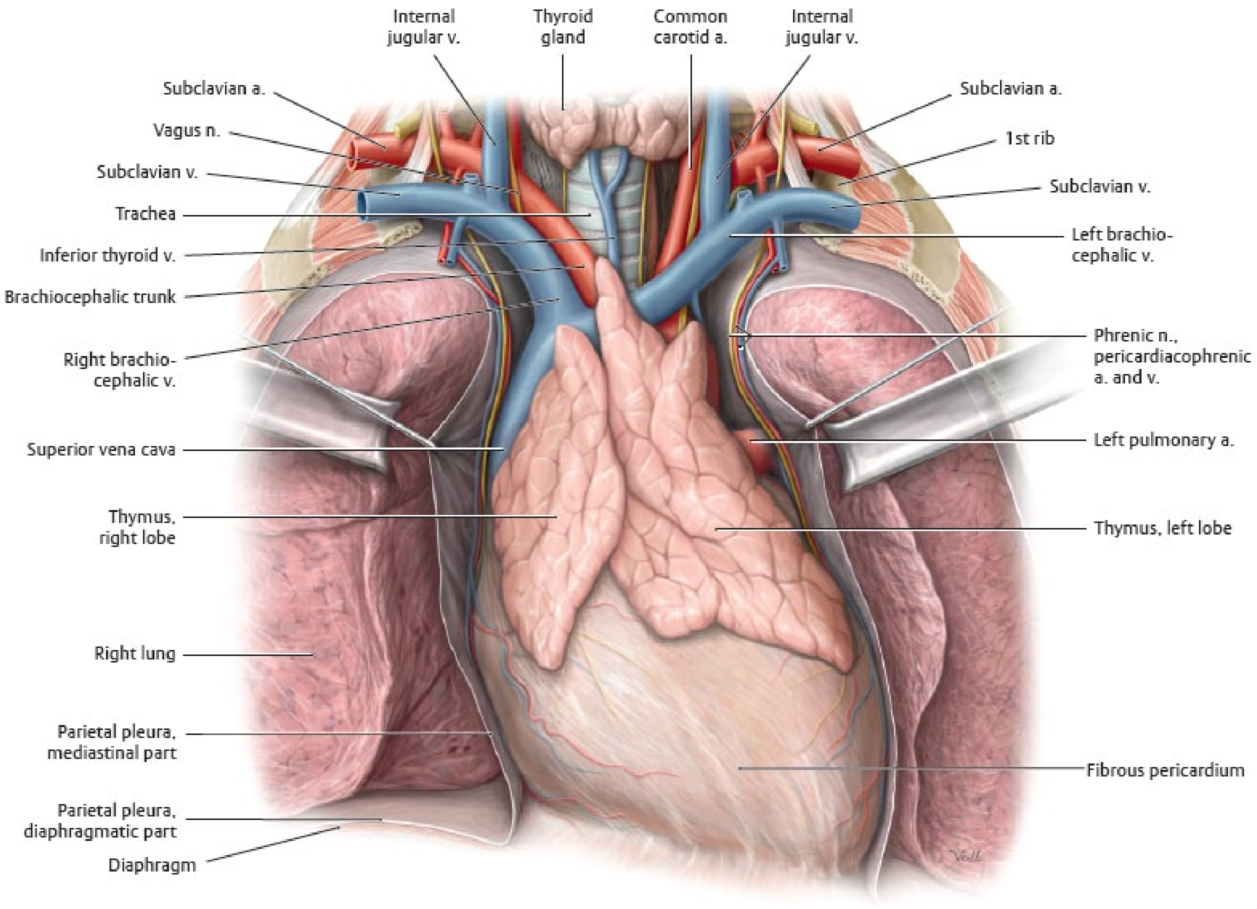
7.2 Anterior Mediastinum

Thymus

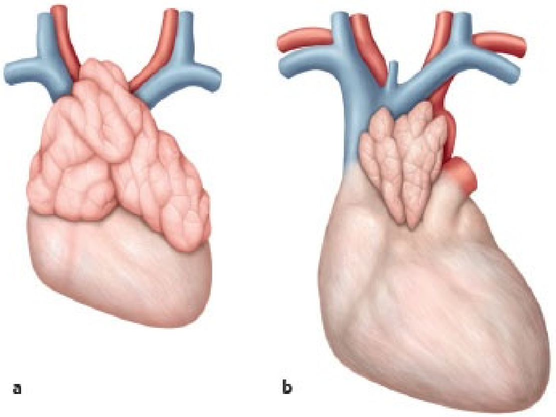
The thymus is a gland of the immune system, responsible for mat-uration of T-lymphocytes **(Fig. 7.3)**.

— In childhood, the thymus presents as a large bilobed organ that overlies the heart and great vessels in the superior and anterior mediastinum.

— At puberty, high levels of circulating sex hormones cause the gland to atrophy.


Internal jugular v.
Thyroid gland
Common carotid a.
Internal jugular v.
Subclavian a.
Vagus n.
Subclavian v.
Trachea
Inferior thyroid v.
Brachiocephalic trunk
Right brachio-cephalic v.
Superior vena cava
Thymus, right lobe
Right lung
Parietal pleura, mediastinal part
Parietal pleura, diaphragmatic part
Diaphragm
Subclavian a.
1st rib
Subclavian v.
Left brachio-cephalic v.
Phrenic n., pericardiacophrenic a. and v.
Left pulmonary a.
Thymus, left lobe
Fibrous pericardium
Voll

A Anterior view of the mediastinum of a 2-year-old child.



B Size of the thymus in newborns (a) and in adults (b).

Fig. 7.3 The thymus in newborns and adults

The thymus of newborns is much larger than those of adults and extends inferiorly into the anterior part of the inferior mediastinum. Because it atrophies during puberty, the thymus in adults is small and extends only into the superior mediastinum. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

7.3 Middle Mediastinum: Pericardium and Pericardial Cavity

Pericardium

The **pericardium,** a double-layered fibroserous membrane, forms the **pericardial sac** that surrounds the heart and the origins of the great vessels (**Figs. 7.4** and **7.5**).

- The pericardium is composed of two layers: an outer fibrous layer and an inner serous layer.
    1. The outer **fibrous pericardium** is composed of tough inelastic connective tissue. It is attached inferiorly to the diaphragm and is continuous superiorly with the tunica adventitia (outer layer) of the great vessels.
    2. The thin **serous pericardium** consists of parietal and visceral layers
        - The **parietal layer of serous pericardium** lines the inner surface of the fibrous pericardium.
        - The **visceral layer of serous pericardium** firmly adheres to the outer surface of the heart as the **epicardium.** This layer is continuous with the parietal layer of the serous pericardium at the root of the great vessels.
- **Pericardiacophrenic arteries,** branches of the internal thoracic arteries, provide the main blood supply to the pericardium. Veins that accompany the arteries drain into the superior vena cava.
- The vagus (cranial nerve X) and phrenic nerves (C3–C5) and branches from the sympathetic trunks innervate the pericardium.
- Pericardial pain is often referred via the phrenic nerve to the skin of the ipsilateral supraclavicular region (dermatomes C3–C5).

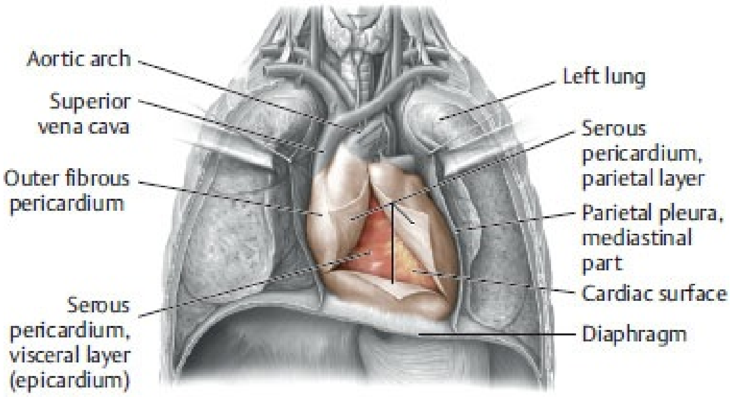

Aortic arch
Superior vena cava
Outer fibrous pericardium
Serous pericardium, visceral layer (epicardium)
Left lung
Serous pericardium, parietal layer
Parietal pleura, mediastinal part
Cardiac surface
Diaphragm

Fig. 7.4 Pericardium

Anterior view of opened thorax. Removed: Thymus. Reflected: Flaps of the fibrous pericardium. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 7.1: CLINICAL CORRELATION

PERICARDITIS

Pericarditis is an inflammation of the pericardium, which causes sharp, retrosternal or epigastric pain and a characteristic pericardial friction rub (a sound like the rustle of silk) that is heard on auscultation. This is caused by friction from the roughened layers of the inflamed pericardium rubbing together. Pericarditis can lead to pericardial effusion (fluid in the pericardial cavity) or cardiac tamponade (abnormal accumulation of fluid in the pericardial cavity that prevents venous return to the heart) and may be accompanied by dyspnea (shortness of breath) and peripheral edema (swelling).

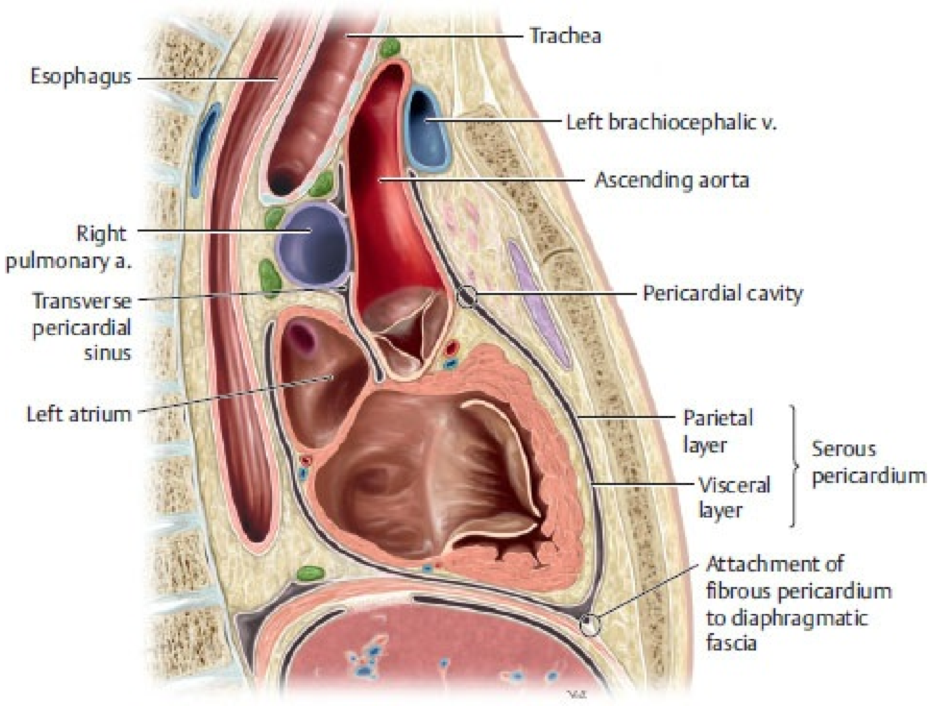

Trachea
Esophagus
Left brachiocephalic v.
Ascending aorta
Right pulmonary a.
Pericardial cavity
Transverse pericardial sinus
Left atrium
Parietal layer
Visceral layer
Serous pericardium
Attachment of fibrous pericardium to diaphragmatic fascia

Fig. 7.5 Serous pericardial reflections

Sagittal section through the mediastinum. Note the continuity of the parietal serous and visceral serous pericardia. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

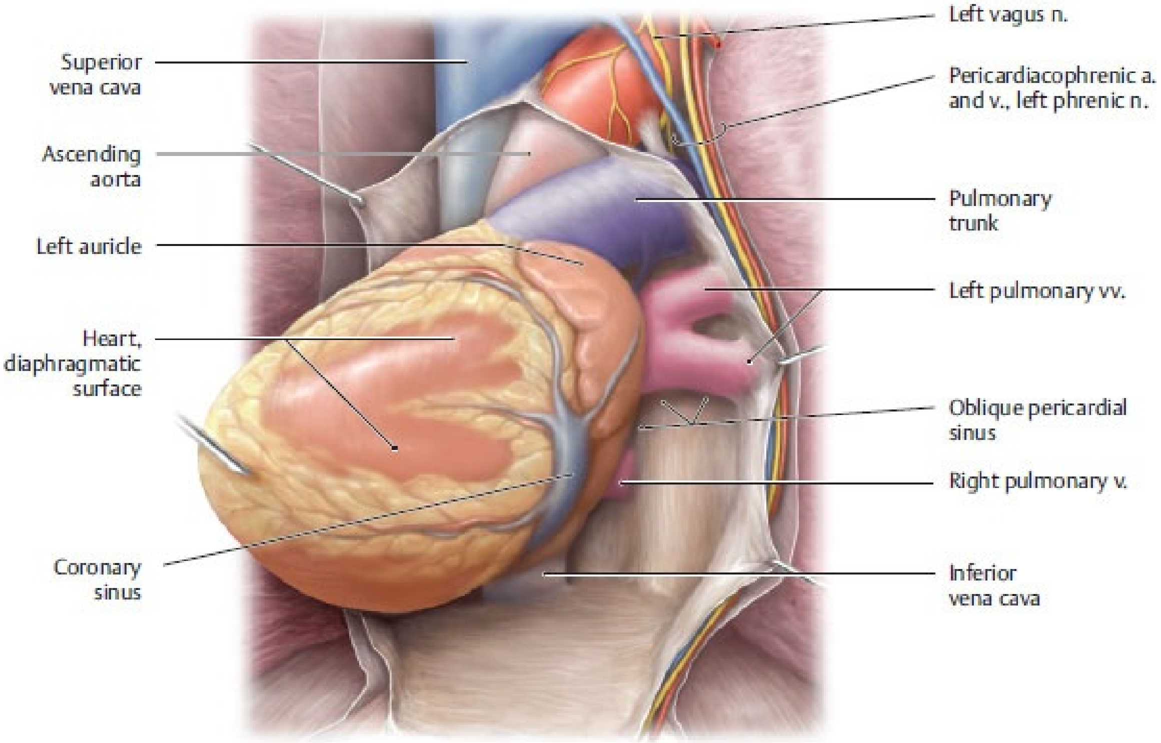

Superior vena cava
Ascending aorta
Left auricle
Heart, diaphragmatic surface
Coronary sinus
Left vagus n.
Pericardiacophrenic a. and v., left phrenic n.
Pulmonary trunk
Left pulmonary vv.
Oblique pericardial sinus
Right pulmonary v.
Inferior vena cava

Fig. 7.6 Posterior pericardial cavity

Anterior view. The heart has been elevated to partially visualize the posterior pericardial cavity and the oblique pericardial sinus. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

The Pericardial Cavity

The **pericardial cavity** is the space within the pericardial sacbetween the parietal and visceral layers of the serous pericardium **(Figs. 7.6** and **7.7)**.

— The pericardial cavity is filled with a thin layer of serous fluid that allows for frictionless movement of the heart.

— Two pericardial recesses form where the serous pericardium reflects around the roots of the great vessels:

1. The **transverse pericardial sinus** is a passage between the inflow channels (superior vena cava and pulmonary veins) and the outflow channels (aorta and pulmonary trunk) of the heart.
2. The **oblique pericardial sinus** is a recess of the pericardial cavity posterior to the heart between the right and left pulmonary veins.

BOX 7.2: CLINICAL CORRELATION

CARDIAC TAMPONADE

Cardiac tamponade is a life-threatening condition in which fluid collects in the pericardial space. The increased intrapericardial pressure restricts the filling of the heart during diastole and reduces cardiac output but increases the heart rate. Inhibition of venous return to the heart causes peripheral edema, hepatomegaly (enlarged liver), and increased venous pressure (often noted by distension of the internal jugular vein). Pericardiocentesis, aspiration of the fluid from the pericardial space, can relieve the tamponade.

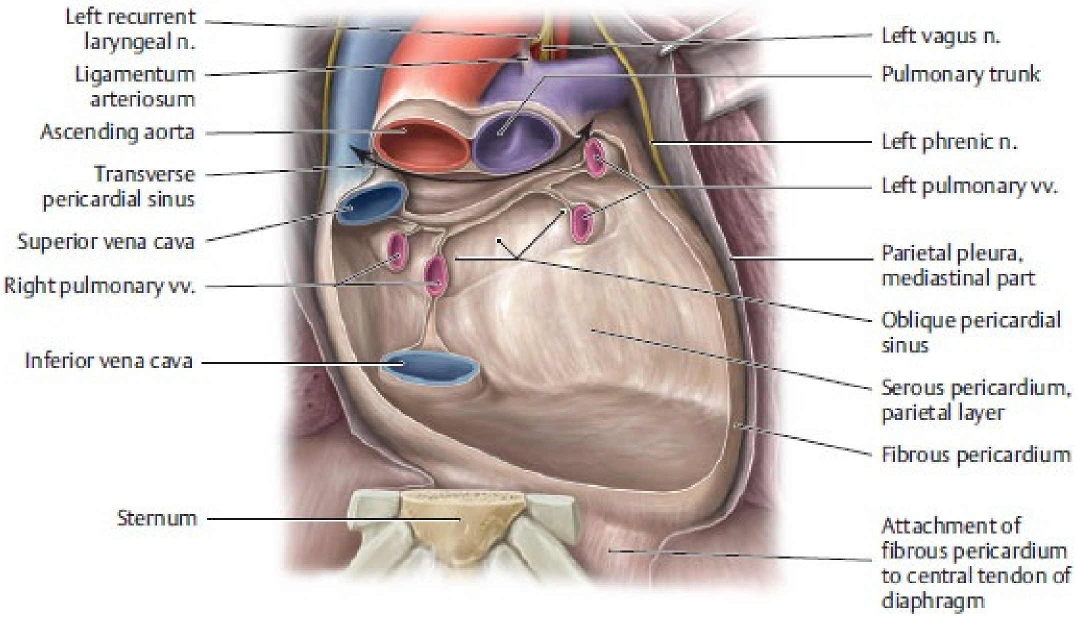

Left recurrent laryngeal n.
Ligamentum arteriosum
Ascending aorta
Transverse pericardial sinus
Superior vena cava
Right pulmonary vv.
Inferior vena cava
Sternum
Left vagus n.
Pulmonary trunk
Left phrenic n.
Left pulmonary vv.
Parietal pleura, mediastinal part
Oblique pericardial sinus
Serous pericardium, parietal layer
Fibrous pericardium
Attachment of fibrous pericardium to central tendon of diaphragm

Fig. 7.7 Pericardial recesses Posterior pericardium, anterior view. *Removed:* Anterior pericardium and heart. *Revealed:* The posterior pericardium and the *double-headed arrow* indicates the course of the transverse pericardial sinus, the passage between the reflections of the serous layer of the pericardium around the arterial and venous great vessels of the heart. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 7.3: CLINICAL CORRELATION

SURGICAL SIGNIFICANCE OF THE TRANSVERSE PERICARDIAL SINUS

During cardiac surgery, the surgeon is able to isolate (and clamp) the heart’s outflow tracts, the aorta and pulmonary trunk, from its inflow tracts, the superior vena cava and pulmonary veins, by passing the clamps through the transverse pericardial sinus.

7.4 Middle Mediastinum: The Heart

General Features

— The heart is a hollow muscular organ located in the middle mediastinum within the pericardial sac. It rests on the central tendon of the diaphragm and is flanked on either side by the right and left pulmonary cavities **(Fig. 7.8)**.

- The heart has a conical shape. The **base,** anchored by the great vessels, is on its superior and posterior surfaces. The **apex,** located approximately at the 5th intercostal space, projects anteriorly, inferiorly, and to the left and moves freely within the pericardial sac.
- Internally, the heart is divided into four chambers: the right and left atria and the right and left ventricles.

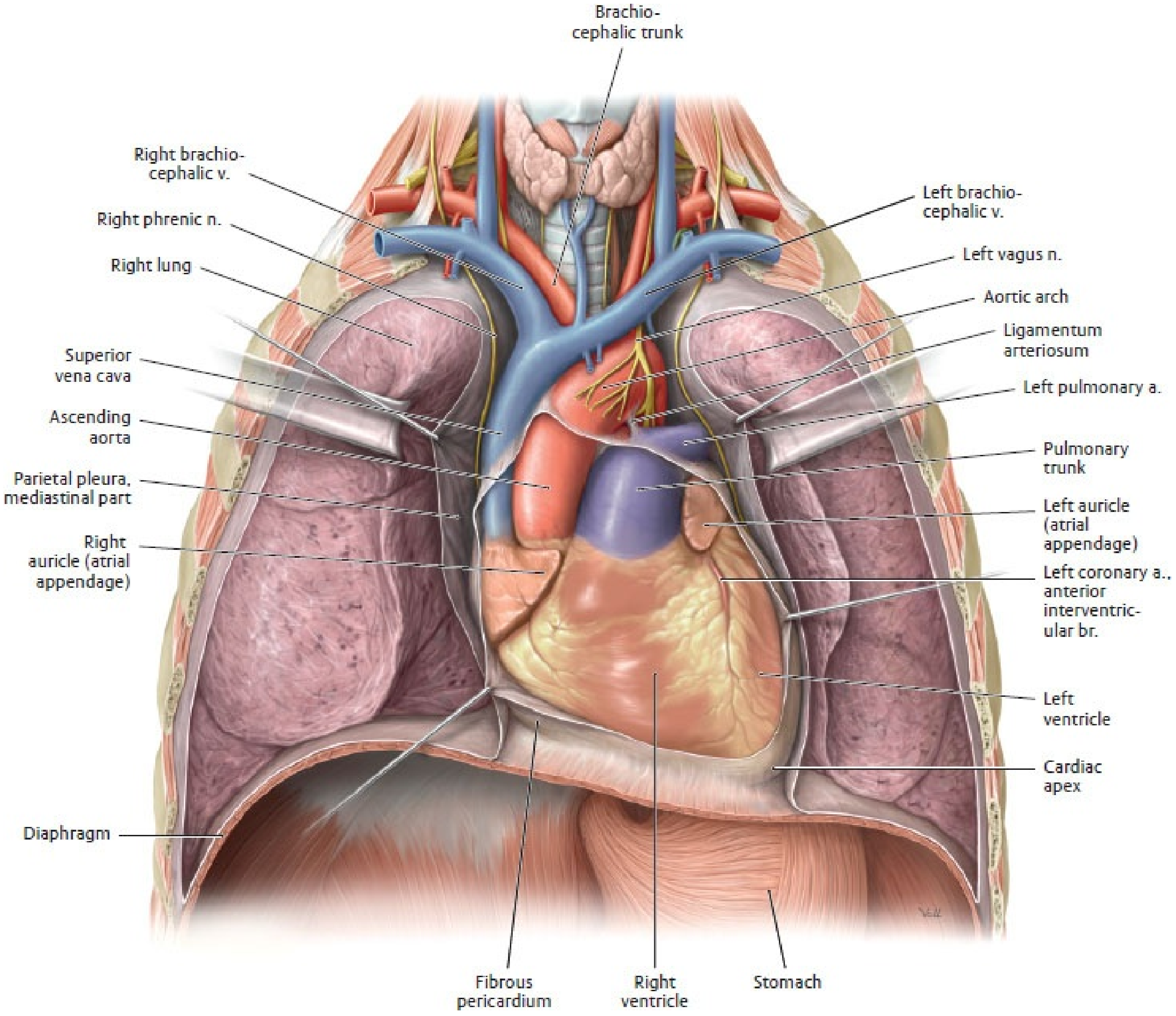

Brachio-cephalic trunk
Right brachio-cephalic v.
Right phrenic n.
Right lung
Superior vena cava
Ascending aorta
Parietal pleura, mediastinal part
Right auricle (atrial appendage)
Diaphragm
Left brachio-cephalic v.
Left vagus n.
Aortic arch
Ligamentum arteriosum
Left pulmonary a.
Pulmonary trunk
Left auricle (atrial appendage)
Left coronary a., anterior interventric-ular br.
Left ventricle
Cardiac apex
Fibrous pericardium
Right ventricle
Stomach

Fig. 7.8 Heart in situ

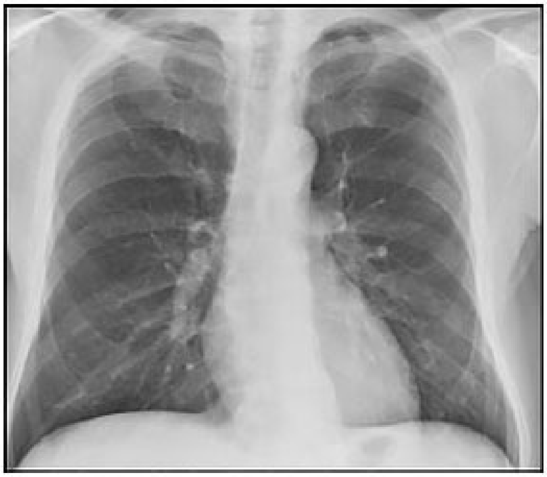
Anterior view of the opened thorax. *Removed:* Thymus and anterior pericardium. *Revealed:* Heart. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

  - The right and left atria, separated by an **interatrial septum,** are the inflow chambers of the heart, receiving blood from the systemic circulation on the right and pulmonary circulation on the left.
  - The right and left ventricles, separated by an **interventric-ular septum,** are the outflow chambers of the heart. Blood flows from the right ventricle into the pulmonary circula-tion and from the left ventricle into the systemic circulation.
- Two small appendages, the **right** and **left auricles,** are extensions of the atria and are visible externally.
- The surfaces of the heart (**Fig. 7.9**) are
  - the **sternocostal surface** on the anterior side of the heart, formed mostly by the right ventricle with portions of the right atrium and left ventricle;
  - the base on the posterior and superior sides of the heart, formed by the left atrium and a portion of the right atrium; and
  - the **diaphragmatic surface** on the inferior side of the heart, formed by the left and right ventricles.
- The borders of the heart define the cardiac shadow that is seen on radiographic images (**Table 7.2**).
- Three grooves on the external surface of the heart can be used to determine the position of the chambers:
  1. The **coronary sulcus** encircles the heart between the atria and ventricles. Because the heart has an oblique orienta-tion, the sulcus is nearly vertical.
  2. The **anterior interventricular sulcus** is a longitudinal groove on the anterior surface of the heart that marks the position of the interventricular septum.
  3. The **posterior interventricular sulcus** is a longitudinal groove on the diaphragmatic surface of the heart that marks the position of the interventricular septum.
- The **crux** of the heart is a point on the posterior surface of the heart where the coronary (atrioventricular) and interventric-ular sulci meet. It marks the junction of the four chambers of the heart.
- The wall of the heart consists of three layers:
  1. The **epicardium,** the thin outermost layer, formed by the visceral layer of the serous pericardium
  2. The **myocardium,** the thick layer of cardiac muscle, thickest in the walls of the ventricles
  3. The **endocardium,** the thin internal layer, which lines the chambers and valves of the heart

— A **cardiac skeleton** of dense fibrous connective tissue forms four **fibrous anuli** (rings) and intervening **trigones** that separate the chambers of the heart, provide anchoring points for cardiac muscle fibers and cardiac valves, and insulate electrical impulses of the heart's conduction system **(**Fig. 7.10**)**.

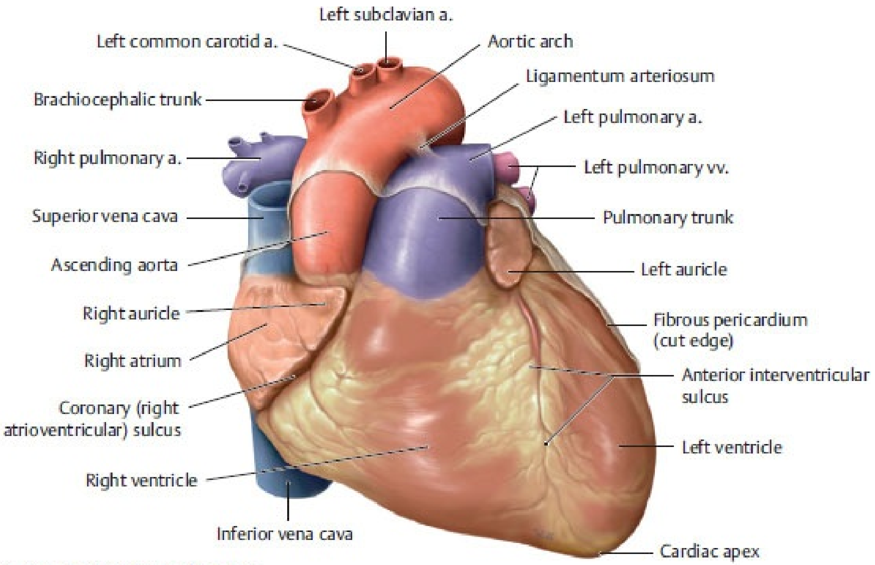
Table 7.2 Borders of the Heart

Border	Defining Structures
Right cardiac border	• Right atrium • Superior vena cava
Apex	• Left ventricle
Left cardiac border	• Aortic arch ("aortic knob") • Pulmonary trunk • Left atrium • Left ventricle
Inferior cardiac border	• Left ventricle • Right ventricle

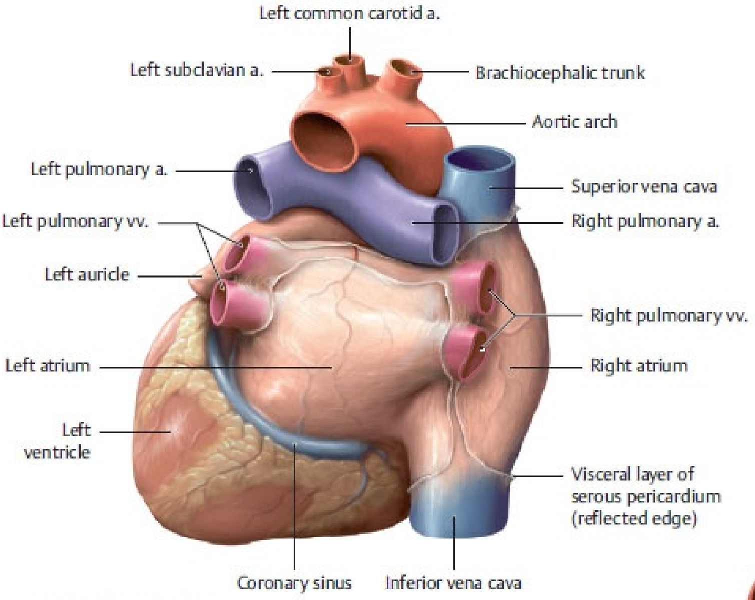


Radiographic appearance of the heart

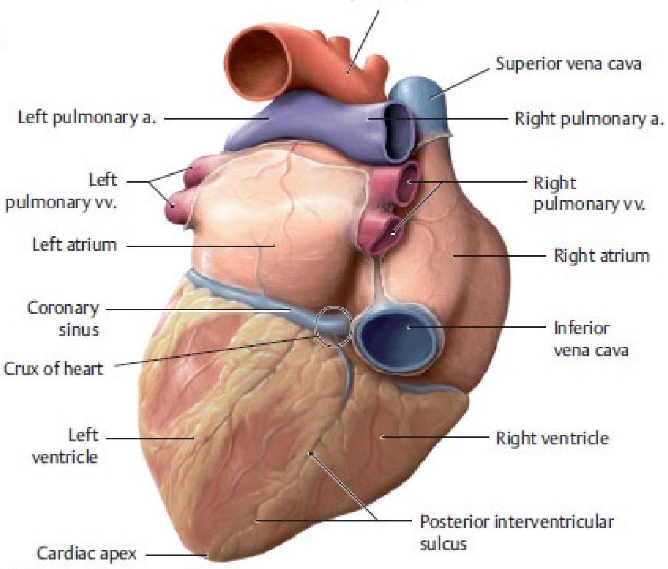
(From Gunderman R. Essential Radiology, 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2014.)


Left subclavian a.
Left common carotid a.
Aortic arch
Ligamentum arteriosum
Brachiocephalic trunk
Left pulmonary a.
Right pulmonary a.
Left pulmonary vv.
Superior vena cava
Pulmonary trunk
Ascending aorta
Left auricle
Right auricle
Fibrous pericardium (cut edge)
Right atrium
Anterior interventricular sulcus
Coronary (right atrioventricular) sulcus
Left ventricle
Right ventricle
Inferior vena cava
Cardiac apex

A Anterior (sternocostal) surface.


Left common carotid a.
Left subclavian a.
Brachiocephalic trunk
Aortic arch
Left pulmonary a.
Superior vena cava
Left pulmonary vv.
Right pulmonary a.
Left auricle
Right pulmonary vv.
Left atrium
Right atrium
Left ventricle
Visceral layer of serous pericardium (reflected edge)
Coronary sinus
Inferior vena cava

B Posterior surface (base).


Aortic arch
Superior vena cava
Left pulmonary a.
Right pulmonary a.
Left pulmonary vv.
Right pulmonary vv.
Left atrium
Right atrium
Coronary sinus
Inferior vena cava
Crux of heart
Left ventricle
Right ventricle
Posterior interventricular sulcus
Cardiac apex

C Inferior (diaphragmatic) surface.

Fig. 7.9 Surfaces of the heart

The heart has three surfaces: anterior (sternocostal), posterior (base), and inferior (diaphragmatic). (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

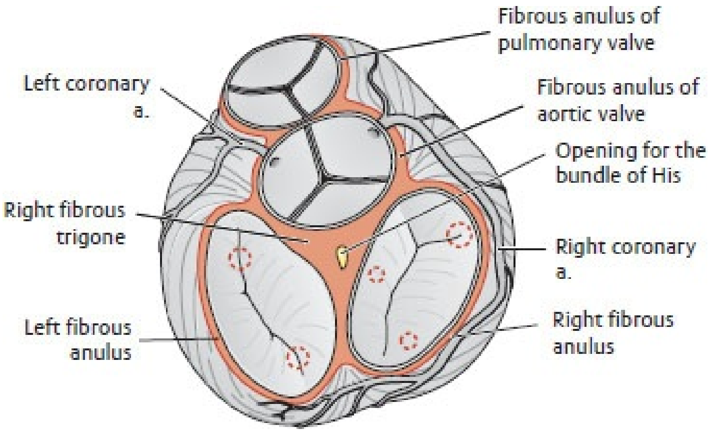

Fibrous anulus of pulmonary valve
Left coronary a.
Fibrous anulus of aortic valve
Opening for the bundle of His
Right fibrous trigone
Right coronary a.
Left fibrous anulus
Right fibrous anulus

Fig. 7.10 Cardiac skeleton

Superior view. *Red dotted circles* indicate attachment sites of papillary muscles on valves. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

The Atria (Figs. 7.11 and 7.12)

The **atria** are the thin-walled inflow chambers of the heart.

- The right atrium receives the superior and inferior venae cavae from the systemic circulation and the cardiac veins from the heart. The left atrium receives the pulmonary veins from the lungs.
- Each atrium is associated with an auricle, a small pouch that expands the capacity of the atrium and whose roughened walls contain pectinate muscles.
- A depression on the right ride of the interatrial septum, the **oval fossa** (fossa ovalis), is a remnant of the **oval foramen** (foramen ovale), an opening through which blood was shunted from the right to left atria in the prenatal circulation.
- The right atrium is divided into two parts by a muscular ridge, the **terminal crest** (crista terminalis). The ridge is evident on the outside of the heart as the **terminal sulcus.** The two parts of the right atrium are
    1. the **venous sinus** (sinus venarum), a smooth-walled region on the

posterior wall that contains the openings of the superior vena cava, inferior vena cava, coronary sinus, and anterior cardiac veins; and

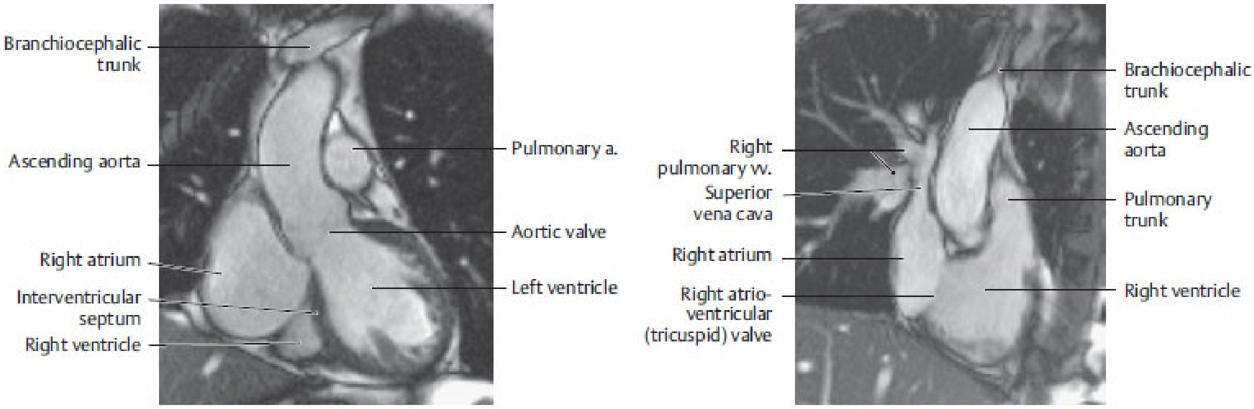
2. the **atrium proper,** the anterior muscular portion that, like the right auricle, contains pectinate muscles.

- The left atrium is smaller but thicker walled than the right atrium and receives the four to five pulmonary veins from the lungs. The atrial walls are smooth, with the pectinate muscles confined to the left auricle.

The Ventricles (Figs. 7.11 and 7.12)

The ventricles are thick-walled chambers that connect to the out-flow channels of the heart: the right ventricle to the pulmonary artery and the left ventricle to the aorta.

- The walls of the ventricles are marked with a meshwork of thick muscular ridges known as **trabeculae carneae.**
- Most of the interventricular septum is muscular, but there is a small membranous part at the superior end that is a common site of septal defects.
- The right ventricle is the smaller and thinner walled of the two ventricles. A muscular ridge, the **supraventricular crest,** separates it into two parts:
    1. The **right ventricle proper,** the inflow portion of the ventricle that receives blood from the right atrium
        - An **anterior** and a **posterior papillary muscle** arise from its floor, and a **septal papillary muscle** arises from the interventricular septum.
        - A muscular **septomarginal trabecula** (moderator band) extends from the septum to the base of the anterior papillary muscle and carries a part of the electrical conduction system (the right branch of the atrioventricular bundle) that facilitates the coordinated contraction of the papillary muscle.
    2. The **conus arteriosus** (infundibulum), the smooth-walled outflow channel through which blood flows into the pulmonary trunk

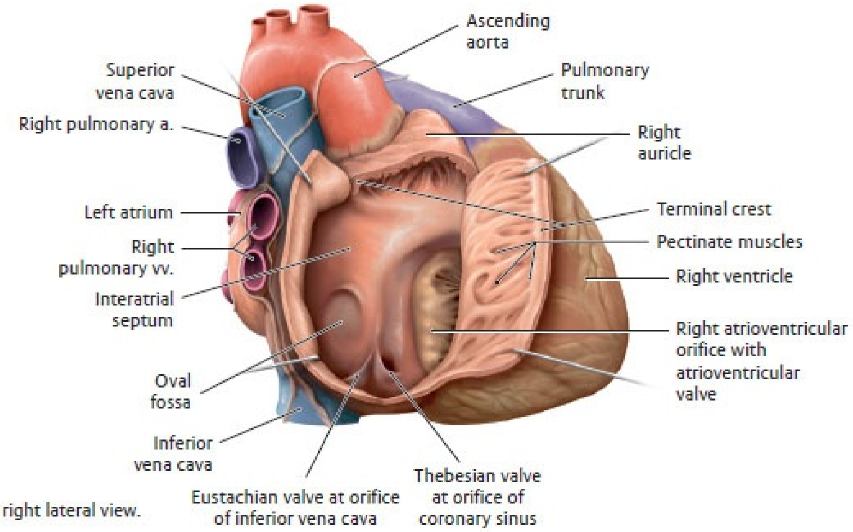

Branchiocephalic trunk
Ascending aorta
Right atrium
Interventricular septum
Right ventricle
Pulmonary a.
Aortic valve
Left ventricle
Right pulmonary vv.
Superior vena cava
Right atrium
Right atrio-ventricular (tricuspid) valve
Brachiocephalic trunk
Ascending aorta
Pulmonary trunk
Right ventricle

A Left ventricular outflow tract.

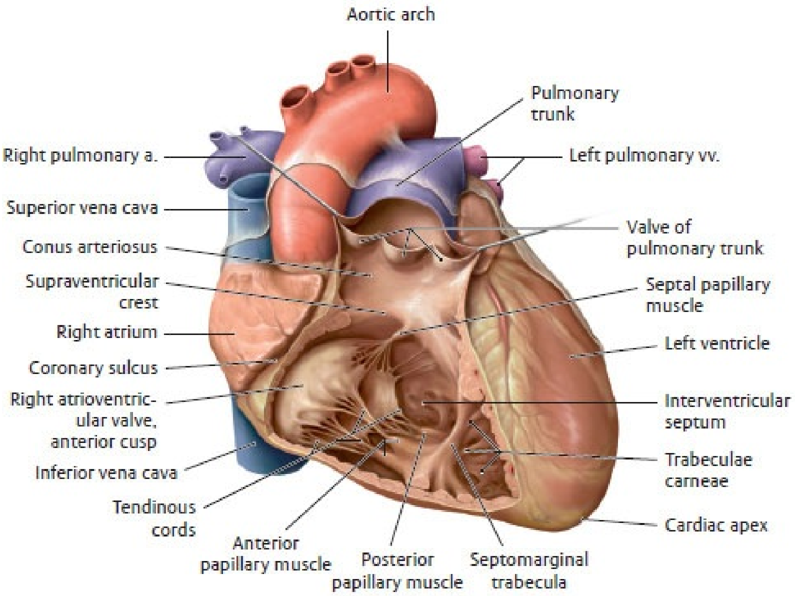
B Two chamber view of the right ventricle.

Fig. 7.11 MRI of the Heart

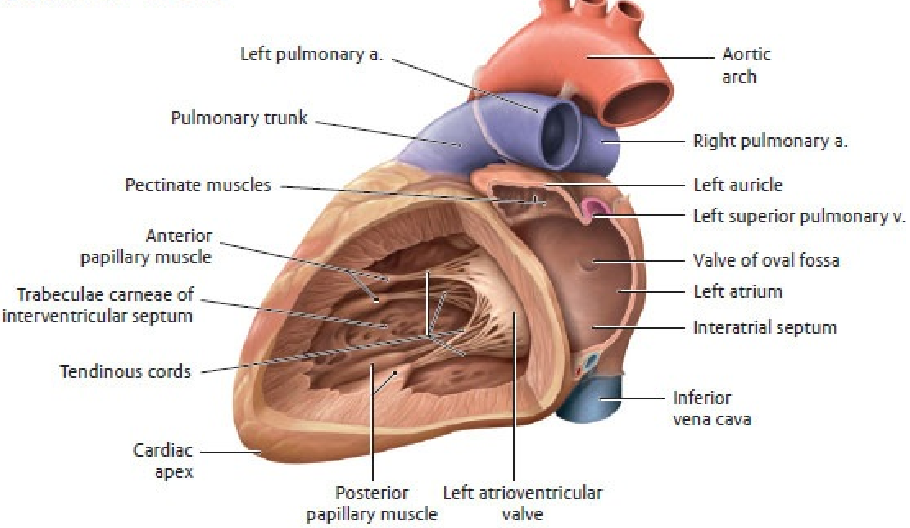
(From Moeller TB, Reif E. Pocket Atlas of Sectional Anatomy, Vol 2, 3rd ed. New York: Thieme; 2007.)


Ascending aorta
Superior vena cava
Pulmonary trunk
Right pulmonary a.
Right auricle
Left atrium
Terminal crest
Pectinate muscles
Right pulmonary vv.
Right ventricle
Interatrial septum
Right atrioventricular orifice with atrioventricular valve
Oval fossa
Inferior vena cava
Thebesian valve at orifice of coronary sinus
Eustachian valve at orifice of inferior vena cava

A Right atrium, right lateral view.


Aortic arch
Pulmonary trunk
Right pulmonary a.
Left pulmonary vv.
Superior vena cava
Valve of pulmonary trunk
Conus arteriosus
Supraventricular crest
Septal papillary muscle
Right atrium
Left ventricle
Coronary sulcus
Right atrioventricular valve, anterior cusp
Interventricular septum
Inferior vena cava
Trabeculae carneae
Tendinous cords
Cardiac apex
Anterior papillary muscle
Posterior papillary muscle
Septomarginal trabecula

B Right ventricle, anterior view.


Left pulmonary a.
Aortic arch
Pulmonary trunk
Right pulmonary a.
Pectinate muscles
Left auricle
Left superior pulmonary v.
Anterior papillary muscle
Valve of oval fossa
Left atrium
Trabeculae carneae of interventricular septum
Interatrial septum
Tendinous cords
Inferior vena cava
Cardiac apex
Posterior papillary muscle
Left atrioventricular valve

C Left atrium and ventricle, left lateral view. Note the irregular trabeculae carneae characteristic of the ventricular wall.

Fig. 7.12 Chambers of the heart

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

— The left ventricle, which includes the apex of the heart, is the thickest-walled chamber of the heart. Similar to the right ventricle, the left is divided into inflow and outflow portions:

1. The **left ventricle proper,** which receives blood from the left atrium. A large anterior and small posterior papillary muscle arise from its floor
2. The **aortic vestibule,** the smooth-walled outflow channel through which blood flows into the aorta

BOX 7.4: DEVELOPMENTAL CORRELATION

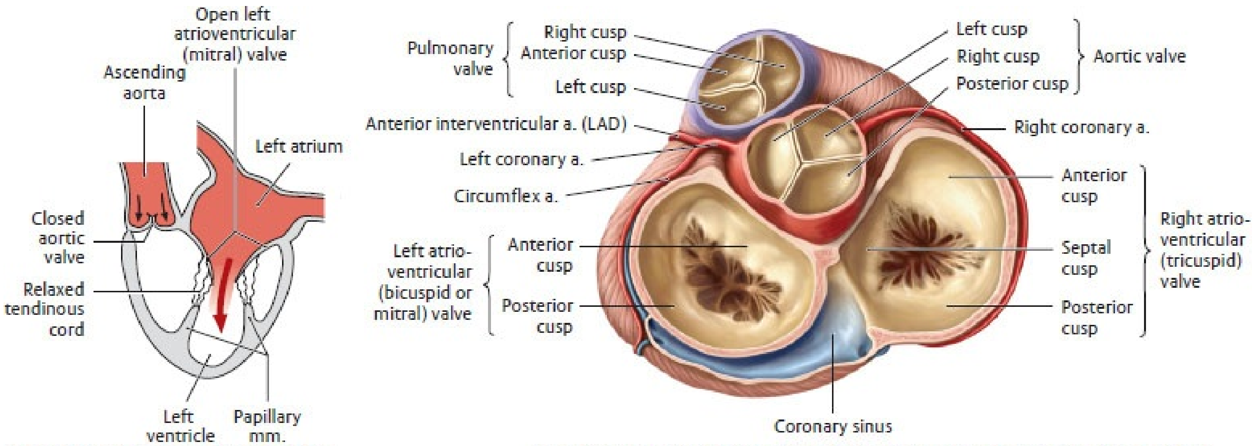
TETRALOGY OF FALLOT

Tetralogy of Fallot is a rare combination of four congenital cardiac defects: pulmonary stenosis, overriding aorta, ventricular septal defect (VSD), and right ventricular hypertrophy. Symptoms include cyanosis, dyspnea (shortness of breath), fainting, finger clubbing, fatigue, and prolonged crying in infants.

Valves of the Heart

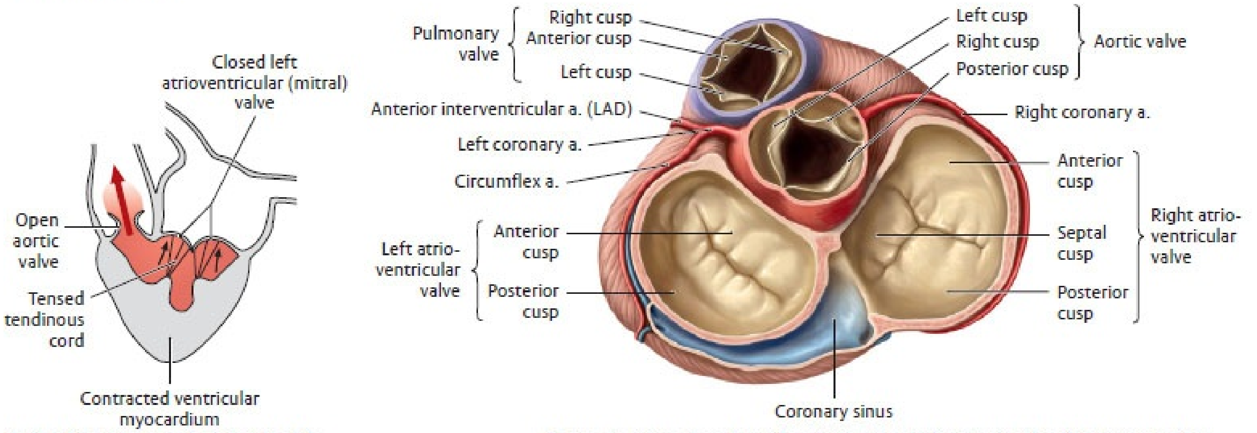
There are two types of cardiac valves: atrioventricular and semi lunar (**Fig. 7.13**).

1. **Atrioventricular valves** separate the atria from the ventricles and prevent regurgitation of blood into the atria during con-traction of the ventricles.
    - The atrioventricular valves are made up of cusps, thin leaflets with free inner margins and outer margins that are attached to the fibrous rings of the cardiac skeleton.
    - Slender threads called **tendinous cords** (chordae tend-ineae) attach the free edges of the valve leaflets to the papillary muscles in the ventricles. These cords maintain closure of the valves and prevent regurgitation of blood during ventricular contraction. Each cusp attaches to tendinous cords from more than one papillary muscle.


Open left atrioventricular (mitral) valve
Ascending aorta
Left atrium
Closed aortic valve
Relaxed tendinous cord
Left ventricle
Papillary mm.
Pulmonary valve
Right cusp
Anterior cusp
Left cusp
Anterior interventricular a. (LAD)
Left coronary a.
Circumflex a.
Left atrio-ventricular (bicuspid or mitral) valve
Anterior cusp
Posterior cusp
Left cusp
Right cusp
Posterior cusp
Aortic valve
Right coronary a.
Anterior cusp
Septal cusp
Posterior cusp
Right atrio-ventricular (tricuspid) valve
Coronary sinus

A Blood flow through the left side of the heart during ventricular diastole (relaxation of the ventricles), anterior view. *Closed:* Semilunar valves. *Opened:* Atrioventricular valves.

B Superior view of cardiac valves during ventricular diastole. *Closed:* Semilunar valves. *Opened:* Atrioventricular valves. *Removed:* Atria and great arteries.


Closed left atrioventricular (mitral) valve
Open aortic valve
Tensed tendinous cord
Contracted ventricular myocardium
Pulmonary valve
Right cusp
Anterior cusp
Left cusp
Anterior interventricular a. (LAD)
Left coronary a.
Circumflex a.
Left atrio-ventricular valve
Anterior cusp
Posterior cusp
Left cusp
Right cusp
Posterior cusp
Aortic valve
Right coronary a.
Anterior cusp
Septal cusp
Posterior cusp
Right atrio-ventricular valve
Coronary sinus

C Blood flow through the left side of the heart during ventricular systole (contraction of the ventricles). *Closed:* Atrioventricular valves. *Opened:* Semilunar valves.

D Superior view of cardiac valves during ventricular systole. *Closed:* Atrioventricular valves. *Opened:* Semilunar valves. *Removed:* Atria and great arteries.

Fig. 7.13 Cardiac valves

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- The atrioventricular valves include
    - the **tricuspid valve,** which separates the right atrium from the right ventricle and is composed of anterior, posterior, and septal cusps; and
    - the **bicuspid** (or **mitral**) **valve,** which separates the left atrium from the left ventricle and is composed of anterior and posterior cusps. The anterior cusp is immediately adjacent to, and continuous with, the wall of the aorta.

BOX 7.5: CLINICAL CORRELATION

MITRAL VALVE PROLAPSE

Mitral valve prolapse is a condition in which one or both leaflets of the mitral valve prolapse (evert) into the left atrium, allowing regurgitation of blood through the mitral valve during systole. This condition is usually asymptomatic but is noted by a midsys-tolic click (valve prolapsing) and murmur (regurgitation).

2. **Semilunar valves** prevent outflow from the ventricles as the chambers fill and backflow of blood into the ventricles after it has been expelled.
    - Each valve is composed of three semilunar cusps with free inner margins and attached outer margins. A **sinus,** or pocket, is created between each cusp and the vessel wall. The thickened free margin of the cusp, the **lunule,** is the point of contact of the cusps. A **nodule** marks the center of the lunule.
    - The semilunar valves include the following:
        - The **pulmonary semilunar valve (pulmonary valve),** is located in the pulmonary trunk at the top of the conus arteriosus, where it moderates blood flow through the right ventricular outflow channel. Its cusps are in the anterior, right, and left positions.
        - The **aortic semilunar valve (aortic valve)** is located within the aorta immediately adjacent to the mitral valve, where it moderates blood flow through the left ventricular outflow channel. Its cusps are in the posterior, right, and left positions. The coronary arteries arise from the sinuses above the right and left cusps.

BOX 7.6: CLINICAL CORRELATION

AORTIC VALVE STENOSIS

Stenosis of the aortic valve is the most common valve abnormal-ity. Calcifications of the valve leaflets narrow the outflow tract and lead to overload of the left ventricle, resulting in left ventricular hypertrophy.

Heart Sounds and Auscultation Sites

When the heart valves close, they produce characteristic sounds described as “lub dub.”

— Closure of the tricuspid and mitral valves during contraction of the ventricles produces the first sound (“lub”).

— Closure of the pulmonary and aortic valves as the ventricles relax produces the second sound (“dub”).

- The sounds, carried by the blood as it flows into the next vessel or chamber, are best distinguished at **auscultation sites** downstream from the valves **(Table 7.3)**.

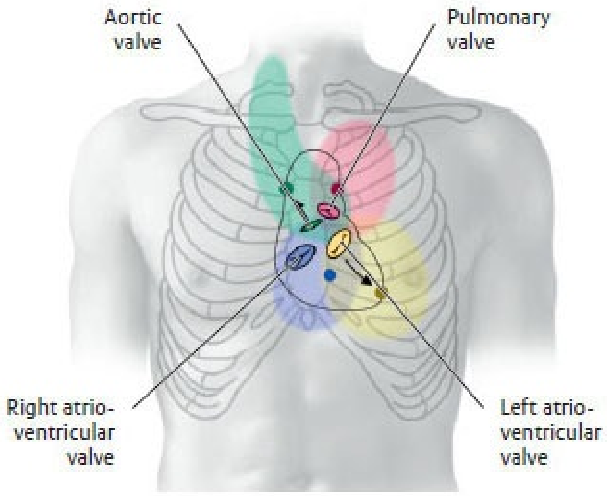


Table 7.3 Position and Auscultation Sites of Cardiac Valves

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

	Anatomical	
Valve	**Anatomical Projection**	**Auscultation Site**
Aortic valve	Left sternal border (at level of 3rd rib)	Right 2nd intercostal space (at sternal margin)
Pulmonary valve	Left sternal border (at level of 3rd costal cartilage)	Left 2nd intercostal space (at sternal margin)
Left atrioventricular valve	Left 4th/5th costal cartilage	Left 5th intercostal space (at midclavicular line) or cardiac apex
Right atrioventricular valve	Sternum (at level of 5th costal cartilage)	Left 5th intercostal space (at sternal margin

Note: Auscultation sites of the cardiac valves, indicated by *colored dots.*

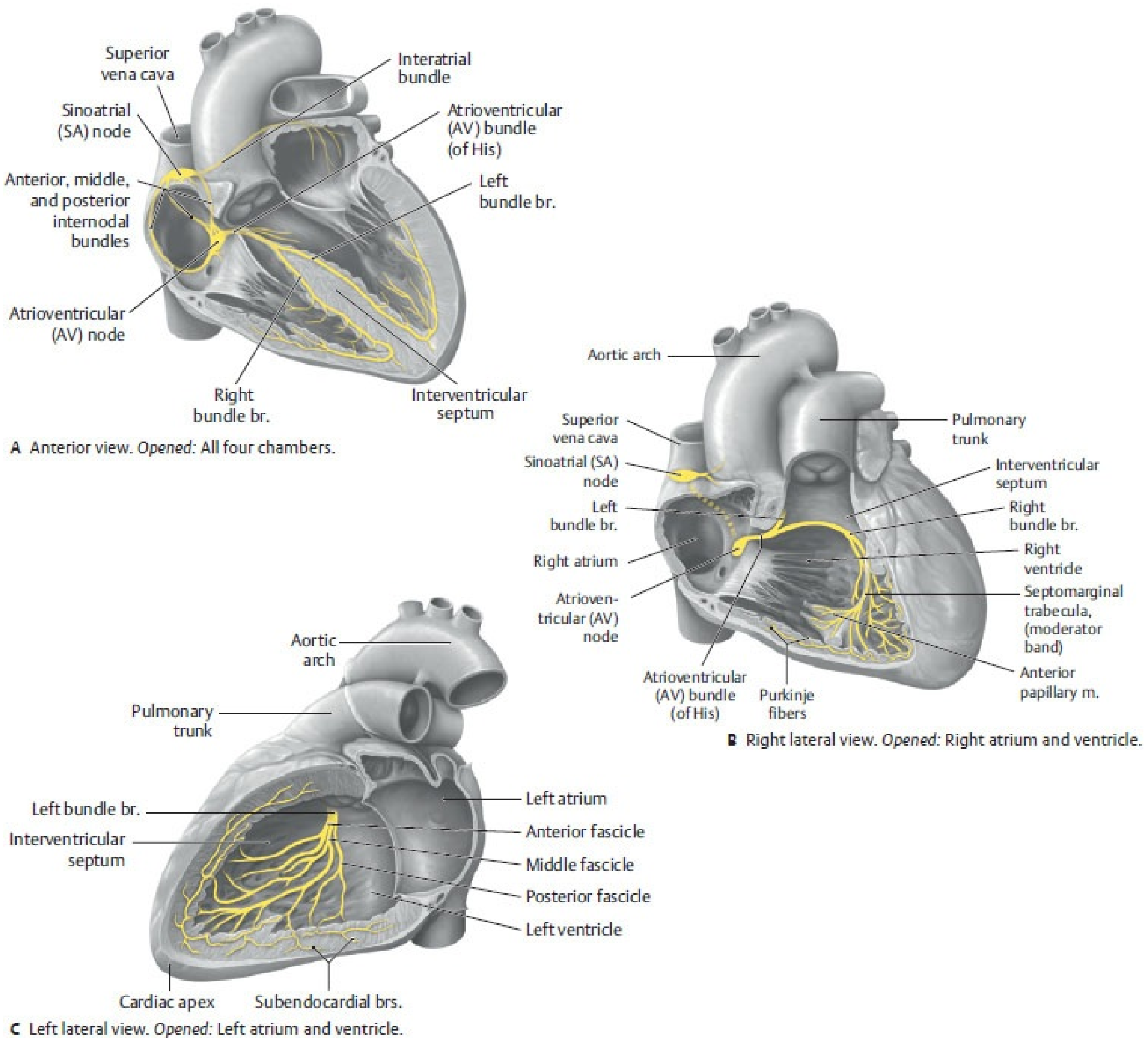
Valvular heart disease causes turbulent blood flow through a valve; this produces a murmur that may be detected in the *colored region* around the valve.

Conduction System of the Heart (Fig. 7.14)

The conduction system of the heart generates and transmits impulses that modulate the contraction of the cardiac muscle. It consists of nodes, which initiate the impulses, and conducting fibers, which distribute the impulses to cardiac muscle to effect a coordinated contraction of the heart chambers.

— The **sinoatrial (SA) node,** the pacemaker of the heart, initiates and coordinates the timing of the contraction of the heart chambers.

  - At a frequency of 60 to 70 beats per minute, the SA node transmits impulses to both atria and to the atrioventricu-lar node.
  - It is subepicardial, located on the external surface of the heart, just within the myocardium of the right atrium at the junction with the superior vena cava.
  - A branch of the right coronary artery usually supplies the SA node.


Superior vena cava
Interatrial bundle
Sinoatrial (SA) node
Atrioventricular (AV) bundle (of His)
Anterior, middle, and posterior internodal bundles
Left bundle br.
Atrioventricular (AV) node
Right bundle br.
Interventricular septum
Aortic arch
Superior vena cava
Pulmonary trunk
Sinoatrial (SA) node
Interventricular septum
Left bundle br.
Right bundle br.
Right atrium
Right ventricle
Atrioven-tricular (AV) node
Septomarginal trabecula, (moderator band)
Atrioventricular (AV) bundle (of His)
Purkinje fibers
Anterior papillary m.
Aortic arch
Pulmonary trunk
Left bundle br.
Interventricular septum
Left atrium
Anterior fascicle
Middle fascicle
Posterior fascicle
Left ventricle
Cardiac apex
Subendocardial brs.

A Anterior view. *Opened:* All four chambers.

B Right lateral view. *Opened:* Right atrium and ventricle.

C Left lateral view. *Opened:* Left atrium and ventricle.

Fig. 7.14 Cardiac conduction system

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- The **atrioventricular (AV) node** is stimulated by the SA node and transmits impulses to the AV bundle.
  - It is subendocardial, located at the base of the interatrial septum above the septal cusp of the tricuspid valve.
  - The AV nodal artery, usually a branch of the right coronary artery, arises near the origin of the posterior interventric-ular artery at the crux of the heart.

- The **atrioventricular (AV) bundle** (of His) arises from cells of the AV node and transmits impulses to the walls of the ventricles.
    - It runs first along the membranous part of the interven-tricular septum and then divides into **right** and **left bundle branches** that descend to the apex on either side of the muscular part of the septum.
    - The bundle branches end as **Purkinje fibers,** modified cardiac fibers, which ascend within the muscular walls of the ventricles.

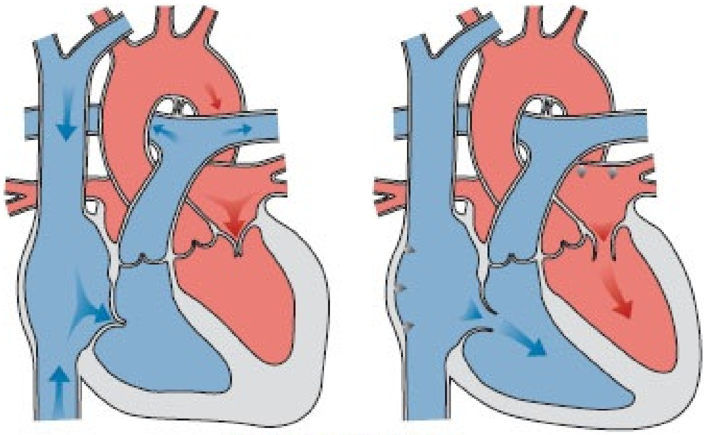
BOX 7.7: CLINICAL CORRELATION

ATRIOVENTRICULAR HEART BLOCK

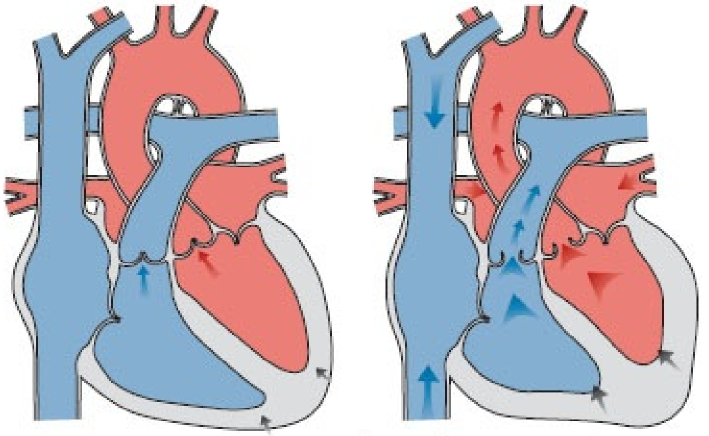
AV heart block is a partial or complete blockage of the conduc-tion of electrical impulses between the atria and ventricles. This causes bradycardia (slow heartbeat) and arrhythmias (irregular heartbeat) and ultimately prevents the heart from effectively contracting and delivering blood to the body. Although heart block may be congenital, it is frequently the result of damage to the heart muscle after myocardial infarction (MI).

The Cardiac Cycle

The heart's conduction system moderates the cardiac cycle, the coordinated **systole** (contraction) and **diastole** (relaxation) of the atria and ventricles. **Fig. 7.15** summarizes the sequence of events of the cycle.



A,B Ventricular diastole.



C,D Ventricular systole.

Fig. 7.15 The cardiac cycle

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

1. In the initial phase of diastole, the atria and ventricles are relaxed, and the AV and semilunar valves are closed.
2. In late diastole, the atria fill, the AV valves open, and blood flows passively into the ventricles.
3. Stimulation from the SA node initiates the contraction of the atria, forcing the remaining atrial blood volume into the ventricles.
4. As pressure in the ventricles rises above that in the atria, the AV valves close.
5. Stimulation from the AV node and the AV bundles initiates contraction of the ventricles (ventricular systole).
6. Rising intraventricular pressure forces the semilunar valves to open. Blood

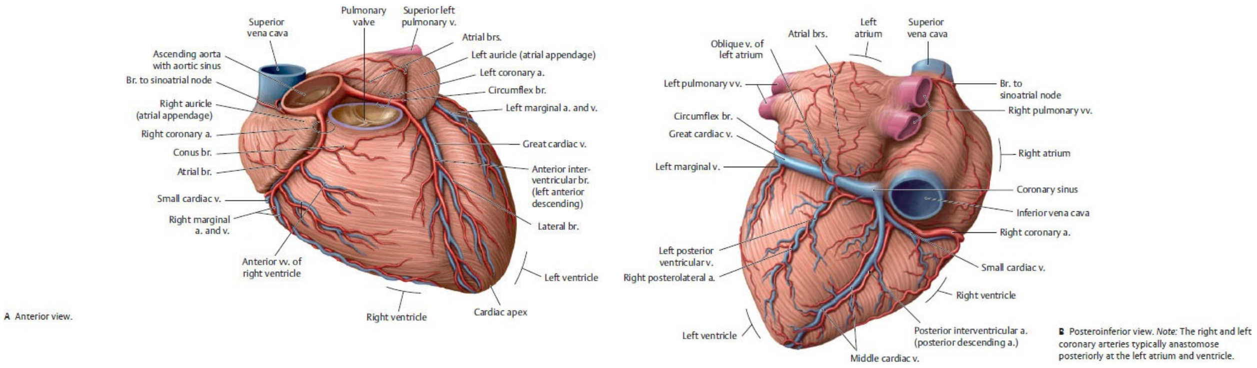
is ejected from the right ventricle into the pulmonary trunk and from the left ventricle into the aorta.

7. Relaxation of the ventricles (ventricular diastole) causes backward flow in the pulmonary trunk and aorta and closure of the pulmonary and aortic valves.

7.5 Middle Mediastinum: Neurovasculature of the Heart

Coronary Arteries (Figs. 7.16 and 7.17; Table 7.4)

The **right** and **left coronary arteries** arise from the ascending aorta just superior to the right and left cusps of the aortic valve. In the initial phase of ventricular diastole, the local surge in aortic pressure caused by the backflow closes the aortic valve and drives blood into the coronary arteries. Blood flow in the arteries is greatest during diastole because of the compression of arteries within the myocardium during systole.

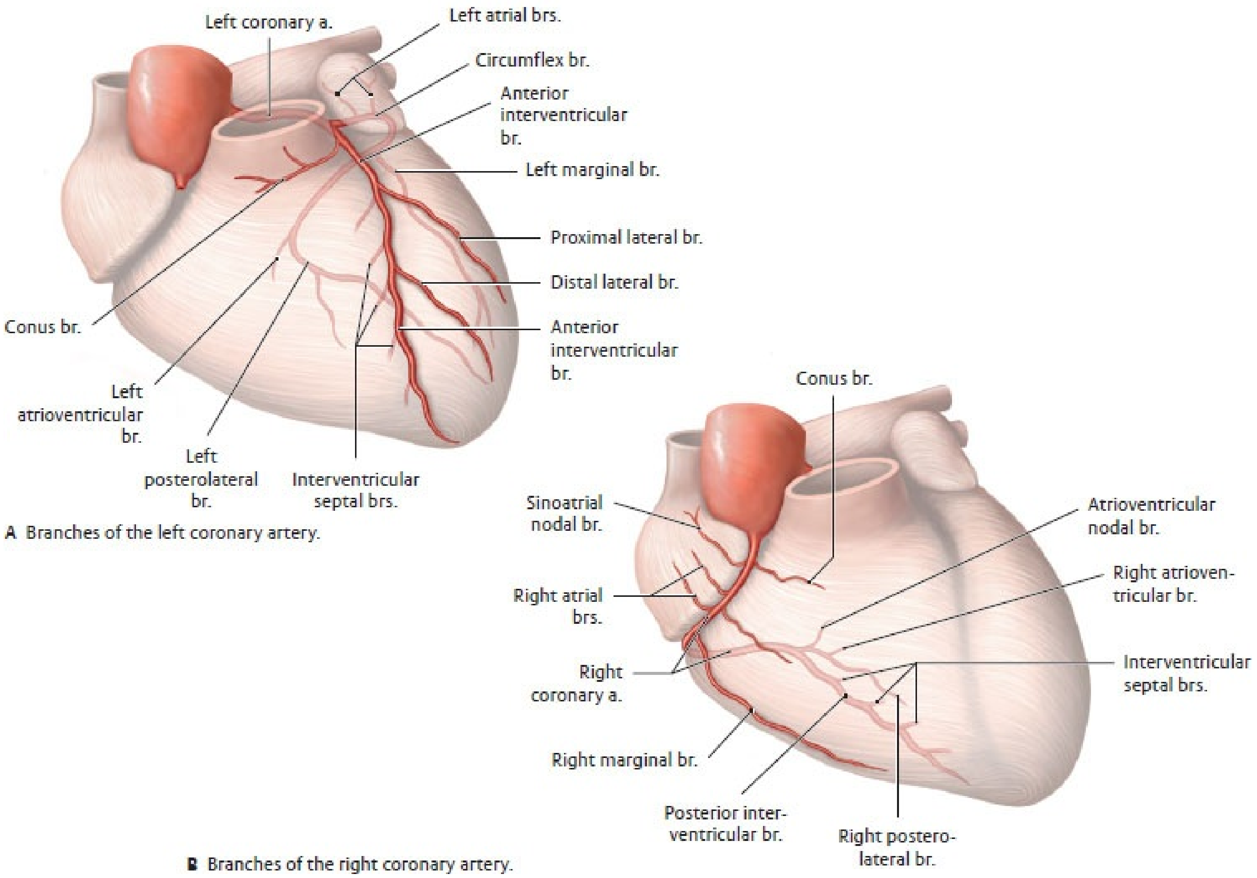

Superior vena cava
Pulmonary valve
Superior left pulmonary v.
Atrial brs.
Left auricle (atrial appendage)
Left coronary a.
Circumflex br.
Left marginal a. and v.
Great cardiac v.
Anterior interventricular br. (left anterior descending)
Lateral br.
Left ventricle
Cardiac apex
Right ventricle
Anterior vv. of right ventricle
Right marginal a. and v.
Small cardiac v.
Atrial br.
Conus br.
Right coronary a.
Right auricle (atrial appendage)
Br. to sinoatrial node
Ascending aorta with aortic sinus
Oblique v. of left atrium
Atrial brs.
Left atrium
Superior vena cava
Br. to sinoatrial node
Right pulmonary vv.
Right atrium
Coronary sinus
Inferior vena cava
Right coronary a.
Small cardiac v.
Right ventricle
Posterior interventricular a. (posterior descending a.)
Middle cardiac v.
Left ventricle
Right posterolateral a.
Left posterior ventricular v.
Left marginal v.
Great cardiac v.
Circumflex br.
Left pulmonary vv.

A Anterior view.

B Posteroinferior view. *Note:* The right and left coronary arteries typically anastomose posteriorly at the left atrium and ventricle.

Fig. 7.16 Coronary arteries and cardiac veins (*continued on page 112*)

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Left coronary a.
Left atrial brs.
Circumflex br.
Anterior interventricular br.
Left marginal br.
Proximal lateral br.
Distal lateral br.
Anterior interventricular br.
Conus br.
Left atrioventricular br.
Left posterolateral br.
Interventricular septal brs.
Conus br.
Sinoatrial nodal br.
Atrioventricular nodal br.
Right atrioventricular br.
Right atrial brs.
Right coronary a.
Interventricular septal brs.
Right marginal br.
Posterior interventricular br.
Right posterolateral br.

A Branches of the left coronary artery.

B Branches of the right coronary artery.

Fig. 7.17 Classification of the coronary arteries

Anterior view, sternocostal surface. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Table 7.4 Branches of the Coronary Arteries

Right coronary artery

- — Sinoatrial nodal br.
- — Right atrial brs.
- — Right conus br.
- — Anterior ventricular brs.
- — Right marginal a.
- — Atrioventricular nodal br.
- — Posterior (inferior) interventricular br. (posterior descending a.)
- — Interventricular septal brs.

Left coronary artery

- Anterior interventricular a. (left anterior descending a.)
  - Left conus br.
  - Proximal lateral (diagonal) br.
  - Distal lateral (diagonal) br.
  - Interventricular septal brs.
- Circumflex a.
  - Sinoatrial nodal br. (in 40%)
  - Left atrial brs.
  - Left marginal a.
  - Left posterolateral br.
  - Posterior (inferior) interventricular a. (in about one third of cases)

- The right and left coronary arteries supply the myocardium and epicardium of the heart.
  - The **right coronary artery** descends within the coronary sulcus around the right side of the heart. Its major branches and their distribution are
    - the **branch to the sinoatrial node** (SA nodal artery), which supplies the right atrium and the SA node;
    - the **right marginal branch,** which supplies the apex and part of the right ventricle;
    - the **posterior** (inferior) **interventricular branch,** which supplies the right and left ventricles and posterior third of the interventricular septum and sometimes anastomoses with the interventricular branch of the left coronary artery near the apex on the diaphragmatic surface; and
    - the **AV nodal artery,** which supplies the AV node.
  - The **left coronary artery,** typically larger than the right coronary artery, arises from the aorta posterior to the pulmonary trunk. After a short but variable course, it divides into two large branches, the **anterior interventric-ular** (left anterior descending, LAD) **artery,** which descends in the anterior interventricular sulcus, and the **circumflex artery,** which runs around the left side of the heart in the coronary sulcus. Their branches and distributions include
    - the anterior interventricular artery, which supplies the anterior aspects of the right and left ventricles and the anterior two thirds of the interventricular septum, including the AV bundle of the conducting system; and

    - the circumflex artery, which supplies the left atrium and, via its **left marginal branch,** the left ventricle. In ~ 40% of the population, an **SA nodal branch** arises to supply the SA node.

— Variation in the coronary circulation is common but the descriptive language is misleading. The word *dominant* refers not to the artery that supplies the greater volume of cardiac tissue (that is almost always the left coronary artery), but to the artery that gives rise to the posterior interventricular branch.

- A right dominant circulation occurs in about two thirds of the population. The posterior interventricular branch arises from the right coronary artery and supplies the posterior third of the interventricular septum.
- A small percentage of people exhibit left dominance in which the posterior interventricular artery is a branch of the circumflex artery. In these cases, the entire interven-tricular septum and the AV node are supplied by the left coronary artery.
- In the shared or "balanced" dominance, seen in a small group of people, branches from both coronary arteries run in the interventricular groove and jointly supply the interventricular septum.

BOX 7.8: CLINICAL CORRELATION

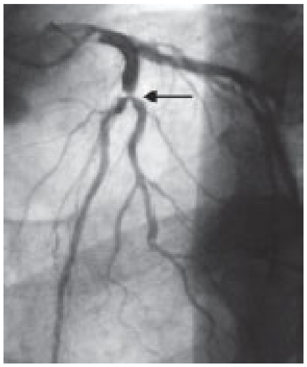
ANGINA

Angina (angina pectoris), a sudden, crushing substernal pain, is a result of myocardial ischemia (insufficient blood supply) caused by a narrowing of the coronary arteries. Exercise following a heavy meal, stress, or even cold weather can trigger an episode. Although angina pain may be severe, it is relieved by a short rest and does not result in infarction of cardiac muscle.

BOX 7.9: CLINICAL CORRELATION

CORONARY ARTERY DISEASE

Coronary artery disease results in ischemia of the myocardium and is a leading cause of death in the United States. In atheroscle-rosis of the coronary arteries, lipid deposits build up on the inner wall of the vessel and gradually narrow the lumen. In acute disease a fragment of plaque breaks off and completely obstructs the vessel. This creates a necrotic (dead) area of myocardium known as a myocardial infarction. Chronic disease is characterized by a gradual narrowing (stenosis) of the vessels. Overtime a collateral circulation develops that circumvents the narrowed segment and may prevent, or limit, damage from other ischemic events.



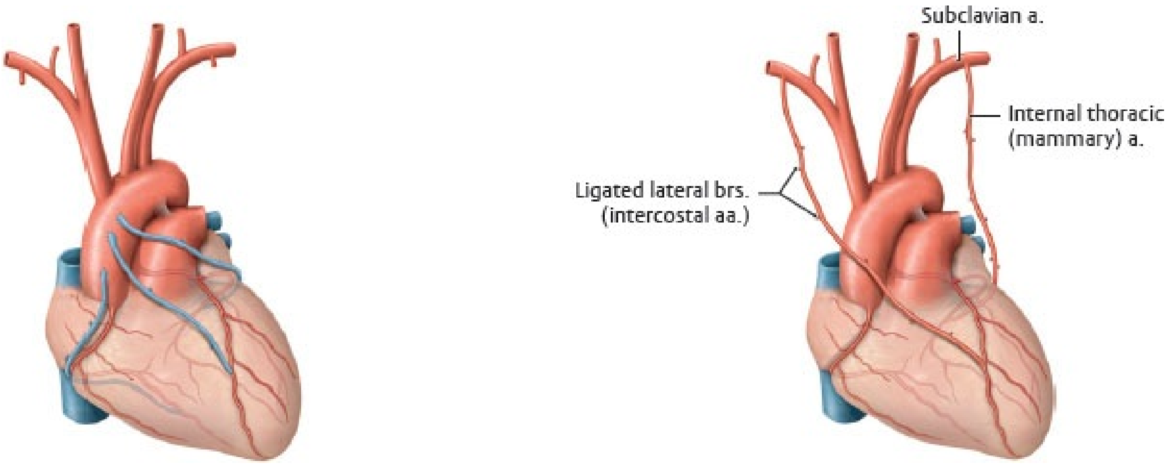
Severe stenosis *(arrow)* of the circumflex artery

(From Claussen CD, et al. Pareto Reihe Radiologie. Herz/Pareto Series Radiology. Heart. Stuttgart: Thieme; 2007.)

BOX 7.10: CLINICAL CORRELATION

CORONARY ARTERY BYPASS GRAFT

Coronary artery bypass graft (CABG) is a surgical procedure per-formed to bypass atherosclerotic narrowings of the coronary arteries that are the cause of anginal pain. If left untreated, these narrowings can eventually occlude the vessel and lead to myocar-dial infarction (MI). The internal thoracic artery and the great saphenous vein are most commonly used as the bypass vessel.


Subclavian a.
Internal thoracic (mammary) a.
Ligated lateral brs. (intercostal aa.)

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Coronary Veins (see Fig. 7.18)

- The **coronary sinus,** which receives most of the venous return from the heart, runs in the posterior coronary sulcus between the left atrium and ventricle. The **thebesian valve** guards the orifice of the coronary sinus where it drains into the right atrium near the opening of the inferior vena cava **(Figs. 7.9** and **7.12)**.

— The large veins of the heart are tributaries of the coronary sinus.

- The **great cardiac vein** receives the anterior interventricular, left marginal, and posterior left ventricular veins, which drain the left atrium and both ventricles.
- The **posterior interventricular (middle cardiac) vein** runs in the posterior interventricular groove with the posterior interventricular artery and drains the posterior part of the interventricular septum.

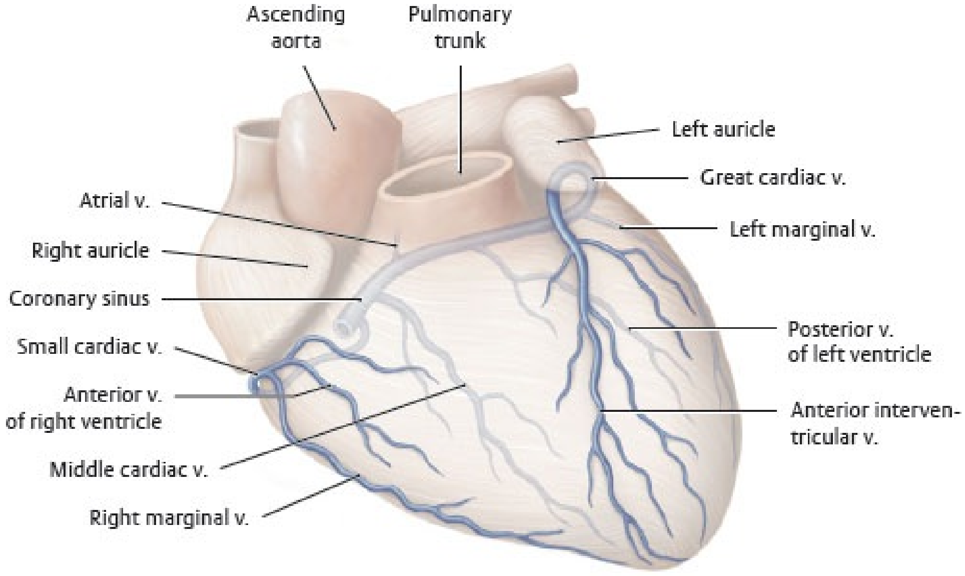
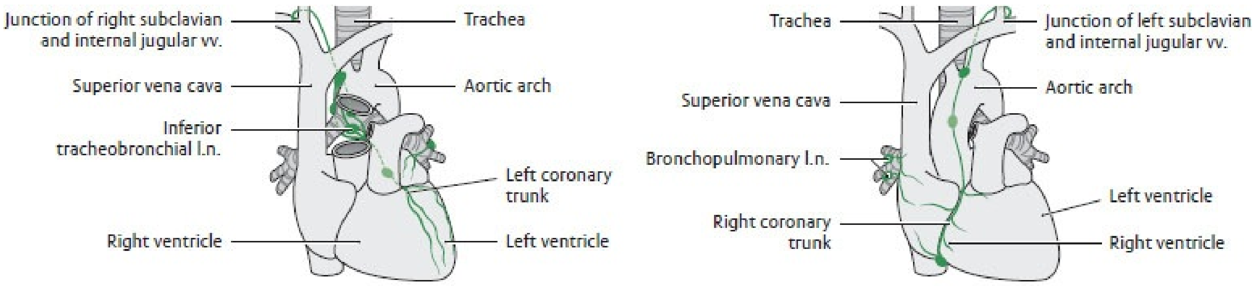

Ascending aorta
Pulmonary trunk
Left auricle
Great cardiac v.
Left marginal v.
Atrial v.
Right auricle
Coronary sinus
Small cardiac v.
Posterior v. of left ventricle
Anterior v. of right ventricle
Anterior interventricular v.
Middle cardiac v.
Right marginal v.

Fig. 7.18 Classification of cardiac veins

Anterior view, sternocostal surface. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Junction of right subclavian and internal jugular vv.
Trachea
Superior vena cava
Aortic arch
Inferior tracheobronchial l.n.
Left coronary trunk
Right ventricle
Left ventricle
Trachea
Junction of left subclavian and internal jugular vv.
Aortic arch
Superior vena cava
Bronchopulmonary l.n.
Left ventricle
Right coronary trunk
Right ventricle

A Lymphatic drainage of the left chambers, anterior view.

B Lymphatic drainage of the right chambers, anterior view.

Fig. 7.19 Lymphatic drainage of the heart

A unique “crossed” drainage pattern exists in the heart: lymph from the left atrium and ventricle drains to the right venous junction, whereas lymph from the right atrium and ventricle drains to the left venous junction. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

  - The **small cardiac vein,** which drains the posterior right atrium and the right ventricle, accompanies the right coronary artery in the atrioventricular groove.
- **Anterior cardiac veins** drain the anterior surface of the right ventricle and open directly into the right atrium.

Lymphatic Drainage of the Heart

- Lymphatic vessels of the heart have a crossed drainage pattern. Lymph from the left atrium and ventricle drains via a left coronary trunk to inferior tracheobronchial nodes. Efferents from these nodes usually drain to the right venous junction via the bronchomediastinal trunk. Lymph from the right ventricle and atrium drains via a right coronary trunk that runs along the ascending aorta to brachiocephalic nodes near the left venous junction (**Fig. 7.19**).
- The pericardium usually drains to the right and left venous junctions via superior phrenic nodes and bronchomediastinal trunks, but it may also drain superiorly to the brachiocephalic nodes.

Innervation of the Heart

The autonomic nerves of the cardiac plexus innervate the conduc-tion system of the heart (**Fig. 7.20**, also see Section 5.2); they therefore regulate the heart rate but do not initiate the heartbeat.

- Sympathetic innervation increases the rate and force of contractions by increasing the response of the SA and AV nodes. It also allows dilation of the coronary arteries.
- Parasympathetic innervation decreases the rate of contractions and causes vasoconstriction of the coronary arteries.

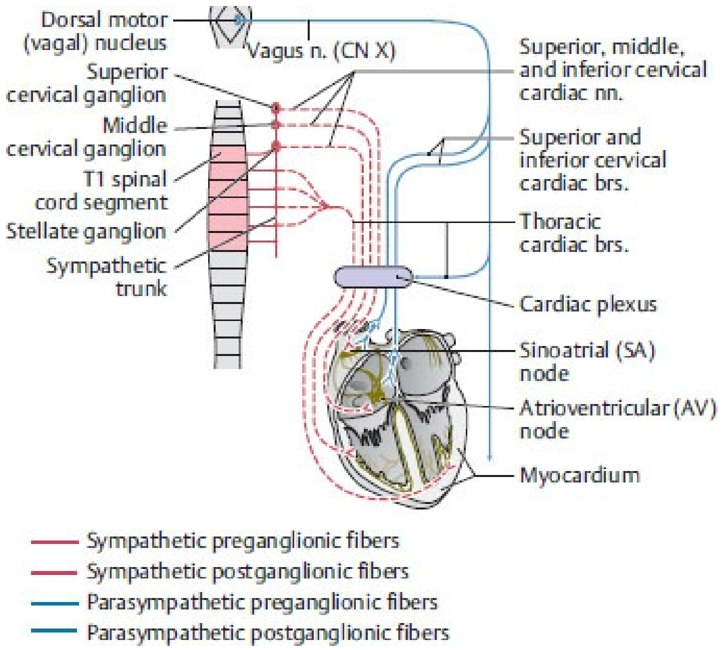

Dorsal motor (vagal) nucleus
Vagus n. (CN X)
Superior cervical ganglion
Middle cervical ganglion
T1 spinal cord segment
Stellate ganglion
Sympathetic trunk
Superior, middle, and inferior cervical cardiac nn.
Superior and inferior cervical cardiac brs.
Thoracic cardiac brs.
Cardiac plexus
Sinoatrial (SA) node
Atrioventricular (AV) node
Myocardium
Sympathetic preganglionic fibers
Sympathetic postganglionic fibers
Parasympathetic preganglionic fibers
Parasympathetic postganglionic fibers

Fig. 7.20 Autonomic innervation of the heart

Schematic. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

— Visceral sensory fibers innervating the baroreceptors (receptors that measure blood pressure) and chemoreceptors (receptors that measure blood CO_2) in the heart and aortic arch travel with the parasympathetic fibers of the vagus nerve.
— Visceral sensory fibers carrying pain sensation travel with sympathetic fibers to the T1–T5 spinal cord.

7.6 Prenatal and Neonatal Circulation

Prenatal Circulation

Fetal shunts that direct the flow of blood through the liver, heart, and lungs create a prenatal circulation that differs from that of the adult. The numbered steps in Fig. 7.21 illustrate the blood flow in the fetal circulation:

1. Fetal blood supplied with oxygen and nutrients in the placenta courses through the umbilical vein toward the liver of the fetus.
2. Although a portion of the blood is distributed to the liver, over half bypasses the liver and is redirected through a shunt, the **ductus venosus,** which empties directly into the inferior vena cava. This blood mixes with smaller

amounts from the liver and lower parts of the body before entering the right atrium of the heart.

3. The **eustachian valve** (see **Fig. 7.12A**) at the orifice of the inferior vena cava directs this well-oxygenated mixture across the right atrium into the left atrium through the oval foramen on the interatrial septum. The higher systolic pressure in the right atrium relative to that in the left creates this right-to-left shunt.

   From the left atrium, the flow continues into the left ventricle, the aorta, and the systemic circulation of the head and neck. Thus the most highly oxygenated and nutrient-rich blood from the placenta is directed into the coronary, carotid, and subclavian arteries to supply the upper body, especially the heart and developing brain.

4. Oxygen-depleted blood entering the right atrium from the superior vena cava is directed downward through the tricuspid valve into the right ventricle and out through the pulmonary trunk.

   Because the high vascular resistance in the lungs prevents much blood from entering the pulmonary arteries, most is diverted to the descending aorta through the **ductus arteriosus**, a connection between the pulmonary trunk and the aortic arch.

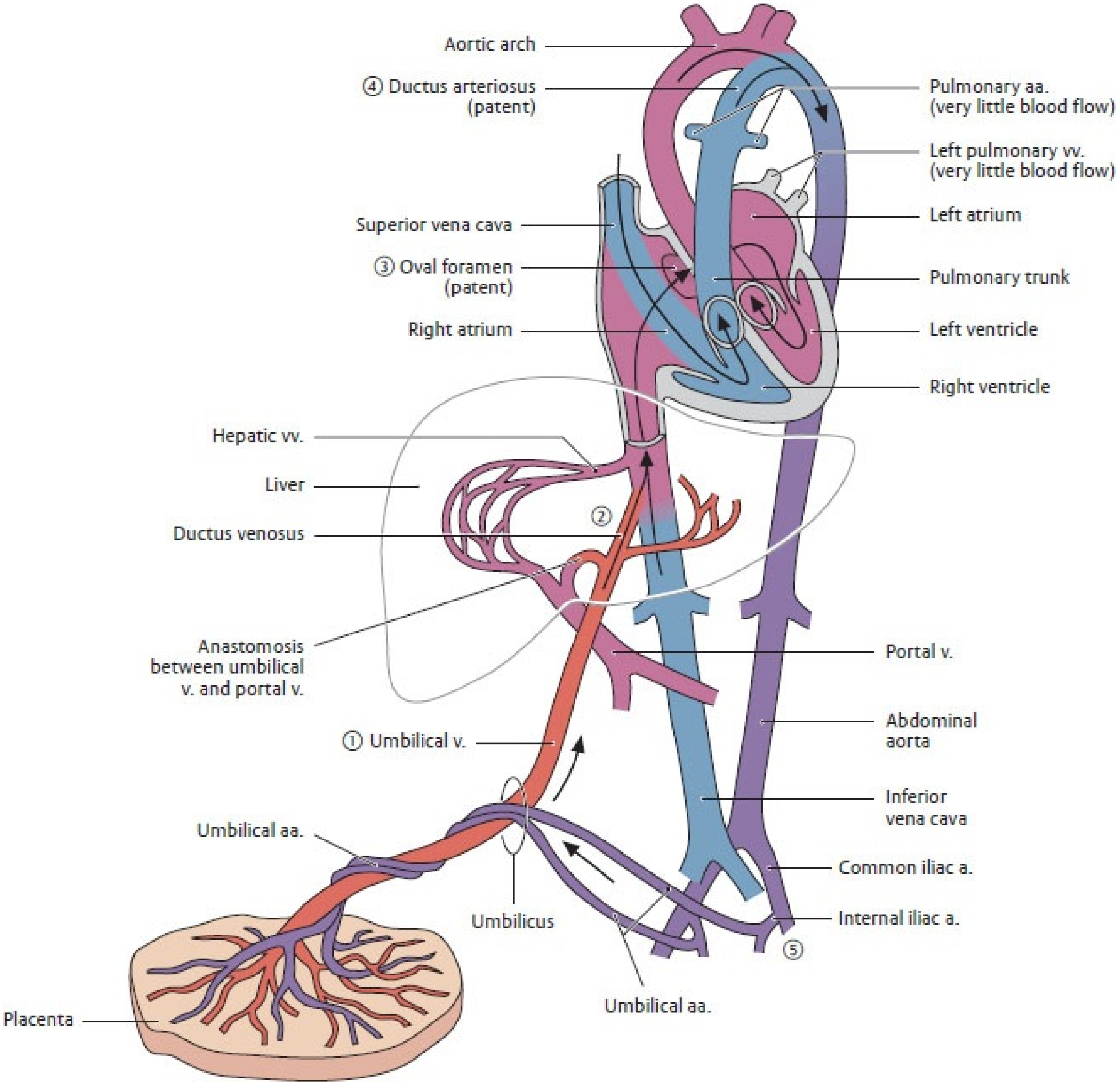

Aortic arch
④ Ductus arteriosus (patent)
Pulmonary aa. (very little blood flow)
Left pulmonary vv. (very little blood flow)
Left atrium
Superior vena cava
③ Oval foramen (patent)
Pulmonary trunk
Right atrium
Left ventricle
Right ventricle
Hepatic vv.
Liver
②
Ductus venosus
Anastomosis between umbilical v. and portal v.
Portal v.
Abdominal aorta
① Umbilical v.
Inferior vena cava
Umbilical aa.
Common iliac a.
Umbilicus
Internal iliac a.
⑤
Umbilical aa.
Placenta

Fig. 7.21 Prenatal circulation

(After Fritsch H, Kuhnel W. Taschenatlas der Anatomie. Bd.2.7. Aufl. Stuttgart: Thieme Publishers; 2001.)

5. The blood entering the aorta from the ductus arteriosus mixes with some blood from the aortic arch. This partially oxygenated blood flows into the descending aorta and is distributed to the lower body, or back to the placenta by way of the paired umbilical arteries.

Cardiovascular Changes at Birth

At birth, a series of changes occurs in the cardiovascular system **(Fig. 7.22;**

Table 7.5).

1. Pressure in the right atrium decreases as a result of
   - **a** ligation of the umbilical vein, which cuts off blood flow from the placenta; and
   - **b** the onset of pulmonary respiration, which dramatically decreases the pulmonary blood pressure and increases blood flow to the lungs.

Table 7.5 Derivatives of Fetal Circulatory Structures

Fetal Structure	Adult Remnant
Ductus arteriosus	Ligamentum arteriosum
Oval foramen (foramen ovale)	Oval fossa (fossa ovalis)
Ductus venosus	Ligamentum venosum
Umbilical v.	Round lig. of the liver (ligamentum teres)
Umbilical a.	Medial umbilical lig.

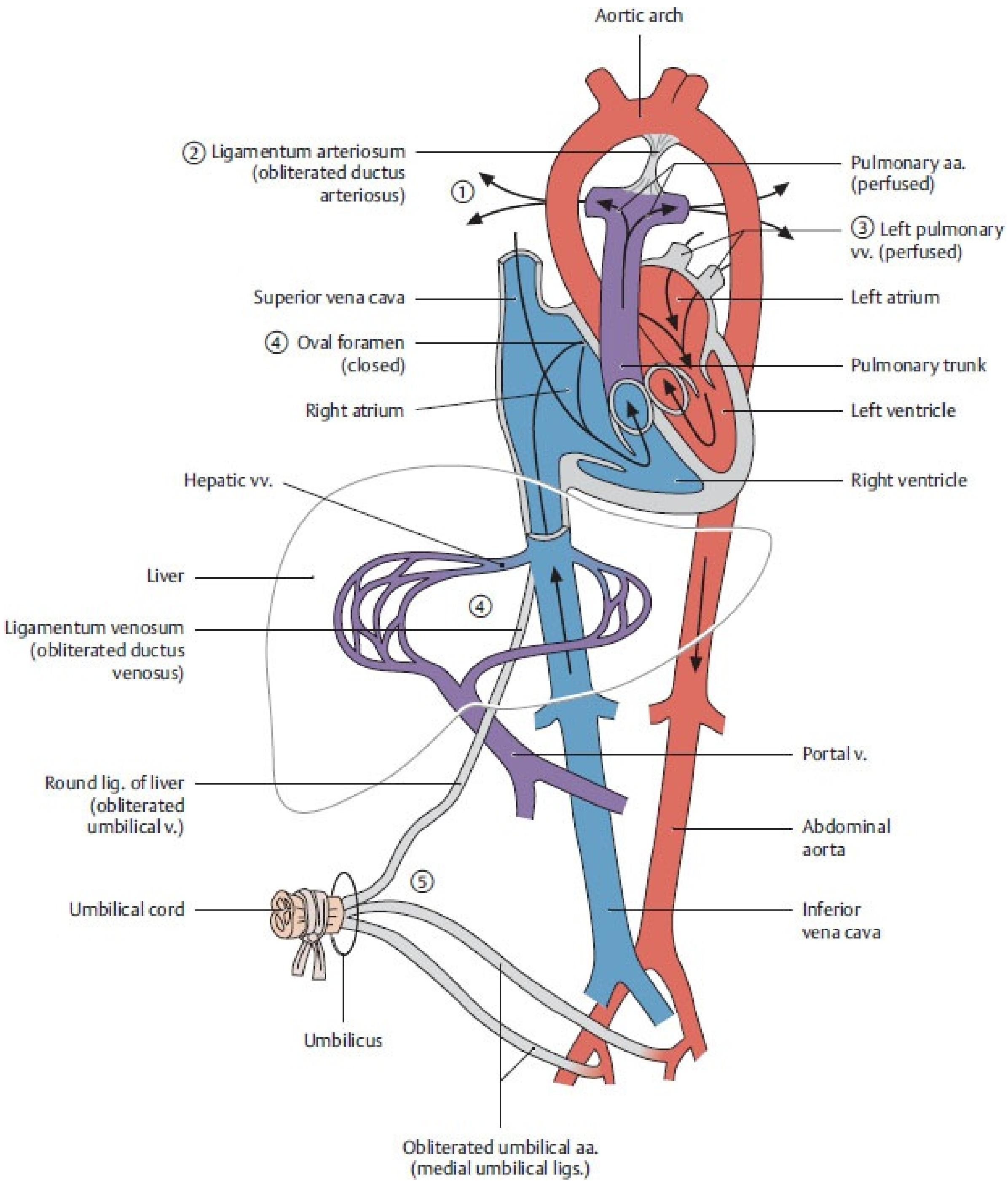

Aortic arch
② Ligamentum arteriosum (obliterated ductus arteriosus)
①
Pulmonary aa. (perfused)
③ Left pulmonary vv. (perfused)
Superior vena cava
Left atrium
④ Oval foramen (closed)
Pulmonary trunk
Right atrium
Left ventricle
Hepatic vv.
Right ventricle
Liver
④
Ligamentum venosum (obliterated ductus venosus)
Portal v.
Round lig. of liver (obliterated umbilical v.)
Abdominal aorta
⑤
Umbilical cord
Inferior vena cava
Umbilicus
Obliterated umbilical aa. (medial umbilical ligs.)

Fig. 7.22 Postnatal circulation

(After Fritsch H, Kuhnel W. Taschenatlas der Anatomie. Bd.2.7. Aufl. Stuttgart: Thieme Publishers; 2001.)

2. As a result of increased flow through the lungs, there is a decreased blood flow through the ductus arteriosus, which constricts within 10 to 15 hours of birth. In the adult, the remnant of this structure is the **ligamentum arteriosum.**

3. Blood returning to the heart through the pulmonary veins increases pressure in the left atrium.
4. Increased pressure in the left atrium, coupled with a corresponding decrease in pressure in the right atrium, causes a functional closure of the oval foramen (foramen ovale) within hours of birth. Complete closure of the oval foramen usually occurs after several months, forming the **oval fossa** (fossa ovalis) in the adult heart.
5. Functional closure of the umbilical arteries, umbilical vein, and ductus venosus occurs within minutes of birth, although the obliteration of the lumen in each vessel may take several months. The remnants of these vessels in the adult are ligamentous structures.

BOX 7.11: DEVELOPMENTAL CORRELATION

VENTRICULAR SEPTAL DEFECT

Ventricular septal defects (VSDs), the most common of congen-ital heart defects, usually involve the membranous part of the interventricular septum and are associated with Down syndrome, tetralogy of Fallot, and Turner syndrome. VSDs may also occur traumatically from rupture of the membranous septum follow-ing a myocardial infarction. When the VSD is large, the resulting left-to-right shunt increases blood flow through the pulmonary circulation, causing pulmonary hypertension and cardiac failure **(Fig. 7.23B)**.

BOX 7.12: DEVELOPMENTAL CORRELATION

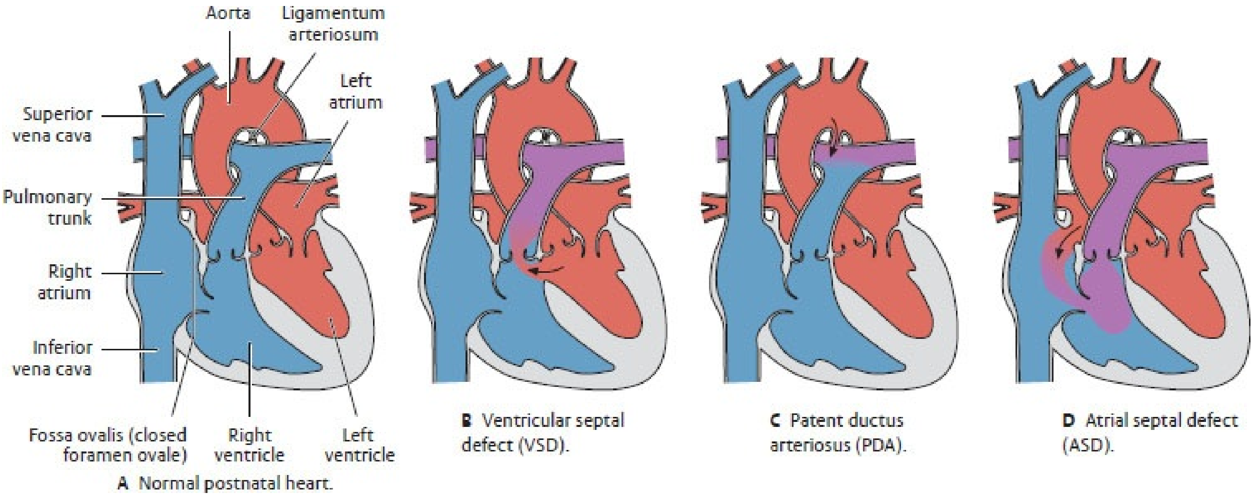
PATENT DUCTUS ARTERIOSUS

The opening of the pulmonary circulation at birth causes the duc-tus arteriosus to constrict, probably in response to an increase in local oxygen tension. If the ductus remains open, as a patent duc-tus arteriosus (PDA), deoxygenated blood continues to enter the descending aorta (**Fig. 7.23C**). There may be no symptoms if the defect is small, but larger defects may cause failure to thrive, dys-pnea (shortness of breath), fatigue, tachycardia (increased heart rate), and cyanosis. Because prostaglandins maintain patency of the ductus during fetal life, premature infants whose ductus does not constrict spontaneously at birth may be treated with prosta-glandin inhibitors.

BOX 7.13: DEVELOPMENTAL CORRELATION

ATRIAL SEPTAL DEFECT

Atrial septal defects (ASDs) (**Fig. 7.23D**) are among the most common congenital cardiac anomalies and are particularly associ-ated with Down syndrome. Most ASDs result from a failure of the oval foramen to close at birth, but they may also result from incomplete development of the septal components. ASDs result in left-to-right shunting and an increase in blood volume through the pulmonary circulation. Small ASDs are often asymptomatic, but larger ASDs will cause hypertrophy of the right atrium, right ventricle, and pulmonary arteries due to the fluid overload.



Aorta
Ligamentum arteriosum
Left atrium
Superior vena cava
Pulmonary trunk
Right atrium
Inferior vena cava
Fossa ovalis (closed foramen ovale)
Right ventricle
Left ventricle

A Normal postnatal heart.

B Ventricular septal defect (VSD).

C Patent ductus arteriosus (PDA).

D Atrial septal defect (ASD).

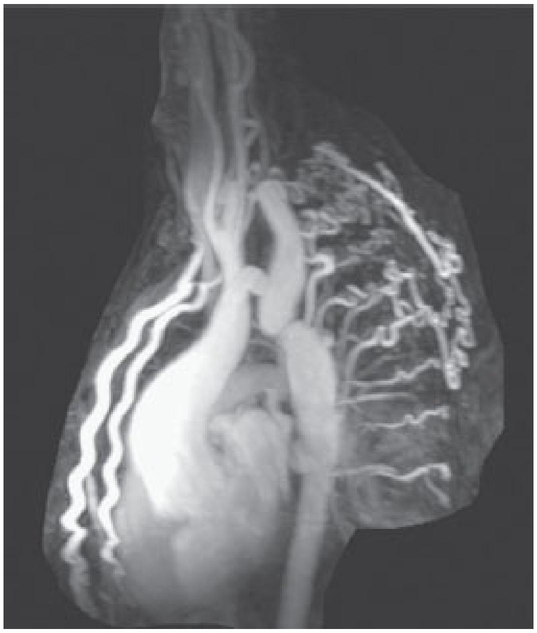
Fig. 7.23 Congenital heart defects.

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 7.14: DEVELOPMENTAL CORRELATION

COARCTATION OF THE AORTA

Coarctation, or stenosis, of the aorta usually occurs in proximity to the ligamentum arteriosum, where it limits (or obstructs) the normal blood flow from the aortic arch through the descending aorta. When the narrowing is distal to the ligamentum (postductal stenosis), an effective collateral circulation links the proximal and distal aortic segments via the internal thoracic arteries and their intercostal branches. The intercostal arteries may become large and tortuous enough to form notches along the lower margins of the ribs.



MRI of coarctation in a young child

Note the large internal thoracic arteries and tortuous intercostal arteries that provide collateral pathways between the thoracic and abdominal parts of the aorta. (From Gunderman R. Essential Radiology, 3rd ed. New York: Thieme; 2014)

7.7 Superior and Posterior Mediastina

Many of the large arteries and veins of the thorax—superior vena cava (SVC), inferior vena cava (IVC), aorta, common carotid and subclavian arteries—pass through the superior and posterior mediastinum en route to the neck or the abdomen or both. They are accompanied by the vagus, phrenic, and cardiac nerves. These structures are listed in **Table 7.1** and described in detail in Section 5.2. Only viscera of the superior and posterior mediastina will be discussed in this section.

Esophagus

The esophagus, the thoracic segment of the gastrointestinal tract, is a narrow, but highly distensible, muscular tube. It connects the pharynx in the neck to the stomach in the abdomen **(Fig. 7.24)**.

— The esophagus descends anterior to the thoracic vertebral bodies in the posterior mediastinum. Superiorly, it lies posterior to the trachea; inferiorly, it lies posterior to the left atrium of the heart.

— In the upper thorax, the esophagus descends on the right side of the aorta.

Before passing through the esophageal aperture of the diaphragm, the esophagus passes first anterior to, and then to the left of, the aorta.

- The upper esophagus is composed mostly of striated muscle arranged in inner circular and outer longitudinal layers. Striated muscle is gradually replaced by smooth muscle fibers inferiorly.
- Three constrictions narrow the lumen of the esophagus **(Fig. 7.25)**:
    1. The **upper esophageal sphincter,** created by the crico pharyngeus muscle (part of the inferior constrictor muscle of the pharynx), which surrounds the upper esophageal opening in the neck
    2. The **middle esophageal constriction,** created by the aortic arch and left main bronchus
    3. The **lower esophageal constriction,** or **cardiac sphinc-ter,** created by circular muscles of the distal esophagus, folds in the mucosa formed by a submucosal venous plexus, and the muscular esophageal aperture of the diaphragm
- The blood supply to the upper, middle, and lower esophagus arises from vessels in the neck (inferior thyroid), thorax (esophageal branches of the descending aorta), and abdomen (left gastric and left inferior phrenic), respectively.
- The veins of upper and middle esophageal segments drain into the azygos system. Veins of the lower esophageal seg-ment drain inferiorly along inferior phrenic veins into the hepatic portal system (the venous drainage for organs of the abdominal gastrointestinal tract). When portal venous flow is obstructed in the liver (such as from cirrhosis), blood can be diverted through the esophageal veins to the azygos system and superior vena cava **(Fig. 7.26)**.
- The **esophageal plexus,** formed by the right and left vagus nerves with contributions from thoracic splanchnic nerves, innervates the esophagus.

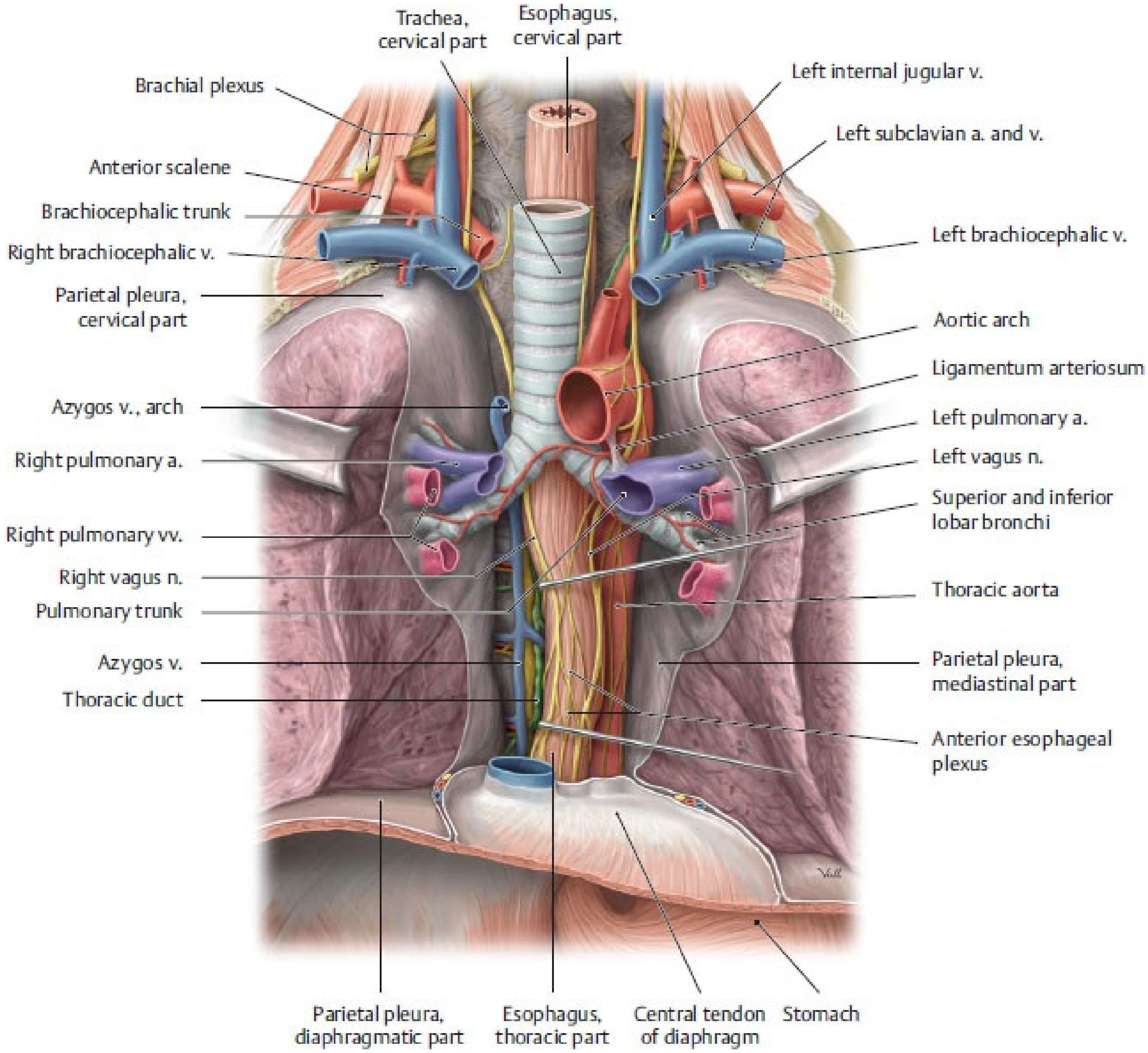
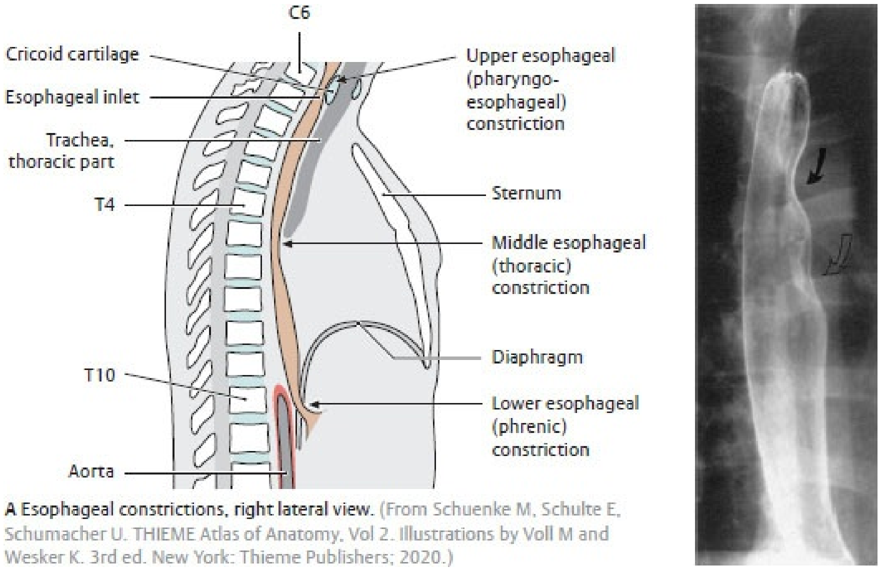

Trachea, cervical part
Esophagus, cervical part
Brachial plexus
Left internal jugular v.
Left subclavian a. and v.
Anterior scalene
Brachiocephalic trunk
Right brachiocephalic v.
Left brachiocephalic v.
Parietal pleura, cervical part
Aortic arch
Ligamentum arteriosum
Azygos v., arch
Left pulmonary a.
Right pulmonary a.
Left vagus n.
Superior and inferior lobar bronchi
Right pulmonary vv.
Right vagus n.
Thoracic aorta
Pulmonary trunk
Azygos v.
Parietal pleura, mediastinal part
Thoracic duct
Anterior esophageal plexus
Parietal pleura, diaphragmatic part
Esophagus, thoracic part
Central tendon of diaphragm
Stomach

Fig. 7.24 Esophagus in situ

Anterior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme


C6
Cricoid cartilage
Esophageal inlet
Trachea, thoracic part
T4
T10
Aorta
Upper esophageal (pharyngo-esophageal) constriction
Sternum
Middle esophageal (thoracic) constriction
Diaphragm
Lower esophageal (phrenic) constriction

A Esophageal constrictions, right lateral view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

B A double-contrast esophagogram demonstrates normal impressions on the esophagus by the aortic arch (solid arrow) and the left main-stem bronchus (open arrow). (From Gunderman R. Essential Radiology, 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2014.)

Fig. 7.25 Esophagus: location and constrictions

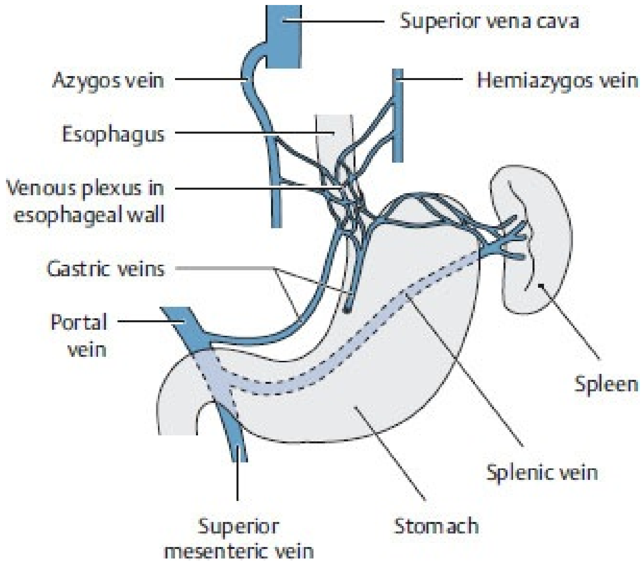

Superior vena cava
Azygos vein
Hemiazygos vein
Esophagus
Venous plexus in esophageal wall
Gastric veins
Portal vein
Spleen
Splenic vein
Superior mesenteric vein
Stomach

Fig. 7.26 Esophageal venous collaterals

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 7.15: CLINICAL CORRELATION

ACHALASIA

Achalasia is a deficiency of inhibitory neurons in the lower part of the esophagus. These neurons are responsible for overriding the normal resting tonic contraction of the smooth muscle cells in the lower esophageal sphincter. Their deficiency results in fail-ure of the sphincter to relax during swallowing. As food accumu-lates above the sphincter, there is an increased risk of aspiration pneumonia.

Trachea and Bronchi

The trachea, located in the superior mediastinum, is the proximal part of the **tracheobronchial tree,** a passageway for air between the lungs and the external environment. The distal part of this passageway, the **bronchial tree,** extends into the lungs and is dis-cussed with the pulmonary cavities in Chapter 8.

— As the trachea descends through the superior mediastinum, slightly to the right of the midline, it lies anterior to the esophagus and posterior to the great vessels.

— C-shaped cartilaginous rings form the skeleton of the trachea and prevent collapse of the lumen. A muscular membrane connects the ends of the rings posteriorly **(Fig. 7.27)**.

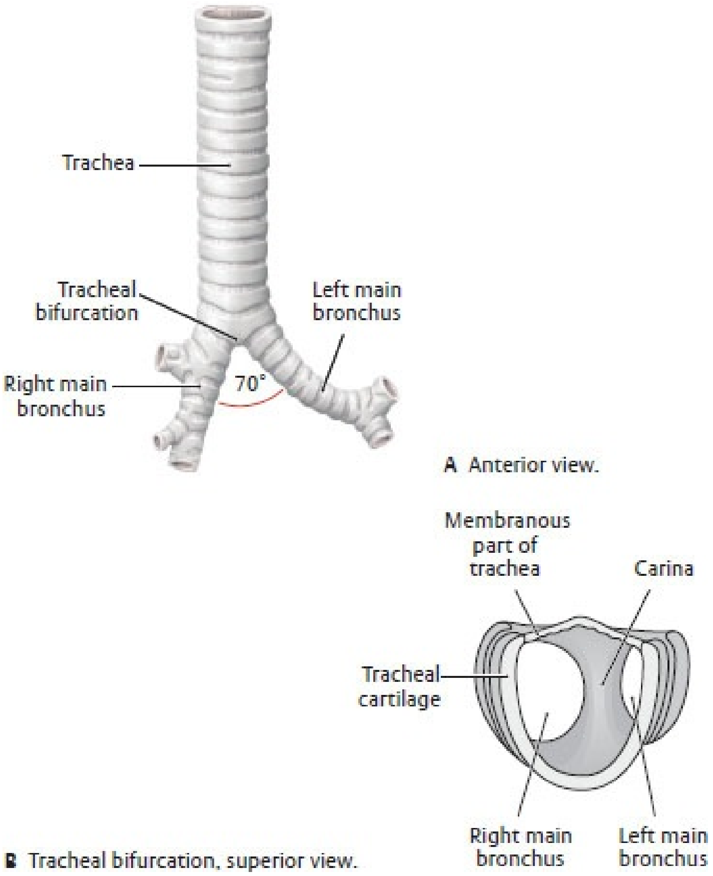

Trachea
Tracheal bifurcation
Left main bronchus
Right main bronchus
70°
A Anterior view.
Membranous part of trachea
Carina
Tracheal cartilage
Right main bronchus
Left main bronchus
B Tracheal bifurcation, superior view.

Fig. 7.27 Trachea

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers;

2020.)

- The **carina,** a wedge-shaped cartilage, marks the bifurcation of the trachea into a **right** and **left bronchus** at the T4-T5 vertebral level.
- Of the two main bronchi, the right is shorter, wider, and more vertical than the left, and therefore is more prone to obstruc-tion by foreign objects.
- Descending branches of the inferior thyroid artery (a branch of the thyrocervical trunk) in the neck as well as bronchial arteries that arise from the thoracic aorta, supply the trachea. Venous blood drains to the inferior thyroid veins.
- Thoracic splanchnic nerves and parasympathetic fibers from the vagus (cranial nerve X) nerve innervate the trachea via the pulmonary plexus.

8 Pulmonary Cavities

The right and left pulmonary cavities, which flank the mediasti-num laterally and anteriorly, extend superiorly above the costal cartilages of the first rib and inferiorly to the thoracic diaphragm. Each pulmonary cavity contains a lung, bronchial tree with asso-ciated neurovasculature, and a pleural sac.

8.1 The Pleura and Pleural Cavity

The **pleura** is a fibroserous membrane that surrounds each lung and lines the pulmonary cavities **(Fig. 8.1)**.

— The pleura is composed of two layers:
  - The **parietal pleura,** which is a continuous layer that lines the inner wall of the thoracic cavity, the superior surface of the diaphragm, and the mediastinum. Its parts are named according to location: cervical, costal, diaphrag-matic, and mediastinal **(Fig. 8.2)**.
  - The **visceral pleura,** which covers the surface of the lung and extends into its fissures.

— The visceral and parietal layers are continuous with one another at the hilum of the lung. Together they form the inner and outer walls of a closed pleural sac that contains a **pleural cavity (Fig. 8.3)**.

— The **pulmonary ligament** is a double-layered fold of visceral and parietal pleura that extends vertically from the hilum to the diaphragm along the mediastinal border of each lung (see **Fig. 8.5B,D**).

— The blood supply and innervation of the pleura are derived from nerves and vessels that supply adjacent structures.
  - Visceral pleura shares the neurovasculature of the lungs and bronchi.
  - Parietal pleura shares the neurovasculature of the thoracic wall, pericardium, and diaphragm.

BOX 8.1: CLINICAL CORRELATION

PLEURITIS

Inflammation of the pleura, or pleuritis, creates friction between the visceral and parietal layers that produces a sharp, stabbing pain as the layers glide over one another during respiration. The inflam-mation may also produce adhesions between the two layers.

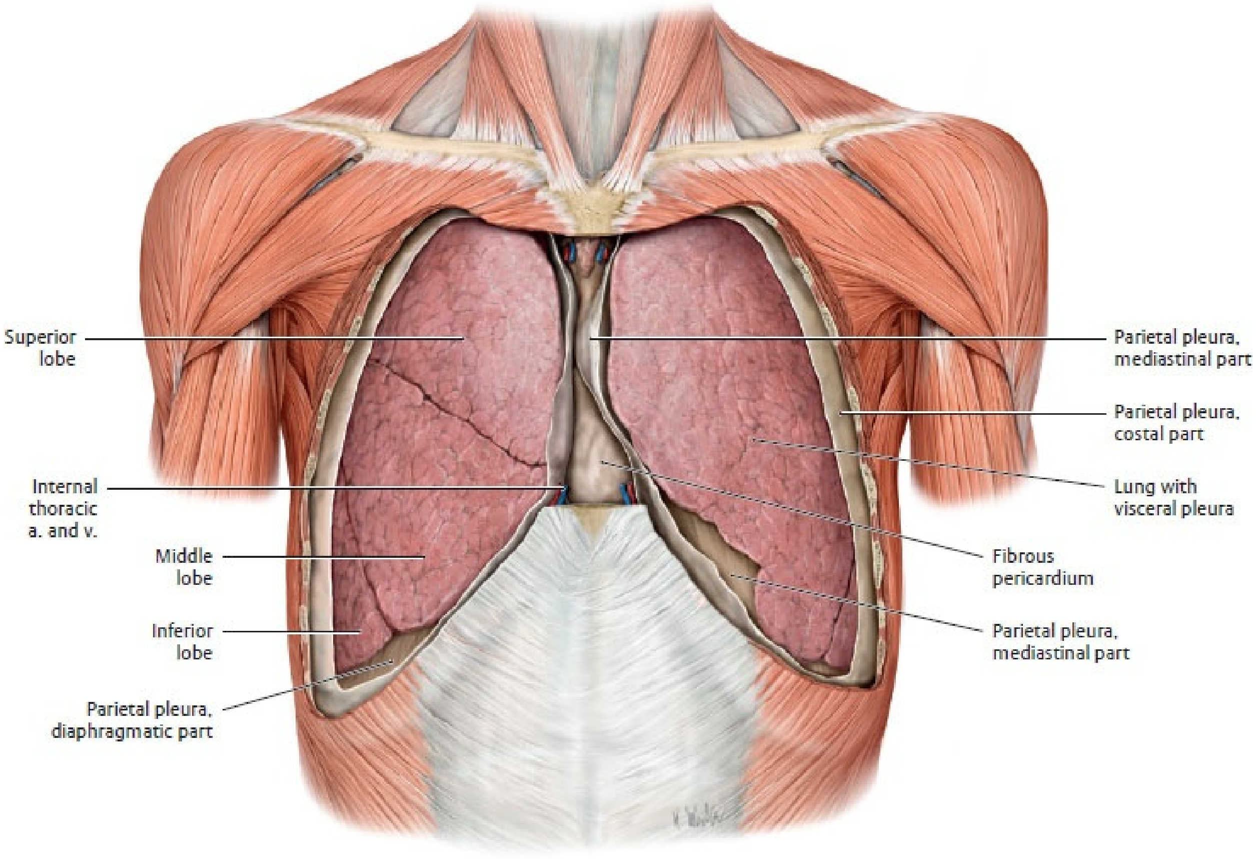

Superior lobe
Internal thoracic a. and v.
Middle lobe
Inferior lobe
Parietal pleura, diaphragmatic part
Parietal pleura, mediastinal part
Parietal pleura, costal part
Lung with visceral pleura
Fibrous pericardium
Parietal pleura, mediastinal part

Fig. 8.1 Lungs in situ

Anterior view. *Removed*: Anterior thoracic wall and costal part of the parietal pleura. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

The Pleural Cavity

The **pleural cavity,** the cavity within the pleural sac, is the potential space between the visceral and parietal layers of pleura (**Fig. 8.3**).

— The pleural cavity contains a thin layer of serous fluid, which lubricates the adjacent pleural surfaces, facilitates the movement of the lung, and maintains surface tension that is crucial to respiration.

— On most surfaces, the two pleural layers approximate one another, but the lung and its visceral pleura are somewhat smaller than the outer wall of the pleural cavity and its lining of parietal pleura. Two recesses that form as a result of this discrepancy accommodate the expansion of the lungs during inspiration **(Fig. 8.4)**:

- The **costodiaphragmatic recess** forms where the diaphragmatic pleura reflects from the perimeter of the diaphragm to meet the costal pleura on the thoracic wall.
- The **costomediastinal recess** forms between the pericar-dial sac and the sternum, where the mediastinal pleura reflects to meet the costal pleura.

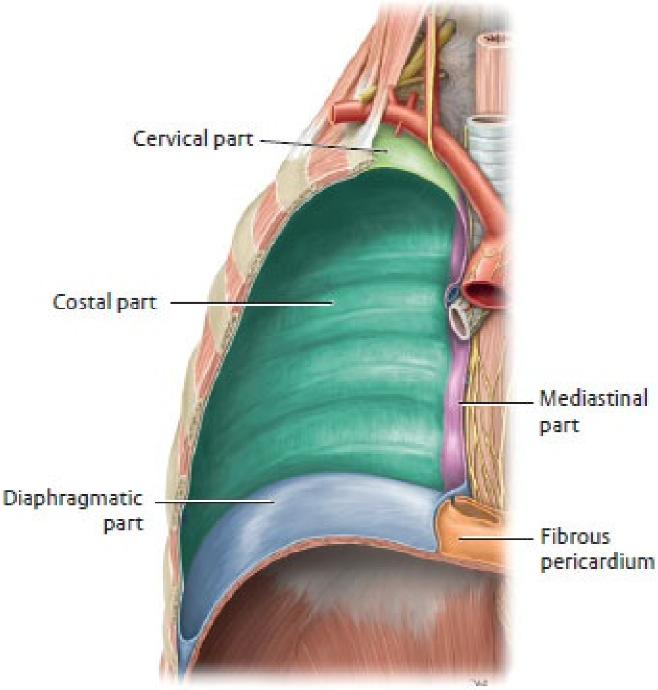

Cervical part
Costal part
Mediastinal part
Diaphragmatic part
Fibrous pericardium

Fig. 8.2 Parts of the parietal pleura

Anterior view. *Opened:* Right pleural cavity. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

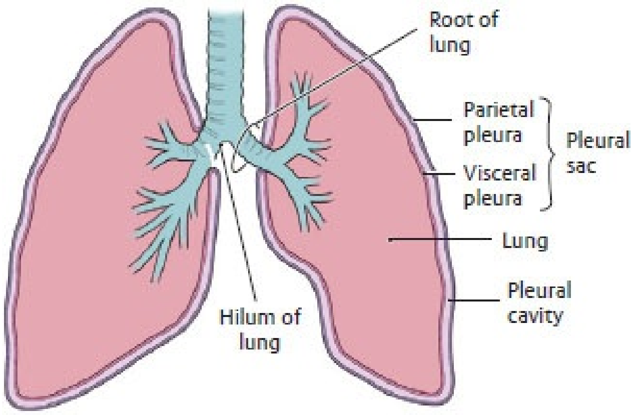

Root of lung
Parietal pleura
Visceral pleura
Pleural sac
Lung
Pleural cavity
Hilum of lung

Fig. 8.3 Pleura and pleural cavity Schematic.

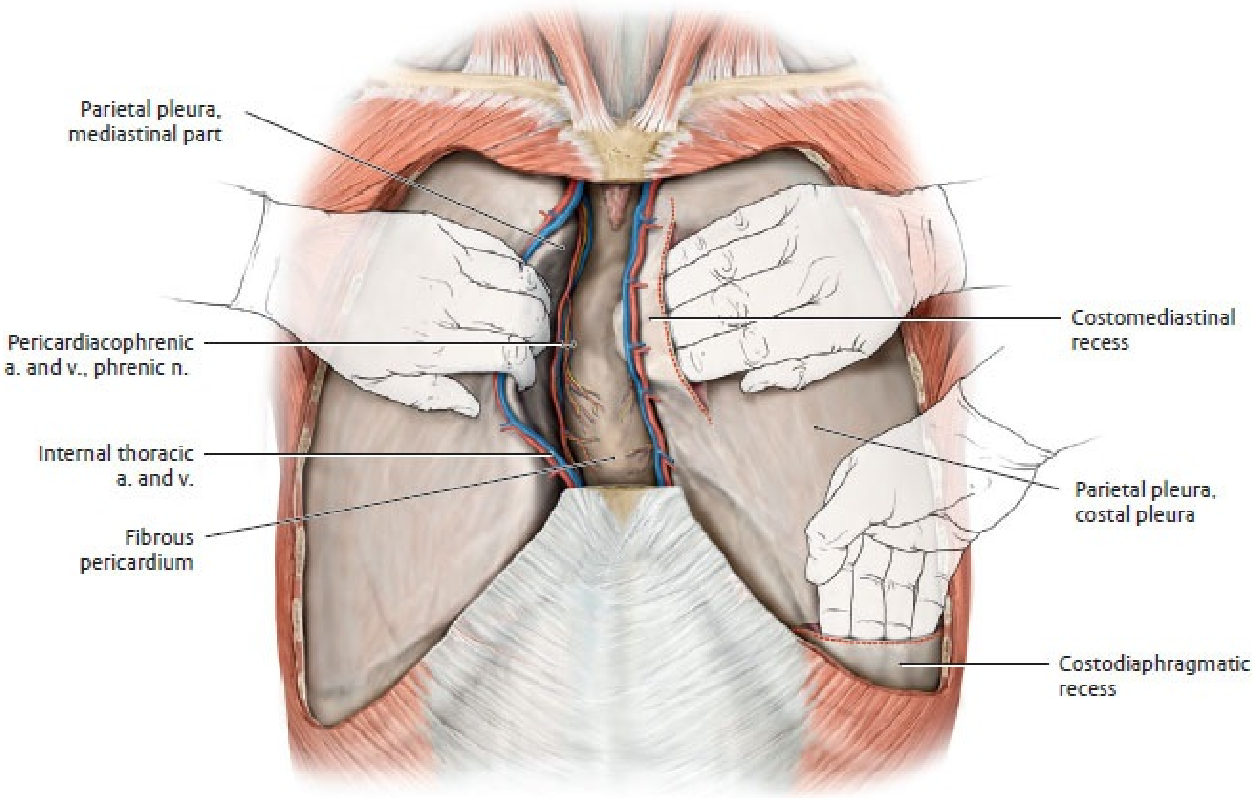

Parietal pleura, mediastinal part
Pericardiacophrenic a. and v., phrenic n.
Internal thoracic a. and v.
Fibrous pericardium
Costomediastinal recess
Parietal pleura, costal pleura
Costodiaphragmatic recess

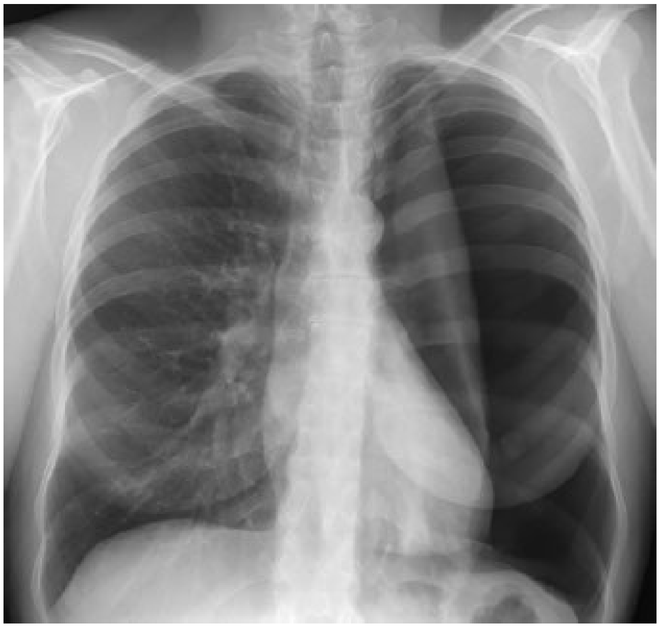
Fig. 8.4 Costomediastinal and costodiaphragmatic recesses

On the left side of the thorax, the examiner’s fingertips are placed in the costomediastinal and costodiaphragmatic recesses. These recesses are formed by the acute reflection of the costal part of the parietal pleura onto the fibrous pericardium (costomediastinal) or diaphragm (costodiaphragmatic). (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 8.2: CLINICAL CORRELATION

PNEUMOTHORAX

Pneumothorax is a condition in which air enters the pleural space. It may result from a tear in the chest wall and parietal pleura (such as from a stab wound) or a tear of the visceral pleura (such as from a rupture of a pulmonary lesion). Air in the pleural space decreases the negative pressure that normally keeps the lungs inflated and leads to a partial or complete lung collapse.



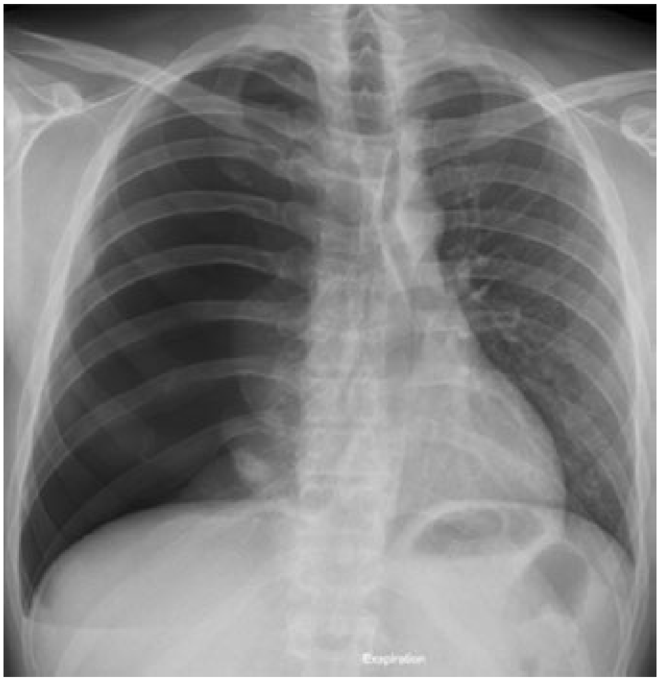
Frontal chest radiograph

Radiograph of a 44-year-old woman demonstrates an absence of pulmonary markings in the lateral half of the left hemithorax and a visceral pleural line that clearly delineates the collapsed left lung from a large left pneumothorax. (From Gunderman R. Essential Radiology, 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2014.)

BOX 8.3: CLINICAL CORRELATION

TENSION PNEUMOTHORAX

Tension pneumothorax is a life-threatening condition in which air accumulates in the pleural space and becomes trapped because the injured tissue acts as a one-way valve. This causes complete collapse of the lung on the affected side and a shifting of the heart to the opposite side, thus compromising venous return and car-diac output. This mediastinal shift also compresses the opposite lung and impairs its ventilatory capacity.



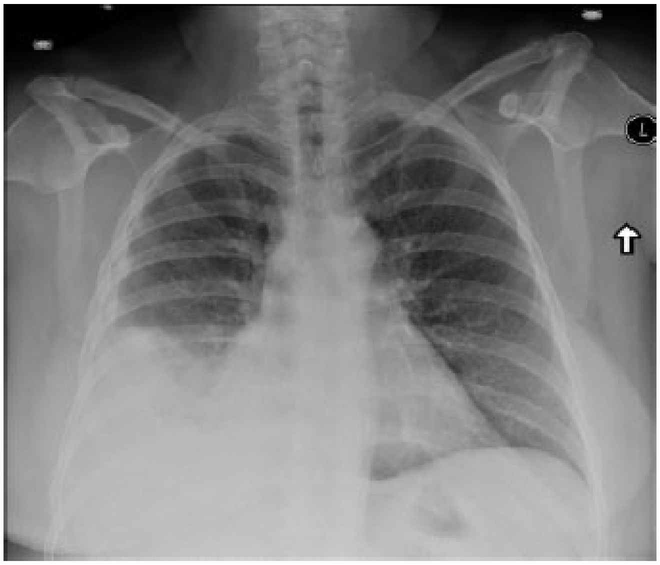
Tension pneumothorax on the right side

The chest radiograph shows almost complete atelectasis of the right lung. The mediastinum is shifted to the left. The intercostal spaces are widened on the right side. (From Krombach GA, Mahnken AH. Body Imaging: Thorax and Abdomen. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2015.)

BOX 8.4: CLINICAL CORRELATION

PLEURAL EFFUSION

Pleural effusion is a condition in which there is excess fluid in the pleural space. Effusions are designated by their protein concentration into transudates (low protein) and exudates (high protein). Transudates are usually caused by congestive heart failure or fluid overload (causing increased venous pressure). Less commonly they are caused by liver failure or renal disease. Exudates may leak from the pleural capillaries in inflammatory states, pneumonia, tuberculosis (TB), and lung cancer. Symptoms include dyspnea (shortness of breath), cough, and dull chest pain. Pleural effusions are treated by draining the fluid through a procedure known as thoracentesis (see Box 6.2 Insertion of a Chest Tube).



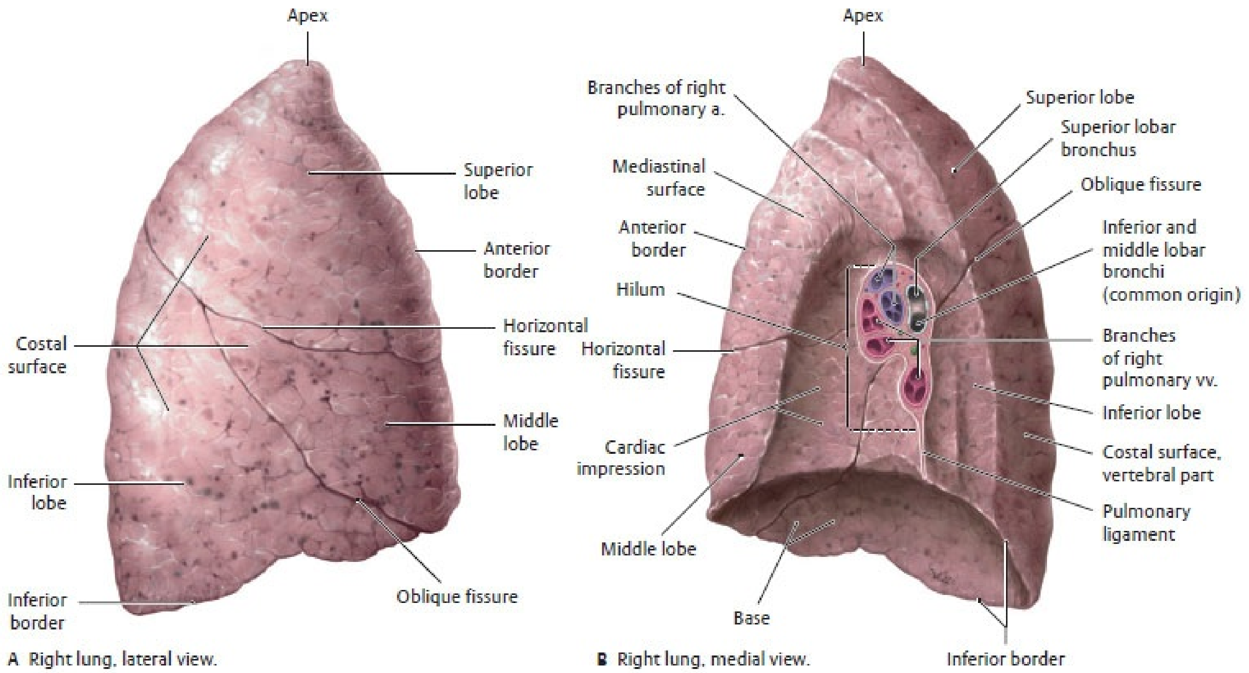
Pleural effusion

This 58-year-old woman′s frontal chest radiograph demonstrates a large right pleural effusion. (From Gunderman R. Essential Radiology, 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2014.)

8.2 The Lungs

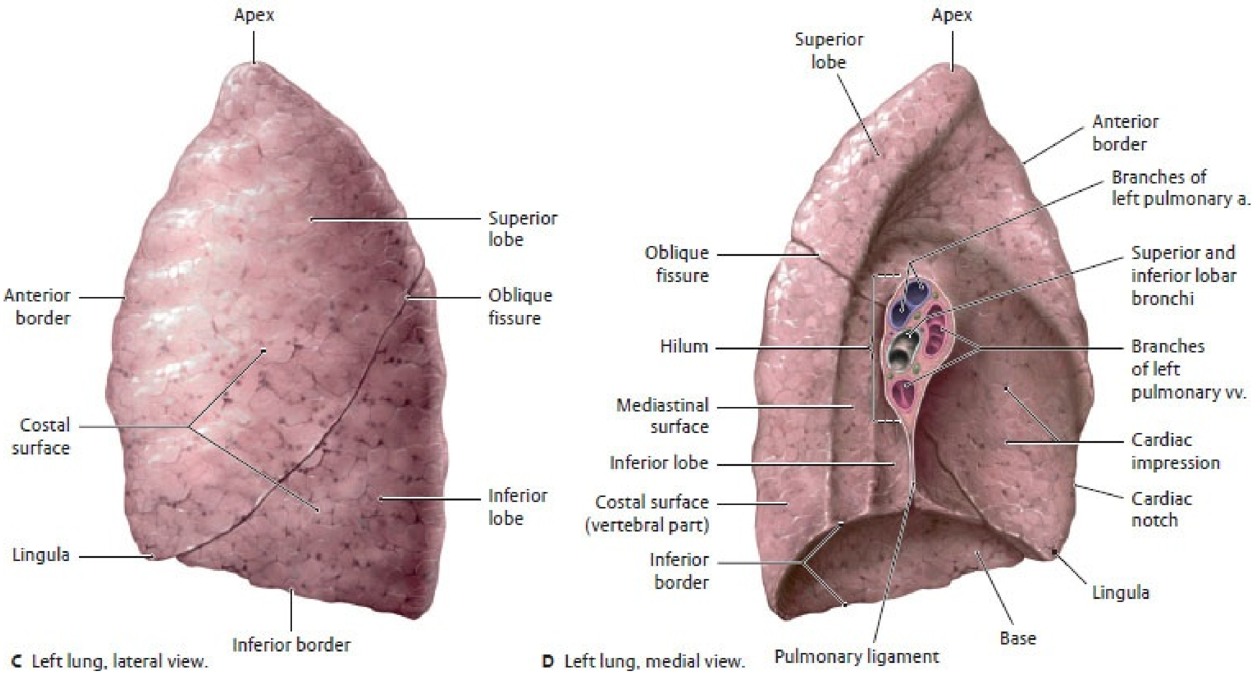
General Features (Fig. 8.5; Table 8.1)

- Each lung has costal, mediastinal, and diaphragmatic surfaces.
- The **apex** of each lung projects into the neck above the first costal cartilage; the **base** of each lung rests on the diaphragm.
- The **root** of the lung, which connects the lung to the mediastinum, contains the pulmonary vessels, nerves, and bronchi.
- The root enters the lung at the **hilum,** an indentation on the mediastinal surface **(**Fig. 8.6**;** see Fig. 8.3**)**.
- Fissures, lined by visceral pleura, divide each lung into lobes: three lobes on the right and two lobes on the left.
- Thin connective tissue septa (intersegmental septa) that are continuous with the visceral pleura subdivide lobes of the lungs into discrete pyramidal-shaped units called **bronchopulmonary segments (**Fig. 8.7**).**


Apex
Superior lobe
Anterior border
Horizontal fissure
Costal surface
Middle lobe
Inferior lobe
Inferior border
Oblique fissure
Apex
Branches of right pulmonary a.
Superior lobe
Superior lobar bronchus
Mediastinal surface
Oblique fissure
Anterior border
Inferior and middle lobar bronchi (common origin)
Hilum
Branches of right pulmonary vv.
Horizontal fissure
Inferior lobe
Cardiac impression
Costal surface, vertebral part
Pulmonary ligament
Middle lobe
Base
Inferior border

A Right lung, lateral view.

B Right lung, medial view.

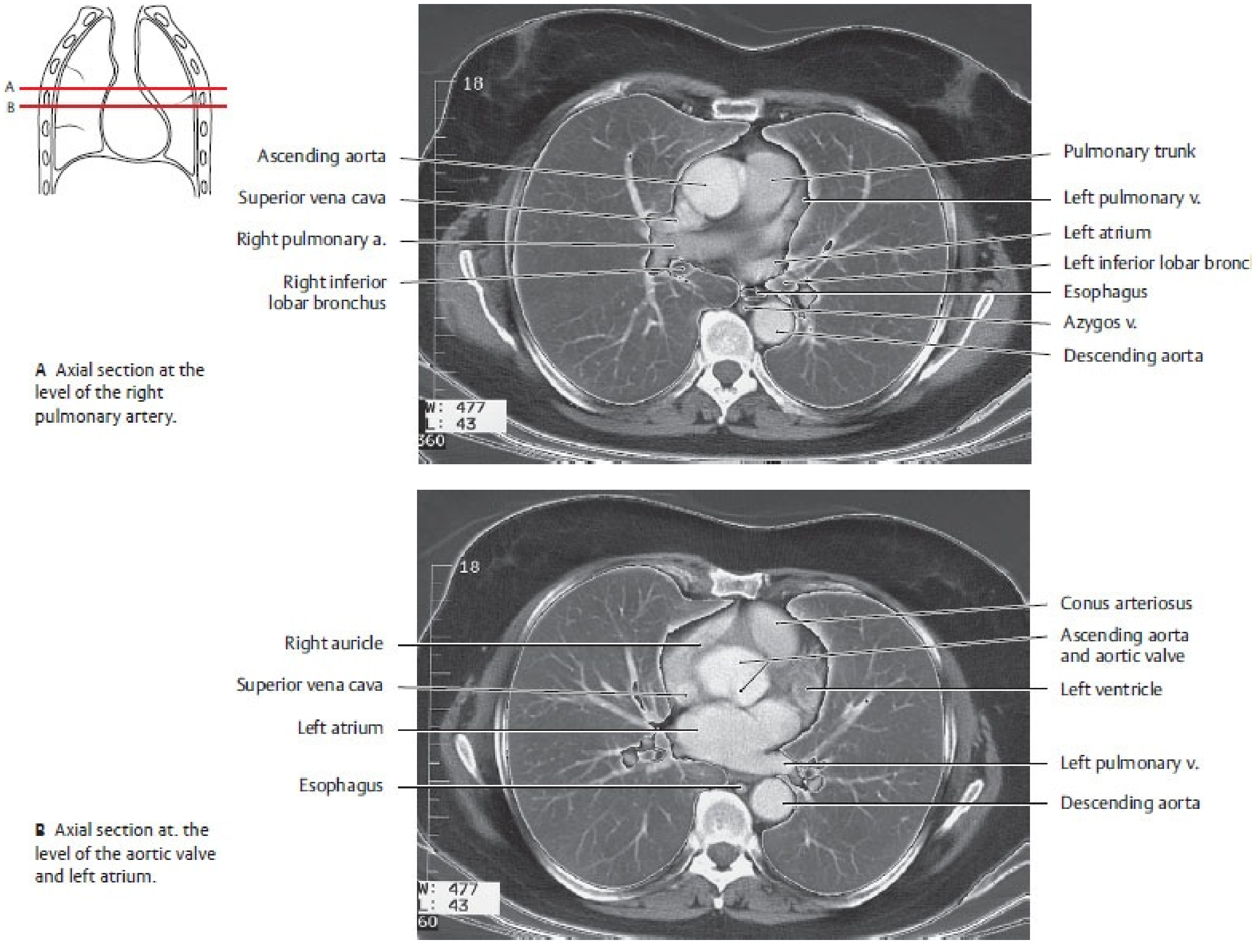

Apex
Superior lobe
Anterior border
Oblique fissure
Costal surface
Inferior lobe
Lingula
Inferior border
Superior lobe
Apex
Anterior border
Branches of left pulmonary a.
Oblique fissure
Superior and inferior lobar bronchi
Hilum
Branches of left pulmonary vv.
Mediastinal surface
Cardiac impression
Inferior lobe
Costal surface (vertebral part)
Cardiac notch
Inferior border
Lingula
Base
Pulmonary ligament

C Left lung, lateral view.

D Left lung, medial view.

Fig. 8.5 Gross anatomy of the lungs

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


A
B
18
Ascending aorta
Superior vena cava
Right pulmonary a.
Right inferior lobar bronchus
Pulmonary trunk
Left pulmonary v.
Left atrium
Left inferior lobar bronc
Esophagus
Azygos v.
Descending aorta
W: 477
L: 43
360
18
Right auricle
Superior vena cava
Left atrium
Esophagus
Conus arteriosus
Ascending aorta and aortic valve
Left ventricle
Left pulmonary v.
Descending aorta
W: 477
L: 43
60

A Axial section at the level of the right pulmonary artery.

B Axial section at. the level of the aortic valve and left atrium.

Fig. 8.6 CT of the thorax at the level of the hila of the lungs

(From Moeller TB, Reif E. Pocket Atlas of Sectional Anatomy, Vol 2, 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2007.)

Table 8.1 Structure of the Lungs

	Right Lung	Left Lung
Lobes	Superior, middle, inferior	Superior, inferior
Fissures	Oblique, horizontal	Oblique
Bronchopulmonary Segments	10	8–10
Unique Features	Larger and heavier than the left, but shorter and	Superior lobe characterized by the

	wider due to higher right hemidiaphragm	lingula and a deep cardiac notch

- Each bronchopulmonary segment is an anatomically and functionally independent respiratory unit. This independence allows the surgical resection of individual segments.
- There are 10 bronchopulmonary segments in the right lung and 8 to 10 segments in the left lung.

Right Lung

— Because the dome of the diaphragm is higher on the right side, the right lung is shorter and wider than the left lung.

— Horizontal and oblique fissures divide the right lung into superior, middle, and inferior lobes.

— The root of the lung passes under the arch of the aorta, posterior to the right atrium, and under the arch of the azygos vein (see **Fig. 7.2A**).

— The right bronchus and its branches are the most posterior structures within the root of the lung. The pulmonary artery passes anterior to the bronchus, and the pulmonary veins lie anterior and inferior to the artery.

Left Lung

— An oblique fissure divides the left lung into superior and inferior lobes.

— A deep indentation along the anterior border of the superior lobe, called the **cardiac notch,** accommodates the leftward projection of the apex of the heart.

— The **lingula,** a thin tongue of lung tissue from the superior lobe, forms the inferior border of the cardiac notch and moves into and out of the costomediastinal recess during respiration.

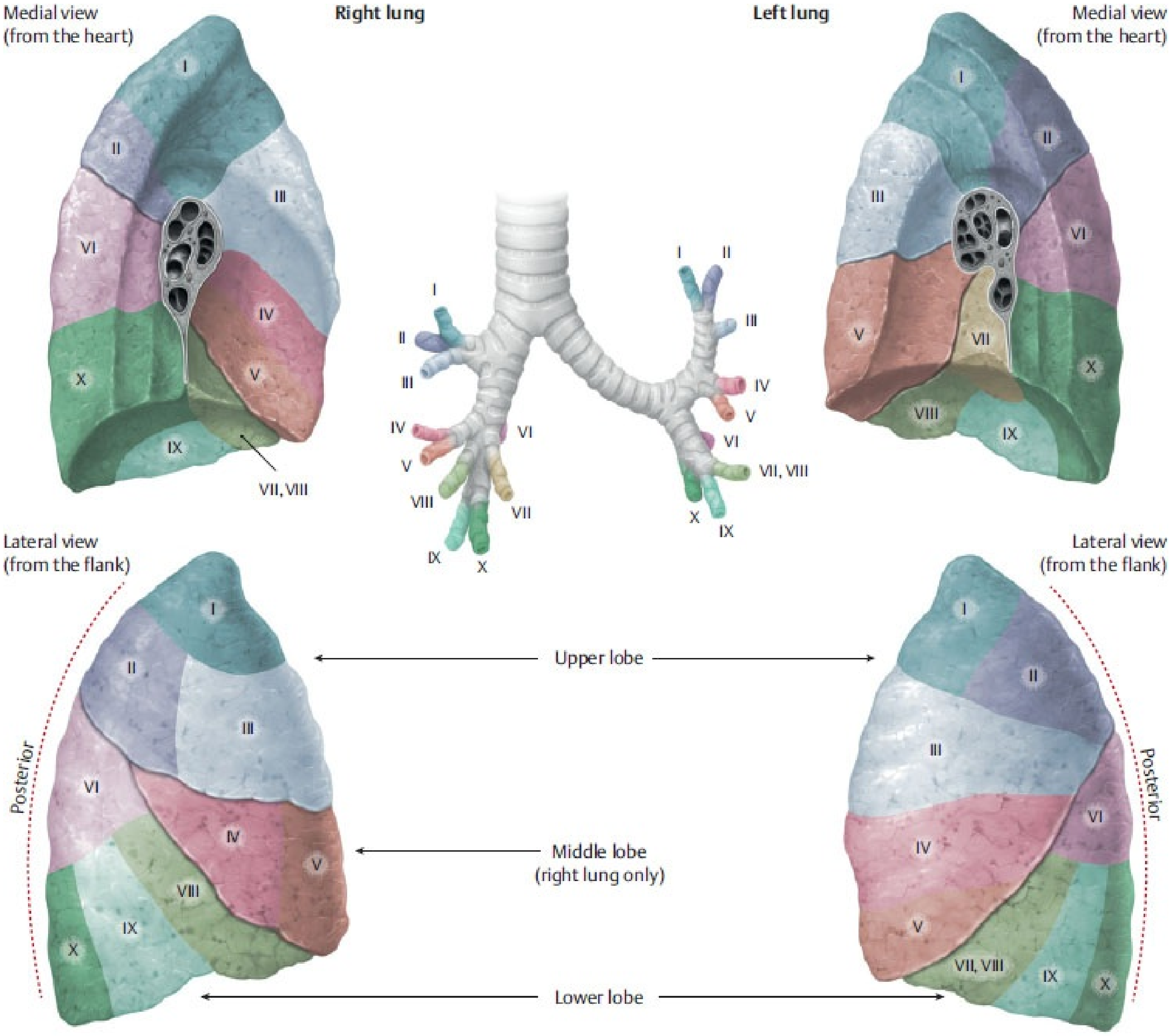

Medial view (from the heart)
Right lung
Left lung
Medial view (from the heart)
I
II
III
VI
IV
V
X
IX
VII, VIII
I
II
III
IV
V
VI
VII
VIII
IX
X
I
II
III
IV
V
VI
VII, VIII
X
IX
I
II
III
VI
V
VII
X
VIII
IX
Lateral view (from the flank)
Lateral view (from the flank)
Posterior
I
II
III
VI
IV
V
VIII
IX
X
Upper lobe
Middle lobe (right lung only)
Lower lobe
Posterior
I
II
III
VI
IV
V
VII, VIII
IX
X

Fig. 8.7 Segmental bronchi and bronchopulmonary segments

(From Krombach GA, Mahnken AH. Body Imaging: Thorax and Abdomen. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2015.)

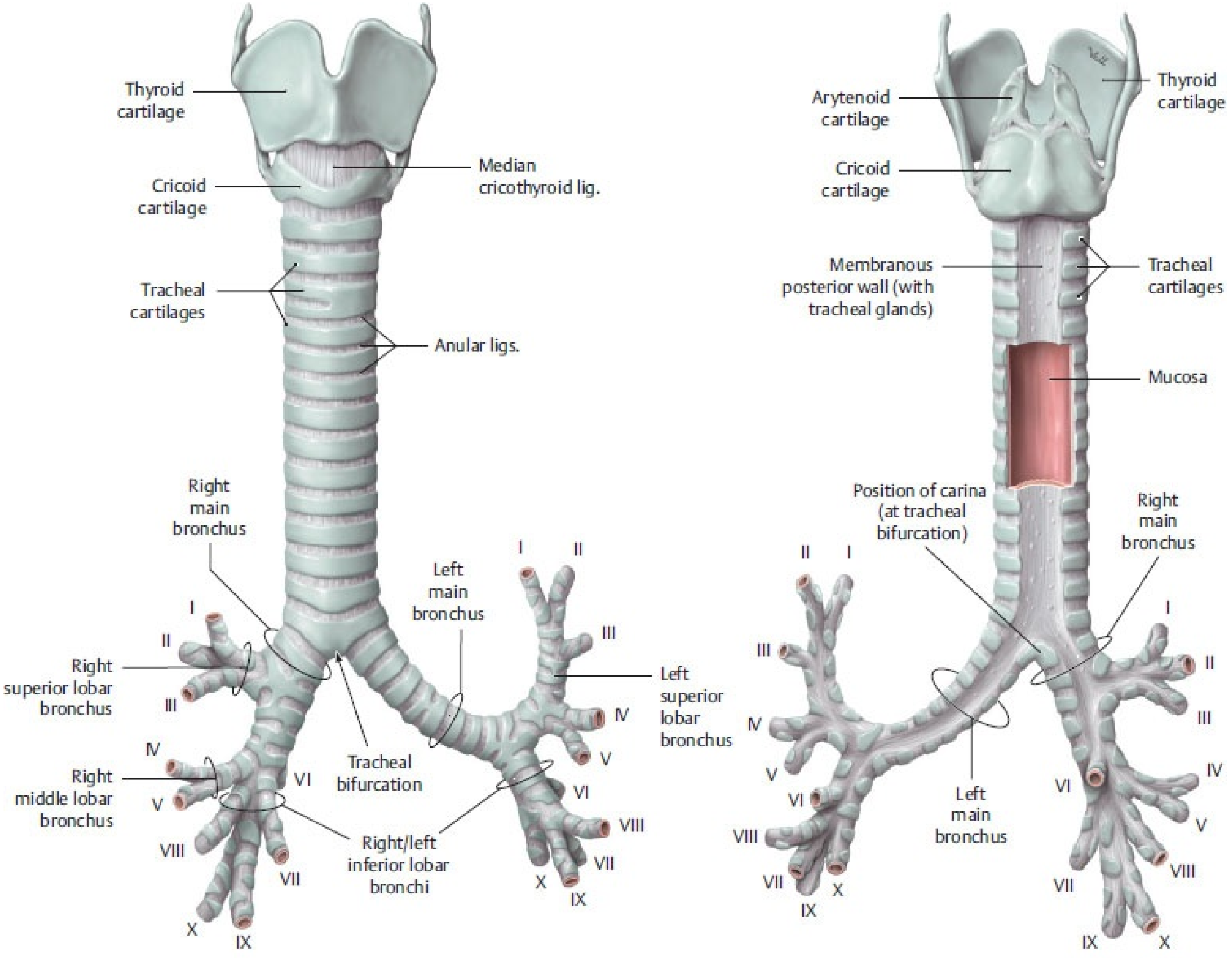
— The aortic arch crosses over the left bronchus, and the descend-ing aorta passes behind the root of the lung (see **Fig. 7.2B**).

— The left pulmonary artery arches over the left bronchus to become the most superior structure in the root of the lung. Pulmonary veins pass anterior and inferior to the bronchus.

8.3 The Tracheobronchial Tree

The tracheobronchial tree consists of the trachea and the bronchi in the mediastinum, and the bronchial tree (generations of branches formed by successive bifurcations) within the lungs. (The trachea is discussed in Section 7.7.) The tracheobronchial tree has con-ducting and respiratory components.

— The trachea and its larger proximal branches form the conducting component, a passageway for air exchange between the lung and the external environment (**Figs. 8.8** and **8.9A)**. All except the most distal of these branches have cartilaginous rings or plates in their walls. The branches include
  - the **right** and **left main** (primary) **bronchi,** formed by the bifurcation of the trachea in the superior mediastinum. One main bronchus enters the hilum of each lung.
  - the **lobar** (secondary) **bronchi,** which branch from the main bronchi. One lobar bronchus enters each lobe of the respective lung (three on the right and two on the left).


Thyroid cartilage
Median cricothyroid lig.
Cricoid cartilage
Tracheal cartilages
Anular ligs.
Right main bronchus
Left main bronchus
Right superior lobar bronchus
Left superior lobar bronchus
Right middle lobar bronchus
Tracheal bifurcation
Right/left inferior lobar bronchi
I
II
III
IV
V
VI
VII
VIII
IX
X
Arytenoid cartilage
Thyroid cartilage
Cricoid cartilage
Membranous posterior wall (with tracheal glands)
Tracheal cartilages
Mucosa
Position of carina (at tracheal bifurcation)
Right main bronchus
Left main bronchus

A Anterior view.

B Posterior view with opened posterior wall.

Fig. 8.8 Trachea

The numbers I to IX of the segmental bronchi correspond with bronchopulmonary segments shown in **Fig. 8.7.**

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- the **segmental** (tertiary) **bronchi,** which branch from the lobar bronchi. One segmental bronchus enters each bronchopulmonary segment and divides further into large, and then small, subsegmental bronchi.
- the **conducting bronchioles,** a network of airways without cartilage that are formed as the segmental bronchi subdivide and decrease in size.
- the **terminal bronchioles,** the last branches of the conducting bronchioles and the final part of the con ducting airway.

— The respiratory component (seen only histologically), made up of passages distal to the terminal bronchioles, is involved in air conduction as well as in gas exchange **(Fig. 8.9B)**.

  - The structures in this part of the bronchial tree include the **respiratory bronchioles, alveolar sacs,** and **alveoli.**
  - The single-celled walls of the alveoli are designed for efficient gas exchange.

BOX 8.5: CLINICAL CORRELATION

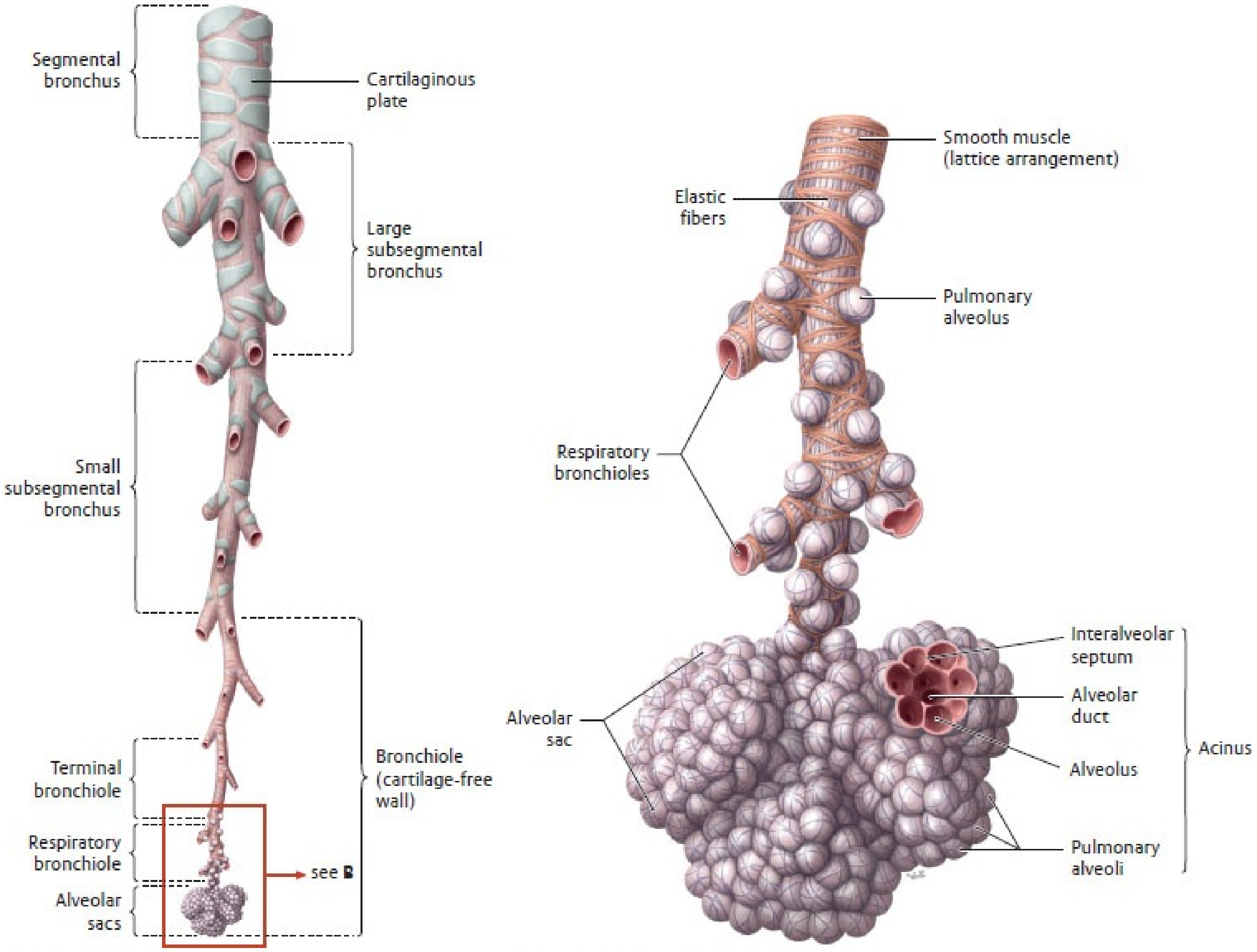
FOREIGN BODY ASPIRATION

Toddlers are at particularly high risk of potentially fatal aspiration of foreign bodies. In general, foreign bodies are more likely to become lodged in the right main bronchus than the left: the left bronchus diverges more sharply at the tracheal bifurcation to pass more horizontally over the heart, whereas the right bronchus is relatively straight and more in line with the trachea.

BOX 8.6: CLINICAL CORRELATION

ATELECTASIS

Atelectasis is the partial or complete collapse of alveoli within the lung and can result from mucus in the airways following surgery (most common), cystic fibrosis, asthma, or obstruction of the air-ways by a foreign object (e.g., a tumor or blood clot). When severe, it can lead to respiratory failure.


Segmental bronchus
Cartilaginous plate
Large subsegmental bronchus
Small subsegmental bronchus
Terminal bronchiole
Respiratory bronchiole
Alveolar sacs
Bronchiole (cartilage-free wall)
see B
Smooth muscle (lattice arrangement)
Elastic fibers
Pulmonary alveolus
Respiratory bronchioles
Alveolar sac
Interalveolar septum
Alveolar duct
Alveolus
Pulmonary alveoli
Acinus

A Divisions of the bronchial tree.

B Respiratory portion of the bronchial tree.

Fig. 8.9 Bronchial tree

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 8.7: CLINICAL CORRELATION

NEONATAL RESPIRATORY DISTRESS SYNDROME

Neonatal respiratory distress syndrome (neonatal RDS; also known as hyaline membrane disease), is present in 60% of infants born before 29 weeks due to a deficiency of surfactant. The lung's production of surfactant begins in week 24 but isn't completed until week 36. In premature infants, this deficiency leads to col-lapse of the alveoli (atelectasis). The use of synthetic surfactant and administration of continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) can help maintain airway alveolar patency in these infants.

BOX 8.8: CLINICAL CORRELATION

CHRONIC OBSTRUCTIVE PULMONARY DISEASE

Chronic obstructive bronchitis and emphysema, both caused by cig-arette smoking, contribute in varying degrees to chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD). Inflammation from chronic bronchitis leads to thickened bronchial tubes, excess mucus production, and a narrowed airway. Emphysema destroys alveolar walls, thereby reduc-ing the capacity for gas exchange, and, as small airways collapse during expiration, air is trapped in the lungs. This chronic hyperinfla-tion of the lungs and the increased work of expiration create a typical barrel chest appearance (increased anteroposterior diameter).

8.4 Mechanics of Respiration

Respiration, the exchange of oxygen and carbon dioxide, requires a continuous flow of air between the lungs and the external envi-ronment. It is accomplished through the rhythmic change in tho-racic volume and corresponding expansion (during **inspiration**) and contraction (during **expiration**) of the lungs **(Figs. 8.10, 8.11, 8.12)**.

— Inspiration requires an expansion of the pulmonary cavities and decrease in intrapleural pressure.

  - During quiet respiration, the diaphragm, the chief res-piratory muscle, contracts and flattens, increasing the vertical dimension of the cavity.
  - Forced inspiration engages other respiratory muscles (primarily the intercostals, scalenes, and posterior serratus) that elevate the ribs and sternum and expand the cavities horizontally.

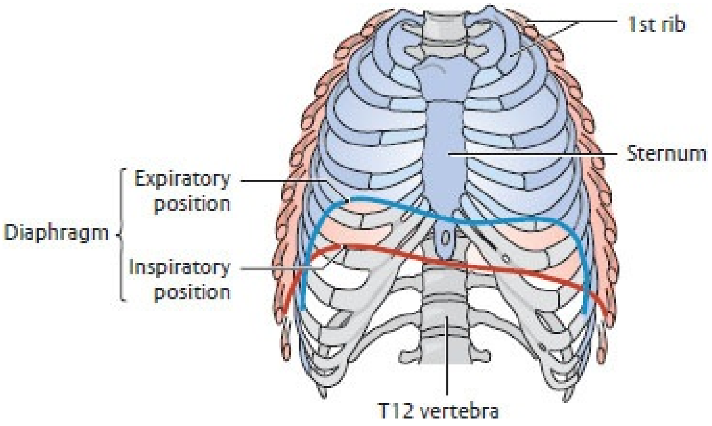


Fig. 8.10 Respiratory changes in thoracic volume

Inspiratory position *(red)*; expiratory position *(blue)*. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

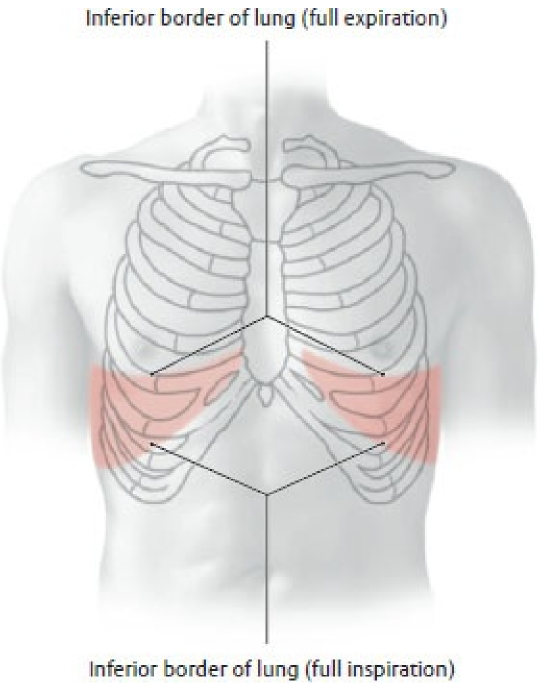

Inferior border of lung (full expiration)
Inferior border of lung (full inspiration)

Fig. 8.11 Respiratory changes in lung volume

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

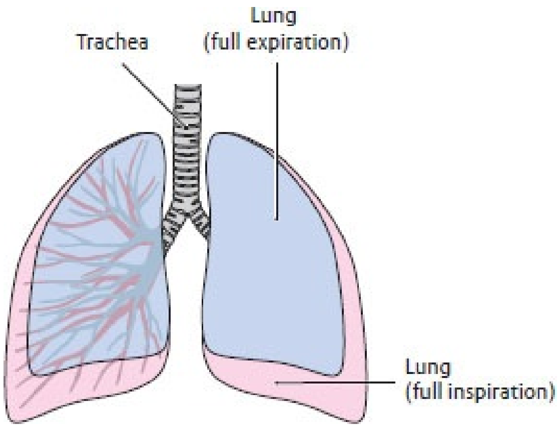

Trachea
Lung
(full expiration)
Lung
(full inspiration)

Fig. 8.12 Movements of the lung and bronchial tree

As the volume of the lung changes with the volume of the thoracic cavity, the entire bronchial tree moves within the lung. These structural move-ments are more pronounced in portions of the bronchial tree distant from the pulmonary hilum. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- As the cavities expand, the pleural sac is pulled outward, causing an increase in lung volume and a decrease in intrapleural pressure. When the pressure drops below atmospheric pressure (negative pressure), air is pulled into the respiratory passageways.

— Expiration requires a contraction of the pulmonary cavities and increase in intrapleural pressure.

- Quiet expiration is a passive process. With relaxation of the diaphragm, there is a decrease in thoracic volume and a corresponding contraction of the lungs. As the intrapleural pressure increases, air is expelled.
- Forced expiration requires the contraction of anterior abdominal and intercostal muscles to decrease thoracic volume.

8.5 Neurovasculature of the Lungs and Bronchial Tree

Arteries of the Lungs and Bronchial Tree

— The **pulmonary arteries,** branches of the pulmonary trunk, transport deoxygenated blood to the capillary network surrounding the respiratory alveoli (**Fig. 8.13**). Within the lungs, branches of the arteries follow the branches of the bronchial tree as they ramify within the lobes and bronchopulmonary segments.

— **Bronchial arteries,** branches of the thoracic aorta, supply the bronchial tree, the connective tissue of the lungs, and the visceral pleura. Typically one branch to the right lung and two to the left lung, these bronchial arteries travel along the posterior aspect of the main bronchi and eventually anastomose with distal branches of the pulmonary arteries.

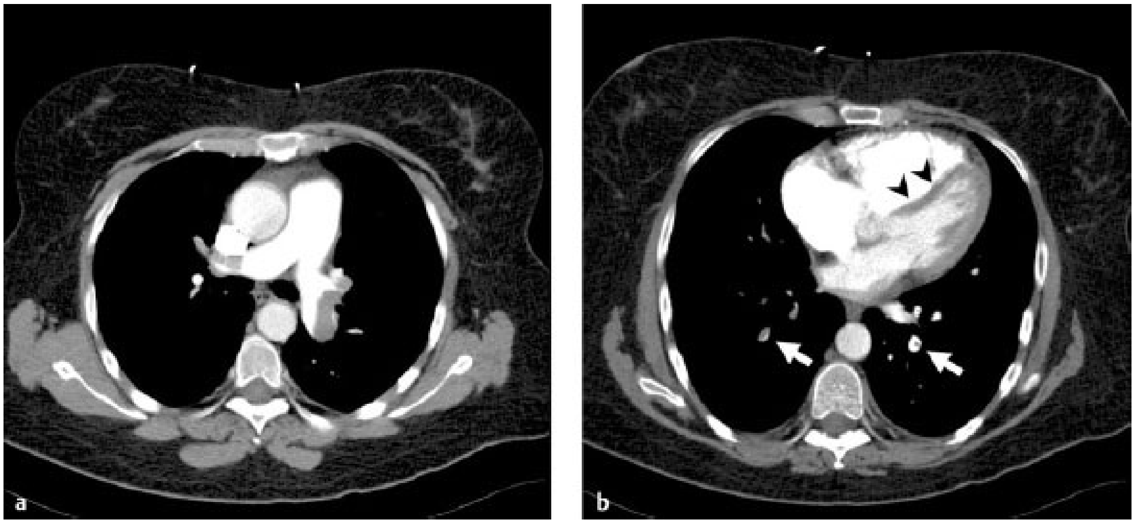
Veins of the Lungs and Bronchial Tree

— **Pulmonary veins** arise from the capillary beds surrounding the alveoli (**Fig. 8.13**). Arising first as small veins that travel within the intersegmental septa carrying oxygenated blood, they receive veins from adjacent bronchopulmonary seg-ments as well as from the visceral pleura. These veins join to form two pulmonary veins within each lung, which traverse the hilum and enter the left atrium of the heart.

BOX 8.9: CLINICAL CORRELATION

PULMONARY EMBOLISM

Pulmonary embolism (PE) is the obstruction of a pulmonary artery or consequently cause cor pulmonale, right-sided heart failure. Large its branches by fat emboli, air bubbles, or, most commonly, throm- obstructions are often fatal, but smaller obstructions may affect boses (blood clots) that have traveled up from the deep veins of the only a single bronchopulmonary segment and result in a pulmonary legs. Large obstructions can impede blood flow into the lung and infarction.



Central pulmonary embolism with subsegmental vascular occlusions. (a) Acute pulmonary embolism with a central embolus. (b) Subsegmental vascular occlusions are also present (arrows). The scan additionally shows an enlarged right ventricle with paradoxical bowing of the septum to the left (arrowheads) as a sign of a right heart overload. (From Krombach GA, Mahnken AH. Body Imaging: Thorax and Abdomen. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2015.)

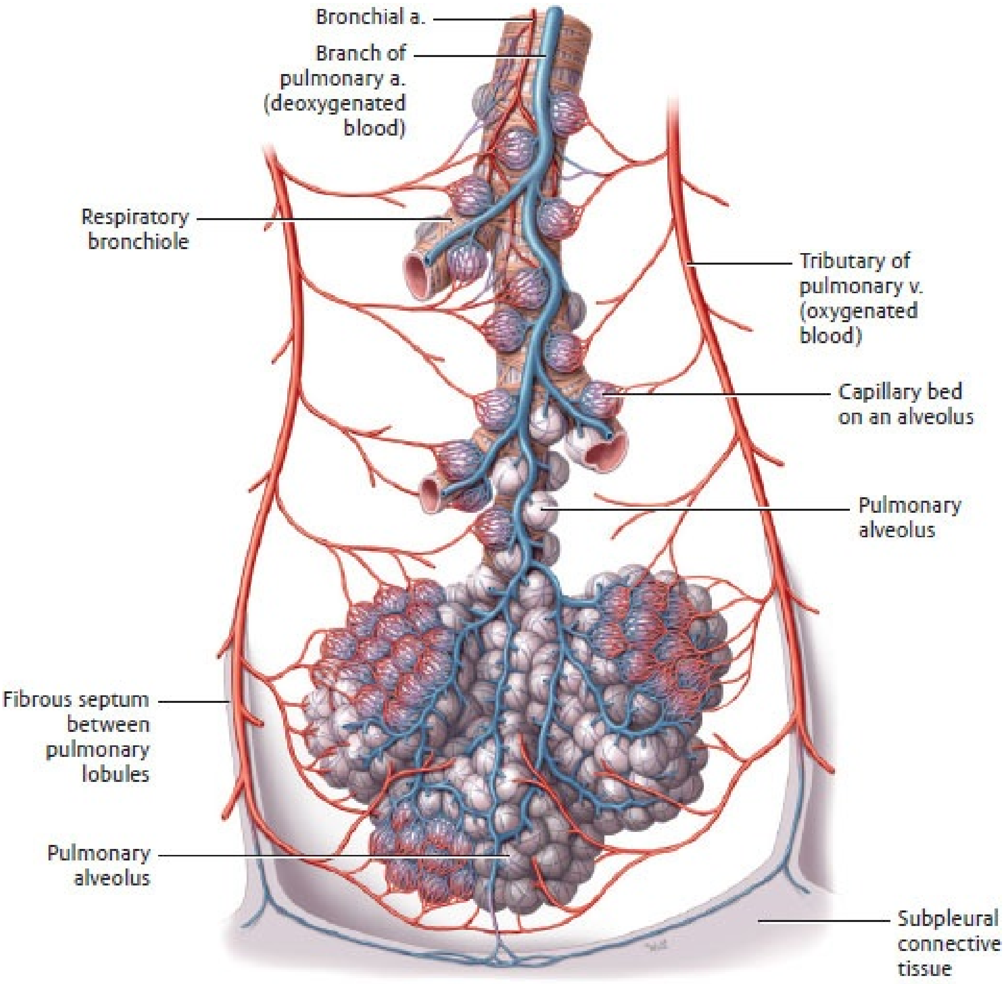

Bronchial a.
Branch of pulmonary a. (deoxygenated blood)
Respiratory bronchiole
Tributary of pulmonary v. (oxygenated blood)
Capillary bed on an alveolus
Pulmonary alveolus
Fibrous septum between pulmonary lobules
Pulmonary alveolus
Subpleural connective tissue

Fig. 8.13 Pulmonary vasculature

Pulmonary arteries *(blue)* carry *deoxygenated* blood and follow the bronchial tree. Pulmonary veins *(red)* are the only veins in the body carrying *oxygenated* blood, which they receive from the alveolar capillaries at the periphery of the lobule. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

— **Bronchial veins,** one from each lung, drain only the proximal portion of the root and terminate in the azygos and accessory hemiazygos (or superior intercostals) veins.

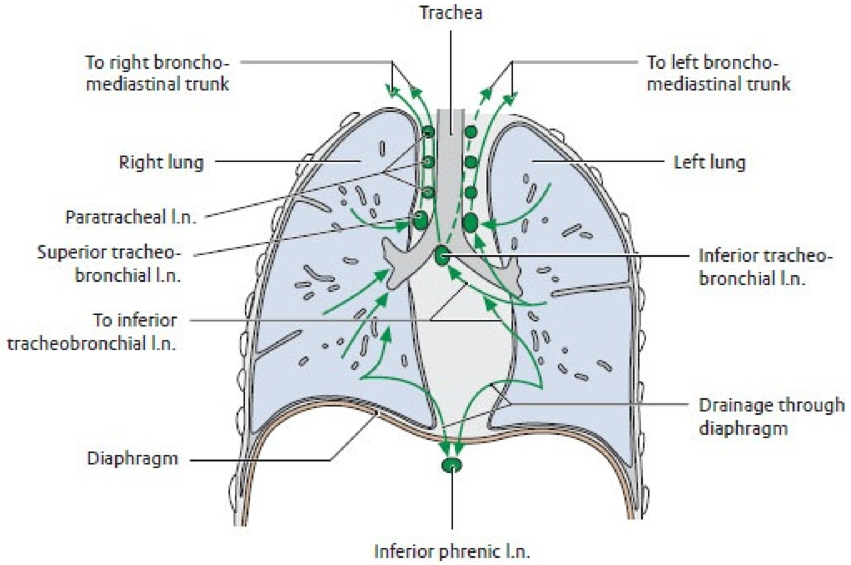
Lymphatics of the Lungs and Bronchial Tree

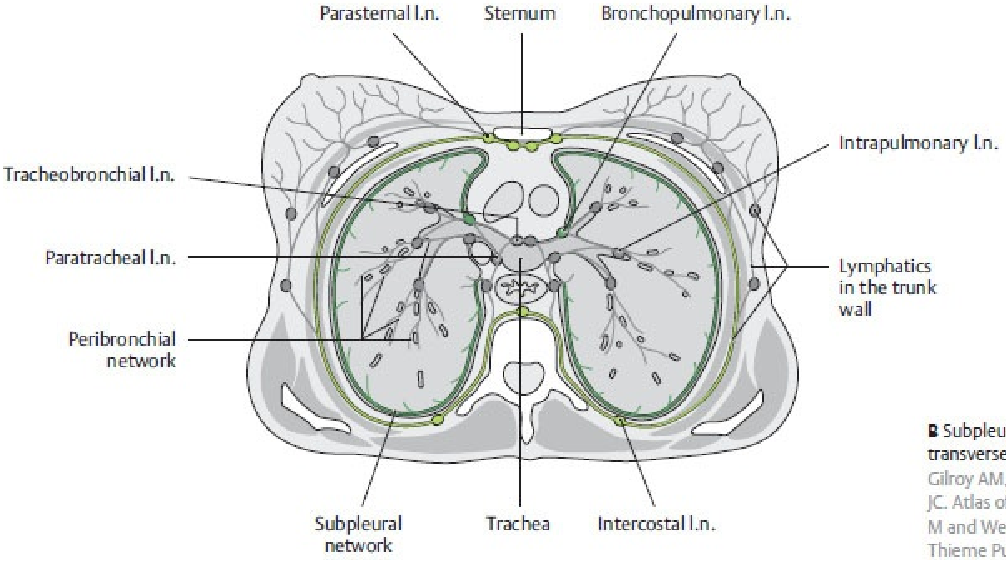
— The **superficial lymphatic plexus** of the lungs, deep to the visceral pleura, drains the pleura and the lung tissue.
— The **deep lymphatic plexus,** within the walls of the bronchi, drains

structures associated with the lung root.

- Whereas the superficial and deep plexuses eventually drain to the superior and inferior (carinal) **tracheobronchial nodes,** the deep plexus drains initially to the **bronchopulmonary** nodes along the lobar bronchi **(Fig. 8.14)**.
- Lymph from tracheobronchial nodes drains to **paratracheal nodes** and then to the **bronchomediastinal trunks** on either side, which terminate in the junction of the subclavian and jugular veins (jugulosubclavian venous junctions).
- The superior, middle, and inferior lobes of the right lung and the superior lobe of the left lung normally drain along ipsilateral channels. A significant amount of lymph from the inferior lobe of the left lung, however, drains to the right tracheobronchial nodes, and from there it continues to follow right-sided channels.

A Peribronchial network, coronal section.
(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Trachea
To right broncho-mediastinal trunk
To left broncho-mediastinal trunk
Right lung
Left lung
Paratracheal l.n.
Superior tracheo-bronchial l.n.
Inferior tracheo-bronchial l.n.
To inferior tracheobronchial l.n.
Drainage through diaphragm
Diaphragm
Inferior phrenic l.n.


Parasternal l.n.
Sternum
Bronchopulmonary l.n.
Intrapulmonary l.n.
Tracheobronchial l.n.
Paratracheal l.n.
Lymphatics in the trunk wall
Peribronchial network
Subpleural network
Trachea
Intercostal l.n.

B Subpleural and thoracic wall networks, transverse section, superior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Fig. 8.14 Lymphatic drainage of the pleural cavity

BOX 8.10: CLINICAL CORRELATION

CARCINOMA OF THE LUNG

Carcinoma of the lung accounts for ~ 20% of all cancers and is mainly caused by cigarette smoking. It arises first in the lining of the bronchi and metastasizes quickly to bronchopulmonary lymph nodes and subsequently to other node groups, including supraclavicular nodes. It is noteworthy that lymph from most lobes of the lungs drain along ipsilateral channels but that from the left inferior lobe also drains to contralateral nodes, thus facilitating bilateral spread. It can also spread via the blood to the lungs, brain, bone, and suprarenal glands. Lung cancer can invade adjacent structures such as the phrenic nerve, resulting in paralysis of a hemidia-phragm, or the recurrent laryngeal nerve, resulting in hoarseness due to paralysis of the vocal cord.

Nerves of the Lungs and Bronchial Tree

- The **pulmonary plexus,** an autonomic nerve plexus that lies anterior and posterior to the root of the lung, innervates the lung, bronchial tree, and visceral pleura **(Fig. 8.15**; **Table 8.2)**.
- Visceral sensory fibers carrying pain from the bronchi and visceral pleura travel with sympathetic splanchnic nerves.

Table 8.2 Autonomic Innervation of the Lungs and Bronchial Tree

Target Structures	Sympathetic	Parasympathetic
Bronchial muscles	Inhibitory (bronchodilation)	Motor (bronchoconstriction)
Pulmonary vessels	Motor (vasoconstriction)	Inhibitory (bronchodilation)
Secretory cells of alveoli	Secretomotor	Inhibitory

- Visceral sensory fibers from receptors related to cough and stretch reflexes, and receptors for blood pressure and blood gas levels travel with the vagus (parasympathetic) nerve.
- The parietal pleura is innervated by somatic nerves of the thoracic wall, and it is extremely sensitive to pain. Intercostal nerves innervate the costal surface, and phrenic nerves (C3–C5) innervate the mediastinal and diaphragmatic surfaces.
- Irritation of the parietal pleura in the areas supplied by the phrenic nerve is referred to the dermatomes C3–C5 on the neck and shoulder.

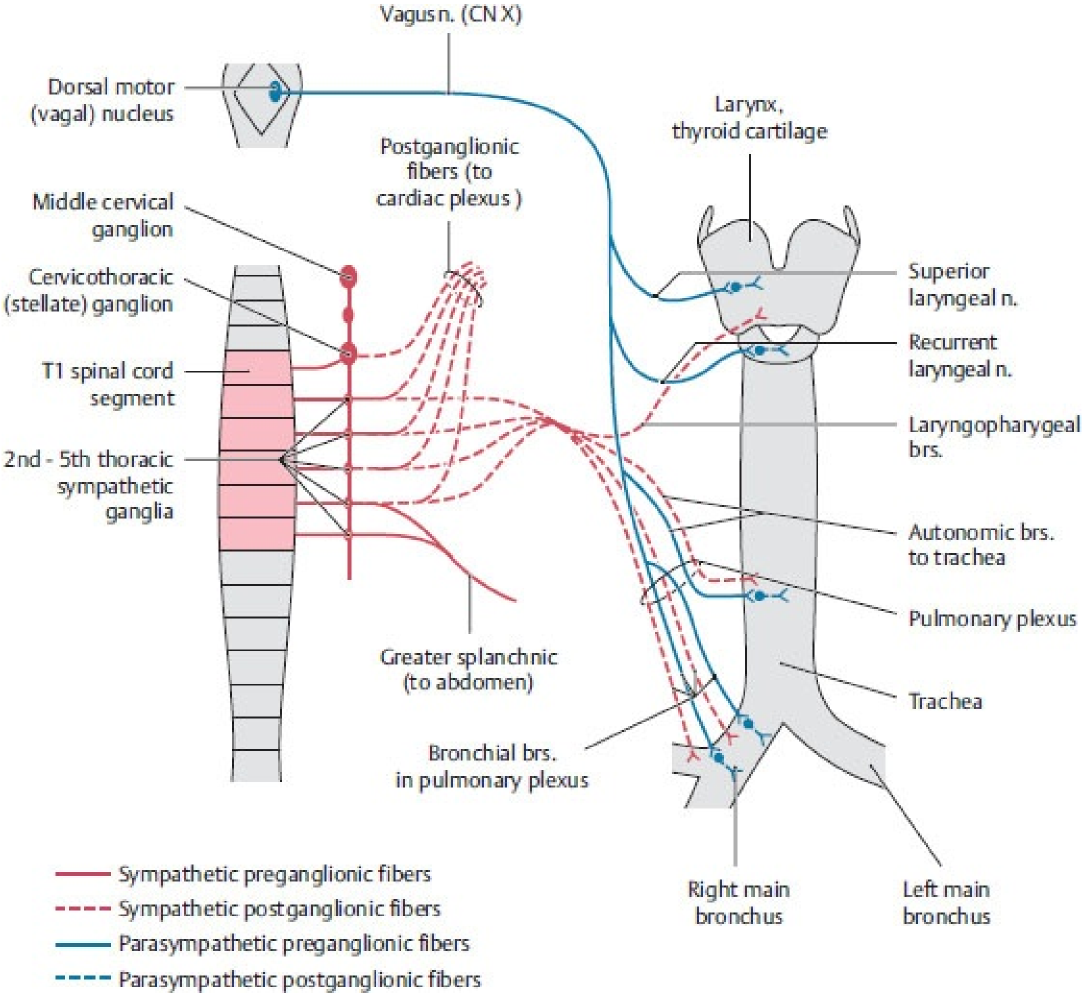

Vagus n. (CN X)
Dorsal motor (vagal) nucleus
Postganglionic fibers (to cardiac plexus)
Larynx, thyroid cartilage
Middle cervical ganglion
Cervicothoracic (stellate) ganglion
T1 spinal cord segment
2nd - 5th thoracic sympathetic ganglia
Superior laryngeal n.
Recurrent laryngeal n.
Laryngopharygeal brs.
Autonomic brs. to trachea
Pulmonary plexus
Trachea
Greater splanchnic (to abdomen)
Bronchial brs. in pulmonary plexus
Right main bronchus
Left main bronchus
Sympathetic preganglionic fibers
Sympathetic postganglionic fibers
Parasympathetic preganglionic fibers
Parasympathetic postganglionic fibers

Fig. 8.15 Autonomic innervation of the tracheobronchial tree

Sympathetic innervation (*red*); parasympathetic innervation (*blue*). (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

9 Clinical Imaging Basics of the Thorax

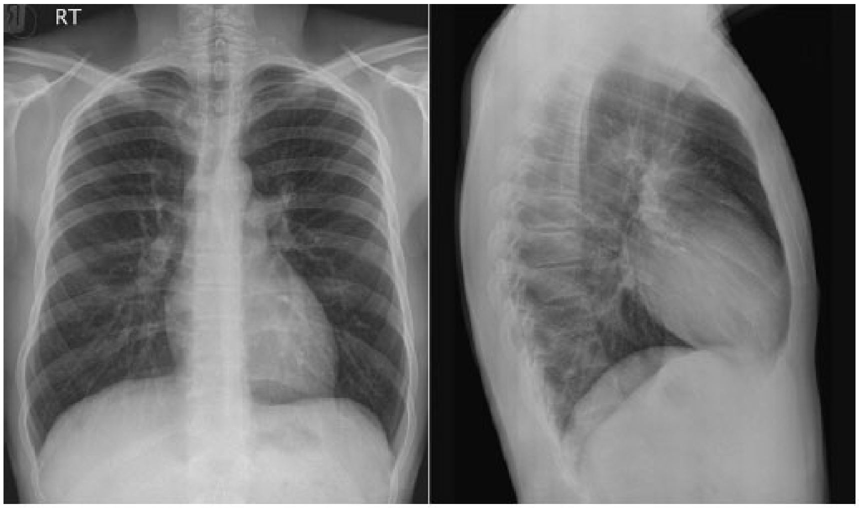
Radiographs are always the initial choice for imaging of the tho-rax. The air-filled lungs are perfectly suited for x-rays, making it easy to identify air space abnormalities such as pneumonia, and provide high contrast to the soft tissues of the heart and medias-tinum. When more detail of the heart, mediastinum, or lung parenchyma is required (e.g., evaluation of interstitial lung dis-ease), computed tomography (CT) is used. The value of magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) in cardiac imaging is its ability to acquire dynamic images (heart in motion) without radiation. Ultrasound (echocardiography) also has the utility of dynamic imaging with-out radiation and without the long scan times and issues of claustrophobia associated with MRI. However, the anatomic detail of ultrasound and the ability to assess the coronary vessels is limited when compared with CT and MRI **(Table 9.1)**.

The chest x-ray is the starting point of the vast majority of thoracic imaging. When evaluating a chest x-ray **(Fig. 9.1)**, the examiner typically follows the airway from the upper trachea down into both lungs and then views each lung in its entirety, sweeping from side to side. The heart borders are evaluated for size and shape, and the smooth surfaces of each hemidiaphragm and mediastinal border are confirmed. Each rib and vertebra is examined **(Fig. 9.2)**, and then attention is given to the chest wall and soft tissues. A similar procedure is used to examine the lateral view. The chest x-ray in **Fig. 9.3** is from a patient with cough and fever. Compare the images to the normal radiographs in **Fig. 9.1**. Note the large area of white (opacity) on the right. The lateral view, in conjunction with the frontal view, confirms that this opacity is in the right lung and, more specifically, within the right middle lobe.

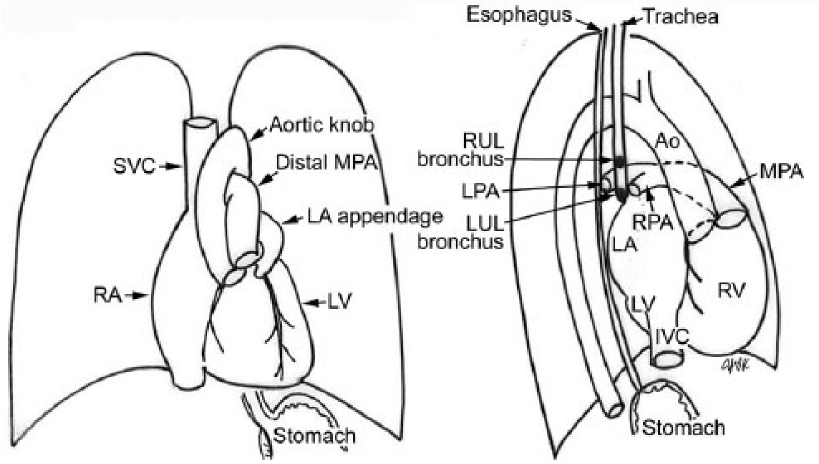
Table 9.1 Suitability of Imaging Modalities for the Thorax

Modality	Clinical Uses
Radiographs (X-rays)	The mainstay of thoracic imaging and the most common radiologic study performed; excellent for evaluation of the lungs, heart, pulmonary vessels,

	and pleura
CT (computed tomography)	Exquisite anatomic detail of the lung parenchyma and interstitium
MRI (magnetic resonance imaging)	Best suited for imaging the heart and great vessels; very limited value in evaluating the lungs
Ultrasound	Used primarily for cardiac imaging (echocardiography); provides real-time anatomic and physiologic evaluation of the heart



A Frontal and lateral radiographs of the chest (normal).


Esophagus
Trachea
Aortic knob
Distal MPA
SVC
LA appendage
RA
LV
Stomach
RUL bronchus
LPA
LUL bronchus
Ao
MPA
RPA
LA
RV
LV
IVC
Stomach

B Schematic representation of normal anatomic borders seen on frontal and lateral chest radiographs.

Fig. 9.1 Chest radiograph anatomy

Rendered drawing of chest radiographic anatomy. Ao, ascending aorta; IVC, inferior vena cava; LA, left atrium; LPA, left pulmonary artery; LUL, left upper lobar bronchus; LV, left ventricle; MPA, main pulmonary artery; RA, right atium; RPA, right pulmonary artery; RUL, right upper lobar bronchus; RV, right ventricle; SVC, superior vena cava. (From Yoo S, MacDonald C, Babyn P. Chest Radiographic Interpretation in Pediatric Cardiac Patients. 1st ed. New York: 2010.)

Computed tomography scans are excellent for showing details of the soft tissues of the thorax and can be examined in different windows to highlight specific organs (**Fig. 9.4**). CT can also reveal subtle abnormalities of the lungs that would be too small to be seen on a chest x-ray, such as inflammatory or neoplastic small lung nodules or interstitial lung diseases (**Fig. 9.5**). MRI, although not well suited for imaging the lungs, provides very good detail of the heart and allows imaging in specific planes (**Fig. 9.6**). An ultra-sound of the heart, or echocardiogram, provides a dynamic view of the heart and is best viewed in "real time." However, standard static "snapshots" can provide important information, such as the four-chamber view (**Fig. 9.7**).

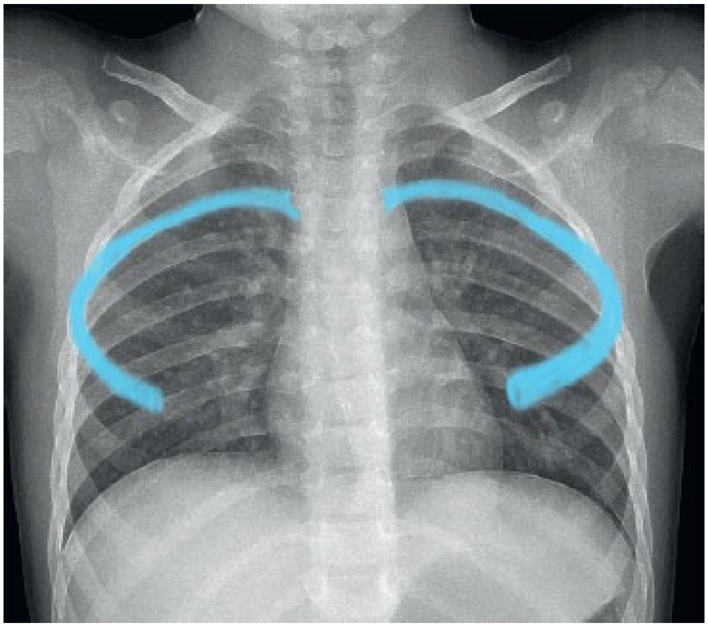


Fig 9.2 Radiograph of the thorax with the 4th ribs highlighted Frontal view.

The ribs extend horizontally from their articulation with the vertebrae and then curve laterally, anteriorly, and inferiorly. When examining a chest radiograph, each rib should be traced over its entire course. Note that the costochondral cartilage is not visible on an x-ray. (Courtesy of Joseph Makris, MD, Baystate Medical Center.)

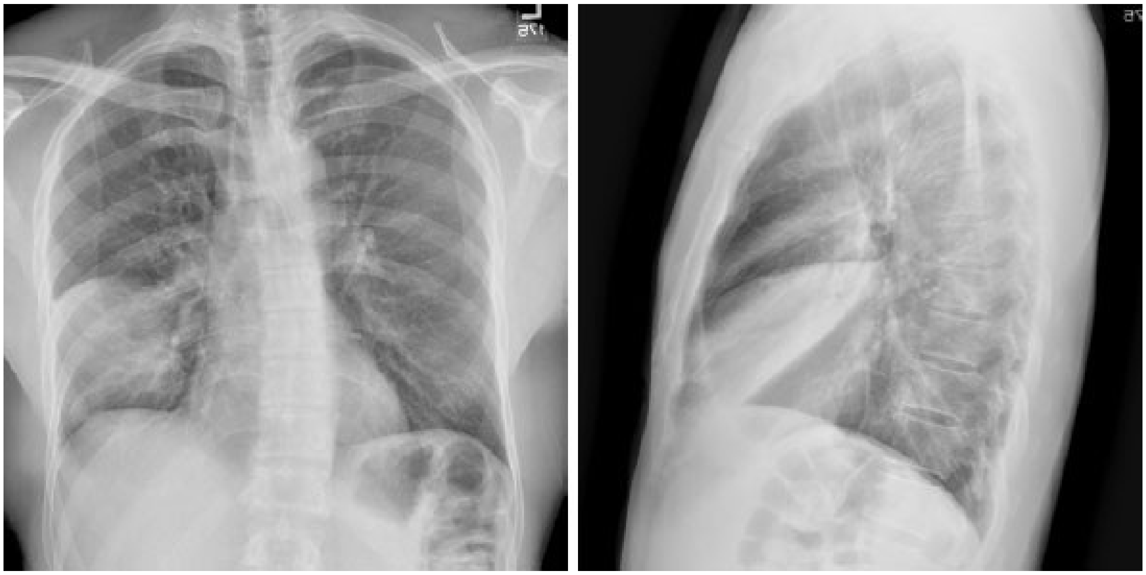
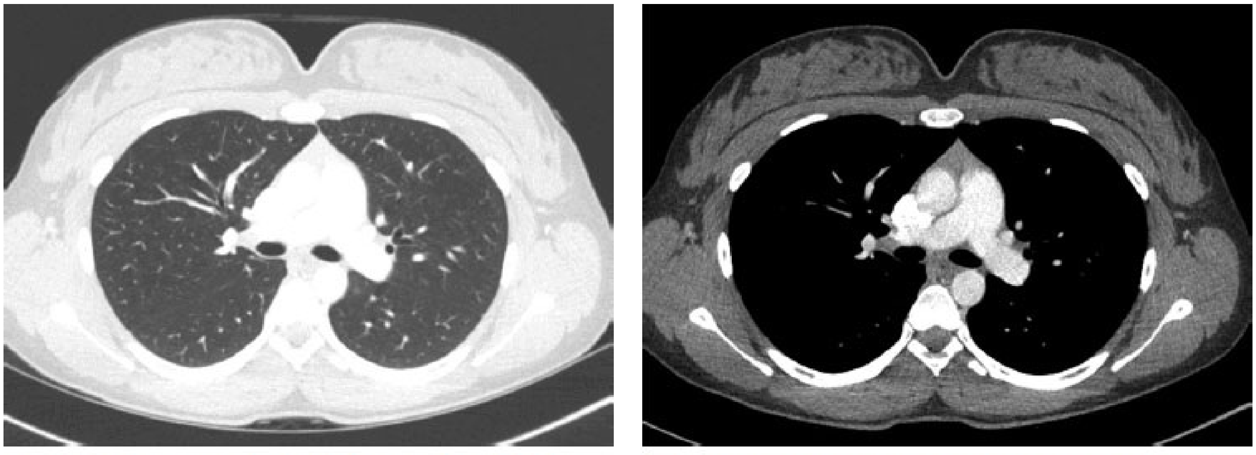


Fig. 9.3 Chest Radiographs – Right middle lobe pneumonia

Increased opacity (increased white) in the right middle lobe consistent with pneumonia in this patient with cough and fever. Notice the sharp outlines of the abnormal opacity on the lateral view, which represent the oblique and horizontal fissures. These are well seen here because the pneumonia fills the right middle lobe. (From Baxter A. Emergency Imaging. A Practical Guide. 1st ed. New York: Thieme; 2015.)



A The lung window optimizes details of the lung parenchyma. Subtle lung disease that may be invisible on a chest X-ray can be detected with chest CT.

B The soft tissue widow optimizes the soft tissue structures, but renders the lung parenchyma black (invisible). The soft tissues of the thoracic wall are well delineated. Also note the detail of the aorta and main pulmonary artery as they branch.

Fig. 9.4 CT of the thorax, axial images – normal

These images represent the same axial slice from a normal CT scan of the thorax at the level of the main pulmonary artery. This patient received intravenous contrast causing the blood vessels to appear white. (Courtesy of Joseph Makris, MD, Baystate Medical Center.)

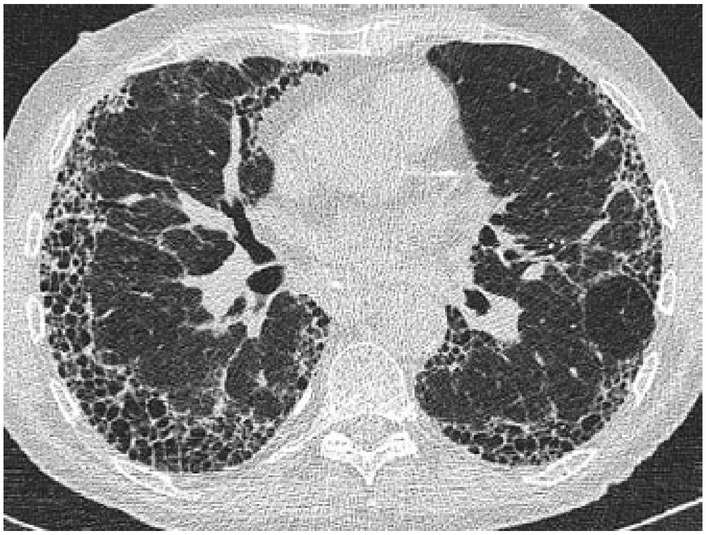


Fig. 9.5 CT of the Thorax, axial view – lung disease

A single slice of a chest CT presented in lung windows in a patient with chronic cough and interstitial lung disease. Note the linear/reticular opacities throughout the lungs indicating thickening of the septa, and numerous small cysts in the periphery of the lungs with a “honeycomb” appearance. (From Wormanns D. Diagnostic Imaging of the Chest. 1st ed. New York: Thieme; 2020.)

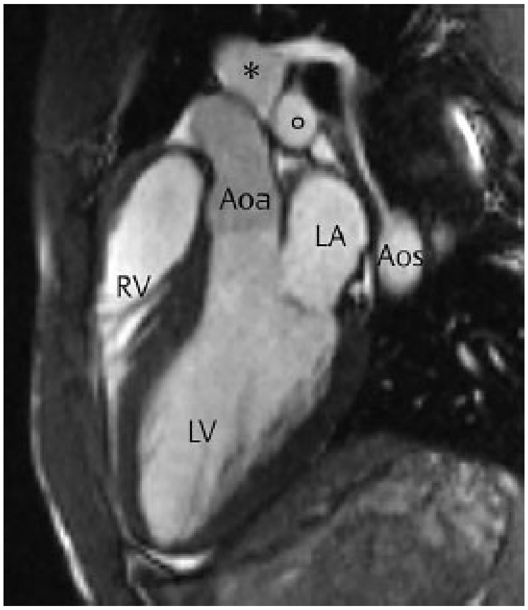


Fig. 9.6 MRI of the heart showing the left ventricular outflow tract

Cardiac MRI scans can be obtained in any plane, with several standard planes selected to optimize specific anatomy. In this example, blood in the vessels and chambers is white and the heart muscle is dark gray. This left ventricular outflow tract view positions the left ventricle and the ascending aorta in the same plane so the entire outflow tract is visible on a single image. A complete cardiac MRI would contain slices through the entire heart in this plane as well as several other planes. Additionally, MRI allows for dynamic imaging and can produce “cine” (movie) clips of several cardiac cycles showing chamber, wall, and valve motion. Note that dynamic MRIs cannot be seen in “real time” as with ultrasound. *, Superior vena cava (with termination of azygos vein); •, right pulmonary artery; Aoa, ascending aorta; Aos, descending aorta; LA, left atrium; RV, right ventricle; LV, left ventricle. (From Claussen C, Miller S, Riessen R et al. Direct Diagnosis in Radiology. Cardiac Imaging. 1st ed. New York: Thieme; 2007.)

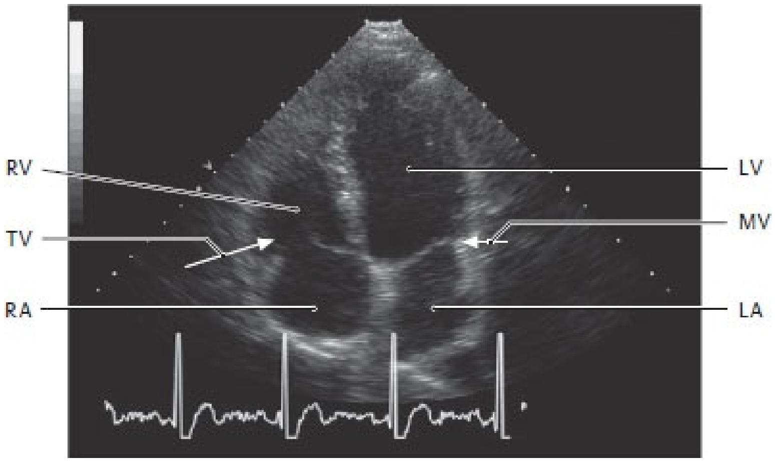


Fig. 9.7 Echocardiogram (heart ultrasound)

Apical four-chamber view taken with the probe positioned at the cardiac apex.

Both ventricles (RV, LV), both atria (RA, LA), and the mitral and tricuspid valves (MV, TV) are well seen. Although this is a single static image, the true power of echocardiography is the ability to see heart motion with real-time dynamic images. Ventricular wall motion, valve operation, and blood flow can all be seen and analyzed. The displayed electrocardiogram (ECG) allows the imager to synchronize the heart’s motion with its electrical activity. (From Flachskampf F. Kursbuch Echokardiografie, 4th ed. Stuttgart: Thieme Publishers; 2008.)

Unit III Review Questions: Thorax

1. Which of the following nerves contribute to the phrenic nerve?

A. Anterior rami of C3–C5 spinal nerves
B. Anterior rami of C5–T1 spinal nerves
C. Sympathetic fibers from C3–C5 spinal cord segments
D. Sympathetic fibers from T1–T4 spinal cord segments
E. Cardiac nerves from the cervical sympathetic trunk

2. Which of the following is true of bronchopulmonary segments?

A. Each is served by one terminal bronchiole.
B. There are three in the right lung and two in the left lung.
C. Each is supplied by one bronchial artery.
D. Each is an anatomically and functionally distinct respiratory unit of the lung.
E. They have single-celled walls designed for efficient gas exchange.

3. Which of the following structures is/are found in the right atrium?

A. Chordae tendineae
B. Oval fossa
C. Mitral valve
D. Papillary muscles
G. Trabeculae carneae

4. The sternal angle (of Louis) marks the location of the

A. second costal cartilage
B. T4–T5 intervertebral disk
C. origin of the aortic arch
D. bifurcation of the trachea
E. All of the above

5. You are studying the CT images of your patient who is being treated for lung cancer. You focus on the scan that shows the carina where you note several enlarged lymph nodes. What other structure is most likely visible in this CT image?

A. Left atrium
B. Brachiocephalic artery
C. Sternal angle
D. Tricuspid valve
E. Right pulmonary vein

6. Within hours of arriving home after a 10-hour bus ride, a 77-year-old woman was rushed to the emergency room with shortness of breath, sweating, and nausea. Although she died shortly after being admitted, her workup in the emergency room revealed a pulmonary embolus in her left pulmonary artery. What other findings would you expect in this patient?

A. Collapse of the left lung
B. Acute dilation of the right ventricle
C. A shift of mediastinal structures to the right side
D. Hypertrophy of the left ventricle
E. Dilation of the left atrium

7. A malignancy involving the lateral breast would *most* likely metastasize first to which of the following groups of nodes?

A. Parasternal nodes
B. Abdominal nodes
C. Deep pectoral nodes
D. Axillary nodes
E. Nodes of the contralateral breast

8. What is the surface landmark on the chest that approxi-mates the position of the apex of the heart?

A. Sternal angle

B. Left 3rd intercostal space
C. Left 5th intercostal space
D. Right 5th intercostal space
E. Xiphoid process of the sternum

9. Dr. P. was performing a cardiac bypass on a 53-year-old man whose anterior interventricular artery (also known as the left anterior descending artery, LAD) was narrowed near its origin. Although Dr. P. frequently used a saphenous vein graft for this procedure, he chose to use the left internal thoracic artery instead. Leaving its origin intact, he cut its distal connections and anastomosed it to the LAD beyond the narrowed segment. This successfully restored flow to the anterior part of the heart. What path does the blood take through this diverted route?

A. Aortic arch to left subclavian artery to internal thoracic artery
B. Aortic arch to brachiocephalic artery to internal thoracic artery
C. Aortic arch to internal thoracic artery
D. Aortic arch to left subclavian artery to pericardiaco-phrenic artery to internal thoracic artery
E. Aortic arch to axillary artery to internal thoracic artery

10. An elderly man who admits to some dizziness and minor chest palpitations during the past week is finally admitted to the emergency department for chest pain and shortness of breath. Imaging reveals a major blockage of his right coronary artery near the crux of the heart just proximal to the origin of the posterior interventricular artery. Which part of the heart would be affected by the ischemia that results from this blockage?

A. Sinoatrial (SA) node
B. Atrioventricular (AV) node
C. Anterior two thirds of the interventricular septum
D. Left atrium
E. Right ventricle

11. A woman who had a recent history of a myocardial infarction (MI) complained to her cardiologist of a sharp, stabbing pain behind her sternum that radiated to her shoulder and was accompanied by shortness of breath, particularly when she was lying down. Her physician noted a pericardial friction rub and treated her for pericarditis, an inflammation of her pericardium caused by the recent MI. Pain from her pericardium was transmitted by the

- **A.** phrenic nerves
- **B.** cardiac plexus
- **C.** pulmonary plexus
- **D.** intercostal nerves
- **E.** None of the above

12. The right lymphatic duct drains the lymph from

- **A.** the entire right side of the body
- **B.** the right side of the thorax, right upper limb, and right side of the head and neck
- **C.** only the right side of the thorax
- **D.** only the right side of the head and neck and right upper limb
- **E.** the right side of the thorax, the abdomen, and the right lower and the right upper limbs

13. Which of the following features are paired with the correct lung?

- **A.** Lingula—right lung
- **B.** Horizontal fissure—left lung
- **C.** Cardiac notch—left lung
- **D.** Two lobar bronchi—right lung
- **E.** Shorter and wider than the contralateral lung—left lung

14. Several weeks after suffering a severe myocardial infarc-tion, a man

was rushed to the emergency department but died shortly afterward. It was discovered at autopsy that the muscle anchoring one leaflet of his mitral valve had ruptured, probably as a consequence of his earlier heart attack. Which was the affected muscle?

- **A.** Papillary muscle
- **B.** Trabeculae carneae

C. Pectinate muscle
D. Terminal crest
E. Septomarginal trabecula (moderator band)

15. What is the origin of the 3rd through 11th posterior intercostal arteries?

A. Descending aorta
B. Internal thoracic artery
C. Lateral thoracic artery
D. Subclavian artery
E. Superior epigastric artery

16. A woman with a history of asthma presents to the emergency department with shortness of breath and wheezing. Drugs and oxygen are administered, but her condition worsens. She is transferred to the intensive care unit and put on a ventilator. Twenty-four hours after admission, she dies from complications of asthma. On autopsy it is found that she has severe inflammation, an increase in smooth muscle, and other pathologic changes around a part of the respiratory tree that does not contain cartilage. Which part of the airway was most likely affected in this patient?

A. Trachea
B. Main (primary) bronchi
C. Lobar (secondary) bronchi
D. Segmental (tertiary) bronchi
E. Bronchioles

17. During the physical examination of a 28-year-old construction worker, you mention that his heart sounds strong and healthy. He asks you to explain what creates the heart sounds. You tell him that the first heart sound (the “lub”) is produced by the

A. closure of the tricuspid and pulmonary valves
B. closure of the atrioventricular valves
C. opening of the semilunar valves
D. contraction of the ventricles
E. turbulent flow through the valves

18. All of the following structures are in contact with thoracic vertebral bodies except

A. Azygos vein
B. Trachea
C. Sympathetic trunk
D. Thoracic duct
E. Right posterior intercostal artery

19. What is/are the primary muscle(s) used in quiet respiration?

A. Intercostal muscles
B. Scalene muscles
C. Diaphragm
D. Pectoralis major
E. Anterior abdominal muscles

20. Which of the following valves is most audible at the right 2nd intercostal space just lateral to the sternum?

A. Aortic valve
B. Left atrioventricular valve
C. Pulmonary valve
D. Right atrioventricular valve
E. Valve for the coronary sinus

21. During auscultation of the heart, which of the following relationships is *most* likely to be correct in a normal adult?

A. The left 4th intercostal space at the midaxillary line is the site of auscultation of the mitral valve.
B. The left 2nd intercostal space at the sternal border is the site of auscultation of the aortic valve.
C. The right 3rd intercostal space at the sternal border is the site of auscultation of the pulmonary valve.
D. The right 2nd intercostal space at the sternal border is the site of

auscultation of the aortic valve.

E. The right 4th intercostal space at the midclavicular line is the site of auscultation of the tricuspid valve.

22. Which of the following events occurs during either quiet or forced expiration?

A. Collapse of alveolar sacs
B. Increase in lung volume
C. Elevation of the ribs
D. Increase in intrapleural pressure
E. Temporary collapse of the segmental bronchi

23. During a routine physical exam of a young woman who is training to compete in the Olympic trials, you scrutinize her cardiac rhythm for abnormalities. Which of the follow-ing events normally occur during ventricular diastole?

A. Contraction of the ventricles
B. Ejection of blood into the pulmonary trunk
C. Opening of the semilunar valves
D. Filling of the coronary arteries
E. Closure of the atrioventricular valves

24. You have been treating a 67-year-old woman for a mediastinal tumor for three months. Following her latest CT scan, it's clear that the tumor has increased in size, despite the chemotherapy, and is now large enough to compress her superior vena cava (superior vena cava syndrome). In spite of this obstruction, veins of her neck and upper limb appear only slightly distended. You know from the CT that the obstruction is located below the junction of the SVC and azygos, veins and you are confident that venous blood from the head and upper limb is flowing back to her heart via collateral channels. The backflow of blood through these collateral channels would cause some dilation in collateral vessels. Which of the following would not be affected by this backflow?

A. External jugular veins

B. Right pulmonary veins
C. Posterior intercostal veins
D. Hemiazygos vein
E. Internal thoracic veins

25. Your 64-year-old neighbor, a retired high school biology teacher, is seemingly recovered from a serious heart attack from several months ago. However, during a recent checkup she was found to have an abnormally slow and irregular heartbeat, a diagnosis of atrioventricular heart block. In an effort to calm her distress and explain her condition, you try to explain how the heart is innervated. Which of the following statements is true of the cardiac plexus?

A. It contains postganglionic sympathetic fibers from the cervical and thoracic sympathetic trunk.
B. Visceral sensory fibers that innervate the barorecep-tors (which measure blood pressure) travel with sympathetic fibers.
C. It contains cardiac branches of the vagus nerve, which contain postganglionic sympathetic fibers.
D. It initiates the heartbeat but does not regulate the heart rate.
E. Sensations of pain carried on visceral sensory fibers travel with parasympathetic branches of the vagus nerve.

26. Your first patient as an Ob/Gyn intern is a 23-year-old woman who gave birth to a premature 5-pound baby girl with Down syndrome. Within the first few days the child is diagnosed with an atrial septal defect (ASD), a common anomaly associated with her congenital defect. Atrial septal defects

A. cause a right-to-left shunting of blood in the atria
B. result in a decrease in blood volume in the pulmo-nary circulation
C. result from a failure of the ductus arteriosus to constrict
D. can result from a failure of the oval foramen to close at birth
E. can be compensated for by an effective collateral circulation that circumvents the defect

27. The esophagus is an unusual structure in that it traverses three anatomic regions: the cervical region, the thorax, and the abdomen. Although an important conduit of the gastrointestinal tract, it has no role in digestion. However, it is an organ vulnerable to disease and trauma, and as such, its anatomic relations are significant. Which of the following descriptions of the esophagus is accurate?

- **A.** It is innervated by the esophageal plexus, a parasym-pathetic nerve plexus.
- **B.** The upper, middle, and lower esophageal veins drain solely into the azygos system via posterior intercostal veins.
- **C.** The aortic arch and left bronchus create the upper esophageal sphincter, a normal esophageal constriction.
- **D.** It passes through the esophageal hiatus in the central tendon of the diaphragm anterior to the T8 vertebral body.
- **E.** In the thorax, it descends posterior to the trachea and the left atrium of the heart.

28. A patient with known multisystem disease is admitted to the emergency department with shortness of breath and cough. He is found to have a pleural effusion of the right lung and is treated with the insertion of a chest tube, which drains the fluid. Which of the following is true?

- **A.** The excess fluid is located in his pleural cavity, which is lined by a thin layer of visceral pleural surrounded by a tough layer of parietal pleura.
- **B.** The fluid is likely to leak into the pleural cavity of his left lung.
- **C.** The fluid is likely to accumulate in the costodiaphrag-matic recess.
- **D.** The chest tube is inserted at the anterior axillary line, in the 5th intercostal space below the rib to avoid damage to the liver.
- **E.** A pleural effusion is often accompanied by a shift of mediastinal structures, such as the heart, to the opposite side.

29. A patient with cough and fever has a chest x-ray and is diagnosed with complete lobar pneumonia involving the right lower lobe. What usual anatomic outline may become invisible because of the pneumonia?

- **A.** Right heart border
- **B.** Right hemidiaphragm
- **C.** Left hemidiaphragm
- **D.** Right upper mediastinum
- **E.** Right breast shadow

30. What would be the best way to detect a cardiac wall motion abnormality in an unstable patient with a recent myocardial infarction (MI)?

- **A.** Chest x-ray
- **B.** Chest CT
- **C.** Ultrasound (echocardiogram)
- **D.** ECG
- **E.** MRI

Answers and Explanations

1. **A.** The phrenic nerve is a somatic nerve containing C3–C5 anterior rami (Section 5.2).

B. The anterior rami of C5–T1 form the brachial plexus.

C. There are no autonomic nerves that arise from the C3–C5 spinal cord.

D. Sympathetic splanchnic nerves that arise from T1–T4 contribute to the cardiac and pulmonary plexuses.

E. Cardiac branches from the cervical sympathetic trunk contribute to the cardiac plexus and are not related to the phrenic nerve.

2. **D.** Bronchopulmonary segments function independently from other segments and are separated from them by thin septa (Section 8.2).

A. One segmental bronchi enters each bronchopulmo-nary segment and ramifies into many conducting bronchi-oles, which in turn divide into many terminal bronchioles.

B. The right lung has 10 bronchopulmonary segments, and the left lung has 8 to 10 segments.

C. Bronchial arteries supply the bronchi and connective tissue of the lungs, including the visceral pleura. Branches of the pulmonary arteries supply the bronchopulmonary segments.

E. Alveoli, the smallest unit of the respiratory tree, have single-celled walls that facilitate gas exchange.

3. **B.** The oval fossa on the interatrial septum is the remnant of the opening between the atria that allows right-to-left shunting in the fetal circulation (Section 7.4).

A. Chordae tendineae are found in the ventricles.

C. The mitral valve separates the left atrium and ventricle.

D. Papillary muscles are found only in the ventricles.

E. Trabeculae carneae are muscular ridges in the walls of the ventricles.

4. **E.** The sternal angle is a palpable bony prominence created at the junction of the body and manubrium of the sternum. It marks the transverse plane that passes through the 2nd costal cartilage, T4–T5 intervertebral disk, origin of the aortic arch, and bifurcation of the trachea (Section 6.2).

5. **C.** The carina, at the bifurcation of the trachea, lies approximately at the T4–T5 vertebral level, which is also the level of the sternal angle (Section 6.2).

A. The left atrium lies approximately at the level of T6–T7, below the carina at the bifurcation of the trachea.

B. The brachiocephalic artery, the first branch of the aortic arch, lies approximately at the level of T3. The carina lies at the level of the sternal angle at T4–T5.

D. The tricuspid valve lies at the level of the 5th costal cartilage. The carina lies at the level of the 2nd costal cartilage and the sternal angle.

E. Pulmonary veins on both sides enter the left atrium, approximately at the level of T6–T7, well below the carina at T4–T5.

6. **B.** Obstruction of the pulmonary artery impedes blood flow into the lung and causes pooling of blood in the right side of the heart. This causes acute dilation of the right atrium and right ventricle (Section 8.5).

A. Collapse of the lung is a symptom of a pneumothorax in which air enters the pleural cavity.

C. The pressure of a tension pneumothorax can cause the heart to shift to the opposite side.

D. Hypertrophy of the left ventricle is the result of a chronic condition that causes the myocardium to work harder in response to a fluid overload or an obstruction in the aortic outflow tract. A pulmonary embolism is usually an acute event that causes a fluid overload in the right ventricle but decreases venous return to the left ventricle.

E. A pulmonary embolism reduces the volume of blood entering the lung from the right side of the heart and therefore results in a diminished venous return to the left side of the heart. The right atria and ventricle may be acutely dilated, but the left atria and ventricle are not.

7. **D.** A malignancy involving the lateral breast would most likely metastasize via the axillary nodes and then on to nodes around the clavicle and the ipsilateral lymphatic duct (Section 6.1).

A. Medial portions of the breast may drain to the parasternal nodes. These nodes also receive lymph from the anterior abdominal wall above the umbilicus, the deeper parts of the anterior portion of the thoracic wall, and the superior surface of the liver.

B. Nodes of the anterior abdominal wall receive lymph from the medial and inferior parts of the breast.

C. Although some lymph from the breast may drain to deep pectoral nodes posterior to the pectoralis muscle, most lymph from the breast drains to axillary nodes.

E. Lymphatic drainage from the medial breast may drain to the contralateral breast, but lymphatic drainage from the lateral breast most abundantly passes to the axillary nodes.

8. **C.** The apex lies at the level of the 5th intercostal space (Section 7.4).

A. The sternal angle is at the level of the 2nd costal cartilages.

B. The 3rd intercostal space is above the level of the heart.

D. The apex of the heart is found at the most inferior and left border of the heart, which lies to the left of the sternum.

E. The xiphoid process lies in the midline, whereas the apex lies to the left side of the sternum.

9. **A.** The internal thoracic artery is a branch of the subclavian artery, the third branch of the aortic arch (Section 5.2).

B. The internal thoracic artery arises from the sub clavian artery.

C. The internal thoracic artery does not arise directly from the aortic arch. It is a branch of the subclavian artery.

D. The pericardiacophrenic arteries arise from the internal thoracic arteries to supply the pericardium and diaphragm. They do not contribute to the blood supply of the heart.

E. The internal thoracic artery arises from the subclavian artery, not the axillary artery.

10. **B.** The AV nodal artery, which branches from the right coronary artery near the origin of the posterior interven-tricular artery, usually supplies the AV node (Section 7.7).

A. The SA node is supplied by the SA nodal artery, a branch of the proximal part of the right coronary artery, or by the circumflex branch of the left coronary artery.

C. The left anterior interventricular artery (LAD) supplies the anterior two thirds of the interventricular septum.

D. The circumflex branch of the left coronary artery supplies the left atrium.

E. The marginal branch of the right coronary artery supplies most of the right ventricle. Its origin is well proximal to the crux of the heart and would not be affected by this blockage.

11. **A.** The phrenic nerves (C3–C5) are the primary sensory nerves of the pericardium. Referred pain is often felt in the supraclavicular region, the C3–C5 dermatome (Section 7.3).

B. The cardiac plexus is a plexus of autonomic fibers that innervate the heart.

C. The pulmonary plexus, an extension of the cardiac plexus, regulates the constriction and dilation of the pulmonary vessels and bronchial passages.

D. Intercostal nerves innervate structures of the thoracic and abdominal walls.

E. Not applicable

12. **B.** The right lymphatic duct drains the lymph from the right side of the thorax, right upper limb, and right side of the head and neck (Section 5.2).

A. Lymph from all structures below the diaphragm drains to the left lymphatic duct (thoracic duct).

C. The right side of the head and neck and right upper limb also drain to the right lymphatic duct.

D. The right side of the thorax also drains to the right lymphatic duct.

E. Lymph from the abdomen and both lower limbs drains to the thoracic duct (left lymphatic duct).

13. **C.** The cardiac notch is a deep indentation along the anterior border of the superior lobe of the left lung (Section 8.2).

A. The lingula is a thin tongue of tissue that forms the lower border of the cardiac notch of the superior lobe of the left lung.

B. The left lung has only an oblique fissure that separates the superior and inferior lobes.

D. The right lung has three lobes supplied by three lobar bronchi.

E. The right lung is shorter and wider than the left lung due to the presence of the liver below the right side of the diaphragm.

14. **A.** The papillary muscles of the left ventricle attach to the tendinous cords of the mitral valve leaflets and prevent them from prolapsing during ventricular systole (Section 7.4).

B. Trabeculae carneae are the thick muscular ridges of the ventricular walls.

C. Pectinate muscles are found in the right and left auricles.

D. The terminal crest (crista terminalis) is a muscular ridge within the right atrium that separates its two parts, the venous sinus and the atrium proper.

E. The interventricular septomarginal trabecula is a muscular band that connects the interventricular septum to the anterior papillary muscle of the right ventricle and carries the right branch of the atrioventricular bundle of the conducting system.

15. **A.** The aorta supplies the 3rd through 11th posterior intercostal arteries (Section 6.4).

B. The internal thoracic artery supplies the anterior intercostal arteries.

C. The lateral thoracic artery originates from the axillary artery and supplies the pectoralis major and minor, and the serratus anterior muscles and the lateral mammary arteries.

D. The subclavian artery supplies only the 1st and 2nd of the intercostal arteries. It also supplies the internal thoracic, vertebral, and axillary arteries, as well as branches to the neck and shoulder.

E. The superior epigastric artery is a branch of the internal thoracic artery. It supplies the lower anterior intercostal arteries and the anterior abdominal wall.

16. **E.** The bronchioles have no cartilage but do contain a layer of smooth muscle that often hypertrophies (cells increase in size) in severe asthma (Section 8.3).

A. The trachea contains C-shaped cartilage rings.

B. The main bronchi contain C-shaped cartilage rings, similar to those in the trachea.

C. Lobar bronchi contain plates of cartilage.

D. Segmental bronchi contain plates of cartilage.

17. **B.** Closure of tricuspid and mitral (atrioventricular) valves produces the first (“lub”) sound (Section 7.4).

A. Closure of the tricuspid valve contributes to the first heart sound (“lub”); closure of the pulmonary valve contributes to the second heart sound (“dub”).

C. Opening of the semilunar valves does not produce discernible heart sounds.

D. Contraction of the ventricles does not produce any sound, although it coincides with the closure of the atrio-ventricular valves, which produces the first heart sound.

E. Turbulent flow through the valves, often associated with valvular stenosis and regurgitation, produces a murmur heard on auscultation.

18. **B.** The trachea lies anterior to the esophagus along its entire length and is not in contact with the vertebral bodies (Sections 6.4 and 7.7).

A. The azygos vein ascends along the anterior surface of the thoracic vertebrae.

C. The sympathetic trunks lie along the lateral aspects of the thoracic vertebrae.

D. The thoracic duct ascends along the vertebral bodies between the azygos and hemiazygos veins.

E. The posterior intercostal arteries arise from the aorta and cross the vertebral bodies to run within the intercostal spaces on the right side.

19. **C.** During quiet respiration the contraction and relaxation of the diaphragm change the volume of the pulmonary cavities and consequently the expansion and contraction of the lungs (Section 8.4).

A. The intercostal muscles are used to elevate and lower the ribs during forced inspiration and forced expiration.

B. Scalene muscles are extrinsic muscles of respiration that move the ribs during forced inspiration.

D. The pectoralis major moves and stabilizes the upper limb but also assists movements of the ribs during deep inspiration.

E. Anterior abdominal muscles contract during forced expiration.

20. **A.** The aortic valve is most audible at the right 2nd inter-costal space just lateral to the sternum (Section 7.4).

B. Sound from the left atrioventricular (AV) valve is most audible over the left 5th intercostal space on the midclavicular line.

C. Sound from the pulmonary valve is most audible over the left 2nd intercostal space just lateral to the sternum.

D. Sound from the right AV valve is most audible from the left 5th intercostal space at the sternal margin.

E. There is usually no audible sound from the valve of the coronary sinus.

21. **D.** The right 2nd intercostal space at the sternal border is the site of auscultation of the aortic valve (Section 7.4).

A. The left 5th intercostal space at the midclavicular line is the site of auscultation of the mitral valve.

B. The left 2nd intercostal space at the sternal border is the site of auscultation of the aortic valve.

C. The left 2nd intercostal space at the sternal border is the site of auscultation of the pulmonary valve.

E. The left 5th intercostal space at the sternal border is the site of auscultation of the tricuspid valve.

22. **D.** During expiration, the contraction of the pulmonary cavity causes an increase in intrapleural pressure, which forces air to be expelled from the lung (Section 8.4).

A. Surfactant lining the walls of the alveoli prevents them from collapsing during expiration.

B. During inspiration the thoracic cavity expands, pulling the pleural sac outward and causing an increase in lung volume.

C. The elevation of the ribs increases the size of the thoracic cavity during inspiration.

E. Incomplete cartilaginous rings in the walls of the bronchi prevent them from collapsing during expiration.

23. **D.** At the beginning of ventricular diastole (relaxation of the ventricles), the semilunar valves close, and backflow in the aorta fills the coronary arteries (Section 7.4).

A. The ventricles contract during ventricular systole.

B. Blood from the right ventricle is ejected into the pulmonary trunk during ventricular systole.

C. The semilunar valves open during ventricular systole to allow blood to flow into the aorta and pulmonary trunk.

E. During the initial phase of ventricular systole, as ventricular pressure increases, the atrioventricular valves close.

24. B. Backflow through collateral channels would affect veins that are part of the azygos and caval systems. Blood would eventually drain from the inferior vena cava to the right side of the heart, so the pulmonary and cardiac circulations would remain unaffected (Section 5.1).

A. External jugular veins drain into the azygos system via the internal jugular and brachiocephalic veins.

C. Reverse flow through the azygos vein into the posterior intercostal veins would cause dilation of these vessels.

D. As in all parts of the azygos system, the hemiazygos veins would dilate with increased flow.

E. The reverse flow in the subclavian vein into their tributaries, including the internal thoracic vein, would result in dilation of these vessels.

25. A. Postganglionic sympathetic nerves arise from the cervical and thoracic sympathetic trunk as the superior, middle, and inferior cervical cardiac nerves (Sections 7.4 and 7.5).

B. Visceral sensory fibers that innervate both the baroreceptors and chemoreceptors of the heart travel with the parasympathetic fibers of the vagus nerve.

C. The cardiac branches of the vagus nerve contain only parasympathetic fibers.

D. The cardiac plexus regulates the heart rate, but the SA node initiates and coordinates the timing of the contraction of the heart’s chambers.

E. Pain sensation from the heart is carried by visceral sensory fibers that travel with sympathetic fibers to the T1–T5 spinal cord.

26. **D.** At birth, the oval foramen, a normal opening between the right and left atria during fetal growth, closes, thus forcing blood into the pulmonary circulation. Failure to do so results in an opening known as an atrial septa defect (Section 7.6).

A. Because of the reduced pressure in the right atrium compared to that in the left atrium, an ASD results in a left-to right-shunt.

B. The increased flow into the right atrium results in an increased flow through the pulmonary trunk and pulmonary circulation.

C. Failure of the ductus arteriosus to constrict is known as a patent ductus arteriosus, a condition unrelated to an ASD.

E. There is no collateral circulation that compensates for the defect in the atrial septum.

27. **E.** Superiorly, the esophagus lies posterior to the trachea, inferiorly it passes posterior to the left atrium (Section 7.7).

A. The esophageal plexus receives parasympathetic fibers from the vagus nerves as well as sympathetic innervation from thoracic splanchnic nerves.

B. The lower esophageal veins anastomose inferiorly with inferior phrenic veins, which are tributaries of the portal system that drains the gastrointestinal system. This is an important anastomosis between the caval and the portal venous systems.

A. The upper esophageal sphincter is created by the cricopharyngeus muscle in the neck.

A. The esophageal hiatus is formed by the crura of the diaphragm at the T10 vertebral level.

28. **C.** The costodiaphragmatic recess is a lower recess of the pleural cavity, where the fluid is likely to accumulate (Section 8.1).

A. The pleural cavity is surrounded by a continuous single layer of pleura. Parietal pleura lines the outer wall of the cavity, where it is adjacent to the ribs, the diaphragm, and the mediastinum. It is continuous with the visceral pleura that covers the surface of the lung.

B. Each pleural cavity is a separate space. There is no communication between the right and the left cavities.

D. A chest tube is always inserted above the rib to avoid damage to the intercostal neurovascular bundle that runs in the groove along the lower edge of the rib.

D. A "mediastinal shift" is a symptom of a tension pneumothorax but not of a pleural effusion.

29. **B.** Lobar consolidations such as from pneumonia, often cause the "silhouette sign," which results in a normal anatomic border being rendered invisible because the normally air-filled adjacent lung is filled with fluid. The right lower lobe abuts the right hemidiaphragm, thus obscuring it (Chapter 9).

A. The majority of the right heart border abuts the right middle lobe.

C. The left hemidiaphragm would still be outlined by air in the left lower lobe.

D. The right upper mediastinum is not contiguous with the right lower lobe.

E. The right breast shadow would not be affected by an intrapulmonary process.

30. **C.** Ultrasound (echocardiogram) provides real-time evaluation of cardiac anatomy and is excellent for assess-ment of function including wall motion, contractility, and cardiac output. Ultrasound can be done at the bedside, is relatively fast and inexpensive, and uses no ionizing radiation (Chapter 9).

A. Chest x-ray may show evidence of congestive heart failure but would not identify cardiac abnormalities directly.

B. Cardiac anatomy is well delineated on CT, but function is not.

D. ECG does not show motion abnormalities.

E. Dynamic cardiac MRI is an excellent tool for cardiac anatomic and functional assessment but would not be suitable for an unstable patient. Long scan times with the patient placed in the MRI machine are prohibitive in this setting.

Unit IV Abdomen

10 The Abdominal Wall and Inguinal Region
- 10.1 Regions and Planes of the Abdominal Wall
- 10.2 Structure of the Abdominal Wall
  - 10.1 Muscles of the Anterolateral and Posterior Abdominal Walls
- 10.3 Neurovasculature of the Abdominal Wall
- 10.4 The Inguinal Region
  - 10.2 Structures and Relations of the Inguinal Canal
  - 10.3 Coverings of the Testis
  - 10.1 Clinical Correlation: Inguinal Hernia
  - 10.2 Clinical Correlation: Hydrocele
  - 10.3 Clinical Correlation: Varicocele
  - 10.4 Clinical Correlation: Testicular Torsion
  - 10.5 Clinical Correlation: Testicular Cancer

11 The Peritoneal Cavity and Neurovasculature of the Abdomen
- 11.1 The Peritoneum and Peritoneal Cavity

11.1 Organs of the Abdomen

11.2 Boundaries of the Omental Bursa (Lesser Sac)

11.3 Boundaries of the Omental Foramen

11.1 Clinical Correlation: Peritoneal Infections and Abscesses

11.2 Clinical Correlation: Peritonitis and Ascites

11.2 Neurovasculature of the Abdomen

11.4 Branches of the Abdominal Aorta

11.5 Tributaries of the Inferior Vena Cava

11.6 Tributaries of the Portal Vein

11.7 Lymph Node Groups and Tributary Regions

11.8 Autonomic Plexuses in the Abdomen and Pelvis

11.9 Effects of the Autonomic Nervous System in the Abdomen and Pelvis

11.3 Clinical Correlation: Abdominal Aortic Aneurysm

11.4 Clinical Correlation: Mesenteric Ischemia

11.5 Clinical Correlation: Anatomoses Between Arteries of the Large Intestine

11.6 Clinical Correlation: Esophageal Varices

11.7 Clinical Correlation: Portal Hypertension and Surgical Portocaval Shunts

12 Abdominal Viscera

12.1 Organs of the Peritoneal Cavity— Gastrointestinal

Tract

12.1 Developmental Correlation: Rotation of the Midgut Tube

12.2 Developmental Correlation: Localization of Pain from Foregut, Midgut, and Hindgut Derivatives

12.3 Clinical Correlation: Gastric Ulcers

12.4 Clinical Correlation: Duodenal (Peptic) Ulcers

12.5 Developmental Correlation: Ileal Diverticulum

12.6 Clinical Correlation: Inflammatory Bowel Disease

12.7 Clinical Correlation: Appendicitis and Variable Position of the Vermiform Appendix

12.8 Clinical Correlation: Colon Carcinoma

12.2 Organs of the Peritoneal Cavity—Accessory Organs of the Gastrointestinal Tract

12.1 Hepatic Segments

12.9 Clinical Correlation: Cirrhosis of the Liver

12.10 Clinical Correlation: Gallstones

12.11 Clinical Correlation: Cholecystectomy and the Cystohepatic Triangle (of Calot)

12.12 Clinical Correlation: Implications of the Shared Emptying of the Bile Duct and Pancreatic Duct

12.13 Clinical Correlation: Carcinoma of the Pancreas

12.14 Clinical Correlation: Splenic Trauma and Splenectomy

- 12.15 Developmental Correlation: Accessory Spleens
- 12.3 Organs of the Retroperitoneum
  - 12.16 Clinical Correlation: Renal Vein Entrapment
  - 12.17 Developmental Correlation: Common Renal Anomalies
  - 12.18 Clinical Correlation: Calculi of the Kidney and Ureter

13 Clinical Imaging Basics of the Abdomen

- 13.1 Suitability of Imaging Modalities for the Abdomen

Review Questions: Abdomen

10 The Abdominal Wall and Inguinal Region

The abdomen, the region of the trunk between the thorax and the pelvis, contains the largest portion of the **abdominopelvic cavity,** a peritoneal-lined space that it shares with the pelvis (**Fig. 10.1**). The abdomen houses the primary organs of the gastrointestinal and urinary systems, although some abdominal viscera (i.e., small intestine) typically overflow the boundaries of the abdomen to occupy pelvic spaces, and pelvic viscera, when distended (i.e., bladder and uterus), can extend superiorly into the abdomen.

The abdominal wall, composed of skin, subcutaneous tissue, and muscles, is supported by its attachments to the ribs, lumbar vertebrae, and bony pelvis. It moves and stabilizes the trunk, supports the abdominal viscera, and creates intra-abdominal pressure that is crucial in digestion and respiration. The muscular abdominal wall provides little protection for underlying viscera, but much of the upper abdominal viscera lies under the dome of the diaphragm, where the viscera are protected by the thoracic skeleton. The bony pelvis protects most viscera in the lower abdomen.

10.1 Regions and Planes of the Abdominal Wall

— In order to describe the location of abdominal viscera, we divide the abdomen into four quadrants or nine regions, using vertical reference lines and standard transverse planes **(Fig. 10.2)**.

— The **transpyloric plane**, a transverse plane at the level of T12-L1, measured halfway between the jugular notch and pubic crest, is a useful horizontal plane that provides orientation to the internal anatomy of the abdomen (**Fig. 10.3**). The T12–L1 plane passes through (or very close to)

  - the pylorus of the stomach,
  - the ampulla of the duodenum,
  - the origin of the celiac trunk,
  - the origin of the superior mesenteric artery,
  - the origin of the portal vein,
  - the neck of the pancreas, and

- the left colic flexure of the large intestine.

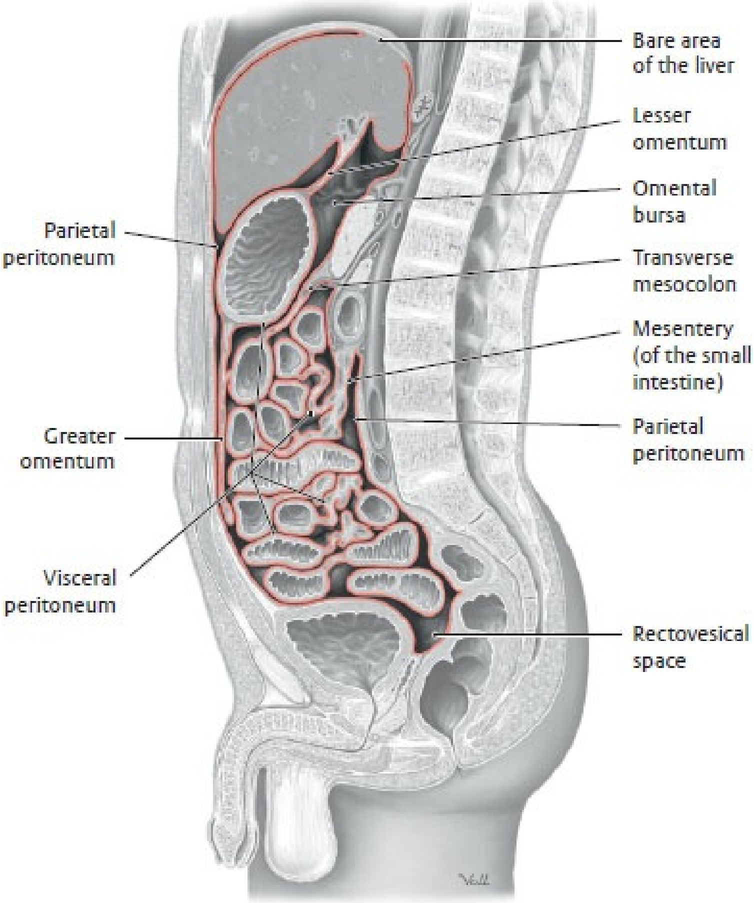
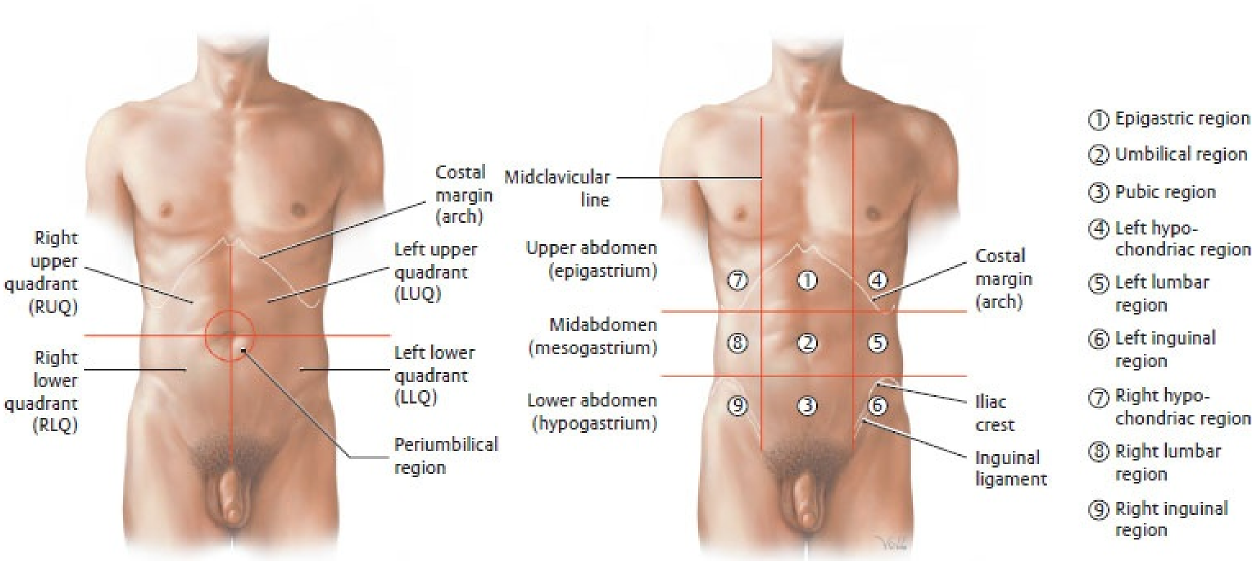

Bare area of the liver
Lesser omentum
Omental bursa
Parietal peritoneum
Transverse mesocolon
Mesentery (of the small intestine)
Greater omentum
Parietal peritoneum
Visceral peritoneum
Rectovesical space

Fig. 10.1 Peritoneal relationships

Midsagittal section through abdominopelvic cavity in the male, viewed from the left side. The peritoneum is shown *(red)*. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)



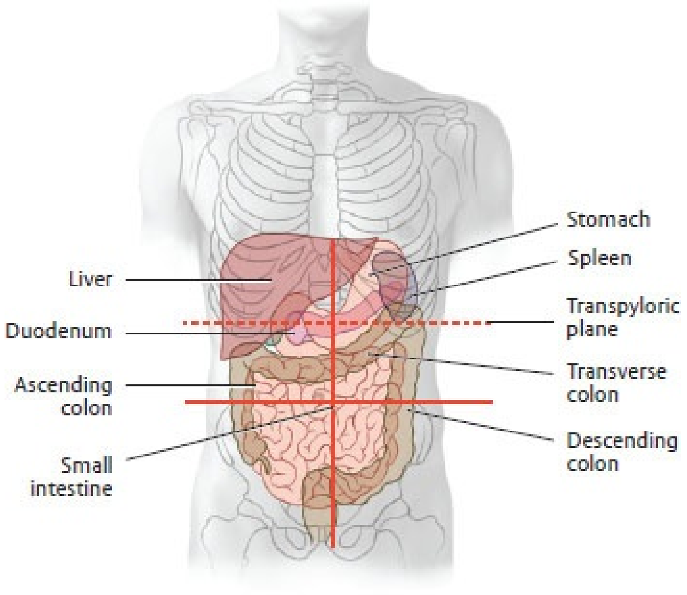
Costal margin (arch)
Right upper quadrant (RUQ)
Left upper quadrant (LUQ)
Right lower quadrant (RLQ)
Left lower quadrant (LLQ)
Periumbilical region
Midclavicular line
Upper abdomen (epigastrium)
Midabdomen (mesogastrium)
Lower abdomen (hypogastrium)
⑦
①
④
⑧
②
⑤
⑨
③
⑥
Costal margin (arch)
Iliac crest
Inguinal ligament
① Epigastric region
② Umbilical region
③ Pubic region
④ Left hypo-chondriac region
⑤ Left lumbar region
⑥ Left inguinal region
⑦ Right hypo-chondriac region
⑧ Right lumbar region
⑨ Right inguinal region

A The abdomen is divided into four quadrants by two perpendicular lines that intersect at the umbilicus.

B Coordinate system composed of two vertical and two horizontal lines divide the abdomen into nine regions, each located in either the upper, middle, or lower abdomen. The two vertical lines are the left and right midclavicular lines. One of the two horizontal lines passes through the lowest point of the 10th ribs and the other through the summit of the two iliac crests.

Fig. 10.2 Criteria for dividing the abdomen into regions

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)



Stomach
Spleen
Liver
Transpyloric plane
Duodenum
Transverse colon
Ascending colon
Descending colon
Small intestine

Fig. 10.3 Transpyloric plane *(dashed red line)* and its relationship to abdominal viscera

Anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York:

Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

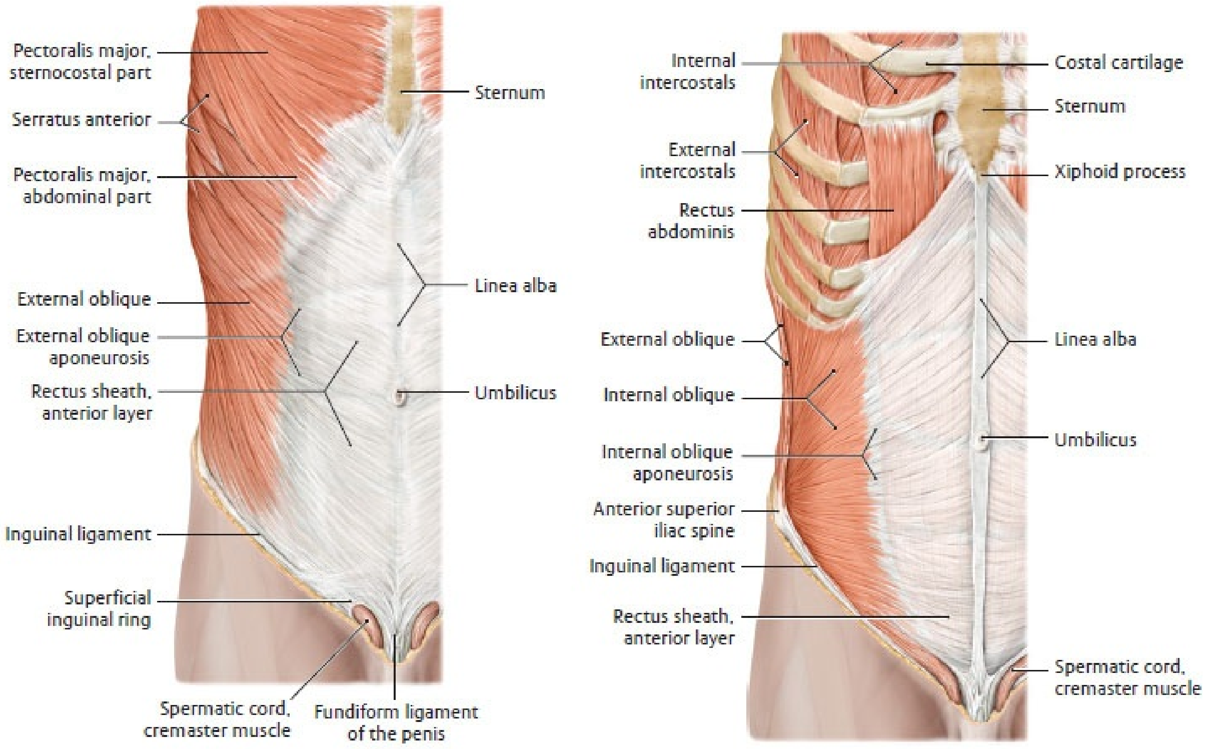
10.2 Structure of the Abdominal Wall

Subcutaneous Layer

- The **subcutaneous layer**, sometimes referred to as the “superficial fascia,” of the abdominal wall, lies deep to the skin and superficial to the muscular layer. It has two components (see **Fig. 10.5**):
  - The **superficial fatty layer (Camper’s fascia)**, a subcutane-ous layer of fat whose thickness varies among individuals and that is continuous with the superficial fascia of the thorax, back, and lower limb
  - The **deep membranous layer (Scarpa’s fascia)**, a tough fibrous sheet that lies deep to the superficial fatty layer, covers the lower anterior abdominal wall, and extends inferiorly into the perineum, where it is continuous with the **superficial perineal (Colles’) fascia.**

Muscular Layer: Anterior and Posterior Walls

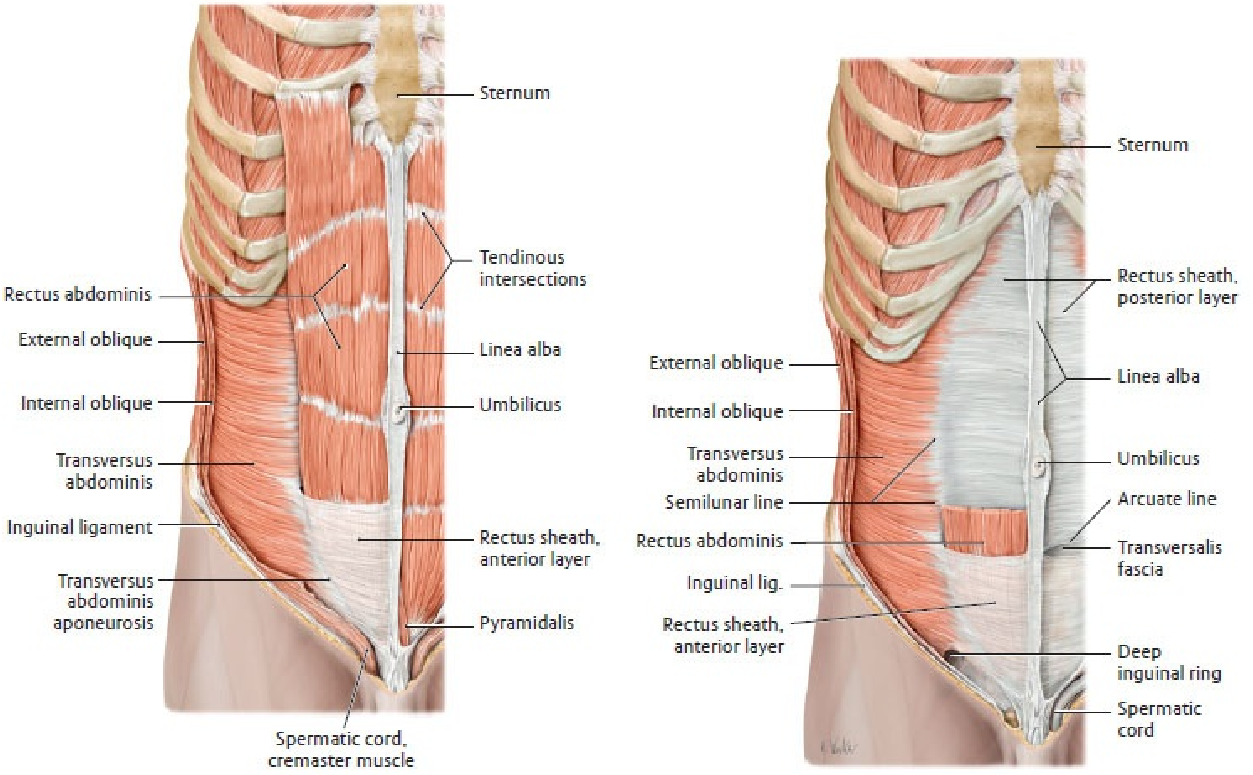
- Three flat muscles make up most of the muscular layer of the lateral and anterior walls of the abdomen: the **external oblique, internal oblique,** and **transversus abdominis**. Their large aponeuroses constitute the most anterior part of the abdominal wall **(Fig. 10.4**; **Table 10.1)**.
  - The thickened inferior edge of the external oblique aponeurosis forms the **inguinal ligament,** which attaches laterally to the **anterior superior iliac spine** and medially to the **pubic tubercle** of the pubis. Some fibers of the medial end of the ligament reflect downward as the **lacunar ligament** to attach to the superior edge of the pubis (see **Fig. 10.14**).
  - Inferiorly, the aponeuroses of the internal oblique and transversus abdominis muscles join to form the **conjoined tendon,** where they attach to the pubis.
  - In the anterior midline, the aponeuroses of the three muscles overlap those of the contralateral muscles, forming the **linea alba,** a tendinous raphe (junction) that extends from the xiphoid process to the pubis. The **umbilical ring,** a remnant of the opening for the umbilical cord, interrupts the raphe at its midpoint.



Pectoralis major, sternocostal part
Serratus anterior
Pectoralis major, abdominal part
External oblique
External oblique aponeurosis
Rectus sheath, anterior layer
Inguinal ligament
Superficial inguinal ring
Spermatic cord, cremaster muscle
Fundiform ligament of the penis
Sternum
Linea alba
Umbilicus
Internal intercostals
External intercostals
Rectus abdominis
External oblique
Internal oblique
Internal oblique aponeurosis
Anterior superior iliac spine
Inguinal ligament
Rectus sheath, anterior layer
Costal cartilage
Sternum
Xiphoid process
Linea alba
Umbilicus
Spermatic cord, cremaster muscle

A Superficial abdominal wall muscles.

B *Removed:* External oblique, pectoralis major, and serratus anterior.



Rectus abdominis
External oblique
Internal oblique
Transversus abdominis
Inguinal ligament
Transversus abdominis aponeurosis
Spermatic cord, cremaster muscle
Sternum
Tendinous intersections
Linea alba
Umbilicus
Rectus sheath, anterior layer
Pyramidalis
External oblique
Internal oblique
Transversus abdominis
Semilunar line
Rectus abdominis
Inguinal lig.
Rectus sheath, anterior layer
Sternum
Rectus sheath, posterior layer
Linea alba
Umbilicus
Arcuate line
Transversalis fascia
Deep inguinal ring
Spermatic cord

C *Removed:* Internal oblique.

D *Removed:* Rectus abdominis.

Fig. 10.4 Muscles of the anterolateral abdominal wall

Right side, anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U.

THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

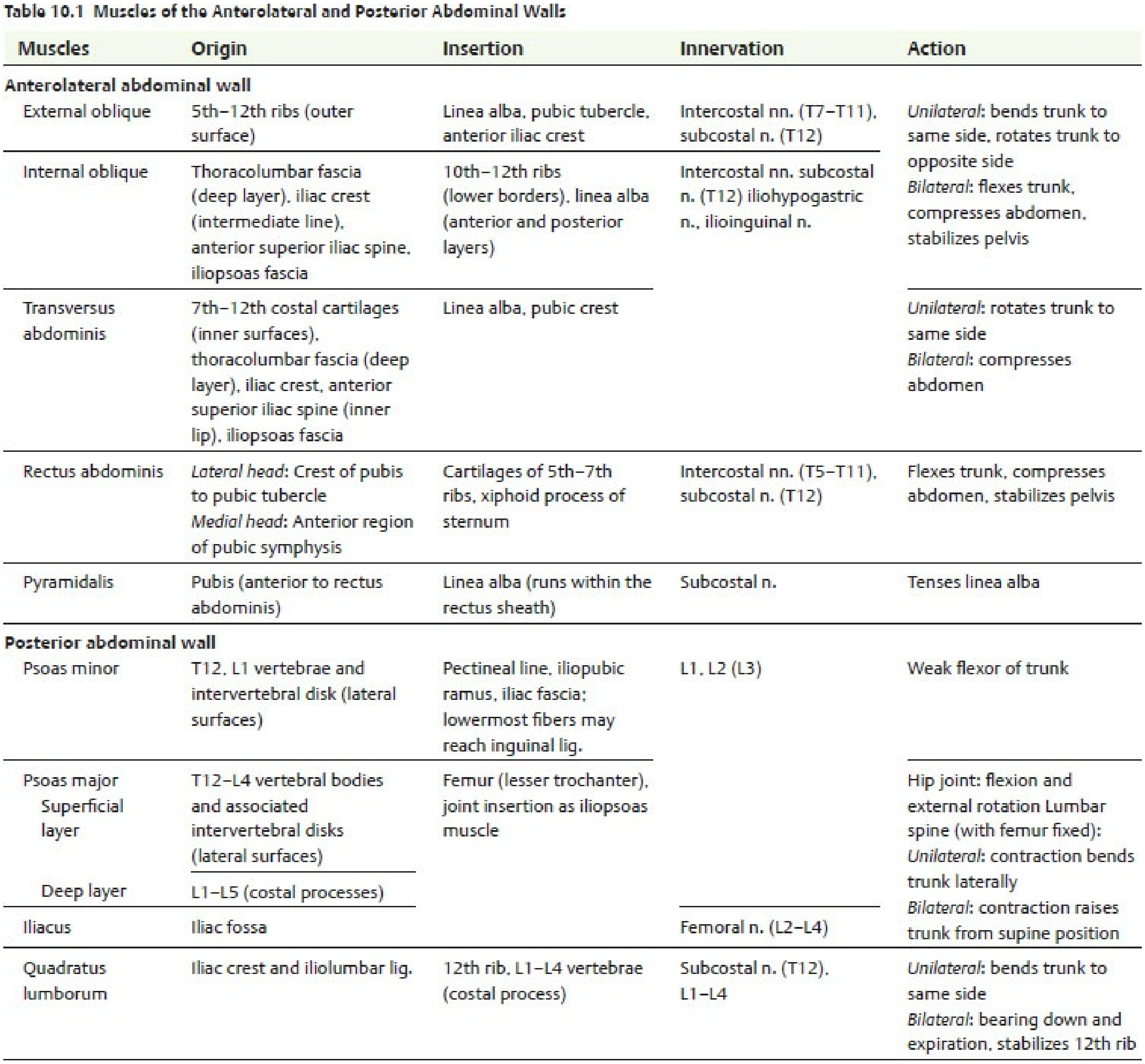


Table 10.1 Muscles of the Anterolateral and Posterior Abdominal Walls

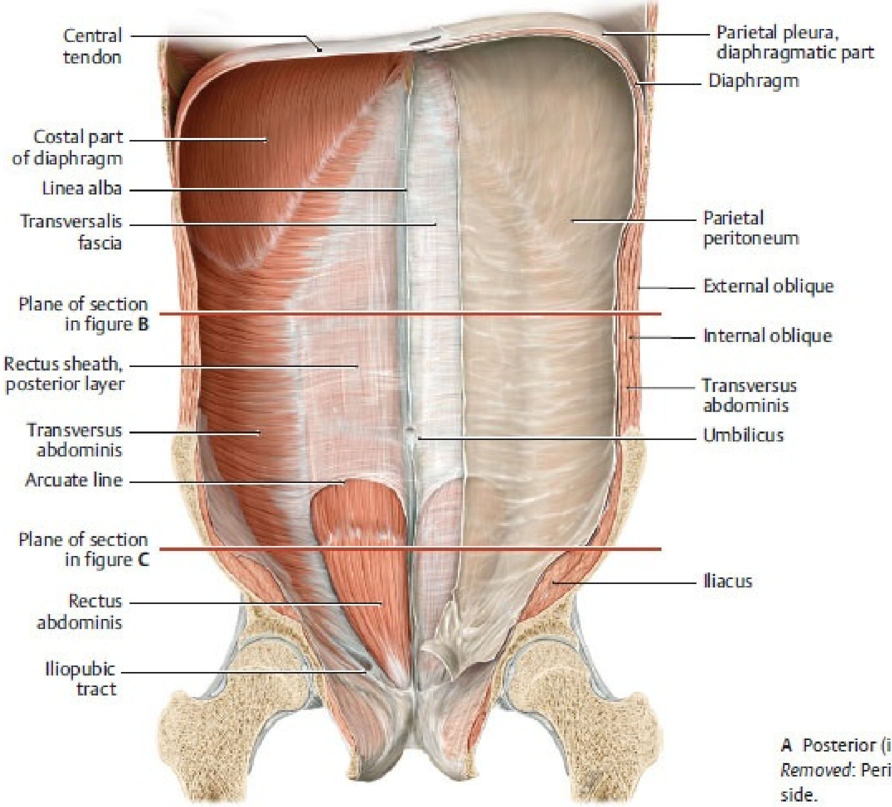
Muscles	Origin	Insertion	Innervation	Action
Anterolateral abdominal wall				
External oblique	5th–12th ribs (outer surface)	Linea alba, pubic tubercle, anterior iliac crest	Intercostal nn. (T7–T11), subcostal n. (T12)	*Unilateral*: bends trunk to same side, rotates trunk to opposite side *Bilateral*: flexes trunk, compresses abdomen, stabilizes pelvis
Internal oblique	Thoracolumbar fascia (deep layer), iliac crest (intermediate line), anterior superior iliac spine, iliopsoas fascia	10th–12th ribs (lower borders), linea alba (anterior and posterior layers)	Intercostal nn. subcostal n. (T12) iliohypogastric n., ilioinguinal n.	
Transversus abdominis	7th–12th costal cartilages (inner surfaces), thoracolumbar fascia (deep layer), iliac crest, anterior superior iliac spine (inner lip), iliopsoas fascia	Linea alba, pubic crest		*Unilateral*: rotates trunk to same side *Bilateral*: compresses abdomen
Rectus abdominis	*Lateral head*: Crest of pubis to pubic tubercle *Medial head*: Anterior region of pubic symphysis	Cartilages of 5th–7th ribs, xiphoid process of sternum	Intercostal nn. (T5–T11), subcostal n. (T12)	Flexes trunk, compresses abdomen, stabilizes pelvis
Pyramidalis	Pubis (anterior to rectus abdominis)	Linea alba (runs within the rectus sheath)	Subcostal n.	Tenses linea alba
Posterior abdominal wall				
Psoas minor	T12, L1 vertebrae and intervertebral disk (lateral surfaces)	Pectineal line, iliopubic ramus, iliac fascia; lowermost fibers may reach inguinal lig.	L1, L2 (L3)	Weak flexor of trunk
Psoas major Superficial layer	T12–L4 vertebral bodies and associated intervertebral disks (lateral surfaces)	Femur (lesser trochanter), joint insertion as iliopsoas muscle		Hip joint: flexion and external rotation Lumbar spine (with femur fixed): *Unilateral*: contraction bends trunk laterally *Bilateral*: contraction raises trunk from supine position
Deep layer	L1–L5 (costal processes)			
Iliacus	Iliac fossa		Femoral n. (L2–L4)	
Quadratus lumborum	Iliac crest and iliolumbar lig.	12th rib, L1–L4 vertebrae (costal process)	Subcostal n. (T12), L1–L4	*Unilateral*: bends trunk to same side *Bilateral*: bearing down and expiration, stabilizes 12th rib

- On either side of the anterior midline, a **rectus abdominis** and **pyramidalis** muscle is enclosed in a rectus sheath, whose lateral edges are visible externally as the **semilunar lines**. The sheath has anterior and posterior layers, formed by the aponeuroses of the anterolateral muscles as they pass around the rectus muscles to decussate at the linea alba in the midline **(Fig. 10.5** and **10.6)**.
  - The anterior layer extends the length of the rectus muscle, but the posterior layer lines only its upper two thirds. The inferior end of the posterior layer is marked by a curved horizontal **arcuate line**, located at

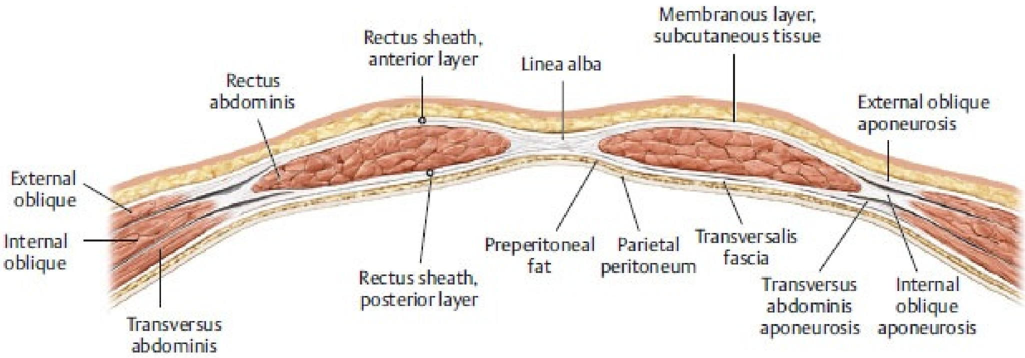
  a point one third of the distance between the umbilicus and pubis.
  - Above the arcuate line, the anterior layer of the sheath is formed by the aponeurosis of the external oblique and an anterior leaf of the aponeurosis of the internal oblique. The posterior layer of the sheath is formed by the aponeurosis of the transversus abdominis and posterior leaf of the aponeurosis of the internal oblique.
  - Below the arcuate line, the aponeuroses of all three muscles pass anterior to the rectus muscle to form the anterior rectus sheath. In this area, the posterior surface of the rectus muscle is lined only by transversalis fascia (a component of the endoabdominal fascia) and peritoneum.

— The posterior abdominal wall is the posterior boundary of the abdominal cavity. Although continuous with the region designated as the "back," which contains the vertebral column and paravertebral muscles, the posterior abdominal wall is conceptually considered a separate region.

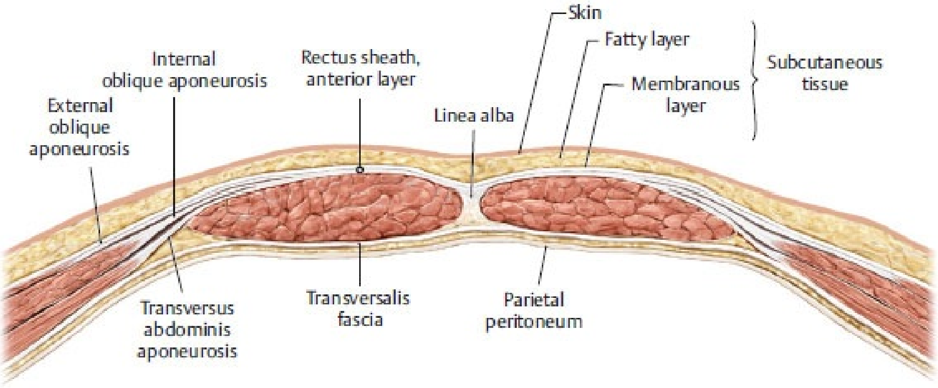
— Five muscles form most of the posterior abdominal wall: the **psoas major, psoas minor** (sometimes absent), **quadratus lumborum, iliacus**, and **diaphragm (Fig. 10.7)**.
  - The psoas major and iliacus muscles unite to form the **iliopsoas muscle**, which passes into the thigh and acts on the hip joint.
  - The thoracic diaphragm forms part of the superior portion of the posterior abdominal wall.


Central tendon
Costal part of diaphragm
Linea alba
Transversalis fascia
Plane of section in figure B
Rectus sheath, posterior layer
Transversus abdominis
Arcuate line
Plane of section in figure C
Rectus abdominis
Iliopubic tract
Parietal pleura, diaphragmatic part
Diaphragm
Parietal peritoneum
External oblique
Internal oblique
Transversus abdominis
Umbilicus
Iliacus

A Posterior (internal) view of anterior abdominal wall. *Removed*: Peritoneum and transversalis fascia on the left side.


Membranous layer, subcutaneous tissue
Rectus sheath, anterior layer
Linea alba
Rectus abdominis
External oblique aponeurosis
External oblique
Internal oblique
Transversus abdominis
Rectus sheath, posterior layer
Preperitoneal fat
Parietal peritoneum
Transversalis fascia
Transversus abdominis aponeurosis
Internal oblique aponeurosis

B Section through the abdominal wall superior to the arcuate line.


Skin
Fatty layer
Membranous layer
Subcutaneous tissue
Internal oblique aponeurosis
Rectus sheath, anterior layer
External oblique aponeurosis
Linea alba
Transversus abdominis aponeurosis
Transversalis fascia
Parietal peritoneum

C Section through the abdominal wall inferior to the arcuate line.

Fig. 10.5 Anterior abdominal wall and rectus sheath

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th Edition. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

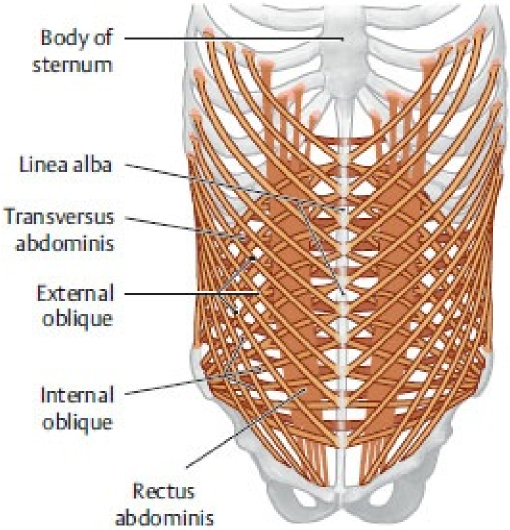


Fig. 10.6 Arrangement of the abdominal wall muscles and rectus sheath

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- The transversus abdominis muscle contributes to the lateral part of the posterior abdominal wall.
- Of the posterior wall muscles, only the quadratus lumborum is enclosed by the thoracolumbar fascia (anterior layer), which also encloses the paraspinal muscles of the back. This layer passes posterior to the psoas major and laterally fuses with the aponeurosis of the transversus abdominis.

— **Endoabdominal fascia** is a deep fascial layer that lines the internal surface of the abdominal wall muscles. It lies superficial to (outside of) the parietal peritoneum and in most places is separated from it by a layer of fat called **preperito-neal fat**.

- Each part of the endoabdominal fascia is named for the muscle it lines: **transversalis fascia (Fig. 10.5), diaphrag-matic fascia, psoas fascia**.
- In the inguinal region (groin), a thickened line of the transversalis fascia, the **iliopubic tract**, attaches to the inner edge of the inguinal ligament, where it supports the posterior wall of the inguinal canal **(Fig. 10.5)**.

- On the posterior wall, the psoas fascia attaches to the lumbar vertebrae medially, and superiorly it blends with the medial arcuate ligament of the diaphragm. It extends inferiorly into the thigh with the tendon of the iliopsoas. This fascia separates the psoas muscle and the **lumbar plexus** (see Section 11.2) from viscera in the retroperito-neum of the abdominal cavity.

Internal Surface of the Anterior Abdominal Wall

The internal surface of the anterior abdominal wall is lined with transversalis fascia and parietal peritoneum, with a variable amount of intervening preperitoneal fat **(Figs. 10.8** and **10.9)**.

— **Peritoneal folds** form where structures tent the peritoneum as they course between it and the transversalis fascia. The folds include

- the **median umbilical fold,** a single midline fold created by the **median umbilical ligament,** a remnant of the **urachus** (a fetal connection between the bladder and umbilicus);
- the **medial umbilical folds,** paired folds created by the **medial umbilical ligaments,** remnants of the umbilical arteries in the fetus; and
- the **lateral umbilical folds,** paired folds created by the **inferior epigastric vessels.**

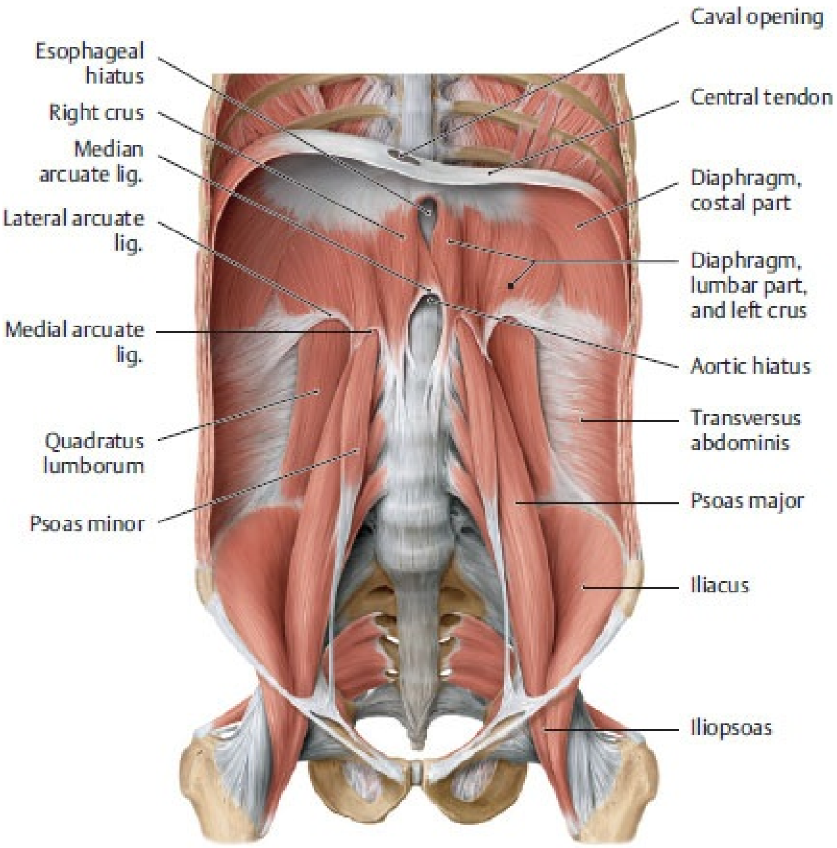

Caval opening
Esophageal hiatus
Central tendon
Right crus
Median arcuate lig.
Diaphragm, costal part
Lateral arcuate lig.
Diaphragm, lumbar part, and left crus
Medial arcuate lig.
Aortic hiatus
Transversus abdominis
Quadratus lumborum
Psoas major
Psoas minor
Iliacus
Iliopsoas

Fig. 10.7 Muscles of the posterior abdominal wall

Coronal section with the diaphragm in the intermediate position, anterior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

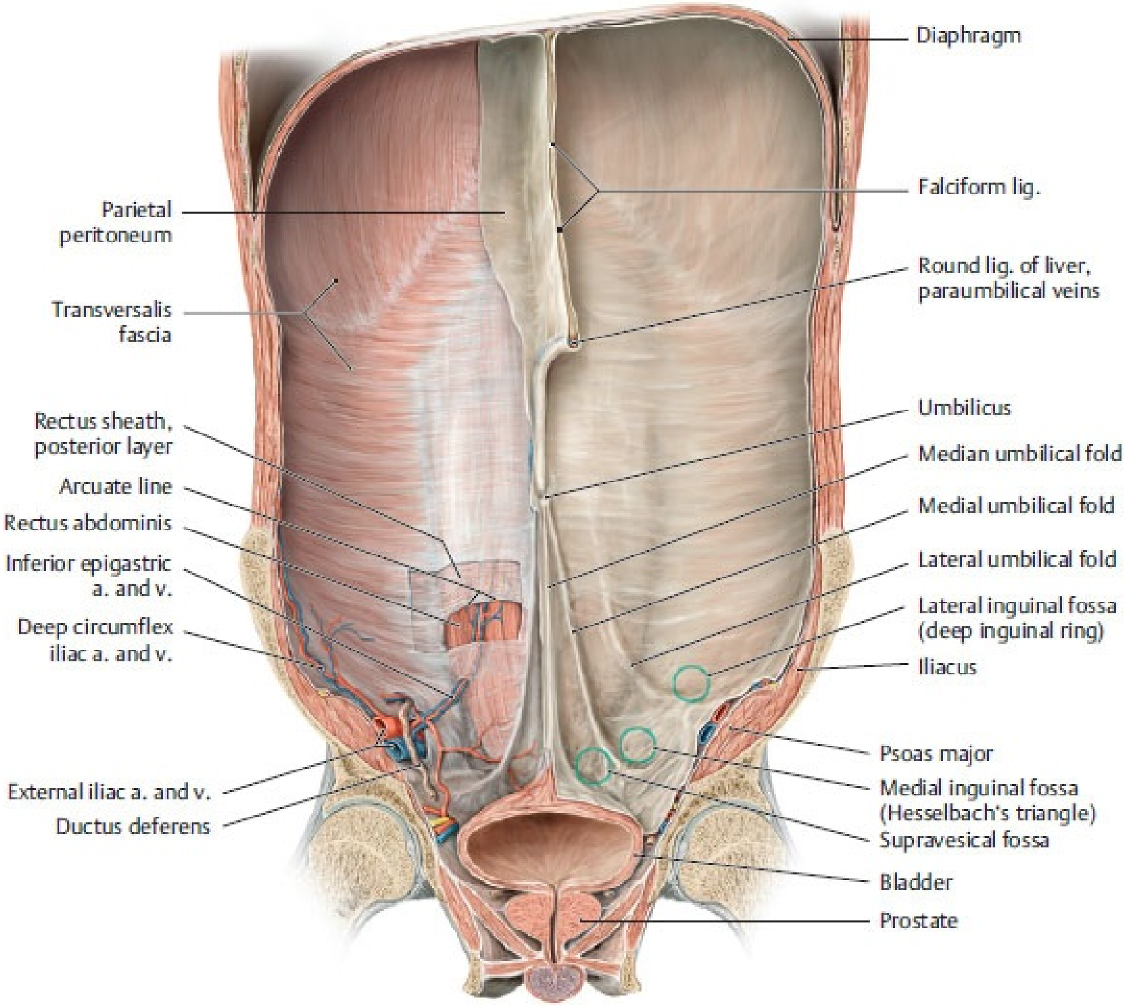

Diaphragm
Parietal peritoneum
Falciform lig.
Transversalis fascia
Round lig. of liver, paraumbilical veins
Rectus sheath, posterior layer
Umbilicus
Median umbilical fold
Arcuate line
Medial umbilical fold
Rectus abdominis
Lateral umbilical fold
Inferior epigastric a. and v.
Lateral inguinal fossa (deep inguinal ring)
Deep circumflex iliac a. and v.
Iliacus
Psoas major
External iliac a. and v.
Medial inguinal fossa (Hesselbach's triangle)
Ductus deferens
Supravesical fossa
Bladder
Prostate

Fig. 10.8 Internal surface anatomy of the anterior abdominal wall in the male

Coronal section through the abdominal and pelvic cavity at the level of the hip joints, posterior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

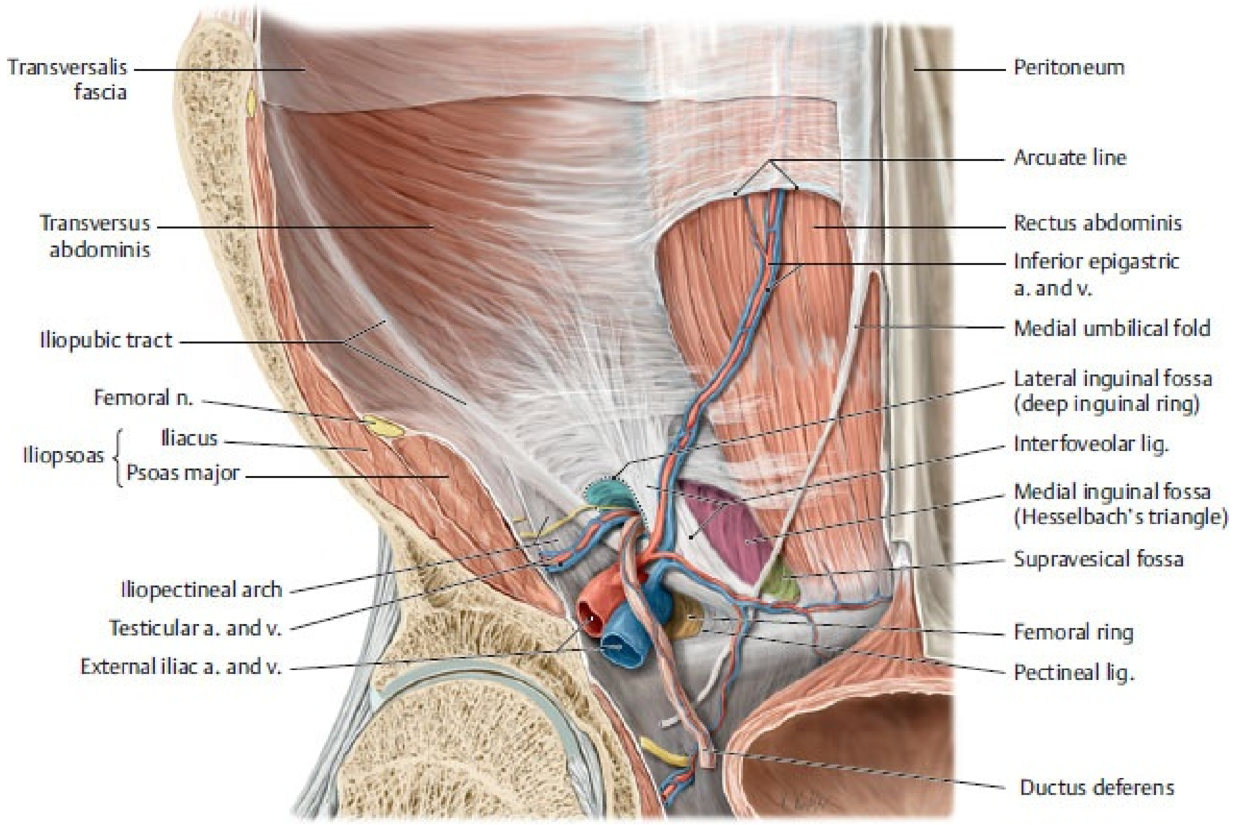

Transversalis fascia
Transversus abdominis
Iliopubic tract
Femoral n.
Iliopsoas
Iliacus
Psoas major
Iliopectineal arch
Testicular a. and v.
External iliac a. and v.
Peritoneum
Arcuate line
Rectus abdominis
Inferior epigastric a. and v.
Medial umbilical fold
Lateral inguinal fossa (deep inguinal ring)
Interfoveolar lig.
Medial inguinal fossa (Hesselbach's triangle)
Supravesical fossa
Femoral ring
Pectineal lig.
Ductus deferens

Fig. 10.9 Inferior anterior abdominal wall: structure and fossae

Coronal section, posterior (internal) view of left inferior portion of the anterior abdominal wall. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- **Peritoneal fossae** are formed between the peritoneal folds and are potential sites of herniation (protrusion of viscera through a wall or tissue). The fossae include
  - the **supravesical fossa** between the median and medial umbilical folds;
  - the **medial inguinal fossa,** commonly known as the **inguinal triangle** (Hesselbach's triangle) between the medial and lateral umbilical folds; and
  - the **lateral inguinal fossa,** lateral to the lateral umbilical folds.
- The **falciform ligament** is a double-layered peritoneal reflection between the liver and the anterior abdominal wall that extends superiorly from the umbilicus to the roof of the abdominal cavity. It encloses the round ligament (remnant of the umbilical vein) and paraumbilical veins.

10.3 Neurovasculature of the Abdominal Wall

Arteries of the Abdominal Wall

Arteries of the abdominal wall, which anastomose extensively with one another, arise from the internal thoracic artery, the abdominal aorta, the external iliac artery, and the femoral artery (**Fig. 10.10**).

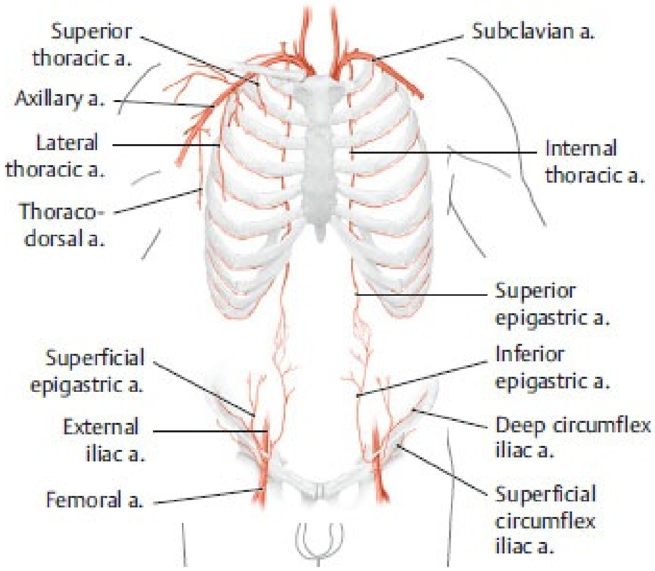

Superior thoracic a.
Axillary a.
Lateral thoracic a.
Thoraco-dorsal a.
Superficial epigastric a.
External iliac a.
Femoral a.
Subclavian a.
Internal thoracic a.
Superior epigastric a.
Inferior epigastric a.
Deep circumflex iliac a.
Superficial circumflex iliac a.

Fig. 10.10 Arteries of the abdominal wall

The superior and inferior epigastric arteries form a potential anastomosis between the subclavian and femoral arteries, which can allow blood to bypass the abdominal aorta. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 2nd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2016.)

- The branches of each internal thoracic artery are
  - the musculophrenic artery and
  - the superior epigastric artery, which descends within the rectus sheath posterior to the rectus abdominis muscle, where it anastomoses with the inferior epigastric artery.
- The paired segmental branches of the abdominal aorta are
  - the intercostal, subcostal, and lumbar arteries.
- The branches of the external iliac artery are
  - the inferior epigastric artery and deep circumflex iliac artery.
- The branches of the femoral artery in the thigh that supply the abdominal wall are

  - the **superficial epigastric artery** and
  - the **superficial circumflex iliac artery.**

Veins of the Abdominal Wall

- The deep veins of the abdominal wall accompany the arteries of similar name and drain to the superior and inferior venae cavae via the brachiocephalic, azygos, hemiazygos, and common iliac veins **(Fig 10.11)**.
- An extensive subcutaneous venous network drains superiorly to the internal thoracic and **lateral thoracic veins** of the thorax and inferiorly to the **inferior** and **superficial epigastric veins.**
- Obstruction of the superior or inferior vena cava may alter the venous flow across the abdominal wall, resulting in the development or enlargement of a superficial anastomosis between the axillary and femoral veins through the thoraco-epigastric vein (see Section 6.4).

Lymphatic Drainage of the Abdominal Wall

- Lymphatic drainage of the abdominal wall is divided into upper and lower regions by a curved line (“watershed”) located between the umbilicus and costal margin **(Fig. 10.12)**.
  - From the upper region, lymph drains superiorly to ipsilateral axillary and parasternal nodes before draining superiorly to the right and left jugulosubclavian junctions (venous angles).
  - From the lower region, lymph drains inferiorly to ipsilateral superficial inguinal nodes. These drain to external iliac and common iliac nodes and eventually to the thoracic duct.

Nerves of the Abdominal Wall

- Nerves of the abdominal wall arise from thoracic and lumbar spinal nerves **(Fig. 10.13)** and include
  - the lower intercostal nerves (T7–T11) and the subcostal nerve (T12) of the thorax, and
  - the iliohypogastric nerve of the lumbar plexus.
- Dermatomes of the abdominal wall follow the slope of the ribs. Landmark dermatomes that correspond to visible surface features of the abdominal wall include T10 at the umbilicus and L1 at the inguinal ligament and top of the pubis.

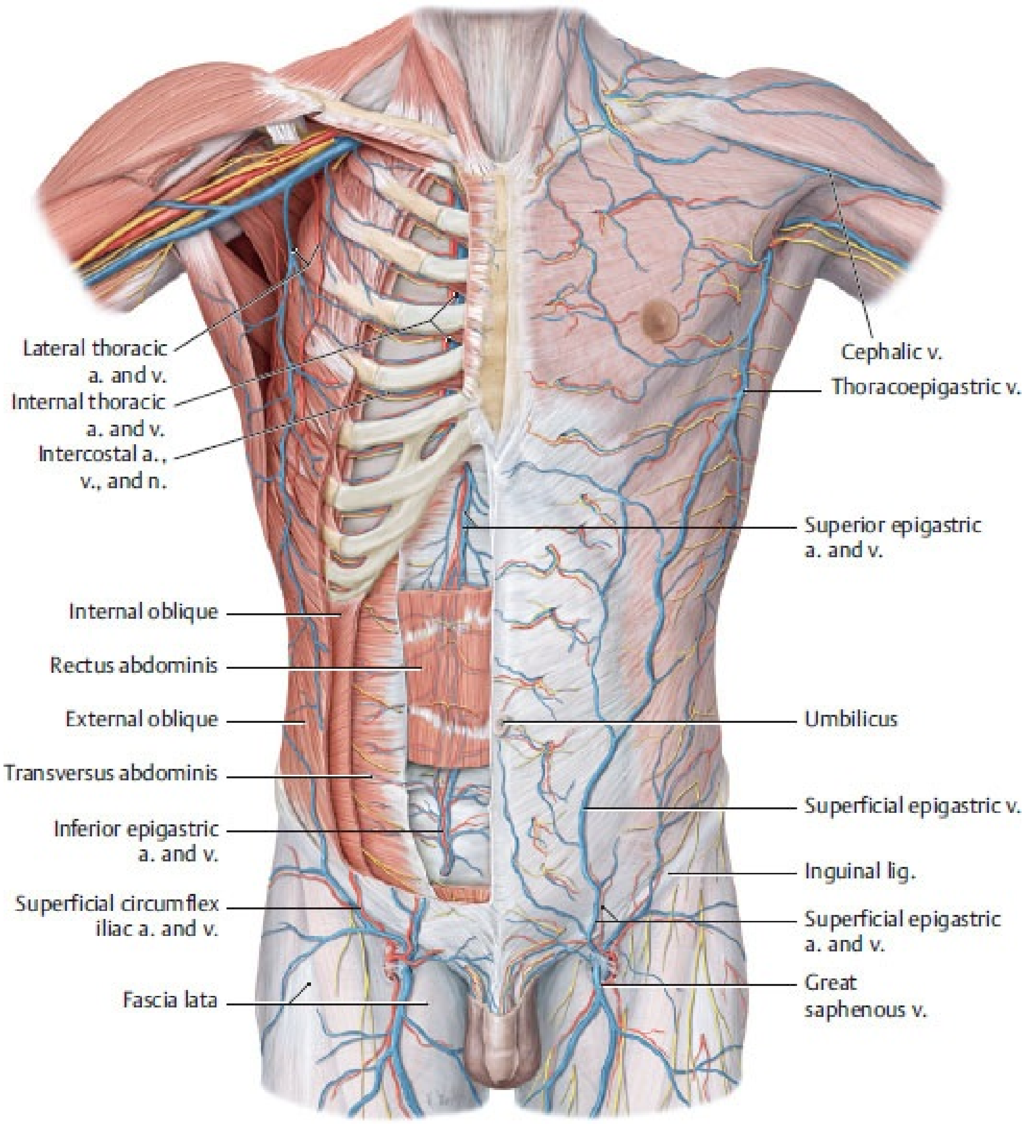

Lateral thoracic a. and v.
Internal thoracic a. and v.
Intercostal a., v., and n.
Internal oblique
Rectus abdominis
External oblique
Transversus abdominis
Inferior epigastric a. and v.
Superficial circumflex iliac a. and v.
Fascia lata
Cephalic v.
Thoracoepigastric v.
Superior epigastric a. and v.
Umbilicus
Superficial epigastric v.
Inguinal lig.
Superficial epigastric a. and v.
Great saphenous v.

Fig. 10.11 Neurovascular structures of the anterior trunk wall

Anterior view.

Left side: superficial dissection. *Right side:* deep dissection. *Removed:* pectoralis major and minor. *Partially removed:* external oblique, internal oblique, transversus abdominis, rectus abdominis, and intercostal muscles. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

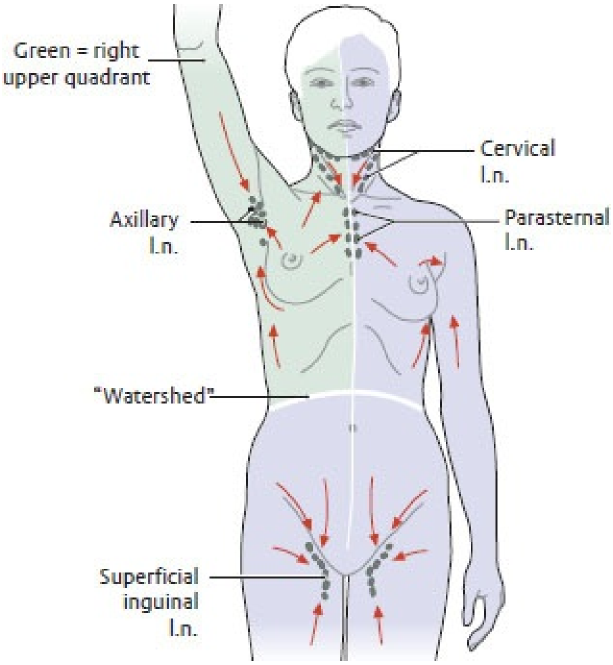
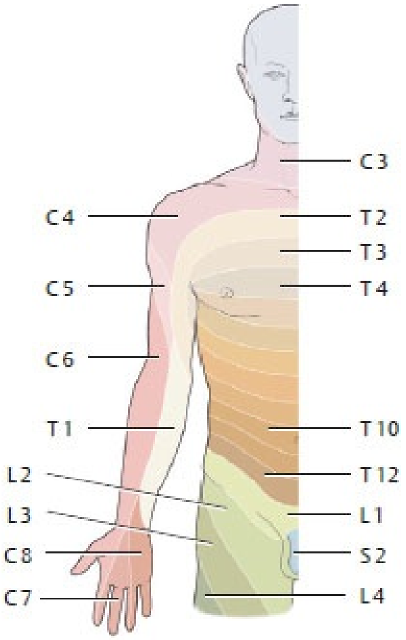
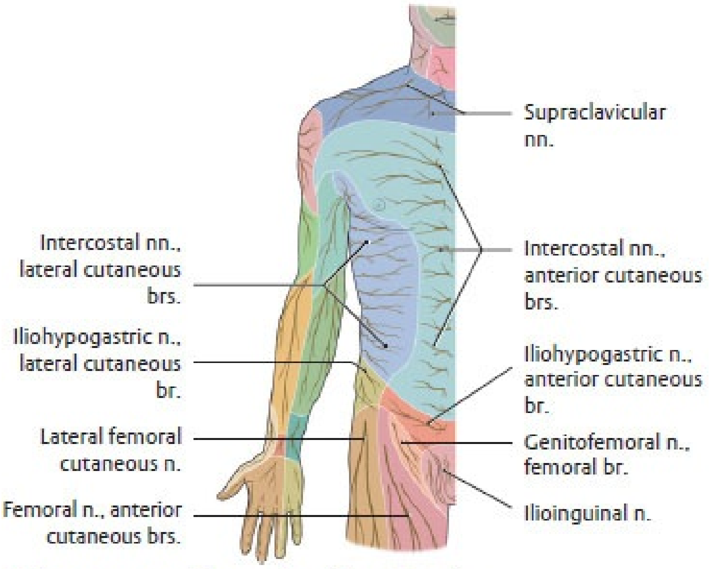

Green = right upper quadrant
Cervical l.n.
Axillary l.n.
Parasternal l.n.
"Watershed"
Superficial inguinal l.n.

Fig. 10.12 Lymphatic pathways and regional lymph nodes of the anterior trunk wall

Anterior view. *Arrows* indicate the direction of lymph flow. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


C3
C4
T2
T3
C5
T4
C6
T1
T10
L2
T12
L3
L1
C8
S2
C7
L4

A Dermatomes of the anterior abdominal wall.


Supraclavicular nn.
Intercostal nn., lateral cutaneous brs.
Intercostal nn., anterior cutaneous brs.
Iliohypogastric n., lateral cutaneous br.
Iliohypogastric n., anterior cutaneous br.
Lateral femoral cutaneous n.
Genitofemoral n., femoral br.
Femoral n., anterior cutaneous brs.
Ilioinguinal n.

B Sensory nerves of the anterior abdominal wall.

Fig. 10.13 Cutaneous innervation of the anterior abdominal wall

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

10.4 The Inguinal Region

The **inguinal region** describes the inferolateral region of the anterior abdominal wall; the inguinal canal; and in males, the spermatic cord.

- The skin and subcutaneous tissue of the abdominal wall continues inferiorly into the thigh below the inguinal ligament and inferomedially into the perineum (see Sections 16.3 and 16.4 for discussions of the perineum).
    - In the female, the skin and both the fatty and the membranous layers of the subcutaneous tissue form the **labia majora**.
    - In the male, the skin extends into the perineum as the scrotum. The fatty layer of the subcutaneous tissue is absent, but the membranous layer continues over the penis as the **superficial penile fascia** and lines the scrotum as the **superficial perineal fascia** (Colles' fascia).
- The anterolateral muscles of the abdominal wall and their fasciae form the inguinal canal and contribute to the coverings of the spermatic cord.

Inguinal Canal

The inguinal canal is an oblique passage through the abdominal wall that allows structures to pass between the abdominal and pelvic cavities and the perineum. Deficiencies in the anterolateral abdominal muscles, their aponeuroses, and their deep fascia cre-ate the inguinal canal **(Table 10.2)**. The canal is present in both males and females, although it is more pronounced in the male.

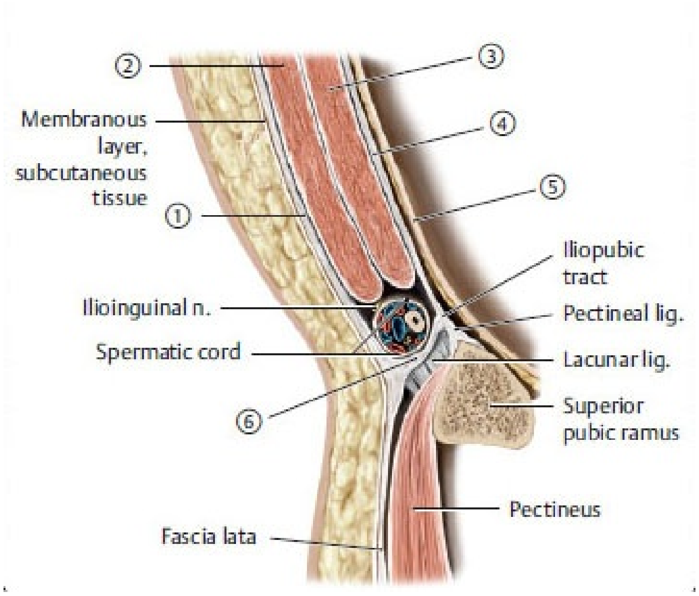
- The boundaries of the canal are
    - the anterior wall, formed by the aponeurosis of the external oblique muscle;
    - the posterior wall, formed by transversalis fascia and conjoined tendon;

Table 10.2 Structures and Relations of the Inguinal Canal

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Structures	Formed by	
Wall	Anterior wall	① External oblique aponeurosis
	Roof	② Internal oblique m.
		③ Transversus abdominis m.
	Posterior wall	④ Transversalis fascia
		⑤ Parietal peritoneum
	Floor	⑥ Inguinal lig. (densely interwoven fibers

		of the lower external oblique aponeurosis and adjacent fascia lata of thigh)
Openings	Superficial inguinal ring	Opening in external oblique aponeurosis; bounded by medial and lateral crura, intercrural fibers, and reflected inguinal lig.
	Deep inguinal ring	Outpouching of the transversalis fascia lateral to the lateral umbilical fold (inferior epigastric vessels)


②
③
Membranous layer, subcutaneous tissue
④
⑤
①
Iliopubic tract
Ilioinguinal n.
Pectineal lig.
Spermatic cord
Lacunar lig.
⑥
Superior pubic ramus
Pectineus
Fascia lata

  - the floor, formed by the inguinal ligament; and
  - the roof, formed by the arching fibers of the aponeuroses of the internal oblique and transversus abdominis muscles.
- The canal has two openings:
  - At the medial end of the canal, fibers of the external oblique aponeurosis split to create an opening known as the **superficial inguinal ring**. This ring lies in the anterior wall of the inguinal triangle.
  - At the lateral end of the inguinal canal, immediately lateral to the origin of the inferior epigastric vessels, the transversalis fascia evaginates into the canal and creates the **deep inguinal ring.** This ring lies in the lateral inguinal fossa (see **Fig. 10.9**).

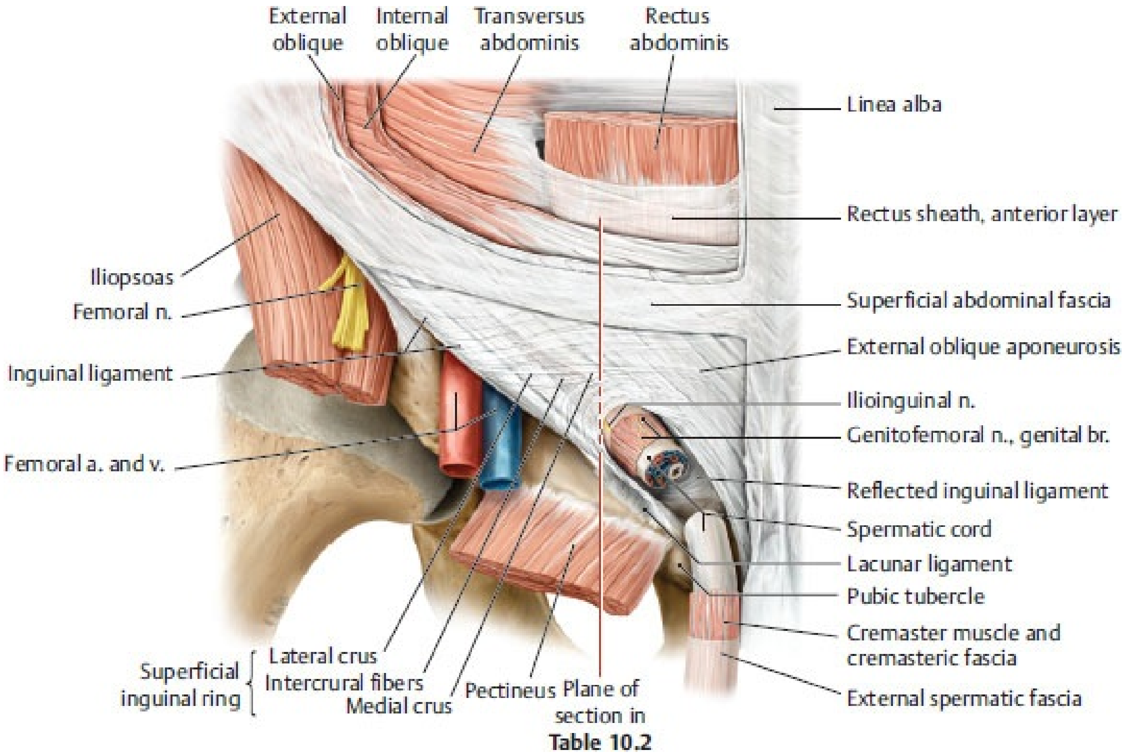

External oblique
Internal oblique
Transversus abdominis
Rectus abdominis
Linea alba
Rectus sheath, anterior layer
Iliopsoas
Femoral n.
Superficial abdominal fascia
External oblique aponeurosis
Inguinal ligament
Ilioinguinal n.
Genitofemoral n., genital br.
Femoral a. and v.
Reflected inguinal ligament
Spermatic cord
Lacunar ligament
Pubic tubercle
Cremaster muscle and cremasteric fascia
External spermatic fascia
Superficial inguinal ring
Lateral crus
Intercrural fibers
Medial crus
Pectineus
Plane of section in
Table 10.2

Fig. 10.14 Male inguinal

Right side, anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

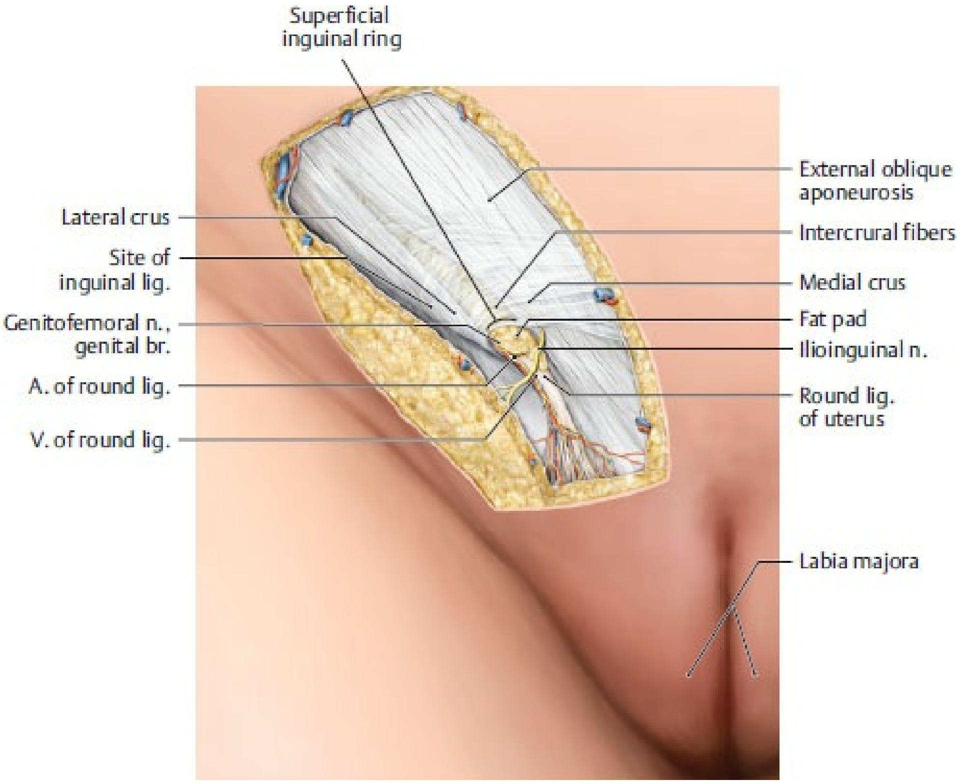

Superficial inguinal ring
Lateral crus
Site of inguinal lig.
Genitofemoral n., genital br.
A. of round lig.
V. of round lig.
External oblique aponeurosis
Intercrural fibers
Medial crus
Fat pad
Ilioinguinal n.
Round lig. of uterus
Labia majora

Fig. 10.15 Female inguinal region

Right side, anterior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

The Spermatic Cord

The spermatic cord forms at the deep inguinal ring, traverses the inguinal canal, and exits through the superficial inguinal ring. It enters the scrotum and descends to the posterior surface of the testis (**Fig. 10.16**).

- The structures in the spermatic cord include
  - the ductus deferens;
  - processus vaginalis;
  - the testicular artery and pampiniform plexus of veins, the artery and vein of the ductus deferens, and the cremasteric artery and vein;
  - lymphatic vessels of the testis and spermatic cord; and
  - sympathetic and parasympathetic fibers of the testicular plexus and the genital branch of the genitofemoral nerve.
- Derivatives of the muscles and fascia of the abdominal wall sur-round the contents of the spermatic cord as they pass through the inguinal canal. The layers formed by the muscles and fascia are the same as those surrounding

the testis (**Table 10.3**):

- **Internal spermatic fascia** derived from the transversalis fascia
- **Cremaster muscle** and **cremasteric fascia** derived from the internal oblique muscle and fascia
- **External spermatic fascia** derived from the external oblique aponeurosis and fascia.

— The ilioinguinal nerve is not contained within the spermatic cord. However, as it traverses the layers of the abdominal wall, it travels within the inguinal canal next to the cord and is enclosed by the external spermatic fascia as it exits the superficial ring.

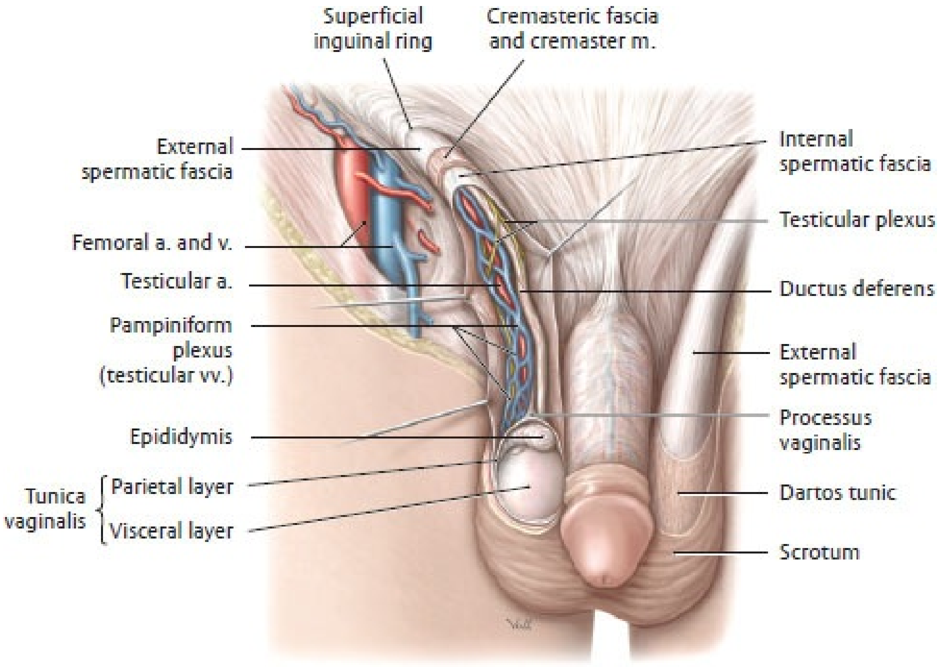

Superficial inguinal ring
Cremasteric fascia and cremaster m.
External spermatic fascia
Femoral a. and v.
Testicular a.
Pampiniform plexus (testicular vv.)
Epididymis
Tunica vaginalis
Parietal layer
Visceral layer
Internal spermatic fascia
Testicular plexus
Ductus deferens
External spermatic fascia
Processus vaginalis
Dartos tunic
Scrotum

Fig. 10.16 Spermatic cord

Male pelvis, anterior view. *Opened*: Inguinal canal and coverings of the spermatic cord. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

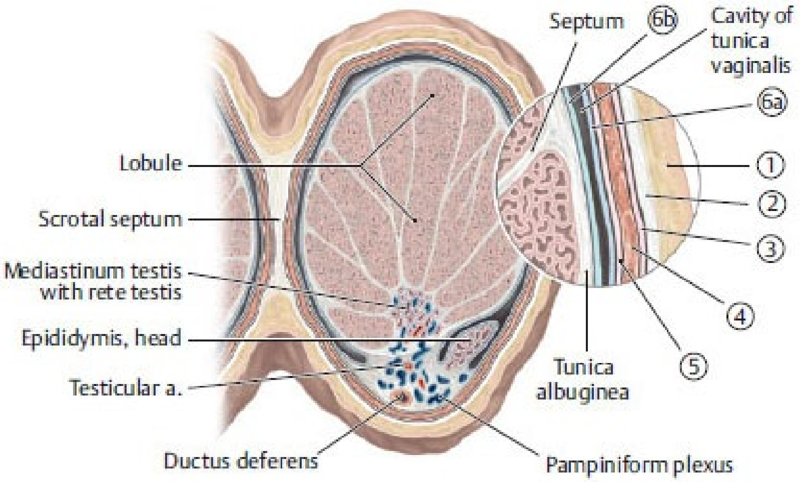
Table 10.3 Coverings of the Testis

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Covering layer	Derived from

① Scrotal skin	Abdominal skin
② Dartos m. and fascia	Membranous layer, subcutaneous tissue
③ External spermatic fascia	External oblique aponeurosis and superficial investing fascia
④ Cremaster m. and cremasteric fascia	Internal oblique m.
⑤ Internal spermatic fascia	Transversalis fascia
Tunica vaginalis, parietal layer	Peritoneum
Tunica vaginalis, visceral layer	

The transversus abdominis has no contribution to the spermatic cord or covering of the testis.


Septum
6b
Cavity of tunica vaginalis
6a
①
②
③
④
⑤
Lobule
Scrotal septum
Mediastinum testis with rete testis
Epididymis, head
Testicular a.
Ductus deferens
Tunica albuginea
Pampiniform plexus

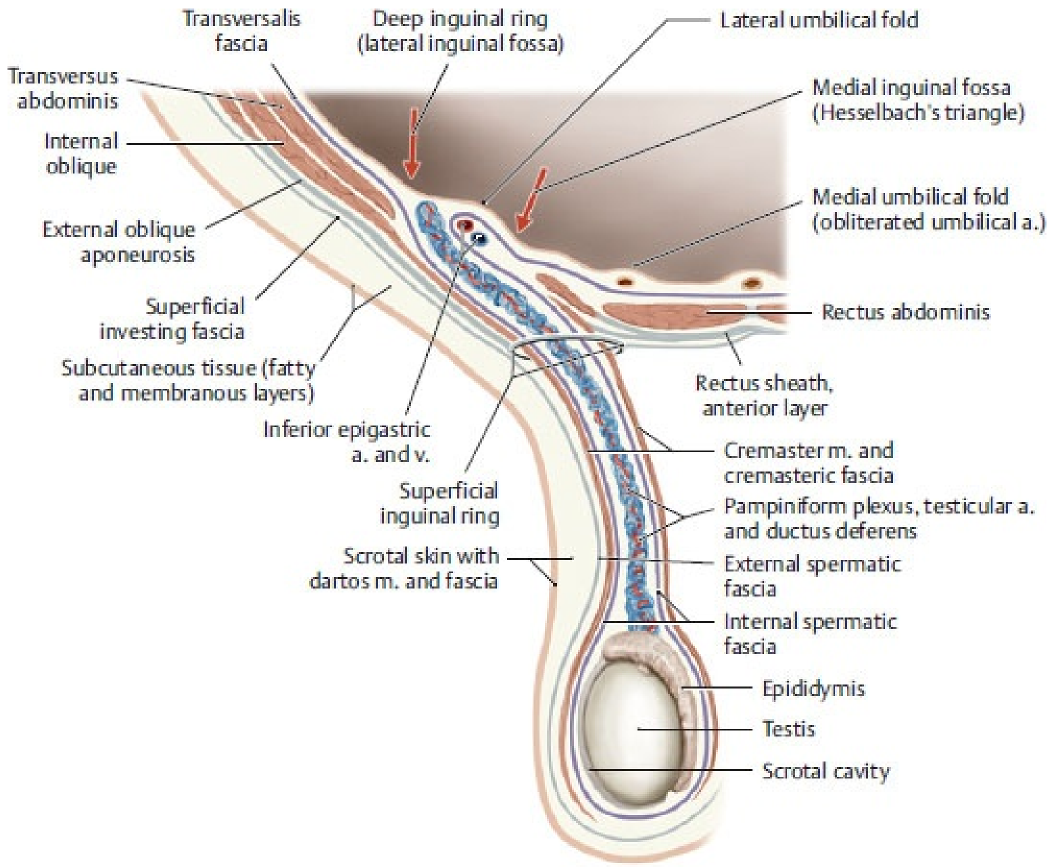

Transversalis fascia
Deep inguinal ring (lateral inguinal fossa)
Lateral umbilical fold
Transversus abdominis
Medial inguinal fossa (Hesselbach's triangle)
Internal oblique
Medial umbilical fold (obliterated umbilical a.)
External oblique aponeurosis
Rectus abdominis
Superficial investing fascia
Subcutaneous tissue (fatty and membranous layers)
Rectus sheath, anterior layer
Inferior epigastric a. and v.
Cremaster m. and cremasteric fascia
Superficial inguinal ring
Pampiniform plexus, testicular a. and ductus deferens
Scrotal skin with dartos m. and fascia
External spermatic fascia
Internal spermatic fascia
Epididymis
Testis
Scrotal cavity

Fig 10.17 Schematic of the male inguinal canal and its relation to structures of the abdominal wall

Right side, anterior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

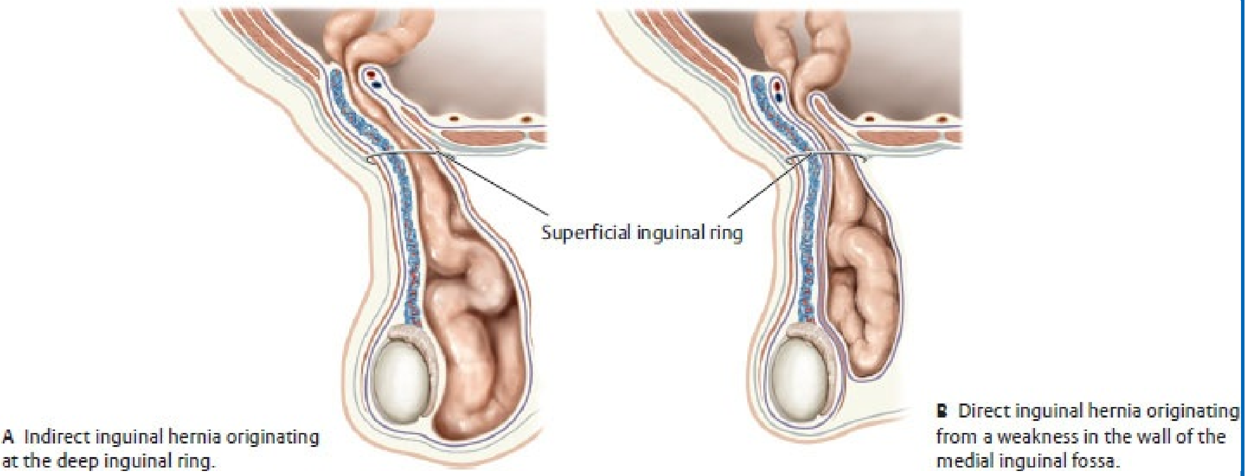
BOX 10.1: CLINICAL CORRELATION

INGUINAL HERNIA

Inguinal hernias account for the large majority of abdominal wall hernias, and of those, most occur in males. A hernia is the protrusion of a visceral structure into a space that it does not normally occupy. Inguinal hernias involve the protrusion of parietal peritoneum, peri-toneal fat, or the small intestine. Of the two types of inguinal her-nias, the indirect hernia can be acquired or congenital and is com-mon in young males, whereas the direct hernia is always acquired and results from a weakening of the abdominal wall and generally occurs in middle-aged males.

During development, a tongue of peritoneum, the processus vaginalis, evaginates into the newly formed inguinal canal and accompanies the testis in its descent into the scrotum. Before birth most of the processus vaginalis obliterates, closing the communication between it and the peritoneal cavity. If the processus vagi-nalis fails to obliterate, however, abdominal contents can herniate (indirect hernia) through its opening at the deep inguinal ring in the lateral inguinal fossa (lateral to the inferior epigastric vessels) and extend into the scrotum (or labia in females). Herniated viscera travel within the spermatic cord and therefore are covered by the layers of the cord in addition to peritoneum and transversalis fascia.

Direct hernias occur where weakening of the anterior abdominal wall in the medial inguinal triangle (medial to the inferior epigastric vessels) allows viscera to protrude through the medial end of the canal, then through an enlarged superficial ring, and into the scro-tum. Since these herniated viscera travel outside the spermatic cord, they are not covered by layers of the spermatic cord but are covered by peritoneum and transversalis fascia of the abdominal wall.



A Indirect inguinal hernia originating at the deep inguinal ring.

B Direct inguinal hernia originating from a weakness in the wall of the medial inguinal fossa.

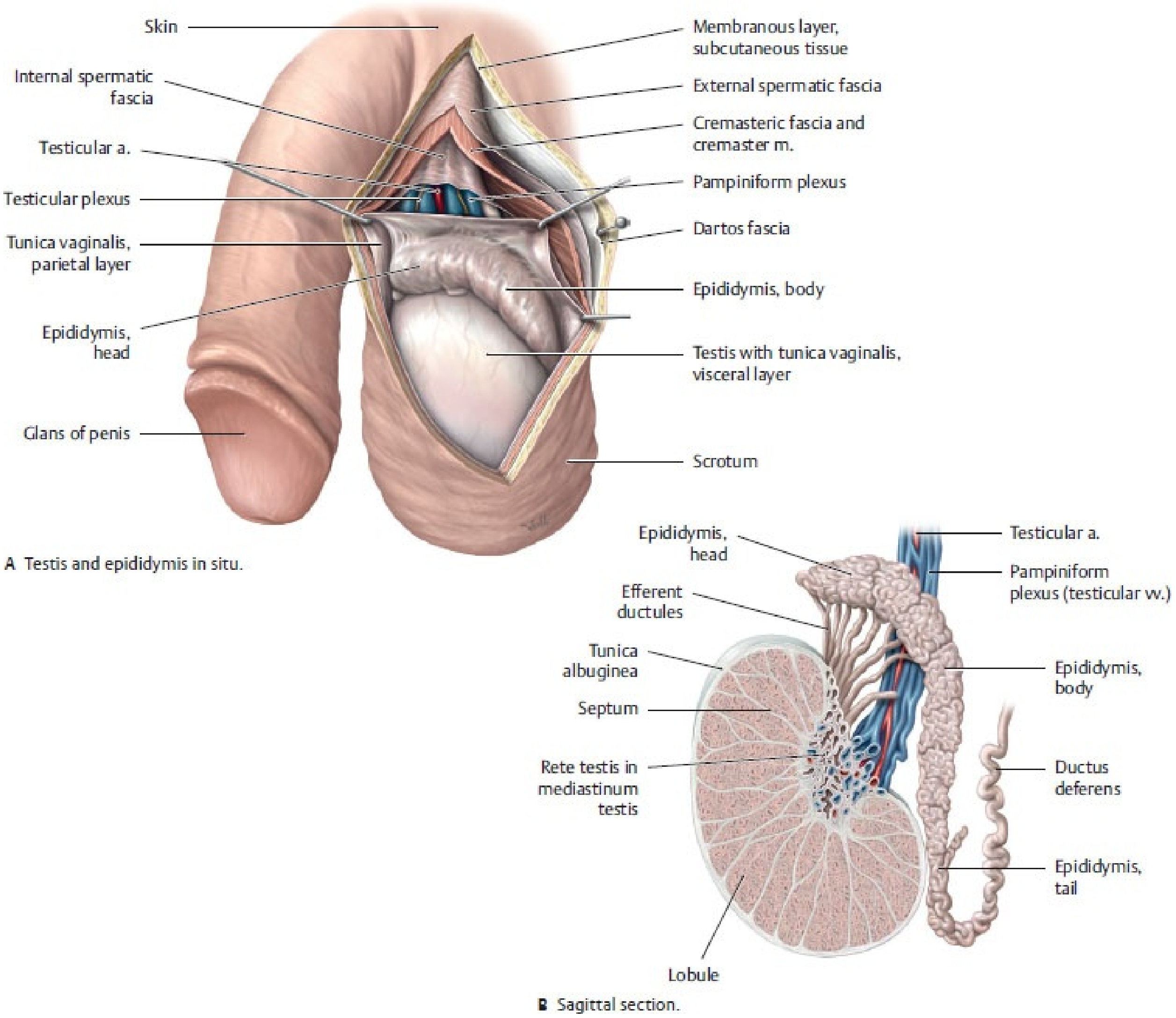
(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

The Testes

The testes are paired ovoid reproductive organs, 4 to 5 cm long and 3 cm wide, located in separate compartments within the scro-tum. They produce spermatozoa and MRI of the testessecrete the male hormone testosterone **(Figs. 10.18** and **10.19**; see also **Table 10.3)**.

- An extension of the peritoneum known as the **tunica vaginalis** forms a closed sac that folds around the testis, surrounding it on all sides except on its posterior edge. The tunic has an outer parietal layer and an inner visceral layer that is adherent to the surface of the testis.
- Each testis is enveloped by the **tunica albuginea,** a tough capsule of connective tissue that thickens along the posterior border as the mediastinum of the testis and invaginates to divide the testis into over 200 lobules.
- Sperm develop in the **seminiferous tubules,** highly coiled tubules within the lobules. They exit the testes through a ductal network, the **rete testis** in the mediastinum, and then pass through **efferent ductules** to the **epididymis.**

- The testicular artery, a branch of the abdominal aorta, supplies the testis. A rich collateral blood supply arises from anastomoses with the artery of the ductus deferens, the **cremasteric artery** (a branch of the inferior epigastric artery), and the **external pudendal artery** (a branch of the femoral artery) **(Fig. 10.20)**.
- The **pampiniform plexus** of veins drains the testis and converges to form the testicular vein. The testicular veins drain to the inferior vena cava on the right and to the renal vein on the left.


Skin
Internal spermatic fascia
Testicular a.
Testicular plexus
Tunica vaginalis, parietal layer
Epididymis, head
Glans of penis
Membranous layer, subcutaneous tissue
External spermatic fascia
Cremasteric fascia and cremaster m.
Pampiniform plexus
Dartos fascia
Epididymis, body
Testis with tunica vaginalis, visceral layer
Scrotum
Epididymis, head
Efferent ductules
Tunica albuginea
Septum
Rete testis in mediastinum testis
Lobule
Testicular a.
Pampiniform plexus (testicular w.)
Epididymis, body
Ductus deferens
Epididymis, tail

A Testis and epididymis in situ.

B Sagittal section.

Fig. 10.18 Testis and epididymis

Left lateral view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

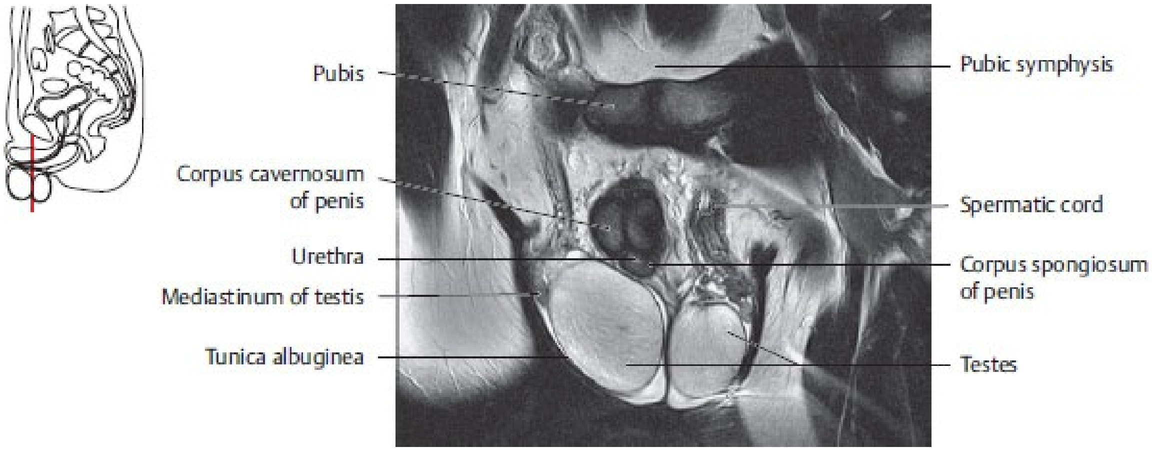

Pubis
Pubic symphysis
Corpus cavernosum of penis
Spermatic cord
Urethra
Corpus spongiosum of penis
Mediastinum of testis
Tunica albuginea
Testes

Fig 10.19 MRI of the testes

Coronal section, anterior view. (From Moeller TB, Reif E. Pocket Atlas of Sectional Anatomy, Vol 2, 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2007.)

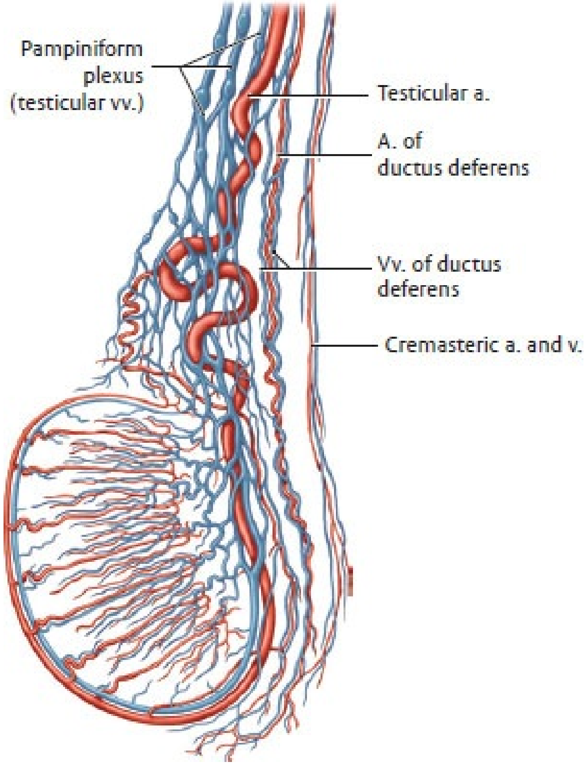

Pampiniform plexus (testicular vv.)
Testicular a.
A. of ductus deferens
Vv. of ductus deferens
Cremasteric a. and v.

Fig. 10.20 Blood vessels of the testis

Left lateral view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

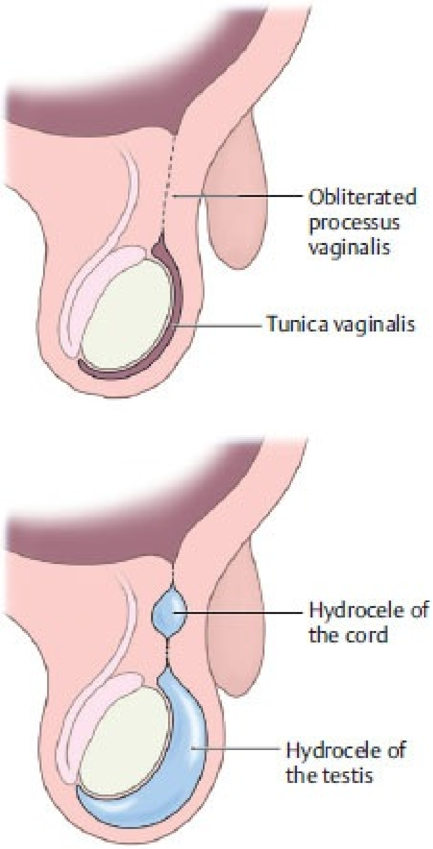
— The lymph vessels of the testes drain directly to lateral aortic and preaortic lymph nodes.

- The **cremasteric reflex,** initiated by stroking of the inner thigh, contracts the cremaster muscle and elevates the testis. The ilioinguinal nerve provides the sensory limb; the genital branch of the genitofemoral nerve provides the motor limb.
- The testicular nerve plexus arises from the aortic plexus and travels along with the testicular artery. It contains sympa-thetic fibers from the T7 spinal cord level, as well as visceral afferent and vagal parasympathetic fibers.

BOX 10.2: CLINICAL CORRELATION

HYDROCELE

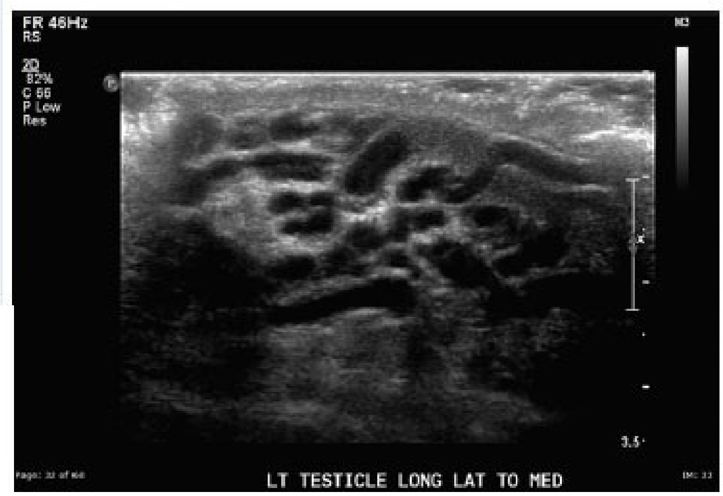
The opening into a persistent processus vaginalis may be small enough to prevent herniation but large enough to form a hydro-cele, the accumulation of excess peritoneal fluid. The hydrocele can be confined to the scrotum (hydrocele of the testis) or to the cord (hydrocele of the cord). Ultrasound or transillumination of the scrotum confirms the presence of excess fluid.



BOX 10.3: CLINICAL CORRELATION

VARICOCELE

The pampiniform plexus from each testis surrounds the testicular artery and converges to form a testicular vein. If the venous valves become incompetent, the plexus can become dilated and tortu-ous, forming a varicocele that is often reported to feel like “a bag of worms.” Varicoceles are predominantly on the left side. This is generally attributed to the abrupt termination of the left testicu-lar vein at the left renal vein, which may slow venous return.



This 14-year-old boy presented with scrotal discomfort and a palpable mass. This scrotal ultrasound image shows a mass consisting of multiple serpiginous tubules, which indicate a varicocele.

(From Gunderman R. Essential Radiology, 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2014.)

BOX 10.4: CLINICAL CORRELATION

TESTICULAR TORSION

An absent or reduced cremasteric reflex that is accompanied by sudden testicular pain, inflammation and elevation of one testis, nausea, and vomiting may indicate testicular torsion (twisting of a testis). Prompt surgery for testicular torsion (to untwist the affected testis and anchor both testes) may prevent loss of a testis.

BOX 10.5: CLINICAL CORRELATION

TESTICULAR CANCER

Testicular cancer is the most common cancer in males between 15 and 34 years of age. The vast majority of these cancers are seminomas or germ cell tumors that arise in the germ cells that produce immature sperm. Symptoms include a lump in the affected testis (usually only one testis is affected), a feeling of heaviness in the scrotum, pain in the affected testis or scrotum, a sudden collection of fluid in the scrotum, and the development of excess breast tissue (gynecomastia). Testicular cancer commonly metastasizes via lymph nodes to the lungs or via the bloodstream, commonly to the liver, lungs, brain, and spine.

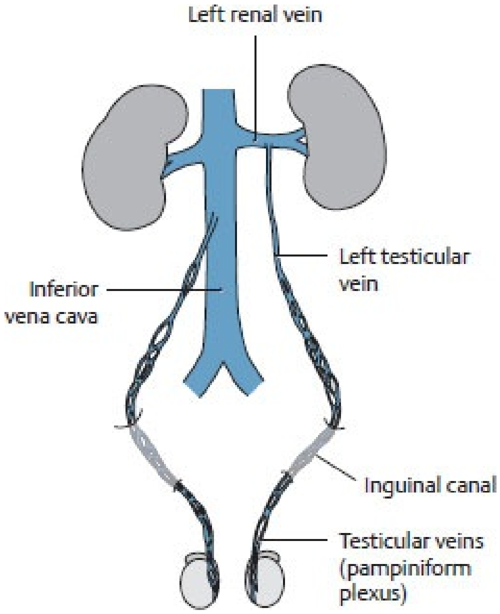


Fig. 10.21 Asymmetric venous drainage of the right and left testes

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

The Epididymis and Ductus Deferens

The epididymis and ductus deferens are parts of the male ductal system that transport sperm from the testis to the genital struc-tures in the pelvis (see **Fig. 10.18**).

- The epididymis, a highly coiled tubule where sperm are stored and mature, hugs the posterior surface of the testis. Its expanded head contains the lobules with the efferent ductules, its body is made up of a long convoluted duct, and its tail is continuous with the ductus deferens.
- The **ductus deferens** is a muscular tube that transmits sperm from the scrotum to the pelvis.
  - It begins at the tail of the epididymis and continues as part of the spermatic cord through the inguinal canal.
  - At the deep inguinal ring, the ductus deferens descends into the pelvis posterior to the bladder, where, near its termination, it enlarges as the **ampulla of the ductus deferens** (see **Fig. 15.2**).

- The ampulla joins with the duct of the seminal gland to form the **ejaculatory duct** within the prostate gland (see Section 15.1).

11 The Peritoneal Cavity and Neurovasculature of the Abdomen

11.1 The Peritoneum and Peritoneal Cavity

The **peritoneum**, a thin, transparent serous membrane, lines the abdominopelvic cavity. Parietal and visceral layers of the perito-neum enclose the **peritoneal cavity**, which contains a thin film of serous fluid that facilitates the movement of the viscera during digestion and respiration (see **Fig. 11.1**).

Peritoneal Relations

- Structures in the abdomen are defined with respect to their relationship to the peritoneum **(Table 11.1**; **Figs. 11.1** and **11.2)**.
  - **Intraperitoneal** organs, almost completely enclosed by the visceral layer of the peritoneum, are suspended within the peritoneal cavity by **mesenteries**, double layers of peritoneum that attach to the body wall.
  - **Extraperitoneal** structures lie posterior or inferior to the peritoneal cavity.
    - **Primarily retroperitoneal** structures lie posterior to the peritoneal cavity, are not suspended by a mesentery, and are covered by peritoneum only on their anterior surface.
    - **Secondarily retroperitoneal** structures were previously intraperitoneal structures that became fixed to the posterior abdominal wall when their mesentery fused with the parietal peritoneum of the posterior abdominal wall during development.
    - **Subperitoneal structures** include pelvic organs that lie below the peritoneum.
- Organs associated with the gastrointestinal tract are intraperitoneal or secondarily retroperitoneal. Organs of the urinary system are retroperitoneal.

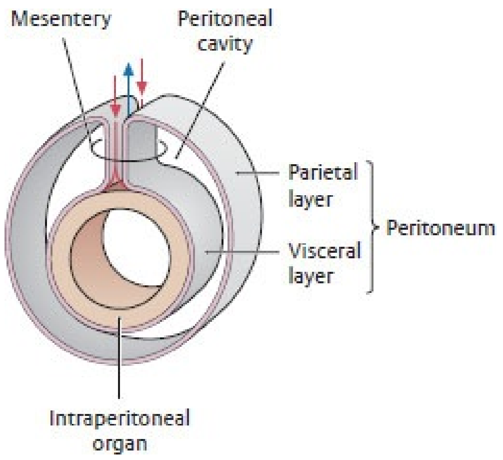

Mesentery
Peritoneal cavity
Parietal layer
Peritoneum
Visceral layer
Intraperitoneal organ

Fig. 11.1 Peritoneum and mesentery

Red and *blue arrows* indicate location of blood vessels. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

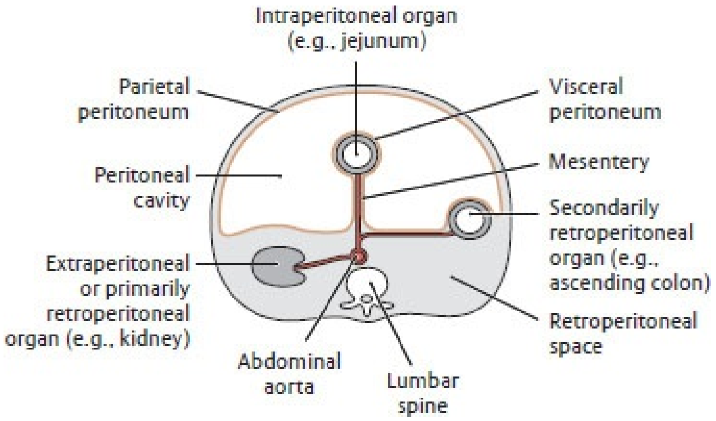

Intraperitoneal organ (e.g., jejunum)
Parietal peritoneum
Visceral peritoneum
Mesentery
Peritoneal cavity
Secondarily retroperitoneal organ (e.g., ascending colon)
Extraperitoneal or primarily retroperitoneal organ (e.g., kidney)
Retroperitoneal space
Abdominal aorta
Lumbar spine

Fig. 11.2 Peritoneal relations of the organs in the abdomen

Transverse section through the abdomen showing the peritoneal relationships of abdominal organs. Viewed from above. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Table 11.1 Organs of the Abdomen

Location	Organs
Intraperitoneal organs: These organs have a mesentery and are almost completely covered by the peritoneum.	

Abdominal peritoneal cavity		• Stomach • Small intestine (jejunum, ileum, some of the superior part of the duodenum) • Spleen • Liver (with the exception of the bare area) • Gallbladder • Cecum with vermiform appendix (portions of variable size may be retroperitoneal) • Transverse and sigmoid colon
Extraperitoneal organs: These organs either have no mesentery or lost it during development.		
Retroperitoneum	Primarily retroperitoneal	• Kidneys • Suprarenal glands
	Secondarily retroperitoneal	• Duodenum (descending, horizontal, and ascending) • Pancreas • Ascending and descending colons

Peritoneal Structures

Most of the abdominal viscera are somewhat mobile during digestion and respiration. Reflections of the peritoneum that connect organs to the body wall or to other organs prevent excessive movement (i.e., twisting), which can compromise normal function. These reflections form mesenteries, omenta, and peritoneal ligaments (**Figs. 11.3, 11. 4, 11.5, 11.6**).

— A **mesentery** is a double layer of peritoneum that connects intraperitoneal organs to the posterior abdominal wall and transmits vessels and nerves (see **Fig. 11.1**). There are three major mesenteries in the abdomen (**Fig. 11.4**):
  - The **mesentery of the small intestine**, or the “mesentery,” is a fan-shaped apron of peritoneum that suspends the second and third parts (jejunum and ileum) of the small intestine.

  - The **transverse mesocolon** suspends the transverse section of the large intestine.
  - The **sigmoid mesocolon** suspends the sigmoid colon of the large intestine in the left lower quadrant.
  - An **omentum** is a double layer of peritoneum that connects the stomach and duodenum to another organ. There are two omenta (**Figs. 11.3, 11.5**, and **11.6**):
  - The **greater omentum** , a four-layered apron of peritoneum, originates as a double layer of peritoneum from the greater curvature of the stomach and proximal duodenum. It drapes inferiorly, anterior to the coils of small intestine, before looping upward to its distal attachment on the posterior abdominal wall.
    - The **gastrocolic ligament** is a portion of the greater omentum that adheres to the transverse colon.
    - The **gastrosplenic ligament** is a lateral extension of the greater omentum that connects the stomach to the spleen and is traversed by branches of the splenic artery.
  - The **lesser omentum** , a double layer of peritoneum, extends from the liver to the stomach and proximal duodenum. It is formed by
    - the **hepatogastric ligament** , between the liver and stomach, and
    - the **hepatoduodenal ligament** , between the liver and duodenum, which encloses the structures of the **portal triad** (the portal vein, hepatic artery, and **bile duct**) in its free edge.
- **Peritoneal ligaments** are reflections of peritoneum that con- nect organs to each other or to the body wall. They support the organ in position and may convey their neurovasculature. Individual ligaments are discussed in Sections 9.2 to 9.4 with the specific abdominal organs.

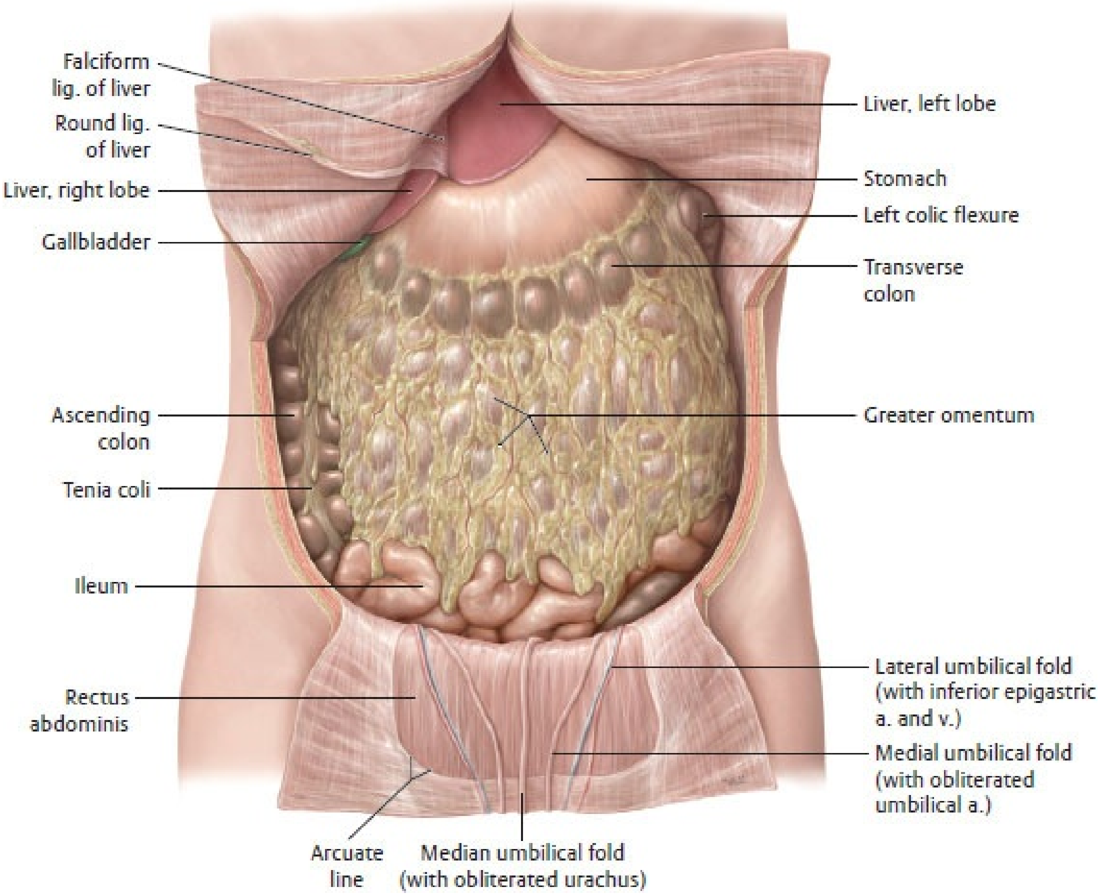
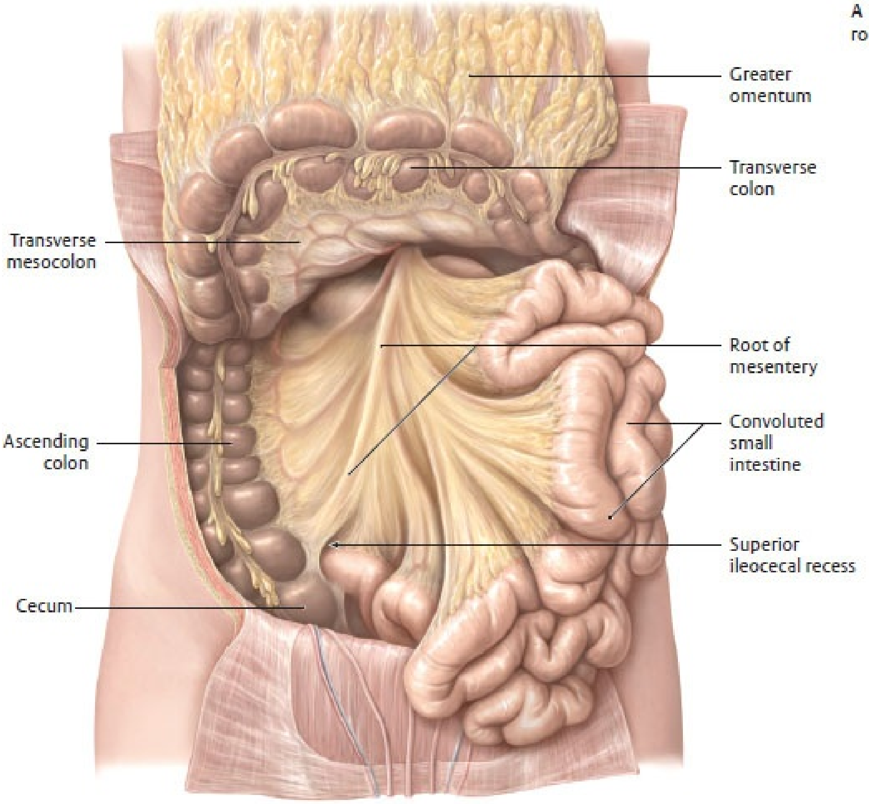
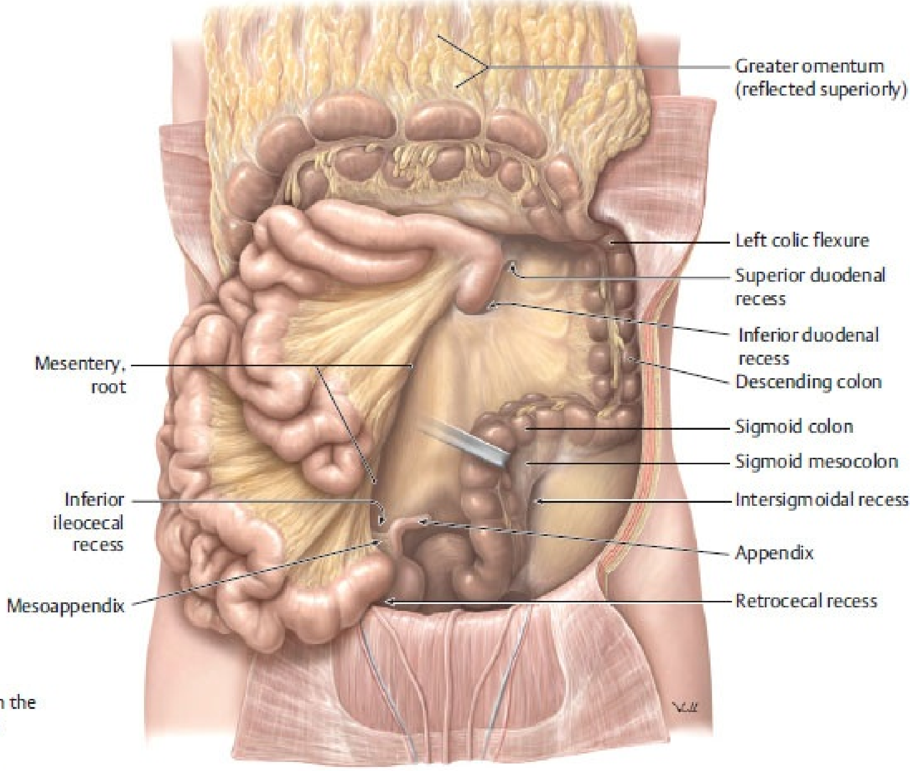

Falciform lig. of liver
Round lig. of liver
Liver, right lobe
Gallbladder
Ascending colon
Tenia coli
Ileum
Rectus abdominis
Arcuate line
Median umbilical fold (with obliterated urachus)
Liver, left lobe
Stomach
Left colic flexure
Transverse colon
Greater omentum
Lateral umbilical fold (with inferior epigastric a. and v.)
Medial umbilical fold (with obliterated umbilical a.)

Fig. 11.3 Greater omentum in situ

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Greater omentum
Transverse colon
Transverse mesocolon
Root of mesentery
Convoluted small intestine
Ascending colon
Superior ileocecal recess
Cecum

A The small intestine is reflected to show the root of the mesentery.


Greater omentum (reflected superiorly)
Left colic flexure
Superior duodenal recess
Inferior duodenal recess
Descending colon
Mesentery, root
Sigmoid colon
Sigmoid mesocolon
Intersigmoidal recess
Inferior ileocecal recess
Appendix
Mesoappendix
Retrocecal recess

B Mesenteries and mesenteric recesses in the infracolic compartment. Reflection of the small intestine reveals the root of the mesentery and the sigmoid mesocolon.

Fig. 11.4 Overview of the mesenteries

Anterior view. Transverse colon and greater omentum have been reflected superiorly. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

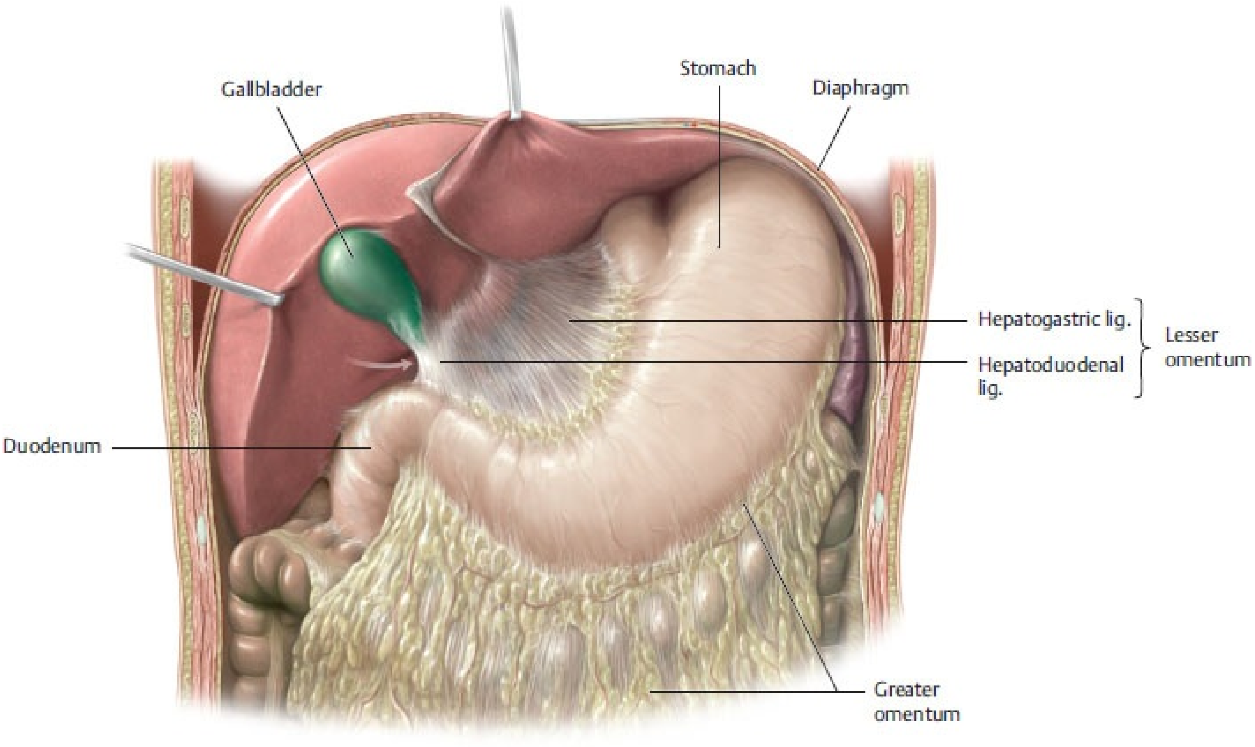

Stomach
Gallbladder
Diaphragm
Hepatogastric lig.
Hepatoduodenal lig.
Lesser omentum
Duodenum
Greater omentum

Fig. 11.5 The lesser omentum

Anterior view with liver retracted superiorly. The *arrow* points to the omental foramen, the opening into the omental bursa, posterior to the lesser omentum. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

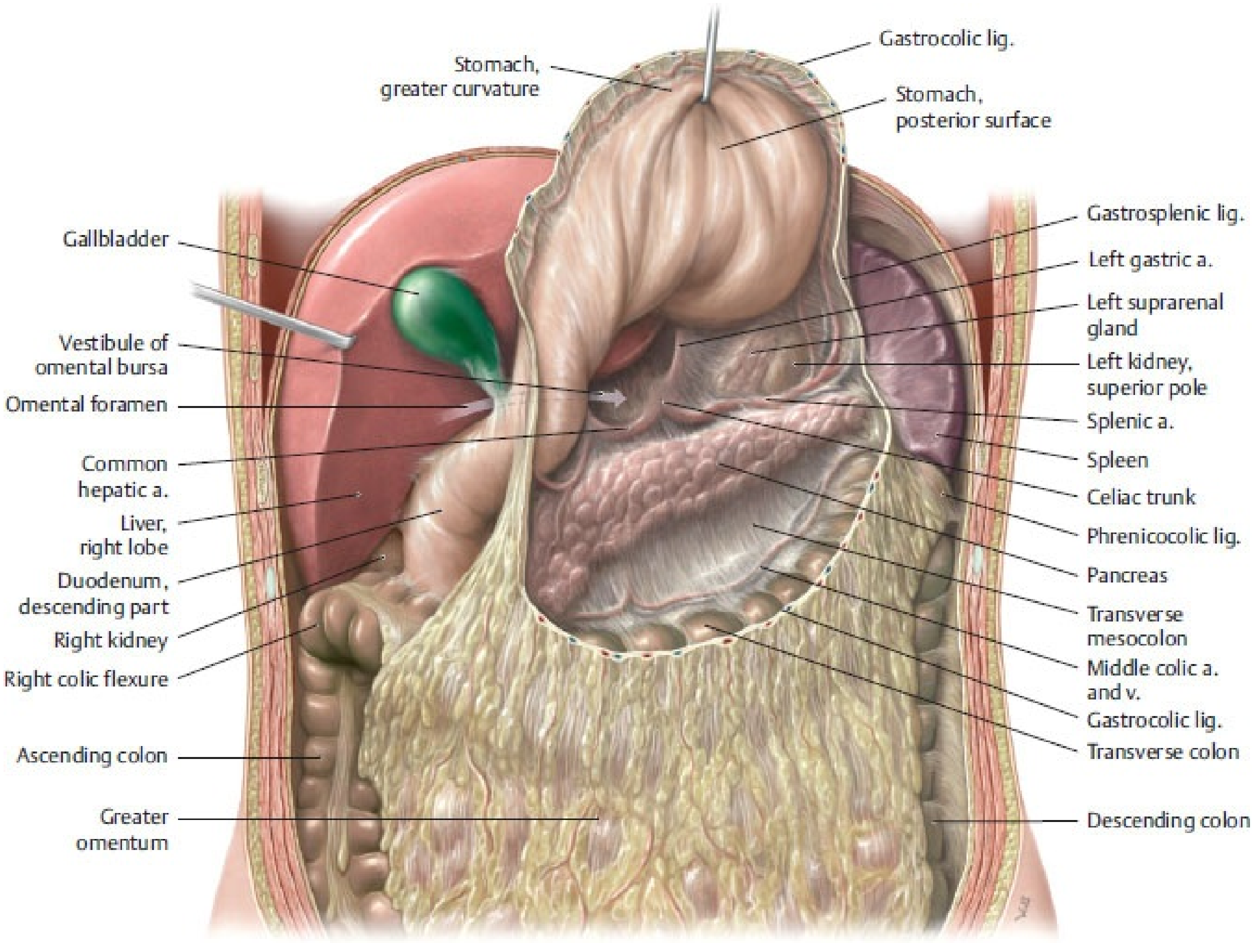

Stomach, greater curvature
Gastrocolic lig.
Stomach, posterior surface
Gallbladder
Gastrosplenic lig.
Left gastric a.
Left suprarenal gland
Vestibule of omental bursa
Left kidney, superior pole
Omental foramen
Splenic a.
Spleen
Common hepatic a.
Celiac trunk
Liver, right lobe
Phrenicocolic lig.
Duodenum, descending part
Pancreas
Transverse mesocolon
Right kidney
Middle colic a. and v.
Right colic flexure
Gastrocolic lig.
Transverse colon
Ascending colon
Greater omentum
Descending colon

Fig. 11.6 Omental bursa in situ

Anterior view. *Divided:* Gastrocolic ligament. *Retracted:* Liver. *Reflected:* Stomach. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Subdivisions of the Peritoneal Cavity

- The peritoneal cavity is divided into two spaces:
    - The **greater sac**, which includes the entire peritoneal cavity except that space defined as the lesser sac
    - The **omental bursa (lesser sac)**, which is a small exten-sion of the peritoneal cavity that lies behind the stomach and lesser omentum (**Table 11.2**; **Figs. 11.6, 11.7, 11.8**). It communicates with the greater sac through a single opening, the **omental (epiploic) foramen** (**Table 11.3**).
- Attachments of the peritoneum to the body wall that form during development of the gastrointestinal tract further subdivide the greater sac. These attachments can influence the flow of fluid within the cavity (**Fig.**

11.9).

- The **subphrenic recess** between the diaphragm and liver is limited by the coronary ligaments and separated into right and left spaces by the falciform ligament.
- The **subhepatic space** lies between the liver and the transverse colon. A posterior extension of this space, the **hepatorenal recess** (hepatorenal pouch, Morison’s pouch), lies between the visceral surface of the liver and the right kidney and suprarenal gland. The hepatorenal recess communicates with the right subphrenic recess.
- The **supracolic** and **infracolic compartments** are defined by the attachment of the transverse mesocolon on the posterior abdominal wall—with the supracolic compart-ment above the attachment site and the infracolic compartment below it. The root of the mesentery of the small intestine further divides the infracolic compartment into right and left spaces.
- The **paracolic gutters**, which lie adjacent to the ascending and descending colons, allow communication between the supracolic and infracolic compartments.

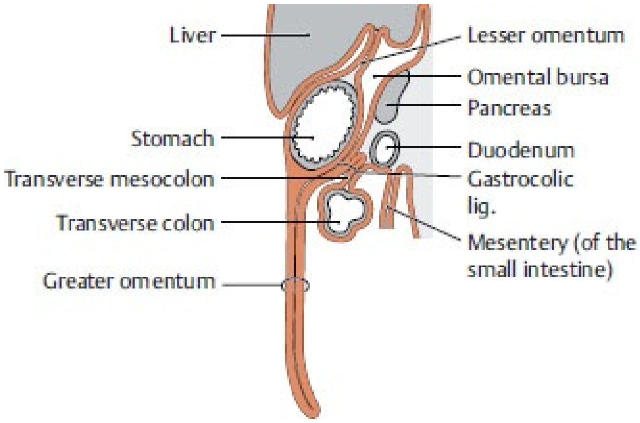

Liver
Stomach
Transverse mesocolon
Transverse colon
Greater omentum
Lesser omentum
Omental bursa
Pancreas
Duodenum
Gastrocolic lig.
Mesentery (of the small intestine)

Fig. 11.7 Structure of the greater and lesser omenta and their relation to the omental bursa Sagittal section, left lateral view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

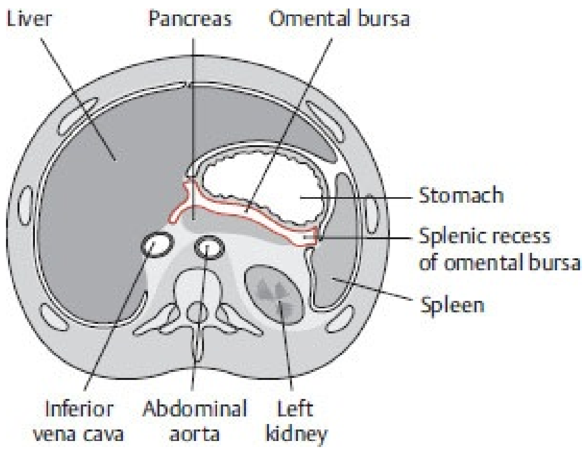

Liver
Pancreas
Omental bursa
Stomach
Splenic recess of omental bursa
Spleen
Inferior vena cava
Abdominal aorta
Left kidney

Fig. 11.8 Location of the omental bursa

Transverse section, inferior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Table 11.2 Boundaries of the Omental Bursa (Lesser Sac)

Direction	Boundary	Recess
Anterior	Lesser omentum, gastrocolic ligament	—
Inferior	Transverse mesocolon	Inferior recess
Superior	Liver (with caudate lobe)	Superior recess
Posterior	Pancreas, aorta (abdominal part), celiac trunk, splenic a. and v., gastrosplenic fold, left suprarenal gland, left kidney (superior pole)	—
Right	Liver, duodenal bulb	—
Left	Spleen, gastrosplenic ligament	Splenic recess

Table 11.3 Boundaries of the Omental Foramen

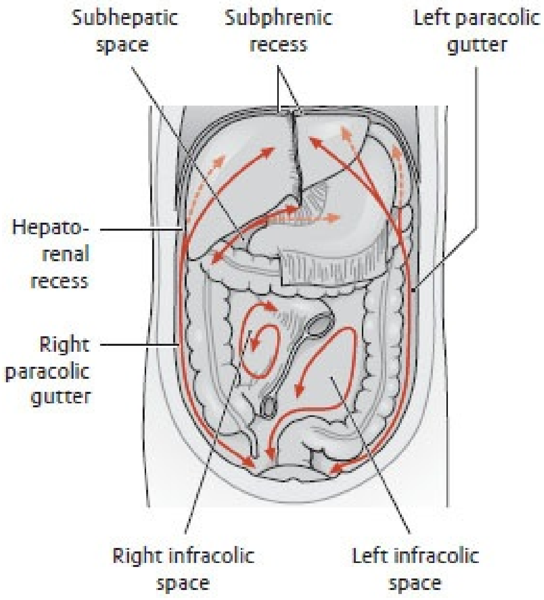
The communication between the greater and lesser sacs is the omental (epiploic) foramen (see arrow in **Figs. 11.5** and **11.6**).

Direction	Boundary
Anterior	Hepatoduodenal ligament with the portal v., proper hepatic a., and bile duct
Inferior	Duodenum (superior part)
Posterior	Inferior vena cava, diaphragm (right crus)
Superior	Liver (caudate lobe)

BOX 11.1: CLINICAL CORRELATION

PERITONEAL INFECTIONS AND ABSCESSES

The flow of fluid in the peritoneal cavity can spread intraperito-neal infections and determine the sites of peritoneal abscess for-mation. Fluid commonly collects in the right and left subphrenic recesses, although abscesses are more likely to form on the right side due to duodenal or appendiceal ruptures. Fluid in the supra-colic compartment, such as subphrenic recesses and the omental bursa, can drain to the hepatorenal recess, the lowest part of the abdominal cavity in the supine patient. Therefore, this is a com-mon site of pus accumulation and abscess formation. In the infracolic compartment, the paracolic gutters direct peritoneal fluid and infections toward the pelvis (see **Figs. 11.9** and **11.10**).


Subhepatic space
Subphrenic recess
Left paracolic gutter
Hepato-renal recess
Right paracolic gutter
Right infracolic space
Left infracolic space

Drainage spaces within the peritoneal cavity

Anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 11.2: CLINICAL CORRELATION

PERITONITIS AND ASCITES

Bacterial contamination of the peritoneum following surgery or rupture of an inflamed organ (duodenum, gallbladder, appen-dix) results in peritonitis, inflammation of the peritoneum. It is accompanied by severe abdominal pain, tenderness, nausea, and fever and can be fatal when generalized throughout the perito-neal cavity. It often results in ascites, the accumulation of excess peritoneal fluid due to a change in concentration gradients that results in loss of capillary fluid. Ascites can also accompany other pathologic conditions, such as metastatic liver cancer and portal hypertension. In these cases, many liters of ascitic fluid can accumulate in the peritoneal cavity. The fluid is aspirated by paracen-tesis. The needle is carefully inserted into the abdominal wall so as to avoid the urinary bladder and inferior epigastric vessels.

Posterior Wall and Retroperitoneum

- The posterior wall of the abdominal cavity is continuous with the area designated as the “back” but is generally accepted as a separate defined area that is composed of the posterior abdominal wall muscles and their fascia. The retroperitoneum is considered part of the posterior wall.
- The retroperitoneum is a space, or compartment, on the anterior surface of the posterior wall that contains specific retroperitoneal viscera. It is bound anteriorly by the parietal peritoneum and superiorly by the diaphragm. Laterally it’s continuous with the extraperitoneal space of the anterior and lateral abdominal wall, and inferiorly it’s continuous with the subperitoneal space of the pelvis.
    - Retroperitoneal organs include the kidneys, ureters, and suprarenal glands, along with their neurovasculature.
    - Some components of the gastrointestinal tract have become retroperitonealized during development by losing part of their peritoneal covering. These include the second to fourth parts of the duodenum, the pancreas, and ascending and descending colons.

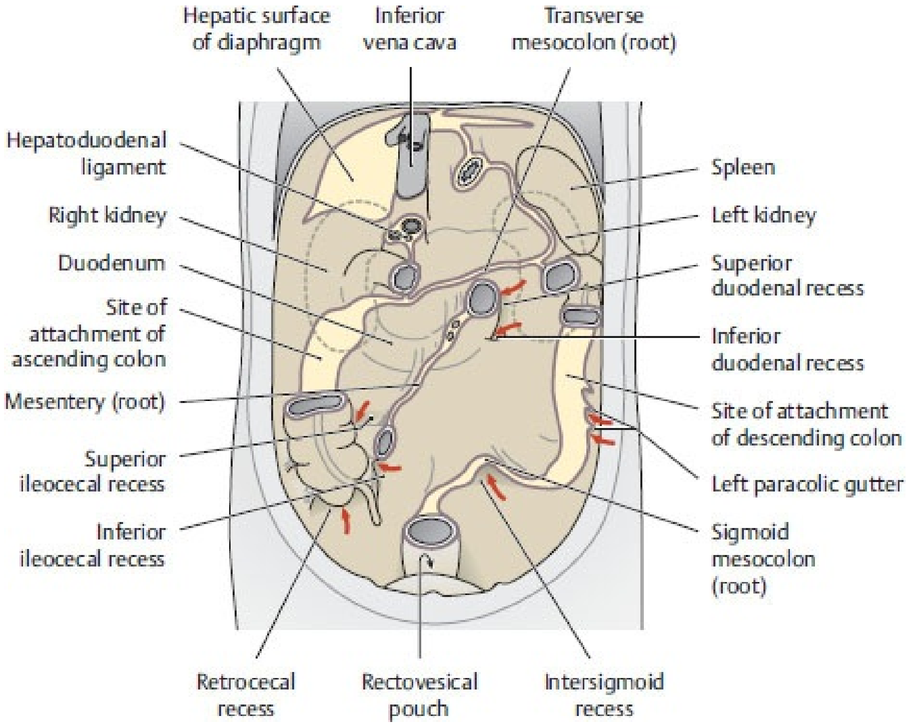

Hepatic surface of diaphragm
Inferior vena cava
Transverse mesocolon (root)
Hepatoduodenal ligament
Right kidney
Duodenum
Site of attachment of ascending colon
Mesentery (root)
Superior ileocecal recess
Inferior ileocecal recess
Spleen
Left kidney
Superior duodenal recess
Inferior duodenal recess
Site of attachment of descending colon
Left paracolic gutter
Sigmoid mesocolon (root)
Retrocecal recess
Rectovesical pouch
Intersigmoid recess

Fig. 11.9 Recesses within the peritoneal cavity

Posterior wall of the peritoneal cavity, anterior view. The mesenteric roots and sites of organ attachment create bounded spaces (recesses or sulci) where peritoneal fluid can flow freely. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

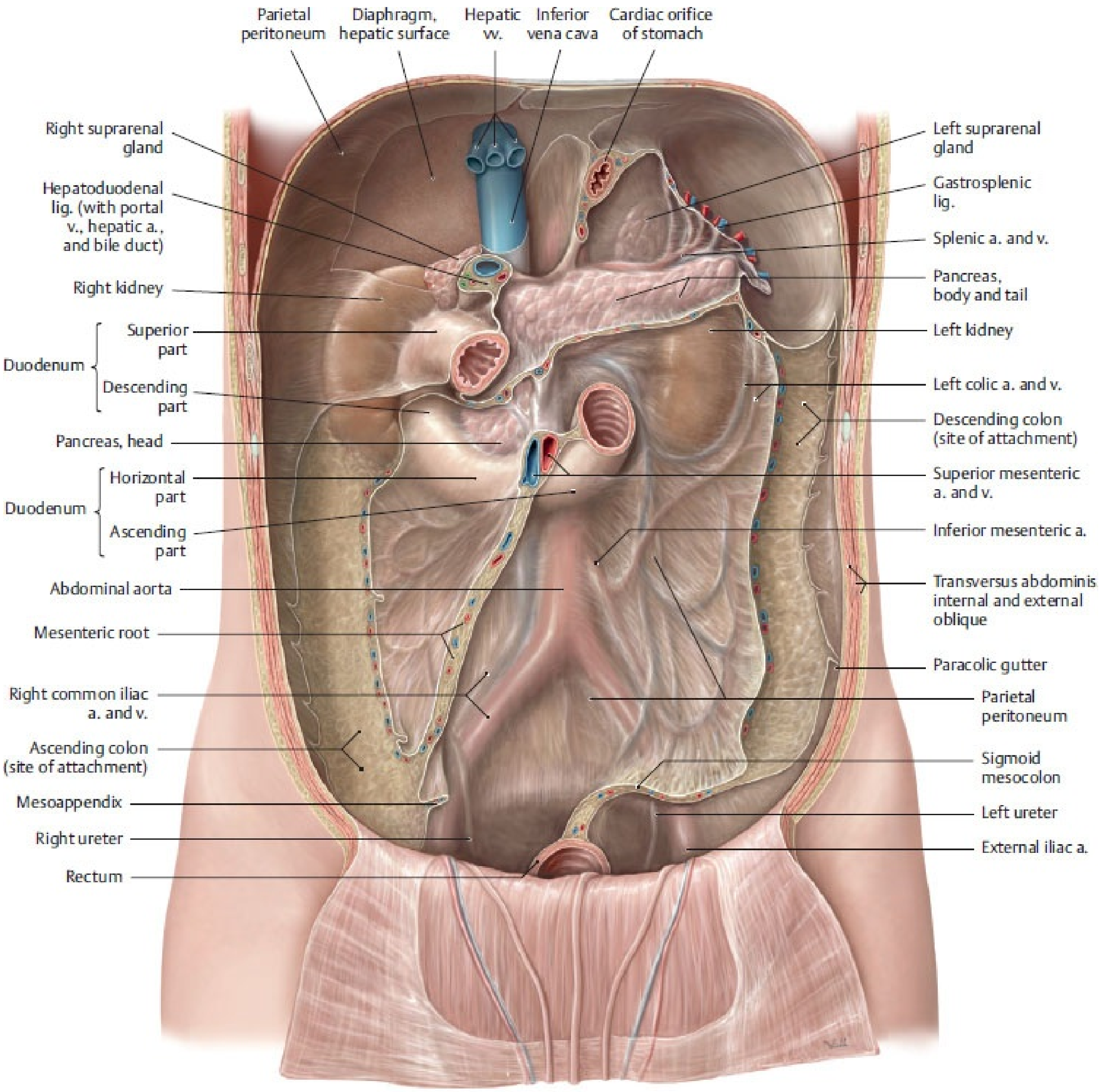

Parietal peritoneum
Diaphragm, hepatic surface
Hepatic vv.
Inferior vena cava
Cardiac orifice of stomach
Right suprarenal gland
Hepatoduodenal lig. (with portal v., hepatic a., and bile duct)
Right kidney
Duodenum
Superior part
Descending part
Pancreas, head
Duodenum
Horizontal part
Ascending part
Abdominal aorta
Mesenteric root
Right common iliac a. and v.
Ascending colon (site of attachment)
Mesoappendix
Right ureter
Rectum
Left suprarenal gland
Gastrosplenic lig.
Splenic a. and v.
Pancreas, body and tail
Left kidney
Left colic a. and v.
Descending colon (site of attachment)
Superior mesenteric a. and v.
Inferior mesenteric a.
Transversus abdominis internal and external oblique
Paracolic gutter
Parietal peritoneum
Sigmoid mesocolon
Left ureter
External iliac a.

Fig. 11.10 Posterior wall of the peritoneal cavity

Anterior view. *Removed:* All intraperitoneal organs. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- The retroperitoneum contains the major neurovascular structures of the abdomen, including the aorta and its branches, inferior vena cava and its tributaries, the azygos and hemiazygos veins, the pre- and para-aortic lymph nodes and thoracic duct, and the lumbar plexus and abdominal autonomic plexuses of the abdomen.

  - Mesenteries of the small and large intestines, as well as the peritoneal ligaments associated with the liver and spleen, attach to the retroperitoneum.
  - The retroperitoneum is divided into a series of compartments defined by fascia that is variable and often difficult to discern. The perirenal and pararenal spaces around the kidneys are examples of these. The importance of this organization is appreciated when considering the containment of disease process or hemorrhage.

Neurovasculature of the Peritoneum

The **parietal** and **visceral layers** of the **peritoneum** derive their blood supply, lymphatic drainage, and innervation from different sources.

— Parietal peritoneum derives its neurovasculature from vessels and nerves of the body wall.
  - Its sensitivity to pain, pressure, and temperature is well localized (felt acutely) through somatic nerves of the overlying muscles and skin.

— Visceral peritoneum derives its neurovasculature from the underlying organs.
  - Autonomic nerves mediate sensitivity to stretching and chemical irritation, but the visceral peritoneum lacks sensitivity to touch and temperature.
  - Sensation is poorly localized and is usually referred to regions that reflect the embryologic origins of the underlying organ.
    - Sensation from foregut structures is referred to the epigastric region.
    - Sensation from midgut structures is referred to the umbilical region.
    - Sensation from hindgut structures is referred to the pubic region.

11.2 Neurovasculature of the Abdomen

Arteries of the Abdomen

— The **abdominal aorta** supplies abdominal viscera and most of the anterior abdominal wall **(Fig. 11.11)**.
  - It enters the abdomen at T12 through the aortic hiatus of the diaphragm and descends along the vertebral column to the left of the midline.
  - It terminates at the L4 vertebral level, where it bifurcates into two **common iliac arteries**.
  - A single **median sacral artery** arises near the bifurcation.

— **Table 11.4** lists major branches of the abdominal aorta.
  - Paired parietal (segmental) branches supply the structures of the

posterior abdominal wall. These include the **inferior phrenic** and **lumbar arteries**.

- Paired visceral branches supply organs of the retroperitoneum. These are the **middle suprarenal, testicular** or **ovarian**, and **renal arteries**.
- Three unpaired visceral branches supply the intestines and accessory organs of the gastrointestinal tract:
  1. The **celiac trunk**, a short trunk that arises at T12/L1 and supplies the abdominal foregut. Its branches, the **splenic**, **left gastric**, and **common hepatic arteries**, anastomose extensively with each other (**Figs. 11.12**, **11.13**, **11.14**, **11.15**).
  2. The **superior mesenteric artery** (SMA), which arises at L1, posterior to the neck of the pancreas. It supplies midgut structures, and its major branches include the **inferior pancreaticoduodenal**, **middle colic**, **right colic**, and **ileocolic arteries**, as well as a series of **jejunal** and **ileal branches** (**Figs. 11.16** and **11.17**).

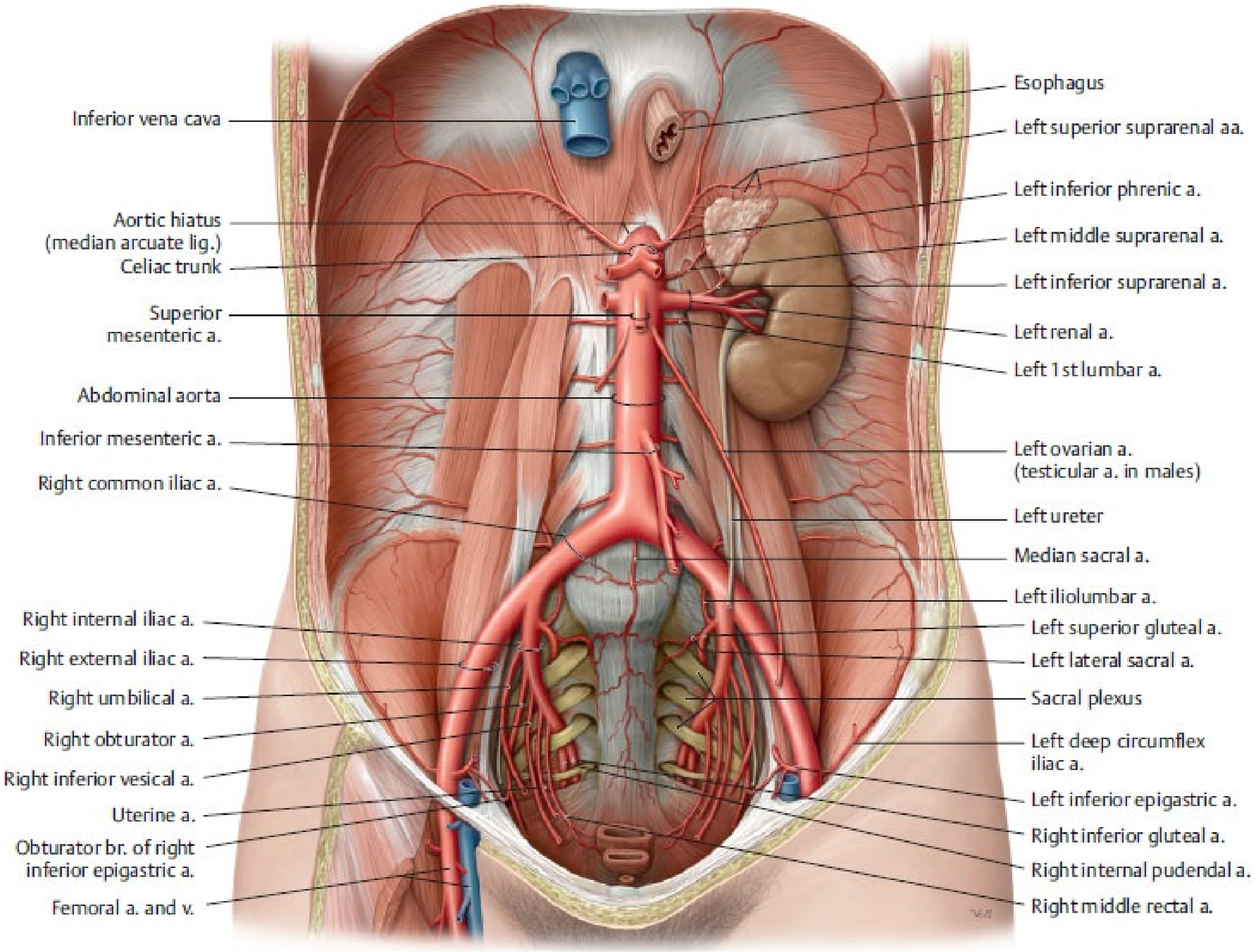

Inferior vena cava
Aortic hiatus (median arcuate lig.)
Celiac trunk
Superior mesenteric a.
Abdominal aorta
Inferior mesenteric a.
Right common iliac a.
Right internal iliac a.
Right external iliac a.
Right umbilical a.
Right obturator a.
Right inferior vesical a.
Uterine a.
Obturator br. of right inferior epigastric a.
Femoral a. and v.
Esophagus
Left superior suprarenal aa.
Left inferior phrenic a.
Left middle suprarenal a.
Left inferior suprarenal a.
Left renal a.
Left 1st lumbar a.
Left ovarian a. (testicular a. in males)
Left ureter
Median sacral a.
Left iliolumbar a.
Left superior gluteal a.
Left lateral sacral a.
Sacral plexus
Left deep circumflex iliac a.
Left inferior epigastric a.
Right inferior gluteal a.
Right internal pudendal a.
Right middle rectal a.

Fig. 11.11 Abdominal aorta

Female abdomen, anterior view. *Removed:* Abdominal organs and peritoneum. The abdominal aorta is the distal continuation of the thoracic aorta. It enters the abdomen at the T12 level and bifurcates into the common iliac arteries at L4. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

3. The **inferior mesenteric artery** (IMA), which arises at L3 and has the smallest caliber of the three visceral trunks. It supplies the hindgut through its **left colic**, **sigmoidal**, and **superior rectal** branches **(Figs. 11.18** and **11.19)**.

- Common iliac arteries pass along the brim of the pelvis and terminate by bifurcating into two major branches (see **Fig. 11.11**):
    - The **internal iliac artery**, which descends into the pelvis.
    - The **external iliac artery**, which gives off the **inferior epigastric** and **deep circumfex iliac arteries** before passing into the lower limb as the **femoral artery**.

— Important anastomoses connect the three unpaired visceral branches of the aorta and provide a collateral blood supply to the intestinal organs.

- The celiac trunk and superior mesenteric artery anastomose in the head of the pancreas through the **pancreaticoduodenal arteries** and in the body and tail of the pancreas through **dorsal pancreatic** and **inferior pancreatic arteries (Fig. 11.15)**.
- The superior mesenteric and inferior mesenteric arteries anastomose near the junction of the transverse and descending colons through the middle and left colic arteries. The **marginal artery** runs along the mesenteric border of the large intestine and connects the ileocolic, right colic, middle colic, and left colic arteries.
- The inferior mesenteric artery anastomoses with arteries of the rectum through its **superior rectal artery** (see **Fig. 14.19**).

BOX 11.3: CLINICAL CORRELATION

ABDOMINAL AORTIC ANEURYSM

Abdominal aortic aneurysms (AAAs) most commonly occur between the renal arteries and the bifurcation of the aorta. When small they can remain asymptomatic, but large aneurysms can be palpated through the abdominal wall to the left of the midline. Ruptured AAAs present with severe abdominal pain that radiates to the abdomen or back. Mortality rates for ruptured aneurysms approach 90% due to overwhelming hemorrhage.

Table 11.4 Branches of the Abdominal Aorta

The abdominal aorta gives rise to three major unpaired trunks (bold) and the unpaired median sacral artery, as well as six paired branches.

Branch from Abdominal Aorta	Branches	
Inferior phrenic aa. (paired)	Superior suprarenal aa.	
Celiac trunk	Left gastric a.	
	Splenic a.	
	Common hepatic a.	Proper hepatic a.
		Right gastric a.
		Gastroduodenal a.
Middle suprarenal aa. (paired)		
Superior mesenteric a.	Inferior pancreaticoduodenal a.	
	Middle colic a.	
	Right colic a.	
	Jejunal and ileal aa.	
	Ileocolic a.	
Renal aa. (paired)	Inferior suprarenal aa.	
Lumbar aa. (1st–4th, paired)		
Testicular/ovarian aa. (paired)		
Inferior mesenteric a.	Left colic a.	
	Sigmoidal aa.	
	Superior rectal a.	

Common iliac aa. (paired)	External iliac a.
	Internal iliac a.
Median sacral a.	

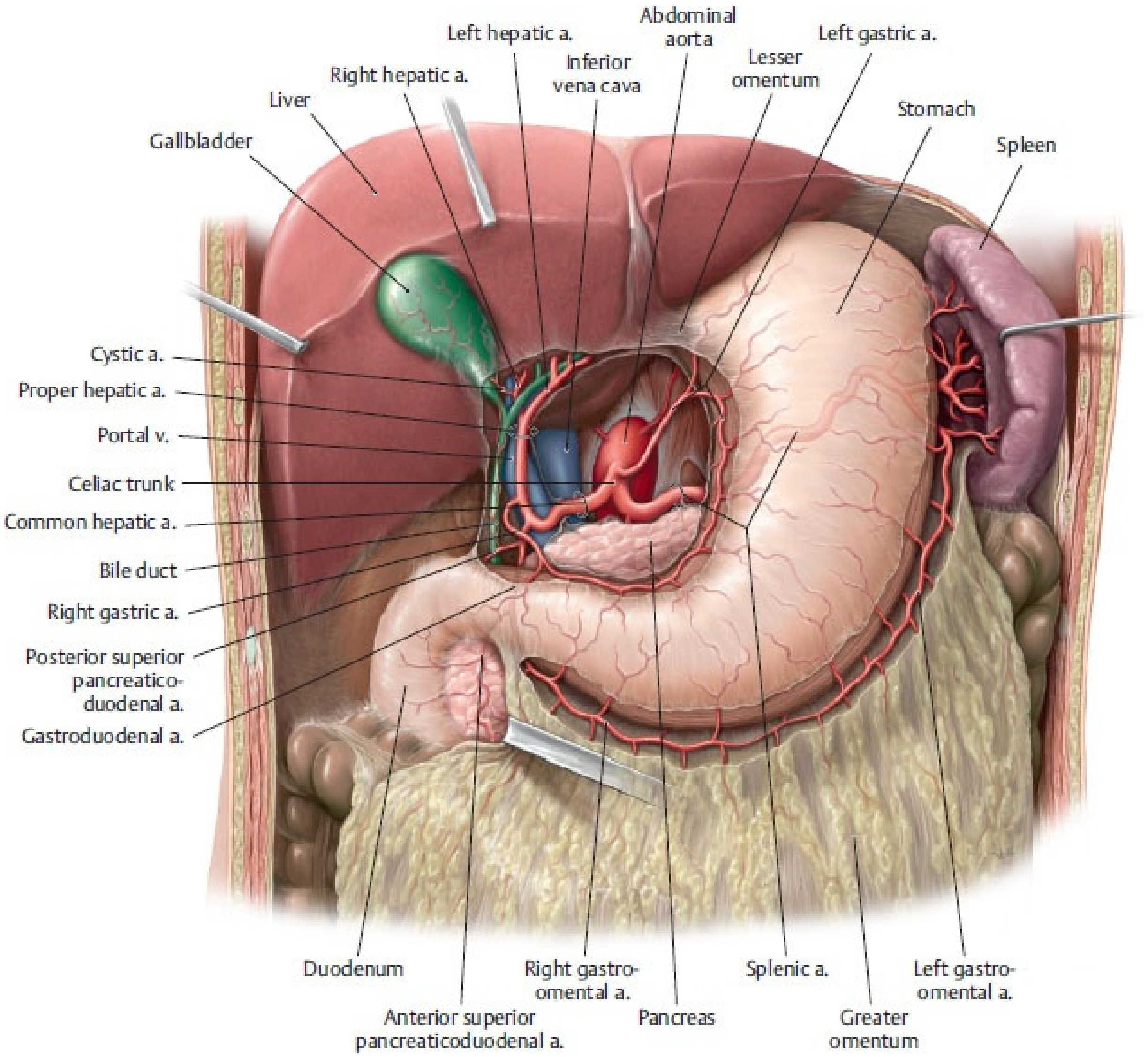

Left hepatic a.
Abdominal aorta
Inferior vena cava
Lesser omentum
Left gastric a.
Right hepatic a.
Liver
Stomach
Gallbladder
Spleen
Cystic a.
Proper hepatic a.
Portal v.
Celiac trunk
Common hepatic a.
Bile duct
Right gastric a.
Posterior superior pancreatico-duodenal a.
Gastroduodenal a.
Duodenum
Right gastro-omental a.
Splenic a.
Left gastro-omental a.
Anterior superior pancreaticoduodenal a.
Pancreas
Greater omentum

Fig. 11.12 Celiac trunk: Stomach,

Anterior view. *Opened:* Lesser omentum. *Incised:* omentum. The celiac trunk arises from the abdominal aorta at about the level of L1. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

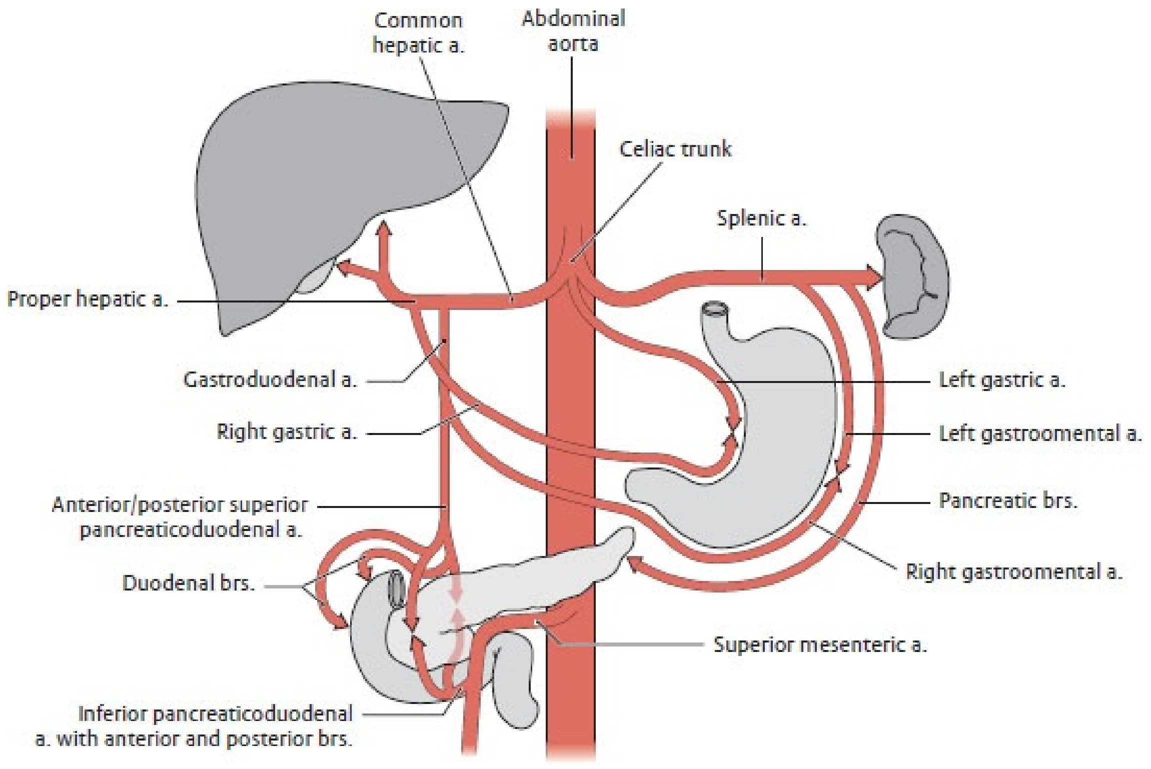

Common hepatic a.
Abdominal aorta
Celiac trunk
Splenic a.
Proper hepatic a.
Gastroduodenal a.
Left gastric a.
Right gastric a.
Left gastroomental a.
Anterior/posterior superior pancreaticoduodenal a.
Pancreatic brs.
Duodenal brs.
Right gastroomental a.
Superior mesenteric a.
Inferior pancreaticoduodenal a. with anterior and posterior brs.

Fig. 11.13 Distribution of the celiac trunk and anastomoses between its branches

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

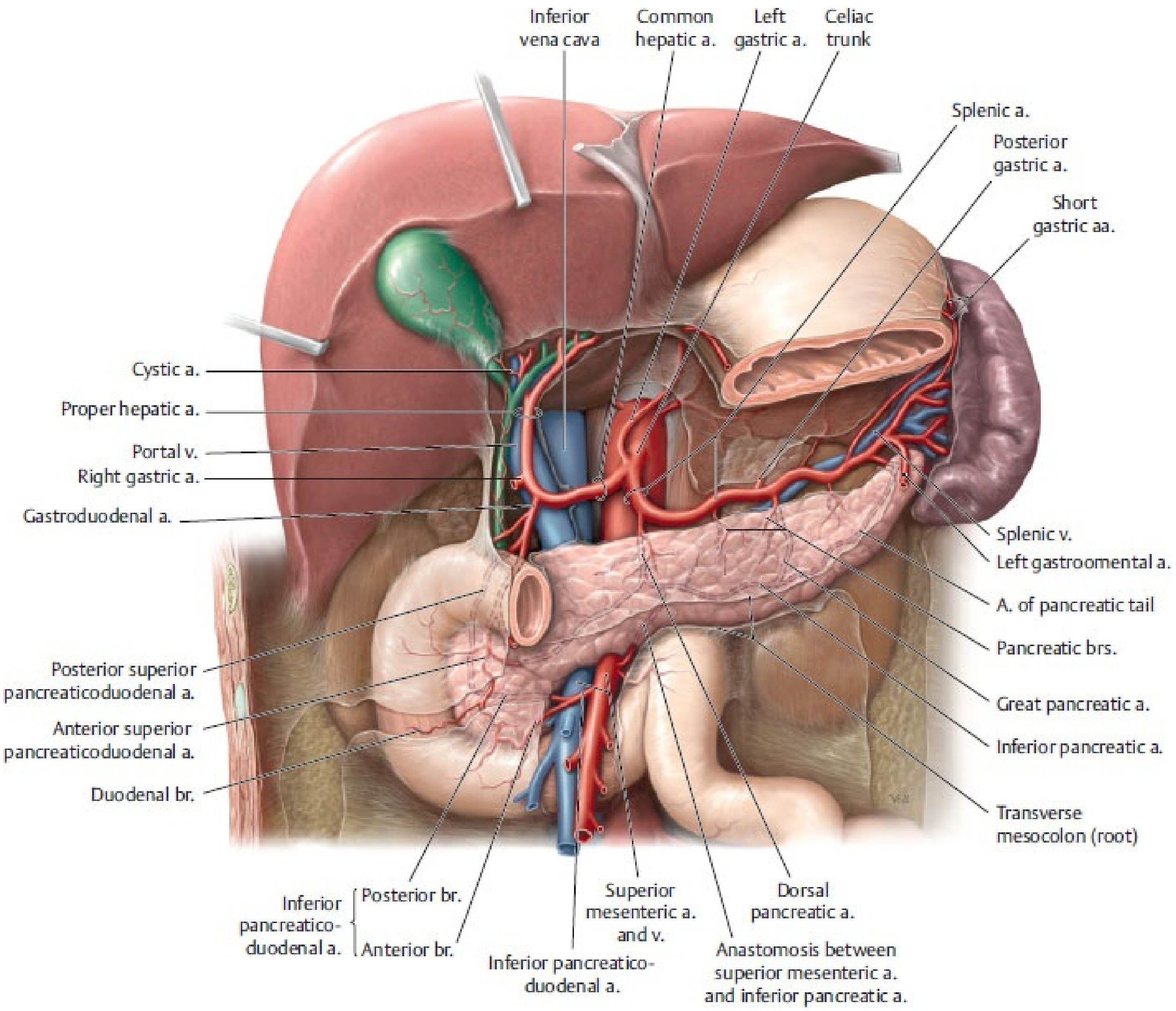

Inferior vena cava
Common hepatic a.
Left gastric a.
Celiac trunk
Splenic a.
Posterior gastric a.
Short gastric aa.
Cystic a.
Proper hepatic a.
Portal v.
Right gastric a.
Gastroduodenal a.
Splenic v.
Left gastroomental a.
A. of pancreatic tail
Pancreatic brs.
Posterior superior pancreaticoduodenal a.
Anterior superior pancreaticoduodenal a.
Duodenal br.
Great pancreatic a.
Inferior pancreatic a.
Transverse mesocolon (root)
Inferior pancreatico-duodenal a.
Posterior br.
Anterior br.
Inferior pancreatico-duodenal a.
Superior mesenteric a. and v.
Dorsal pancreatic a.
Anastomosis between superior mesenteric a. and inferior pancreatic a.

Fig. 11.14 Celiac trunk: Pancreas, duodenum, and spleen

Anterior view. *Removed:* Stomach (body) and lesser omentum. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

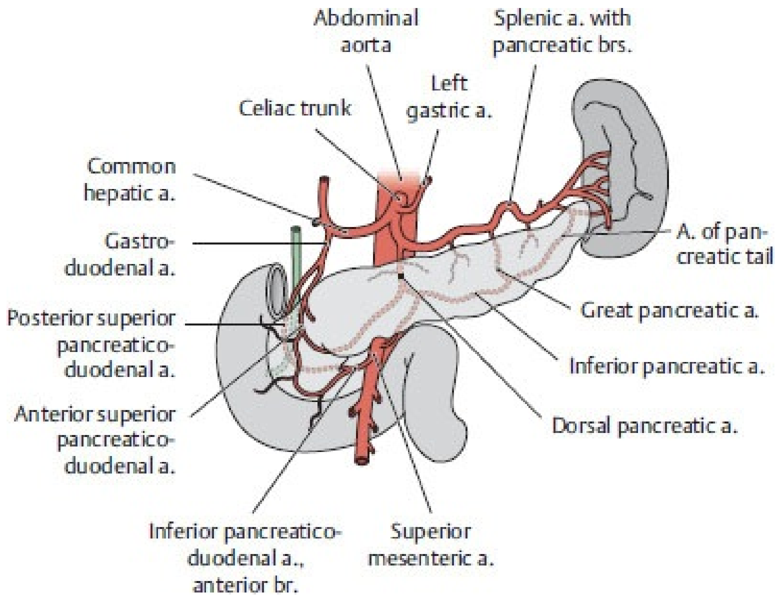

Abdominal aorta
Splenic a. with pancreatic brs.
Left gastric a.
Celiac trunk
Common hepatic a.
Gastro-duodenal a.
A. of pan-creatic tail
Great pancreatic a.
Posterior superior pancreatico-duodenal a.
Inferior pancreatic a.
Dorsal pancreatic a.
Anterior superior pancreatico-duodenal a.
Inferior pancreatico-duodenal a., anterior br.
Superior mesenteric a.

Fig. 11.15 The pancreaticoduodenal arcade, an anastomosis between branches of the celiac trunk and superior mesenteric artery

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

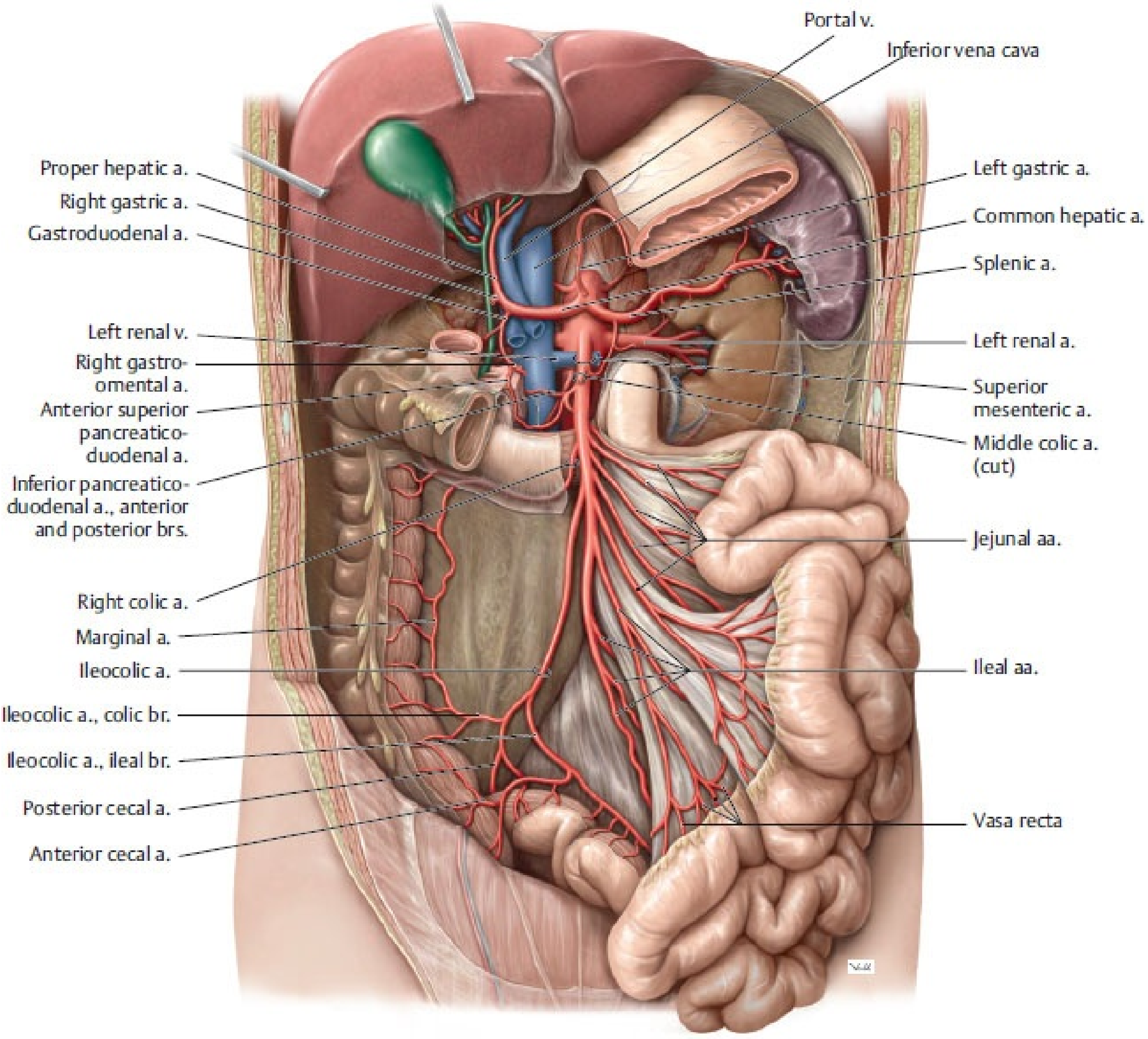

Portal v.
Inferior vena cava
Proper hepatic a.
Right gastric a.
Gastroduodenal a.
Left gastric a.
Common hepatic a.
Splenic a.
Left renal v.
Right gastro-omental a.
Anterior superior pancreaticoduodenal a.
Inferior pancreaticoduodenal a., anterior and posterior brs.
Left renal a.
Superior mesenteric a.
Middle colic a. (cut)
Jejunal aa.
Right colic a.
Marginal a.
Ileocolic a.
Ileal aa.
Ileocolic a., colic br.
Ileocolic a., ileal br.
Posterior cecal a.
Anterior cecal a.
Vasa recta

Fig. 11.16 Superior mesenteric artery

Anterior view. *Partially removed:* Stomach and peritoneum. *Note:* The middle colic artery has been truncated. The superior mesenteric artery arises from the aorta opposite L2. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

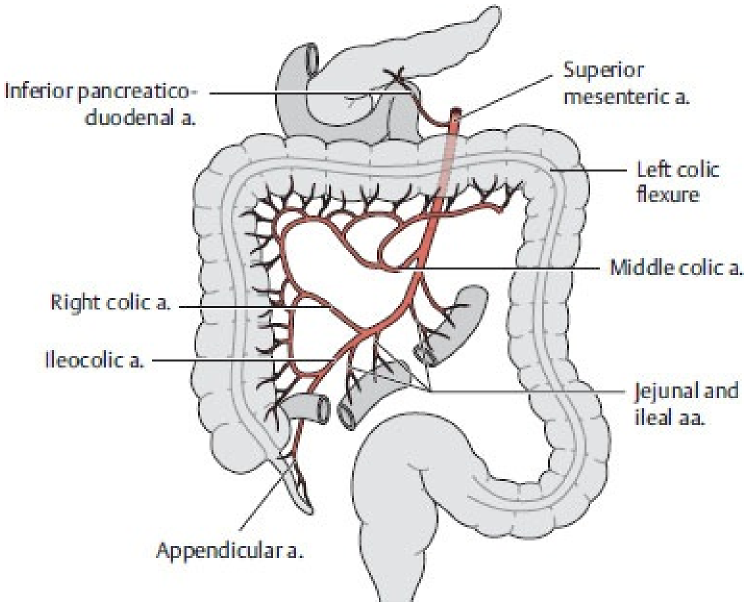

Inferior pancreatico-duodenal a.
Superior mesenteric a.
Left colic flexure
Middle colic a.
Right colic a.
Ileocolic a.
Jejunal and ileal aa.
Appendicular a.

Fig. 11.17 Distribution of the superior mesenteric artery

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 11.4: CLINICAL CORRELATION

MESENTERIC ISCHEMIA

A decrease in blood flow to the intestine (ischemia) can result from occlusion of the superior mesenteric artery (SMA) by a thrombus or embolus (acute) or may be secondary to severe atherosclerosis (chronic). In the acute condition, the embolus can obstruct the SMA at its origin or, if small enough, may travel further to obstruct a more peripheral branch. Acute ischemia results in necrosis of the affected part of the intestine. Chronic ischemia is less threatening since obstruction of the vessels occurs gradually, allowing the formation of collateral vessels that will supply the affected intestine. Because of the extensive anastomoses between intestinal arteries, chronic vascular isch-emia is rare. Symptoms occur only if two of the three major ves-sels (celiac trunk or superior or inferior mesenteric arteries) are compromised.

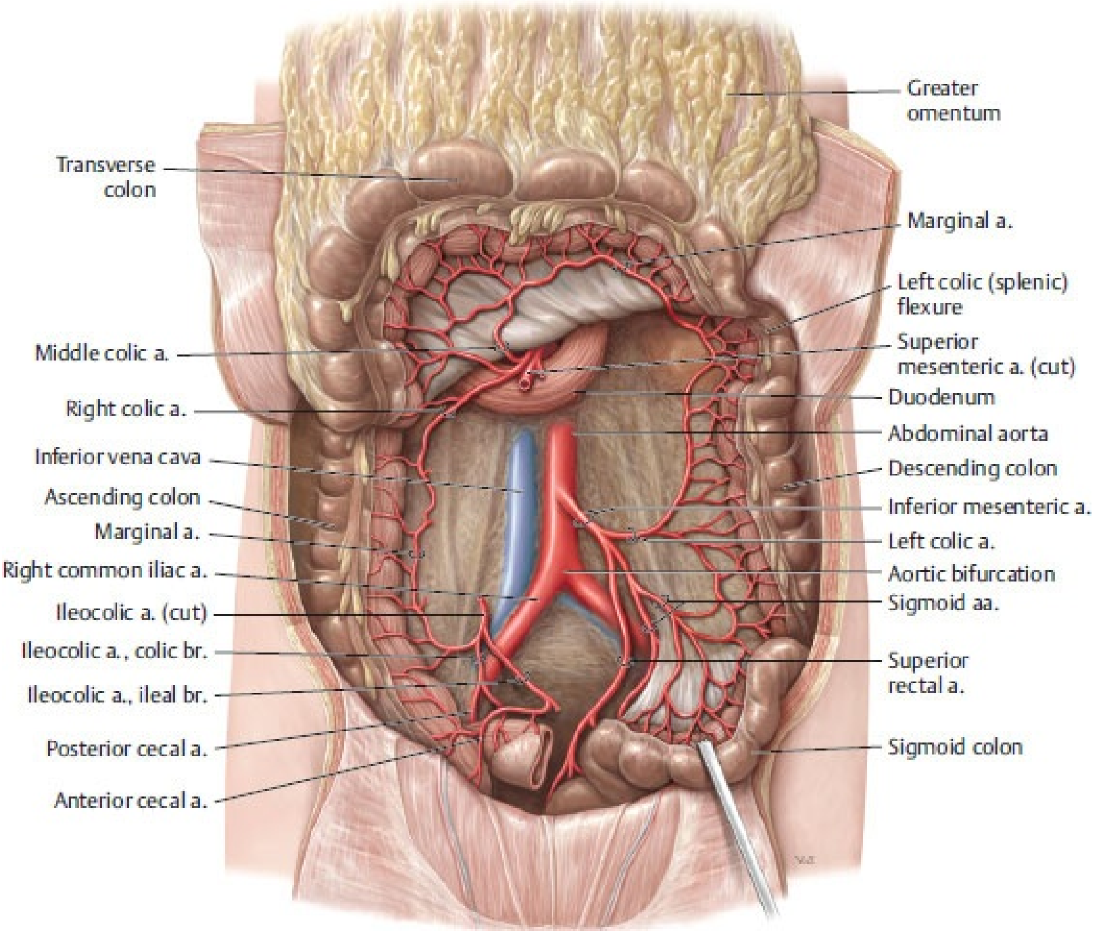

Greater omentum
Transverse colon
Marginal a.
Left colic (splenic) flexure
Middle colic a.
Superior mesenteric a. (cut)
Right colic a.
Duodenum
Abdominal aorta
Inferior vena cava
Descending colon
Ascending colon
Inferior mesenteric a.
Marginal a.
Left colic a.
Right common iliac a.
Aortic bifurcation
Sigmoid aa.
Ileocolic a. (cut)
Ileocolic a., colic br.
Superior rectal a.
Ileocolic a., ileal br.
Posterior cecal a.
Sigmoid colon
Anterior cecal a.

Fig. 11.18 Inferior mesenteric artery

Anterior view. *Removed:* Jejunum and ileum. *Reflected:* Transverse colon. The inferior mesenteric artery arises from the aorta opposite L3. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

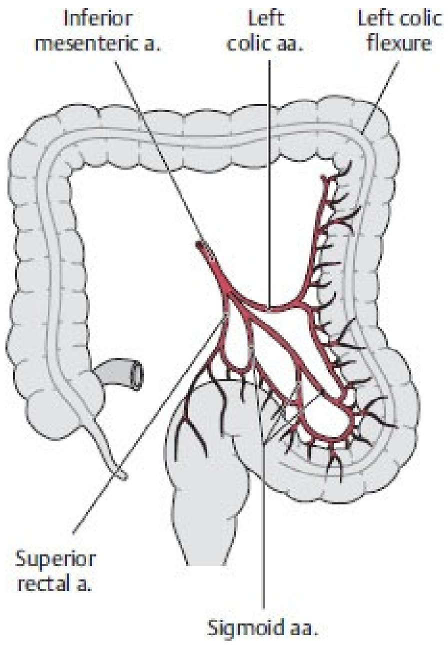


Fig. 11.19 Distribution of the inferior mesenteric artery

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

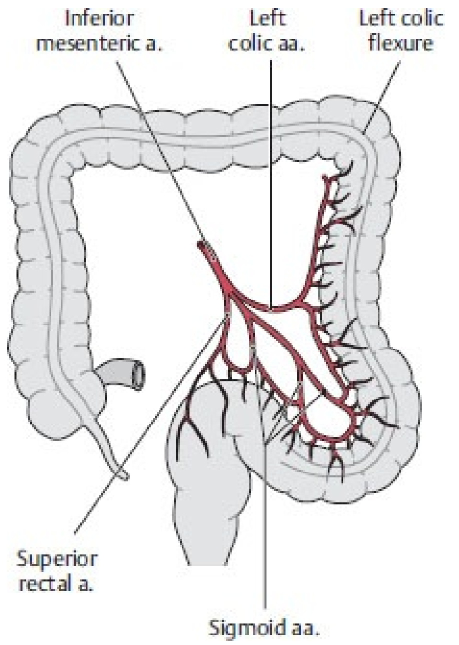
BOX 11.5: CLINICAL CORRELATION

ANATOMOSES BETWEEN ARTERIES OF THE LARGE INTESTINE

Anastomoses between branches of the superior mesenteric and inferior mesenteric arteries can compensate for abnormally low blood flow in either of the arteries. Two of these anastomoses, although variable, are of significant value:

Riolan’s arcade (arc of Riolan) – connects the middle colic and left colic arteries close to their origins from the superior and inferior mesenteric arteries, respectively.

Marginal artery (of Drummond) – connects all arteries of the colon that run along the periphery of the mesentery close to the intestinal tube.



(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Veins of the Abdomen

Venous drainage of the abdomen and pelvis is accomplished through two systems, the **systemic (caval) system** and the **hepatic portal system** (**Fig. 11.20**).

1. Organs that drain directly into the **inferior vena cava** or its tributaries make up the systemic (caval) venous system.
   - — The inferior vena cava (IVC) receives blood from retroperi-toneal and pelvic organs, walls of the abdomen and pelvis, and the lower limbs (**Fig. 11.21**).
     - It originates at the L5 vertebral level where the common iliac veins merge.
     - It ascends along the right side of the vertebral column, passes posterior to the liver, and pierces the central tendon of the diaphragm at the T8 vertebral level where it enters the right atrium of the heart.
   - — **Table 11.5** lists the direct tributaries of the inferior vena cava.
     - Paired common iliac veins drain the **external iliac** and **internal iliac veins.**
     - Paired **inferior phrenic** and **lumbar veins** drain the posterior abdominal wall and diaphragm and accom-pany the arteries of

similar name.

    - Veins of the retroperitoneal organs include the **right** and **left renal veins**, the right **suprarenal vein**, and the right **testicular** or **ovarian** (gonadal) **vein**. The suprarenal and gonadal veins on the left side drain to the left renal vein.
    - Typically three **hepatic veins** enter the IVC from the liver immediately below the diaphragm.
  - Paired **ascending lumbar veins** communicate with the lumbar veins and are continuous with the azygos and hemiazygos veins of the thorax. These communications between the lumbar, ascending lumbar, azygos, and hemiazygos veins function as a collateral pathway between the inferior and superior venae cavae.

2. Organs that drain into the **portal vein** or its tributaries and pass through the liver before entering the inferior vena cava make up the hepatic portal system.
   - The portal vein shunts nutrient-rich venous blood from the capillary beds of the gastrointestinal tract and its associated organs (liver, gallbladder, pancreas, and spleen) to sinusoids of the liver **(Fig. 11.22)**. This blood eventually enters the inferior vena cava through the hepatic veins.
   - Tributaries of the portal vein are listed in **Table 11.6** and include the following:
     - The **splenic vein**, which drains the spleen, and the **superior mesenteric vein**, which drains the small intestine and most of the large intestine. These two veins unite behind the neck of the pancreas to form the portal vein.
     - The **inferior mesenteric vein**, which drains the hindgut portion of the gastrointestinal tract. It usually joins the splenic vein but may empty directly into the portal vein.
     - Veins from the lower esophagus, stomach, pancreas, duodenum, and gallbladder
   - Normal connections between the systemic (caval) venous system and portal venous system, called **portosystemic pathways (Fig. 11.23)**, can become abnormally dilated when there is an obstruction of the portal or systemic circulations (i.e., cirrhosis of the liver or pregnancy). These dilations are most prominent in
     1. **esophageal veins**,
     2. **periumbilical veins** through the superior and inferior epigastric veins of the abdominal wall,

3. **colic veins** in the retroperitoneum, and
4. **rectal veins** of the rectum and anal canal.

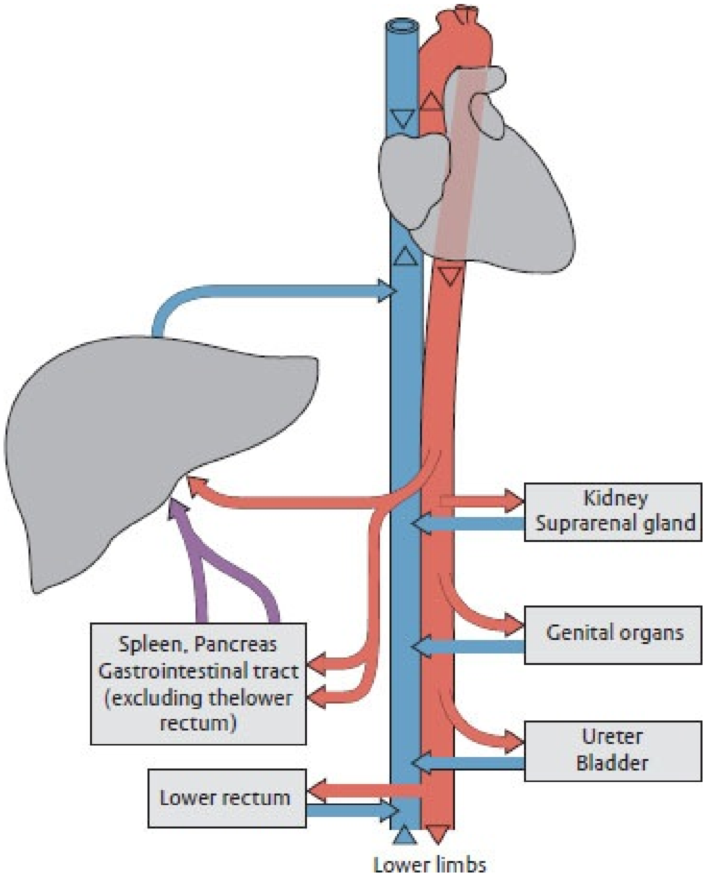

Kidney
Suprarenal gland
Genital organs
Spleen, Pancreas
Gastrointestinal tract
(excluding thelower
rectum)
Ureter
Bladder
Lower rectum
Lower limbs

Fig. 11.20 Schematic of systemic and portal venous systems

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

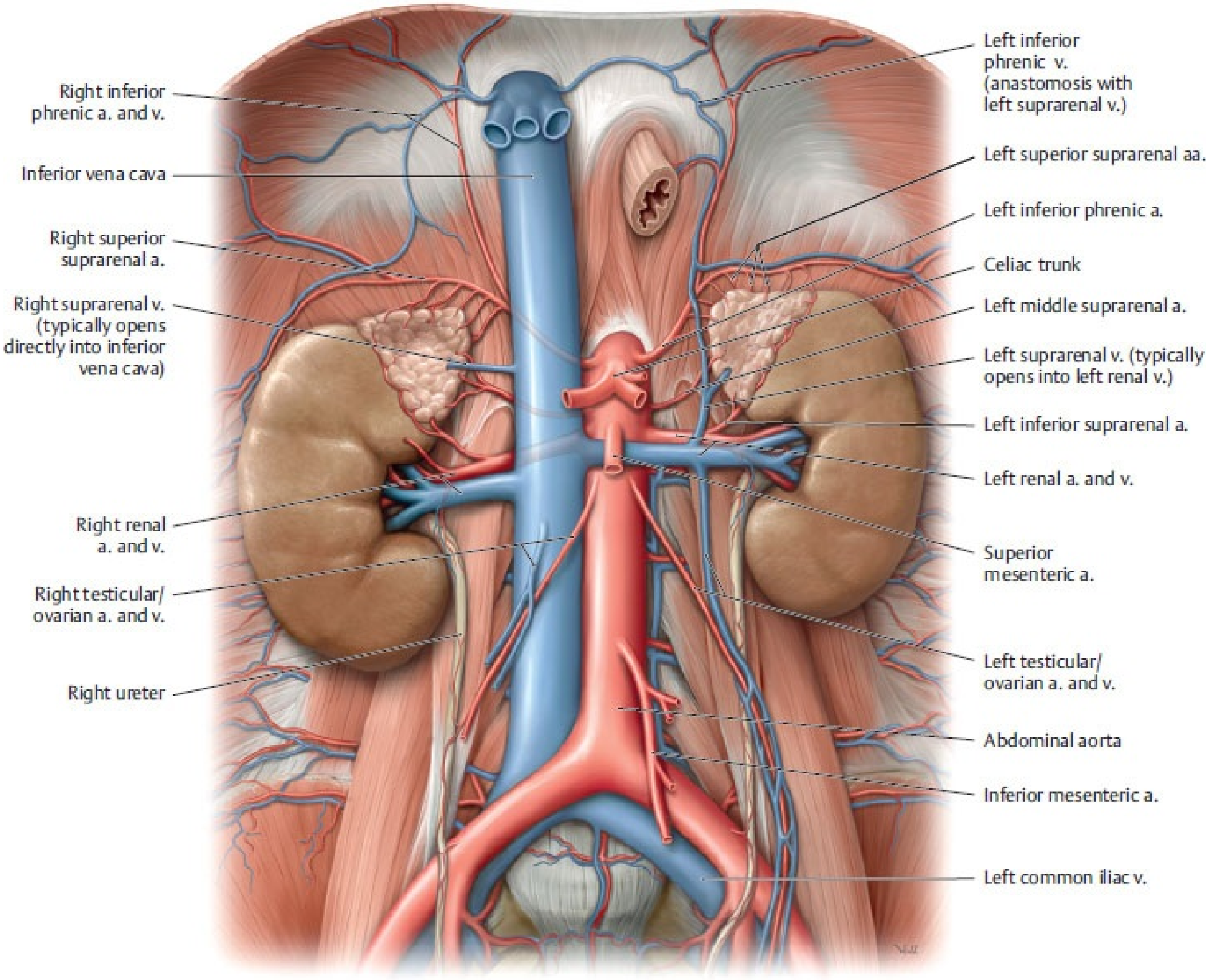
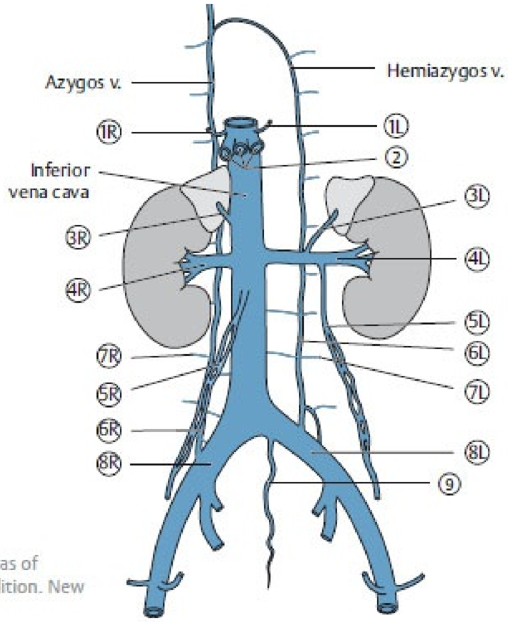

Right inferior phrenic a. and v.
Inferior vena cava
Right superior suprarenal a.
Right suprarenal v. (typically opens directly into inferior vena cava)
Right renal a. and v.
Right testicular/ ovarian a. and v.
Right ureter
Left inferior phrenic v. (anastomosis with left suprarenal v.)
Left superior suprarenal aa.
Left inferior phrenic a.
Celiac trunk
Left middle suprarenal a.
Left suprarenal v. (typically opens into left renal v.)
Left inferior suprarenal a.
Left renal a. and v.
Superior mesenteric a.
Left testicular/ ovarian a. and v.
Abdominal aorta
Inferior mesenteric a.
Left common iliac v.

Fig. 11.21 Inferior vena cava

Anterior view. *Removed:* All organs except the kidneys and suprarenal glands. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Table 11.5 Tributaries of the inferior vena cava

(1R)	(1L)	Inferior phrenic vv. (paired)
②		Hepatic vv. (3)
(3R)	(3L)	Suprarenal vv. (the right vein is a direct tributary)
(4R)	(4L)	Renal vv. (paired)
(5R)	(5L)	Testicular/ovarian vv. (the right vein is a direct tributary)
(6R)	(6L)	Ascending lumbar vv. (paired), not direct tributaries
(7R)	(7L)	Lumbar vv.
(8R)	(8L)	Common iliac vv. (paired)
⑨		Median sacral v.


Azygos v.
Hemiazygos v.
(1R)
(1L)
②
Inferior vena cava
(3L)
(3R)
(4L)
(4R)
(5L)
(6L)
(7R)
(7L)
(5R)
(6R)
(8L)
(8R)
⑨

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th Edition. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

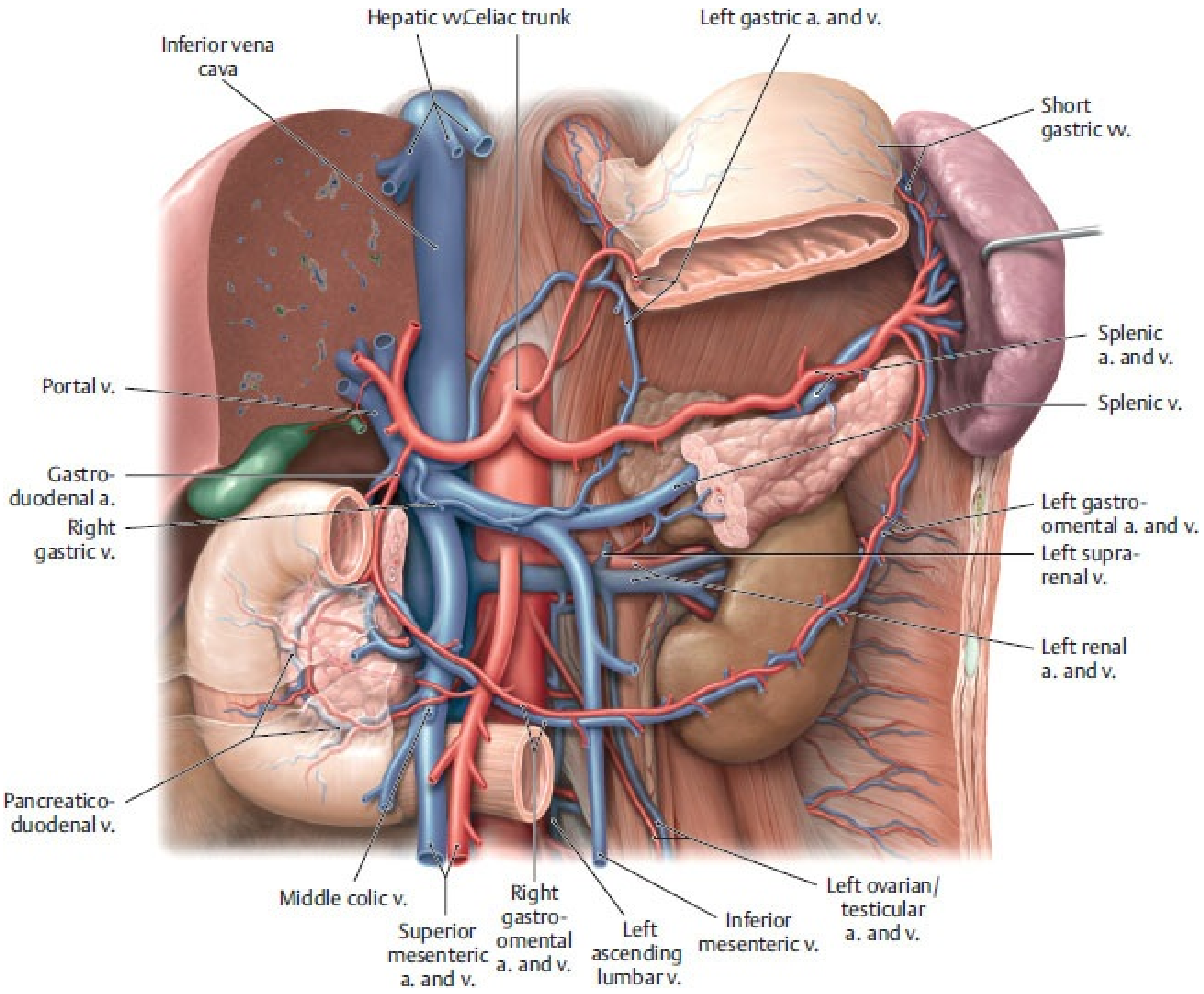

Hepatic vv.
Celiac trunk
Left gastric a. and v.
Inferior vena cava
Short gastric vv.
Splenic a. and v.
Portal v.
Splenic v.
Gastro-duodenal a.
Right gastric v.
Left gastro-omental a. and v.
Left supra-renal v.
Left renal a. and v.
Pancreatico-duodenal v.
Middle colic v.
Superior mesenteric a. and v.
Right gastro-omental a. and v.
Left ascending lumbar v.
Inferior mesenteric v.
Left ovarian/testicular a. and v.

Fig. 11.22 Portal vein: In situ

Anterior view. *Partially removed:* Stomach, pancreas, and peritoneum. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

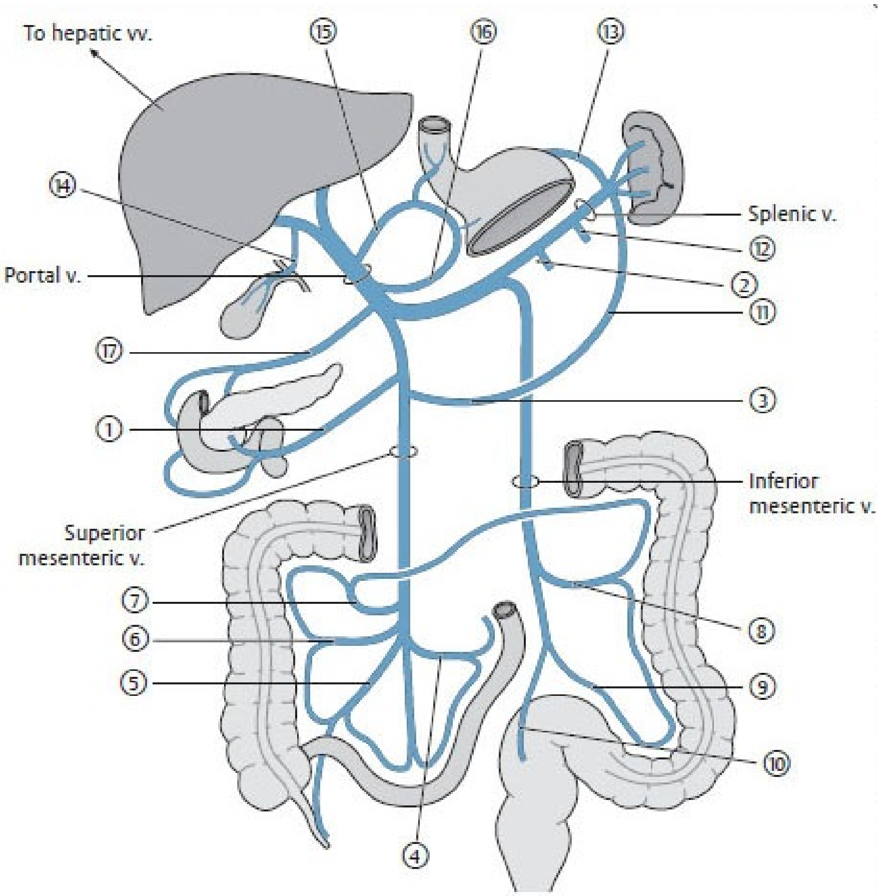
Table 11.6 Tributaries of the Portal Vein

- **Superior mesenteric vein** with its tributaries:
  ① Pancreaticoduodenal vv.
  ② Pancreatic vv.
  ③ Right gastro-omental v.
  ④ Jejunal and ileal vv.
  ⑤ Ileocolic v.
  ⑥ Right colic v.
  ⑦ Middle colic v.

- **Inferior mesenteric vein** with its tributaries:
  ⑧ Left colic v.
  ⑨ Sigmoid vv.
  ⑩ Superior rectal v.

- **Splenic vein** with its tributaries:
  ⑪ Left gastro-omental v.
  ⑫ Pancreatic vv.
  ⑬ Short gastric vv.

- **Direct tributaries**
  ⑭ Cystic v.
  ⑮ Left gastric v. with esophageal vv.
  ⑯ Right gastric v.
  ⑰ Posterior superior pancreaticoduodenal v.
  — Paraumbilical vv. **(see Fig. 11.23)**


To hepatic vv.
⑮
⑯
⑬
⑭
Portal v.
Splenic v.
⑫
②
⑪
⑰
③
①
Inferior mesenteric v.
Superior mesenteric v.
⑦
⑥
⑤
⑧
⑨
⑩
④

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

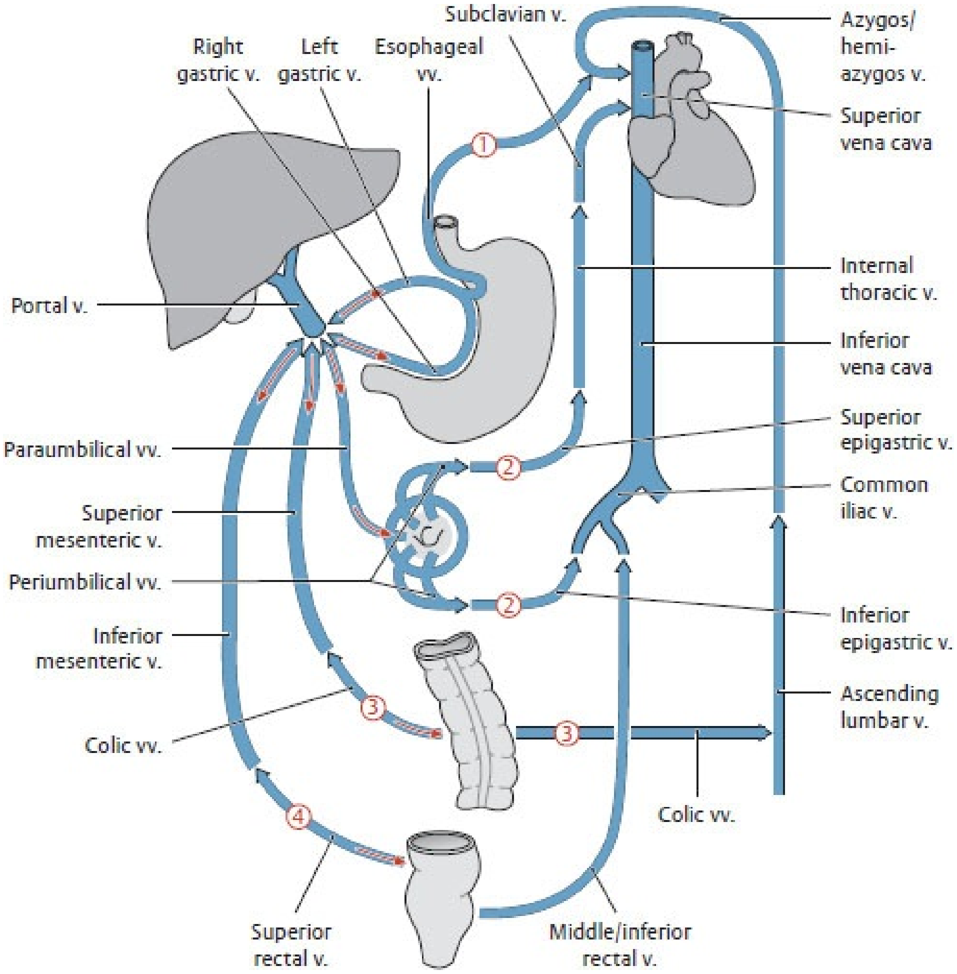

Subclavian v.
Right gastric v.
Left gastric v.
Esophageal vv.
Azygos/hemi-azygos v.
Superior vena cava
①
Portal v.
Internal thoracic v.
Inferior vena cava
Superior epigastric v.
Paraumbilical vv.
②
Common iliac v.
Superior mesenteric v.
Periumbilical vv.
②
Inferior epigastric v.
Inferior mesenteric v.
Ascending lumbar v.
③
Colic vv.
③
④
Colic vv.
Superior rectal v.
Middle/inferior rectal v.

Fig. 11.23 Portosystemic pathways

When the portal system is compromised, the portal vein can divert blood away from the liver back to its supplying veins, which return this nutrient-rich blood to the heart via the venae cavae. *Red arrows* indicate flow reversal in the *(1)* esophageal veins, *(2)* paraumbilical veins, *(3)* colic veins, and *(4)* middle and inferior rectal veins. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 11.6: CLINICAL CORRELATION

ESOPHAGEAL VARICES

Submucosal veins of the esophagus drain superiorly to the sys-temic system (through the azygos veins) and inferiorly to the por-tal system. When flow through the portal vein is obstructed (as in portal hypertension), these portosystemic anastomoses allow blood in the lower esophagus to drain to the systemic veins. The esophageal varices, enlarged veins that result from this increased flow, bulge into the esophageal lumen and can rupture, causing severe hemorrhaging.

BOX 11.7: CLINICAL CORRELATION

PORTAL HYPERTENSION AND SURGICAL PORTOCAVAL SHUNTS

Portal hypertension occurs secondary to liver disease (e.g., cirrho-sis) or thrombosis of the portal vein. Increased resistance to the flow of blood in the portal system forces portal blood through portosystemic (portocaval) anastomoses to the systemic circula-tion, reversing flow in some venous pathways. Symptoms of por-tal hypertension include ascites, caput medusa (enlargement of periumbilical veins on the anterior abdominal wall), varices of the rectal veins (hemorrhoids), and esophageal varices. Symptoms may be relieved by surgically creating a portocaval shunt between the portal and systemic circulations (portal vein to the inferior vena cava or splenic vein to the left renal vein).

Lymphatic Drainage of the Abdomen

Lymph from abdominal and pelvic regions drains through lym-phatic vessels that usually accompany the arteries supplying those regions. The lymph passes through one or more lymph node groups that can include primary, or regional, nodes and secondary, or col-lecting, nodes. These latter groups receive lymph from multiple regions and in the abdomen and pelvis and are known as **lumbar lymph nodes**. They surround the aorta and inferior vena cava and are subdivided by location **(Fig. 11.24)**. Lymph drains from these nodes into either the **lumbar** or **intestinal lymphatic trunks**, which converge in the upper abdomen to form the **cisterna chyli** and the thoracic duct.

— Groups of lumbar lymph nodes drain all of the abdominal viscera (except a small hepatic segment, which can drain to nodes of the diaphragm) and most of the abdominal wall **(Fig. 11.25; Table 11.7)**. They include:

  - **Preaortic nodes**, which lie anterior to the abdominal aorta. They receive lymph from the gastrointestinal tract (as far as the midrectum) and associated organs. Nodes surrounding the base of the major arteries form collecting nodal groups, such as the **superior** and **inferior mesenteric nodes**. These drain to **celiac nodes**, which drain to intestinal lymph trunks.
  - **Right and left lumbar nodes** (lateral aortic and caval nodes), which lie along the medial border of the psoas muscles, the crura of the diaphragm, the aorta, and the inferior vena cava. They drain the abdominal and pelvic walls and the viscera of the retroperitoneum, including the ovaries and testes. They also receive lymph from the common iliac nodes, which drain the pelvic viscera and the lower limb. Drainage from these lumbar nodes forms a lumbar trunk on each side.

— **Common iliac nodes** drain organs of the pelvis and the lower limbs. Lymph from these nodes drain to the right and left lumbar nodes.

- The cisterna chyli is an elongated, lobulated, thin-walled dilation that, when present, gives rise to the thoracic duct. It lies to the right of the T12 vertebral body and receives the lumbar and intestinal trunks.

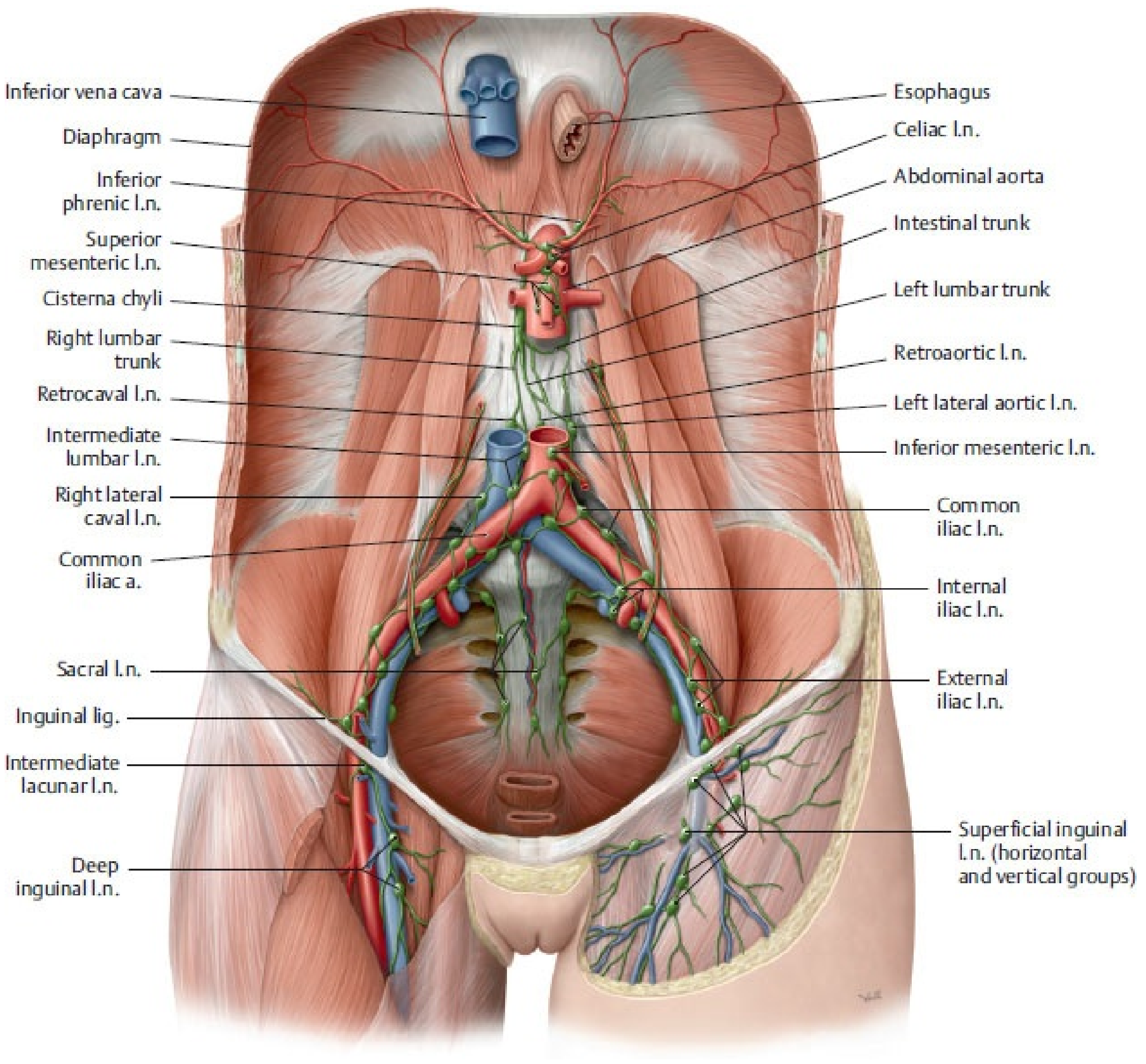
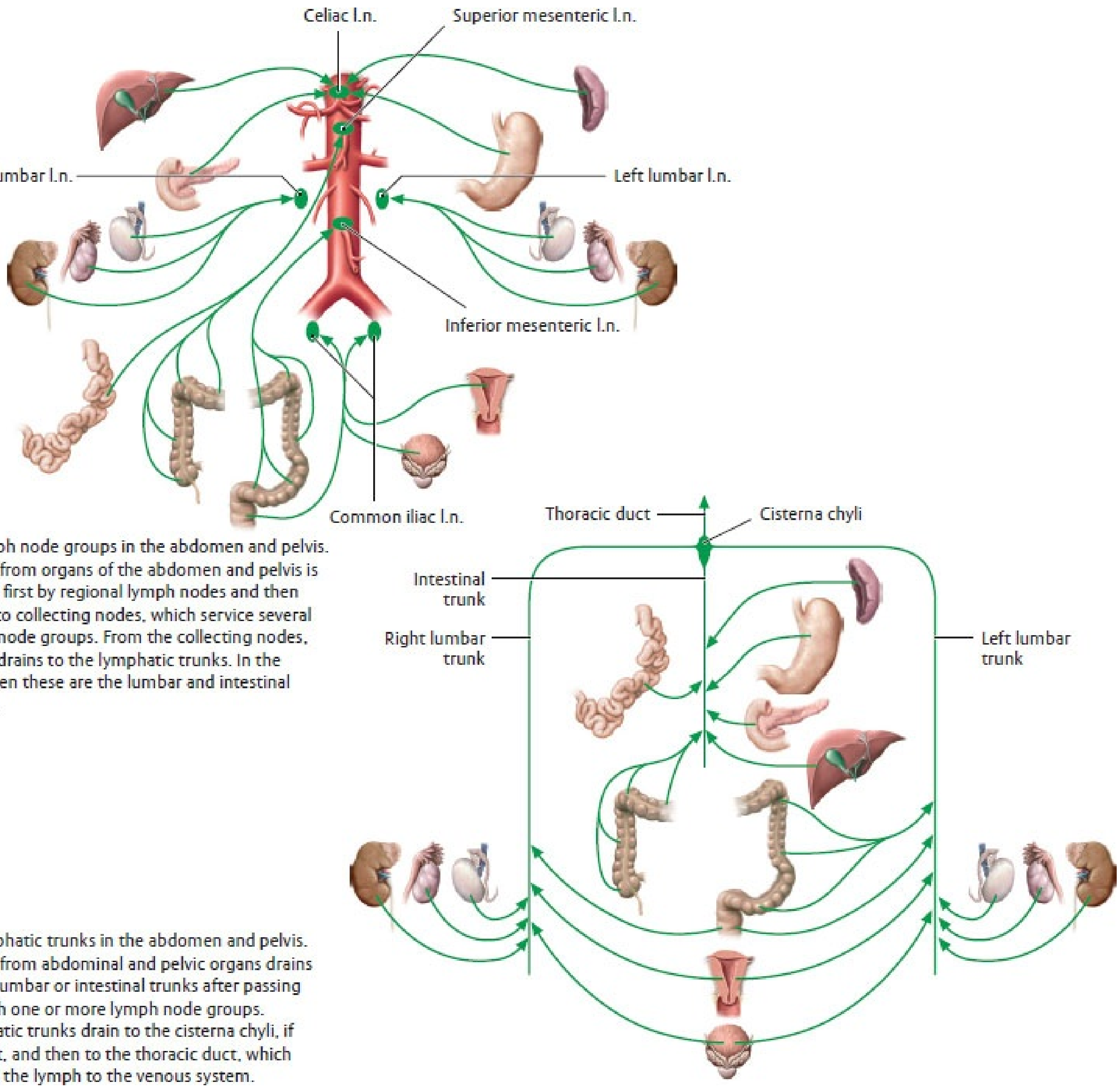

Inferior vena cava
Diaphragm
Inferior phrenic l.n.
Superior mesenteric l.n.
Cisterna chyli
Right lumbar trunk
Retrocaval l.n.
Intermediate lumbar l.n.
Right lateral caval l.n.
Common iliac a.
Sacral l.n.
Inguinal lig.
Intermediate lacunar l.n.
Deep inguinal l.n.
Esophagus
Celiac l.n.
Abdominal aorta
Intestinal trunk
Left lumbar trunk
Retroaortic l.n.
Left lateral aortic l.n.
Inferior mesenteric l.n.
Common iliac l.n.
Internal iliac l.n.
External iliac l.n.
Superficial inguinal l.n. (horizontal and vertical groups)

Fig. 11.24 Parietal lymph nodes in the abdomen and pelvis

Anterior view. *Removed*: All visceral structures except vessels (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Celiac l.n.
Superior mesenteric l.n.
Right lumbar l.n.
Left lumbar l.n.
Inferior mesenteric l.n.
Common iliac l.n.
Thoracic duct
Cisterna chyli
Intestinal trunk
Right lumbar trunk
Left lumbar trunk

A Lymph node groups in the abdomen and pelvis. Lymph from organs of the abdomen and pelvis is filtered first by regional lymph nodes and then drains to collecting nodes, which service several lymph node groups. From the collecting nodes, lymph drains to the lymphatic trunks. In the abdomen these are the lumbar and intestinal trunks.

B Lymphatic trunks in the abdomen and pelvis. Lymph from abdominal and pelvic organs drains to the lumbar or intestinal trunks after passing through one or more lymph node groups. Lymphatic trunks drain to the cisterna chyli, if present, and then to the thoracic duct, which returns the lymph to the venous system.

Fig. 11.25 Lymphatic trunks and lymph nodes of the abdomen

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

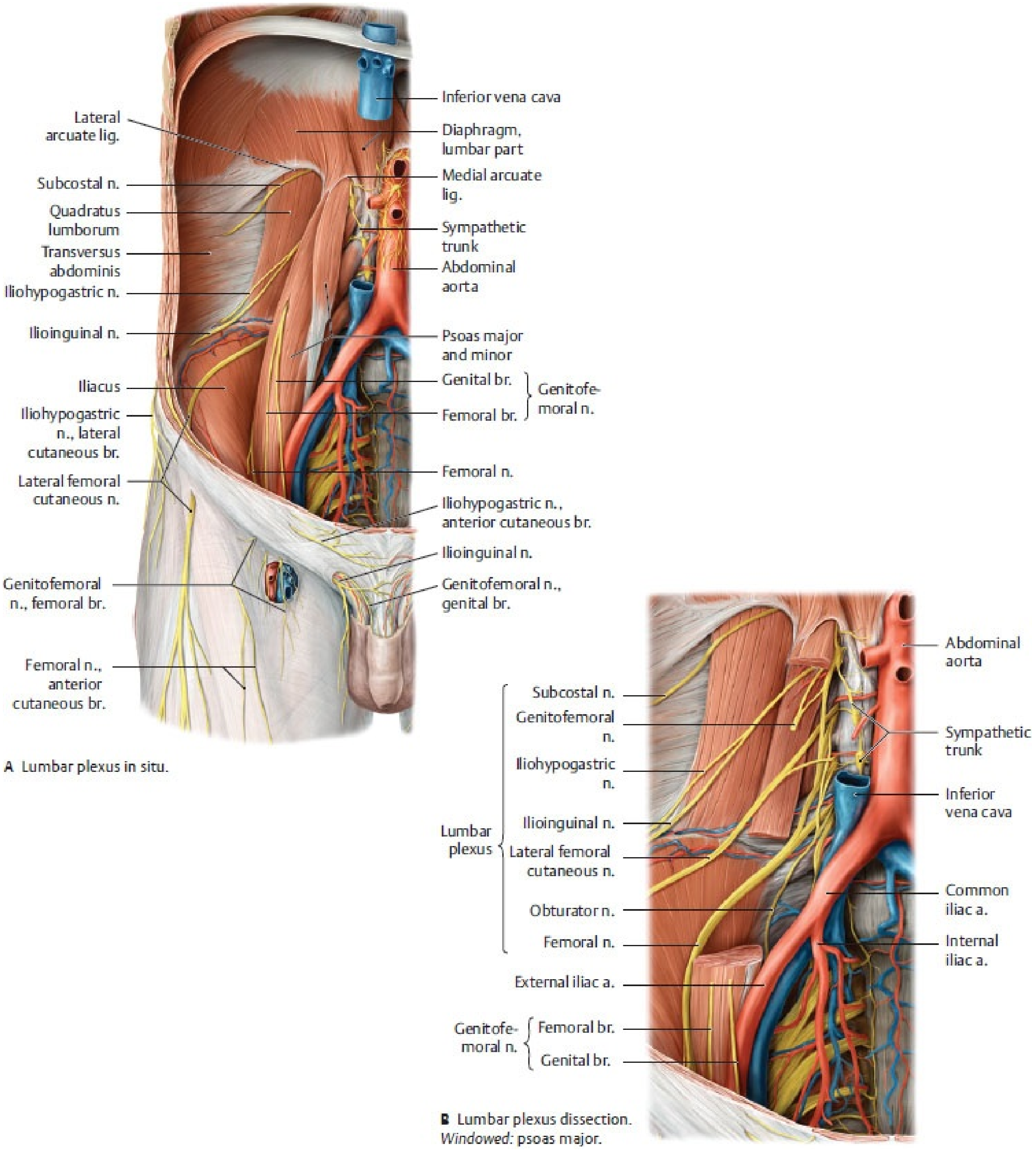
Table 11.7 Lymph Node Groups and Tributary Regions

Lymph Node Groups and		Organs or Organ Segments that Drain to These
Collecting	**Location**	**Organs or Organ Segments that**

Lymph Nodes		Drain to These Lymph Node Groups (Tributary Regions)
Celiac l.n.	Around the celiac trunk	Distal third of esophagus, stomach, greater omentum, duodenum (superior and descending parts), pancreas, spleen, liver, and gallbladder
Superior mesenteric l.n.	At the origin of the superior mesenteric a.	Second through fourth parts of duodenum, jejunum and ileum, cecum with vermiform appendix, ascending colon, transverse colon (proximal two-thirds)
Inferior mesenteric l.n.	At the origin of the inferior mesenteric a.	Transverse colon (distal third), descending colon, sigmoid colon, rectum (proximal part)
Lumbar l.n. (right, intermediate, left)	Around the abdominal aorta and inferior vena cava	Diaphragm (abdominal side), kidneys, suprarenal glands, testis and epididymis, ovary, uterine tube, uterine fundus, ureters, retroperitoneum
Iliac l.n.	Around the iliac vessels	Rectum (anal end), bladder and urethra, uterus (body and cervix), ductus deferens, seminal vesicle, prostate, external genitalia (via inguinal l.n.)

Nerves of the Abdomen

- Lower intercostal nerves (T7–T11) and the **subcostal nerve** (T12) continue anteroinferiorly from their position on the thoracic wall to innervate most of the muscles and skin of the anterolateral abdominal wall.
- The **lumbar plexus** is a somatic nerve plexus formed by the anterior rami of spinal nerves T12–L4. Its branches pass laterally through the psoas major muscle and onto the posterior abdominal wall **(Fig. 11.26)**. Most nerves of this plexus innervate the lower limb (see Section 21.4 and **Table 21.1**). Branches that innervate the abdominal wall and inguinal region include


Inferior vena cava
Lateral arcuate lig.
Diaphragm, lumbar part
Medial arcuate lig.
Subcostal n.
Quadratus lumborum
Sympathetic trunk
Transversus abdominis
Abdominal aorta
Iliohypogastric n.
Ilioinguinal n.
Psoas major and minor
Genital br.
Genitofemoral n.
Iliacus
Femoral br.
Iliohypogastric n., lateral cutaneous br.
Femoral n.
Lateral femoral cutaneous n.
Iliohypogastric n., anterior cutaneous br.
Ilioinguinal n.
Genitofemoral n., femoral br.
Genitofemoral n., genital br.
Femoral n., anterior cutaneous br.
Abdominal aorta
Subcostal n.
Genitofemoral n.
Sympathetic trunk
Iliohypogastric n.
Inferior vena cava
Ilioinguinal n.
Lumbar plexus
Lateral femoral cutaneous n.
Common iliac a.
Obturator n.
Internal iliac a.
Femoral n.
External iliac a.
Genitofemoral n.
Femoral br.
Genital br.

A Lumbar plexus in situ.

B Lumbar plexus dissection. *Windowed:* psoas major.

Fig. 11.26 Nerves of the lumbar plexus

Anterior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- **iliohypogastric** and **ilioinguinal nerves** (L1), which innervate the skin and muscles of the inferior anterior abdominal wall and the skin over the inguinal and pubic regions;

  - **genitofemoral nerve** (L1-L2), whose genital branch innervates the cremaster muscle surrounding the spermatic cord and the skin over the scrotum and labia; and
  - short muscular branches (T12–L4) that innervate the muscles of the posterior abdominal wall.

— **Lumbar sympathetic trunks**, the continuations of the sympathetic trunks in the thorax, descend along the lateral aspect of the lumbar vertebral bodies and give off three to four **lumbar splanchnic nerves**, which join the autonomic plexuses of the abdomen.

— Autonomic plexuses form along the aorta and travel with the major abdominal arteries to innervate the abdominal viscera **(Figs. 11.27, 11.28, 11.29, 11.30, 11.31, 11.32; Tables 11.8** and **11.9)**. The plexuses contain combinations of

  - preganglionic sympathetic nerves that synapse in the ganglia associated with the plexuses. (Note that the sympathetic nerves innervating the adrenal medulla are an exception and do not synapse in these ganglia.) The preganglionic sympathetic nerves arise from

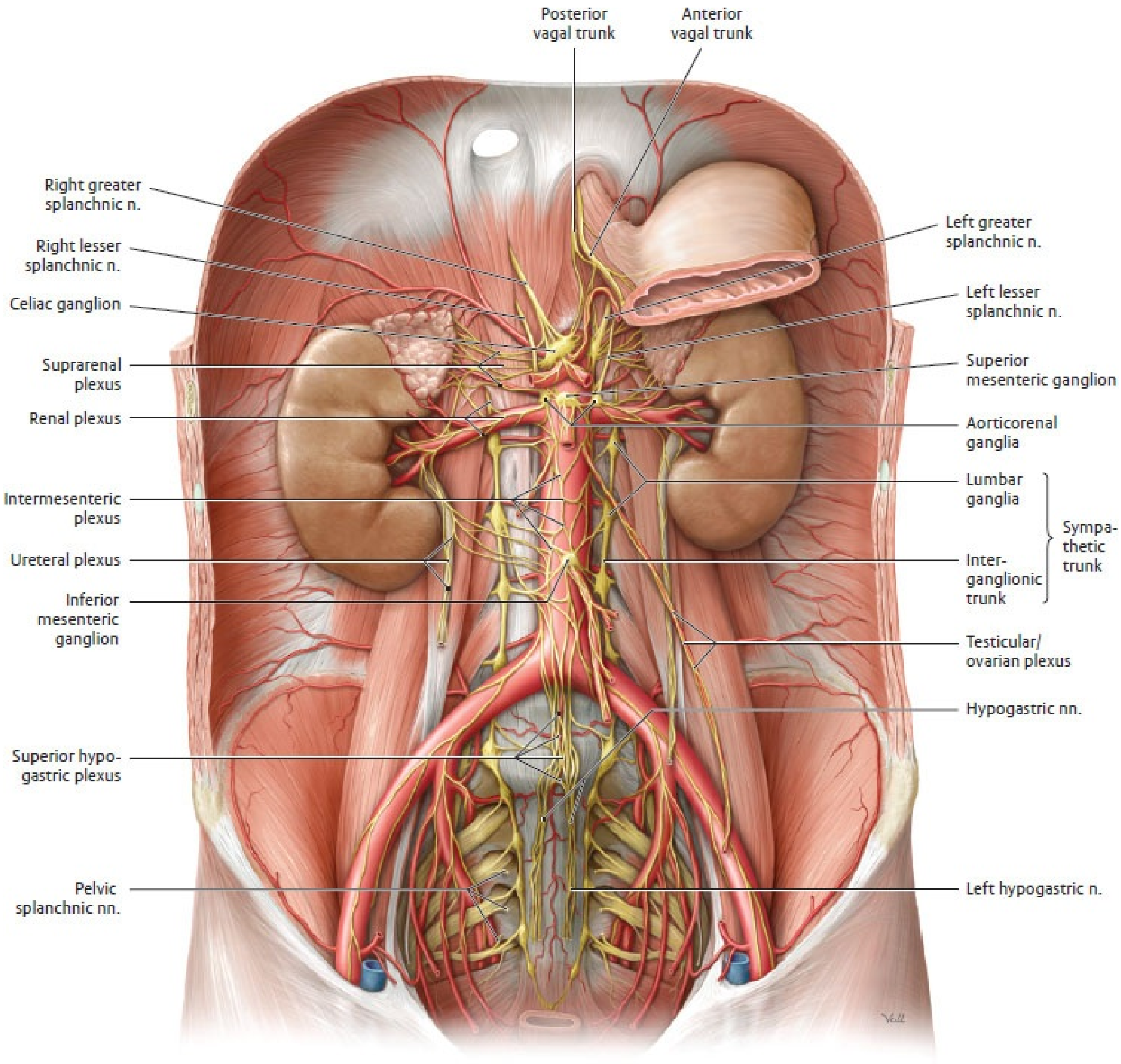

Posterior vagal trunk
Anterior vagal trunk
Right greater splanchnic n.
Right lesser splanchnic n.
Celiac ganglion
Suprarenal plexus
Renal plexus
Intermesenteric plexus
Ureteral plexus
Inferior mesenteric ganglion
Superior hypo-gastric plexus
Pelvic splanchnic nn.
Left greater splanchnic n.
Left lesser splanchnic n.
Superior mesenteric ganglion
Aorticorenal ganglia
Lumbar ganglia
Sympa-thetic trunk
Inter-ganglionic trunk
Testicular/ ovarian plexus
Hypogastric nn.
Left hypogastric n.

Fig. 11.27 Autonomic plexuses in the abdomen and pelvis

Anterior view of the male abdomen. *Removed:* Peritoneum and majority of the stomach. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

    - thoracic splanchnic nerves (T5–T12), which contribute to the celiac, superior mesenteric and renal plexuses
    - lumbar splanchnic nerves (T11–L2), which contribute to the inferior mesenteric, superior hypogastric, and inferior hypogastric plexuses
- preganglionic parasympathetic nerves, which pass through the plexuses

and synapse in ganglia near their target organ. They arise from either

  - ◦ the vagus nerves (cranial nerve X), which enter the abdomen as anterior and posterior vagal trunks from the esophageal plexus. They supply most of the abdominal viscera, including the digestive tract, except for its most distal segment (the descending colon to the anal canal). They contribute to all of the abdominal plexuses except the inferior mesenteric, superior hypogastric, and inferior hypogastric plexuses.

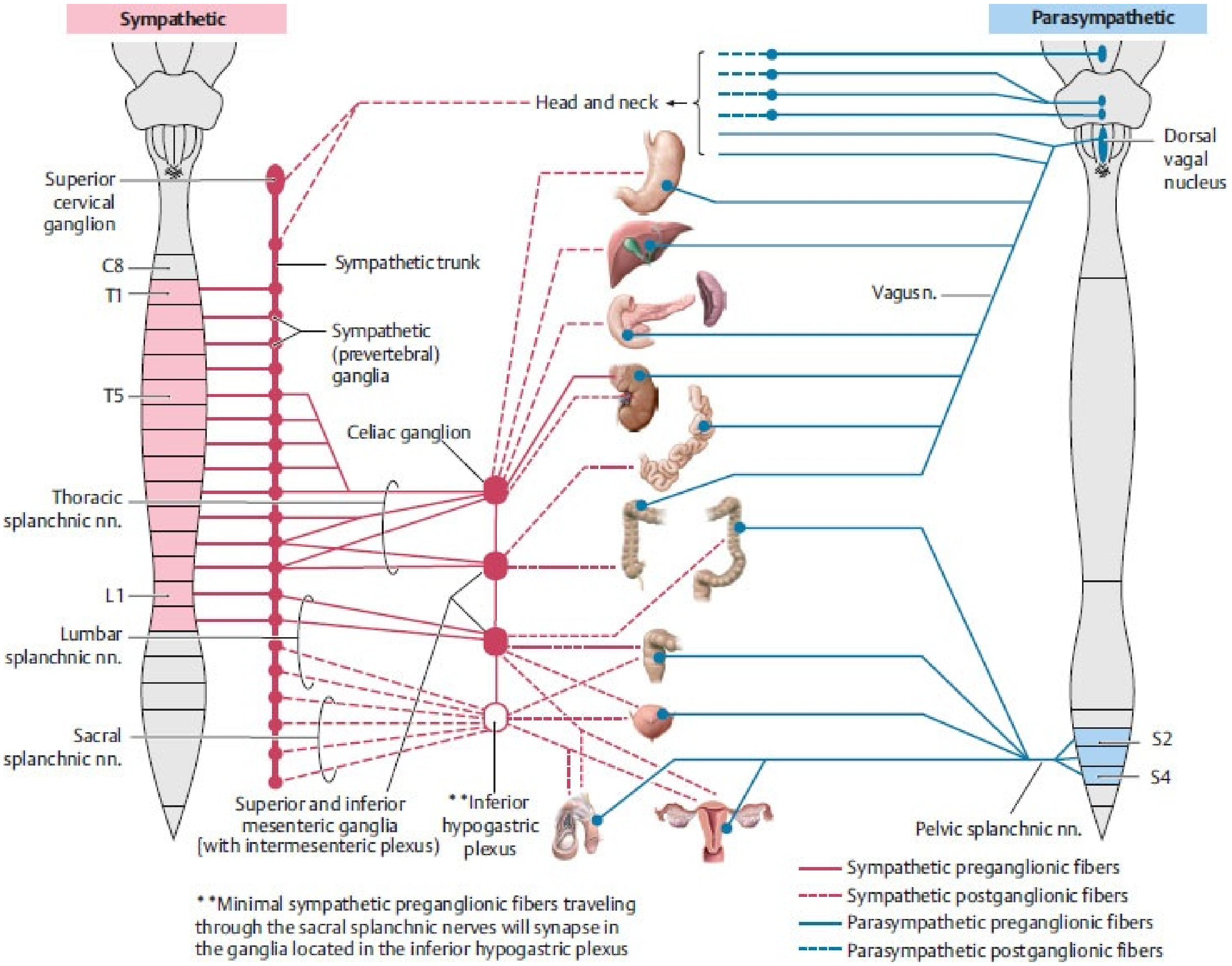
Or

  - ◦ the **pelvic splanchnic nerves** (S2–S4), which ascend from the pelvis to innervate the descending and sigmoid colons in the abdomen. They also innervate viscera of the pelvis. These fibers contribute to the inferior hypogastric plexuses.

- — Although most abdominal plexuses contain both sympathetic and parasympathetic nerves, the inferior mesenteric and superior hypogastric plexuses contain only sympathetic fibers. Viscera supplied by these plexuses receive parasym pathetic innervation via pelvic splanchnic nerves and the inferior hypogastric plexus.
- — When pain arising from viscera (visceral pain) and pain arising from somatic structures (somatic pain) are conveyed to the same area of the spinal cord, the convergence of these visceral and somatic fibers confuses the relationship between the visceral pain's actual origin and its perceived origin. This phenomenon is known as **referred pain**. The perceived origin of visceral pain from a specific organ is consistently projected to a well-defined area of the skin. Thus, a knowledge of cutaneous zones of referred pain is instrumental in identify-ing underlying problems.

Table 11.8 Autonomic Plexuses in the Abdomen and Pelvis

Ganglia	Subplexus	Distribution
Celiac plexus		
Celiac ganglia	Hepatic plexus	• Liver, gallbladder
	Gastric plexus	• Stomach
	Splenic plexus	• Spleen
	Pancreatic plexus	• Pancreas
Superior mesenteric plexus		
Superior mesenteric ganglia		• Pancreas (head) • Duodenum • Jejunum • Ileum • Cecum • Colon (to left colic flexure) • Ovaries
Suprarenal and renal plexus		
Aorticorenal ganglion	Ureteral plexus	• Suprarenal glands • Kidneys • Proximal ureters
Ovarian/testicular plexus		• Ovaries/testes
Inferior mesenteric plexus		
Inferior mesenteric ganglion	Left colic plexus	• Left colic flexure
	Superior rectal plexus	• Descending and sigmoid colon • Upper rectum
Superior hypogastric plexus	Hypogastric nn.	• Pelvic viscera
Inferior hypogastric plexus		
Pelvic ganglia	Middle and inferior rectal plexus	• Middle and lower rectum
	Prostatic plexus	• Prostate • Seminal glands • Bulbourethral glands • Ejaculatory ducts • Penis • Urethra
	Deferential plexus	• Ducti deferens • Epididymis
	Uterovaginal plexus	• Uterus • Uterine tubes • Vagina • Ovaries
	Vesical plexus	• Urinary bladder
	Ureteral plexus	• Ureters (ascending from pelvis)


Sympathetic
Parasympathetic
Head and neck
Superior cervical ganglion
Sympathetic trunk
C8
T1
Sympathetic (prevertebral) ganglia
T5
Celiac ganglion
Thoracic splanchnic nn.
L1
Lumbar splanchnic nn.
Sacral splanchnic nn.
Superior and inferior mesenteric ganglia (with intermesenteric plexus)
**Inferior hypogastric plexus
Dorsal vagal nucleus
Vagus n.
S2
S4
Pelvic splanchnic nn.
Sympathetic preganglionic fibers
Sympathetic postganglionic fibers
Parasympathetic preganglionic fibers
Parasympathetic postganglionic fibers

**Minimal sympathetic preganglionic fibers traveling through the sacral splanchnic nerves will synapse in the ganglia located in the inferior hypogastric plexus

Fig. 11.28 Sympathetic and parasympathetic nervous systems in the abdomen and pelvis

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

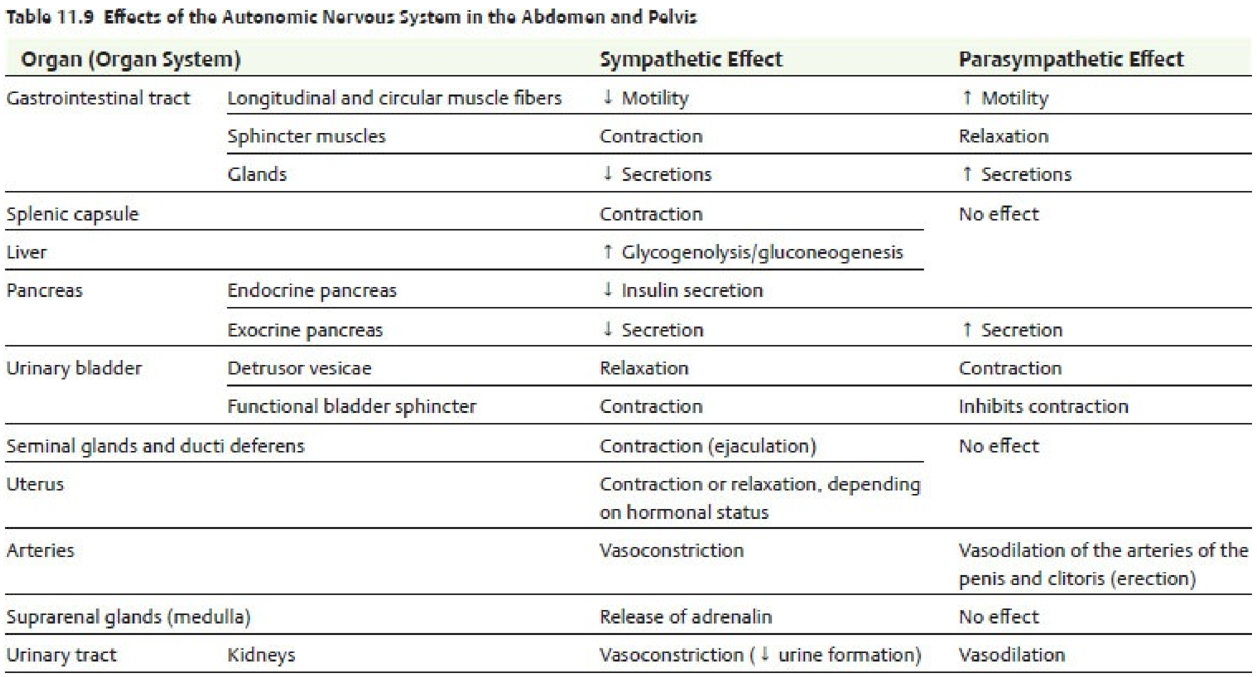
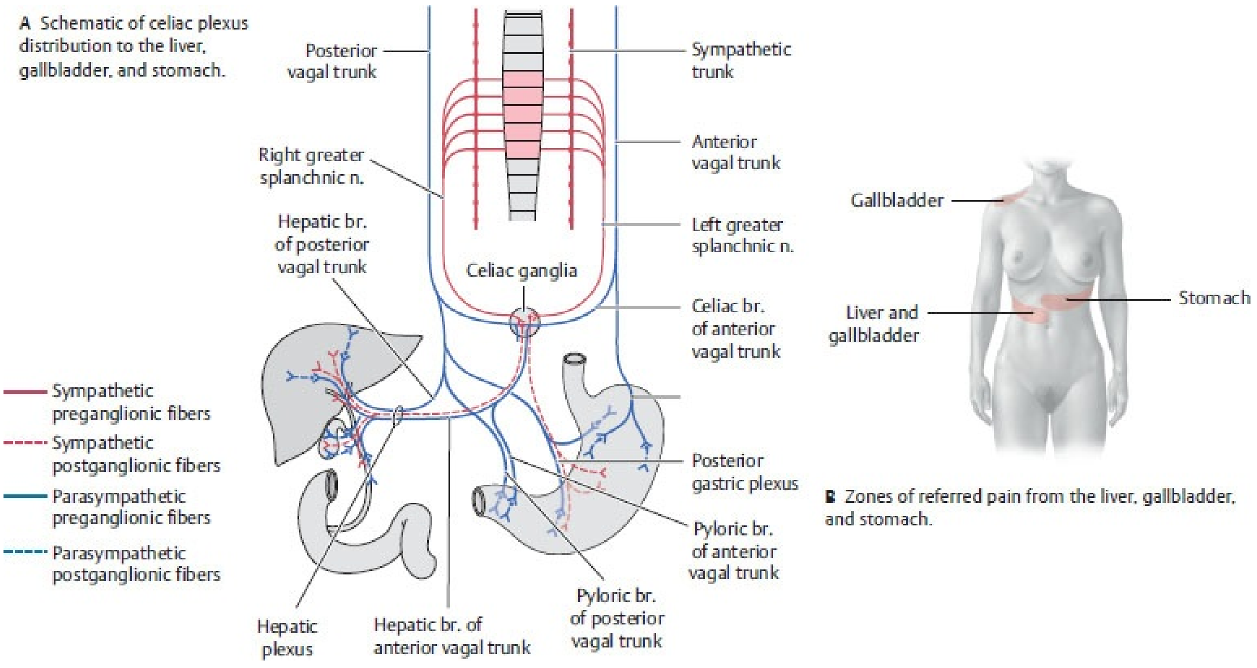


Table 11.9 Effects of the Autonomic Nervous System in the Abdomen and Pelvis

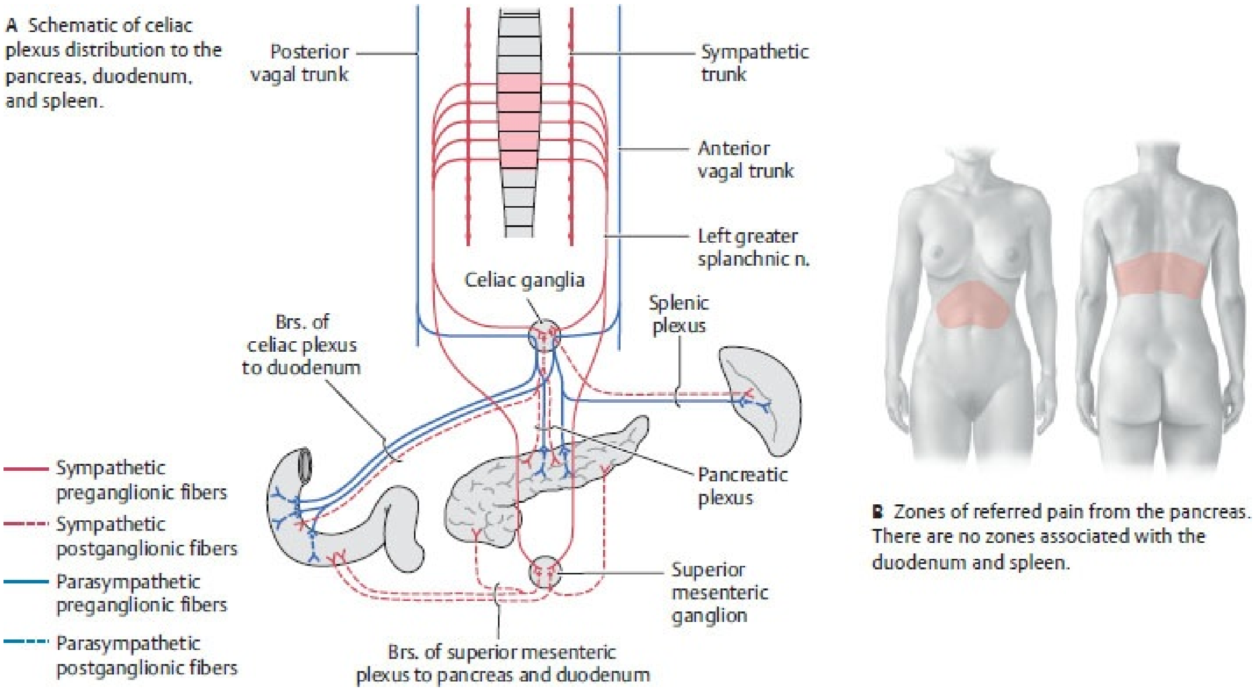
Organ (Organ System)		Sympathetic Effect	Parasympathetic Effect
Gastrointestinal tract	Longitudinal and circular muscle fibers	↓ Motility	↑ Motility
	Sphincter muscles	Contraction	Relaxation
	Glands	↓ Secretions	↑ Secretions
Splenic capsule		Contraction	No effect
Liver		↑ Glycogenolysis/gluconeogenesis	
Pancreas	Endocrine pancreas	↓ Insulin secretion	
	Exocrine pancreas	↓ Secretion	↑ Secretion
Urinary bladder	Detrusor vesicae	Relaxation	Contraction
	Functional bladder sphincter	Contraction	Inhibits contraction
Seminal glands and ducti deferens		Contraction (ejaculation)	No effect
Uterus		Contraction or relaxation, depending on hormonal status	
Arteries		Vasoconstriction	Vasodilation of the arteries of the penis and clitoris (erection)
Suprarenal glands (medulla)		Release of adrenalin	No effect
Urinary tract	Kidneys	Vasoconstriction (↓ urine formation)	Vasodilation



A Schematic of celiac plexus distribution to the liver, gallbladder, and stomach.
Posterior vagal trunk
Sympathetic trunk
Anterior vagal trunk
Right greater splanchnic n.
Left greater splanchnic n.
Hepatic br. of posterior vagal trunk
Celiac ganglia
Celiac br. of anterior vagal trunk
Sympathetic preganglionic fibers
Sympathetic postganglionic fibers
Parasympathetic preganglionic fibers
Parasympathetic postganglionic fibers
Posterior gastric plexus
Pyloric br. of anterior vagal trunk
Pyloric br. of posterior vagal trunk
Hepatic plexus
Hepatic br. of anterior vagal trunk
Gallbladder
Liver and gallbladder
Stomach
B Zones of referred pain from the liver, gallbladder, and stomach.

Fig. 11.29 Autonomic innervation of the liver, gallbladder, and stomach

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)



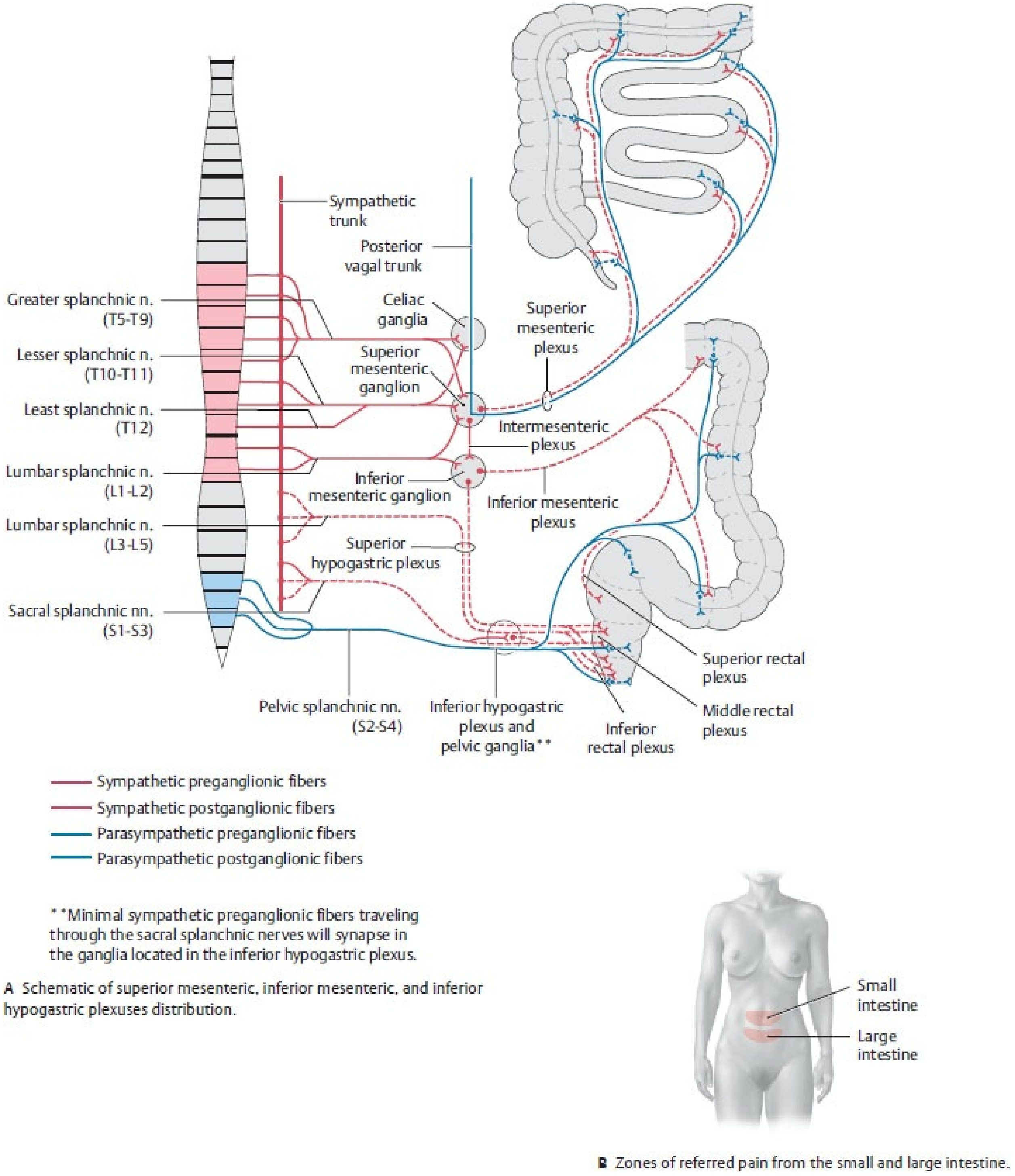
A Schematic of celiac plexus distribution to the pancreas, duodenum, and spleen.

B Zones of referred pain from the pancreas. There are no zones associated with the duodenum and spleen.

Posterior vagal trunk
Sympathetic trunk
Anterior vagal trunk
Left greater splanchnic n.
Celiac ganglia
Splenic plexus
Brs. of celiac plexus to duodenum
Pancreatic plexus
Superior mesenteric ganglion
Brs. of superior mesenteric plexus to pancreas and duodenum
Sympathetic preganglionic fibers
Sympathetic postganglionic fibers
Parasympathetic preganglionic fibers
Parasympathetic postganglionic fibers

Fig. 11.30 Autonomic innervation of the pancreas, duodenum, and spleen

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

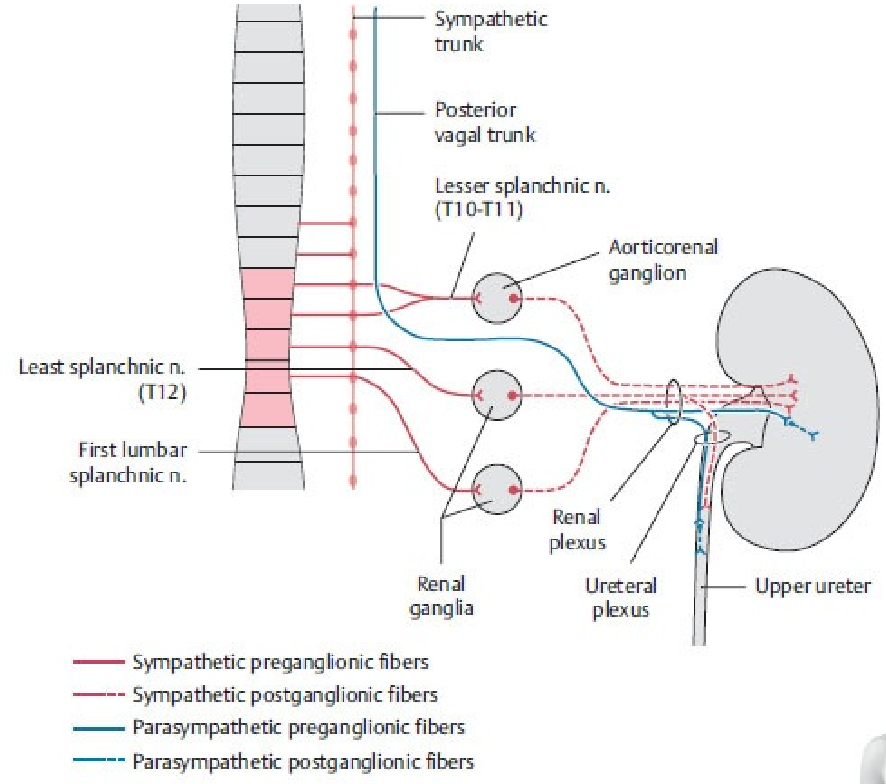

Sympathetic trunk
Posterior vagal trunk
Greater splanchnic n. (T5-T9)
Lesser splanchnic n. (T10-T11)
Least splanchnic n. (T12)
Lumbar splanchnic n. (L1-L2)
Lumbar splanchnic n. (L3-L5)
Sacral splanchnic nn. (S1-S3)
Celiac ganglia
Superior mesenteric ganglion
Superior mesenteric plexus
Intermesenteric plexus
Inferior mesenteric ganglion
Inferior mesenteric plexus
Superior hypogastric plexus
Pelvic splanchnic nn. (S2-S4)
Inferior hypogastric plexus and pelvic ganglia**
Inferior rectal plexus
Middle rectal plexus
Superior rectal plexus
Sympathetic preganglionic fibers
Sympathetic postganglionic fibers
Parasympathetic preganglionic fibers
Parasympathetic postganglionic fibers
**Minimal sympathetic preganglionic fibers traveling through the sacral splanchnic nerves will synapse in the ganglia located in the inferior hypogastric plexus.
Small intestine
Large intestine

A Schematic of superior mesenteric, inferior mesenteric, and inferior hypogastric plexuses distribution.

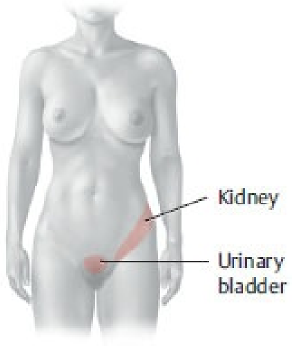
B Zones of referred pain from the small and large intestine.

Fig. 11.31 Autonomic innervation of the intraperitoneal organs

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Sympathetic trunk
Posterior vagal trunk
Lesser splanchnic n. (T10-T11)
Aorticorenal ganglion
Least splanchnic n. (T12)
First lumbar splanchnic n.
Renal plexus
Renal ganglia
Ureteral plexus
Upper ureter
Sympathetic preganglionic fibers
Sympathetic postganglionic fibers
Parasympathetic preganglionic fibers
Parasympathetic postganglionic fibers

A Schematic of renal and ureteral plexuses distribution.


Kidney
Urinary bladder

B Zones of referred pain from the left kidney and bladder.

Fig. 11.32 Autonomic innervation of the kidneys and upper ureters

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

12 Abdominal Viscera

The peritoneal cavity of the abdomen contains the primary and accessory organs of the gastrointestinal tract. The primary organs are the stomach, small intestine, and large intestine; the accessory organs are the liver, gallbladder, pancreas, and spleen. The kidneys, proximal ureters, and suprarenal glands are found outside the peritoneal cavity within the retroperitoneum on the posterior abdominal wall (**Fig. 12.1**).

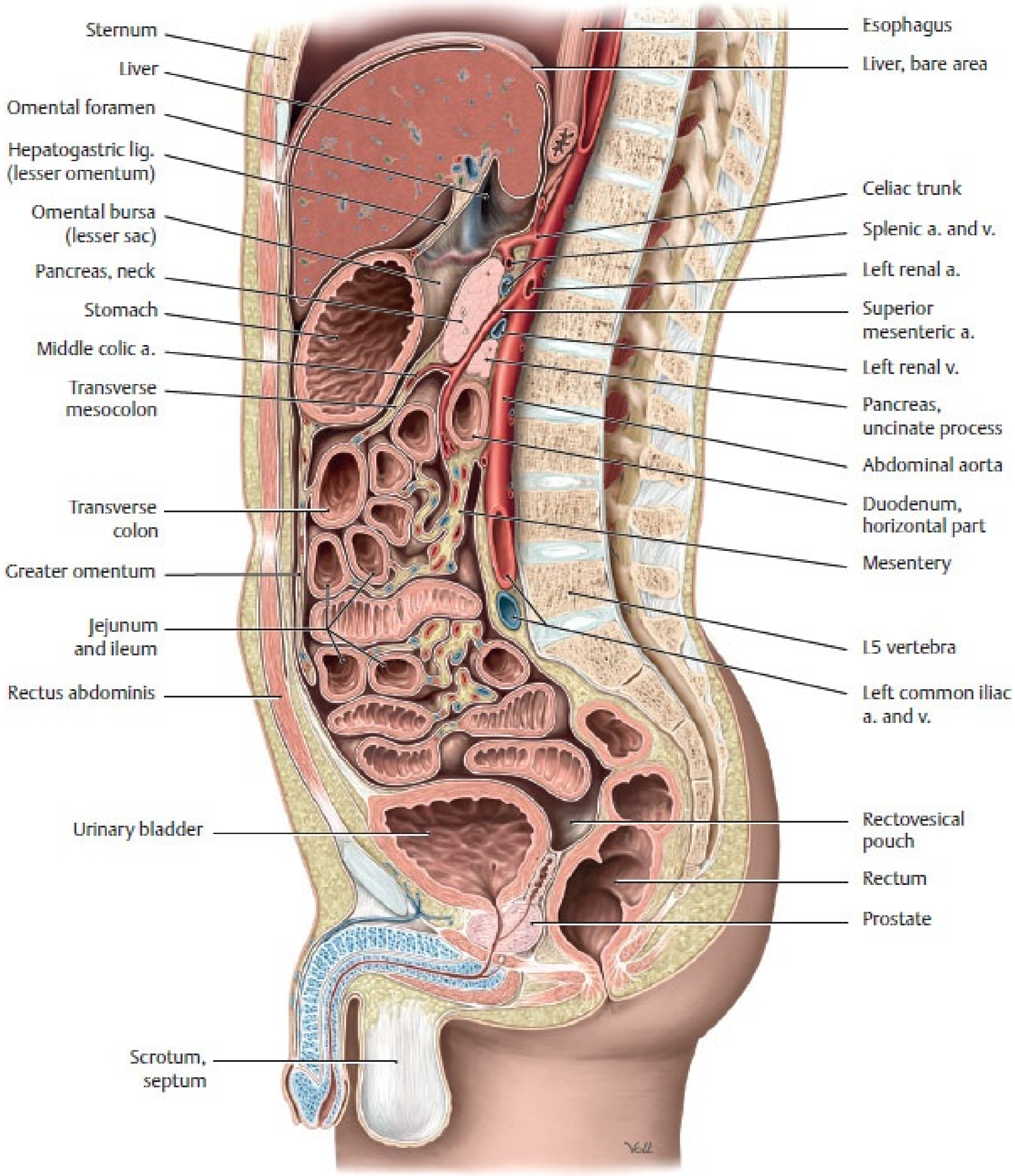

Sternum
Liver
Omental foramen
Hepatogastric lig. (lesser omentum)
Omental bursa (lesser sac)
Pancreas, neck
Stomach
Middle colic a.
Transverse mesocolon
Transverse colon
Greater omentum
Jejunum and ileum
Rectus abdominis
Urinary bladder
Scrotum, septum
Esophagus
Liver, bare area
Celiac trunk
Splenic a. and v.
Left renal a.
Superior mesenteric a.
Left renal v.
Pancreas, uncinate process
Abdominal aorta
Duodenum, horizontal part
Mesentery
L5 vertebra
Left common iliac a. and v.
Rectovesical pouch
Rectum
Prostate
Voll

Fig. 12.1 Organs of the abdomen and pelvis

Midsagittal section through male pelvis, viewed from the left side. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

12.1 Organs of the Peritoneal Cavity—Gastrointestinal Tract

Divisions of the Gastrointestinal Tract

The three divisions of the embryonic gastrointestinal tract are retained in the adult system and reflected in its blood supply and innervation. These divisions are

— the **foregut**, which consists of the distal esophagus, the stomach, the proximal half of the duodenum, the liver, the gallbladder, and the superior part of the pancreas;

— the **midgut**, which includes the distal half of the duodenum, the jejunum, ileum, cecum, and appendix, and the ascending colon and proximal two thirds of the transverse colon; and

— the **hindgut**, which includes the distal third of the transverse colon, the descending and sigmoid colons, the rectum, and the upper part of the anal canal.

BOX 12.1: DEVELOPMENTAL CORRELATION

ROTATION OF THE MIDGUT TUBE

Development of the midgut is characterized by rapid elongation of the gut and its mesentery, resulting in the formation of the primary intestinal loop. The loop is attached anteriorly to the yolk sac by the omphaloenteric duct (yolk stalk) and posteriorly to the posterior abdominal wall by the superior mesenteric artery. As a result of this rapid elongation and expansion of the liver, the abdominal cavity becomes too small to contain all the intestinal loops, and they physiologically herniate into the proximal part of the umbilical cord. Coincident with growth in length, the primary intestinal loop rotates 270 degrees counterclockwise (if viewed from the front) around the axis established by the attachment of the superior mesenteric artery. Rotation occurs during herniation (approximately 90 degrees) and during the return of the intestinal loops into the abdominal cavity (remaining 180 degrees), which is thought to occur when the relative size of the liver and kidney decreases. Malrotation of the midgut can result in congenital abnormalities such as volvulus (twisting) of the intestine.

BOX 12.2: DEVELOPMENTAL CORRELATION

LOCALIZATION OF PAIN FROM FOREGUT, MIDGUT, AND HINDGUT DERIVATIVES

Pain from gastrointestinal organs follows pathways determined by embryologic origin. Pain from foregut structures is localized to the epigastric region, pain from structures of the midgut localizes in the periumbilical region, and pain arising from struc-tures of the hindgut localizes in the hypogastric region.

Stomach

The **stomach**, a hollow reservoir that stores, churns, and initiates digestion of food, communicates with the esophagus proximally and the duodenum of the small intestine distally **(Figs. 12.2, 12.3, 12.4)**.

- It is normally J-shaped and lies in the left upper quadrant, although its shape and position vary among individuals and can change depending on its contents.
- The stomach has four parts:
  1. The **cardia**, which surrounds the opening to the esophagus
  2. The **fundus**, the superior portion that rises above and to the left of the opening between the esophagus and stomach (**cardiac orifice**)
  3. The **body**, the large expanded portion below the fundus
  4. The **pyloric part**, which is the outflow channel made up of the wide **pyloric antrum**, a narrow **pyloric canal**, and the **pyloris** or sphincteric region, which contains a muscular **pyloric sphincter** that surrounds the pyloric orifice into the first part of the duodenum.
- The stomach has a lesser curvature and a greater curvature.
  - The **lesser curvature** makes up the superior concave border. An **angular notch** (or incisure) along the curvature marks the junction of the body and pyloric part.
  - The **greater curvature** makes up the inferior convex border.

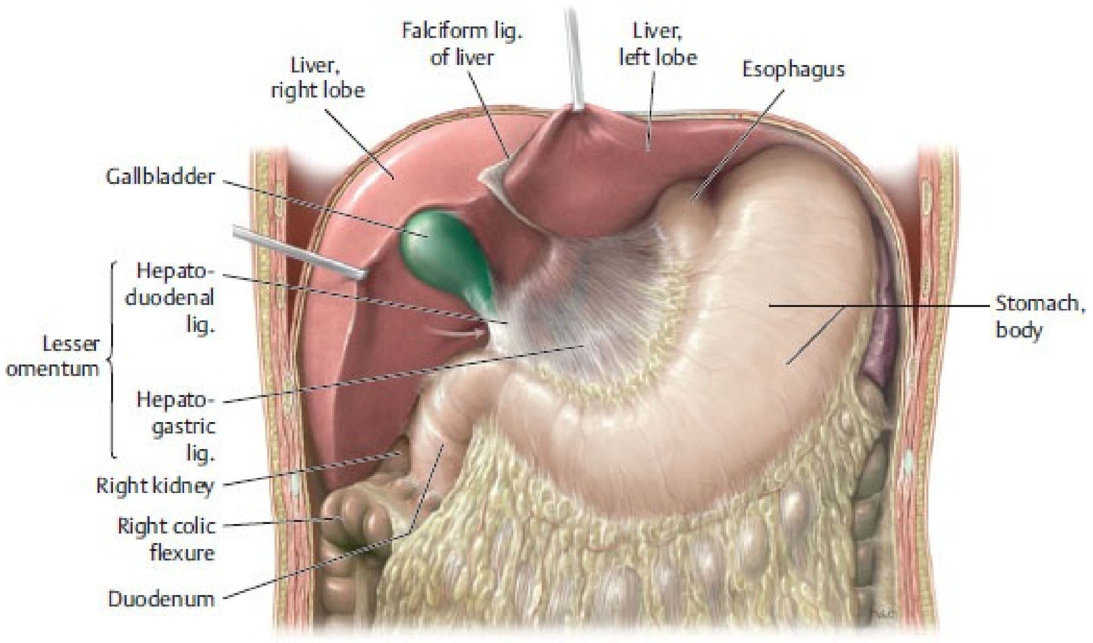
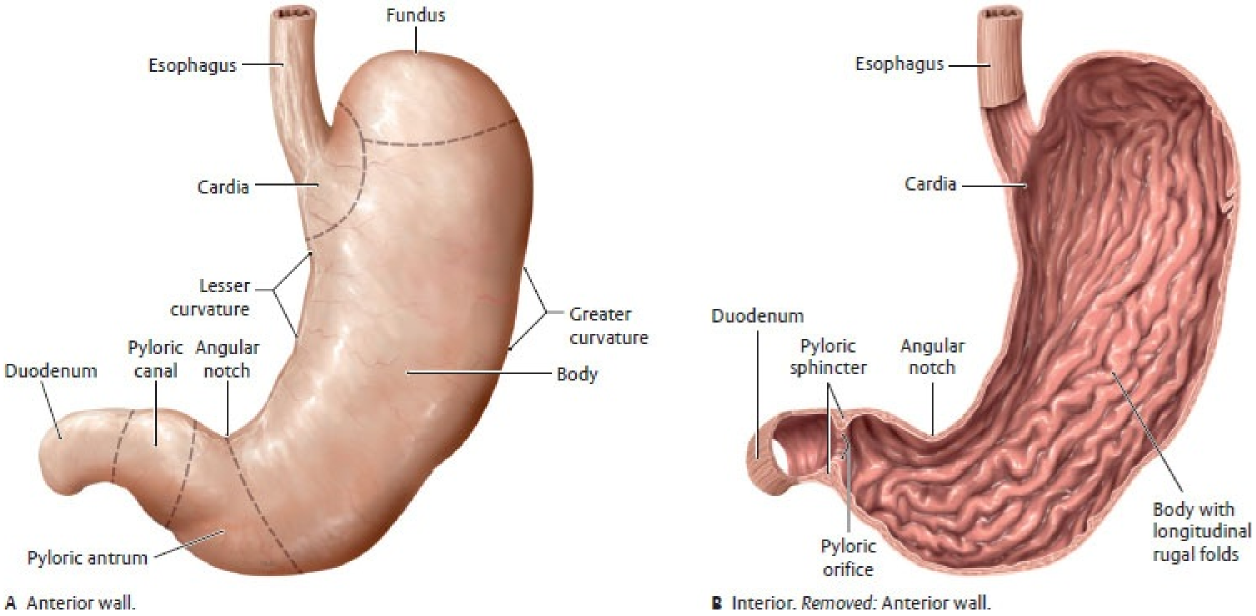

Falciform lig. of liver
Liver, left lobe
Liver, right lobe
Esophagus
Gallbladder
Hepato-duodenal lig.
Lesser omentum
Hepato-gastric lig.
Stomach, body
Right kidney
Right colic flexure
Duodenum

Fig 12.2 Stomach in situ

Anterior view of upper abdomen. The liver has been reflected superiorly to expose the stomach and lesser omentum. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Fundus
Esophagus
Cardia
Lesser curvature
Greater curvature
Pyloric canal
Angular notch
Duodenum
Body
Pyloric antrum
Esophagus
Cardia
Duodenum
Pyloric sphincter
Angular notch
Pyloric orifice
Body with longitudinal rugal folds

A Anterior wall.

B Interior. *Removed:* Anterior wall.

Fig. 12.3 Stomach

Anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- Although hollow organs of the gastrointestinal tract generally have walls composed of two muscular layers, the stomach is unique in having three layers: an outer longitudinal layer, a middle circular layer, and inner oblique layer. These enable the stomach to create powerful churning movements that break apart large food particles.
- The inner surface of the stomach is highly distensible; in adults, the stomach can accommodate 2 to 3 liters. **Rugae** (longitudinal folds) of the gastric mucosa, formed during contraction of the stomach, are most prominent in the pyloric part and along the greater curvature. Gastric filling causes the mucosal folds to disappear.

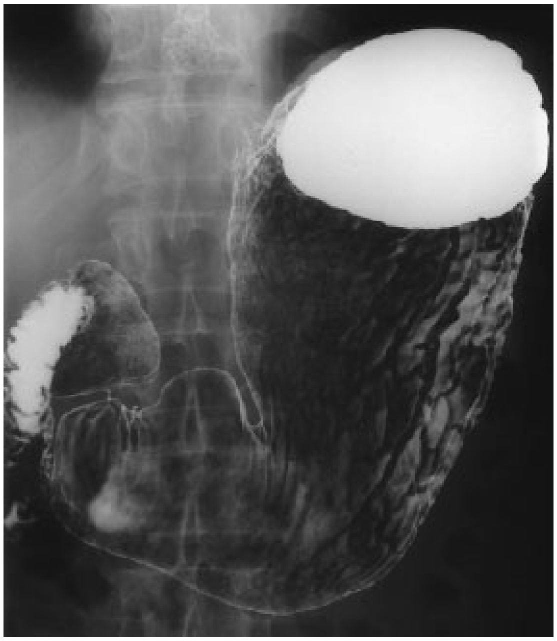


Fig. 12.4 Radiograph of double contrast barium enema of the stomach

Anterior view. (From Gunderman R. Essential Radiology, 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2014)

- — The layers of peritoneum on the stomach's anterior and posterior surfaces unite along the lesser curvature to form the lesser omentum; along the greater curvature they unite to form the greater omentum (see **Figs. 12.1** and **12.2**).
- — Anteriorly, the stomach is in contact with the abdominal wall, the diaphragm, and the left lobe of the liver. Posteriorly, it forms the anterior wall of the omental bursa.
- — When the body is supine, the stomach rests on the pancreas, the spleen, the left kidney, the left suprarenal gland, and the transverse colon and its mesentery.
- — Right and left gastric arteries, **right** and **left gastro-omental arteries**, and **short gastric arteries** (all derived from branches of the celiac trunk) supply the stomach (see **Figs. 11.12** and **11.14**).
- — Veins that accompany the arteries of the stomach drain to the hepatic portal venous system.
- — Lymph vessels drain to gastric and gastro-omental nodes, which drain to the celiac lymph nodes.
- — The celiac nerve plexus innervates the stomach (see **Fig. 11.30**).
  - Sympathetic nerves promote vasoconstriction and inhibit peristalsis.
  - Parasympathetic nerves stimulate gastric secretion.

BOX 12.3: CLINICAL CORRELATION

GASTRIC ULCERS

Gastric ulcers are open lesions of the mucosa that are believed to be initiated by increased acid secretion and exacerbated by the presence of the bacterium *Helicobacter pylori*. Gastric ulcers can cause hemorrhaging if they erode into gastric arteries. Posteriorly located ulcers can erode into the pancreas and splenic artery, causing severe hemorrhaging. Patients with chronic ulcers may undergo a vagotomy, the surgical sectioning of the vagus nerve, which may curtail the production of gastric acid.

Small Intestine

The **small intestine** extends from the pyloric orifice of the stom-ach to the ileocecal orifice at the ileocecal junction and is the pri-mary site of digestion and absorption of digested products. It is made up of three sections, the **duodenum**, which is mostly retro-peritoneal, and the **jejunum** and **ileum,** which are suspended by the mesentery of the small intestine.

— The duodenum, the first and shortest section, forms a C-shaped curve around the head of the pancreas and has four parts **(Figs. 12.5, 12.6, 12.7)**:

1. The **superior** (first) **part** is at the level of the L1 vertebra.
    - The proximal 2-cm segment, called the **duodenal bulb** or ampulla, is suspended from a mesentery.
2. The **descending** (second) **part** extends along the right side of the L1–L3 vertebral bodies.
    - This is the site of the junction of the foregut and midgut.
    - The **hepatopancreatic duct**, formed by the common bile duct and main pancreatic duct, enters the duo-denum through the **major duodenal papilla** on the posteromedial wall. Superior to that, the **accessory pancreatic duct** enters through the **minor duodenal papilla**.
3. The **horizontal** (third) **part** crosses to the left, anterior to the inferior vena cava, the aorta, and the L3 vertebra, along the inferior border of the pancreas.
    - The root of the mesentery of the small intestine (mesenteric root) and superior mesenteric vessels cross anteriorly.

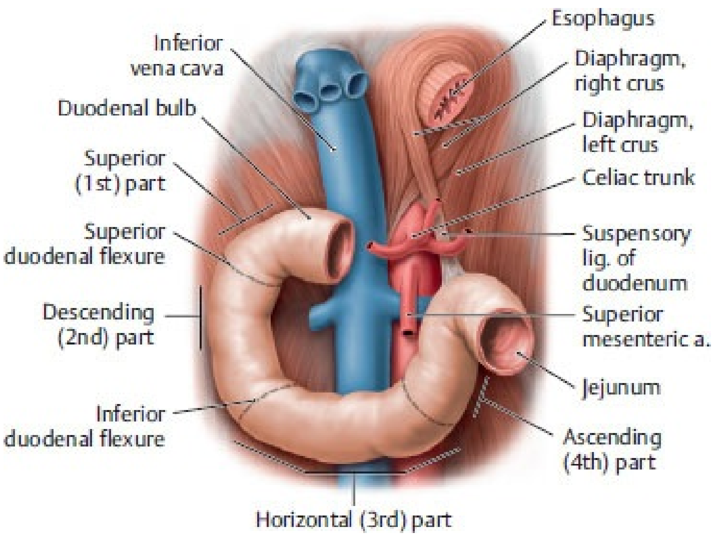

Esophagus
Inferior vena cava
Diaphragm, right crus
Duodenal bulb
Diaphragm, left crus
Superior (1st) part
Celiac trunk
Superior duodenal flexure
Suspensory lig. of duodenum
Descending (2nd) part
Superior mesenteric a.
Jejunum
Inferior duodenal flexure
Ascending (4th) part
Horizontal (3rd) part

Fig. 12.5 Parts of the duodenum

Anterior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th Edition. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

4. The **ascending** (fourth) **part** ascends along the left side of the aorta to the level of the L2 vertebra at the inferior border of the pancreas.
   - It joins the jejunum at the duodenojejunal flexure, which is suspended from the posterior abdominal wall by the **suspensory ligament** (of Treitz).

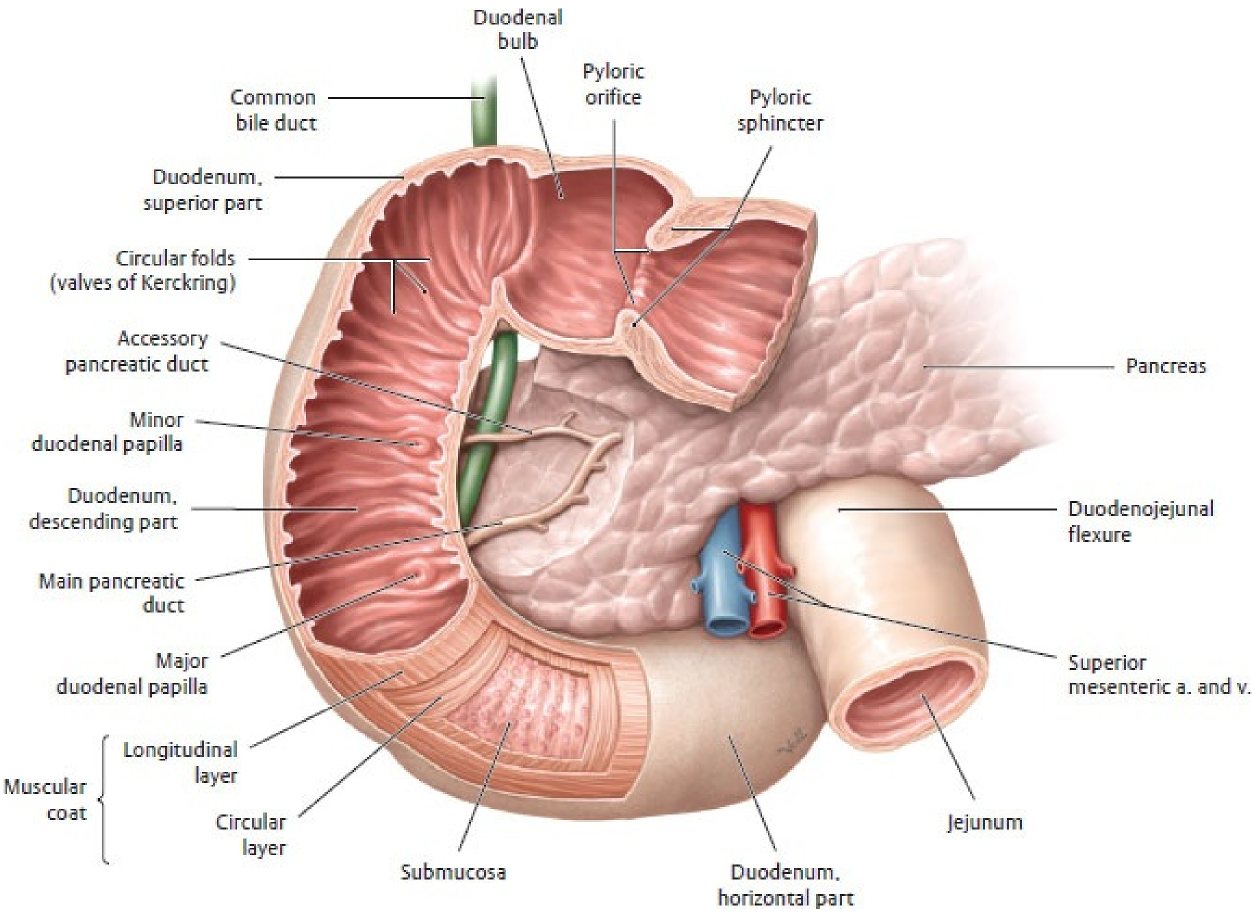

Duodenal bulb
Pyloric orifice
Pyloric sphincter
Common bile duct
Duodenum, superior part
Circular folds (valves of Kerckring)
Accessory pancreatic duct
Minor duodenal papilla
Duodenum, descending part
Main pancreatic duct
Major duodenal papilla
Muscular coat
Longitudinal layer
Circular layer
Submucosa
Duodenum, horizontal part
Jejunum
Superior mesenteric a. and v.
Duodenojejunal flexure
Pancreas

Fig. 12.6 Duodenum

Anterior view with the anterior wall opened. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

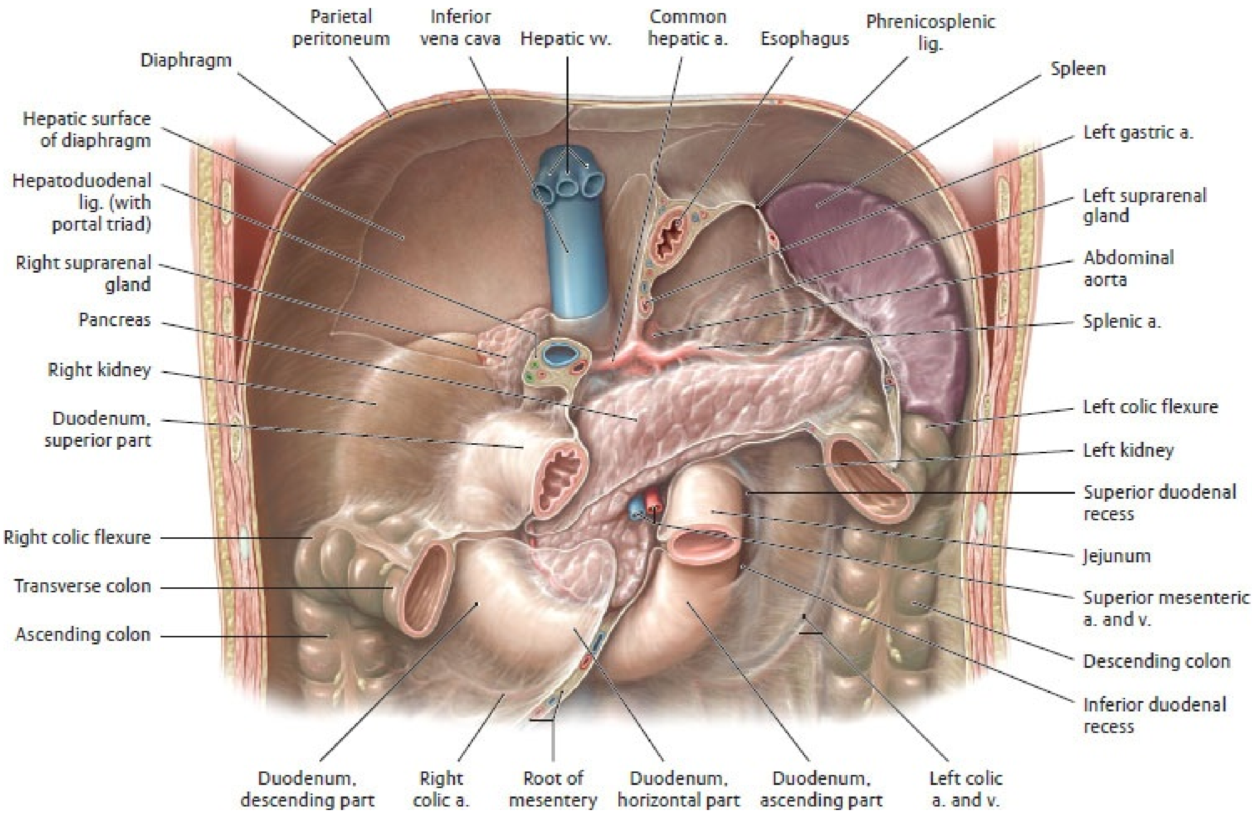

Diaphragm
Parietal peritoneum
Inferior vena cava
Hepatic vv.
Common hepatic a.
Esophagus
Phrenicosplenic lig.
Spleen
Hepatic surface of diaphragm
Hepatoduodenal lig. (with portal triad)
Right suprarenal gland
Pancreas
Right kidney
Duodenum, superior part
Right colic flexure
Transverse colon
Ascending colon
Left gastric a.
Left suprarenal gland
Abdominal aorta
Splenic a.
Left colic flexure
Left kidney
Superior duodenal recess
Jejunum
Superior mesenteric a. and v.
Descending colon
Inferior duodenal recess
Duodenum, descending part
Right colic a.
Root of mesentery
Duodenum, horizontal part
Duodenum, ascending part
Left colic a. and v.

Fig. 12.7 Duodenum in situ

Anterior view. *Removed:* Stomach, liver, small intestine, and large portion of the transverse colon. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 12.4: CLINICAL CORRELATION

DUODENAL (PEPTIC) ULCERS

Duodenal ulcers usually occur within a few centimeters of the pylorus on its posterior wall. Perforation of the duodenum can lead to peritonitis and ulceration of adjacent organs. Severe hem-orrhaging results if the ulcer erodes through the gastroduodenal artery, which runs along the posterior side of the duodenum.

- The jejunum, the proximal two fifths of the intraperitoneal portion of the small intestine, is suspended by the mesentery and is located predominantly in the left upper quadrant **(Figs. 12.8, 12.9, 12.10, 12.11)**.
    - It is thicker walled and larger in diameter than the ileum.
    - Tall, closely packed **circular folds** (**plicae circulares**) line its inner surface, increasing its surface area for absorption.

    - Widely spaced arterial arcades within its mesentery give rise to long, straight arteries, the **vasa recta** (see **Fig. 11.16**).
- The ileum, which makes up the distal three fifths of the intraperitoneal portion of the small intestine, is also sus-pended by the mesentery of the small intestine. The ileum extends from the end of the jejunum to its junction with the cecum (**ileocecal junction**) and resides in the lower left quadrant and the greater pelvis **(Figs. 12.8, 12.9, 12.10, 12.11)**.
    - It is longer in length than the jejunum.
    - Lymphoid nodules (**Peyer's patches**) bulge outward from the connective tissue layer underlying the epithelium (lamina propria).
    - Circular folds (plicae circulares) are low and sparse.
    - The ileum has more fat, denser arterial arcades, and shorter vasa recta in its mesentery than the jejunum.
- The blood supply, lymphatic drainage, and innervation of the parts of the small intestine reflect their development from the embryonic foregut and midgut (see Section 11.2).
    - The section that extends from the pyloric sphincter to below the major duodenal papilla (foregut) is supplied by the **superior pancreaticoduodenal** branch of the **gastroduodenal artery** (supplied through the celiac trunk).
    - The midgut (distal part of the descending duodenum, the jejunum, and the ileum) is supplied by the **inferior pancreaticoduodenal**, **jejunal,** and **ileal arteries**, branches of the superior mesenteric artery.
    - Veins of similar names accompany the arteries and terminate in the hepatic portal system.
    - Lymph vessels from the small intestine follow the course of the arteries and drain into the celiac and superior mesenteric nodes.
    - The celiac (to foregut) and superior mesenteric (to midgut) plexuses innervate the small intestine.
        - Sympathetic innervation inhibits intestinal mobility, secretion, and vasodilation.
        - Parasympathetic innervation restores normal digestive activity following sympathetic stimulation.
        - Visceral sensory fibers transmit feelings of distension (often perceived as cramping), but the intestine is insensitive to most pain stimuli.

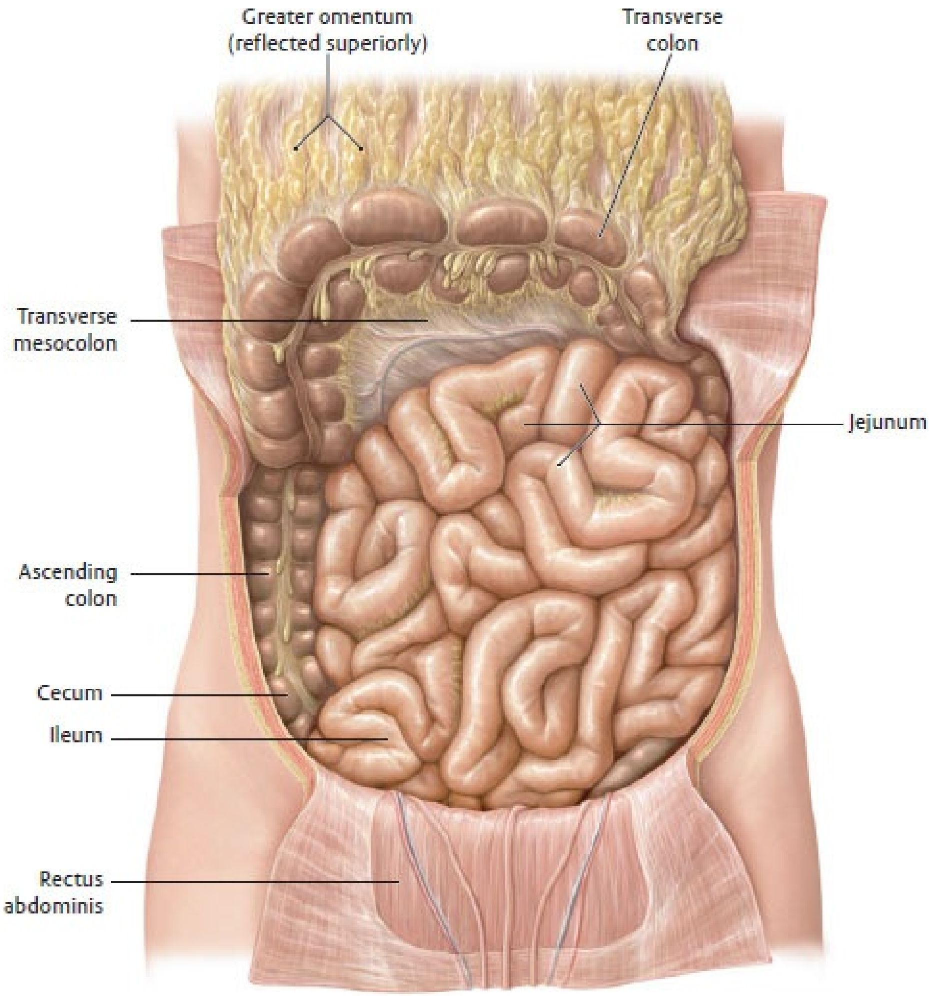
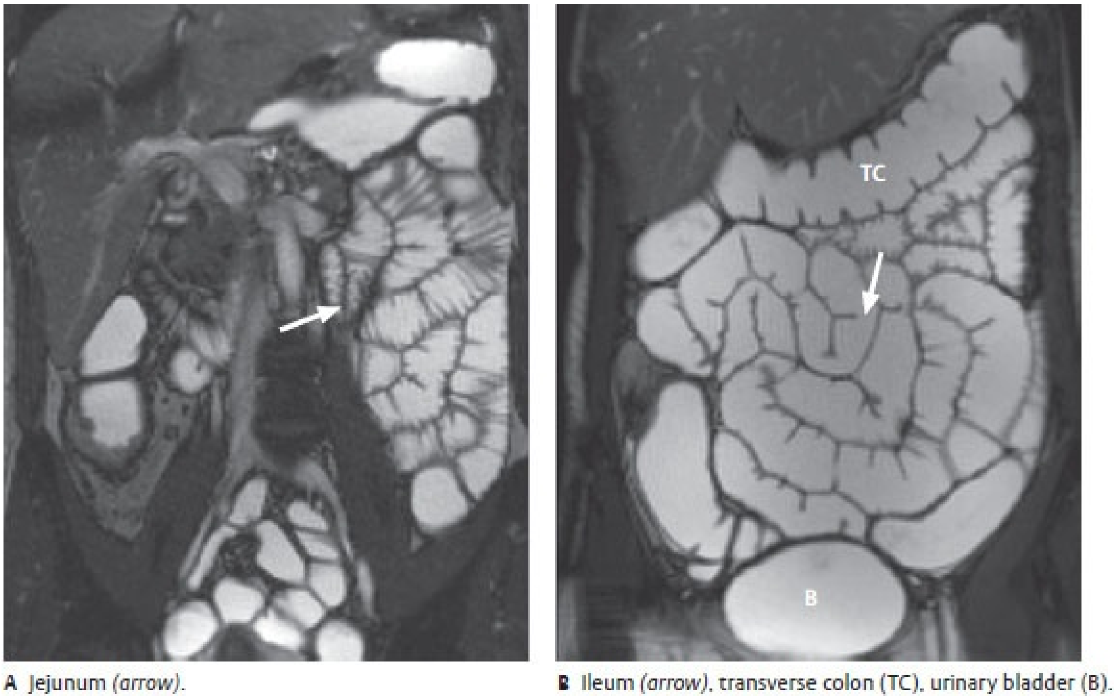

Greater omentum (reflected superiorly)
Transverse colon
Transverse mesocolon
Jejunum
Ascending colon
Cecum
Ileum
Rectus abdominis

Fig. 12.8 Jejunum and ileum in situ

Anterior view. *Reflected:* Transverse colon and greater omentum. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)



A Jejunum *(arrow)*.

B Ileum *(arrow)*, transverse colon (TC), urinary bladder (B).

Fig. 12.9 MRI of the small intestine

Coronal view. Sectional imaging modalities like CT and MR have mostly replaced conventional radiographs in the evaluation of gastrointestinal disease. (From Krombach GA, Mahnken AH. Body Imaging: Thorax and Abdomen. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2015.)

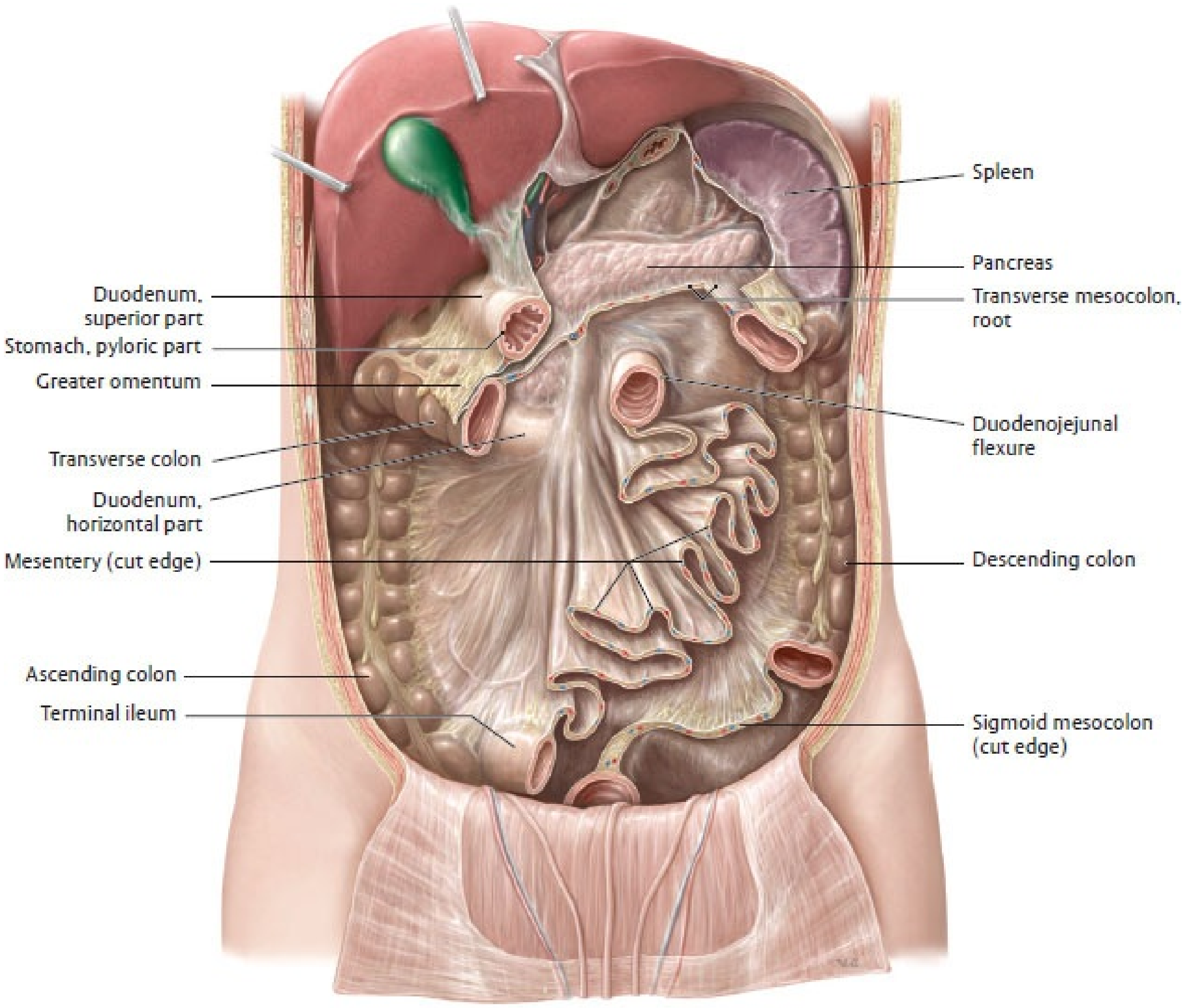
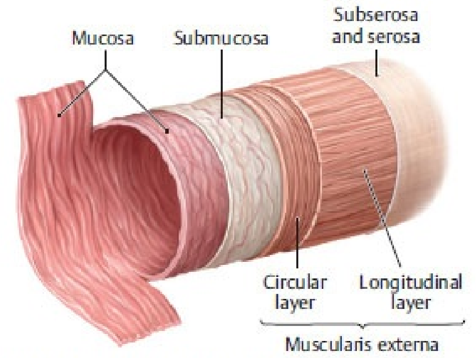
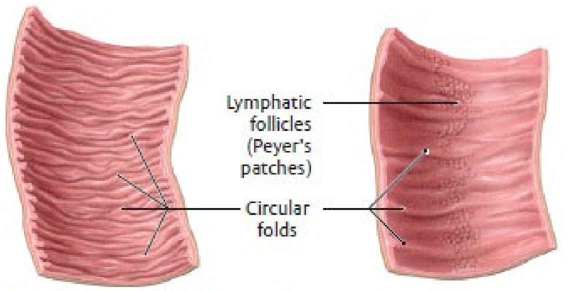

Duodenum, superior part
Stomach, pyloric part
Greater omentum
Transverse colon
Duodenum, horizontal part
Mesentery (cut edge)
Ascending colon
Terminal ileum
Spleen
Pancreas
Transverse mesocolon, root
Duodenojejunal flexure
Descending colon
Sigmoid mesocolon (cut edge)

Fig. 12.10 Mesentery of the small intestine Anterior view. *Removed:* Stomach, jejunum, and ileum. *Reflected:* Liver. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Mucosa
Submucosa
Subserosa and serosa
Circular layer
Longitudinal layer
Muscularis externa

A Wall layers of the small intestine are displayed in a "telescoped" cross section and the mucosal layer has been incised longitudinally and opened.


Lymphatic follicles (Peyer's patches)
Circular folds

B,C The jejunum and ileum have wall structures that are similar to those of other hollow organs of the gastrointestinal tract, but local differences can be seen in the circular folds.

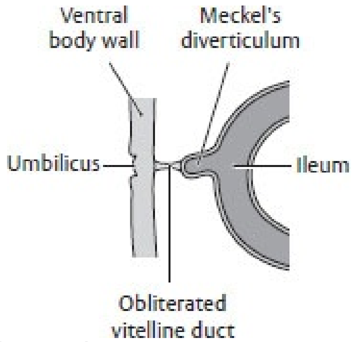
Fig. 12.11 Wall structure of the small intestine

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 12.5: DEVELOPMENTAL CORRELATION

ILEAL DIVERTICULUM

Ileal diverticulum (also known as Meckel's diverticulum), the most common congenital abnormality of the bowel, is an outpouching of the ileum that is a remnant of the omphalomesenteric duct (yolk stalk) that fails to resorb. The diverticulum may be unattached dis-tally or connect to the umbilicus via a fibrous cord or fistula. They are present in ~ 2% of the population, are located ~ 2 feet proximal to the ileocecal junction, and often contain two or more types of mucosa. The diverticulum can contain gastric, pancreatic, jejunal, or colonic tissue. An ileal diverticulum is usually asymptomatic but when inflamed may mimic acute appendicitis.



(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Large Intestine

The **large intestine** extends from the cecum to the anal canal (**Figs. 12.12, 12.13, 12.14**). It converts liquid feces to a semisolid state through the absorption of water, electrolytes, and salts. It also stores and lubricates fecal matter. Although it consists of five parts, only the **cecum**, **appendix**, and **colon** reside in the abdo-men. The **rectum** and **anal canal** are described in Chapter 15, Pelvic Viscera.

— The cecum is a blind pouch located in the right lower quadrant.
  - It is attached proximally in an end-to-side fashion to the terminal ileum and is continuous distally with the ascending colon.
  - It lacks a mesentery but is surrounded by peritoneum and therefore is fairly mobile.

— The (vermiform) appendix is a blind muscular diverticulum (outpouching) that opens into the posteromedial wall of the cecum below the **ileocecal orifice**.

  - Its walls contain large masses of lymphoid tissue.
  - Its mesoappendix (mesentery) suspends it from the ileum.
  - Its position is highly variable, but it is often retrocecal (posterior to the cecum).

— The colon has four parts that frame the abdominal viscera:

  1. The **ascending colon** ascends from the cecum in the right lower quadrant to the **right colic** (hepatic) **flexure** under the liver.
  2. The **transverse colon** crosses the abdomen from the right colic flexure to the left upper quadrant, where it termi-nates at the **left colic** (splenic) **flexure**.
  3. The **descending colon** descends along the left side of the abdomen to the left lower quadrant.
  4. The **sigmoid colon** crosses the iliac fossa to join the rectum in the pelvis.

— The appendix, transverse colon, and sigmoid colon are intraperitoneal. Each is suspended by its respective **meso colon** (mesentery). The left colic flexure is attached to the diaphragm by the **phrenicocolic ligament**.

— The ascending and descending colons are secondarily retroperitoneal and therefore lack mesenteries.

— External features of the colon distinguish it from the small intestine:

  - **Taeniae coli**, three longitudinal bands (mesocolic taenia, omental taenia, and free taenia), formed by the outer muscular layer,
  - **Haustra**, outpouchings of the intestinal wall visible between the taeniae coli,
  - **Epiploic appendices**, small sacs of fat aligned along the taeniae.

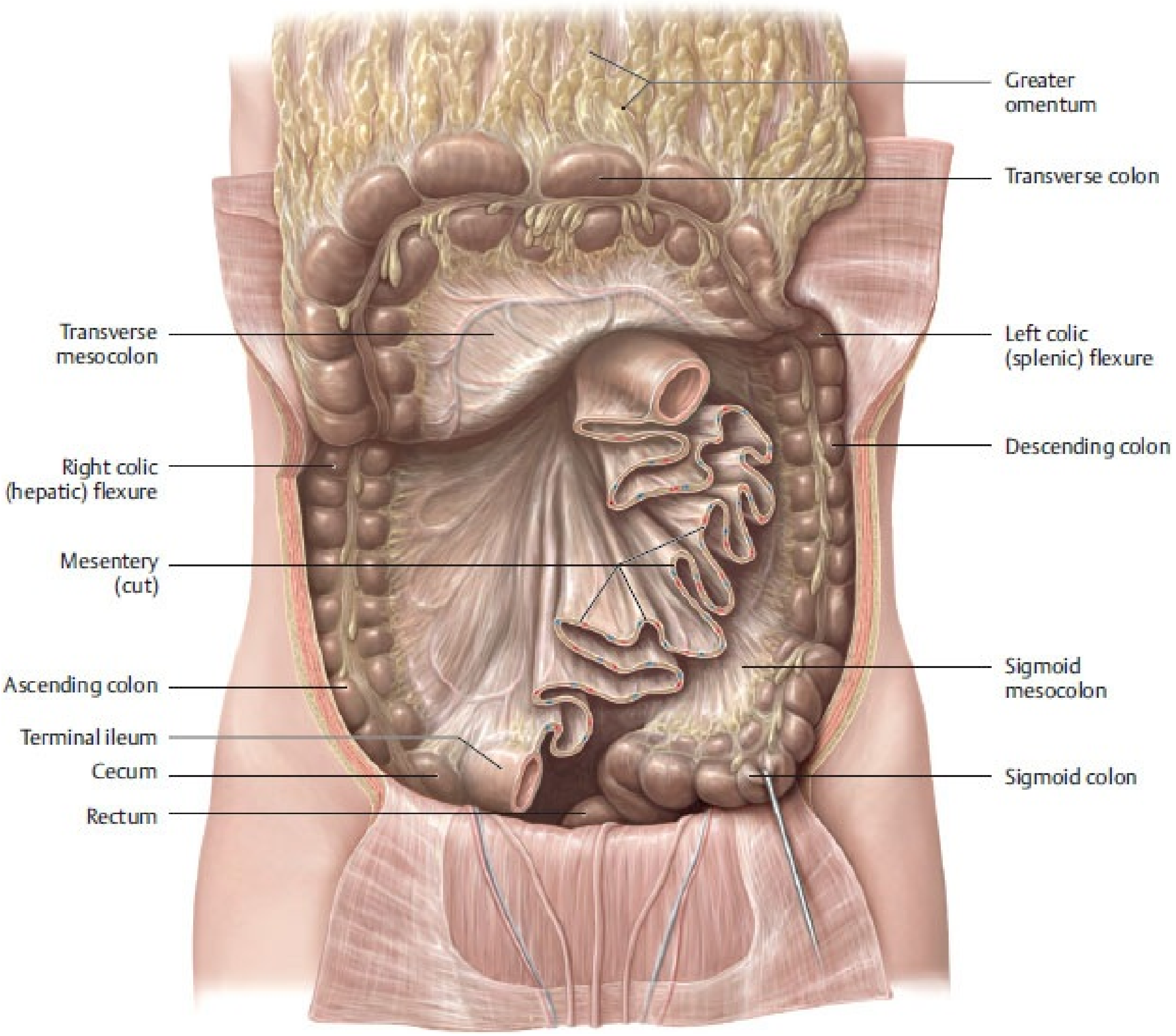

Greater omentum
Transverse colon
Transverse mesocolon
Left colic (splenic) flexure
Descending colon
Right colic (hepatic) flexure
Mesentery (cut)
Ascending colon
Sigmoid mesocolon
Terminal ileum
Cecum
Sigmoid colon
Rectum

Fig 12.12 Large intestine in situ

Anterior view. *Reflected:* Transverse colon and greater omentum. *Removed:* Intraperitoneal small intestine. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

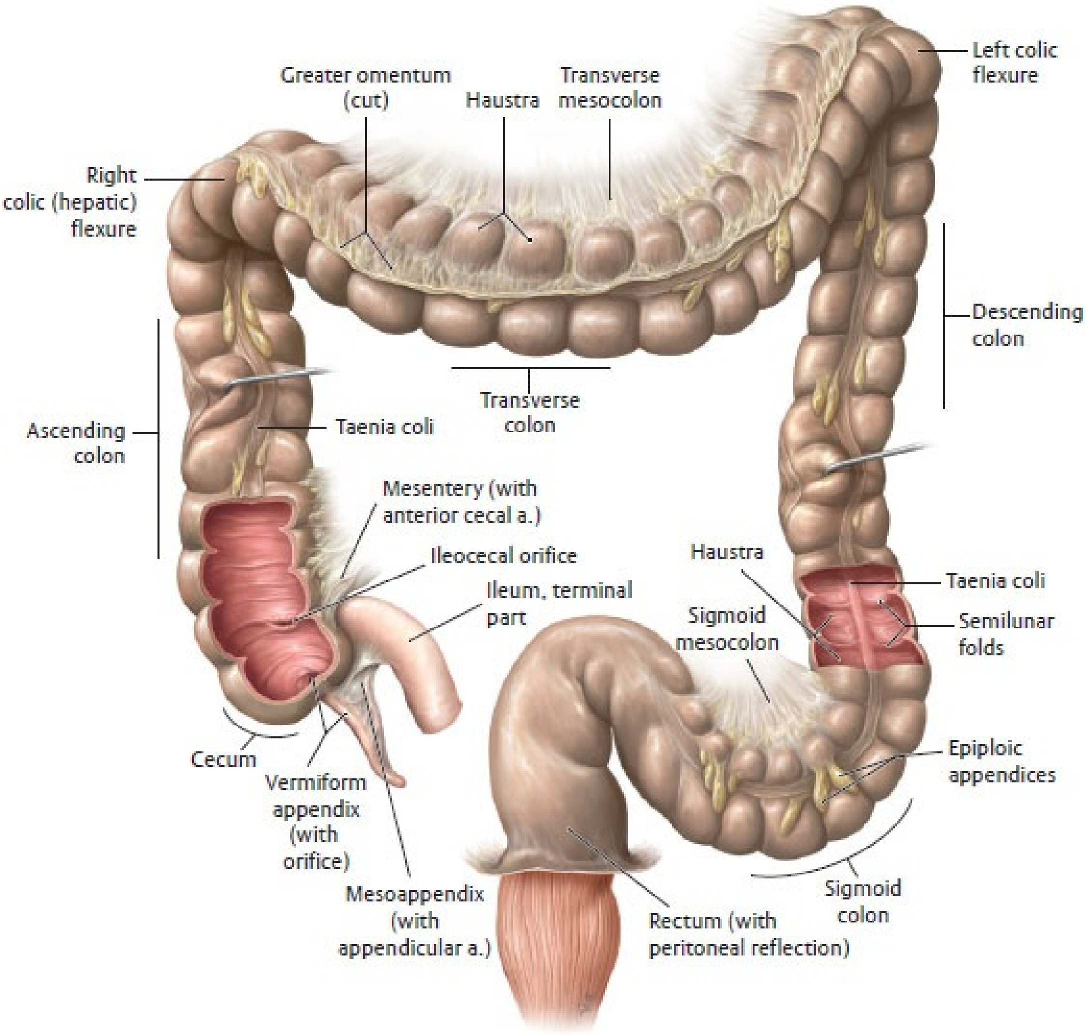

Greater omentum (cut)
Haustra
Transverse mesocolon
Left colic flexure
Right colic (hepatic) flexure
Descending colon
Ascending colon
Taenia coli
Transverse colon
Mesentery (with anterior cecal a.)
Ileocecal orifice
Ileum, terminal part
Haustra
Sigmoid mesocolon
Taenia coli
Semilunar folds
Cecum
Vermiform appendix (with orifice)
Epiploic appendices
Mesoappendix (with appendicular a.)
Rectum (with peritoneal reflection)
Sigmoid colon

Fig. 12.13 Large intestine

Anterior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

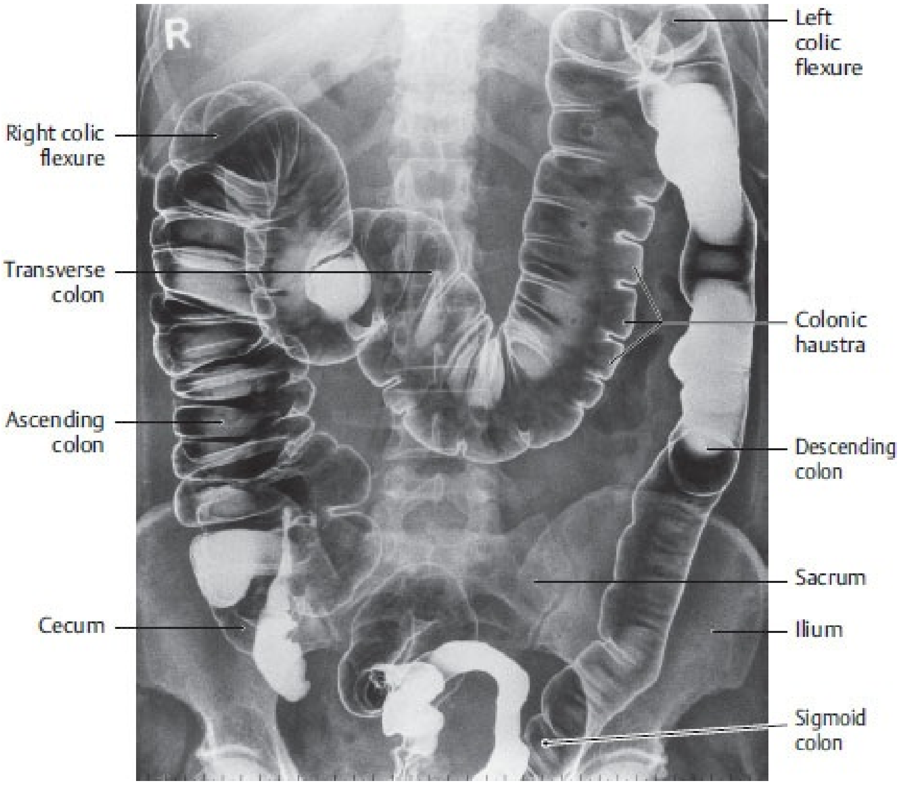

R
Left colic flexure
Right colic flexure
Transverse colon
Colonic haustra
Ascending colon
Descending colon
Sacrum
Cecum
Ilium
Sigmoid colon

Fig. 12.14 Radiograph of double contrast barium enema of the large intestine
Anterior view. (From Moeller TB, Reif E. Pocket Atlas of Sectional Anatomy, Vol 2, 3rd ed. New York: Thieme; 2007.)

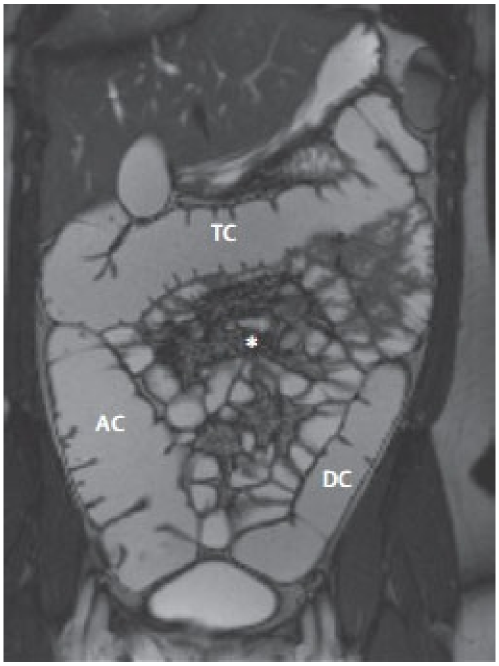


Fig. 12.15 MRI of the large intestine

Ascending colon (AC), descending colon (DC), transverse colon (TC), * small bowel and mesenteric structures. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- The blood supply, lymphatic drainage, and innervation of the parts of the large intestine reflect their development from the embryonic midgut and hindgut (see Section 11.2).
    - The ileocolic, right colic, and middle colic branches of the superior mesenteric artery supply the cecum, ascending colon, and proximal two thirds of the transverse colon (midgut).
    - The left colic and sigmoidal branches of the inferior mesenteric artery supply the distal third of the transverse colon, and the descending and sigmoid colons (hindgut). A superior rectal branch supplies the upper rectum in the pelvis.
    - The marginal artery runs along the mesenteric border of the large intestine, anastomosing branches of the superior mesenteric artery with those of the inferior mesenteric artery. In turn, the superior rectal artery anastomoses with middle rectal and inferior rectal branches in the pelvis.
    - Veins of the colon follow the arteries and drain into the hepatic portal system.
    - Lymph vessels follow arterial pathways to drain into superior mesenteric or inferior mesenteric nodes.
    - The superior mesenteric (midgut) and inferior mesenteric (hindgut) nerve plexuses innervate the large intestine.

BOX 12.6: CLINICAL CORRELATION

INFLAMMATORY BOWEL DISEASE

There are two types of inflammatory bowel disease (IBD): Crohn’s disease and ulcerative colitis. Crohn’s disease is a chronic inflammatory disease that can affect the entire gastrointestinal (GI) tract but most commonly affects the terminal ileum and colon. It causes ulcers, fistulas (abnormal communications), and granulomata, producing symptoms such as fever, diarrhea, weight loss, and abdominal pain. Ulcerative colitis is a recurrent inflammatory disease of the colon and rectum that produces bloody diarrhea, weight loss, fever, and abdominal pain. These diseases are treated with drugs that reduce the inflammatory response.

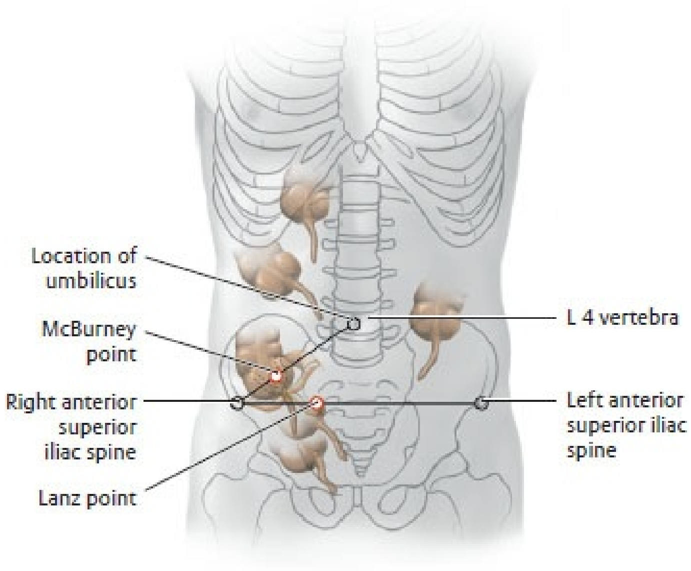
BOX 12.7: CLINICAL CORRELATION

APPENDICITIS AND VARIABLE POSITION OF THE VERMIFORM APPENDIX

Anomalies in the rotation of the embryonic gut can result in several positional variations of the cecum and appendix. This can influence the accurate interpretation of symptoms of appendicitis. Inflammation of an appendix in the typical position is felt initially as vague pain in the periumbilical region, transmitted via visceral fibers from the T10 spinal cord segment. As the inflammation irritates the overlying parietal peritoneum, tenderness can be elicited by pressure at two points:

McBurney point: located one third of the distance along a line from the anterior superior iliac spine to the umbilicus.

Lanz point: located one third of the distance along a line from the right anterior superior iliac spine to the simi-lar landmark on the left side.

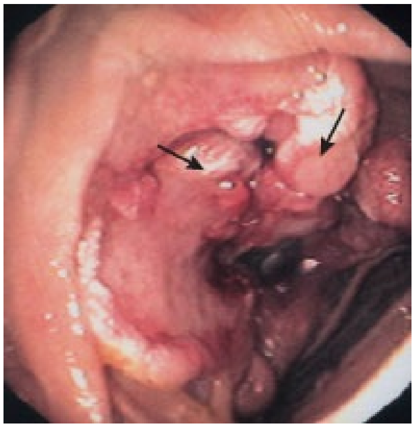

Location of umbilicus
McBurney point
Right anterior superior iliac spine
Lanz point
L 4 vertebra
Left anterior superior iliac spine

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 12.8: CLINICAL CORRELATION

COLON CARCINOMA

Malignant tumors of the colon and rectum are among the most fre-quent solid tumors. More than 90% occur in patients over the age of 50. In early stages, the tumor may be asymptomatic; later symp-toms include loss of appetite, changes in bowel movements, and weight loss. Blood in the stools is particularly incriminating, necessi-tating a thorough examination. Hemorrhoids are not a sufficient explanation for blood in stools unless all other tests (including a colonoscopy) are negative.



Colonoscopy of colon carcinoma. The tumor *(black arrows)* partially blocks the lumen of the colon. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th Edition. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

12.2 Organs of the Peritoneal Cavity—Accessory Organs of the Gastrointestinal Tract

Liver

The **liver** is located in the right upper quadrant under the right hemidiaphragm and extends inferiorly to the costal margin (**Fig. 12.16**). It has a primary role in carbohydrate, protein, and fat metab-olism. It also produces and secretes bile and bile pigments; detox-ifies substances absorbed by the gastrointestinal tract; and stores vitamins and minerals, such as iron. In the fetus, the liver is the site of hematopoiesis (red blood cell production).

- Externally, ligaments and fissures divide the liver into four anatomic (topographic) lobes: the **right**, **left**, **caudate**, and **quadrate lobes** (**Fig. 12.17**).
- The liver’s diaphragmatic surface conforms to the shape of the diaphragm and is marked by the **bare area**, which lacks peritoneum and is in direct contact with the diaphragm.
- The liver’s visceral (inferior) surface has three prominent fissures:
  1. The left sagittal fissure accommodates
     - the **round ligament** (ligamentum teres) of the liver anteriorly between the left and quadrate lobes. The round ligament is a remnant of the fetal umbilical vein.
     - the **ligamentum venosum** posteriorly between the left and caudate lobes. The ligamentum venosum is a remnant of the fetal ductus venosus.

2. The right sagittal fissure accommodates
    - the gallbladder anteriorly between the right and quadrate lobes and
    - the inferior vena cava posteriorly between the right and caudate lobes.
3. The transverse fissure accommodates
    - the **porta hepatis**, or hilum of the liver. Structures of the **portal triad** [proper hepatic artery, portal vein, and (common) **bile duct**] enter or exit here.

- The liver is intraperitoneal, covered by peritoneum except at the bare area, gallbladder fossa, and porta hepatis. Peritoneal reflections include
    - the **coronary** and **triangular ligaments**, single-layered reflections between the liver and diaphragm that surround the bare area;
    - the falciform ligament, a double layer of peritoneum, which attaches the liver to the anterior abdominal wall and contains the round ligament in its free edge; and
    - the hepatogastric and hepatoduodenal ligaments (both parts of the lesser omentum), which attach the liver to the stomach and proximal duodenum.
- A subperitoneal fibrous capsule, **Glisson's capsule**, covers the surface of the liver.
- Internally, branching of the intrahepatic blood vessels divides the liver into eight functional segments (designated as I through VIII) **(Fig. 12.18**, **Table 12.1)**. This segmental arrangement of the blood supply facilitates the resection of individual diseased segments.
- The liver has a dual blood supply: the portal vein and the proper hepatic artery (see Section 11.2). Both vessels divide to form primary and secondary branches that supply the liver segments.
    - The portal vein, carrying nutrient-rich blood from the digestive tract, provides 75 to 80% of the blood volume to the liver.
    - The proper hepatic artery, supplied by the celiac trunk via the common hepatic artery, contributes 20 to 25% of the blood volume to the liver.
- Right, left, and intermediate (middle) hepatic veins run intersegmentally, draining adjacent segments, and open into the inferior vena cava immediately below the diaphragm.

- Right, left, and intermediate (middle) hepatic veins run intersegmentally, draining adjacent segments, and open into the inferior vena cava immediately below the diaphragm.

- The liver has superficial and deep lymphatic drainages.
    - The superficial lymphatic plexus, found within the fibrous capsule,

drains the anterior liver surfaces to hepatic nodes (and eventually into the celiac nodes) and drains the posterior surfaces toward the bare area, which flow into phrenic or posterior mediastinal nodes.
    - The deep plexus, which accompanies vessels within the liver segments, drains most of the liver, flowing first into the hepatic nodes in the porta hepatis and lesser omen-tum, before draining to the celiac nodes.
- The hepatic nerve plexus, a division of the celiac plexus, travels along the vessels of the portal triad to innervate the liver.

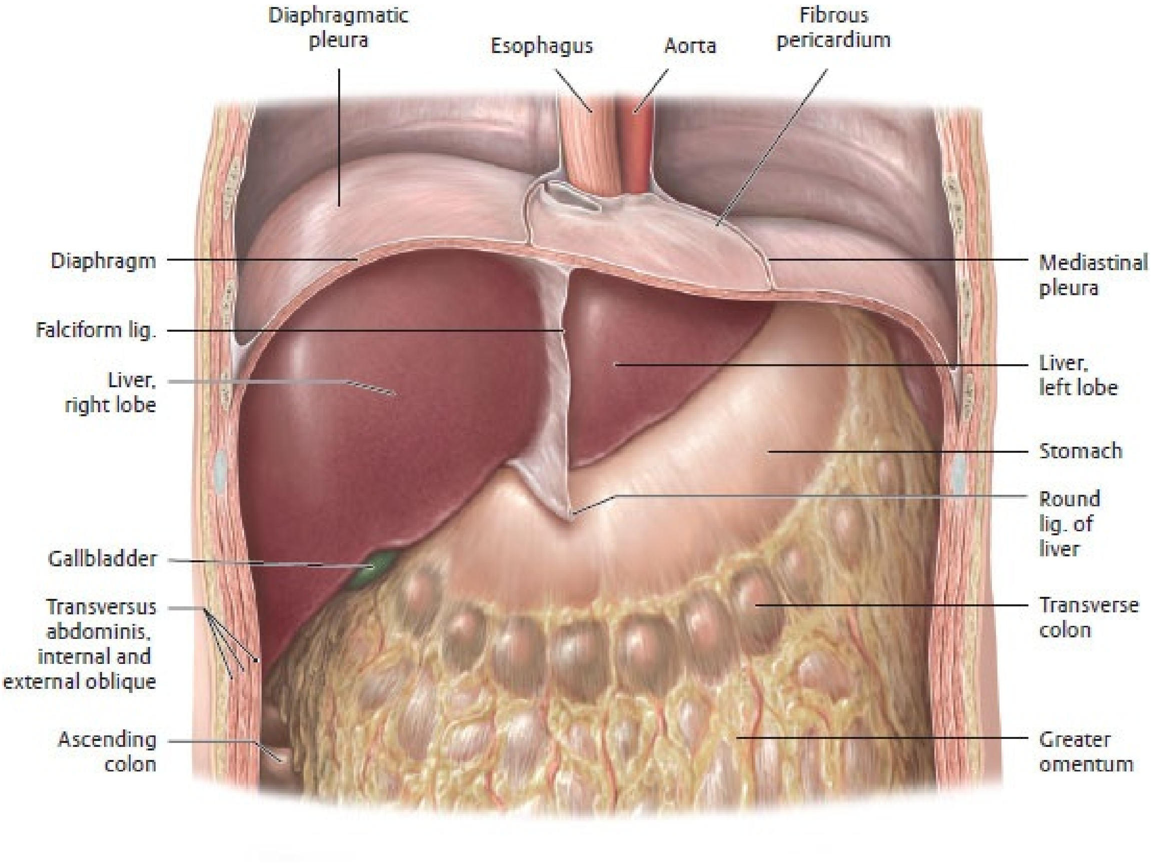
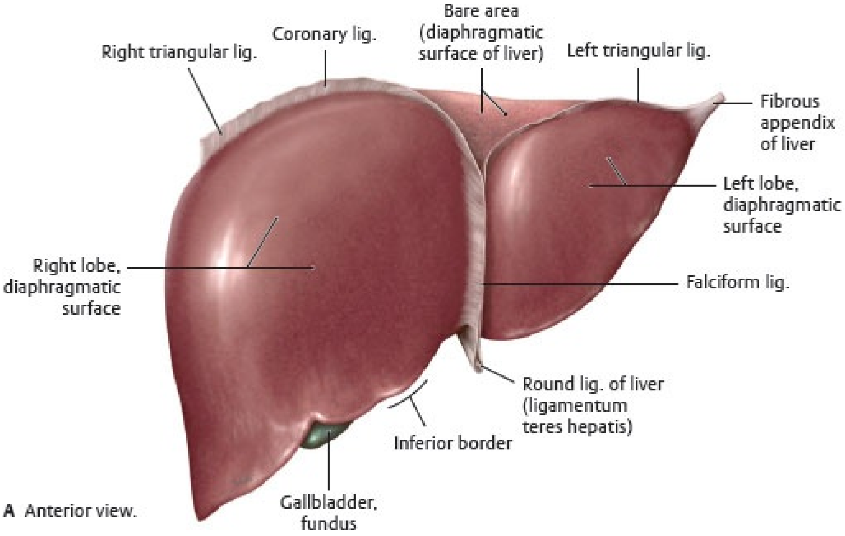
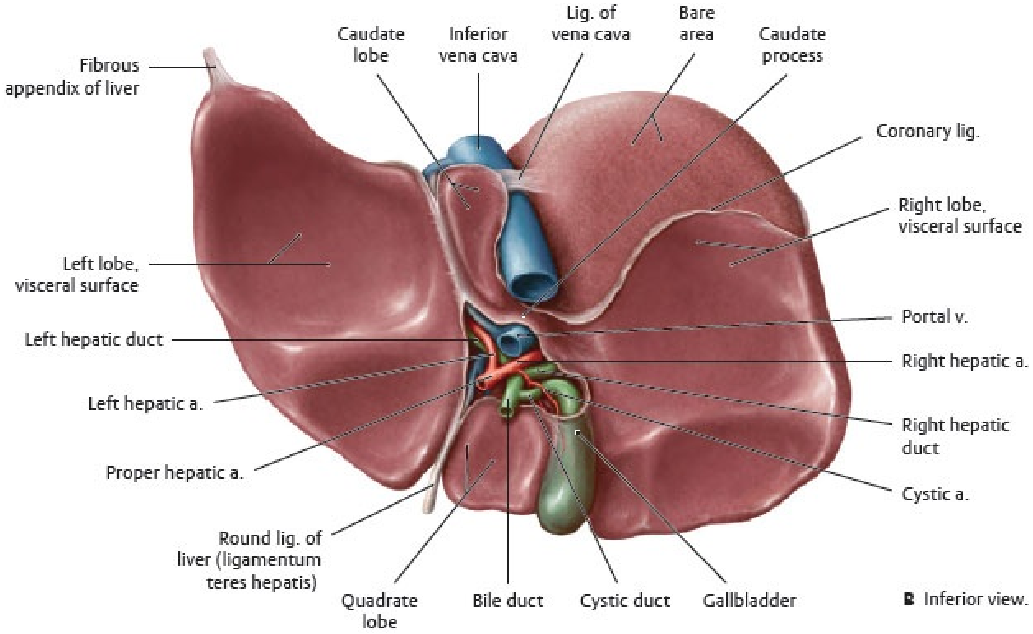

Diaphragmatic pleura
Esophagus
Aorta
Fibrous pericardium
Diaphragm
Mediastinal pleura
Falciform lig.
Liver, right lobe
Liver, left lobe
Stomach
Round lig. of liver
Gallbladder
Transversus abdominis, internal and external oblique
Transverse colon
Ascending colon
Greater omentum

Fig. 12.16 Liver in situ

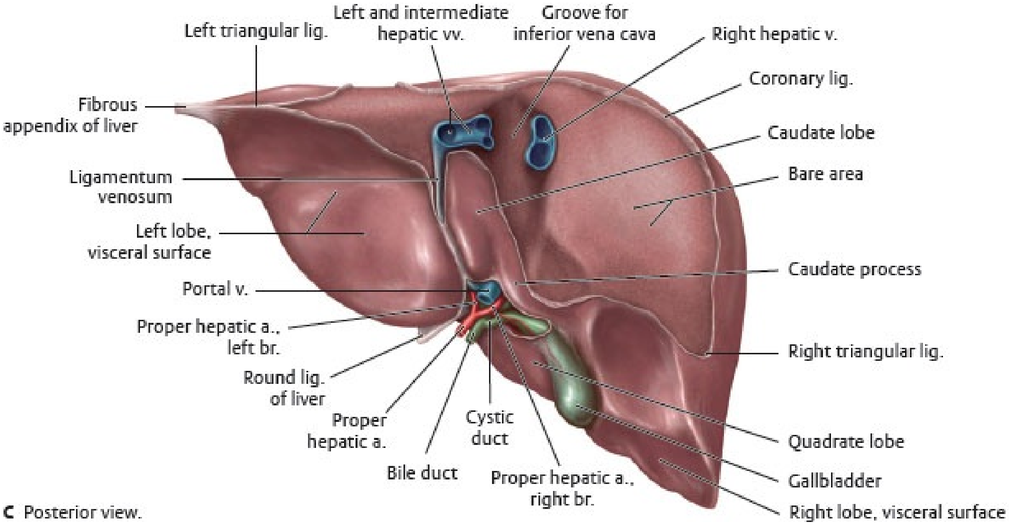
Anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Right triangular lig.
Coronary lig.
Bare area (diaphragmatic surface of liver)
Left triangular lig.
Fibrous appendix of liver
Left lobe, diaphragmatic surface
Right lobe, diaphragmatic surface
Falciform lig.
Round lig. of liver (ligamentum teres hepatis)
Inferior border
Gallbladder, fundus

A Anterior view.


Fibrous appendix of liver
Caudate lobe
Inferior vena cava
Lig. of vena cava
Bare area
Caudate process
Coronary lig.
Right lobe, visceral surface
Left lobe, visceral surface
Portal v.
Left hepatic duct
Right hepatic a.
Left hepatic a.
Right hepatic duct
Proper hepatic a.
Cystic a.
Round lig. of liver (ligamentum teres hepatis)
Quadrate lobe
Bile duct
Cystic duct
Gallbladder

B Inferior view.


Left triangular lig.
Left and intermediate hepatic vv.
Groove for inferior vena cava
Right hepatic v.
Coronary lig.
Fibrous appendix of liver
Caudate lobe
Ligamentum venosum
Bare area
Left lobe, visceral surface
Caudate process
Portal v.
Proper hepatic a., left br.
Right triangular lig.
Round lig. of liver
Proper hepatic a.
Cystic duct
Quadrate lobe
Bile duct
Proper hepatic a., right br.
Gallbladder
Right lobe, visceral surface

C Posterior view.

Fig. 12.17 Surfaces of the liver

The liver is divided by its ligaments into four lobes: right, left, caudate, and quadrate. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

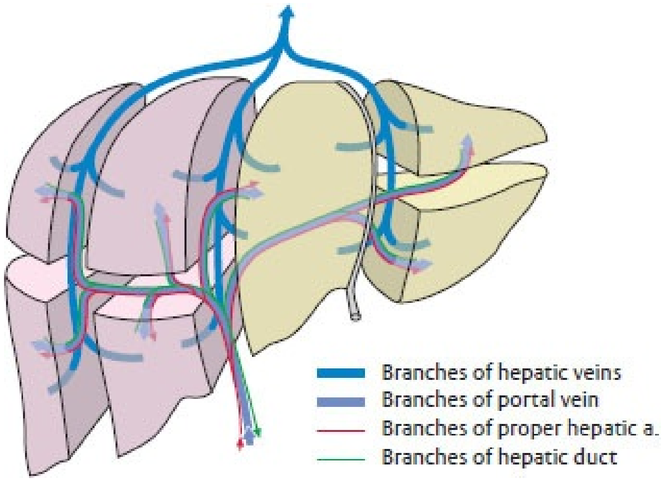
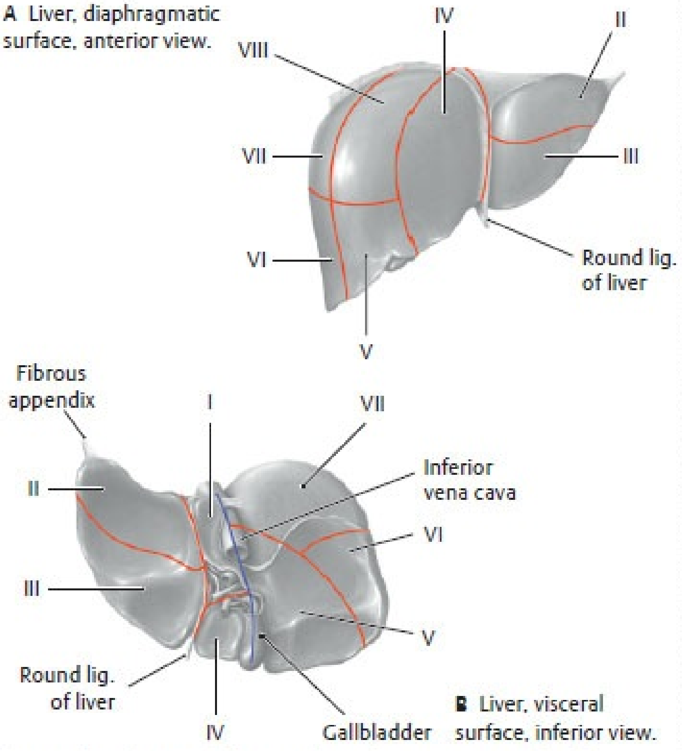

Branches of hepatic veins
Branches of portal vein
Branches of proper hepatic a.
Branches of hepatic duct

Fig. 12.18 Segmentation of the liver

Anterior view. Branches of the hepatic artery, portal vein, and hepatic ducts divide the liver into hepatic segments. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 2nd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2016.)


A Liver, diaphragmatic surface, anterior view.
VIII
VII
VI
IV
V
II
III
Round lig. of liver
Fibrous appendix
I
VII
II
III
Inferior vena cava
VI
V
Round lig. of liver
IV
Gallbladder
B Liver, visceral surface, inferior view.

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

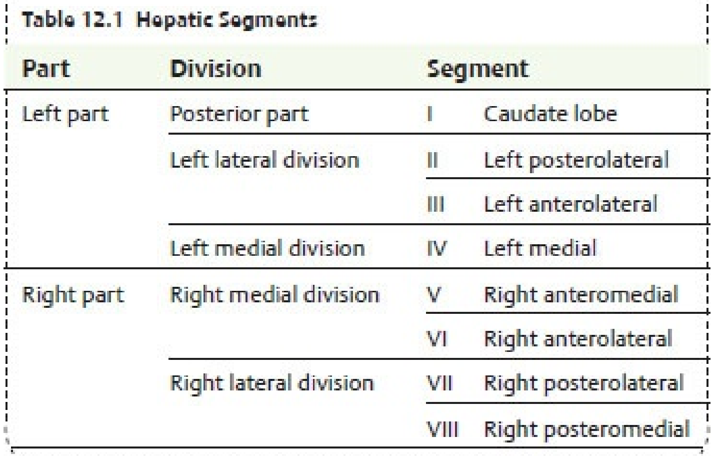


Table 12.1 Hepatic Segments

Part	Division	Segment	
Left part	Posterior part	I	Caudate lobe
	Left lateral division	II	Left posterolateral
		III	Left anterolateral
	Left medial division	IV	Left medial
Right part	Right medial division	V	Right anteromedial
		VI	Right anterolateral
	Right lateral division	VII	Right posterolateral
		VIII	Right posteromedial

BOX 12.9: CLINICAL CORRELATION

CIRRHOSIS OF THE LIVER

Cirrhosis, most commonly caused by chronic alcoholism, is char-acterized by a progressive fibrosis of hepatic tissue around the intrahepatic vessels and biliary ducts that impedes blood flow. The liver becomes hard and nodular in appearance. Symptoms include ascites, splenomegaly, peripheral edema, esophageal var-ices, and other signs of portal hypertension.

Gallbladder and Extrahepatic Biliary System

The gallbladder is a pear-shaped sac that lies in a fossa on the vis-ceral surface of the liver (**Figs. 12.17** and **12.19**). It stores the bile produced and secreted by the liver and concentrates it by absorb-ing salts and water. Hormonal or neural stimulation causes the gallbladder to release bile into the **extrahepatic biliary ducts** (**Fig. 12.20**).

- The gallbladder has four parts (**Fig. 12.21**):
  1. The **fundus**, the expanded distal end that is in contact with the anterior abdominal wall
  2. The **body**, the main portion
  3. The **infundibulum** between the body and neck
  4. The **neck**, the narrow distal segment that joins with the cystic duct
- The extrahepatic biliary system of ducts transports bile from the liver and gallbladder to the duodenum. It consists of
  - the **common hepatic duct** formed by the junction of the right and left hepatic ducts, which drain the liver;
  - the **cystic duct**, which drains the gallbladder and com municates with the common hepatic duct from the liver (a **spiral valve** in the neck of the gallbladder keeps the cystic duct open); and
  - the **bile duct**, formed by the junction of the common hepatic duct and cystic duct, which drains bile into the second part of the duodenum.
- The bile duct passes posterior to the first part of the duode-num and posterior to, or through, the head of the pancreas. It ends at the **hepatopancreatic ampulla** (of Vater), a dilation of the distal end of the duct, where it joins with the **main pancreatic duct** of the pancreas.
- A muscular **sphincter** (of Oddi) surrounds the hepatopancre-atic ampulla as it traverses the medial wall of the duodenum through the major duodenal papilla and opens into the descending part of the duodenum (**Fig. 12.22**).
- The **cystic artery**, usually a branch of the right hepatic artery, supplies the gallbladder.
- Venous blood from the gallbladder drains into hepatic veins in the liver, which drain into the inferior vena cava.
- The hepatic plexus innervates the gallbladder.
  - Sympathetic stimulation inhibits bile secretion.
  - Parasympathetic stimulation causes the gallbladder to contract and release bile.

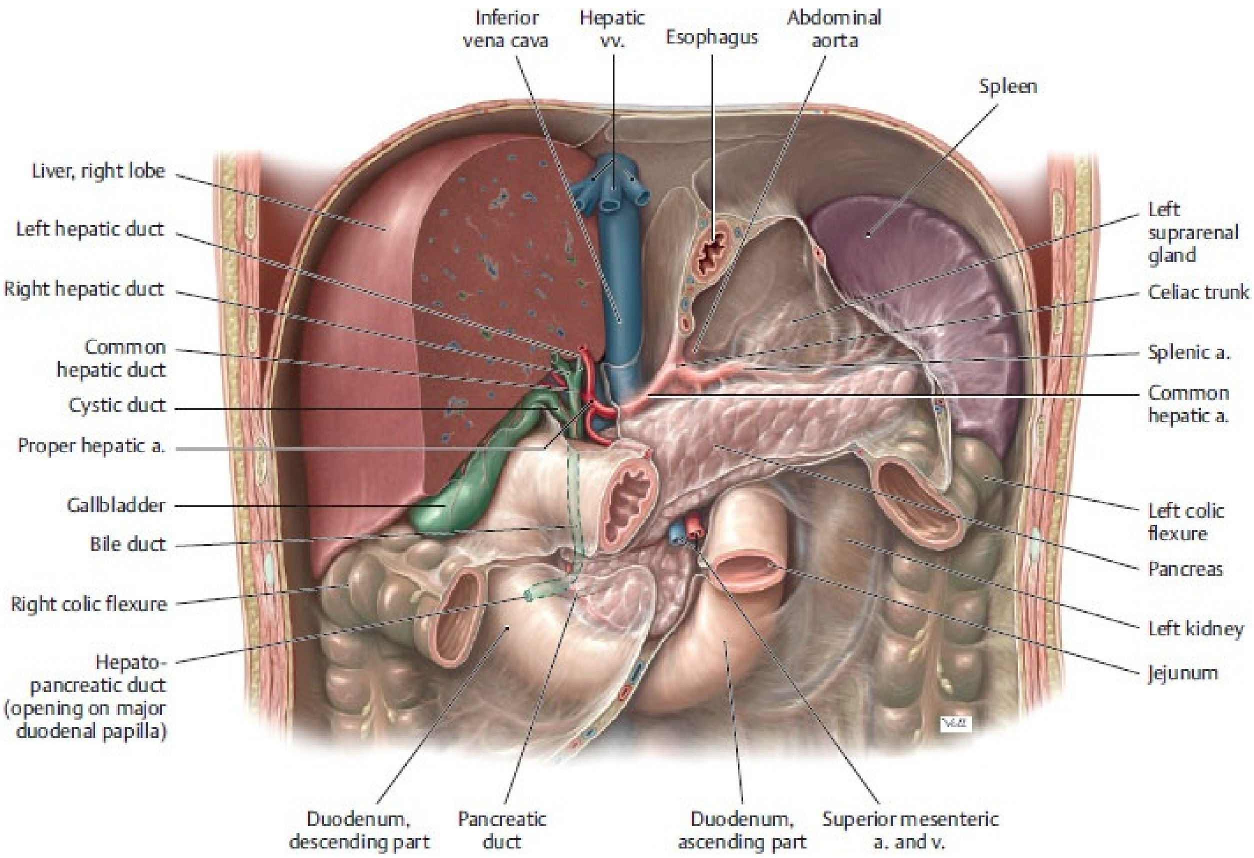

Inferior vena cava
Hepatic vv.
Esophagus
Abdominal aorta
Spleen
Liver, right lobe
Left hepatic duct
Right hepatic duct
Common hepatic duct
Cystic duct
Proper hepatic a.
Gallbladder
Bile duct
Right colic flexure
Hepato-pancreatic duct (opening on major duodenal papilla)
Left suprarenal gland
Celiac trunk
Splenic a.
Common hepatic a.
Left colic flexure
Pancreas
Left kidney
Jejunum
Duodenum, descending part
Pancreatic duct
Duodenum, ascending part
Superior mesenteric a. and v.

Fig. 12.19 Biliary tract in situ

Anterior view. *Removed:* Stomach, small intestine, transverse colon, and large portions of the liver. The gallbladder is intraperitoneal, covered by visceral peritoneum where it is not attached to the liver. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

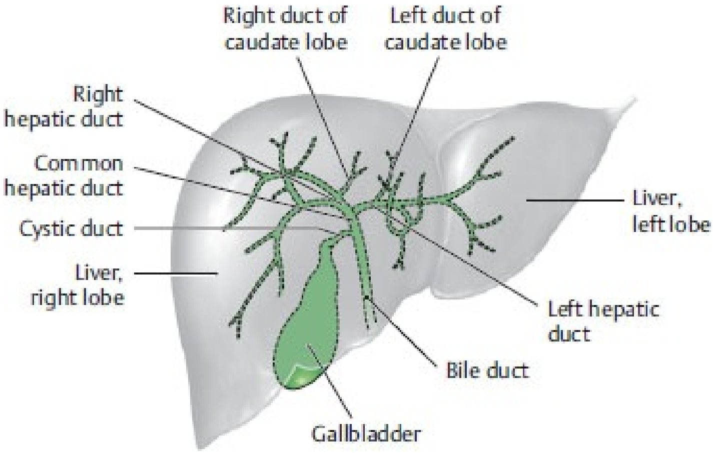
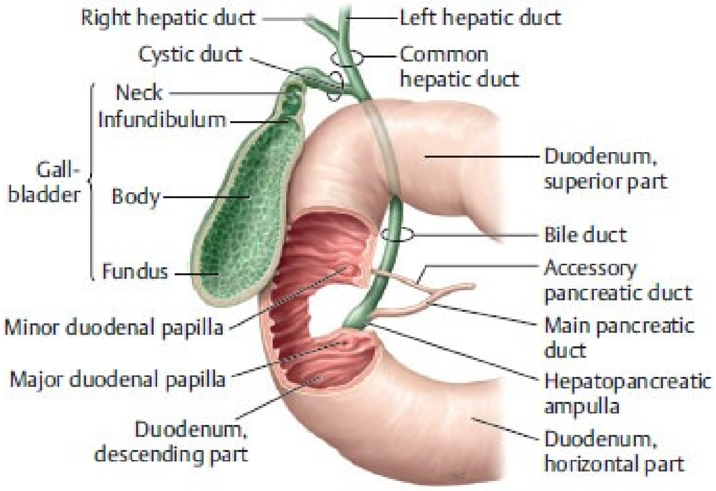

Right duct of caudate lobe
Left duct of caudate lobe
Right hepatic duct
Common hepatic duct
Cystic duct
Liver, right lobe
Liver, left lobe
Left hepatic duct
Bile duct
Gallbladder

Fig 12.20 Hepatic bile ducts

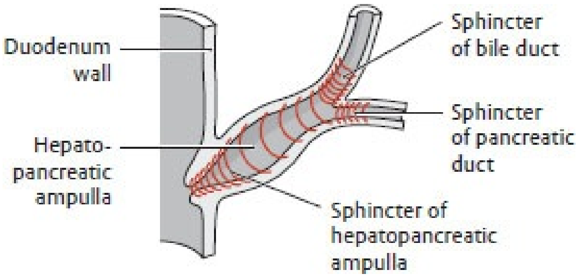
Projection onto the surface of the liver, anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)



Right hepatic duct
Left hepatic duct
Cystic duct
Common hepatic duct
Neck
Infundibulum
Gall-bladder
Body
Duodenum, superior part
Bile duct
Fundus
Accessory pancreatic duct
Minor duodenal papilla
Main pancreatic duct
Major duodenal papilla
Hepatopancreatic ampulla
Duodenum, descending part
Duodenum, horizontal part

Fig. 12.21 Extrahepatic bile ducts and gallbladder

Anterior view. *Opened:* Gallbladder and duodenum. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)



Duodenum wall
Sphincter of bile duct
Sphincter of pancreatic duct
Hepato-pancreatic ampulla
Sphincter of hepatopancreatic ampulla

Fig. 12.22 Biliary sphincter system

Sphincters of the pancreatic and bile ducts. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 12.10: CLINICAL CORRELATION

GALLSTONES

Gallstones are concretions of cholesterol crystals that lodge within the biliary tree. They occur most commonly in women over the age of 40. Gallstones can remain asymptomatic, but when they obstruct the hepatopancreatic ampulla, they impede the flow of bile and pancreatic secretions, which may cause bile to enter the pancreas, leading to pancreatitis. Gallstones that obstruct the cystic duct leads to biliary colic, characterized by severe waves of pain, cholecystitis, and jaundice. Stones that accumulate in the fundus of a diseased gallbladder (also known as Hartmann’s pouch) may ulcerate through the wall of the fundus into the transverse colon. These can pass naturally via the rectum, or they may pass into the small intestine where they can obstruct the ile-ocecal valve, producing an intestinal obstruction (gallstone ileus). Pain arising from gallstones originates in the epigastric or right hypochondriac region but may also be referred to the posterior thoracic wall or right shoulder due to irritation of the diaphragm.

BOX 12.11: CLINICAL CORRELATION

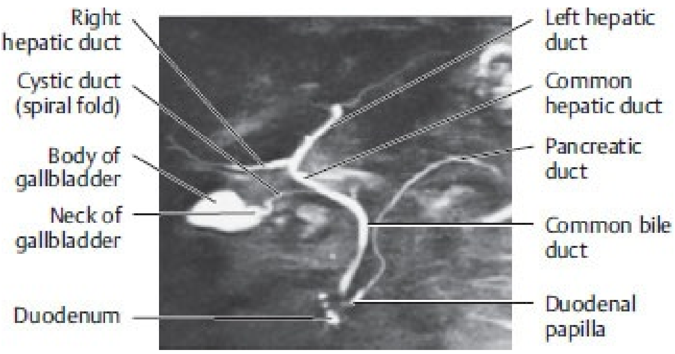
CHOLECYSTECTOMY AND THE CYSTOHEPATIC TRIANGLE (OF CALOT)

Ninety-five percent of injuries to extrahepatic bile ducts are sus-tained intraoperatively, most commonly during removal of the gallbladder (cholecystectomy), which includes transection of the cystic artery and cystic duct. The cystohepatic triangle serves as a guide for accurate identification of these structures, whose anat-omy can be highly variable. The borders of this space are the cys-tic duct inferiorly, the common hepatic duct medially, and the visceral surface of the liver superiorly.

BOX 12.12: CLINICAL CORRELATION

IMPLICATIONS OF THE SHARED EMPTYING OF THE BILE DUCT AND PANCREATIC DUCT

The common bile duct and the pancreatic duct both empty into the major duodenal papilla. This has important clinical implica-tions (e.g., a tumor at the head of the pancreas may obstruct the common bile duct, causing biliary reflux into the liver and jaun-dice). Similarly, a gallstone that lodges in the common bile duct may obstruct the terminal part of the pancreatic duct, causing acute pancreatitis.



MR cholangiopancreatography

(From Moeller TB, Reif E. Pocket Atlas of Sectional Anatomy, Vol 2, 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2007.)

Pancreas

The **pancreas** is a lobulated gland that has dual functions. As an exocrine gland it synthesizes digestive enzymes, and as an endo-crine gland it produces and secretes the hormones insulin and glucagon **(Figs. 12.19, 12.23, 12.24, 12.25)**.

- It is secondarily retroperitoneal and lies on the posterior wall of the omental bursa.
- It crosses the midline with its head within the “C” of the duo-denum and its tail touching the splenic hilum.
- The four parts of the pancreas are the **head** and **uncinate pro-cess**, the **neck**, the **body**, and the **tail**.

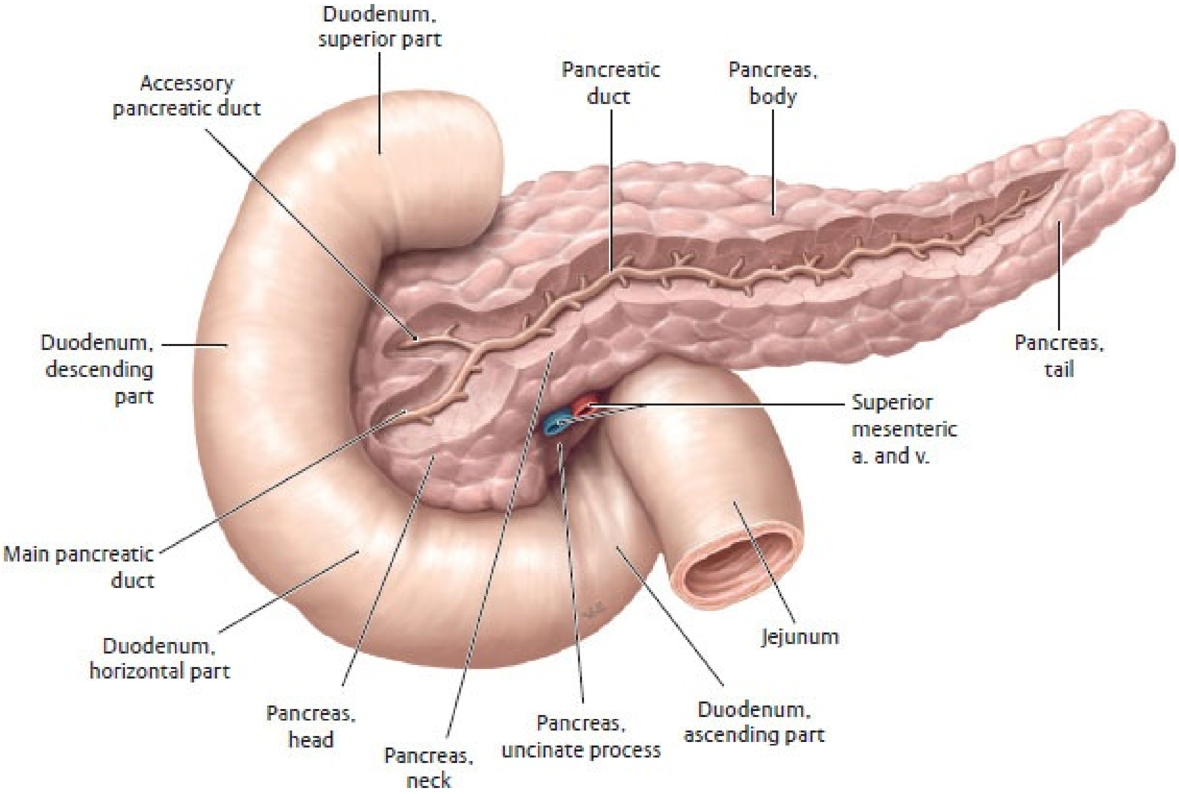

Duodenum, superior part
Accessory pancreatic duct
Pancreatic duct
Pancreas, body
Duodenum, descending part
Pancreas, tail
Superior mesenteric a. and v.
Main pancreatic duct
Duodenum, horizontal part
Jejunum
Pancreas, head
Pancreas, neck
Pancreas, uncinate process
Duodenum, ascending part

Fig. 12.23 Pancreas

Anterior view with dissection of the pancreatic duct. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

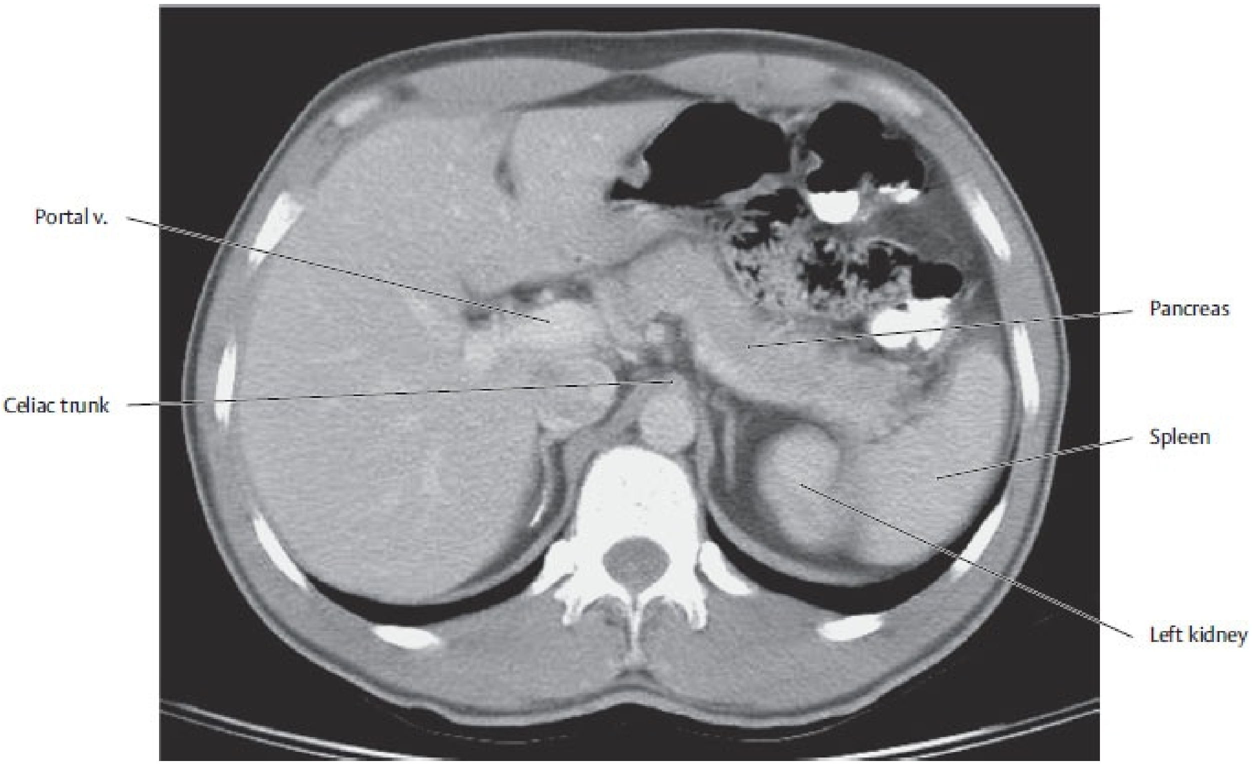

Portal v.
Celiac trunk
Pancreas
Spleen
Left kidney

Fig 12.24 CT of the abdomen at the L1 vertebral level

(From Moeller TB, Reif E. Pocket Atlas of Sectional Anatomy, Vol 2, 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2007.)

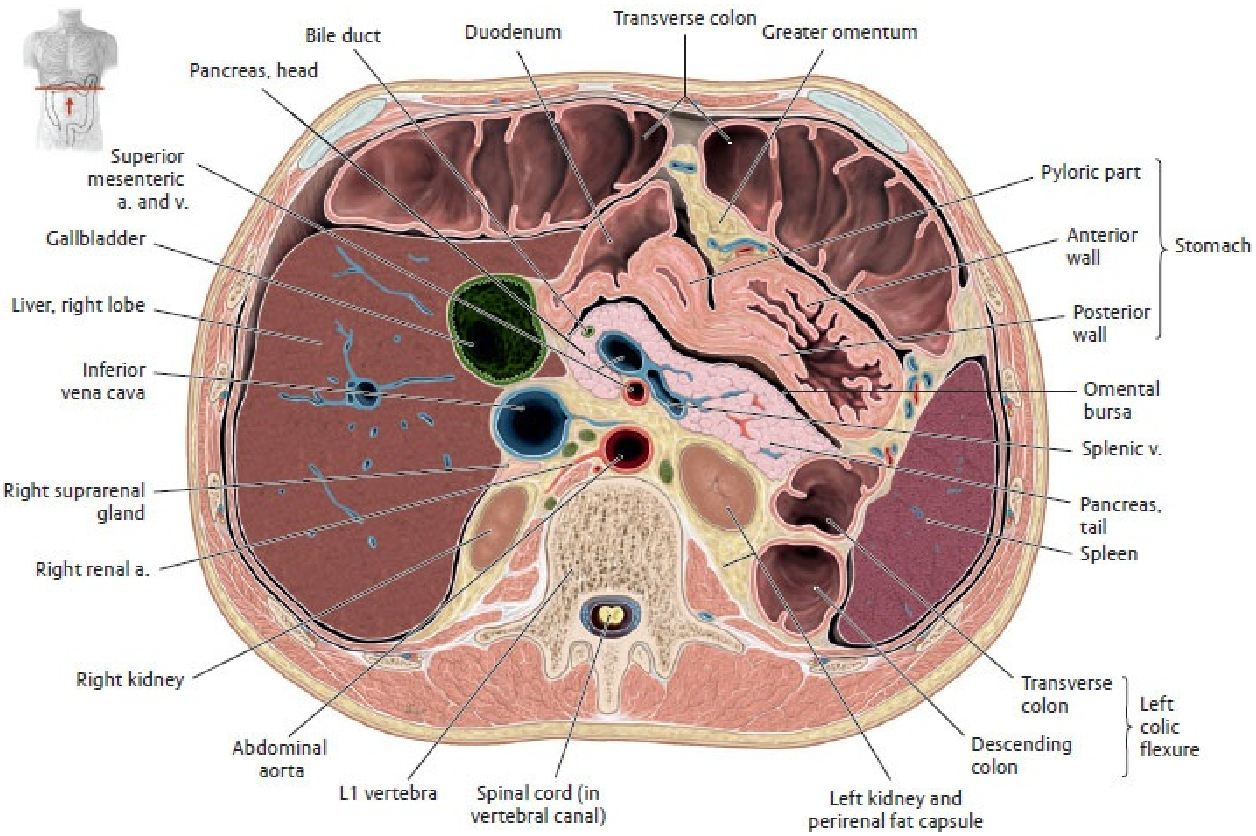

Bile duct
Duodenum
Transverse colon
Greater omentum
Pancreas, head
Superior mesenteric a. and v.
Gallbladder
Liver, right lobe
Inferior vena cava
Right suprarenal gland
Right renal a.
Right kidney
Abdominal aorta
L1 vertebra
Spinal cord (in vertebral canal)
Left kidney and perirenal fat capsule
Pyloric part
Anterior wall
Posterior wall
Stomach
Omental bursa
Splenic v.
Pancreas, tail
Spleen
Transverse colon
Descending colon
Left colic flexure

Fig. 12.25 Transverse section of the abdomen through the L1 vertebra

Inferior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- The **main pancreatic duct** (of Wirsung) traverses the length of the gland to join with the common bile duct at the hepa-topancreatic ampulla. Together they drain into the descending part of the duodenum at the **major duodenal papilla** (see Figs. 12.21 and 12.22).
- When present, an **accessory pancreatic duct** (of Santorini) may drain to the descending part of the duodenum at the **minor duodenal papilla**, 2 cm proximal to the drainage site of the main pancreatic duct.
- Because of its central location in the upper abdomen, the pancreas is related topographically to many of the major abdominal vascular structures (see Fig. 11.23):
  - The head lies anterior to the right renal vessels, left renal vein, and inferior vena cava.
  - The neck and body cross anterior to the abdominal aorta, superior mesenteric vessels, and portal vein. The celiac trunk arises from the

aorta immediately superior to this.

  - The tail crosses anterior to the left kidney and extends to the hilum of the spleen. The splenic artery runs along its superior border, and the splenic vein courses behind it.

- Branches of the celiac trunk and superior mesenteric artery supply the pancreas (see Section 11.2).
  - Pancreaticoduodenal branches of the gastroduodenal artery (from the celiac trunk) and superior mesenteric artery supply the head.
  - Branches of the splenic artery supply the neck, body, and tail.
- Venous blood drains into the splenic and superior mesenteric veins, which merge to form the hepatic portal system.
- Lymphatic drainage is as varied as its blood supply but generally follows arterial pathways, ultimately draining into celiac and superior mesenteric nodes.
- The celiac and superior mesenteric plexuses innervate the pancreas.

BOX 12.13: CLINICAL CORRELATION

CARCINOMA OF THE PANCREAS

Relations of the pancreas are of clinical significance in patients with pancreatic cancer. It metastasizes extensively to deep nodes and adjacent organs. Tumors of the head are most common and can obstruct the drainage of the bile and pancreatic ducts, resulting in obstructive jaundice. Tumors of the neck and body can obstruct the portal vein or inferior vena cava.

Spleen

The **spleen** is an intraperitoneal organ located in the hypochondriac region of the left upper quadrant (**Figs. 12.25**, **12.26**, **12.27**). It functions as a lymphoid gland and as a filter for old or abnormal red blood cells.

- Nestled under the dome of the diaphragm, the spleen does not normally project below the costal margin and therefore is not palpable on examination.
- The convex surface admits the splenic vessels and nerves at the **splenic hilum**.
- The spleen is connected to adjacent organs by peritoneal ligaments.
  - The **splenorenal ligament**, which contains the branches of the splenic vessels and the tail of the pancreas, connects the spleen to the kidney.
  - The **gastrosplenic ligament**, which contains the short gastric and left gastro-omental vessels, connects the spleen to the stomach.
  - The **splenocolic ligament** connects the spleen to the left colic flexure.

- The **phrenicosplenic ligament** connects the spleen to the diaphragm.

— Although it is sheltered by the 9th, 10th, and 11th ribs, the spleen is particularly vulnerable to lacerations from fractured ribs, and because of its dense vascularity, it bleeds profusely.

— Accessory spleens are common (20%) and are most often found within the gastrosplenic ligament, near the hilum or tail of the pancreas.

— The splenic artery, a large tortuous branch of the celiac trunk, divides within the splenorenal ligament at the splenic hilum (see Section 11.2).

— The spleen is vulnerable to infarction (interruption of the blood supply causing tissue death) because the splenic artery has no collateral arteries and is the gland's sole blood supply.

— The splenic vein courses behind the pancreas, where it joins with the superior mesenteric vein to form the portal vein.

— The splenic plexus, a derivative of the celiac plexus, inner-vates the spleen.

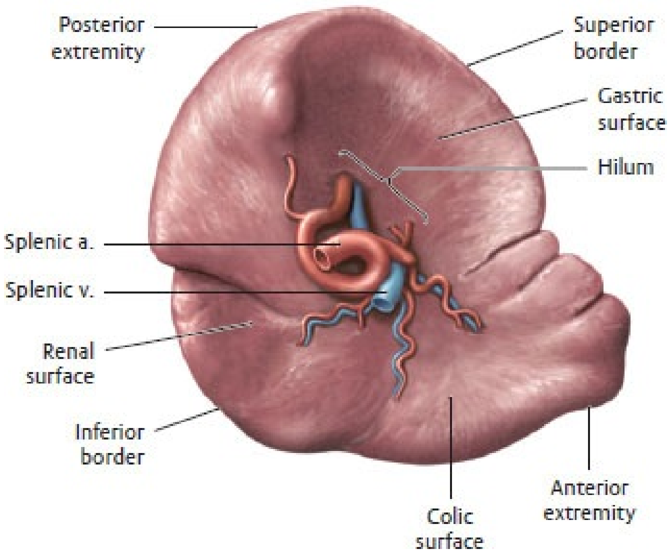

Posterior extremity
Superior border
Gastric surface
Hilum
Splenic a.
Splenic v.
Renal surface
Inferior border
Colic surface
Anterior extremity

Fig. 12.26 Spleen

Visceral surface. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

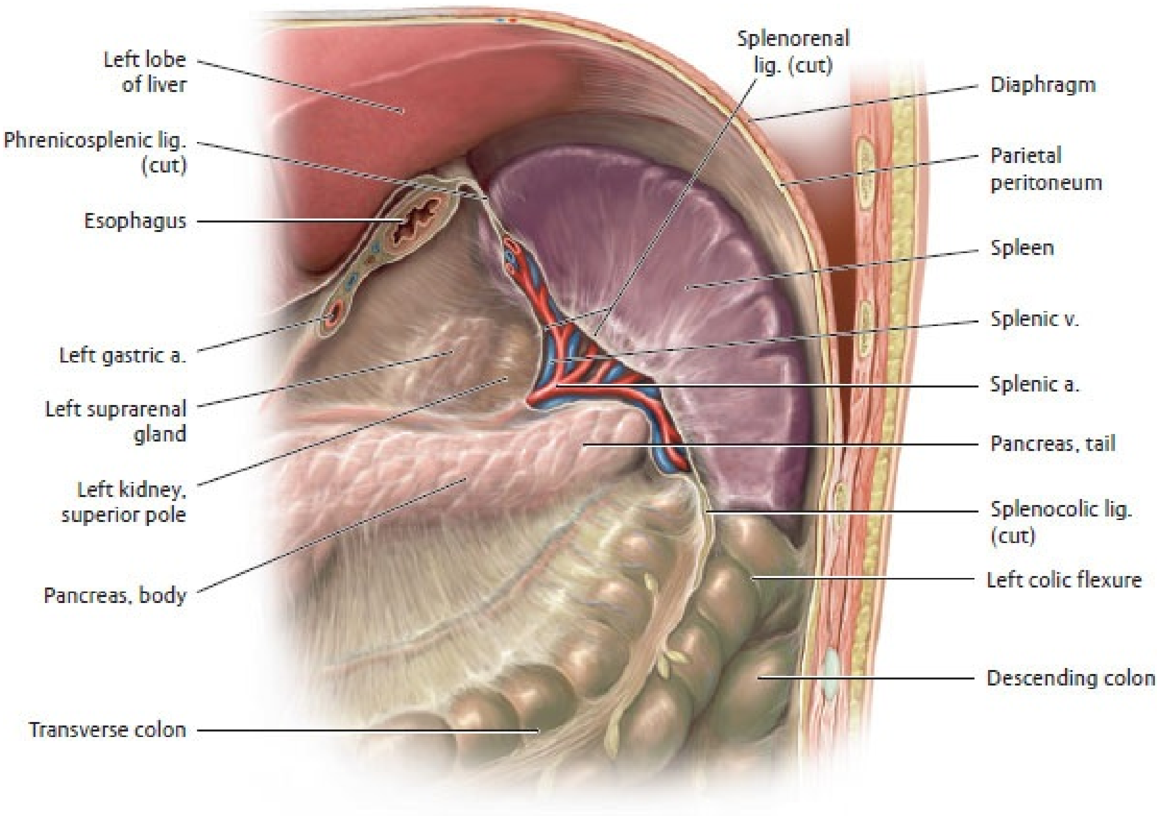

Left lobe of liver
Phrenicosplenic lig. (cut)
Esophagus
Left gastric a.
Left suprarenal gland
Left kidney, superior pole
Pancreas, body
Transverse colon
Splenorenal lig. (cut)
Diaphragm
Parietal peritoneum
Spleen
Splenic v.
Splenic a.
Pancreas, tail
Splenocolic lig. (cut)
Left colic flexure
Descending colon

Fig. 12.27 The spleen in situ: peritoneal relationships

Anterior view into the left upper quadrant (LUQ) with the stomach removed. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 12.14: CLINICAL CORRELATION

SPLENIC TRAUMA AND SPLENECTOMY

Although the spleen appears to be well protected by the lower ribs on the posterior wall, it is the most frequently injured abdom-inal organ. It is particularly vulnerable to rupture from left-sided trauma that fractures the lower ribs. An enlarged spleen (spleno-megaly) that projects below the costal margin may be vulnerable during blunt abdominal trauma that can rupture the thin splenic capsule. Splenic rupture results in severe hemorrhage and may require a total or partial splenectomy. During a total splenectomy the tail of the pancreas is vulnerable to injury where it passes through the splenorenal ligament with the splenic vessels.

BOX 12.15: DEVELOPMENTAL CORRELATION

ACCESSORY SPLEENS

Accessory spleens are small nodules of splenic tissue, usually ~ 1 cm in diameter, that form separately from the main spleen. They are usually located at the splenic hilum near the tail of the pancreas, in the gastrosplenic or splenorenal ligament, in the mesentery, or near the ovary or testis.

12.3 Organs of the Retroperitoneum

Kidneys

The **kidneys** are generally smooth-sided, reddish brown organs ~ 11 cm in length. They are retroperitoneal and lie anterior to the quadratus lumborum muscles on each side of the vertebral column between T12 and L3 vertebral levels (**Figs. 12.28** and **12.29**). The kidneys regulate blood pressure and the ionic balance and water content of the blood; they also eliminate metabolic waste and produce urine.

— The right kidney
  - lies anterior to the 12th rib, slightly lower than the left, because of the presence of the large right lobe of the liver.
  - lies posterior to the right suprarenal gland, liver, descend-ing part of the duodenum, and right colic flexure of the large bowel.

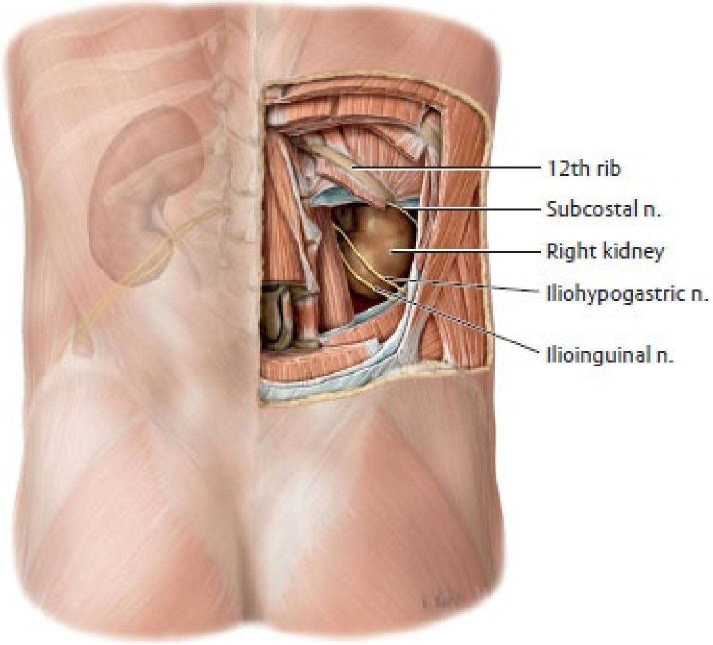


Fig. 12.28 Kidneys insitu

Posterior view with the trunk wall opened. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

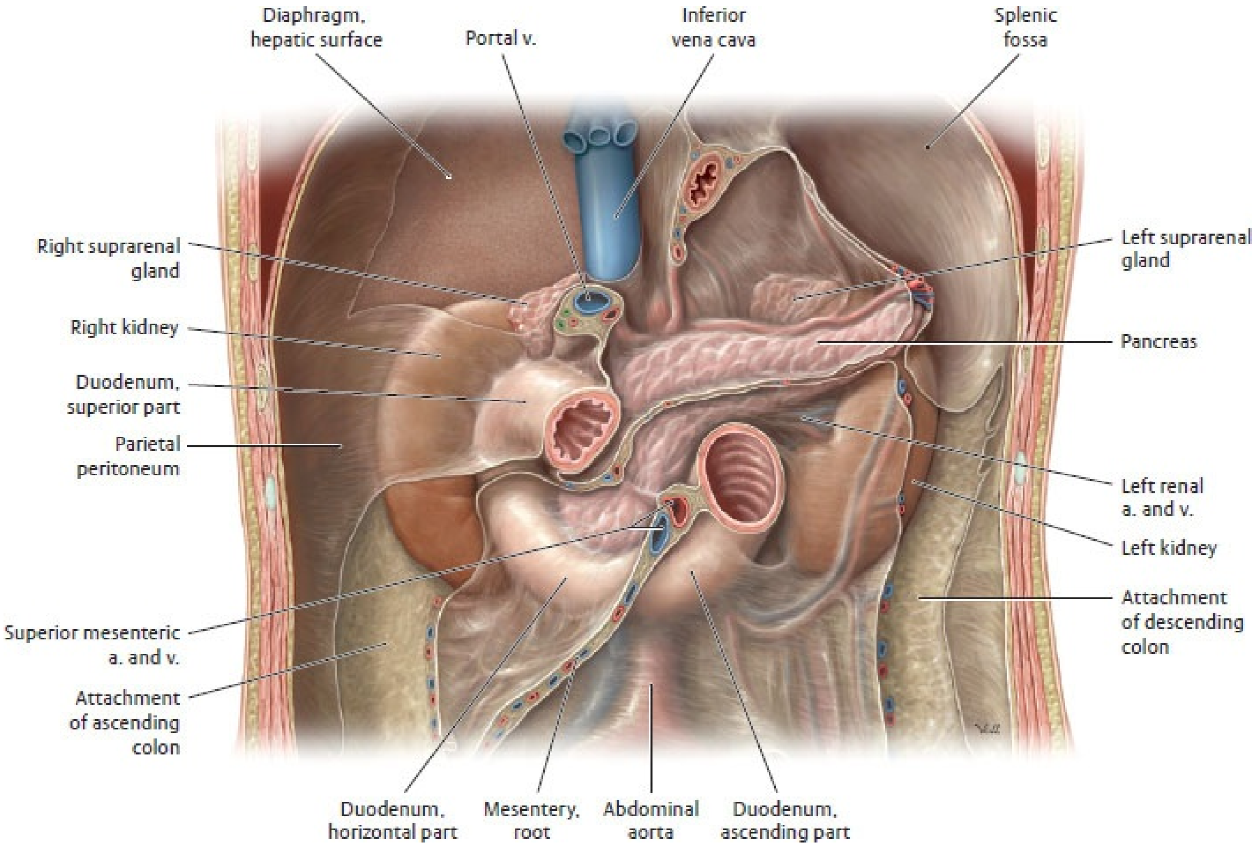
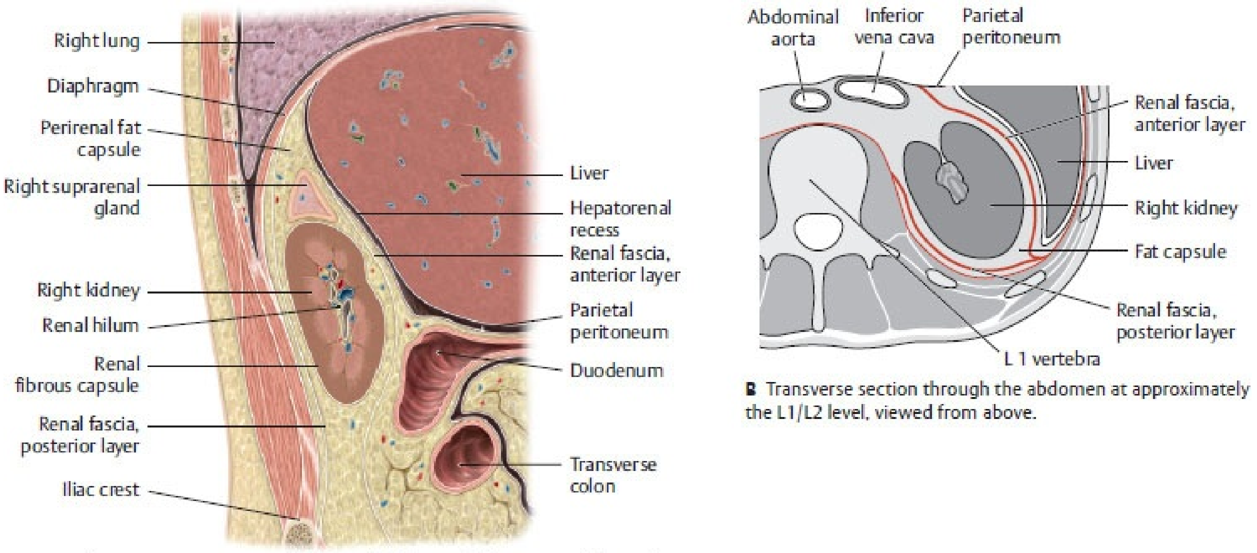

Diaphragm, hepatic surface
Portal v.
Inferior vena cava
Splenic fossa
Right suprarenal gland
Right kidney
Duodenum, superior part
Parietal peritoneum
Superior mesenteric a. and v.
Attachment of ascending colon
Left suprarenal gland
Pancreas
Left renal a. and v.
Left kidney
Attachment of descending colon
Duodenum, horizontal part
Mesentery, root
Abdominal aorta
Duodenum, ascending part

Fig. 12.29 Kidneys and suprarenal glands in the retroperitoneum

Anterior view. Both the kidneys and suprarenal glands are retroperitoneal. *Removed:* Intraperitoneal organs, along with portions of the ascending and descending colon. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIrenal artery, and renalEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- The left kidney
  - lies anterior to ribs 11 and 12.
  - lies posterior to the left suprarenal gland, spleen, tail of the pancreas, and left colic flexure.
- A **renal** (Gerota's) **fascia** surrounds each kidney and its asso-ciated suprarenal gland, renal vessels, ureter, and capsule of perirenal fat **(Fig. 12.30)**. Pararenal fat lies outside this space and is thickest posteriorly.
- Deep to the renal fascia, a thin, fibrous **renal capsule** com-pletely invests each kidney **(Fig. 12.31A)**.
- The lateral edge of the kidney is smooth and concave; the medial border has a vertical hilum that is pierced by the renal vein, renal artery, and renal pelvis. The hilum expands within the kidney as the **renal sinus**.


Right lung
Diaphragm
Perirenal fat capsule
Right suprarenal gland
Right kidney
Renal hilum
Renal fibrous capsule
Renal fascia, posterior layer
Iliac crest
Liver
Hepatorenal recess
Renal fascia, anterior layer
Parietal peritoneum
Duodenum
Transverse colon
Abdominal aorta
Inferior vena cava
Parietal peritoneum
Renal fascia, anterior layer
Liver
Right kidney
Fat capsule
Renal fascia, posterior layer
L 1 vertebra

A Sagittal section at approximately the level of the renal hilum, viewed from the right side.

B Transverse section through the abdomen at approximately the L1/L2 level, viewed from above.

Fig. 12.30 Right kidney in the renal bed

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

— Internally, the kidney consists of cortical and medullary regions that contain up to 2 million nephrons, the renal functional units (**Fig. 12.30**).
  - The cortex, the outer region, lies deep to the fibrous capsule and extends into the medullary region as **renal columns**.
  - The medulla, the inner region, is arranged in **renal pyramids** with the broad base facing outward and the apex fitting into a cup-shaped **minor calyx**.
  - Up to 11 minor calyces merge to form two or three **major calyces**, which combine to form the **renal pelvis**. At the hilum the renal pelvis narrows to form the ureter.

— A single renal artery, a direct branch of the abdominal aorta at L2, normally supplies each kidney (**Figs. 12.31** and **12.32**).
  - The right renal artery is longer than the left artery and passes posterior to the inferior vena cava.
  - The artery divides near the hilum to supply anterior and posterior segments of the kidney, which are separated by an avascular longitudinal plane (Brodel’s white line).

— A single renal vein from each kidney drains to the inferior vena cava (**Figs. 12.31** and **12.32**).

  - Both renal veins receive a tributary from the ureter, but only the left renal vein receives the left suprarenal and left testicular or ovarian veins. On the right these veins drain directly into the inferior vena cava.
  - The left renal vein is longer than the right vein and passes anterior to the aorta immediately inferior to the origin of the superior mesenteric artery.
  - The longer length of the left renal vein makes the left kidney the preferred choice for organ donation.
- The renal plexus, an extension of the celiac plexus, forms a dense periarterial plexus along the renal arteries (see Section 11.2).
  - Pain from renal disease is referred along the T12–L2 dermatomes to the lumbar and inguinal regions and the upper part of the anterior thigh.

BOX 12.16: CLINICAL CORRELATION

RENAL VEIN ENTRAPMENT

The left renal vein crosses the midline in the narrow angle between the downwardly directed superior mesenteric artery and the abdominal aorta. Pathologic conditions (atherosclerosis, aneurysms) of the arteries or downward pressure on the superior mesenteric artery can compress the renal vein. This is sometimes called the nutcracker syndrome.

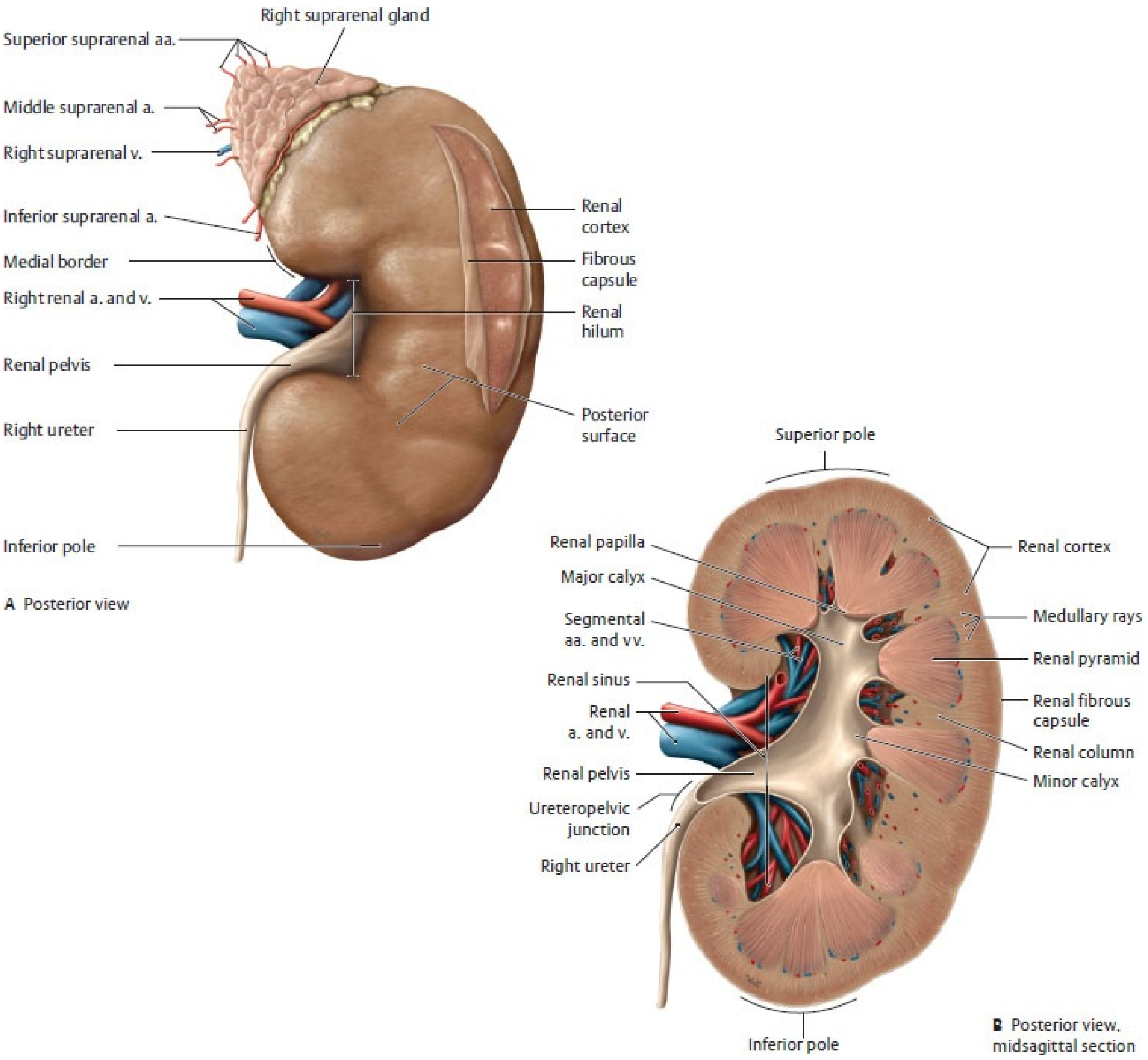

Right suprarenal gland
Superior suprarenal aa.
Middle suprarenal a.
Right suprarenal v.
Inferior suprarenal a.
Medial border
Right renal a. and v.
Renal pelvis
Right ureter
Inferior pole
Renal cortex
Fibrous capsule
Renal hilum
Posterior surface
A Posterior view
Superior pole
Renal papilla
Major calyx
Segmental aa. and vv.
Renal sinus
Renal a. and v.
Renal pelvis
Ureteropelvic junction
Right ureter
Renal cortex
Medullary rays
Renal pyramid
Renal fibrous capsule
Renal column
Minor calyx
Inferior pole
B Posterior view, midsagittal section

Fig. 12.31 Kidney: structure

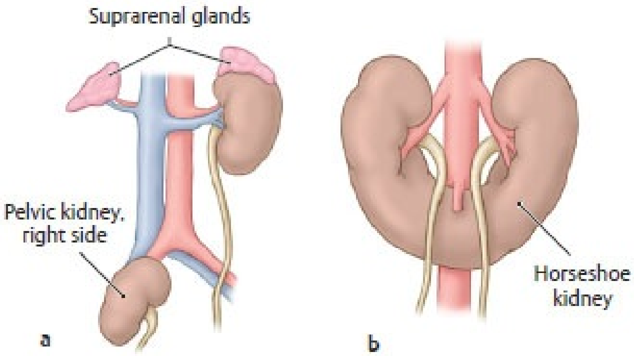
Right kidney with suprarenal gland. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Inferior pole Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 12.17: DEVELOPMENTAL CORRELATION

COMMON RENAL ANOMALIES

Variations in renal vessels are common and usually asymptomatic. Kidneys develop in the pelvis and ascend to their location in the lum-bar region between the 6th and 9th fetal weeks. As they ascend, more superior renal arteries and veins replace the inferior renal ves-sels. In ~ 30% of the population, failure of these inferior vessels to degenerate results in multiple renal arteries and veins.

In some cases, one kidney may fail to ascend (a), resulting in a pelvic kidney. In other cases, the inferior poles of the kidneys may fuse to form a single U-shaped structure (b), although they remain functionally separate. These “horseshoe kidneys” get trapped in their ascent under the inferior mesenteric artery and remain at the L3 or L4 level.



(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Ureters

The **ureters** are muscular tubes, 25 to 30 cm in length, that con-vey urine from the kidneys to the bladder through peristaltic (wavelike) action (**Figs. 12.32** and **12.33**). Both the abdominal and the pelvic parts of the ureters are retroperitoneal along their entire course. The pelvic ureter is discussed further in Chapter 11, Pelvic Viscera.

— Near the hilum of the kidney, the renal pelvis narrows to join with the origin of the ureter at the **ureteropelvic junction (Fig. 12.31)**.

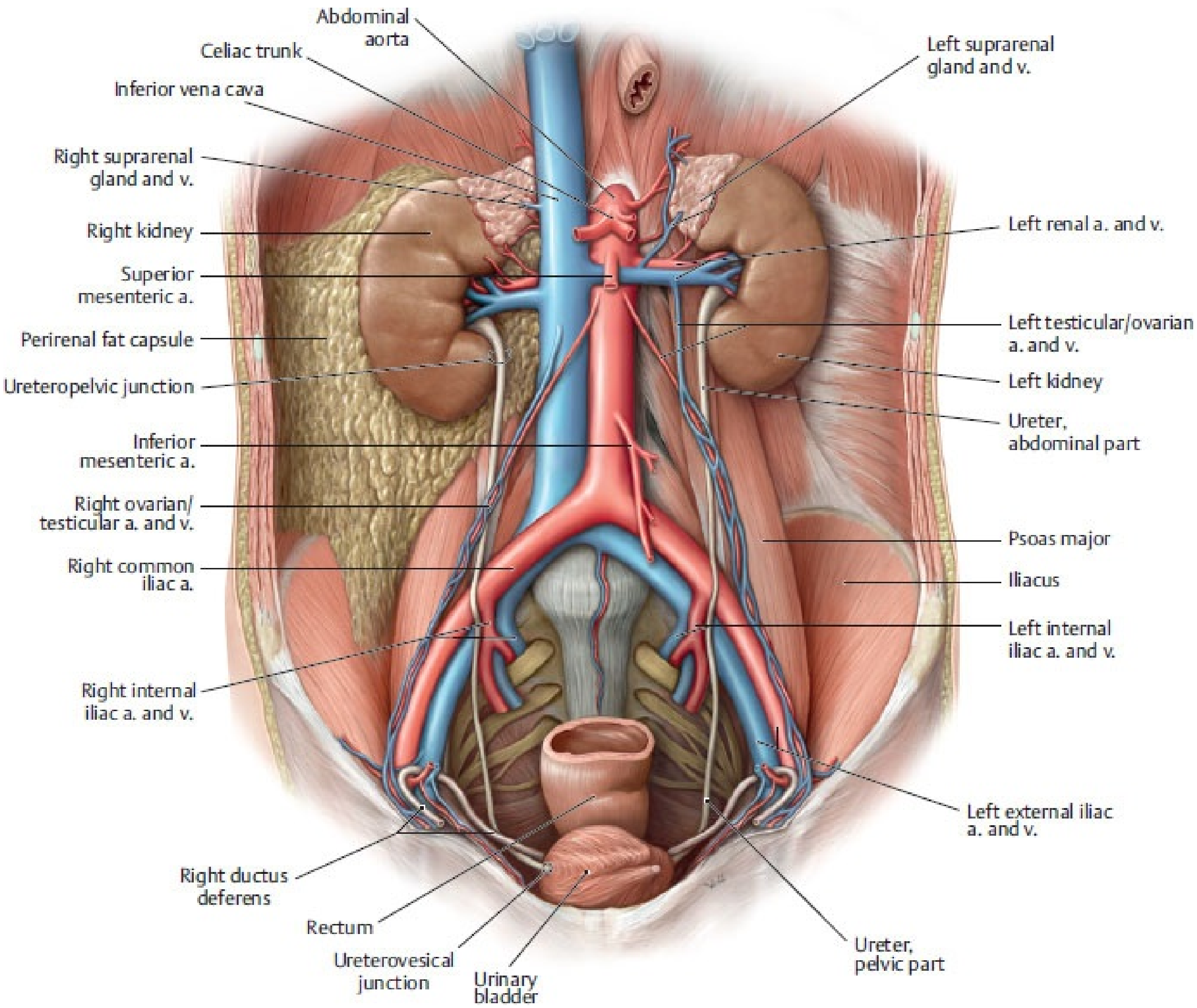

Abdominal aorta
Celiac trunk
Inferior vena cava
Right suprarenal gland and v.
Right kidney
Superior mesenteric a.
Perirenal fat capsule
Ureteropelvic junction
Inferior mesenteric a.
Right ovarian/ testicular a. and v.
Right common iliac a.
Right internal iliac a. and v.
Right ductus deferens
Rectum
Ureterovesical junction
Urinary bladder
Left suprarenal gland and v.
Left renal a. and v.
Left testicular/ovarian a. and v.
Left kidney
Ureter, abdominal part
Psoas major
Iliacus
Left internal iliac a. and v.
Left external iliac a. and v.
Ureter, pelvic part

Fig. 12.32 Ureters in situ

Retroperitoneum of male abdomen, anterior view. *Removed:* Nonurinary organs and rectal stump. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

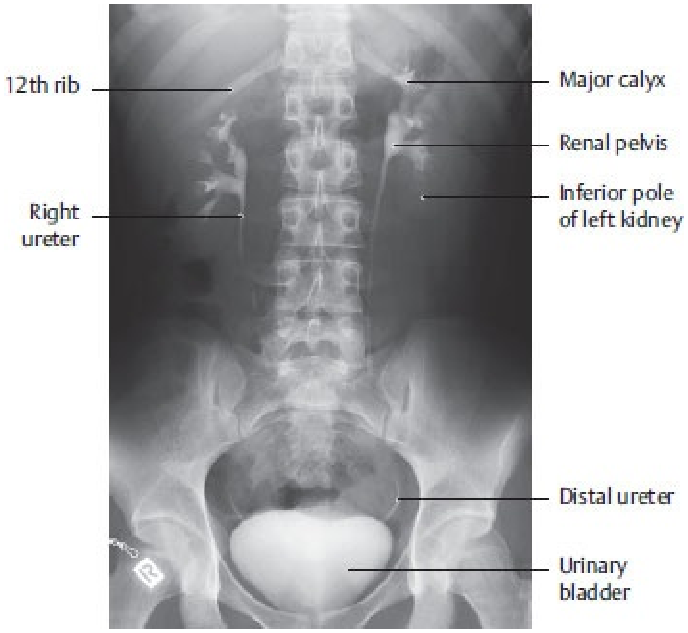


Fig. 12.33 Radiograph of intravenous pyelogram

Anterior view. (From Moeller TB, Reif E. Pocket Atlas of Sectional Anatomy, Vol 2, 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2007.)

- The abdominal part of the ureter descends along the anterior surface of the psoas muscle where it is crossed by the gonadal vessels.
- The ureter crosses over the pelvic brim to enter the pelvis at the bifurcation of the common iliac artery into internal and external iliac branches.
- The pelvic part of the ureter travels anteriorly along the lateral pelvic wall before it enters the urinary bladder at the **ureterovesical junction**.
- Constrictions of the ureter, caused by ureteral narrowing or compression by adjacent structures, can occur near its origin and along its length (**Fig. 12.34**).
- Branches from several arteries form a delicate anastomosis along the length of the ureter (see Section 11.2).
  - In the abdomen, this network of vessels usually includes contributions from the abdominal aorta and the renal, gonadal (testicular or ovarian), and common iliac arteries.
  - Branches of the superior vesical, inferior vesical, and uterine arteries supply the pelvic ureter.
- The veins of the ureter accompany the arteries.
- Contributions from the renal, aortic, and superior hypogastric plexuses innervate the abdominal ureter. The inferior hypo-gastric plexus innervates the pelvic ureter (see Section 10.6).

- Pain from the ureter is relayed along sympathetic routes to spinal cord segments T11–L2 and is referred to the corre-sponding dermatomes of the lower abdominal wall, inguinal region, and medial aspects of the thigh.

BOX 12.18: CLINICAL CORRELATION

CALCULI OF THE KIDNEY AND URETER

Calculi (stones) formed in the urine can become lodged in the renal calyces, renal pelvis, or ureter. Calculi lodged in the ureters distend the ureteric walls and cause intense intermittent pain as peristaltic contractions move the calculi inferiorly. As the calculi move toward the pelvis, pain moves from the lumbar to inguinal regions (T11–L2 dermatomes) and may extend into the scrotum and anterior thigh with branches of the genitofemoral nerve.

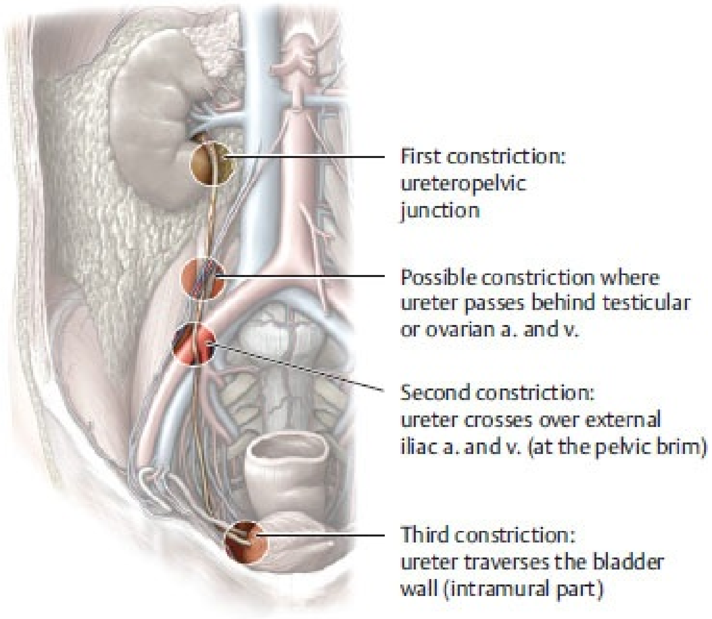

First constriction: ureteropelvic junction
Possible constriction where ureter passes behind testicular or ovarian a. and v.
Second constriction: ureter crosses over external iliac a. and v. (at the pelvic brim)
Third constriction: ureter traverses the bladder wall (intramural part)

Fig.12.34 Anatomic constrictions of the ureter

Right side, anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Suprarenal Glands

The paired **suprarenal** (adrenal) **glands** are located in the retro-peritoneum, where they cap the superior pole of each kidney and lie anterior to the crura of the diaphragm. The suprarenal glands are neuroendocrine glands that respond to stress.

- Perirenal fat and renal fascia surround both glands; a septum of the fascia separates them from the kidney.

- The right suprarenal gland is pyramidal, and the left is crescent shaped **(Figs. 12.35** and **12.36)**.
- The glands are composed of an outer cortex and an inner medulla. Both parts act as endocrine glands (i.e., secrete hormones) but differ from each other developmentally and functionally.
- The **cortex**
  - is derived from mesoderm;
  - is stimulated by hormones such as adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH); and
  - secretes hormones (corticosteroids and androgens), which influence blood pressure and blood volume by regulating sodium and water retention in the kidneys.
- The **medulla**
  - is primarily composed of nervous tissue that is derived from neural crest cells (embryonic cells that migrate from the developing neural tube and give rise to a variety of structures associated with the peripheral nervous system);
  - is stimulated by preganglionic sympathetic fibers from the celiac plexus; and
  - contains **chromaffin cells** that function like sympathetic ganglia and secrete hormones (catecholamines) that increase heart rate, blood pressure, blood flow, and respiration.
- Veins and lymphatic vessels exit at the hilum on the anterior surface, but arteries and nerves access the glands at multiple points.

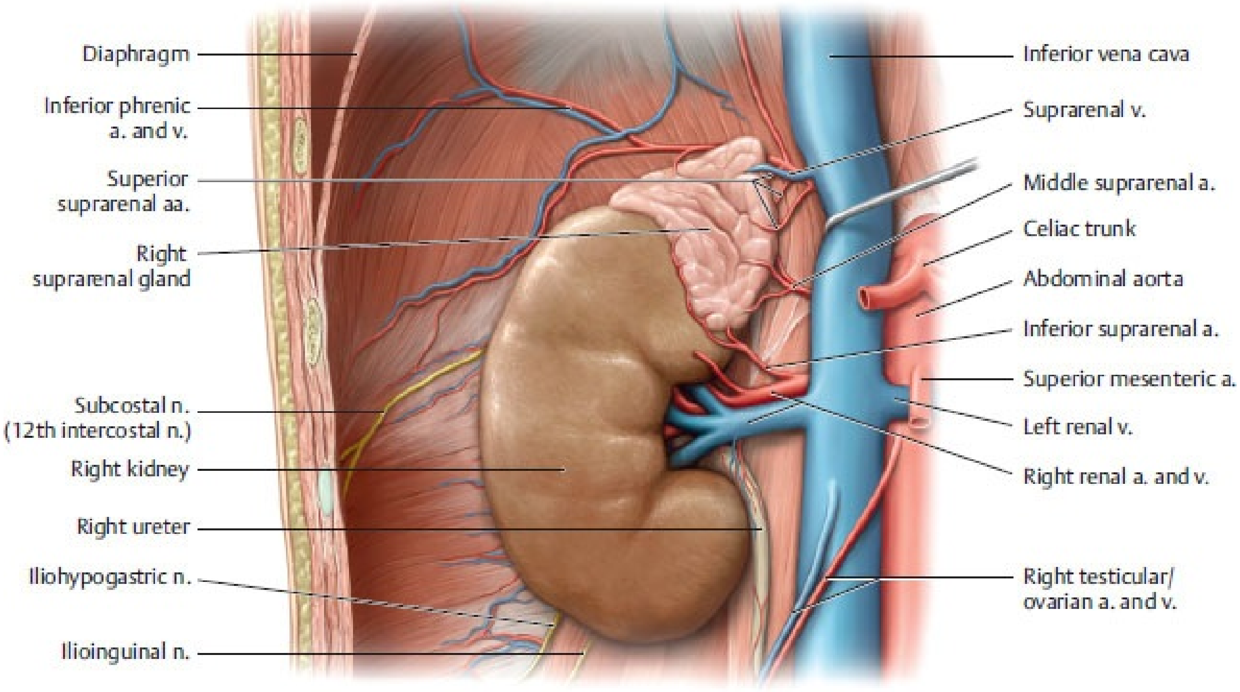

Diaphragm
Inferior phrenic a. and v.
Superior suprarenal aa.
Right suprarenal gland
Subcostal n. (12th intercostal n.)
Right kidney
Right ureter
Iliohypogastric n.
Ilioinguinal n.
Inferior vena cava
Suprarenal v.
Middle suprarenal a.
Celiac trunk
Abdominal aorta
Inferior suprarenal a.
Superior mesenteric a.
Left renal v.
Right renal a. and v.
Right testicular/ ovarian a. and v.

Fig. 12.35 Right kidney and suprarenal gland

Anterior view. *Removed:* Perirenal fat capsule. *Retracted:* Inferior vena cava. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- Each suprarenal gland has multiple superior, middle, and inferior suprarenal arteries, which branch from the inferior phrenic, abdominal aorta, and renal arteries, respectively.
- A single suprarenal vein drains each gland. The right vein drains to the inferior vena cava; the left vein may join with the inferior phrenic vein before draining to the left renal vein.
- Preganglionic sympathetic fibers of the greater splanchnic nerve combine with fibers of the celiac plexus to form the suprarenal plexus, but they do not synapse on the celiac ganglia. These preganglionic fibers, which may be considered homologous with postganglionic sympathetic neurons, terminate directly on the chromaffin cells of the medulla.

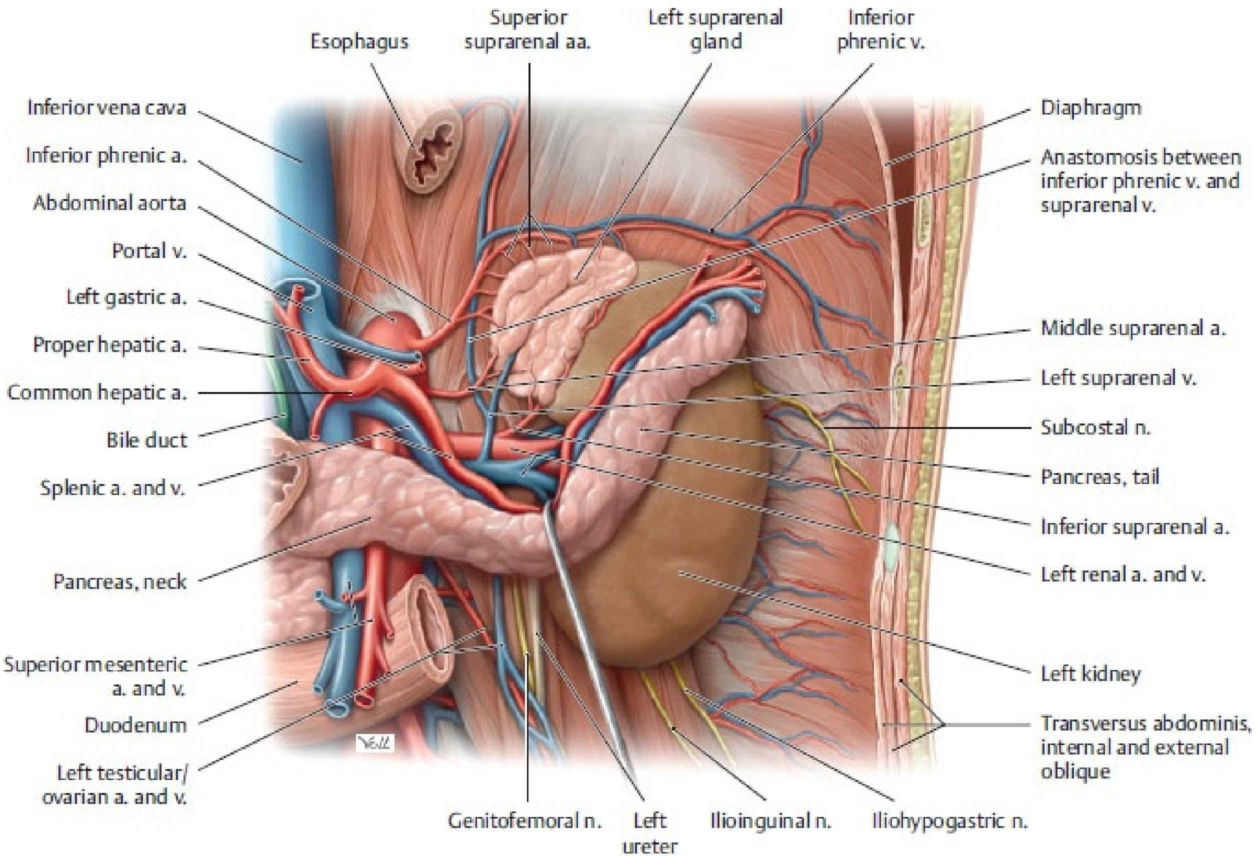

Esophagus
Superior suprarenal aa.
Left suprarenal gland
Inferior phrenic v.
Inferior vena cava
Inferior phrenic a.
Abdominal aorta
Portal v.
Left gastric a.
Proper hepatic a.
Common hepatic a.
Bile duct
Splenic a. and v.
Pancreas, neck
Superior mesenteric a. and v.
Duodenum
Left testicular/ ovarian a. and v.
Diaphragm
Anastomosis between inferior phrenic v. and suprarenal v.
Middle suprarenal a.
Left suprarenal v.
Subcostal n.
Pancreas, tail
Inferior suprarenal a.
Left renal a. and v.
Left kidney
Transversus abdominis, internal and external oblique
Genitofemoral n.
Left ureter
Ilioinguinal n.
Iliohypogastric n.

Fig. 12.36 Left kidney and suprarenal gland

Anterior view. *Removed:* Perirenal fat capsule. *Retracted:* Pancreas. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

13 Clinical Imaging Basics of the Abdomen

In patients with acute abdominal pain, radiographs are a quick and inexpensive first imaging step that give an overview of the bowel gas pattern and can identify abdominal emergencies such as a bowel obstruction or a perforated bowel. However, x-rays usually lack the specificity to identify specific pathology.

Computed tomography (CT) on the other hand shows anatomic detail of all of the internal organs and can usually provide a diag-nosis of most intra-abdominal pathology. The speed and overall ease of obtaining CT scans make it ideal for emergent conditions. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) also shows high detail within the abdomen but is usually reserved for non-emergent situations due to long scanning time. When an abnormality of the biliary system or urinary tract is considered, ultrasound is often the best imaging test. Lack of radiation, easy access and overall low cost of ultrasound make it suitable for both emergent and non -emergent evaluation **(Table 13.1)**. In pediatrics, ultrasound offers additional utility as a first-line imaging tool in the evaluation of children with abdominal pain, specifically for evaluation of the appendix **(Fig. 13.1)**.

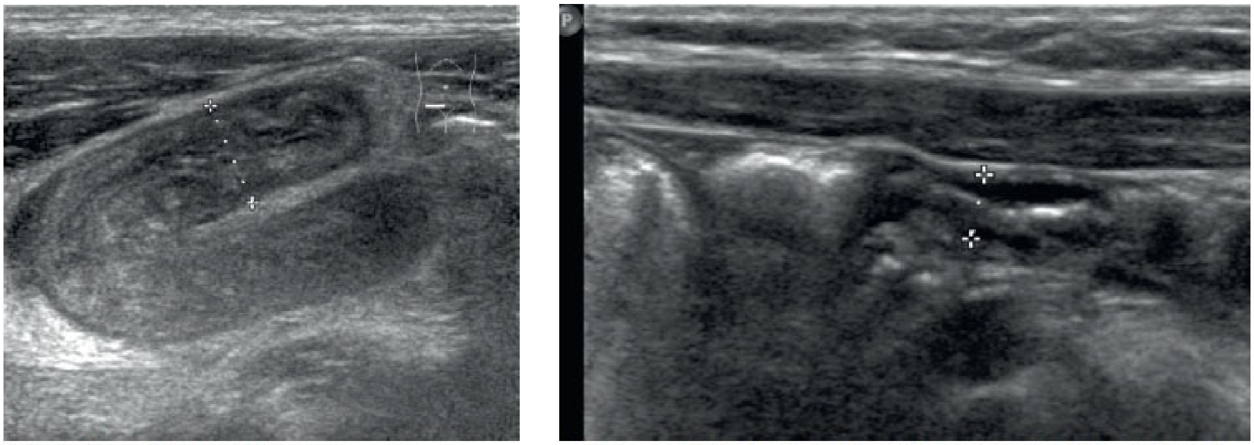
Standard radiographic (x-rays) views of the abdomen include frontal (anteroposterior, AP) views in supine and upright positions **(Fig. 13.2)**. Changes in position should redistribute bowel gas in a normal patient. When evaluating abdominal radiographs, a sys-tematic approach is important and should include

- evaluating the pattern of gas distribution in the bowel,
- gross estimation of organ size and location, assessment for abnormal calcifications (only the bones should be calcified, i.e., white), and
- assessment for abnormal air (outside of the bowel).

An abnormal bowel gas pattern can be a sign of a serious underly-ing condition, and the ability to recognize such patterns is an important skill to develop. All students should become familiar with both normal and abnormal patterns as a speedy diagnosis can be critical (**Figs. 13.2** and **13.3**). Details of abdominal struc-tures can be enhanced by the use of barium (ingested by the patient), used in fluoroscopic studies **(Fig. 13.4)**, and by oral or intravenous contrast used for abdominal CT scans **(Fig. 13.5)**. In MRI studies, intra-abdominal fat can act as a natural “contrast agent” by outlining the organs **(Fig. 13.6)**. Ultrasound often utilizes adjacent structures to better see specific target organs (**Fig. 13.7**).

Table 13.1 Suitability of Imaging Modalities for the Abdomen

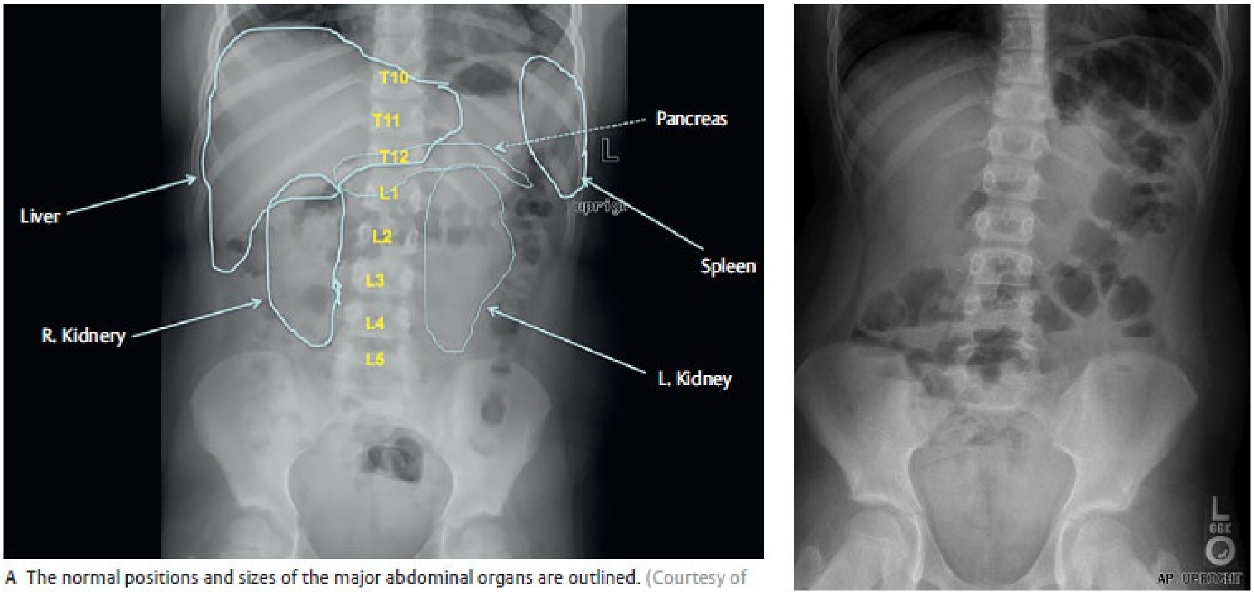
Modality	Clinical Uses
Radiographs	
• X-ray	Abdominal x-ray ("KUB": kidneys, ureter, and bladder) is often the first choice in patients with acute abdominal pain to assess for bowel obstruction and/or bowel perforation. Radiography is readily available and a radiograph can be obtained very quickly. Although many patients will require more advanced imaging and/or other testing, the abdominal radiograph can provide crucial information and lead to therapeutic decisions.
• Fluoroscopy	"Real-time" radiography: x-rays viewed dynamically on a computer screen as the image is obtained; most often used to image the gastrointestinal (GI) tract with the aid of intraluminal contrast material (usually barium). The advent of direct visualization with endoscopy has minimized the use of this modality.
CT (computed tomography)	Provides cross-sectional anatomic detail not possible with plain radiographs. Most accurate imaging for evaluation of solid organs, ducts, and blood vessels.
MRI (magnetic resonance imaging)	Very useful for evaluating solid organs and is becoming increasingly more useful for evaluation of the bowel. The drawback of MRI is the long exam time and expense.
Ultrasound	Usually first line of imaging for evaluation of the biliary system and the kidneys.


A Normal appendix for comparison. (Courtesy of Joseph Makris, MD, Baystate Medical Center.)

B Acute appendicitis. The tubular blind ending structure is a thickened/inflamed appendix. (Courtesy of Joseph Makris, MD, Baystate Health Care.)

Fig. 13.1 Abdominal Ultrasound

Focused ultrasound of the right lower quadrant of the abdomen in children with abdominal pain.



A The normal positions and sizes of the major abdominal organs are outlined. (Courtesy of Joseph Makris, MD, Baystate Medical Center.)

B Upright abdominal radiograph. Note the gas *(blacker area)* in the transverse, descending, and rectosigmoid colon outlining its characteristic haustral pattern. Some gas in the stomach is seen medial to the splenic flexure, but there is no gas in the small bowel. The liver shadow occupies most of the right upper quadrant, although it is difficult to identify its edges. The spleen is hidden by the gas in the splenic flexure of the colon. In this thin patient, there is not enough peritoneal fat to outline the kidneys. (Courtesy of Joseph Makris, MD, Baystate Medical Center.)

Fig. 13.2 Abdominal radiographs

Anterior view.

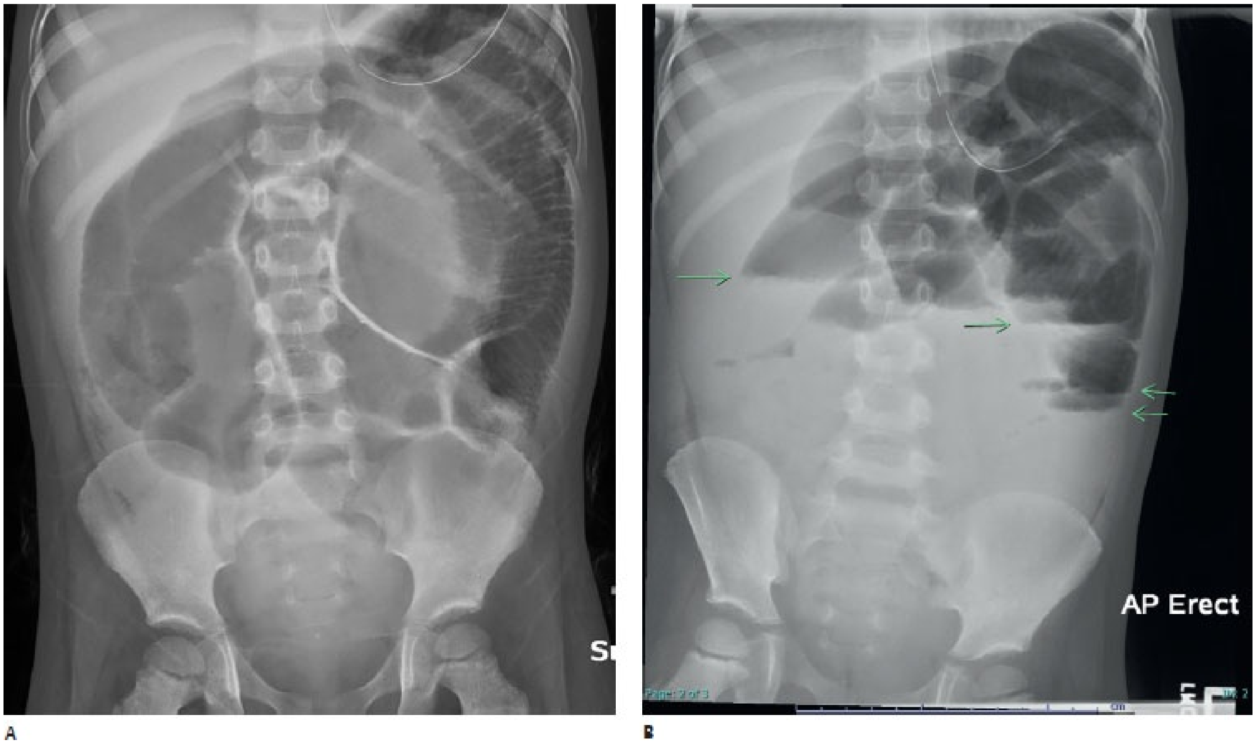


Fig. 13.3 Bowel obstruction in a young child

Supine (**A**) and upright (**B**) radiographs show several loops of gas-filled and dilated bowel. Notice that the abnormal bowel loops form C shapes and appear to be stacked upon each other. Also, note the straight horizontal lines that form in the upright position at the inferior aspect of the gas-filled bowel *(arrows)*. These are air-fluid levels. (Courtesy of Joseph Makris, MD, Baystate Medical Center.)

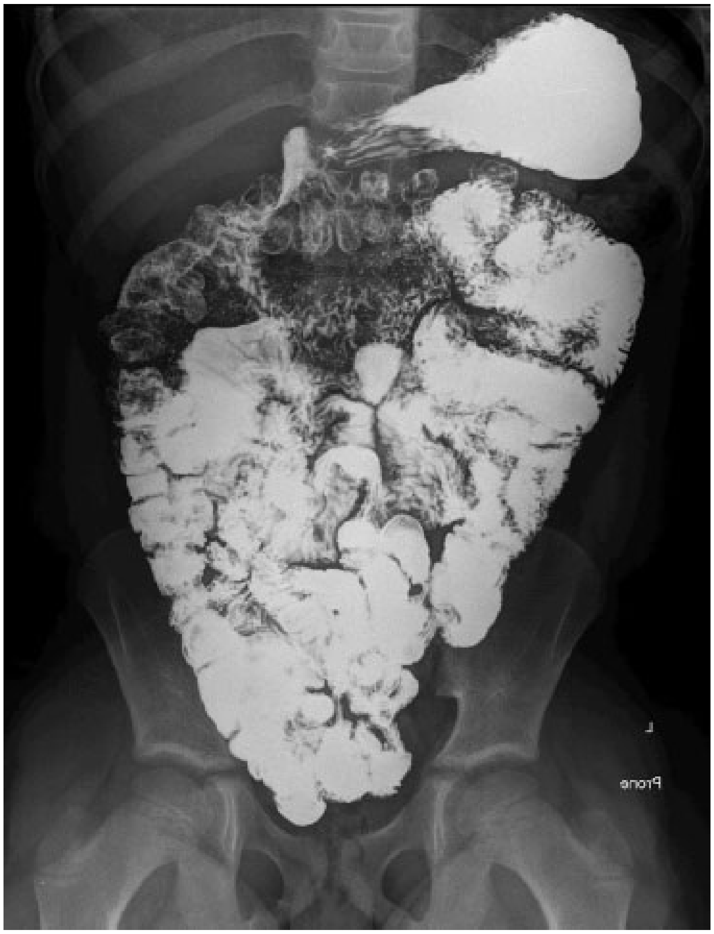


Fig. 13.4 Abdominal radiograph with barium

Anterior view.

The barium has progressed through the bowel, coating its walls, to the level of the ascending colon. Note that the loops of small bowel in the left upper quadrant (jejunum) have many more folds per length of bowel than does the bowel in the lower abdomen (ileum). This beautifully illustrates the physiologic and anatomic properties relating to absorption of nutrients in the proximal and distal small bowel (form follows function). (Courtesy of Joseph Makris, MD, Baystate Medical Center.)

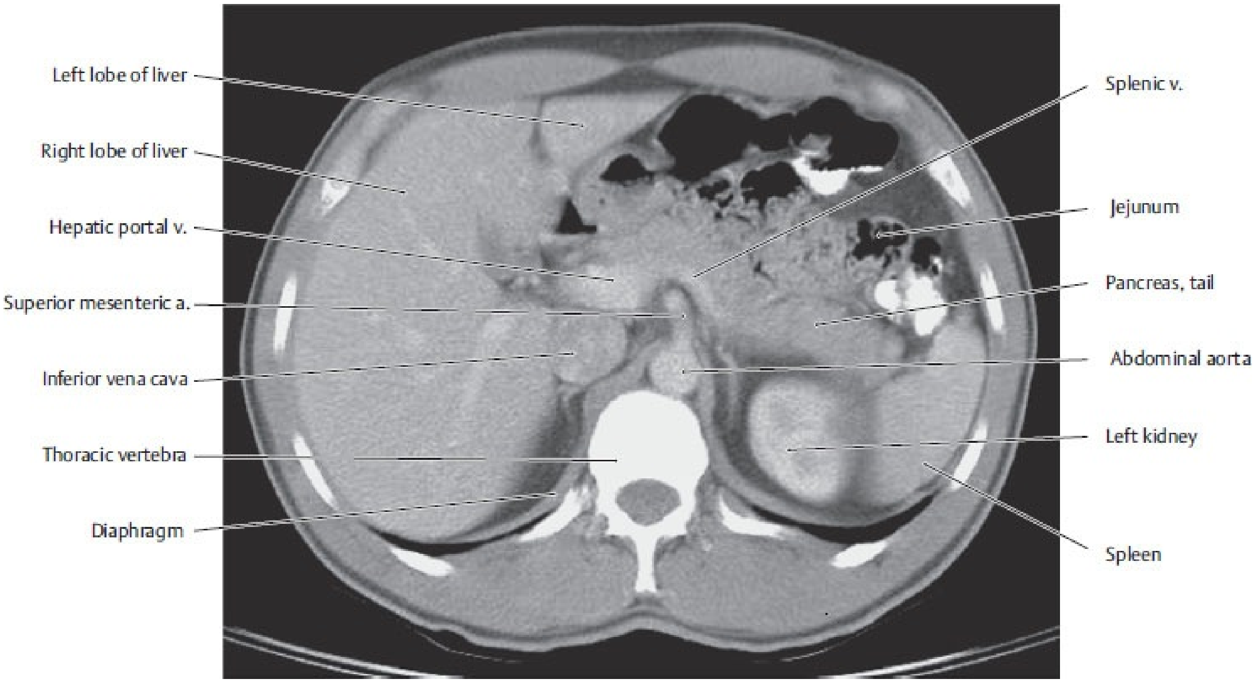

Left lobe of liver
Right lobe of liver
Hepatic portal v.
Superior mesenteric a.
Inferior vena cava
Thoracic vertebra
Diaphragm
Splenic v.
Jejunum
Pancreas, tail
Abdominal aorta
Left kidney
Spleen

Fig. 13.5 CT of the abdomen at the level of the upper kidneys

Inferior view.

Oral contrast is used to highlight the bowel *(bright white)*; intravenous contrast is used to enhance the appearance of vessels and organs. This image demonstrates the cortical phase of enhancement; the renal cortex is whiter than the remainder of the kidneys. The full capability of CT is realized when scrolling through a full set of axial images on a computer screen and cross-referencing the axial images with the full data set of sagittal and coronal reformatted images. (From Moeller TB, Reif E. Pocket Atlas of Sectional Anatomy, Vol 2, 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2007.)

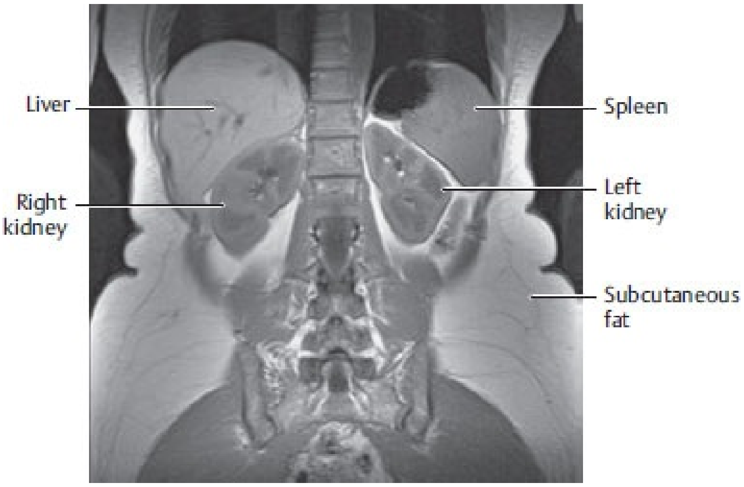

Liver
Right kidney
Spleen
Left kidney
Subcutaneous fat

Fig. 13.6 MRI of the abdomen

Coronal section.

In this image fat is *bright*, air is *black*, and the soft tissues are shades of *gray*. Fluid is *darker gray*. Note the architecture of the normal kidney, with darker pyramids (darker because fluid content is greater there than in the cortex). The kidneys are surrounded by retroperitoneal fat. (From Moeller T, et al. Pocket Atlas of Sectional Anatomy, Vol. II: Thorax, Abdomen, Heart, and Pelvis, 3rd ed. Stuttgart: Thieme; 2007.)

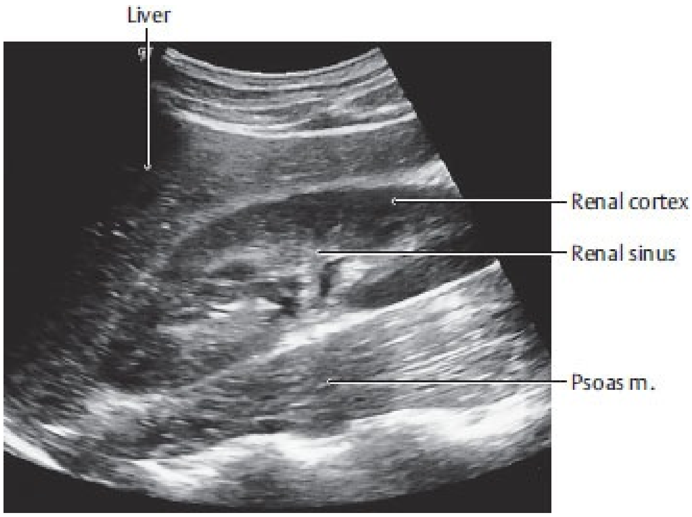


Fig. 13.7 Ultrasound of the right kidney

Sagittal section.

The probe is positioned on the anterior abdominal wall and the liver is used as a “window” to view the kidney. The echogenic *(whiter)* renal sinus is easily seen within the renal cortex. (From Block B. Color Atlas of Ultrasound Anatomy, 2nd ed. New York: Thieme; 2012.)

Unit IV Review Questions: Abdomen

1. An arteriogram performed on one of your patients revealed significant arterial disease (atherosclerosis) of the proximal 3 cm of the superior mesenteric artery, which narrowed the angle between the artery and the aorta. What structure normally crosses the aorta below the artery and is at risk of compression in this patient?

- **A.** Left renal vein
- **B.** Second part of the duodenum
- **C.** Jejunum
- **D.** Transverse colon
- **E.** Pancreas

2. A 12-year-old girl is seen in the emergency department for the suspicion of appendicitis. However, her pain is vague, and she does not complain when you gently press on her abdominal wall in the lower right quadrant. You are undeterred in your diagnosis, however, because you know that pain from an inflamed appendix refers first to another area of the abdomen based on its embryonic origins. Which of the following is true regarding referred pain from the appendix?

- **A.** As part of the embryonic foregut, pain is referred to the epigastric region.
- **B.** As part of the embryonic midgut, pain is referred to the epigastric region.
- **C.** As part of the embryonic midgut, pain is referred to the periumbilical region.
- **D.** As part of the embryonic hindgut, pain is referred to the hypogastric region.
- **E.** As part of the embryonic hindgut, pain is referred to the periumbilical region.

3. A renal abscess can irritate the nerves of the posterior abdominal wall.

This is often referred to the dermatome that runs just above the inguinal ligament from the iliac crest to the pubis. Which nerves transmit this irritation?

A. Lateral femoral cutaneous nerve
B. Ilioinguinal and iliohypogastric nerves
C. Femoral nerve
D. Inferior phrenic nerve
E. T10 intercostal nerve

4. Which of the following is true regarding the renal vessels?

A. The right renal artery passes posterior to the inferior vena cava.
B. Both renal veins receive tributaries from the suprare-nal glands.
C. The left renal vein is shorter than the right renal vein.
D. Renal arteries are the most anterior structure in the renal hilum.
E. Renal arteries arise from the aorta at the L4 vertebral level.

5. During a colectomy on a patient with colon cancer, you ask a medical student to describe characteristics of the descending colon. Her correct answer would include that it

A. is supplied primarily by branches of the superior mesenteric artery
B. receives parasympathetic innervation by the vagus nerve
C. is marked by three teniae coli on its outer surface
D. is primarily retroperitoneal
E. is derived from the embryonic midgut

6. The external oblique muscle and aponeurosis contribute to the formation of all except which of the following structures?

A. Umbilical ring
B. Linea alba
C. Conjoined tendon
D. Inguinal ligament
E. Superficial inguinal ring

7. Which of the following is true regarding the relations of the pancreas?

- **A.** The splenic artery runs along its inferior border.
- **B.** The portal vein forms anterior to the neck and body.
- **C.** The neck crosses the midline slightly superior to the transpyloric plane.
- **D.** The accessory pancreatic duct drains inferiorly to the horizontal part of the duodenum.
- **E.** It lies on the posterior wall of the omental bursa.

8. The artery that supplies blood directly to the pyloric region of the stomach is the

- **A.** left gastric artery
- **B.** short gastric artery
- **C.** right gastric artery
- **D.** left gastro-omental artery
- **E.** superior pancreaticoduodenal artery

9. Inferior to the arcuate line, the posterior layer of the rectus sheath is composed of the

- **A.** aponeurosis of the external oblique muscle
- **B.** aponeurosis of the internal oblique muscle
- **C.** aponeurosis of the transversus abdominis muscle
- **D.** transversalis fascia
- **E.** All of the above

10. One of your elderly patients has lost significant weight and complains of abdominal pain following meals. You know that his inferior mesenteric artery was ligated several years ago as part of an aortic aneurysm repair, and imaging reveals that his superior mesenteric artery is now severely narrowed at its origin. As a result, anastomosing vessels between the celiac trunk and the superior mesenteric artery are enlarged. What vessels are involved in this anastomosis?

A. Marginal artery
B. Pancreaticoduodenal arteries
C. Gastro-omental artery
D. Proper hepatic arteries
E. Left gastric artery

11. A 46-year-old woman is admitted to the emergency department with acute abdominal pain due to peritonitis from a ruptured duodenal ulcer. Imaging reveals an abscess in one of the peritoneal recesses. Which of the following is the lowest space within the peritoneal cavity where fluid accumulation and abscess formation are most likely to occur in a bedridden patient?

A. Omental bursa
B. Infracolic compartment
C. Left paracolic gutter
D. Subphrenic recess
E. Hepatorenal recess

12. A young mother is determined to get into shape following the birth of her first child. She was humiliated in aerobics class when she could no longer do the required sit-ups. Strengthening which of the following muscles would help her accomplish this exercise?

A. External oblique
B. Internal oblique
C. Rectus abdominis
D. Psoas major
E. All of the above

13. Your 45-year-old brother was taken to the emergency department for severe pain that radiated along his lower abdominal wall, inguinal region, and scrotum. Ultrasound revealed a large calculus lodged in his right ureter. From your understanding of ureteric anatomy, select the INCORRECT statement.

A. The calculus is likely to be lodged in one of the ureter’s normal anatomic constrictions, which include the ureterovesical and ureteropelvic junctions.

B. Pain associated with the calculus is relayed to the spinal cord via sympathetic routes.

C. Pain from the ureter is felt along the T11–L2 dermatomes.

D. Ureters convey urine from the kidneys to the bladder through peristaltic action of its muscular walls.

E. Ureteric branches of the renal arteries are the primary blood supply to the pelvic ureter.

14. In patients who have conditions that affect the peritoneal cavity, such as an inflammation due to a perforated gastric ulcer, the abdominal wall muscles, in a “defense” reflex, become rigid and can be encountered as such during physical examination. Which of the following nerves contribute sensory and motor branches to this defense mechanism?

A. Phrenic nerve

B. Vagus nerve

C. Intercostal nerves

D. Lumbar splanchnic nerves

E. Greater splanchnic nerve

15. A pediatric surgeon is performing an appendectomy on a 10-year-old child, but upon entering the abdomen he finds a healthy appendix. With further exploration he finds an inflamed finger of bowel originating from the ileum ~ 2 feet from the ileocecal valve. It is connected to the umbilicus by a fibrous stalk. What embryonic structure failed to degenerate in this patient?

A. Ductus venosus

B. Umbilical vein

C. Umbilical artery

D. Omphalomesenteric duct

E. Urachus

16. One of your patients suffers from multisystem disease as a result of his poor diet and long-term alcoholism. He exhibits many symptoms of chronic portal hypertension, but you suspect that some of his other symptoms have a different underlying cause. Which of the following symptoms are probably not associated with his portal hypertension?

A. Esophageal varices
B. Enlarged spleen
C. Rectal varices
D. Renal calculi
E. Ascites (fluid in the peritoneal cavity)

17. A 6-month-old boy underwent surgery for an indirect inguinal hernia.

The surgeon opened the superficial inguinal ring and located the hernia sac, which protruded through the abdominal wall

A. below the inguinal ligament
B. medial to the inferior epigastric vessels
C. within the inguinal triangle
D. at the deep inguinal ring
E. above the conjoined tendon

18. Which of the following is a characteristic of the suprarenal gland?

A. It's a secondarily intraperitoneal organ.
B. Its cortex is composed of nervous tissue derived from neural crest cells.
C. It's supplied by a single suprarenal artery, which arises from the renal artery.
D. Its medulla is innervated by preganglionic sympa-thetic neurons that synapse directly on the chromaf-fin cells of the medulla.
E. It sits on the superior pole of each kidney but remains outside of the perirenal fat and renal fascia that encompass the kidney.

19. Your neighbor was recently diagnosed with liver cancer. His doctor

explained that, because the primary tumor was in the bare area, it metastasized quickly to the posterior mediastinum and supraclavicular nodes. You recall that, although most lymph from the liver drains toward the celiac nodes and intestinal trunks, the bare area drains to bronchomediastinal trunks in the thorax. What is the bare area?

- **A.** An area on the diaphragmatic surface bounded by coronary and triangular ligaments
- **B.** The area of liver that lines the gallbladder fossa
- **C.** An area on the visceral surface surrounding the porta hepatis
- **D.** The space between the leaflets of the falciform ligament
- **E.** A subperitoneal fibrous capsule that covers the surface of the liver

20. A 58-year-old postal worker complained to his physician that he noticed a swelling in his scrotum that felt similar to "a bag of worms," that was present during the day but disappeared in the morning. On examination you are able to diagnose a varicocele of the pampiniform plexus that drains his left testis. What is the venous drainage of the testes?

- **A.** The right testis drains to the inferior vena cava; the left testis drains to the left common iliac vein.
- **B.** The right testis drains to the inferior vena cava; the left testis drains to the left renal vein.
- **C.** The right testis drains to the right renal vein; the left testis drains to the inferior vena cava.
- **D.** Both testes drain to ipsilateral renal veins.
- **E.** Both testes drain to the inferior vena cava.

21. In portal hypertension portocaval anastomoses allow portal blood to divert into the systemic system. These anastomoses might involve the

- **A.** pancreaticoduodenal vein
- **B.** periumbilical veins
- **C.** renal vein
- **D.** testicular vein
- **E.** None of the above

22. The bile duct is most often formed by the

- **A.** right and left hepatic ducts
- **B.** cystic duct and common hepatic duct

C. main pancreatic duct and common hepatic duct
D. hepatopancreatic duct and cystic duct
E. main pancreatic duct and cystic duct

23. Within the testis, sperm develop in the

A. epididymis
B. tunica albuginea
C. ductus deferens
D. rete testis
E. seminiferous tubules

24. A 34-year-old male with a remote history of abdominal surgery presents to the emergency department with severe abdominal pain, vomiting, and lethargy. What should be the first imaging study performed?

A. CT
B. Ultrasound
C. Chest x-rays
D. Abdominal x-rays
E. MRI

25. A man presented to his physician's office with the com-plaint of severe intermittent pain in the upper right quadrant of his abdomen. You recognize his condition as biliary colic due to gallstones lodged at the entrance to the gallbladder. What valve or sphincter maintains the opening of the cystic duct?

A. Spiral valve
B. Ileocecal valve
C. Pyloric sphincter
D. Sphincter of Oddi
E. Major duodenal papilla

26. You routinely perform vasectomies at the free clinic in your area. You make a small incision at the top of the scrotum to access the spermatic cord. Ligation of which of the cord structures would be most effective in preventing the transmission of sperm?

- **A.** Testicular artery
- **B.** Pampiniform plexus
- **C.** Urachus
- **D.** Ductus deferens
- **E.** Epididymis

27. What anatomic feature of the gallbladder makes it highly suitable for ultrasound evaluation?

- **A.** It lies on the surface of the liver.
- **B.** It stores bile
- **C.** A and B
- **D.** It is pear shaped
- **E.** It is retroperitoneal.

28. Which of the following structures forms as an intraperito-neal organ but becomes secondarily retroperitoneal during later development?

- **A.** Aorta
- **B.** Pancreas
- **C.** Spleen
- **D.** Transverse colon
- **E.** Kidney

29. Which of the following are reflections or remnants of peritoneum?

- **A.** Gerota’s fascia
- **B.** Tunica albuginea
- **C.** Glisson’s capsule
- **D.** Lesser omentum
- **E.** Medial umbilical ligament

30. Which of the following are tributaries of the inferior vena cava?

- **A.** Inferior mesenteric vein
- **B.** Lumbar vein
- **C.** Left gastric vein
- **D.** Left colic vein
- **E.** Superior rectal vein

Answers and Explanations

1. **A.** The left renal vein passes under the superior mesenteric artery as it crosses the aorta and can be compressed in the narrow angle (Section 12.3).

B. The second part of the duodenum lies on the right side of the vertebral column and does not cross the aorta.

C. The jejunum is suspended by the mesentery that contains the superior mesenteric artery.

D. The transverse colon is suspended from the trans-verse mesocolon and lies anterior to the superior mesen-teric artery.

E. The pancreas lies anterior to the superior mesenteric artery.

2. **C.**The appendix is derived from the embryonic midgut, which refers pain to the periumbilical region (Section 12.1).

A. The appendix is derived from the embryonic midgut, not the foregut.

B. Midgut structures refer pain to the periumbilical region; foregut structures refer pain to the epigastric region.

D. The appendix is derived from the embryonic midgut, not the hindgut.

E. Pain from the appendix is referred to the periumbilical region, but it is not part of the embryonic hindgut.

3. **B.** The pain is felt in the L1 dermatome innervated by the ilioinguinal and iliohypogastric nerves (Section 10.3).

A. The lateral femoral cutaneous nerve transmits sensation from the lateral thigh.

C. The femoral nerve transmits sensation from the anterior thigh.

D. The inferior phrenic nerve transmits sensation from the inferior surface of the diaphragm.

E. The T10 intercostal nerve transmits sensation from the T10 dermatome at the level of the umbilicus.

4. **A.** The right renal artery is longer than the left and passes posterior to the inferior vena cava (Section 12.3).

B. The left suprarenal gland drains into the left renal vein, but the right suprarenal gland drains into the inferior vena cava.

C. The left renal vein crosses the aorta anteriorly and is longer than the right renal vein.

D. At the renal hilum the renal veins are anterior to the renal arteries. The renal pelvis is the most posterior structure.

E. Renal arteries arise from the aorta at the L1/L2 vertebral level.

5. **C.** The teniae coli, three longitudinal bands of muscle, are characteristics of the entire large intestine (Section 12.1).

A. Branches of the inferior mesenteric artery supply the descending colon.

B. Pelvic splanchnic nerves provide parasympathetic innervation to the descending colon.

D. The descending colon forms with the gastrointestinal tract as an intraperitoneal organ and loses its mesentery during later development, becoming secondarily retroperitoneal.

E. The descending colon is part of the embryonic hindgut.

6. **C.** The conjoined tendon is formed by the aponeuroses of the internal oblique and transversus abdominis muscles (Section 10.2).

A. The umbilical ring, a remnant of the opening for the umbilical cord, interrupts the linea alba at the L4 vertebral level.

B. The linea alba is a tendinous raphe formed in the midline by the aponeuroses of the three anterior abdomi-nal wall muscles.

D. The lower edge of the external oblique muscle is thickened and curved inward to form the inguinal ligament.

E. The superficial inguinal ring is a defect in the aponeurosis of the external oblique muscles that allows passage of the spermatic cord.

7. **E.** The pancreas lies behind the stomach on the posterior wall of the omental bursa (Section 12.2).

A. The splenic artery runs along the superior border of the pancreas.

B. The portal vein forms by the union of the splenic and superior mesenteric veins posterior to the neck of the pancreas.

C. The neck and body cross the midline slightly below the transpyloric plane at approximately the L2 vertebral level.

D. The accessory pancreatic duct drains into the descending part of the duodenum, superior to the drainage of the main pancreatic duct.

8. **C.** The right gastric artery, a branch of the proper hepatic artery, supplies the pyloric region (Sections 11.2 and 12.1).

A. The left gastric artery supplies blood to the cardiac part of the stomach and the gastroesophageal sphincter.

B. The short gastric arteries supply blood to the fundus of the stomach.

D. The left gastro-omental artery supplies blood to the greater curvature of the stomach and the greater omentum.

E. The superior pancreaticoduodenal artery supplies blood to the descending duodenum and the head of the pancreas.

9. **D.** Inferior to the arcuate line, the posterior wall of the rectus sheath is composed of transversalis fascia (Section 10.2).

A. The external oblique muscle only contributes to the anterior layer of the rectus sheath.

B. The internal oblique muscle forms part of the posterior layer of the rectus sheath above the arcuate line and part of the anterior layer of the rectus sheath below the arcuate line.

C. The transversus abdominis forms part of the anterior layer of the rectus sheath below the arcuate line.

E. Not applicable.

10. **B.** The superior pancreaticoduodenal arteries arise from the gastroduodenal artery (a secondary branch of the celiac trunk). The inferior pancreaticoduodenal arteries arise from the superior mesenteric artery. These vessels anastomose within the head of the pancreas and can enlarge significantly to form an effective collateral pathway (Section 11.2).

A. The marginal artery establishes a collateral circu lation between the superior mesenteric and inferior mesenteric arteries but does not communicate directly with branches of the celiac trunk.

C. The gastro-omental arteries anastomose with the gastroduodenal and splenic arteries but do not communi-cate with the superior mesenteric artery.

D. The proper hepatic artery anastomoses with the left gastric artery through its right gastric branch but it does not communicate directly with the superior mesenteric artery.

E. The left gastric artery anastomoses with the hepatic and splenic arteries but does not communicate directly with the superior mesenteric artery.

11. **E.**The hepatorenal recess, which is continuous with the subphrenic recess, is the lowest and most gravity- dependent space in the peritoneal cavity. Therefore, it is a common site for fluid collection and abscess formation (Section 11.1).

A. Fluid from the omental bursa flows into the hepato-renal recess.

B. The infracolic compartment lies below the transverse mesocolon and is separated into right and left sides by the mesentery of the small intestine. Fluid in this space can drain to the paracolic gutters and the pelvis.

C. Fluid in the left paracolic gutter would likely drain to the pelvis.

D. Fluid in the subphrenic recess drains to the more gravity-dependent hepatorenal recess in the supine patient.

12. **E.** The external oblique, internal oblique, and rectus abdominis muscles flex the trunk when acting bilaterally and help stabilize the pelvis. The psoas major assists in raising the trunk from the supine position (Section

10.2).

A. The external oblique muscles flex the trunk when acting bilaterally and help stabilize the pelvis. B through D are also correct (E).

B. The internal oblique muscles flex the trunk when acting bilaterally and help stabilize the pelvis. A, C, and D are also correct (E).

C. The rectus abdominis flexes the trunk, compresses the abdomen, and stabilizes the pelvis. A, B, and D are also correct (E).

D. The psoas major flexes the hip and assists in raising the trunk from the supine position. A through C are also correct (E).

13. **E.** The pelvic ureter is supplied by superior vesical, inferior vesical and uterine arteries (Section 12.3).

A. Calculi can be lodged in several natural constrictions of the ureter, including the where it passes behind the gonadal vessels or across the common iliac artery, as well as at the ureterovesical and ureteropelvic junctions.

B. Distension of the ureteric walls sends pain signals to the T11–L2 spinal cord via sympathetic nerves.

C. Pain is felt first in the lower lumbar region and moves downward to the inguinal region and medial thigh, the areas that represent the T11–L2 dermatomes.

D. The muscular walls of the ureter function through peristaltic action.

14. **C.** The intercostal nerves are instrumental in the ability to sense, and react to, abdominal pain as they innervate the parietal peritoneum (sensory branches) and the abdominal wall muscles (motor branches). Inflammation of the parietal peritoneum can cause severe pain. The visceral peritoneum is not very sensitive (Section 11.1).

A. The phrenic nerve innervates the diaphragm but does not contribute to the innervation of the abdominal wall muscles.

B. The vagus nerve innervates neither the peritoneum nor the abdominal wall muscles.

D. Lumbar splanchnic nerves carry sympathetic fibers that innervate abdominal viscera.

E. The greater splanchnic nerve carries only sympathetic fibers, which innervate abdominal viscera.

15. **D.** The omphalomesenteric duct (yolk stalk) has failed to regress and remains as an ileal (Meckel's) diverticulum (Section 12.1).

A. The ductus venosus diverts blood in the umbilical vein into the inferior vena cava in the fetus.

B. The remnant of the umbilical vein, the round ligament (ligamentum teres), runs in the inferior edge of the falciform ligament, which connects the liver to the anterior abdominal wall.

C. The medial umbilical ligament on the anterior abdominal wall is the remnant of the umbilical artery.

E. The urachus, the remnant of the fetal allantois, extends superiorly on the anterior abdominal wall from the apex of the bladder to the umbilicus, as the median umbilical ligament.

16. **D.** Renal calculi form in the kidney from concentrated urine and are associated with inflammatory bowel disease and other pathology but are not a symptom of portal hyperten-sion (Section 12.2).

A. Esophageal veins that drain superiorly to the azygos (systemic) system and inferiorly to the portal system form an important portocaval anastomosis. Varices of these veins are a typical symptom of portal hypertension.

B. In portal hypertension, flow through the splenic vein slows, causing the spleen to enlarge abnormally (splenomegaly).

C. Rectal veins drain superiorly to the portal system and inferiorly to the systemic system. In portal hypertension they enlarge (forming varices) to accommodate the greater flow into the systemic system.

E. Ascites is a typical symptom of portal hypertension due to liver disease.

17. **D.** Indirect inguinal hernias pass through the deep inguinal ring, which is lateral to the inferior epigastric vessels and superior to the inguinal ligament (Section 10.4).

A. Inguinal hernias are located above the inguinal ligament; femoral hernias are located below the ligament.

B. Indirect inguinal hernias are located lateral to the inferior epigastric vessels; direct inguinal hernias are located medial to the vessels.

C. Direct inguinal hernias protrude through the inguinal triangle; indirect inguinal hernias protrude through the deep inguinal ring lateral to the triangle.

E. The aponeuroses of the internal oblique and transversus abdominis muscles form the conjoined tendon where they attach to the pubic ramus. This is not a com-mon site for hernias.

18. **D.** The medulla contains chromaffin cells that function as sympathetic ganglia where preganglionic sympathetic fibers from the celiac plexus synapse (Section 12.3).

A. The suprarenal glands develop within the retroperi-toneum and therefore are primary retroperitoneal organs.

B. The cortex is derived from mesoderm; the medulla is derived from neural crest cells.

C. Each suprarenal gland is supplied by multiple arteries arising from the aorta, and inferior phrenic and renal arteries.

E. The suprarenal glands are enclosed by the renal fascia and perirenal fat, separated from the kidney only by a thin septum.

19. **A.** The bare area is an area devoid of peritoneum adjacent to the inferior surface of the diaphragm bounded by the coronary and triangular ligaments (Section 12.2).

B. The fossa of the gallbladder on the visceral surface of the liver is also devoid of peritoneum but is not known as the bare area.

C. Peritoneum covers the surface of the liver around the porta hepatis, the entry site for the structures of the portal triad.

D. The leaflets of the falciform ligament do not contain the bare area, but on the surface of the liver the leaflets separate to form the coronary ligaments, which surround the bare area.

E. The subperitoneal fibrous capsule of the liver is Glisson’s capsule, not the bare area.

20. **B.** The right testicular vein drains into the inferior vena cava, but the left vein drains into the left renal vein. The angle at which the left testicular vein enters the left renal vein increases its susceptibility to obstruction. This is probably the reason why varicoceles are most commonly found on the left side (Section 10.4).

A. Neither testis drains to the common iliac vein.

C. The right testis drains to the inferior vena cava, and the left drains to the left renal vein.

D. Although the left testis drains to the ipsilateral renal vein, the right testis drains directly to the inferior vena cava.

E. Although the right testis drains directly to the inferior vena cava, the left testis drains to the ipsilateral renal vein.

21. **B.** Periumbilical veins anastomose with veins on the anterior abdominal wall and act as a portocaval shunt in severe portal hypertension (Section 11.2).

A. Pancreaticoduodenal veins drain to the portal vein but do not anastomose with veins of the systemic system.

C. Renal veins drain into the inferior vena cava and do not connect to the portal system.

D. Testicular veins drain to the systemic system and do not anastomose with the portal system.

E. Not applicable.

22. **B.** The common hepatic duct of the liver joins the cystic duct of the gallbladder to form the bile duct (Section 12.2).

A. The right and left hepatic ducts join to form the common hepatic duct.

C. The main pancreatic duct joins the common hepatic duct to form the hepatopancreatic ampulla.

D. The cystic duct does not join the hepatopancreatic duct. It joins the common hepatic duct to form the common bile duct.

E. The main pancreatic duct does not join the cystic duct.

23. E. Seminiferous tubules are highly coiled structures within the lobes of the testes where sperm develop (Section 10.4).

A. The epididymis is a site of sperm storage and maturation.

B. The tunica albuginea is the tough connective tissue capsule of the testis.

C. The ductus deferens transports sperm along the spermatic cord to the deep pelvis.

D. The rete testis is a network of ducts through which sperm exit the testis.

24. D. Abdominal x-rays are the easiest and fastest way to get an overview of the bowel gas pattern and assess for bowel obstruction and/or bowel perforation, both intra-abdomi-nal emergencies that may require immediate surgical intervention (Chapter 13).

A. CT may be a secondary choice in this patient.

B. Ultrasound may be a secondary tool if additional clinical signs point to a liver or biliary abnormality.

C. The patient is not having cardiopulmonary symptoms.

E. MRI is generally too time-consuming in the emergent setting.

25. A. The spiral valve in the neck of the gallbladder maintains the opening of the cystic duct (Section 12.2).

B. The ileocecal valve is located between the ileum and cecum.

C. The pyloric sphincter is located between the pylorus of the stomach and the first part of the duodenum.

D. The sphincter of Oddi surrounds the hepatopan creatic ampulla as it enters the descending part of the duodenum at the major duodenal papilla.

E. The major duodenal papilla is an elevation on the medial wall of the descending part of the duodenum where the hepatopancreatic ampulla (formed by the union of the bile duct and pancreatic duct) enters.

26. D. The ductus deferens is the structure within the spermatic cord that transmits sperm (Section 10.4).

A. The testicular artery does not transmit sperm.

B. The pampiniform plexus is a venous plexus that drains the testis.

C. The urachus connects the apex of the bladder to the umbilicus and transmits urine in the fetus.

E. The epididymis is a site for sperm maturation and storage located within the scrotal sac on the posterior surface of the testis.

27. **C.** (A and B) The liver is an excellent acoustic “window” and the gallbladder’s position within a fossa on the visceral surface of the liver, as well as physiologically being filled with liquid bile, make ultrasound ideal for its evaluation (Chapter 13).

D. The pear shape is not a factor.

E. The gallbladder is not retroperitoneal.

28. **B.** Most of the pancreas is secondarily retroperitoneal. The tail of the pancreas lies within the splenorenal ligament and is considered intraperitoneal (Sections 11.1 and 12.2).

A. The abdominal aorta is retroperitoneal and lies on the left side of the vertebral bodies.

C. The spleen is completely intraperitoneal, supported by the gastrosplenic ligament and the splenorenal ligament.

D. The transverse colon is intraperitoneal, supported by its transverse mesocolon.

E. The kidney is a primary retroperitoneal organ, surrounded by perirenal fat and covered by peritoneum only on its anterior surface.

29. **D.** The lesser omentum is a two-layer peritoneal mem-brane that connects the liver to the stomach and duode-num (Section 11.1).

A. Gerota’s fascia is the renal fascia that surrounds the kidney, suprarenal glands, renal vessels, and perirenal fat.

B. The tunica albuginea is the tough outer fibrous membrane that surrounds the testis and invaginates to form the testicular lobes.

C. Glisson’s capsule is a subperitoneal fibrous capsule that surrounds the liver.

E. The medial umbilical ligament is the remnant of the umbilical artery on the anterior abdominal wall.

30. **B.** The four lumbar veins on each side drain the posterior abdominal wall and terminate in the inferior vena cava (Section 11.2).

A. The inferior mesenteric vein terminates either in the superior mesenteric or in the splenic veins, which are tributaries of the portal vein.

C. The left gastric vein drains into the portal vein.

D. The left colic vein drains to the inferior mesenteric vein, which is a tributary of the portal vein.

E. The superior rectal vein drains superiorly to the inferior mesenteric vein, which is a tributary of the portal

Unit V Pelvis and Perineum

14 Overview of the Pelvis and Perineum

- 14.1 General Features
  - 14.1 Divisions of the Pelvis and Perineum
  - 14.1 Clinical Correlation: Pelvic Diameters: True Conjugate, Diagonal Conjugate
- 14.2 The Bony Pelvis
  - 14.2 Clinical Correlation: Laxity of Ligaments and Inceased Mobility During Pregnancy
- 14.3 Pelvic Walls and Floor
  - 14.2 Muscles of the Pelvic Floor
- 14.4 Pelvic Fascia
- 14.5 Pelvic Spaces
- 14.6 Neurovasculature of the Pelvis and Perineum
  - 14.3 Branches of the Internal Iliac Artery
  - 14.4 Lymph Nodes of the Pelvis
  - 14.3 Clinical Correlation: Pudendal Nerve Block
  - 14.4 Clinical Correlation: Pain Transmission During Labor and Delivery

15 Pelvic Viscera

- 15.1 Male Genital Structures
  - 15.1 Clinical Correlation: Prostatectomy
  - 15.2 Clinical Correlation: Prostatic Carcinoma and Hypertrophy
- 15.2 Female Genital Structures
  - 15.3 Clinical Correlation: Ectopic Pregnancy
  - 15.4 Developmental Correlation: Bicornuate Uterus
  - 15.5 Clinical Correlation: Culdocentesis
- 15.3 Pelvic Urinary Organs
  - 15.6 Clinical Correlation: Urethral Rupture in Males
- 15.4 The Rectum
  - 15.7 Clinical Correlation: Rectal Examination

16 The Perineum

- 16.1 Perineal Spaces
- 16.2 Muscles of the Perineum
  - 16.1 Muscles of the Perineum
  - 16.1 Clinical Correlation: Episiotomy
  - 16.2 Clinical Correlation: Prolapse of Pelvic Organs
- 16.3 Male Urogenital Triangle
  - 16.3 Clinical Correlation: Retrograde Ejaculation

16.4 Female Urogenital Triangle

16.5 Anal Triangle

  16.4 Clinical Correlation: Hemorrhoids

  16.5 Clinical Correlation: Anal Fissures

17 Clinical Imaging Basics of the Pelvis and Perineum

  7.1 Suitability of Imaging Modalities for the Pelvis

Review Questions: Pelvis and Perineum

14 Overview of the Pelvis and Perineum

The pelvic region is the area of the trunk between the abdomen and lower limb. It includes the **pelvic cavity,** the bowl-shaped space enclosed by the bony pelvis, and the **perineum,** the diamond-shaped area inferior to the pelvic floor and between the upper aspects of the thighs.

14.1 General Features

— **Table 14.1** provides an overview of the divisions of the pelvis and perineum.

- The bony pelvis, or pelvic girdle, encloses the pelvic cavity. Its superior bony landmark is the iliac crest **(Fig. 14.1)**.
- The **pelvic brim** at the plane of the **pelvic inlet** defines the upper border of the bony **true pelvis** (birth canal) and separates it from the **false pelvis** above. A **pelvic outlet** defines the lower border of the true pelvis **(Fig. 14.2)**.
- The muscular floor of the pelvic cavity, the **pelvic diaphragm,** separates the true pelvis from the perineum, which lies below it **(Fig. 14.3)**.
- The diamond-shaped perineum is subdivided into an anterior **urogenital triangle** and a posterior **anal triangle (Fig. 14.4)**.
- A membranous **perineal membrane** divides the urogenital triangle into two small spaces:
  - an upper **deep pouch**, which includes the anterior recesses of the ischioanal fossae and which is bounded by the perineal membrane inferiorly, the inferior fascia of the pelvic diaphragm superiorly, and the obturator fascia laterally and
  - a lower **superficial pouch** bounded superiorly by the perineal membrane, inferiorly by the superficial perineal fascia, and laterally by the ischiopubic rami (**Fig. 14.3**).

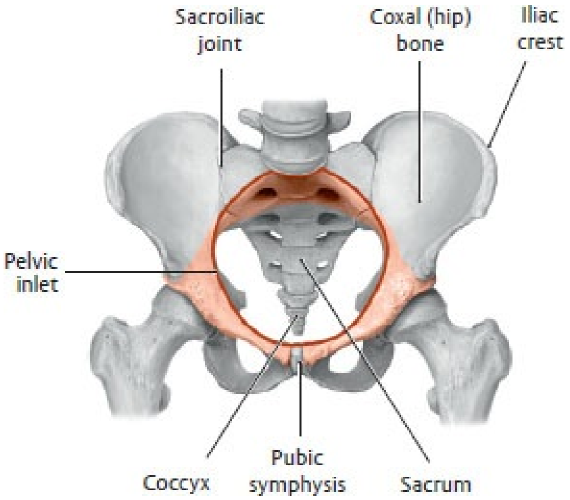
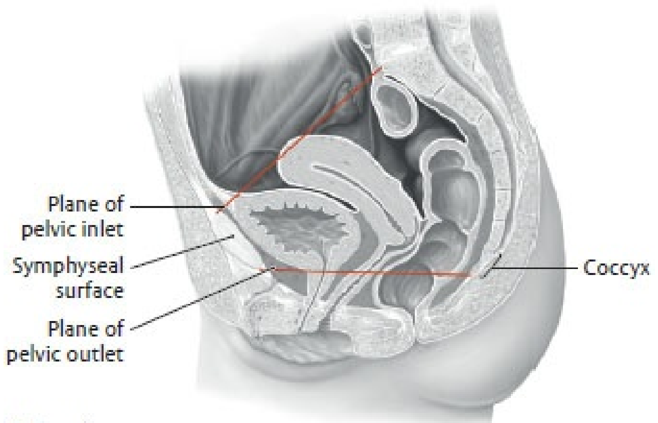


Fig. 14.1 Pelvic girdle

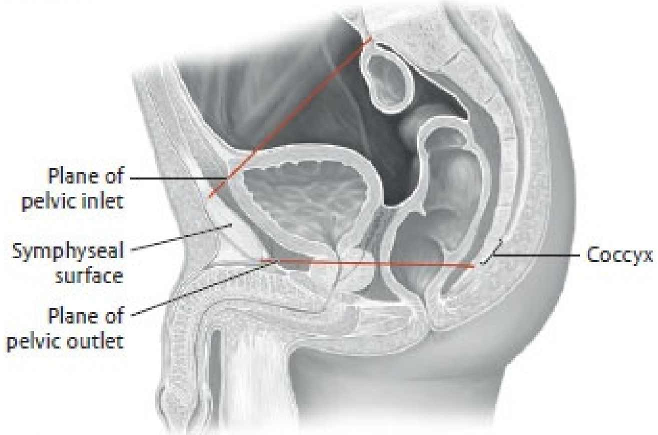
Anterosuperior view. The pelvic girdle consists of the two coxal bones and the sacrum. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

The perineal membrane is not present in the anal triangle (see **Fig. 15.24**).

- The pelvic inlet and pelvic outlet are apertures of the bony pelvis (**Fig. 14.5**).
  - The pelvic inlet (pelvic brim), the superior aperture, is defined by a line that extends from the promontory of the sacrum, along the arcuate line of the ilium and pectineal line of the pubic bone, to the superior border of the pubic symphysis.
  - The pelvic outlet, the inferior aperture, is defined by a line that connects the coccyx, sacrotuberous ligaments, ischial tuberosities, ischiopubic rami, and inferior border of the pubic symphysis.
- The cavities of the true pelvis and the false pelvis are continuous with each other but contain different viscera.
  - The **true pelvis** lies below the pelvic brim and is bounded inferiorly by the muscular pelvic floor. In the adult, this space houses the bladder, rectum, and pelvic genital structures.
  - The **false pelvis** is the lower part of the abdominal cavity that lies above the pelvic brim and is bounded on each side by the iliac fossa. It contains the cecum, appendix, sigmoid colon, and loops of the small intestine.


Plane of pelvic inlet
Symphyseal surface
Plane of pelvic outlet
Coccyx

A Female.


Plane of pelvic inlet
Symphyseal surface
Plane of pelvic outlet
Coccyx

B Male.

Fig. 14.2 True and false pelvis

Midsagittal sections, viewed from the left side. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Table 14.1 Divisions of the Pelvis and Perineum

The levels of the pelvis are determined by bony landmarks (iliac alae and pelvic inlet/brim). The contents of the perineum are separated from the true pelvis by the pelvic diaphragm and two fascial layers.	
Iliac crest	
False pelvis	• Ileum (coils) • Cecum and appendix • Sigmoid colon • Common and external iliac

Pelvis		aa. and vv. • Lumbar plexus (branches)
	Pelvic inlet	
	True pelvis	• Distal ureters • Urinary bladder • Rectum • ♀: vagina, uterus, uterine tubes, and ovaries • ♂: ducti deferens, seminal glands, and prostate • Internal iliac a. and v. and branches • Sacral plexus • Inferior hypogastric plexus
Pelvic diaphragm (levator ani and coccygeus)		
Perineum	**Deep pouch**	• External urethral sphincter • Compressor urethrae and urethrovaginal sphincter (females) • Urethra (membranous part in males) • Transverse perineal m. (males), smooth muscle (female) • Bulbourethral glands (male) • Anterior recess of ischioanal fat pads • Internal pudendal aa. and vv., pudendal nn. and branches
	Perineal membrane	
		• Ischiocavernosus, bulbospongiosus, and

	Superficial pouch	superficial transverse perineal mm. • Urethra (spongy in males) • Clitoris and root of penis • Bulbs of the vestibule • Greater vestibular glands • Internal pudendal a. and v., pudendal n. and branches
	Superficial perineal (Colles') fascia	
	Subcutaneous perineal space	• Fat
Skin		

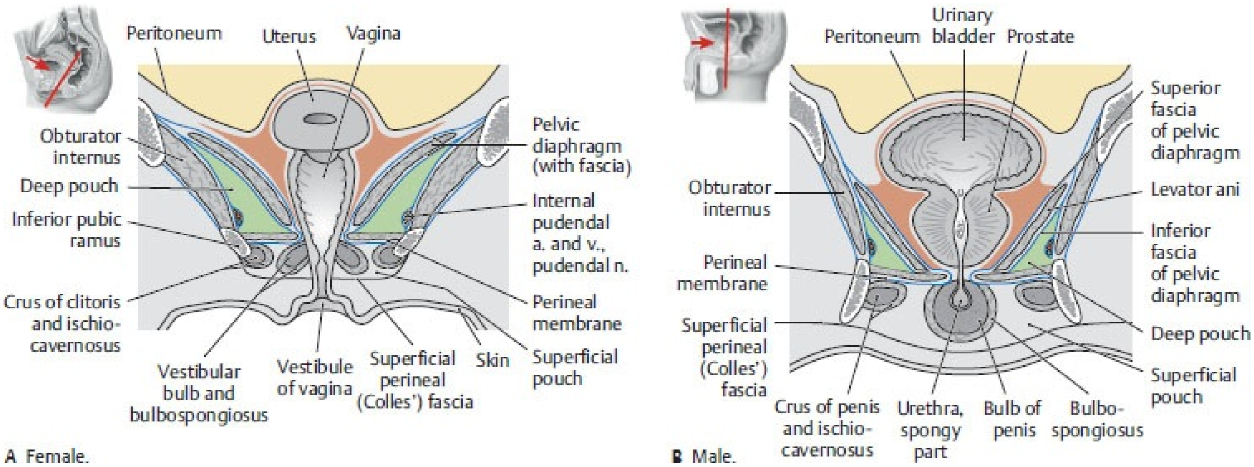
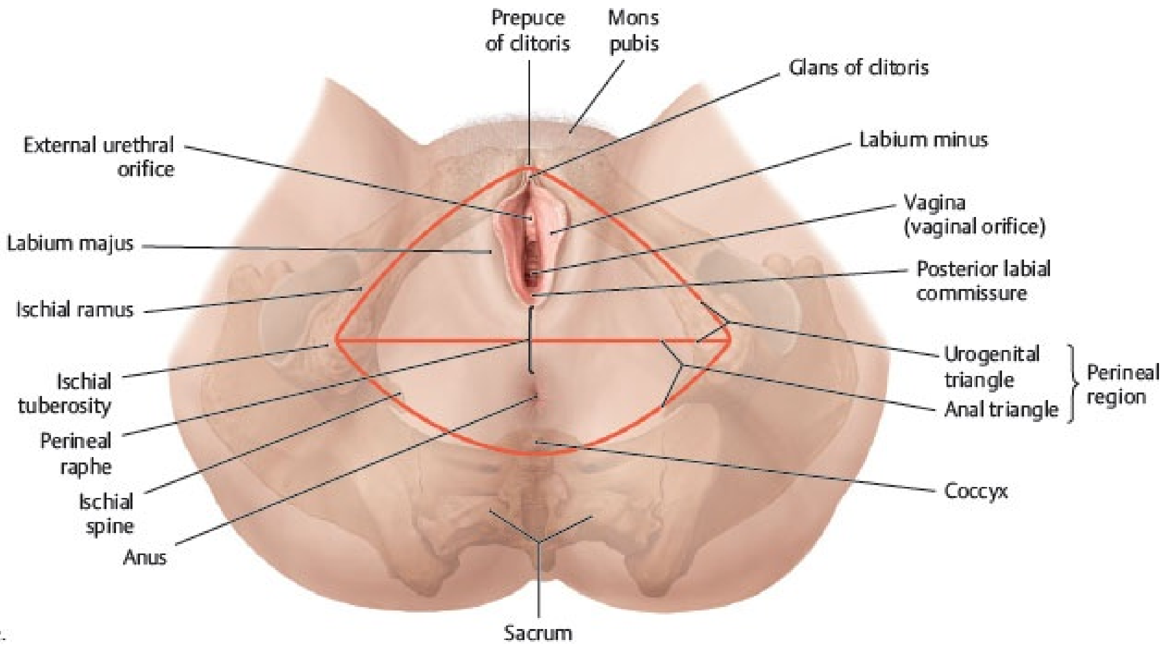

Peritoneum
Uterus
Vagina
Obturator internus
Deep pouch
Inferior pubic ramus
Crus of clitoris and ischio-cavernosus
Vestibular bulb and bulbospongiosus
Vestibule of vagina
Superficial perineal (Colles') fascia
Skin
Pelvic diaphragm (with fascia)
Internal pudendal a. and v., pudendal n.
Perineal membrane
Superficial pouch
A Female.
Urinary bladder
Peritoneum
Prostate
Superior fascia of pelvic diaphragm
Levator ani
Inferior fascia of pelvic diaphragm
Deep pouch
Superficial pouch
Obturator internus
Perineal membrane
Superficial perineal (Colles') fascia
Crus of penis and ischio-cavernosus
Urethra, spongy part
Bulb of penis
Bulbo-spongiosus
B Male.

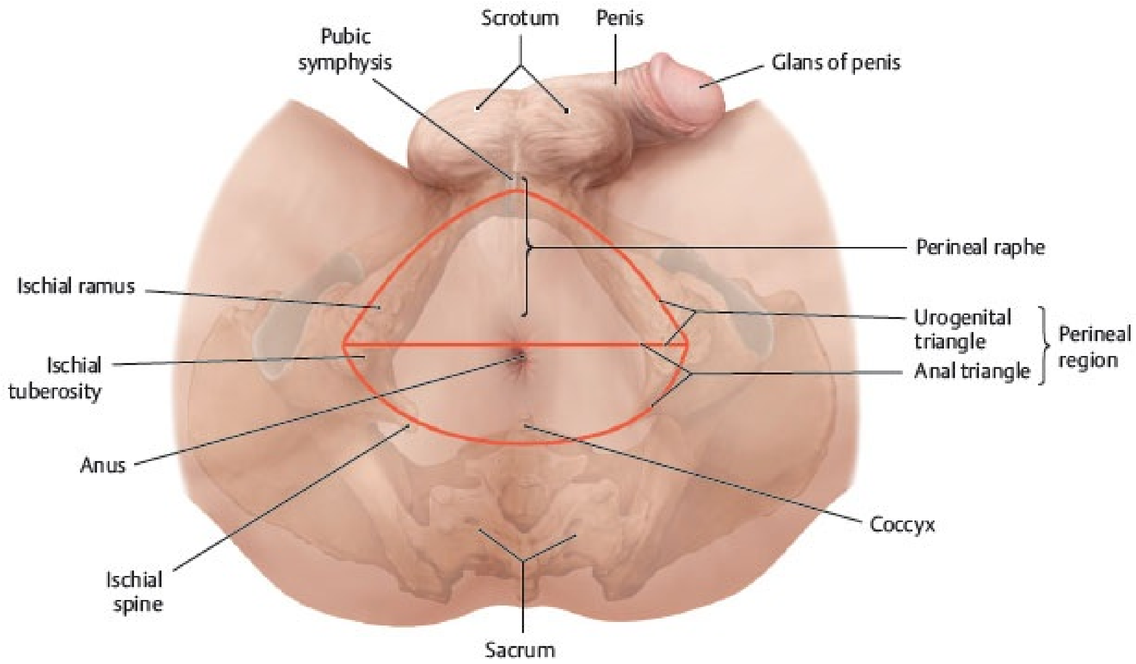
Fig. 14.3 Pelvis and urogenital triangle of the perineum

Coronal section, anterior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)



Prepuce of clitoris
Mons pubis
Glans of clitoris
External urethral orifice
Labium minus
Vagina (vaginal orifice)
Labium majus
Posterior labial commissure
Ischial ramus
Urogenital triangle
Ischial tuberosity
Perineal region
Anal triangle
Perineal raphe
Ischial spine
Coccyx
Anus
Sacrum

A Female.

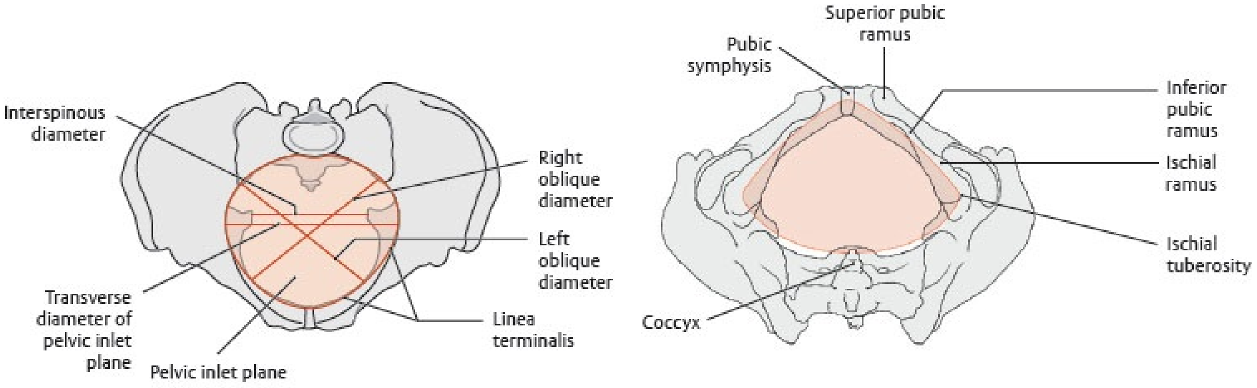


Scrotum
Penis
Pubic symphysis
Glans of penis
Perineal raphe
Ischial ramus
Urogenital triangle
Perineal region
Ischial tuberosity
Anal triangle
Anus
Coccyx
Ischial spine
Sacrum

B Male.

Fig. 14.4 Regions of the perineum

Lithotomy position, caudal (inferior) view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Interspinous diameter
Right oblique diameter
Left oblique diameter
Transverse diameter of pelvic inlet plane
Pelvic inlet plane
Linea terminalis
Superior pubic ramus
Pubic symphysis
Inferior pubic ramus
Ischial ramus
Ischial tuberosity
Coccyx

A Female pelvis, superior view. Pelvic inlet outlined in *red*.

B Female pelvis, inferior view. Pelvic outlet outlined in *red*.

Fig. 14.5 Pelvic inlet and outlet

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

— The peritoneum of the abdominal cavity continues into the pelvic cavity.
  - The peritoneum of the anterior abdominal wall drapes over the bladder, uterus, rectum, and pelvic walls, but it does not extend as far inferiorly as the pelvic floor.
  - Deep pelvic viscera that lie below the peritoneum occupy a **subperitoneal space** that is continuous with the retroperitoneum of the abdomen (see **Fig. 14.3**).

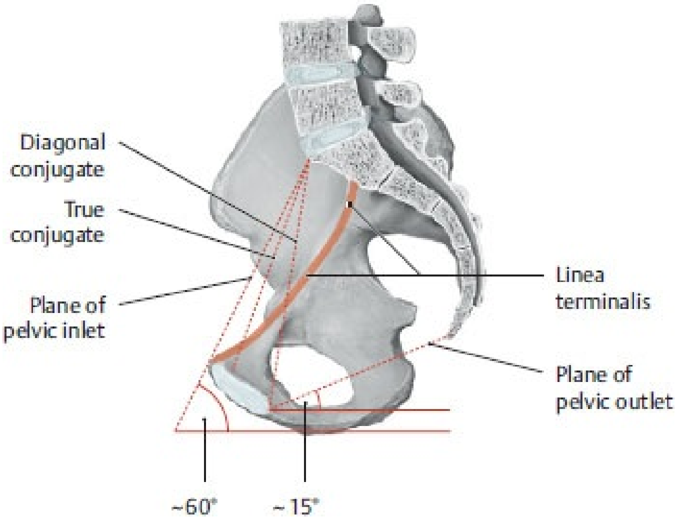
— The perineum lies inferior to the pelvic cavity (see **Fig. 14.4**).
  - The pelvic outlet forms the perimeter of the perineum, the pelvic diaphragm forms its roof, and, inferiorly, perineal skin forms its floor.
  - The urogenital triangle of the perineum contains the external genital structures and openings for the urethra and vagina (in females).
  - The anal triangle of the perineum contains the anal opening and anal canal, surrounded by the external anal sphincter.

— The **ischioanal fossae,** wedge-shaped, fat-filled spaces of the anal triangle, lie on either side of the anal canal and extend anteriorly into a small recess of the urogenital triangle (see **Fig. 15.24**; Section 16.5).

BOX 14.1: CLINICAL CORRELATION

PELVIC DIAMETERS: TRUE CONJUGATE, DIAGONAL CONJUGATE

Pelvic measurements are important obstetric predictors of ease of vaginal delivery. The true (obstetrical) conjugate, the narrowest anteroposterior diameter of the birth canal, is measured from the posterior superior margin of the pubic symphysis to the tip of the sacral promontory (~ 11 cm). Because this distance is difficult to measure accurately, the diagonal conjugate is used to estimate it. This is measured from the lower border of the pubic symphysis to the tip of the sacral promontory (~ 12.5 cm).



Right hemipelvis

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th Edition. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

14.2 The Bony Pelvis

The bony pelvis, or **pelvic girdle,** consists of the sacrum, the coccyx, and the two **coxal (hip) bones.** It protects the pelvic viscera, stabilizes the back, and provides an attachment site for the lower limbs. Pelvic joints create the circular configuration of the pelvic girdle, which is maintained by strong pelvic ligaments (see **Fig. 14.1**).

- The sacrum and coccyx, the lowest segments of the vertebral column, constitute the posterior wall of the pelvic girdle.
- Each hip bone, the lateral parts of the pelvic girdle, is formed by the fusion of three bones: the **ilium, ischium,** and **pubis (Fig. 14.6)**. Features of the hip bones **(Fig. 14.7)** include the following:
  - The **superior** and **inferior pubic rami,** which join anteriorly but diverge laterally around the large **obturator foramen**

- The **ischial spine** posteriorly, which separates the **greater** and **lesser sciatic notches**
- The **ischial ramus,** which fuses with the **inferior pubic ramus** anteriorly and ends as the **ischial tuberosity** posteriorly
- The **iliac wing,** which is concave anteriorly, forming the **iliac fossa.** The superior edge of the iliac wing, the **iliac crest,** ends anteriorly as the **anterior superior iliac spine** and posteriorly as the **posterior superior iliac spine.**
- **An arcuate line** on the internal surface, which bisects the ilium and continues anteriorly to join with the **pectineal line** of the pubis. Both lines form part of the pelvic inlet (also known as the **linea terminalis**).
- A deep, cup-shaped depression, the **acetabulum,** on the lateral surface, which articulates with the femur of the lower limb

— The joints of the pelvic girdle include the following (see Fig. 14.1):

- The paired **sacroiliac joints,** which are synovial joints between the auricular surfaces of the sacrum and the hip bones
- The **pubic symphysis,** an immobile cartilaginous joint in the anterior midline that joins the pubic portions of the hip bones with an intervening fibrocartilaginous disk

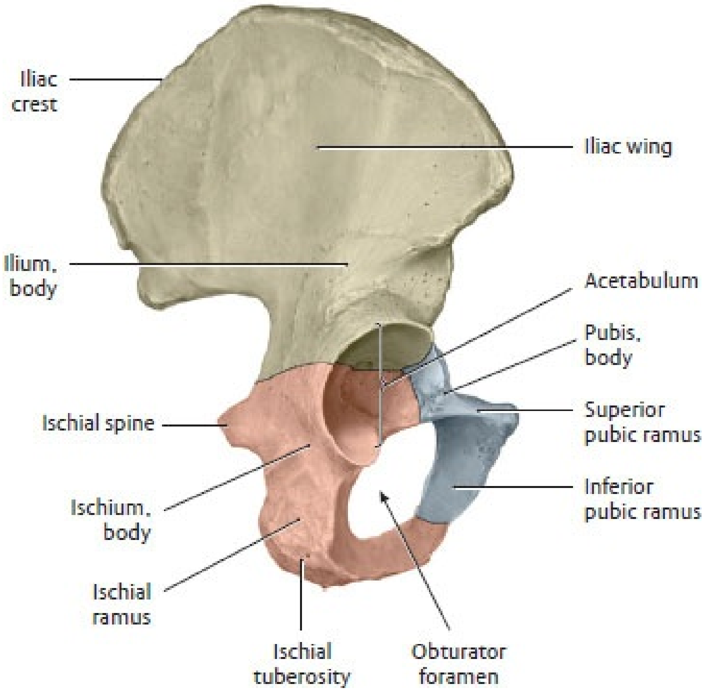
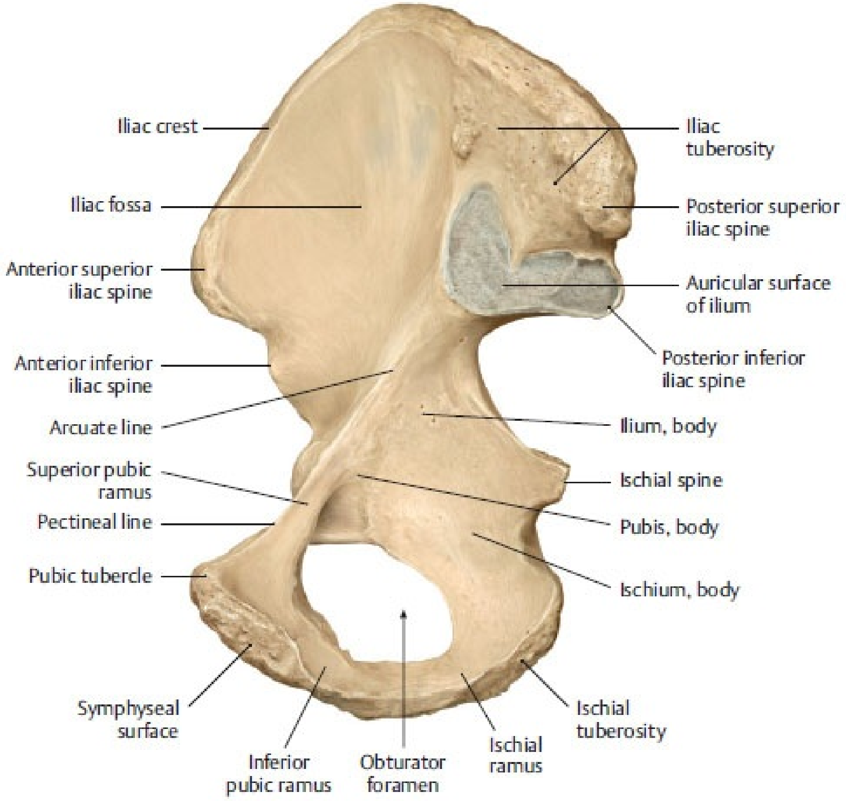
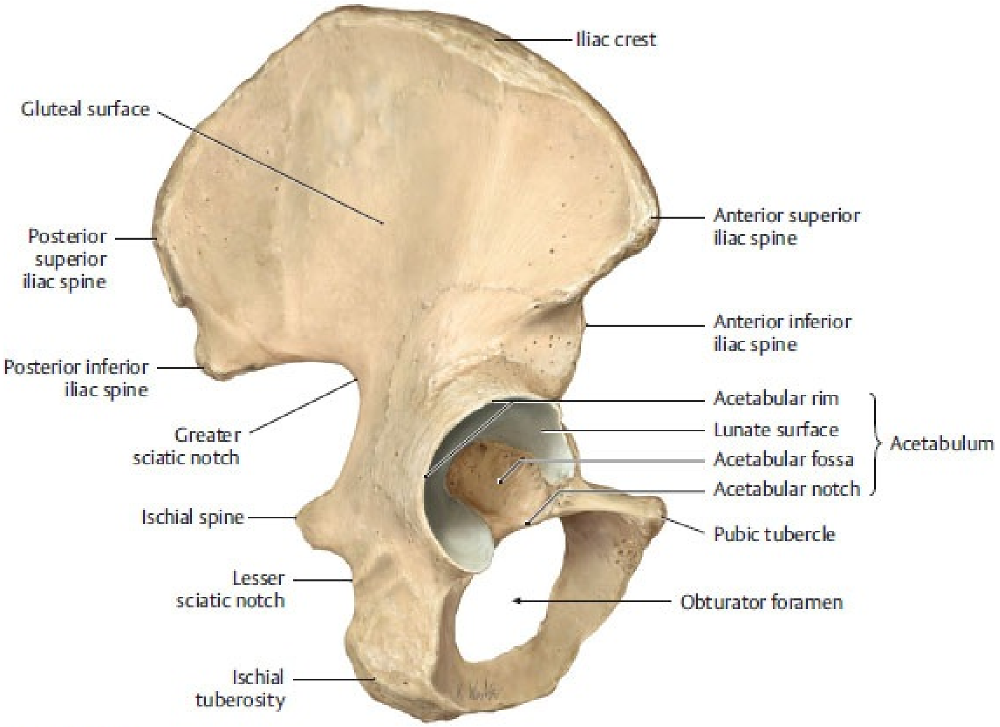

Iliac crest
Iliac wing
Ilium, body
Acetabulum
Pubis, body
Ischial spine
Superior pubic ramus
Ischium, body
Inferior pubic ramus
Ischial ramus
Ischial tuberosity
Obturator foramen

Fig. 14.6 Triradiate cartilage of the coxal bone

Right coxal bone, lateral view. The coxal bone consists of the ilium, ischium, and pubis. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Iliac crest
Iliac fossa
Anterior superior iliac spine
Anterior inferior iliac spine
Arcuate line
Superior pubic ramus
Pectineal line
Pubic tubercle
Symphyseal surface
Inferior pubic ramus
Obturator foramen
Ischial ramus
Ischial tuberosity
Iliac tuberosity
Posterior superior iliac spine
Auricular surface of ilium
Posterior inferior iliac spine
Ilium, body
Ischial spine
Pubis, body
Ischium, body

A Medial view
(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Iliac crest
Gluteal surface
Posterior superior iliac spine
Posterior inferior iliac spine
Greater sciatic notch
Ischial spine
Lesser sciatic notch
Ischial tuberosity
Anterior superior iliac spine
Anterior inferior iliac spine
Acetabular rim
Lunate surface
Acetabular fossa
Acetabular notch
Acetabulum
Pubic tubercle
Obturator foramen

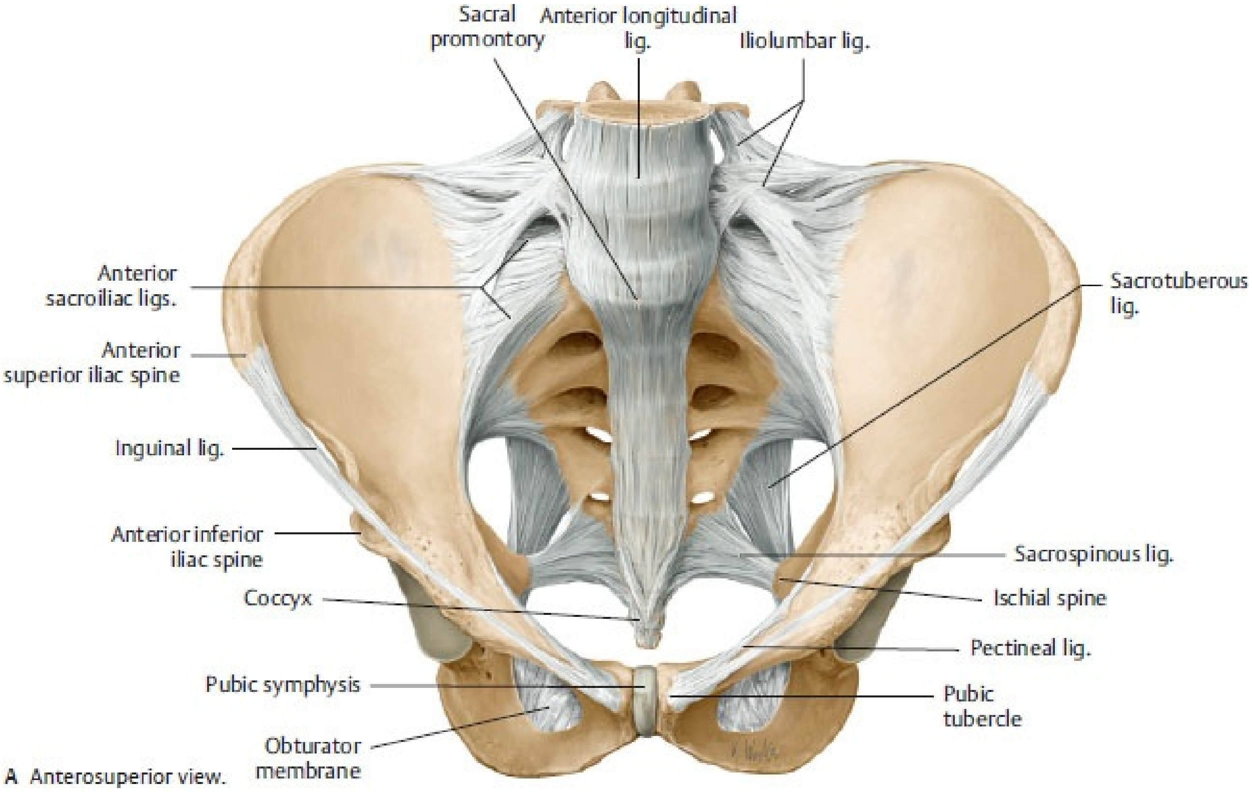
B Lateral view
(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Fig. 14.7 Coxal (hip) bone

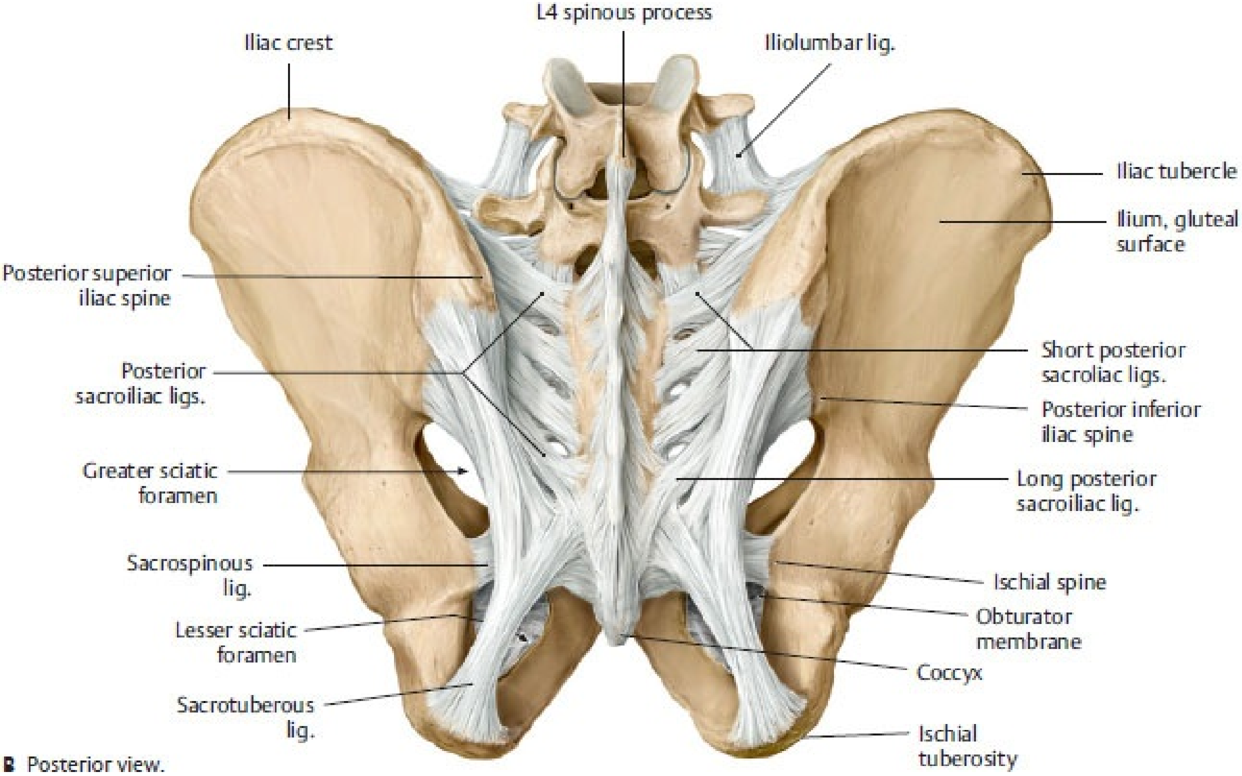
Right coxal bone (male).

— Ligaments that support pelvic joints (**Fig. 14.8**) include the following:
- The strong **anterior, posterior,** and **interosseous sacroiliac ligaments** that support the sacroiliac joints
- The **iliolumbar ligaments** that stabilize the junction between the lumbar spine and sacrum
- Two pairs of posterior ligaments that secure the sacrum and hip bone articulations and resist posterior displacement of the sacrum
  1. The **sacrotuberous ligaments** originate on the sacrum and insert on the ischial tuberosities.
  2. The **sacrospinous ligaments** originate on the sacrum and insert on the ischial spines.

— The pelvic bones and ligaments form openings that allow pelvic vessels, nerves, and muscles to connect to adjacent regions (**Fig. 14.9**).
- The **greater sciatic foramen** is a posterior opening that connects the pelvis to the gluteal region (the buttocks).


Sacral promontory
Anterior longitudinal lig.
Iliolumbar lig.
Anterior sacroiliac ligs.
Sacrotuberous lig.
Anterior superior iliac spine
Inguinal lig.
Anterior inferior iliac spine
Sacrospinous lig.
Ischial spine
Coccyx
Pectineal lig.
Pubic symphysis
Pubic tubercle
Obturator membrane

A Anterosuperior view.


L4 spinous process
Iliac crest
Iliolumbar lig.
Iliac tubercle
Ilium, gluteal surface
Posterior superior iliac spine
Short posterior sacroliac ligs.
Posterior sacroiliac ligs.
Posterior inferior iliac spine
Greater sciatic foramen
Long posterior sacroiliac lig.
Sacrospinous lig.
Ischial spine
Obturator membrane
Lesser sciatic foramen
Coccyx
Sacrotuberous lig.
Ischial tuberosity

B Posterior view.

Fig. 14.8 Ligaments of the pelvis

Male pelvis. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of

Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

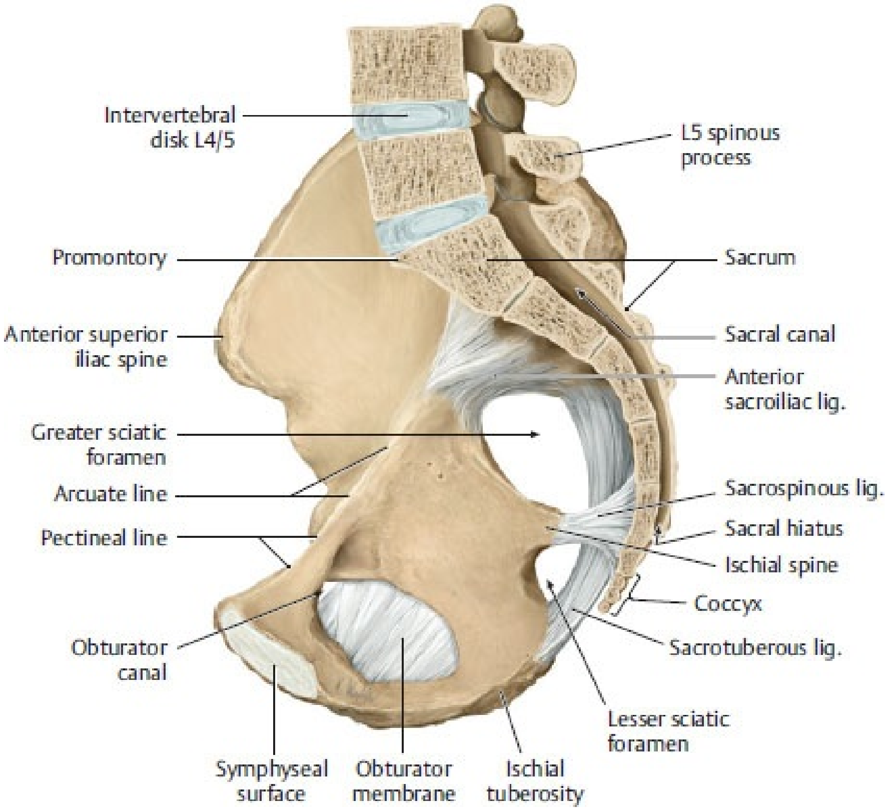

Intervertebral disk L4/5
Promontory
Anterior superior iliac spine
Greater sciatic foramen
Arcuate line
Pectineal line
Obturator canal
L5 spinous process
Sacrum
Sacral canal
Anterior sacroiliac lig.
Sacrospinous lig.
Sacral hiatus
Ischial spine
Coccyx
Sacrotuberous lig.
Lesser sciatic foramen
Symphyseal surface
Obturator membrane
Ischial tuberosity

Fig. 14.9 Pelvic openings

Right half of male pelvis, medial view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- The **lesser sciatic foramen** is a passageway between the sacrotuberous and sacrospinous ligaments that connects the gluteal region and perineum.
- An **obturator membrane** covers most of the bony obturator foramen, leaving a small **obturator canal** through which the obturator nerve and vessels pass into the thigh.

BOX 14.2: CLINICAL CORRELATION

LAXITY OF LIGAMENTS AND INCEASED MOBILITY DURING PREGNANCY

During the final trimester of pregnancy, there is a marked increase in the softness and laxity of the pubic symphysis and sacroiliac ligaments, which is attributed to increased levels of relaxin and other pregnancy hormones. This often results in some pelvic instability and the characteristic waddling gait of the third trimester. Softening of the pelvic ligaments increases the pelvic diameter, which is of benefit as the neonate negotiates the birth canal. Normal ligament integrity returns within a few months following birth.

14.3 Pelvic Walls and Floor (Table 14.2; Fig. 14.10)

— The muscles that line the pelvic walls pass into the gluteal region, where they attach to the femur (thigh bone) and act on the hip joint.

- The **piriformis** lines the posterior wall of the pelvis.
    - It passes from the pelvis to the gluteal region through the greater sciatic foramen.
    - It forms the bed for the sacral plexus and internal iliac vessels on the posterior pelvic wall.
- The **obturator internus,** covered by an overlying **obturator fascia,** lines the sidewall of the pelvis and perineum.
    - Its tendon passes from the perineum to the gluteal region through the lesser sciatic foramen.
    - A thickening of the obturator fascia, the **tendinous arch of the levator ani,** runs from the body of the pubis to the ischial spine.

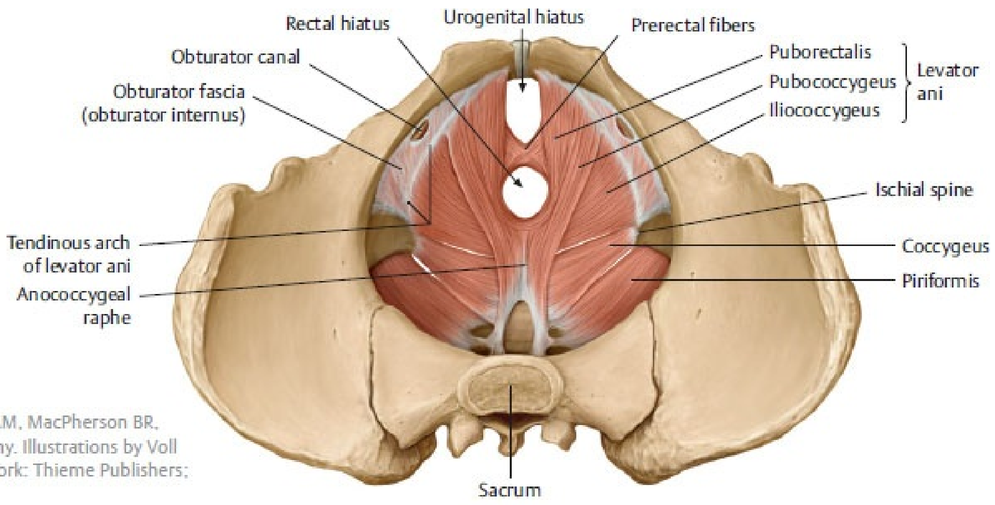
— The funnel-shaped pelvic floor is composed of muscles, collectively known as the **pelvic diaphragm,** that support the pelvic viscera and resist intra-abdominal pressure (i.e., pressure created during coughing, sneezing, forced expiration, defecating, and parturition). The pelvic dia-phragm is composed of the **levator ani** and the **coccygeus muscles.**

- The levator ani forms the largest part of the pelvic floor. The three muscles of the levator ani arise from the superior pubic ramus and the tendinous arch. They insert in the midline on the coccyx and along a tendinous raphe, called the **anococcygeal ligament (levator plate).**
    - The **pubococcygeus** forms the anterior part of the levator ani.
    - The **iliococcygeus** forms the middle part of the levator ani.
    - The **puborectalis** forms a muscular sling that loops around the anorectum. Normal tone of the muscle maintains the anterior angle

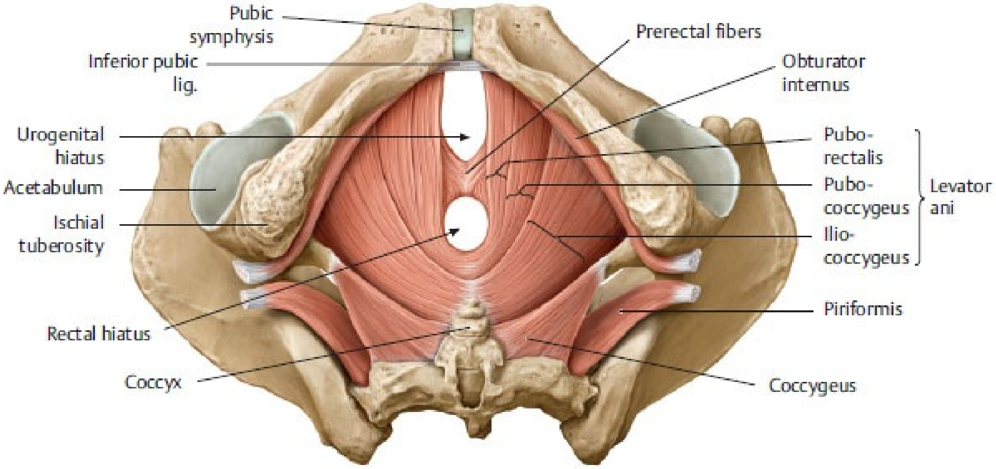
        of the anorectum where it passes through the pelvic diaphragm. The muscle relaxes during defecation.

    - The coccygeus muscle forms the posterior part of the pelvic diaphragm; it attaches to the sacrum and ischial spine and tightly adheres to the sacrospinous ligament along its entire length.

- The **levator** (or **genital) hiatus,** a gap between the puborectalis muscles on either side, allows the passage of the urethra, vagina, and rectum into the perineum.
- The inferior gluteal, superior gluteal, and lateral sacral branches of the internal iliac arteries and the median sacral branch of the abdominal aorta supply most muscles of the pelvic walls and floor (see **Fig. 14.14A**).
- Veins that accompany the arteries and drain the pelvic floor and walls ultimately drain to the internal iliac veins, although the lateral sacral veins may also drain to the internal vertebral venous plexus.


Rectal hiatus
Urogenital hiatus
Prerectal fibers
Obturator canal
Obturator fascia (obturator internus)
Puborectalis
Pubococcygeus
Iliococcygeus
Levator ani
Ischial spine
Tendinous arch of levator ani
Coccygeus
Piriformis
Anococcygeal raphe
Sacrum

A **Superior view.** (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Pubic symphysis
Inferior pubic lig.
Prerectal fibers
Obturator internus
Urogenital hiatus
Acetabulum
Ischial tuberosity
Pubo-rectalis
Pubo-coccygeus
Ilio-coccygeus
Levator ani
Piriformis
Rectal hiatus
Coccyx
Coccygeus

B **Inferior view.** (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

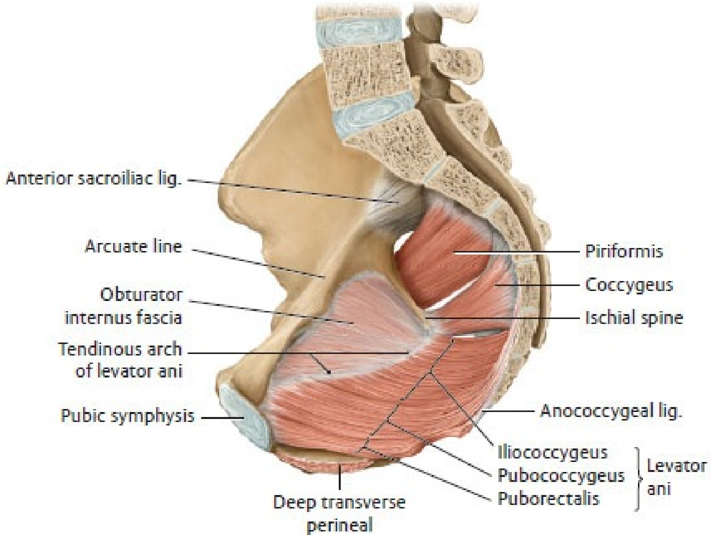
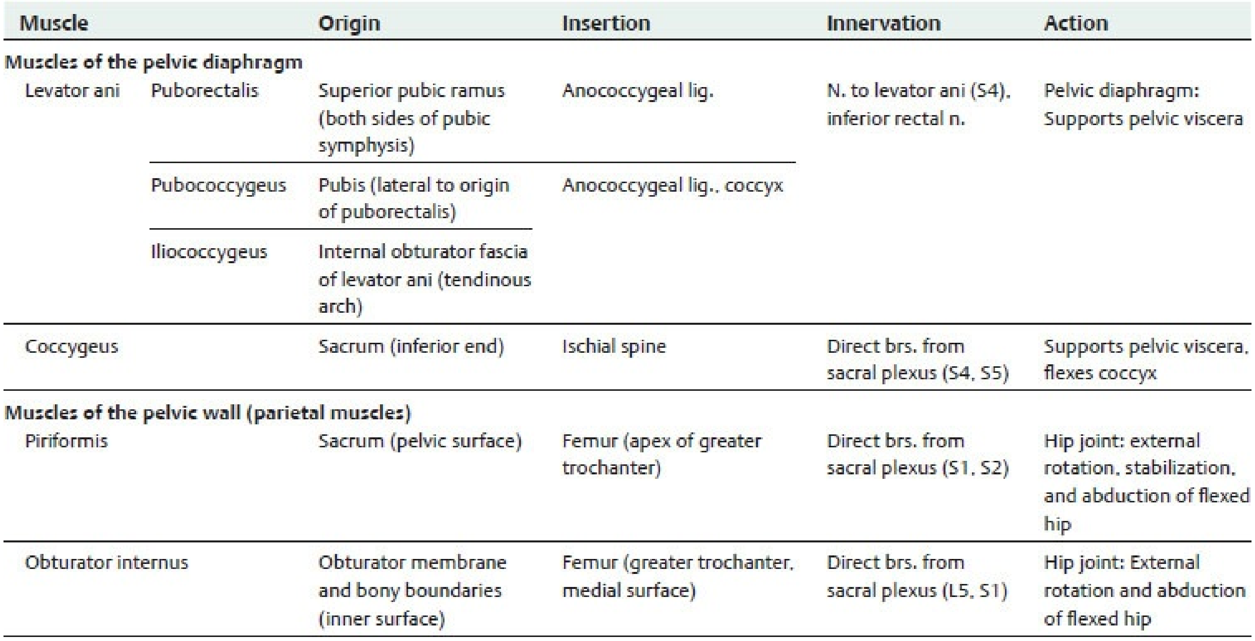

Anterior sacroiliac lig.
Arcuate line
Obturator internus fascia
Tendinous arch of levator ani
Pubic symphysis
Deep transverse perineal
Piriformis
Coccygeus
Ischial spine
Anococcygeal lig.
Iliococcygeus
Pubococcygeus
Puborectalis
Levator ani

Fig. 14.10 Muscles of the pelvic floor

Female pelvis.



Muscle		Origin	Insertion	Innervation	Action
Muscles of the pelvic diaphragm					
Levator ani	Puborectalis	Superior pubic ramus (both sides of pubic symphysis)	Anococcygeal lig.	N. to levator ani (S4), inferior rectal n.	Pelvic diaphragm: Supports pelvic viscera
	Pubococcygeus	Pubis (lateral to origin of puborectalis)	Anococcygeal lig., coccyx		
	Iliococcygeus	Internal obturator fascia of levator ani (tendinous arch)			
Coccygeus		Sacrum (inferior end)	Ischial spine	Direct brs. from sacral plexus (S4, S5)	Supports pelvic viscera, flexes coccyx
Muscles of the pelvic wall (parietal muscles)					
Piriformis		Sacrum (pelvic surface)	Femur (apex of greater trochanter)	Direct brs. from sacral plexus (S1, S2)	Hip joint: external rotation, stabilization, and abduction of flexed hip
Obturator internus		Obturator membrane and bony boundaries (inner surface)	Femur (greater trochanter, medial surface)	Direct brs. from sacral plexus (L5, S1)	Hip joint: External rotation and abduction of flexed hip

14.4 Pelvic Fascia

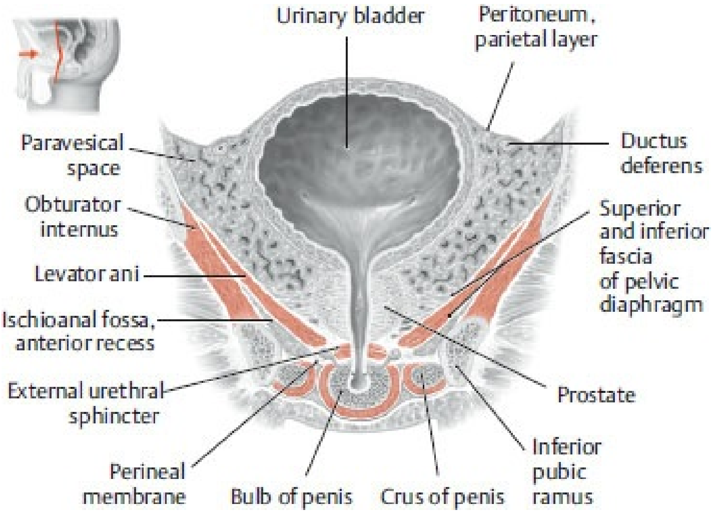
Pelvic fascia is a connective tissue layer located between the viscera and the muscular walls and floor of the pelvis. There are two types, **membranous fascia** and **endopelvic fascia (**Figs. 14.11 and 14.12**;** see also Fig. 14.3).

— Membranous pelvic fascia, usually a thin layer that adheres to the pelvic walls and viscera, has visceral and parietal layers.

- The **visceral pelvic fascia** surrounds the individual organs, and when in contact with the peritoneum it lies between the visceral peritoneum and the organ wall.
- The **parietal pelvic fascia** lines the inner surface of the muscles of the pelvic walls and floor. It is continuous with the transversalis fascia and psoas fascia of the abdomen and is named regionally for the muscle it covers (i.e., obturator fascia).
- Where the pelvic viscera pierce the pelvic diaphragm, the parietal and visceral layers merge to form a **tendinous arch of the pelvic fascia**. This arch runs from the pubis to the sacrum on either side of the pelvic floor. **Pubovesical ligaments** in the female and **puboprostatic ligaments** in the male are extensions of the tendinous arches that support the bladder and prostate. In females, the **paracolpium**—lateral connections between the visceral fascia and the tendinous arches—suspends and supports the vagina.
- **Endopelvic fascia** forms a loose connective tissue matrix that fills the

subperitoneal space between the visceral and parietal layers of the membranous fascia.

- Much of this fascia has a cotton candy–like consistency that pads the subperitoneal space but allows for distension of the pelvic viscera (e.g., vagina, rectum).



Urinary bladder
Peritoneum, parietal layer
Paravesical space
Ductus deferens
Obturator internus
Superior and inferior fascia of pelvic diaphragm
Levator ani
Ischioanal fossa, anterior recess
Prostate
External urethral sphincter
Inferior pubic ramus
Perineal membrane
Bulb of penis
Crus of penis

Fig. 14.11 Pelvic fascia

Male pelvis in coronal section, anterior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- Large supporting columns of this connective tissue extend from the pelvic walls to the rectum as the **lateral ligaments of the rectum,** and from the pelvic wall to the bladder as the **lateral ligaments of the bladder.**
- In some areas, the endopelvic fascia forms fibrous condensations [e.g., cardinal (transverse cervical) ligament] that support the pelvic viscera and their vascular and nerve plexuses.

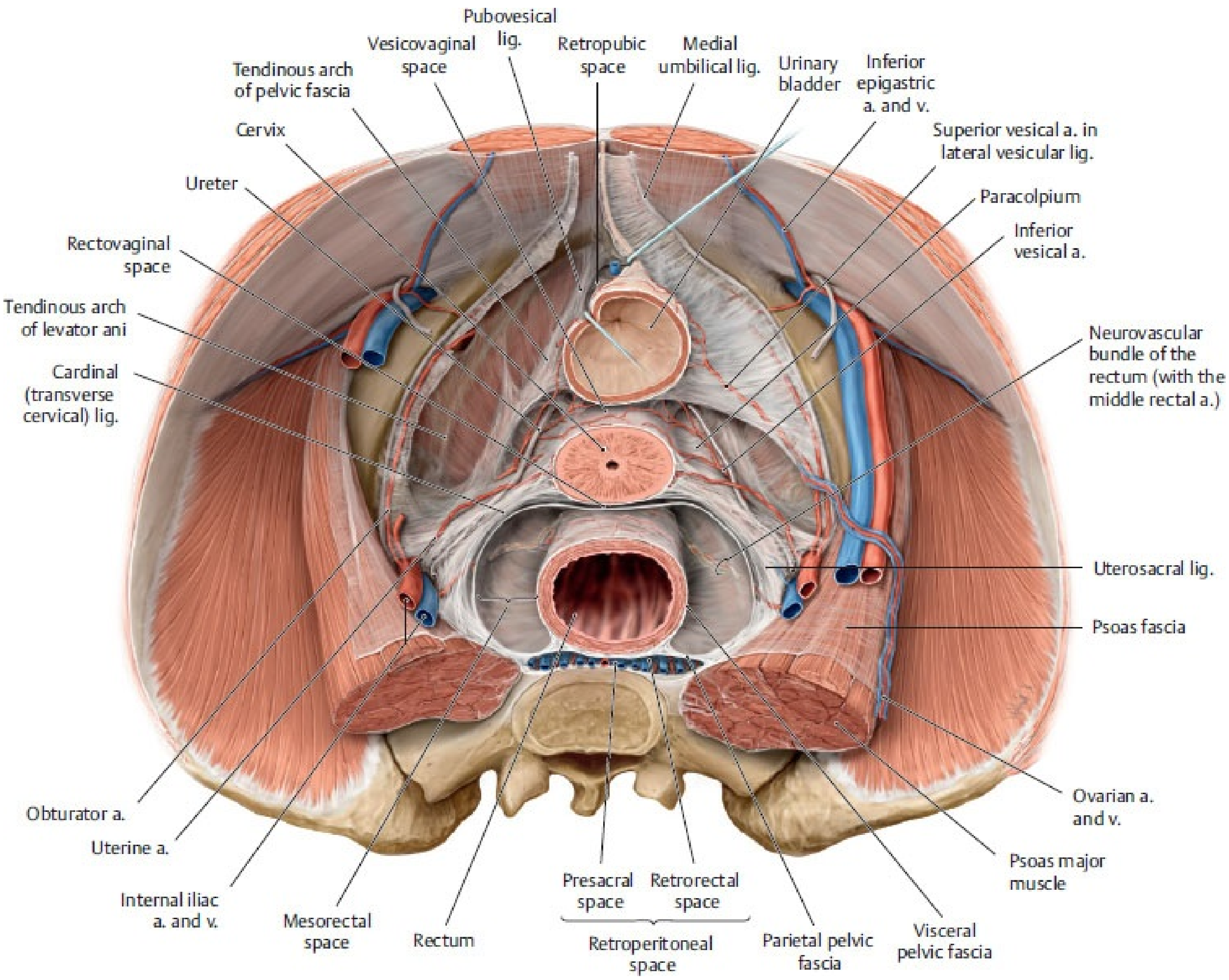

Pubovesical lig.
Vesicovaginal space
Retropubic space
Medial umbilical lig.
Urinary bladder
Inferior epigastric a. and v.
Tendinous arch of pelvic fascia
Cervix
Superior vesical a. in lateral vesicular lig.
Ureter
Paracolpium
Inferior vesical a.
Rectovaginal space
Tendinous arch of levator ani
Cardinal (transverse cervical) lig.
Neurovascular bundle of the rectum (with the middle rectal a.)
Uterosacral lig.
Psoas fascia
Obturator a.
Uterine a.
Internal iliac a. and v.
Mesorectal space
Rectum
Presacral space
Retrorectal space
Retroperitoneal space
Parietal pelvic fascia
Visceral pelvic fascia
Psoas major muscle
Ovarian a. and v.

Fig. 14.12 Fascial attachments in the female pelvis

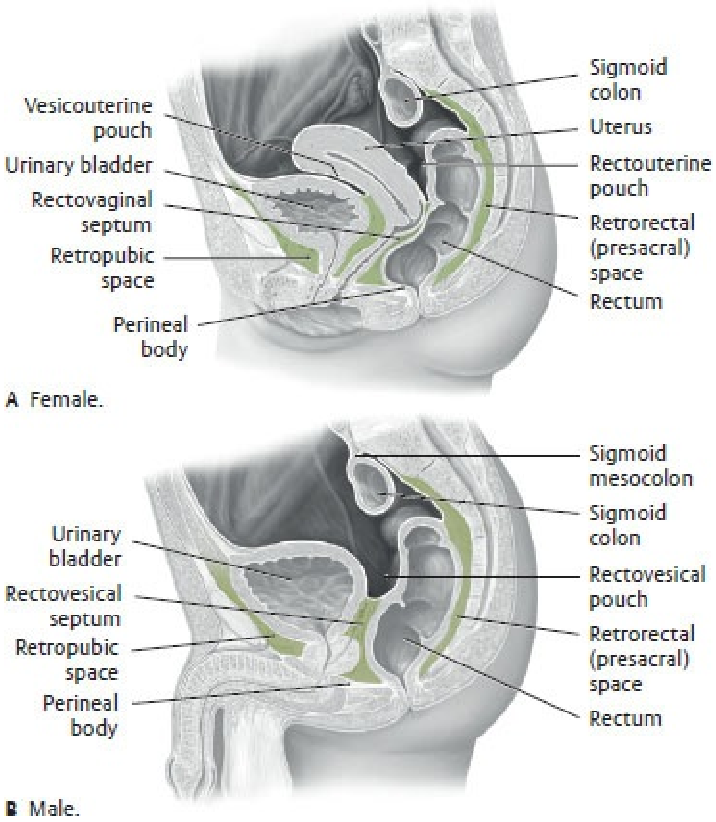
Transverse section through the cervix, superior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

14.5 Pelvic Spaces

The peritoneum of the abdominal wall covers the superior surface of the bladder, the anterior and posterior surfaces of the uterus, and the anterolateral surfaces of the rectum. Because the peritoneum does not descend to the pelvic floor, spaces are created above the peritoneum, within the peritoneal cavity, and below the peritoneum in the subperitoneal space (**Fig. 14.13**).

— **Peritoneal recesses,** intraperitoneal spaces that are continuous with the peritoneal cavity of the abdomen and lined by the visceral peritoneum of the pelvic organs, are normally occupied by loops of small intestine and peritoneal fluid.

  - In males, a **rectovesical pouch** between the bladder and rectum is the lowest point in the male peritoneal cavity.
  - In females, a **vesicouterine pouch** forms between the bladder and uterus, and a **rectouterine pouch** (of Douglas) forms between the uterus and rectum. The rectouterine pouch is the lowest point of the female peritoneal cavity.
- **Subperitoneal recesses** are extraperitoneal spaces that are continuous with the retroperitoneum of the abdomen and are filled with endopelvic fascia.
  - The **retropubic space** (prevesical space, space of Retzius) lies between the pubic symphysis and the bladder.
  - The **rectorectal space** (presacral space) lies between the rectum and sacrum.
- A double-layered peritoneal septum descends from the rectovesical (or rectouterine) pouch to the perineum.
  - In males, this **rectovesical septum** separates the rectum from the seminal glands and prostate. Its lower part is often referred to as the **rectoprostatic fascia.**
  - In females, the **rectovaginal septum** separates the rectum from the vagina.



Vesicouterine pouch
Urinary bladder
Rectovaginal septum
Retropubic space
Perineal body
Sigmoid colon
Uterus
Rectouterine pouch
Retrorectal (presacral) space
Rectum
A Female.
Urinary bladder
Rectovesical septum
Retropubic space
Perineal body
Sigmoid mesocolon
Sigmoid colon
Rectovesical pouch
Retrorectal (presacral) space
Rectum
B Male.

Fig. 14.13 Peritoneal and subperitoneal spaces in the pelvis

Midsagittal section, viewed from the left side. Subperitoneal spaces shown in green. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

14.6 Neurovasculature of the Pelvis and Perineum

Arteries of the Pelvis and Perineum

Pelvic viscera are well vascularized, primarily by branches of the internal iliac artery, with abundant ipsilateral and contralateral communications (Fig. 14.14).

- The **right** and **left common iliac arteries** descend along the pelvic brim before bifurcating into the external and internal iliac arteries at the level of the L5–S1 intervertebral disk.
- Each **external iliac artery** continues along the pelvic brim, lateral to the accompanying vein, and enters the lower limb without contributing branches to pelvic viscera.

— Each **internal iliac artery** descends into the lesser pelvis along the lateral wall before branching into two divisions **(** Table 14.3**)**

1. The anterior division supplies most of the pelvic viscera, structures of the perineum, and some muscles in the gluteal region and thigh.
2. The posterior division contributes only parietal branches that supply muscles of the posterior abdominal wall, lower back, and gluteal region, as well as spinal branches that supply the meninges of the sacral spinal roots.

— The **internal pudendal artery,** a branch of the internal iliac artery, supplies most structures in the perineum. It exits the pelvis through the greater sciatic foramen and then passes through the lesser sciatic foramen into the perineum where it runs along the lateral wall of the anal triangle to the perineal membrane. Its major branches **(**Figs. 14.15 and 14.16**)** include the following:

Table 14.3 Branches of the Internal Iliac Artery

Anterior Division		Posterior Division
Visceral branches	**Parietal branches**	**Parietal branches**
• Umbilical—superior vesical* • Uterine (female) • Vaginal (female) • Inferior vesical (male) • Middle rectal • Internal pudendal	• Obturator • Inferior gluteal	• Iliolumbar • Lateral sacral • Superior gluteal

*After birth, the distal portion of the umbilical artery obliterates, but its remnant remains as the medial umbilical ligament on the anterior abdominal wall; the proximal portion remains as the superior vesical artery to the bladder.

- The **inferior rectal artery,** which supplies the external anal sphincter and skin around the anus
- The **perineal artery,** which supplies the structures of the superficial perineal pouch through posterior scrotal or posterior labial branches
- The **dorsal penile** or **clitoral artery,** which supplies structures in the deep perineal pouch and the glans of the penis or clitoris

— The **external pudendal artery**, a branch of the femoral artery in the thigh, supplies superficial tissues of the perineum.

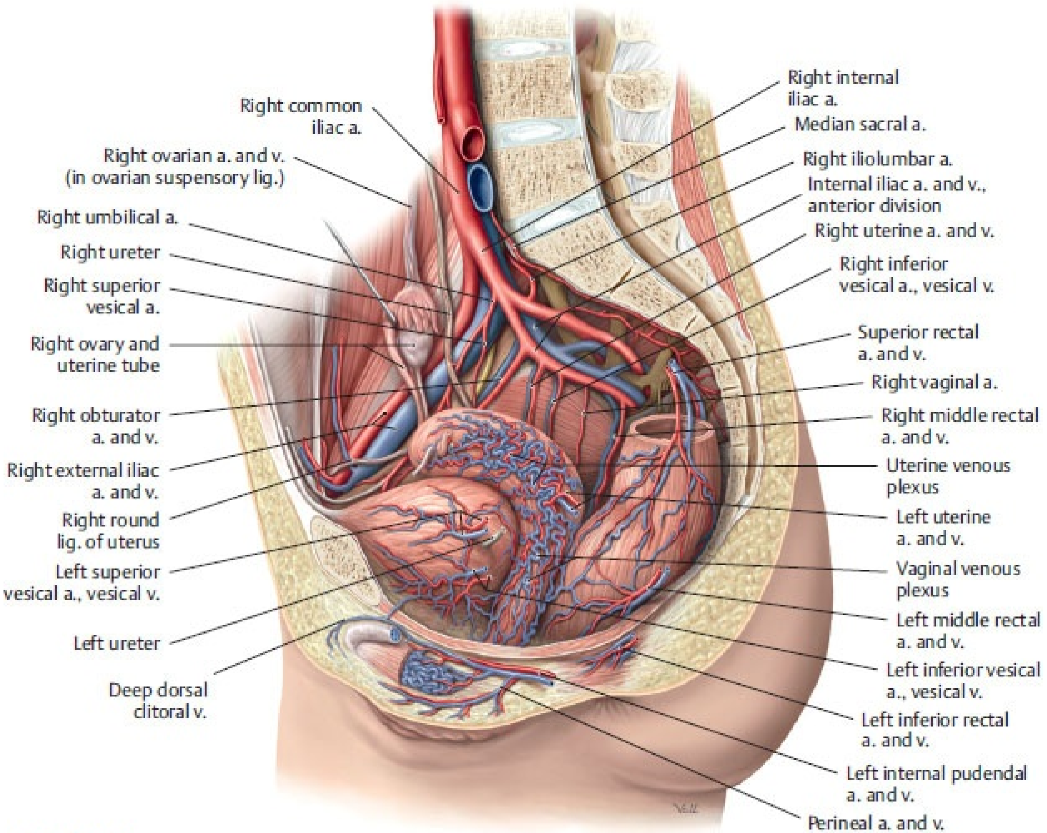
Arteries of the pelvis that arise directly or indirectly from the abdominal aorta provide an important additional collateral blood supply to pelvic viscera.

- The **ovarian and testicular arteries** arise from the abdominal aorta at L2 and descend along the posterior abdominal wall.
  - The ovarian artery crosses the pelvic brim and enters the pelvis within the **suspensory ligament of the ovary**. In the pelvis it supplies the ovary and uterine tube and anastomoses with the uterine artery (**Fig. 14.17**).
  - The testicular artery passes through the inguinal canal as part of the spermatic cord to supply the testis. It does not supply any structures within the pelvis (**Fig 14.18**).
- The superior rectal artery, a branch of the inferior mesenteric artery, supplies the upper rectum and anal canal and anastomoses with middle and inferior rectal arteries in the pelvis and perineum (**Fig. 14.19**).

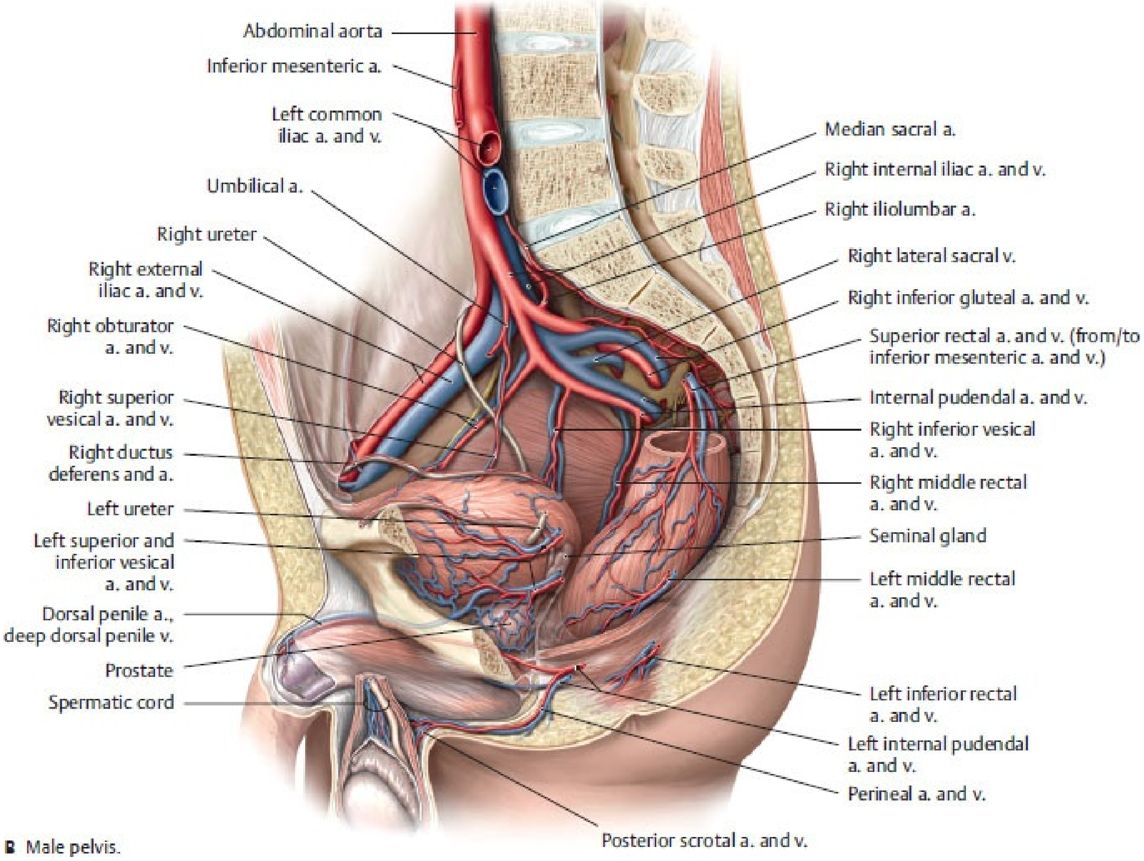
Veins of the Pelvis and Perineum

Blood from most pelvic viscera drains to a venous plexus contained either within the visceral fascia surrounding the organ (bladder, prostate) or within the organ wall (rectum).

- The visceral venous plexuses in the pelvis communicate freely, and most drain to the inferior vena caval system through tributaries of the internal iliac veins that accompany the arteries of similar name and vascular territory (area supplied by a vessel) (see **Fig. 14.14**).
- The **internal pudendal vein** accompanies the internal pudendal artery and drains most structures of the perineum. However, erectile tissues in the urogenital triangle drain through **deep dorsal veins** that pass under the pubic symphysis to join with visceral venous plexuses in the pelvis.


Right common iliac a.
Right ovarian a. and v. (in ovarian suspensory lig.)
Right umbilical a.
Right ureter
Right superior vesical a.
Right ovary and uterine tube
Right obturator a. and v.
Right external iliac a. and v.
Right round lig. of uterus
Left superior vesical a., vesical v.
Left ureter
Deep dorsal clitoral v.
Right internal iliac a.
Median sacral a.
Right iliolumbar a.
Internal iliac a. and v., anterior division
Right uterine a. and v.
Right inferior vesical a., vesical v.
Superior rectal a. and v.
Right vaginal a.
Right middle rectal a. and v.
Uterine venous plexus
Left uterine a. and v.
Vaginal venous plexus
Left middle rectal a. and v.
Left inferior vesical a., vesical v.
Left inferior rectal a. and v.
Left internal pudendal a. and v.
Perineal a. and v.

A Female pelvis.


Abdominal aorta
Inferior mesenteric a.
Left common iliac a. and v.
Umbilical a.
Right ureter
Right external iliac a. and v.
Right obturator a. and v.
Right superior vesical a. and v.
Right ductus deferens and a.
Left ureter
Left superior and inferior vesical a. and v.
Dorsal penile a., deep dorsal penile v.
Prostate
Spermatic cord
Median sacral a.
Right internal iliac a. and v.
Right iliolumbar a.
Right lateral sacral v.
Right inferior gluteal a. and v.
Superior rectal a. and v. (from/to inferior mesenteric a. and v.)
Internal pudendal a. and v.
Right inferior vesical a. and v.
Right middle rectal a. and v.
Seminal gland
Left middle rectal a. and v.
Left inferior rectal a. and v.
Left internal pudendal a. and v.
Perineal a. and v.
Posterior scrotal a. and v.

B Male pelvis.

Fig. 14.14 Blood vessels of the pelvis

Idealized right hemipelvis, left lateral view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

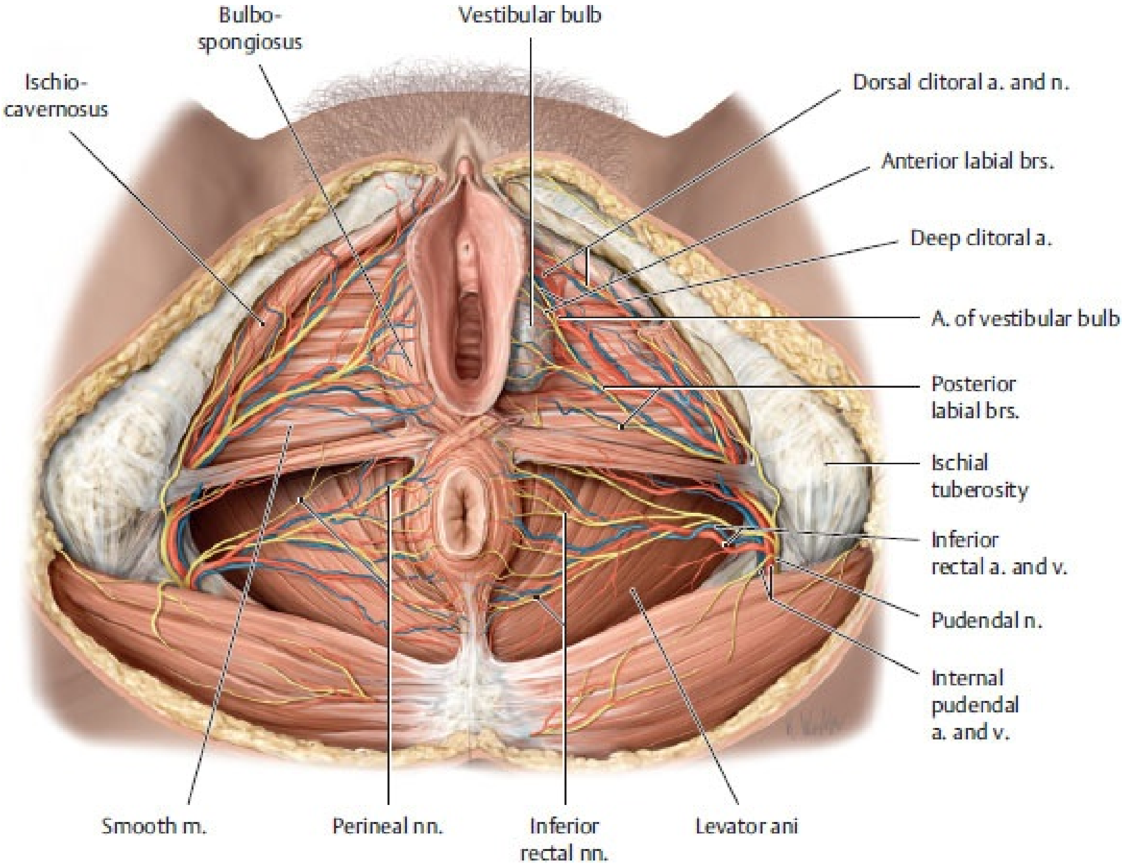

Bulbo-spongiosus
Vestibular bulb
Ischio-cavernosus
Dorsal clitoral a. and n.
Anterior labial brs.
Deep clitoral a.
A. of vestibular bulb
Posterior labial brs.
Ischial tuberosity
Inferior rectal a. and v.
Pudendal n.
Internal pudendal a. and v.
Smooth m.
Perineal nn.
Inferior rectal nn.
Levator ani

Fig. 14.15 Neurovasculature of the female perineum

Lithotomy position. *Removed*: left bulbospongiosus and ischiocavernosus muscles. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

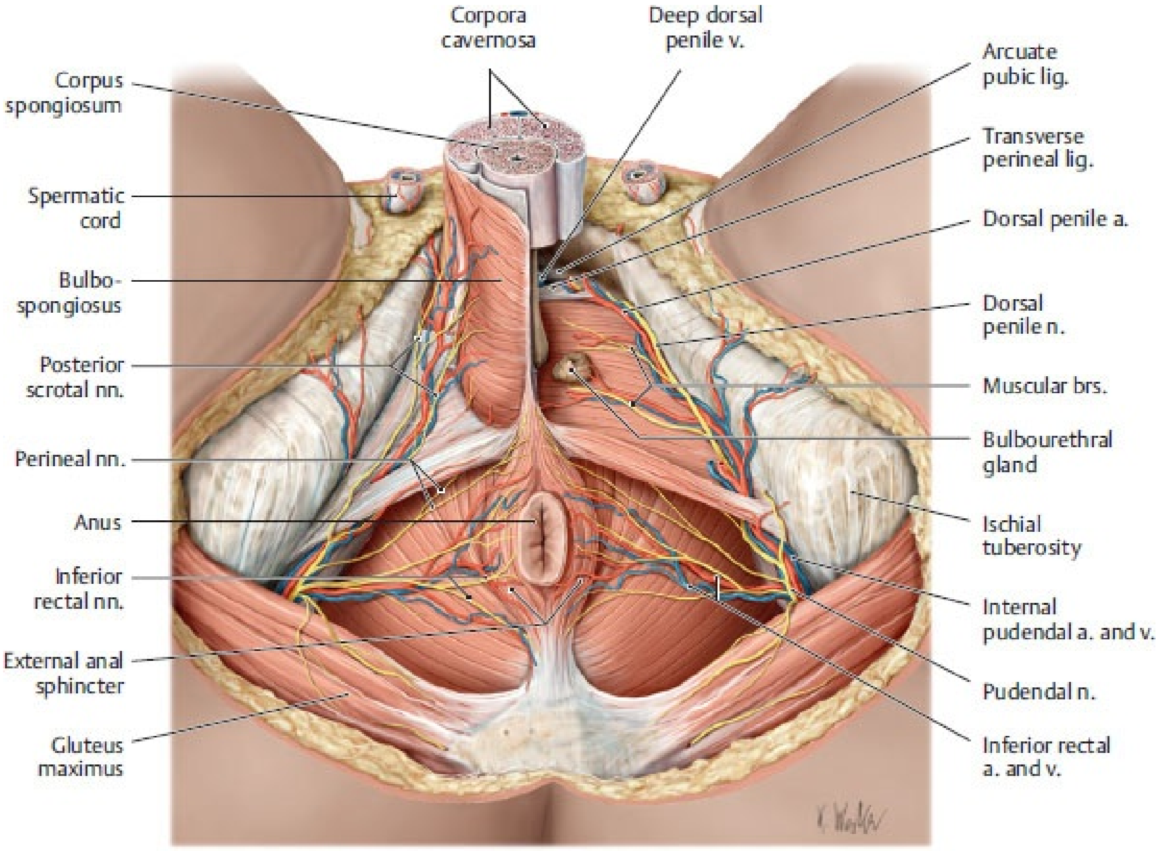

Corpora cavernosa
Deep dorsal penile v.
Corpus spongiosum
Arcuate pubic lig.
Transverse perineal lig.
Spermatic cord
Dorsal penile a.
Bulbo-spongiosus
Dorsal penile n.
Posterior scrotal nn.
Muscular brs.
Bulbourethral gland
Perineal nn.
Anus
Ischial tuberosity
Inferior rectal nn.
Internal pudendal a. and v.
External anal sphincter
Pudendal n.
Gluteus maximus
Inferior rectal a. and v.

Fig. 14.16 Neurovasculature of the male perineum

Lithotomy position. *Removed from left side*: Perineal membrane, bulbospongiosus muscle, and root of penis. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

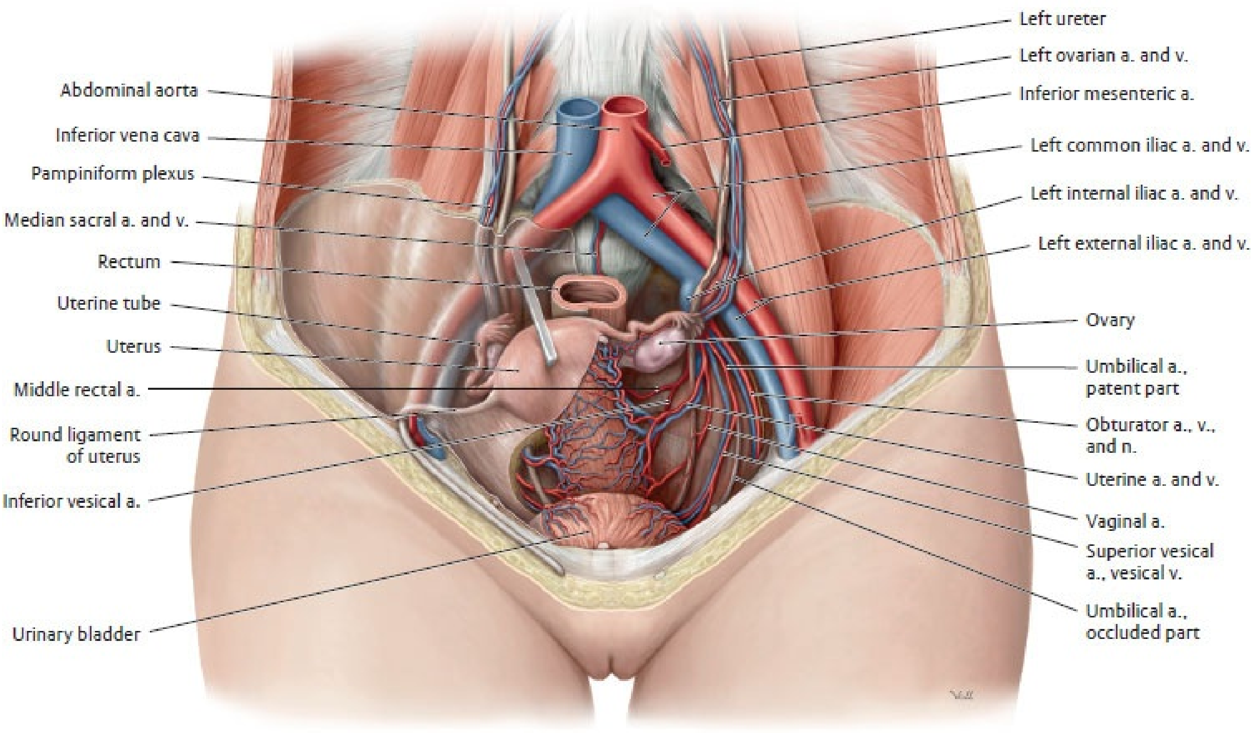

Left ureter
Left ovarian a. and v.
Inferior mesenteric a.
Left common iliac a. and v.
Left internal iliac a. and v.
Left external iliac a. and v.
Ovary
Umbilical a., patent part
Obturator a., v., and n.
Uterine a. and v.
Vaginal a.
Superior vesical a., vesical v.
Umbilical a., occluded part
Abdominal aorta
Inferior vena cava
Pampiniform plexus
Median sacral a. and v.
Rectum
Uterine tube
Uterus
Middle rectal a.
Round ligament of uterus
Inferior vesical a.
Urinary bladder

Fig. 14.17 Blood vessels of the female genitalia

Anterior view. *Removed from left side*: Peritoneum. Displaced: Uterus. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

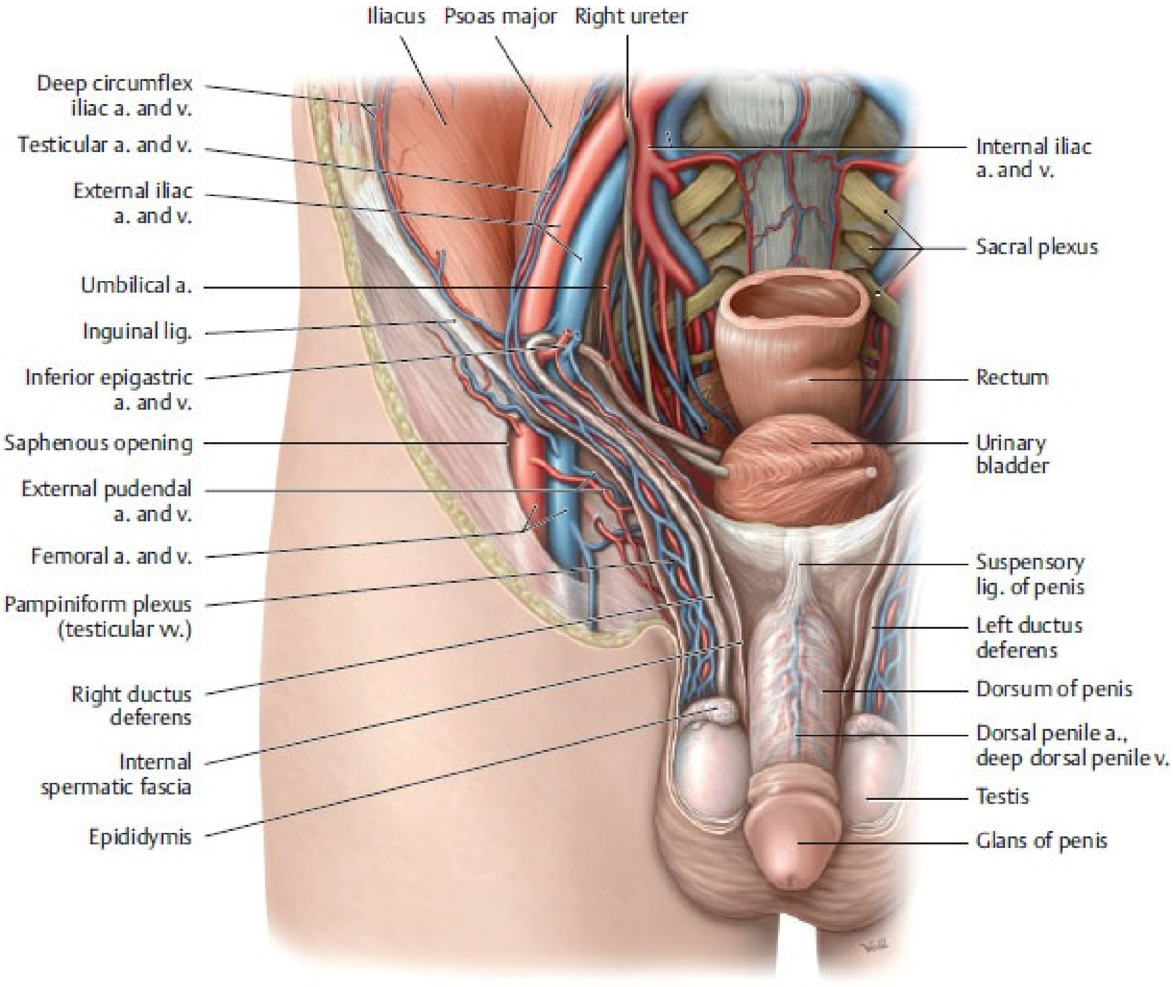

Iliacus
Psoas major
Right ureter
Deep circumflex iliac a. and v.
Testicular a. and v.
External iliac a. and v.
Umbilical a.
Inguinal lig.
Inferior epigastric a. and v.
Saphenous opening
External pudendal a. and v.
Femoral a. and v.
Pampiniform plexus (testicular vv.)
Right ductus deferens
Internal spermatic fascia
Epididymis
Internal iliac a. and v.
Sacral plexus
Rectum
Urinary bladder
Suspensory lig. of penis
Left ductus deferens
Dorsum of penis
Dorsal penile a., deep dorsal penile v.
Testis
Glans of penis

Fig. 14.18 Blood vessels of the male genitalia

Anterior view. *Opened*: Inguinal canal and coverings of the spermatic cord. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

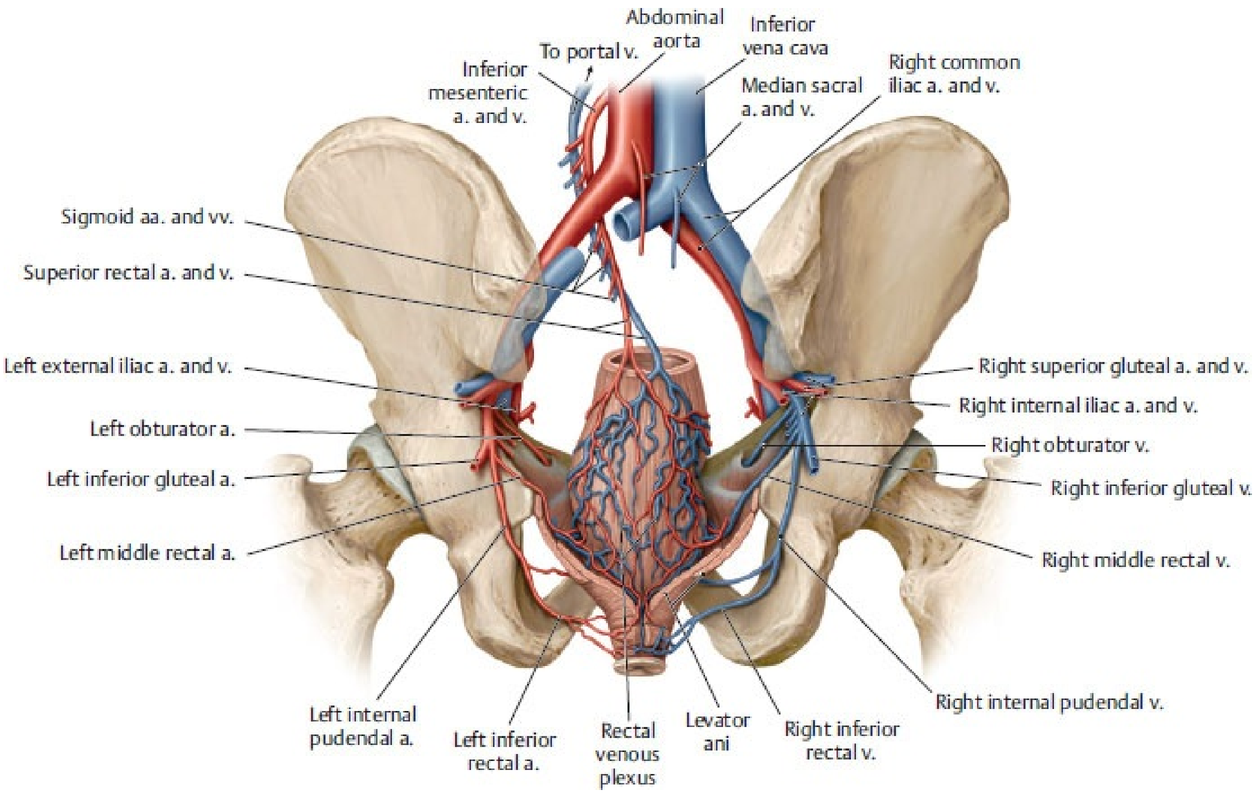

Abdominal aorta
Inferior vena cava
To portal v.
Inferior mesenteric a. and v.
Median sacral a. and v.
Right common iliac a. and v.
Sigmoid aa. and vv.
Superior rectal a. and v.
Left external iliac a. and v.
Left obturator a.
Left inferior gluteal a.
Left middle rectal a.
Right superior gluteal a. and v.
Right internal iliac a. and v.
Right obturator v.
Right inferior gluteal v.
Right middle rectal v.
Right internal pudendal v.
Left internal pudendal a.
Left inferior rectal a.
Rectal venous plexus
Levator ani
Right inferior rectal v.

Fig. 14.19 Blood vessels of the rectum

Posterior view. The main blood supply to the rectum is from the superior rectal artery; the middle rectal arteries serve as an anastomosis between the superior and inferior rectal arteries. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- The **internal iliac veins** ascend from the pelvis to join with the **external iliac veins.** These join to form the **right** and **left common iliac veins,** which converge to form the inferior vena cava at the L5 vertebral level.
- There are three alternate venous drainages from pelvic viscera:
    1. Ovarian veins drain directly into the inferior vena cava on the right and into the renal vein on the left, but they also communicate with other pelvic venous plexuses (uterine, vaginal), which drain to the internal iliac veins (see **Fig. 14.17**).
    2. The superior rectal vein drains to the hepatic portal system through the inferior mesenteric vein. This drainage establishes an anastomosis between the portal and caval venous systems (a portosystemic anastomosis) with the middle and inferior rectal veins, which are tributaries of the internal iliac veins (see **Figs. 14.19**).

3. The vertebral venous plexus, which drains into the azygos system, communicates with pelvic visceral plexuses through tributaries of the internal iliac veins (see **Fig. 3.17**).

Lymphatics of the Pelvis and Perineum

Lymph from the pelvis and perineum travels through one or more groups of lymph nodes, all of which ultimately drain into the thoracic duct **(Table 14.4)**. The groups of nodes tend to be interconnected but vary in size and number.

There are several general drainage patterns.

- Within the pelvis, lymph drainage usually follows venous pathways, although structures that drain to the external iliac nodes do not follow this pattern.
- External iliac nodes receive lymph from the superior parts of the anterior pelvic viscera.
- Internal iliac nodes receive lymph from deep pelvic and deep perineal structures.
- Sacral nodes receive lymph from deep posterior pelvic viscera.
- Superficial and deep inguinal nodes drain most structures of the perineum.
- Inguinal nodes drain to external iliac nodes.
- External iliac, internal iliac, and sacral nodes drain to common iliac nodes, which in turn drain to lateral aortic nodes and lumbar trunks.

Nerves of the Pelvis and Perineum

Nerves of the pelvis and perineum include branches from somatic nerve plexuses as well as autonomic plexuses. Somatic nerves arise from the lumbar and sacral plexuses.

- The lumbar plexus (T12–L4) forms on the posterior abdominal wall (see **Fig. 11.26**). Its nerves primarily innervate muscles and skin of the lower abdominal wall and lower limb. However, its ilioinguinal and genitofemoral nerves transmit sensation from the mons pubis and labia and anterior scrotum in the perineum.
    - The obturator nerve (L2–L4), passes along the sidewall of the pelvis and exits through the obturator canal. Although it does not innervate structures of the pelvis, its location is noteworthy because it can be injured during pelvic surgery.
- The **sacral plexus** forms on the posterior wall of the pelvis from the anterior rami of L4–S4. Except for short branches to pelvic floor muscles, branches of the plexus exit the pelvis through the greater sciatic foramen, where they innervate structures in the perineum, gluteal region, and lower limb (see

Section 15.4). Its branches in the pelvis include

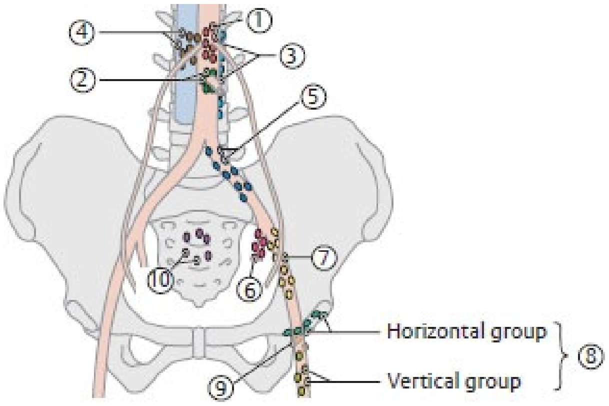


Table 14.4 Lymph Nodes of the Pelvis

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Preaortic l.n.	① Superior mesenteric l.n.
	② Inferior mesenteric l.n.
③ Left lateral aortic l.n.	
④ Right lateral aortic (caval) l.n.	
⑤ Common iliac l.n.	
⑥ Internal iliac l.n.	
⑦ External iliac l.n.	
⑧ Superficial inguinal l.n.	Horizontal group
	Vertical group
⑨ Deep inguinal l.n.	
⑩ Sacral l.n.	
Abbreviation: l.n., lymph nodes	

- The **pudendal nerve** (S2–S4), a branch of the sacral plexus, is the primary nerve of the perineum. It passes through the greater sciatic foramen close to the ischial spine and then into the perineum through the lesser sciatic foramen, where it courses anteriorly with the internal pudendal vessels. The pudendal nerve is a mixed somatic nerve (motor and sensory) but also carries postganglionic sympathetic fibers to perineal structures. Its major branches include the following (**Figs. 14.20** and **14.21**):

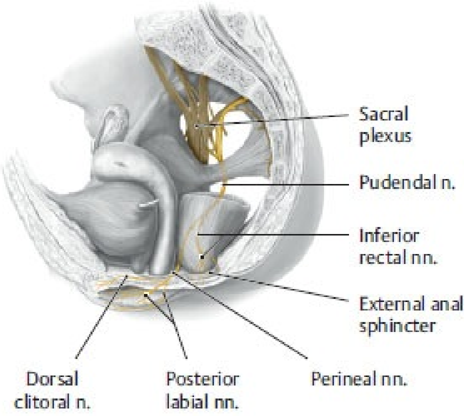
  - ◦ The **inferior rectal nerve**, which innervates the external anal sphincter
  - ◦ The **perineal nerve**, which supplies cutaneous branches to the scrotum and labia and motor branches to the muscles of the deep and superficial perineal pouches
  - ◦ The **dorsal penile (clitoral) nerve**, which is the primary sensory nerve to the penis and clitoris, especially to the glans.

Autonomic innervation of the pelvis includes both sympathetic and parasympathetic contributions (**Figs. 14.22, 14.23, 14.24, 14.25;** see also **Table 11.8**).

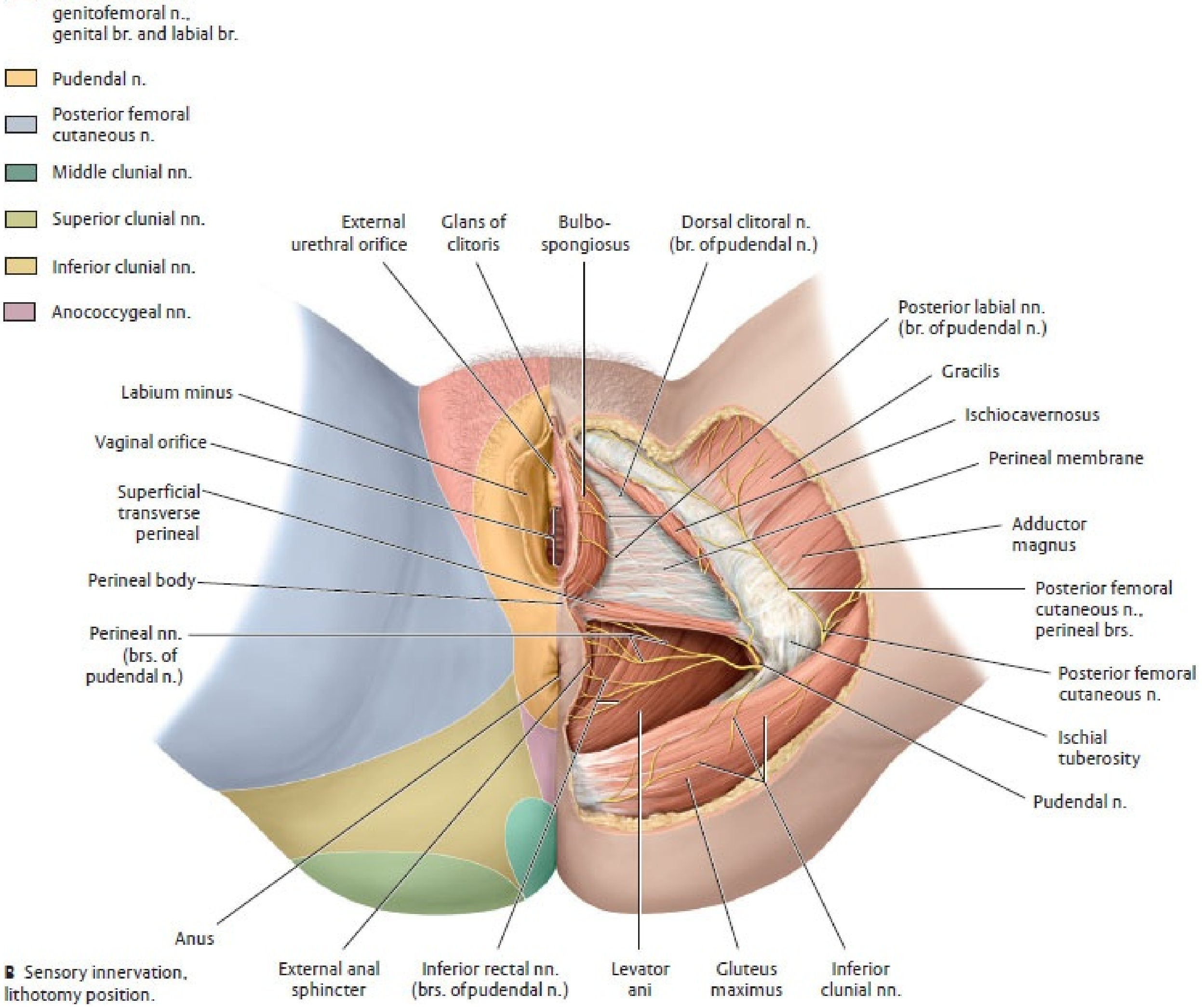
- — **Sacral sympathetic trunks**, the continuations of the lumbar sympathetic trunks, descend along the anterior surface of the sacrum to the coccyx, where they merge to form a small ganglion, the **ganglion impar**. The primary function of this part of the sympathetic trunks is to provide postganglionic sympathetic fibers via sacral splanchnic nerves to lower limb branches of the sacral plexus. It contributes a few fibers to the visceral plexuses of the pelvis.
- — The **superior hypogastric plexus**, a continuation of the intermesenteric plexus in the abdomen, receives additional contributions from the two lower lumbar splanchnic nerves (sympathetic). It drapes over the bifurcation of the aorta and branches into **right** and **left hypogastric nerves**, which pass into the pelvis.
- — **Pelvic splanchnic nerves** are the pelvic component of the parasympathetic nervous system. They originate from the sacral spinal cord and enter the pelvis with the S2–S4 anterior rami.
- — The hypogastric nerves, joined by sacral splanchnic nerves (sympathetic) nerves and pelvic splanchnic nerves (parasympathetic), form **right** and **left inferior hypogastric** (pelvic) **plexuses**.
- — **Rectal, uterovaginal** (in females), **prostatic** (in males), and **vesical plexuses** are derived from the inferior hypogastric plexus and surround individual pelvic organs.
  - **Cavernous nerves** arising from the prostatic plexus pass through the genital hiatus carrying parasympathetic nerves to perineal structures.

    They are responsible for engorgement of the erectile tissue and erection of the penis and clitoris. They are particularly at risk during surgical removal of the prostate.

— Visceral sensory fibers from most structures in the pelvis travel with sympathetic or parasympathetic nerves, depending on the relationship of the viscera to the peritoneum, a division known as the “pelvic pain line.”
  - From pelvic viscera in contact with the peritoneum, sensory fibers travel with sympathetic nerves to the superior hypogastric plexus and thoracic spinal cord.
  - From pelvic viscera below the peritoneum, sensory fibers travel with parasympathetic pelvic splanchnic nerves to the sacral spinal cord.
  - Although the rectum is in contact with the peritoneum on most of its surfaces, its visceral sensory fibers also travel with pelvic splanchnic nerves.


Sacral plexus
Pudendal n.
Inferior rectal nn.
External anal sphincter
Dorsal clitoral n.
Posterior labial nn.
Perineal nn.

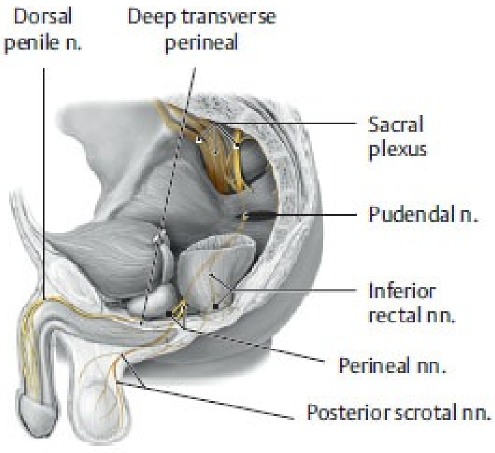
A Course of the pudendal nerve, left lateral view.


Ilioinguinal n. and genitofemoral n., genital br. and labial br.
Pudendal n.
Posterior femoral cutaneous n.
Middle clunial nn.
Superior clunial nn.
Inferior clunial nn.
Anococcygeal nn.
External urethral orifice
Glans of clitoris
Bulbo-spongiosus
Dorsal clitoral n. (br. of pudendal n.)
Posterior labial nn. (br. of pudendal n.)
Gracilis
Ischiocavernosus
Perineal membrane
Adductor magnus
Posterior femoral cutaneous n., perineal brs.
Posterior femoral cutaneous n.
Ischial tuberosity
Pudendal n.
Labium minus
Vaginal orifice
Superficial transverse perineal
Perineal body
Perineal nn. (brs. of pudendal n.)
Anus
External anal sphincter
Inferior rectal nn. (brs. of pudendal n.)
Levator ani
Gluteus maximus
Inferior clunial nn.

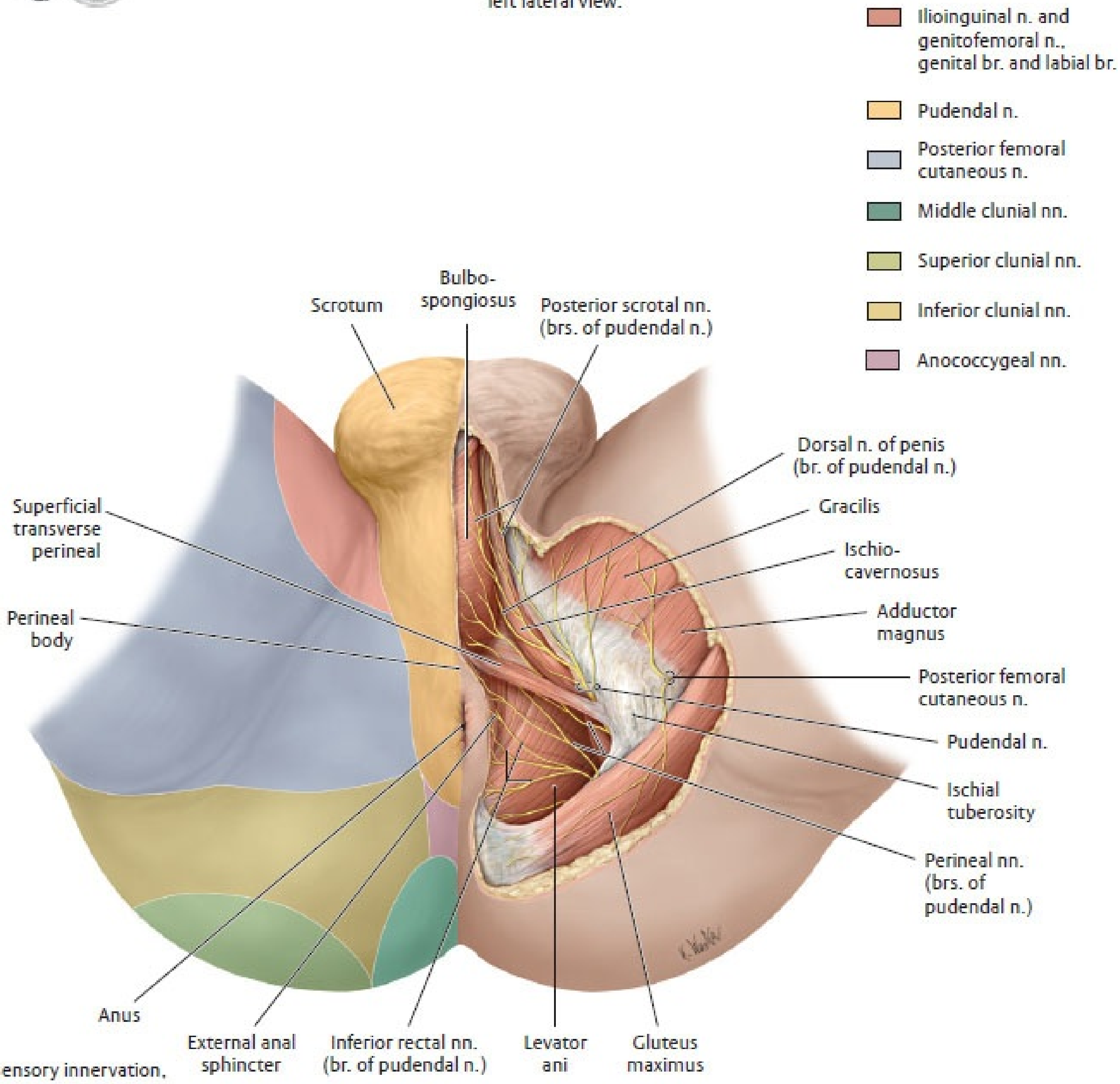
B Sensory innervation, lithotomy position.

Fig. 14.20 Nerves of the female perineum and genitalia

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Dorsal penile n.
Deep transverse perineal
Sacral plexus
Pudendal n.
Inferior rectal nn.
Perineal nn.
Posterior scrotal nn.

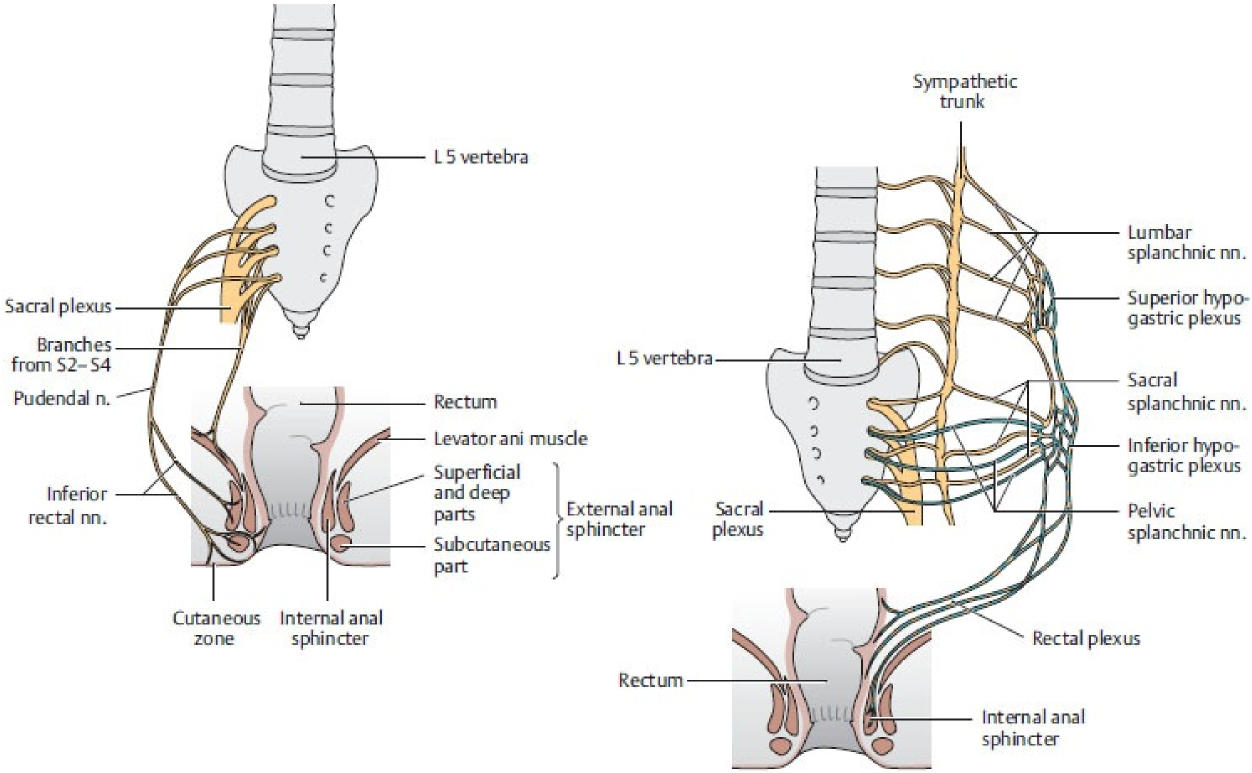
A Course of the pudendal nerve, left lateral view.


Ilioinguinal n. and genitofemoral n., genital br. and labial br.
Pudendal n.
Posterior femoral cutaneous n.
Middle clunial nn.
Superior clunial nn.
Inferior clunial nn.
Anococcygeal nn.
Scrotum
Bulbo-spongiosus
Posterior scrotal nn. (brs. of pudendal n.)
Dorsal n. of penis (br. of pudendal n.)
Gracilis
Ischio-cavernosus
Adductor magnus
Superficial transverse perineal
Perineal body
Posterior femoral cutaneous n.
Pudendal n.
Ischial tuberosity
Perineal nn. (brs. of pudendal n.)
Anus
External anal sphincter
Inferior rectal nn. (br. of pudendal n.)
Levator ani
Gluteus maximus

B Sensory innervation, lithotomy position.

Fig. 14.21 Nerves of the male perineum and genitalia

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


L 5 vertebra
Sacral plexus
Branches from S2–S4
Pudendal n.
Inferior rectal nn.
Rectum
Levator ani muscle
Superficial and deep parts
Subcutaneous part
External anal sphincter
Cutaneous zone
Internal anal sphincter
Sympathetic trunk
Lumbar splanchnic nn.
Superior hypogastric plexus
L 5 vertebra
Sacral splanchnic nn.
Inferior hypogastric plexus
Sacral plexus
Pelvic splanchnic nn.
Rectal plexus
Rectum
Internal anal sphincter

A Somatomotor and somatosensory innervation. The pudendal nerves and inferior rectal branches provide active, partly voluntary innervation of the external anal sphincter and levator ani muscles, and sensation for the anus and perianal skin.

B Visceromotor and viscerosensory innervation. Pelvic splanchnic nerves (S2–S4) innervate the internal anal sphincter, which helps maintain closure of the anal canal. They also supply sensation to the wall of the rectum, particularly the stretch receptors in the rectal ampulla, which when stretched trigger an awareness of the need to defecate.

Fig. 14.22 Innervation of the anal sphincter mechanism

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 14.3: CLINICAL CORRELATION

PUDENDAL NERVE BLOCK

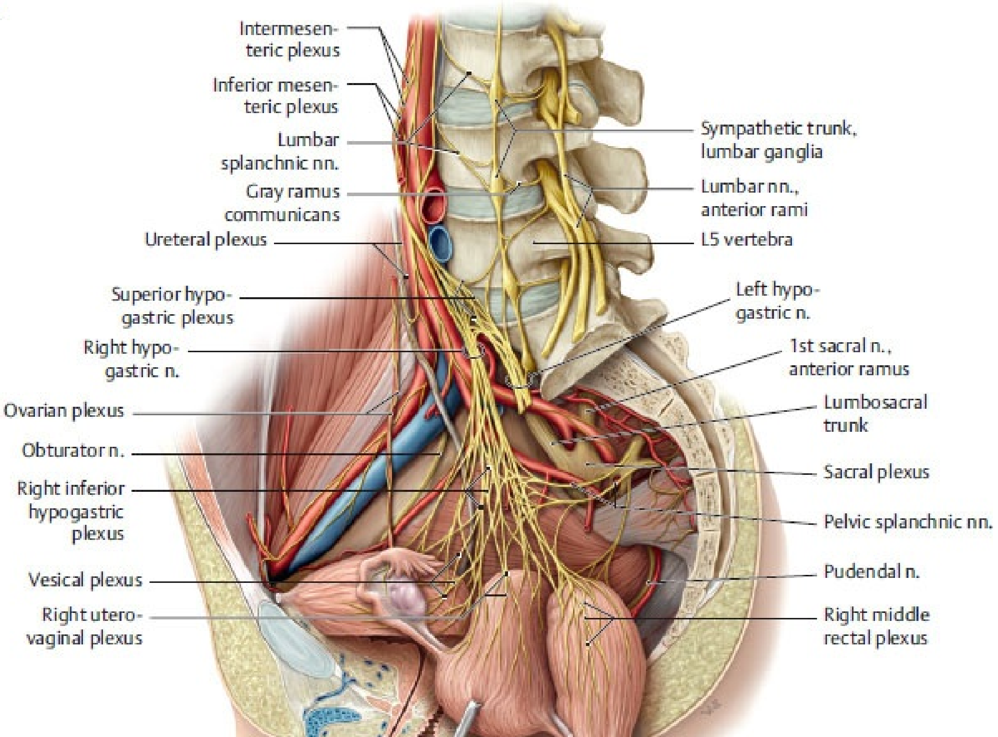
During labor, anesthesia of the pudendal nerve can ease perineal pain of delivery. A pudendal block can be administered through the posterior wall of the vagina, with the surgeon aiming the needle toward the ischial spine. The block can also be administered externally, inserting the needle through the skin medial to the ischial tuberosity. Since the pudendal nerve innervates only the perineum, the superior vagina and cervix are not affected by the block, and the mother continues to feel the uterine contractions.

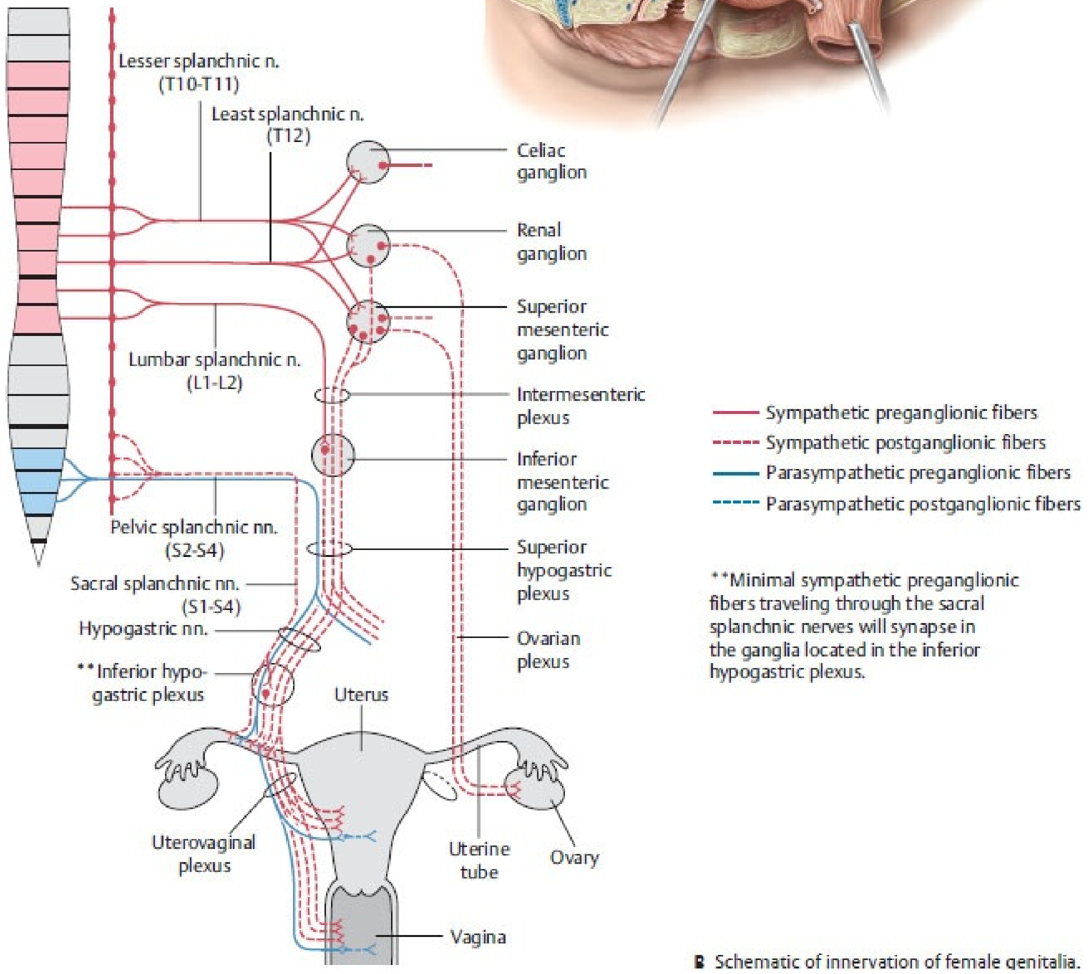
BOX 14.4: CLINICAL CORRELATION

PAIN TRANSMISSION DURING LABOR AND DELIVERY

The sensation of pain travels along both visceral sensory and somatic sensory routes during labor and delivery. The dividing line between these routes is the pelvic pain line, which refers to the relation of pelvic viscera to the peritoneum. Pain from the body and fundus of the uterus (intraperitoneal) travel along sympathetic nerves to the superior hypogastric plexus, and pain from the cervix and upper two-thirds of the vagina (subperitoneal) along parasympathetic nerves to the sacral spinal cord. Pain from superficial structures, the lower vagina and perineum, travels via branches of the pudendal nerve to the sacral plexus.

A Right pelvis, left lateral view.


Intermesenteric plexus
Inferior mesenteric plexus
Lumbar splanchnic nn.
Gray ramus communicans
Ureteral plexus
Superior hypogastric plexus
Right hypogastric n.
Ovarian plexus
Obturator n.
Right inferior hypogastric plexus
Vesical plexus
Right uterovaginal plexus
Sympathetic trunk, lumbar ganglia
Lumbar nn., anterior rami
L5 vertebra
Left hypogastric n.
1st sacral n., anterior ramus
Lumbosacral trunk
Sacral plexus
Pelvic splanchnic nn.
Pudendal n.
Right middle rectal plexus

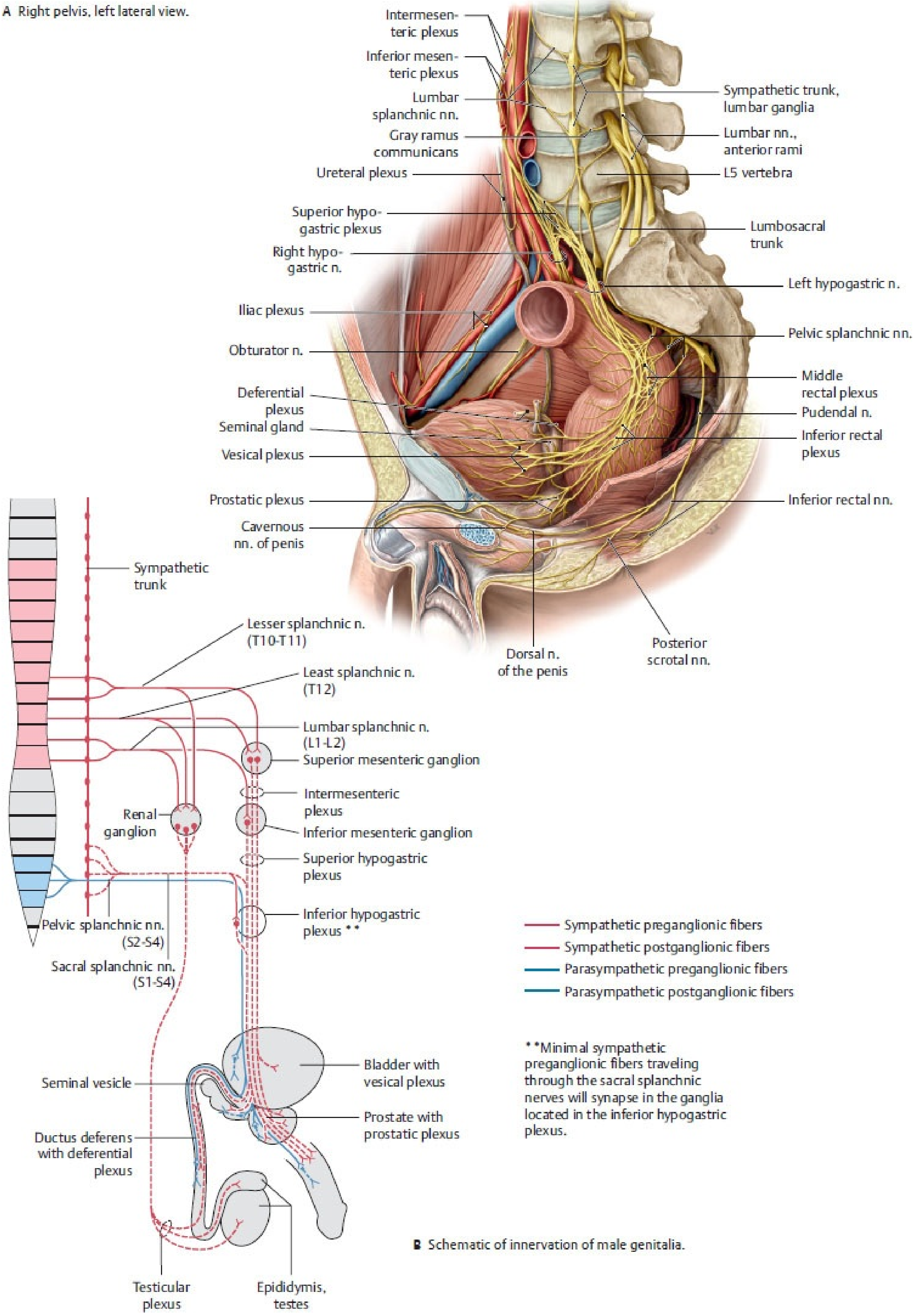

Lesser splanchnic n. (T10-T11)
Least splanchnic n. (T12)
Lumbar splanchnic n. (L1-L2)
Pelvic splanchnic nn. (S2-S4)
Sacral splanchnic nn. (S1-S4)
Hypogastric nn.
**Inferior hypogastric plexus
Uterovaginal plexus
Celiac ganglion
Renal ganglion
Superior mesenteric ganglion
Intermesenteric plexus
Inferior mesenteric ganglion
Superior hypogastric plexus
Ovarian plexus
Uterus
Uterine tube
Ovary
Vagina
Sympathetic preganglionic fibers
Sympathetic postganglionic fibers
Parasympathetic preganglionic fibers
Parasympathetic postganglionic fibers

**Minimal sympathetic preganglionic fibers traveling through the sacral splanchnic nerves will synapse in the ganglia located in the inferior hypogastric plexus.

B Schematic of innervation of female genitalia.

Fig. 14.23 Innervation of the female pelvis

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


A Right pelvis, left lateral view.

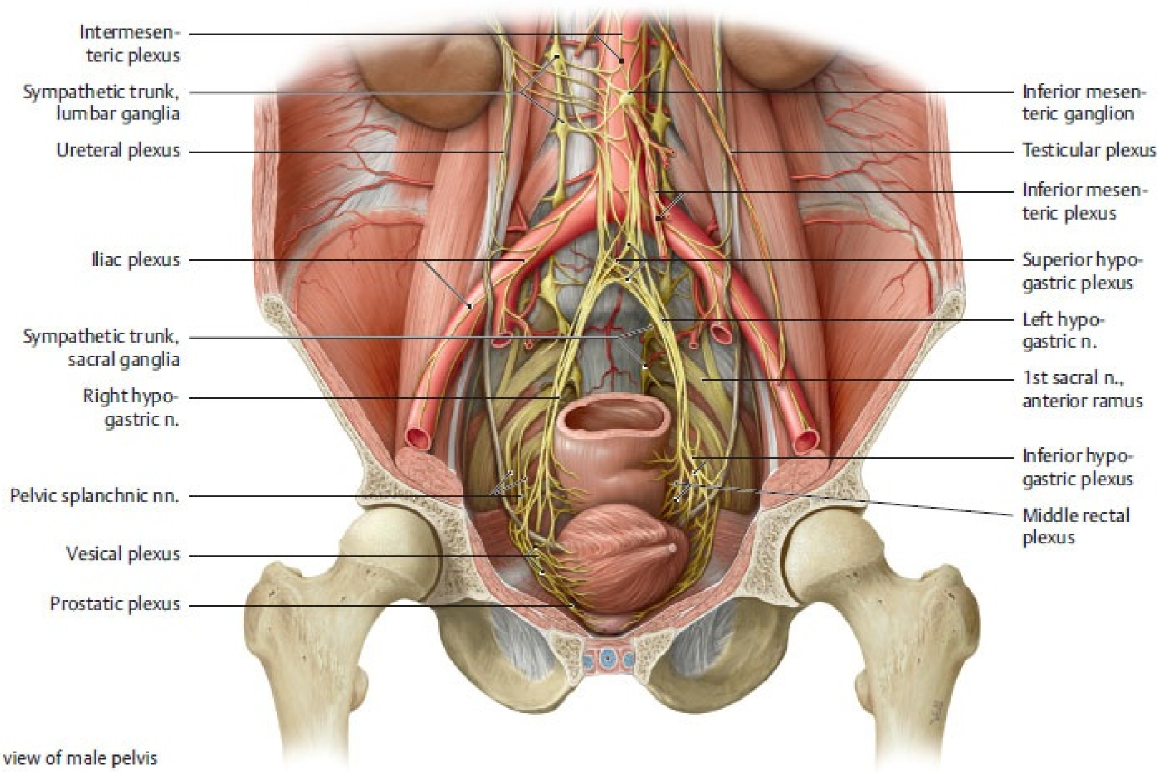
Intermesenteric plexus
Inferior mesenteric plexus
Lumbar splanchnic nn.
Gray ramus communicans
Ureteral plexus
Superior hypogastric plexus
Right hypogastric n.
Iliac plexus
Obturator n.
Deferential plexus
Seminal gland
Vesical plexus
Prostatic plexus
Cavernous nn. of penis
Dorsal n. of the penis
Posterior scrotal nn.
Inferior rectal nn.
Inferior rectal plexus
Pudendal n.
Middle rectal plexus
Pelvic splanchnic nn.
Left hypogastric n.
Lumbosacral trunk
L5 vertebra
Lumbar nn., anterior rami
Sympathetic trunk, lumbar ganglia
Sympathetic trunk
Lesser splanchnic n. (T10-T11)
Least splanchnic n. (T12)
Lumbar splanchnic n. (L1-L2)
Superior mesenteric ganglion
Intermesenteric plexus
Renal ganglion
Inferior mesenteric ganglion
Superior hypogastric plexus
Inferior hypogastric plexus **
Pelvic splanchnic nn. (S2-S4)
Sacral splanchnic nn. (S1-S4)
Seminal vesicle
Bladder with vesical plexus
Prostate with prostatic plexus
Ductus deferens with deferential plexus
Testicular plexus
Epididymis, testes
Sympathetic preganglionic fibers
Sympathetic postganglionic fibers
Parasympathetic preganglionic fibers
Parasympathetic postganglionic fibers

**Minimal sympathetic preganglionic fibers traveling through the sacral splanchnic nerves will synapse in the ganglia located in the inferior hypogastric plexus.

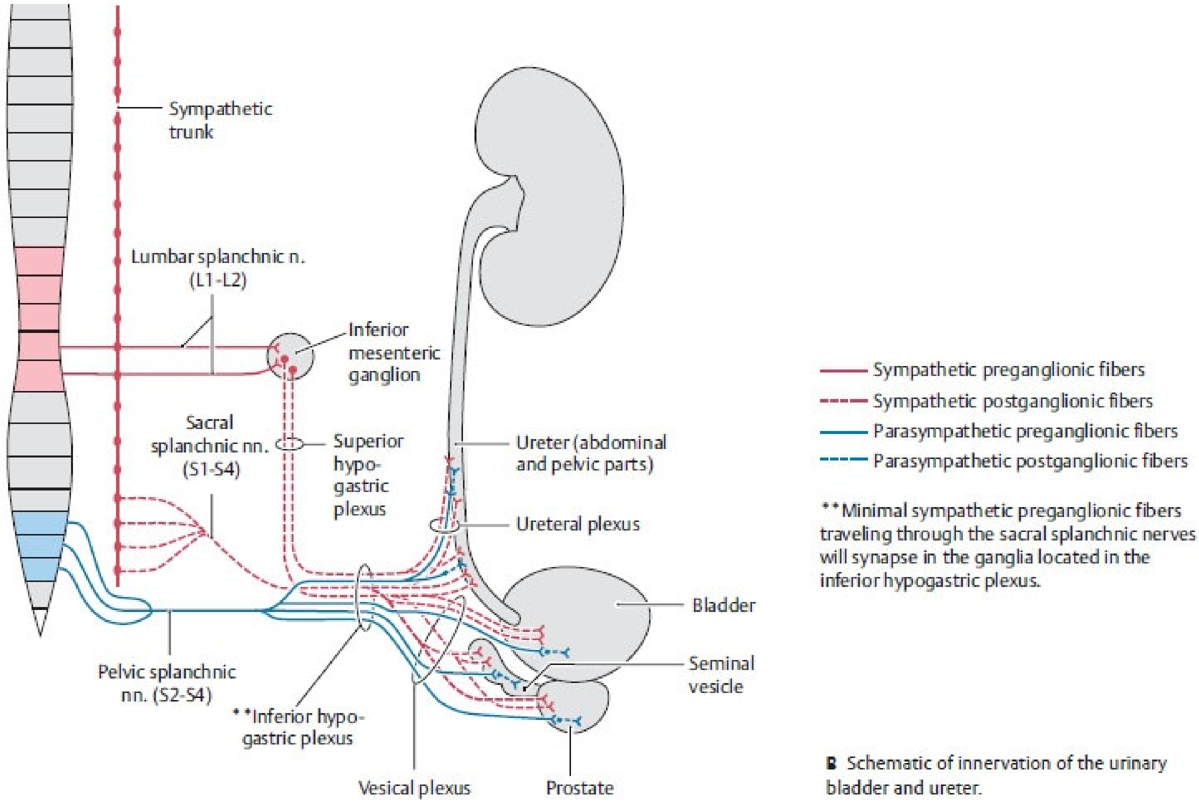
B Schematic of innervation of male genitalia.

Fig. 14.24 Innervation of the female pelvis

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Intermesenteric plexus
Sympathetic trunk, lumbar ganglia
Ureteral plexus
Iliac plexus
Sympathetic trunk, sacral ganglia
Right hypogastric n.
Pelvic splanchnic nn.
Vesical plexus
Prostatic plexus
Inferior mesenteric ganglion
Testicular plexus
Inferior mesenteric plexus
Superior hypogastric plexus
Left hypogastric n.
1st sacral n., anterior ramus
Inferior hypogastric plexus
Middle rectal plexus

A Anterior view of male pelvis and lower abdomen.


Sympathetic trunk
Lumbar splanchnic n. (L1-L2)
Inferior mesenteric ganglion
Sacral splanchnic nn. (S1-S4)
Superior hypogastric plexus
Ureter (abdominal and pelvic parts)
Ureteral plexus
Bladder
Seminal vesicle
Pelvic splanchnic nn. (S2-S4)
**Inferior hypogastric plexus
Vesical plexus
Prostate
Sympathetic preganglionic fibers
Sympathetic postganglionic fibers
Parasympathetic preganglionic fibers
Parasympathetic postganglionic fibers

**Minimal sympathetic preganglionic fibers traveling through the sacral splanchnic nerves will synapse in the ganglia located in the inferior hypogastric plexus.

B Schematic of innervation of the urinary bladder and ureter.

Fig. 14.25 Innervation of the pelvic urinary organs

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

15 Pelvic Viscera

The pelvic cavity contains the male or female genital organs, the pelvic urinary organs, and the rectum. These organs normally reside in the true pelvis, although when enlarged the bladder and uterus can extend into the abdominal cavity.

15.1 Male Genital Structures

The male gonad, the testis, is located in the inguinal region and is discussed in Chapter 10. The seminal glands (vesicles) and prostate gland are male accessory reproductive structures found in the pelvis **(Fig. 15.1)**.

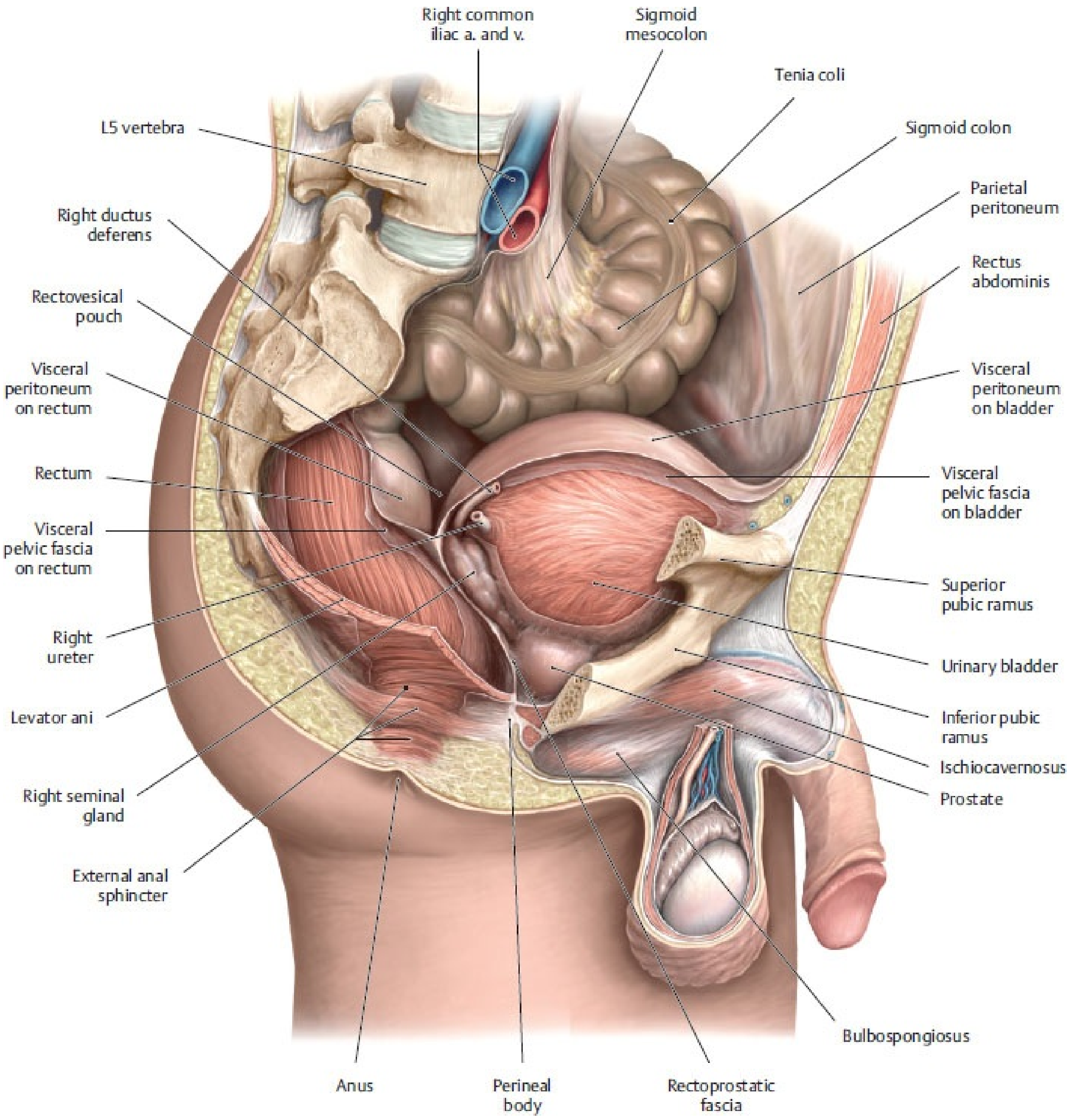

Right common iliac a. and v.
Sigmoid mesocolon
Tenia coli
Sigmoid colon
L5 vertebra
Parietal peritoneum
Right ductus deferens
Rectus abdominis
Rectovesical pouch
Visceral peritoneum on rectum
Visceral peritoneum on bladder
Rectum
Visceral pelvic fascia on bladder
Visceral pelvic fascia on rectum
Superior pubic ramus
Right ureter
Urinary bladder
Levator ani
Inferior pubic ramus
Ischiocavernosus
Right seminal gland
Prostate
External anal sphincter
Bulbospongiosus
Anus
Perineal body
Rectoprostatic fascia

Fig. 15.1 Male pelvis

Parasagittal section, viewed from the right side. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Seminal Glands (Vesicles)

The **seminal glands** are paired convoluted tubules that produce 70% of the seminal fluid **(**Figs. 15.2 and 15.3**)**.

- They lie superior to the prostate, between the urinary bladder and the rectum.
- The seminal glands are subperitoneal, located immediately below the peritoneum of the rectovesical pouch.
- The duct of each seminal gland joins with the ampulla of the ductus deferens to form the **ejaculatory ducts,** which pierce the prostate and drain into the **prostatic urethra.**
- The middle rectal and inferior vesical arteries supply the seminal glands. Veins of similar names accompany the arteries.
- Branches from the pelvic plexus innervate the seminal glands.

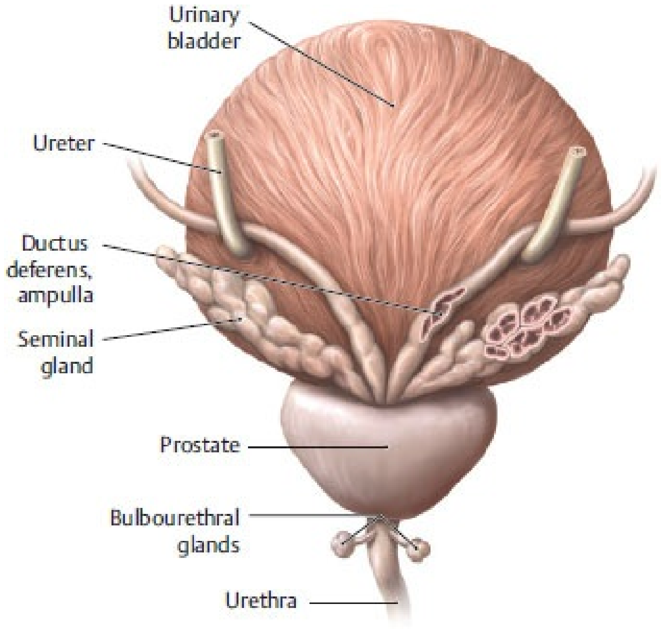

Urinary bladder
Ureter
Ductus deferens, ampulla
Seminal gland
Prostate
Bulbourethral glands
Urethra

Fig. 15.2 Accessory sex glands

The bladder, prostate, seminal glands, and bulbourethral glands, posterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

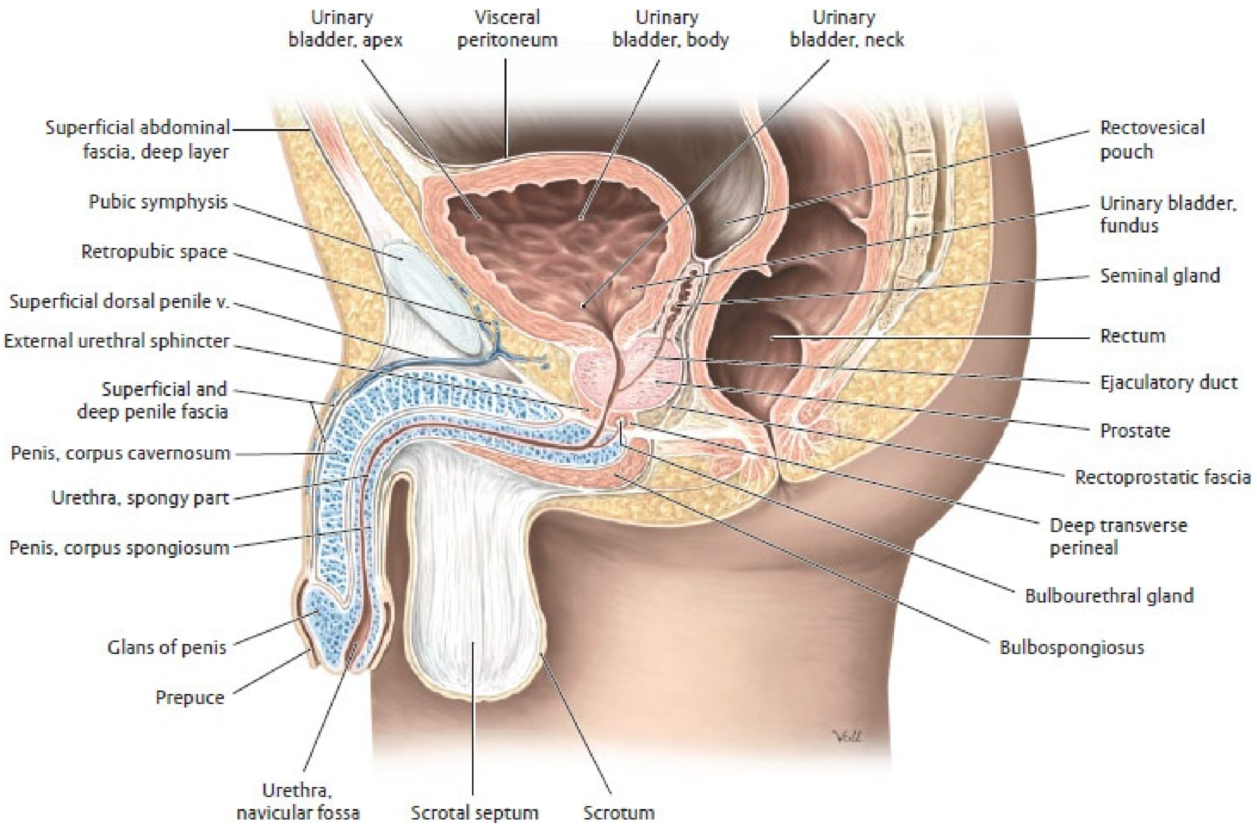

Urinary bladder, apex
Visceral peritoneum
Urinary bladder, body
Urinary bladder, neck
Superficial abdominal fascia, deep layer
Pubic symphysis
Retropubic space
Superficial dorsal penile v.
External urethral sphincter
Superficial and deep penile fascia
Penis, corpus cavernosum
Urethra, spongy part
Penis, corpus spongiosum
Glans of penis
Prepuce
Rectovesical pouch
Urinary bladder, fundus
Seminal gland
Rectum
Ejaculatory duct
Prostate
Rectoprostatic fascia
Deep transverse perineal
Bulbourethral gland
Bulbospongiosus
Urethra, navicular fossa
Scrotal septum
Scrotum

Fig. 15.3 Prostate in situ

Sagittal section through the male pelvis, left lateral view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

The Prostate

The **prostate** is an accessory reproductive gland that produces ~ 25% of the seminal fluid **(Fig. 15.4**; see also **Figs. 15.2** and **15.3)**.

— The base, or superior surface, sits directly below the bladder. The apex points inferiorly and is in contact with the external urethral sphincter.

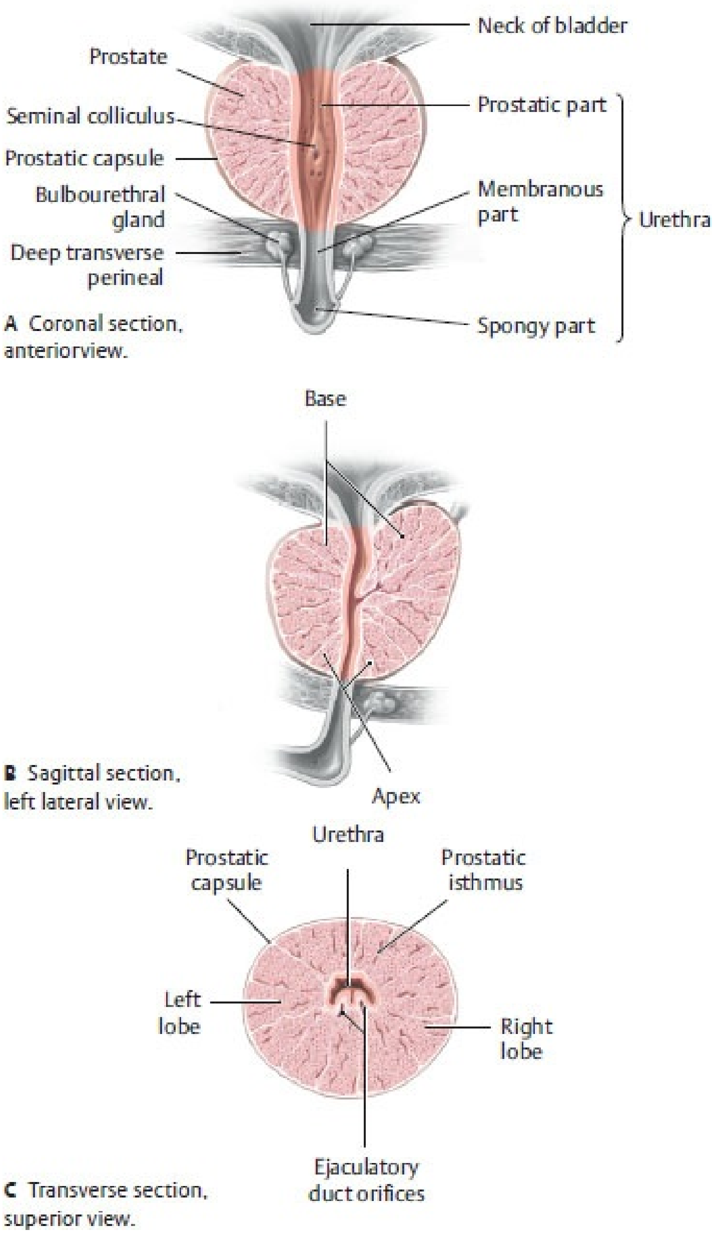
— It is posterior to the lower part of the pubic symphysis and anterior to the **rectovesical septum,** which separates it from the rectum.

— The prostate surrounds the proximal (prostatic) part of the urethra. Secretions from prostatic glands drain into the urethra through numerous prostatic ductules.

— A fibromuscular capsule surrounds the prostate. The prostatic capsule is separated from the outer prostatic sheath (derived from endopelvic fascia) by the prostatic venous plexus.

— **Puboprostatic ligaments,** anterior extensions of the tendinous arch of the pelvic fascia, attach the apex of the prostate (and neck of the bladder) to the pubis (see **Fig. 15.17**). Posterior extensions of the tendinous arch secure it to the sacrum.

— The anatomic lobes of the prostate include the following:
  - A fibromuscular isthmus anterior to the urethra


Neck of bladder
Prostate
Seminal colliculus
Prostatic part
Prostatic capsule
Bulbourethral gland
Membranous part
Urethra
Deep transverse perineal
Spongy part
Base
Apex
Urethra
Prostatic capsule
Prostatic isthmus
Left lobe
Right lobe
Ejaculatory duct orifices

A Coronal section, anteriorview.

B Sagittal section, left lateral view.

C Transverse section, superior view.

Fig. 15.4 Prostate

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

  - Right and left lateral lobes that are subdivided into lobules
  - The lower posterior lobule (sometimes referred to as the posterior lobe), which lies posterior to the urethra and inferior to the ejaculatory ducts, is palpable by digital exam.
  - A poorly defined middle lobe that sits above the lateral lobes between the urethra and ejaculatory ducts and is in close contact with the neck of the bladder
- For clinical purposes, the prostate is divided into three major zones determined by their proximity to the urethra: **periurethral, central** (comparable to the anatomic middle lobe), and **peripheral.** A small **transition zone** consists of two lobes that account for approximately 5% of the glandular prostatic tissue **(Fig 15.5)**.
- Prostatic arteries are usually branches of the inferior vesical arteries. Middle rectal arteries also contribute to the prostatic blood supply (see Section 14.6**)**.

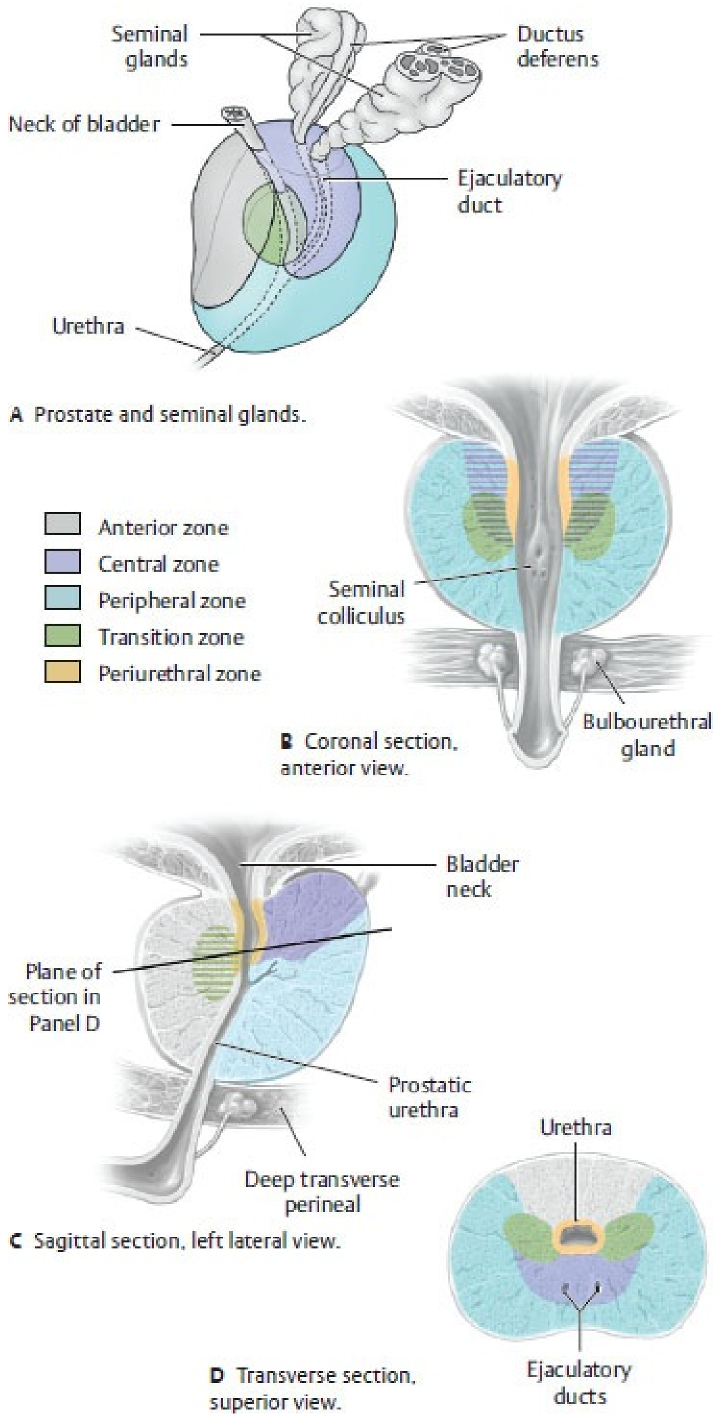

Seminal glands
Ductus deferens
Neck of bladder
Ejaculatory duct
Urethra
A Prostate and seminal glands.
Anterior zone
Central zone
Peripheral zone
Transition zone
Periurethral zone
Seminal colliculus
Bulbourethral gland
B Coronal section, anterior view.
Bladder neck
Plane of section in Panel D
Prostatic urethra
Deep transverse perineal
C Sagittal section, left lateral view.
Urethra
Ejaculatory ducts
D Transverse section, superior view.

Fig. 15.5 Clinical divisions of the prostate

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 15.1: CLINICAL CORRELATION

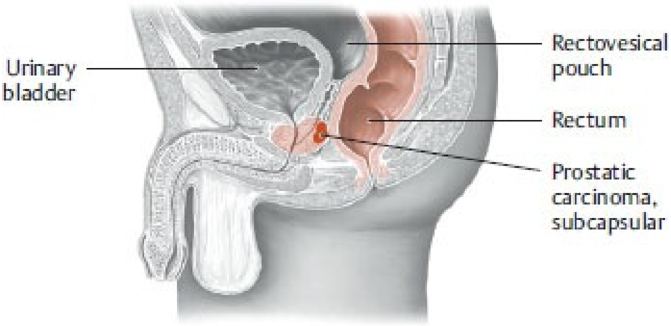
PROSTATECTOMY

Prostatectomy is the surgical removal of the prostate gland. Open radical prostatectomy involves removal of the prostate along with the seminal glands, ductus deferens, and pelvic lymph nodes via a retropubic or perineal incision. Transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP) is performed using a cystoscope that is advanced through the urethra to resect the prostate. Cavernous nerves carrying parasympathetic fibers that are responsible for penile erection run alongside the prostate and are particularly at risk during these procedures.

BOX 15.2: CLINICAL CORRELATION

PROSTATIC CARCINOMA AND HYPERTROPHY

Prostatic carcinoma is one of the most common malignant tumors in older men, often growing at a subcapsular location (deep to the prostatic capsule) in the peripheral zone of the prostate. Unlike benign prostatic hypertrophy, which begins in the central part of the gland, prostatic carcinoma does not cause urinary outflow obstruction in its early stages. Being in the peripheral zone, the tumor is palpable as a firm mass through the anterior wall of the rectum during rectal examination. In certain prostate diseases, especially cancer, increased amounts of a protein, prostate- specific antigen or PSA, appear in the blood. This protein can be measured by a simple blood test.



Most common site of prostatic carcinoma. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th Edition. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- The prostatic venous plexus, continuous with the vesical venous plexus of the bladder, drains to internal iliac veins. The prostatic plexus also communicates with the vertebral venous plexus (see **Fig. 3.17**).
- The lymph vessels of the prostate follow venous pathways to the internal iliac nodes.
- The prostatic nerve plexus is a derivative of the inferior hypogastric plexus. The role of parasympathetic innervation is unclear, but sympathetic nerves cause the smooth muscle of the gland to contract, expelling prostatic secretion into the prostatic urethra during ejaculation.

15.2 Female Genital Structures

Female genital structures, which include the ovaries, uterine tubes, uterus, and vagina, are located in the middle of the pelvis between the bladder anteriorly and the rectum posteriorly **(Figs. 15.6** and **15.7)**.

The Ovary

The **ovary** is the female gonad, an ovoid structure that produces eggs and reproductive hormones and resides in the lateral wall of the pelvis **(Fig. 15.8)**.

- The **ligament of the ovary** attaches the ovary to the supralateral aspect of the uterus.
- The **suspensory ligament of the ovary** is a fold of peritoneum that encloses the ovarian vessels, lymphatics, and nerves as they pass over the pelvic brim to the ovary.
- The **mesovarium** suspends the ovary from the posterior part of the broad ligament.
- The ovarian artery, a branch of the abdominal aorta at L2, supplies the ovary (see Section 14.6).
- A pampiniform plexus, which may converge to form a single ovarian vein, drains the ovary. The right ovarian vein is a direct tributary of the inferior vena cava; the left ovarian vein is a tributary of the left renal vein.
- Lymphatic vessels follow the ovarian vessels superiorly to the lateral aortic nodes.
- Both the ovarian nerve plexus, which follows the ovarian vessels, and the pelvic nerve plexus, which follows the uterine vessels, innervate the ovary.

The Uterine Tubes

The **uterine tubes** (fallopian tubes, oviducts), paired muscular tubes that extend laterally from the horns (supralateral corners) of the uterus, transmit ova from the ovary and sperm from the uterine cavity (see **Fig. 15.8**).

- The uterine tubes are the normal sites of fertilization and are also the most common sites of ectopic pregnancies (implantation of a fertilized ovum outside the uterus).
- The uterine tube has four parts:
    1. The uterine (intramural) part, the segment that passes through the wall of the uterus
    2. The isthmus, the narrowest part
    3. The ampulla, the longest and widest part and normally the site of fertilization
    4. The infundibulum, the trumpet-shaped terminal part that is open to the peritoneal cavity, with fingerlike fimbriae that surround the ovary
- The uterine tube is ensheathed in the upper edge of the broad ligament, where it is supported by its mesosalpinx.
- The uterine tube is supplied by the anastomosing ovarian and uterine arteries and drained by accompanying veins.
- Lymph vessels follow the ovarian veins to the lateral aortic nodes.
- The ovarian and uterine plexuses innervate the uterine tubes.

BOX 15.3: CLINICAL CORRELATION

ECTOPIC PREGNANCY

Implantation of a fertilized ovum outside the uterus can occur anywhere, but the ampulla of the uterine tube is the most common site. Often the tube has been partially blocked by inflammation (salpingitis), preventing the blastocyst from completing its journey to the uterus. If not diagnosed early in the pregnancy, rupture of the uterine tube with consequent hemorrhage into the peritoneal cavity can result in a life-threatening situation for the mother. A ruptured ectopic pregnancy on the right side may be misdiagnosed as a ruptured appendix because both conditions irritate the parietal peritoneum and have similar presentations.

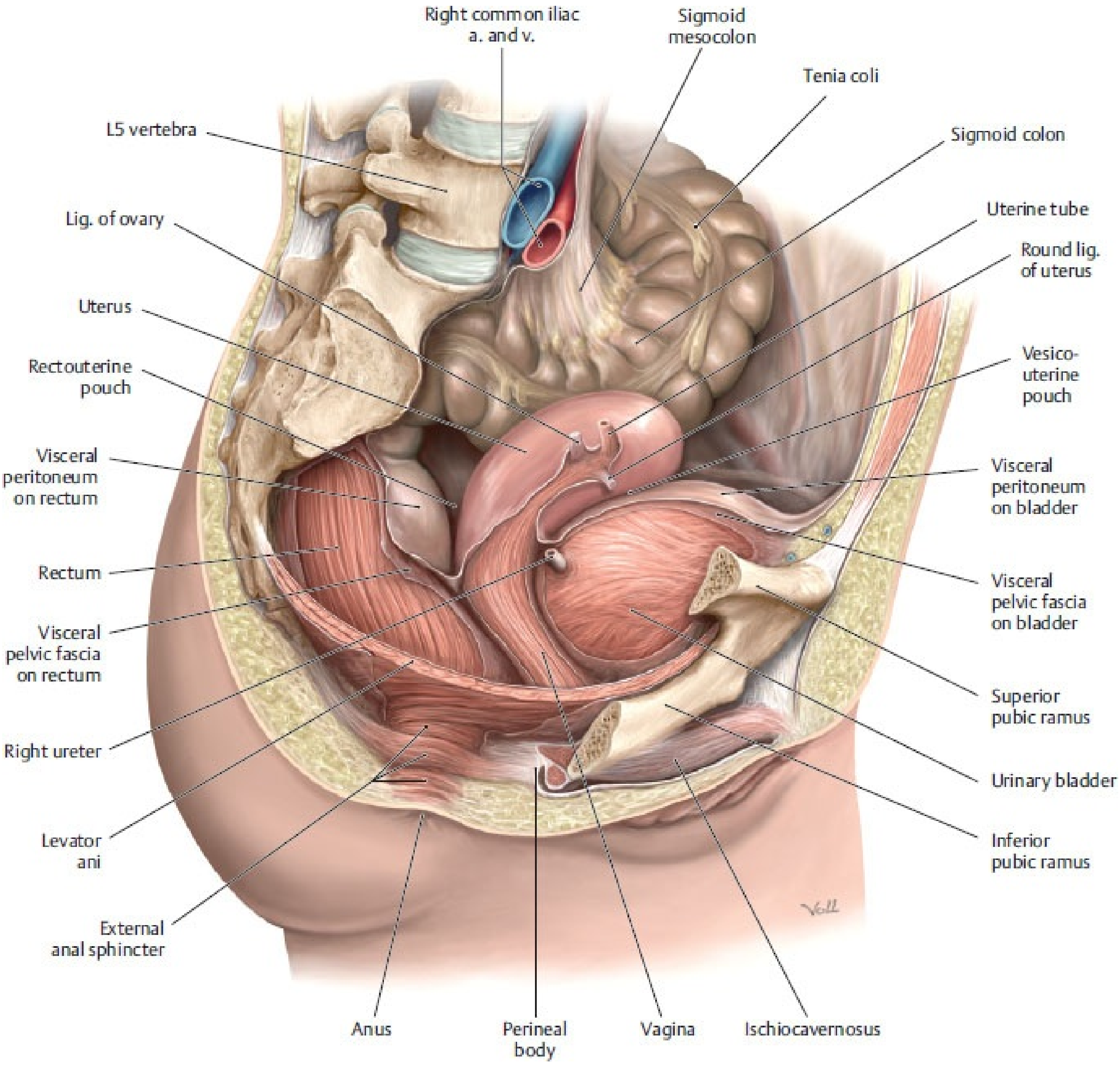

Right common iliac a. and v.
Sigmoid mesocolon
Tenia coli
Sigmoid colon
L5 vertebra
Lig. of ovary
Uterine tube
Round lig. of uterus
Uterus
Rectouterine pouch
Vesico-uterine pouch
Visceral peritoneum on rectum
Visceral peritoneum on bladder
Rectum
Visceral pelvic fascia on bladder
Visceral pelvic fascia on rectum
Superior pubic ramus
Right ureter
Urinary bladder
Levator ani
Inferior pubic ramus
External anal sphincter
Voll
Anus
Perineal body
Vagina
Ischiocavernosus

Fig. 15.6 Female pelvis

Parasagittal section, viewed from the right side. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

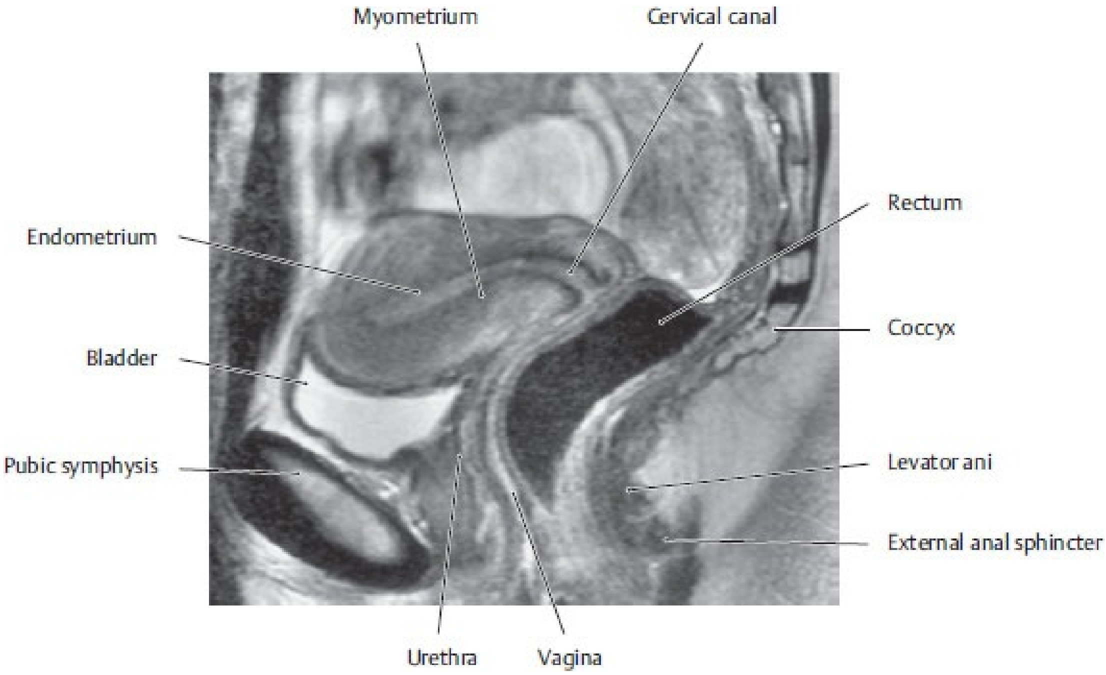
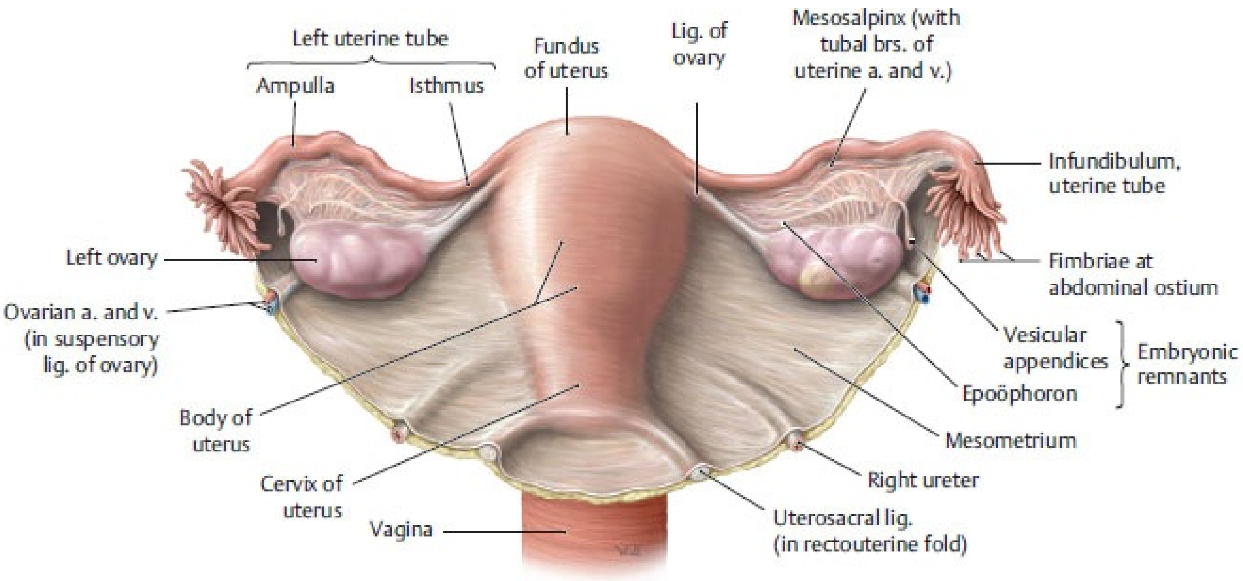
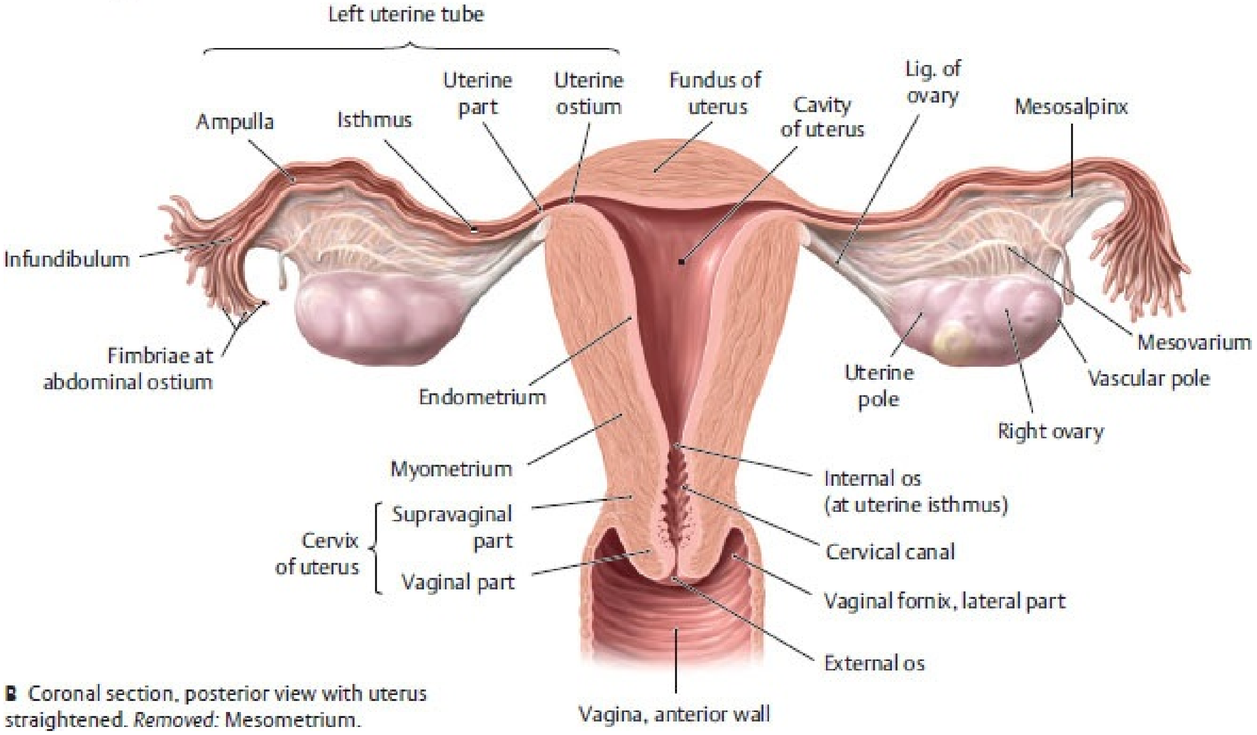

Myometrium
Cervical canal
Rectum
Endometrium
Coccyx
Bladder
Pubic symphysis
Levator ani
External anal sphincter
Urethra
Vagina

Fig. 15.7 MRI of the female pelvis

Sagittal section, left lateral view The uterus in the first half of the menstrual cycle (proliferative phase) with narrow endometrium and relatively low-signal intensity of the myometrium. (From Hamm B, et al. MRT von Abdomen und Becken, 2. Aufl. Stuttgart: Thieme Publishers; 2006).


Left uterine tube
Ampulla
Isthmus
Fundus of uterus
Lig. of ovary
Mesosalpinx (with tubal brs. of uterine a. and v.)
Infundibulum, uterine tube
Left ovary
Fimbriae at abdominal ostium
Ovarian a. and v. (in suspensory lig. of ovary)
Vesicular appendices
Embryonic remnants
Epoöphoron
Body of uterus
Mesometrium
Right ureter
Cervix of uterus
Uterosacral lig. (in rectouterine fold)
Vagina

A Posterosuperior view.


Left uterine tube
Uterine part
Uterine ostium
Fundus of uterus
Lig. of ovary
Cavity of uterus
Mesosalpinx
Ampulla
Isthmus
Infundibulum
Mesovarium
Fimbriae at abdominal ostium
Uterine pole
Vascular pole
Endometrium
Right ovary
Myometrium
Internal os (at uterine isthmus)
Supravaginal part
Cervix of uterus
Cervical canal
Vaginal part
Vaginal fornix, lateral part
External os
Vagina, anterior wall

B Coronal section, posterior view with uterus straightened. *Removed:* Mesometrium.

Fig. 15.8 Uterus, ovaries, and uterine tubes

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

The Uterus

The **uterus** is a pear-shaped muscular organ located in the center of the pelvis, posterior to the bladder and anterior to the rectum. It is the site of implantation of the fertilized egg, subsequent development of the embryo, and parturition of the fetus.

- The uterus (see **Fig. 15.8**) has two parts**:**
  1. The **body** is the superior two thirds of the uterus and includes
     - the **fundus,** the uppermost part above the openings of the uterine tubes, and
     - the uterine **isthmus,** a narrow inferior segment that extends into the cervix.
  2. The **cervix** is the narrow inferior third of the uterus and its least mobile part.
     - A supravaginal part sits above the vagina.
     - A vaginal part protrudes into the upper vagina and is surrounded by the vaginal fornices (upper recesses).
- The **uterine cavity,** a narrow space within the uterine body,
  - communicates with the lumen of the uterine tubes where they enter at the uterine horns, and
  - extends inferiorly through the **internal os** (orifice) to the **cervical canal** and terminates where the **external os** opens into the vagina.

BOX 15.4: DEVELOPMENTAL CORRELATION

BICORNUATE UTERUS

The embryonic uterus is formed from the fusion of two paramesonephric ducts. When these ducts fail to fuse properly, a bicornuate uterus results in which the upper part of the uterus is bifurcated. The caudal part of the uterus is usually normal. Although a normal pregnancy is possible with this malformation, there is a greater risk of recurrent pregnancy loss, preterm birth, and malpresentation of the baby (e.g., the baby may be in a breech or transverse position).

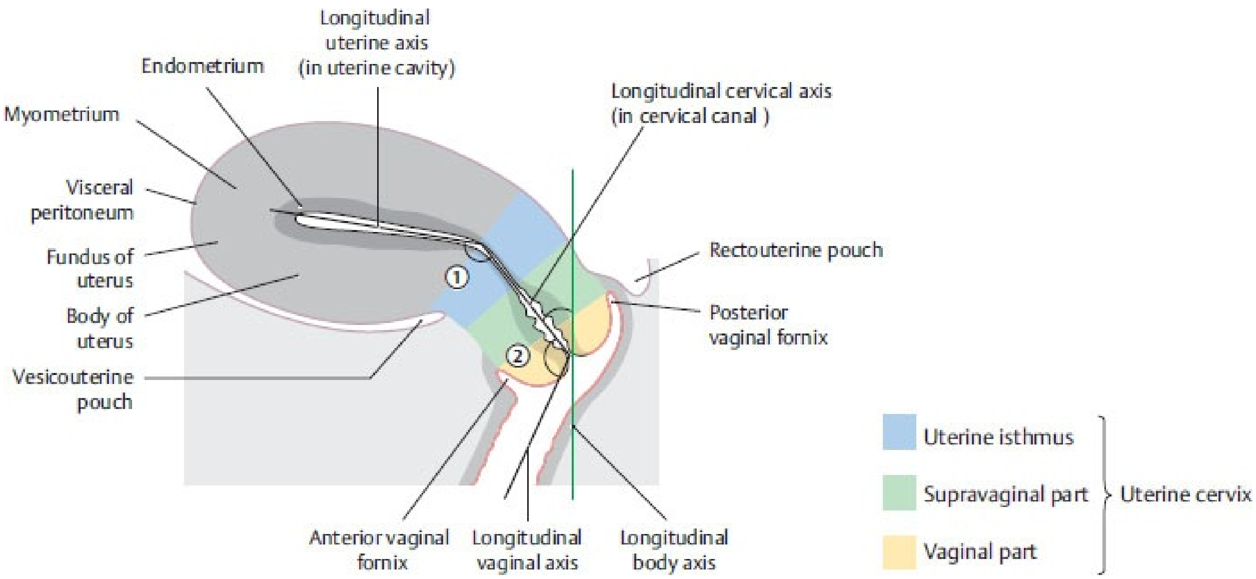

Longitudinal uterine axis (in uterine cavity)
Endometrium
Myometrium
Visceral peritoneum
Fundus of uterus
Body of uterus
Vesicouterine pouch
Longitudinal cervical axis (in cervical canal)
Rectouterine pouch
Posterior vaginal fornix
①
②
Anterior vaginal fornix
Longitudinal vaginal axis
Longitudinal body axis
Uterine isthmus
Supravaginal part
Vaginal part
Uterine cervix

Fig. 15.9 Normal curvature and position of the uterus

Midsagittal section, left lateral view. The position of the uterus can be described in terms of:

① Flexion, the angle between the longitudinal cervical axis and longitudinal uterine axis; the normal position is anteflexion.

② Version, the angle between the longitudinal cervical axis and longitudinal vaginal axis; the normal position is anteversion.

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

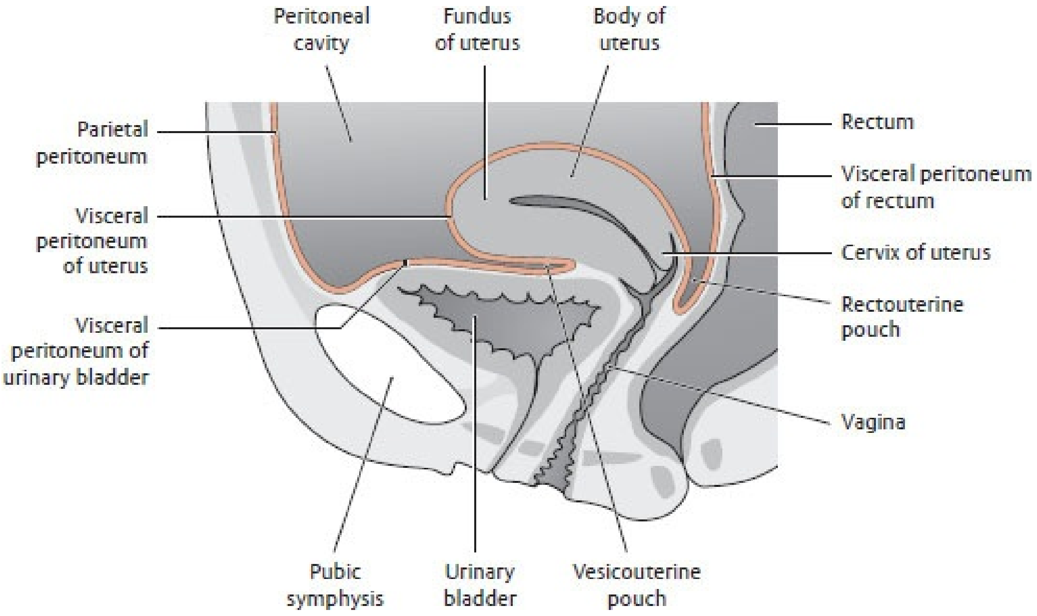

Peritoneal cavity
Fundus of uterus
Body of uterus
Parietal peritoneum
Visceral peritoneum of uterus
Visceral peritoneum of urinary bladder
Rectum
Visceral peritoneum of rectum
Cervix of uterus
Rectouterine pouch
Vagina
Pubic symphysis
Urinary bladder
Vesicouterine pouch

Fig. 15.10 Peritoneum in the female pelvis

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- Although the body of the uterus is mobile, its position changes with the fullness of the bladder and rectum. Its normal position is anteflexed and anteverted **(Fig. 15.9)**.
    - **Flexion** describes the angle between the long axis of the upper uterine cavity and the isthmus and cervical canal. In an anteflexed uterus, the long axis of the uterine body is tipped anteriorly; a **retroflexed** uterus is tipped posteriorly.
    - **Version** describes the angle between the cervix and vagina. In an anteverted uterus, the axis of the cervix is bent anteriorly; in a **retroverted** uterus, the cervix is bent posteriorly.
- Peritoneum covers the body of the uterus, extending as far inferiorly as the cervix on its posterior surface. The uterus is flanked anteriorly by the vesicouterine pouch and posteriorly by the rectouterine pouch **(Fig. 15.10)**.
- Uterine ligaments that arise from the uterine body include the broad ligament and the round ligaments of the uterus **(Fig. 15.11)**.
    - The **broad ligament** is a double fold of peritoneum that extends laterally from each side of the uterus to the sidewalls of the pelvis. The parts of the broad ligament **(Fig. 15.12)** are
        - the **mesosalpinx,** which ensheaths the uterine tube;
        - the **mesovarium,** a posterior extension, which suspends the ovary; and
        - the **mesometrium,** which extends from the uterine body below the mesovarium to the sidewall of the pelvis.
    - The paired **round ligaments of the uterus,** which originate near the fundus from each side of the uterus, pass through the deep inguinal rings, traverse the inguinal canals, and insert in the labia majora of the perineum.
- Uterine ligaments that arise from the cervix include the cardinal and the uterosacral ligaments **(Fig. 15.13** and **15.14)**.
    - The paired **cardinal** (transverse cervical) **ligaments** are thickenings of endopelvic fascia that connect the uterine cervix to the pelvic sidewall. They are located at the base of the broad ligament and transmit the uterine vessels.

- The paired **uterosacral ligaments** are thickenings of endopelvic fascia that connect the uterine cervix to the sacrum and help to maintain the anteverted position of the uterus.

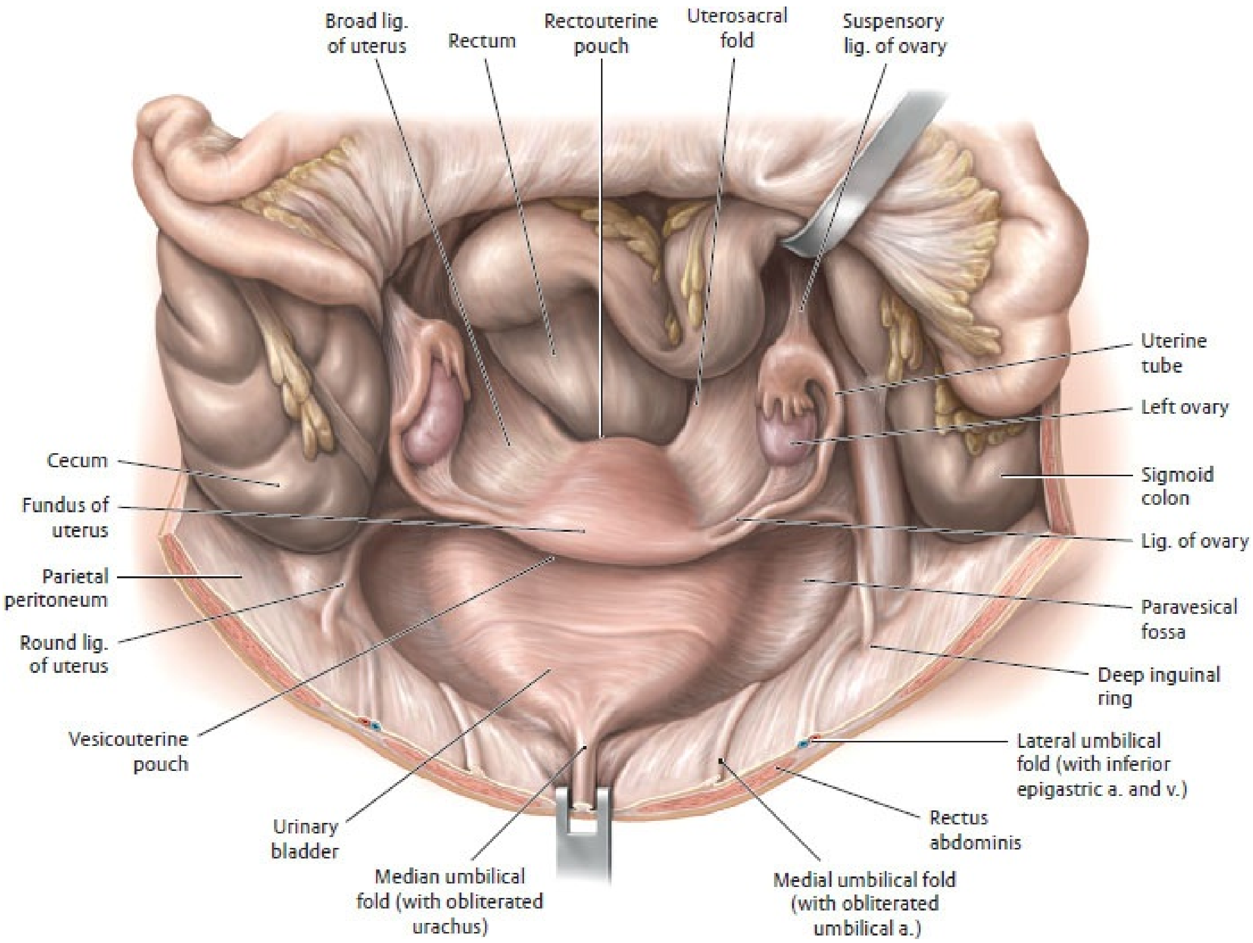

Broad lig. of uterus
Rectum
Rectouterine pouch
Uterosacral fold
Suspensory lig. of ovary
Uterine tube
Left ovary
Sigmoid colon
Lig. of ovary
Paravesical fossa
Deep inguinal ring
Lateral umbilical fold (with inferior epigastric a. and v.)
Rectus abdominis
Medial umbilical fold (with obliterated umbilical a.)
Median umbilical fold (with obliterated urachus)
Urinary bladder
Vesicouterine pouch
Round lig. of uterus
Parietal peritoneum
Fundus of uterus
Cecum

Fig. 15.11 Peritoneal relationships in the female pelvis

Lesser pelvis, anterosuperior view. Retracted: Small intestine loops and colon (portions). (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

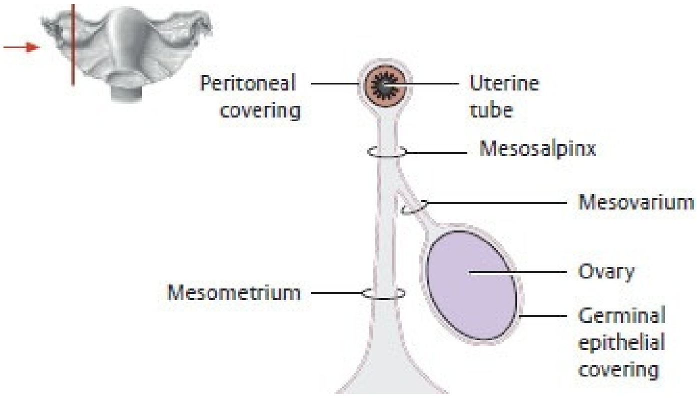


Fig. 15.12 Mesenteries of the broad ligament

Sagittal section. The broad ligament of the uterus is a combination of the mesosalpinx, mesovarium, and mesometrium. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- The uterine artery, the primary blood supply to the uterus (see Section 14.6), traverses the cardinal ligament and anastomoses superiorly with the ovarian artery and inferiorly with the vaginal artery.
- A uterine venous plexus receives the uterine veins and drains to the internal iliac vein.
- Lymphatic drainage of the uterus is complex but generally follows the uterine veins or the uterine ligaments (see Section 14.6).
  - The uterine fundus drains to para-aortic nodes via the ovarian veins.
  - The supralateral part of the uterus drains to superficial inguinal nodes via the round ligament.
  - The uterine body drains to external iliac nodes via the broad ligament.
  - The cervix drains to internal iliac and sacral nodes via the cardinal and uterosacral ligaments.
- The uterovaginal nerve plexus, derived from the inferior hypogastric plexus, innervates the uterus (see **Fig. 14.23**).

The Vagina

The **vagina** is a fibromuscular tube that extends from the cervix of the uterus to the vaginal orifice in the perineum **(Figs. 15.15** and **15.16)**. It serves as the inferior part of the birth canal and the conduit for menstrual fluid, and it accommodates the penis during sexual intercourse.

- The vagina is posterior to the bladder and urethra and anterior to the rectum.

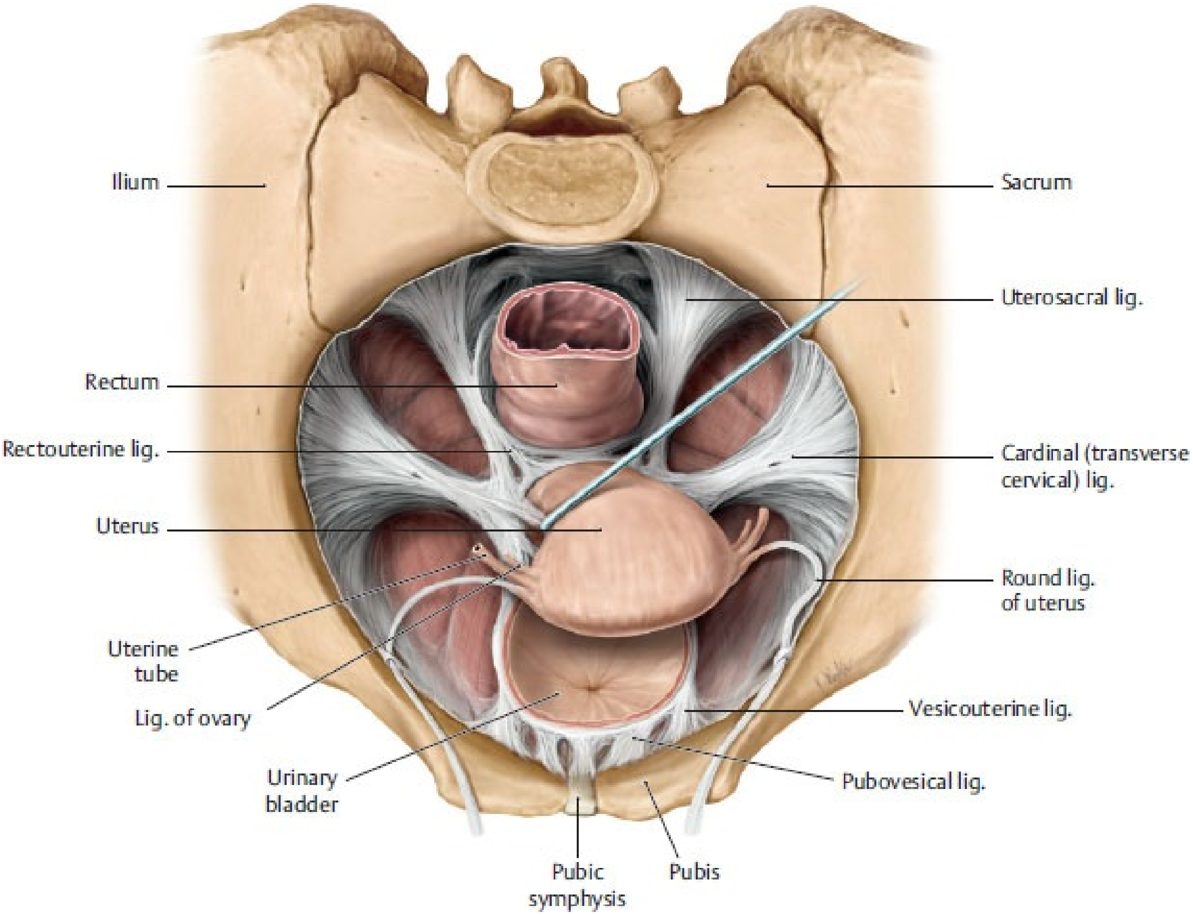

Ilium
Sacrum
Uterosacral lig.
Rectum
Rectouterine lig.
Cardinal (transverse cervical) lig.
Uterus
Round lig. of uterus
Uterine tube
Lig. of ovary
Vesicouterine lig.
Urinary bladder
Pubovesical lig.
Pubic symphysis
Pubis

Fig. 15.13 Ligaments of the female pelvis

Superior view. *Removed*: Peritoneum, neurovasculature, and superior portion of bladder to demonstrate only the fascial condensations. Deep pelvic ligaments support the uterus within the pelvic cavity and prevent uterine prolapse, the downward displacement of the uterus into the vagina. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

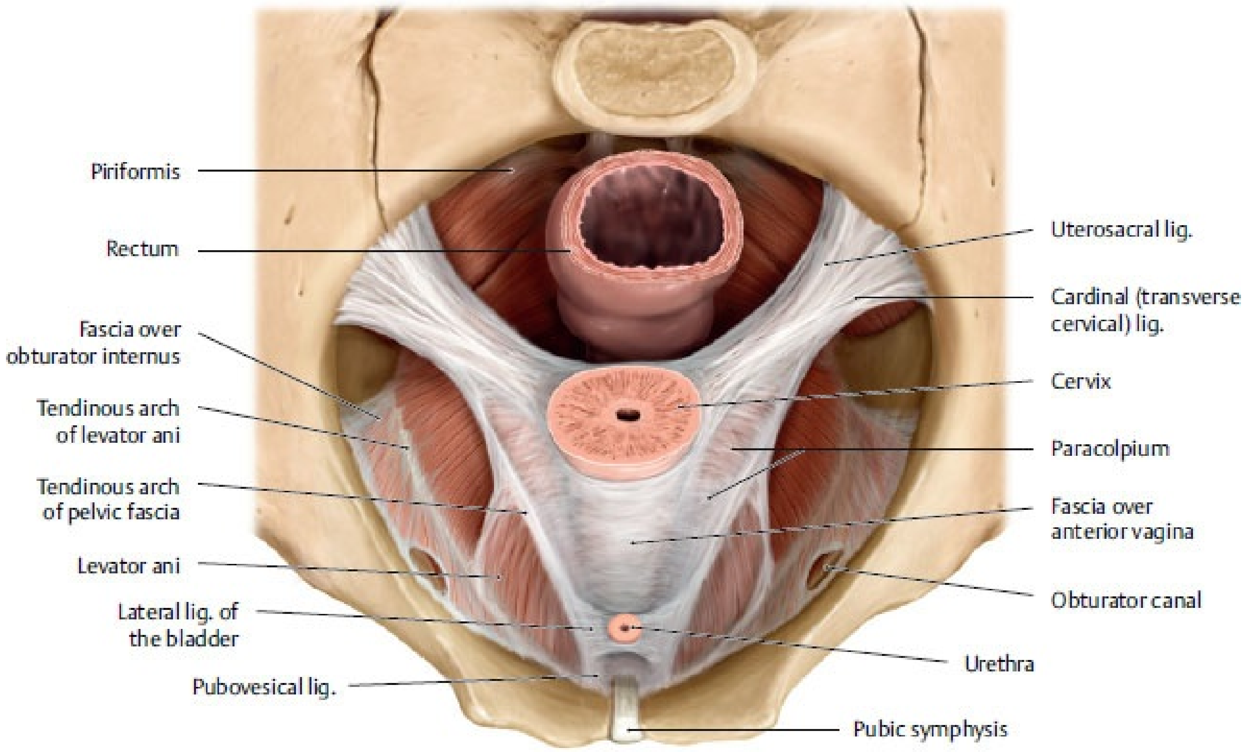

Piriformis
Rectum
Fascia over obturator internus
Tendinous arch of levator ani
Tendinous arch of pelvic fascia
Levator ani
Lateral lig. of the bladder
Pubovesical lig.
Uterosacral lig.
Cardinal (transverse cervical) lig.
Cervix
Paracolpium
Fascia over anterior vagina
Obturator canal
Urethra
Pubic symphysis

Fig. 15.14 Ligaments of the deep pelvis in the female

Superior view. Uterosacral ligaments and paracolpium support and maintain the position of the cervix and vagina in the pelvis. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

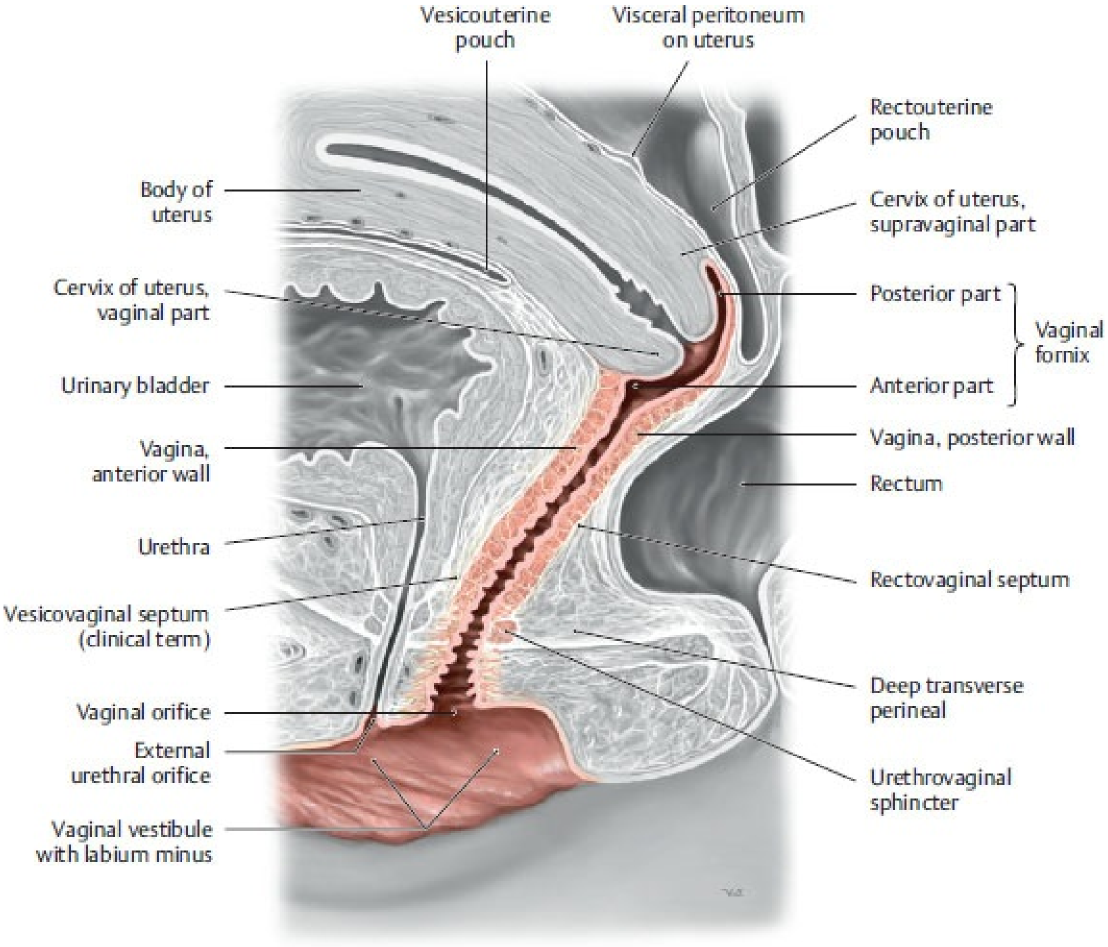

Vesicouterine pouch
Visceral peritoneum on uterus
Rectouterine pouch
Body of uterus
Cervix of uterus, supravaginal part
Cervix of uterus, vaginal part
Posterior part
Vaginal fornix
Anterior part
Urinary bladder
Vagina, posterior wall
Vagina, anterior wall
Rectum
Urethra
Rectovaginal septum
Vesicovaginal septum (clinical term)
Deep transverse perineal
Vaginal orifice
External urethral orifice
Urethrovaginal sphincter
Vaginal vestibule with labium minus

Fig. 15.15 Vagina

Midsagittal section, left lateral view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

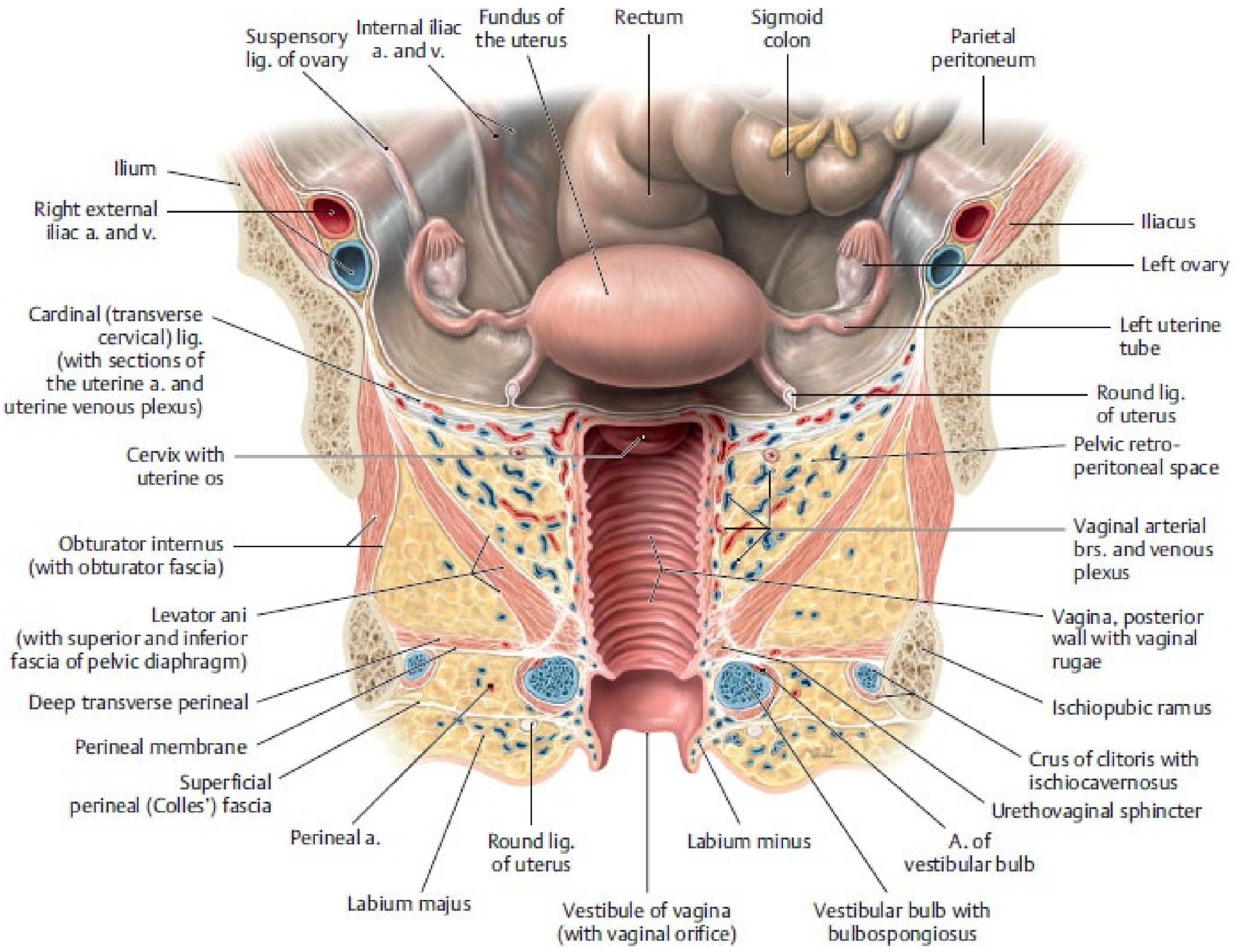

Suspensory lig. of ovary
Internal iliac a. and v.
Fundus of the uterus
Rectum
Sigmoid colon
Parietal peritoneum
Ilium
Right external iliac a. and v.
Iliacus
Left ovary
Cardinal (transverse cervical) lig. (with sections of the uterine a. and uterine venous plexus)
Left uterine tube
Round lig. of uterus
Cervix with uterine os
Pelvic retro-peritoneal space
Obturator internus (with obturator fascia)
Vaginal arterial brs. and venous plexus
Levator ani (with superior and inferior fascia of pelvic diaphragm)
Vagina, posterior wall with vaginal rugae
Deep transverse perineal
Ischiopubic ramus
Perineal membrane
Crus of clitoris with ischiocavernosus
Superficial perineal (Colles') fascia
Urethovaginal sphincter
Perineal a.
Round lig. of uterus
Labium minus
A. of vestibular bulb
Labium majus
Vestibule of vagina (with vaginal orifice)
Vestibular bulb with bulbospongiosus

Fig. 15.16 Female genital organs: Coronal section

Anterior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- It is normally flattened with its anterior and posterior walls in contact.
- Connections to the sacrum via the uterosacral ligaments and to the tendinous arch of the pelvic fascia on the side wall of the pelvis via the **paracolpium** stabilize the vagina, especially during childbirth (see **Fig 15.14**).
- The vaginal fornix, which has anterior, lateral, and posterior parts, is a recess that surrounds the lower cervix as it protrudes into the upper vagina.
  - The posterior fornix is in contact with the rectouterine pouch, thereby providing access to the peritoneal cavity. The anterior fornix is shorter and lies against the posterior wall of the bladder.
- The internal iliac artery supplies the vagina through its uterine, vaginal, and internal pudendal branches (see Section 14.6).

- Veins of the vagina contribute to the uterovaginal venous plexus, which drains to the internal iliac vein.
- Lymphatic vessels of the vagina drain to several groups of nodes.
  - The superior part of the vagina drains to external or internal iliac nodes.
  - The inferior part of the vagina drains to sacral and common iliac nodes.
  - The vaginal orifice drains to superficial inguinal nodes.
- The uterovaginal nerve plexus, an extension of the inferior hypogastric plexus, innervates the superior three fourths of the vagina (see **Fig. 14.23**).
- A deep perineal branch of the pudendal nerve, a branch of the sacral plexus, innervates the lowest vaginal segment (see **Fig. 14.20**). This somatically innervated segment is the only part of the vagina that is sensitive to touch.

BOX 15.5: CLINICAL CORRELATION

CULDOCENTESIS

Culdocentesis is a procedure in which peritoneal fluid is extracted from the rectouterine pouch by needle aspiration. The needle is advanced through the posterior fornix of the vagina. No fluid or a small amount of clear fluid is normal, but purulent fluid is suggestive of pelvic inflammatory disease (PID). The presence of blood is an indication for emergency surgery.

15.3 Pelvic Urinary Organs

The pelvic urinary organs include the distal ureters, the urinary bladder, and the urethra.

The Ureters

Each ureter crosses over the brim of the pelvis at the bifurcation of the common iliac artery and descends along the lateral wall near the ischial spine. It runs anteriorly and enters the posterolateral wall of the bladder.

- In males, the ureter passes under the pelvic portion of the ductus deferens and enters the bladder lateral and superior to the free ends of the seminal glands **(Fig. 15.17**; see also **Fig. 15.2)**.
- In females, the ureter passes inferior to the uterine arteries within the cardinal ligament, ~ 2 cm lateral to the vaginal part of the cervix **(Fig. 15.18)**.
- The most reliable blood supply to the pelvic part of the ureter is the uterine

artery in females and the inferior vesical artery in males. Veins of similar names accompany the arteries.

- The pelvic part of the ureter derives its innervation from the inferior hypogastric plexuses (**Fig. 14.25**).
- Visceral sensory fibers follow sympathetic nerves to spinal cord levels T11–L2; therefore, ureteric pain is usually felt in the ipsilateral inguinal region.

The Urinary Bladder

The bladder is a muscular reservoir for the temporary storage of urine. Although normally located in the true pelvis, when full it may extend superiorly into the abdomen.

- It lies directly posterior to the pubic symphysis, separated from it by the retropubic space. Posteriorly, it is related to the rectum in the male (see **Fig. 15.1**) and the upper vagina in the female (see **Fig. 15.6**).
- It is covered by peritoneum only on its superior surface.
- The bladder is tetrahedral with superior, posterior, and two inferolateral surfaces **(Fig. 15.19)**. It has four parts:
    1. The **apex** points toward the pubic symphysis. The median umbilical ligament extends from the apex to the umbilicus.

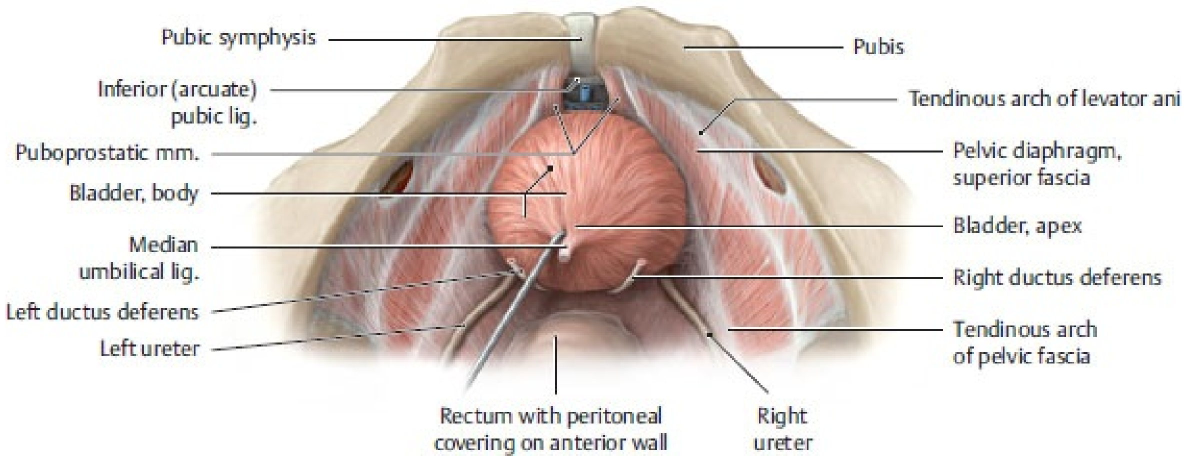

Pubic symphysis
Inferior (arcuate) pubic lig.
Puboprostatic mm.
Bladder, body
Median umbilical lig.
Left ductus deferens
Left ureter
Rectum with peritoneal covering on anterior wall
Right ureter
Pubis
Tendinous arch of levator ani
Pelvic diaphragm, superior fascia
Bladder, apex
Right ductus deferens
Tendinous arch of pelvic fascia

Fig. 15.17 Ureter and bladder in the male pelvis

Superior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

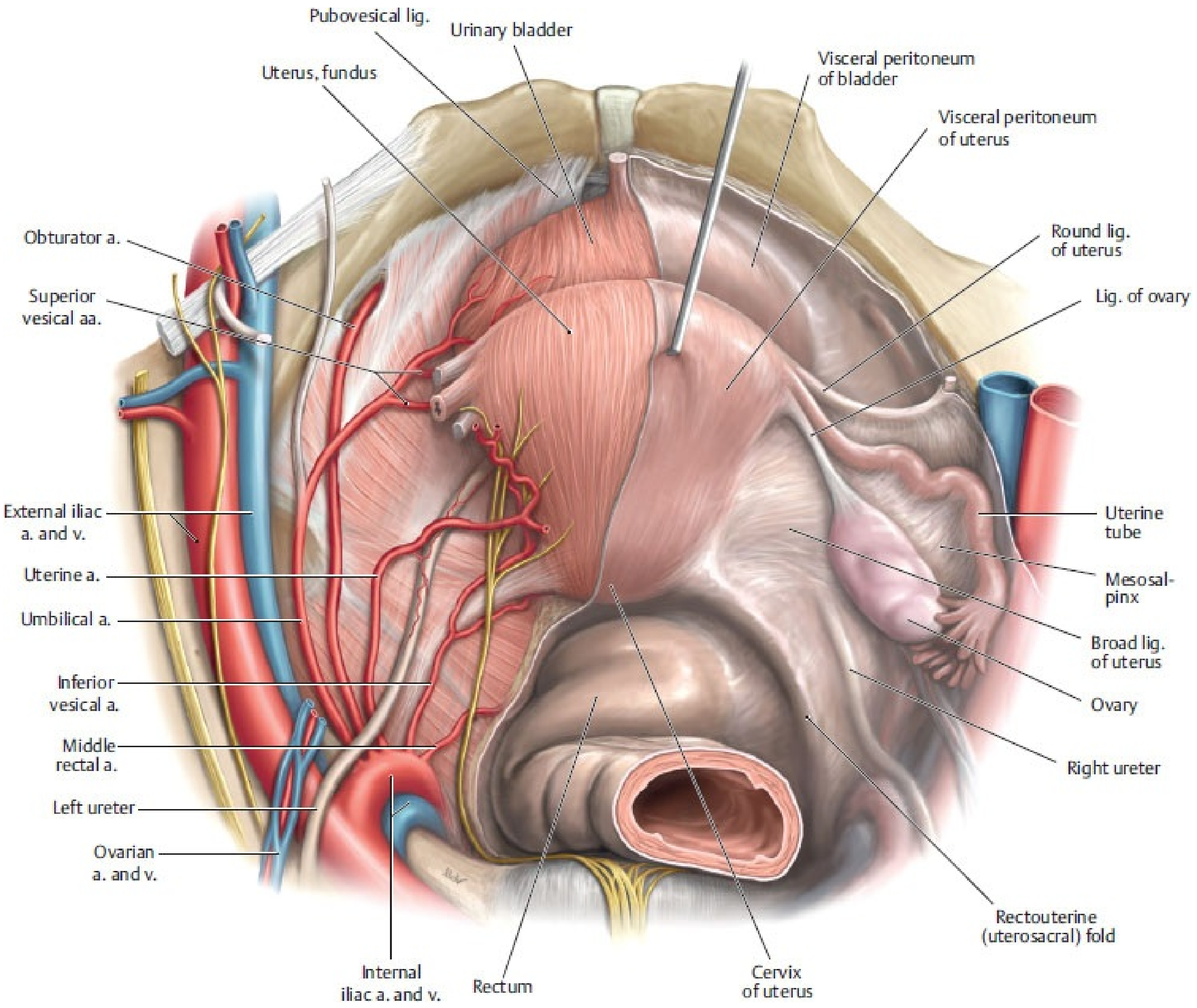
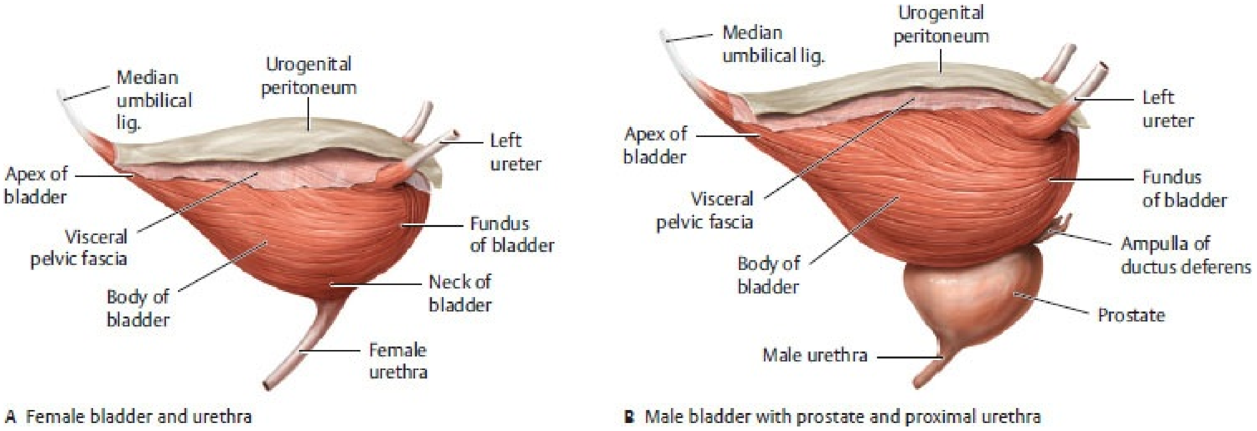

Pubovesical lig.
Urinary bladder
Uterus, fundus
Visceral peritoneum of bladder
Visceral peritoneum of uterus
Obturator a.
Round lig. of uterus
Superior vesical aa.
Lig. of ovary
External iliac a. and v.
Uterine tube
Uterine a.
Mesosalpinx
Umbilical a.
Broad lig. of uterus
Inferior vesical a.
Ovary
Middle rectal a.
Right ureter
Left ureter
Ovarian a. and v.
Rectouterine (uterosacral) fold
Internal iliac a. and v.
Rectum
Cervix of uterus

Fig. 15.18 Ureter in the female pelvis

Superior view. *Removed from right side*: Peritoneum and broad ligament of uterus. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Median
umbilical
lig.
Urogenital
peritoneum
Left
ureter
Apex of
bladder
Visceral
pelvic fascia
Fundus
of bladder
Body of
bladder
Neck of
bladder
Female
urethra
Median
umbilical lig.
Urogenital
peritoneum
Left
ureter
Apex of
bladder
Fundus
of bladder
Visceral
pelvic fascia
Ampulla of
ductus deferens
Body of
bladder
Prostate
Male urethra

A Female bladder and urethra

B Male bladder with prostate and proximal urethra

Fig. 15.19 Structure of the bladder

Left lateral view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

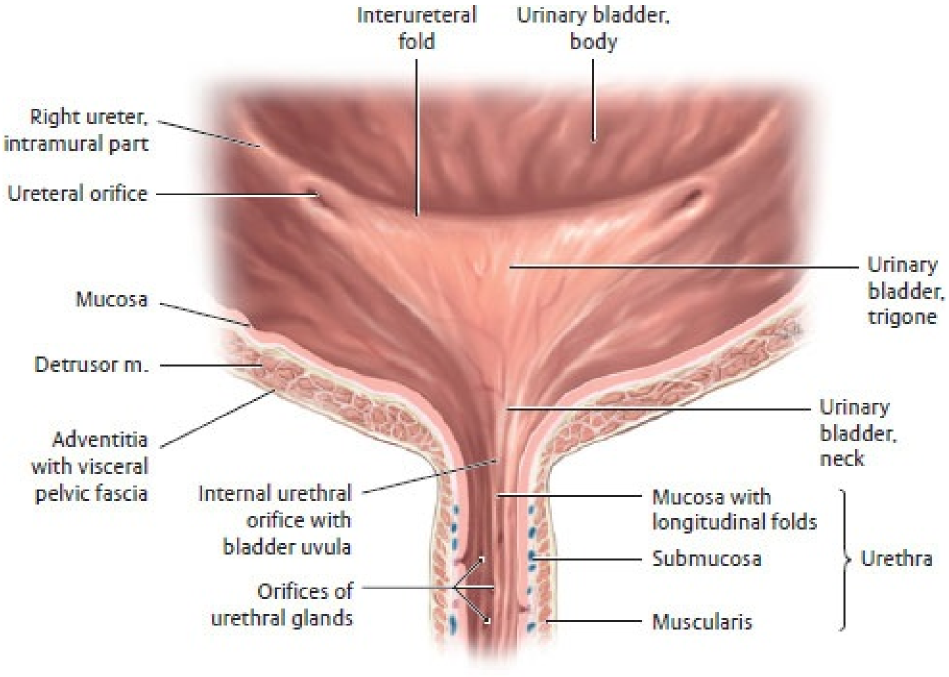

Interureteral
fold
Urinary bladder,
body
Right ureter,
intramural part
Ureteral orifice
Urinary
bladder,
trigone
Mucosa
Detrusor m.
Urinary
bladder,
neck
Adventitia
with visceral
pelvic fascia
Internal urethral
orifice with
bladder uvula
Mucosa with
longitudinal folds
Submucosa
Urethra
Orifices of
urethral glands
Muscularis

Fig. 15.20 Trigone of the bladder

Coronal section, anterior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

2. The **fundus** forms the bladder base, or posterior wall.
3. The **body** makes up most of the bladder.

4. The **neck** is the lowest and least mobile region.

- The muscles of the bladder consist of the
  - **detrusor muscle** with internal and external longitudinal layers and middle circular layer, which are responsible for bladder emptying
  - **internal urethral sphincter** in the neck of the bladder, which is responsible for bladder closure, and in the male contracts during ejaculation
- The neck of the bladder is firmly attached
  - to the pubis by anterior extensions of the tendinous arch of the pelvic fascia, the **pubovesical ligaments** in females, and puboprostatic ligaments in males. These provide an aponeurotic attachment for the paired **pubovesical muscles** (see **Fig. 15.17**). These structures form an important vesicourethral suspension mechanism that suspends the bladder neck and ensures continence.
  - to the lateral pelvic walls by condensations of endopelvic The urethra is the muscular conduit for urine in the female and for fascia, the lateral ligaments of the bladder (see **Fig.15.14**).
- The internal surface of the base of the bladder is marked by the **trigone**, a smooth triangular region (**Fig. 15.20**). The corners of the triangle are formed posterolaterally by the slit-like openings of the right and left ureters and anteriorly by the urethral orifice. The posterior circumference of the internal urethral sphincter forms the morphological basis of the trigone.
- The bladder is highly distensible and in most individuals may hold up to 600 to 800 mL (painfully), although micturition (urination) usually occurs at a much smaller volume. Normally, no urine remains in the bladder after voiding.
- The superior vesical arteries, with contributions from the inferior vesical arteries (in males) and vaginal arteries (in females), supply the bladder (see Section 14.6).
- The vesical venous plexus surrounds the inferolateral surfaces of the bladder and drains to the internal iliac veins. The plexus communicates with the prostatic plexus in males, with the uterovaginal plexus in females, and with the vertebral venous plexus in both sexes.
- Lymph from the bladder drains to internal and external iliac nodes.
- The vesical nerve plexus of the bladder is a derivative of the inferior hypogastric plexus (see **Fig. 14.25**).
  - Sympathetic stimulation relaxes the detrusor muscle and contracts the internal sphincter, thus inhibiting micturition.
  - Parasympathetic nerves stimulate the detrusor muscle to contract while

inhibiting the internal sphincter, thereby facilitating micturition.

- Visceral sensory fibers carrying pain from the inferior bladder follow parasympathetic routes. Pain fibers from the superior bladder follow sympathetic routes.

The Urethra

The urethra is the muscular conduit for urine in the female and for urine and semen in the male. It extends from the internal urethral orifice at the bladder neck to the external urethral orifice in the perineum.

— In males and females, the primary muscles of the urethra include the (**Fig. 15.21**)
  - **dilator urethrae**, which extends over the anterior circumference of the internal urethra sphincter, through the internal urethra orifice, and inferiorly along the anterior urethra. It shortens the urethra and widens the internal urethral orifice, which initiates micturition.
  - **external urethral sphincter**, composed of smooth and striated layers, which is responsible for closure of the external urethral orifice.

— The male urethra extends 18 to 22 cm from the urinary bladder to the tip of the glans penis (**Fig. 15.22**). The male urethra has four parts. Although all are mentioned here, the membranous and spongy parts are located in the perineum and are discussed further in Chapter 16.

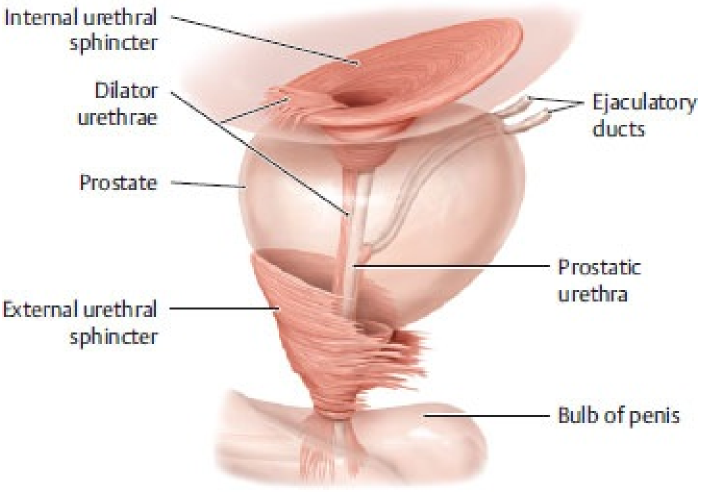


Fig. 15.21 Urethral sphincter mechanism in the male

Lateral view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th Edition. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

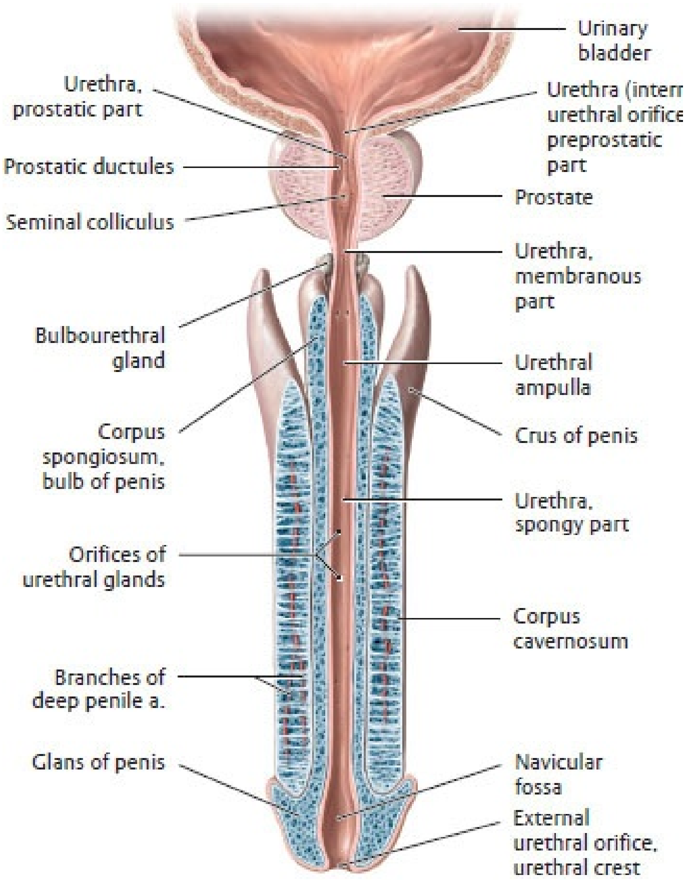

Urinary bladder
Urethra, prostatic part
Urethra (interr urethral orifice preprostatic part
Prostatic ductules
Prostate
Seminal colliculus
Urethra, membranous part
Bulbourethral gland
Urethral ampulla
Corpus spongiosum, bulb of penis
Crus of penis
Urethra, spongy part
Orifices of urethral glands
Corpus cavernosum
Branches of deep penile a.
Glans of penis
Navicular fossa
External urethral orifice, urethral crest

Fig. 15.22 Male urethra

Longitudinal section, anterior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

1. The **preprostatic** part at the neck of the bladder contains the internal urethral orifice. Sympathetic nerves of the superior hypogastric plexus control closure of the **internal urethral sphincter** during ejaculation.
2. The **prostatic** part is surrounded by the prostate gland and characterized by
   - the **urethral crest,** a vertical ridge on the posterior wall that contains a central eminence, the **seminal colliculus;** and
   - ejaculatory ducts that open onto the urethral crest, and prostatic ductules from the prostate that open into recesses on either side of the crest.
3. The **membranous** part passes through the perineal membrane in the urogenital triangle and is surrounded by the external urethral sphincter.
4. The **spongy** part passes through the corpus spongiosum, one of the

vascular erectile bodies of the penis.

- The female urethra extends 4 cm from the internal urethral orifice at the bladder neck to the external urethral orifice in the perineum **(Fig. 15.23)**.
    - Within the pelvis it lies anterior to the vagina, forming an elevation within the anterior vaginal wall.
    - It passes through the genital hiatus of the pelvic diaphragm, the external urethral sphincter (there is no organized internal urethral sphincter), and the perineal membrane.
    - Paired para-urethral ducts drain groups of **para-urethral glands** and open near the external urethral orifice.
    - In the perineum, the urethra opens within the vestibule of the vagina directly anterior to the vaginal orifice (see **Fig. 16.10**).
- Branches of the pudendal artery, as well as the inferior vesical artery in the male and vaginal artery in the female, supply the urethra. In both sexes, a venous plexus that accompanies the arteries drains the urethra.
- The female urethra and proximal parts of the male urethra (preprostatic, prostatic, and membranous) drain to the internal iliac nodes. The spongy urethra of the male (the perineal part) drains to deep inguinal nodes.
- Nerves to the urethra arise from the prostatic nerve plexus in the male and comparable vesical nerve plexus in the female. Sympathetic nerves control the closure of the external urethral sphincter in males.
- Visceral sensory fibers from the pelvic urethra travel with pelvic splanchnic nerves; somatic sensory fibers from the perineal urethra travel with the pudendal nerve.

BOX 15.6: CLINICAL CORRELATION

URETHRAL RUPTURE IN MALES

Fractures of the pelvic girdle may be accompanied by a rupture of the membranous part of the urethra. This allows the extravasation (escape) of urine and blood into the deep perineal space and superiorly through the genital hiatus to the subperitoneal spaces around the prostate and bladder. Rupture of the bulbous part of the spongy urethra may occur from a straddle injury in which there is a forceful blow to the perineum, or from the false passage of a transurethral catheter. In this case urine can leak into the superficial peritoneal space, which is continuous with the scrotal sac, the space around the penis, and the space on the inferior anterior abdominal wall between the abdominal muscles and the membranous layer of the subcutaneous tissue. The attachment of the superficial perineal fascia to the fascia lata (fascia enclosing the thigh muscles) prevents urine from spreading laterally into the thighs. Similarly, it is prevented from spreading into the anal triangle by the attachment of the fascia to the deep perineal fascia and perineal membrane.

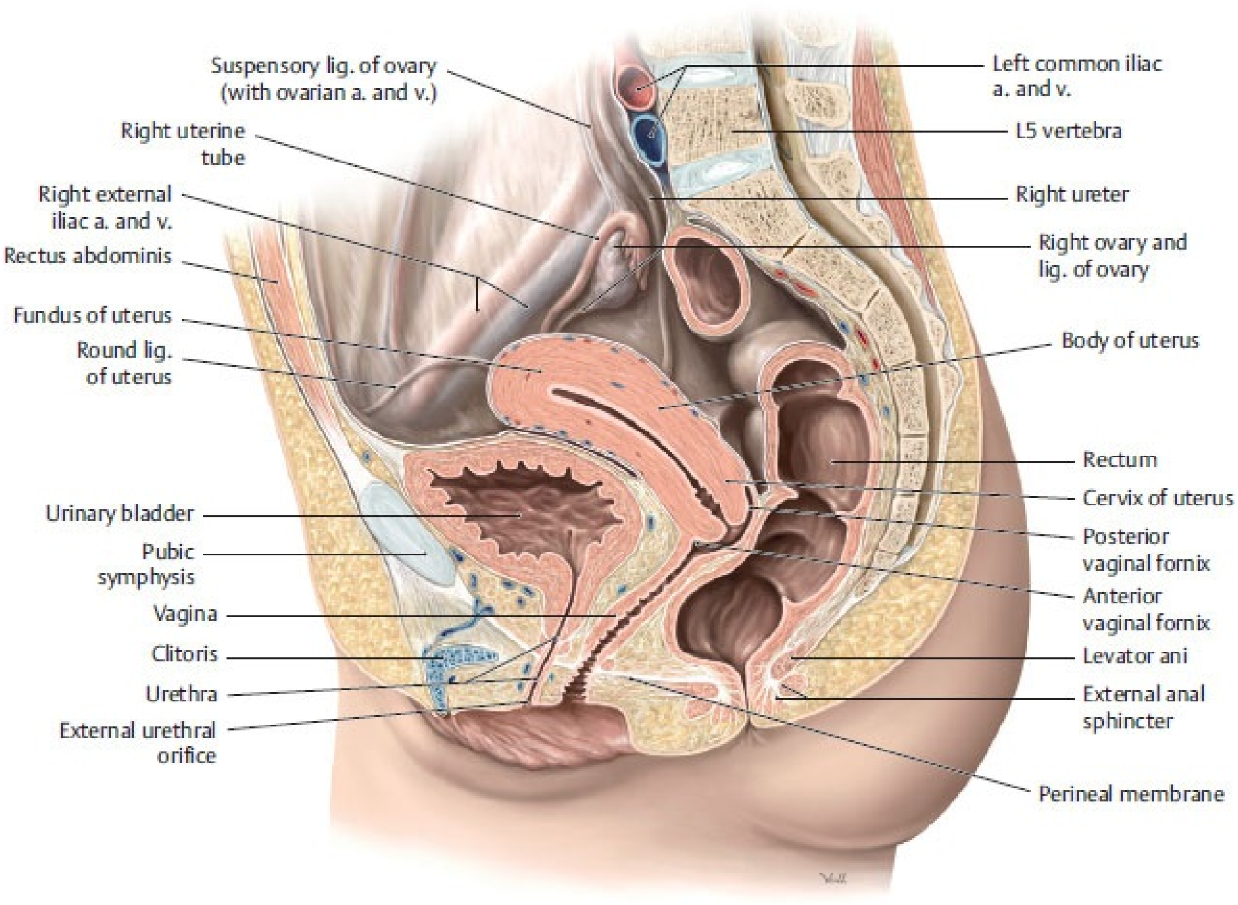

Suspensory lig. of ovary (with ovarian a. and v.)
Right uterine tube
Right external iliac a. and v.
Rectus abdominis
Fundus of uterus
Round lig. of uterus
Urinary bladder
Pubic symphysis
Vagina
Clitoris
Urethra
External urethral orifice
Left common iliac a. and v.
L5 vertebra
Right ureter
Right ovary and lig. of ovary
Body of uterus
Rectum
Cervix of uterus
Posterior vaginal fornix
Anterior vaginal fornix
Levator ani
External anal sphincter
Perineal membrane

Fig. 15.23 Female urinary bladder and urethra

Midsagittal section of pelvis, viewed from the left side. Right hemipelvis.

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

15.4 The Rectum

The rectum is the continuation of the gastrointestinal tract in the pelvis and functions as a temporary storage site for fecal matter. It is continuous with the sigmoid colon superiorly and the anal canal inferiorly (**Figs. 15.24** and **15.25**; see Section 16.5).

- It lies anterior to the lower sacrum and coccyx and rests on the anococcygeal ligament of the pelvic floor.
- Anteriorly, the rectum is related to the bladder, seminal glands, and prostate in males and to the vagina in females. A rectovesical or rectovaginal septum separates the rectum from these anterior structures.
- The rectum has no mesentery. Its superior two thirds are retroperitoneal and form the posterior surface of the rectovesical and rectouterine pouches. The distal third is subperitoneal.
- Unlike the colon, the rectum lacks taeniae coli, haustra, and epiploic appendices.
- The rectum begins at the **rectosigmoid junction,** the point at which the teniae coli disappear. At this junction, muscle fibers of the bands spread out evenly over the surface of the rectum. This junction usually occurs anterior to the S3 vertebra.
- The rectum terminates at the **anorectal junction** (its junction with the anal canal), where it passes through the pelvic diaphragm adjacent to the tip of the coccyx.
- The internal wall of the rectum has three transverse **rectal folds,** one on the right and two on the left, which create lateral flexures that are visible externally.
- The **ampulla,** the most distal segment of the rectum, stores accumulating fecal material until defecation and has an important role in fecal continence. It narrows abruptly as it joins with the anal canal and passes through the pelvic diaphragm.
- The rectum has a dual blood supply:
  - The superior rectal artery, the unpaired terminal branch of the inferior mesenteric artery, supplies the upper rectum (see Section 14.6).
  - Right and left middle rectal arteries, branches of the internal iliac arteries, supply the lower rectum.
- The rectal veins drain a submucosal rectal venous plexus, which has internal and external (subcutaneous) components.
  - The external plexus communicates with other visceral venous plexuses in the pelvis.
  - The internal plexus communicates with branches from the rectal arteries (an arteriovenous anastomosis), forming a thickened vascular tissue **(hemorrhoidal plexus)** that surrounds the anorectal junction. This tissue forms prominent anal cushions in the left lateral, right

anterolateral, and right posterolateral positions.

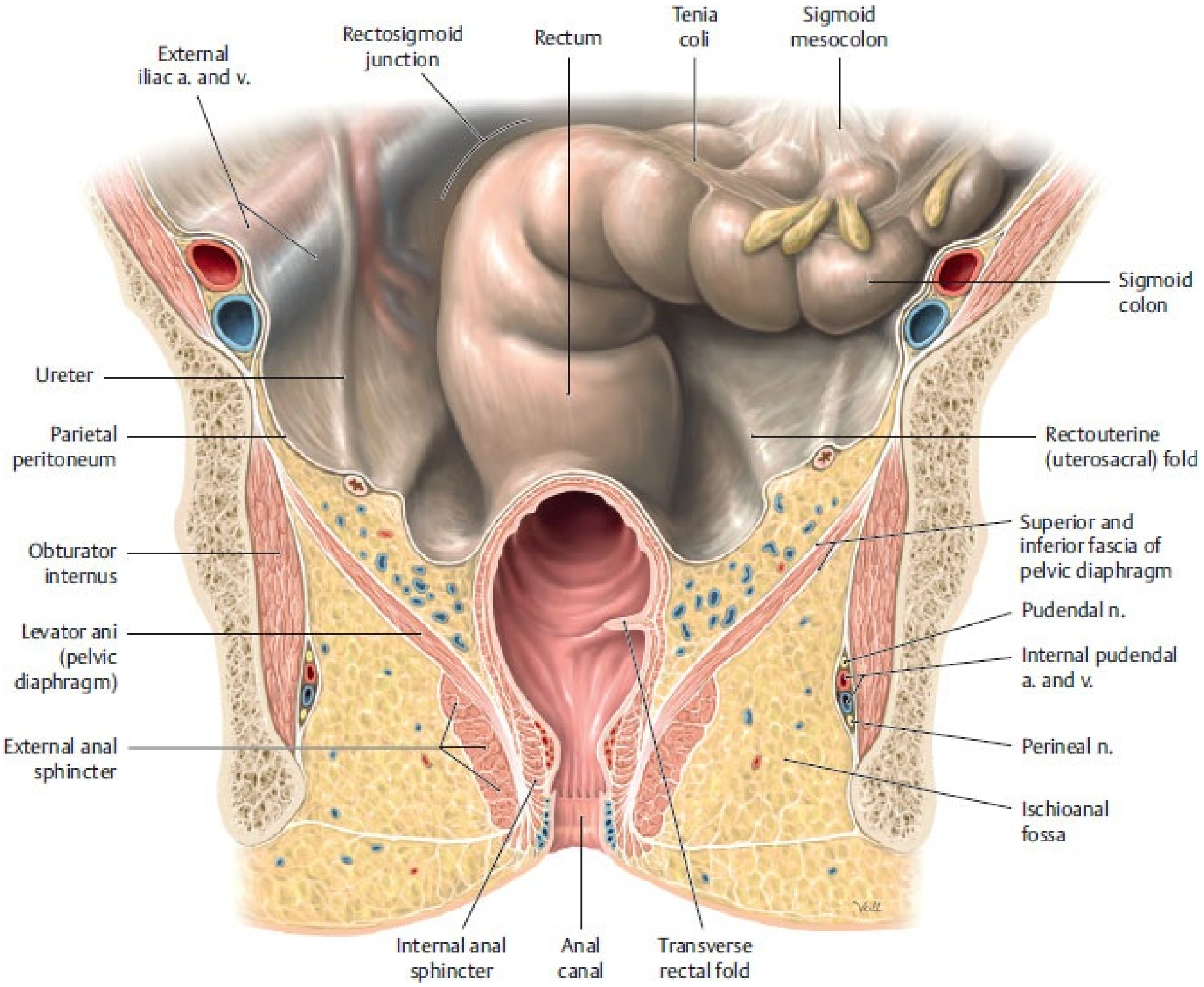

External iliac a. and v.
Rectosigmoid junction
Rectum
Tenia coli
Sigmoid mesocolon
Sigmoid colon
Ureter
Parietal peritoneum
Rectouterine (uterosacral) fold
Superior and inferior fascia of pelvic diaphragm
Obturator internus
Pudendal n.
Levator ani (pelvic diaphragm)
Internal pudendal a. and v.
External anal sphincter
Perineal n.
Ischioanal fossa
Internal anal sphincter
Anal canal
Transverse rectal fold

Fig. 15.24 Rectum in situ

Female pelvis, coronal section, anterior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

— Venous blood from the rectum drains into the portal and caval (systemic) venous systems (see Section 14.6).
  - A superior rectal vein, which drains the upper rectum, is a tributary of the portal system via the inferior mesenteric vein.
  - The paired middle and inferior rectal veins that drain the lower rectum (and anal canal) are tributaries of the inferior vena cava via the internal iliac veins.
  - Communications between the superior, middle, and inferior rectal veins

form clinically important portocaval anastomoses that enlarge in portal hypertension.

- Lymphatic drainage follows vascular pathways.
    - The upper rectum drains to inferior mesenteric nodes along the course of the superior rectal vessels. It eventually drains to lumbar nodes, although some lymph may drain first to sacral nodes.
    - The lower rectum drains primarily to sacral nodes or directly to internal iliac nodes.
- Sympathetic innervation to the rectum is carried by lumbar splanchnic nerves to the hypogastric plexuses, as well as by nerves of the inferior mesenteric nerve plexus traveling along the superior rectal artery (see **Fig. 14.22**).
- Parasympathetic innervation originates in pelvic splanchnic nerves, which are accompanied by visceral sensory fibers.

BOX 15.7: CLINICAL CORRELATION

RECTAL EXAMINATION

A rectal examination is performed by inserting a gloved, lubricated finger into the rectum, while the other hand is used to press on the lower abdomen or pelvic region. Palpable structures include the prostate, seminal glands, ampulla of the ductus deferens, bladder, uterus, cervix, and ovaries. Pathologic anomalies such as hemorrhoids, tumors, enlargements, and changes in consistency of the tissues can be felt. The tonicity of the anal sphincter, mediated by the pudendal nerve (S2–S4), can also be assessed.

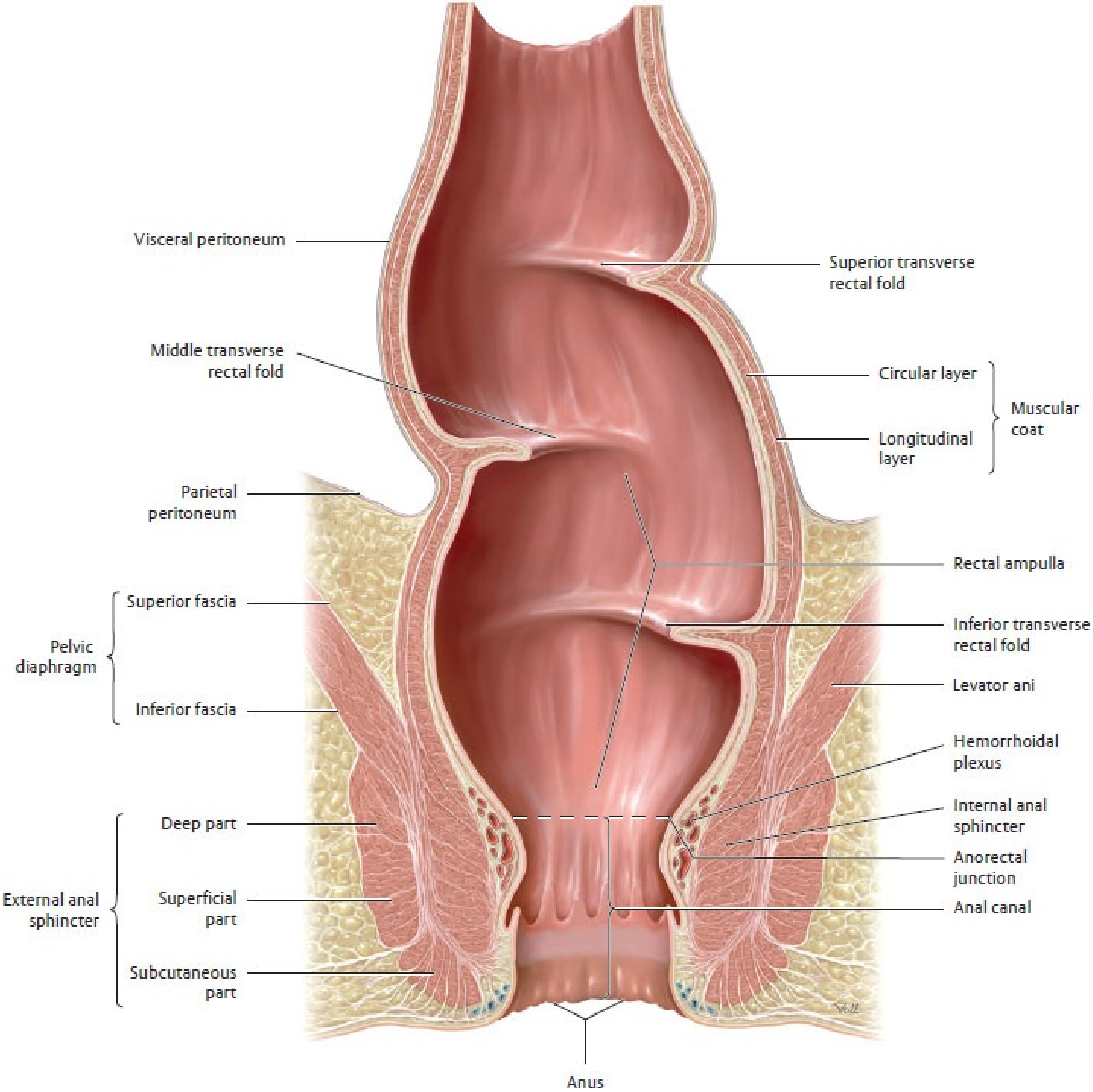

Visceral peritoneum
Superior transverse rectal fold
Middle transverse rectal fold
Circular layer
Longitudinal layer
Muscular coat
Parietal peritoneum
Rectal ampulla
Superior fascia
Pelvic diaphragm
Inferior fascia
Inferior transverse rectal fold
Levator ani
Hemorrhoidal plexus
Internal anal sphincter
Deep part
Anorectal junction
External anal sphincter
Superficial part
Anal canal
Subcutaneous part
Anus

Fig. 15.25 Rectum

Coronal section, anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

16 The Perineum

The perineum is the space inferior to the pelvic floor, which is divided into a urogenital triangle and an anal triangle. The urogenital triangle contains the male and female external genital structures, and the anal triangle contains the anal canal and anus.

16.1 Perineal Spaces

- The boundaries of the diamond-shaped perineum **(Figs. 16.1** and **16.2**; see also **Fig. 14.4)** are
  - the pelvic outlet (pubic symphysis, ischiopubic rami, sacrotuberous ligaments, and coccyx), which forms the perimeter;
  - the lower parts of the obturator internus muscles and their obturator fasciae, which line the lateral walls;
  - the inferior surface of the pelvic diaphragm, which forms the roof; and
  - the skin of the perineum, which forms the floor.
- A line connecting the ischial tuberosities separates the perineum into an anterior urogenital triangle and a posterior anal triangle
- The **perineal membrane,** a tough, fibrous sheet, stretches between the ischiopubic rami, extending anteriorly almost to the pubic symphysis and posteriorly to the ischial tuberosities.
  - It separates the urogenital triangle into the **deep perineal** and **superficial perineal spaces** (see **Fig. 14.3)**.
  - It forms a platform for the attachment of the cavernous bodies (which become engorged during arousal) of the external genitalia.
- The superficial perineal space is a potential space bounded above by the perineal membrane and below by the **superficial perineal fascia** (Colles' fascia), the extension of the membranous layer of superficial fascia (Scarpa's fascia) on the abdominal wall.
  - In both sexes it contains
    - the **bulbospongiosus, ischiocavernosus,** and **superficial transverse perineal muscles** (see Section 16.2) and

    - the **deep perineal branches** of the internal pudendal vessels and pudendal nerve.
  - In males (see Section 16.3) it also contains
    - the **root** of the penis and
    - the proximal portion of the spongy (penile) urethra.
  - In females (see Section 16.4) it also contains
    - the **clitoris** and associated muscles,
    - the **bulbs of the vestibule** and
    - the **greater vestibular glands.**
- The deep perineal space is bounded inferiorly by the perineal membrane and superiorly by the inferior fascia of the pelvic diaphragm.
  - In both sexes it contains
    - part of the urethra and inferior part of the **external urethral sphincter,**
    - the anterior recesses of the **ischioanal fat pads,** and
    - neurovascular structures to the penis or clitoris.
  - In males it also contains
    - the membranous part of the urethra,
    - the **bulbourethral glands,** and
    - the **deep transverse perineal muscles**. (In females this is often replaced by smooth muscle.)
  - In females it also contains
    - compressor urethrae, urethrovaginal sphincter, and parts of the external urethral sphincter; and
    - the proximal part of the urethra.

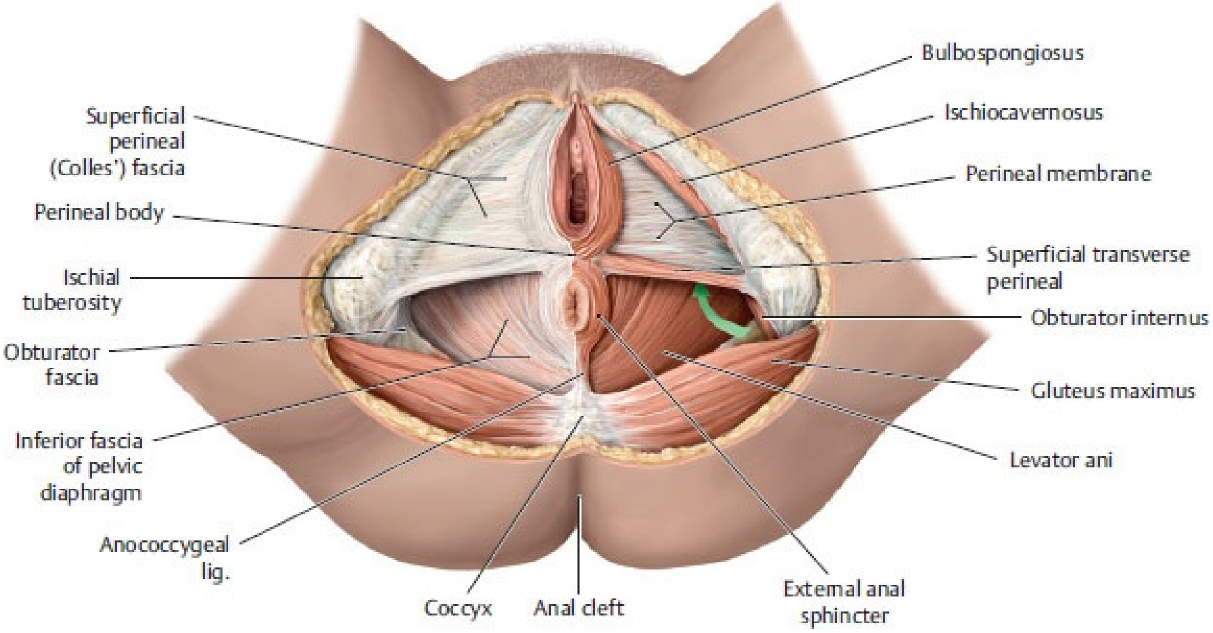

Bulbospongiosus
Ischiocavernosus
Perineal membrane
Superficial transverse perineal
Obturator internus
Gluteus maximus
Levator ani
External anal sphincter
Anal cleft
Coccyx
Anococcygeal lig.
Inferior fascia of pelvic diaphragm
Obturator fascia
Ischial tuberosity
Perineal body
Superficial perineal (Colles') fascia

Fig. 16.1 Muscles and fascia of the female perineum

Lithotomy position, caudal (inferior) view. The *green arrow* is pointing forward to the anterior recess of the ischioanal fossa. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

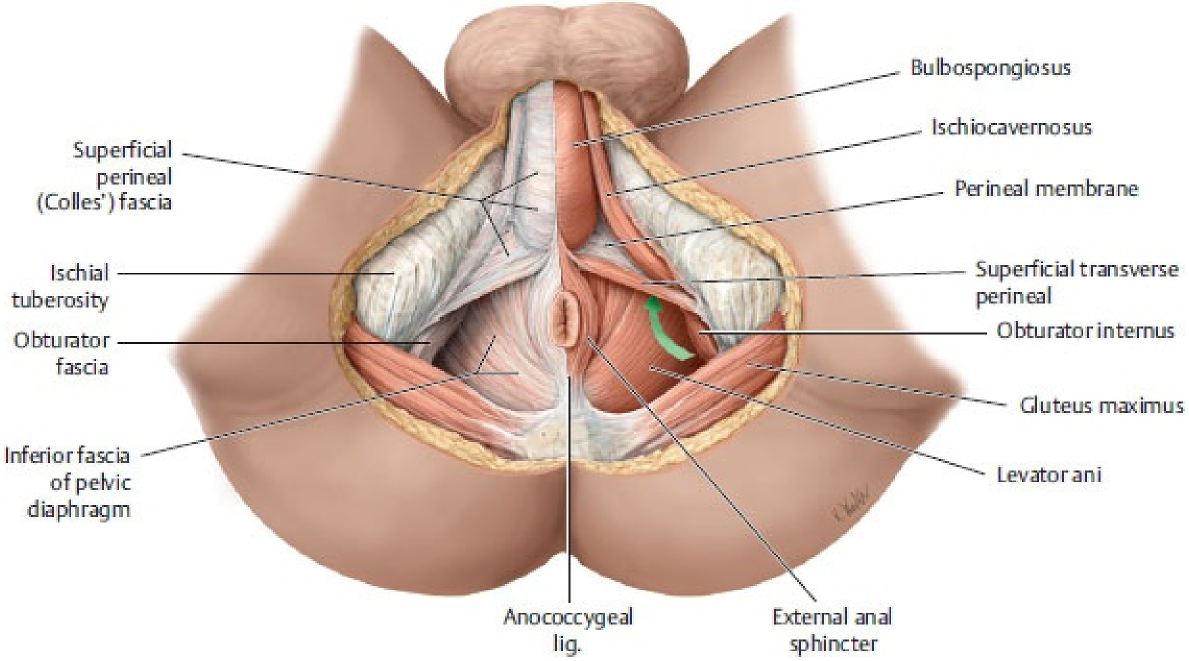

Bulbospongiosus
Ischiocavernosus
Perineal membrane
Superficial transverse perineal
Obturator internus
Gluteus maximus
Levator ani
External anal sphincter
Anococcygeal lig.
Inferior fascia of pelvic diaphragm
Obturator fascia
Ischial tuberosity
Superficial perineal (Colles') fascia

Fig. 16.2 Muscles and fascia of the male perineum

Lithotomy position, caudal (inferior) view. The *green arrow* is pointing forward to the anterior recess of the ischioanal fossa. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

16.2 Muscles of the Perineum

- Muscles of the perineum support the pelvic floor, surround the orifices of the urethra and anus, and assist in the erection of genital structures (Table 16.1; Fig. 16.3).
- The **perineal body** is an irregular subcutaneous mass of fibro-muscular tissue formed by converging fibers of the levator ani, the superficial transverse perineal and deep transverse perineal muscles, bulbospongiosus muscles, and the external anal sphincter.
  - It lies between the rectum and bulb of the penis in males and between the rectum and vagina in females.
  - It supports the pelvic diaphragm and pelvic viscera.
- Perineal branches of the internal pudendal artery supply muscles of the perineum. Venous blood drains to the internal pudendal vein and the internal iliac vein.
- The pudendal nerve (S2–S4) innervates the muscles of the perineum.

BOX 16.1: CLINICAL CORRELATION

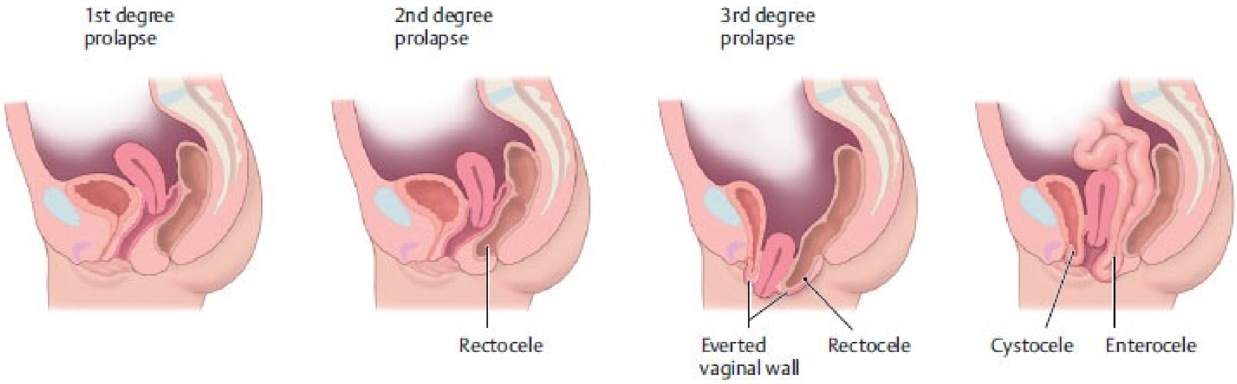
EPISIOTOMY

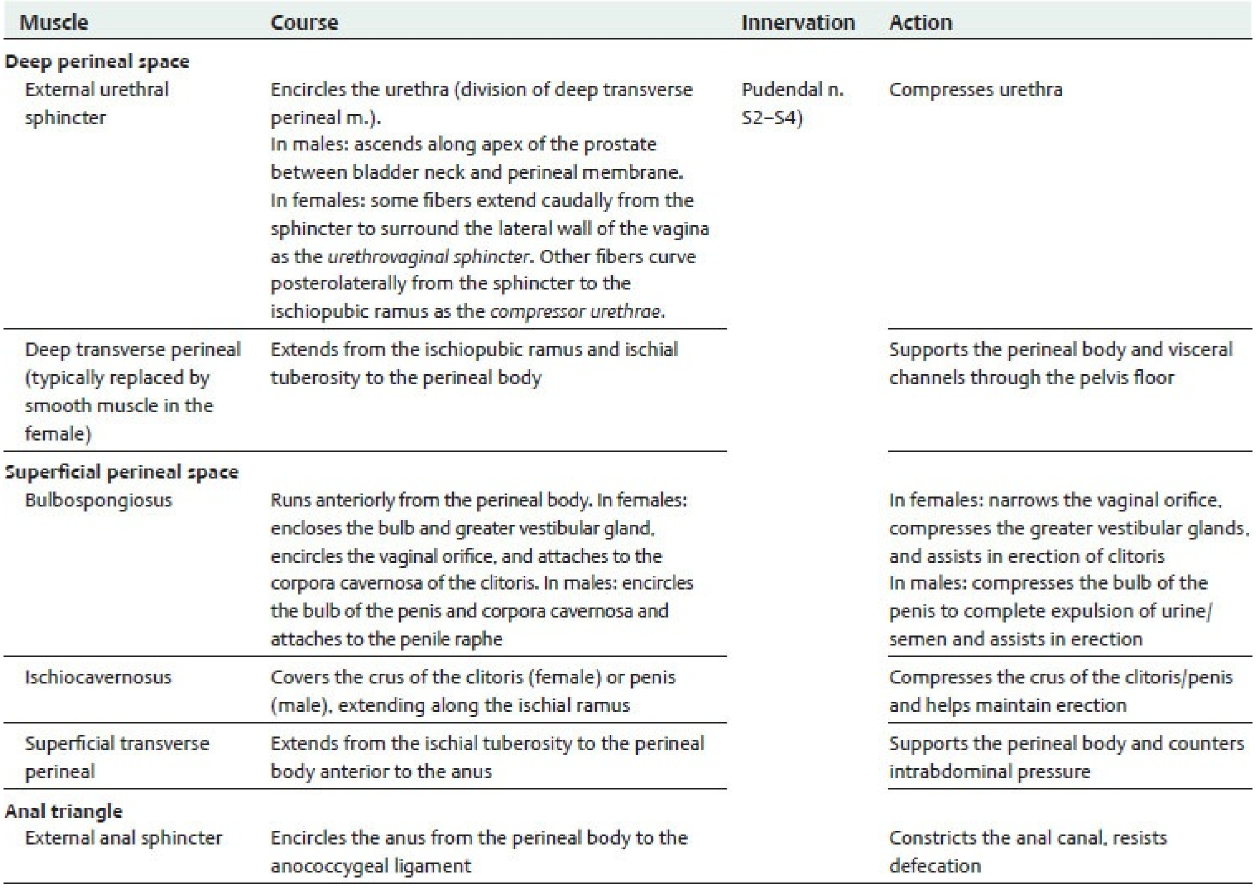
During vaginal delivery, pressure on the perineum risks tearing the perineal muscles. A clean incision through the posterior vaginal orifice into the perineal body, known as an episiotomy, is often performed to enlarge the opening and prevent damage to perineal muscles. A median, or midline, episiotomy extends only into the perineal body, but if further traumatic tearing occurs to extend the cut, it can damage the external anal sphincter (resulting in fecal incontinence) or create an anovaginal fistula. Mediolateral episiotomies often replace the midline incisions. These extend laterally from the vaginal orifice to the superficial perineal muscles, thus avoiding the perineal body and the possible sequelae from extensive tearing. However, while the more lateral incisions provide greater access, they are more difficult to repair.

BOX 16.2: CLINICAL CORRELATION

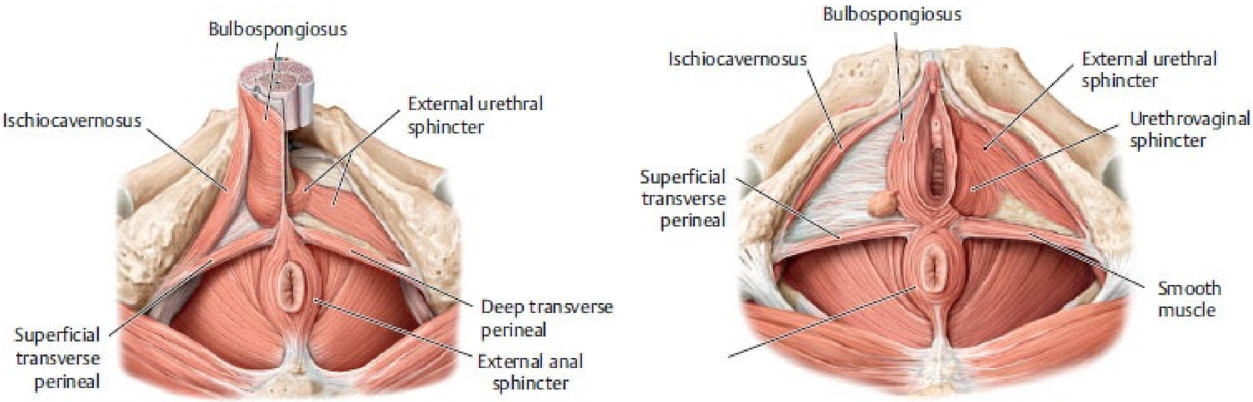
PROLAPSE OF PELVIC ORGANS

The pelvic diaphragm, pelvic ligaments, and perineal body provide important structural support for the pelvic viscera. Stretching or disruption of these tissues often occurs during childbirth and results in prolapse of the uterus into the vagina. A widening of the genital hiatus from an atrophic pelvic floor or a weakened perineal body can allow the bladder (cystocele), rectum (rectocele), or rectovesical pouch (enterocele) to bulge into the vaginal wall.


1st degree prolapse
2nd degree prolapse
3rd degree prolapse
Rectocele
Everted vaginal wall
Rectocele
Cystocele
Enterocele



Muscle	Course	Innervation	Action
Deep perineal space			
External urethral sphincter	Encircles the urethra (division of deep transverse perineal m.). In males: ascends along apex of the prostate between bladder neck and perineal membrane. In females: some fibers extend caudally from the sphincter to surround the lateral wall of the vagina as the *urethrovaginal sphincter*. Other fibers curve posterolaterally from the sphincter to the ischiopubic ramus as the *compressor urethrae*.	Pudendal n. S2–S4)	Compresses urethra
Deep transverse perineal (typically replaced by smooth muscle in the female)	Extends from the ischiopubic ramus and ischial tuberosity to the perineal body		Supports the perineal body and visceral channels through the pelvis floor
Superficial perineal space			
Bulbospongiosus	Runs anteriorly from the perineal body. In females: encloses the bulb and greater vestibular gland, encircles the vaginal orifice, and attaches to the corpora cavernosa of the clitoris. In males: encircles the bulb of the penis and corpora cavernosa and attaches to the penile raphe		In females: narrows the vaginal orifice, compresses the greater vestibular glands, and assists in erection of clitoris In males: compresses the bulb of the penis to complete expulsion of urine/semen and assists in erection
Ischiocavernosus	Covers the crus of the clitoris (female) or penis (male), extending along the ischial ramus		Compresses the crus of the clitoris/penis and helps maintain erection
Superficial transverse perineal	Extends from the ischial tuberosity to the perineal body anterior to the anus		Supports the perineal body and counters intrabdominal pressure
Anal triangle			
External anal sphincter	Encircles the anus from the perineal body to the anococcygeal ligament		Constricts the anal canal, resists defecation


Bulbospongiosus
Ischiocavernosus
External urethral sphincter
Superficial transverse perineal
Deep transverse perineal
External anal sphincter
Bulbospongiosus
Ischiocavernosus
External urethral sphincter
Urethrovaginal sphincter
Superficial transverse perineal
Smooth muscle

A Superficial and deep perineal muscles in the male.

B Superficial and deep muscles in the female.

Fig. 16.3 Muscles of the perineum

Inferior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th Edition. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

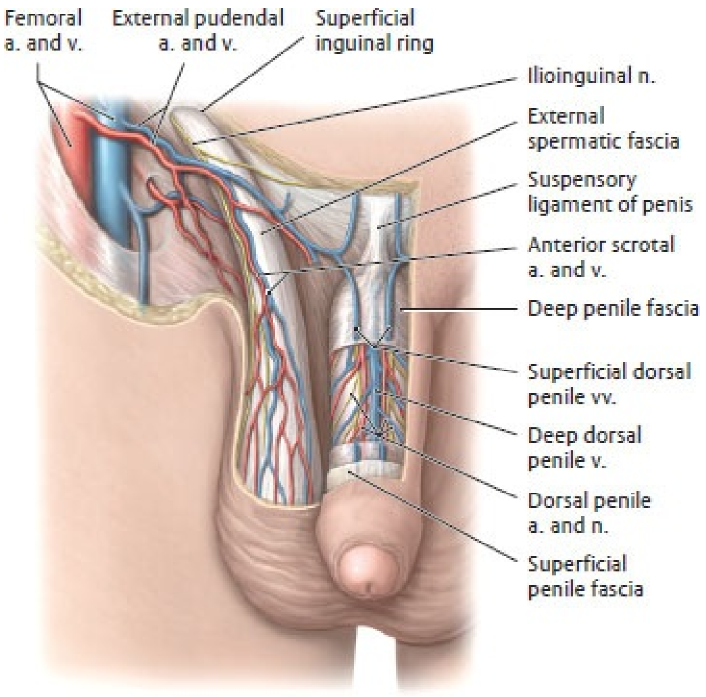

Femoral a. and v.
External pudendal a. and v.
Superficial inguinal ring
Ilioinguinal n.
External spermatic fascia
Suspensory ligament of penis
Anterior scrotal a. and v.
Deep penile fascia
Superficial dorsal penile vv.
Deep dorsal penile v.
Dorsal penile a. and n.
Superficial penile fascia

Fig. 16.4 Neurovasculature of the penis and scrotum

Anterior view. *Partially removed*: Skin and fascia. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

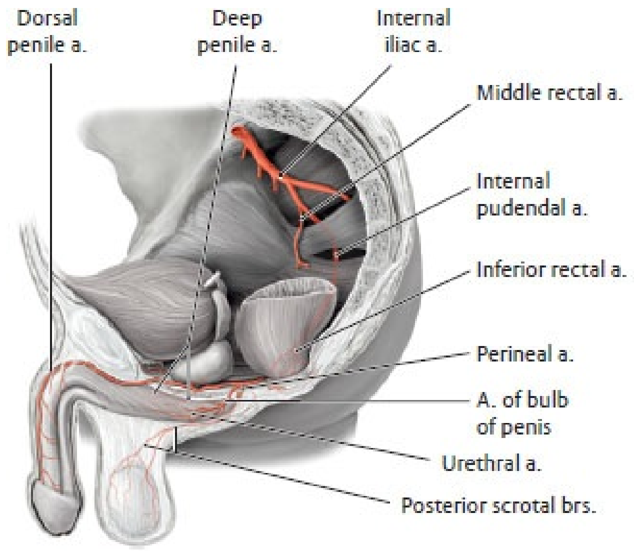
16.3 Male Urogenital Triangle

The male urogenital triangle contains the scrotum, penis, bulbourethral glands, perineal muscles, and associated neurovasculature.

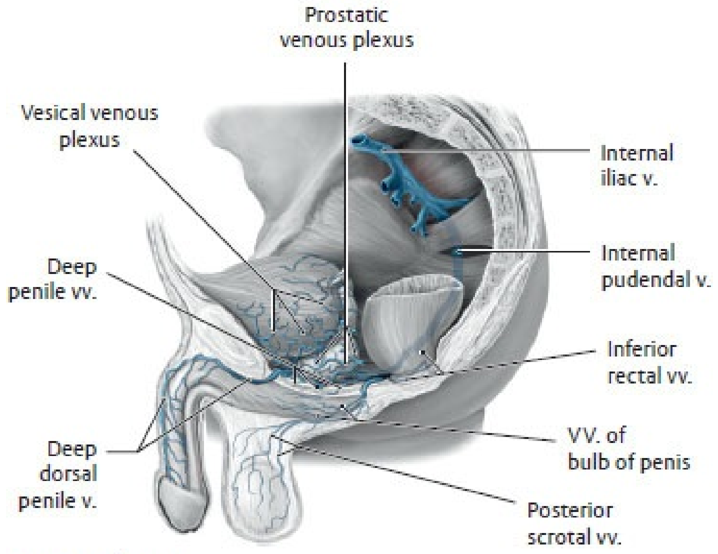
The Scrotum

- The **scrotum** is a saccular extension of the anterior abdominal wall that encloses the testes and spermatic cord (see Section 10.4).
- The subcutaneous layer of the skin over the scrotum is devoid of fat, but the **dartos fascia** that underlies the skin is continuous with the deep membranous layer (Scarpa’s fascia) of the abdomen and with the superficial perineal fascia (Colles’ fascia) of the perineum.
- An extension of the dartos fascia divides the scrotum into right and left compartments and is visible externally as the **scrotal raphe.**
- Scrotal branches of the internal pudendal and external pudendal arteries, and cremasteric branches of the inferior epigastric artery supply the scrotum. Veins of similar names accompany the arteries **(Figs. 16.4** and **16.5)**.

- — Lymph from the scrotum drains to superficial inguinal nodes. Recall that lymph from the contents within the scrotum (i.e., the testis and epididymis) drains directly to the para-aortic nodes.
- — Innervation of the scrotum (see **Fig. 14.21**) is supplied by
  - the ilioinguinal and genitofemoral (genital branch) nerves (lumbar plexus), which innervate the anterior scrotum, and
  - the pudendal and posterior femoral cutaneous nerves of the thigh (sacral plexus), which innervate the posterior scrotum.


Dorsal penile a.
Deep penile a.
Internal iliac a.
Middle rectal a.
Internal pudendal a.
Inferior rectal a.
Perineal a.
A. of bulb of penis
Urethral a.
Posterior scrotal brs.

A Arterial supply.


Prostatic venous plexus
Vesical venous plexus
Internal iliac v.
Internal pudendal v.
Deep penile vv.
Inferior rectal vv.
VV. of bulb of penis
Deep dorsal penile v.
Posterior scrotal vv.

B Venous drainage.

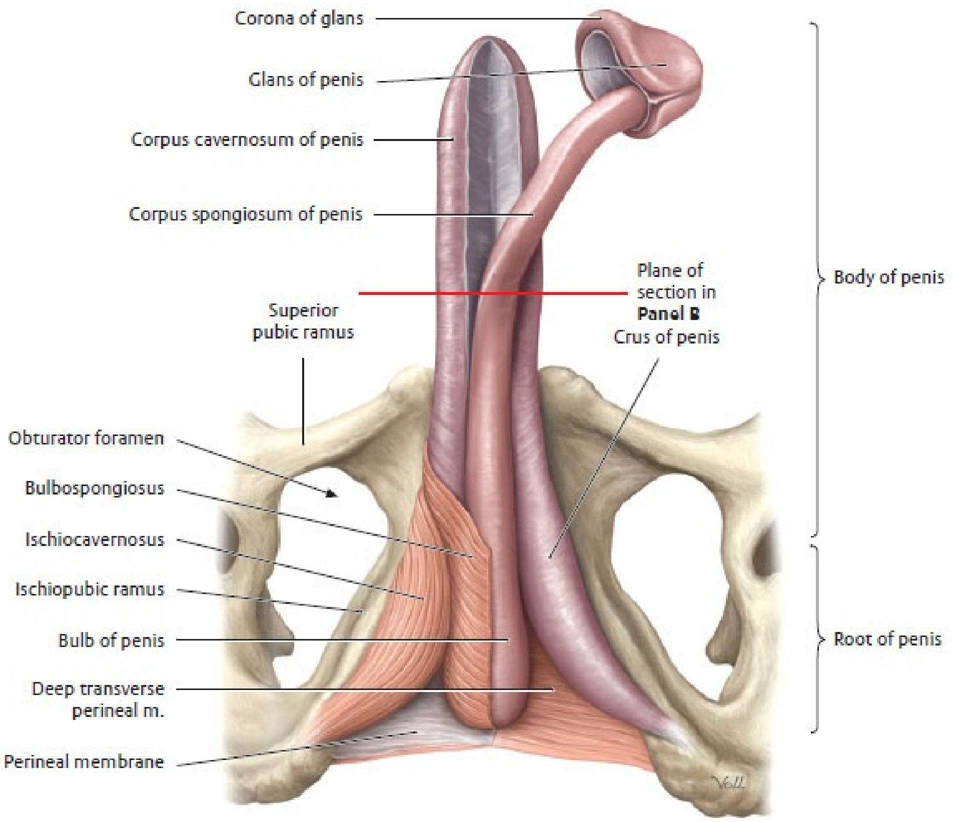
Fig. 16.5 Blood vessels of the male genitalia

Left lateral view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

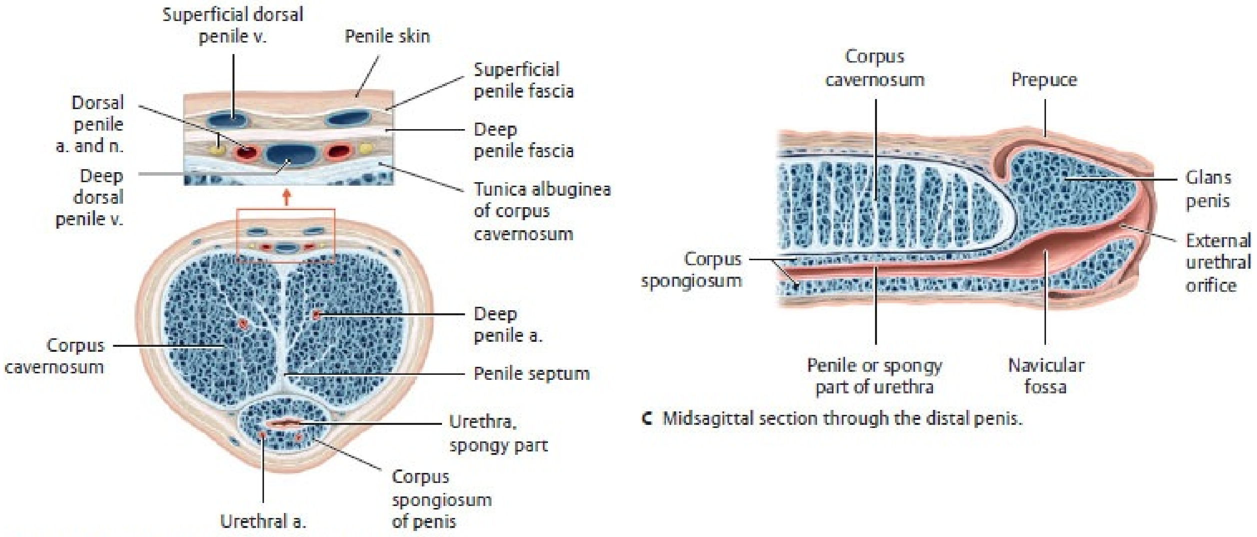
The Penis

The **penis** serves both copulatory and urinary functions. It contains three cylindrical bodies of erectile tissue, one of which surrounds the spongy urethra that transmits urine from the bladder as well as semen during sexual intercourse **(Figs. 16.6** and **16.7)**.

- The penis has three parts:
  1. The **root,** the most proximal part, is attached to the perineal membrane and is covered by muscles. It is composed of
     - right and left **crura** that are attached to the ischiopubic rami on either side and are covered by the ischiocavernosus muscles, and
     - the **bulb of the penis,** which is attached to the perineal membrane and covered by the bulbospongiosus muscle. The spongy (penile) urethra enters on its dorsal surface.
  2. The **body,** pendulous and not covered by muscle, is made up of three cylindrical bodies of erectile tissue. A **tunica albuginea**, a dense fibrous coat, surrounds each erectile body, and distally a **deep penile fascia** (Buck’s fascia) binds the three bodies together. The three erectile bodies include


Corona of glans
Glans of penis
Corpus cavernosum of penis
Corpus spongiosum of penis
Plane of section in Panel B
Superior pubic ramus
Crus of penis
Body of penis
Obturator foramen
Bulbospongiosus
Ischiocavernosus
Ischiopubic ramus
Bulb of penis
Root of penis
Deep transverse perineal m.
Perineal membrane

A Inferior (ventral) view.


Superficial dorsal penile v.
Penile skin
Superficial penile fascia
Dorsal penile a. and n.
Deep penile fascia
Deep dorsal penile v.
Tunica albuginea of corpus cavernosum
Deep penile a.
Corpus cavernosum
Penile septum
Urethra, spongy part
Corpus spongiosum of penis
Urethral a.
Corpus cavernosum
Prepuce
Glans penis
External urethral orifice
Corpus spongiosum
Penile or spongy part of urethra
Navicular fossa

C Midsagittal section through the distal penis.

B Cross section through the body of the penis.

Fig. 16.6 Penis

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

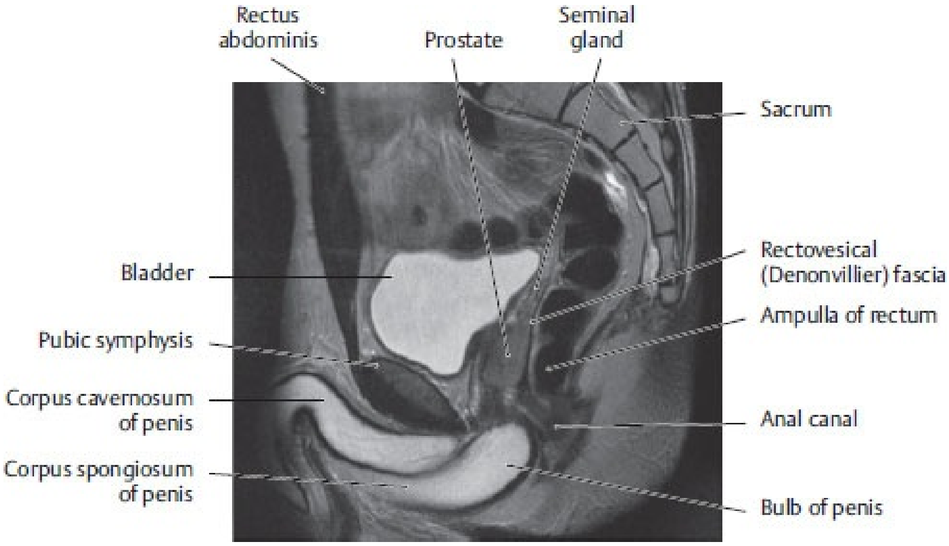

Rectus abdominis
Prostate
Seminal gland
Sacrum
Rectovesical (Denonvillier) fascia
Ampulla of rectum
Bladder
Pubic symphysis
Corpus cavernosum of penis
Anal canal
Corpus spongiosum of penis
Bulb of penis

Fig. 16.7 MRI of the male pelvis

Sagittal section, left lateral view. (From Hamm B, et al. MRI Imaging of the Abdomen and Pelvis, 2nd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2009.)

    - ◦ two **corpora cavernosa,** continuations of the crura, which lie side by side on the dorsum of the penis, and
    - ◦ one **corpus spongiosum,** a continuation of the bulb of the penis, which lies ventral to the two corpora cavernosa and is traversed by the spongy (penile) urethra.
  3. The **glans penis** (also known as the **glans**), an expansion of the distal end of the corpus spongiosum, is characterized by
    - ◦ the **corona,** which overhangs the distal ends of the corpora cavernosa, and
    - ◦ a fusiform dilation of the spongy urethra, the **navicular fossa**, which terminates at the **external urethral orifice** at its tip.

— External pudendal arteries supply the skin and subcutaneous tissue of the penis. Venous drainage of this tissue passes through the **superficial dorsal veins,** which drain to the external pudendal veins (see Fig. 16.4).

— Internal pudendal arteries supply the deep penile structures. Their branches **(Fig. 16.8;** see also **Fig. 16.6B)** include

  - the **artery of the bulb of the penis,** which supplies the bulb of the penis, the urethra within the bulb, and the bulbourethral glands;
  - the **dorsal penile artery,** which runs between the deep penile fascia and tunica albuginea to supply the penile fascia and skin and the glans; and
  - the **deep penile artery,** which runs within the corpus cavernosum and gives off **helicine arteries** that supply the erectile tissue and are

responsible for engorgement of the corpora during erection.

- The erectile bodies are drained by venous plexuses that empty into the single **deep dorsal vein,** which passes under the pubic symphysis to join the prostatic venous plexus in the pelvis.
- Lymphatic drainage areas of the penis include
  - the erectile bodies of the penis, which drain to internal iliac nodes;
  - the glans penis, which drains to deep inguinal nodes; and
  - the urethra, which drains to internal iliac and deep inguinal nodes.

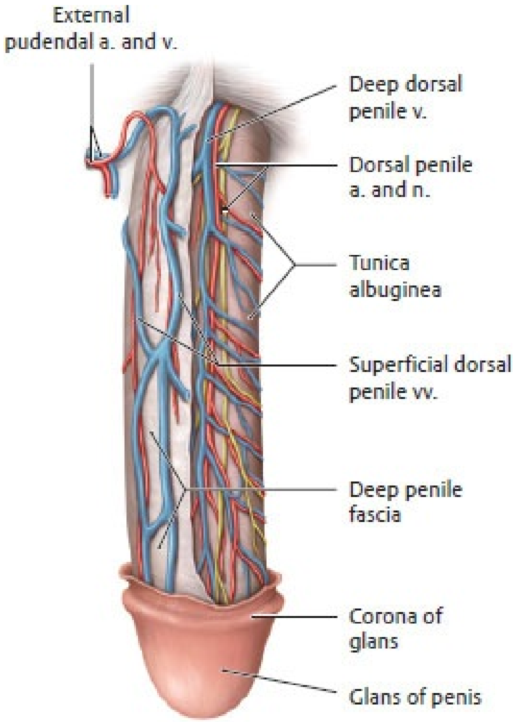

External pudendal a. and v.
Deep dorsal penile v.
Dorsal penile a. and n.
Tunica albuginea
Superficial dorsal penile vv.
Deep penile fascia
Corona of glans
Glans of penis

Fig. 16.8 Neurovasculature on the dorsum of the penis

Superior (dorsal) view. *Removed*: Skin. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- The glans of the penis is richly innervated by sensory fibers via the **dorsal penile nerve,** a branch of the pudendal nerve. Sympathetic fibers from the hypogastric nerve plexus are also carried along this route.
- Parasympathetic fibers carried by the cavernous nerves derived from the prostatic plexus innervate the helicine arteries within the erectile tissue and are responsible for penile erection.

Bulbourethral Glands

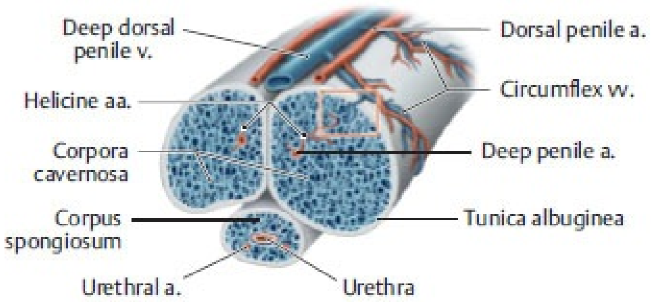
The bulbourethral glands are paired mucus-secreting glands (see **Figs. 15.2** and **15.3**).

- They lie on either side of the urethra below the prostate, surrounded by the urethral sphincter.
- Their ducts open into the proximal part of the spongy urethra.
- They are active during sexual arousal.

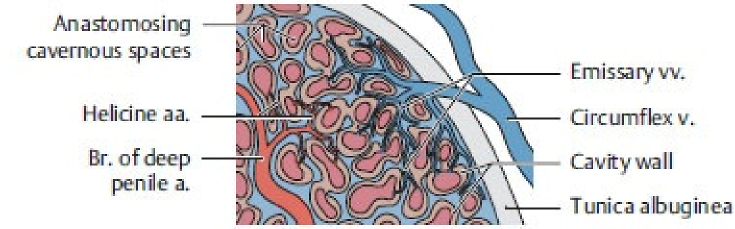
Erection, Emission, and Ejaculation

The sexual responses of **erection, emission,** and **ejaculation** involve sympathetic, parasympathetic, and somatic (via the pudendal nerve) pathways.

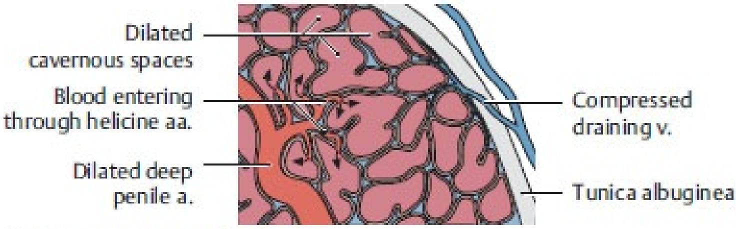
- During erection
  - constriction of the helicine arteries, normally maintained by sympathetic innervation, is inhibited by parasympathetic stimulation. As the arteries relax, the cavernous spaces within the erectile bodies dilate and become engorged;
  - contractions of the bulbocavernosus and ischiocavernosus muscles, innervated by the pudendal nerve, impede venous outflow and maintain the erection.
- During emission
  - parasympathetic stimulation mediates the secretion of seminal fluid from the seminal glands, bulbourethral glands, and prostate gland, and
  - sympathetic stimulation mediates emission (the movement of seminal fluid through the ducts) by initiating peristalsis of the ductus deferens and seminal glands. This propels the seminal fluid into the prostatic urethra, where additional fluid is added as the prostate contracts.
- During ejaculation
  - sympathetic stimulation constricts the internal urethral sphincter, which prevents the seminal fluid from entering the bladder (retrograde ejaculation);
  - parasympathetic stimulation contracts the urethral muscles; and
  - the pudendal nerve contracts the bulbospongiosus muscle.


Deep dorsal penile v.
Dorsal penile a.
Helicine aa.
Circumflex vv.
Corpora cavernosa
Deep penile a.
Corpus spongiosum
Tunica albuginea
Urethral a.
Urethra

A Penis in cross-section showing blood vessels involved in erection (enlarged views in B and C).


Anastomosing cavernous spaces
Emissary vv.
Helicine aa.
Circumflex v.
Br. of deep penile a.
Cavity wall
Tunica albuginea

B Corpus cavernosum in the flaccid state.


Dilated cavernous spaces
Blood entering through helicine aa.
Compressed draining v.
Dilated deep penile a.
Tunica albuginea

C Corpus cavernosum in the erect state.

Fig. 16.9 Mechanism of penile erection (after Lehnert)

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 16.3: CLINICAL CORRELATION

RETROGRADE EJACULATION

Relaxation of the detrusor muscle and contraction of the internal urethral sphincter in males are controlled by sympathetic fibers from the superior hypogastric plexus. Closure of the sphincter occurs during ejaculation, preventing the retrograde flow of semen into the bladder. Disruption of the sympathetic nerves can result in retrograde ejaculation. This can occur during the repair of an abdominal aortic aneurysm, for example, if the aneurysm involves the bifurcation of the aorta.

16.4 Female Urogenital Triangle

As in the male perineum, the female perineum contains erectile bodies, secretory glands, and their associated neurovasculature. In addition, it contains paired folds of skin that surround the urethral and vaginal orifices. These external genitalia are known collectively as the **vulva (Figs. 16.10, 16.11, 16.12, 16.13)**.

- **The mons pubis,** a superficial mound of fatty subcutaneous tissue that is continuous with the superficial fatty layer of the abdominal wall, lies anterior to the pubic symphysis and is continuous with the **labia majora.**
- **Labia majora,** bilateral folds of fatty subcutaneous tissue, flank the **pudendal cleft,** the opening between the labia. The labia join anteriorly at the **anterior commissure** and posteriorly at the **posterior commissure.** Pigmented skin and coarse pubic hair cover the labia's outer surface; the inner surface is smooth and hairless.
- **Labia minora,** bilateral folds of hairless skin within the pudendal cleft, flank the vestibule of the vagina.
- The **vestibule** of the vagina is a space surrounded by the two labia minora. It contains the urethral and vaginal orifices and the openings of the ducts of the greater vestibular and lesser vestibular glands.
- **Bulbs of the vestibule** are paired masses of erectile tissue that lie deep to the labia minora and are covered by the bulbospongiosus muscles.
- **Greater vestibular** (Bartholin's) **glands,** small glands that lie under the posterior end of the vestibular bulbs, help to lubricate the vestibule during sexual arousal.
- Small **lesser vestibular glands** lie on each side of the vestibule and secrete mucus to moisten the labia and vestibule.
- The **clitoris,** a highly sensitive erectile organ, is located at the anterior junction of the paired labia minora (**Fig 16.12**).
  - Paired erectile bodies, the **corpora cavernosa,** make up the crura, which join to form the **body** of the clitoris. The **prepuce** (hood) covers the body.
  - The **glans** at the tip of the clitoris is its most sensitive part.
- The external pudendal arteries supply the skin over the mons pubis and labia majora. Similar to those in the male, these superficial structures drain to the external pudendal veins.
- The internal pudendal arteries supply most of the external genitalia through branches that are similar to those in the male perineum **(Fig. 16.14A)**.
  - The **perineal arteries** supply perineal muscles and labia minora.
  - The **arteries of the vestibular bulb** supply the bulbs of the vestibule

and greater vestibular glands.

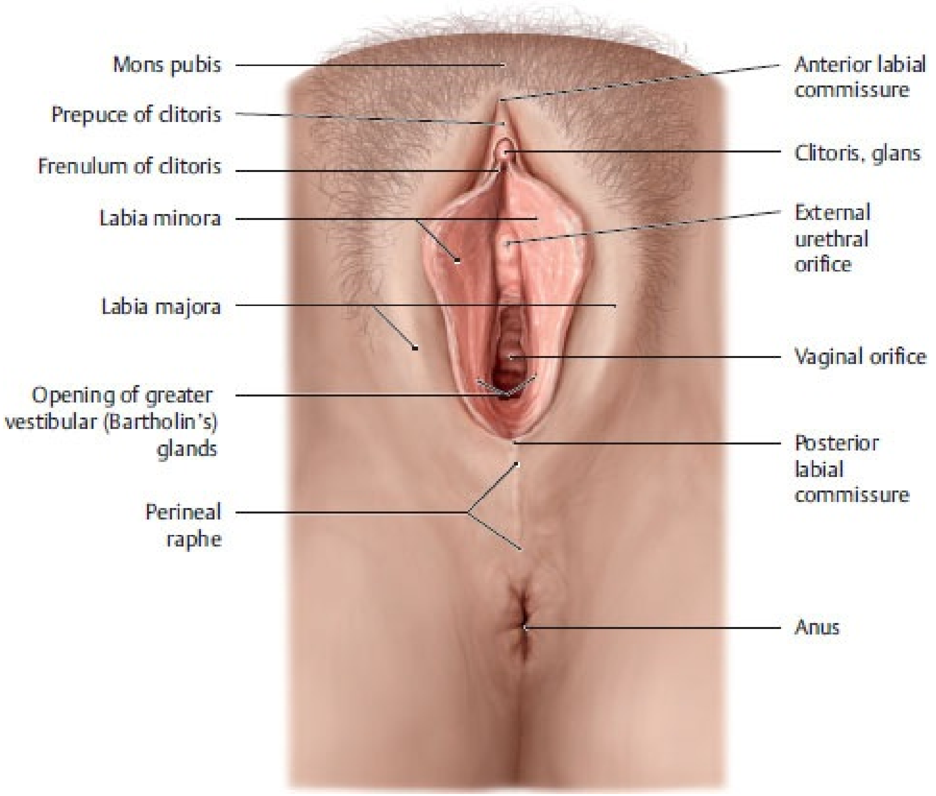

Mons pubis
Prepuce of clitoris
Frenulum of clitoris
Labia minora
Labia majora
Opening of greater vestibular (Bartholin's) glands
Perineal raphe
Anterior labial commissure
Clitoris, glans
External urethral orifice
Vaginal orifice
Posterior labial commissure
Anus

Fig. 16.10 Female external genitalia

Lithotomy position with labia minora separated. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

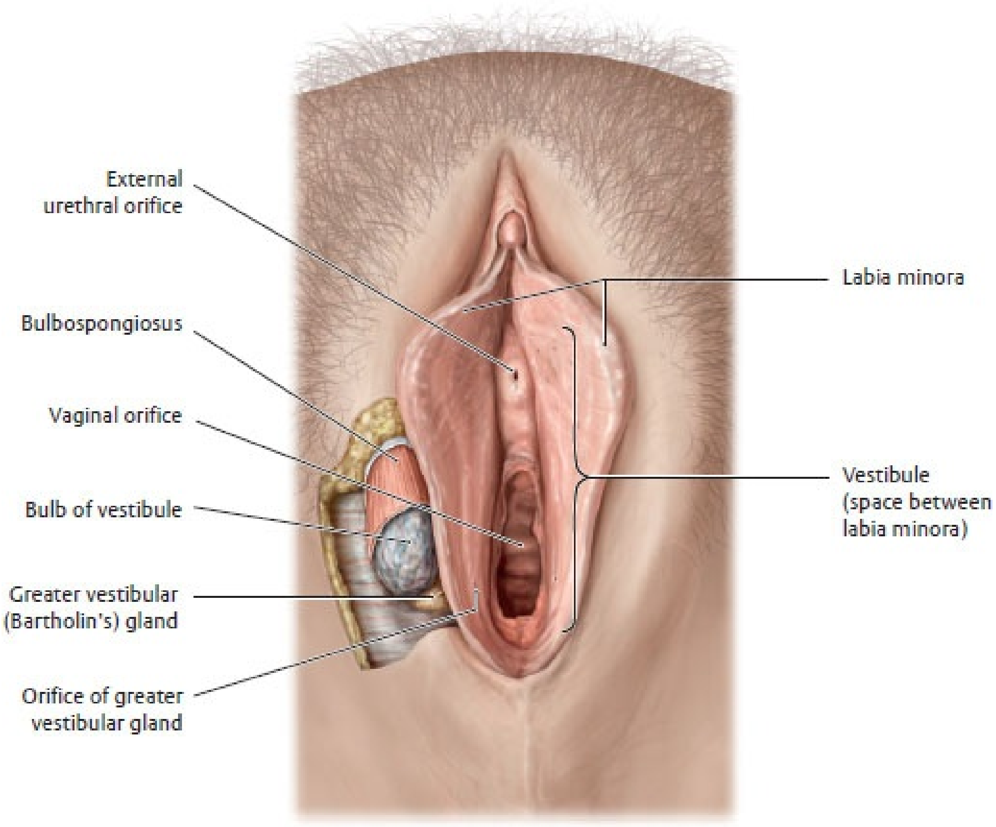

External urethral orifice
Bulbospongiosus
Vaginal orifice
Bulb of vestibule
Greater vestibular (Bartholin's) gland
Orifice of greater vestibular gland
Labia minora
Vestibule (space between labia minora)

Fig. 16.11 Vestibule and vestibular glands

Lithotomy position with labia separated. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

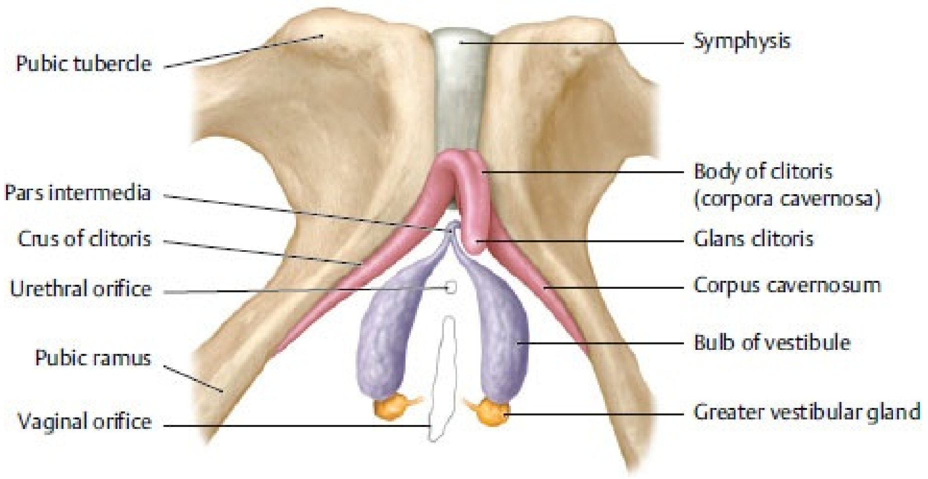

Pubic tubercle
Pars intermedia
Crus of clitoris
Urethral orifice
Pubic ramus
Vaginal orifice
Symphysis
Body of clitoris (corpora cavernosa)
Glans clitoris
Corpus cavernosum
Bulb of vestibule
Greater vestibular gland

Fig. 16.12 Erectile tissue in the female perineum

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy.

Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

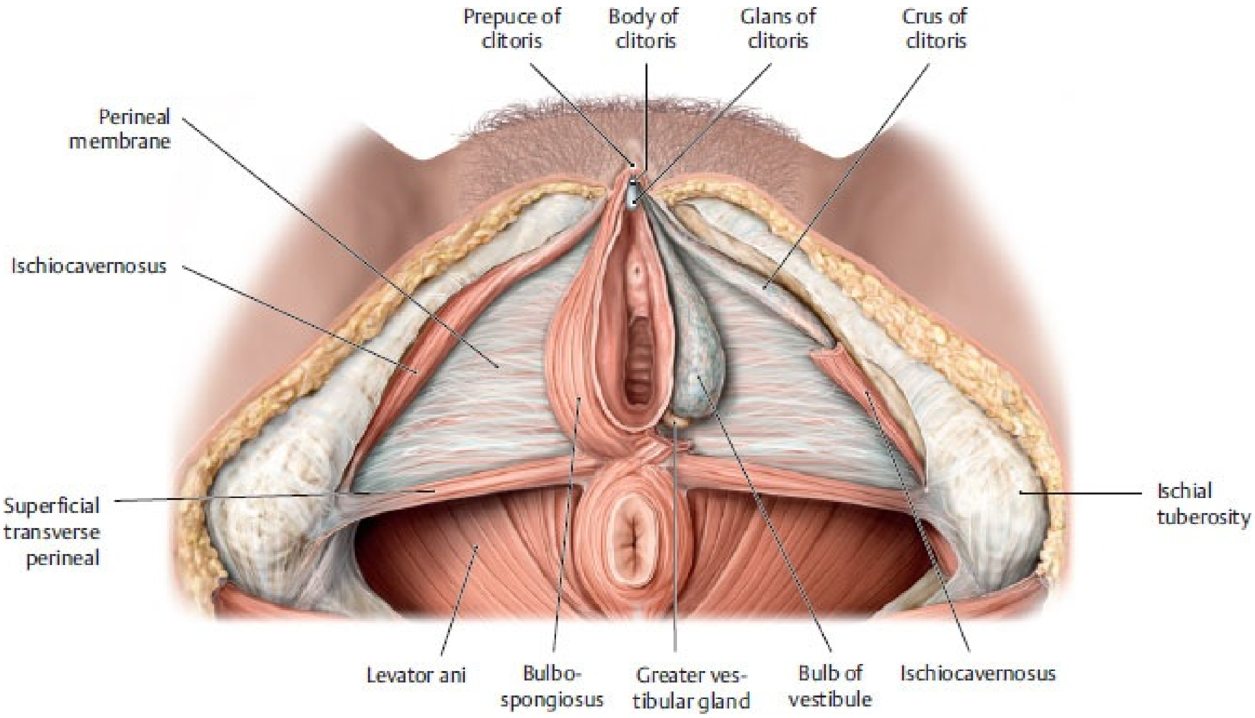
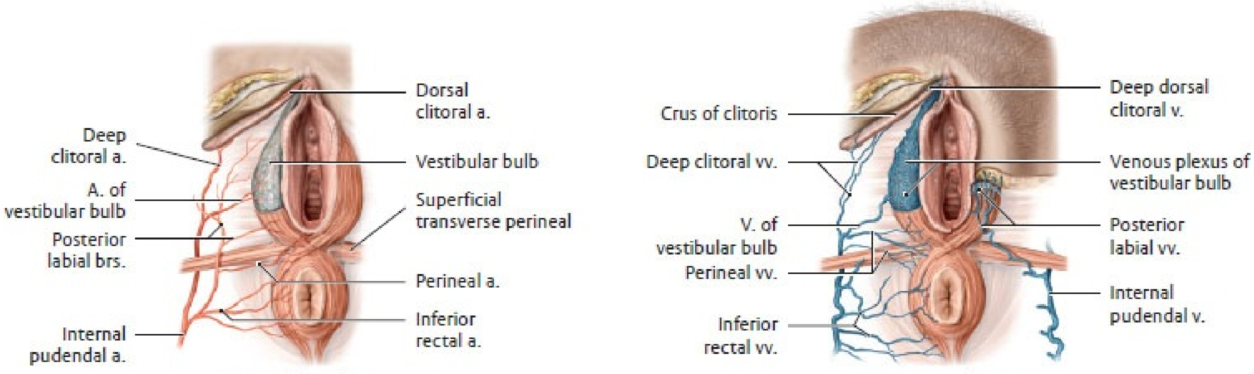

Prepuce of clitoris
Body of clitoris
Glans of clitoris
Crus of clitoris
Perineal membrane
Ischiocavernosus
Superficial transverse perineal
Ischial tuberosity
Levator ani
Bulbo-spongiosus
Greater ves-tibular gland
Bulb of vestibule
Ischiocavernosus

Fig. 16.13 Erectile muscles and tissue of the female genitalia

Lithotomy position. *Removed*: Labia, skin, and perineal membrane. Removed from leftside: Ischiocavernosus and bulbospongiosus muscles; greater vestibular (Bartholin’s) gland. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Deep clitoral a.
A. of vestibular bulb
Posterior labial brs.
Internal pudendal a.
Dorsal clitoral a.
Vestibular bulb
Superficial transverse perineal
Perineal a.
Inferior rectal a.
Crus of clitoris
Deep clitoral vv.
V. of vestibular bulb
Perineal vv.
Inferior rectal vv.
Deep dorsal clitoral v.
Venous plexus of vestibular bulb
Posterior labial vv.
Internal pudendal v.

A Arterial supply.

B Venous drainage.

Fig. 16.14 Blood vessels of the female external genitalia

Inferior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of

Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

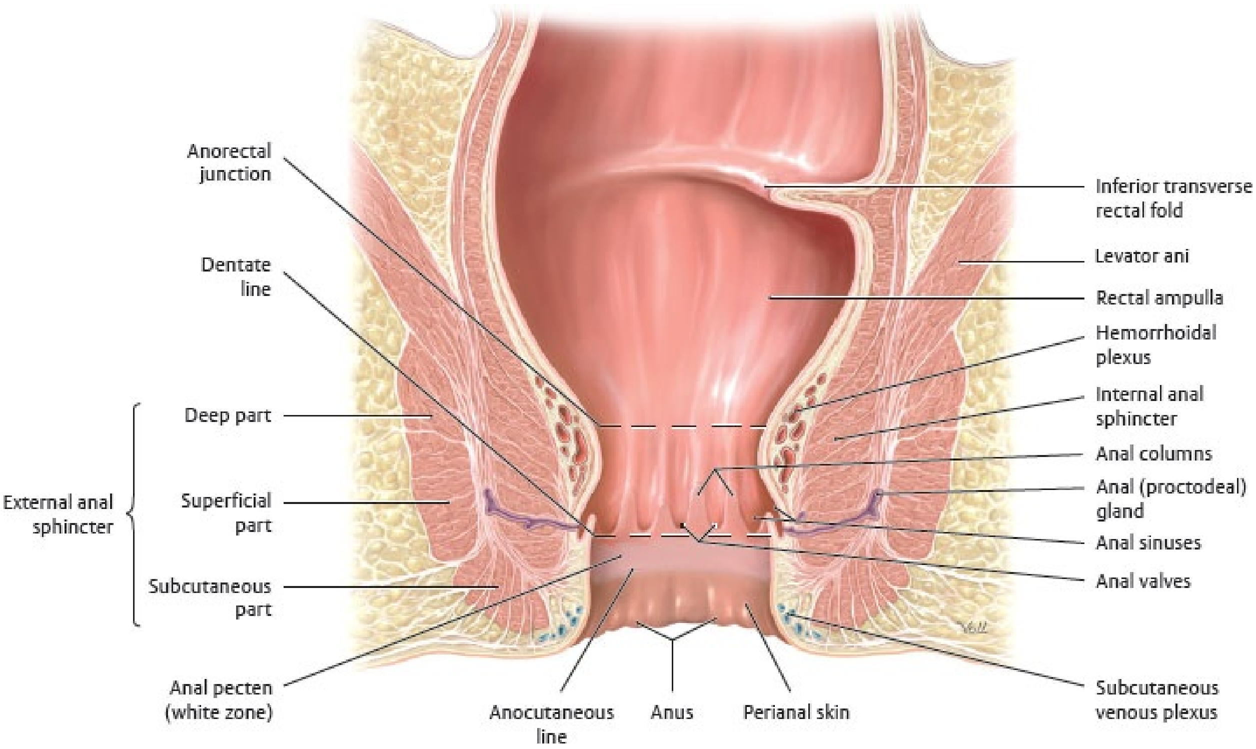

Anorectal junction
Dentate line
External anal sphincter
Deep part
Superficial part
Subcutaneous part
Anal pecten (white zone)
Anocutaneous line
Anus
Perianal skin
Inferior transverse rectal fold
Levator ani
Rectal ampulla
Hemorrhoidal plexus
Internal anal sphincter
Anal columns
Anal (proctodeal) gland
Anal sinuses
Anal valves
Subcutaneous venous plexus
Voll

Fig. 16.15 Anal canal

Coronal section, anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

  - The **dorsal clitoral arteries** supply the glans of the clitoris.
  - The **deep clitoral arteries** supply the corpora cavernosa and are responsible for engorgement during arousal.

— Tributaries of the internal pudendal veins drain most perineal structures and accompany the arteries. A single **deep dorsal clitoral vein** drains the venous plexuses of the erectile tissue and passes under the pubic symphysis to join the venous plexuses in the pelvis **(Fig. 16.14B)**.

— Most lymph from the female perineum drains to superficial inguinal lymph nodes. Exceptions include

  - the clitoris, bulbs of the vestibule, and anterior labia, which drain to deep inguinal or internal iliac nodes; and
  - the urethra, which drains to sacral or internal iliac nodes.

— The right and left pudendal nerves are the primary nerves of the perineum (see **Fig. 14.20**). They supply

- **perineal nerves** to the vaginal orifice and superficial perineal muscles;
- **dorsal clitoral nerves** to deep perineal muscles and sensation from the clitoris, especially the glans; and
- **posterior labial nerves** to the posterior vulva.

— Similar to the innervation of the male scrotum, the anterior vulva receives sensory innervation (see **Fig. 14.20**) from

- the ilioinguinal nerves and genital branch of the genitofemoral nerves, which supply branches to the mons pubis and anterior labia; and
- posterior femoral cutaneous nerves, which supply the posterolateral vulva.

— Sympathetic fibers to the perineum travel with the hypogastric nerve plexes; parasympathetic fibers travel with cavernous nerves of the uterovaginal plexus. Both innervate the erectile tissue of the clitoris and bulbs of the vestibule (**Fig.14.23**).

16.5 Anal Triangle

The anal triangle contains the anal canal and ischioanal fossae.

The Anal Canal

The **anal canal,** the terminal part of the gastrointestinal tract, controls fecal continence and the defecation response. It extends from the anorectal junction at the pelvic diaphragm to the **anus (Fig. 16.15)**.

— The puborectalis muscle forms a sling around the anorectal junction, pulling it anteriorly and creating the **perineal flexure (Fig. 16.16)**. From this angle the anal canal descends inferiorly and posteriorly between the anococcygeal ligament (levator plate) and the perineal body (see **Fig. 16.1**).

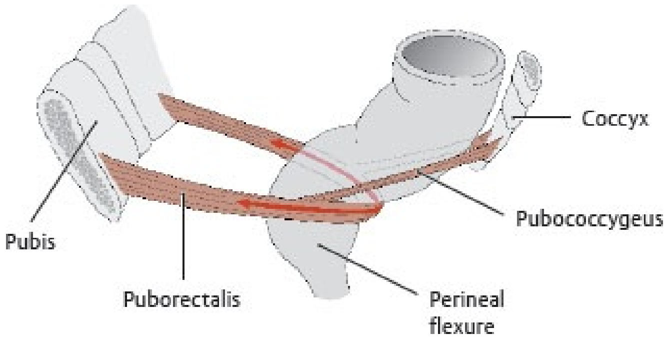


Fig. 16.16 Closure of the rectum Left lateral view.

The puborectalis acts as a muscular sling that kinks the anorectal junction. It functions in the maintenance of fecal continence. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- Two sphincters surround the anal canal:
  1. The **internal anal sphincter** is a thickening of the circular muscular layer that surrounds the upper part of the anal canal.
     - It is an involuntary sphincter.
     - It remains contracted via sympathetic innervation except in response to distension of the rectal ampulla. Parasympathetic innervation relaxes the sphincter.
  2. The **external anal sphincter** is a broad band of muscle that extends anteriorly to merge with the perineal body, posteriorly to attach to the coccyx (through the anococcygeal ligament), and superiorly to merge with the puborectalis muscle of the pelvic floor (see also **Figs. 15.1, 16.1, 16.2**). Although it is described as having deep, superficial, and subcutaneous parts, they are functionally, and often anatomically, indistinct.
     - It is a voluntary sphincter.
     - The inferior rectal nerve, a branch of the pudendal nerve, innervates this sphincter.
- The inner surface of the anal canal is characterized by
  - **anal columns,** vertical ridges formed by underlying branches of the superior rectal vessels;
  - **anal valves** that connect the inferior edges of the anal columns; and
  - **anal sinuses,** recesses at the base of the anal columns that secrete mucus to facilitate defecation.
- **The dentate (pectinate) line** is an irregular ridge at the base of the anal columns.
  - It divides the anal canal into a superior part derived from the endoderm of the embryonic hindgut and an inferior part derived from the embryonic ectoderm.
  - It divides the anal canal in its blood supply, lymphatic drainage, and innervation.
- Below the dentate line, a smooth lining devoid of glands and hair, the **anal pecten,** extends down to the **anocutaneous line,** or intersphincteric groove.
- Below the anocutaneous line, the anal canal is lined by hair-bearing skin that is continuous with **perianal skin** that surrounds the anus.

- Above the dentate line the neurovasculature of the anal canal is similar to that of the distal gastrointestinal tract (see Section 14.6).
    - It receives its blood supply from the superior rectal artery, a branch of the inferior mesenteric artery.
    - The rectal venous plexus drains through the superior rectal vein into the portal venous system.
    - Lymph drains to the internal iliac nodes.
    - Visceral innervation is transmitted via rectal plexuses to the inferior hypogastric plexus.
        - Sympathetic stimulation maintains the tone of the sphincter.
        - Parasympathetic innervation relaxes the sphincter and stimulates peristalsis of the rectum.
        - Visceral sensory fibers travel with pelvic splanchnic (parasympathetic) nerves and convey only sensation of stretching (no sensitivity to pain).
- Below the dentate line the neurovasculature of the anal canal is similar to that of the perineum (see Section 14.6).
    - It receives its blood supply from the right and left **inferior rectal arteries,** branches of the internal pudendal arteries.
    - The rectal venous plexus drains into inferior rectal veins, which in turn drain to internal iliac veins of the venae caval system.
    - Lymph drains to superficial inguinal nodes.
    - Somatic innervation is transmitted via the inferior rectal nerve, a branch of the pudendal nerve.
        - Somatic motor fibers stimulate contraction of the external anal sphincter.
        - Somatic sensory fibers transmit pain, touch, and temperature.

BOX 16.4: CLINICAL CORRELATION

HEMORRHOIDS

External hemorrhoids are thrombosed veins of the external rectal plexus, commonly associated with pregnancy or chronic constipation. They lie below the dentate line and are covered by skin. Because they are somatically innervated, they are more painful than internal hemorrhoids.

Internal hemorrhoids contain dilated veins of the internal rectal plexus. With a breakdown of the muscularis layer, these vascular cushions prolapse into the anal canal and may become ulcerated.

Because they lie above the dentate line and are viscerally innervated, these hemorrhoids are painless. They are generally not associated with portal hypertension, but bleeding is characteristically bright red due to the arteriovenous anastomoses between the venous plexus and branches of the rectal arteries.

BOX 16.5: CLINICAL CORRELATION

ANAL FISSURES

Anal fissures are tears in the mucosa around the anus (usually in the posterior midline) that are caused by the passing of hard or large stools. Because they are below the pectinate line and innervated by the inferior rectal nerves, these lesions are painful. Most anal fissures heal spontaneously within a few weeks if care is taken to prevent constipation. Perianal abscesses that develop from the fissures can spread into the adjacent ischioanal fossae.

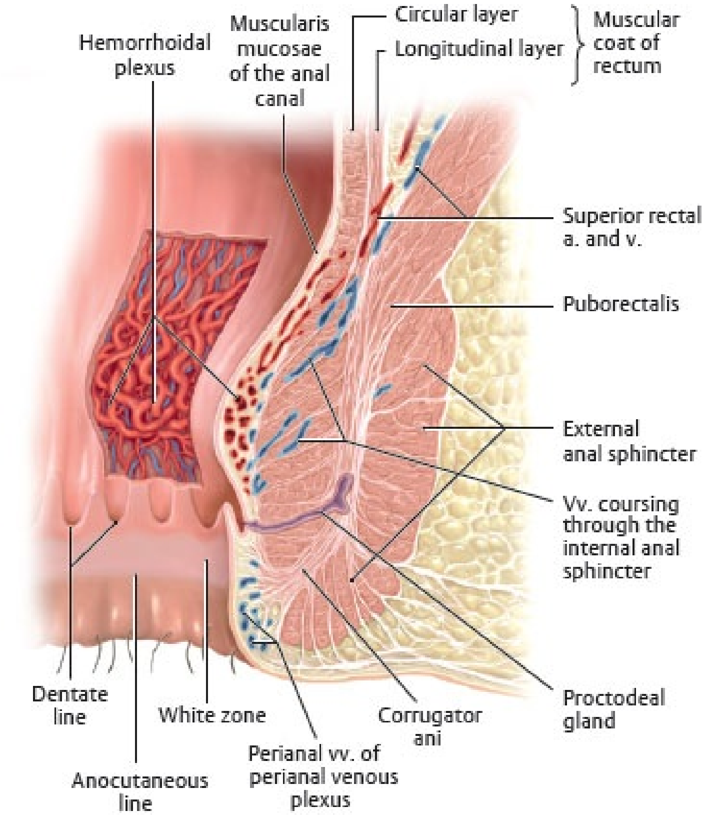
Defecation and Continence

The opening (defecation) and closing (continence) of the anal canal is controlled by a complex apparatus that involves muscular, vascular, and neural components.

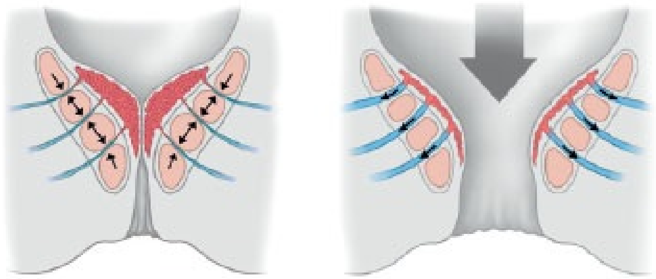
— The internal anal sphincter, under visceromotor control, is responsible for 70% of fecal continence. Sympathetic stimulation allows it to maintain a constant constriction of the anal canal until it relaxes in response to a rise in intra-rectal pressure.

— The external anal sphincter and puborectalis of the levator ani, under somatomotor control, constrict the anal canal and maintain the anorectal angle, respectively. Voluntary relaxation during defecation results in widening of the anal canal and straightening of the puborectalis sling.

— The vascular part of the continence apparatus involves the hemorrhoidal plexus, a permanently distended cavernous body within the submucosa, which forms circular cushions above the anal columns (**Fig. 16.17**). When filled with blood (supplied by the superior rectal artery) these cushions serve as an effective continence mechanism that ensures liquidand gas-tight closure. The sustained contraction of the muscular sphincter apparatus inhibits venous drainage, but when the sphincter relaxes during defecation, blood is allowed to drain via arteriovenous anastomoses to the inferior mesenteric vein (to the portal system) and middle and inferior rectal veins (to the systemic system).


Hemorrhoidal plexus
Muscularis mucosae of the anal canal
Circular layer
Longitudinal layer
Muscular coat of rectum
Superior rectal a. and v.
Puborectalis
External anal sphincter
Vv. coursing through the internal anal sphincter
Proctodeal gland
Corrugator ani
Perianal vv. of perianal venous plexus
Anocutaneous line
White zone
Dentate line

A Longitudinal section of the anal canal with the hemorrhoidal plexus windowed.



B Hemorrhoidal plexus at rest.

C Hemorrhoidal plexus during defecation.

Fig. 16.17 Structure of the vascular continence mechanism

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 2. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

— The neural component of this mechanism involves (see **Fig. 14.22**)
  - somatic motor nerves primarily via the pudendal nerve (S2–S4) to the external anal sphincter and puborectalis muscle, and somatic sensory

nerves via inferior rectal nerves from the anus and perianal skin.

  - visceral motor (parasympathetic) nerves via pelvis splanchnic nerves to the internal anal sphincter in the rectal plexus and visceral sensory nerves from the wall of the rectum.

Ischioanal Fossae and Pudendal Canal

- The ischioanal fossae are paired wedge-shaped spaces on either side of the anal canal bounded by the pelvic diaphragm superiorly and the skin of the anal region inferiorly (see **Fig. 15.24**).
  - Fat and loose connective tissue, strengthened by strong fibrous bands, fill the fossae. These tissues support the anal canal but can be displaced readily when the anal canal distends with feces.
  - The inferior rectal vessels and nerve, branches of the internal pudendal vessels and pudendal nerve, traverse the fossae.
  - The ischioanal fossae extend anteriorly into the urogenital triangle superior to the perineal membrane.
- The pudendal canal is a passageway formed by the splitting of the fascia of the obturator internus muscle on the lateral wall of the ischioanal fossa.
  - The internal pudendal artery and vein and the pudendal nerve enter the canal after exiting the lesser sciatic foramen and giving off inferior rectal branches.

17 Clinical Imaging Basics of the Pelvis and Perineum

Radiography of the pelvis is used in the evaluation of trauma patients and for a quick first-line assessment of the hip joints. If greater detail of the soft tissues is required, magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) is the next step. For evaluation of pelvic contents in female patients, ultrasound provides superb images quickly and inexpensively and without exposing the gonads to radiation. Therefore, ultrasound is very useful in emergent situations (e.g., acute pelvic pain). MRI also shows excellent detail of the pelvis, but because it takes longer to acquire the images, it is less useful in emergencies **(Table 17.1)**.

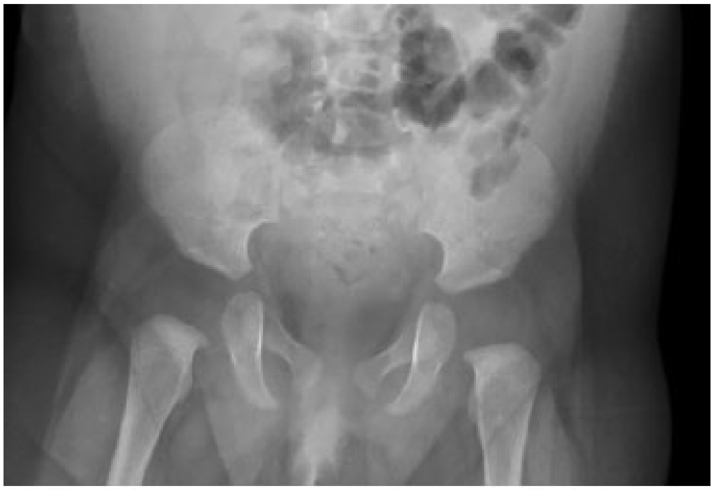
In children, ultrasound can also be valuable in evaluation of the hips. The developing skeleton is only partially ossified, thus making portions of it invisible on x-rays (**Fig. 17.1**). To assess the hip joint, such as for developmental dysplasia of the hip (DDH), ultrasound is used to assess the position of the cartilaginous femoral head (**Fig 17.2**).

Standard radiographic views of the bony pelvis include an anteroposterior (AP) projection showing both hip joints **(Fig. 17.3)**. In patients with pelvic fractures, different obliquities are often used to assess alignment. There are several approaches to imaging the contents of the pelvis. As in the abdomen, computed tomography (CT) is often used with oral or intravenous contrast to enhance the pelvic organs **(Fig. 17.4)**, but in non-emergent conditions, MRI provides the best anatomic detail **(Fig. 17.5)**. In comparison, ultrasound offers less detail, but because it is safer and faster, it is usually the first choice for imaging female pelvic organs **(Figs. 17.6** and **17.7)**.

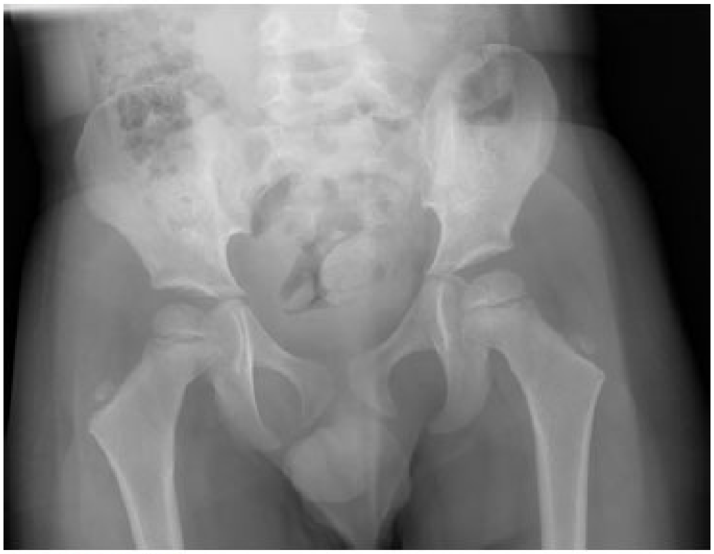
Table 17.1 Suitability of Imaging Modalities for the Pelvis

Modality	Clinical Uses
Radiographs (x-rays)	Used primarily to evaluate the pelvic bones
CT (computed tomography)	Provides excellent anatomic detail, but at

	the expense of radiation
MRI (magnetic resonance imaging)	Ideal for evaluation of the pelvic bones and surrounding muscles and soft tissues; also useful as an adjunct to ultrasound for the female pelvis
Ultrasound	The primary imaging modality for evaluation of the female pelvis, specifically the uterus and ovaries; in men, the mainstay of imaging of the scrotum and testicles



A Infant.



B School-age child.

Fig. 17.1 Frontal radiographs of the pelvis illustrating the developmental ossification of

the skeleton

Note how the femoral head and pelvic growth plates progressively ossifiy with age and thus become visible as bone by radiography. Compare to the fully grown adult pelvis in 17.3. (Courtesy of Joseph Makris, MD, Baystate Medical Center.)

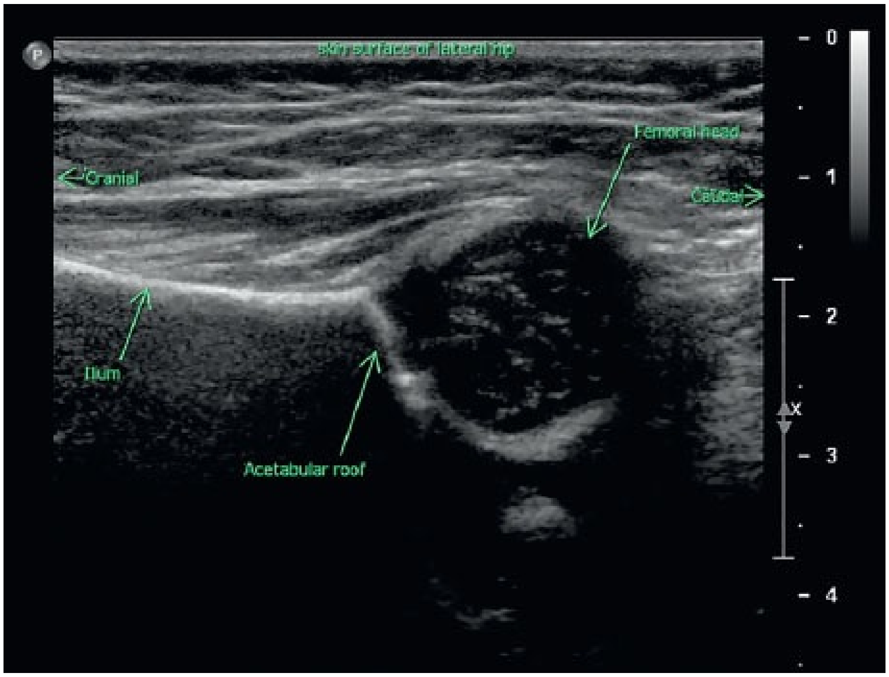

P
skin surface of lateral hip
Femoral head
Cranial
Caudal
Ilium
Acetabular roof
0
1
2
x
3
4

Fig. 17.2 Infant hip ultrasound

The probe is positioned at the lateral aspect of the infant’s hip sagittally. The cartilaginous (has not ossified yet) femoral head is well seen by ultrasound due to the water component of the growing epiphyseal cartilage. The shape of the developing acetabulum and the position of the femoral head relative to the acetabulum are evaluated for signs of developmental dysplasia. (Courtesy of Joseph Makris, MD, Baystate Medical Center.)

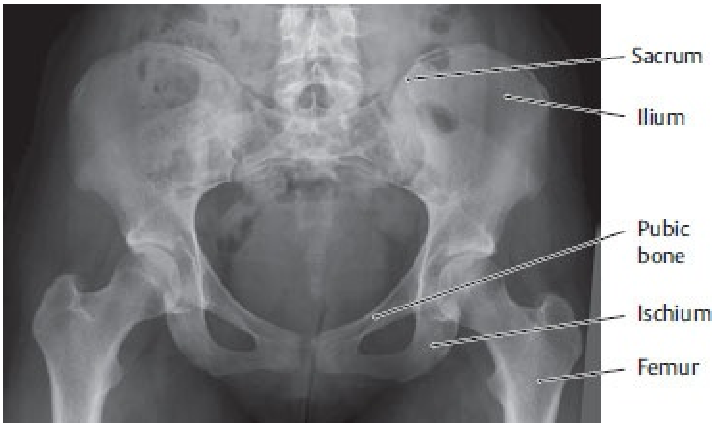

Sacrum
Ilium
Pubic bone
Ischium
Femur

Fig. 17.3 Radiograph of the pelvis in an adult

Anterior view.

Note that the rounded femoral heads sit uniformly in each acetabulum, and the sacroiliac joints and pubic symphysis are sharply seen. The lower part of the sacrum is partially obscured by gas and stool in the rectum (irregular dark and light gray shapes in the mid-pelvis). The iliac crests can be traced along their edges to the acetabulum and into the ischium and pubic symphysis. The edges of the bones should curve smoothly and be sharply defined. (Courtesy of Joseph Makris, MD, Baystate Medical Center.)

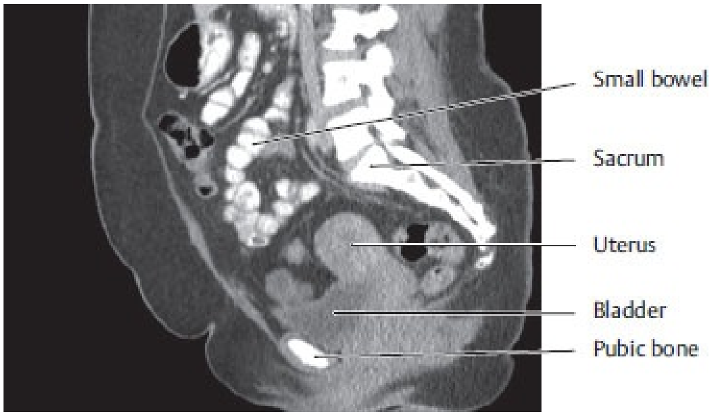


Fig. 17.4 CT of the female pelvis

Left lateral view.

This CT reconstruction, shown in the “soft tissue window,” highlights the relationships of the pelvic organs. Oral contrast causes the bowel to appear white; intravenous contrast enhances the vascularized soft tissues (light gray). The urine filled bladder has a water density of dark gray. The uterus is enhanced by the intravenous contrast and is easily seen against the bladder anteriorly and fat superiorly. The endometrium is barely seen within the uterus. It is difficult to precisely define the plane between the uterus and the adjacent rectum. (Courtesy of Joseph Makris, MD, Baystste Medical Center.)

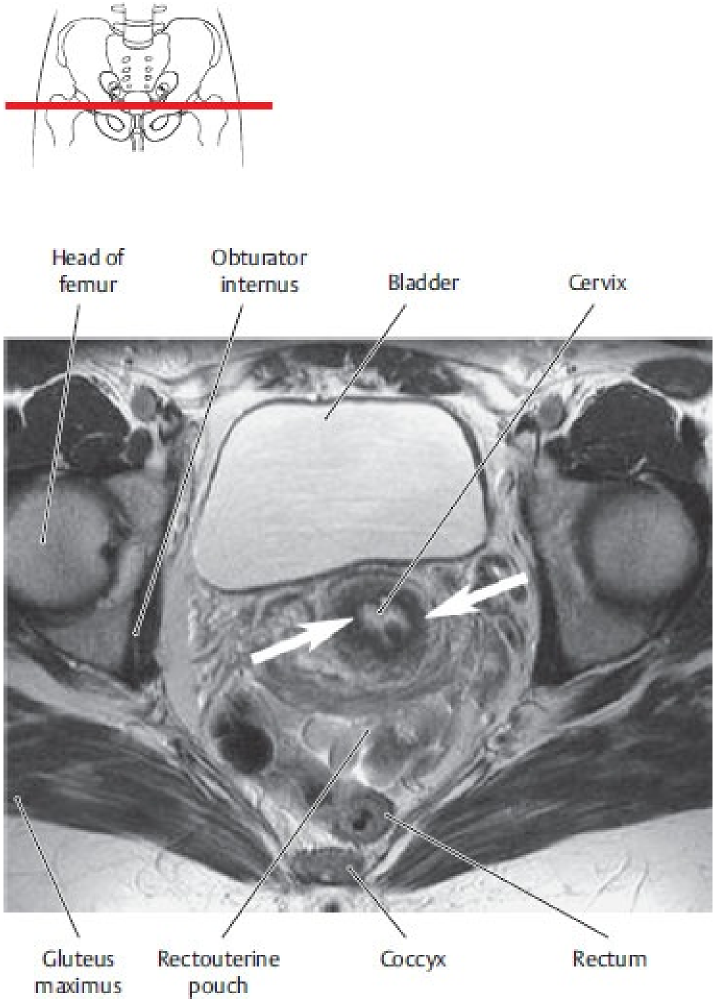
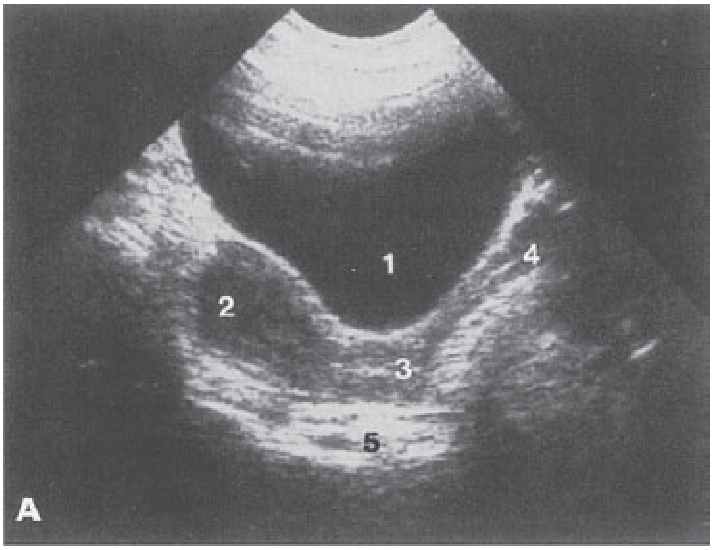
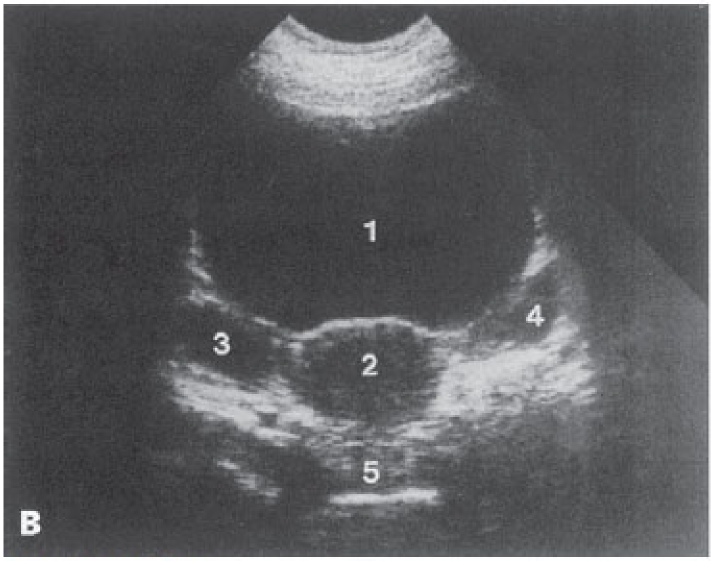

Head of femur
Obturator internus
Bladder
Cervix
Gluteus maximus
Rectouterine pouch
Coccyx
Rectum

Fig. 17.5 MRI of the female pelvis

Transverse section through the level of the cervix. In this MRI sequence, fluid is white, muscle is black, and other soft tissues are gray. Soft tissue detail seen on MRI is superior to that seen on CT and ultrasound. Note the dark *(black)* cervical stroma *(arrows)* that surrounds the white fluid in the cervical canal. Because MRI is very sensitive in differentiating tissue types, it is easy to distinguish the pelvic organs from each other and from the adjacent bowel. The bright fat planes between structures provide good contrast. (From Hamm B, et al. MRI Imaging of the Abdomen and Pelvis, 2nd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2009.)



A Midsagittal (longitudinal) section.



B Transverse section.

Fig. 17.6 Transabdominal ultrasound of the uterus and ovaries

With transabdominal imaging of the pelvis, the ultrasound probe is placed on the lower abdominal wall anterior to the bladder. A full bladder provides an acoustic "window" to better visualize the uterus and related structures. (Patients are required to drink plenty of fluid prior to the exam.) The urine in the bladder is anechoic *(black)*. The muscular and vascular structure of the uterus and follicular and vascular structure of the ovaries make these structures hypoechoic *(dark gray)*. The ovaries should appear relatively symmetric in size and shape. (From Gunderman R. Essential Radiology, 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2014.) *1*, urine filled bladder; *2*, uterus; *3*, cervix; *4*, vagina; *5*, rectum.

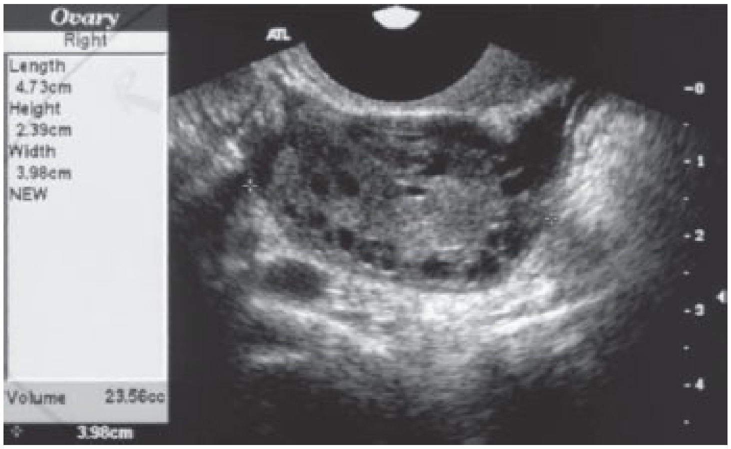

Ovary
Right
Length
4.73cm
Height
2.39cm
Width
3.98cm
NEW
Volume 23.56cc
3.98cm
ATL
0
1
2
3
4

Fig. 17.7 Transvaginal ultrasound of the right ovary

An empty bladder (patient is asked to urinate immediately before the exam) positions the uterus and associated structures for optimal visualization. The tip of the ultrasound probe is positioned directly against the cervix and pointed toward the side of interest until the ovary is found. The close proximity of the tip of the ultrasound probe to the pelvic structures provides significantly improved image detail over transabdominal images. This patient has enlarged ovaries due to polycystic ovarian syndrome. Note the detail of the numerous small ovarian follicles (*black*, since they are fluid filled). (From Gunderman R. Essential Radiology, 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2014)

Unit V Review Questions: Pelvis and Perineum

1. After a prolonged labor, Janice delivered a healthy 9 lb 8 oz baby boy through a normal vaginal birth, although the delivery required an episiotomy to prevent tearing of the perineum. During the procedure, her external anal sphincter and some fibers of the puborectalis muscle were cut. As a medical student who understands the role of these muscles, Janice is concerned about her ability to maintain fecal continence. Relaxation of these muscles

- **A.** straightens the perineal flexure of the anorectal junction
- **B.** allows venous drainage from the vascular cushions of the hemorrhoid plexus
- **C.** widens the anal canal
- **D.** would result from damage to the inferior rectal branches of the pudendal nerve
- **E.** all of the above

2. Which one of the following statements best describes the muscles of the pelvis?

- **A.** The obturator internus muscle leaves the pelvis through the greater sciatic foramen.
- **B.** The levator ani muscle is composed of the pubococcygeus, puborectalis, and iliococcygeus.
- **C.** The pelvic diaphragm is a sling of muscle that separates the true pelvis from the false pelvis.
- **D.** The piriformis muscle forms the lateral wall of the pelvis.
- **E.** The coccygeus muscle attaches to the sacrotuberous ligament.

3. Typically, the posterior division of the internal iliac artery supplies

- **A.** structures of the perineum
- **B.** muscles of the medial thigh
- **C.** meninges of the sacral spinal roots

D. uterus and uterine tubes
E. prostate

4. The components of the pelvic splanchnic nerves are most similar to the components of the

A. lumbar splanchnic nerves
B. sacral splanchnic nerves
C. pudendal nerve
D. vagus nerve
E. hypogastric nerves

5. Carcinoma of the prostate can metastasize to bone and the brain through its connections with the vertebral venous plexus. Which other structures communicate with this venous plexus?

A. Breast
B. Spinal cord
C. Intercostal muscles
D. Esophagus
E. All of the above

6. Although branches of the uterine artery anastomose extensively throughout the pelvis, the main stem of the vessel travels within the

A. proper ovarian ligament
B. cardinal ligament
C. uterosacral ligament
D. ovarian suspensory ligament
E. round ligament

7. Which of the following statements accurately describes the relations of the ureter?

A. It is crossed anteriorly by the gonadal vessels on the posterior abdominal wall.

B. It crosses the brim of the pelvis at the bifurcation of the common iliac artery.
C. In females it passes under the uterine artery ~ 2 cm lateral to the cervix.
D. It enters the bladder at the posterolateral aspect of the trigone.
E. All of the above

8. During a routine physical exam on a male patient, you test the integrity of the external anal sphincter. What spinal cord segments are involved in this?

A. T12–L1
B. L2–L4
C. L4–L5
D. S1–S2
E. S2–S4

9. The superficial perineal fascia is continuous with the

A. perineal membrane
B. dartos fascia
C. deep penile fascia
D. tunica albuginea of the penis
E. endopelvic fascia

10. The boundary of the pelvic inlet A. provides the attachment site for the pelvic diaphragm

B. includes the iliac crests
C. includes the ramus of the ischium
D. is crossed by the ovarian and testicular arteries
E. separates the cavity of the true pelvis from the abdominal cavity

11. Several years after delivering twin boys, a woman experienced mild uterine prolapse and urinary incontinence. Her gynecologist was able to confirm that the angle of her anococcygeal ligament had changed, suggesting a laxity in her pelvic floor muscles. Which muscles insert on the anococcygeal ligament?

A. Coccygeus
B. Iliococcygeus
C. Piriformis
D. Deep transverse perineal
E. Obturator internus

12. Tumors that metastasize via the bloodstream often form metastases in the first capillary bed that the cells reach after they enter the bloodstream. Based on their venous drainage, tumors in which of the following locations are likely to reach the lung before they reach the liver?

A. Ascending colon
B. Sigmoid colon
C. Pancreas
D. Superior (proximal) rectum
E. Inferior (distal) rectum

13. Which one of the following structures passes through the genital hiatus?

A. Ductus deferens
B. Cavernous nerves
C. Round ligament
D. Obturator nerve
E. External iliac artery

14. A 44-year-old woman undergoes a total hysterectomy for painful fibroids. The ovaries will not be removed during the procedure. Which of the following ligaments must be preserved?

A. Suspensory ligament
B. Ovarian ligament
C. Uterosacral ligament
D. Transverse cervical ligament
E. Round ligament

15. Which of the following statements best describes the uterine cervix?

- **A.** In a normally anteflexed uterus, the cervix is tilted posteriorly.
- **B.** Vaginal fornices surround its supravaginal part.
- **C.** It is the attachment site for the round ligament.
- **D.** It makes up the inferior third of the uterus.
- **E.** It communicates with the uterine cavity through the external os.

16. A 53-year-old man had an aortic aneurysm that extended through his aortic bifurcation into his common iliac arteries. During the open repair, the surgeon opened the vessels longitudinally and fixed a synthetic graft to the walls of the vessels above and below the aneurysm. Following surgery, the man experienced retrograde ejaculation because of damage to nerves that innervated his internal urethral sphincter. Which nerves were damaged?

- **A.** Sympathetic nerves of the superior hypogastric plexus
- **B.** Parasympathetic nerves of the superior hypogastric plexus
- **C.** Somatic nerves of the sacral plexus
- **D.** Pelvic splanchnic nerves
- **E.** Sympathetic trunk

17. You are treating a 34-year-old woman for hemorrhoids. Although she does not complain of pain, the hemorrhoids protrude into her anal canal and are becoming ulcerated. There is no evidence of portal hypertension, but blood from the ulcers is bright red. Based on her brief history, what can you surmise about her condition?

- **A.** The prolapsed tissue contains the dilated veins of the external rectal plexus.
- **B.** The hemorrhoids originate from below the dentate line.
- **C.** The dilated veins in the hemorrhoids drain to the inferior rectal veins.
- **D.** The dilated veins communicate with the rectal arteries to form an arteriovenous hemorrhoidal plexus.
- **E.** All of the above

18. During a robotic prostatectomy on a 41-year-old man, the cavernous nerves were inadvertently damaged. What symptoms would you expect in this patient?

- **A.** Loss of tone in his external anal sphincter
- **B.** Urinary incontinence
- **C.** Inability to ejaculate
- **D.** Inability to form an erection
- **E.** Loss of sensation at the tip of the penis

19. Structures that pass through the greater sciatic foramen include the

- **A.** obturator internus
- **B.** coccygeus
- **C.** iliopsoas
- **D.** piriformis
- **E.** obturator nerve

20. The tendinous arch of the pelvic fascia

- **A.** is a condensation of endopelvic fascia
- **B.** includes the lateral ligaments of the rectum
- **C.** supports the pelvic viscera
- **D.** provides an attachment site for the pelvic diaphragm
- **E.** All of the above

21. Structures that drain (directly or indirectly) into the deep inguinal lymph nodes include the

- **A.** glans of the penis
- **B.** perianal skin
- **C.** supralateral part of the uterus via the round ligament
- **D.** scrotum
- **E.** All of the above

22. During the national championships an Olympic gymnast fell backward off the balance beam, fracturing the tip of her coccyx and subluxing (dislocating) her sacroiliac joint. The team physician was concerned about damage to her sacral plexus and its branches that exit the pelvis. Nerves of the sacral plexus pass through the

A. posterior sacral foramina
B. obturator canal
C. greater sciatic foramen
D. superficial inguinal ring
E. deep inguinal ring

23. A young, pregnant woman in her third trimester was alarmed when she experienced a sharp pain in the anterior part of her labia majora when she stood up. Her obstetrician assured her that this was a common problem in late pregnancy and was most likely caused by

A. stretching of the round ligament
B. tightening of the inguinal ligament
C. pressure on the obturator nerve
D. irritation of the perineal branch of the pudendal nerve
E. stretching of the iliohypogastric nerve

24. A vascular surgeon is repairing an aneurysm of the aortic bifurcation that extends along the right common iliac artery to its division into internal iliac and external iliac branches. What structure does the surgeon encounter that is at risk as it crosses over the pelvic brim at this distal end of the aneurysm?

A. Ureter
B. Testicular artery
C. Lumbosacral trunk
D. Sciatic nerve
E. Ductus deferens

25. Similar to other sections of the large intestine, the rectum is characterized by

- **A.** teniae coli
- **B.** haustra
- **C.** a mesentery
- **D.** epiploic appendices
- **E.** None of the above

26. Which of the following are found within the superficial perineal space?

- **A.** Bulbourethral glands
- **B.** External urethral sphincter
- **C.** Bulbospongiosus muscle
- **D.** Anterior extension of ischioanal fat pad
- **E.** Inferior rectal nerve

27. The spongy part of the male urethra

- **A.** passes through the corpus spongiosum of the penis
- **B.** is surrounded by the internal urethral sphincter
- **C.** is surrounded by the external urethral sphincter
- **D.** is characterized by a vertical ridge, the urethral crest, on its posterior wall
- **E.** contains openings for the ejaculatory ducts

28. Similar to the penis in the male, the clitoris is formed by highly sensitive erectile tissue. Which of the following structures is composed of erectile tissue but does not form part of the clitoris?

- **A.** Corpora cavernosa
- **B.** Bulbs of the vestibule
- **C.** Greater vestibular glands
- **D.** Prepuce
- **E.** Glans

29. During a routine physical, which included a digital rectal exam, your physician discovered a firm nodule on your prostate, suggesting prostate carcinoma. This was confirmed in subsequent blood tests that revealed increased levels of prostate specific antigen (PSA). Prostate carcinoma is

- A. a common and non-malignant disease of older men
- B. usually found in the peripheral zone
- C. usually found in the largely glandular anterior lobe
- D. a disease of the periurethral zone, causing urethral obstruction in the early stages
- E. also known as benign prostatic hypertrophy

30. What imaging modality is best for routine evaluation of a developing fetus?

- A. CT
- B. Ultrasound
- C. X-rays
- D. MRI

31. A 24-year-old male has acute onset of severe scrotal pain. You suspect that he may have testicular torsion (twisting of the spermatic cord and testicle, restricting blood to the testicle) and send the patient for an emergent ultrasound of his scrotum to confirm your suspicion. What feature of ultrasound imaging is useful for assessing blood flow to the testicles?

- A. Low cost
- B. Lack of ionizing radiation
- C. Real-time color and spectral Doppler imaging
- D. Ultrasound waves travel best through water

Answers and Explanations

1. E. All are correct (Section 16.5).

A. Contraction of the muscles maintains the flexure, relaxation of the muscles straightens it.

B. Contraction of the muscular sphincter apparatus inhibits the venous drainage of the vascular cushions. They drain when the sphincters relax during defecation.

C. The function of the external anal canal is to widen the anal canal during defecation.

D. The inferior rectal nerves maintain the tone of the external anal sphincter and puborectalis muscles. Denervaton of these muscles would result in their relaxation.

2. **B.** The levator ani muscle is composed of the pubococcygeus, puborectalis, and iliococcygeus muscles (Section 14.3).

A. The obturator internus muscle covers the sidewall of the pelvis and perineum. Its tendon passes from the perineum to the gluteal region through the lesser sciatic foramen.

C. The pelvic diaphragm separates the true pelvis from the perineum, which lies below it.

D. The piriformis muscle forms the posterior muscular wall of the pelvis.

E. The coccygeus muscle attaches to the sacrospinous ligament along its entire length.

3. **C.** The posterior division supplies parietal branches to the posterior abdominal wall, some gluteal muscles, and the meninges of the sacral spinal roots (Section 14.6).

A. The internal pudendal artery, a branch of the anterior division of the internal iliac artery, supplies most structures of the perineum.

B. The obturator artery, a branch of the anterior division of the internal iliac artery, supplies muscles of the medial thigh.

D. The uterine artery, a branch of the anterior division of the internal iliac artery, supplies the uterus and uterine tubes.

E. The prostatic arteries, usually branches of the inferior vesical arteries, are derived from the anterior division of the internal iliac artery.

4. **D.** The pelvic splanchnic nerves represent the sacral component of the parasympathetic system; the vagus nerve represents the cranial component of the parasympathetic system (Section 14.6).

A. Lumbar splanchnic nerves arise from the lumbar sympathetic trunk and carry postganglionic sympathetic fibers.

B. Sacral splanchnic nerves arise from the sacral sympathetic trunk and carry postganglionic sympathetic fibers.

C. The pudendal nerve arises from the sacral plexus and carries somatic sensory and motor fibers.

E. Hypogastric nerves derive from the superior hypogastric plexus carrying postganglionic sympathetic fibers to the pelvic plexus.

5. E. The vertebral venous system is a tributary of the azygos system. The breast, intercostal muscles, and esophagus drain via intercostal veins to the azygos system, and the spinal cord drains directly into the vertebral venous plexus (Section 15.1 and Unit III, Thorax).

A. Blood from the breast drains to intercostal veins and the azygos system, which communicates with the vertebral venous plexus. B through D are also correct (E).

B. The veins of the spinal cord drain to the vertebral venous plexus. A, C, and D are also correct (E).

C. The intercostal veins that drain intercostal muscles terminate in the azygos system, which also receives the vertebral venous plexus. A, B, and D are also correct (E).

D. Veins of the lower esophagus drain to the portal system, but in the thorax esophageal veins drain to the azygos system, which also receives the vertebral venous plexus. A through C are also correct (E).

6. B. The uterine artery and vein travel within the cardinal ligament at the base of the broad ligament (Section 15.2).

A. The proper ovarian ligament connects the ovary to the uterus and does not contain any major vessels.

C. The uterosacral ligament is a thickening of endopelvic fascia that connects the cervix of the uterus to the sacrum. It does not contain any major vessels.

D. The ovarian suspensory ligament is a fold of peritoneum that contains the ovarian vessels as they cross over the pelvic brim.

E. The round ligament extends from the uterus through the inguinal canal to the labia majora. Although it is accompanied by small vessels, it does not contain any major arteries.

7. E. All are correct (Section 15.3).

A. The gonadal vessels cross anterior to the ureter as it descends along the posterior abdominal wall. B through D are also correct (E).

B. The bifurcation of the common iliac artery is a useful landmark for locating the ureter as it crosses the pelvic brim. A, C, and D are also correct (E).

C. The ureter passes under the uterine artery lateral to the uterine cervix and therefore is at risk of injury during a hysterectomy. A, B, and D are also correct (E).

D. The ureteral openings posterolaterally and the urethral opening in the anterior midline define the apexes of the trigone. A through C are also correct (E).

8. E. The pudendal nerve (S2–S4) provides motor innervation to the external sphincter (Sections 14.6 and 15.4).

A. T12–L1 nerve roots contribute to the subcostal, iliohypogastric, and ilioinguinal nerves, which innervate muscles of the anterior abdominal wall.

B. The L2–L4 nerve roots form the femoral and obturator nerves, which innervate muscles of the anterior and medial thigh.

C. Nerves from L4–L5 spinal cord segments form the lumbosacral trunk, which joins the sacral plexus to innervate muscles of the lower limb.

D. S1–S2 nerve roots contribute to the sacral plexus, which innervates muscles of the lower limb.

9. B. The superficial perineal fascia is continuous with the dartos fascia that lines the scrotum and with the membranous layer (Scarpa's fascia) of the superficial fascia of the abdominal wall (Section 16.1).

A. The perineal membrane is a fibrous sheet that forms the roof of the superficial perineal space.

C. Deep penile fascia is a fibrous layer that binds the three erectile bodies of the penis.

D. Each of the three erectile bodies of the penis is surrounded by the dense, fibrous tunica albuginea.

E. Endopelvic fascia is the loose connective tissue matrix that fills the subperitoneal spaces of the pelvis.

10. E. The pelvic inlet separates the true pelvis from the false pelvis. The cavity of the false pelvis is the lower part of the abdominal cavity and contains abdominal viscera (Section 14.1).

A. The pelvic diaphragm attaches to the superior pubic ramus, tendinous arch of the levator ani, and sacrospinous ligament.

B. The iliac crests form the upper boundary of the false pelvis. The pelvic inlet forms its lower boundary.

C. The ramus of the ischium forms part of the pelvic outlet but not the pelvic inlet.

D. The ovarian arteries cross the pelvic inlet, but the testicular arteries pass along the brim of the pelvis (pelvic inlet) to the deep inguinal ring, where they enter the inguinal canal as part of the spermatic cord.

11. **B.** The anococcygeal ligament (also known as the levator plate) is a midline raphe between the anus and coccyx that serves as the insertion for the pubococcygeus and iliococcygeus muscles (Section 14.3).

A. The coccygeus inserts on the ischial spine.

C. The piriformis inserts on the greater trochanter of the femur.

D. Deep transverse perineal muscles insert on the vagina (or prostate) and perineal body.

E. The obturator internus inserts on the greater trochanter of the femur.

12. **E.** The inferior rectal veins drain through the caval system (via the internal iliac vein and inferior vena cava) back to the heart and pulmonary circulation. All other choices are tributaries of the portal system, which drains through the liver before returning to the heart (Sections 11.2 and 15.4).

A. Veins of the ascending colon are tributaries of the portal system. Therefore, blood passes through the liver before returning to the heart and pulmonary circulation.

B. Veins of the sigmoid colon, and all parts of the gastrointestinal tract, are tributaries of the portal system. Therefore, blood passes through the liver before returning to the heart and pulmonary circulation.

C. Veins of the pancreas are tributaries of the portal system. Therefore, blood from the pancreas drains through the liver before returning to the heart and pulmonary circulation.

D. The superior rectal vein that drains the superior rectum is a tributary of the portal system. Therefore, this blood passes through the liver before returning to the heart and pulmonary circulation.

13. **B.** The cavernous nerves carry parasympathetic innervation from the pelvic plexus to the perineum by passing through the genital hiatus (Section 14.6).

A. The ductus deferens passes through the deep inguinal ring and inguinal canal of the male.

C. The round ligament traverses the female inguinal canal and terminates in the labia majora.

D. The obturator nerve passes through the obturator canal into the medial thigh.

E. The external iliac artery passes below the inguinal ligament into the anterior thigh.

14. A. The suspensory ligament contains the ovarian vessels and is removed only during the removal of the ovary (Section 15.2).

B. The ovarian ligament attaches the ovary to the uterus and must be ligated to extract the uterus.

C. The uterosacral ligament connects the cervix to the sacrum.

D. The transverse cervical ligament contains the uterine arteries, which are ligated during a hysterectomy.

E. The round ligament passes through the inguinal canal and connects the uterus to the labia majora.

15. D. The uterus comprises a body that forms the superior two thirds and a cervix that forms the inferior one third (Section 15.2).

A. In an anteflexed uterus, the cervix is tilted anteriorly.

B. The vaginal part of the cervix is surrounded by the vaginal fornices.

C. The round ligaments arise from the upper part of the uterus.

E. The cervix communicates with the body of the uterus through the internal os.

16. A. The superior hypogastric plexus, a sympathetic nerve plexus, drapes over the aortic bifurcation as it enters the pelvis. It is frequently cut during surgery for the repair of an aneurysm at the location. The sympathetic nerves stimulate closure of the internal urethral sphincter during ejaculation, preventing the retrograde flow of seminal fluid into the bladder. Damage to these nerves can result in retrograde ejaculation (Sections 14.6 and 16.3).

B. The superior hypogastric plexus is a sympathetic nerve plexus derived from the intermesenteric plexus and lumbar splanchnic nerves.

C. Somatic nerves do not stimulate visceral responses such as closure of the sphincter.

D. Pelvic splanchnic nerves do not innervate the internal urethral sphincter.

E. The paired sympathetic trunks run along the vertebral bodies on either side and would not be damaged in this procedure.

17. D. The submucosal venous plexus of the anorectal region communicates with branches of the rectal arteries in an arteriovenous anastomosis, creating a thickened vascular tissue known as the hemorrhoidal plexus. As a result of these anastomoses, bleeding from the internal rectal plexus appears bright red (Section 15.4).

A. Prolapsed internal hemorrhoids contain the dilated veins of the internal rectal plexus and are painless. blood passes through the liver before returning to the heart and pulmonary circulation.

13. **B.** The cavernous nerves carry parasympathetic innervation from the pelvic plexus to the perineum by passing through the genital hiatus (Section 14.6).

A. The ductus deferens passes through the deep inguinal ring and inguinal canal of the male.

C. The round ligament traverses the female inguinal canal and terminates in the labia majora.

D. The obturator nerve passes through the obturator canal into the medial thigh.

E. The external iliac artery passes below the inguinal ligament into the anterior thigh.

14. **A.** The suspensory ligament contains the ovarian vessels and is removed only during the removal of the ovary (Section 15.2).

B. The ovarian ligament attaches the ovary to the uterus and must be ligated to extract the uterus.

C. The uterosacral ligament connects the cervix to the sacrum.

D. The transverse cervical ligament contains the uterine arteries, which are ligated during a hysterectomy.

E. The round ligament passes through the inguinal canal and connects the uterus to the labia majora.

15. **D.** The uterus comprises a body that forms the superior two thirds and a cervix that forms the inferior one third (Section 15.2).

A. In an anteflexed uterus, the cervix is tilted anteriorly.

B. The vaginal part of the cervix is surrounded by the vaginal fornices.

C. The round ligaments arise from the upper part of the uterus.

E. The cervix communicates with the body of the uterus through the internal os.

16. **A.** The superior hypogastric plexus, a sympathetic nerve plexus, drapes over the aortic bifurcation as it enters the pelvis. It is frequently cut during surgery for the repair of an aneurysm at the location. The sympathetic nerves stimulate closure of the internal urethral sphincter during ejaculation, preventing the retrograde flow of seminal fluid into the bladder. Damage to these nerves can result in retrograde ejaculation (Sections 14.6 and 16.3).

B. The superior hypogastric plexus is a sympathetic nerve plexus derived from the intermesenteric plexus and lumbar splanchnic nerves.

C. Somatic nerves do not stimulate visceral responses such as closure of the sphincter.

D. Pelvic splanchnic nerves do not innervate the internal urethral sphincter.

E. The paired sympathetic trunks run along the vertebral bodies on either side and would not be damaged in this procedure.

17. **D.** The submucosal venous plexus of the anorectal region communicates with branches of the rectal arteries in an arteriovenous anastomosis, creating a thickened vascular tissue known as the hemorrhoidal plexus. As a result of these anastomoses, bleeding from the internal rectal plexus appears bright red (Section 15.4).

A. Prolapsed internal hemorrhoids contain the dilated veins of the internal rectal plexus and are painless.

A. Lymph from the glans of the penis drains to deep inguinal nodes. B through D are also correct (E).

B. Lymph from perianal skin, like all skin of the perineum, drains to superficial inguinal nodes, which drain to deep inguinal nodes. A, C, and D are also correct (E).

C. Lymph from the supralateral parts of the uterus drain along the round ligaments (which terminate in the labia majora) to superficial inguinal nodes. These nodes drain to the deep inguinal nodes. A, B, and D are also correct (E).

D. Lymph from the scrotum drains to superficial inguinal nodes, which drain to deep inguinal nodes. A through C are also correct (E).

22. **C.** Most nerves of the sacral plexus pass through the greater sciatic foramen to innervate muscles of the gluteal region and lower limb (Section 14.6).

A. Only posterior rami of sacral spinal nerves pass through the posterior sacral foramina. The sacral plexus is formed by anterior rami of sacral spinal nerves.

B. The obturator nerve, which passes through the obturator canal, is a branch of the lumbar plexus.

D. The ilioinguinal and genitofemoral nerves, which pass through the superficial inguinal ring, are branches of the lumbar plexus.

E. The genitofemoral nerve, a branch of the lumbar plexus, passes through the deep inguinal ring.

23. **A.** The round ligament originates on the superior aspect of the anterolateral uterus and inserts in the labia majora. As the uterus enlarges and stretches the ligament, pain is felt in the labia (Section 15.2).

B. During late pregnancy pelvic ligaments are more relaxed in preparation for the passage of the child through the birth canal.

C. Pressure on the obturator nerve would be felt on the medial thigh.

D. The anterior part of the labia majora is innervated by the labial branches of the genitofemoral nerve, not the pudendal nerve.

E. The iliohypogastric nerve innervates the skin above the pubic crest and does not extend inferiorly to the labia.

24. **A.** The ureter crosses the pelvic brim at the bifurcation of the common iliac artery into its internal iliac and external iliac branches (Section 15.3).

B. The testicular artery does not cross the pelvic brim but enters the deep inguinal ring.

C. The lumbosacral trunk crosses the pelvic brim posterior to the common iliac vessels and anterior to the sacroiliac joint. It enters the pelvis to join the sacral plexus.

D. The sciatic nerve passes through the greater sciatic foramen and does not cross the pelvic brim.

E. The ductus deferens courses around the inferior epigastric vessels and over the distal end of the external iliac vessels to descend into the pelvis.

25. **E.** The rectum is devoid of teniae coli, haustra, a mesentery, and epiploic appendices (Section 15.4).

A. The teniae coli of the large intestine converge to form a uniform layer surrounding the rectum.

B. The haustra of the large intestine disappear at the rectosigmoid junction.

C. The rectum has no mesentery. The upper rectum is covered anteriorly by peritoneum, but the lower rectum lies in the subperitoneal space.

D. Epiploic appendices are not present in the rectum.

26. **C.** The bulbospongiosus muscle is found within the superficial perineal space (Section 16.1).

A. The bulbourethral glands are found in the deep perineal space.

B. The external urethral sphincter is located in the deep perineal space.

D. The anterior extensions of the ischioanal fat pads are found in the deep perineal space.

E. The inferior rectal nerve is found in the anal triangle, not the deep perineal or the superficial perineal spaces of the urogenital triangle.

27. **A.** The spongy urethra passes through the bulb and corpus spongiosum of the penis (Section 15.3).

B. The internal urethral sphincter surrounds the preprostatic urethra at the neck of the bladder.

C. Part of the external urethral sphincter surrounds the membranous urethra.

D. The urethral crest is a feature of the prostatic urethra.

E. Ejaculatory ducts open into the prostatic urethra on the urethral crest.

28. **B.** The bulbs of the vestibule are masses of erectile tissue that lie deep to the labia minora. Unlike in the male, where the bulb and corpus spongiosum forms part of the penis, the bulbs of the vestibule do not form part of the clitoris (Section 16.4).

A. The paired corpora cavernosa converge to form the body of the clitoris.

C. Greater vestibular glands, which lie deep to the bulbs of the vestibule, are not part of the clitoris and are not composed of erectile tissue.

D. The prepuce is a part of the clitoris that forms a hood over the body.

E. The glans is the highly sensitive tip of the clitoris.

29. **B.** Prostate tumors most often grow deep to the capsule in the peripheral zone.

A. Prostatic carcinoma is a common disease of older men but can metastasize via the vertebral venous plexus to the bony pelvis, vertebral column, skull, and brain, and via other venous routes, to the heart and lungs.

C. The anterior lobe, or isthmus, is fibromuscular and not a common site of carcinoma.

D. Although prostate carcinoma may eventually invade the periurethral zone, it generally does not cause urethral obstruction in the early stages.

E. Benign prostatic hypertrophy results from proliferation of the epithelial and stromal tissues, particularly of the periurethral zone, and is unrelated to carcinoma.

30. **B.** Ultrasound is the optimal imaging tool for fetal evaluation due to its lack of ionizing radiation and relative low cost. Additionally, the fluid-filled amniotic sac provides an excellent acoustic window.

A. A developing fetus is particularly vulnerable to the potential deleterious effects of radiation and thus CT is contraindicated in fetal evaluation.

C. X-rays would also expose the fetus to radiation, although at a lower dose than CT. Additionally, a radiograph would show only limited detail of the developing fetal skeleton, and would not be sufficient in this setting.

D. MRI is safe for fetal imaging and provides excellent anatomic detail. However, it is expensive, less available, and requires very long scan times, making it impractical for use in routine or screening fetal evaluation. MRI is used as a supplement to ultrasound for further evaluation of fetal and maternal abnormalities detected at screening ultrasound.

31. **C.** Doppler ultrasound can detect motion and is excellent for assessment of blood flow. The use of Doppler ultrasound is an important step in the evaluation of acute scrotal pain as it can be obtained very quickly and provides excellent imaging detail of the testes and scrotal contents. Testicular torsion is a surgical emergency, and rapid diagnosis and treatment are key to preventing infarction and subsequent loss of the testicle.

A. The relative low cost of ultrasound contributes to its high availability, but is not related to blood flow assessment.

B. Lack of radiation makes ultrasound particularly well suited for imaging the gonads but is not related to blood flow assessment.

D. Ultrasound waves do travel well through water/fluid but since the testicles are located in the scrotum, this is not a critical factor. Transabdominal imaging of the uterus on the other hand, requires a full bladder to be used as an acoustic “window”.

Unit VI Upper Limb

18 Overview of the Upper Limb

- 18.1 General Features
- 18.2 Bones of the Upper Limb
  - 18.1 Clinical Correlation: Clavicular Fractures
  - 18.2 Clinical Correlation: Humeral Fractures
  - 18.3 Clinical Correlation: Colles’ Fractures
  - 18.4 Clinical Correlation: Lunate Dislocation
  - 18.5 Clinical Correlation: Scaphoid Fractures
- 18.3 Fascia and Compartments of the Upper Limb
- 18.4 Neurovasculature of the Upper Limb
  - 18.1 Nerves of the Brachial Plexus
  - 18.6 Clinical Correlation: Root- and Trunk-Level Injuries
  - 18.7 Clinical Correlation: Musculocutaneous Nerve Injury
  - 18.8 Clinical Correlation: Median Nerve Injury
  - 18.9 Clinical Correlation: Ulnar Nerve Injury

    - 18.10 Clinical Correlation: Axillary Nerve Injury
    - 18.11 Clinical Correlation: Radial Nerve Injury

19 Functional Anatomy of the Upper Limb

- 19.1 The Pectoral Girdle
    - 19.1 Pectoral Girdle Muscles
    - 19.2 Movements of the Pectoral Girdle
    - 19.1 Clinical Correlation: Long Thoracic Nerve Injury
- 19.2 The Shoulder Region
    - 19.3 Shoulder Muscles
    - 19.4 Deltoid and Rotator Cuff Muscles
    - 19.5 Movements at the Glenohumeral Joint
    - 19.2 Clinical Correlation: Glenohumeral Dislocation
    - 19.3 Clinical Correlation: Rotator Cuff Tears
- 19.3 The Arm and Cubital Region
    - 19.6 Arm Muscles: Anterior and Posterior Compartments
    - 19.7 Movements at the Humeroulnar and Humeroradial Joints
- 19.4 The Forearm
    - 19.8 Movements at the Radioulnar Joints
    - 19.9 Forearm Muscles: Anterior Compartment
    - 19.10 Forearm Muscles: Posterior Compartment

- 19.4 Clinical Correlation: Subluxation of the Radial Head (Nursemaid’s Elbow)
- 19.5 Clinical Correlation: Lateral Epicondylitis (“Tennis Elbow”)

19.5 The Wrist

- 19.11 Movements at the Wrist Joints
- 19.12 Dorsal Compartments for Extensor Tendons
- 19.6 Clinical Correlation: Carpal Tunnel Syndrome
- 19.7 Clinical Correlation: Ulnar Nerve Compression

19.6 The Hand

- 19.13 Movements at the Joints of the Fingers (Digits 2 through 5)
- 19.14 Movements at Joints of the Thumb
- 19.15 Thenar Muscles
- 19.16 Hypothenar Muscles
- 19.17 Metacarpal Muscles
- 19.8 Clinical Correlation: Dupuytren’s Disease
- 19.9 Clinical Correlation: Tendon Sheath Communication

19.7 Topographic Views of Upper Limb Musculature

20 Clinical Imaging Basics of the Upper Limb

- 20.1 Suitability of Imaging Modalities for the Upper Limb

Review Questions: Upper Limb

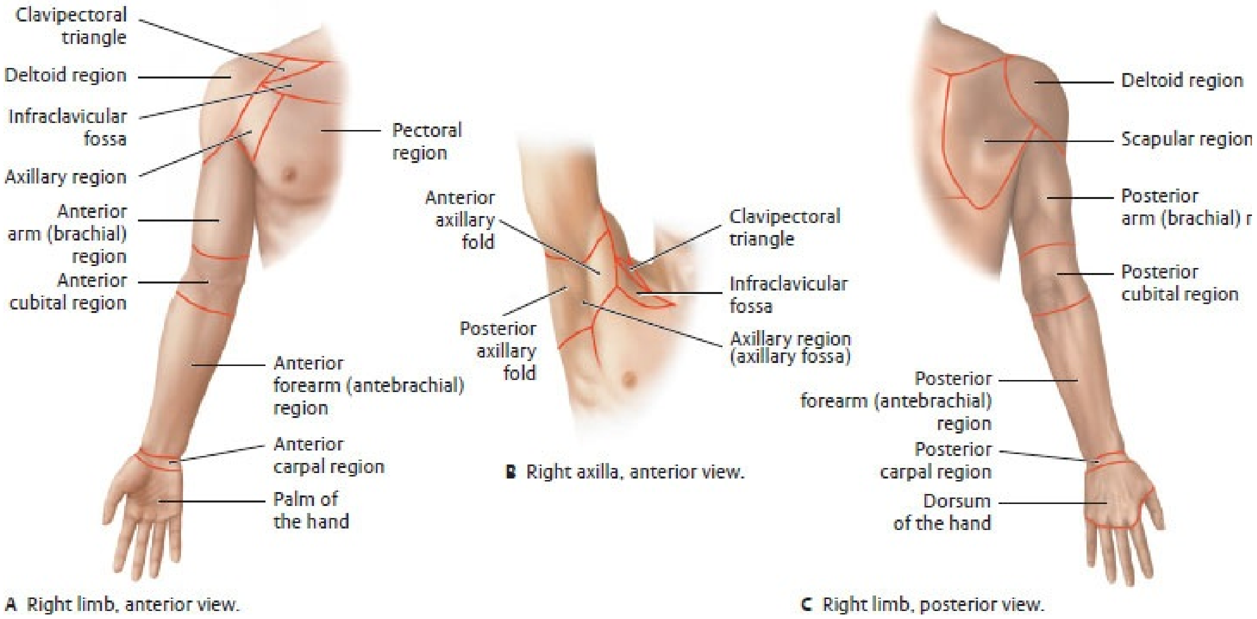
18 Overview of the Upper Limb

The upper limb is designed for mobility and dexterity. Actions at the shoulder and elbow joints that allow positioning of the limb complement fine movements of the hands and fingers. Some stability is sacrificed for this extensive mobility, particularly in the shoulder, which makes the upper limb vulnerable to injury.

18.1 General Features

- In the anatomic position, the upper limbs hang vertically with the elbow joint pointing posteriorly and the palm of the hand facing anteriorly.
- The major regions of the upper limb **(Fig. 18.1)** are
  - the **shoulder region,** which includes the **pectoral, scapular, deltoid,** and **lateral cervical regions** and overlies the **pectoral** (**shoulder**) **girdle;**
  - the **axilla** (**axillary region**)**,** the armpit;
  - the **arm** (**brachial region**)**,** between the shoulder and elbow;
  - the **cubital region,** at the elbow;
  - the **forearm** (**antebrachial region**)**,** between the elbow and wrist;
  - the **carpal region,** at the wrist; and
  - the **hand,** which has palmar and dorsal surfaces.
- Movements at joints of the upper limb include
  - **flexion,** bending in a direction that narrows the distance between ventral surfaces, as represented in the embryo (in the upper limb, ventral surfaces can be interpreted as anterior surfaces, but in the lower limb, due to rotation of the limbs during development, some ventral surfaces have rotated to the posterior surface);
  - **extension,** bending, or straightening in the direction that is opposite that of flexion;
  - **abduction,** movement away from a central axis;
  - **adduction,** movement toward a central axis;
  - **external** (**lateral**) **rotation,** outward rotation around a longitudinal axis;
  - **internal** (**medial**) **rotation,** inward rotation around a longitudinal axis;

  - **circumduction,** circular motion around the point of articulation;
  - **supination,** turning the palm up;
  - **pronation,** turning the palm down;
  - **radial** or **ulnar deviation,** angling the wrist toward the radius or ulnar side (also abduction or adduction of the wrist); and
  - **opposition,** movement of the thumb or 5th digit to oppose the other fingers.
- Muscles of the upper limb are categorized as
  - **intrinsic muscles,** whose origin and insertion are near the joint (e.g., intrinsic muscles of the hand originate and insert on bones of the wrist and hand), and
  - **extrinsic muscles,** whose origin is distant from the area of movement but insert near the joint via a long tendon (e.g., forearm muscles that flex the fingers are extrinsic muscles of the hand).
    - The tendons of extrinsic muscles are often referred to as **long flexor** (or **extensor**) **tendons.**
    - **Synovial tendon sheaths,** which surround tendons of extrinsic muscles at the wrist and fingers, provide a lubricated surface that facilitates movement of these tendons across the joint.


Clavipectoral triangle
Deltoid region
Infraclavicular fossa
Axillary region
Anterior arm (brachial) region
Anterior cubital region
Pectoral region
Anterior forearm (antebrachial) region
Anterior carpal region
Palm of the hand
Anterior axillary fold
Posterior axillary fold
Clavipectoral triangle
Infraclavicular fossa
Axillary region (axillary fossa)
Deltoid region
Scapular region
Posterior arm (brachial) r
Posterior cubital region
Posterior forearm (antebrachial) region
Posterior carpal region
Dorsum of the hand

A Right limb, anterior view.

B Right axilla, anterior view.

C Right limb, posterior view.

Fig. 18.1 Regions of the upper limb

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

18.2 Bones of the Upper Limb

Bones of the upper limb include the clavicle and scapula that make up the pectoral girdle, the humerus of the arm, the radius and ulna of the forearm, the carpal bones of the wrist, and the metacarpal bones and phalanges of the hand (**Fig. 18.2**).

- The pectoral girdle attaches the arm to the trunk (**Fig. 18.3**).
- The **clavicle** is an S-shaped bone that forms the anterior part of the pectoral girdle (**Fig. 18.4**).
  - It articulates with the clavicular notch of the manubrium medially and the acromion of the scapula laterally.
  - It is palpable along its entire length.

BOX 18.1: CLINICAL CORRELATION

CLAVICULAR FRACTURES

Fractures of the clavicle are common, particularly in children. A midclavicular fracture may be displaced by the upward pull of the proximal segment by the sternocleidomastoid muscle and the downward pull of the distal fragment by the weight of the upper limb. Distal clavicular fractures may disrupt the acromioclavicular joint or the coracoclavicular ligaments.

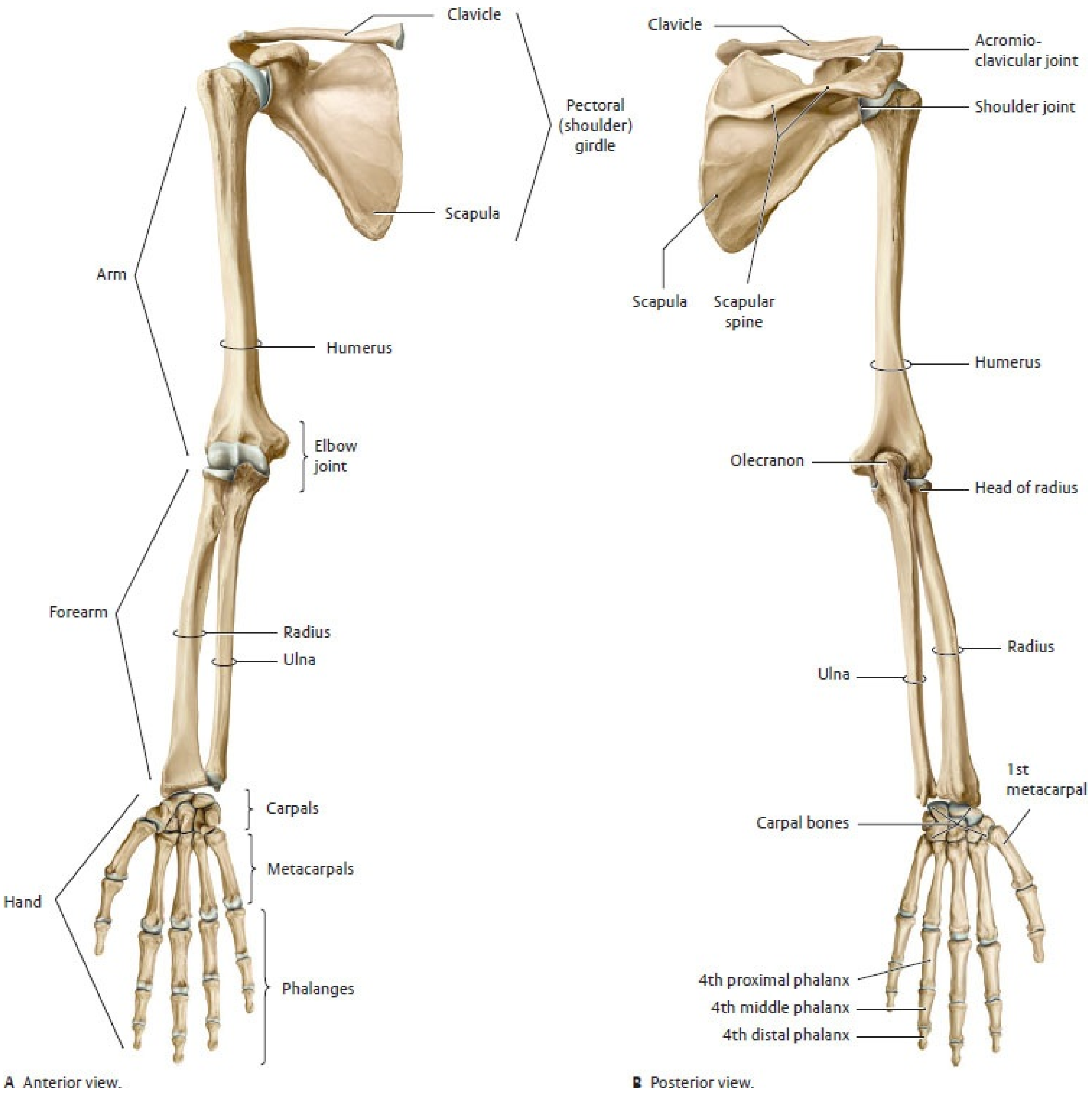

Clavicle
Pectoral (shoulder) girdle
Scapula
Arm
Humerus
Elbow joint
Forearm
Radius
Ulna
Carpals
Metacarpals
Hand
Phalanges
A Anterior view.
Clavicle
Acromio-clavicular joint
Shoulder joint
Scapula
Scapular spine
Humerus
Olecranon
Head of radius
Radius
Ulna
1st metacarpal
Carpal bones
4th proximal phalanx
4th middle phalanx
4th distal phalanx
B Posterior view.

Fig. 18.2 Skeleton of the upper limb

Right limb. The upper limb is subdivided into three regions: arm, forearm, and hand. The pectoral (shoulder) girdle (clavicle and scapula) joins the upper limb to the thorax at the sternoclavicular joint. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

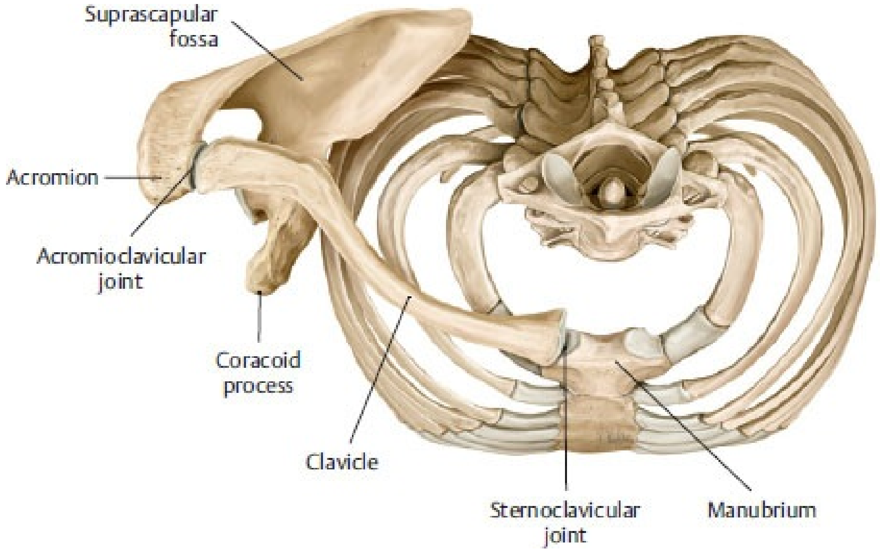
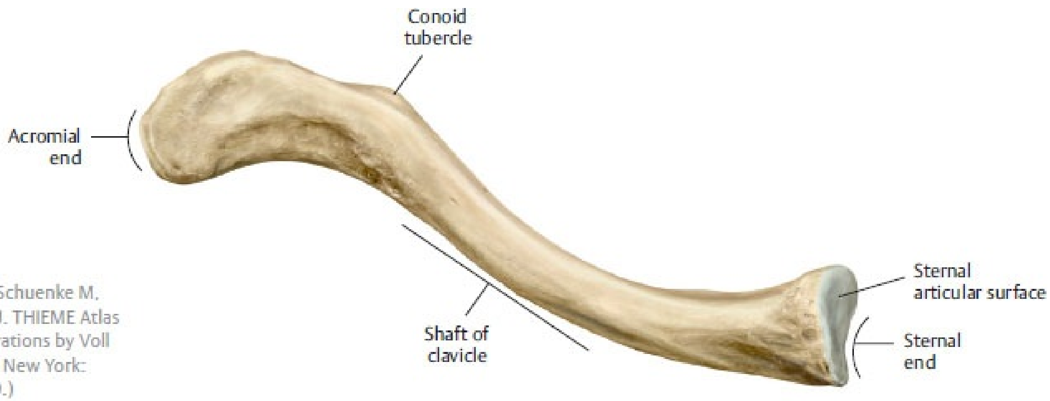

Suprascapular fossa
Acromion
Acromioclavicular joint
Coracoid process
Clavicle
Sternoclavicular joint
Manubrium

Fig. 18.3 Shoulder girdle in situ

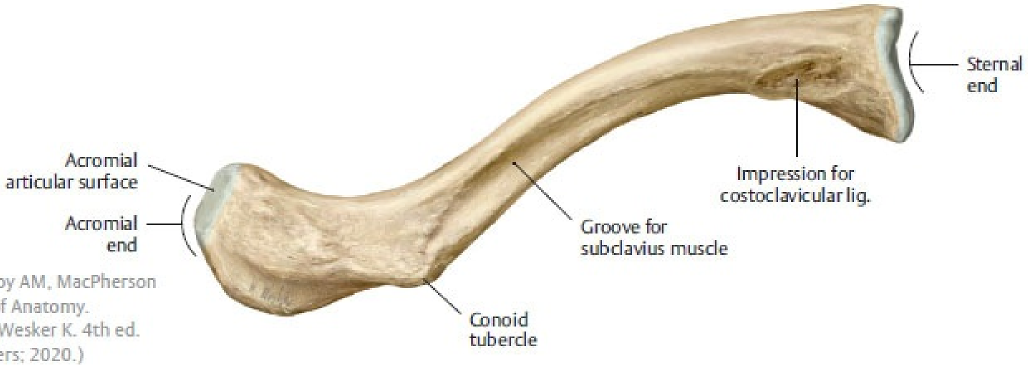
Right shoulder, superior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

— The **scapula** is a flat triangular bone that forms the posterior part of the pectoral girdle **(Fig. 18.5)**.

- It overlies the 2nd to 7th ribs on the posterior thoracic wall.
- It has medial, lateral, and superior borders and a superior and inferior angle.
- Laterally, a shallow depression, the **glenoid cavity,** articulates with the humerus.
- A narrow **neck** separates the glenoid cavity from the large body of the scapula.
- A **subscapular fossa** lies on the anterior surface against the rib cage.
- The **spine** of the scapula on the posterior surface separates the **supraspinous** and **infraspinous fossae.** Laterally, the spine expands to form the **acromion.**
- **A coracoid process** extends anteriorly and superiorly over the glenoid cavity.


Conoid tubercle
Acromial end
Sternal articular surface
Shaft of clavicle
Sternal end

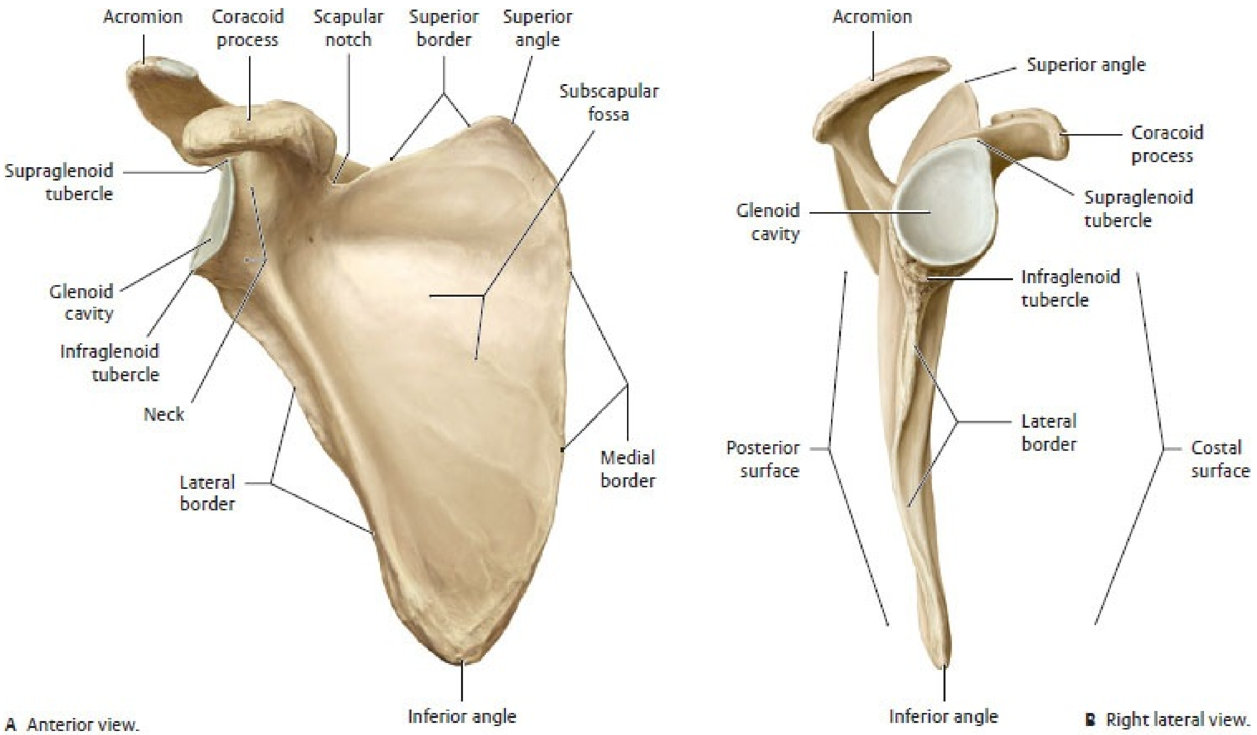
A Superior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Sternal end
Acromial articular surface
Acromial end
Impression for costoclavicular lig.
Groove for subclavius muscle
Conoid tubercle

B Inferior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

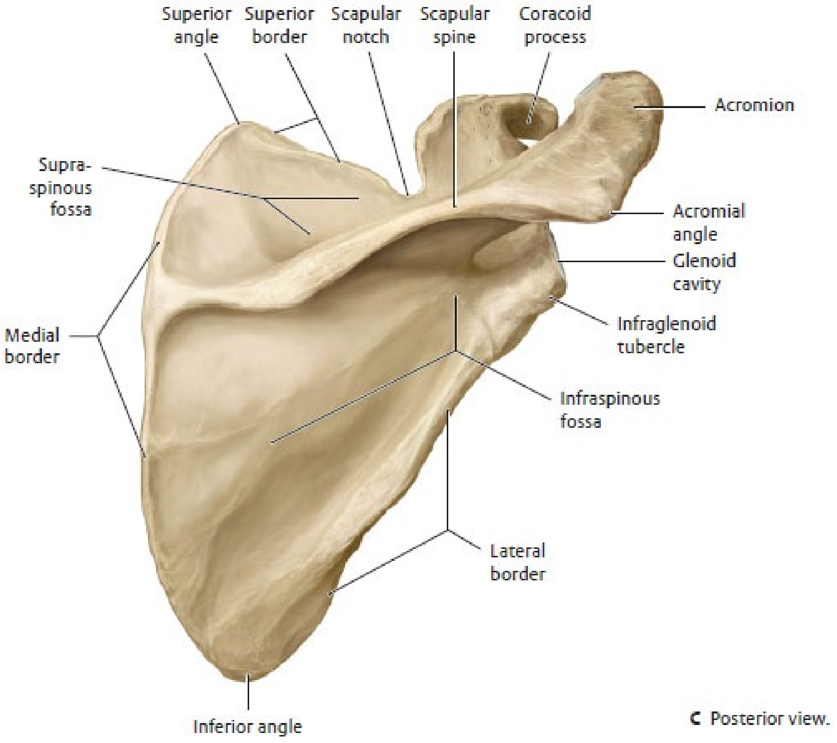
Fig. 18.4 Clavicle

Right clavicle.


Acromion
Coracoid process
Scapular notch
Superior border
Superior angle
Subscapular fossa
Supraglenoid tubercle
Glenoid cavity
Infraglenoid tubercle
Neck
Lateral border
Medial border
Inferior angle
Acromion
Superior angle
Coracoid process
Supraglenoid tubercle
Glenoid cavity
Infraglenoid tubercle
Lateral border
Posterior surface
Costal surface
Inferior angle

A Anterior view.

B Right lateral view.


Superior angle
Superior border
Scapular notch
Scapular spine
Coracoid process
Acromion
Supra-spinous fossa
Acromial angle
Glenoid cavity
Medial border
Infraglenoid tubercle
Infraspinous fossa
Lateral border
Inferior angle

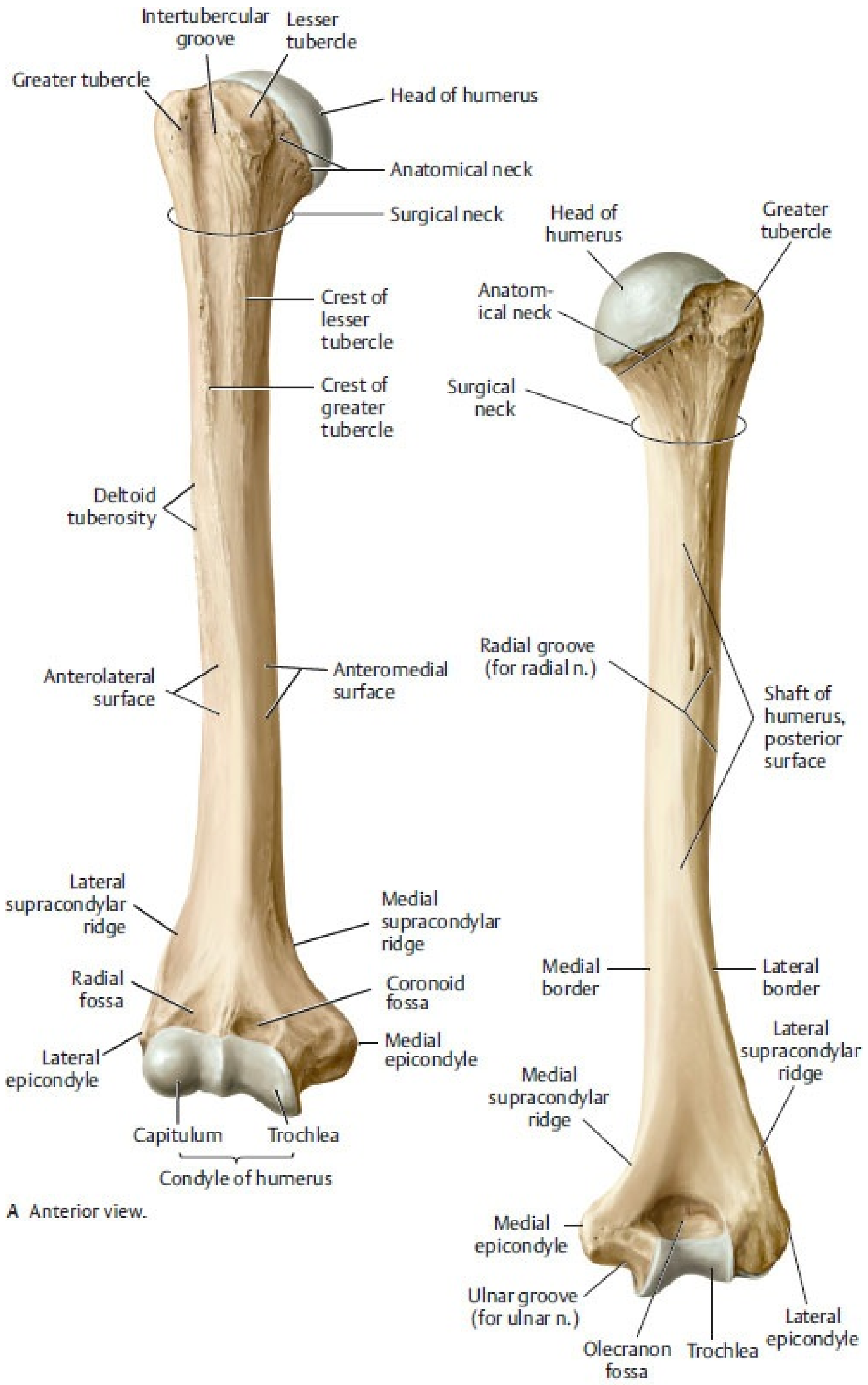
C Posterior view.

Fig. 18.5 Scapula

Right scapula. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York:

Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- The **humerus** is the long bone of the arm **(Fig. 18.6)**.
  - Proximally, the **head** articulates with the glenoid cavity of the scapula.
  - Anteriorly, an **intertubercular groove** separates the **greater** and **lesser tubercles.**
  - **An anatomic neck** separates the head from the greater and lesser tubercles. The **surgical neck** is the narrow part of the shaft immediately distal to the head and tubercles.


Intertubercular groove
Lesser tubercle
Greater tubercle
Head of humerus
Anatomical neck
Surgical neck
Crest of lesser tubercle
Crest of greater tubercle
Deltoid tuberosity
Anterolateral surface
Anteromedial surface
Lateral supracondylar ridge
Medial supracondylar ridge
Radial fossa
Coronoid fossa
Lateral epicondyle
Medial epicondyle
Capitulum
Trochlea
Condyle of humerus
Head of humerus
Greater tubercle
Anatomical neck
Surgical neck
Radial groove (for radial n.)
Shaft of humerus, posterior surface
Medial border
Lateral border
Lateral supracondylar ridge
Medial supracondylar ridge
Medial epicondyle
Ulnar groove (for ulnar n.)
Olecranon fossa
Trochlea
Lateral epicondyle

A Anterior view.

B Posterior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

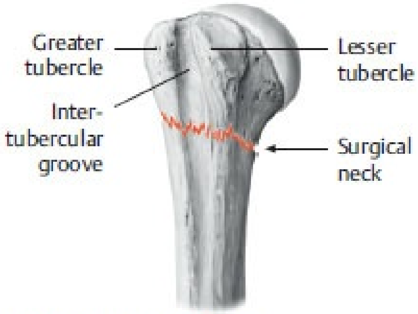
Fig. 18.6 Humerus

Right humerus. The head of the humerus articulates with the scapula at the glenohumeral joint. The capitulum and trochlea of the humerus articulate with the radius and ulna, respectively, at the elbow joint.

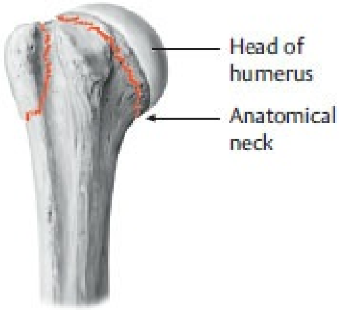
BOX 18.2: CLINICAL CORRELATION

HUMERAL FRACTURES

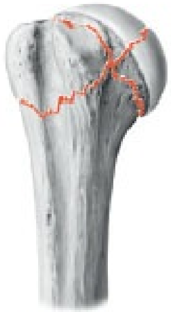
Fractures of the proximal humerus are very common and occur predominantly in older patients who sustain a fall onto the outstretched arm or directly onto the shoulder. Three main types are distinguished.


Greater tubercle
Lesser tubercle
Inter-tubercular groove
Surgical neck

A Extra-articular fracture.


Head of humerus
Anatomical neck

B Intra-articular fracture.



C Comminuted fracture.

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th Edition. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Extra-articular fractures and intra -articular fractures are often accompanied by injuries of the blood vessels that supply the humeral head (anterior and posterior circumflex humeral arteries), with an associated risk of post-traumatic avascular necrosis.

Fractures of the surgical neck can damage the axillary nerve and fractures of the humeral shaft and distal humerus are frequently associated with damage to the radial nerve.

    - A **deltoid tuberosity** on the midshaft is a site for attachment of the deltoid muscle.
    - A **radial groove** runs obliquely around the posterior and lateral surfaces.
    - Distally, the humerus articulates with the radius at the **capitulum** and with the ulna at the **trochlea.**
    - A large **medial epicondyle** and smaller **lateral epicondyle** are attachment sites for muscles.
    - An **ulnar groove** separates the medial epicondyle and trochlea.
- The **ulna** is the medial bone of the forearm **(Fig. 18.7)**.
    - A C-shaped **trochlear notch,** formed by the **olecranon** posteriorly and the **coronoid process** anteriorly, articulates with the trochlea of the humerus.
    - The ulna articulates with the radius at the **radial notch.**
    - **An interosseous membrane** joins the shafts of the radius and ulna.
    - An **ulnar styloid process** projects from its distal end.
- The **radius** is the lateral bone of the forearm (see **Fig. 18.7**).
    - A round **radial head** articulates with the humerus and ulna and sits on top of a narrow **neck.**
    - **A radial tuberosity** on the anterior surface provides attachments for the biceps brachii muscle.
    - Distally, the radius is triangular in cross section with a flattened anterior surface.
    - The radius articulates with the ulna proximally at the elbow and distally at the wrist. The interosseous membrane attaches the radius to the shaft of the ulna.
    - A **radial styloid process** projects from the distal end and extends farther than the styloid process of the ulna.
    - The radius articulates with carpal bones at the wrist.

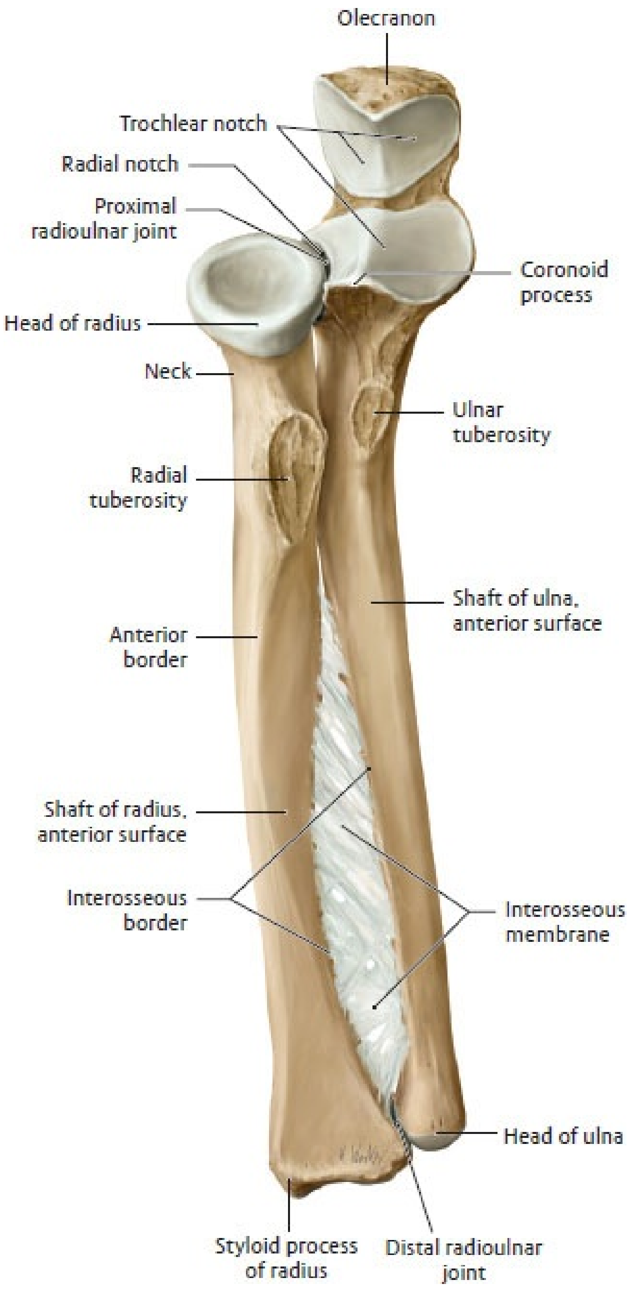

Olecranon
Trochlear notch
Radial notch
Proximal radioulnar joint
Coronoid process
Head of radius
Neck
Ulnar tuberosity
Radial tuberosity
Shaft of ulna, anterior surface
Anterior border
Shaft of radius, anterior surface
Interosseous border
Interosseous membrane
Head of ulna
Styloid process of radius
Distal radioulnar joint

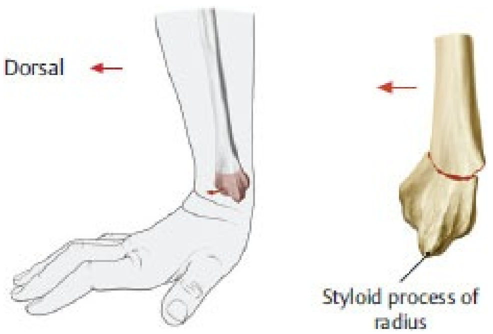
Fig. 18.7 Radius and ulna

Right forearm, anterosuperior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 18.3: CLINICAL CORRELATION

COLLES' FRACTURES

A Colles' fracture, a transverse fracture through the distal 2 cm of the radius, is the most common forearm fracture and results from a fall on an outstretched hand. The distal segment of bone is displaced dorsally and proximally, and with shortening of the radius, the styloid process appears proximal to the styloid of the ulna. The resulting appearance is referred to as the “dinner fork” deformity.



(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th Edition. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

— The **carpal bones** consist of eight short bones that are arranged in two curved rows at the wrist **(**Figs. 18.8 and 18.9**)**. From lateral to medial, they are
  - in the proximal row, the **scaphoid, lunate, triquetrum,** and **pisiform;** and,
  - in the distal row, the **trapezium, trapezoid, capitate,** and **hamate.**

BOX 18.4: CLINICAL CORRELATION

LUNATE DISLOCATION

The lunate is the most commonly displaced of the carpal bones. Normally located in the floor of the carpal tunnel, a displaced bone moves toward the palmar surface and can compress structures of the carpal tunnel.

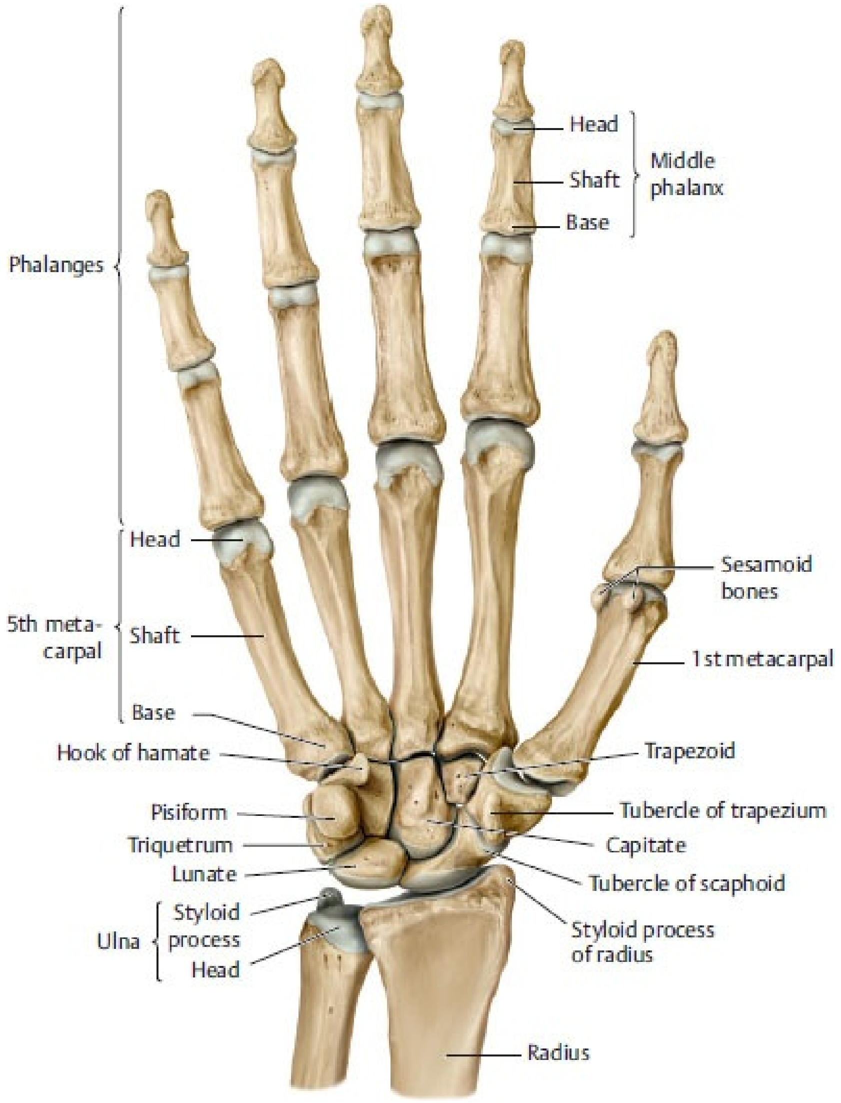

Head
Shaft
Base
Middle phalanx
Phalanges
Head
5th meta-carpal
Shaft
Base
Sesamoid bones
1st metacarpal
Hook of hamate
Trapezoid
Pisiform
Tubercle of trapezium
Triquetrum
Capitate
Lunate
Tubercle of scaphoid
Ulna
Styloid process
Head
Styloid process of radius
Radius

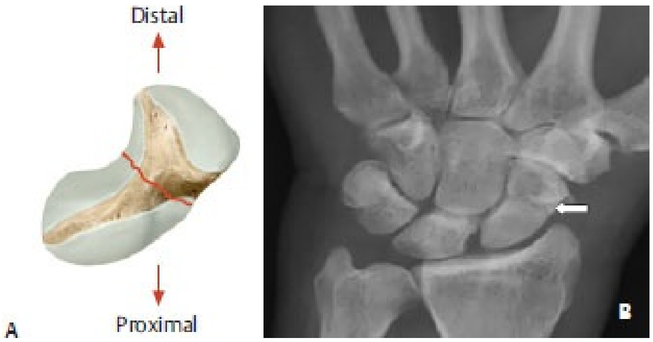
Fig. 18.8 Bones of the hand

Right hand, palmar view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 18.5: CLINICAL CORRELATION

SCAPHOID FRACTURES

Scaphoid fractures are the most common carpal bone fractures, generally occurring at the narrow waist between the proximal and distal poles. Because the blood supply to the bone is transmitted via the distal segment, fractures at the waist (**A**, right scaphoid, *red line*; **B**, *white arrow*) can compromise the supply to the proximal segment, often resulting in nonunion and avascular necrosis.



— The **metacarpal bones** consist of five long bones that form the hand.
  - Proximally, their **bases** articulate with the carpal bones.
  - Distally, their **heads,** the knuckles of the hand, articulate with the proximal phalanges.

— The **phalanges** are small long bones that form the fingers.
  - They are designated as proximal, middle, and distal in each finger except in the thumb, which has only a proximal and a distal phalanx.

— Fingers and their corresponding metacarpals and phalanges are designated as 1st through 5th, with the thumb as the 1st digit and the little finger as the 5th digit.

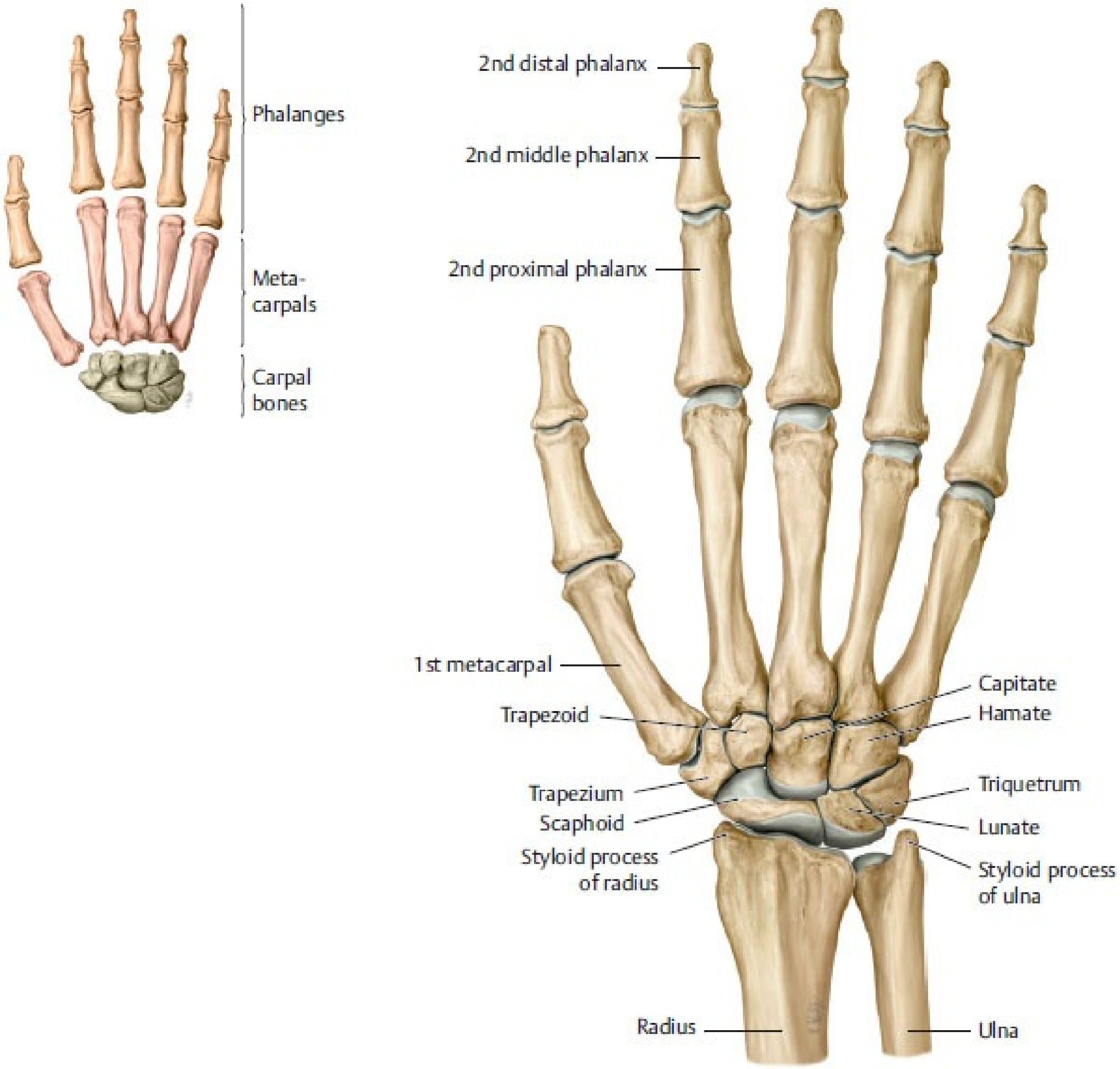

Phalanges
Meta-carpals
Carpal bones
2nd distal phalanx
2nd middle phalanx
2nd proximal phalanx
1st metacarpal
Trapezoid
Trapezium
Scaphoid
Styloid process of radius
Radius
Capitate
Hamate
Triquetrum
Lunate
Styloid process of ulna
Ulna

Fig. 18.9 Bones of the hand

Right hand, dorsal view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

18.3 Fascia and Compartments of the Upper Limb

- Deep fascia snugly encloses muscles of the upper limb. It is continuous over the pectoral girdle, the axilla, and the upper limb but has regional designations.
  - **Pectoral fascia** invests the pectoralis major muscle.

    - **Clavipectoral fascia** invests the subclavius and pectoralis minor muscles.
    - **Axillary fascia** forms the floor of the **axilla.**
    - **Brachial fascia** invests muscles of the arm.
    - **Antebrachial fascia** invests muscles of the forearm and extends onto the wrist as transverse thickened bands, the **flexor** and **extensor retinacula.**
    - Fascia of the hand is continuous over the dorsum and palm, but in the center of the palm it forms a thickened fibrous sheet, the **palmar aponeurosis.**
    - **Digital fibrous sheaths,** extensions of the palmar aponeurosis onto the fingers, surround the flexor tendons.

— Intermuscular septa arising from the deep fascia attach to the bones of the arm, forearm, and hand, separating the limb musculature into discrete compartments. The muscles within each compartment usually share a similar function, innervation, and blood supply. The compartments of the upper limb (see **Figs. 19.38** and **19.39**) are

- the **anterior** and **posterior compartments** of the arm;
- the **anterior** and **posterior compartments** of the forearm; and
- the **thenar, hypothenar, central, adductor,** and **interosseous compartments** of the palm of the hand.

18.4 Neurovasculature of the Upper Limb

Arteries of the Upper Limb

— The **subclavian artery** and its branches supply structures in the neck, part of the thoracic wall, and the entire upper limb **(Fig. 18.10)**.

- The right subclavian artery is a branch of the brachiocephalic trunk, which arises from the aortic arch. The left subclavian artery arises directly from the aortic arch.

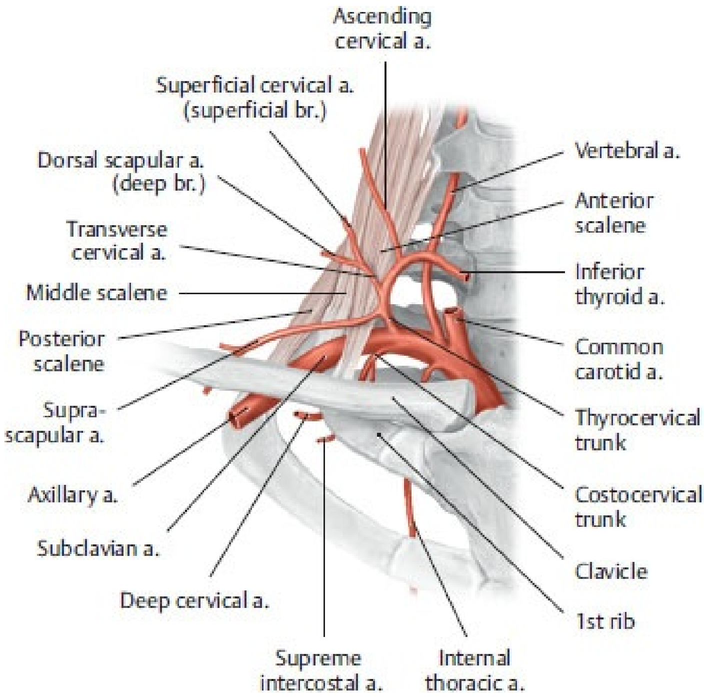

Ascending cervical a.
Superficial cervical a. (superficial br.)
Dorsal scapular a. (deep br.)
Transverse cervical a.
Middle scalene
Posterior scalene
Supra-scapular a.
Axillary a.
Subclavian a.
Deep cervical a.
Supreme intercostal a.
Internal thoracic a.
Vertebral a.
Anterior scalene
Inferior thyroid a.
Common carotid a.
Thyrocervical trunk
Costocervical trunk
Clavicle
1st rib

Fig. 18.10 Branches of the subclavian artery

Right side, anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- The subclavian arteries enter the neck through the superior thoracic aperture, pass laterally toward the shoulder, and terminate as they pass over the 1st rib.
- The subclavian artery branches that supply the neck and thoracic wall (discussed further in Section 17.3) include
    - the **vertebral artery;**
    - the internal thoracic artery; and
    - the **thyrocervical trunk,** whose branches are the **suprascapular, ascending cervical, inferior thyroid,** and **transverse cervical arteries.**
- The branches of the thyrocervical trunk that supply muscles and skin of the scapular region include
    - the transverse cervical artery and its **dorsal scapular branch** and
    - the suprascapular artery.

— The **axillary artery,** the continuation of the subclavian artery, begins at the lateral edge of the 1st rib and terminates at the lateral border of the axilla (the lower border of the teres major muscle).

- Within the axilla, the **pectoralis minor** muscle lies anterior to the middle third of the axillary artery, thus dividing the artery into three segments. The origins of the branches of the axillary artery show considerable variation but generally are described as arising from its proximal, middle, or distal thirds **(Fig. 18.11)**.
  - The proximal third has one branch:
    - The **superior thoracic** branch supplies the muscles of the first intercostal space.
  - The middle third has two branches:
    - The **thoracoacromial artery** divides into deltoid, pectoral, clavicular, and acromial branches.
    - The **lateral thoracic artery** supplies the lateral thoracic wall, including the serratus anterior muscle and the breast.
  - The distal third has three branches:
    - The **subscapular artery** further divides into a **thoracodorsal artery,** supplying the latissimus dorsi muscle, and a **circumflex scapular artery,** supplying muscles of the scapula.
    - The **anterior circumflex humeral artery.**
    - The **posterior circumflex humeral artery.** These circumflex arteries encircle the humeral neck to supply the deltoid region
- A **scapular arcade,** formed by the anastomoses of the dorsal scapular and suprascapular branches of the subclavian artery, and the circumflex scapular and thoracodorsal branches of the axillary artery provide an important collateral circulation to the scapular region when the axillary artery is injured or ligated **(Fig. 18.12)**.
- The **brachial artery,** the continuation of the axillary artery, begins at the lateral border of the axilla (the lower margin of the tendon of the teres major), runs superficially along the medial border of the **biceps brachii muscle,** and terminates at its bifurcation in the cubital fossa (anterior elbow region). Its branches (see **Fig. 18.11**) include
  - the **deep artery of the arm** (deep brachial artery, profunda brachii), which arises proximally, descends on the posterior surface of the humerus, and supplies muscles of the posterior arm; its middle and radial collateral arteries communicate with the radial artery via the radial recurrent and interosseous recurrent arteries.
  - the **superior** and **inferior ulnar collateral arteries,** distal branches, which anastomose with the deep artery of the arm and the ulnar artery of the forearm to supply the elbow joint.
  - the **radial** and **ulnar arteries,** the terminal branches of the brachial

artery, which supply the forearm and hand.

- The arterial anastomosis around the elbow allows the ligation of the brachial artery distal to the origin of the deep artery of the arm without compromising the blood supply to the elbow region.
- The ulnar artery originates in the cubital fossa, descends along the medial side of the forearm, and crosses through a narrow space at the wrist, the **ulnar canal.** It terminates as the **superficial palmar arch** of the hand. The major branches of the ulnar artery in the forearm (see **Fig. 18.11**) are
    - the **ulnar recurrent artery,** which anastomoses with ulnar collateral arteries to supply the elbow joint, and
    - the **common interosseous artery,** which arises in the proximal forearm and branches into anterior and **posterior interosseous arteries.** These interosseous branches descend on either side of the interosseous membrane and supply the anterior and posterior muscle compartments of the forearm.
- The radial artery, the smaller lateral branch of the brachial artery, descends from the cubital fossa along the lateral side of the forearm to the wrist. It crosses the wrist through the **anatomic snuffbox** on the dorsal side, pierces the muscles between the 1st and 2nd digits, and enters the palm of the hand, where it ends as the **deep palmar arch.** Its branches (see **Fig. 18.11**) include
    - the **radial recurrent artery,** which anastomoses with collateral branches of the deep artery of the arm to supply the elbow joint, and
    - the **palmar** and **dorsal carpal arteries,** which anastomose with branches of the ulnar artery in the wrist and hand.

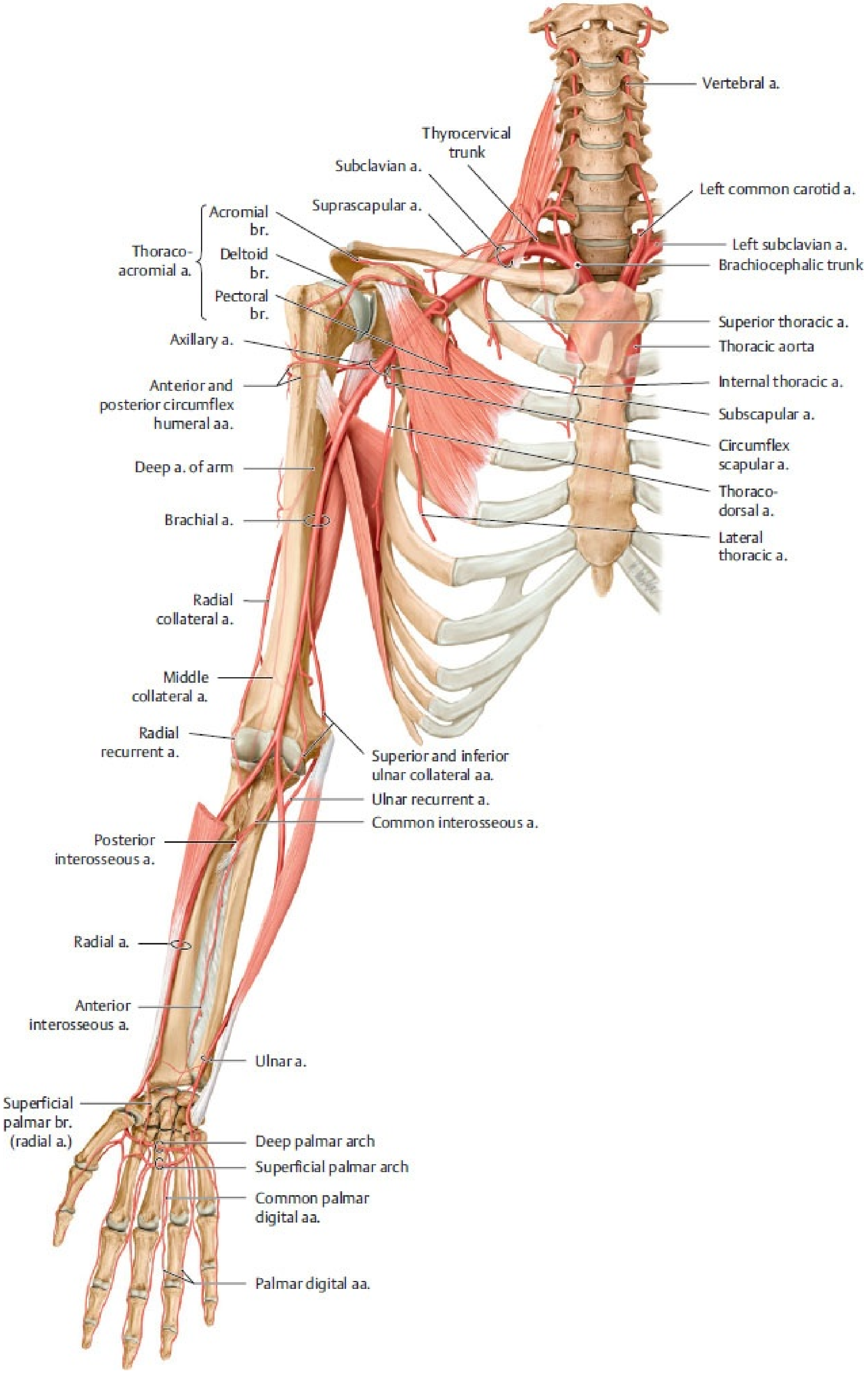

Vertebral a.
Thyrocervical trunk
Subclavian a.
Left common carotid a.
Suprascapular a.
Thoraco-acromial a.
Acromial br.
Deltoid br.
Pectoral br.
Left subclavian a.
Brachiocephalic trunk
Superior thoracic a.
Axillary a.
Thoracic aorta
Internal thoracic a.
Anterior and posterior circumflex humeral aa.
Subscapular a.
Circumflex scapular a.
Deep a. of arm
Thoraco-dorsal a.
Brachial a.
Lateral thoracic a.
Radial collateral a.
Middle collateral a.
Radial recurrent a.
Superior and inferior ulnar collateral aa.
Ulnar recurrent a.
Common interosseous a.
Posterior interosseous a.
Radial a.
Anterior interosseous a.
Ulnar a.
Superficial palmar br. (radial a.)
Deep palmar arch
Superficial palmar arch
Common palmar digital aa.
Palmar digital aa.

Fig. 18.11 Arteries of the upper limb

Right limb, anterior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

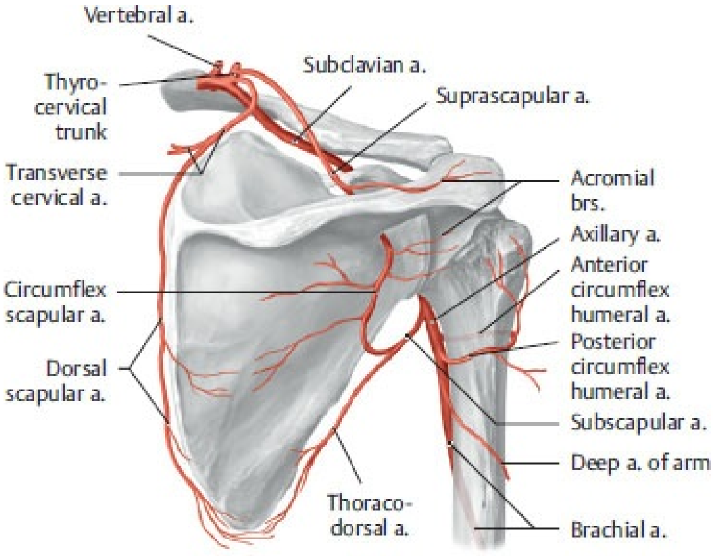

Vertebral a.
Subclavian a.
Thyro-cervical trunk
Suprascapular a.
Transverse cervical a.
Acromial brs.
Axillary a.
Anterior circumflex humeral a.
Circumflex scapular a.
Posterior circumflex humeral a.
Dorsal scapular a.
Subscapular a.
Deep a. of arm
Thoraco-dorsal a.
Brachial a.

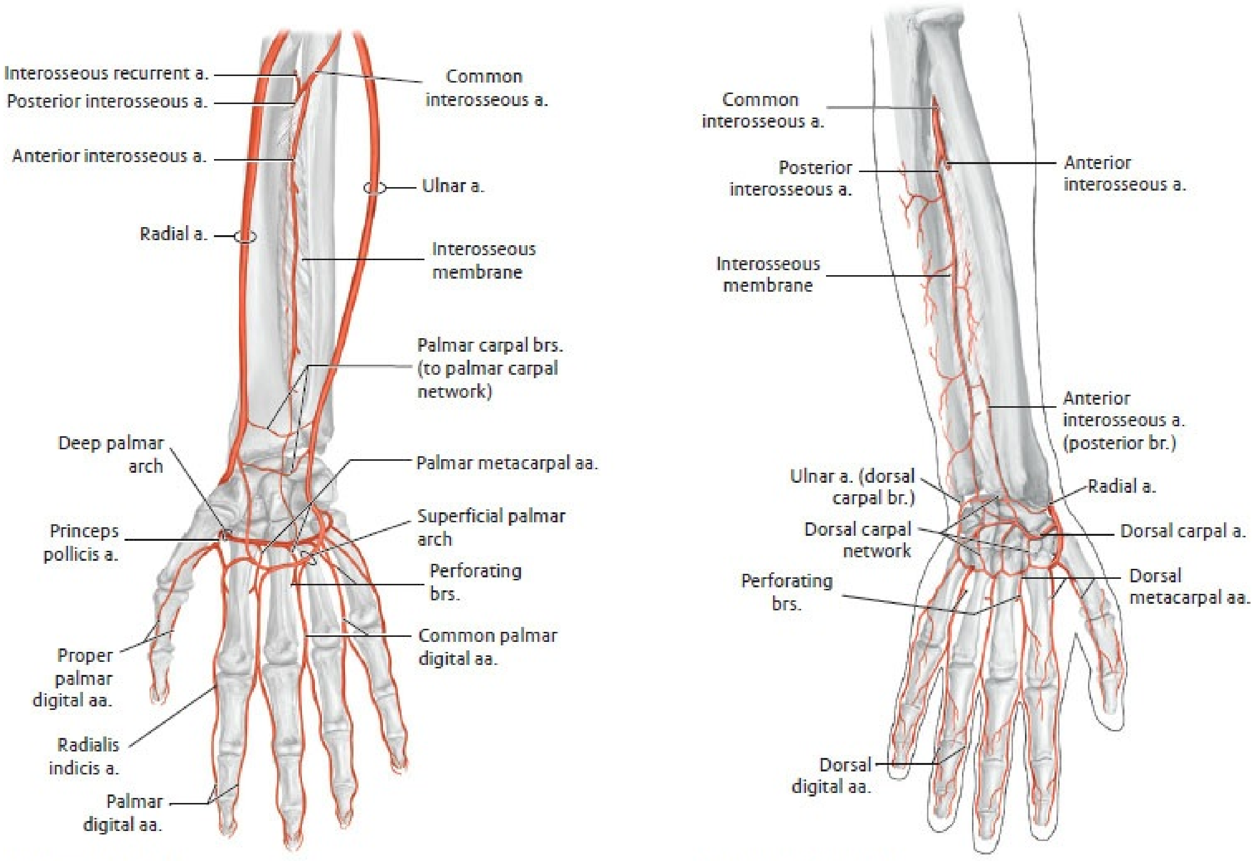
Fig. 18.12 Scapular arcade

Right side, posterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

— Arteries of the wrist and hand (**Fig. 18.13**) include
- **palmar** and **dorsal carpal networks,** which form by contributions from radial, ulnar, and anterior and posterior interosseous arteries;
- a **deep palmar arch** formed largely by the radial artery that gives rise to
    - the **princeps pollicis artery,** which follows the ulnar surface of the 1st metacarpal to the base of the thumb, where it divides into two digital branches
    - the **radialis indicis,** which can arise from the princeps pollicis or radial artery and courses along the radial side of the index finger
    - three **palmar metacarpal arteries,** which anastomose with the common palmar digital arteries;
- a **superficial palmar arch** formed largely by the ulnar artery, which anastomoses with the deep palmar artery via a **deep palmar branch,** and gives rise to
    - three **common palmar digital arteries,** which divide into paired

proper digital arteries that run along the sides of the 2nd to 4th digits;

- a **dorsal carpal arch,** formed from the dorsal carpal network, which gives rise to three **dorsal metacarpal arteries** that branch into **dorsal digital arteries** that run on the dorsal sides of the 2nd to 4th digits; and
- a **1st dorsal metacarpal artery,** which arises directly from the radial artery.


Interosseous recurrent a.
Posterior interosseous a.
Anterior interosseous a.
Radial a.
Common interosseous a.
Ulnar a.
Interosseous membrane
Palmar carpal brs. (to palmar carpal network)
Deep palmar arch
Palmar metacarpal aa.
Princeps pollicis a.
Superficial palmar arch
Perforating brs.
Common palmar digital aa.
Proper palmar digital aa.
Radialis indicis a.
Palmar digital aa.
Common interosseous a.
Posterior interosseous a.
Anterior interosseous a.
Interosseous membrane
Anterior interosseous a. (posterior br.)
Ulnar a. (dorsal carpal br.)
Radial a.
Dorsal carpal network
Dorsal carpal a.
Perforating brs.
Dorsal metacarpal aa.
Dorsal digital aa.

A Anterior (palmar) view.

B Posterior (dorsal) view.

Fig. 18.13 Arteries of the forearm and hand

Right limb. The ulnar and radial arteries are interconnected by the superficial and deep palmar arches, the perforating branches, and the dorsal carpal network. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Veins of the Upper Limb

— Veins of the limbs, similar to veins of the trunk, are more variable than the arteries, and they often form anastomoses that surround the arteries they accompany. Veins of the limbs have unidirectional valves that prevent pooling of blood in the extremities and facilitate the movement of blood back to the heart. The limbs have both deep and superficial veins.

— Deep veins accompany the major arteries and their branches and have similar names **(Fig. 18.14)**.

  - In the distal limb, the deep veins, referred to as **accompanying veins** (venae comitantes), are paired and surround the artery. Proximally, the pairs merge to form a single vessel.
  - The **axillary vein** drains the shoulder, arm, forearm, and hand and receives additional contributions from
    - the lateral chest wall, including the breast, and
    - the thoracoepigastric vein of the anterolateral abdominal wall.
  - The **subclavian vein,** the continuation of the axillary vein, begins at the lateral edge of the 1st rib and receives the venous drainage from the scapular region.

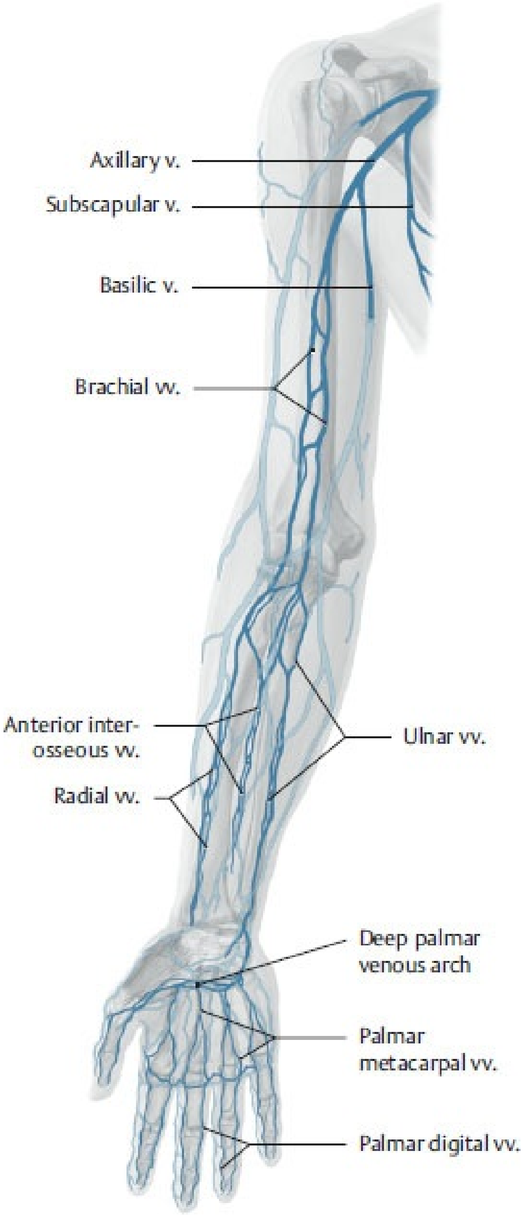
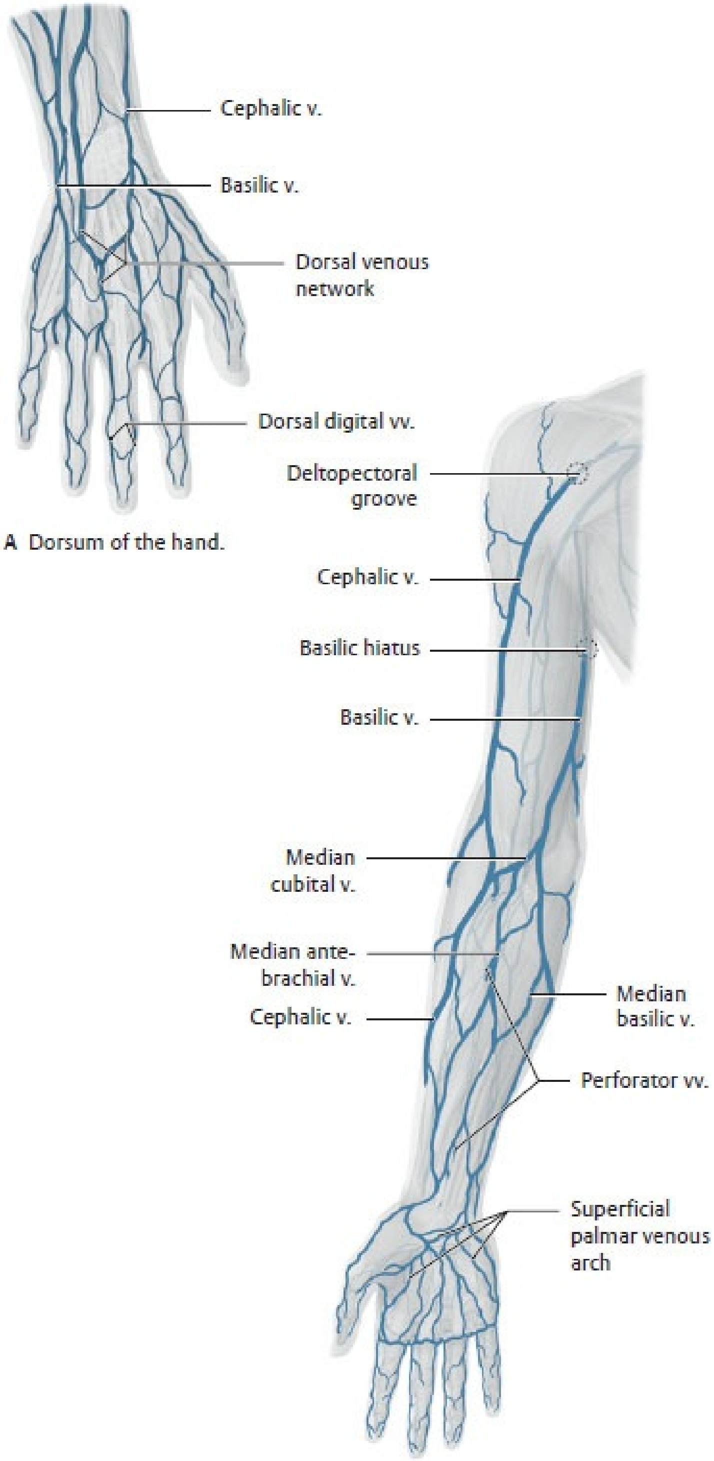

Axillary v.
Subscapular v.
Basilic v.
Brachial vv.
Anterior inter-osseous vv.
Radial vv.
Ulnar vv.
Deep palmar venous arch
Palmar metacarpal vv.
Palmar digital vv.

Fig. 18.14 Deep veins of the upper limb

Right limb, anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

— The superficial veins are found in the subcutaneous tissue and drain into the deep venous system via **perforating** (connecting) **veins (Fig. 18.15)**.
  - The **dorsal venous network** on the dorsum of the hand drains into two large superficial veins, the **cephalic** and **basilic veins.**
  - The **cephalic vein** originates on the lateral side of the dorsum of the

hand and ascends on the lateral side of the forearm and arm. In the shoulder, it passes through the **deltopectoral groove** (formed by the borders of the deltoid and pectoralis major muscles) before emptying into the axillary vein.


Cephalic v.
Basilic v.
Dorsal venous network
Dorsal digital vv.
Deltopectoral groove
Cephalic v.
Basilic hiatus
Basilic v.
Median cubital v.
Median antebrachial v.
Cephalic v.
Median basilic v.
Perforator vv.
Superficial palmar venous arch

A Dorsum of the hand.

B Anterior view.

Fig. 18.15 Superficial veins of the upper limb

Right limb. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- The **basilic vein** arises on the medial side of the dorsum of the hand and runs posteromedially to pass anterior to the medial epicondyle of the humerus. In the arm, it pierces the brachial fascia (at the **basilic hiatus**) and joins the paired **deep brachial veins** to form the axillary vein.
- The **median cubital vein** connects the cephalic and basilic veins anterior to the cubital fossa.
- The **median antebrachial vein** arises from the venous network of the palm, ascends on the anterior forearm, and terminates in the basilic or median cubital vein.

Lymphatic Drainage of the Upper Limb

Lymphatic vessels of the upper limb drain toward the axilla. They usually accompany the veins of the superficial system (cephalic and basilic veins), although there are numerous connections between the deep and superficial drainages.

— Axillary lymph node groups, each containing four to seven large nodes, are described in relation to the pectoralis minor muscle **(Fig. 18.16)**.

- The lower axillary group lies lateral and deep to the pectoralis minor.
  - **Pectoral** (anterior) **nodes** on the anterior wall of the axilla drain the anterior thoracic wall, including the breast (75% of lymph from the breast drains to axillary nodes).
  - **Subscapular** (posterior) **nodes** along the posterior axillary fold drain the posterior thoracic wall and scapular region.
  - **Brachial** (lateral) **nodes** lie medial and posterior to the axillary vein and receive lymphatic vessels that accompany the basilic vein and the deep veins of the arm.
  - **Central nodes** lie deep to the pectoralis minor muscle and receive lymph from the pectoral, subscapular, and humeral nodes.
- The middle axillary group lies on the surface of the pectoralis minor muscle.
  - **Interpectoral nodes** lie between the pectoralis major and pectoralis minor muscles and drain to the apical nodes.
- The upper axillary group lies medial to the pectoralis minor muscle.
  - **Apical nodes** lie along the axillary vein adjacent to the first part of

the axillary artery in the apex of the axilla. They receive lymph from the central nodes as well as from lymphatic vessels traveling along the cephalic vein.

- Apical lymph vessels unite to form the subclavian lymph trunks, which usually drain to the right lymphatic trunk and the thoracic duct (left lymphatic duct).

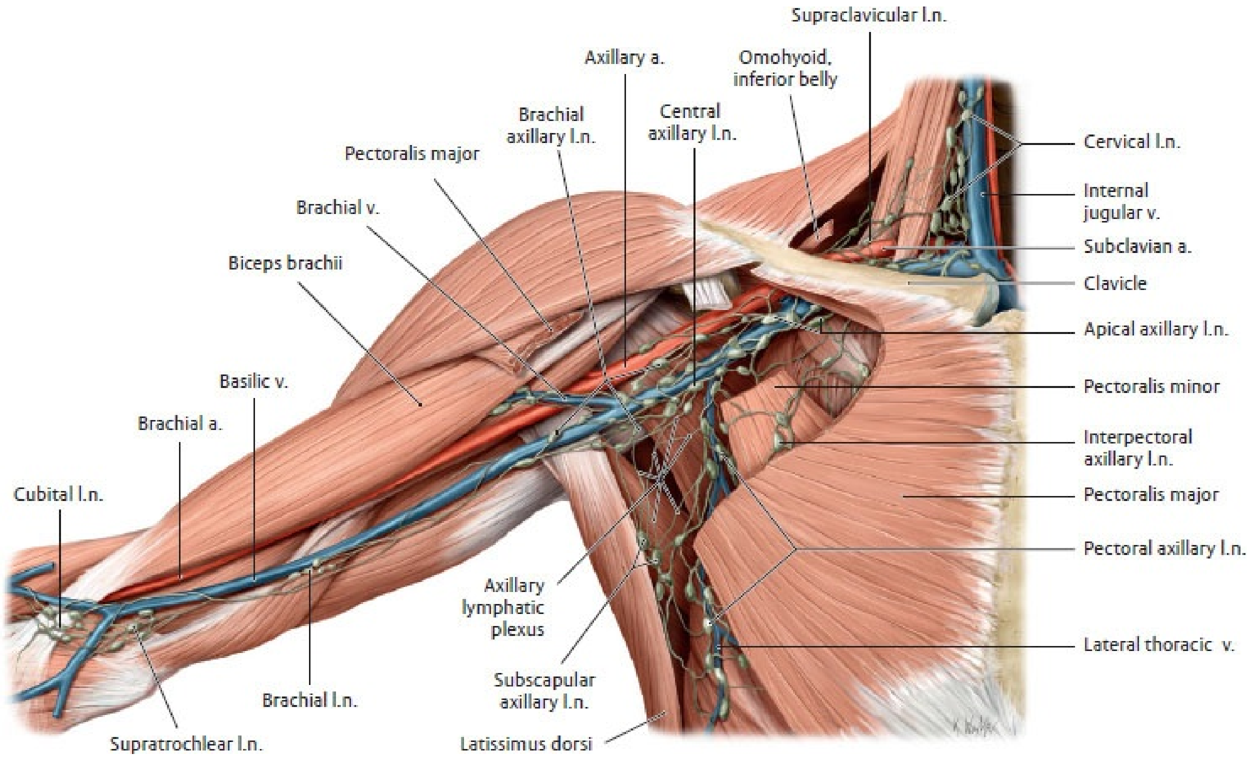

Supraclavicular l.n.
Axillary a.
Omohyoid, inferior belly
Brachial axillary l.n.
Central axillary l.n.
Pectoralis major
Brachial v.
Biceps brachii
Basilic v.
Brachial a.
Cubital l.n.
Cervical l.n.
Internal jugular v.
Subclavian a.
Clavicle
Apical axillary l.n.
Pectoralis minor
Interpectoral axillary l.n.
Pectoralis major
Pectoral axillary l.n.
Lateral thoracic v.
Axillary lymphatic plexus
Subscapular axillary l.n.
Brachial l.n.
Supratrochlear l.n.
Latissimus dorsi

Fig. 18.16 Axillary lymph nodes

Anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Nerves of the Upper Limb: The Brachial Plexus

The upper limb is innervated almost entirely by the nerves of the **brachial plexus**, which originates from the lower cervical and upper thoracic spinal cord (**Table 18.1**; **Figs. 18.17**, **18.18**, **18.19**, **18.20**, **18.21**). (One exception, the intercostobrachial nerve, formed by the anterior rami of T1 and T2, is sensory to the medial arm but is not part of the plexus.)

- Roots of the brachial plexus emerge from the vertebral column between the anterior and middle scalene muscles (interscalene groove) in the neck.
- Formation of the plexus begins in the neck (**supraclavicular part**), where it

accompanies the subclavian artery, and continues into the axilla (**infraclavicular part**), where it accompanies the axillary artery.

- The roots, trunks, and divisions of the plexus are **supraclavicular** (above the clavicle); the cords form at the level of the clavicle, and their branches are **infraclavicular** (below the clavicle).
- Fig. 18.17 shows the architecture of the brachial plexus.
  - Anterior rami of spinal nerves C5–T1 form five **roots.**
    - Within the plexus, upper roots form nerves that innervate muscles of the proximal limb; lower roots form nerves that innervate muscles of the distal limb.
    - The terms **pre-fixed** or **post-fixed plexus** indicate that the plexus includes anterior rami from one spinal level above (C4) or below (T2) the normal levels, respectively.
  - Roots C5 to T1 combine to form three **trunks:**
    1. C5 and C6 form the **upper trunk**.
    2. C7 forms the **middle trunk**.
    3. C8 and T1 form the **lower trunk**.
  - Anterior and posterior divisions (components of the anterior rami of all spinal nerves), which are bundled together in the roots and trunks of the plexus, separate to form three **cords**:
    1. Anterior divisions of the upper and middle trunk (C5–C7) form the **lateral cord**.
    2. Anterior divisions of the lower trunk (C8–T1) form the **medial cord**.
    3. Posterior divisions of all trunks (C5–T1) form the **posterior cord**.
  - The three cords divide to form the five **terminal nerves** of the plexus.
    - Medial and lateral cords form the **musculocutaneous, median**, and **ulnar nerves**, which innervate the anterior muscles of the arm and forearm, and all muscles of the palm.
    - The posterior cord forms the **axillary** and **radial nerves**, which innervate muscles of the scapular and deltoid regions and posterior muscles of the arm and forearm.

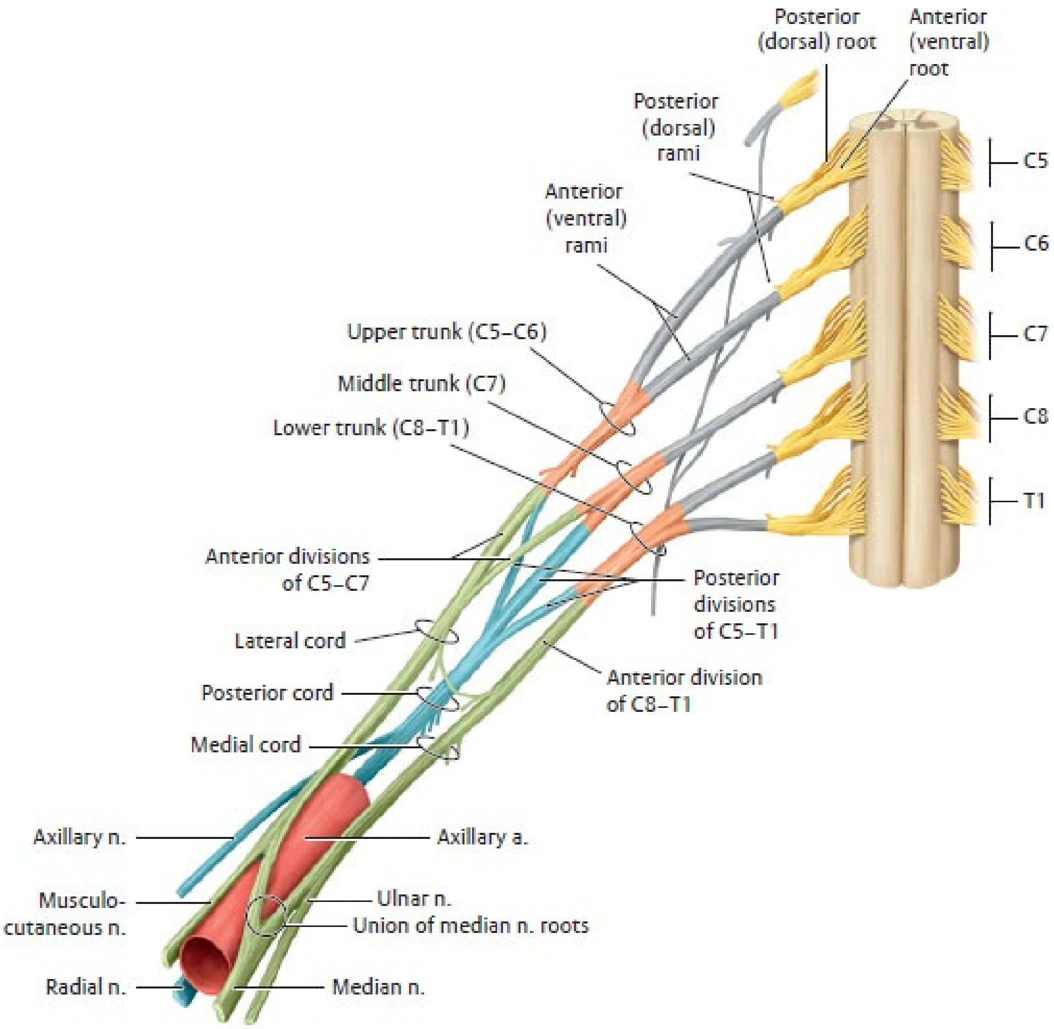

Posterior (dorsal) root
Anterior (ventral) root
Posterior (dorsal) rami
Anterior (ventral) rami
C5
C6
C7
C8
T1
Upper trunk (C5–C6)
Middle trunk (C7)
Lower trunk (C8–T1)
Anterior divisions of C5–C7
Posterior divisions of C5–T1
Lateral cord
Anterior division of C8–T1
Posterior cord
Medial cord
Axillary n.
Axillary a.
Musculo-cutaneous n.
Ulnar n.
Union of median n. roots
Radial n.
Median n.

Fig. 18.17 Structure of the brachial plexus

Right side, anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

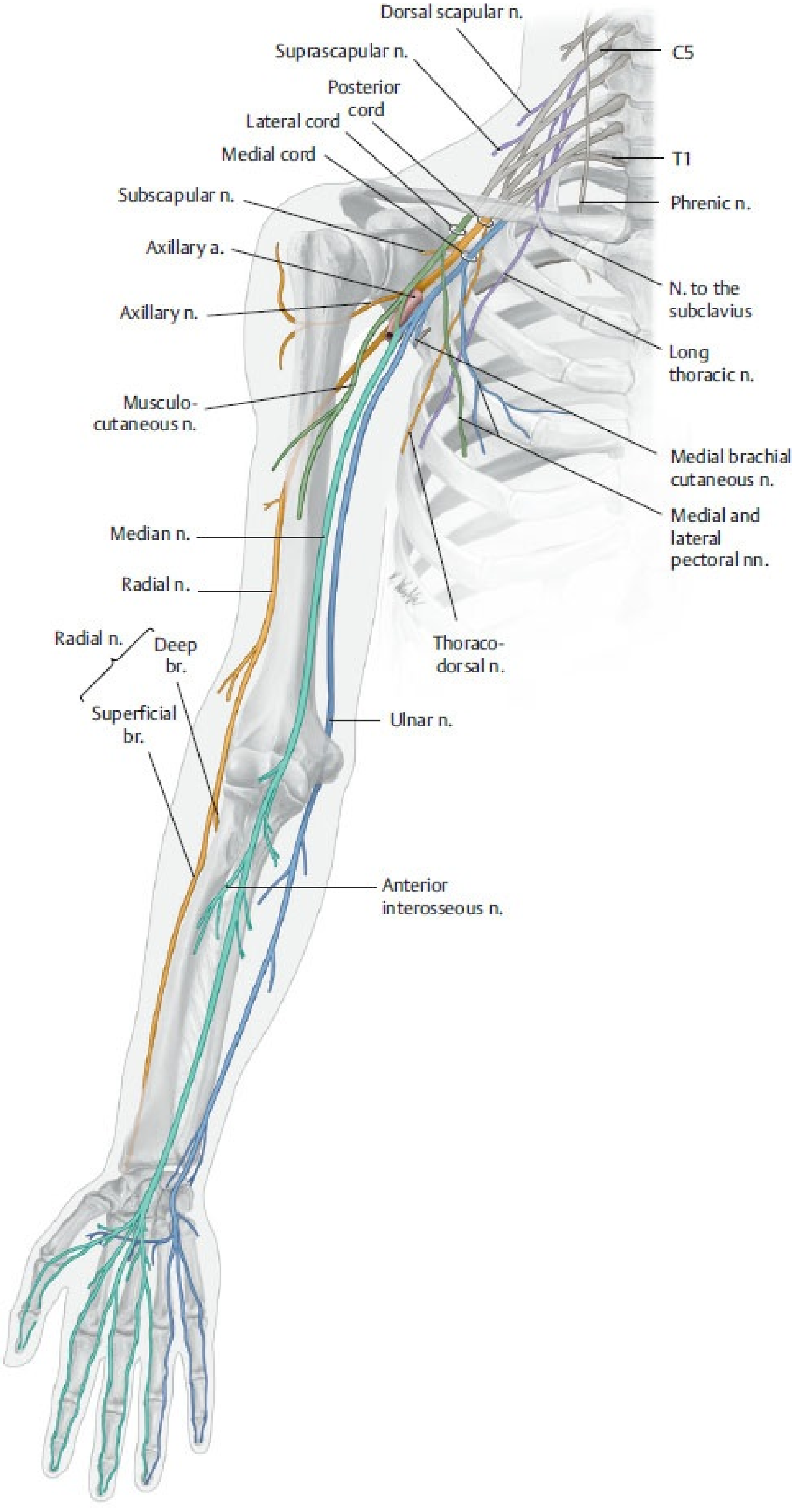

Dorsal scapular n.
C5
Suprascapular n.
Posterior cord
Lateral cord
T1
Medial cord
Phrenic n.
Subscapular n.
Axillary a.
N. to the subclavius
Axillary n.
Long thoracic n.
Musculo-cutaneous n.
Medial brachial cutaneous n.
Medial and lateral pectoral nn.
Median n.
Radial n.
Radial n.
Deep br.
Thoraco-dorsal n.
Superficial br.
Ulnar n.
Anterior interosseous n.

Fig. 18.18 Brachial plexus

Right side, anterior view. *(See table 18.1 for explanation of color coding)* (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

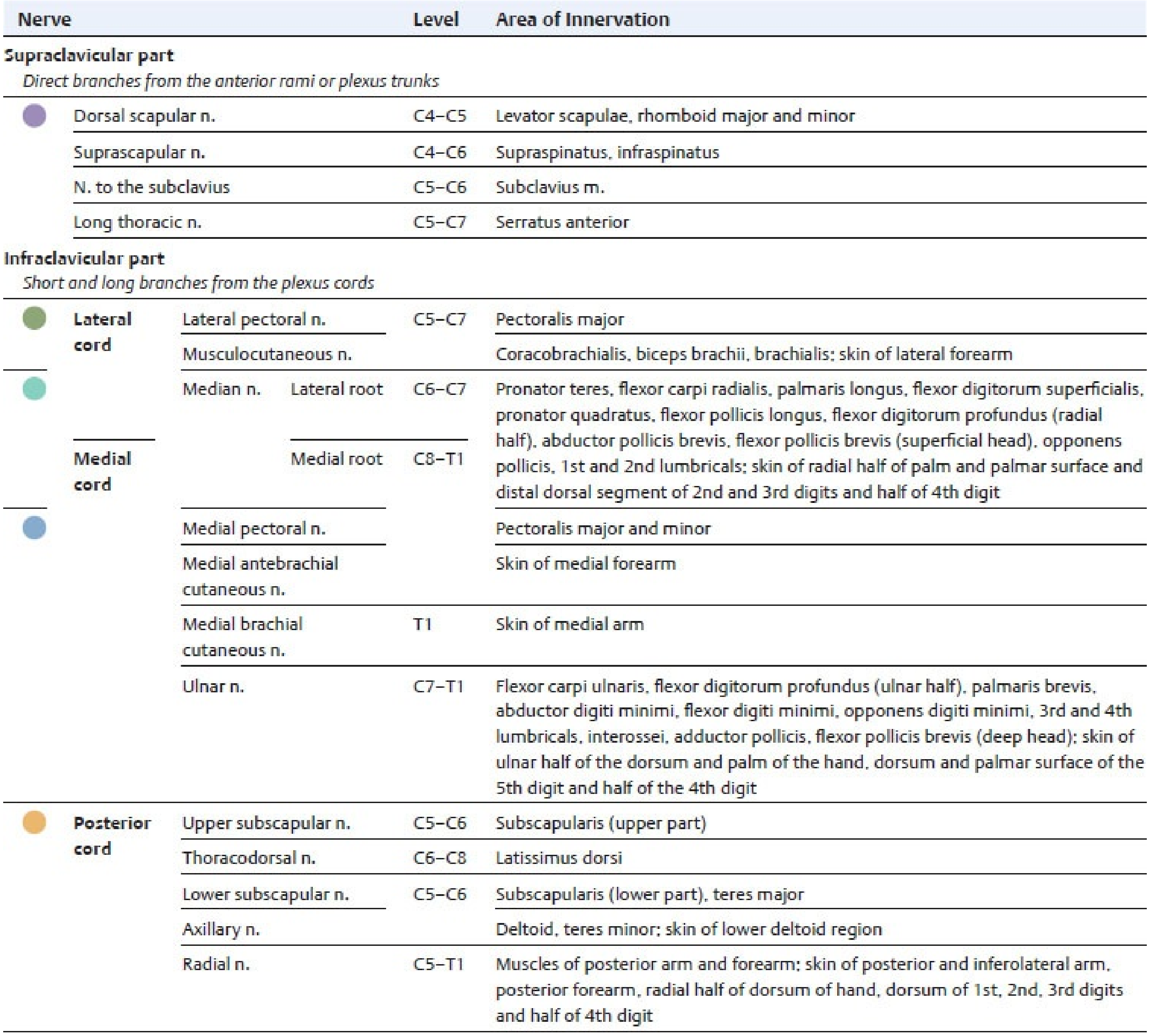
BOX 18.6: CLINICAL CORRELATION

ROOT- AND TRUNK-LEVEL INJURIES

Injuries to the proximal segments of the brachial plexus, involving the avulsion of the roots or stretching or compression of the trunks, have classic presentations that represent the distribution of the affected nerves. Nerves derived from the upper plexus innervate muscles of the proximal limb, while nerves derived from the lower plexus innervate muscles of the distal limb.

Upper plexus injuries (Erb-Duchenne palsy) involve the C5 and C6 roots or the upper trunk and are usually caused by trauma that forcefully separates the head and shoulder. The resulting deformity includes an adducted shoulder and medially rotated limb that is extended at the elbow.

Injuries of the lower plexus (Klumpke’s palsy) are far less common than those of the upper plexus, but a violent upward pull of the limb can avulse the C8 and T1 roots or damage the lower trunk. This affects the intrinsic muscles of the hand and can create a “claw hand” deformity. Because C8 and T1 are the superiormost contributions to the sympathetic trunk, avulsion of these nerve roots can also affect the sympathetic innervation in the head. The manifestation of this is known as Horner’s syndrome (see Section 28.1).



	Nerve			Level	Area of Innervation
Supraclavicular part *Direct branches from the anterior rami or plexus trunks*					
●	Dorsal scapular n.			C4–C5	Levator scapulae, rhomboid major and minor
	Suprascapular n.			C4–C6	Supraspinatus, infraspinatus
	N. to the subclavius			C5–C6	Subclavius m.
	Long thoracic n.			C5–C7	Serratus anterior
Infraclavicular part *Short and long branches from the plexus cords*					
●	**Lateral cord**	Lateral pectoral n.		C5–C7	Pectoralis major
		Musculocutaneous n.			Coracobrachialis, biceps brachii, brachialis; skin of lateral forearm
●		Median n.	Lateral root	C6–C7	Pronator teres, flexor carpi radialis, palmaris longus, flexor digitorum superficialis, pronator quadratus, flexor pollicis longus, flexor digitorum profundus (radial half), abductor pollicis brevis, flexor pollicis brevis (superficial head), opponens pollicis, 1st and 2nd lumbricals; skin of radial half of palm and palmar surface and distal dorsal segment of 2nd and 3rd digits and half of 4th digit
	Medial cord		Medial root	C8–T1	
●		Medial pectoral n.			Pectoralis major and minor
		Medial antebrachial cutaneous n.			Skin of medial forearm
		Medial brachial cutaneous n.		T1	Skin of medial arm
		Ulnar n.		C7–T1	Flexor carpi ulnaris, flexor digitorum profundus (ulnar half), palmaris brevis, abductor digiti minimi, flexor digiti minimi, opponens digiti minimi, 3rd and 4th lumbricals, interossei, adductor pollicis, flexor pollicis brevis (deep head); skin of ulnar half of the dorsum and palm of the hand, dorsum and palmar surface of the 5th digit and half of the 4th digit
●	**Posterior cord**	Upper subscapular n.		C5–C6	Subscapularis (upper part)
		Thoracodorsal n.		C6–C8	Latissimus dorsi
		Lower subscapular n.		C5–C6	Subscapularis (lower part), teres major
		Axillary n.			Deltoid, teres minor; skin of lower deltoid region
		Radial n.		C5–T1	Muscles of posterior arm and forearm; skin of posterior and inferolateral arm, posterior forearm, radial half of dorsum of hand, dorsum of 1st, 2nd, 3rd digits and half of 4th digit

- The musculocutaneous nerve (C5–C7) pierces and innervates the coracobrachialis muscle of the arm as it leaves the axilla and then descends within the anterior compartment of the arm between the biceps brachii and brachialis muscles.
  - In the arm, its **muscular branches** innervate the muscles of the anterior compartment, the biceps brachii and the brachialis muscles.
  - It enters the forearm at the lateral edge of the cubital fossa as the **lateral antebrachial cutaneous nerve** to supply the skin of the lateral forearm.

BOX 18.7: CLINICAL CORRELATION

MUSCULOCUTANEOUS NERVE INJURY

The musculocutaneous nerve is protected on the medial side of the arm, and isolated injuries are uncommon, but they would affect the coracobrachialis, biceps brachii, and brachialis muscles. Flexion and supination at the elbow would be weakened but not absent because the brachioradialis and supinator muscles, which are innervated by the radial nerve, also provide those movements.

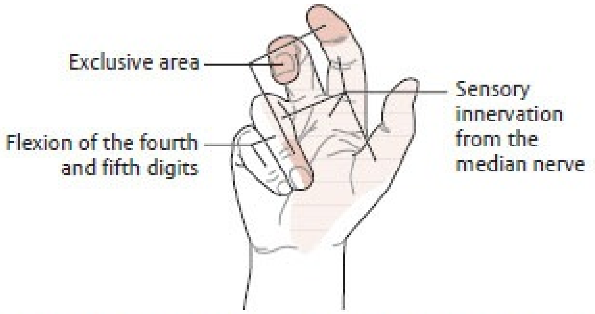
- The median nerve (C6–T1) is formed by contributions from the medial and lateral cords.
  - In the arm, the median nerve descends with the brachial vessels, medial to the biceps brachii, but it does not innervate any arm muscles.
  - In the forearm, it travels deep within the anterior compartment but becomes superficial at the wrist before passing through the carpal tunnel into the hand. It innervates most muscles in the anterior forearm (except the flexor carpi ulnaris and the medial half of the flexor digitorum profundus).
    - Its largest branch in the forearm is the **anterior antebrachial interosseous nerve.**
    - **A palmar branch** arises distally and crosses the wrist superficial to the carpal tunnel to supply the skin of the palm.
  - In the hand, the median nerve has motor and sensory functions.

BOX 18.8: CLINICAL CORRELATION

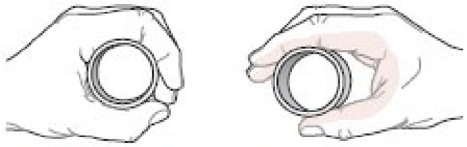
MEDIAN NERVE INJURY

Injury at the distal humerus is often caused by a supracondylar fracture and results in

- loss of sensation in the palm and palmar surface of the lateral three and a half digits,
- loss of flexion of the 1st to 3rd digits,
- positive “bottle sign” due to loss of thumb abduction (with proximal nerve lesion)
- weakened flexion of the 4th and 5th digits,
- loss of thenar opposition,
- loss of pronation,
- an “ape hand” produced by flattening of the thenar eminence, and
- the “hand of benediction” produced by flexing the hand in a fist (the 2nd and 3rd digits remain partly extended).


Exclusive area
Flexion of the fourth and fifth digits
Sensory innervation from the median nerve

A "Hand of benediction" following a proximal median nerve injury.



In a healthy hand, the thumb can be abducted to fully grasp a cylindrical object

With a proximal median nerve lesion, the thumb cannot be fully abducted

B Positive "bottle sign" due to loss or weakness of finger flexion and thumb abduction.

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

    - A thenar muscular branch, the **recurrent nerve,** innervates most muscles of the thenar compartment (intrinsic muscles of the thumb).
    - **Palmar digital branches** innervate the lateral two lumbricals (intrinsic muscles of the central compartment) and the skin of the 1st through 3rd fingers and lateral half of the 4th finger.

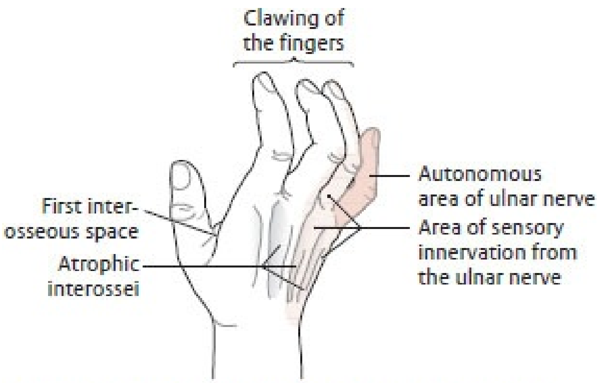
- The ulnar nerve [(C7) C8, T1] is a branch of the medial cord.
  - In the arm, it descends on the medial side with the brachial artery. At the mid-arm, it pierces the intermuscular septum to enter the posterior compartment. It crosses the elbow joint behind the medial epicondyle, where it is subcutaneous and vulnerable to injury. It does not innervate any muscles in the arm.
  - In the forearm, it runs deep to the flexor muscles but becomes superficial just proximal to the wrist.

BOX 18.9: CLINICAL CORRELATION

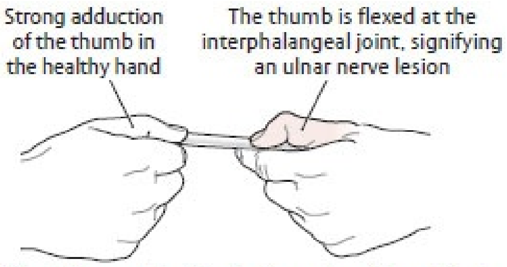
ULNAR NERVE INJURY

The ulnar nerve may be injured at the elbow by a fracture of the medial epicondyle, compressed in the cubital fossa between the two heads of the flexor carpi ulnaris, or compressed in the ulnar canal at the wrist. These injuries result in the following:

- Paresthesia of the palmar and dorsal side of the medial hand and the medial one and a half digits
- Loss of thumb adduction
- Hyperextension of the metacarpophalangeal (MCP) joints
- Loss of extension of interphalangeal (IP) joints
- Weakened adduction and flexion of the wrist (for lesions at the elbow)
- Inability to form a fist due to “claw hand” deformity


Clawing of the fingers
First inter-osseous space
Atrophic interossei
Autonomous area of ulnar nerve
Area of sensory innervation from the ulnar nerve

A “Claw hand” deformity with hollowing of interosseous spaces (due to atrophy of interossei).


Strong adduction of the thumb in the healthy hand
The thumb is flexed at the interphalangeal joint, signifying an ulnar nerve lesion

B Positive “Froment sign” indicating palsy of the adductor pollicis muscle.

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

    - Its **muscular branches** innervate the flexors on the medial side (flexor carpi ulnaris and medial half of the flexor digitorum profundus).

        - **Palmar** and **dorsal cutaneous nerves** arise in the wrist but are distributed to the skin of the medial half of the hand, proximal parts of the 5th digit, and medial half of the 4th digit.
    - It crosses the wrist with the ulnar artery within a narrow space, the **ulnar canal,** where it splits into deep and superficial branches.
        - Its **deep branch** supplies most of the intrinsic muscles of the palm (except the adductor pollicis, half of the flexor pollicis brevis, and the 1st and 2nd lumbricals).
        - Its **superficial branch** innervates a small superficial muscle of the palm (palmaris brevis) and contributes to sensory innervation of the 4th and 5th digits.
- The axillary nerve (C5–C6), a branch of the posterior cord, passes to the posterior shoulder region with the posterior circumflex humeral vessels.
    - In the shoulder region, it innervates scapular and deltoid muscles and skin of the deltoid region.

BOX 18.10: CLINICAL CORRELATION

AXILLARY NERVE INJURY

The axillary nerve is most vulnerable as it courses around the neck of the humerus and can be injured by fractures at the surgical neck or dislocation of the glenohumeral joint. Denervation of the deltoid results in substantial functional weakness of shoulder movements and other effects, including

- Weakened flexion and extension at the shoulder joint
- Inability to abduct the shoulder even to the horizontal position
- Loss of sensation over the deltoid region
- A flattened shoulder contour

- The radial nerve (C5–T1) forms from the posterior cord.
    - In the arm, it runs posteriorly around the humerus in the radial groove with the deep brachial artery and descends within the posterior compartment.
        - Its **muscular branches** innervate all of the muscles of the posterior arm, the triceps brachii and anconeus muscles.
        - Its sensory branches of the arm include the **posterior brachial cutaneous** and **inferior lateral brachial cutaneous nerves.**
        - **A posterior antebrachial cutaneous nerve** arises in the arm but

innervates skin over the posterior forearm.

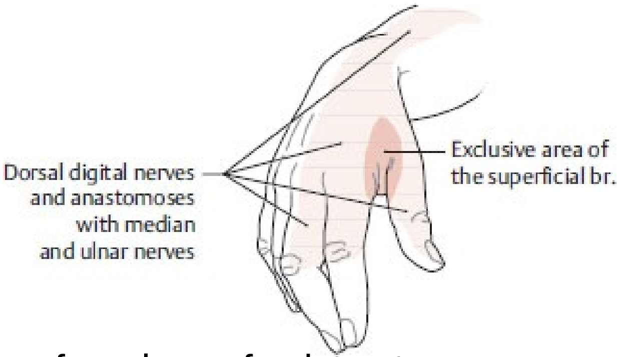
- In the cubital region, it passes through the lateral intermuscular septum into the anterior compartment, where it runs anterior to the lateral epicondyle. As it enters the proximal forearm, it splits into deep and superficial branches.
    - The deep branch becomes the **posterior interosseous nerve** as it circles around the radius into the posterior forearm compartment. It innervates all muscles of this compartment.
    - The **superficial branch** descends along the lateral forearm to the wrist.
- In the hand, the radial nerve has no motor branches.
    - At the wrist, the superficial branch runs posteriorly to innervate the skin on the dorsum of the hand and proximal segments of the 1st through 3rd digits and half of the 4th digit.

BOX 18.11: CLINICAL CORRELATION

RADIAL NERVE INJURY

The radial nerve is most vulnerable to injury from a midhumeral fracture where the nerve courses along the radial groove. Because radial branches to the triceps brachii are usually proximal to the injury, elbow flexion is unaffected. Other effects include the following:

- Loss of wrist extension
- Loss of extension at the metacarpophalangeal (MCP) joints
- Weakened pronation
- Flexed wrist and fingers producing the “wrist drop” position


Dorsal digital nerves and anastomoses with median and ulnar nerves
Exclusive area of the superficial br.

“Wrist drop” resulting from loss of wrist extensors.

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

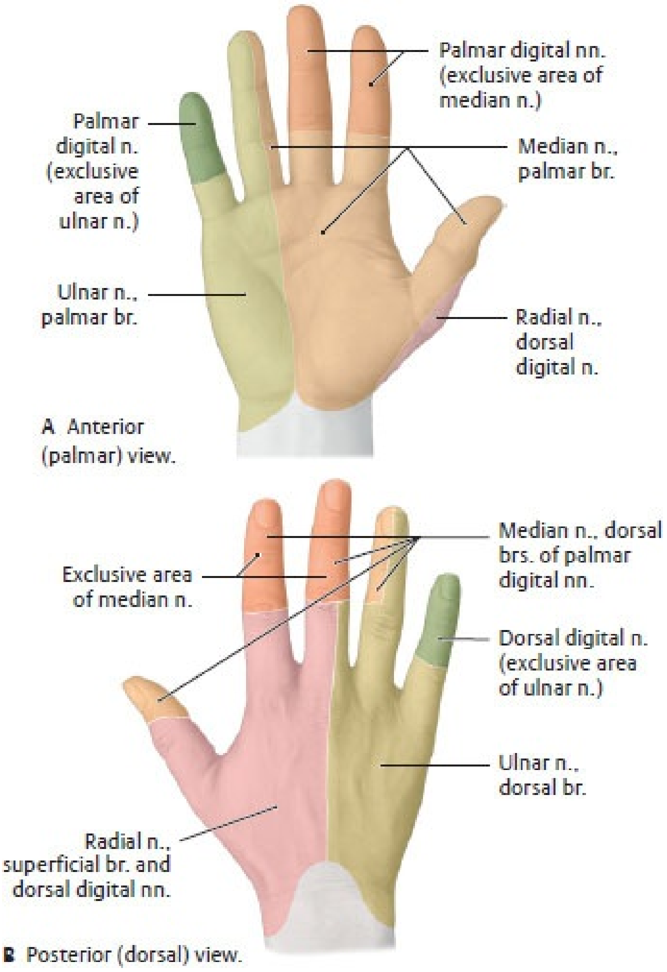
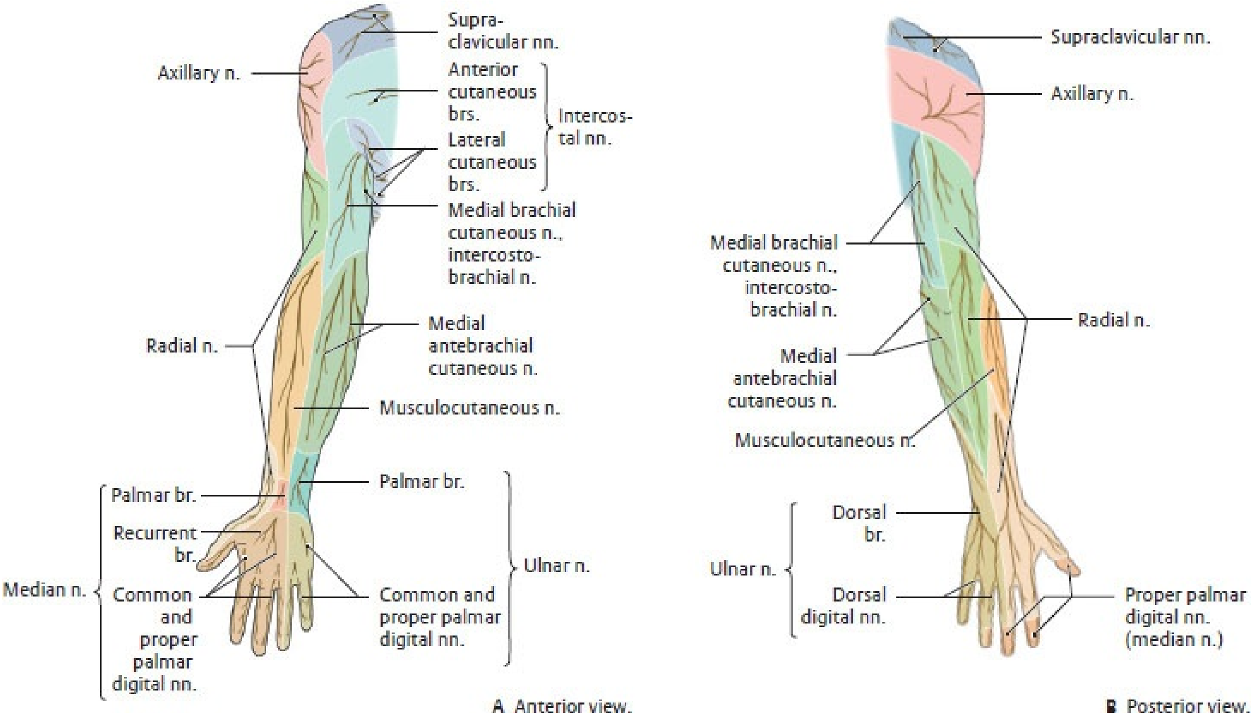

Palmar digital nn. (exclusive area of median n.)
Palmar digital n. (exclusive area of ulnar n.)
Median n., palmar br.
Ulnar n., palmar br.
Radial n., dorsal digital n.
A Anterior (palmar) view.
Median n., dorsal brs. of palmar digital nn.
Exclusive area of median n.
Dorsal digital n. (exclusive area of ulnar n.)
Ulnar n., dorsal br.
Radial n., superficial br. and dorsal digital nn.
B Posterior (dorsal) view.

Fig. 18.19 Sensory innervation of the hand

Right hand. Extensive overlap exists between adjacent areas. Exclusive nerve territories indicated with darker shading. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Supra-
clavicular nn.
Axillary n.
Anterior
cutaneous
brs.
Intercos-
tal nn.
Lateral
cutaneous
brs.
Medial brachial
cutaneous n.,
intercosto-
brachial n.
Radial n.
Medial
antebrachial
cutaneous n.
Musculocutaneous n.
Palmar br.
Palmar br.
Recurrent
br.
Median n.
Ulnar n.
Common
and
proper
palmar
digital nn.
Common and
proper palmar
digital nn.
Supraclavicular nn.
Axillary n.
Medial brachial
cutaneous n.,
intercosto-
brachial n.
Radial n.
Medial
antebrachial
cutaneous n.
Musculocutaneous n.
Dorsal
br.
Ulnar n.
Dorsal
digital nn.
Proper palmar
digital nn.
(median n.)

A Anterior view.

B Posterior view.

Fig. 18.20 Cutaneous innervation of the upper limb

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

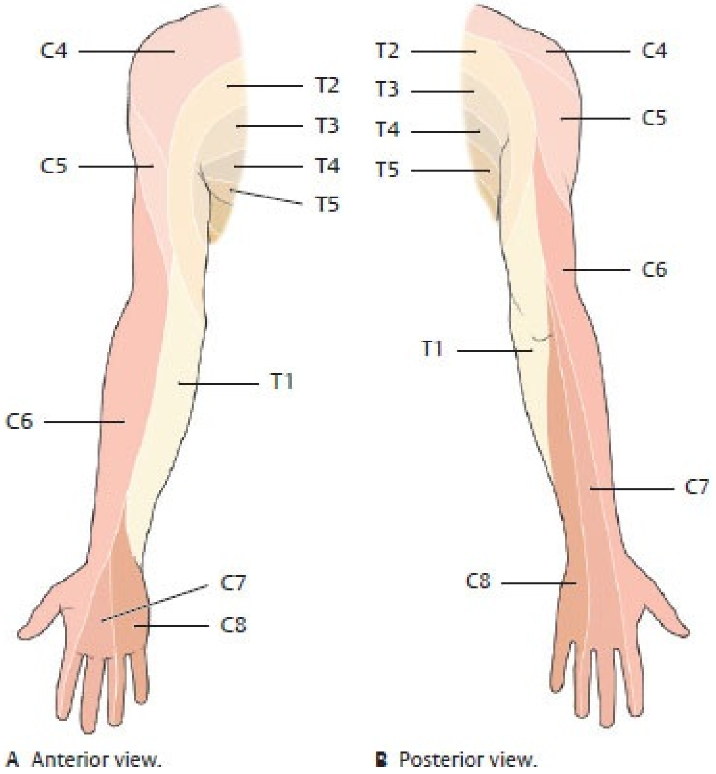

C4
T2
T3
C5
T4
T5
T1
C6
C7
C8
A Anterior view.
T2
C4
T3
C5
T4
T5
C6
T1
C7
C8
B Posterior view.

Fig. 18.21 Dermatomes of the upper limb

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

19 Functional Anatomy of the Upper Limb

The upper limb is characterized by its wide range of movement and fine motor ability. Coordinated movements at the pectoral girdle, as well as the shoulder, elbow, radioulnar, and wrist joints, position the hand for performing work as vital as eating and as complicated as playing a violin.

Schematics of upper limb muscles accompany the muscle tables (origin, attachment, innervation, and action) in the appropriate chapter sections. To see the muscles in situ, view the gallery of topographic images in Section 14.7 at the end of this chapter.

19.1 The Pectoral Girdle

The **pectoral girdle,** formed by the clavicle and scapula, attaches the upper limb to the trunk **(Fig. 19.1)**. The clavicle, acting as a strut, holds the scapula and humerus away from the trunk, allow-ing the free range of motion necessary for upper limb function.

Joints of the Pectoral Girdle

The joints of the pectoral girdle include articulations of the clav-icle with the sternum and scapula, and a nonosseous joint that permits gliding movement between muscles of the trunk and scapula.

— The **sternoclavicular joint** is a strong but highly mobile synovial joint between the sternal end of the clavicle and the manubrium and 1st costal cartilage **(Fig. 19.2)**.

  - It is the only bony articulation between the upper limb and the trunk.
  - An articular disk separates the articulating surfaces.
  - **Anterior** and **posterior sternoclavicular, costoclavicular,** and **interclavicular ligaments** strengthen the joint.
  - The joint allows the clavicle to elevate and rotate in conjunction with limb movements.

— The **acromioclavicular joint** is a plane type of synovial joint between the acromion of the scapula and acromial end of the clavicle **(Fig. 19.3)**.

  - An articular disk separates the articulating surfaces.

  - An **acromioclavicular ligament** supports the joint superiorly.
  - The **coracoclavicular ligament**, an extrinsic ligament (distant from the joint), strengthens the joint by anchoring the clavicle to the coracoid process. Its two parts are the **conoid** and **trapezoid ligaments.**

- The **scapulothoracic joint** is not a bony articulation but a functional relationship between the serratus anterior and subscapularis muscles that allows the scapula to glide and pivot on the chest wall **(Fig. 19.4)**.

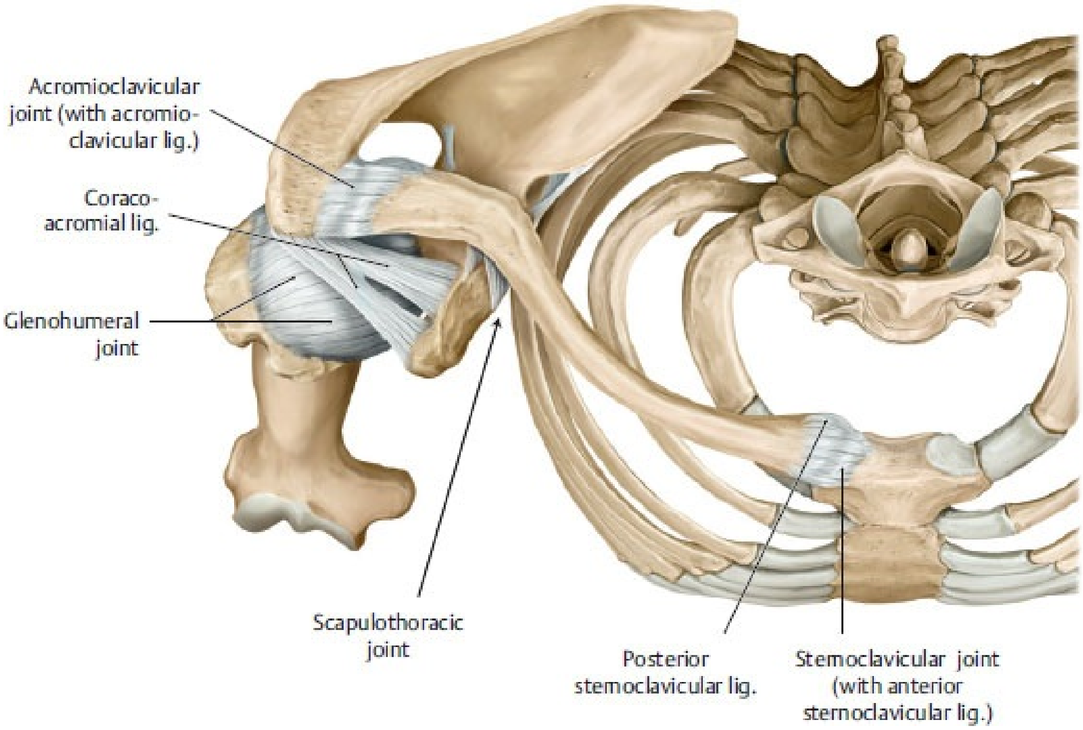

Acromioclavicular joint (with acromio-clavicular lig.)
Coraco-acromial lig.
Glenohumeral joint
Scapulothoracic joint
Posterior sternoclavicular lig.
Sternoclavicular joint (with anterior sternoclavicular lig.)

Fig. 19.1 Joints of the shoulder girdle

Right side, superior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

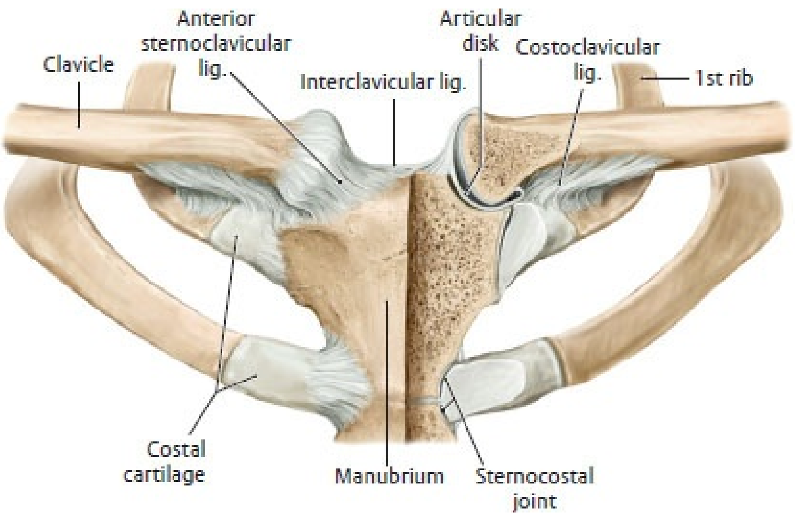

Anterior
sternoclavicular
lig.
Articular
disk
Clavicle
Costoclavicular
lig.
1st rib
Interclavicular lig.
Costal
cartilage
Manubrium
Sternocostal
joint

Fig. 19.2 Sternoclavicular joint

Anterior view with sternum coronally sectioned *(left)*. Note: A fibrocartilaginous articular disk compensates for the mismatch of surfaces between the two saddle-shaped articular facets of the clavicle and the manubrium. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

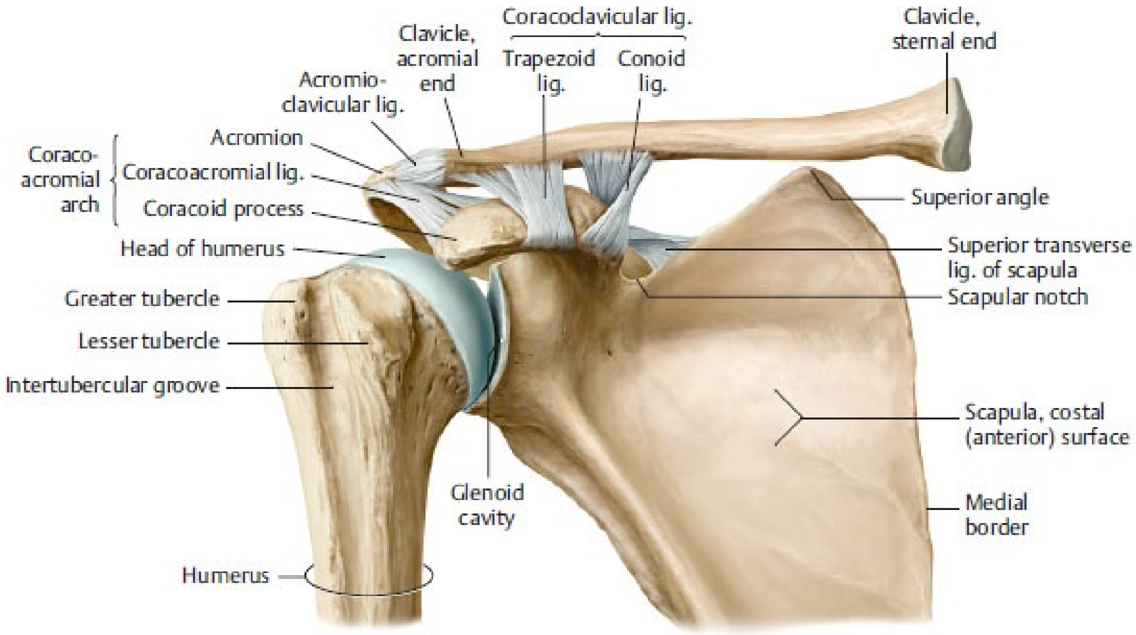

Coracoclavicular lig.
Clavicle,
acromial
end
Trapezoid
lig.
Conoid
lig.
Clavicle,
sternal end
Acromio-
clavicular lig.
Coraco-
acromial
arch
Acromion
Coracoacromial lig.
Coracoid process
Superior angle
Head of humerus
Superior transverse
lig. of scapula
Scapular notch
Greater tubercle
Lesser tubercle
Intertubercular groove
Scapula, costal
(anterior) surface
Glenoid
cavity
Medial
border
Humerus

Fig. 19.3 Acromioclavicular joint

Anterior view. The acromioclavicular joint is a plane joint. Because the articulating surfaces are flat, they must be held in place by strong ligaments, greatly limiting the mobility of the joint. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

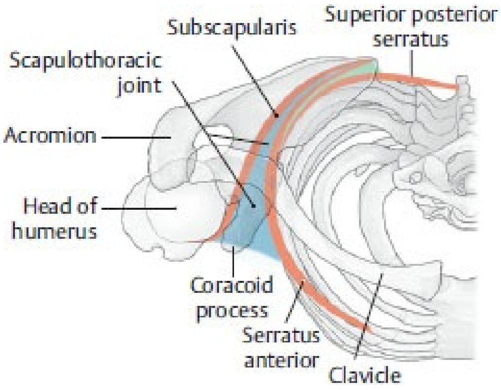


Fig. 19.4 Scapulothoracic joint

Right side, superior view. In all movements of the shoulder girdle, the scapula glides on a curved surface of loose connective tissue between the serratus anterior and the subscapularis muscles. This surface can be considered a scapulothoracic joint. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

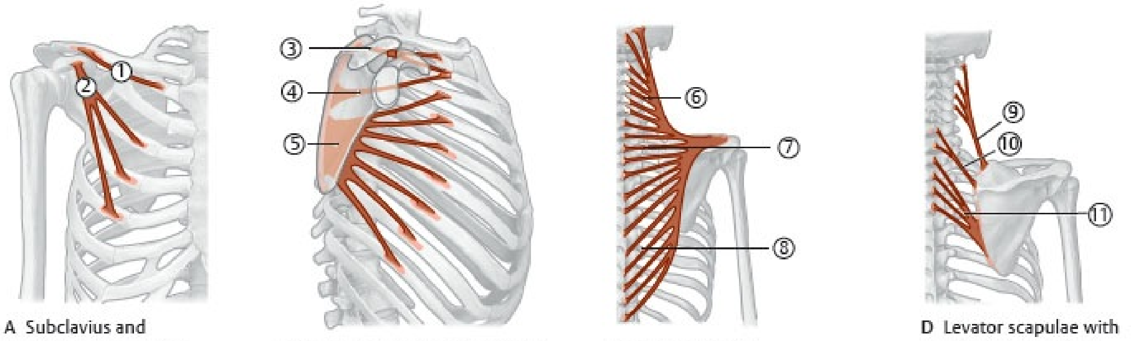
Muscles of the Pectoral Girdle

Muscles of the pectoral girdle attach the upper limb to the trunk and move and stabilize the pectoral girdle in response to movements of the glenohumeral joint at the shoulder **(** **Table 19.1**).

— Anterior muscles of the pectoral girdle, which lie on the anterior and lateral thoracic wall,
  - include the **subclavius, pectoralis minor,** and **serratus anterior,** and
  - are anchored to the ribs, as well as to the bones of the pectoral girdle.

— Posterior muscles of the pectoral girdle, which are part of the superficial muscular layer of the back,
  - include the **trapezius, levator scapulae, rhomboid major,** and **rhomboid minor,** and
  - arise from cervical and thoracic vertebrae and insert on the scapula.

— Movements of the pectoral girdle and the muscles that provide them are listed in **Table 19.2.**



A Subclavius and pectoralis minor, right, anterior view.

B Serratus anterior, right lateral view.

C Trapezius, right posterior view.

D Levator scapulae with rhomboids major and minor, right posterior view.

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

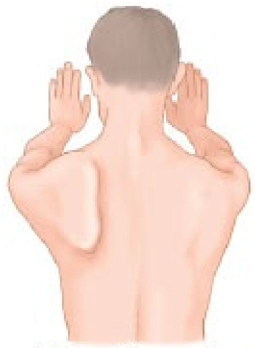
Table 19.1 Pectoral Girdle Muscles

Muscle		Origin	Insertion	Innervation	Action
① Subclavius		1st rib	Clavicle (inferior surface)	N. to subclavius (C5, C6)	Steadies the clavicle in the sternoclavicular joint
② Pectoralis minor		3rd to 5th ribs	Coracoid process	Medial pectoral n. (C8, T1)	Protracts and depresses scapula, causing inferior angle to move posteromedially; rotates glenoid inferiorly; assists in respiration
Serratus anterior	③ Superior part	1st and 2nd ribs	Scapula (costal and dorsal surfaces of superior angle)	Long thoracic n. (C5–C7)	Superior part: protracts scapula; lowers the raised arm
	④ Intermediate part	2nd rib	Scapula (costal surface of medial border)		Entire muscle: draws scapula laterally forward; elevates ribs when shoulder is fixed
	⑤ Inferior part	3rd to 9th or 10th ribs	Scapula (costal surface of medial border and costal and dorsal surfaces of inferior angle)		Inferior part: rotates inferior angle of scapula laterally forward (allows elevation of arm above 90 degrees)
Trapezius	⑥ Descending part	Occipital bone; posterior arch of C1; spinous processes of C2–C7	Clavicle (lateral one third)	Accessory n. (CN XI); C3, C4 of the cervical plexus	Elevates scapula obliquely upward; rotates glenoid cavity superiorly and rotates inferior angle laterally; tilts head to same side and rotates it to opposite
	⑦ Transverse part	Aponeurosis at T1–T4 spinous processes	Acromion		Retracts scapula medially
	⑧ Ascending part	Spinous processes of T5–T12	Scapular spine		Depresses scapula and draws it medially downward
					Entire muscle: steadies scapula on thorax
⑨ Levator scapulae		Transverse processes of C1–C4	Scapula (superior angle)	Dorsal scapular n. and cervical spinal nn. (C3, C4)	Elevates and medially rotates inferior angle of scapula; inclines neck to same side
⑩ Rhomboid minor		Spinous processes of C6, C7	Medial border of scapula above (minor) and below (major) scapular spine	Dorsal scapular n. (C4, C5)	Steadies scapula; retracts and medially rotates inferior angle of scapula
⑪ Rhomboid major		Spinous processes of T1–T4 vertebrae			

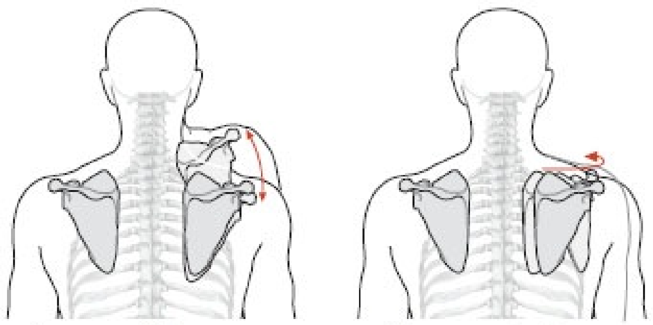
Abbreviation: CN, cranial nerve.

LONG THORACIC NERVE INJURY

The long thoracic nerve arises from the C5–C7 roots of the brachial plexus. Its superficial course along the medial wall of the axilla puts it at risk of injury during regional surgeries such as axillary node dissection. Nerve damage results in the inability of the serratus anterior to laterally rotate the scapula, which is necessary to abduct the arm above the horizontal plane. The serratus anterior is also unable to support the scapula against the thoracic wall, which creates a “winged” scapula, especially noticeable when the subject presses the outstretched arm against a hard surface.

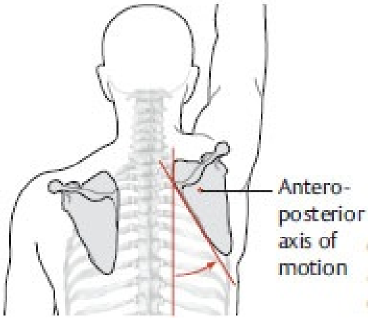


“Winged” scapula



A Elevation and depression during elevation and depression of the shoulder girdle.

B Abduction and adduction during protraction and retraction of the shoulder girdle.



C Lateral rotation of the inferior angle during abduction or elevation of the arm.

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Table 19.2 Movements of the Pectoral Girdle

Action	Primary Muscles
Elevation	Trapezius (descending part) Levator scapulae
Depression	Pectoralis minor Trapezius (ascending part)
Protraction	Pectoralis minor Serratus anterior
Retraction	Trapezius (transverse part) Rhomboid minor Rhomboid major
Lateral rotation	Serratus anterior (inferior part) Trapezius (descending part)
Medial rotation	Levator scapulae Rhomboid minor Rhomboid major

19.2 The Shoulder Region

The shoulder region includes the axilla, a passageway for neurovascular structures between the trunk and upper limb, and the glenohumeral joint, the largest joint of the upper limb. Muscles of the pectoral, scapular, and deltoid regions support the joint.

The Axilla

The **axilla** is a four-sided pyramidally shaped region between the upper parts of the arm and lateral thoracic wall **(Fig. 19.5;** see also **Fig. 18.1)**.

— Its boundaries are
  - the **cervicoaxillary canal,** the narrow space between the clavicle and 1st rib, which forms the apex;
  - the axillary fascia and axillary skin between the upper arm and the lateral thoracic wall, which form the base, or floor;
  - the pectoralis major and pectoralis minor muscles, which form the

anterior axillary wall (the lower edge of the pectoralis major forms a prominent ridge called the **anterior axillary fold**);

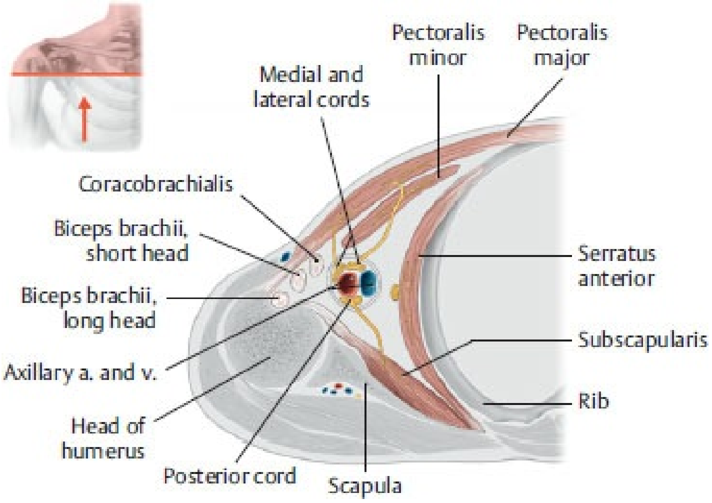

Pectoralis minor
Pectoralis major
Medial and lateral cords
Coracobrachialis
Biceps brachii, short head
Biceps brachii, long head
Axillary a. and v.
Head of humerus
Posterior cord
Scapula
Serratus anterior
Subscapularis
Rib

Fig. 19.5 Walls of the axilla

Right side, inferior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

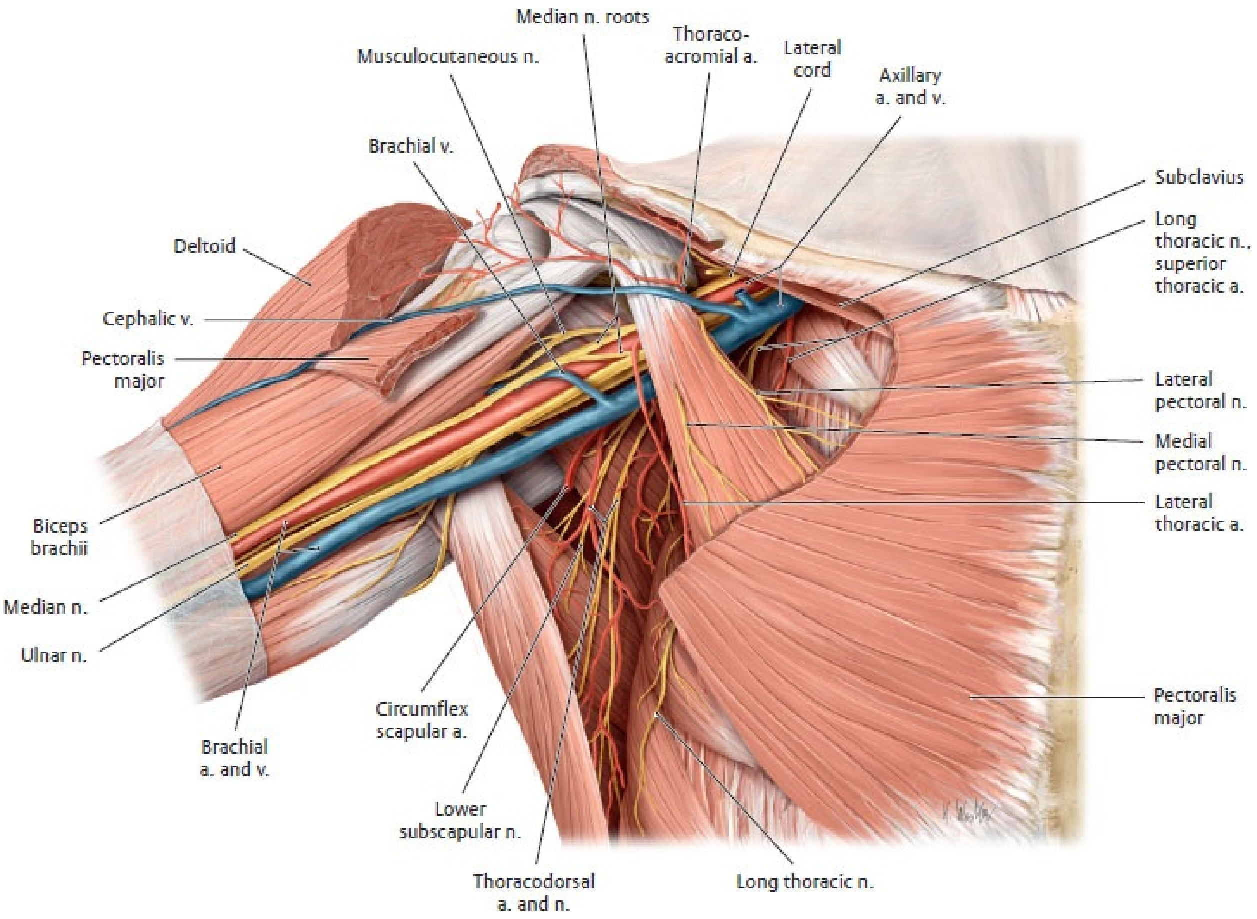

Median n. roots
Musculocutaneous n.
Thoraco-acromial a.
Lateral cord
Axillary a. and v.
Brachial v.
Subclavius
Long thoracic n., superior thoracic a.
Deltoid
Cephalic v.
Pectoralis major
Lateral pectoral n.
Medial pectoral n.
Lateral thoracic a.
Biceps brachii
Median n.
Ulnar n.
Pectoralis major
Circumflex scapular a.
Brachial a. and v.
Lower subscapular n.
Thoracodorsal a. and n.
Long thoracic n.

Fig. 19.6 Dissection of the axilla

Right shoulder, anterior view. *Removed*: Pectoralis major and clavipectoral fascia. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- the subscapularis, latissimus dorsi, and teres major muscles, which form the posterior axillary wall (the lower edge of the latissimus dorsi and teres major form a prominent ridge called the **posterior axillary fold**); and
- the lateral thoracic wall and the humerus of the arm, which form the medial and lateral walls, respectively.

— The contents of the axilla **(Fig. 19.6)**, which are embedded in axillary fat, include
- the axillary artery and its branches,
- the axillary vein and its tributaries,
- axillary lymph nodes and vessels, and

  - the cords and terminal nerves of the brachial plexus.
- An extension of the fascia of the neck forms a sleevelike **axillary sheath** that encloses the axillary vessels and the brachial plexus.

The Glenohumeral (Shoulder) Joint

The **glenohumeral joint** is a ball-and-socket type of synovial joint between the shallow glenoid cavity of the scapula and the large head of the humerus **(Fig. 19.7)**.

- The **glenoid labrum,** a rim of fibrocartilage attached to the glenoid cavity, deepens the articular surface.
- A fibrous capsule lined by a synovial membrane surrounds the joint **(Fig. 19.8)**. Although relatively lax and thin posteriorly, the capsule is reinforced
  - anteriorly by the **superior, middle,** and **inferior glenohumeral ligaments** and
  - superiorly by the **coracohumeral ligament,** which extends from the coracoid process to the greater and lesser tubercles. This ligament stabilizes the tendon of the biceps brachii before it passes through the intertubercular groove.
- The **coracoacromial ligament** between the coracoid process and acromion prevents superior dislocation of the humerus.
- A synovial membrane lines the joint space (synovial cavity) **(Fig.19.9)**.
  - It forms a tubular sheath around the tendon of the biceps brachii as the tendon passes through the joint space.
  - The synovial cavity communicates with a bursa under the subscapularis tendon (subtendinous bursa of the subscapularis).

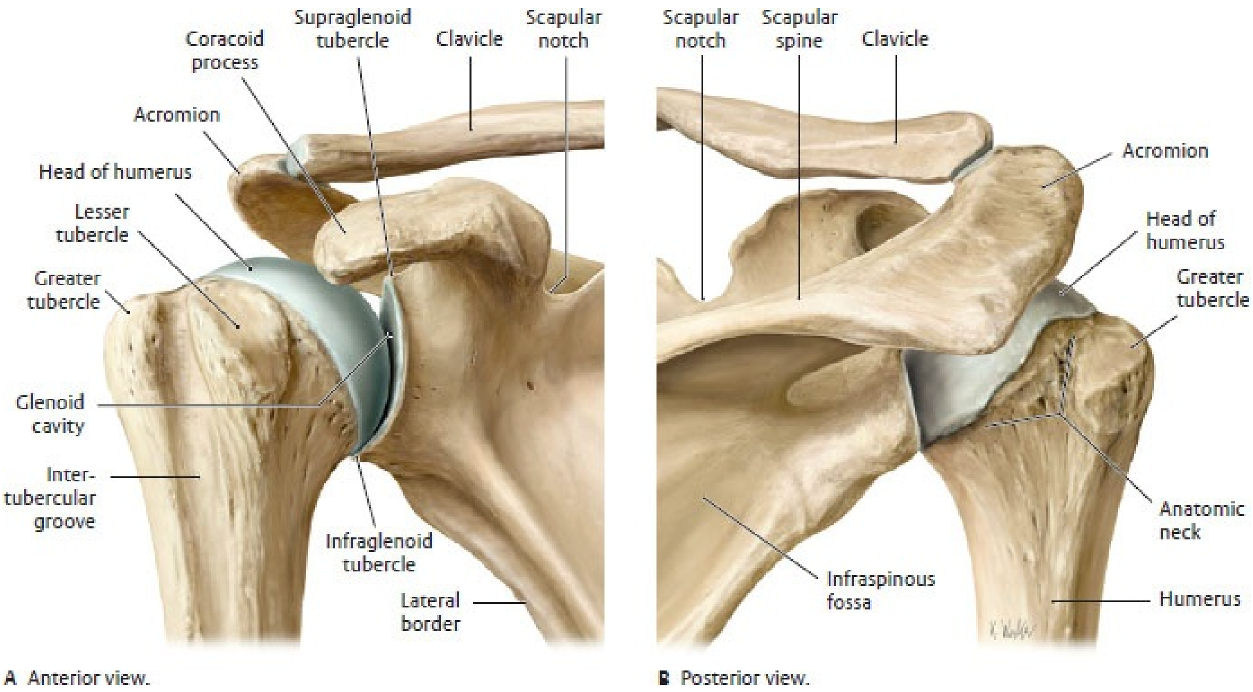

Coracoid process
Supraglenoid tubercle
Clavicle
Scapular notch
Acromion
Head of humerus
Lesser tubercle
Greater tubercle
Glenoid cavity
Inter-tubercular groove
Infraglenoid tubercle
Lateral border
A Anterior view.
Scapular notch
Scapular spine
Clavicle
Acromion
Head of humerus
Greater tubercle
Anatomic neck
Infraspinous fossa
Humerus
B Posterior view.

Fig. 19.7 Glenohumeral joint: bony elements

Right shoulder, anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

— Three large bursae are associated with the glenohumeral joint (**Fig. 19.10**):

1. Anteriorly, the **subtendinous bursa of the subscapularis,** which lies between the tendon of the subscapularis and the neck of the scapula, communicates with the synovial cavity of the joint.

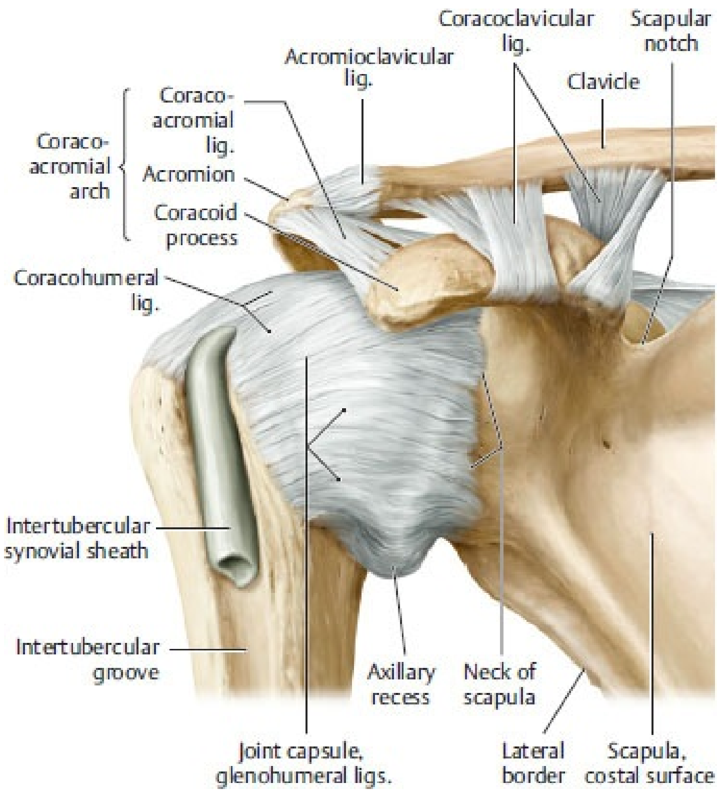

Coracoclavicular lig.
Scapular notch
Acromioclavicular lig.
Clavicle
Coraco-acromial arch
Coraco-acromial lig.
Acromion
Coracoid process
Coracohumeral lig.
Intertubercular synovial sheath
Intertubercular groove
Axillary recess
Neck of scapula
Joint capsule, glenohumeral ligs.
Lateral border
Scapula, costal surface

Fig. 19.8 Glenohumeral joint: capsule and ligaments

Right shoulder, anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

2. Superiorly, the **subacromial bursa** lies under the coracoacromial ligament and above the supraspinatus tendon and glenohumeral joint capsule.
3. Laterally, the **subdeltoid bursa** lies deep to the deltoid muscle and above the subscapularis tendon. It communicates with the subacromial bursa.

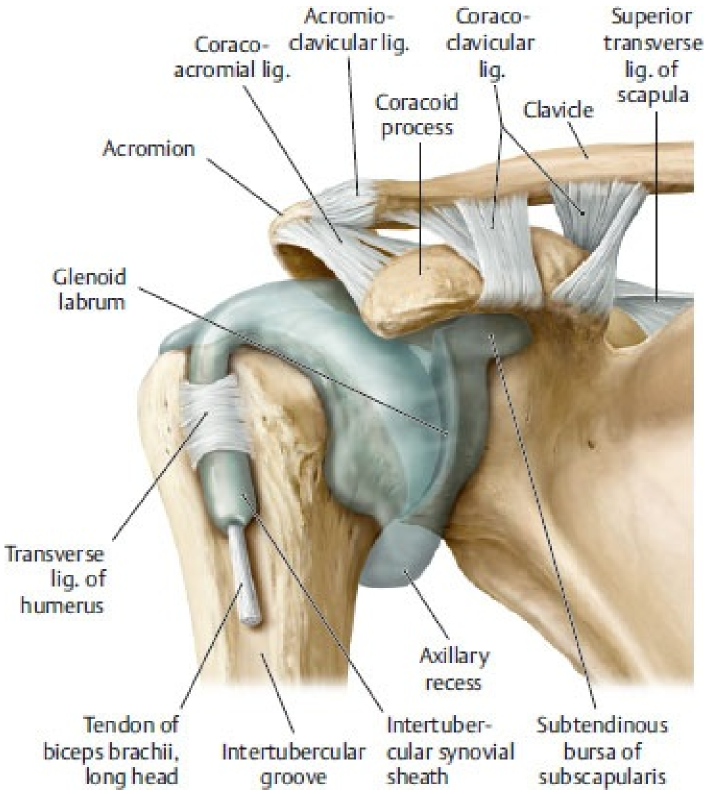

Acromio-clavicular lig.
Coraco-clavicular lig.
Superior transverse lig. of scapula
Coraco-acromial lig.
Coracoid process
Clavicle
Acromion
Glenoid labrum
Transverse lig. of humerus
Axillary recess
Tendon of biceps brachii, long head
Intertubercular groove
Intertuber-cular synovial sheath
Subtendinous bursa of subscapularis

Fig. 19.9 Glenohumeral joint cavity

Right shoulder, anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

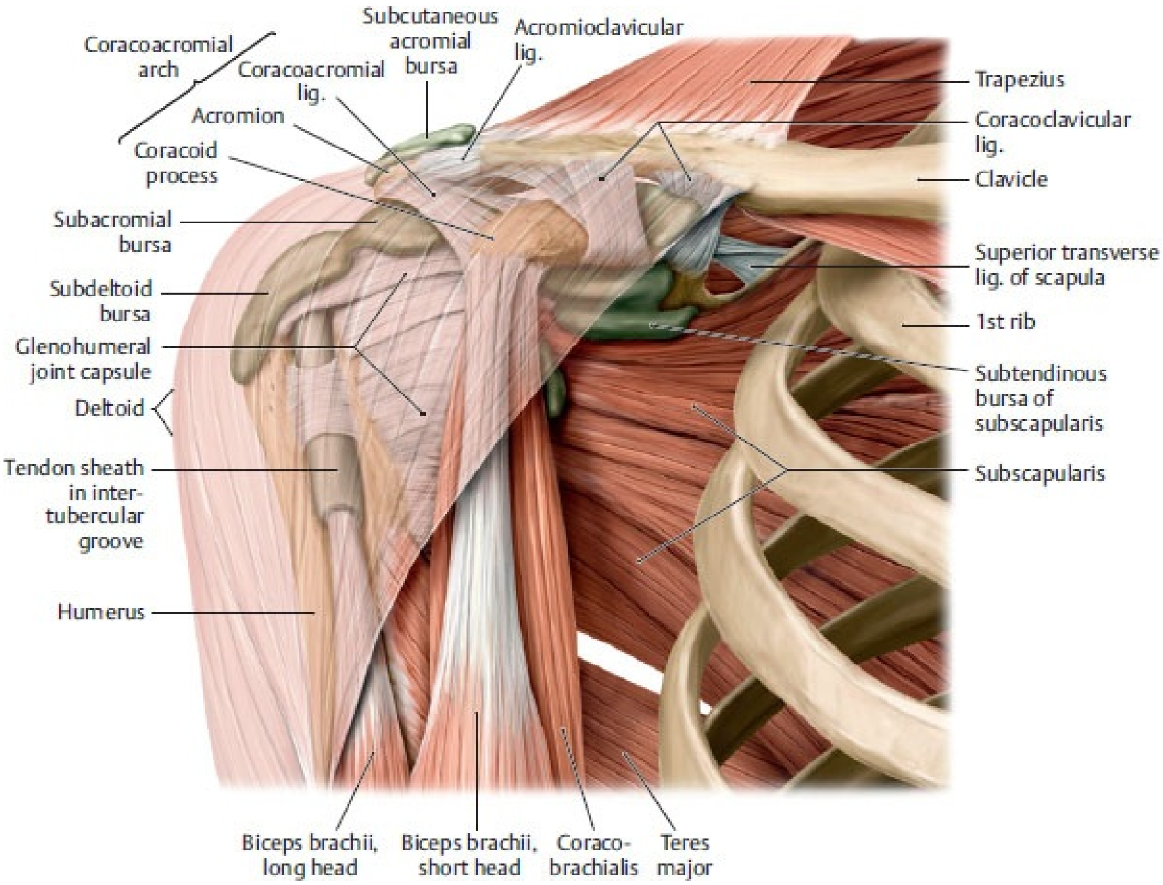

Coracoacromial arch
Subcutaneous acromial bursa
Acromioclavicular lig.
Coracoacromial lig.
Acromion
Coracoid process
Subacromial bursa
Subdeltoid bursa
Glenohumeral joint capsule
Deltoid
Tendon sheath in inter-tubercular groove
Humerus
Trapezius
Coracoclavicular lig.
Clavicle
Superior transverse lig. of scapula
1st rib
Subtendinous bursa of subscapularis
Subscapularis
Biceps brachii, long head
Biceps brachii, short head
Coraco-brachialis
Teres major

Fig. 19.10 Bursae of the shoulder region

Right shoulder, anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 19.2: CLINICAL CORRELATION

GLENOHUMERAL DISLOCATION

The glenohumeral joint is the most mobile but least stable joint of the body and dislocations are frequent. Rotator cuff muscles provide the greatest stability, supporting the joint anteriorly, posteriorly, and superiorly, but inferior support is lacking. The coracoacromial arch, coracohumeral ligament, and capsular glenohumeral ligaments add further support. The majority of dislocations (90%) occur inferiorly, although most are labeled “anterior” dislocations based on the position of the displaced humeral head relative to the glenoid. These injuries can damage the axillary nerve and lead to a flattened shoulder profile. Posterior dislocations are rare and most often associated with seizures or electrocutions.

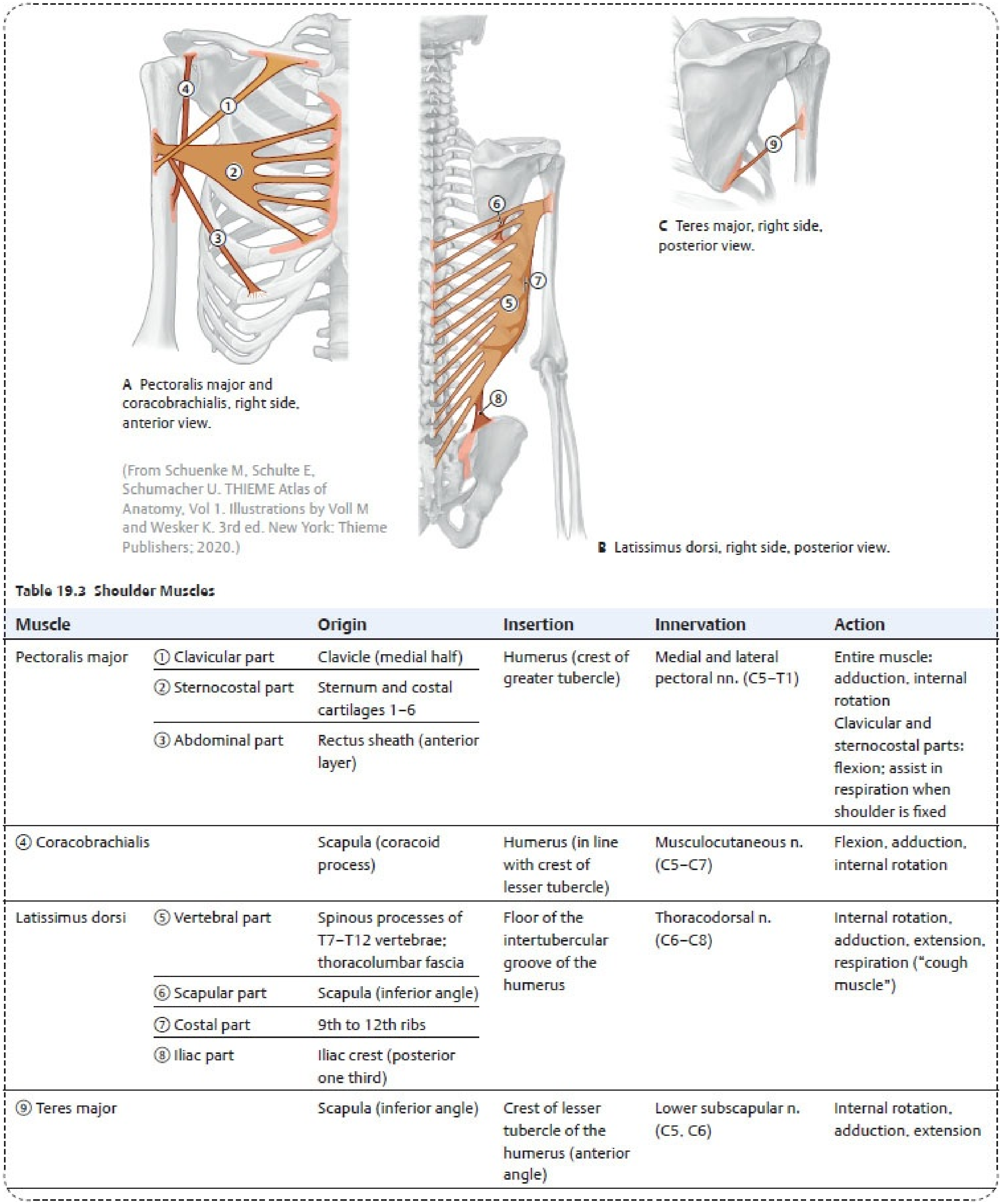
Muscles of the Shoulder Region

Muscles that cross the glenohumeral joint stabilize the head of the humerus in the glenoid cavity and assist in movements of the arm **(Tables 19.3** and **19.4)**.

- Two muscles of the trunk, the **pectoralis major** and **latissimus dorsi,** extend from the axial skeleton to the humerus and together provide strong adduction and medial rotation of the arm.
  - The pectoralis major is a strong flexor of the arm.
  - The latissimus dorsi is a strong extensor of the arm.
- Scapulohumeral muscles attach the humerus to the scapula and provide stability for the glenohumeral joint.
  - The **deltoid,** which forms the rounded contour of the shoulder, abducts, flexes, and extends the arm.
  - The **teres major** adducts and internally rotates the arm.
  - The **supraspinatus** initiates abduction of the arm and assists the deltoid in the first 15 degrees of movement.
  - The **infraspinatus** externally rotates the arm.
  - The **teres minor** externally rotates the arm.
  - The **subscapularis** on the anterior surface of the scapula internally rotates the arm.
- A musculotendinous **rotator cuff** around the glenohumeral joint includes four of the scapulohumeral muscles, which are the important dynamic stabilizers of the joint.
  - The rotator cuff muscles include the **supraspinatus, infraspinatus, teres minor,** and **subscapularis.**
  - Their tendons insert on, and reinforce, the fibrous capsule of the joint, forming a supportive cuff around the anterior, posterior, and superior aspects of the joint.
- A few muscles of the arm cross the glenohumeral joint and support its movements (see Table 19.6).
  - The tendon of the long head of the **biceps brachii** passes through the intertubercular groove of the humerus and enters the joint cavity, where it is ensheathed by the synovial layer of the capsule. It prevents dislocation of the humerus during abduction and flexion.
  - The short head of the biceps brachii and the **coracobrachialis** muscles cross the joint anteriorly and assist in flexion of the arm.
  - The long head of the **triceps brachii** crosses the joint posteriorly and

assists in adduction and extension.

- Movements at the glenohumeral joint and the muscles that provide them are listed in **Table 19.5.**



A Pectoralis major and coracobrachialis, right side, anterior view.

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

B Latissimus dorsi, right side, posterior view.

C Teres major, right side, posterior view.

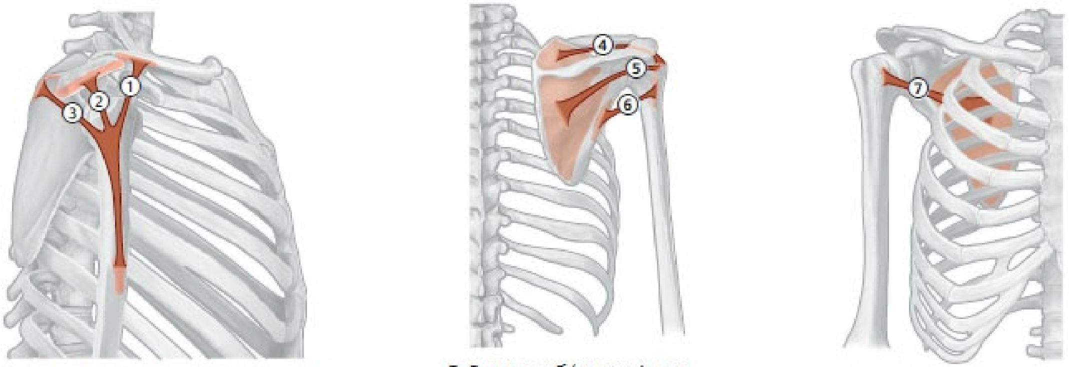
Table 19.3 Shoulder Muscles

Muscle		Origin	Insertion	Innervation	Action
Pectoralis major	① Clavicular part	Clavicle (medial half)	Humerus (crest of greater tubercle)	Medial and lateral pectoral nn. (C5–T1)	Entire muscle: adduction, internal rotation Clavicular and sternocostal parts: flexion; assist in respiration when shoulder is fixed
	② Sternocostal part	Sternum and costal cartilages 1–6			
	③ Abdominal part	Rectus sheath (anterior layer)			
④ Coracobrachialis		Scapula (coracoid process)	Humerus (in line with crest of lesser tubercle)	Musculocutaneous n. (C5–C7)	Flexion, adduction, internal rotation
Latissimus dorsi	⑤ Vertebral part	Spinous processes of T7–T12 vertebrae; thoracolumbar fascia	Floor of the intertubercular groove of the humerus	Thoracodorsal n. (C6–C8)	Internal rotation, adduction, extension, respiration ("cough muscle")
	⑥ Scapular part	Scapula (inferior angle)			
	⑦ Costal part	9th to 12th ribs			
	⑧ Iliac part	Iliac crest (posterior one third)			
⑨ Teres major		Scapula (inferior angle)	Crest of lesser tubercle of the humerus (anterior angle)	Lower subscapular n. (C5, C6)	Internal rotation, adduction, extension

BOX 19.3: CLINICAL CORRELATION

ROTATOR CUFF TEARS

Rotator cuff tears can occur at any age but are most common in the older patient and usually involve the supraspinatus tendon. Degenerative changes, calcification, and chronic inflammation from repetitive use (baseball pitchers are a good example) can cause the tendon to fray and rupture. When the subacromial and subdeltoid bursae tear in conjunction with the ruptured tendon, they become continuous with the cavity of the glenohumeral joint **(Fig. 19.11)**.



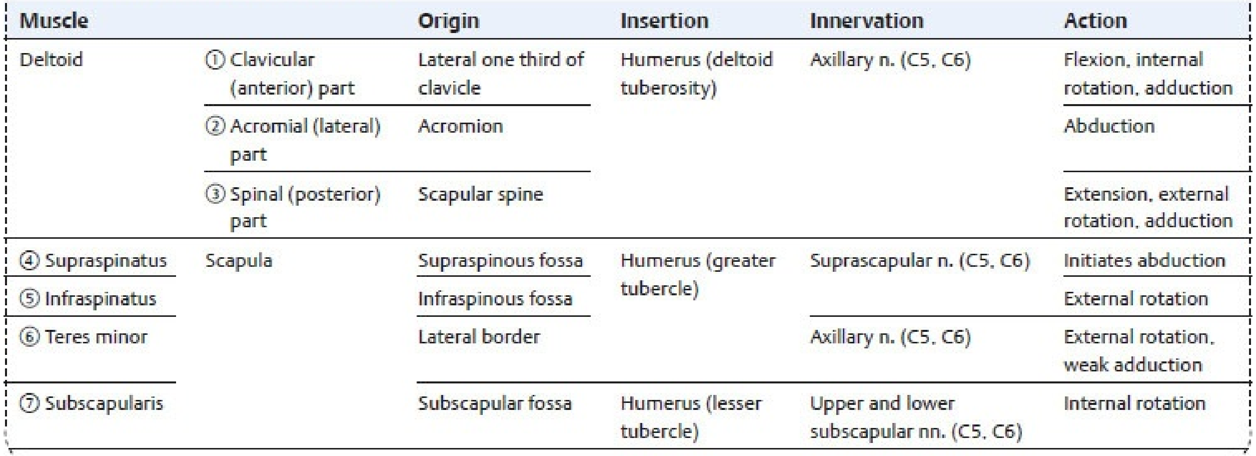
A Deltoid, right side, right lateral view.

B Rotator cuff (supraspinatus, infraspinatus, and teres minor), right shoulder, posterior view.

C Rotator cuff (subscapularis), right shoulder, anterior view.

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Table 19.4 Deltoid and Rotator Cuff Muscles



Muscle		Origin	Insertion	Innervation	Action
Deltoid	① Clavicular (anterior) part	Lateral one third of clavicle	Humerus (deltoid tuberosity)	Axillary n. (C5, C6)	Flexion, internal rotation, adduction
	② Acromial (lateral) part	Acromion			Abduction
	③ Spinal (posterior) part	Scapular spine			Extension, external rotation, adduction
④ Supraspinatus	Scapula	Supraspinous fossa	Humerus (greater tubercle)	Suprascapular n. (C5, C6)	Initiates abduction
⑤ Infraspinatus		Infraspinous fossa			External rotation
⑥ Teres minor		Lateral border		Axillary n. (C5, C6)	External rotation, weak adduction
⑦ Subscapularis		Subscapular fossa	Humerus (lesser tubercle)	Upper and lower subscapular nn. (C5, C6)	Internal rotation

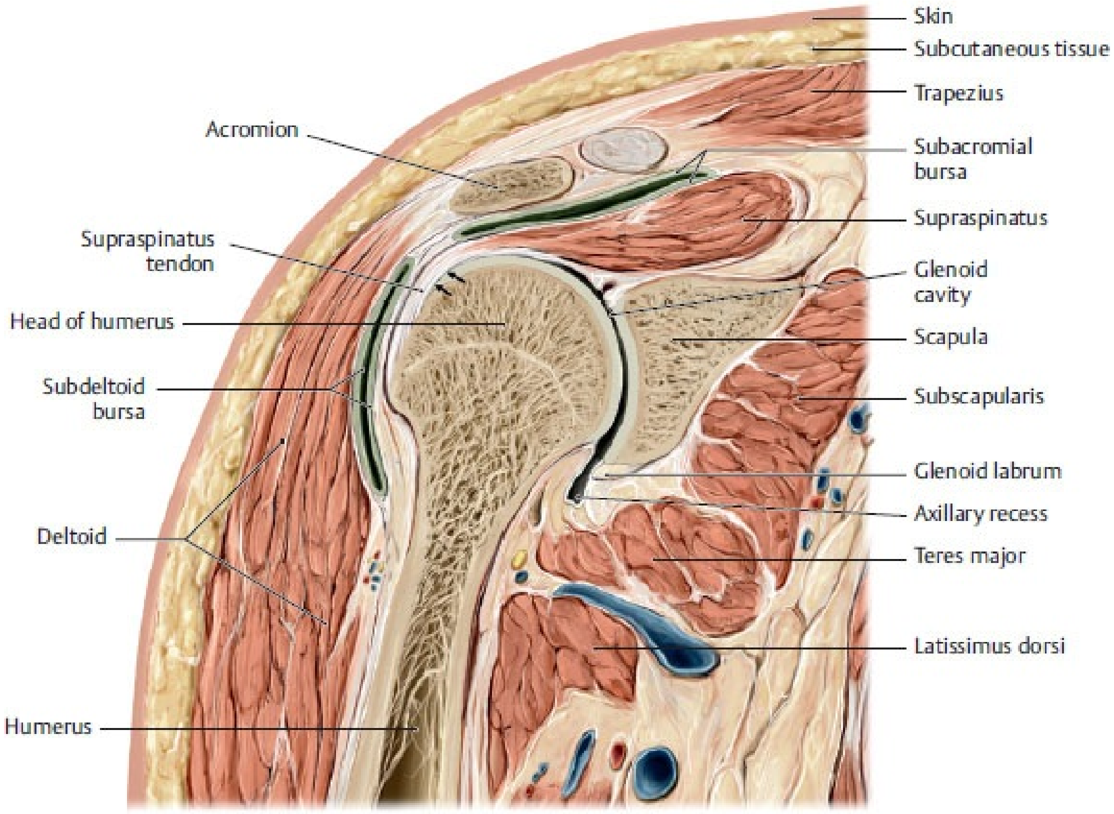

Skin
Subcutaneous tissue
Trapezius
Acromion
Subacromial bursa
Supraspinatus
Supraspinatus tendon
Glenoid cavity
Head of humerus
Scapula
Subdeltoid bursa
Subscapularis
Glenoid labrum
Axillary recess
Deltoid
Teres major
Latissimus dorsi
Humerus

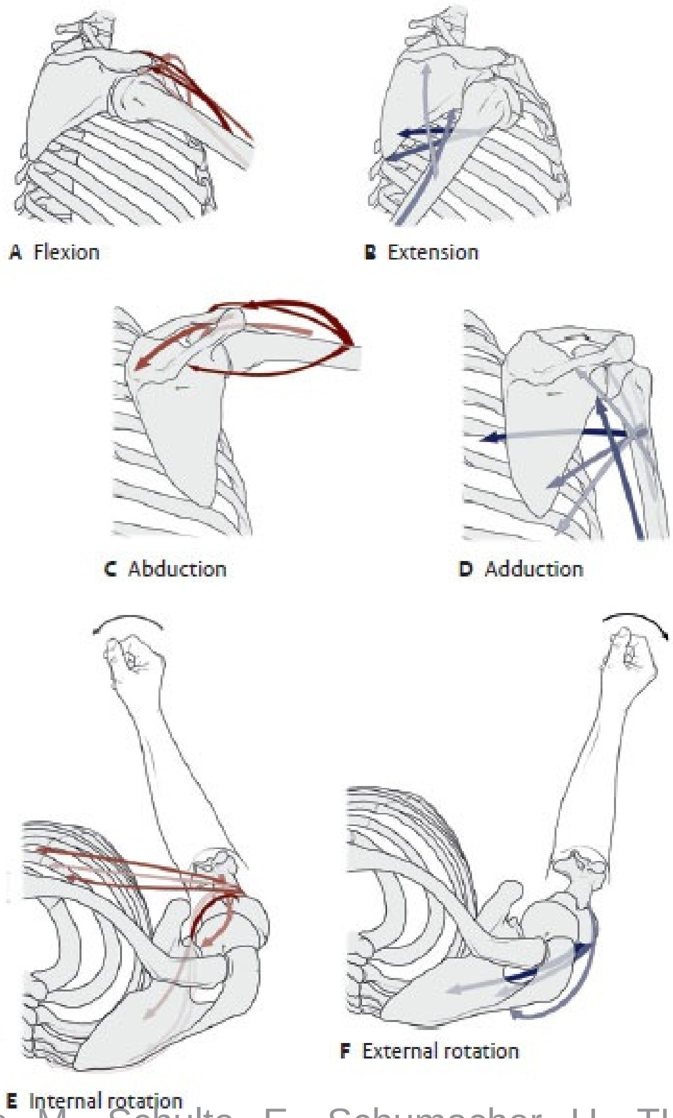
Fig. 19.11 Coronal section through the right shoulder

Anterior view. The *arrows* are pointing at the supraspinatus tendon, which is frequently injured in a “rotator cuff tear.” (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Table 19.5 Movements at the Glenohumeral Joint

Action	Primary Muscles
Flexion	Deltoid (clavicular part) Pectoralis major (clavicular and sternocostal parts) Coracobrachialis Biceps brachii (short head)
Extension	Deltoid (spinal part) Latissimus dorsi Teres major Triceps brachii (long head)

Abduction	Deltoid (acromial part) Supraspinatus
Adduction	Deltoid (clavicular and spinal parts) Pectoralis major Latissimus dorsi Teres major Triceps brachii (long head)
Internal rotation	Deltoid (clavicular part) Pectoralis major (clavicular part) Latissimus dorsi Teres major Subscapularis
External rotation	Deltoid (spinal part) Infraspinatus Teres minor


A Flexion
B Extension
C Abduction
D Adduction
E Internal rotation
F External rotation

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Spaces of the Posterior Shoulder Region

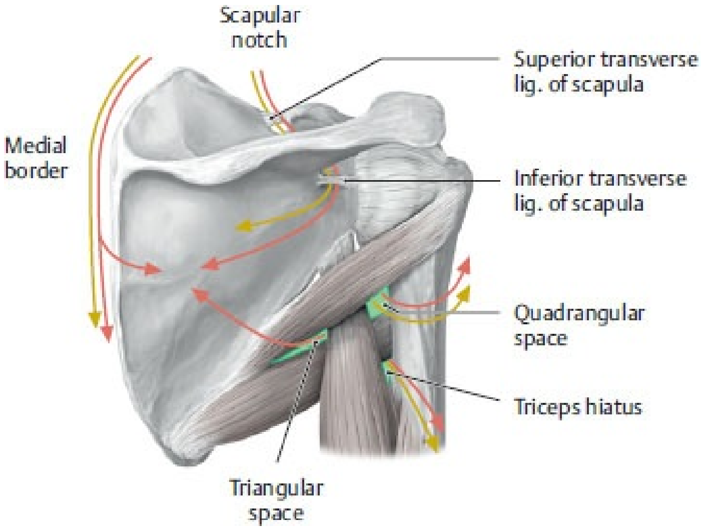
Spaces formed between muscles of the shoulder and the scapula allow nerves and vessels to pass between the axilla and the posterior scapular and humeral regions **(Fig. 19.12)**.

- The **scapular notch,** limited superiorly by the superior transverse scapular ligament, lies deep to the supraspinatus muscle. The suprascapular nerve passes below the ligament, and the suprascapular artery and vein pass above it.
- The **quadrangular space,** bounded laterally by the long head of the triceps, medially by the humerus, inferiorly by the teres major, and superiorly by the

teres minor muscles, transmits the posterior circumflex humeral artery and axillary nerve.

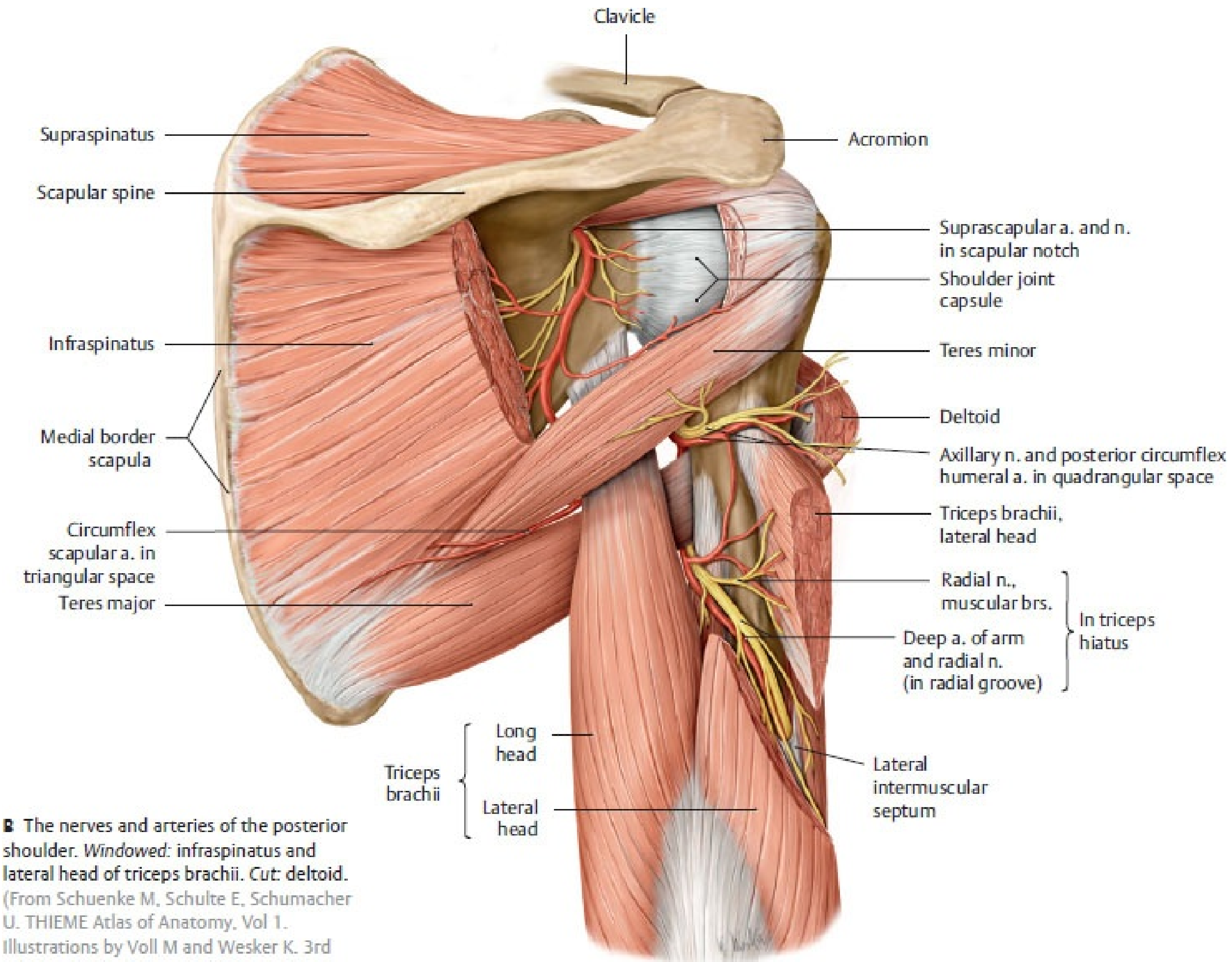
— The **triangular space,** bounded by the long head of the triceps and the teres major and teres minor muscles, transmits the circumflex scapular artery and vein.

— The **triceps hiatus,** between the long and lateral heads of the triceps and inferior to the teres major muscle, transmits the radial nerve and deep brachial artery and vein.


Scapular notch
Superior transverse lig. of scapula
Medial border
Inferior transverse lig. of scapula
Quadrangular space
Triceps hiatus
Triangular space

A Schematic. The course of arteries and nerves through the spaces are shown by *red* and *yellow arrows*. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Fig. 19.12 Spaces of the posterior shoulder region
Right shoulder, posterior view.


Clavicle
Supraspinatus
Acromion
Scapular spine
Suprascapular a. and n. in scapular notch
Shoulder joint capsule
Infraspinatus
Teres minor
Deltoid
Medial border scapula
Axillary n. and posterior circumflex humeral a. in quadrangular space
Triceps brachii, lateral head
Circumflex scapular a. in triangular space
Radial n., muscular brs.
Teres major
In triceps hiatus
Deep a. of arm and radial n. (in radial groove)
Triceps brachii
Long head
Lateral head
Lateral intermuscular septum

B The nerves and arteries of the posterior shoulder. *Windowed:* infraspinatus and lateral head of triceps brachii. *Cut:* deltoid. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Fig. 19.12 (*continued*) Spaces of the posterior shoulder region

19.3 The Arm and Cubital Region

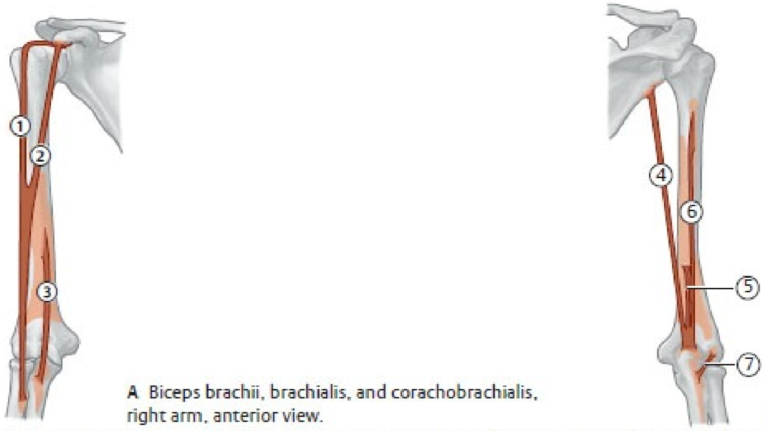
The arm (brachial region) extends from the shoulder to the elbow and contains the humerus and muscles of the arm. The cubital region contains the cubital fossa and the elbow joint.

Muscles of the Arm

Muscles of the arm move the shoulder and elbow joints. Brachial fascia that surrounds the arm divides these muscles into anterior and posterior compartments **(** **Table 19.6**).

— The anterior compartment contains
  - muscles that flex the glenohumeral and elbow joints and supinate the radioulnar joint,

    - the musculocutaneous nerve, and
    - the brachial artery and vein.
- The posterior compartment contains
    - muscles that extend the glenohumeral and elbow joints,
    - the radial nerve, and
    - the deep brachial artery and vein.
- The median and ulnar nerves descend along the medial side of the arm between the anterior and posterior compartments but do not innervate muscles of the arm.



A Biceps brachii, brachialis, and corachobrachialis, right arm, anterior view.

B Triceps brachii and anconeus, right arm, posterior view.

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th Edition. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

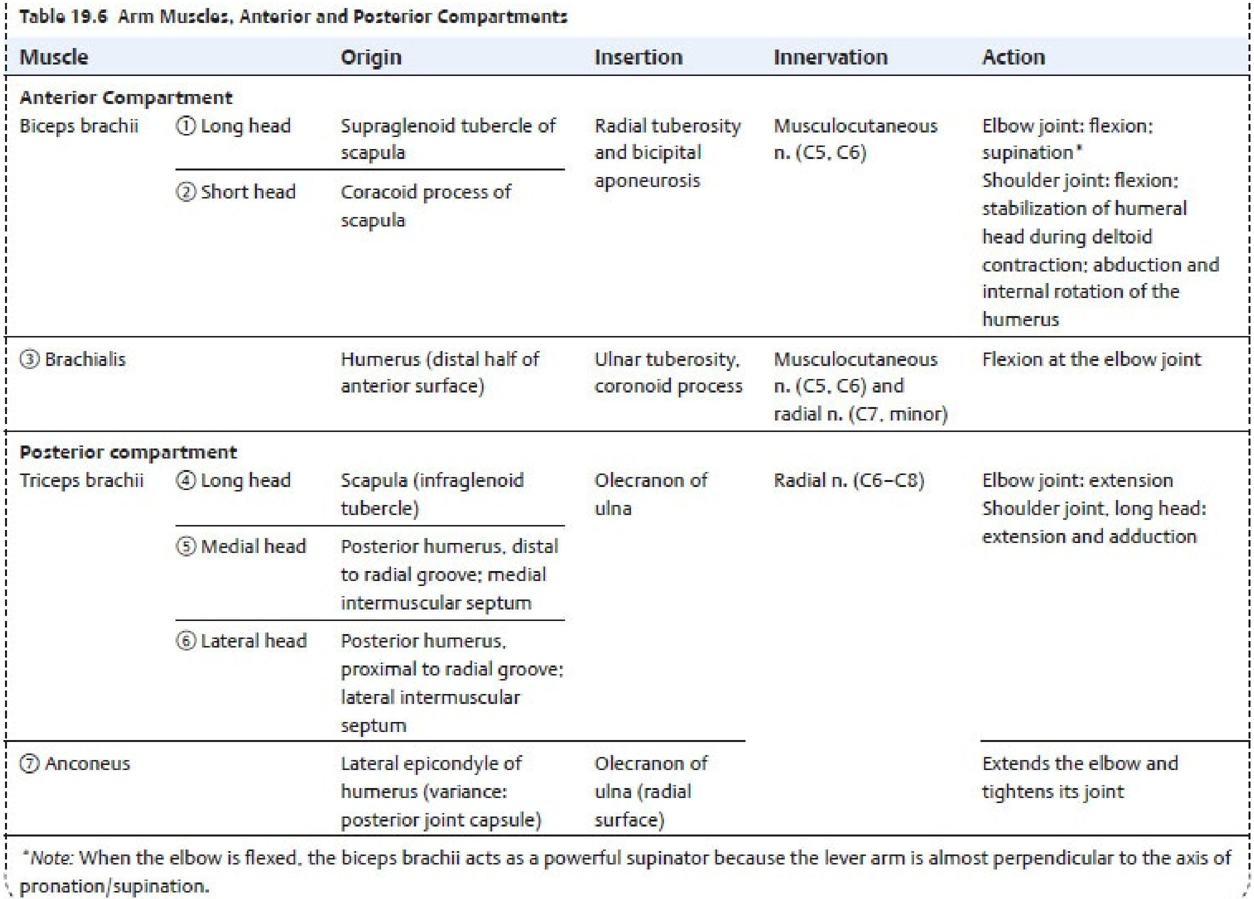


Table 19.6 Arm Muscles, Anterior and Posterior Compartments

Muscle		Origin	Insertion	Innervation	Action
Anterior Compartment					
Biceps brachii	① Long head	Supraglenoid tubercle of scapula	Radial tuberosity and bicipital aponeurosis	Musculocutaneous n. (C5, C6)	Elbow joint: flexion; supination* Shoulder joint: flexion; stabilization of humeral head during deltoid contraction; abduction and internal rotation of the humerus
	② Short head	Coracoid process of scapula			
③ Brachialis		Humerus (distal half of anterior surface)	Ulnar tuberosity, coronoid process	Musculocutaneous n. (C5, C6) and radial n. (C7, minor)	Flexion at the elbow joint
Posterior compartment					
Triceps brachii	④ Long head	Scapula (infraglenoid tubercle)	Olecranon of ulna	Radial n. (C6–C8)	Elbow joint: extension Shoulder joint, long head: extension and adduction
	⑤ Medial head	Posterior humerus, distal to radial groove; medial intermuscular septum			
	⑥ Lateral head	Posterior humerus, proximal to radial groove; lateral intermuscular septum			
⑦ Anconeus		Lateral epicondyle of humerus (variance: posterior joint capsule)	Olecranon of ulna (radial surface)		Extends the elbow and tightens its joint

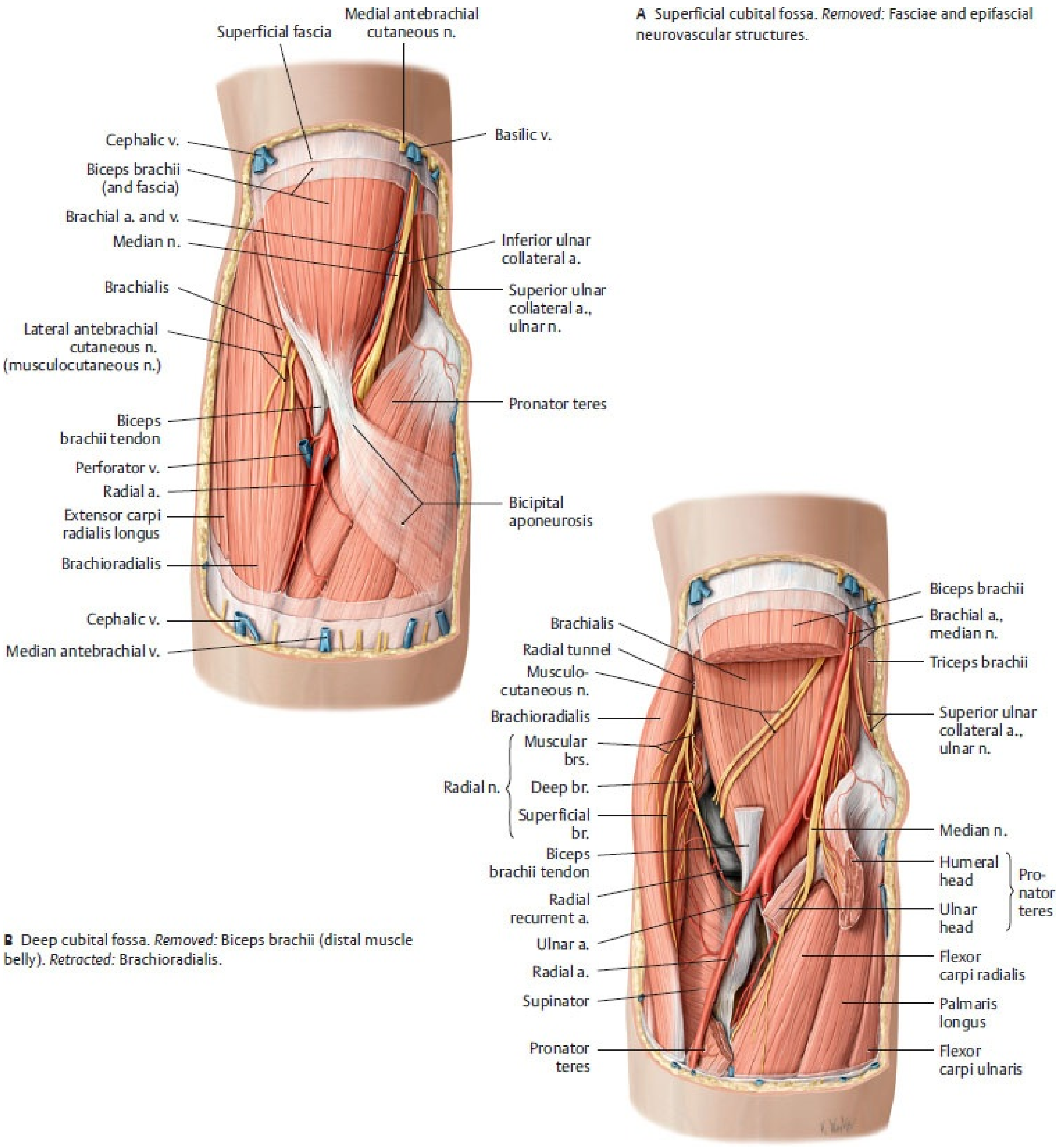
**Note:* When the elbow is flexed, the biceps brachii acts as a powerful supinator because the lever arm is almost perpendicular to the axis of pronation/supination.

The Cubital Fossa

The **cubital fossa** is a shallow depression anterior to the elbow joint (**Fig. 19.13**).

— Its boundaries are,
  - medially, the pronator teres;
  - laterally, the brachioradialis; and

  - superiorly, a line that connects the medial and lateral epicondyles of the humerus.
- The cubital fossa contains
  - the tendon of the biceps brachii,
  - the brachial artery and vein,
  - the proximal part of radial and ulnar arteries and veins, and
  - the median and radial nerves and the cutaneous branch of the musculocutaneous nerve (lateral antebrachial cutaneous nerve).
- The **bicipital aponeurosis,** a fascial extension of the biceps brachii, forms the root of the fossa, and the medial cubital vein crosses the fossa superficially.


Superficial fascia
Medial antebrachial cutaneous n.
Cephalic v.
Biceps brachii (and fascia)
Brachial a. and v.
Median n.
Brachialis
Lateral antebrachial cutaneous n. (musculocutaneous n.)
Biceps brachii tendon
Perforator v.
Radial a.
Extensor carpi radialis longus
Brachioradialis
Cephalic v.
Median antebrachial v.
Basilic v.
Inferior ulnar collateral a.
Superior ulnar collateral a., ulnar n.
Pronator teres
Bicipital aponeurosis
Brachialis
Radial tunnel
Musculo-cutaneous n.
Brachioradialis
Radial n.
Muscular brs.
Deep br.
Superficial br.
Biceps brachii tendon
Radial recurrent a.
Ulnar a.
Radial a.
Supinator
Pronator teres
Biceps brachii
Brachial a., median n.
Triceps brachii
Superior ulnar collateral a., ulnar n.
Median n.
Humeral head
Ulnar head
Pronator teres
Flexor carpi radialis
Palmaris longus
Flexor carpi ulnaris

A Superficial cubital fossa. *Removed:* Fasciae and epifascial neurovascular structures.

B Deep cubital fossa. *Removed:* Biceps brachii (distal muscle belly). *Retracted:* Brachioradialis.

Fig. 19.13 Cubital region

Right elbow, anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

The Elbow Joint

The elbow joint is made up of three separate synovial joints contained within a single joint capsule (**Figs. 19.14** and **19.15**).

- The hinge-type **humeroulnar joint** is an articulation between the trochlea of the humerus and the trochlear notch of the ulna.
  - The **ulnar** (medial) **collateral ligament,** which supports the joint medially, connects the coronoid process and olecranon with the medial epicondyle of the humerus.
- The hinge-type **humeroradial joint** is an articulation between the capitulum of the humerus and the head of the radius.
  - The **radial** (lateral) **collateral ligament,** which supports the joint laterally, extends from the lateral epicondyle of the humerus to the **anular ligament** of the radius that encircles the radial neck.
- The proximal radioulnar joint, the articulation between the head of the radius and the radial notch of the ulna, is discussed further with the radioulnar joints of the forearm.
- Movements at the humeroulnar and humeroradial joints and the muscles that provide them are listed in **Table 19.7.**

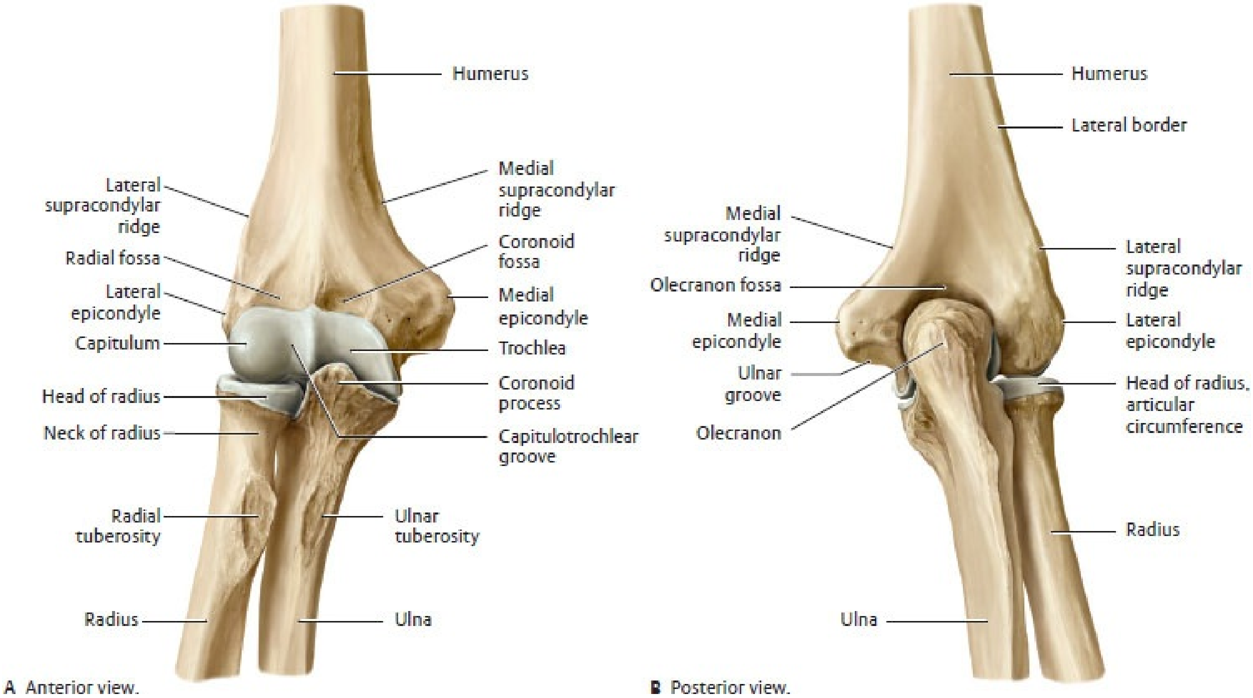

Humerus
Lateral supracondylar ridge
Medial supracondylar ridge
Radial fossa
Coronoid fossa
Lateral epicondyle
Medial epicondyle
Capitulum
Trochlea
Head of radius
Coronoid process
Neck of radius
Capitulotrochlear groove
Radial tuberosity
Ulnar tuberosity
Radius
Ulna
A Anterior view.
Humerus
Lateral border
Medial supracondylar ridge
Lateral supracondylar ridge
Olecranon fossa
Medial epicondyle
Lateral epicondyle
Ulnar groove
Head of radius, articular circumference
Olecranon
Radius
Ulna
B Posterior view.

Fig. 19.14 Elbow (cubital) joint

Right elbow in extension. The elbow consists of three articulations: the humeroulnar, humeroradial, and proximal radioulnar. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

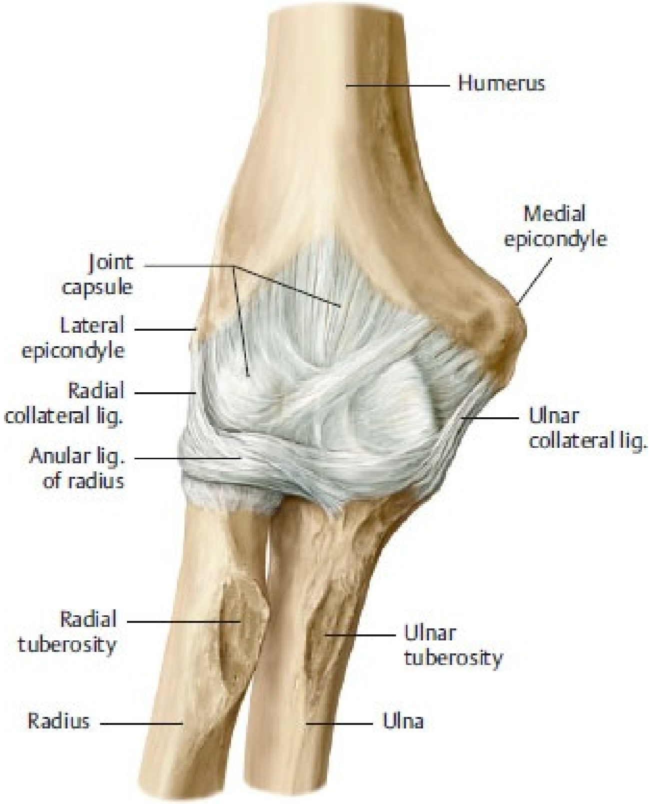

Humerus
Medial epicondyle
Joint capsule
Lateral epicondyle
Radial collateral lig.
Ulnar collateral lig.
Anular lig. of radius
Radial tuberosity
Ulnar tuberosity
Radius
Ulna

Fig. 19.15 Joint capsule of the elbow

Right elbow in extension, anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Table 19.7 Movements at the Humeroulnar and Humeroradial Joints

Action	Primary Muscles
Flexion	Biceps brachii Brachialis Brachioradialis
Extension	Triceps brachii

19.4 The Forearm

The forearm (antebrachial region) extends from the elbow to the wrist and contains the radius and ulna and the muscles of the forearm.

Radioulnar Joints

The radioulnar joints connect the bones of the forearm proximally at the elbow and distally at the wrist. Movement at these joints allows rotation of the distal radius around the ulna, causing supination (palm up) and pronation (palm down) of the hand **(Figs. 19.16** and **19.17)**. These movements and the muscles of the arm and forearm that provide them are listed in **Table 19.8.**

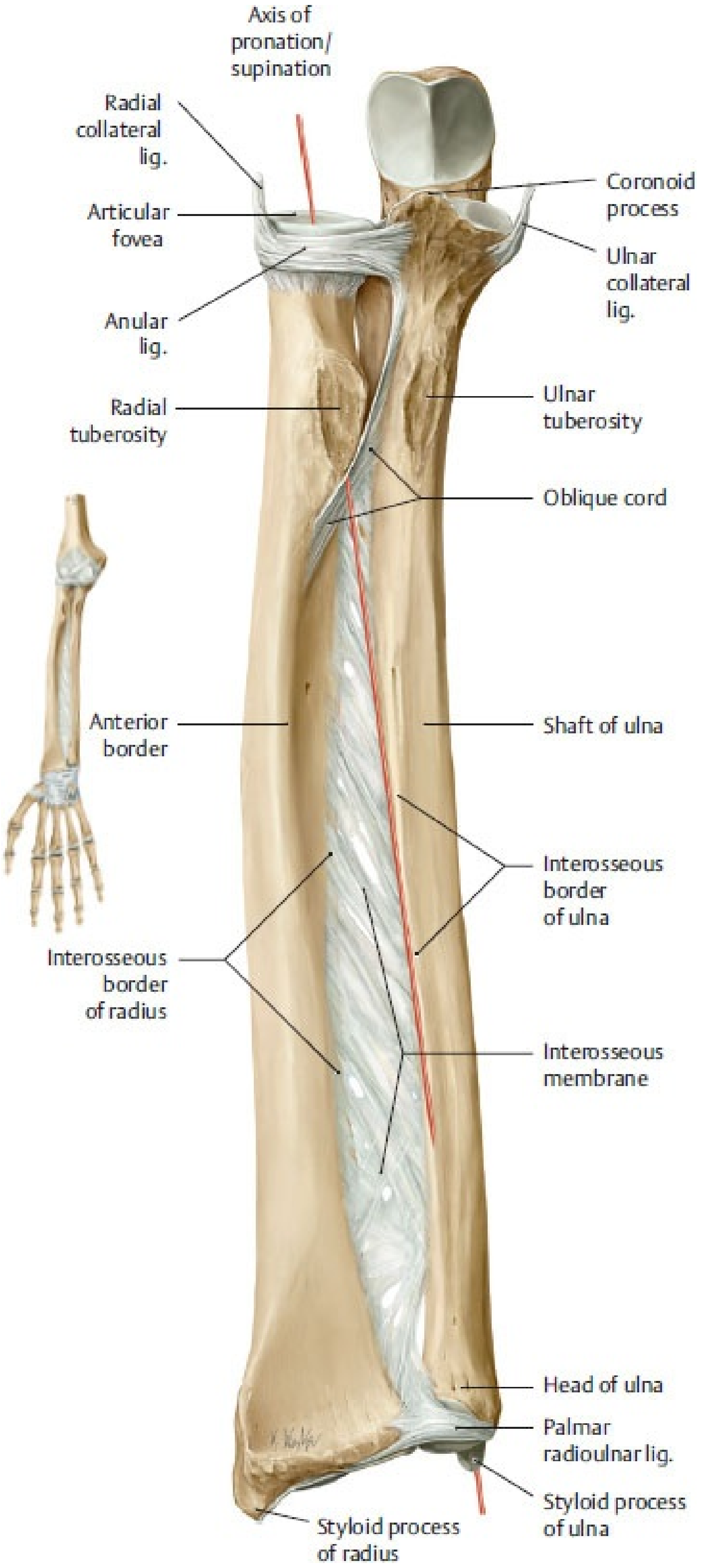

Axis of pronation/ supination
Radial collateral lig.
Articular fovea
Anular lig.
Radial tuberosity
Anterior border
Interosseous border of radius
Coronoid process
Ulnar collateral lig.
Ulnar tuberosity
Oblique cord
Shaft of ulna
Interosseous border of ulna
Interosseous membrane
Head of ulna
Palmar radioulnar lig.
Styloid process of ulna
Styloid process of radius

Fig. 19.16 Forearm in supination

Right forearm, anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U.

THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

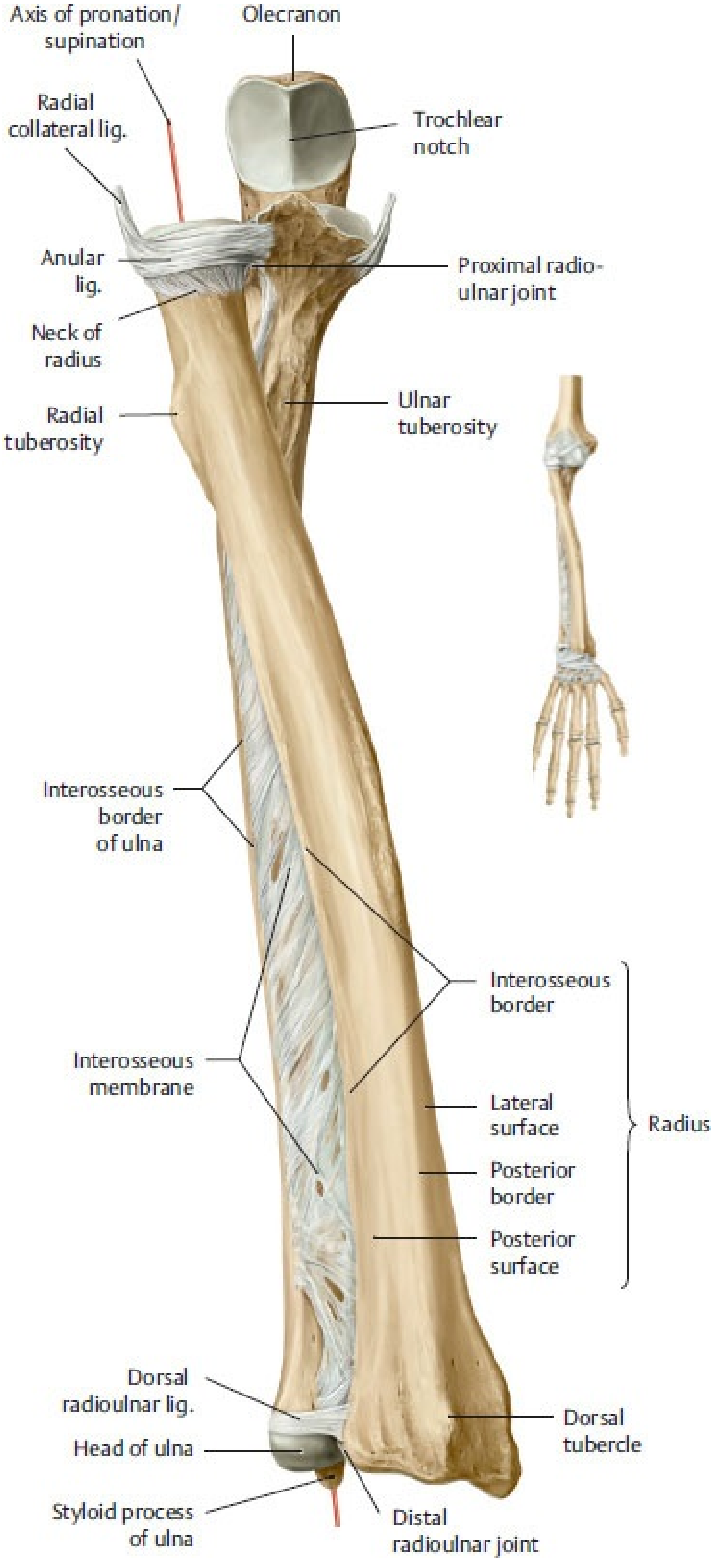
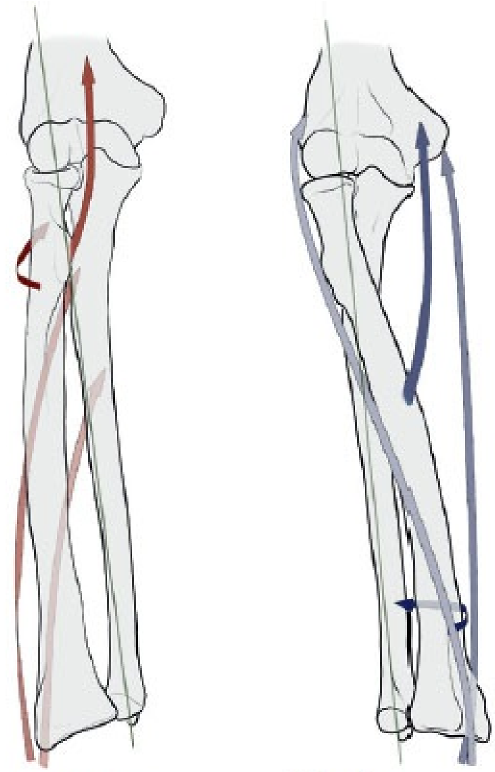

Axis of pronation/ supination
Olecranon
Radial collateral lig.
Trochlear notch
Anular lig.
Proximal radio-ulnar joint
Neck of radius
Radial tuberosity
Ulnar tuberosity
Interosseous border of ulna
Interosseous border
Interosseous membrane
Lateral surface
Radius
Posterior border
Posterior surface
Dorsal radioulnar lig.
Dorsal tubercle
Head of ulna
Styloid process of ulna
Distal radioulnar joint

Fig. 19.17 Forearm in pronation

Right forearm, anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)



A Supination

B Pronation

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th Edition. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Table 19.8 Movements at the Radioulnar Joints

Action	Primary Muscles
Supination	Supinator Biceps brachii
Pronation	Pronator teres Pronator quadratus

— The **proximal radioulnar joint** is a synovial joint that allows rotation of the radial head within the cuff formed by the anular ligament and the radial notch of the ulna. This articulation is contained within the elbow joint capsule.

- The **distal radioulnar joint** has an L-shaped joint cavity with a triangular articular disk that separates the radioulnar joint from the cavity of the wrist joint. It is supported by palmar and dorsal radioulnar ligaments.
- An **interosseous membrane** connects the shafts of the radius and ulna and transfers energy absorbed by the distal radius to the proximal ulna.

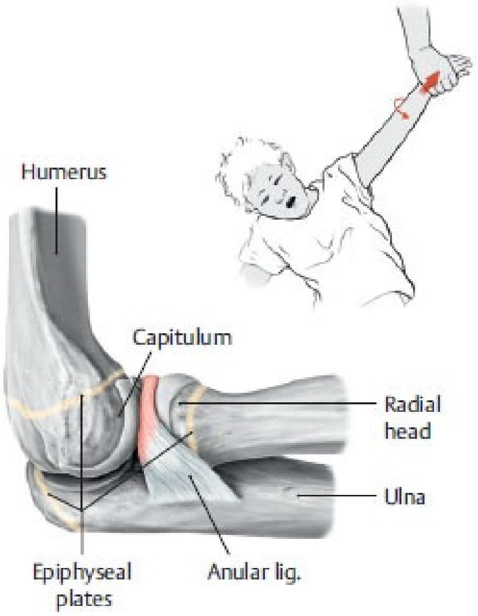
Muscles of the Forearm

Muscles of the forearm move joints of the elbow, wrist, and hand. Most forearm flexors and extensors have long tendons that cross the wrist and extend into the fingers. Intermuscular septa and the interosseous membrane create anterior and posterior muscular compartments.

BOX 19.4: CLINICAL CORRELATION

SUBLUXATION OF THE RADIAL HEAD (NURSEMAID'S ELBOW)

A common and painful injury of small children occurs when the arm is jerked upward with the forearm pronated, tearing the anular ligament from its loose attachment on the radial neck. As the immature radial head slips out of the socket, the ligament may become trapped between the radial head and the capitulum of the humerus. Supinating the forearm and flexing the elbow usually returns the radial head to the normal position.

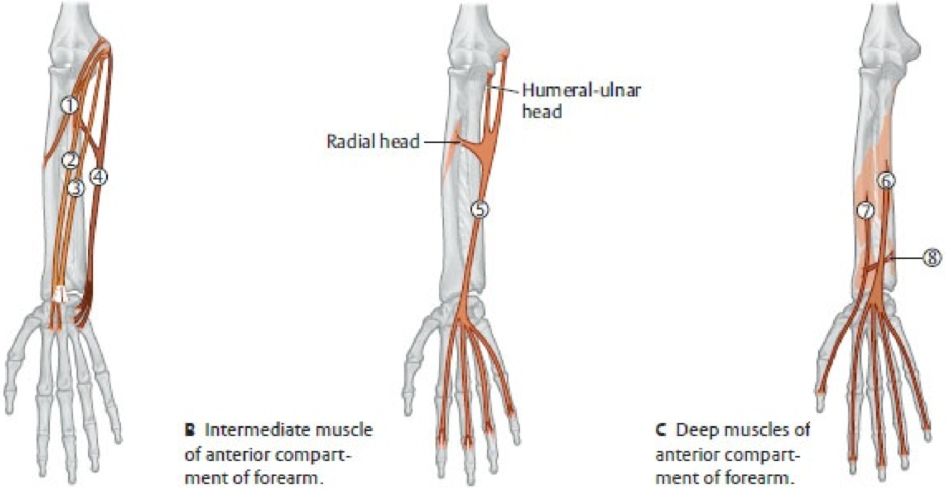


BOX 19.5: CLINICAL CORRELATION

LATERAL EPICONDYLITIS ("TENNIS ELBOW")

Repetitive use of the forearm extensors can inflame the attachment of the common extensor tendon at the lateral epicondyle (lateral epicondylitis). Pain is focused over the tendon insertion but radiates along the extensor forearm and is exacerbated by stretching of the extensor tendons by pronation and wrist flexion.

- The anterior forearm compartment **(Table 19.9)** contains
  - muscles that flex and pronate joints of the elbow, wrist, and hand;
  - the median and ulnar nerves; and
  - the ulnar and anterior interosseous arteries and veins.
- The posterior forearm compartment **(Table 19.10)** contains
  - muscles that extend joints of the elbow, wrist, and hand and supinate the radioulnar joint (one muscle, the brachioradialis, passes anterior to the elbow and therefore acts as a flexor, instead of an extensor of this joint);
  - the radial nerve; and
  - the radial and posterior interosseous arteries and veins.



A Superficial muscles of anterior compartment of forearm.

B Intermediate muscle of anterior compartment of forearm.

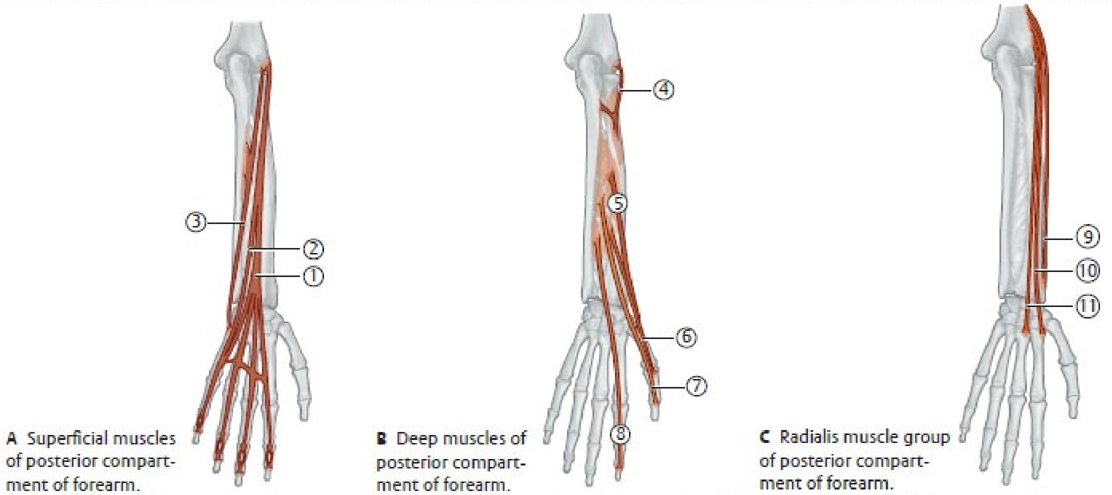
C Deep muscles of anterior compartment of forearm.

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th Edition. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Table 19.9 Forearm Muscles: Anterior Compartment

Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Innervation	Action
Superficial muscles				
① Pronator teres	Humeral head: medial epicondyle of humerus Ulnar head: coronoid process	Lateral radius (distal to supinator insertion)	Median n. (C6, C7)	Elbow: weak flexion Forearm: pronation
② Flexor carpi radialis	Medial epicondyle of humerus	Base of 2nd metacarpal (variance: base of 3rd metacarpal)		Wrist: flexion and abduction (radial deviation) of hand
③ Palmaris longus		Palmar aponeurosis	Median n. (C7, C8)	Elbow: weak flexion Wrist: flexion tightens palmar aponeurosis
④ Flexor carpi ulnaris	Humeral head: medial epicondyle Ulnar head: olecranon	Pisiform; hook of hamate; base of 5th metacarpal	Ulnar n. (C7–T1)	Wrist: flexion and adduction (ulnar deviation) of hand
Intermediate muscles				
⑤ Flexor digitorum superficialis	Humeral-ulnar head: medial epicondyle of humerus and coronoid process of ulna Radial head: upper half of anterior border of radius	Sides of middle phalanges of 2nd to 5th digits	Median n. (C8, T1)	Elbow: weak flexion Wrist, MCP, and PIP joints of 2nd to 5th digits: flexion
Deep muscles				
⑥ Flexor digitorum profundus	Ulna (proximal two thirds of flexor surface) and interosseous membrane	Distal phalanges of 2nd to 5th digits (palmar surface)	Median n. (C8, T1) radial half of 2nd and 3rd digits; Ulnar n. (C8, T1) ulnar half of 4th and 5th digits	Wrist, MCP, PIP, and DIP of 2nd to 5th digits: flexion
⑦ Flexor pollicis longus	Radius (midanterior surface) and adjacent interosseous membrane	Distal phalanx of thumb (palmar surface)	Median n. (C8, T1)	Wrist: flexion and abduction (radial deviation) of hand Carpometacarpal of thumb: flexion MCP and IP of thumb: flexion
⑧ Pronator quadratus	Distal quarter of ulna (anterior surface)	Distal quarter of radius (anterior surface)		Hand: pronation Distal radioulnar joint: stabilization

Abbreviations: DIP, distal interphalangeal; IP, interphalangeal; MCP, metacarpophalangeal; PIP, proximal interphalangeal.



A Superficial muscles of posterior compartment of forearm.

B Deep muscles of posterior compartment of forearm.

C Radialis muscle group of posterior compartment of forearm.

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020).

Table 19.10 Forearm Muscles: Posterior Compartment

Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Innervation	Action
Superficial muscles				
① Extensor digitorum	Common head (lateral epicondyle of humerus)	Dorsal digital expansion of 2nd to 5th digits	Radial n. (C7, C8)	Wrist: extension MCP, PIP, and DIP of 2nd to 5th digits: extension
② Extensor digiti minimi		Dorsal digital expansion of 5th digit		Wrist: extension, ulnar abduction of hand MCP, PIP, and DIP of 5th digit: extension of 5th digit
③ Extensor carpi ulnaris	Common head (lateral epicondyle of humerus) Ulnar head (dorsal surface)	Base of 5th metacarpal		Wrist: extension, adduction (ulnar deviation) of hand
Deep muscles				
④ Supinator	Olecranon, lateral epicondyle of humerus, radial collateral ligament, annular ligament of radius	Radius (between radial tuberosity and insertion of pronator teres)	Radial n. (C6, C7)	Radioulnar joints: supination
⑤ Abductor pollicis longus	Radius and ulna (dorsal surfaces, interosseous membrane)	Base of 1st metacarpal	Radial n. (C7, C8)	Radiocarpal joint: abduction of the hand Carpometacarpal joint of thumb: abduction
⑥ Extensor pollicis brevis	Radius (posterior surface) and interosseous membrane	Base of proximal phalanx of thumb		Radiocarpal joint: abduction (radial deviation) of hand Carpometacarpal and MCP of thumb: extension
⑦ Extensor pollicis longus	Ulna (posterior surface) and interosseous membrane	Base of distal phalanx of thumb		Wrist: extension and abduction (radial deviation) of hand Carpometacarpal of thumb: adduction MCP and IP of thumb: extension
⑧ Extensor indicis	Ulna (posterior surface) and interosseous membrane	Posterior digital extension of 2nd digit		Wrist: extension MCP, PIP, and DIP of 2nd digit: extension
Radialis muscles				
⑨ Brachioradialis	Distal humerus (distal surface), lateral intermuscular septum	Styloid process of the radius	Radial n. (C5, C6)	Elbow: flexion Forearm: semipronation
⑩ Extensor carpi radialis longus	Lateral supracondylar ridge of distal humerus, lateral intermuscular septum	2nd metacarpal (base)	Radial n. (C6, C7)	Elbow: weak flexion Wrist: extension and abduction
⑪ Extensor carpi radialis brevis	Lateral epicondyle of humerus	3rd metacarpal (base)	Radial n. (C7, C8)	

Abbreviations: DIP, distal interphalangeal; IP, interphalangeal; MCP, metacarpophalangeal; PIP, proximal interphalangeal.

19.5 The Wrist

The wrist, the narrow space between the forearm and hand, contains the carpal bones and the tendons of forearm muscles that move the wrist and fingers.

Joints of the Carpal Region

The carpal region is made up of the eight carpal bones that articulate with the radius proximally and the metacarpal bones distally **(Fig. 19.18)**. The ulna is not a component of the wrist joint. Movements at the wrist joints and the muscles that provide them are listed in **Table 19.11**.

— The wrist, or **radiocarpal joint,** is a condyloid type of joint between the distal radius and articular disk of the distal radioulnar joint and the scaphoid and lunate in the proximal carpal row.

  - **Palmar** and **dorsal radiocarpal ligaments, ulnocarpal ligaments,** and **radial** and **ulnar collateral ligaments,** considered extrinsic ligaments of the joint, are interwoven with the fibrous capsule and function to stabilize the joint **(Fig. 19.19)**.
  - A joint capsule attaches proximally to the radius and ulna and distally to the bones of the proximal carpal row.

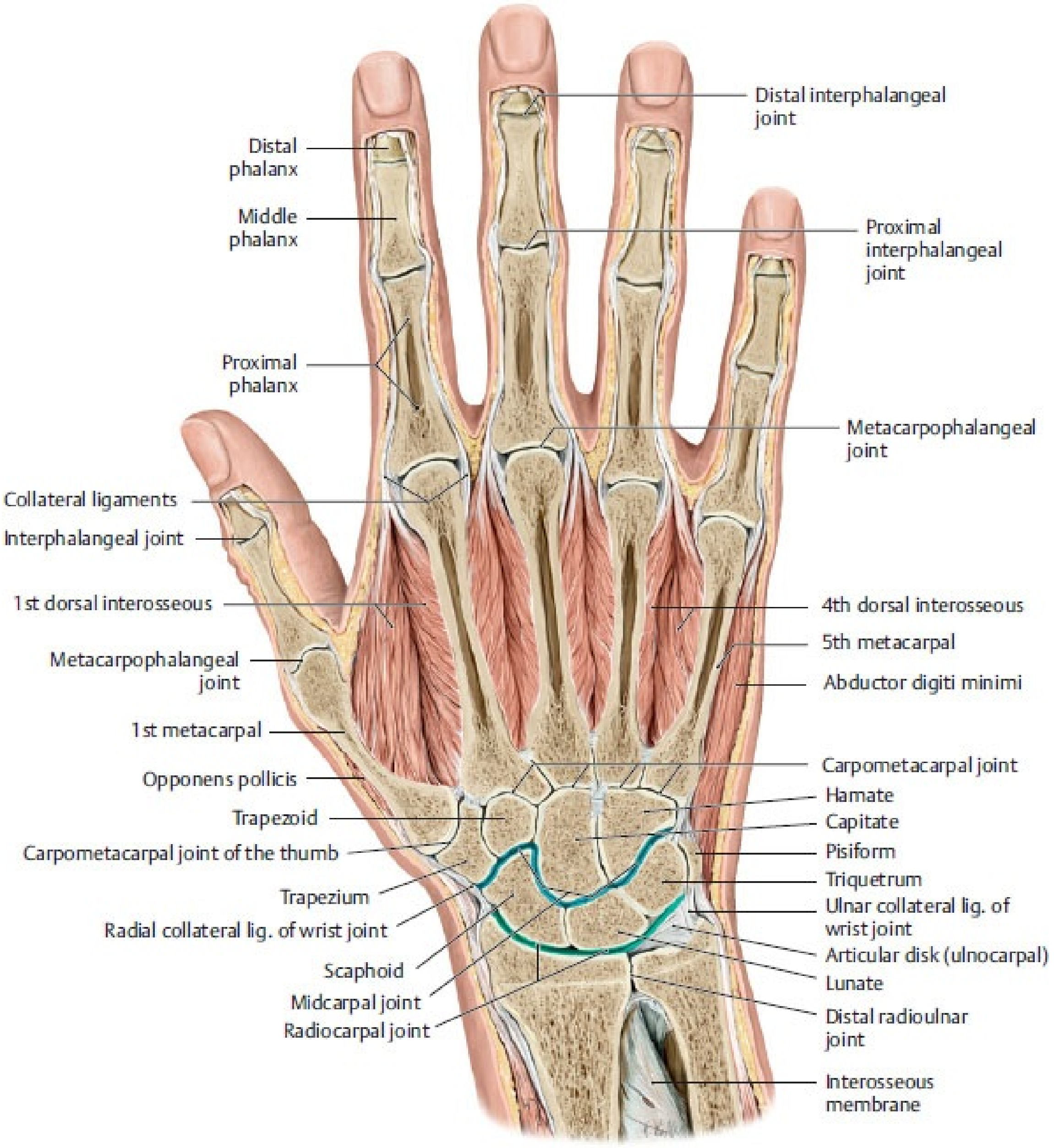

Distal phalanx
Middle phalanx
Proximal phalanx
Collateral ligaments
Interphalangeal joint
1st dorsal interosseous
Metacarpophalangeal joint
1st metacarpal
Opponens pollicis
Trapezoid
Carpometacarpal joint of the thumb
Trapezium
Radial collateral lig. of wrist joint
Scaphoid
Midcarpal joint
Radiocarpal joint
Distal interphalangeal joint
Proximal interphalangeal joint
Metacarpophalangeal joint
4th dorsal interosseous
5th metacarpal
Abductor digiti minimi
Carpometacarpal joint
Hamate
Capitate
Pisiform
Triquetrum
Ulnar collateral lig. of wrist joint
Articular disk (ulnocarpal)
Lunate
Distal radioulnar joint
Interosseous membrane

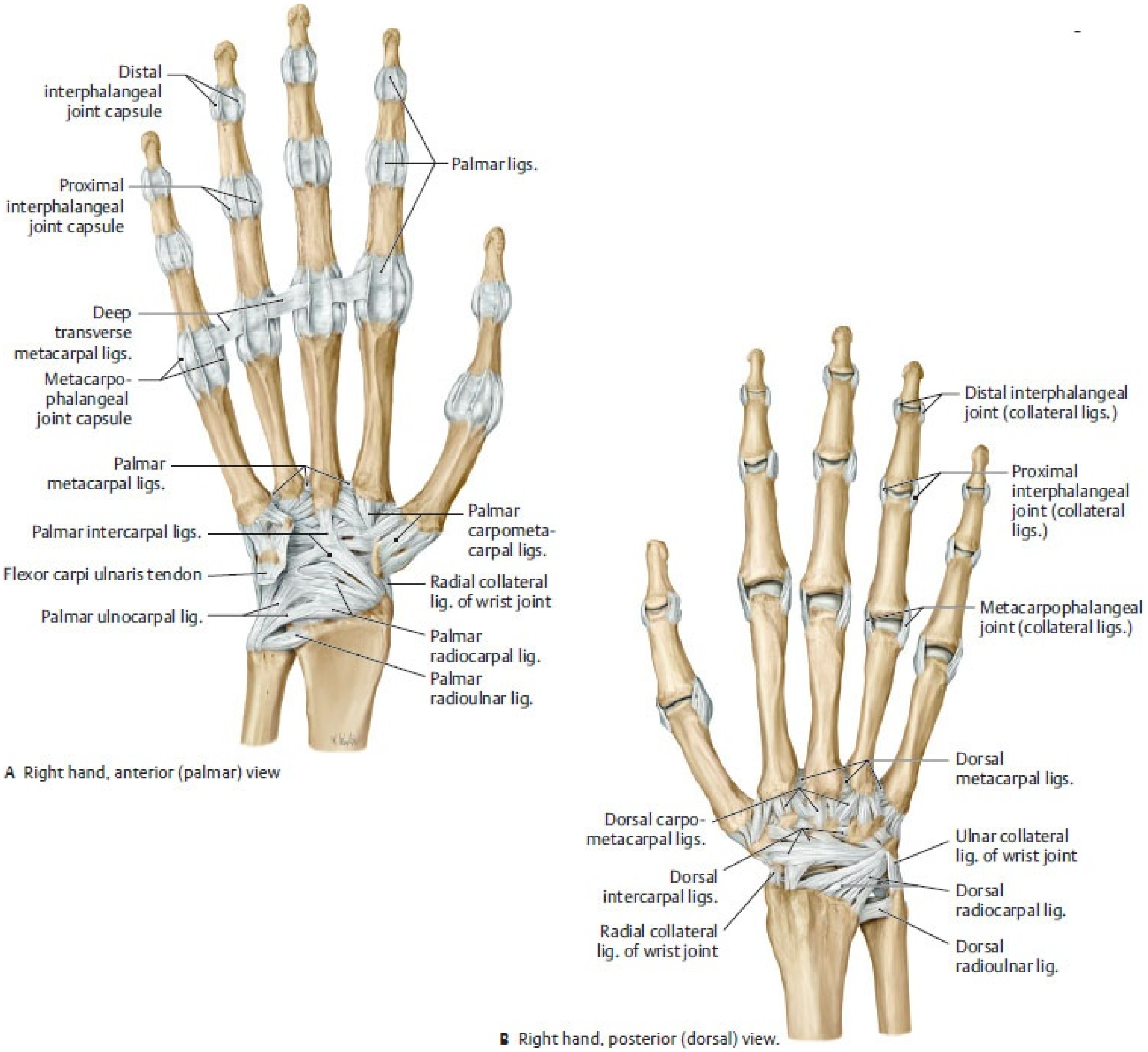
Fig. 19.18 Joints of the wrist and hand

Right hand, posterior (dorsal) view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- **Intercarpal joints** are formed between the carpal bones within each row; the **midcarpal joint** is the articulation between the bones of the proximal and distal carpal rows.
  - **Interosseous ligaments** between individual carpal bones are intrinsic

  ligaments that limit excess movement and provide stability for these articulations. They also divide the joint space into compartments **(Fig. 19.20)**.
  - A single articular cavity encloses the intercarpal and carpometacarpal joints and is separate from the articular cavity of the wrist joint.
  - Movements at these joints augment movements at the radiocarpal joint.

— The **ulnocarpal complex,** also known as the triangular fibrocartilage complex, supports the medial side of the wrist. It's a combination of an articular disk and ligaments that connect the distal ulna, the radioulnar joint, and the proximal carpal row **(Fig. 19.20)**.
  - The complex includes the **ulnocarpal disk,** dorsal and palmar radiocarpal ligaments, ulnocarpal ligaments (ulnolunate and ulnotriquetral ligaments), **ulnocarpal meniscus,** and dorsal radiocarpal ligament (radiotriquetral ligament).
  - The ulnocarpal disk, a fibrocartilaginous articular disk, lies transversely between the ulna and the lunate or triquetrum and is attached to the radioulnar ligaments, thus separating the cavity of the distal radioulnar joint from the cavity of the wrist joint. The disk is particularly vulnerable to degenerative changes and exhibits slow recovery following damage from carpal injuries.
  - The ulnocarpal meniscus, formed of collagen, extends from the triquetrum into the articular space, bridging the wide ulnar intra-articular space of the medial wrist.


Distal interphalangeal joint capsule
Palmar ligs.
Proximal interphalangeal joint capsule
Deep transverse metacarpal ligs.
Metacarpo-phalangeal joint capsule
Palmar metacarpal ligs.
Palmar intercarpal ligs.
Palmar carpometa-carpal ligs.
Flexor carpi ulnaris tendon
Radial collateral lig. of wrist joint
Palmar ulnocarpal lig.
Palmar radiocarpal lig.
Palmar radioulnar lig.
Distal interphalangeal joint (collateral ligs.)
Proximal interphalangeal joint (collateral ligs.)
Metacarpophalangeal joint (collateral ligs.)
Dorsal metacarpal ligs.
Dorsal carpo-metacarpal ligs.
Ulnar collateral lig. of wrist joint
Dorsal intercarpal ligs.
Dorsal radiocarpal lig.
Radial collateral lig. of wrist joint
Dorsal radioulnar lig.

A Right hand, anterior (palmar) view

B Right hand, posterior (dorsal) view.

Fig. 19.19 Ligaments of the hand and wrist

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th Edition. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

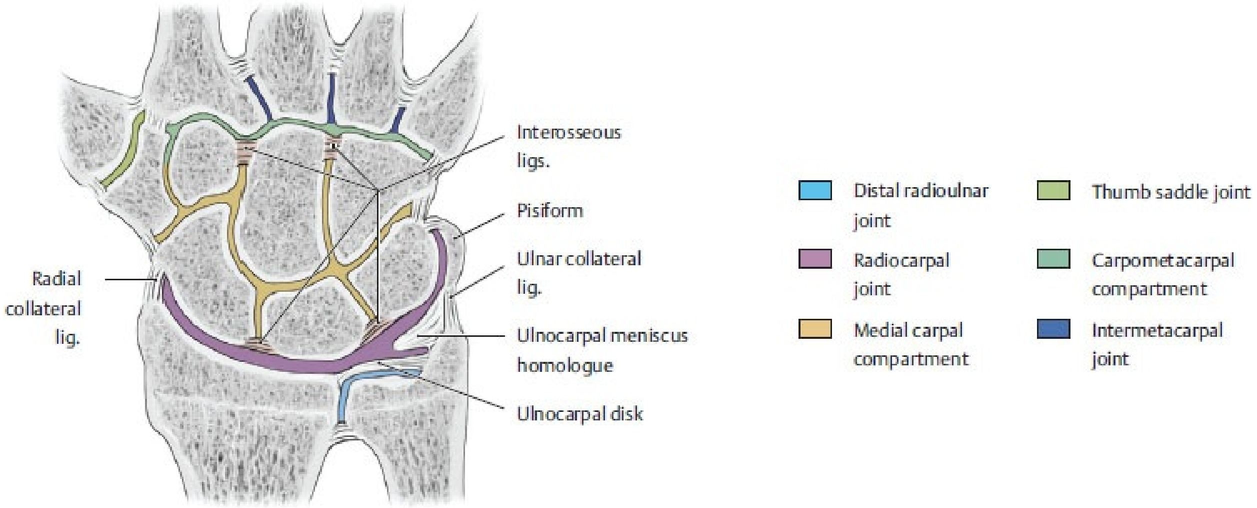
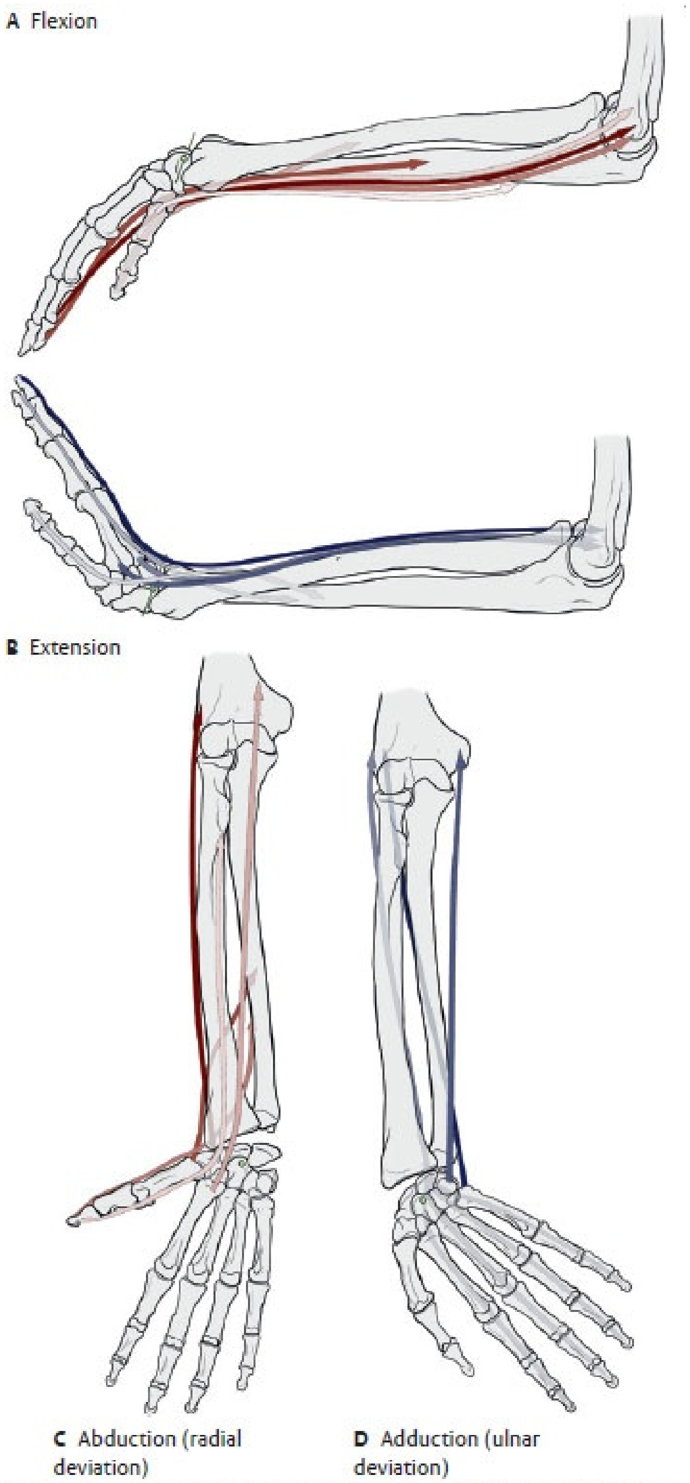

Interosseous ligs.
Pisiform
Ulnar collateral lig.
Radial collateral lig.
Ulnocarpal meniscus homologue
Ulnocarpal disk
Distal radioulnar joint
Radiocarpal joint
Medial carpal compartment
Thumb saddle joint
Carpometacarpal compartment
Intermetacarpal joint

Fig. 19.20 Compartments of the wrist

Right wrist, posterior view, schematic. Interosseous ligaments and the ulnocarpal disk divide the interarticular space into compartments. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

🟦	Distal radioulnar joint	🟩	Thumb saddle joint
🟪	Radiocarpal joint	🟩	Carpometacarpal compartment
🟨	Medial carpal compartment	🟦	Intermetacarpal joint



A Flexion

B Extension

C Abduction (radial deviation)

D Adduction (ulnar deviation)

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Table 19.11 Movements at the Wrist Joints

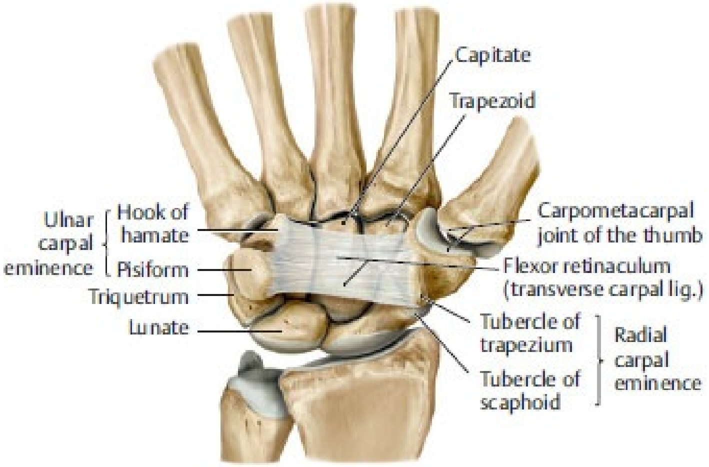
Action	Primary Muscles
Flexion	Flexor carpi radialis Flexor carpi ulnaris
Extension	Extensor carpi radialis longus Extensor carpi radialis brevis Extensor carpi ulnaris
Abduction (radial deviation)	Flexor carpi radialis Extensor carpi radialis longus Extensor carpi radialis brevis
Adduction (ulnar deviation)	Flexor carpi ulnaris Extensor carpi ulnaris

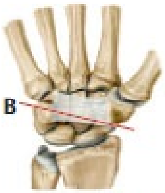
Spaces of the Wrist

Neurovascular structures and the long tendons of the forearm muscles pass between the forearm and hand through narrow spaces that are usually defined by fascial thickenings.

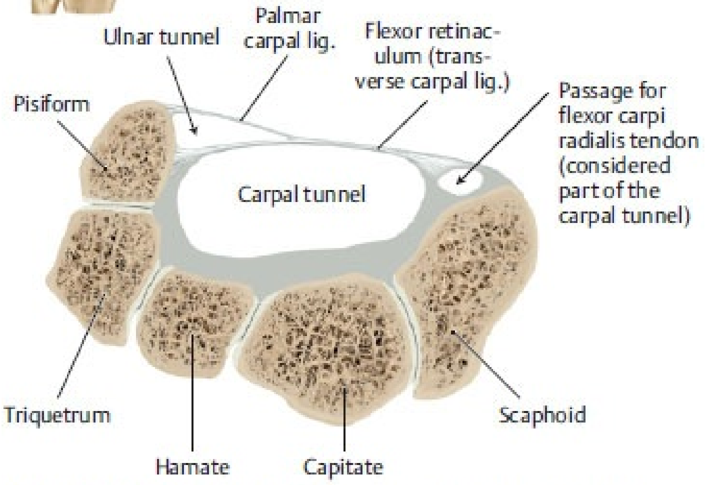
— The **carpal tunnel** is a fascio-osseous space on the anterior wrist.
  - Carpal bones form the floor and sides; the flexor retinaculum forms the roof **(Fig. 19.21)**
  - The tendons of the flexor pollicis longus, flexor digitorum superficialis, and flexor digitorum profundus, and the median nerve pass through the tunnel **(Figs.19.22** and **19.23)**
  - **A common flexor synovial tendon sheath** encloses the flexor tendons as they pass through the carpal tunnel.
  - The palmar carpal ligament and flexor retinaculum prevent bowing of the flexor tendons as they cross the wrist.

— The **ulnar tunnel** (Guyon’s canal) is a narrow passageway on the medial side of the anterior wrist **(Figs. 19.23, 19.24, 19.25).**


Capitate
Trapezoid
Ulnar carpal eminence
Hook of hamate
Pisiform
Triquetrum
Lunate
Carpometacarpal joint of the thumb
Flexor retinaculum (transverse carpal lig.)
Tubercle of trapezium
Tubercle of scaphoid
Radial carpal eminence

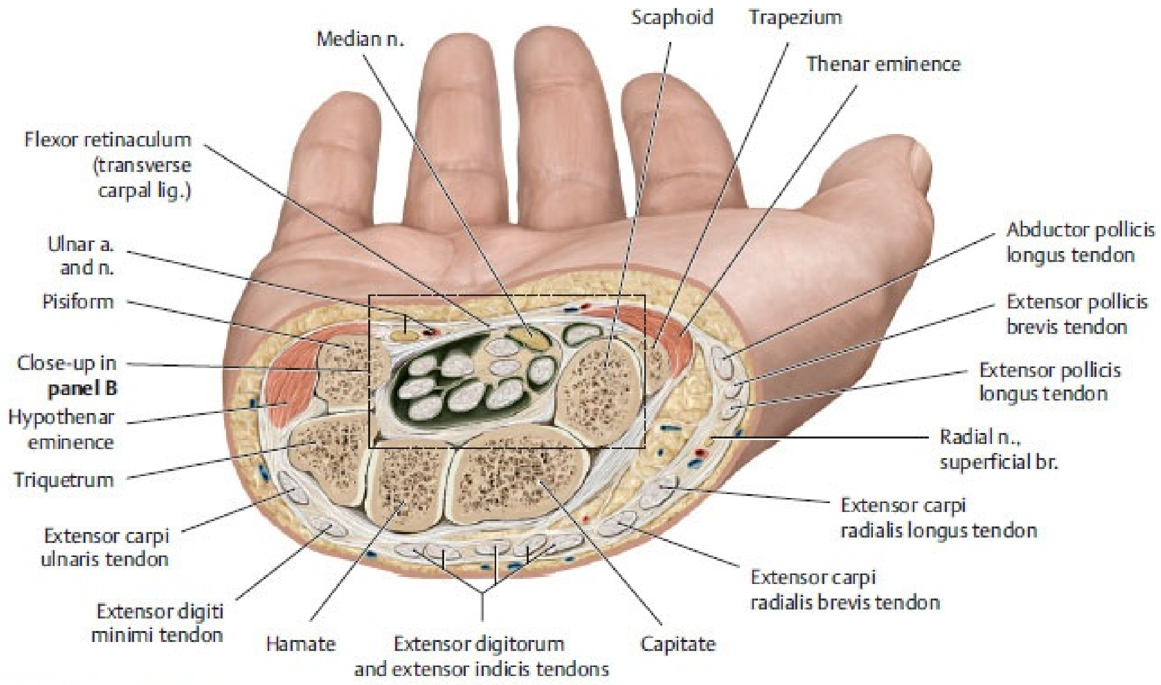


A Flexor retinaculum. Anterior (palmar) view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

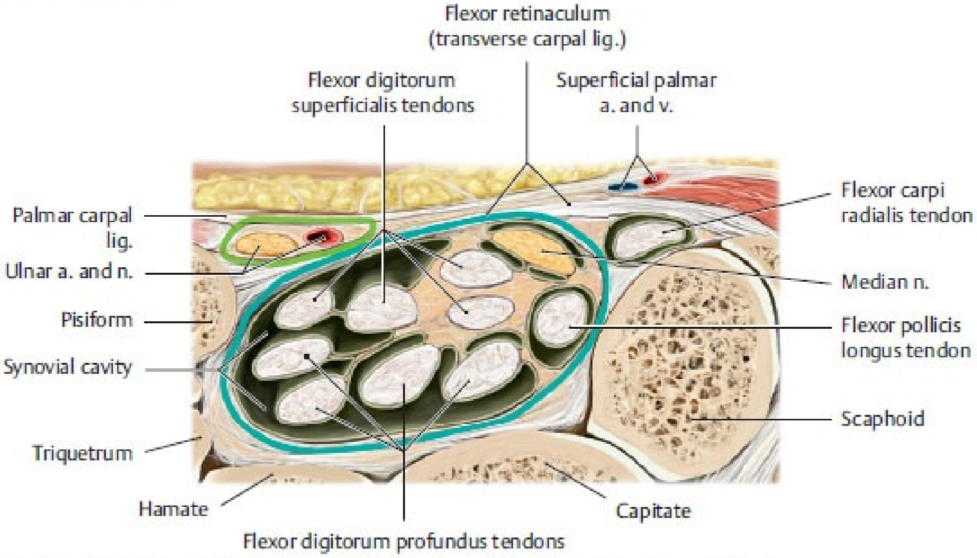

Ulnar tunnel
Palmar carpal lig.
Flexor retinaculum (transverse carpal lig.)
Pisiform
Passage for flexor carpi radialis tendon (considered part of the carpal tunnel)
Carpal tunnel
Triquetrum
Scaphoid
Hamate
Capitate

B Transverse section, proximal view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Fig. 19.21 Ligaments and bony boundaries of the carpal tunnel Right hand.


Median n.
Scaphoid
Trapezium
Thenar eminence
Flexor retinaculum (transverse carpal lig.)
Ulnar a. and n.
Pisiform
Close-up in **panel B**
Hypothenar eminence
Triquetrum
Extensor carpi ulnaris tendon
Extensor digiti minimi tendon
Hamate
Extensor digitorum and extensor indicis tendons
Capitate
Extensor carpi radialis brevis tendon
Extensor carpi radialis longus tendon
Radial n., superficial br.
Extensor pollicis longus tendon
Extensor pollicis brevis tendon
Abductor pollicis longus tendon

A Cross section through the right wrist.


Flexor retinaculum (transverse carpal lig.)
Flexor digitorum superficialis tendons
Superficial palmar a. and v.
Palmar carpal lig.
Ulnar a. and n.
Pisiform
Synovial cavity
Triquetrum
Hamate
Flexor digitorum profundus tendons
Capitate
Scaphoid
Flexor pollicis longus tendon
Median n.
Flexor carpi radialis tendon

B Blowup of area enclosed by *dashed lines* in **A**. Structures in the ulnar tunnel *(green)* and carpal tunnel *(blue)*.

Fig. 19.22 Contents within the carpal tunnel

Right hand, proximal view. The tight fit of sensitive neurovascular structures with closely apposed, frequently moving tendons in the carpal tunnel often causes problems (carpal tunnel syndrome) when any of the structures swell or degenerate. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 19.6: CLINICAL CORRELATION

CARPAL TUNNEL SYNDROME

The carpal tunnel, defined by inflexible fibrous and osseous boundaries, can be compromised by the swelling of its contents, infiltration of fluid from inflammation or infection, protrusion of a dislocated carpal bone, or pressure from an external source. The median nerve is most sensitive to the increased pressure, and signs of carpal tunnel syndrome reflect the nerve's distribution. These include tingling or numbness on the palmar surface of the lateral three and a half digits and weakness and eventual atrophy of the thenar muscles. The palmar cutaneous branch of the median nerve arises proximal to the canal and passes over the flexor retinaculum, so sensation of the palm remains intact.

BOX 19.7: CLINICAL CORRELATION

ULNAR NERVE COMPRESSION

Compression of the ulnar nerve at the wrist affects the innervation of most intrinsic hand muscles. When the patient attempts to form a fist, it results in a deformity known as a "claw hand"—the metacarpophalangeal joints are hyperextended due to the loss of the interossei muscles, and the interphalangeal joints are flexed (see **Box 18.9**).

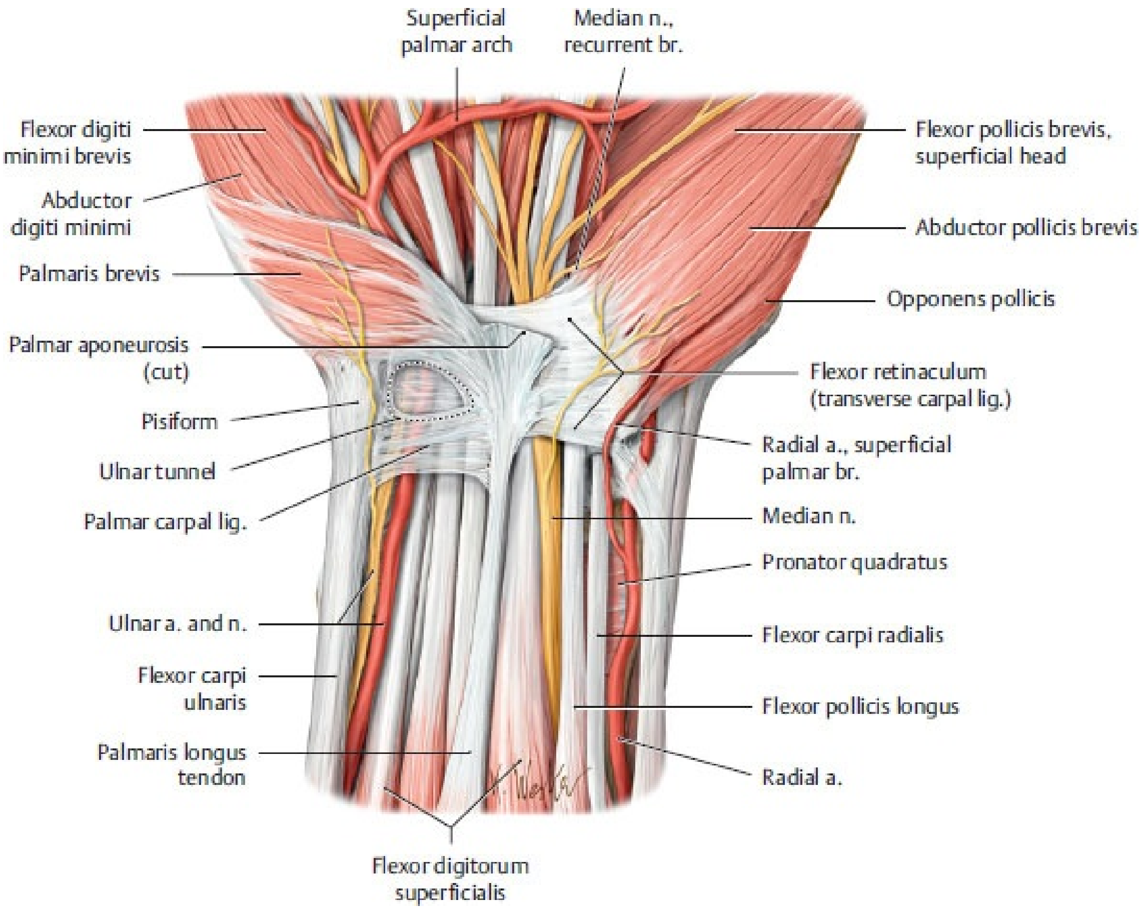

Superficial palmar arch
Median n., recurrent br.
Flexor digiti minimi brevis
Abductor digiti minimi
Palmaris brevis
Palmar aponeurosis (cut)
Pisiform
Ulnar tunnel
Palmar carpal lig.
Ulnar a. and n.
Flexor carpi ulnaris
Palmaris longus tendon
Flexor digitorum superficialis
Flexor pollicis brevis, superficial head
Abductor pollicis brevis
Opponens pollicis
Flexor retinaculum (transverse carpal lig.)
Radial a., superficial palmar br.
Median n.
Pronator quadratus
Flexor carpi radialis
Flexor pollicis longus
Radial a.

Fig. 19.23 Anterior carpal region

Right hand, anterior (palmar) view. Ulnar tunnel and deep palm. Carpal tunnel with flexor retinaculum transparent. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- The flexor retinaculum forms the floor, and the **palmar carpal ligament** forms the roof. The pisiform and hamate form the medial and lateral borders, respectively.
- The ulnar artery and nerve pass through the tunnel into the palm of the hand.

— The **anatomic snuffbox** is a small triangular depression on the radial side of the dorsum of the wrist **(Fig. 19.25)**.

- Tendons of the extensor pollicis longus posteriorly and the extensor pollicis brevis and abductor pollicis longus anteriorly form the borders. The scaphoid and trapezium form its floor.
- The radial artery passes through the snuffbox.
- The cephalic vein and superficial branch of the radial nerve cross the

snuffbox superficially.

— Six small **dorsal compartments** (designated as 1st through 6th) form on the posterior surface of the wrist **(Table 19.12; Fig. 19.26)**.
  - The extensor retinaculum forms their roof, and the dorsal surfaces of the distal radius and ulna form their floor.
  - Extensor tendons of forearm muscles pass through the compartments onto the dorsum of the hand.
  - **Dorsal carpal synovial tendon sheaths** enclose the extensor tendons as they pass through the dorsal compartments.

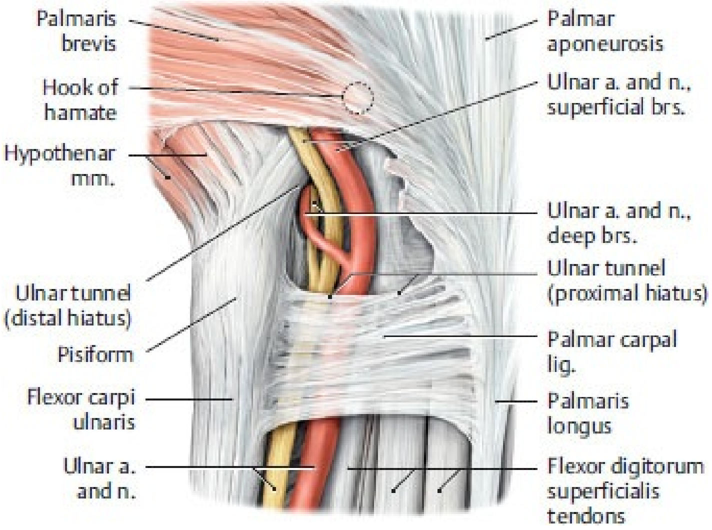

Palmaris brevis
Hook of hamate
Hypothenar mm.
Ulnar tunnel (distal hiatus)
Pisiform
Flexor carpi ulnaris
Ulnar a. and n.
Palmar aponeurosis
Ulnar a. and n., superficial brs.
Ulnar a. and n., deep brs.
Ulnar tunnel (proximal hiatus)
Palmar carpal lig.
Palmaris longus
Flexor digitorum superficialis tendons

Fig. 19.24 Apertures and walls of the ulnar tunnel

Right hand, anterior (palmar) view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

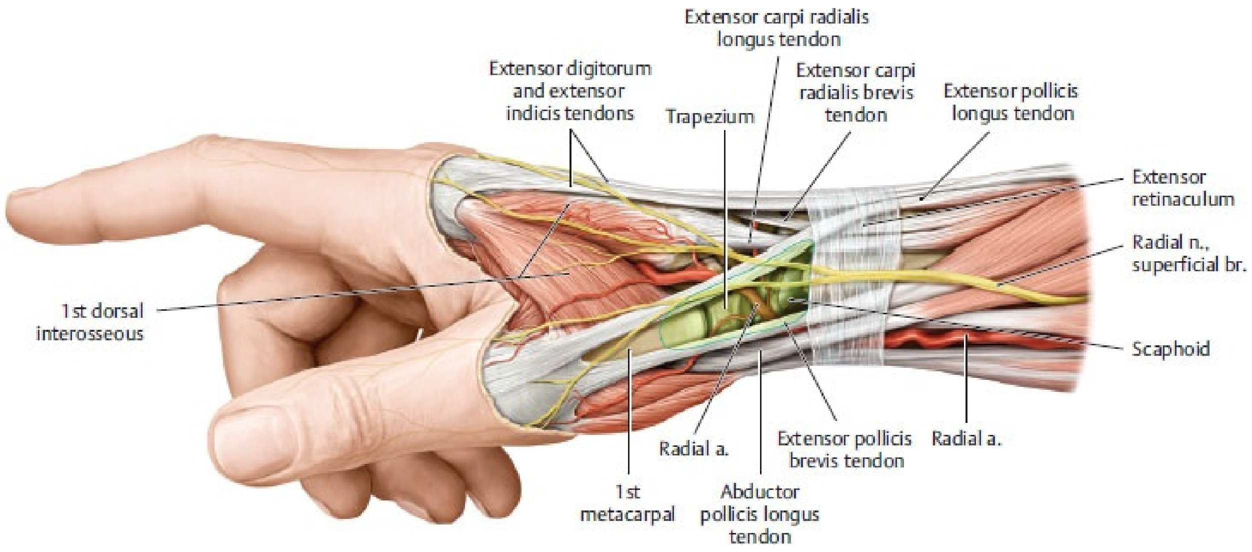
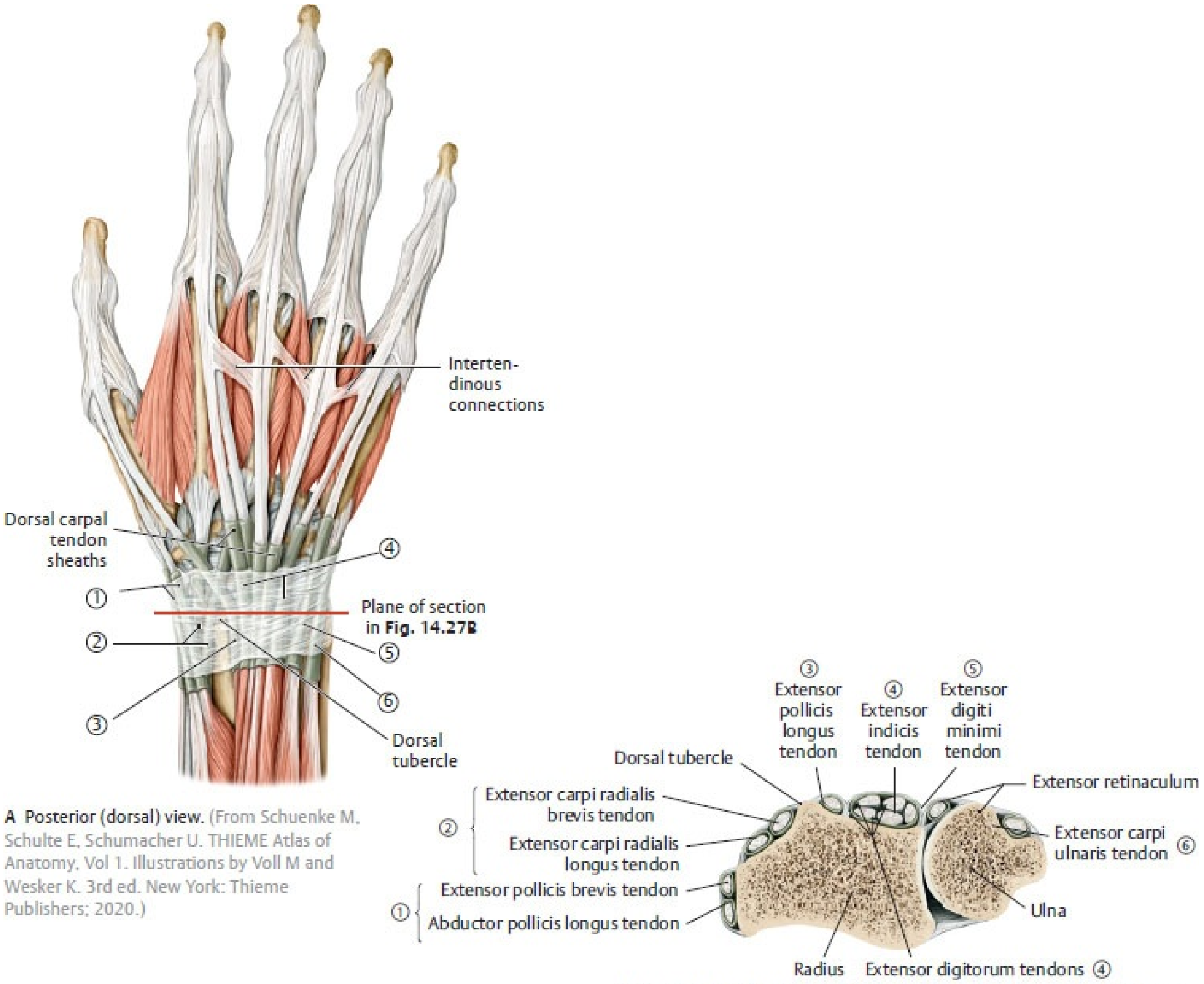

Extensor carpi radialis longus tendon
Extensor digitorum and extensor indicis tendons
Trapezium
Extensor carpi radialis brevis tendon
Extensor pollicis longus tendon
Extensor retinaculum
Radial n., superficial br.
1st dorsal interosseous
Scaphoid
Radial a.
Extensor pollicis brevis tendon
Radial a.
1st metacarpal
Abductor pollicis longus tendon

Fig. 19.25 Anatomic snuffbox

Right hand, radial view. The three-sided “anatomic snuffbox” (*shaded light yellow*) is bounded by the tendons of insertion of the abductor pollicis longus and the extensor pollicis brevis and extensor pollicis longus. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Interten-
dinous
connections
Dorsal carpal
tendon
sheaths
④
①
Plane of section
in Fig. 14.27B
②
⑤
⑥
③
Dorsal
tubercle
③
Extensor
pollicis
longus
tendon
④
Extensor
indicis
tendon
⑤
Extensor
digiti
minimi
tendon
Dorsal tubercle
Extensor retinaculum
②
Extensor carpi radialis
brevis tendon
Extensor carpi radialis
longus tendon
Extensor carpi
ulnaris tendon
⑥
①
Extensor pollicis brevis tendon
Abductor pollicis longus tendon
Ulna
Radius
Extensor digitorum tendons ④

A Posterior (dorsal) view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

B Proximal view of section indicated in A. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Fig. 19.26 Extensor retinaculum and dorsal compartments Right hand.

Table 19.12 Dorsal Compartments for Extensor Tendons

①	Abductor pollicis longus Extensor pollicis brevis
②	Extensor carpi radialis longus Extensor carpi radialis brevis
③	Extensor pollicis longus
④	Extensor digitorum Extensor indicis

⑤ Extensor digiti minimi
⑥ Extensor carpi ulnaris

19.6 The Hand

The muscles and joints of the hand create a flexible tool that is adept at fine motor movements. The ability to grasp objects by positioning the thumb in opposition to the other fingers is a feature that is unique to humans and apes.

Joints of the Hand and Fingers

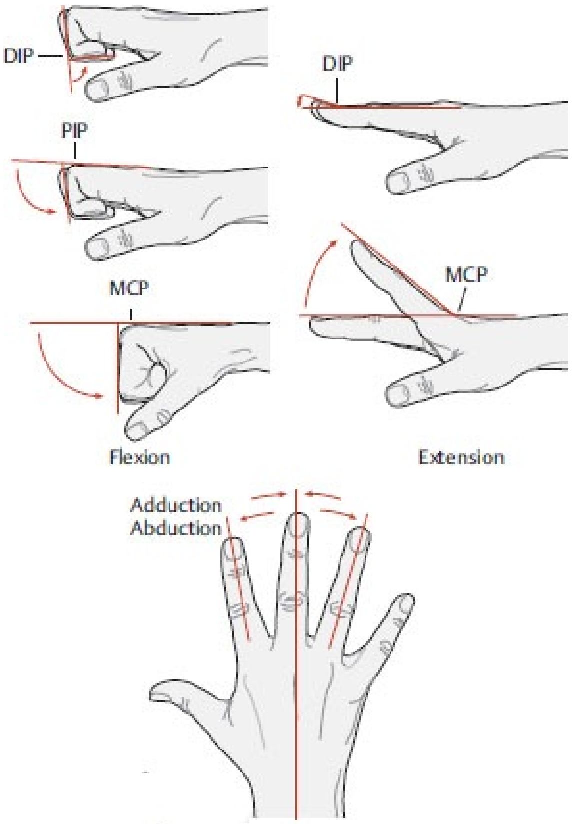
Joints of the hand and fingers are the articulations between the distal carpal bones and proximal end of the metacarpal bones of the palms, the distal end of the metacarpal bones and the proximal phalanges, and between the proximal, middle, and distal phalanges of each digit (see **Fig. 19.18**). Movements at these joints and the muscles of the forearm and hand that provide them are listed in **Tables 19.13** and **19.14.**

- **Carpometacarpal joints** are the synovial articulations between the distal row of carpal bones and the metacarpals.
  - Little or no movement occurs at the plane-type joints of the 2nd, 3rd, and 4th digits.
  - The joint of the 5th digit between the metacarpus and the hamate is moderately mobile.
  - The saddle-type joint between the metacarpus of the thumb and the trapezium in the distal carpal row allows movement in all directions, which is essential for thumb opposition **(Fig. 19.27)**.
- **Metacarpophalangeal (MCP) joints** are condyloid synovial joints between the heads of the metacarpals and bases of the proximal phalanges.
  - Movement in two planes, flexion-extension and abduction-adduction, occurs in digits 2 through 5.
  - Only flexion and extension occur at the MCP joint of the thumb.
- **Interphalangeal (IP) joints** are hinge-type synovial joints between phalanges.
  - Digits 2 through 4 have proximal interphalangeal (PIP) and distal interphalangeal (DIP) joints.
  - The thumb has only a single IP joint.
  - IP joints permit only flexion and extension.
- MCP and IP joints are surrounded by a fibrous capsule and supported by medial and lateral collateral ligaments.

Table 19.13 Movements at the Joints of the Fingers (Digits 2 through 5)

Action	Primary Muscles
Flexion at MCP	Lumbricals Palmar and dorsal interossei Flexor digiti minimi (only 5th digit)
Flexion at DIP	Flexor digitorum profundus
Flexion at PIP	Flexor digitorum profundus Flexor digitorum superficialis
Extension at MCP	Extensor digitorum Extensor indicis (only 2nd digit) Extensor digiti minimi (only 5th digit)
Extension at DIP and PIP	Lumbricals Palmar and dorsal interossei
Abduction at MCP	Dorsal interossei Abductor digiti minimi (only 5th digit)
Adduction	Palmar interossei (digits 2, 4, and 5 only)
Opposition	Opponens digiti minimi (only 5th digit)

Abbreviations: DIP, distal interphalangeal; MCP, metacarpophalangeal; PIP, proximal interphalangeal.


DIP
DIP
PIP
MCP
MCP
Flexion
Extension
Adduction
Abduction

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

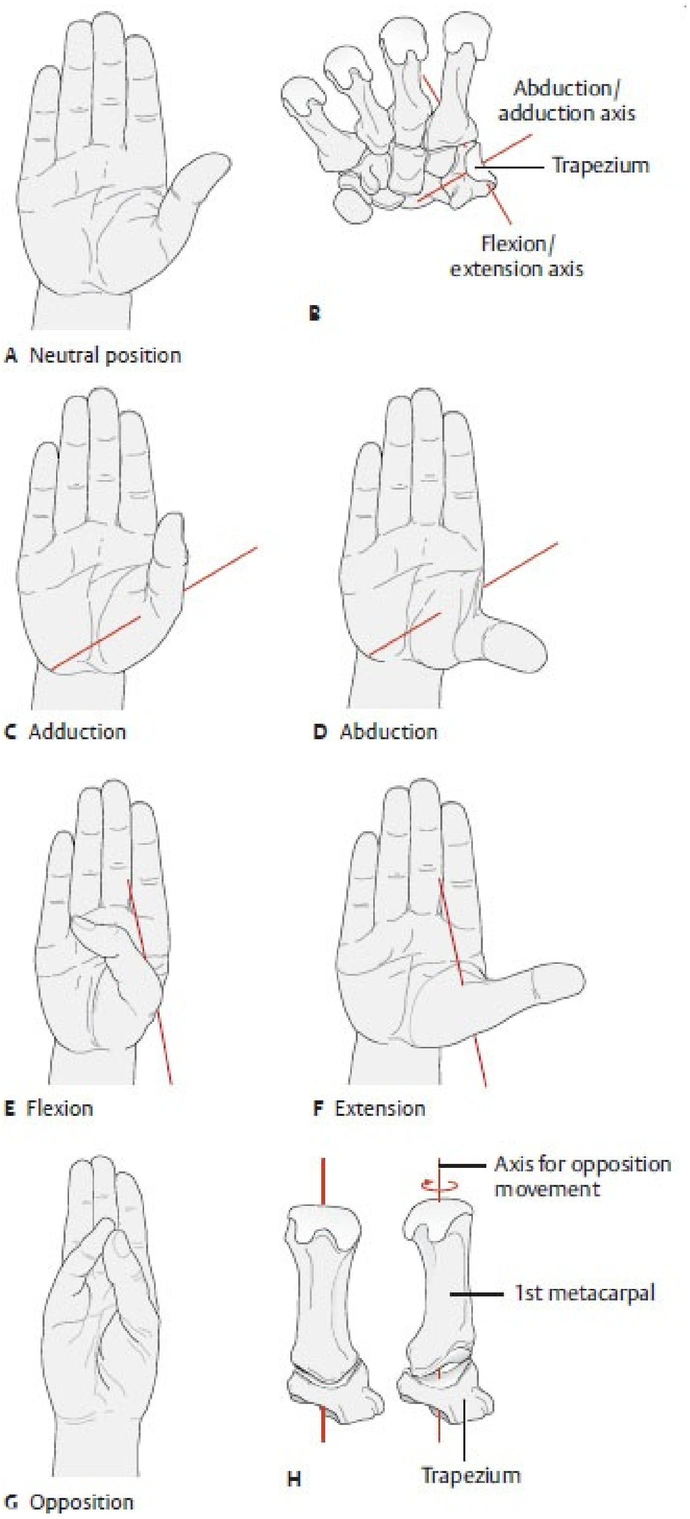

Abduction/
adduction axis
Trapezium
Flexion/
extension axis
B
A Neutral position
C Adduction
D Abduction
E Flexion
F Extension
Axis for opposition
movement
1st metacarpal
Trapezium
H
G Opposition

Table 19.14 Movements at Joints of the Thumb

Action	Primary Muscles

Flexion	Flexor pollicis longus Flexor pollicis brevis
Extension	Extensor pollicis longus Extensor pollicis brevis
Abduction	Abductor pollicis longus Abductor pollicis brevis
Adduction	Adductor pollicis
Opposition	Opponens pollicis

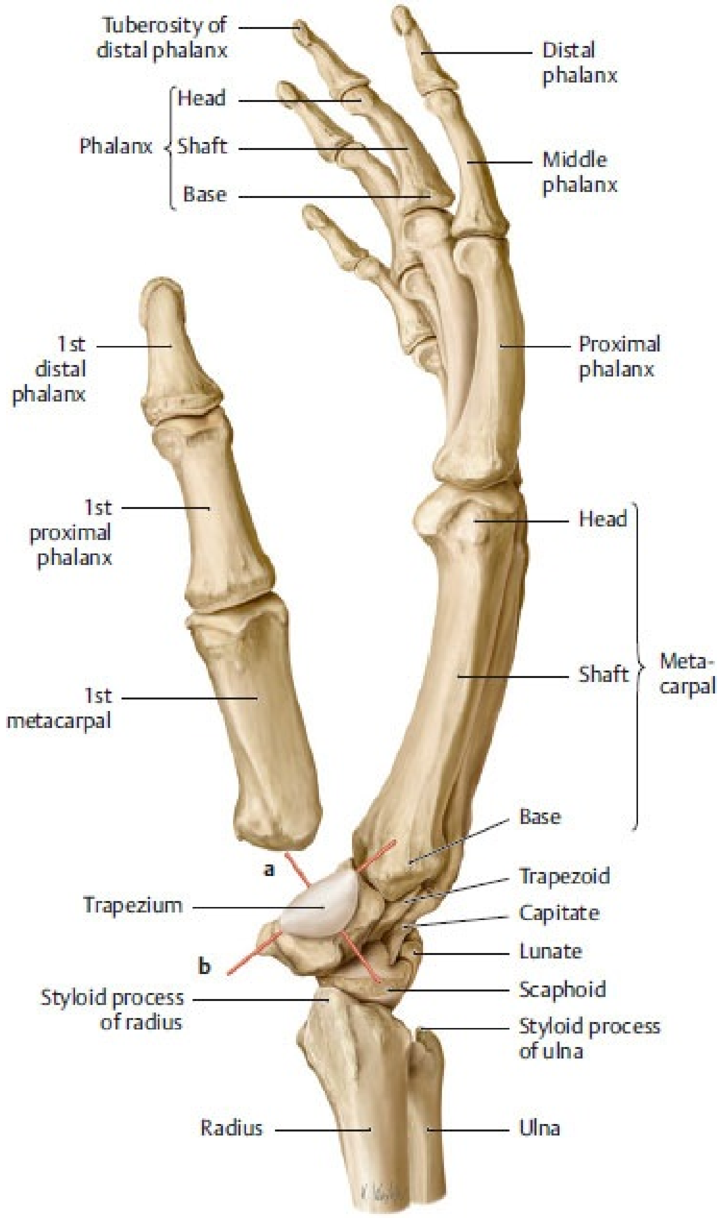

Tuberosity of distal phalanx
Distal phalanx
Phalanx
Head
Shaft
Base
Middle phalanx
1st distal phalanx
Proximal phalanx
1st proximal phalanx
Head
Shaft
Meta-carpal
1st metacarpal
Base
a
Trapezoid
Trapezium
Capitate
Lunate
b
Scaphoid
Styloid process of radius
Styloid process of ulna
Radius
Ulna

Fig. 19.27 Carpometacarpal joint of the thumb

Radial view. The 1st metacarpal bone has been moved slightly distally to expose the articular surface of the trapezium. Two cardinal axes of motion are shown here: a, abduction/adduction; and b, flexion/extension. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

The Palm of the Hand and Fingers

- The palm of the hand has the following surface anatomy **(Fig. 19.28)**:
  - The skin is thickened, firmly attached to the underlying fascia, and supplied with numerous sweat glands.
  - A central concavity separates a **thenar eminence** at the base of the thumb from a **hypothenar eminence** at the base of the 5th digit.
  - Longitudinal and transverse **flexion creases** form where the skin is tightly bound to the palmar fascia.
- Deep fascia over the central palm forms a tough, thickened palmar aponeurosis **(Fig. 19.29)**, which
  - firmly adheres to the skin of the palm,
  - is continuous proximally with the flexor retinaculum and palmaris longus muscle, and
  - is continuous distally with a **transverse metacarpal ligament** and the four digital fibrous sheaths of the fingers that surround the long flexor tendons and their synovial digital tendon sheaths.
- The palmar aponeurosis and deep palmar fascia divide the palm into five muscular compartments **(Tables 19.15, 19.16, 19.17)**:
  1. The **thenar compartment,** which contains thenar muscles that abduct, flex, and oppose the thumb.
  2. The **central compartment,** which contains forearm flexor tendons that flex the fingers and lumbricals that flex and extend joints of the fingers.
  3. The hypothenar **compartment,** which contains hypothenar muscles that flex, abduct, and oppose the 5th digit.
  4. The **adductor compartment,** which contains the adductor pollicis muscle that adducts the thumb.
  5. The interosseous **compartment,** which contains interossei muscles that abduct and adduct the fingers.
- **Thenar** and **midpalmar spaces** are potential spaces deep within the palm between the long flexor tendons and the fascia over the deep palmar muscles. The midpalmar space is continuous with the anterior forearm compartment through the carpal tunnel.

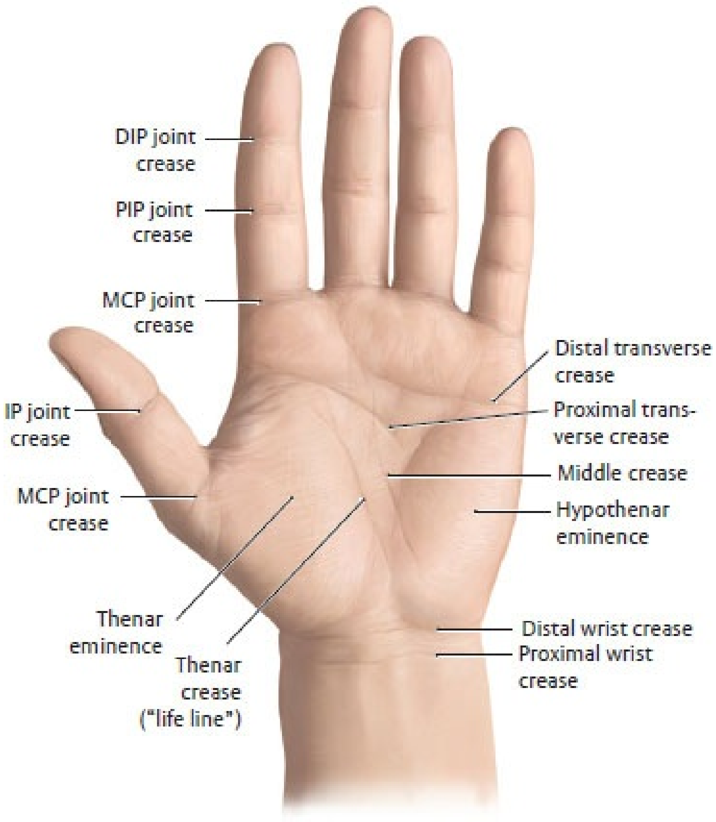

DIP joint crease
PIP joint crease
MCP joint crease
IP joint crease
MCP joint crease
Thenar eminence
Thenar crease ("life line")
Distal transverse crease
Proximal transverse crease
Middle crease
Hypothenar eminence
Distal wrist crease
Proximal wrist crease

Fig. 19.28 Surface anatomy of the palm of the hand

Left hand. DIP, distal interphalangeal; IP, interphalangeal; MCP, metacarpophalangeal; PIP, proximal interphalangeal. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 19.8: CLINICAL CORRELATION

DUPUYTREN'S DISEASE

Dupuytren's disease is the progressive fibrosis and contracture of the longitudinal bands of the palmar fascia to the 4th and 5th digits, causing flexion of these fingers. It presents as painless nodular thickenings that progress to raised ridges on the palm. Surgical excision is usually required to release the bands.

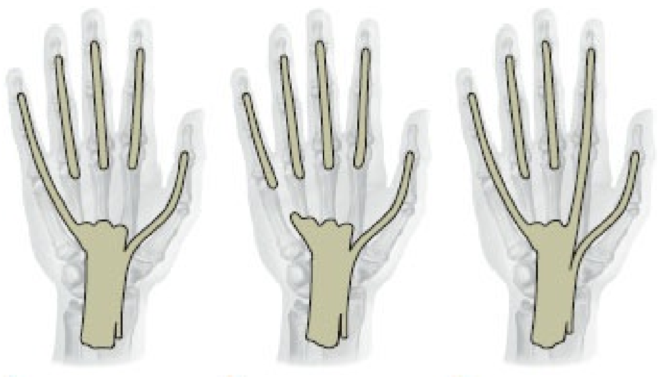
— On the palmar surface of the fingers
  - tendons of the flexor digitorum superficialis (FDS) split into two bands that insert on the middle phalanx,
  - tendons of the flexor digitorum profundus pass between the bands of the

    FDS to insert on the distal phalanx, and
  - **synovial tendon sheaths** surround the flexor tendons as they enter the **fibrous tendon sheaths** of the fingers (**Fig. 19.30**).
    - The digital synovial sheath of the 5th digit normally communicates with the common flexor sheath at the wrist.
    - The synovial sheath of the thumb extends into the wrist and may communicate with the sheath of the 5th digit and with the common synovial sheath.
    - The synovial sheaths of the 2nd, 3rd, and 4th digits usually remain independent from the common synovial sheath and other digital synovial sheaths.
- Muscles of the forearm and intrinsic muscles of the hand move the joints of the hand and fingers (see **Tables 19.13** and **19.14**).

BOX 19.9: CLINICAL CORRELATION

TENDON SHEATH COMMUNICATION

The digital tendon sheath of the thumb is continuous with the carpal tendon sheath of the flexor pollicis longus. The remaining fingers show variable communication with the carpal tendon sheaths (**A** is the most common variation). Infections within the tendon sheaths from puncture wounds of the fingers can track proximally to communicating spaces of the hand.



(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th Edition. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

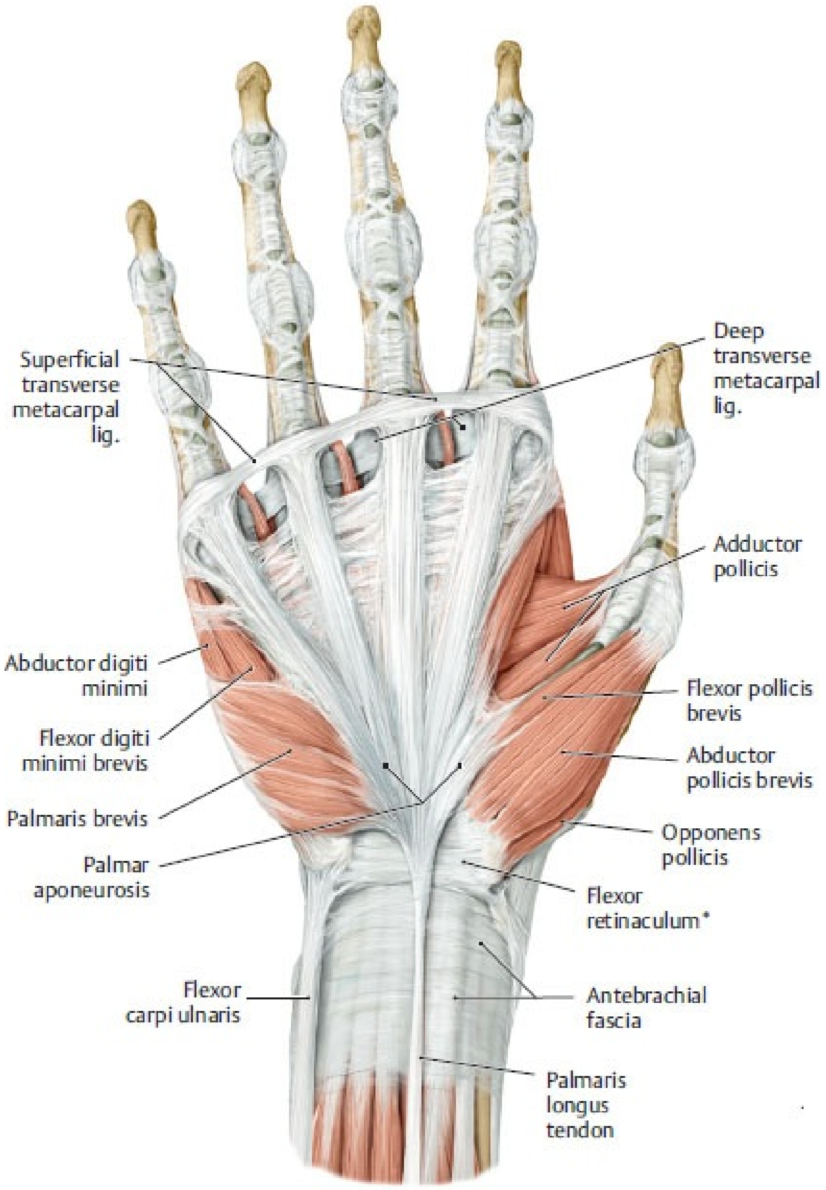

Superficial transverse metacarpal lig.
Deep transverse metacarpal lig.
Adductor pollicis
Abductor digiti minimi
Flexor digiti minimi brevis
Palmaris brevis
Palmar aponeurosis
Flexor pollicis brevis
Abductor pollicis brevis
Opponens pollicis
Flexor retinaculum*
Flexor carpi ulnaris
Antebrachial fascia
Palmaris longus tendon

Fig. 19.29 Palmar aponeurosis

Right hand, palmar surface.

*Also known as transverse carpal ligament.

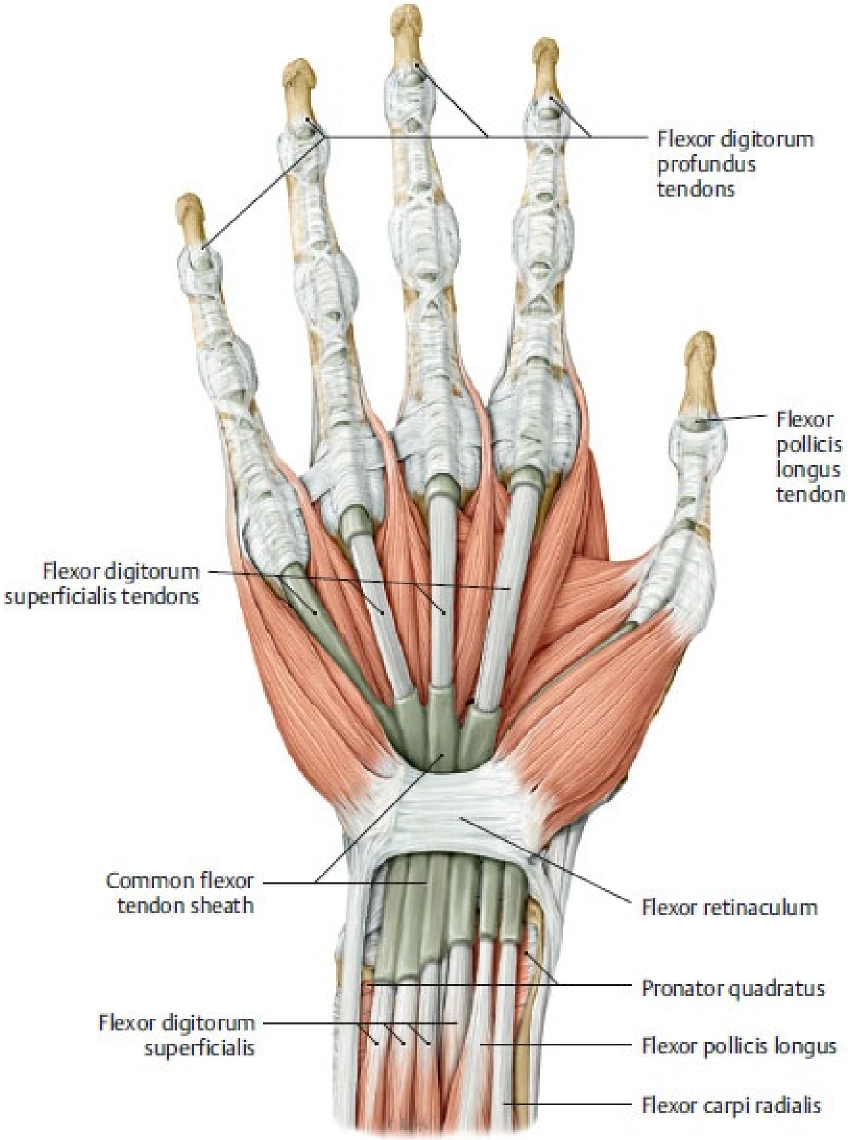
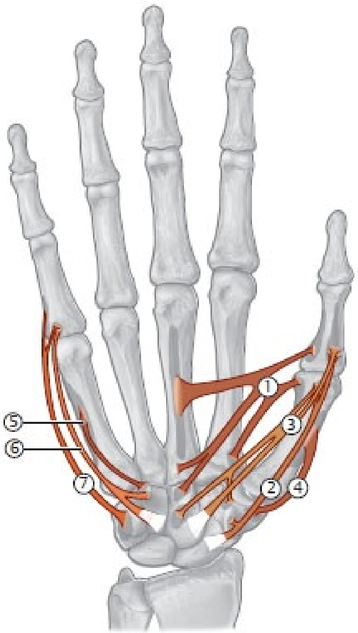

Flexor digitorum profundus tendons
Flexor pollicis longus tendon
Flexor digitorum superficialis tendons
Common flexor tendon sheath
Flexor retinaculum
Pronator quadratus
Flexor digitorum superficialis
Flexor pollicis longus
Flexor carpi radialis

Fig. 19.30 Carpal and digital tendon sheaths

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)



Thenar and hypothenar muscles, right hand, anterior (palmar) view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Table 19.15 Thenar Muscles

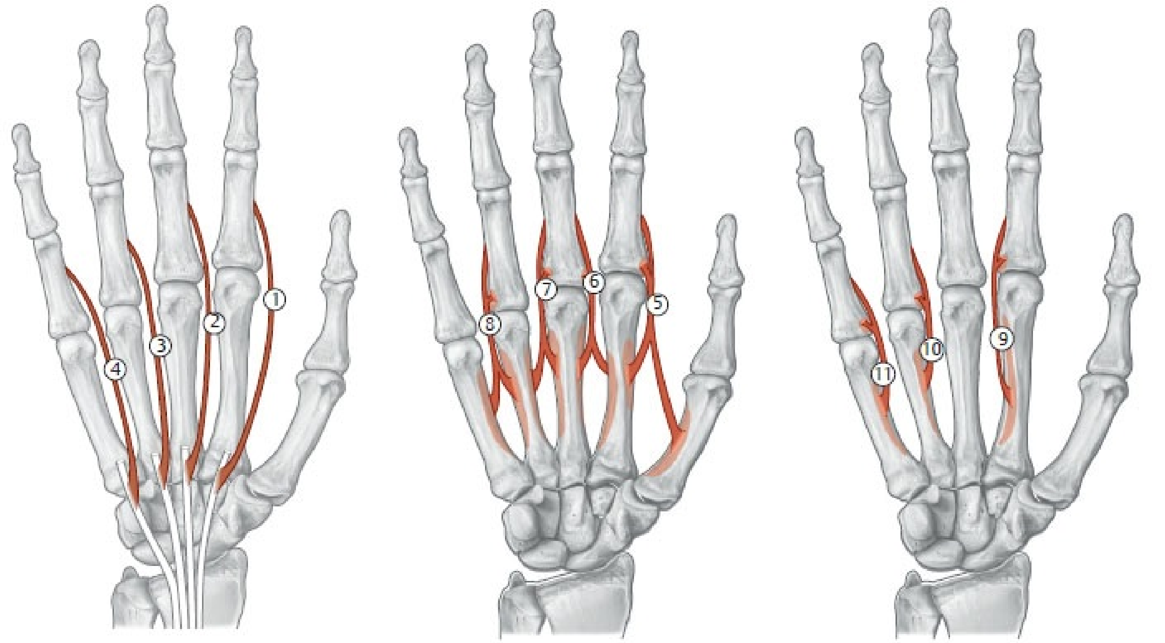
Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Innervation	Action
① Adductor pollicis	Transverse head: 3rd metacarpal (palmar surface)	Thumb (base of proximal phalanx) via the ulnar sesamoid	Ulnar n. (C8, T1)	CMC joint of thumb: adduction
	Oblique head: capitate bone, 2nd and 3rd metacarpals (bases)			MCP joint of thumb: flexion
② Abductor pollicis brevis	Scaphoid bone and trapezium, flexor retinaculum	Thumb (base of proximal phalanx) via the radial sesamoid	Median n. (C8, T1)	CMC joint of thumb: abduction
③ Flexor pollicis brevis	Superficial head: flexor retinaculum		Superficial head: median n. (C8, T1)	CMC joint of thumb: flexion
	Deep head: capitate bone, trapezium		Deep head: ulnar n. (C8, T1)	
④ Opponens pollicis	Trapezium	1st metacarpal (radial border)	Median n. (C8, T1)	CMC joint of thumb: opposition

Abbreviations: CMC, carpometacarpal; MCP, metacarpophalangeal.

Table 19.16 Hypothenar Muscles

Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Innervation	Action
⑤ Opponens digiti minimi	Hook of hamate, flexor retinaculum	5th metacarpal (ulnar border)	Ulnar n. (C8, T1)	Draws metacarpal in palmar direction (opposition)
⑥ Flexor digiti minimi brevis		5th proximal phalanx (base)		MCP joint of little finger: flexion
⑦ Abductor digiti minimi	Pisiform	5th proximal phalanx (ulnar base) and dorsal digital expansion of 5th digit		MCP joint of little finger: flexion and abduction of little finger PIP and DIP joints of little finger: extension
Palmaris brevis	Palmar aponeurosis (ulnar border)	Skin of hypothenar eminence		Tightens the palmar aponeurosis (protective function)

Abbreviations: DIP, distal inteiphalangeal; MCP, metacarpophalangeal; PIP, proximal inteiphalangeal.



A Lumbricals, right hand, palmar view. **B** Dorsal interossei, right hand, palmar view. **C** Palmar interossei, right hand, palmar view.

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th Edition. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Table 19.17 Metacarpal Muscles

Muscle Group	Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Innervation	Action
Lumbricals	① 1st	Tendons of flexor digitorum profundus (radial sides)	2nd digit (dde)	Median n. (C8–T1)	2nd to 5th digits: • MCP joints: flexion • Proximal and distal IP joints: extension
	② 2nd		3rd digit (dde)		
	③ 3rd	Tendons of flexor digitorum profundus (bipennate from medial and lateral sides)	4th digit (dde)	Ulnar n. (C8–T1)	
	④ 4th		5th digit (dde)		
Dorsal interossei	⑤ 1st	1st and 2nd metacarpals (adjacent sides, two heads)	2nd digit (dde) 2nd proximal phalanx (radial side)		2nd to 4th digits: • MCP joints: flexion • Proximal and distal IP joints: extension and abduction from 3rd digit
	⑥ 2nd	2nd and 3rd metacarpals (adjacent sides, two heads)	3rd digit (dde) 3rd proximal phalanx (radial side)		
	⑦ 3rd	3rd and 4th metacarpals (adjacent sides, two heads)	3rd digit (dde) 3rd proximal phalanx (ulnar side)		
	⑧ 4th	4th and 5th metacarpals (adjacent sides, two heads)	4th digit (dde) 4th proximal phalanx (ulnar side)		
Palmar interossei	⑨ 1st	2nd metacarpal (ulnar side)	2nd digit (dde) 2nd proximal phalanx (base)		2nd, 4th, and 5th digits: • MCP joints: flexion • Proximal and distal IP joints: extension and adduction toward 3rd digit
	⑩ 2nd	4th metacarpal (radial side)	4th digit (dde) 4th proximal phalanx (base)		
	⑪ 3rd	5th metacarpal (radial side)	5th digit (dde) 5th proximal phalanx (base)		

Abbreviations: dde, dorsal digital expansion; IP, inteiphalangeal; MCP, metacarpophalangeal.

The Dorsum of the Hand and Fingers

— The dorsum of the hand has the following surface anatomy (**Fig. 19.31**):

  - The skin is thin and loose.
  - A prominent superficial dorsal venous network gives rise to the cephalic and basilic veins.
  - The heads of the metacarpals of the 2nd through 5th digits form distinct “knuckles” when the hand is flexed into a fist.
  - The extensor tendons fan out from the wrist to the fingers.
- On the dorsum of the fingers, the long extensor tendons (of the posterior forearm compartment) flatten to form a **dorsal digital expansion** (extensor expansion, extensor hood), a triangular tendinous aponeurosis **(Fig. 19.32)**. The dorsal digital expansion
  - forms a hood that wraps around the sides of the distal metacarpus and proximal phalanx and holds the extensor tendon in place;
  - inserts onto the middle and distal phalanges via a **central slip** and paired **lateral bands;** and
  - is reinforced by the lumbricals and interossei muscles of the palm, which connect to the lateral bands and assist in extension of the interphalangeal joints of the fingers.

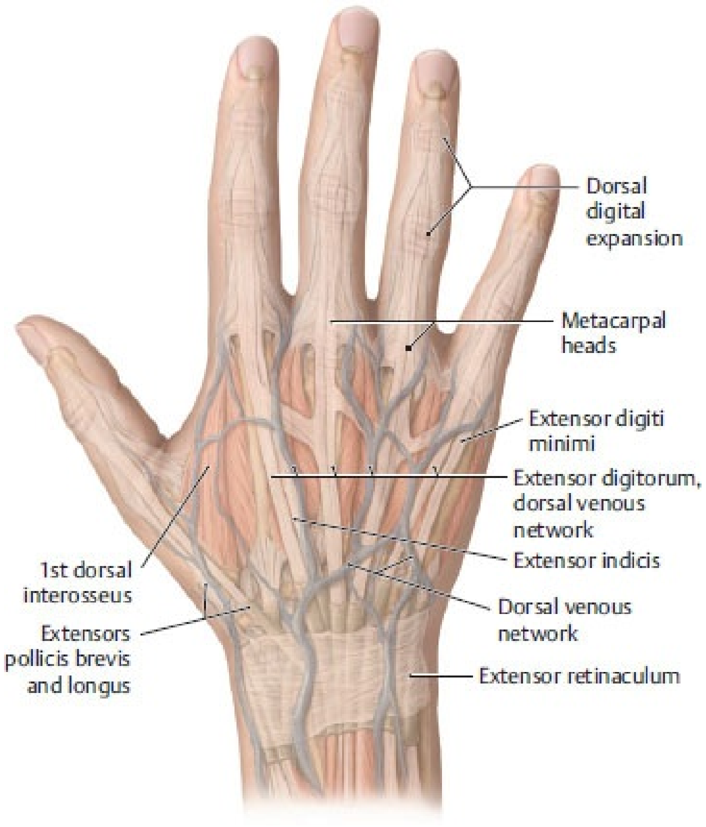
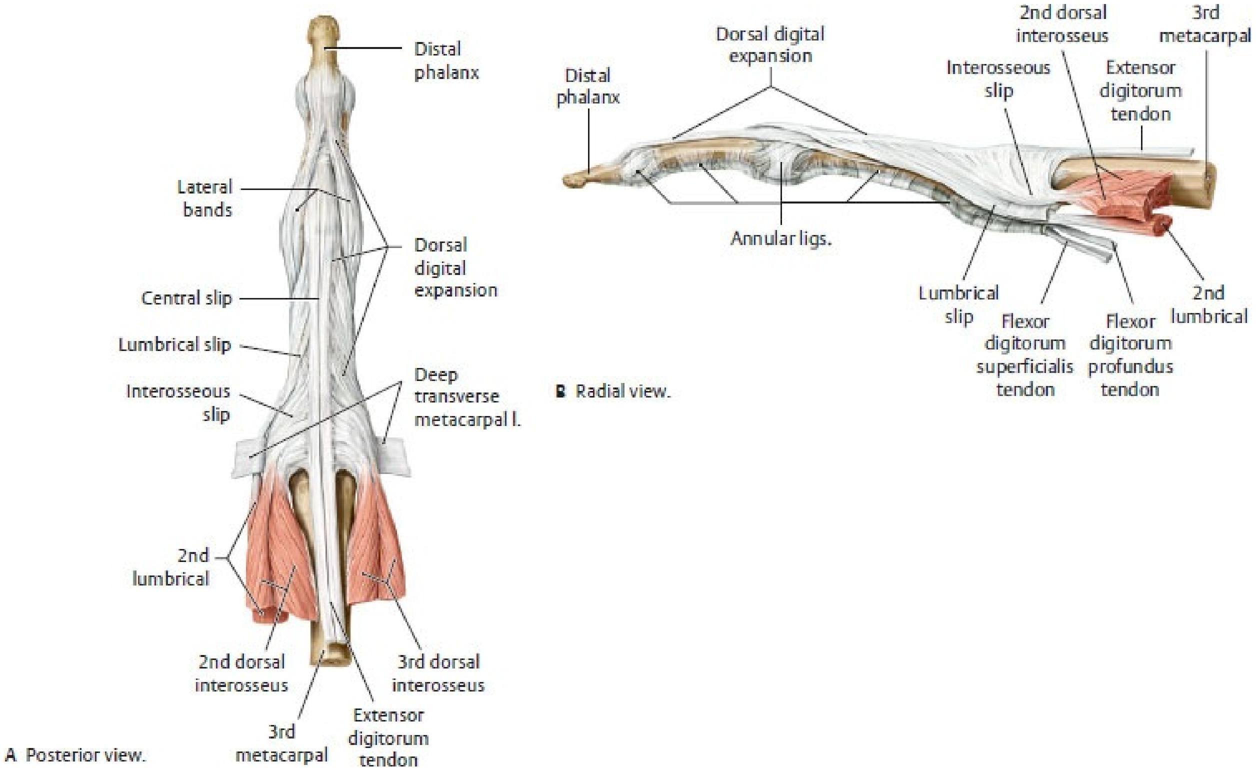

Dorsal digital expansion
Metacarpal heads
Extensor digiti minimi
Extensor digitorum, dorsal venous network
Extensor indicis
1st dorsal interosseus
Dorsal venous network
Extensors pollicis brevis and longus
Extensor retinaculum

Fig. 19.31 Surface anatomy of the dorsum of the hand Right hand.


Distal phalanx
Lateral bands
Dorsal digital expansion
Central slip
Lumbrical slip
Interosseous slip
Deep transverse metacarpal l.
2nd lumbrical
2nd dorsal interosseus
3rd dorsal interosseus
3rd metacarpal
Extensor digitorum tendon
Distal phalanx
Dorsal digital expansion
2nd dorsal interosseus
3rd metacarpal
Interosseous slip
Extensor digitorum tendon
Annular ligs.
Lumbrical slip
Flexor digitorum superficialis tendon
Flexor digitorum profundus tendon
2nd lumbrical

A Posterior view.

B Radial view.

Fig. 19.32 Dorsal digital expansion

Right hand, middle finger, posterior view. The dorsal digital expansion permits the long digital flexors and the short muscles of the hand to act on all three finger joints. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

19.7 Topographic Views of Upper Limb Musculature

Shoulder and Arm

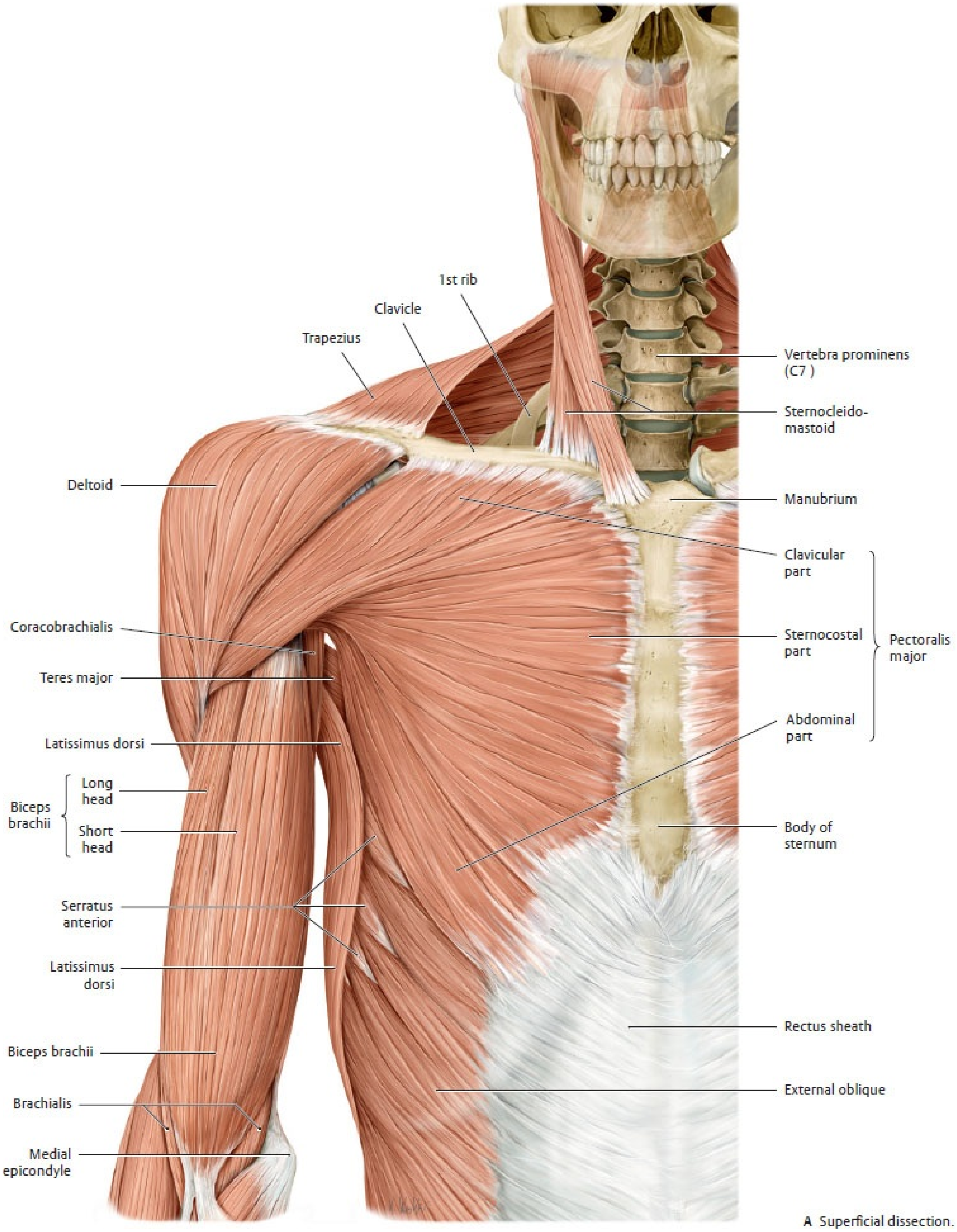
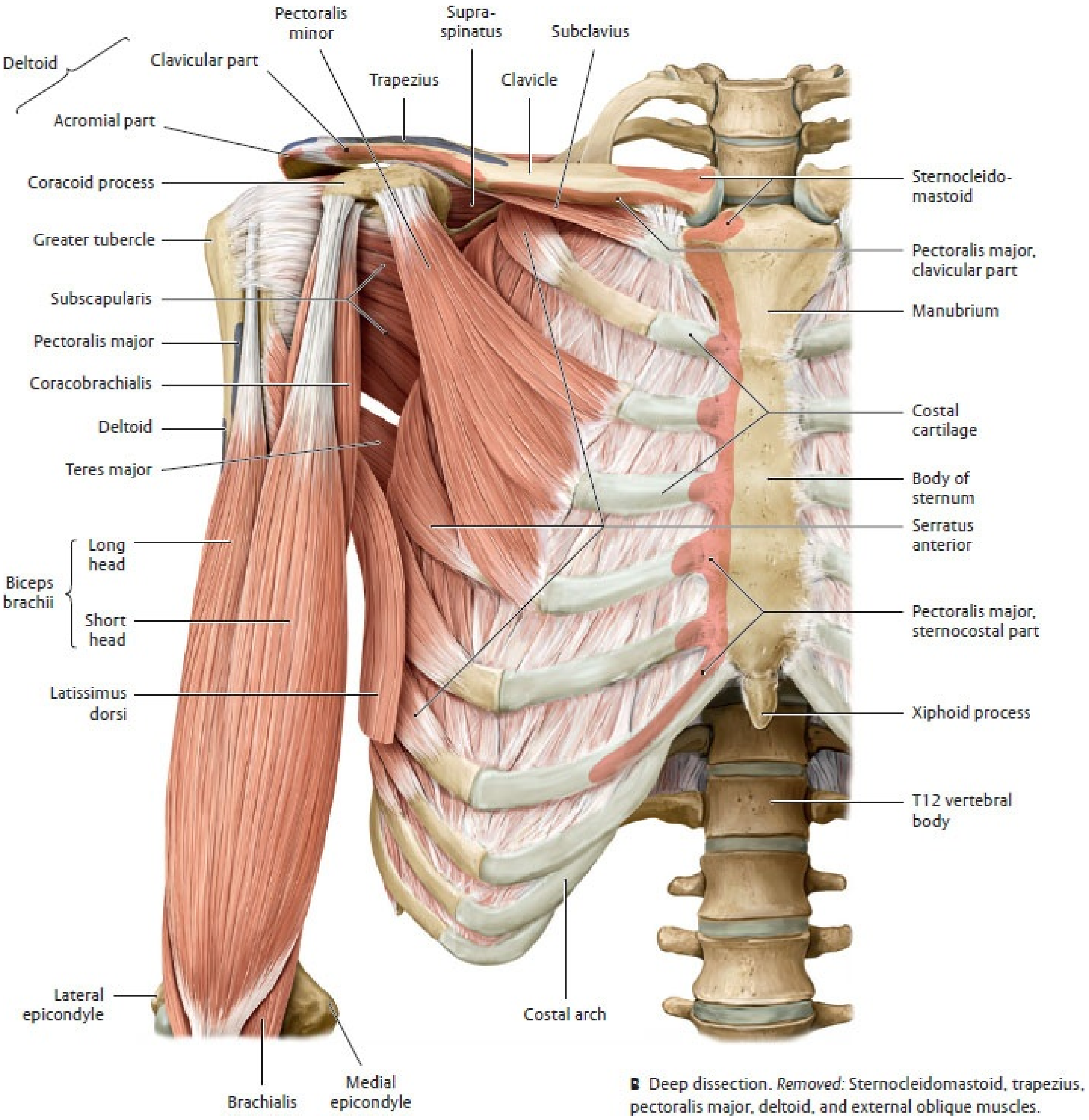

1st rib
Clavicle
Trapezius
Vertebra prominens (C7)
Sternocleido-mastoid
Deltoid
Manubrium
Clavicular part
Sternocostal part
Pectoralis major
Abdominal part
Coracobrachialis
Teres major
Latissimus dorsi
Biceps brachii
Long head
Short head
Body of sternum
Serratus anterior
Latissimus dorsi
Rectus sheath
Biceps brachii
External oblique
Brachialis
Medial epicondyle
A Superficial dissection.

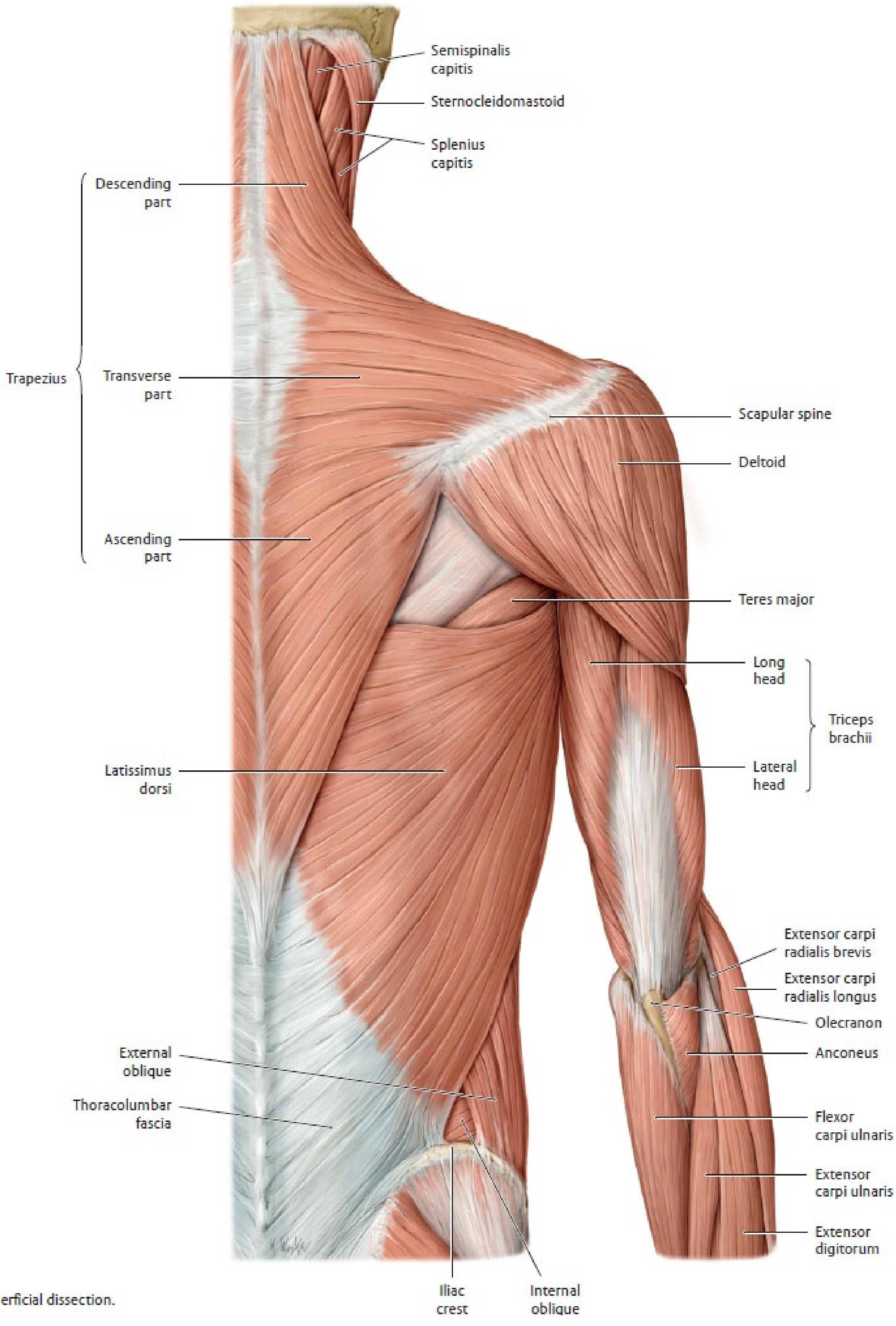
Fig. 19.33 Anterior shoulder muscles

Right side, anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Pectoralis minor
Supra-spinatus
Subclavius
Deltoid
Clavicular part
Trapezius
Clavicle
Acromial part
Coracoid process
Greater tubercle
Subscapularis
Pectoralis major
Coracobrachialis
Deltoid
Teres major
Biceps brachii
Long head
Short head
Latissimus dorsi
Lateral epicondyle
Brachialis
Medial epicondyle
Costal arch
Sternocleido-mastoid
Pectoralis major, clavicular part
Manubrium
Costal cartilage
Body of sternum
Serratus anterior
Pectoralis major, sternocostal part
Xiphoid process
T12 vertebral body

B Deep dissection. *Removed:* Sternocleidomastoid, trapezius, pectoralis major, deltoid, and external oblique muscles.

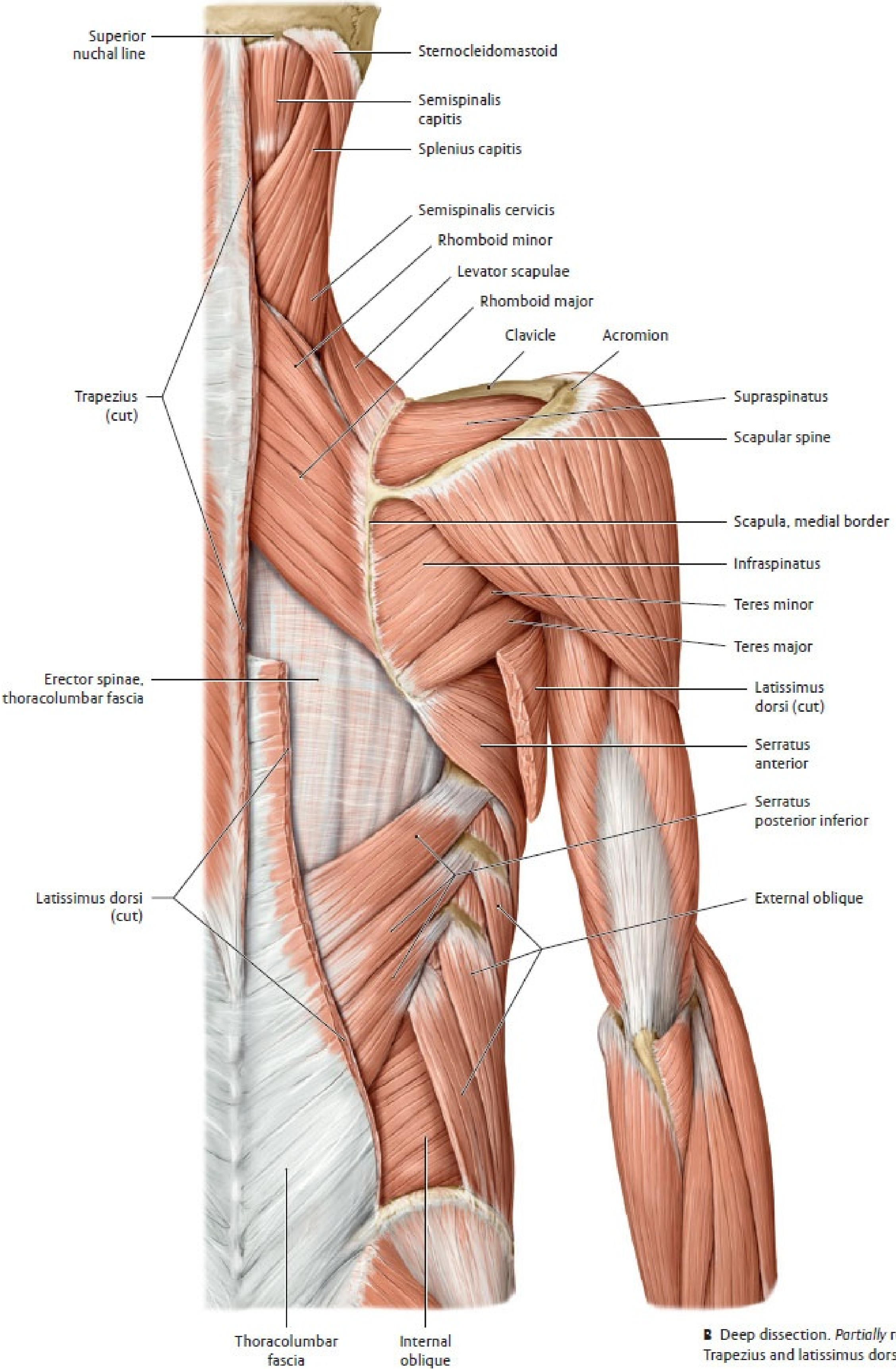
Fig. 19.33 (*continued*) Anterior shoulder muscles


Semispinalis capitis
Sternocleidomastoid
Splenius capitis
Trapezius
Descending part
Transverse part
Ascending part
Scapular spine
Deltoid
Teres major
Long head
Triceps brachii
Lateral head
Latissimus dorsi
Extensor carpi radialis brevis
Extensor carpi radialis longus
Olecranon
Anconeus
External oblique
Thoracolumbar fascia
Flexor carpi ulnaris
Extensor carpi ulnaris
Extensor digitorum
Iliac crest
Internal oblique

A Superficial dissection.

Fig. 19.34 Posterior shoulder muscles

Right side, posterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Superior nuchal line
Sternocleidomastoid
Semispinalis capitis
Splenius capitis
Semispinalis cervicis
Rhomboid minor
Levator scapulae
Rhomboid major
Clavicle
Acromion
Trapezius (cut)
Supraspinatus
Scapular spine
Scapula, medial border
Infraspinatus
Teres minor
Teres major
Erector spinae, thoracolumbar fascia
Latissimus dorsi (cut)
Serratus anterior
Serratus posterior inferior
Latissimus dorsi (cut)
External oblique
Thoracolumbar fascia
Internal oblique

B Deep dissection. *Partially* removed: Trapezius and latissimus dorsi.

Fig. 19.34 (*continued*) Posterior shoulder muscles

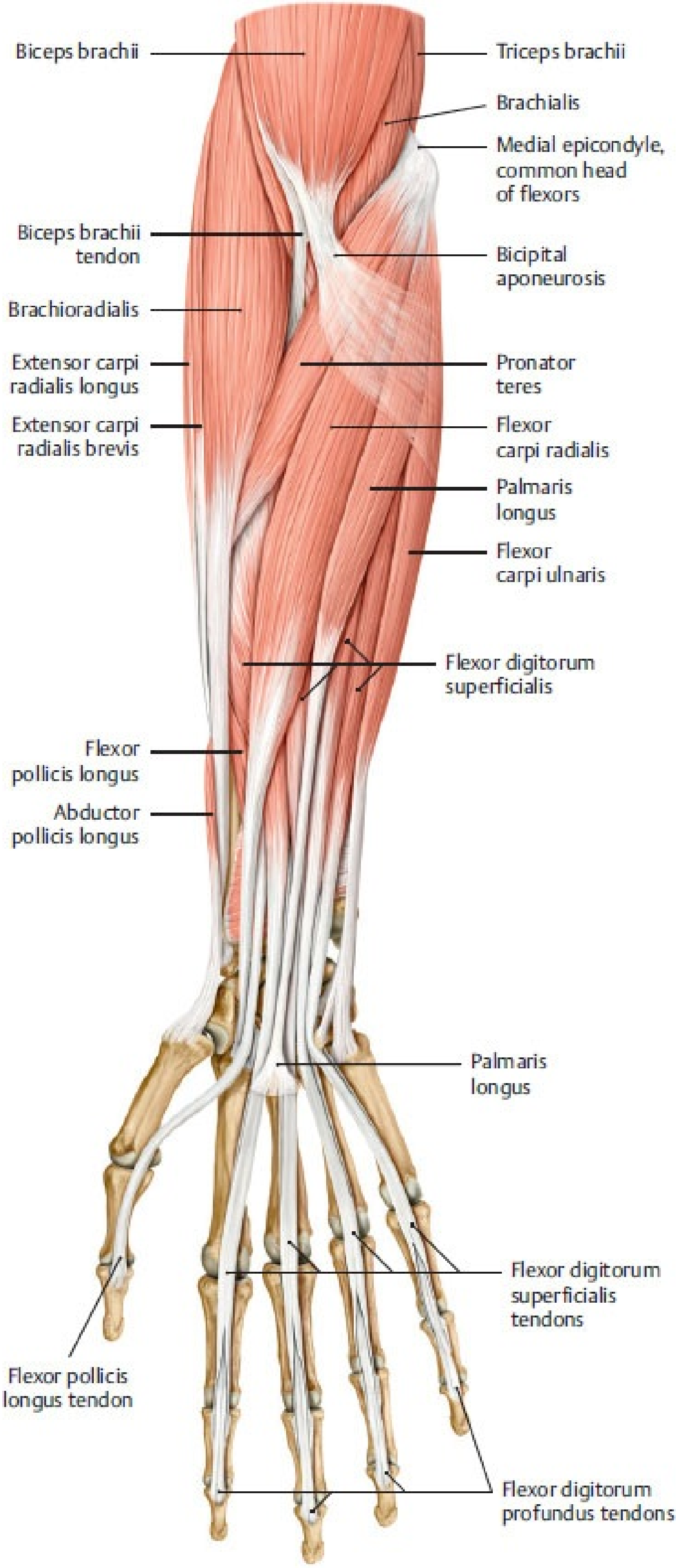

Biceps brachii
Triceps brachii
Brachialis
Medial epicondyle, common head of flexors
Biceps brachii tendon
Bicipital aponeurosis
Brachioradialis
Extensor carpi radialis longus
Pronator teres
Extensor carpi radialis brevis
Flexor carpi radialis
Palmaris longus
Flexor carpi ulnaris
Flexor digitorum superficialis
Flexor pollicis longus
Abductor pollicis longus
Palmaris longus
Flexor digitorum superficialis tendons
Flexor pollicis longus tendon
Flexor digitorum profundus tendons

Fig. 19.35 Anterior forearm muscles

Right forearm, anterior view.

Superficial flexors and radialis group. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

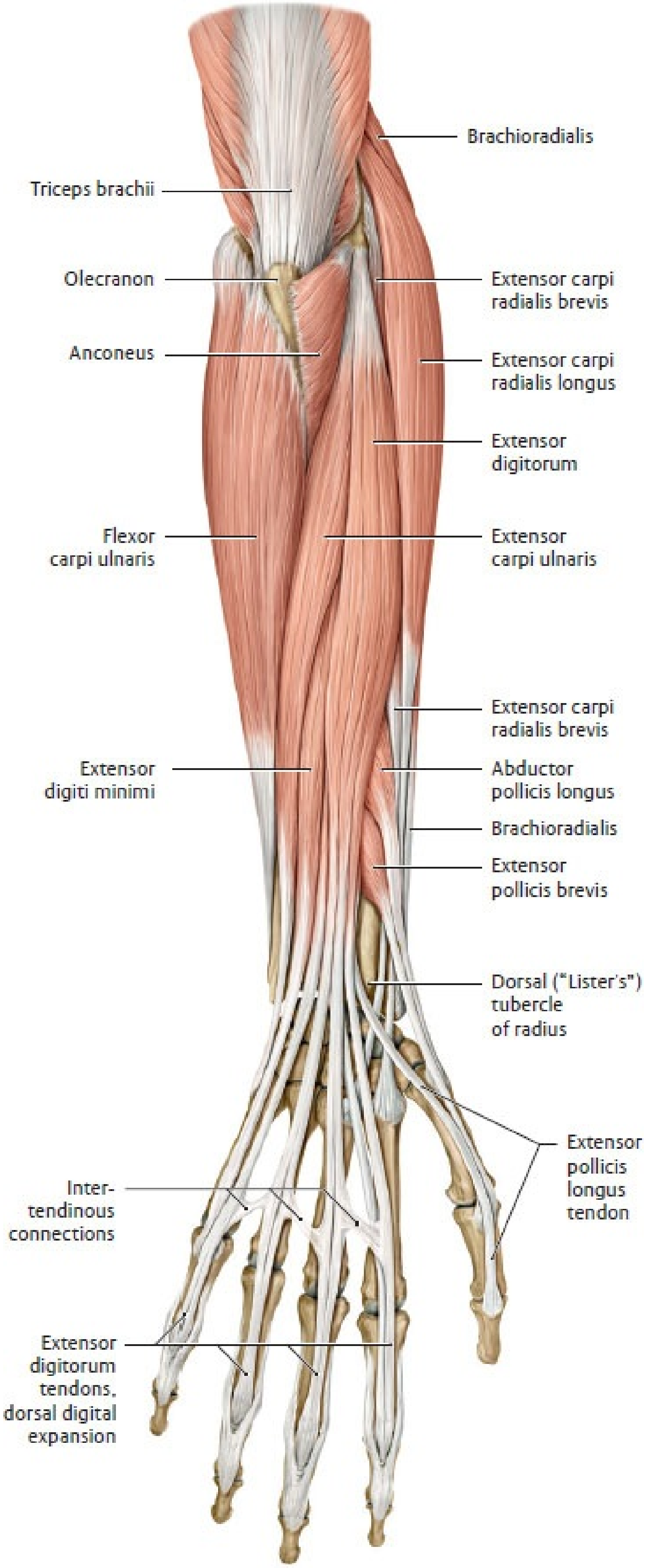
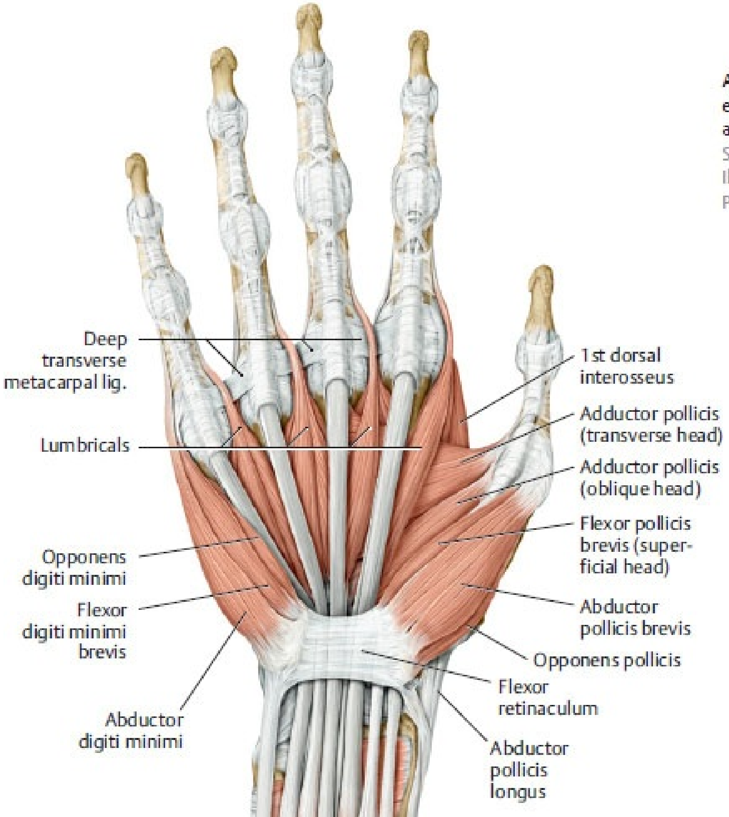

Brachioradialis
Triceps brachii
Olecranon
Anconeus
Extensor carpi radialis brevis
Extensor carpi radialis longus
Extensor digitorum
Flexor carpi ulnaris
Extensor carpi ulnaris
Extensor carpi radialis brevis
Extensor digiti minimi
Abductor pollicis longus
Brachioradialis
Extensor pollicis brevis
Dorsal ("Lister's") tubercle of radius
Extensor pollicis longus tendon
Inter-tendinous connections
Extensor digitorum tendons, dorsal digital expansion

Fig. 19.36 Posterior forearm muscles

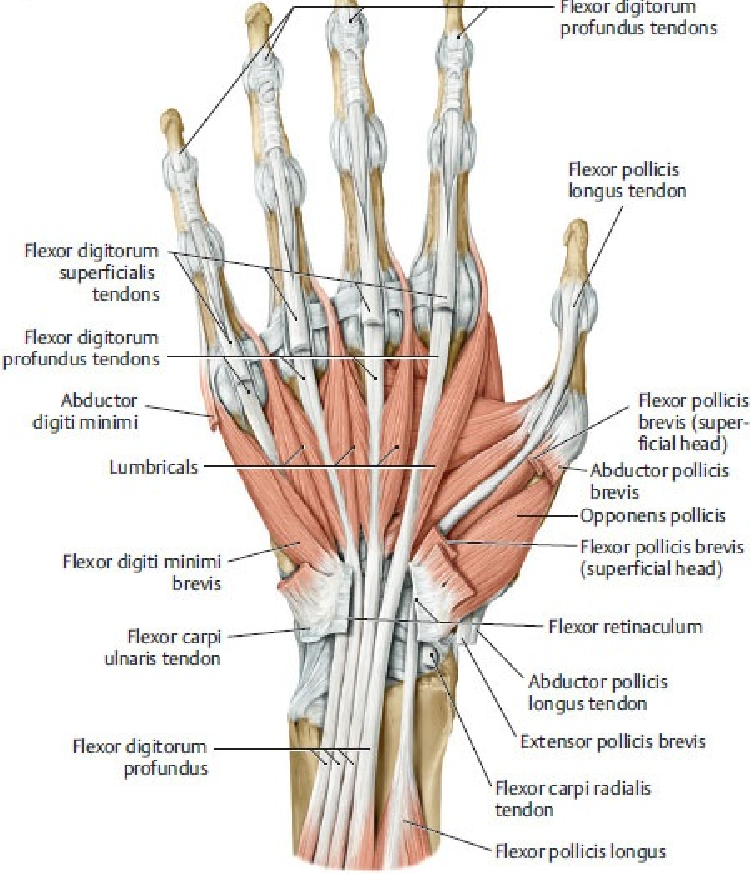
Right forearm, posterior view.

Superficial extensors and radialis group. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Hand


Deep transverse metacarpal lig.
Lumbricals
Opponens digiti minimi
Flexor digiti minimi brevis
Abductor digiti minimi
1st dorsal interosseus
Adductor pollicis (transverse head)
Adductor pollicis (oblique head)
Flexor pollicis brevis (superficial head)
Abductor pollicis brevis
Opponens pollicis
Flexor retinaculum
Abductor pollicis longus

A Superficial layer, with carpal and digital tendon sheaths exposed. *Removed:* Palmar aponeurosis, palmaris longus, antebrachial fascia, and palmaris brevis. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Flexor digitorum profundus tendons
Flexor pollicis longus tendon
Flexor digitorum superficialis tendons
Flexor digitorum profundus tendons
Abductor digiti minimi
Lumbricals
Flexor digiti minimi brevis
Flexor carpi ulnaris tendon
Flexor digitorum profundus
Flexor pollicis brevis (superficial head)
Abductor pollicis brevis
Opponens pollicis
Flexor pollicis brevis (superficial head)
Flexor retinaculum
Abductor pollicis longus tendon
Extensor pollicis brevis
Flexor carpi radialis tendon
Flexor pollicis longus

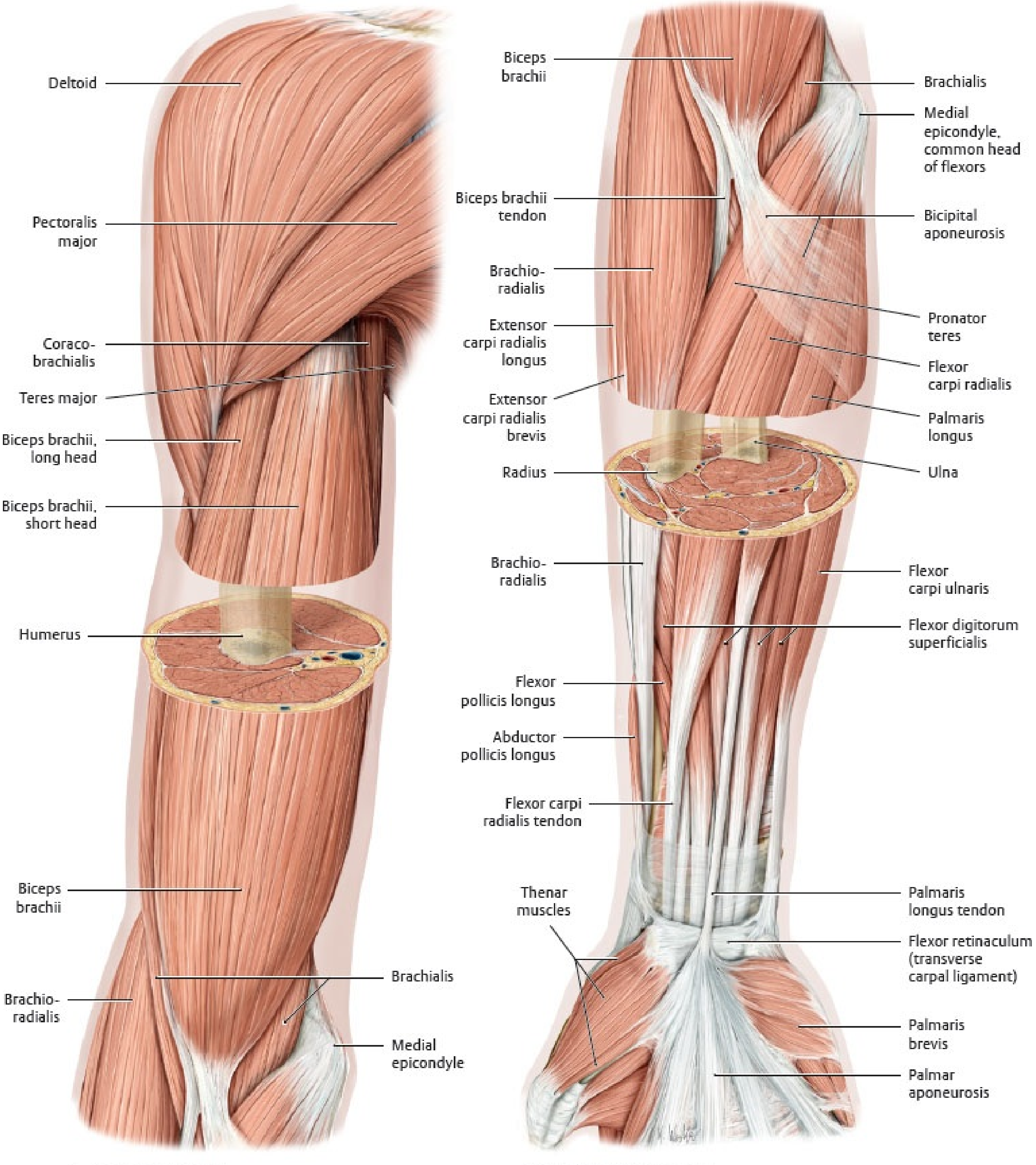
B Middle layer of muscles.
Removed: Flexor digitorum superficialis, flexors carpi radialis and ulnaris, and pronator quadratus.
(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Fig. 19.37 Intrinsic muscles of the hand: superficial and middle layers

Right hand, palmar surface.

A Superficial layer, with carpal and digital tendon sheaths exposed. *Removed*: Palmar aponeurosis, palmaris longus, antebrachial fascia, and palmaris brevis. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Compartments of the Arm and Forearm

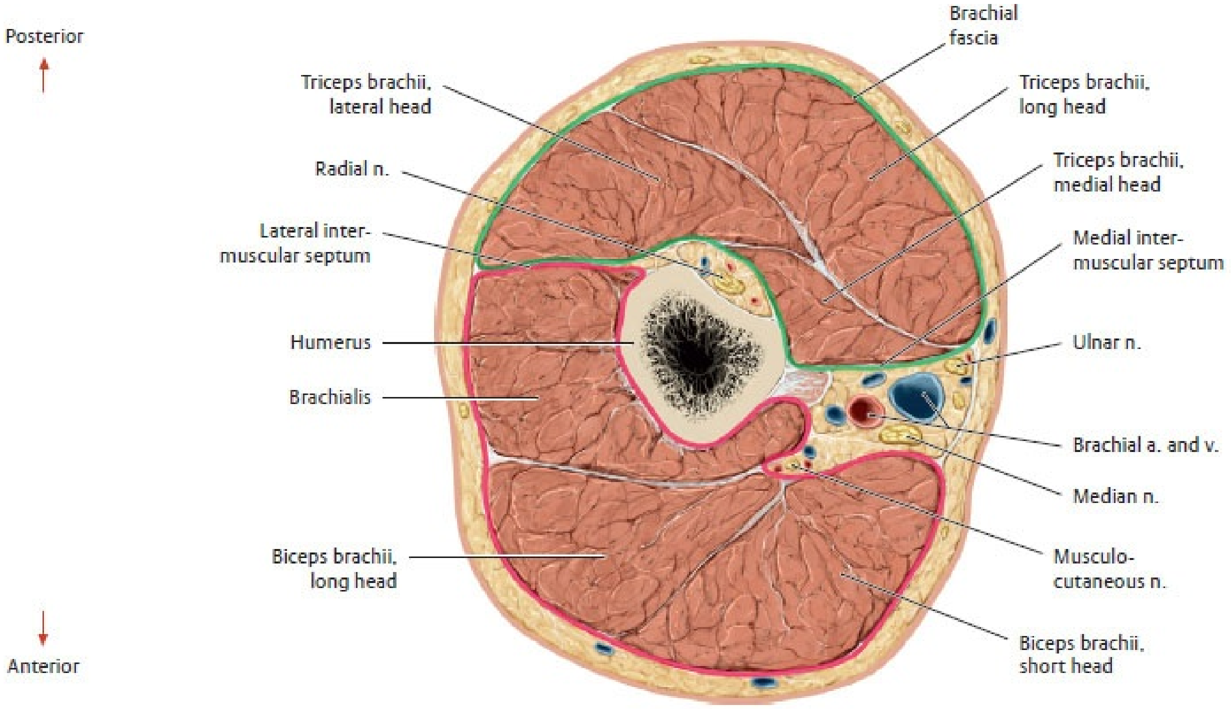

Deltoid
Pectoralis major
Coraco-brachialis
Teres major
Biceps brachii, long head
Biceps brachii, short head
Humerus
Biceps brachii
Brachio-radialis
Brachialis
Medial epicondyle
Biceps brachii
Biceps brachii tendon
Brachio-radialis
Extensor carpi radialis longus
Extensor carpi radialis brevis
Radius
Brachio-radialis
Flexor pollicis longus
Abductor pollicis longus
Flexor carpi radialis tendon
Thenar muscles
Brachialis
Medial epicondyle, common head of flexors
Bicipital aponeurosis
Pronator teres
Flexor carpi radialis
Palmaris longus
Ulna
Flexor carpi ulnaris
Flexor digitorum superficialis
Palmaris longus tendon
Flexor retinaculum (transverse carpal ligament)
Palmaris brevis
Palmar aponeurosis

A Dissection of the arm.

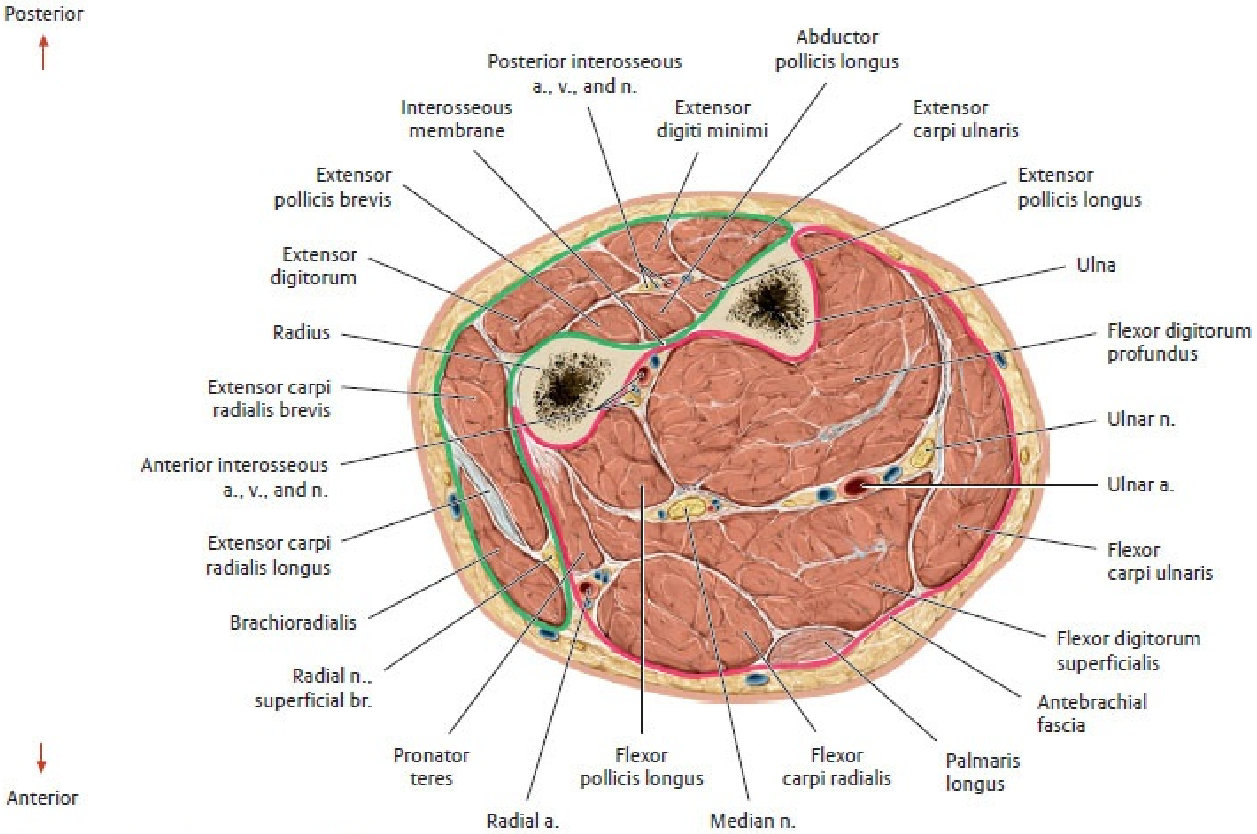
B Dissection of the forearm.

Fig. 19.38 Windowed dissection

Right limb, anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Posterior
Anterior
Brachial fascia
Triceps brachii, lateral head
Triceps brachii, long head
Radial n.
Triceps brachii, medial head
Lateral inter-muscular septum
Medial inter-muscular septum
Humerus
Ulnar n.
Brachialis
Brachial a. and v.
Median n.
Musculo-cutaneous n.
Biceps brachii, long head
Biceps brachii, short head

A Arm (plane of section in **Fig. 19.38A**).


Posterior
Anterior
Abductor pollicis longus
Posterior interosseous a., v., and n.
Interosseous membrane
Extensor digiti minimi
Extensor carpi ulnaris
Extensor pollicis brevis
Extensor pollicis longus
Extensor digitorum
Ulna
Radius
Flexor digitorum profundus
Extensor carpi radialis brevis
Ulnar n.
Anterior interosseous a., v., and n.
Ulnar a.
Extensor carpi radialis longus
Flexor carpi ulnaris
Brachioradialis
Flexor digitorum superficialis
Radial n., superficial br.
Antebrachial fascia
Pronator teres
Flexor pollicis longus
Flexor carpi radialis
Palmaris longus
Radial a.
Median n.

B Forearm (plane of section in **Fig. 19.38B**).

Fig. 19.39 Transverse sections

Right limb, proximal (superior) view.

The anterior compartment is outlined in *pink* and the posterior compartment in *green*. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

20 Clinical Imaging Basics of the Upper Limb

Radiographs are always the first imaging choice in evaluation of bones and joints in the setting of trauma or pain **(Table 20.1)**. Radiographs, or x-rays, are highly sensitive for the detection of fractures and misalignment of joints.

Computed tomography (CT) provides significantly more detail of bone and is sometimes helpful for seeing subtle nondisplaced fractures, especially in older adults with decreased bone mass. The superior soft tissue contrast of magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) makes it the ideal imaging method for evaluation of the soft tissue components of joints.

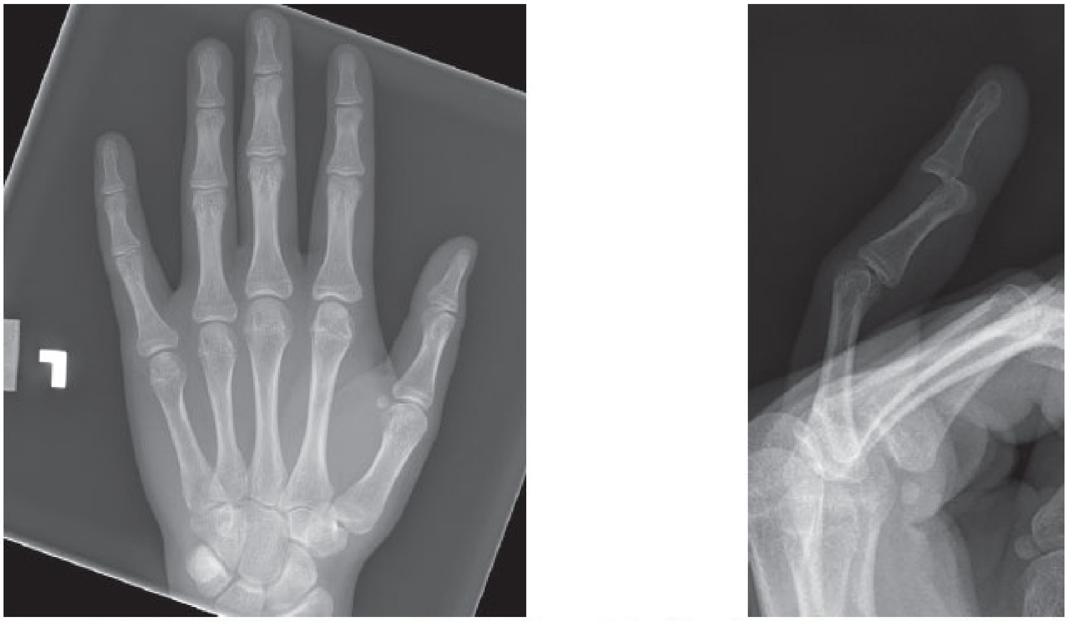
Ultrasound has the benefit of real time imaging and is good for seeing superficial tissues, but its utility decreases substantially in larger patients. Ultrasound can also be very useful for imageguided procedures such as joint aspirations and joint injections. Additionally, in small children ultrasound can be useful for the anatomic evaluation of cartilaginous growth plates, especially in the growing elbow (see **Table 20.1**).

Since a radiograph is a summation shadow, all bones need to be evaluated in at least two projections (orthogonal) and all joints should be evaluated in at least three projections. The orthogonal view allows evaluation of the position of structures that may be overlapping in a single projection **(Fig. 20.1)**. When viewing a bone x-ray, the cortical edge should be smooth along its entire length, and the trabecular pattern of the bone should be uniform throughout. Joints should be evaluated for even spacing, smoothness of the reticular surface, and alignment of the joint itself **(Fig. 20.2)**.

Table 20.1 Suitability of Imaging Modalities for the Upper Limb

Modality	Clinical Uses
Radiographs (X-rays)	Primarily used to evaluate the bones and alignment of joints
CT (computed tomography)	Usually reserved as a troubleshooting tool to evaluate for subtle nondisplaced fractures

MRI (magnetic resonance imaging)	One of the most important imaging modalities for the evaluation of joints, specifically the non-osseous components of the joint— cartilage, ligaments, tendons, and muscles
Ultrasound	Limited role in evaluation of superficial soft tissue abnormalities, and for guidance of interventional procedures involving the joints. In children, ultrasound plays a larger role in diagnosis of joint disorders and for evaluation of cartilaginous growth plates.

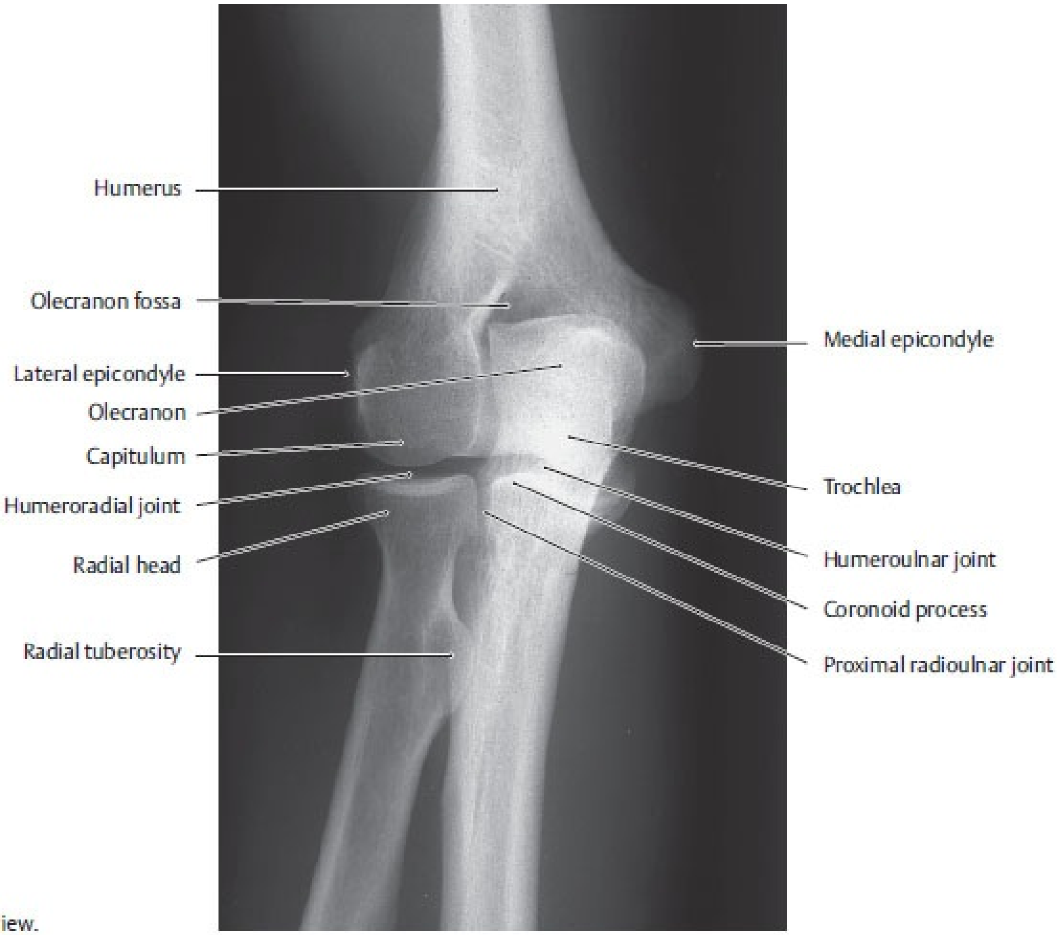


A Anteroposterior (AP) view of the hand appears normal, even the 5th digit.

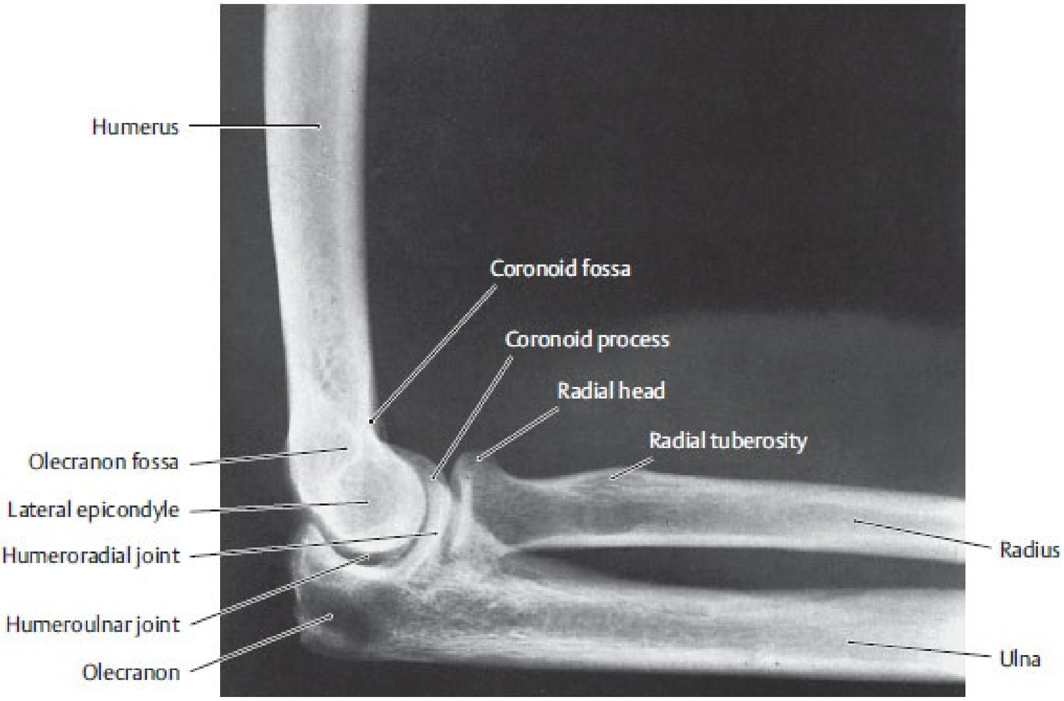
B Coned down (magnified) view of the 5th digit *(arrow)* shows that the distal phalanx is dislocated and positioned dorsally. This is not seen on the frontal projection since there is no lateral displacement of the bone, and the ends of the bones at the DIP joint line up in the AP summation shadow.

Fig. 20.1 Radiograph of the hand demonstrating the importance of orthogonal views.

(Courtesy of Joseph Makris, MD, Baystate Medical Center.)


Humerus
Olecranon fossa
Medial epicondyle
Lateral epicondyle
Olecranon
Capitulum
Humeroradial joint
Trochlea
Radial head
Humeroulnar joint
Coronoid process
Radial tuberosity
Proximal radioulnar joint

A Anteroposterior view.


Humerus
Coronoid fossa
Coronoid process
Radial head
Radial tuberosity
Olecranon fossa
Lateral epicondyle
Humeroradial joint
Radius
Humeroulnar joint
Ulna
Olecranon

B Lateral view.

Fig. 20.2 Radiograph of the elbow

(From Moeller TB, Reif E. Pocket Atlas of Sectional Anatomy, Vol 3, 2nd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2017.)

While x-rays are best for evaluating bones after trauma for fractures, MRI is the best choice for imaging soft tissues around the joints and for evaluation of the bone marrow (**Figs. 20.3** and **20.4**). Infiltration of the bone marrow from cancer or infection (osteomyelitis) can be invisible on x-rays early in the disease and still very subtle even as the disease progresses. MRI on the other hand is very sensitive for even the earliest changes in bone marrow and is essential for initial imaging and surveillance of these processes (**Fig. 20.5**). MRI is also helpful in assessing the extent of disease and adjacent soft tissue involvement, evaluation for metastases, surgical planning, disease staging, and monitoring effectiveness of therapy.

MRI arthrography involves injecting contrast material into a joint prior to MR imaging to better evaluate the key soft tissue components of the joint, such as the labrum, ligaments, and articular cartilage cartilage (**Fig. 20.6**). The joint injection procedure itself is usually performed with imaging guidance using ultrasound or fluoroscopy.

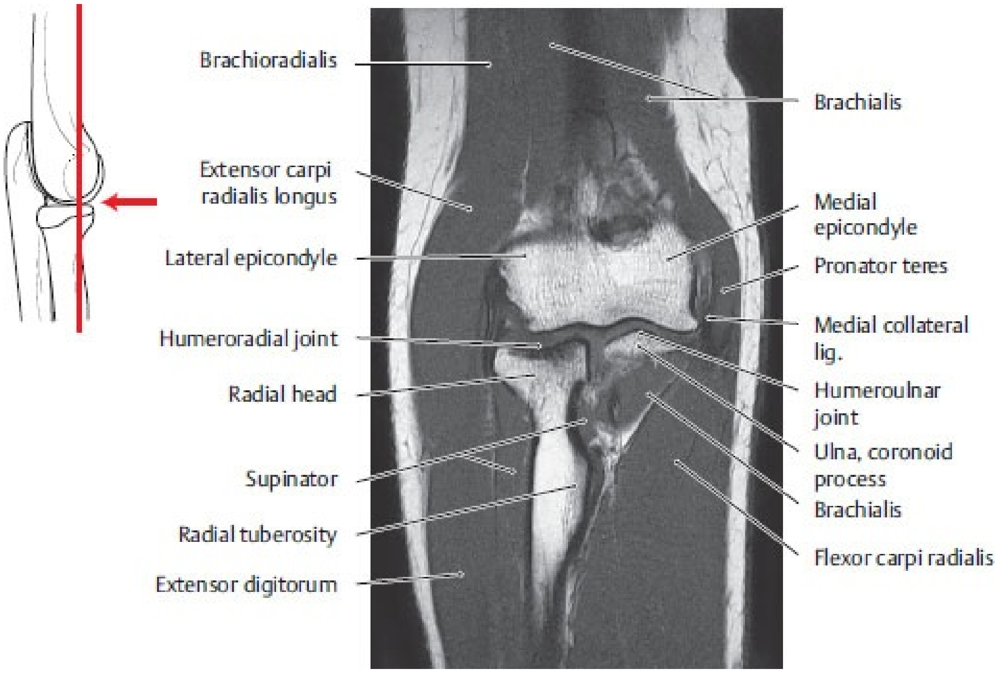

Brachioradialis
Extensor carpi radialis longus
Lateral epicondyle
Humeroradial joint
Radial head
Supinator
Radial tuberosity
Extensor digitorum
Brachialis
Medial epicondyle
Pronator teres
Medial collateral lig.
Humeroulnar joint
Ulna, coronoid process
Brachialis
Flexor carpi radialis

Fig. 20.3 MRI of the elbow

Coronal section.

In this sequence, fat is *white* (the fat in the bone marrow causes the bones to be a *very light gray/white* as well). Muscles are *dark gray* and ligaments and cortical bone are *black*.

The utility of MRI is the ability to see the ligaments, tendons, muscles, and cartilage. A muscle tear, tendon rupture, or ligamentous tear is invisible on an X-ray, but well demonstrated on MRI. (From Moeller TB, Reif E. Pocket Atlas of Sectional Anatomy, Vol 3, 2nd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2017.)

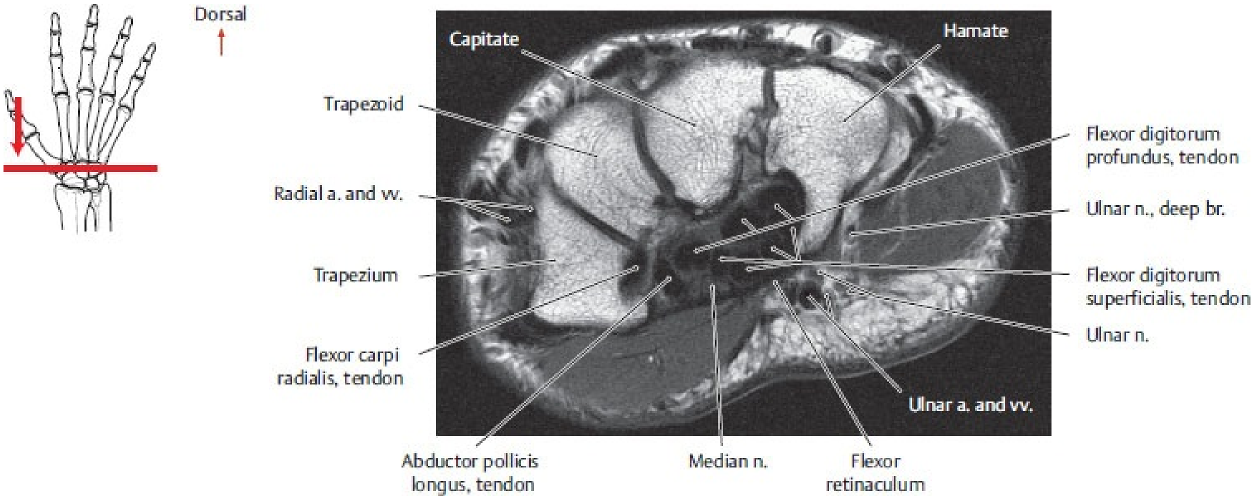

Dorsal
Capitate
Hamate
Trapezoid
Radial a. and vv.
Trapezium
Flexor carpi radialis, tendon
Abductor pollicis longus, tendon
Median n.
Flexor retinaculum
Ulnar a. and vv.
Ulnar n.
Flexor digitorum superficialis, tendon
Ulnar n., deep br.
Flexor digitorum profundus, tendon

Fig. 20.4 MRI of the right wrist

Transverse (axial) section, distal view.

In this sequence, fat is *white*, muscles are *dark gray*, and nerves and tendons are black. Note the detail of the tendons and nerves crossing the wrist through the carpal tunnel. (From Moeller TB, Reif E. Pocket Atlas of Sectional Anatomy, Vol 3, 2nd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2017.)

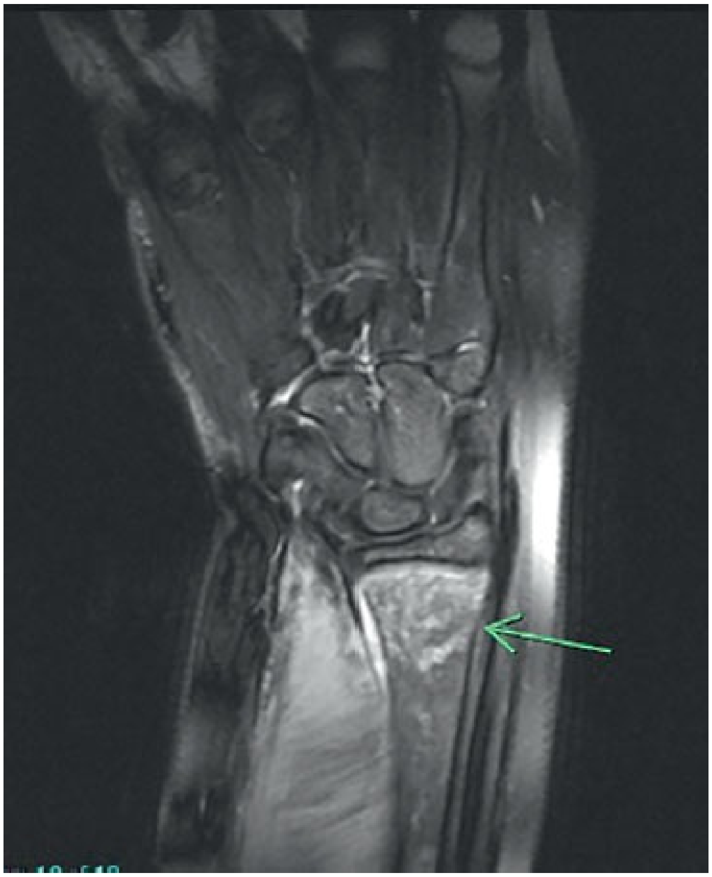


Fig. 20.5 Osteomyelitis

Coronal MRI of the right wrist in a teenager with pain, swelling, fever, and elevated white blood cell count. In this sequence, normal bone marrow should be uniformly dark. Note the patchy bright (*whiter*) areas in the distal radial metaphysis indicative of osteomyelitis in this patient (*arrow*). (Courtesy of Joseph Makris, MD, Baystate Medical Center.)

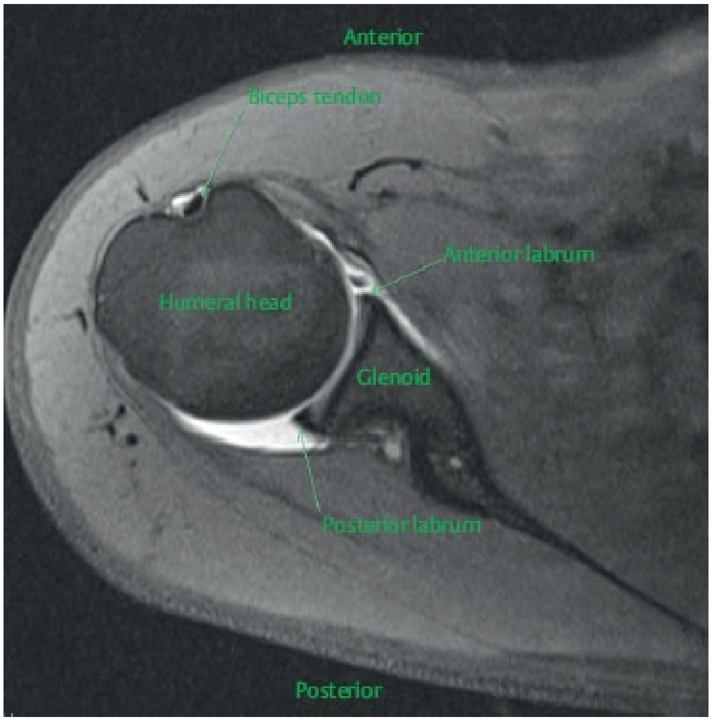

Anterior
Biceps tendon
Anterior labrum
Humeral head
Glenoid
Posterior labrum
Posterior

Fig. 20.6 MRI arthrogram of the shoulder

Axial image of a normal right shoulder at the level of the mid joint. The MRI was performed after contrast was injected directly into the joint space. The contrast fluid (white on this image) distends the joint capsule and outlines the articular cartilage, labrum, and ligaments, increasing sensitivity for evaluation of injuries to these structures. (Courtesy of Joseph Makris, MD, Baystate Medical Center.)

Unit VI Review Questions: Upper Limb

1. A patient complains of tingling and pain in the upper arm. Upon further examination and additional tests, you determine that the axillary artery has been occluded by atherosclerosis. The patient, however, still has a radial pulse at the wrist. Which of the following arteries could provide a collateral circulation around the occlusion?

- **A.** Suprascapular and circumflex scapular arteries
- **B.** Suprascapular and lateral thoracic arteries
- **C.** Posterior circumflex humeral and anterior circumflex humeral arteries
- **D.** Superior thoracic and lateral thoracic arteries
- **E.** Posterior intercostals and lateral thoracic arteries

2. The deep palmar arch of the hand is formed mainly by the

- **A.** ulnar artery
- **B.** radial artery
- **C.** brachial artery
- **D.** common palmar digital arteries
- **E.** palmar metacarpal arteries

3. Each cord of the brachial plexus

- **A.** contains nerve fibers from C5 to T1 levels of the spinal cord
- **B.** is formed from the junction of one anterior and one posterior division
- **C.** gives a branch to the median nerve
- **D.** lies within the axilla
- **E.** gives rise to a subscapular nerve (upper, middle, and lower)

4. Nerves often pair with arteries to travel as neurovascular bundles. Which of the following is not an accurate pairing?

- **A.** Axillary nerve and posterior circumflex humeral artery

B. Median nerve and brachial artery
C. Musculocutaneous nerve and circumflex scapular artery
D. Radial nerve and deep brachial artery
E. Long thoracic nerve and lateral thoracic artery

5. During a radical mastectomy on a 50-year-old woman, the surgeon does a careful but thorough axillary node dissection. What nerve lies along the medial wall of the axilla and is particularly vulnerable during this procedure?

A. Lateral branch of posterior intercostal
B. Musculocutaneous
C. Lateral pectoral
D. Long thoracic
E. Dorsal scapular

6. One of your patients ruptured the tendon of the long head of the biceps brachii. Although he is bothered by the unattractive bulge that formed in his anterior arm, he is surprised to find that he has lost little flexor strength. You confirm that the brachialis muscle has greater leverage at the joint and therefore is the more powerful flexor of the elbow. Where does the brachialis insert?

A. Radial tuberosity
B. Ulnar tuberosity
C. Medial epicondyle
D. Bicipital aponeurosis
E. Olecranon

7. Which part(s) of the triceps brachii crosses/cross the glenohumeral joint?

A. Medial head
B. Lateral head
C. Long head
D. Lateral and medial heads
E. Lateral and long heads

8. Structures that pass through the quadrangular space of the upper limb include the

- **A.** radial nerve
- **B.** suprascapular nerve
- **C.** posterior humeral circumflex artery
- **D.** anterior humeral circumflex artery
- **E.** deep brachial artery

9. Which of the following bones articulates with the radius at the wrist?

- **A.** Pisiform
- **B.** Hamate
- **C.** Capitate
- **D.** Trapezium
- **E.** Scaphoid

10. The flexor retinaculum

- **A.** forms the floor of the ulnar tunnel
- **B.** forms the roof of the carpal tunnel
- **C.** is continuous with the palmar aponeurosis
- **D.** is continuous with the palmaris longus
- **E.** All of the above

11. As a second-year resident doing a pediatric surgery rotation, you set up an arterial line on a 6-year-old girl prior to surgery. You choose the radial artery of her left (nondominant) hand. Because you know that the procedure can result in occlusion of the artery, you verify that the collateral circulation to the hand is patent. The radial artery

- **A.** forms the superficial arch of the hand
- **B.** passes superficial to the anatomic snuffbox
- **C.** supplies the muscles of the posterior compartment through its posterior interosseous branch
- **D.** supplies the princeps pollicis artery of the thumb

E. lies medial to the tendon of the flexor carpi radialis in the wrist

12. During your first training session as a phlebotomist, you are relieved to find that your “patient” is a 24-year-old weight lifter whose superficial veins stand out dramatically against his overdeveloped muscles. Superficial veins of the upper limb

A. include a basilic vein that runs in the deltopectoral groove
B. include a cephalic vein that joins the brachial veins in the arm
C. drain into the veins of the deep venous system via perforating veins
D. course with the arteries as paired accompanying veins
E. have bidirectional valves that allow flow in either direction

13. An injury to the lower brachial plexus (Klumpke’s palsy) would affect

A. sensation in the nail bed of the 5th digit
B. abduction of the 2nd through 5th digits
C. adduction of the thumb
D. adduction of the wrist
E. All of the above

14. While moonlighting in the emergency department one night, you treat a 14-year-old gang member who was stabbed in the supraclavicular region of the neck 2 cm above the middle third of the clavicle. A chest X-ray confirms that he has a pneumothorax. What other structure could be injured in this area?

A. Axillary nerve
B. Pectoralis minor
C. Subscapular artery
D. Posterior cord of the brachial plexus
E. Cephalic vein

15. The serratus anterior muscle

A. forms a scapulothoracic joint with the external intercostal muscles

B. is innervated by a branch of the posterior cord
C. elevates the scapula off the thoracic wall
D. rotates the scapula laterally during abduction of the arm above the horizontal plane
E. originates from the subscapular fossa

16. A professional rodeo cowboy fell off his horse and fractured his humerus at the anatomic neck and the lesser tubercle. Which of the following muscles inserts on this tubercle?

A. Supraspinatus
B. Infraspinatus
C. Subscapularis
D. Coracobrachialis
E. Teres major

17. Damage to which nerve would most affect elbow flexion?

A. Radial nerve
B. Ulnar nerve
C. Median nerve
D. Musculocutaneous nerve
E. Axillary nerve

18. At a neighborhood block party several children engage in a tug-of-war. Suddenly, Jason, a 5-year-old boy, hugs his right elbow and cries out in pain. The inconsolable child is eventually taken to the local clinic, where the pediatrician recognizes that Jason has subluxed (partially dislocated) his radial head. By gently supinating the flexed arm, the doctor restores it to its normal position. Which of the following is true regarding the proximal radioulnar joint?

A. The radial head rotates within the annular ligament.
B. It includes a hinge-type joint between the head of the radius and capitulum of the humerus.
C. The biceps brachii pronates the joint.
D. An articular disk separates the radius and ulna.

E. The subluxation of the radial head results from a tear of the radial collateral ligament.

19. On your first day of shadowing in your preceptor’s office, you are asked to get some baseline information on the patients. You start by taking their pulse. The radial artery is easiest to palpate in the wrist where it lies immediately lateral to the tendon of the

A. flexor carpi radialis
B. superficial flexor digitorum
C. flexor pollicis longus
D. palmaris longus
E. extensor carpi radialis

20. You examine a 14-year-old girl in the emergency department. She has a puncture wound from a dog bite in the flesh over the middle phalanx of her 5th digit. The incident occurred 2 days ago, and the finger is inflamed and likely infected. What are your thoughts regarding possible spread of the infection via the synovial sheath?

A. It will spread into the superficial space on the dorsum of the hand.
B. It will spread to the common flexor sheath in the wrist.
C. It will spread to the adjacent finger.
D. It will remain confined to the sheath of the infected finger.
E. A and B are correct.

21. The axillary artery

A. begins at the lateral border of the 1st rib
B. lies anterior to the axillary vein
C. ends by dividing into brachial and deep brachial arteries
D. passes through the axilla between the pectoralis major and pectoralis minor muscles
E. branches include the thyrocervical trunk

22. Axillary lymph nodes that lie medial to the pectoralis minor include

- **A.** pectoral nodes
- **B.** humeral nodes
- **C.** apical nodes
- **D.** central nodes
- **E.** subscapular nodes

23. The C4 anterior ramus is a component of

- **A.** the pre-fixed plexus
- **B.** the upper trunk
- **C.** the posterior cord
- **D.** the axillary nerve
- **E.** All of the above

24. A young man suffered a crushing injury to his right arm, fracturing his humerus at midshaft and damaging the nerve that runs in the posterior compartment. What functional loss would you expect from this injury?

- **A.** Inability to extend the elbow
- **B.** Inability to supinate the hand
- **C.** Inability to abduct the thumb
- **D.** Inability to extend the wrist
- **E.** All of the above

25. One of your orthopedic colleagues introduces you, an anatomist, to his patient, a famous baseball pitcher, who suffers from chronic rotator cuff pain. He asks you to demonstrate the rotator cuff on a cadaver specimen and explain the anatomy of this type of injury. You tell him the following:

- **A.** Tendons of the rotator cuff muscles insert onto the capsule of the glenohumeral joint.
- **B.** The supraspinatus tendon passes through the subacromial space between the shoulder joint and the coracoacromial arch.
- **C.** An abnormal communication between the subacromial bursa and

glenohumeral joint cavity can result from rupture of the supraspinatus tendon.

D. Rupture of the supraspinatus tendon will impair the patient's ability to initiate abduction of the arm.

E. All of the above

26. Which of the following muscles has no attachment on the humerus?

A. Deltoid
B. Coracobrachialis
C. Flexor digitorum superficialis
D. Pronator teres
E. Biceps brachii

27. Which muscle provides strong adduction of the glenohumeral joint?

A. Teres minor
B. Pectoralis major
C. Pectoralis minor
D. Short head of the biceps brachii
E. Subscapularis

28. A young woman riding a 10-speed bicycle accidentally engaged the front brake, was thrown over the handlebars, and landed on her outstretched hands. In the emergency department, imaging of the elbow revealed a subtle fracture of the radial neck that allowed proximal movement of the radius relative to the ulna, which also suggested a tear in the interosseous membrane. Which movements were most impaired by this injury?

A. Flexion of the wrist
B. Extension of the elbow
C. Extension of the digits
D. Abduction of the thumb
E. Adduction of the thumb

29. An elderly man had injured his wrist in a fall and is now experiencing tingling in his fingers and a weakened grip. A lateral X-ray of the wrist shows that his lunate has dislocated and is pressing on the structures within the carpal tunnel. Which of the following structures pass through the carpal tunnel?

- **A.** Ulnar artery
- **B.** Radial artery
- **C.** Flexor carpi radialis
- **D.** Flexor pollicis longus
- **E.** Palmaris longus

30. In the anatomy lab you are fascinated by the deep dissection of the hand because as an amateur violinist you appreciate that the intrinsic muscles of the palm are important for the fine movements of the hand. Which of the following is true for both the lumbricals and the interossei muscles?

- **A.** All are innervated by the median nerve.
- **B.** All are innervated by the ulnar nerve.
- **C.** They flex the metacarpophalangeal joints.
- **D.** They arise from the tendons of the flexor digitorum profundus.
- **E.** They abduct or adduct the fingers.

31. Your 7-year-old nephew suffered a distal clavicular fracture after falling from a tree. Which of the following structures would likely be disrupted with this type of injury?

- **A.** Interclavicular ligaments
- **B.** Coracohumeral ligament
- **C.** Acromioclavicular joint
- **D.** Scapulothoracic joint
- **E.** Coracoacromial ligament

32. Your grandmother tripped on the stairs and landed on her outstretch arms. In the emergency department an initial physical exam strongly indicated a fractured scaphoid. What part of the exam suggested this diagnosis?

- **A.** Pain over palmar surface of the wrist
- **B.** Pain over the ulnar styloid process
- **C.** Displacement of the radial styloid process
- **D.** Pain in the anatomic snuffbox
- **E.** Inability to oppose the thumb

33. Deep fascia of the limbs forms discrete compartments of muscles that usually share similar functions and innervations. The effects of trauma are often limited to the contents of a single compartment. Muscles effected by trauma to the anterior forearm compartment would include

- **A.** brachioradialis
- **B.** pronator teres
- **C.** supinator
- **D.** abductor pollicis longus
- **E.** extensor carpi ulnaris

34. As a pediatric orthopedist, you’ve created some simple and fun shortcuts for diagnosing nerve injuries to the hand in children. Which of the following activities would selectively test the indicated nerve?

- **A.** “Thumbs up” sign (extending the thumb away from the fist): median nerve
- **B.** “OK” sign (forming a circle with the 1st and 2nd digits): radial nerve
- **C.** “Peace” sign (separating the 2nd and 3rd digits while extended): ulnar nerve
- **D.** All the above
- **E.** None of the above

35. A young woman is seen in the local clinic following a fall she suffered while hiking. She has severe pain and swelling of her left elbow but a lateral x-ray confirms that there is no fracture. You suspect a soft tissue injury. What additional imaging modality would you choose to confirm this?

- **A.** Frontal x-ray
- **B.** MRI
- **C.** CT
- **D.** Ultrasound

36. You convinced your boyfriend to help you move some boxes of books out of your basement. During the move he felt a sharp pain in his neck that remained throughout the following day. His physician recommended an MRI of his neck, which revealed a rupture of his middle scalene muscle caused by the strain of steadying his trunk as he lifted the heavy boxes. In addition, he demonstrated a “winged” scapula, indicating that there was significant damage to his long thoracic neve, which passes through the middle scalene before descending into the neck and axilla. Which activity would be affected by injury to the long thoracic nerve?

- **A.** Adducting his arm to touch the elbow of the opposite side
- **B.** Internally rotating the arm to touch the back of his waist
- **C.** Externally rotating his arm to throw a baseball
- **D.** Flexing his arm directly forward
- **E.** Abducting his arm above his head

Answers and Explanations

1. **A.** The suprascapular and transverse cervical branches of the subclavian artery and the thoracodorsal and circumflex scapular branches of the distal segment of the axillary artery participate in a scapular arcade that provides a collateral circulation that would circumvent the occlusion (Section 18.4).

B. The lateral thoracic artery does not supply the scapula, nor does it anastomose with the suprascapular artery.

C. The anterior and posterior humeral circumflex arteries anastomose around the neck of the humerus but do not anastomose with arteries proximal to the occlusion.

D. Neither the superior thoracic artery nor the lateral thoracic artery supplies the scapular region.

E. Posterior intercostal arteries supply the medial scapular region, but they do not anastomose with the lateral thoracic artery.

2. **B.** The deep palmar arch is formed mainly by the radial artery (Section 18.4).

A. The ulnar artery forms the superficial palmar arch.

C. The brachial artery begins at the lateral border of the axilla and terminates in the cubital fossa.

D. The common palmar digital arteries are branches of the superficial palmar arch in the palm of the hand.

E. The palmar metacarpal arteries arise from the deep palmar arch in the palm of the hand.

3. **D.** Each cord of the brachial plexus lies within the axilla (Section 18.4).

A. The posterior cord contains fibers from C5 to T1; the medial cord contains fibers from C8 and T1; the lateral cord contains fibers from C5 to C7.

B. The posterior divisions form the posterior cord; only anterior divisions form the medial and the lateral cords.

C. The median nerve is formed from the medial and lateral cords.

E. The subscapular nerves arise from the posterior cord.

4. **C.** The musculocutaneous nerve passes from the axilla to pierce the coracobrachialis of the anterior arm. The circumflex scapular artery passes through the triangular space into the scapular region (Section 19.2).

A. The axillary artery and posterior circumflex humeral artery pass through the quadrangular space to the deltoid region.

B. The median nerve and brachial artery descend on the medial side of the biceps brachii and enter the cubital fossa.

D. The radial nerve and deep brachial artery wind around the posterior humerus through the triceps hiatus.

E. The long thoracic nerve and lateral thoracic artery descend on the medial wall of the axilla to supply the serratus anterior muscle.

5. **D.** The long thoracic nerve runs superficial to, and innervates, the serratus anterior, which forms the medial wall of the axilla. Injury to this nerve can result in a “winged” scapula (Section 19.1).

A. In the axilla the intercostal nerves run deep to the serratus anterior and external intercostal muscles and are not vulnerable to injury.

B. The musculocutaneous nerve leaves the axilla just inferior to the glenohumeral joint where it enters the coracobrachialis muscle.

C. The lateral pectoral nerve passes anteriorly to penetrate the pectoralis major muscle.

E. The dorsal scapular nerve descends posteriorly from the upper roots of the plexus to innervate the levator scapulae and rhomboid muscles.

6. **B.** The brachialis muscle inserts on the ulnar tuberosity of the ulna (Section 19.3).

A. The biceps brachii inserts on the radial tuberosity.

C. The coronoid process forms the anterior lip of the trochlear notch of the ulna and is the origin of the ulnar head of the pronator teres.

D. The bicipital aponeurosis is a fascial extension of the biceps brachii.

E. The olecranon of the ulna forms the posterior prominence of the elbow and is the insertion for the triceps brachii and anconeus muscles.

7. **C.** The long head of the triceps brachii crosses the glenohumeral joint to attach to the infraglenoid tubercle, where it contributes to extension of the joint (Section 19.2).

A. The medial head arises from the medial aspect of the humeral shaft. It joins with the lateral and long heads to insert on the olecranon of the ulna.

B. The lateral head arises from the lateral aspect of the humeral shaft. It joins with the medial and long heads to insert on the olecranon of the ulna.

D. The medial and lateral heads arise from the humeral shaft and cross only the elbow joint.

E. The lateral head arises from the shaft of the humerus and crosses the elbow joint. The long head originates on the infraglenoid tubercle of the scapula and crosses the glenohumeral and elbow joints.

8. **C.** The posterior humeral circumflex artery and the axillary nerve pass through the quadrangular space (Section 19.2).

A. The radial nerve passes through the triceps hiatus.

B. The suprascapular nerve passes through the scapular notch.

D. The anterior humeral circumflex artery runs horizontally beneath the coracobrachialis and the short head of the biceps brachii to encircle the neck of the humerus.

E. The deep brachial artery passes through the triceps hiatus with the radial nerve.

9. **E.** The radius articulates distally with the scaphoid and lunate bones of the wrist (Section 19.5).

A. The pisiform on the medial side of the wrist articulates with the triquetrum.

B. The hamate articulates with the capitate, lunate, triquetrum, and 4th and 5th metacarpal bones.

C. The capitate articulates with the hamate, trapezoid, scaphoid, lunate, and 3rd metacarpal.

D. The trapezium articulates with the trapezoid, scaphoid, and 1st metacarpal.

10. **E.** The flexor retinaculum forms the roof of the carpal tunnel and floor of the ulnar tunnel. As a thickening of the deep fascia of the palm, it is continuous with the palmar aponeurosis, palmaris longus, transverse metacarpal ligament, and fibrous digital sheaths (Sections 19.5 and 19.6).

A. The flexor retinaculum forms the floor of the ulnar tunnel; the palmar carpal ligament form its roof. B through D are also correct (E).

B. The carpal tunnel is a fascio-osseous tunnel. Carpal bones form the floor and sides; the flexor retinaculum forms the roof. A, C, and D are also correct (E).

C. The flexor retinaculum is continuous with the tough palmar aponeurosis of the hand. A, B, and D are also correct (E).

D. The palmaris longus passes over the carpal tunnel and inserts on the flexor retinaculum and palmar aponeurosis. A through C are also correct (E).

11. **D.** The princeps pollicis arises from the radial artery at the base of the 1st metacarpal and divides into two digital arteries of the thumb (Section 18.4).

A. The ulnar artery forms the superficial palmar arch. The radial artery forms the deep palmar arch.

B. The radial artery courses along the floor of the anatomic snuffbox.

C. The posterior interosseous artery, which supplies muscles of the posterior forearm compartment, arises from the common interosseous artery, a branch of the ulnar artery in the cubital fossa.

E. The radial artery lies lateral to the tendon of the flexor carpi radialis at the wrist.

12. **C.** The veins of the superficial venous system drain into the deep veins via perforating veins (Section 18.4).

A. The cephalic vein courses along the deltopectoral groove before terminating in the axillary vein.

B. The basilic vein joins with the paired brachial veins to form the axillary vein.

D. Veins of the deep venous system travel with the arteries as paired accompanying veins. There is no superficial arterial system that accompanies the superficial veins.

E. Veins of the limbs have unidirectional valves that prevent pooling of blood and facilitate flow back toward the heart.

13. **E.** The ulnar nerve arises from the lower part of the plexus. Its dorsal cutaneous branch in the hand supplies the palmar and dorsal surfaces of the 4th (half) and 5th digits, and its deep branch supplies the dorsal interossei muscles that abduct the fingers and the adductor pollicis that adducts the thumb. It also innervates the flexor carpi ulnaris that assists in adduction of the wrist (Section 18.4).

A. The ulnar nerve's (C8–T1) dorsal cutaneous branch in the hand supplies the palmar and dorsal surfaces of the 4th (half) and 5th digits. B through D are also correct (E).

B. The ulnar nerve's (C8–T1) deep branch in the hand supplies the dorsal interossei muscles that abduct the fingers. A, C, and D are also correct (E).

C. The ulnar nerve's (C8–T1) deep branch in the hand supplies the adductor pollicis muscle that adducts the thumb. A, B, and D are also correct (E).

D. The ulnar nerve (C8–T1) innervates the flexor carpi ulnaris that assists the extensor carpi ulnaris (radial nerve) in adduction of the wrist. A through C are also correct (E).

14. **D.** The posterior cord is part of the supraclavicular brachial plexus and could be injured in the area (Section 18.4).

A. The terminal nerves of the brachial plexus form below the clavicle. Although damage to the supraclavicular plexus could affect the axillary nerve, the stab wound would not directly damage the nerve itself.

B. The pectoralis minor attaches to the coracoid process, which lies below the middle part of the clavicle.

C. The subscapular artery is a branch of the distal part of the axillary artery, which is infraclavicular.

E. The cephalic vein drains into the axillary vein below the clavicle and most likely would not be affected by this injury.

15. **D.** The serratus anterior pulls the inferior angle of the scapula laterally when the glenohumeral joint is abducted above the horizontal plane (Section 19.1).

A. The scapulothoracic joint is a functional relationship between the serratus anterior and subscapularis muscles.

B. The long thoracic nerve, which innervates the serratus anterior muscle, arises directly from the C5–C7 roots of the brachial plexus.

C. The serratus anterior supports the scapula against the thoracic wall. Denervation of the muscle allows the scapula to lift away from the thoracic wall, a condition known as a “winged” scapula.

E. The serratus anterior inserts on the entire medial border of the scapula.

16. **C.** The subscapularis inserts on the lesser tubercle of the humerus and fibrous capsule of the glenohumeral joint (Section 19.2).

A. The supraspinatus inserts on the greater tubercle of the humerus.

B. The infraspinatus inserts on the greater tubercle of the humerus.

D. The coracobrachialis inserts on the shaft of the middle part of the humerus.

E. The teres major inserts on the crest that extends inferiorly from the lesser tuberosity.

17. **D.** The musculocutaneous nerve innervates the biceps brachii and brachialis muscles, the primary flexors of the elbow. There would also be loss of sensation to the skin of the lateral forearm (Sections 19.2 and 19.3).

A. Damage to the radial nerve results in wrist drop and loss of sensation to the dorsum of the hand and the proximal segments of the 1st through 3rd digits and half of the 4th digit.

B. Damage to the ulnar nerve may cause paresthesia (numbness and tingling) in the forearm, 4th and 5th fingers, or paralysis of most of the intrinsic muscles of the hand (so-called claw hand deformity).

C. Damage to the median nerve above the cubital fossa will cause the inability to flex the proximal interphalangeal joint of the 1st to 3rd digits and the inability to flex the distal interphalangeal joints of the 2nd and 3rd digits. This results in “benediction hand” (2nd and 3rd finger are partially extended) when trying to form a fist. It also causes the inability to flex the terminal phalanx of the thumb (due to damage of flexor pollicis longus) and loss of sensation over the lateral aspect of the hand.

E. Damage to the axillary nerve causes paralysis of the deltoid muscle, resulting in weakened flexion and extension of the shoulder and the inability to abduct the arm above the horizontal.

18. **A.** The annular ligament forms a circular cuff around the radial head that allows the bone to rotate in the joint (Section 19.4).

B. The hinge-type joint between the radius and capitulum of the humerus is the humeroradial joint.

C. The biceps brachii inserts on the tuberosity of the radius and, therefore, supinates the joint when contracted.

D. In the proximal radioulnar joint the radius articulates at the radial notch of the ulna. An articular disk separates the radius and ulna in the distal radioulnar joint.

E. Subluxation of the radial head results from a laxity of the annular ligament.

19. **A.** The radial artery descends on the lateral side of the forearm and at the wrist lies immediately lateral to the tendon of the flexor carpi radialis (Section 19.5).

B. The tendons of the superficial flexor digitorum lie in the middle of the wrist, medial to the radial artery.

C. The tendon of the flexor pollicis longus lies lateral to the median nerve and medial to the tendon of the flexor carpi radialis and to the radial artery.

D. The palmaris longus runs superficial to the flexor retinaculum and medial to the flexor pollicis longus.

E. The radial artery lies medial (palmar) to the extensor carpi radialis tendon.

20. **B.** The synovial sheath of the 5th digit normally communicates with the common synovial sheath (Section 19.6).

A. The synovial sheath of the 5th digit communicates with the common synovial sheath and with that of the thumb, but it does not normally communicate with the superficial space on the dorsum of the hand.

C. The synovial sheaths of the 2nd, 3rd, and 4th digits do not normally communicate with any other tendon sheaths. It is unlikely the infection will spread to these fingers.

D. Although the infection may remain confined to the infected finger, the synovial sheath of the 5th digit communicates with that of the thumb and with the common tendon sheath. Therefore, the concern is that it will spread via this route to the thumb, wrist, and forearm.

E. The synovial sheath of the 5th digit normally communicates with the common flexor sheath at the wrist but not with the superficial space on the dorsum of the hand.

21. **A.** The subclavian artery continues as the axillary artery at the lateral border of the 1st rib (Section 18.4).

B. The axillary artery lies posterior to the axillary vein.

C. The brachial artery is a continuation of the axillary artery in the axilla. The deep brachial artery is one of the branches of the brachial artery.

D. The axillary artery passes through the axilla posterior to the pectoralis minor muscle.

E. The thyrocervical trunk is a branch of the subclavian artery.

22. **C.** The apical nodes are the nodes of the upper infraclavicular group. These lie medial to the pectoralis minor muscle along the axillary vein and adjacent to the proximal part of the axillary artery (Section 18.4).

A. Pectoral nodes are part of the lower axillary group that lies lateral to the pectoralis minor.

B. Interpectoral nodes are part of the middle axillary group that lies between the pectoralis major and pectoralis minor muscles.

D. Central nodes are part of the lower axillary group that lies deep to the pectoralis minor.

E. The subscapular nodes are part of the lower axillary group that lies along the posterior axillary fold.

23. **A.** The brachial plexus contains the anterior rami of C5 to T1. A prefixed plexus also contains the C4 anterior ramus (Section 18.4).

B. The upper trunk contains C5 and C6 anterior rami.

C. The posterior cord contains the anterior rami of C5 to T1.

D. The axillary nerve contains the anterior rami of C5 and C6.

E. B, C, and D are incorrect.

24. **D.** Damage to the radial nerve from a midhumeral fracture results in loss of innervation to the extensor carpi radialis and extensor carpi ulnaris (Sections 18.4 and 19.4).

A. The branches of the radial nerve to the triceps brachii arise high in the arm, so a midhumeral lesion of the nerve would not affect the function of this muscle.

B. The radial nerve innervates only one of the muscles that supinate the hand, the supinator. The biceps brachii, also a supinator, is innervated by the musculocutaneous nerve.

C. Abduction of the thumb is weakened by damage to the radial nerve.

E. A, B, and C are incorrect.

25. **E.** All of the rotator cuff muscles insert on the fibrous capsule of the glenohumeral joint. The supraspinatus muscle, the most frequently involved in rotator cuff tears, passes through the narrow subacromial space and, with repetitive use, becomes frayed. Rupture of the tendon allows the overlying bursa to communicate with the joint cavity and impairs the initial phase of abduction. Later phases of abduction remain intact through the action of the deltoid muscle (Section 19.2).

A. The tendons of the rotator cuff muscles insert on, and reinforce, the fibrous capsule of the joint. B through D are also correct (E).

B. The supraspinatus tendon and subacromial bursa pass through the narrow subacromial space between the capsule of the shoulder joint and the coracoacromial arch. A, C, and D are also correct (E).

C. The supraspinatus tendon separates the subacromial and subdeltoid bursae from the joint cavity. With rupture of the tendon, a communication between the bursae and joint cavity may result. A, B, and D are also correct (E).

D. The deltoid is the primary abductor of the glenohumeral joint, but the supraspinatus assists in the first 15 degrees of abduction. A through C are also correct (E).

26. **E.** The two heads of the biceps brachii originate on the supraglenoid tubercle and coracoid process of the scapula and insert on the radial tuberosity of the radius (Sections 19.2 and 19.3).

A. The deltoid originates along the scapular spine and clavicle and inserts on the deltoid tuberosity of the humerus.

B. The coracobrachialis originates on the coracoid process of the scapula and inserts on the shaft of the humerus.

C. The flexor digitorum superficialis originates on the medial epicondyle of the humerus and upper part of the radius and inserts on the middle phalanx of the 2nd through 4th digits.

D. The pronator teres originates on the medial epicondyle of the humerus and coronoid process of the ulna and inserts on the lateral radius.

27. **B.** The broad origin of the pectoralis major on the anterior trunk wall allows it to strongly adduct the arm (Section 19.2).

A. As part of the rotator cuff, the teres minor supports the head of the humerus in the glenohumeral joint. It also weakly adducts and laterally rotates the arm.

C. The pectoralis minor draws the scapula forward and down, causing the scapula to rotate medially.

D. The short head of the biceps brachii provides some flexion, abduction, and internal rotation of the glenohumeral joint.

E. The subscapularis supports the head of the humerus in the glenohumeral joint and medially rotates the arm.

28. **D.** The function of the abductor pollicis muscle, the primary abductor of the thumb, would be greatly impaired because it originates on the interosseous membrane (Section 19.4).

A. The flexor carpi radialis and flexor carpi ulnaris originate from the medial epicondyle of the humerus and olecranon of the ulna and would be unaffected by this injury.

B. The triceps brachii, which extends the elbow, inserts on the olecranon. It would not be impaired by this injury.

C. The extensor digitorum originates from the humerus and ulna and would be unaffected by this injury.

E. The adductor of the thumb, adductor pollicis, attaches to the 2nd and 3rd metacarpals and the capitate. It would not be affected by this injury.

29. **D.** The flexor pollicis longus passes through the carpal tunnel with the flexor digitorum superficialis, flexor digitorum profundus, and median nerve (Section 19.5).

A. The ulnar artery and ulnar nerve pass through the ulnar canal at the wrist.

B. At the wrist the radial artery turns dorsally to run through the floor of the anatomic snuffbox.

C. The flexor carpi radialis crosses the wrist lateral to the carpal tunnel and inserts on the base of the 2nd metacarpal.

E. The palmaris longus passes superficial to the flexor retinaculum to insert into the palmar aponeurosis.

30. **C.** The interossei and lumbricals flex the metacarpophalangeal joints and extend the interphalangeal joints (Section 19.6).

A. Only the lateral two lumbricals are innervated by the median nerve. The medial lumbricals and all of the interossei are innervated by the ulnar nerve.

B. The ulnar nerve innervates all of the interossei and the medial two lumbricals. The lateral two lumbricals are innervated by the median nerve.

D. Only the lumbricals arise from the flexor tendons. The interossei arise from the shafts of the metacarpal bones.

E. The palmar interossei adduct the fingers, the dorsal interossei abduct the fingers. The lumbricals have no effect on these movements.

31. **C.** Distal clavicular fractures often disrupt the acromioclavicular joint and the coracoacromial ligaments (Sections 18.2 and 19.1).

A. Interclavicular ligaments connect the medial ends of the clavicles to the sternum and are less likely to be disrupted by a distal fracture.

B. The coracohumeral ligaments are part of the glenohumeral capsule and not at risk with this type of injury.

D. The scapulothoracic joint is a functional relationship between the serratus anterior and subscapularis muscles and not at risk in clavicular fractures.

E. The coracoacromial ligament is part of the coracoacromial arch, which protects the glenohumeral joint and is unlikely to be injured in this case.

32. **D.** The scaphoid is most easily palpated in the anatomic snuffbox, where it forms the floor of this space. Pain in this region is indicative of a fractured scaphoid (Section 19.5).

A. Pain over the palmar surface of the wrist would suggest a carpal fracture but not definitively indicate the scaphoid.

B. The ulna lies on the medial side of the wrist, the scaphoid is on the lateral side.

C. Displacement of the radius would suggest a fracture or rupture of some of the radial ligaments but would not be diagnostic of a scaphoid fracture.

E. Although movement of the thumb would likely be painful, the ability to oppose the thumb would remain intact since the opponens pollicis does not attach to the scaphoid.

33. **B.** The pronator teres is located in the superficial layer of the anterior forearm compartment.

A. The brachioradialis is a muscle of the posterior forearm compartment.

C. The supinator is a muscle of the posterior forearm compartment.

D. The abductor pollicis longus is a muscle of the posterior forearm compartment.

E. The extensor carpi ulnaris is a muscle of the posterior forearm compartment.

34. **C.** The “peace” sign tests the ability of the dorsal interossei muscles, innervated by the ulnar nerve, to abduct the 2nd digit (Section 19.6).

A. A “thumbs up” sign requires extension of the thumb, performed by the extensor pollicis longus and brevis, which are innervated by the radial nerve.

B. The “OK” sign tests the ability of the opponens pollicis, which is innervated by the median nerve.

D. Only answer C is correct

E. Only A and B are incorrect

35. **B.** MRI is the modality of choice for visualizing soft tissues such as muscles, tendons, and cartilage.

A. A frontal X-ray would help confirm the presence or absence of a fracture, but soft tissue injuries are not visible on an X-ray.

C. CT is excellent for visualizing bone detail but less accurate than MRI for assessing soft tissue injuries.

D. Ultrasound is most useful for image-guided procedures and visualizing superficial tissues.

36. **E.** Injury to the long thoracic nerve inhibits the serratus anterior muscle, which rotates the inferior angle of the scapula laterally, tilting the glenoid superiorly. This rotation is necessary for abduction of the arm above 90 degrees.

A. Adducting the arm across the trunk is primarily the action of the pectoralis major muscle.

B. Touching the back of the waist requires both internal rotation and extension at the shoulder joint, which are actions of the latissimus dorsi in conjunction with the pectoralis major, deltoid, and teres major.

C. The deltoid and infraspinatus are the primary external rotators of the arm.

D. The deltoid, pectoralis major, and biceps brachii are the primary flexors of the arm.

Unit VII Lower Limb

21 **Overview of the Lower Limb**

- 21.1 General Features
- 21.2 Bones of the Lower Limb
  - 21.1 Clinical Correlation: Fractures of the Femur
  - 21.2 Developmental Correlation: Bipartite Patella
- 21.3 Fascia and Compartments of the Lower Limb
- 21.4 Neurovasculature of the Lower Limb
  - 21.1 Nerves of the Lower Limb
  - 21.3 Clinical Correlation: Femoral Head Necrosis
  - 21.4 Clinical Correlation: Popliteal Aneurysm
  - 21.5 Clinical Correlation: The Dorsal Pedal Pulse
  - 21.6 Clinical Correlation: Lower Limb Ischemia
  - 21.7 Clinical Correlation: Deep Vein Thromboses (DVT)
  - 21.8 Clinical Correlation: Varicose Veins
  - 21.9 Clinical Correlation: Femoral Nerve Injury
  - 21.10 Clinical Correlation: Obturator Nerve Injury

    - 21.11 Clinical Correlation: Superior Gluteal Nerve Injury
    - 21.12 Clinical Correlation: Sciatic Nerve Injury
    - 21.13 Clinical Correlation: Tibial Nerve Injury
    - 21.14 Clinical Correlation: Common Fibular Nerve Injury
    - 21.15 Clinical Correlation: Superficial and Deep Fibular Nerve Injury

22 Functional Anatomy of the Lower Limb

- 22.1 The Pelvic Girdle
- 22.2 The Gluteal Region
    - 22.1 Gluteal Muscles
    - 22.1 Clinical Correlation: Piriformis Syndrome
- 22.3 The Hip and Thigh
    - 22.2 Movements of the Hip Joint
    - 22.3 Iliopsoas Muscle
    - 22.4 Thigh Muscles, Anterior Compartment
    - 22.5 Thigh Muscles, Medial Compartment: Superficial and Deep Layers
    - 22.6 Thigh Muscles, Posterior Compartment
    - 22.2 Clinical Correlation: Congenital Hip Dislocation
    - 22.3 Clinical Correlation: Acquired Hip Dislocation
    - 22.4 Clinical Correlation: Hamstring Strains

  - 22.5 Clinical Correlation: Femoral Hernias
- 22.4 The Knee and Popliteal Region
  - 22.7 Movements of the Knee Joint
  - 22.6 Clinical Correlation: Patellar Tendon Reflex
  - 22.7 Clinical Correlation: Ligamentous Injuries of the Knee
  - 22.8 Clinical Correlation: Popliteal (Baker’s) Cyst
  - 22.9 Clinical Correlation: Genu Varum and Genu Valgum
- 22.5 The Leg
  - 22.8 Leg Muscles, Anterior Compartment
  - 22.9 Leg Muscles, Lateral Compartment
  - 22.10 Leg Muscles, Posterior Compartment: Superficial Flexors
  - 22.11 Leg Muscles, Posterior Compartment: Deep Flexors
  - 22.10 Clinical Correlation: Shin Splints
  - 22.11 Clinical Correlation: Rupture of the Calcaneal Tendon
  - 22.12 Clinical Correlation: Compartment Syndrome
  - 22.13 Clinical Correlation: Tarsal Tunnel Syndrome
- 22.6 The Ankle (Talocrural) Joint
  - 22.12 Movements of the Ankle Joint

22.14 Clinical Correlation: Ankle Sprains

22.7 The Foot

22.13 Movements of the Subtalor and Transverse Tarsal Joints

22.14 Movements of the Metatarsophalangeal (MTP) and Interphalangeal (IP) Joints

22.15 Intrinsic Muscles of the Dorsum of the Foot

22.16 Intrinsic Muscles of the Sole of the Foot: Superficial layer

22.17 Intrinsic Muscles of the Sole of the Foot: Deep Layer

22.15 Clinical Correlation: Pes Planus

22.16 Clinical Correlation: Plantar Fasciitis

22.17 Clinical Correlation: The Plantar Reflex

22.8 The Gait Cycle

22.18 Muscle Action Sequence During the Gait Cycle

22.9 Topographic Anatomy of Lower Limb Musculature

23 Clinical Imaging Basics of the Lower Limb

23.1 Suitability of Imaging Modalities for the Lower Limb

Review Questions: Lower Limb

21 Overview of the Lower Limb

The lower limb supports the weight of the entire body and therefore is designed for strength and stability. Bones, muscles, and tendons tend to be more robust and joints more stable than those found in the upper limb.

21.1 General Features

— In the anatomic position, the body is upright and supported by the lower limb. The feet are together and pointed forward.

— The regions of the lower limb **(Fig. 21.1)** include

- the **gluteal region,** which includes the buttocks and lateral hip region and overlies the **pelvic girdle;**

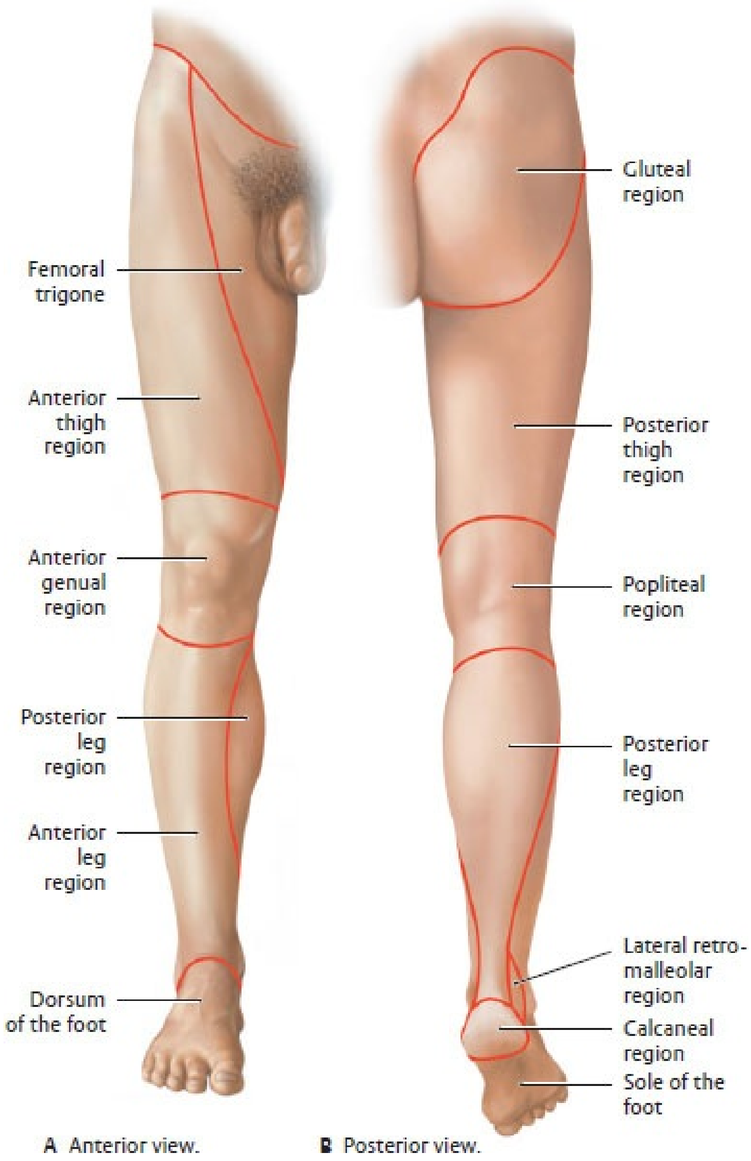

Femoral trigone
Anterior thigh region
Anterior genual region
Posterior leg region
Anterior leg region
Dorsum of the foot
Gluteal region
Posterior thigh region
Popliteal region
Posterior leg region
Lateral retro-malleolar region
Calcaneal region
Sole of the foot
A Anterior view.
B Posterior view.

Fig. 21.1 Regions of the lower limb

Right limb. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- the **thigh,** between the hip and the knee;
- the **popliteal** and **genual regions,** at the knee;
- the **leg,** between the knee and ankle; and
- the **foot,** which has dorsal and plantar surfaces. The plantar surface is also called the **sole** of the foot.

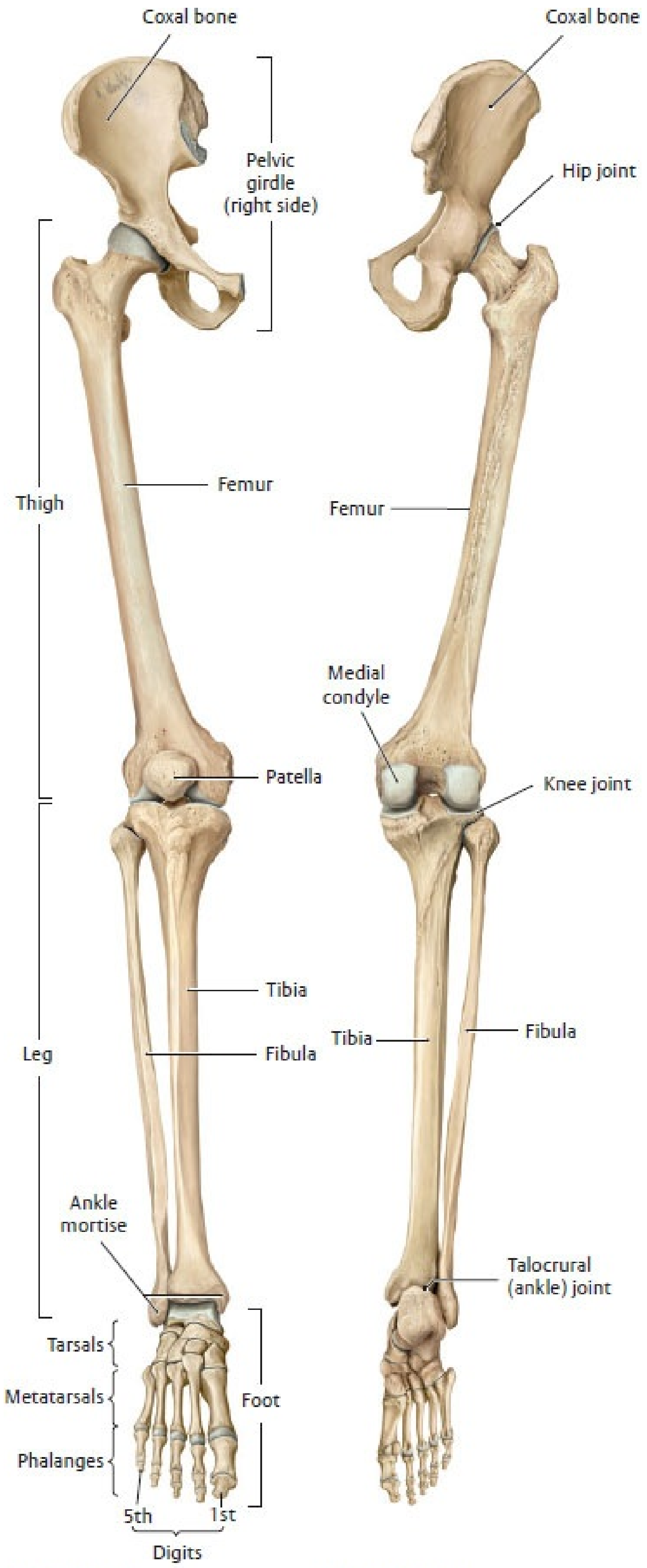
— Movements of the joints of the lower limb are similar to movements of the upper limb, with some variations. They include

    - flexion—**plantar flexion** indicates flexing the foot or toes downward;
    - extension—**dorsiflexion** indicates extension of the foot, as when lifting the foot or toes upward;
    - abduction and adduction—the axis for abduction and adduction of the toes is the 2nd digit;
    - external rotation and internal rotation—movement around a longitudinal axis;
    - **inversion,** or supination of the foot—lifting the medial edge of the sole; and
    - **eversion,** or pronation of the foot lifting the lateral edge of the sole.
- As in the upper limb, muscles of the lower limb can be described as intrinsic or extrinsic:
    - Intrinsic muscles of the foot originate and insert on bones of the foot and ankle.
    - Extrinsic flexor and extensor muscles of the foot originate in the leg.
        - Synovial tendon sheaths surround the long flexor and extensor tendons as they cross the ankle joint.

21.2 Bones of the Lower Limb

Bones of the lower limb include the hip (coxal) bone that articulates with the sacrum to form the pelvic girdle, the femur of the thigh, the tibia and fibula of the leg, the tarsal bones of the ankle and hindfoot, and the metatarsal bones and phalanges of the midfoot and forefoot **(Fig. 21.2)**.

- The **coxal (hip) bone** forms the lateral part of the pelvic girdle. The features of the coxal bone are discussed in Section 10.2 with the bony pelvis.
- The **femur** is the long bone of the thigh **(Fig. 21.3)**.
    - Proximally, its large ball-shaped **head** articulates with the acetabulum of the hip bone.
    - The **neck,** angled inferolaterally, connects the head with the shaft.
    - **Greater** and **lesser trochanters,** sites for muscle attachments, are separated by an **intertrochanteric crest** posteriorly and an **intertrochanteric line** anteriorly.
    - The **shaft** is slightly bowed anteriorly and, in the anatomic position, is angled medially.
    - **Linea aspera,** paired ridges on the posterior surface of the shaft, diverge distally as the **medial** and **lateral supracondylar lines.**


Coxal bone
Pelvic girdle (right side)
Thigh
Femur
Patella
Leg
Tibia
Fibula
Ankle mortise
Tarsals
Metatarsals
Phalanges
Foot
5th
1st
Digits
Coxal bone
Hip joint
Femur
Medial condyle
Knee joint
Tibia
Fibula
Talocrural (ankle) joint

A Anterior view.

B Posterior view.

Fig. 21.2 Bones of the lower limb

Right limb. The skeleton of the lower limb consists of a limb girdle and an attached free limb. The free limb is divided into the thigh (femur), leg (tibia and fibula), and foot. It is connected to the pelvic girdle by the hip joint. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

  - Distally, the **medial** and **lateral epicondyles** are attachment sites for ligaments of the knee, and the **adductor tubercle** is an attachment site for muscle.
  - The femur articulates with the tibia at the **medial** and **lateral condyles,** which are separated by the **intercondylar notch.**
  - The femur articulates with the patella anteriorly at the **patellar surface.**
- The **patella,** a large sesamoid bone, forms the kneecap **(Fig. 21.4;** see also **Fig. 22.12)**.
  - It articulates with the distal femur at the knee joint.
  - Superiorly, its **base** is attached to the **quadriceps tendon.**
  - Inferiorly, its **apex** is attached to the **patellar ligament.**
- The **tibia** is the large medial long bone of the leg **(Fig. 21.5)**.
  - Proximally, it articulates with the femur at the **tibial plateau,** which has flat **medial** and **lateral condyles** separated by an **intercondylar eminence.**
  - It articulates with the fibula proximally at the **tibiofibular joint** and distally at the **tibiofibular syndesmosis.**
  - A triangular **anterolateral tubercle (Gerdy's tubercle)** separates the lateral condyle from the lateral surface of the tibial shaft.
  - A **tibial tuberosity** on the anterior surface below the tibial plateau is an attachment site for anterior thigh muscles via the patellar ligament.
  - Distally, the **medial malleolus** forms part of the mortise of the ankle joint.
  - The sharp anterior border of the **shaft** is palpable between the knee and ankle.
  - An **interosseous membrane** connects the shaft of the tibia and fibula.
- The **fibula** is the lateral bone of the leg (see **Fig. 21.5**).
  - Proximally, the **head** articulates with the lateral condyle of the tibia at the proximal tibiofibular joint.
  - A narrow **neck** connects the head to the shaft.

    - A distal tibiofibular syndesmosis binds the fibula to the distal tibia.
    - Distally, the **lateral malleolus** forms the lateral wall of the mortise of the ankle joint.
- The **tarsal bones** consist of seven short bones of the foot **(Fig. 21.6)**.
    - The **talus** is the most superior tarsal bone.
        - The **body** articulates with the tibia and fibula at the ankle joint.
        - The **head,** which articulates with the navicular bone, is the highest part of the medial arch of the foot.
        - The inferior surface articulates with the calcaneus.
    - The **calcaneus** is the large tarsal bone of the heel.
        - It articulates superiorly with the talus and anteriorly with the cuboid.
        - The **sustentaculum tali,** a medial process, forms part of the medial arch of the foot.
    - The **navicular** lies anterior to the talus and forms part of the medial arch.
    - The **cuboid** lies anterior to the calcaneus on the lateral side of the foot.
    - The **medial, intermediate,** and **lateral cuneiform** bones lie anterior to the navicular and articulate distally with the metatarsal bones.

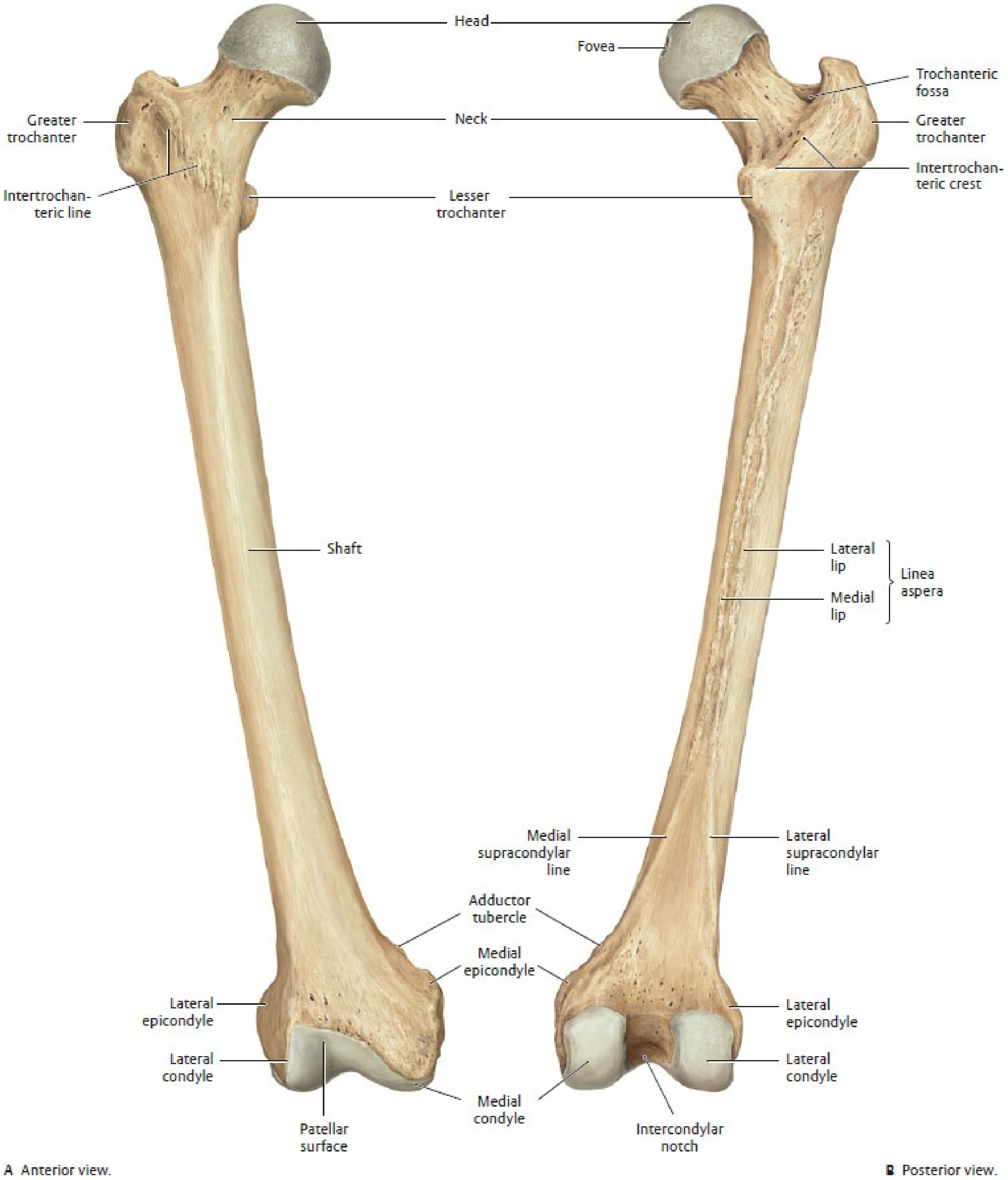
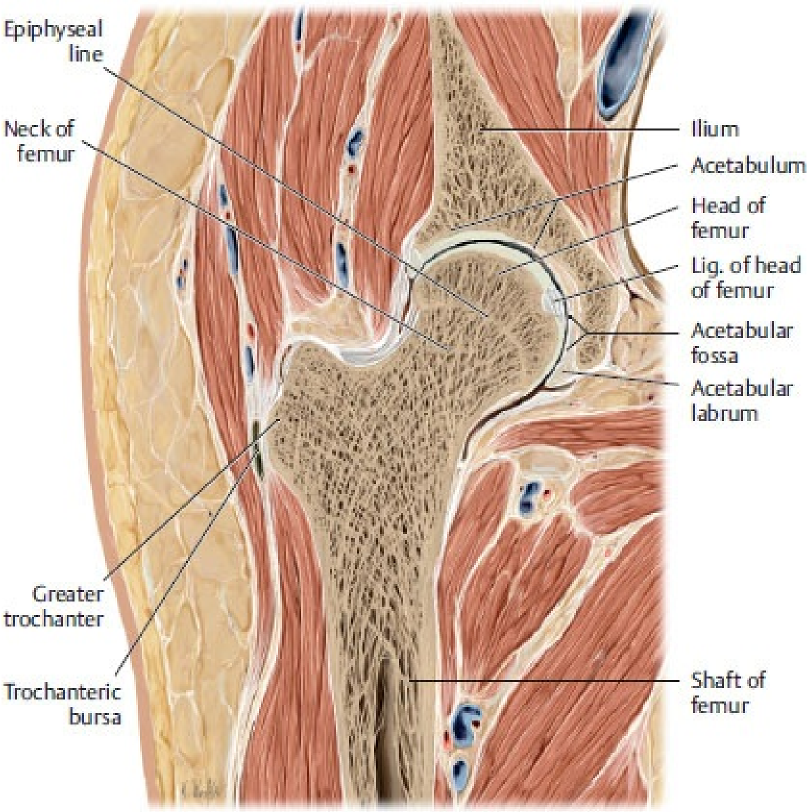

Head
Fovea
Trochanteric fossa
Greater trochanter
Neck
Greater trochanter
Intertrochanteric crest
Intertrochanteric line
Lesser trochanter
Shaft
Lateral lip
Linea aspera
Medial lip
Medial supracondylar line
Lateral supracondylar line
Adductor tubercle
Medial epicondyle
Lateral epicondyle
Lateral epicondyle
Lateral condyle
Lateral condyle
Medial condyle
Patellar surface
Intercondylar notch
A Anterior view.
B Posterior view.

Fig. 21.3 Right femur

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Epiphyseal line
Neck of femur
Ilium
Acetabulum
Head of femur
Lig. of head of femur
Acetabular fossa
Acetabular labrum
Greater trochanter
Trochanteric bursa
Shaft of femur

C Hip joint: coronal section

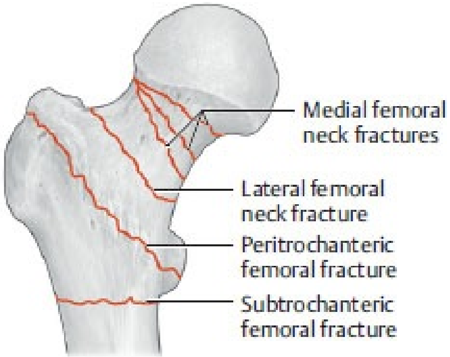
Right hip joint, anterior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Fig. 21.3 (*continued*) Right femur

BOX 21.1: CLINICAL CORRELATION

FRACTURES OF THE FEMUR

Fractures of the femoral neck commonly occur following a lowenergy impact in women over 60 years of age with osteoporosis. The distal fragment of bone is pulled upward by the quadriceps femoris, adductor, and hamstring muscles, causing shortening and lateral (external) rotation of the limb. Femoral shaft fractures are less frequent and usually result from a major trauma.

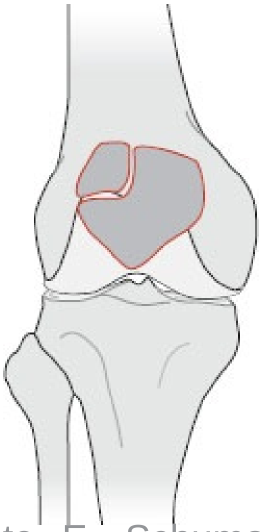

Medial femoral neck fractures
Lateral femoral neck fracture
Peritrochanteric femoral fracture
Subtrochanteric femoral fracture

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th Edition. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

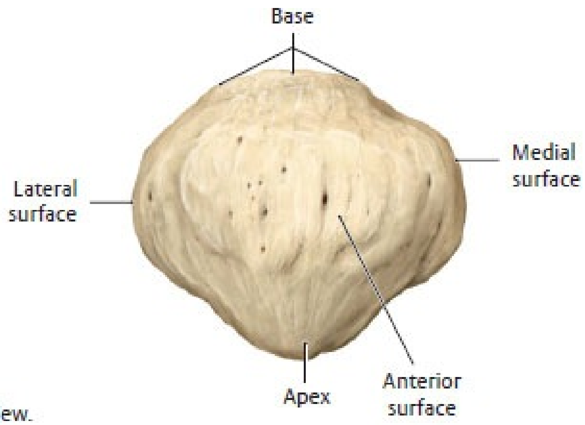
BOX 21.2: DEVELOPMENTAL CORRELATION

BIPARTITE PATELLA

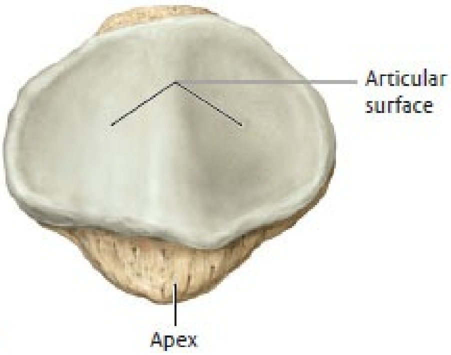
Ossification of the patella occurs at ages 3 to 6 years, usually from several ossification centers. Occasionally, one center, most commonly the upper lateral segment, fails to fuse with the larger segment, resulting in a bipartite (two-part) patella. On imaging this may appear as a patellar fracture.



(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Base
Medial surface
Lateral surface
Apex
Anterior surface

A Anterior view.


Articular surface
Apex

B Posterior view.

Fig. 21.4 Patella

Right limb. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

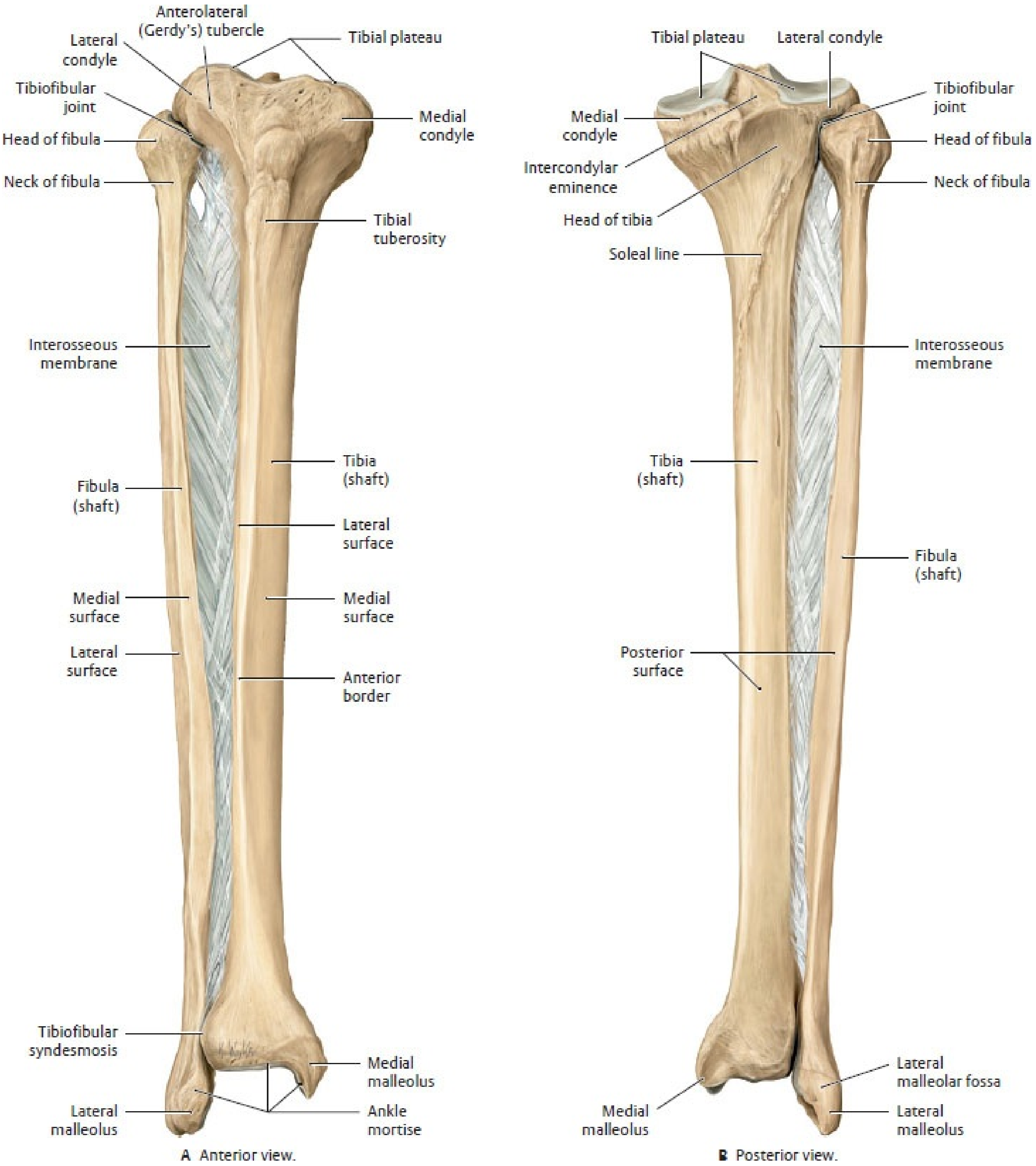
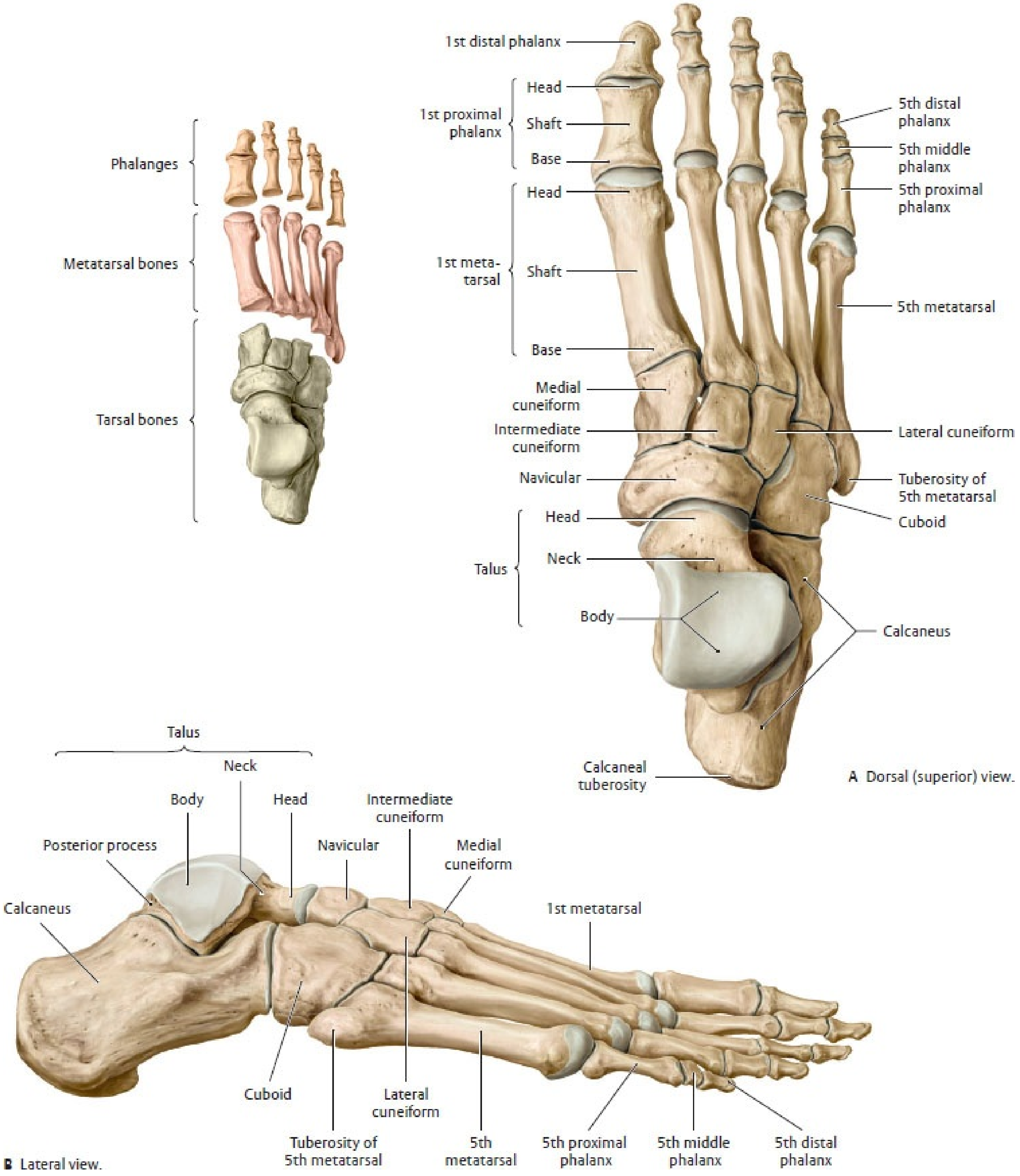

Anterolateral (Gerdy's) tubercle
Lateral condyle
Tibial plateau
Tibiofibular joint
Head of fibula
Medial condyle
Neck of fibula
Tibial tuberosity
Interosseous membrane
Tibia (shaft)
Fibula (shaft)
Lateral surface
Medial surface
Medial surface
Lateral surface
Anterior border
Tibiofibular syndesmosis
Medial malleolus
Lateral malleolus
Ankle mortise
A Anterior view.
Tibial plateau
Lateral condyle
Tibiofibular joint
Medial condyle
Head of fibula
Intercondylar eminence
Neck of fibula
Head of tibia
Soleal line
Interosseous membrane
Tibia (shaft)
Fibula (shaft)
Posterior surface
Lateral malleolar fossa
Medial malleolus
Lateral malleolus
B Posterior view.

Fig. 21.5 Tibia and fibula

Right leg. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)



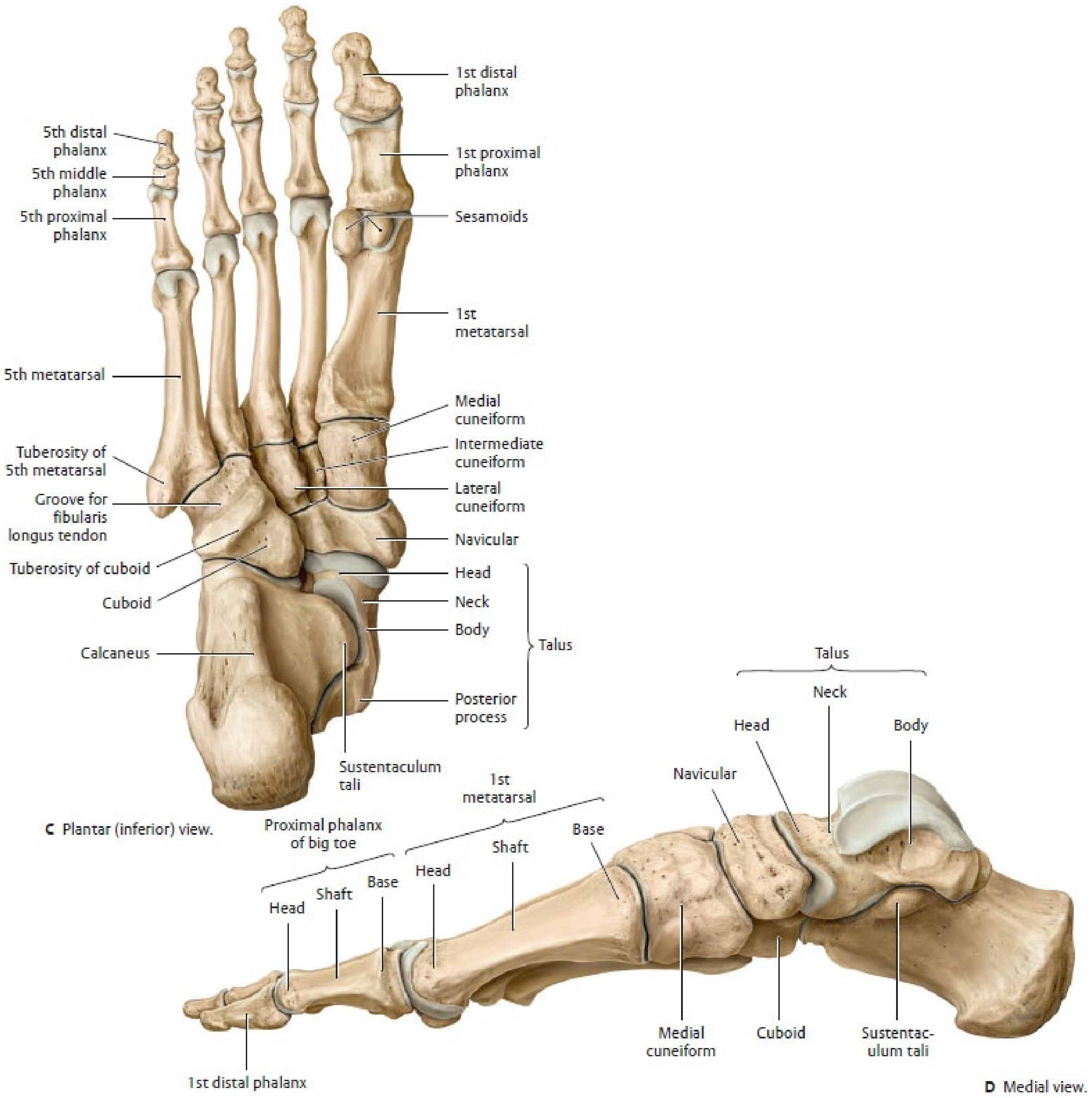
A Dorsal (superior) view.

B Lateral view.

Phalanges
Metatarsal bones
Tarsal bones
1st distal phalanx
Head
1st proximal phalanx
Shaft
Base
Head
1st metatarsal
Shaft
Base
Medial cuneiform
Intermediate cuneiform
Navicular
Head
Talus
Neck
Body
Calcaneal tuberosity
5th distal phalanx
5th middle phalanx
5th proximal phalanx
5th metatarsal
Lateral cuneiform
Tuberosity of 5th metatarsal
Cuboid
Calcaneus
Talus
Neck
Body
Head
Intermediate cuneiform
Posterior process
Navicular
Medial cuneiform
Calcaneus
1st metatarsal
Cuboid
Lateral cuneiform
Tuberosity of 5th metatarsal
5th metatarsal
5th proximal phalanx
5th middle phalanx
5th distal phalanx

Fig. 21.6 Bones of the right foot

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


1st distal phalanx
1st proximal phalanx
Sesamoids
1st metatarsal
Medial cuneiform
Intermediate cuneiform
Lateral cuneiform
Navicular
Head
Neck
Body
Talus
Posterior process
Sustentaculum tali
5th distal phalanx
5th middle phalanx
5th proximal phalanx
5th metatarsal
Tuberosity of 5th metatarsal
Groove for fibularis longus tendon
Tuberosity of cuboid
Cuboid
Calcaneus
Talus
Neck
Head
Body
Navicular
1st metatarsal
Base
Shaft
Head
Proximal phalanx of big toe
Base
Shaft
Head
1st distal phalanx
Medial cuneiform
Cuboid
Sustentac-ulum tali

C Plantar (inferior) view.

D Medial view.

Fig. 21.6 (*continued*) Bones of the right foot

— The **metatarsal bones** consist of five long bones that are designated 1st (medial) through 5th (lateral).

- Proximally, their **bases** articulate with the tarsal bones.
- Distally, their **heads** articulate with the proximal phalanges.
- The **shaft** connects the heads and bases.
- Paired **sesamoid bones** are associated with the head of the 1st metatarsal.
- A prominent tuberosity at the base of the 5th metatarsal is a site of

  - attachment for muscles of the leg.
- The **phalanges** are small long bones of the toes.
  - The 2nd through 5th digits have a proximal, middle, and distal phalanx.
  - The 1st digit, the **hallux**, or great toe, has only a proximal and a distal phalanx.

21.3 Fascia and Compartments of the Lower Limb

- Similar to the upper limb, the lower limb musculature is enclosed within a snug sleeve of deep fascia, which is continuous from the iliac crest to the sole of the foot but has regional designations.
  - **Fascia lata** surrounds muscles of the thigh. Laterally, longitudinal fibers of the fascia lata form a tough band, the **iliotibial tract**, which extends from the iliac crest to the anterolateral (Gerdy's) tubercle of the tibia (see **Fig. 22.41**).
  - **Crural fascia** invests muscles of the leg, and at the ankle it forms the flexor and extensor retinacula.
  - Fascia on the dorsum of the foot is thin, but on the sole it forms a thickened longitudinal band, the **plantar aponeurosis**.
  - **Digital fibrous sheaths** are extensions of the plantar aponeurosis onto the toes, where they enclose the flexor tendons.
- The deep fascia creates compartments that separate the limb musculature. Muscles within each compartment are usually similar in function, innervation, and blood supply. Compartments of the lower limb (see **Fig. 22.46**) include the following:
  - **Anterior, medial**, and **posterior compartments** of the thigh
  - **Anterior, lateral, superficial posterior**, and **deep posterior** compartments of the leg (crural compartments)
  - **Medial, lateral, central**, and **interosseous compartments** on the sole of the foot
  - **Dorsal compartment** on the dorsum of the foot

21.4 Neurovasculature of the Lower Limb

Arteries of the Lower Limb

Branches of the internal iliac artery in the pelvis and the femoral artery (a continuation of the external iliac artery) supply blood to the lower limb (**Fig.**

21.7).

- The branches of the internal iliac artery that supply the lower limb include
  - the **superior gluteal** and **inferior gluteal arteries**, which exit the pelvis posteriorly through the greater sciatic foramen to supply the gluteal region; and
  - the **obturator artery**, which exits the pelvis anteriorly through the obturator foramen to supply the medial thigh.
- The **femoral artery** (clinically known as the superficial femoral artery) enters the anterior thigh deep to the inguinal ligament enclosed within a **femoral sheath** (formed by extensions of the deep fascia of the abdomen). The artery descends along the anteromedial thigh between the anterior and medial muscular compartments and ends at the **adductor hiatus**, a gap in the tendon of the **adductor magnus** muscle. Its branches include
  - the **superficial circumflex iliac** and **superficial epigastric arteries**, which supply the abdominal wall;
  - the **superficial** and **deep external pudendal arteries**, which supply the inguinal region;
  - the **descending genicular artery**, which contributes to the anastomosis around the knee; and
  - the **deep artery of the thigh**, which is the primary blood supply to the thigh.
- The deep artery of the thigh (deep femoral artery, profunda femoris), the largest branch of the femoral artery, arises in the proximal thigh. Its branches include
  - the **medial circumflex femoral artery**, which is the primary blood supply to the hip joint;
  - the **lateral circumflex femoral artery**, which supplies the hip joint and contributes to the anastomosis around the knee joint; and

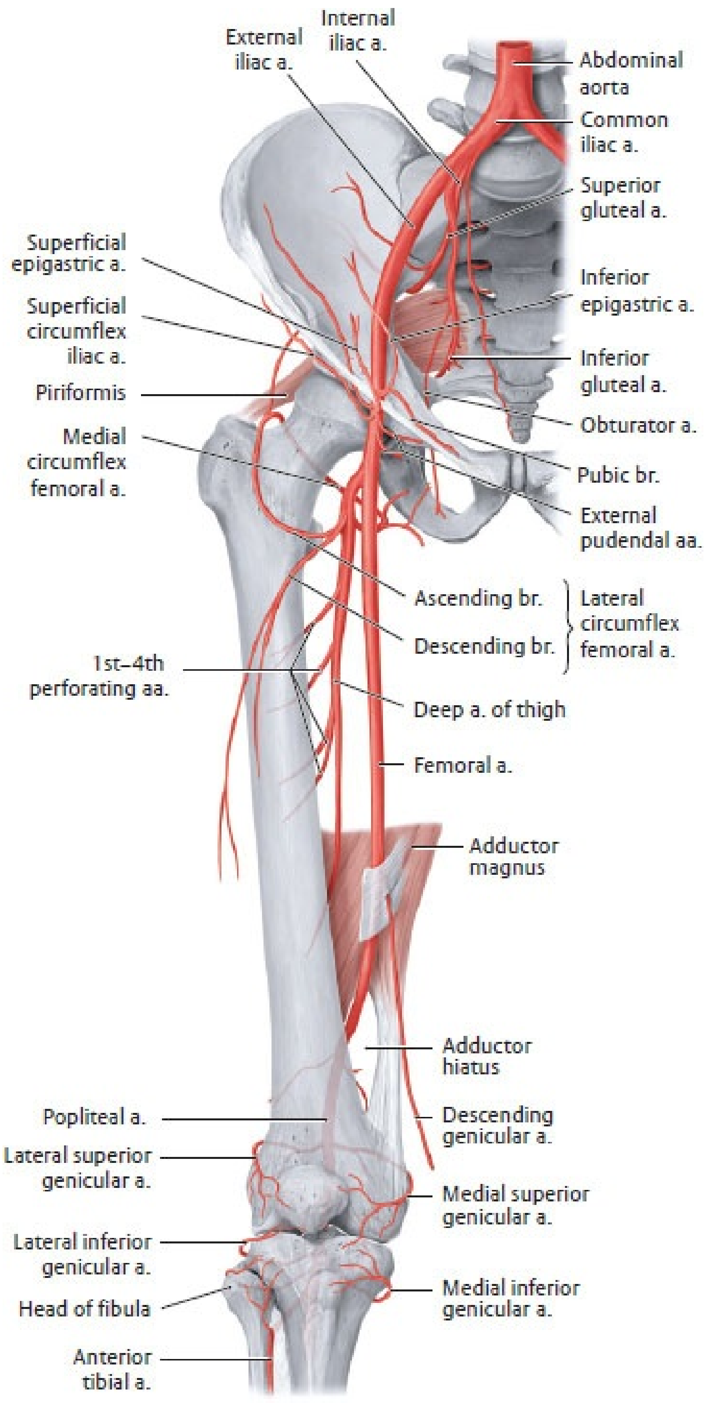

Internal iliac a.
External iliac a.
Abdominal aorta
Common iliac a.
Superior gluteal a.
Superficial epigastric a.
Inferior epigastric a.
Superficial circumflex iliac a.
Inferior gluteal a.
Piriformis
Obturator a.
Medial circumflex femoral a.
Pubic br.
External pudendal aa.
Ascending br.
Descending br.
Lateral circumflex femoral a.
1st–4th perforating aa.
Deep a. of thigh
Femoral a.
Adductor magnus
Adductor hiatus
Popliteal a.
Descending genicular a.
Lateral superior genicular a.
Medial superior genicular a.
Lateral inferior genicular a.
Head of fibula
Medial inferior genicular a.
Anterior tibial a.

Fig. 21.7 Course and branches of the femoral artery

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- the **1st through 3rd** (or 4th) **perforating arteries**, which supply muscles of the anterior, medial, and posterior muscles of the thigh.

— A **cruciate anastomosis** provides a collateral blood supply to structures around the hip. Contributions to the anastomosis include
  - the medial and lateral circumflex femoral arteries,
  - the 1st perforating artery, and
  - the inferior gluteal artery.

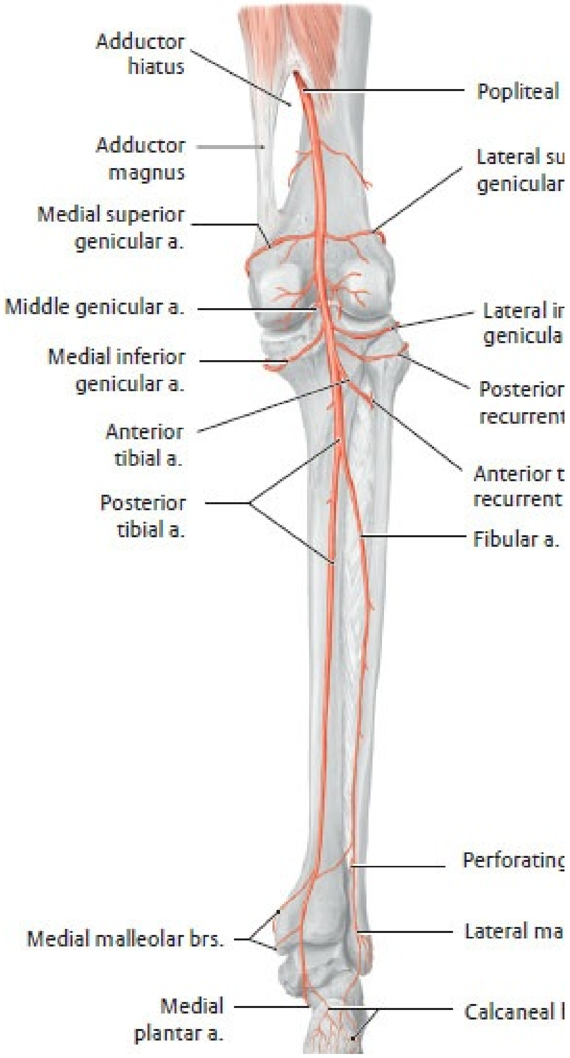

Adductor hiatus
Popliteal
Adductor magnus
Lateral su genicular
Medial superior genicular a.
Middle genicular a.
Lateral ir genicula
Medial inferior genicular a.
Posterior recurrent
Anterior tibial a.
Anterior t recurrent
Posterior tibial a.
Fibular a.
Perforating
Lateral ma
Medial malleolar brs.
Medial plantar a.
Calcaneal

Fig. 21.8 Arteries of the knee and posterior leg

Right leg, posterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 21.3: CLINICAL CORRELATION

FEMORAL HEAD NECROSIS

Although the cruciate anastomosis surrounds the hip joint, only the medial circumflex femoral artery gives rise to branches that enter the capsule and supply the femoral head. These end arteries are at risk during the dislocation or fracture of the femoral neck. Tearing of these vessels will result in avascular necrosis of the femoral head.

— The **popliteal artery** is the continuation of the femoral artery as it enters the **popliteal fossa**, a cavity posterior to the knee joint (**Fig. 21.8**).

- Five **genicular branches** run medially and laterally around the knee.
- **Anterior tibial** and **posterior tibial arteries**, the terminal branches of the popliteal artery, arise in the proximal part of the posterior leg compartment.

— A **genicular anastomosis** that supplies the knee joint receives contributions from

- the medial superior and inferior, lateral superior and inferior, and middle genicular arteries;

BOX 21.4: CLINICAL CORRELATION

POPLITEAL ANEURYSM

Aneurysms of the popliteal artery are the most common peripheral arterial aneurysm. They can be distinguished by a thrill (palpable pulse) and bruits (abnormal arterial sounds) overlying the popliteal fossa. Because the artery lies deep to the tibial nerve, an aneurysm may stretch the nerve or occlude its blood supply. Pain from nerve compression is referred to the skin overlying the medial aspect of the calf, ankle, and foot. Half of all popliteal aneurysms remain asymptomatic, and ruptures are rare, but symptomatic patients present with distal leg ischemia from acute embolization or thrombosis. Fifty percent of patients with a popliteal aneurysm have an aneurysm in the contralateral artery, and 25% have an aortic aneurysm.

- the descending genicular artery from the thigh;
- the descending branch of the lateral circumflex artery; and
- the recurrent branches of anterior tibial and posterior tibial arteries.

- The posterior tibial artery descends into the deep posterior leg compartment to supply muscles in the deep and superficial posterior compartments (see Fig. 21.8). Its branches include
  - the **fibular artery**, which arises in the upper leg and descends within the posterior leg compartment; and
  - the **medial plantar** and **lateral plantar arteries**, which arise as the terminal branches posterior to the medial malleolus (Fig. 21.9).
- The fibular artery supplies muscles of the deep posterior compartment and, via small arteries that perforate the intermuscular septum, muscles of the lateral compartment. At the ankle it gives off
  - a **perforating branch** that arises at the ankle and anastomoses with the anterior tibial artery and
  - **malleolar branches** that contribute to an anastomosis around the ankle.

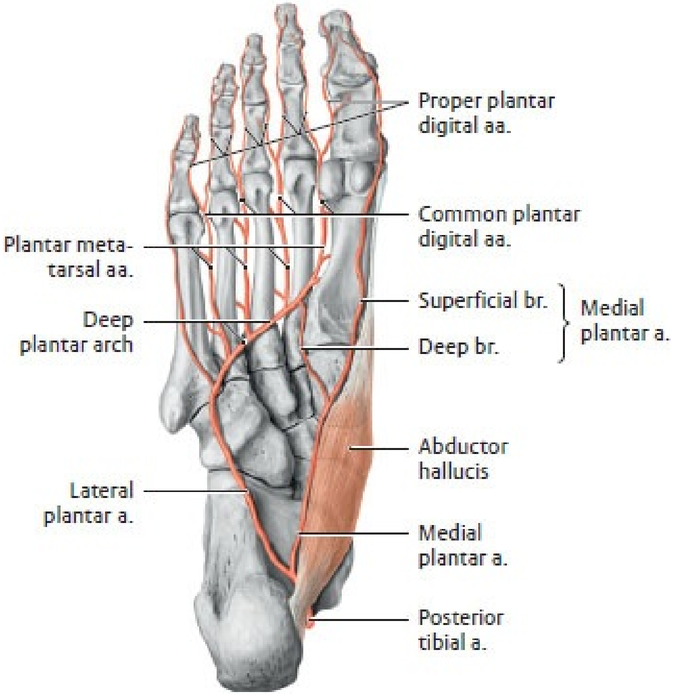

Proper plantar digital aa.
Common plantar digital aa.
Plantar meta-tarsal aa.
Superficial br.
Deep br.
Medial plantar a.
Deep plantar arch
Abductor hallucis
Lateral plantar a.
Medial plantar a.
Posterior tibial a.

Fig. 21.9 Arteries of the sole of the foot

Right foot, plantar view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- Arteries of the sole (Fig. 21.9) arise from the posterior tibial artery and include
  - the medial plantar artery, a small branch of the posterior tibial artery that

supplies the medial part of the sole;
  - the lateral plantar artery, the largest branch of the posterior tibial artery, which supplies the lateral side of the sole and curves medially to anastomose with the deep plantar artery;
  - a **deep plantar arch**, which forms through the anastomosis of the deep plantar artery and lateral plantar artery; and
  - four **plantar metatarsal arteries**, which arise from the deep plantar arch and their branches, the **common** and **proper plantar digital arteries**,
- The anterior tibial artery passes through an opening in the interosseous membrane to supply muscles of the anterior leg compartment (**Fig. 21.10**). Its branches are
  - proximally, a **recurrent branch** to the knee, and
  - distally, the **dorsal pedal artery** as it emerges onto the dorsum of the foot.
- Arteries of the dorsum of the foot arise from the dorsal pedal artery and include
  - the **lateral tarsal** and **arcuate arteries**, which form a loop on the dorsum of the foot;
  - the **deep plantar artery**, which anastomoses with the lateral plantar artery on the sole; and
  - the **dorsal metatarsal arteries** and their branches, the **dorsal digital arteries**, which arise from the arcuate artery or the dorsal pedal artery.

BOX 21.5: CLINICAL CORRELATION

THE DORSAL PEDAL PULSE

The dorsal pedal artery is readily palpable on the dorsum of the foot as it runs toward the first web space lateral to the extensor hallucis tendon. Absence of the dorsal pedal pulse suggests arterial occlusion in the peripheral vasculature.

BOX 21.6: CLINICAL CORRELATION

LOWER LIMB ISCHEMIA

Ischemia of the lower extremity is almost always related to atherosclerotic disease. Intermittent claudication is a symptom of chronic ischemic disease characterized by pain while walking, which intensifies over time and disappears at rest. Chronic disease has a benign course and, in the majority of patients, is treated conservatively. Acute ischemia has an abrupt onset from an embolitic or thrombolytic origin and usually requires aggressive treatment. The six signs (P signs) of acute ischemia are pain, pallor, pulselessness, paresthesia, paralysis, and poikilothermy.

Veins of the Lower Limb

The lower limb has both deep and superficial venous drainages, which anastomose through perforating veins. Veins of both systems have numerous valves along their length.

- Veins of the deep venous system travel with the major arteries and their branches and have similar names. As in the upper limb, these deep veins usually occur as paired accompanying veins in the distal part of the limb (**Fig. 21.11**).
  - The **femoral vein**, which drains the deep and superficial veins of the thigh and leg, passes under the inguinal ligament into the abdomen, where it becomes the external iliac vein.

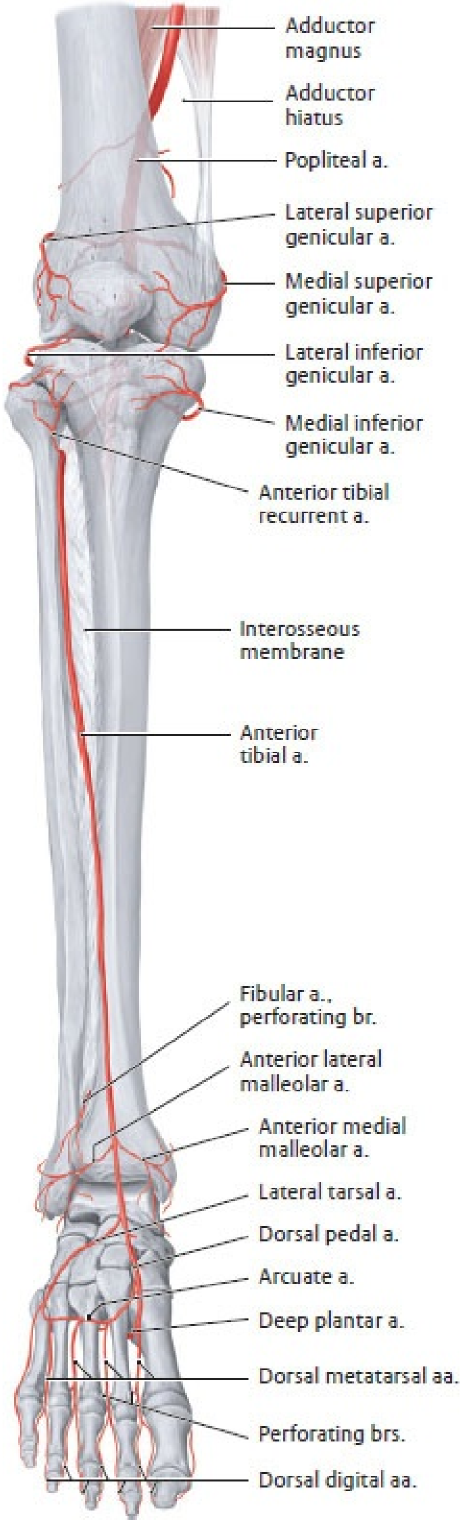
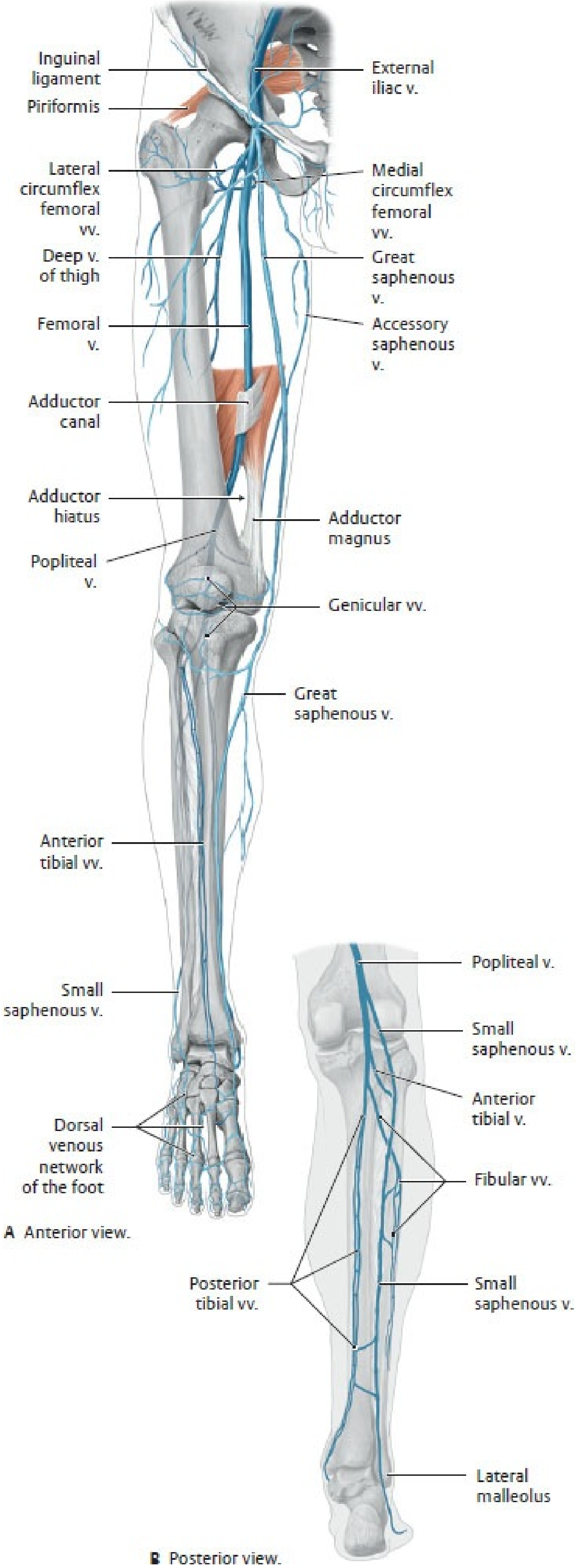

Adductor magnus
Adductor hiatus
Popliteal a.
Lateral superior genicular a.
Medial superior genicular a.
Lateral inferior genicular a.
Medial inferior genicular a.
Anterior tibial recurrent a.
Interosseous membrane
Anterior tibial a.
Fibular a., perforating br.
Anterior lateral malleolar a.
Anterior medial malleolar a.
Lateral tarsal a.
Dorsal pedal a.
Arcuate a.
Deep plantar a.
Dorsal metatarsal aa.
Perforating brs.
Dorsal digital aa.

Fig. 21.10 Arteries of the anterior leg and foot

Right leg, anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed.

New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

  - **Superior** and **inferior gluteal veins**, which drain the gluteal region, pass through the greater sciatic foramen to empty into the internal iliac vein of the pelvis.
- Superficial veins are located in the subcutaneous tissue and normally drain, via perforating veins, to the deep venous system (**Fig. 21.12**).
  - The largest superficial veins, the **great saphenous** and **small saphenous veins**, originate at the **dorsal venous arch** on the dorsum of the foot.


Inguinal ligament
Piriformis
Lateral circumflex femoral vv.
Deep v. of thigh
Femoral v.
Adductor canal
Adductor hiatus
Popliteal v.
External iliac v.
Medial circumflex femoral vv.
Great saphenous v.
Accessory saphenous v.
Adductor magnus
Genicular vv.
Great saphenous v.
Anterior tibial vv.
Small saphenous v.
Dorsal venous network of the foot
Popliteal v.
Small saphenous v.
Anterior tibial v.
Fibular vv.
Posterior tibial vv.
Small saphenous v.
Lateral malleolus

A Anterior view.

B Posterior view.

Fig. 21.11 Deep veins of the lower limb

Right limb. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

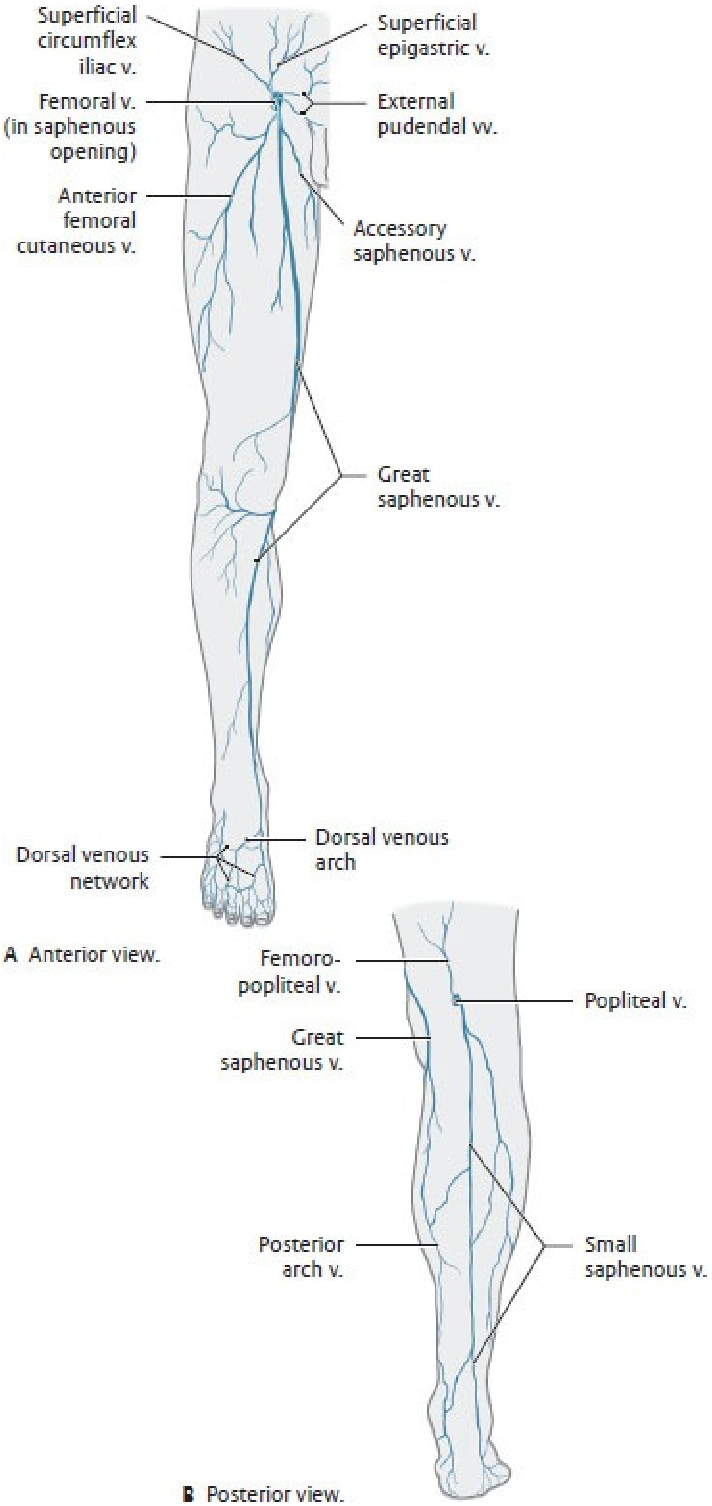

Superficial circumflex iliac v.
Superficial epigastric v.
Femoral v. (in saphenous opening)
External pudendal vv.
Anterior femoral cutaneous v.
Accessory saphenous v.
Great saphenous v.
Dorsal venous arch
Dorsal venous network
A Anterior view.
Femoro-popliteal v.
Popliteal v.
Great saphenous v.
Posterior arch v.
Small saphenous v.
B Posterior view.

Fig. 21.12 Superficial veins of the lower limb

Right limb. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 21.7: CLINICAL CORRELATION

DEEP VEIN THROMBOSES (DVT)

Thromboses (blood clots) in the deep veins of the leg result from stasis, the slowing or pooling of blood. This can result from prolonged inactivity (extended airplane travel, immobilization following surgery) or anatomic abnormalities such as laxity of the crural fascia. Thrombi from the legs can break off and travel to the heart and lungs, lodging in the pulmonary arterial tree as pulmonary emboli. Large clots can severely impair lung function and even cause death. Thrombophlebitis is the inflammation of a vein caused by thrombosis.

BOX 21.8: CLINICAL CORRELATION

VARICOSE VEINS

Varicose disease of the superficial veins of the lower limb is the most common chronic venous disease, affecting 15% of the adult population. Primary varices generally result from degeneration of the wall of the vein leading to dilated, tortuous vessels and incompetent venous valves. Secondary varices can develop from chronic occlusion of the deep veins with incompetence of the perforator veins. This causes a reversal of flow through the perforating veins. (Normal venous drainage flows from superficial to deep systems.) As the superficial veins dilate with increased volume, valve leaflets separate and become incompetent.

  - The great saphenous vein arises from the medial side of the venous arch and passes superiorly, anterior to the medial malleolus and posteromedial to the knee. It drains into the femoral vein at the **saphenous opening**, an opening in the fascia lata in the upper thigh.
  - The small saphenous vein arises from the lateral side of the venous arch, passes posterior to the lateral malleolus, and ascends the posterior leg. It drains into the **popliteal vein** behind the knee.

— The flow of blood from lower parts of the body must counter the downward force of gravity. In the lower limbs, venous return is assisted by

  - the presence of valves in the veins,
  - the pulsing of accompanying arteries, and
  - the contraction of surrounding muscles.

Lymphatics of the Lower Limb

Lymph from the lower limb drains superiorly from the foot following the deep and superficial veins. Upward flow is facilitated by the contraction of surrounding muscles (**Fig. 21.13**).

- Lymph from deep tissues of the
  - gluteal region drains along the gluteal vessels to internal iliac nodes.
  - thigh drains to deep inguinal nodes.
- Lymph from superficial tissues of the gluteal region and thigh drain to superficial inguinal nodes.
- Lymph from the dorsum and sole of the lateral foot and lateral leg drains along the short saphenous vein to the **deep popliteal nodes** at the knee. These drain directly to deep inguinal nodes.
- Lymph from the dorsum and sole of the medial foot and the medial leg drains along the long saphenous vein to superficial inguinal nodes.
- Lymph from the thigh drains first to superficial inguinal nodes, which in turn drain to deep inguinal nodes.
- Deep inguinal nodes drain sequentially to external iliac, common iliac, and lumbar nodes.

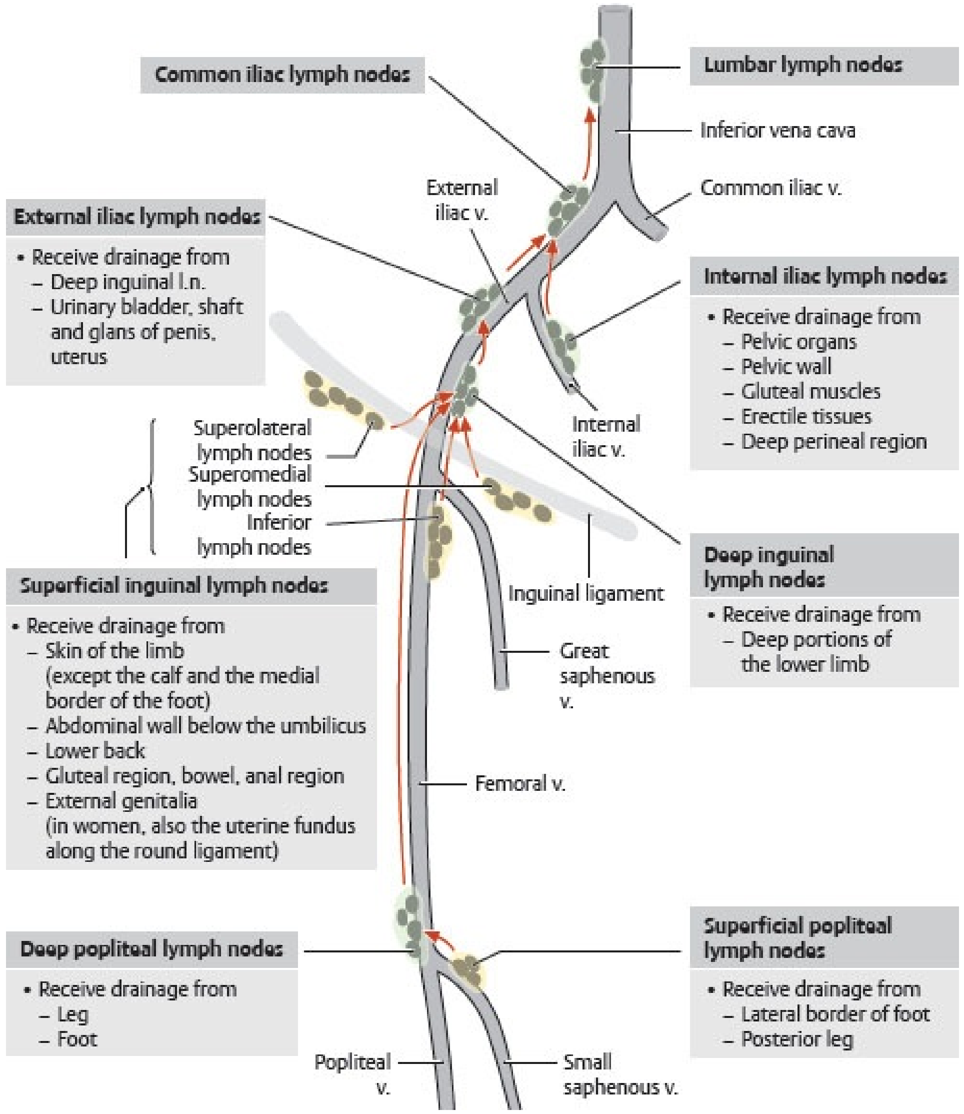

Common iliac lymph nodes
Lumbar lymph nodes
Inferior vena cava
Common iliac v.
External iliac v.
External iliac lymph nodes
• Receive drainage from
– Deep inguinal l.n.
– Urinary bladder, shaft and glans of penis, uterus
Internal iliac lymph nodes
• Receive drainage from
– Pelvic organs
– Pelvic wall
– Gluteal muscles
– Erectile tissues
– Deep perineal region
Superolateral lymph nodes
Superomedial lymph nodes
Inferior lymph nodes
Internal iliac v.
Superficial inguinal lymph nodes
• Receive drainage from
– Skin of the limb (except the calf and the medial border of the foot)
– Abdominal wall below the umbilicus
– Lower back
– Gluteal region, bowel, anal region
– External genitalia (in women, also the uterine fundus along the round ligament)
Inguinal ligament
Deep inguinal lymph nodes
• Receive drainage from
– Deep portions of the lower limb
Great saphenous v.
Femoral v.
Deep popliteal lymph nodes
• Receive drainage from
– Leg
– Foot
Superficial popliteal lymph nodes
• Receive drainage from
– Lateral border of foot
– Posterior leg
Popliteal v.
Small saphenous v.

Fig. 21.13 Lymph nodes and drainage of the lower limbs

Right limb, anterior view. *Arrows*: direction of lymphatic drainage; *yellow shading*: superficial nodes; *green shading*: deep nodes. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Nerves of the Lower Limb: Lumbosacral Plexus

The lumbar and sacral plexuses, often combined as the **lumbosacral plexus**, innervate the lower limb (**Table 21.1**; **Figs. 21.14**, **21.15**, **21.16**, **21.17**).

Nerves of the lumbar plexus enter the limb anteriorly to supply muscles of the anterior and medial thigh.

— The **iliohypogastric** (L1), **genital branch of the genitofemoral** (L1–L2), and **ilioinguinal** (L1) **nerves** are primarily nerves of the anterior abdominal wall and inguinal region. They also innervate small areas of skin over the upper lateral, anterior, and medial thigh, respectively.

- The **lateral cutaneous nerve of the thigh** (L2–L3), a sensory nerve that enters the lateral thigh anteromedial to the anterior superior iliac spine, innervates skin of the lateral thigh.
- The **femoral nerve** enters the anterior thigh through the retroinguinal space (deep to the inguinal ligament), lateral to the femoral artery.
  - It innervates muscles of the anterior compartment.
  - Its **saphenous branch** is a sensory nerve that descends inferiorly to innervate the skin of the medial leg and foot.

BOX 21.9: CLINICAL CORRELATION

FEMORAL NERVE INJURY

Injuries of the femoral nerve can result in the following:

- Weakened flexion of the hip
- Loss of knee extension
- Loss of sensation on the anterior and medial thigh and medial side of the leg and foot
- Instability of the knee

Table 21.1 Nerves of the Lower Limb

Nerve	Level	Area of Innervation
Lumbar plexus		
Iliohypogastric n.	L1	Skin over upper lateral thigh and inguinal region
Ilioinguinal n.	L1	Skin over upper anterior thigh
Genitofemoral n.	L1, L2	Skin over upper thigh
Lateral cutaneous n. of the thigh	L2, L3	Skin of lateral thigh
Femoral n.	L2–L4	Iliopsoas, pectineus, sartorius, quadriceps femoris
—Anterior cutaneous n. of the thigh		Skin of anterior and medial thigh

—Saphenous n.		Skin of medial leg and foot
Obturator n.	L2–L4	Obturator externus, adductor longus, adductor brevis, adductor magnus, gracilis, pectineus; skin of medial thigh
Sacral plexus Superior gluteal n.	L4–S1	Gluteus medius, gluteus minimus, tensor fascia latae
Inferior gluteal n.	L5–S2	Gluteus maximus
Direct branches	L5–S2	Piriformis, obturator internus, gemelli, quadratus femoris
Posterior cutaneous n. of the thigh	S1–S3	Skin of posterior thigh and inferior gluteal region
Tibial n.	L4–S3	Biceps femoris (long head), semimembranosus, semitendinosus, adductor magnus (medial part), gastrocnemius, soleus, popliteus, tibialis posterior, flexor digitorum longus, flexor hallucis longus
—Medial plantar n.		Abductor hallucis, flexor digitorum brevis, flexor hallucis brevis (medial head), 1st lumbrical; skin of medial sole, 1st–3rd digits, and half of 4th digit
—Lateral plantar n.		Quadratus plantae, flexor hallucis brevis (lateral head), abductor digiti minimi, flexor digiti minimi brevis, interossei, 2nd–4th lumbricals, adductor hallucis; skin of lateral sole, 5th digit, and half of 4th digit
Common fibular n.	L4–S2	Biceps femoris (short head)
—Superficial fibular n.		Fibularis longus and brevis; skin of dorsum of foot

—Deep fibular n.		Anterior tibialis, extensor hallucis longus and brevis, extensor digitorum longus and brevis, fibularis tertius; skin of web space between 1st and 2nd digits
Pudendal n.	S2–S4	External anal sphincter, muscles of the deep and superficial perineal pouches, cutaneous brs. to scrotum and labia, sensory to penis and clitoris (see Section 10.6)
Sural n. (tibial and common fibular nn. contributions)	S1	Skin of posterior and lateral leg and lateral foot

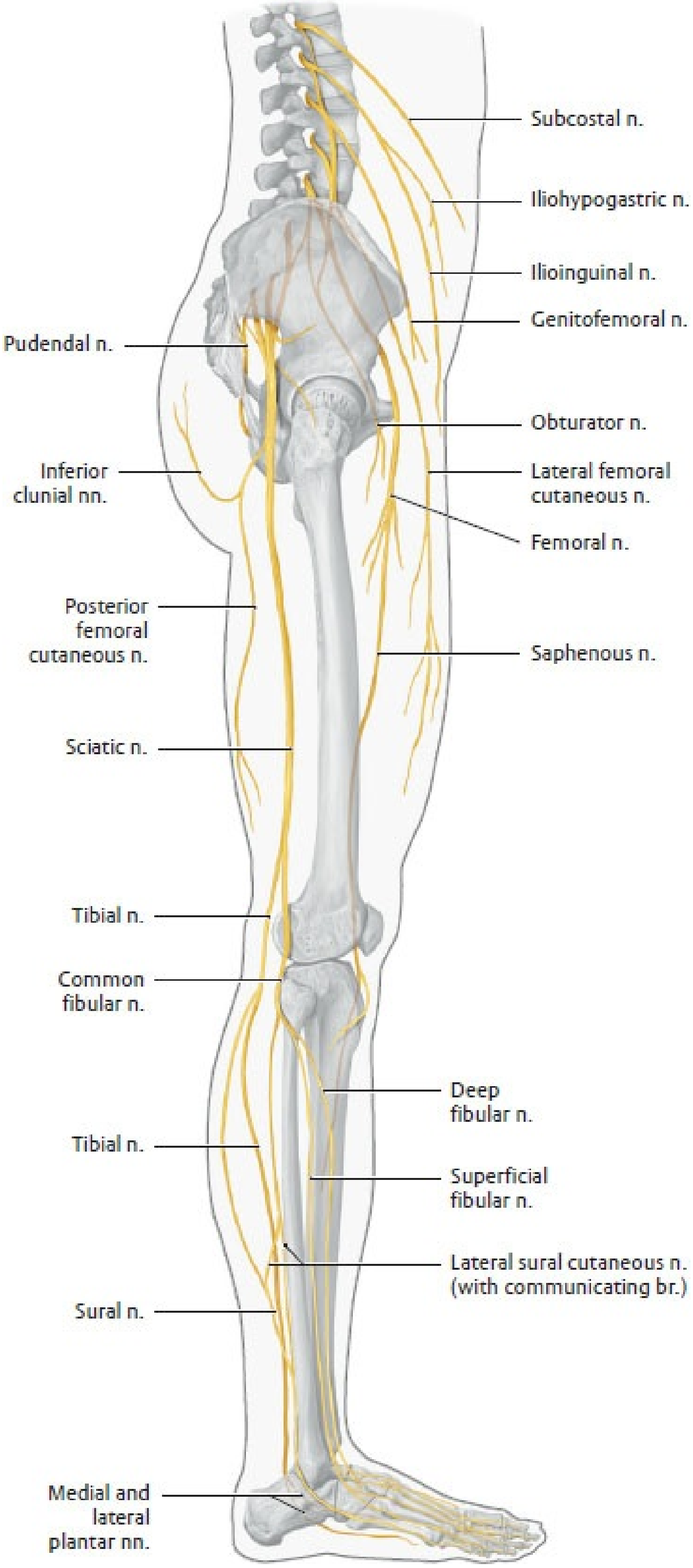

Subcostal n.
Iliohypogastric n.
Ilioinguinal n.
Genitofemoral n.
Pudendal n.
Obturator n.
Inferior clunial nn.
Lateral femoral cutaneous n.
Femoral n.
Posterior femoral cutaneous n.
Saphenous n.
Sciatic n.
Tibial n.
Common fibular n.
Deep fibular n.
Tibial n.
Superficial fibular n.
Lateral sural cutaneous n. (with communicating br.)
Sural n.
Medial and lateral plantar nn.

Fig. 21.14 Lumbosacral plexus

Right side, lateral view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

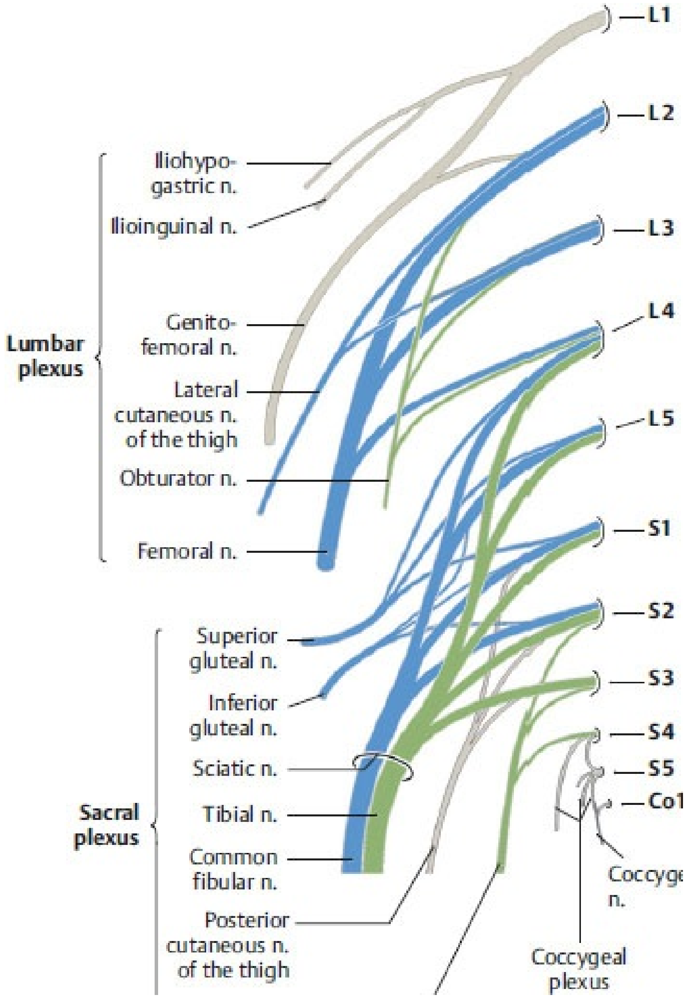

L1
L2
L3
L4
L5
S1
S2
S3
S4
S5
Co1
Lumbar plexus
Iliohypogastric n.
Ilioinguinal n.
Genitofemoral n.
Lateral cutaneous n. of the thigh
Obturator n.
Femoral n.
Sacral plexus
Superior gluteal n.
Inferior gluteal n.
Sciatic n.
Tibial n.
Common fibular n.
Posterior cutaneous n. of the thigh
Coccyge n.
Coccygeal plexus

Fig. 21.15 Structure of the lumbosacral plexus

Right side, anterior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- The **obturator nerve** (L2–L4) enters the medial thigh through the obturator foramen and innervates muscles of the medial compartment.

BOX 21.10: CLINICAL CORRELATION

OBTURATOR NERVE INJURY

Injury to the obturator nerve is most commonly associated with pelvic surgery or pelvic fractures and results in the following:

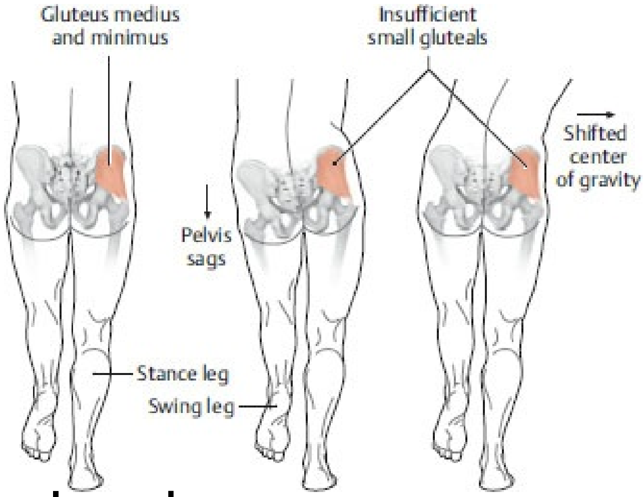
- Weakened adduction of the hip (e.g., inability to move the leg from the gas pedal to the brake)
- Weakened external rotation of the hip
- Loss of sensation over a palm-size area on the medial side of the thigh
- Instability of the pelvis; lateral swing of the limb with locomotion

The sacral plexus supplies muscles of the gluteal region, posterior thigh, and all muscular compartments of the leg and foot. Its branches enter the lower limb through the greater sciatic foramen in the gluteal region.

BOX 21.11: CLINICAL CORRELATION

SUPERIOR GLUTEAL NERVE INJURY

When one foot is lifted off the floor, as happens during the gait cycle, abduction of the hip by the contralateral gluteus medius and gluteus minimus muscles (the supported side) stabilizes the pelvis in the horizontal position. With injury to the superior gluteal nerve, the loss or weakness of abduction on that side allows the pelvis on the opposite (unsupported) side to sag. This results in a characteristic Duchenne's limp in which the weight of the trunk is shifted toward the nerve-damaged side to maintain the center of gravity.


Gluteus medius and minimus
Insufficient small gluteals
Shifted center of gravity
Pelvis sags
Stance leg
Swing leg

Small gluteal muscle weakness

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York:

Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- The **superior gluteal nerve** (L4–S1) enters the gluteal region above the piriformis muscle and runs laterally between the deep gluteal muscles. It supplies the abductors of the hip joint in the gluteal region.
- The **inferior gluteal nerve** (L5–S2) enters the gluteal region inferior to the piriformis muscle and innervates the large gluteus maximus muscle.
- The **posterior cutaneous nerve of the thigh** (L1–S3) is sensory to the thigh and posterior perineum. Its **inferior clunial branches** supply the inferior gluteal region.
- The **sciatic nerve** is made up of the **tibial** (L4–S3) and **common fibular** (L4–S2) **nerves**, which are bound together in a common sheath along their course in the posterior thigh. The two nerves diverge at the apex of the popliteal fossa.

BOX 21.12: CLINICAL CORRELATION

SCIATIC NERVE INJURY

The sciatic nerve can be injured by compression by the piriformis muscle, misplaced intramuscular injections in the gluteal region, pelvic fractures, or surgical procedures such as hip replacements. An injury in the gluteal region would affect muscles of the posterior thigh and all muscular compartments of the leg, the combined effects of damage to the tibial and common fibular nerves.

- The tibial nerve, the larger branch of the sciatic nerve, separates from the common fibular nerve and continues inferiorly through the popliteal fossa into the deep posterior leg compartment.
  - It innervates all of the muscles of the posterior thigh (except the short head of the biceps femoris) and the posterior leg.
  - At the ankle, it passes posterior to the medial malleolus, where it terminates as the **medial plantar** and **lateral plantar nerves**.

BOX 21.13: CLINICAL CORRELATION

TIBIAL NERVE INJURY

Tibial nerve injury is unusual because the nerve is well protected in the thigh and posterior leg. Injury in the gluteal region results in the following:

- Impaired extension of the hip
- Loss of flexion of the knee

In the popliteal fossa, it can be affected by aneurysms of the popliteal artery and knee trauma. These can cause the following:

- Loss of plantar flexion at the ankle
- Loss of plantar flexion, abduction, and adduction of the digits
- Weakened inversion of the foot
- Loss of sensation on the posterolateral leg to the lateral malleolus, the sole and lateral side of the foot
- A shuffling gait with clawing of the toes

- The medial plantar nerve, comparable to the median nerve of the hand with small motor and large sensory components, is the largest branch of the tibial nerve.
  - It innervates plantar muscles on the medial side of the foot.
  - A superficial branch supplies a large area of skin on the medial side of the foot and the medial three and a half digits. It terminates as three **plantar digital nerves.**
- The lateral plantar nerve, the smaller branch of the tibial nerve, is comparable to the ulnar nerve of the hand.
  - It innervates the lateral plantar muscles and most deep muscles of the foot.
  - It innervates skin on the lateral sole and lateral one and a half digits and terminates as two **plantar digital nerves**.
- The common fibular nerve separates from the tibial nerve and, hugging the border of the biceps femoris muscle, passes laterally around the head of the fibula where it enters the lateral leg compartment.
  - In the thigh, it innervates the short head of the biceps femoris.
  - In the lateral leg compartment, it splits into its terminal branches, the **superficial fibular** and **deep fibular nerves**.

BOX 21.14: CLINICAL CORRELATION

COMMON FIBULAR NERVE INJURY

The common fibular nerve is the most vulnerable of the peripheral nerves due to its exposed location around the neck of the fibula. Injuries result in the following:

- Loss of eversion of the foot
- Loss of dorsiflexion at the ankle and digits
- Weakened inversion of the foot
- Loss of sensation over the lateral leg and dorsum of the foot
- Footdrop compensated by a high-stepping gait; instability on uneven surfaces

- The superficial fibular nerve innervates the muscles in the lateral leg compartment. At the midleg, its sensory component pierces the crural fascia and runs onto the dorsum of the foot.
- From its division from the superficial fibular nerve, the deep fibular nerve circles anteriorly to enter the anterior leg compartment. It descends along the interosseous membrane, innervating all muscles of the compartment. It emerges onto the foot with the dorsal pedal artery to innervate the skin on adjacent surfaces of the 1st and 2nd digits.

BOX 21.15: CLINICAL CORRELATION

SUPERFICIAL AND DEEP FIBULAR NERVE INJURY

Injury to the superficial fibular nerve only affects eversion of the foot and sensation over the lateral leg and most of the dorsum of the foot. Injury to the deep fibular has greater functional consequences, including the loss of all dorsiflexion. This results in footdrop and the compensating high-stepping gait.

- The **sural nerve** (S1), formed by communicating branches of the tibial and common fibular nerves on the surface of the posterior leg, runs posterior to the lateral malleolus at the ankle to innervate the skin of the lateral foot.

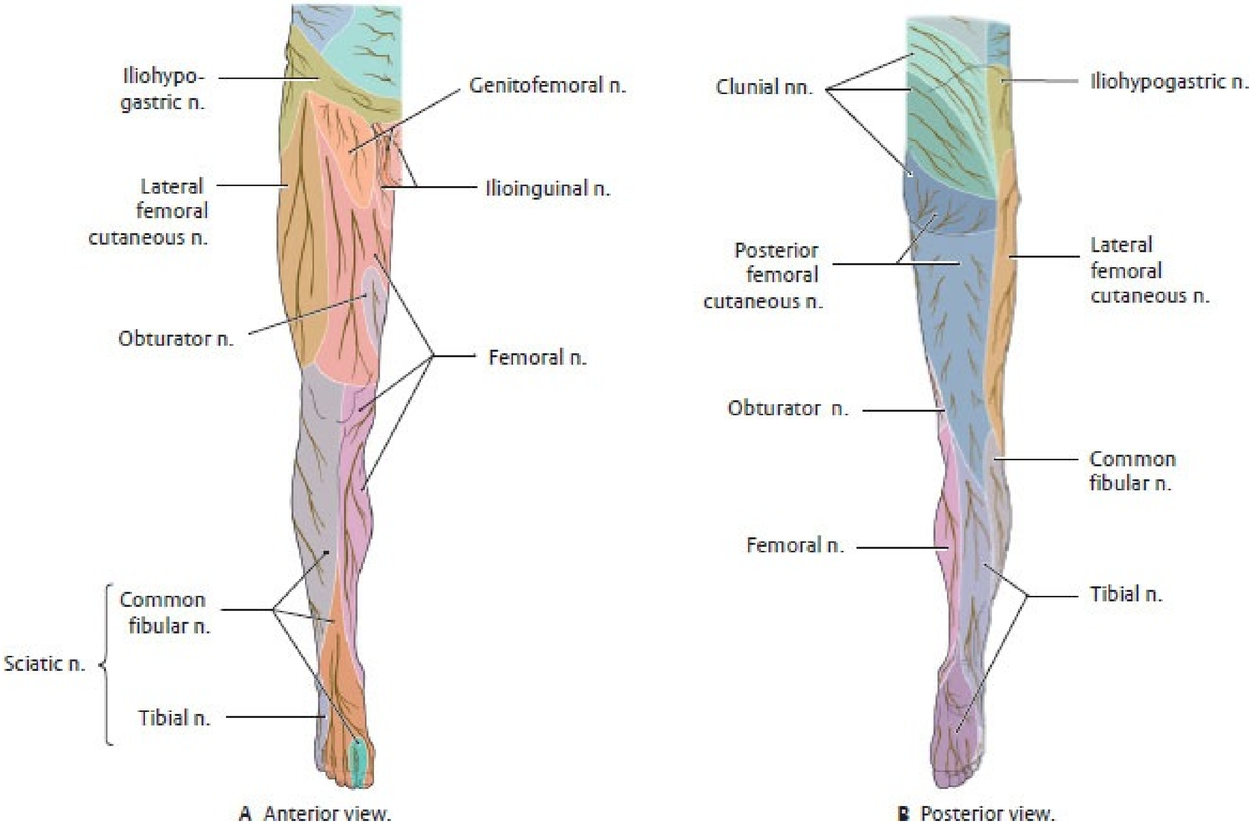

Iliohypogastric n.
Genitofemoral n.
Lateral femoral cutaneous n.
Ilioinguinal n.
Obturator n.
Femoral n.
Sciatic n.
Common fibular n.
Tibial n.
A Anterior view.
Clunial nn.
Iliohypogastric n.
Posterior femoral cutaneous n.
Lateral femoral cutaneous n.
Obturator n.
Common fibular n.
Femoral n.
Tibial n.
B Posterior view.

Fig. 21.16 Cutaneous innervation of the lower limb

Right limb. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

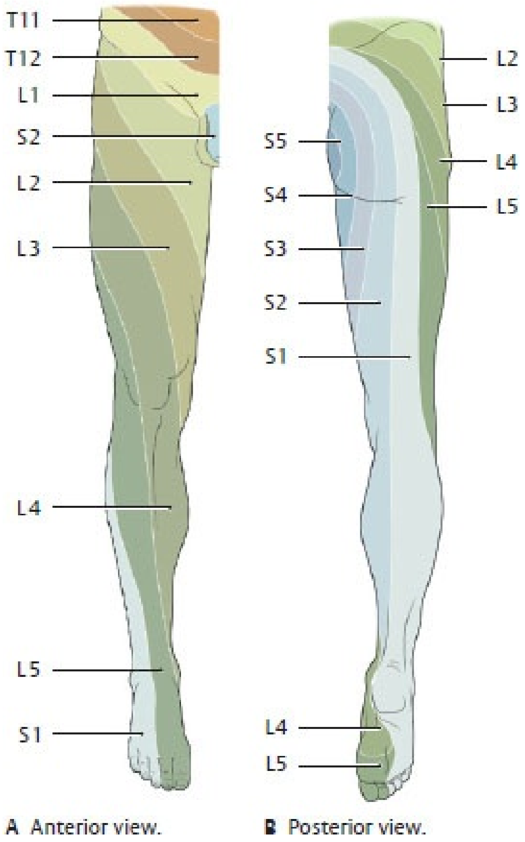

T11
T12
L1
S2
L2
L3
L4
L5
S1
A Anterior view.
L2
L3
S5
L4
S4
L5
S3
S2
S1
L4
L5
B Posterior view.

Fig. 21.17 Dermatomes of the lower limb

Right limb. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

22 Functional Anatomy of the Lower Limb

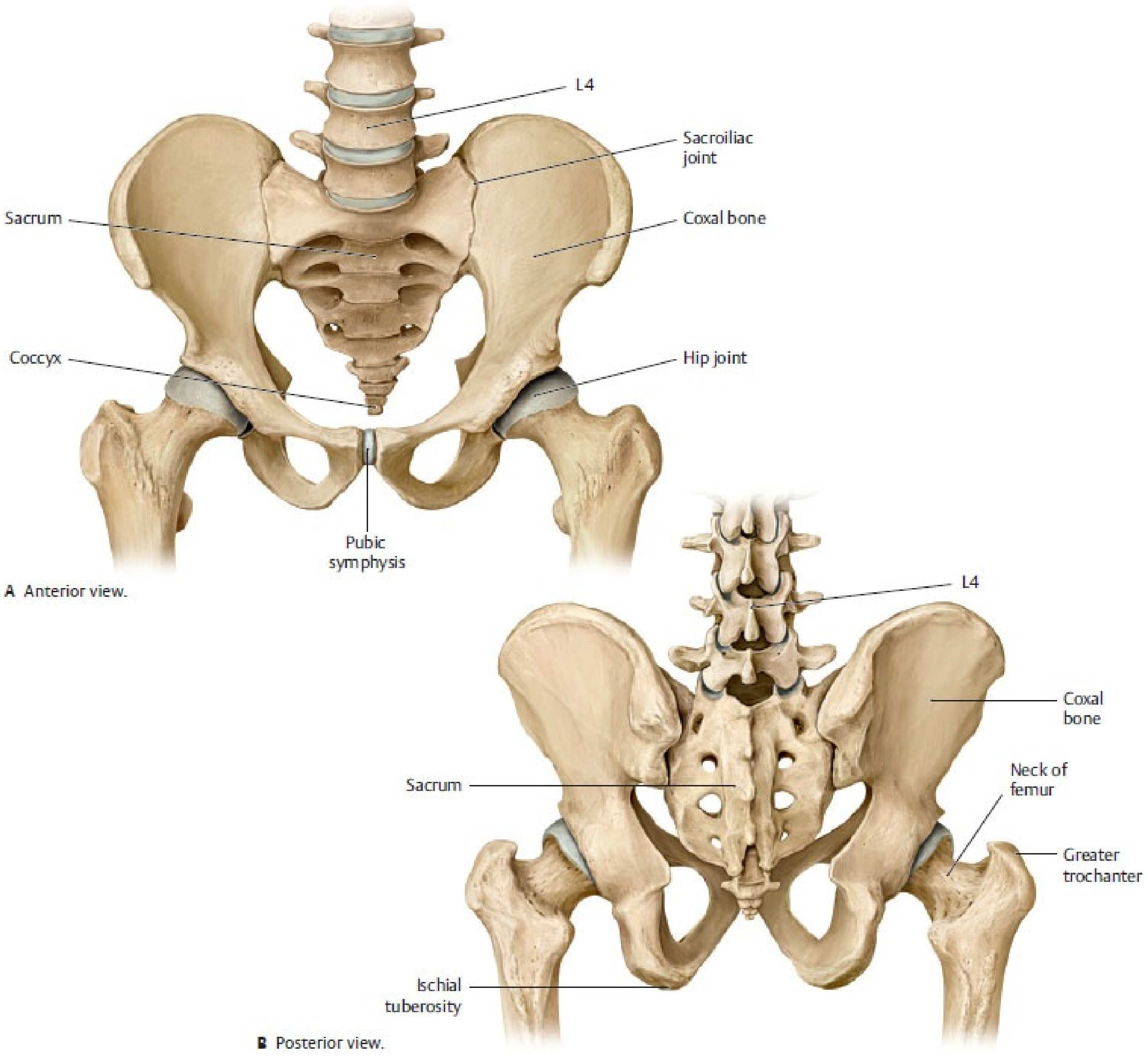
The strong muscles and joints of the lower limb are adapted for bipedal locomotion and, in conjunction with the muscles of the trunk, maintain the body's center of gravity.

Schematics of lower limb muscles accompany the muscle tables (origin, attachment, innervation, and action) in the appropriate chapter sections. To see the muscles in situ, view the gallery of topographic images in Section 22.9 at the end of the chapter.

22.1 The Pelvic Girdle

The hip (coxal) bones and the sacrum form the pelvic girdle (bony pelvis), which is related anatomically and functionally to the pelvis and the lower limb (**Fig. 22.1**). (See Section 14.2 for a discussion of the pelvic girdle.)

— Articulations at the sacroiliac joint and pubic symphysis, supported by strong sacroiliac, sacrotuberous, and sacrospinous ligaments, create a stable framework that
  - supports and encloses the pelvic viscera,
  - transfers the weight of the trunk to the lower limb, and
  - forms part of the hip joint and provides attachment sites for lower limb muscles.


L4
Sacroiliac joint
Sacrum
Coxal bone
Coccyx
Hip joint
Pubic symphysis
L4
Coxal bone
Sacrum
Neck of femur
Greater trochanter
Ischial tuberosity

A Anterior view.

B Posterior view.

Fig. 22.1 The coxal bones and their relation to the vertebral column.

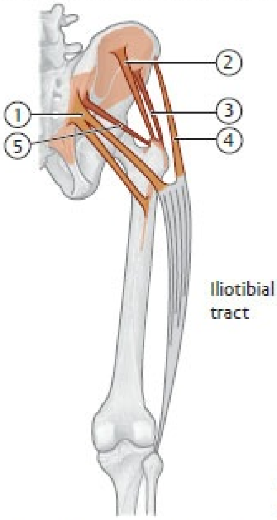
(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

22.2 The Gluteal Region

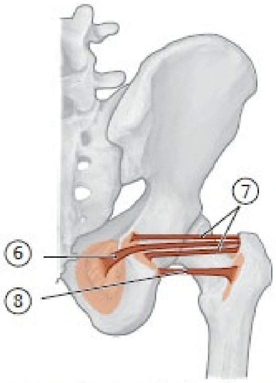
The gluteal region includes the buttock, which overlies the posterior part of the pelvic girdle, and the lateral hip region, which covers the hip joint and extends as far anteriorly as the anterior superior iliac spine.

— The muscular compartment of the gluteal region contains

- muscles that laterally rotate, abduct, adduct, extend, and flex the hip joint (**Table 22.1**);
- the superior gluteal, inferior gluteal, and sciatic nerves; and
- the superior and inferior gluteal arteries and veins.



A Vertically oriented gluteal muscles, right side, posterior view.



B Horizontally oriented gluteal muscles, right side, posterior view.

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Table 22.1 Gluteal Muscles

Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Innervation	Action
① Gluteus maximus	Sacrum (dorsal surface, lateral part), ilium (gluteal surface, posterior part), thoracolumbar fascia, sacrotuberous ligament	• Upper fibers: iliotibial tract • Lower fibers: gluteal tuberosity	Inferior gluteal n. (L5–S2)	• Entire muscle: extends and externally rotates the hip in sagittal and coronal planes • Upper fibers: abduction • Lower fibers: adduction
② Gluteus medius	Ilium (gluteal surface below the iliac crest between the anterior and posterior gluteal line)	Greater trochanter of the femur (lateral surface)	Superior gluteal n. (L4–S1)	• Entire muscle: abducts the hip, stabilizes the pelvis in the coronal plane
③ Gluteus minimus	Ilium (gluteal surface below the origin of the gluteus medius)	Greater trochanter of the femur (anterolateral surface)		• Anterior part: flexion and internal rotation • Posterior part: extension and external rotation
④ Tensor fasciae latae	Anterior superior iliac spine	Iliotibial tract		• Tenses the fascia lata • Hip joint: abduction, flexion, and internal rotation
⑤ Piriformis	Pelvic surface of the sacrum	Apex of the greater trochanter of the femur	Direct branches from the sacral plexus (S1–S2)	• External rotation, abduction, and extension of the hip joint • Stabilizes the hip joint
⑥ Obturator internus	Inner surface of the obturator membrane and its bony boundaries	Medial surface of the greater trochanter	Direct branches from the sacral plexus (L5–S1)	External rotation, adduction, and extension of the hip joint (also active in abduction, depending on the joint's position)
⑦ Gemelli	• Gemellus superior: ischial spine • Gemellus inferior: ischial tuberosity	Jointly with obturator internus tendon (medial surface, greater trochanter)		
⑧ Quadratus femoris	Lateral border of the ischial tuberosity	Intertrochanteric crest of the femur		External rotation and adduction of the hip joint

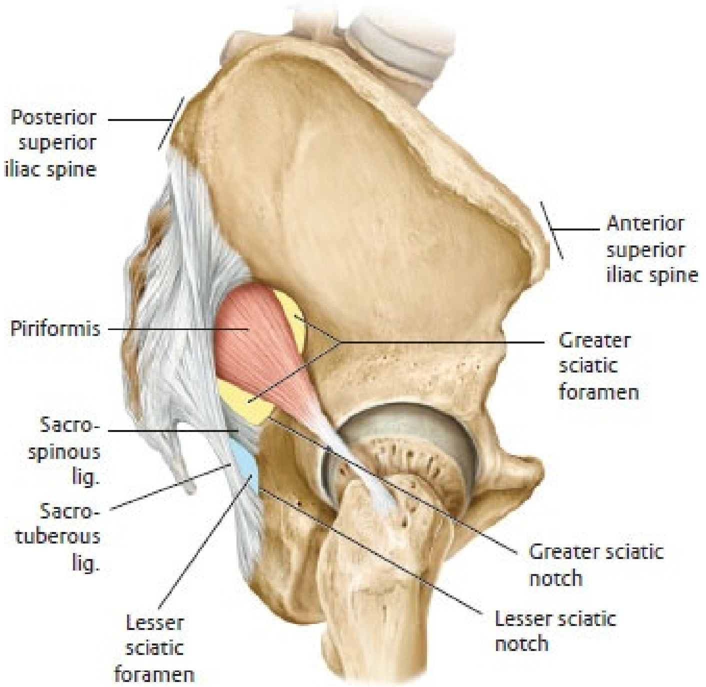

Posterior superior iliac spine
Anterior superior iliac spine
Piriformis
Greater sciatic foramen
Sacro-spinous lig.
Sacro-tuberous lig.
Greater sciatic notch
Lesser sciatic notch
Lesser sciatic foramen

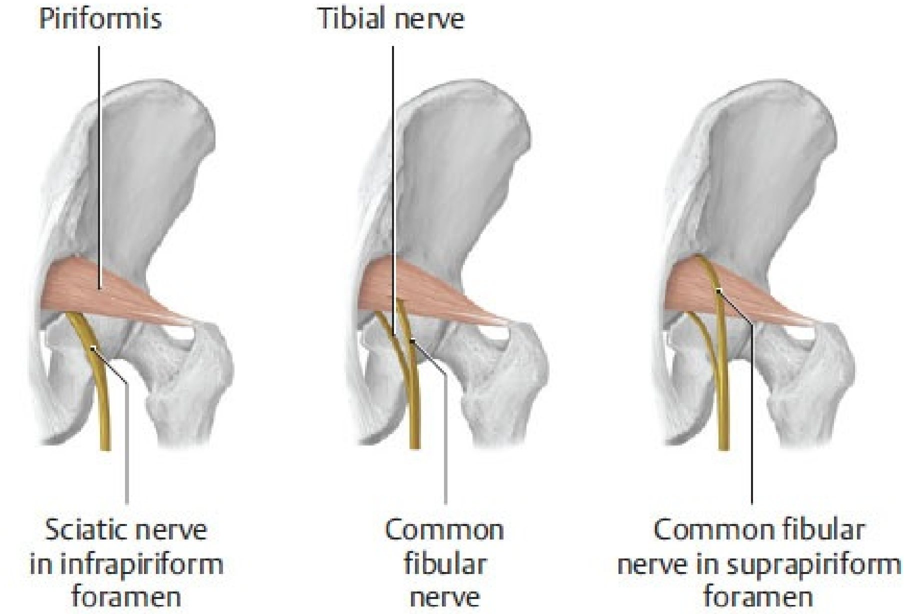
Fig. 22.2 Sciatic foramina

Right gluteal region. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 22.1: CLINICAL CORRELATION

PIRIFORMIS SYNDROME

The sciatic nerve normally passes into the gluteal region inferior to the piriformis muscle. Tightening or shortening of the muscle can compress and irritate the sciatic nerve, causing pain and paresthesia (tingling and numbness) in the buttocks and posterior thigh. In some cases the sciatic nerve, or its common fibular component, is compressed as it passes through the muscle rather than inferior to it. Piriformis syndrome should be distinguished from sciatica in which the pain and paresthesia result from compression of lumbar nerve roots by a herniated intervertebral disk.


Piriformis
Tibial nerve
Sciatic nerve in infrapiriform foramen
Common fibular nerve
Common fibular nerve in suprapiriform foramen

A Normal course of the sciatic nerve

B High division of the sciatic nerve. In approximately 15% of cases the common fibular n. passes through the piriformis where it may be compressed, causing a piriformis syndrome.

Variable course of the sciatic nerve in the gluteal region

(From Rauber A, Kopsch F. Anatomie des Menschen. Bd. 1-4. Stuttgart: Thieme Publishers; Bd. 1. 2nd ed. 1997; Bde. 2 u. 3 1987: Bd. 4 1988)

- Posteriorly, structures pass between the pelvis and the gluteal region through the greater sciatic foramen (**Fig. 22.2**). These structures include
  - the piriformis muscle,
  - the superior gluteal and inferior gluteal vessels,
  - the superior gluteal and inferior gluteal nerves,
  - the sciatic nerve,
  - the pudendal nerve and internal pudendal vessels, and
  - the posterior femoral cutaneous nerve.
- The lesser sciatic foramen, a passageway between the gluteal region and perineum, transmits
  - the internal pudendal vessels,
  - the pudendal nerve, and
  - the tendon of the obturator internus muscle.

22.3 The Hip and Thigh

The Hip Joint

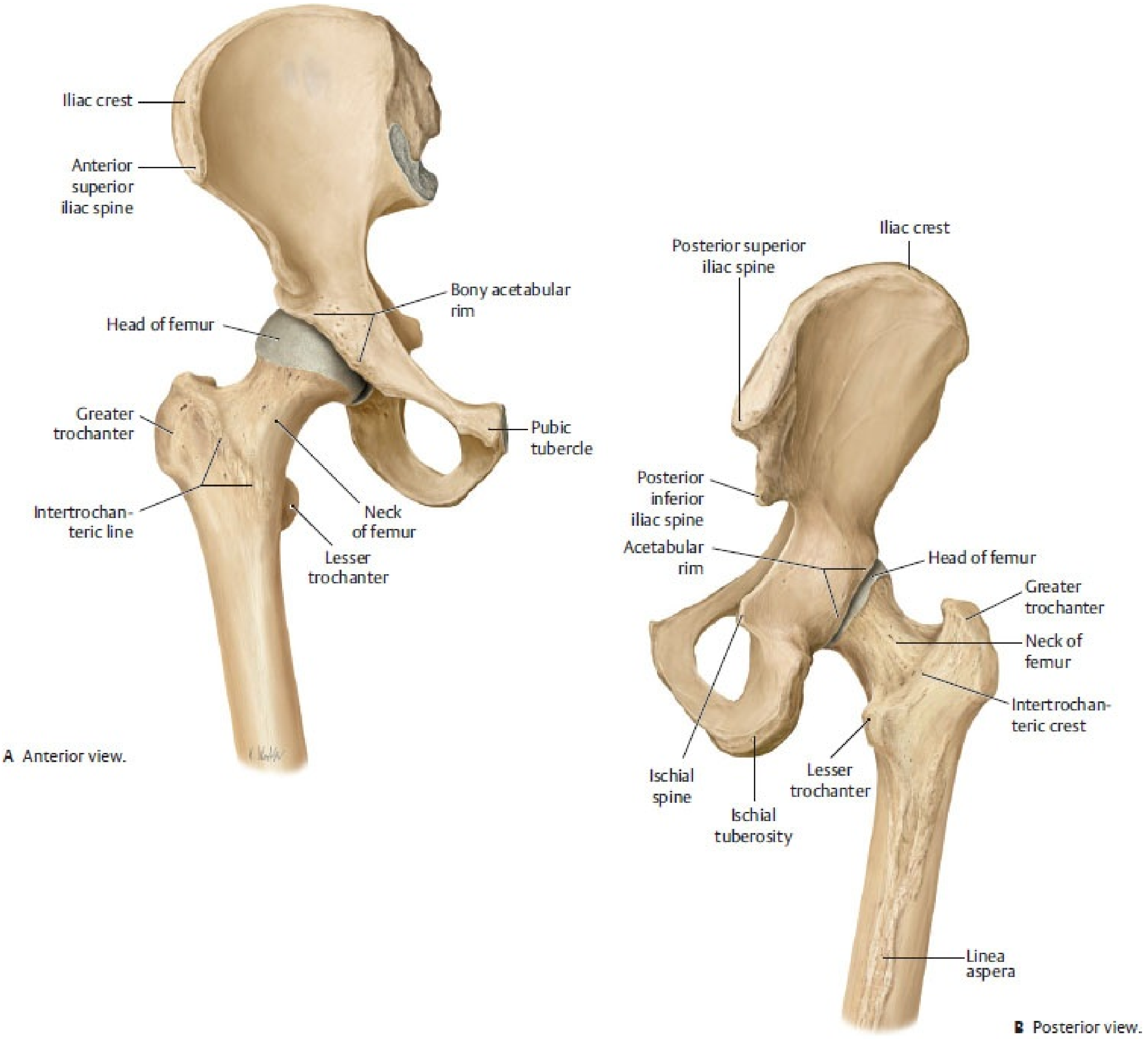
The **hip joint** is a highly mobile, yet stable, ball-and-socket joint between the proximal femur and the acetabulum of the hip bone (**Figs. 22.3** and **22.4**). Muscles crossing the joint, particularly in the gluteal region, provide additional stability as well as mobility.

- More than half of the large femoral head is seated in the bony acetabulum of the hip bone, which is oriented slightly anteriorly and inferiorly.
- The axis through the neck of the femur is laterally rotated with respect to the condylar axis of the distal femur; thus, when the femoral head is centered in the hip joint, the distal femur and knee joint are directed slightly inward (**Figs. 22.5** and **22.6**).
- A strong fibrous capsule surrounds the hip joint (**Fig. 22.7**).
    - **Iliofemoral, pubofemoral, and ischiofemoral ligaments** are extracapsular ligaments that strengthen the capsule. The iliofemoral ligament is the strongest and most supportive of these. The ligaments are arranged in a spiral around the joint. When the hip is extended, the spiral tightens, pushing the femoral head more firmly into the acetabulum and further stabilizing the joint. In hip flexion, the spiral unwinds, allowing a greater degree of joint mobility as well as vulnerability (**Fig. 22.8**).
- A fibrocartilaginous **acetabular labrum** attached to the acetabular rim deepens the joint (**Fig. 22.9**).
- A weak **ligament of the head of the femur** attaches to the acetabulum within the joint space but provides little support.
- Inferiorly, a **transverse ligament of the acetabulum** completes the circle of the C-shaped acetabular labrum.
- Muscles of the gluteal region and thigh move the hip joint (**Table 22.2**).

BOX 22.2: CLINICAL CORRELATION

CONGENITAL HIP DISLOCATION

Congenital hip dislocation (also known as hip dysplasia) is a common problem that occurs when the femoral head is not properly seated in the acetabulum. Hip abduction is impaired, and since the femoral head sits higher than normal, the affected limb is shorter than the contralateral limb. In routine neonatal screenings, a dislocated hip will “click” when it is adducted and pushed posteriorly.


Iliac crest
Anterior superior iliac spine
Head of femur
Bony acetabular rim
Greater trochanter
Pubic tubercle
Intertrochanteric line
Neck of femur
Lesser trochanter
Posterior superior iliac spine
Iliac crest
Posterior inferior iliac spine
Acetabular rim
Head of femur
Greater trochanter
Neck of femur
Intertrochanteric crest
Ischial spine
Lesser trochanter
Ischial tuberosity
Linea aspera

A Anterior view.

B Posterior view.

Fig. 22.3 Right hip joint

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

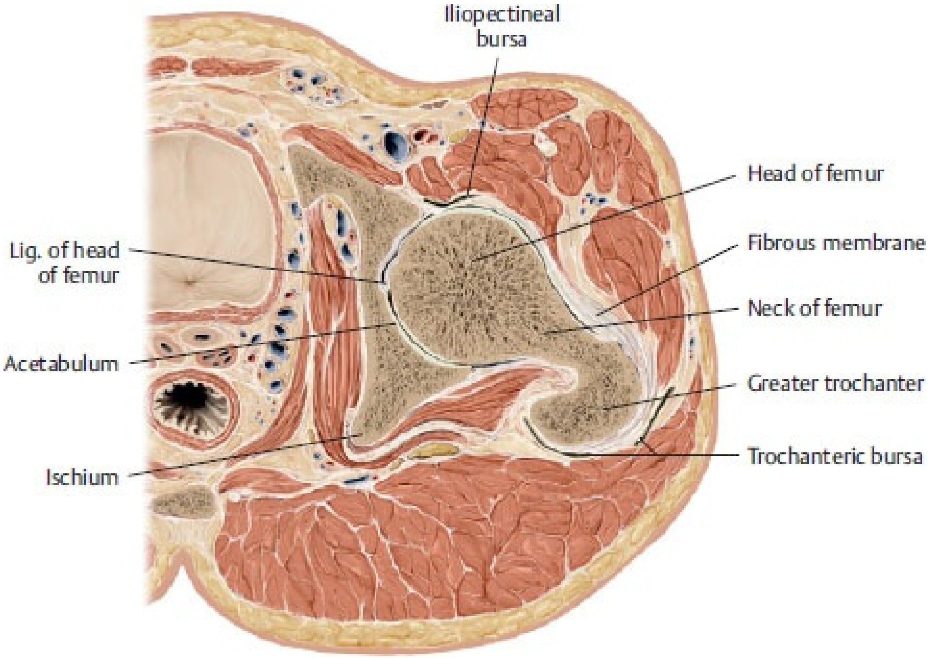

Iliopectineal bursa
Head of femur
Lig. of head of femur
Fibrous membrane
Neck of femur
Acetabulum
Greater trochanter
Trochanteric bursa
Ischium

Fig. 22.4 Hip joint: transverse section

Right hip joint, superior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

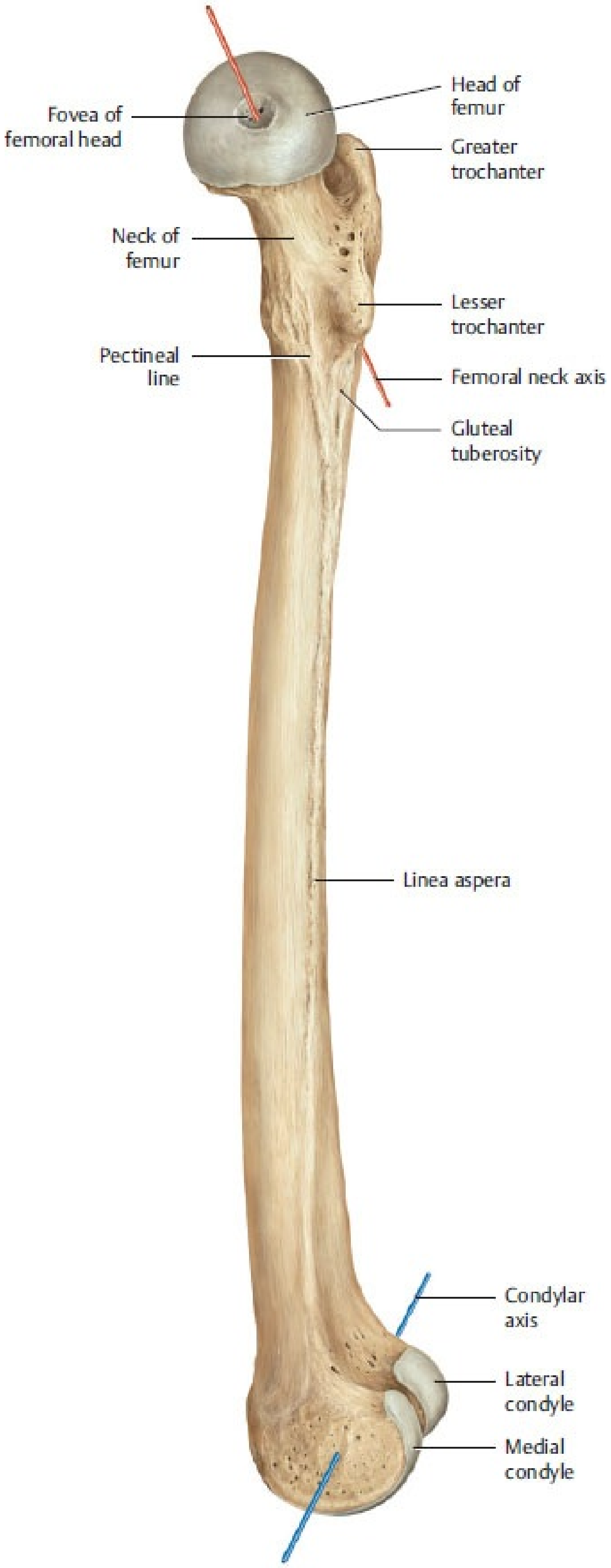
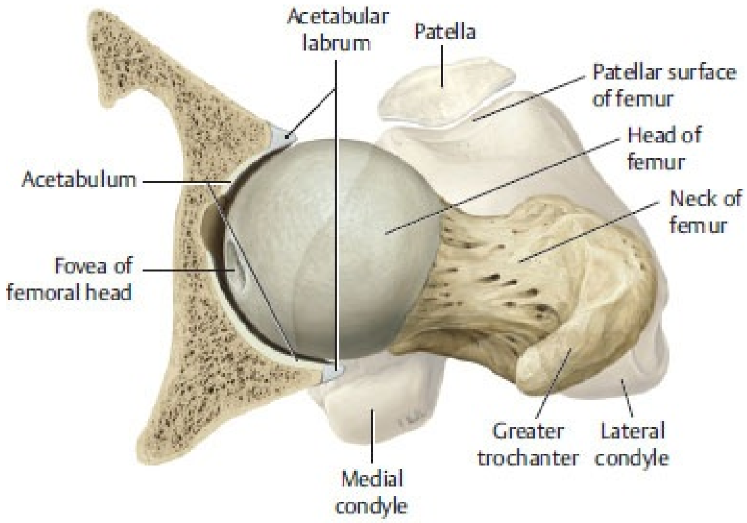
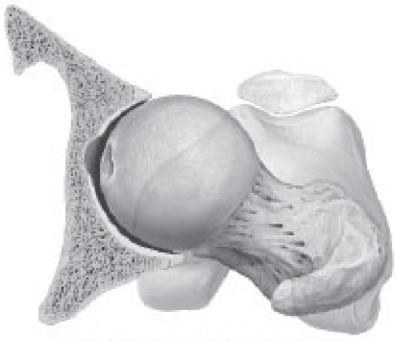

Head of femur
Fovea of femoral head
Greater trochanter
Neck of femur
Lesser trochanter
Pectineal line
Femoral neck axis
Gluteal tuberosity
Linea aspera
Condylar axis
Lateral condyle
Medial condyle

Fig. 22.5 Proximal and distal axes of rotation of the femur

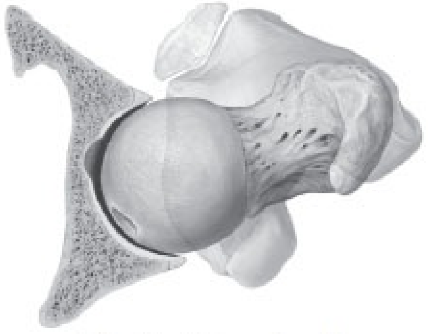
Right femur. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Acetabular labrum
Patella
Patellar surface of femur
Head of femur
Acetabulum
Neck of femur
Fovea of femoral head
Greater trochanter
Lateral condyle
Medial condyle

A Hip joint with femoral head centered in the acetabulum.



B Hip joint in external rotation.



C Hip joint in internal rotation.

Fig. 22.6 Orientation of the hip joint relative to the knee joint

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol

1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 22.3: CLINICAL CORRELATION

ACQUIRED HIP DISLOCATION

Acquired hip dislocation usually occurs as a result of trauma that causes the femoral head to be displaced out of the acetabulum; anterior dislocations are rare, but posterior dislocations are common. Typically, in a head-on motor vehicle accident, the knees strike the dashboard, forcing the femoral head posteriorly through the joint capsule and onto the lateral surface of the ilium. The affected limb appears shortened, adducted, and internally rotated. The sciatic nerve is particularly vulnerable to injury in these cases.

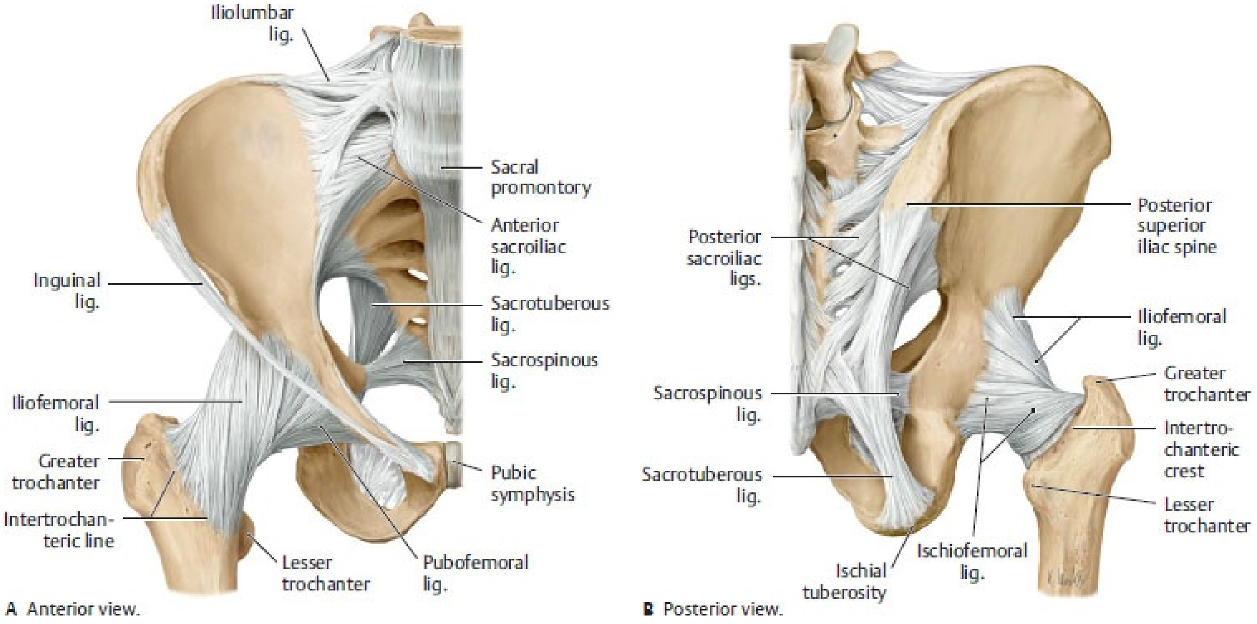
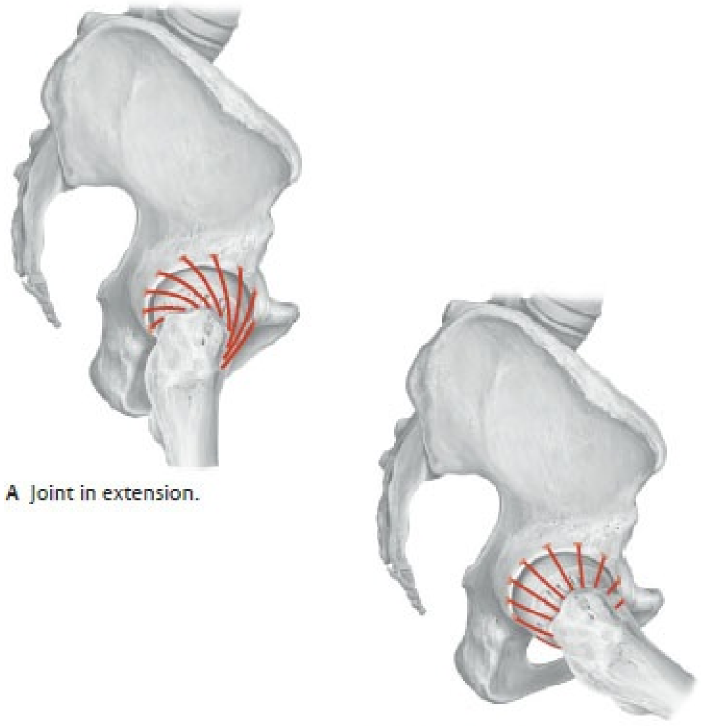

Iliolumbar lig.
Sacral promontory
Anterior sacroiliac lig.
Inguinal lig.
Sacrotuberous lig.
Sacrospinous lig.
Iliofemoral lig.
Greater trochanter
Pubic symphysis
Intertrochanteric line
Lesser trochanter
Pubofemoral lig.
A Anterior view.
Posterior superior iliac spine
Posterior sacroiliac ligs.
Iliofemoral lig.
Greater trochanter
Sacrospinous lig.
Intertrochanteric crest
Sacrotuberous lig.
Lesser trochanter
Ischiofemoral lig.
Ischial tuberosity
B Posterior view.

Fig. 22.7 Ligaments of the hip joint and pelvic girdle

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)



A Joint in extension.

B Joint in flexion.

Fig. 22.8 Hip Ligaments as a function of joint position

Right hip, lateral view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

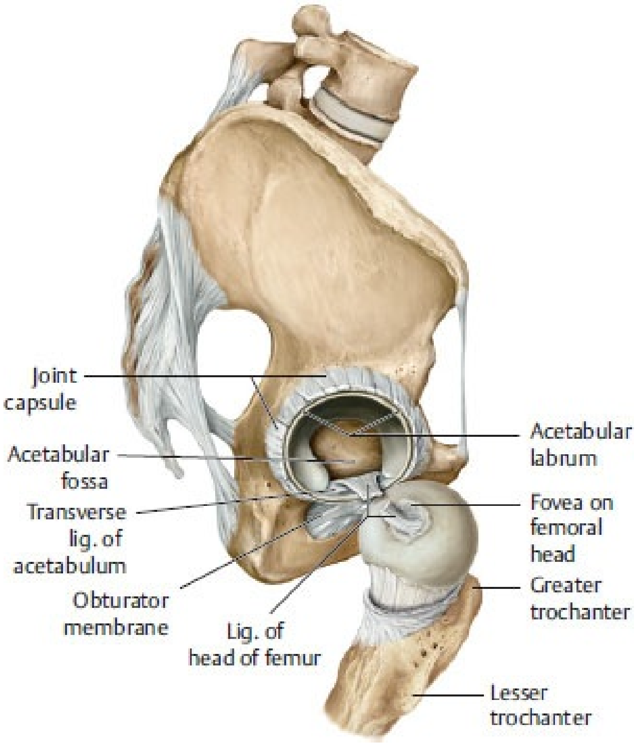

Joint capsule
Acetabular fossa
Transverse lig. of acetabulum
Obturator membrane
Lig. of head of femur
Acetabular labrum
Fovea on femoral head
Greater trochanter
Lesser trochanter

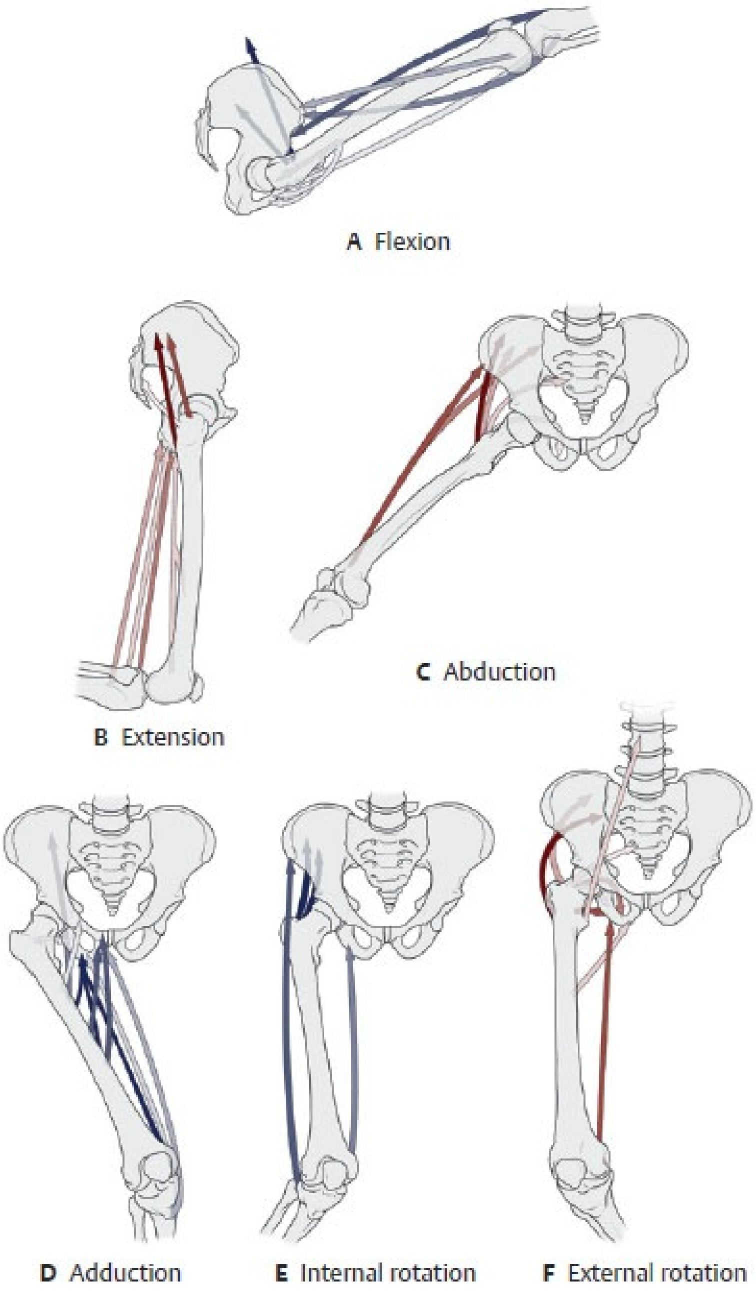
Fig. 22.9 Joint capsule of the hip joint

Lateral view. The capsule has been divided and the femoral head dislocated to expose the cut ligament of the head of the femur. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Table 22.2 Movements of the Hip Joint

Action	Primary Muscles
Flexion	Iliopsoas Tensor fascia latae Sartorius Rectus femoris
Extension	Gluteus maximus Adductor magnus Biceps femoris, long head Semimembranosus Semitendinosus
Abduction	Gluteus medius

	Gluteus minimus Tensor fascia latae
Adduction	Gluteus maximus Pectineus Adductor longus Adductor brevis Adductor magnus
Internal rotation	Gracilis Gluteus medius Gluteus minimus Tensor fascia latae
External rotation	Gluteus maximus Pectineus Sartorius Quadratus femoris Piriformis Obturator externus Obturator internus



A Flexion

B Extension

C Abduction

D Adduction

E Internal rotation

F External rotation

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Muscles of the Thigh

The powerful muscles of the thigh move the hip and knee joints and are separated into three compartments (see Fig. 22.45**A**).

— The anterior compartment contains

- muscles that primarily flex the hip joint and extend the knee joint

    - (**Tables 22.3** and **22.4**);
    - the femoral nerve; and
    - branches of the femoral artery, the deep artery of the thigh, and their accompanying veins.
- The medial compartment contains
    - muscles that primarily adduct, flex, and extend the hip joint (**Table 22.5**);
    - the obturator and femoral nerves; and
    - the obturator artery and vein and deep artery and vein of the thigh.
- The posterior compartment contains
    - muscles that extend the hip joint and flex the knee joint (**Table 22.6**),
    - the sciatic nerve, and
    - branches of the deep artery and vein of the thigh.
- Three muscles of the thigh, the **sartorius, gracilis**, and **semitendinosus**, cross the knee medially and join to form the **pes anserinus**, a common tendon that overlies the **anserine bursa** inferomedial to the knee joint (see **Fig. 22.37**).

BOX 22.4: CLINICAL CORRELATION

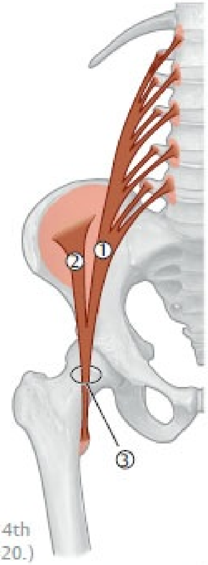
HAMSTRING STRAINS

Hamstring strains are tears of the hamstring (posterior thigh) muscles at their proximal attachment to the pelvic girdle. This is a common injury in individuals who participate in sports that involve sprinting with sudden starts and stops. Forced high kicks, especially with an extended knee, may avulse the muscle tendons from their origin at the ischial tuberosity. Symptoms include sudden, sharp pain in the back of the thigh during physical activity, a popping or tearing feeling in the muscle, swelling, muscle weakness, and an inability to bear weight on the affected leg.

Table 22.3 Iliopsoas Muscle

Muscle		Origin	Insertion	Innervation	Action
③ Iliopsoas*	① Psoas major	*Superficial:* T12–L4 vertebrae and associated intervertebral disks (lateral surfaces) *Deep:* L1–L5 vertebrae (costal processes)	Femur (lesser trochanter)	Lumbar plexus, L1, L2 (L3)	Hip joint: flexion and external rotation Lumbar spine: *unilateral* contraction (with the femur fixed) flexes the trunk laterally to the same side; *bilateral* contraction raises the trunk from the supine position
	② Iliacus	Iliac fossa		Femoral n. (L2, L3)	

*The psoas minor, present in approximately 50% of the population, is often found on the superficial surface of the psoas major. It is not a muscle of the lower limb. It originates, inserts, and exerts its action on the abdominal wall.

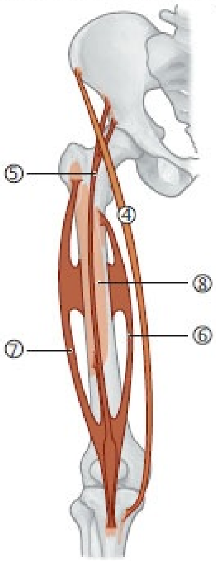


Iliopsoas muscle, anterior view
(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

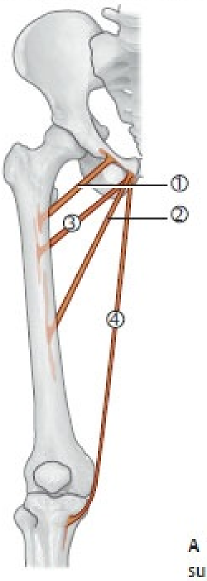
Table 22.4 Thigh Muscles, Anterior Compartment

Muscle		Origin	Insertion	Innervation	Action
④ Sartorius		Anterior superior iliac spine	Medial to the tibial tuberosity (together with gracilis and semitendinosus)	Femoral n. (L2–L3)	Hip joint: flexion, abduction, and external rotation Knee joint: flexion and internal rotation
Quadriceps femoris*	⑤ Rectus femoris	Anterior inferior iliac spine, acetabular roof of hip joint	Tibial tuberosity (via patellar ligament)	Femoral n. (L2–L4)	Hip joint: flexion Knee joint: extension
	⑥ Vastus medialis	Linea aspera (medial lip), intertrochanteric line (distal part)	Tibial tuberosity via patellar lig.: patella and tibial tuberosity via respective medial and lateral patellar retinacula		Knee joint: extension
	⑦ Vastus lateralis	Linea aspera (lateral lip), greater trochanter (lateral surface)	Tibial tuberosity (via patellar ligament)		
	⑧ Vastus intermedius	Femoral shaft (anterior side)	Suprapatellar recess of knee joint capsule		
	Articularis genu (distal fibers of vastus intermedius)	Anterior side of femoral shaft at level of the suprapatellar recess			Knee joint: extension; retracts the suprapatellar bursa to prevent entrapment of capsule

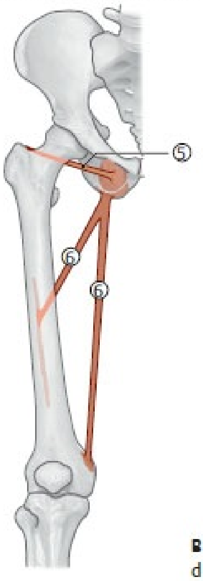
*The entire muscle inserts on the tibial tuberosity via the patellar ligament.



Thigh muscles, anterior compartment, right side.
(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)



A Thigh muscles, medial compartment, superficial layer, anterior view.

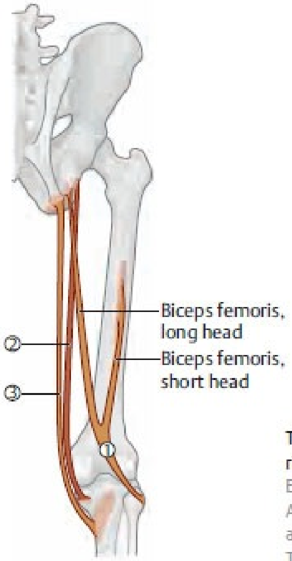


B Thigh muscles, medial compartment, deep layer, anterior view.

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th Edition. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

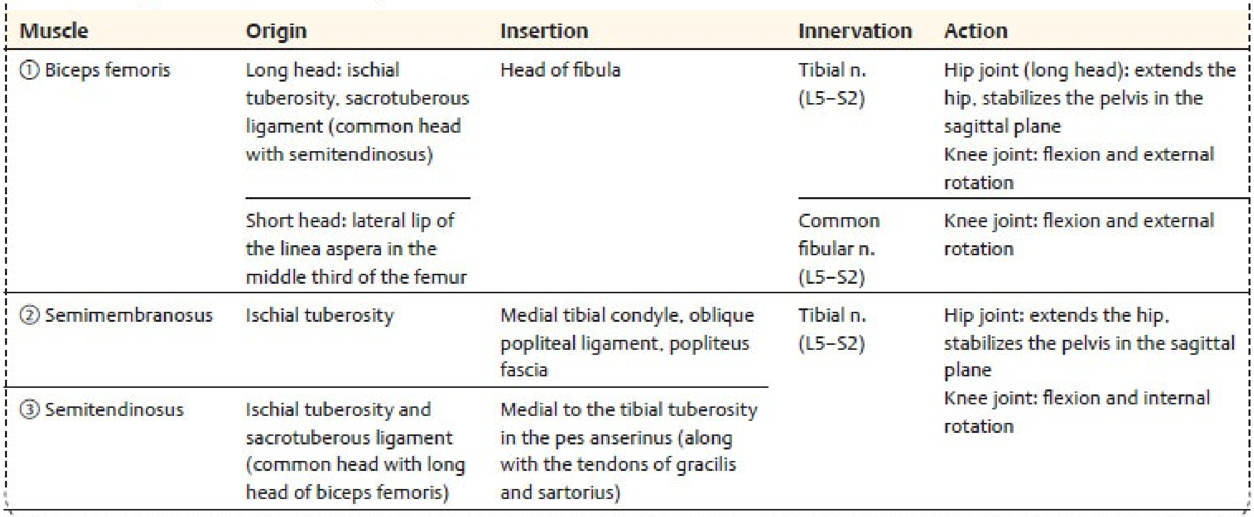
Table 22.5 Thigh Muscles, Medial Compartment: Superficial and Deep Layers

Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Innervation	Action
Superficial layer				
① Pectineus	Pecten pubis	Femur (pectineal line and the proximal linea aspera)	Femoral n., obturator n. (L2, L3)	Hip joint: adduction, external rotation, and slight flexion Stabilizes the pelvis in the coronal and sagittal planes
② Adductor longus	Superior pubic ramus and anterior side of the symphysis	Femur (linea aspera, medial lip in the middle third of the femur)	Obturator n. (L2–L4)	Hip joint: adduction and flexion (up to 70 degrees): extension (past 80 degrees of flexion) Stabilizes the pelvis in the coronal and sagittal planes
③ Adductor brevis	Inferior pubic ramus		Obturator n. (L2, L3)	
④ Gracilis	Inferior pubic ramus below the symphysis	Tibia (medial border of the tuberosity, along with the tendons of sartorius and semitendinosus)		Hip joint: adduction and flexion Knee joint: flexion and internal rotation
Deep layer				
⑤ Obturator externus	Outer surface of the obturator membrane and its bony boundaries	Trochanteric fossa of the femur	Obturator n. (L3, L4)	Hip joint: adduction and external rotation Stabilizes the pelvis in the sagittal plane
⑥ Adductor magnus	Inferior pubic ramus, ischial ramus, and ischial tuberosity	Deep part ("fleshy insertion"): medial lip of the linea spine	Obturator n. (L2–L4)	Hip joint: adduction, extension, and slight flexion (the tendinous insertion is also active in internal rotation) Stabilizes the pelvis in the coronal and sagittal planes
		Superficial part ("tendinous insertion"): adductor tubercle of the femur	Tibial n. (L4)	



Thigh muscles, posterior compartment, right side. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Table 22.6 Thigh Muscles, Posterior Compartment



Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Innervation	Action
① Biceps femoris	Long head: ischial tuberosity, sacrotuberous ligament (common head with semitendinosus)	Head of fibula	Tibial n. (L5–S2)	Hip joint (long head): extends the hip, stabilizes the pelvis in the sagittal plane Knee joint: flexion and external rotation
	Short head: lateral lip of the linea aspera in the middle third of the femur		Common fibular n. (L5–S2)	Knee joint: flexion and external rotation
② Semimembranosus	Ischial tuberosity	Medial tibial condyle, oblique popliteal ligament, popliteus fascia	Tibial n. (L5–S2)	Hip joint: extends the hip, stabilizes the pelvis in the sagittal plane Knee joint: flexion and internal rotation
③ Semitendinosus	Ischial tuberosity and sacrotuberous ligament (common head with long head of biceps femoris)	Medial to the tibial tuberosity in the pes anserinus (along with the tendons of gracilis and sartorius)		

Spaces of the Thigh

The femoral nerve, artery, and vein descend through narrow passages in the thigh that are created by the inguinal ligament and anterior and medial thigh muscles.

— Anteriorly, structures pass from the abdomen into the thigh through the **retroinguinal space**, deep to the inguinal ligament. The retroinguinal space is divided into a lateral muscular compartment and a medial vascular compartment (**Fig. 22.10**).

- The muscular compartment contains the femoral nerve and iliopsoas muscle.
- The vascular compartment contains the femoral vessels enclosed within the **femoral sheath**.

  - The femoral sheath, formed by extensions of the transversalis and psoas fasciae, surrounds the femoral vessels as they pass under the inguinal ligament. Inferiorly, the sheath merges with the outer layer of the vessel walls (adventitia). Septa divide the sheath into compartments:
    - Lateral and central compartments contain the femoral artery and femoral vein, respectively.
    - A medial compartment within the sheath, the **femoral canal**, contains loose connective tissue, fat, and often a deep inguinal lymph node. The **femoral ring** defines the superior opening of the canal.
- The **femoral triangle** is an area of the anterior thigh (**Fig. 22.11**).
  - It contains the femoral artery and vein and their branches and the terminal branches of the femoral nerve.
  - Its boundaries are
    - superiorly, the inguinal ligament;
    - medially, the adductor longus muscle;
    - laterally, the sartorius muscle;
    - the floor, formed by the iliopsoas and pectineus muscles; and
    - the apex, formed by the inferior junction of the medial and lateral borders.

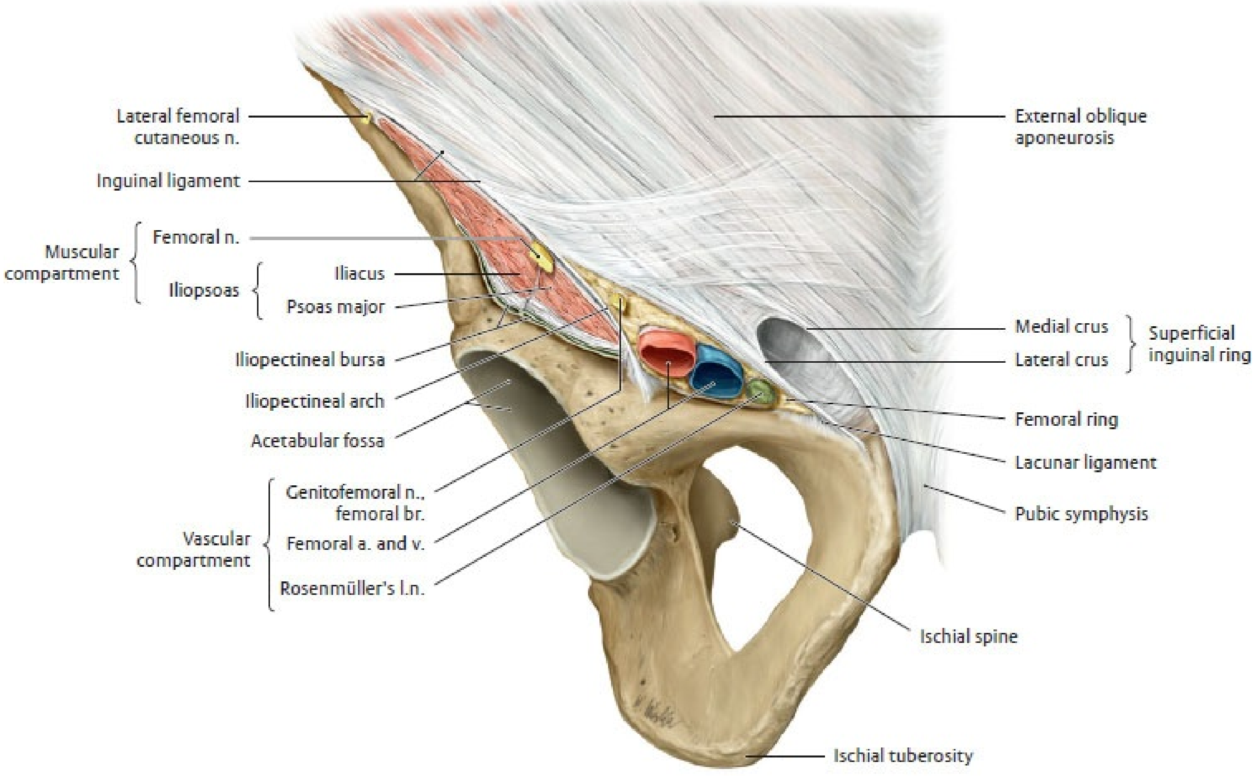

Lateral femoral cutaneous n.
Inguinal ligament
Muscular compartment
Femoral n.
Iliopsoas
Iliacus
Psoas major
Iliopectineal bursa
Iliopectineal arch
Acetabular fossa
Genitofemoral n., femoral br.
Vascular compartment
Femoral a. and v.
Rosenmüller's l.n.
External oblique aponeurosis
Medial crus
Lateral crus
Superficial inguinal ring
Femoral ring
Lacunar ligament
Pubic symphysis
Ischial spine
Ischial tuberosity

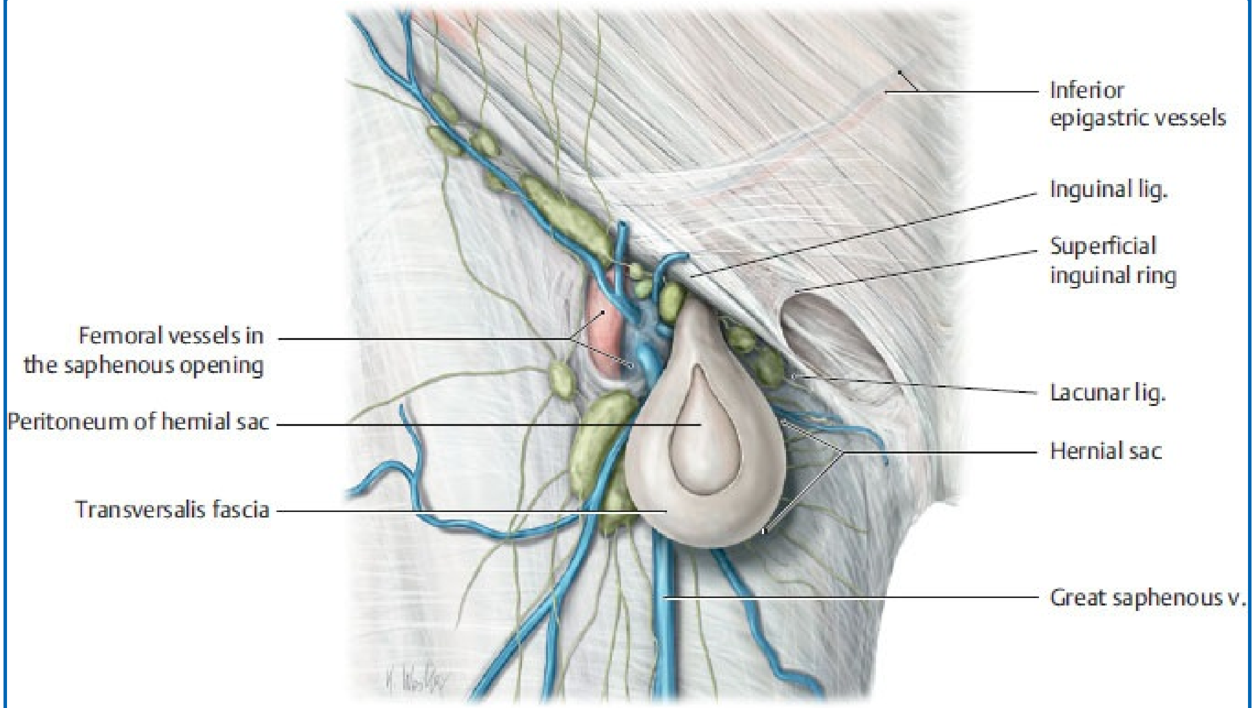
Fig. 22.10 Retroinguinal space: Muscular and vascular compartments

Right inguinal region, anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 22.5: CLINICAL CORRELATION

FEMORAL HERNIAS

Femoral hernias (usually of the small intestine) are always acquired and are more common in women. They pass inferior to the inguinal ligament, through the femoral ring and femoral canal, and appear in the femoral triangle inferior and lateral to the pubic tubercle. They should be distinguished from inguinal hernias, which occur superior and lateral to the pubic tubercle (above the inguinal ligament).



Inferior epigastric vessels
Inguinal lig.
Superficial inguinal ring
Femoral vessels in the saphenous opening
Lacunar lig.
Peritoneum of hernial sac
Hernial sac
Transversalis fascia
Great saphenous v.
K. Wesker

Femoral hernia

Right female inguinal region, anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

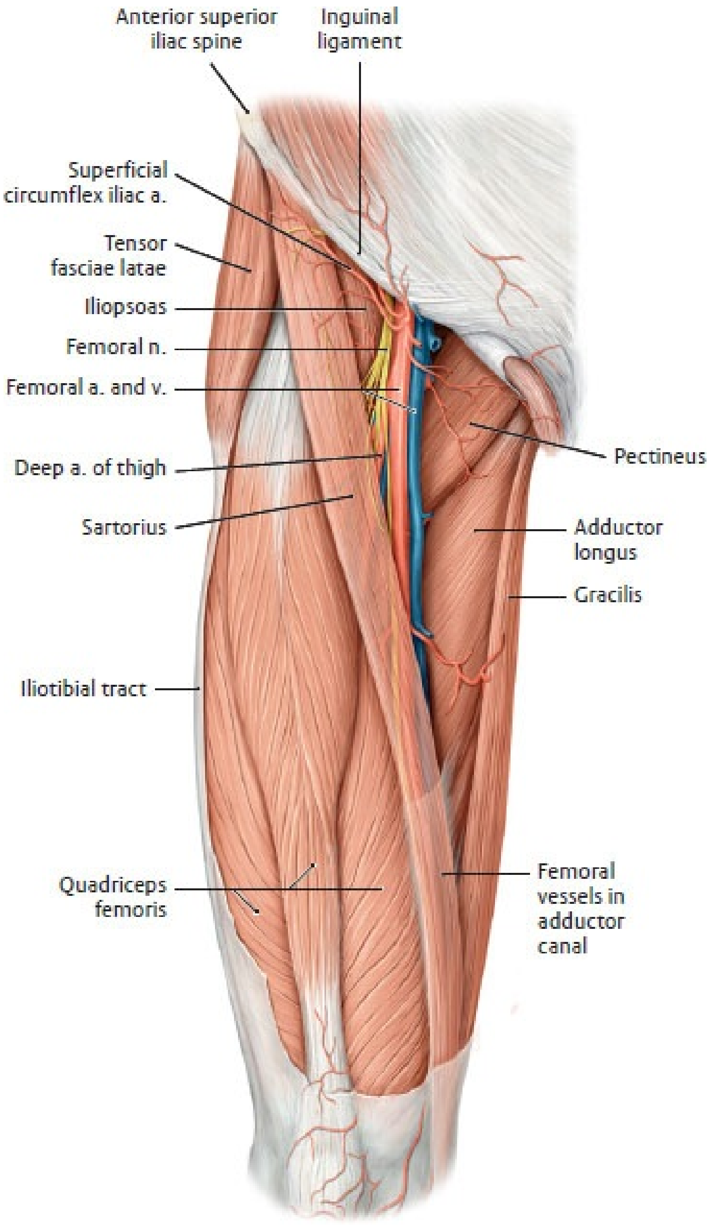

Anterior superior iliac spine
Inguinal ligament
Superficial circumflex iliac a.
Tensor fasciae latae
Iliopsoas
Femoral n.
Femoral a. and v.
Deep a. of thigh
Sartorius
Iliotibial tract
Quadriceps femoris
Pectineus
Adductor longus
Gracilis
Femoral vessels in adductor canal

Fig. 22.11 Anterior thigh

Right thigh, anterior view. *Revealed*: Femoral triangle. *Removed*: Skin, subcutaneous tissue, and fascia lata. *Partially transparent*: Sartorius. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

— The **adductor canal** is an intermuscular passage between the anterior and medial thigh muscles.
  - It contains the femoral vessels and the saphenous branch of the femoral

  nerve.
  - The canal begins at the inferior apex of the femoral triangle and ends at the **adductor hiatus**, an opening in the tendon of the adductor magnus muscle.

22.4 The Knee and Popliteal Region

The popliteal region connects the thigh and leg. It contains the knee joint and the popliteal fossa and its contents.

The Knee Joint

The knee joint is a modified hinge joint that includes the medial and lateral articulations between the condyles of the femur and tibia, and the articulation between the femur and patella (**Fig. 22.12**). Flexion and extension are the primary movements at the knee joint, but some rotation and sliding also occur.

- — The patella articulates with the patellar surface of the femur between the medial and lateral condyles and protects the knee joint anteriorly. The patella is embedded in the tendon of the quadriceps femoris muscle, increasing the leverage of the muscle by holding the tendon away from the joint.
- — Although the articular surfaces of the femur and tibia are extensive, there is little congruity between the bones, and stability depends chiefly on
  - ligaments that connect the tibia and femur; and
  - muscles that surround the joint, most importantly the quadriceps femoris (**Figs. 22.13** and **22.14**).
- — The fibrous capsule of the knee joint is thin and incomplete and derives additional support from **patellar retinacula** (capsular ligaments that attach anteriorly to the quadriceps tendon), the patella, and **extracapsular ligaments** around the joint (**Fig. 22.13**).
- — Extracapsular (external) ligaments support the fibrous capsule (**Figs. 22.15, 22.16**, **22.22**).
  - The **patellar ligament**, the distal part of the quadriceps tendon that supports the knee joint anteriorly, extends from the patella to the tibial tuberosity.
  - The two **collateral ligaments** limit rotation and prevent medial and lateral dislocation of the knee joint. They are tightest in extension and slacken during flexion.
    - ◦ The **lateral (fibular) collateral ligament** is cordlike and remains unattached to the joint capsule. It extends from the lateral

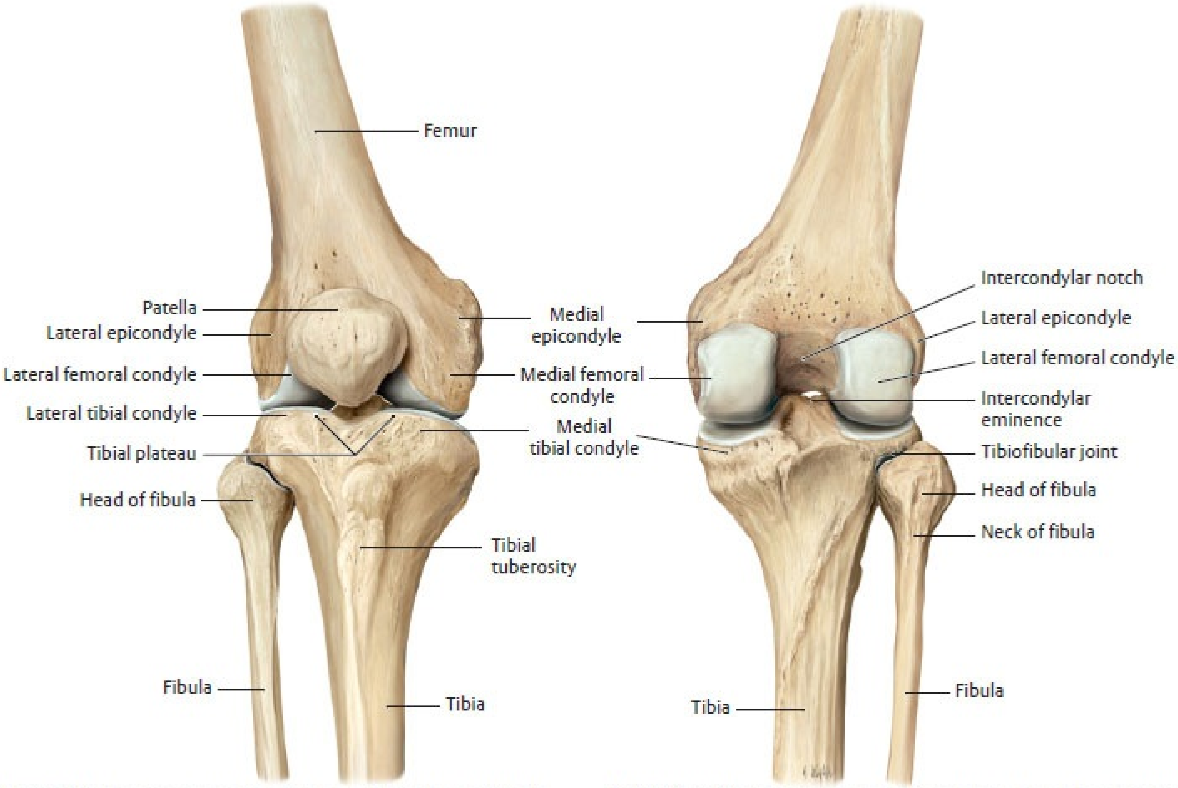
epicondyle of the femur to the head of the fibula.
    - The **medial** (**tibial**) **collateral ligament** is flat and ribbonlike and is attached to the joint capsule and medial meniscus. It extends from the medial epicondyle of the femur to the medial condyle and anteromedial aspect of the tibia.

BOX 22.6: CLINICAL CORRELATION

PATELLAR TENDON REFLEX

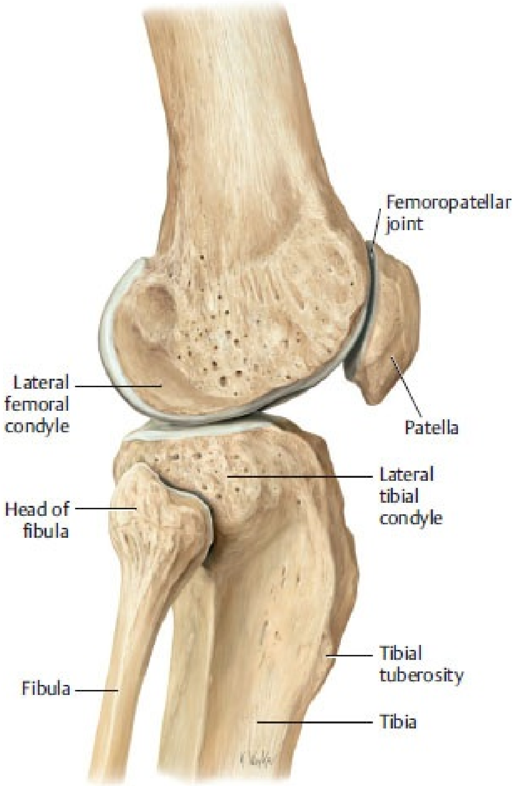
The patellar tendon reflex is initiated by tapping the patellar tendon to elicit contraction of the quadriceps femoris muscle (extension of the knee). It tests the integrity of the L2–L4 spinal cord segments carried by the femoral nerve.

- The **oblique popliteal ligament** is an expansion of the semimembranosus tendon, which supports the joint capsule posteriorly and laterally.
- The **arcuate popliteal ligament** extends from the fibular head to the posterior knee joint and reinforces the joint capsule posteriorly and laterally.


Femur
Patella
Lateral epicondyle
Lateral femoral condyle
Lateral tibial condyle
Tibial plateau
Head of fibula
Medial epicondyle
Medial femoral condyle
Medial tibial condyle
Tibial tuberosity
Fibula
Tibia
Intercondylar notch
Lateral epicondyle
Lateral femoral condyle
Intercondylar eminence
Tibiofibular joint
Head of fibula
Neck of fibula
Tibia
Fibula

A **Anterior view.** (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

B **Posterior view.** (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Femoropatellar joint
Lateral femoral condyle
Patella
Head of fibula
Lateral tibial condyle
Tibial tuberosity
Fibula
Tibia

C **Lateral view.** (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Fig. 22.12 Right knee joint

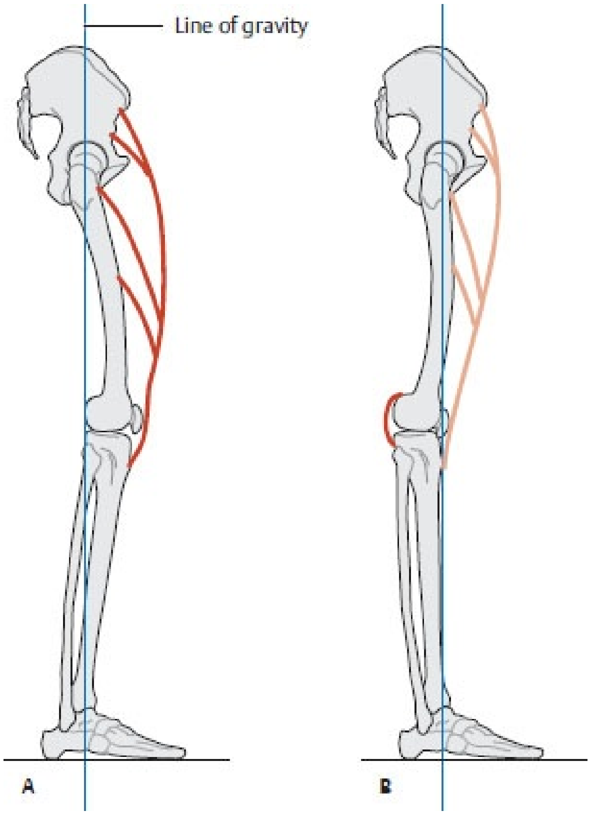


Fig. 22.13 Ligaments of the knee joint

Right knee, anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

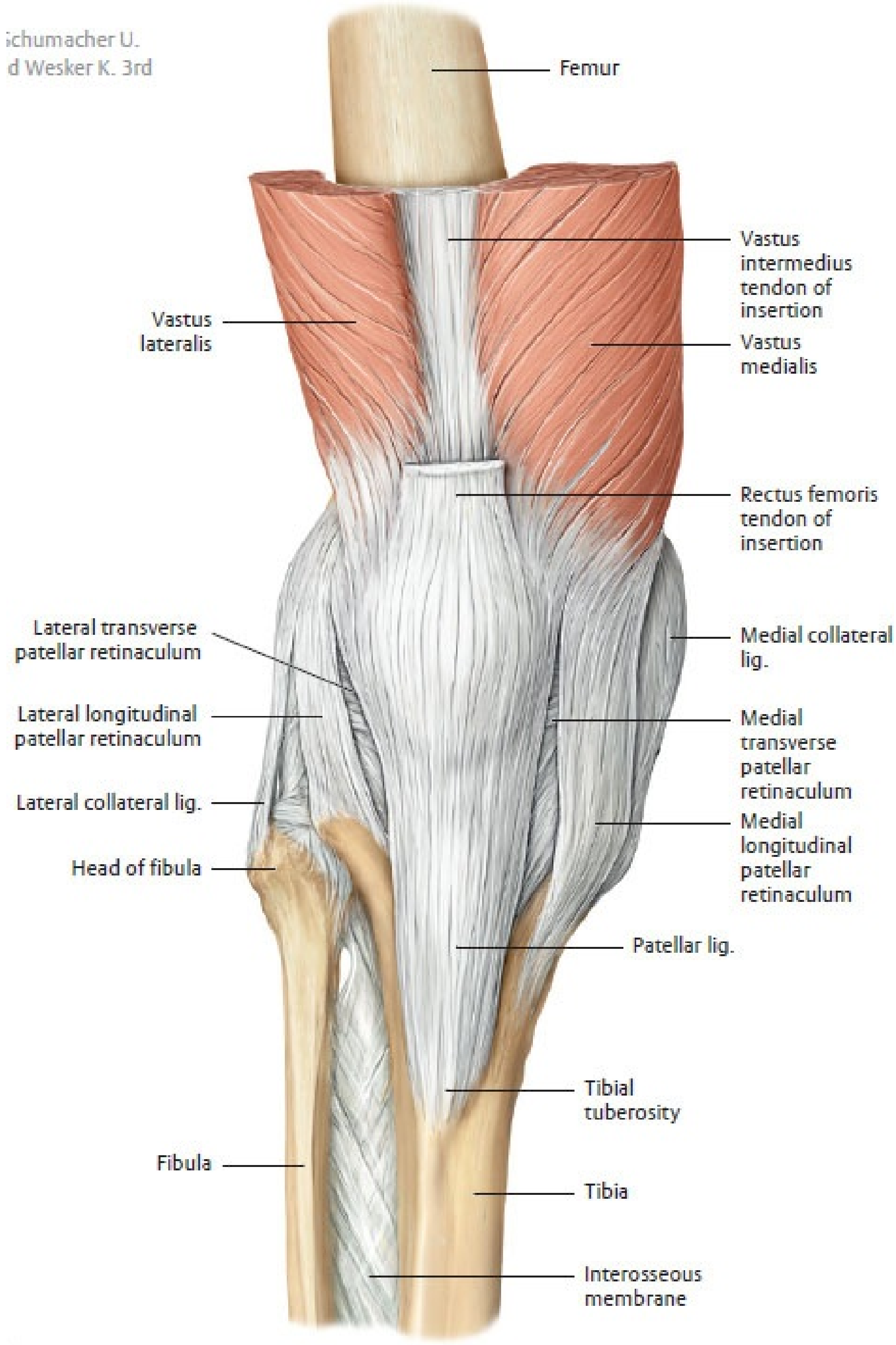

chumacher U.
d Wesker K. 3rd
Femur
Vastus intermedius tendon of insertion
Vastus lateralis
Vastus medialis
Rectus femoris tendon of insertion
Lateral transverse patellar retinaculum
Medial collateral lig.
Lateral longitudinal patellar retinaculum
Medial transverse patellar retinaculum
Lateral collateral lig.
Medial longitudinal patellar retinaculum
Head of fibula
Patellar lig.
Tibial tuberosity
Fibula
Tibia
Interosseous membrane

Fig. 22.14 Deficient stabilization of the knee joint due to weakness or paralysis of quadriceps femoris

Right lower limb, lateral view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

A When the quadriceps femoris is intact and the knee is in slight flexion, the line of gravity falls behind the transverse axis of the knee motion. As the only extensor muscle of the knee joint, the quadriceps femoris keeps the body from tipping backward and ensures stability.

B With the weakness or paralysis of the quadriceps femoris, the knee joint can no longer be actively extended. In order to stand upright, the patient must hyperextend the knee so that the line of gravity, and thus the whole-body center of gravity, is shifted forward, in front of the knee, to utilize gravity as the extending force. The joint is stabilized in this situation by the posterior capsule and ligaments of the knee.

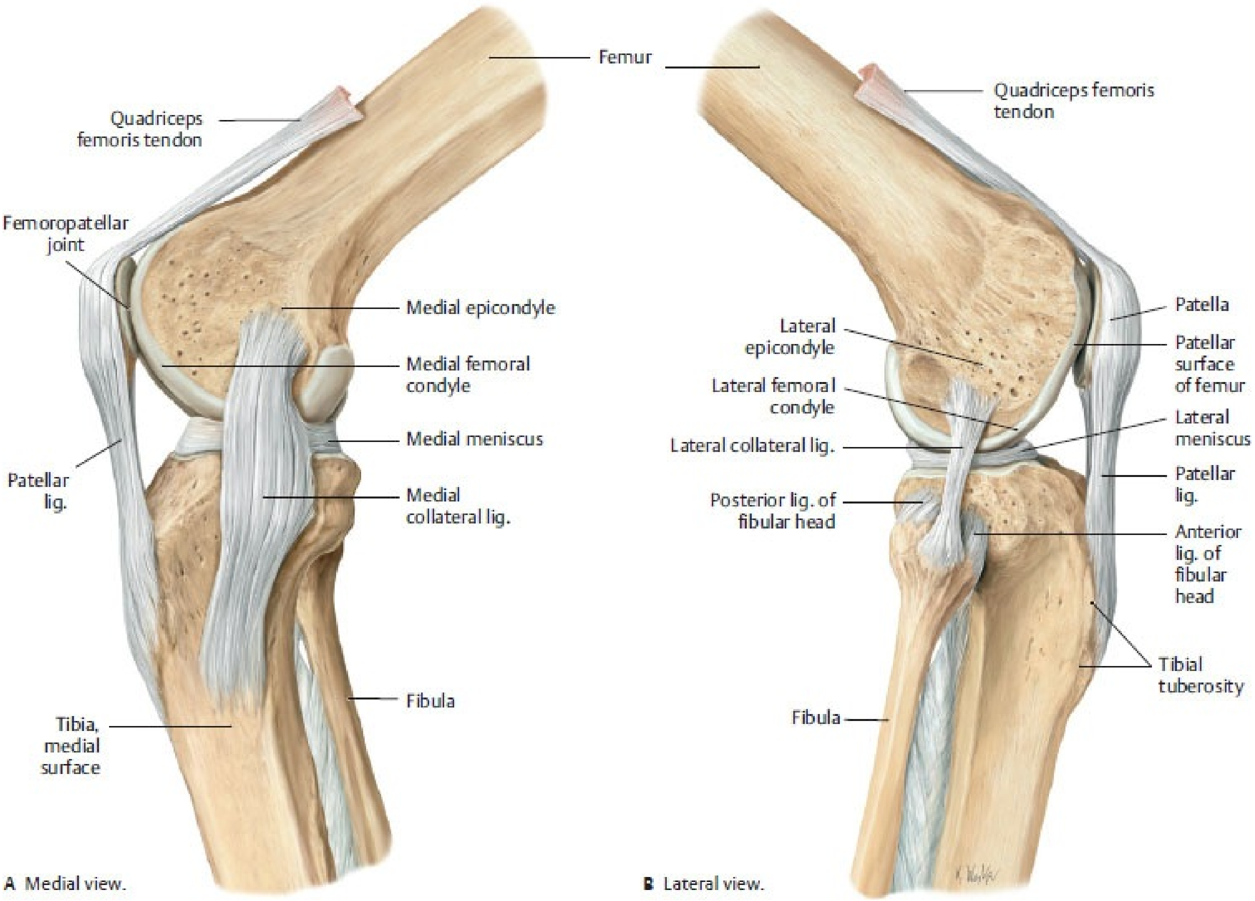
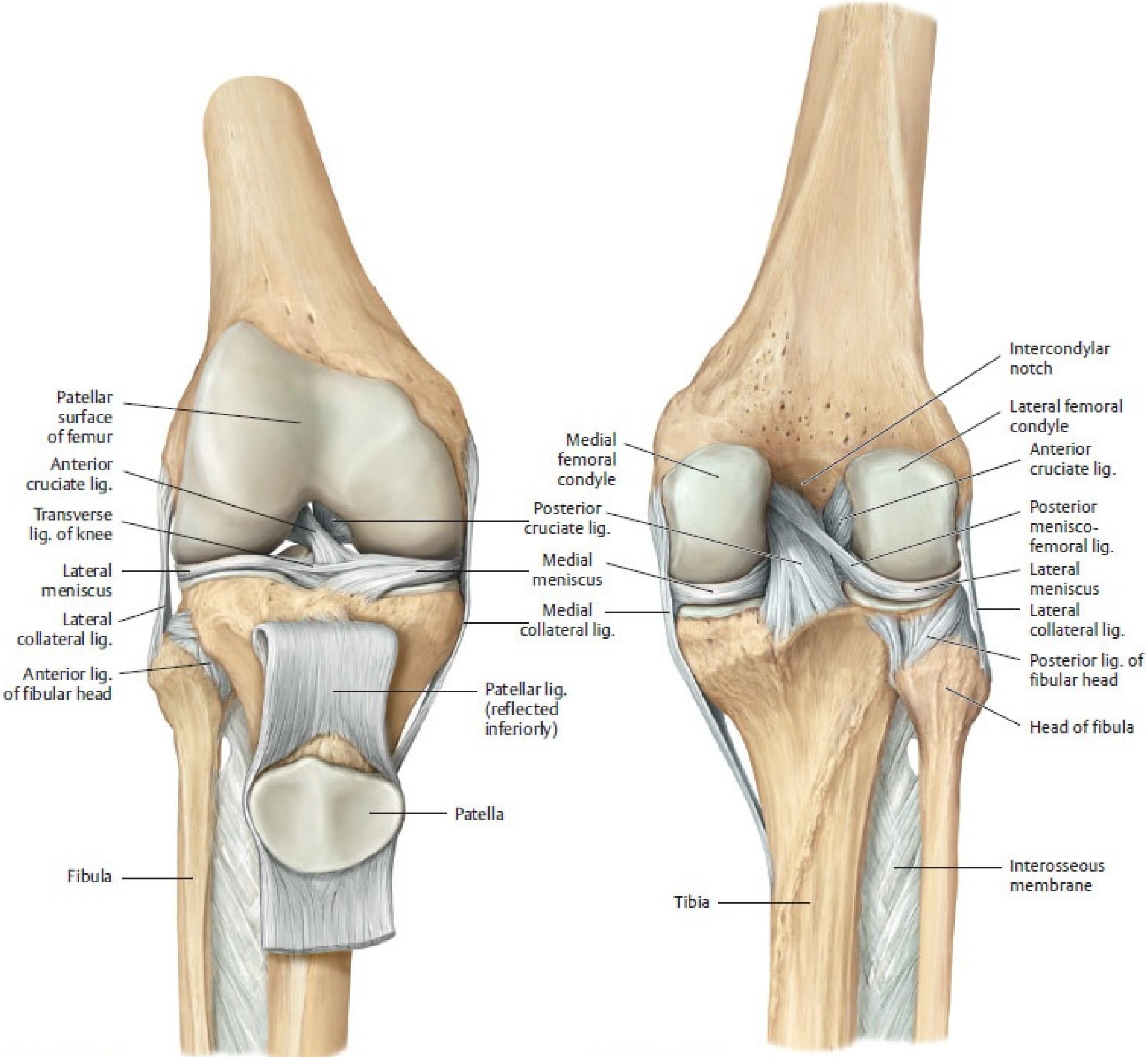

Femur
Quadriceps femoris tendon
Femoropatellar joint
Medial epicondyle
Medial femoral condyle
Medial meniscus
Patellar lig.
Medial collateral lig.
Fibula
Tibia, medial surface
A Medial view.
Quadriceps femoris tendon
Patella
Lateral epicondyle
Patellar surface of femur
Lateral femoral condyle
Lateral meniscus
Lateral collateral lig.
Patellar lig.
Posterior lig. of fibular head
Anterior lig. of fibular head
Tibial tuberosity
Fibula
B Lateral view.

Fig. 22.15 Collateral and patellar ligaments of the knee joint

Right knee joint. Each knee joint has medial and lateral collateral ligaments. The medial collateral ligament is attached to both the capsule and the medial meniscus, whereas the lateral collateral ligament has no direct contact with either the capsule or the lateral meniscus. Both collateral ligaments are taut when the knee is in extension and stabilize the joint in the coronal plane. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by

Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- Intra-articular ligaments provide stability during movements of the joint (**Figs. 22.16** and **22.17A**).
  - Two **cruciate ligaments** are located within the joint capsule but lie external to the synovial layer. They provide stability in all positions, in addition to limiting rotation and preventing anterior and posterior dislocation of the joint.
    - The **anterior cruciate ligament** arises from the anterior intercondylar part of the tibia and extends posterolaterally to the medial aspect of the lateral femoral condyle.
    - The **posterior cruciate ligament** arises from the posterior intercondylar part of the tibia and extends anteromedially to the lateral aspect of the medial femoral condyle.
  - A **transverse ligament** connects the menisci to each other along their anterior edges.
  - A **posterior meniscofemoral ligament** joins the lateral meniscus to the posterior cruciate ligament and medial femoral condyle.
- **Menisci**, crescent-shaped fibrocartilaginous pads, deepen the articular surfaces of the tibial plateau. Wedge-shaped in cross section, they are tallest at the outer rim, where they are attached to the joint capsule and the intercondylar ridge (**Figs. 22.17B, 22.18, 22.19**).
  - The **medial meniscus** is C-shaped and relatively immobile due to its additional attachment to the tibial collateral ligament.
  - The **lateral meniscus** is nearly circular and more mobile during flexion and extension of the joint than its medial counterpart.

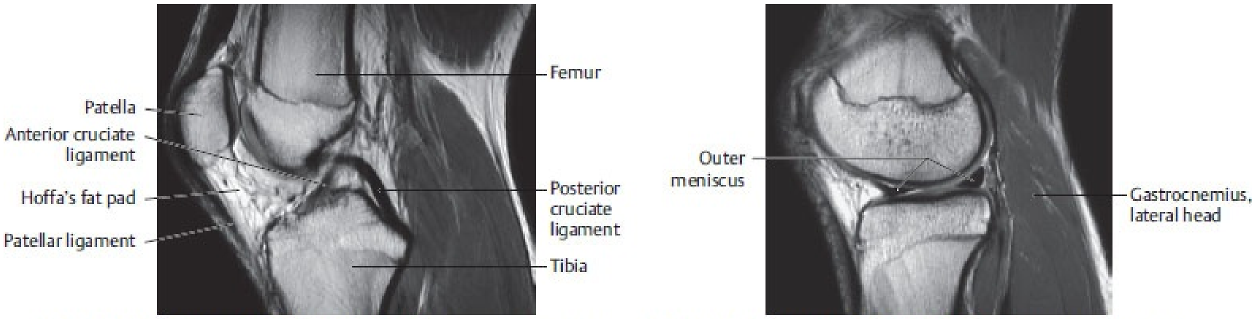

Patellar surface of femur
Anterior cruciate lig.
Transverse lig. of knee
Lateral meniscus
Lateral collateral lig.
Anterior lig. of fibular head
Fibula
Posterior cruciate lig.
Medial meniscus
Medial collateral lig.
Patellar lig. (reflected inferiorly)
Patella
Medial femoral condyle
Intercondylar notch
Lateral femoral condyle
Anterior cruciate lig.
Posterior cruciate lig.
Posterior menisco-femoral lig.
Medial meniscus
Lateral meniscus
Medial collateral lig.
Lateral collateral lig.
Posterior lig. of fibular head
Head of fibula
Interosseous membrane
Tibia

A Anterior view.

B Posterior view.

Fig. 22.16 Cruciate and collateral ligaments of the knee joint

Right knee. The cruciate ligaments keep the articular surfaces of the femur and tibia in contact, while stabilizing the knee joint primarily in the sagittal plane. Portions of the cruciate ligaments are taut in every joint position. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Femur
Patella
Anterior cruciate ligament
Hoffa's fat pad
Patellar ligament
Posterior cruciate ligament
Tibia
Outer meniscus
Gastrocnemius, lateral head

A Sagittal section through the cruciate ligaments. (From Vahlensieck M, Reiser M. MRT des Bewegungsapparates. 4. Aufl. Stuttgart: Thieme Publishers; 2014.)

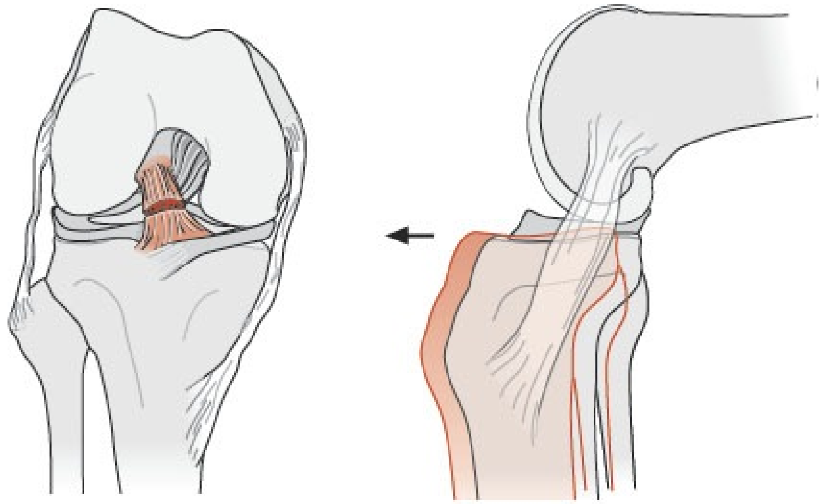
B Sagittal section through the lateral meniscus. (From Vahlensieck M, Reiser M. MRT des Bewegungsapparates. 4. Aufl. Stuttgart: Thieme Publishers; 2014.)

Fig. 22.17 MRI of the knee joint

BOX 22.7: CLINICAL CORRELATION

LIGAMENTOUS INJURIES OF THE KNEE

Most knee injuries occur during physical activity and involve rupture or strain of the knee ligaments. A forceful blow to the lateral side of the knee can strain the medial collateral ligament and, because of their intimate relationship, tear the medial meniscus as well. A similar injury can result from excessive lateral rotation of the knee and is often accompanied by rupture of the anterior cruciate ligament. The Lachman test is used to demonstrate instability of the knee joint resulting from rupture of the cruciate ligaments. Excessive anterior translation of the free-hanging tibia from under the stabilized femur is a positive anterior drawer sign, indicating anterior cruciate rupture. Posterior displacement of the tibia is a positive posterior drawer sign, indicating rupture of the posterior cruciate ligament.



A Right knee in flexion, rupture of anterior cruciate ligament, anterior view.

B Right knee in flexion, anterior "drawer sign," medial view. During examination the tibia can be pulled forward *(arrow)*.

Rupture of the anterior cruciate ligament

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

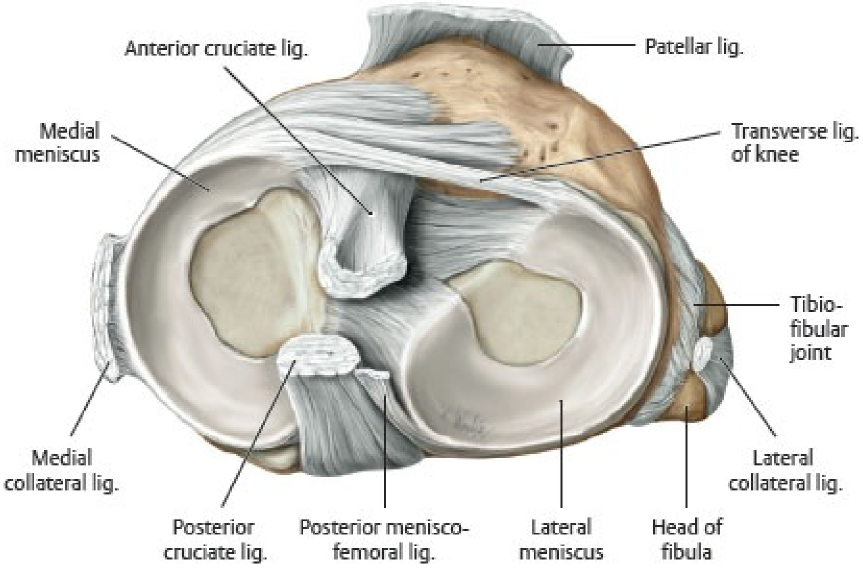

Anterior cruciate lig.
Patellar lig.
Medial meniscus
Transverse lig. of knee
Tibio-fibular joint
Medial collateral lig.
Lateral collateral lig.
Posterior cruciate lig.
Posterior menisco-femoral lig.
Lateral meniscus
Head of fibula

Fig. 22.18 Menisci in the knee joint

Right tibial plateau with cruciate, patellar, and collateral ligaments divided, proximal view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York:

Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

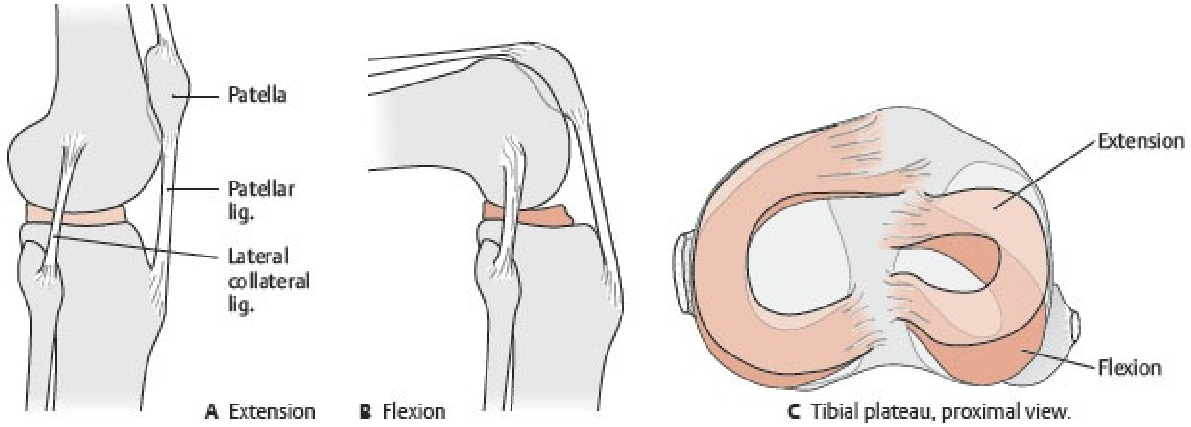

Patella
Patellar lig.
Lateral collateral lig.
A Extension
B Flexion
Extension
Flexion
C Tibial plateau, proximal view.

Fig. 22.19 Movements of the menisci

The medial meniscus, which is anchored more securely than the lateral meniscus, undergoes less displacement during knee flexion. As a result, it is more susceptible to injury. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

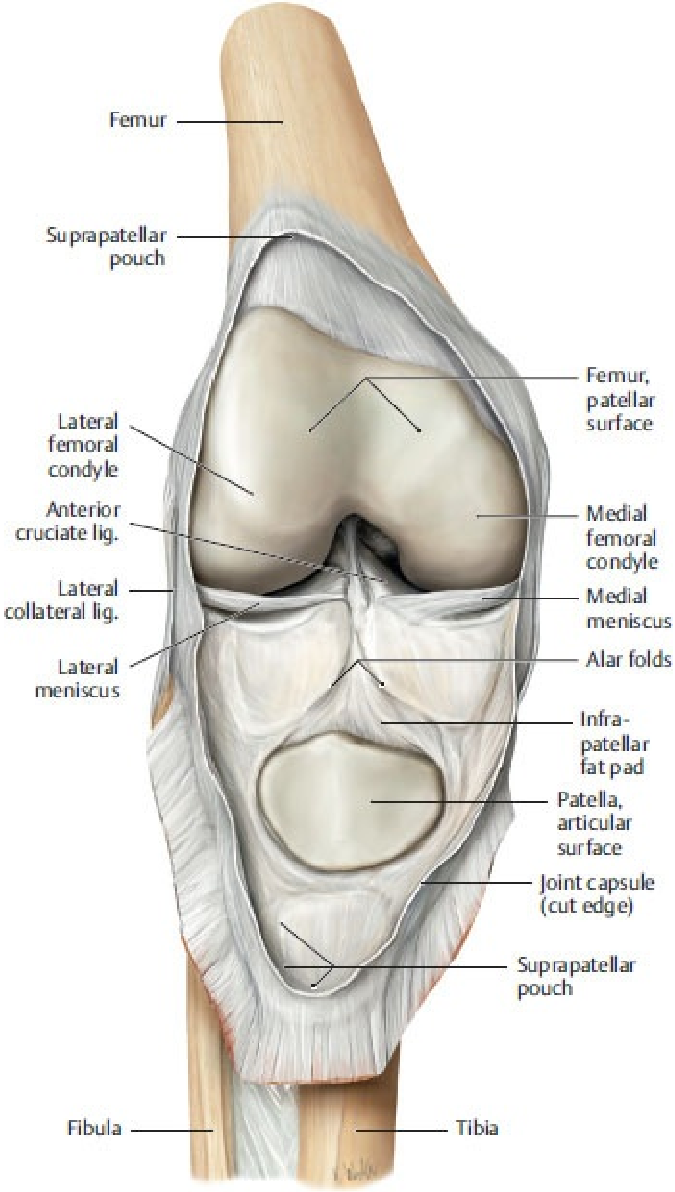

Femur
Suprapatellar pouch
Femur, patellar surface
Lateral femoral condyle
Anterior cruciate lig.
Medial femoral condyle
Lateral collateral lig.
Medial meniscus
Lateral meniscus
Alar folds
Infra-patellar fat pad
Patella, articular surface
Joint capsule (cut edge)
Suprapatellar pouch
Fibula
Tibia

Fig. 22.20 Opened joint capsule of the knee

Right knee, anterior view, with patella reflected downward. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

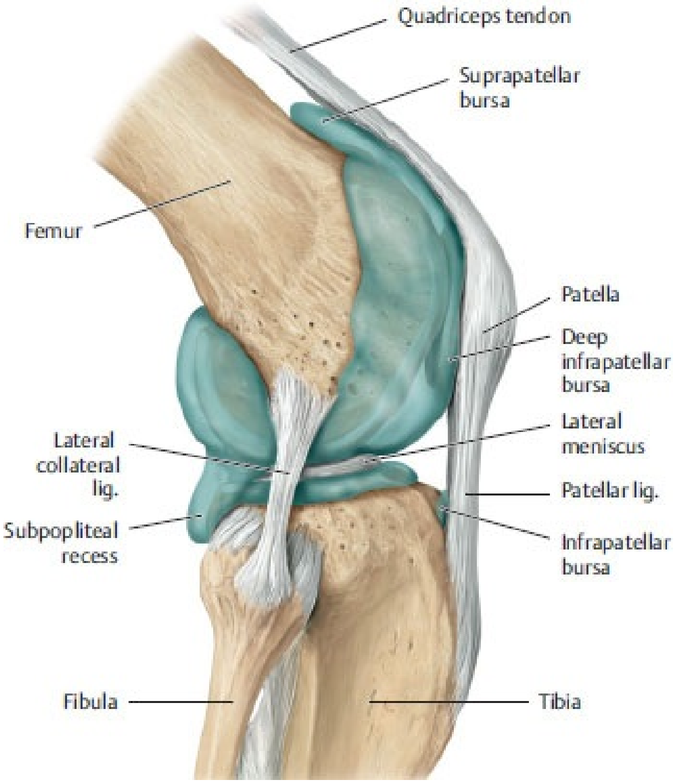

Quadriceps tendon
Suprapatellar bursa
Femur
Patella
Deep infrapatellar bursa
Lateral collateral lig.
Lateral meniscus
Patellar lig.
Subpopliteal recess
Infrapatellar bursa
Fibula
Tibia

Fig. 22.21 Joint cavity of the knee

Right knee, lateral view. The joint cavity was demonstrated by injecting liquid plastic into the knee joint and later removing the capsule. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

— An extensive synovial layer lines the internal surface of the joint capsule. Its posterior aspect extends into the intercondylar space of the joint cavity and reflects around the intra- capsular ligaments, dividing most of the joint space into medial and lateral parts (**Figs. 22.20** and **22.21**).

— Muscles of the thigh and leg move the knee joint (**Table 22.7**).

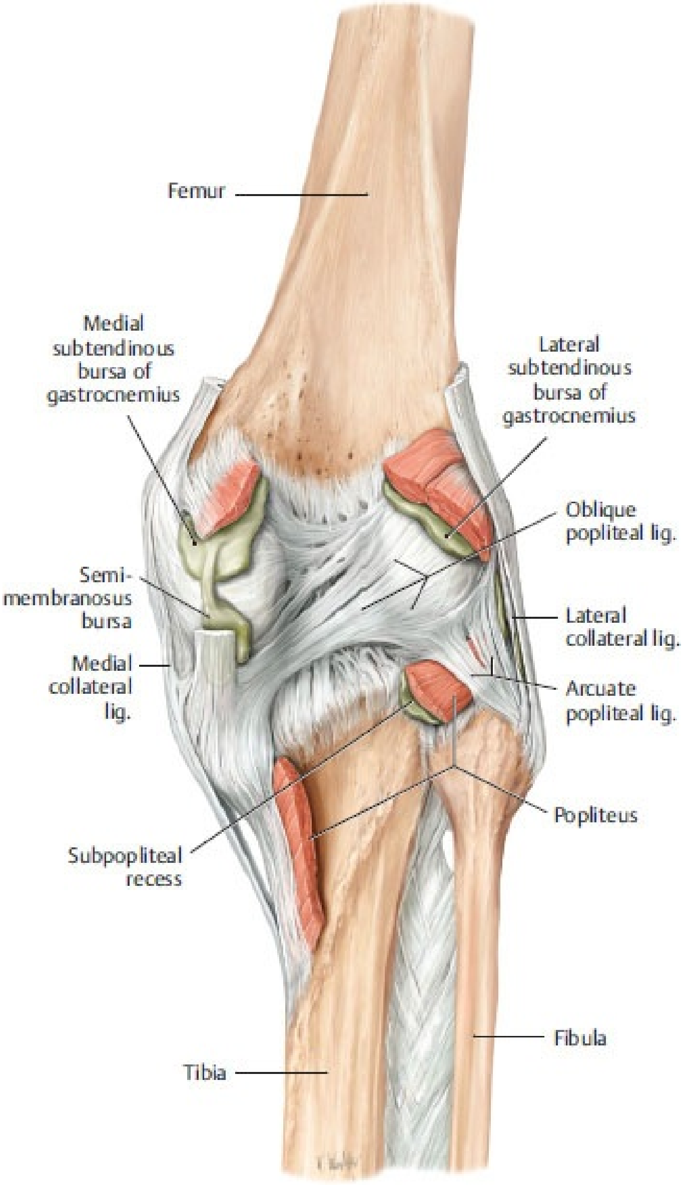

Femur
Medial subtendinous bursa of gastrocnemius
Lateral subtendinous bursa of gastrocnemius
Oblique popliteal lig.
Semi-membranosus bursa
Lateral collateral lig.
Medial collateral lig.
Arcuate popliteal lig.
Popliteus
Subpopliteal recess
Fibula
Tibia

Fig. 22.22 Capsule, ligaments, and periarticular bursae of the knee joint

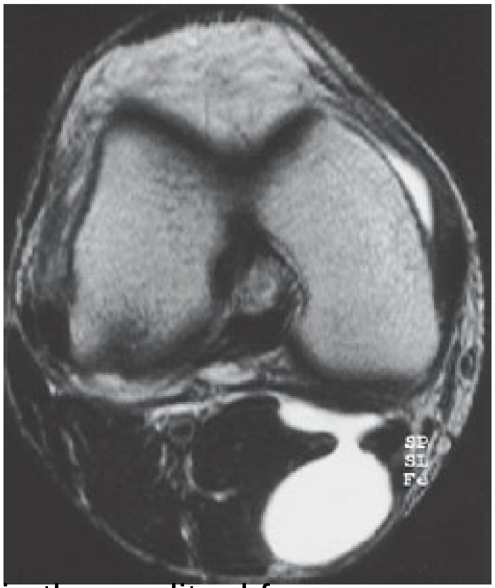
Right knee, posterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

— In addition to the support provided by extracapsular ligaments, the capsule is strengthened by tendinous attachments of muscles that cross the joint (semitendinosus, semimembranosus, biceps femoris, gastrocnemius, and quadriceps femoris). Bursae associated with these muscular attachments are numerous and include

BOX 22.8: CLINICAL CORRELATION

POPLITEAL (BAKER’S) CYST

Popliteal (Baker’s) cysts, palpable fluid-filled synovial sacs that protrude into the popliteal fossa, are usually a consequence of chronic effusion of the knee joint. Often they result from a herniation of the bursae deep to the gastrocnemius or semimembranosus muscles. The sacs protrude through the fibrous layer of the joint capsule but maintain a communication with the synovial cavity. Some cysts may be asymptomatic, but others are painful and can impair flexion and extension of the knee joint.

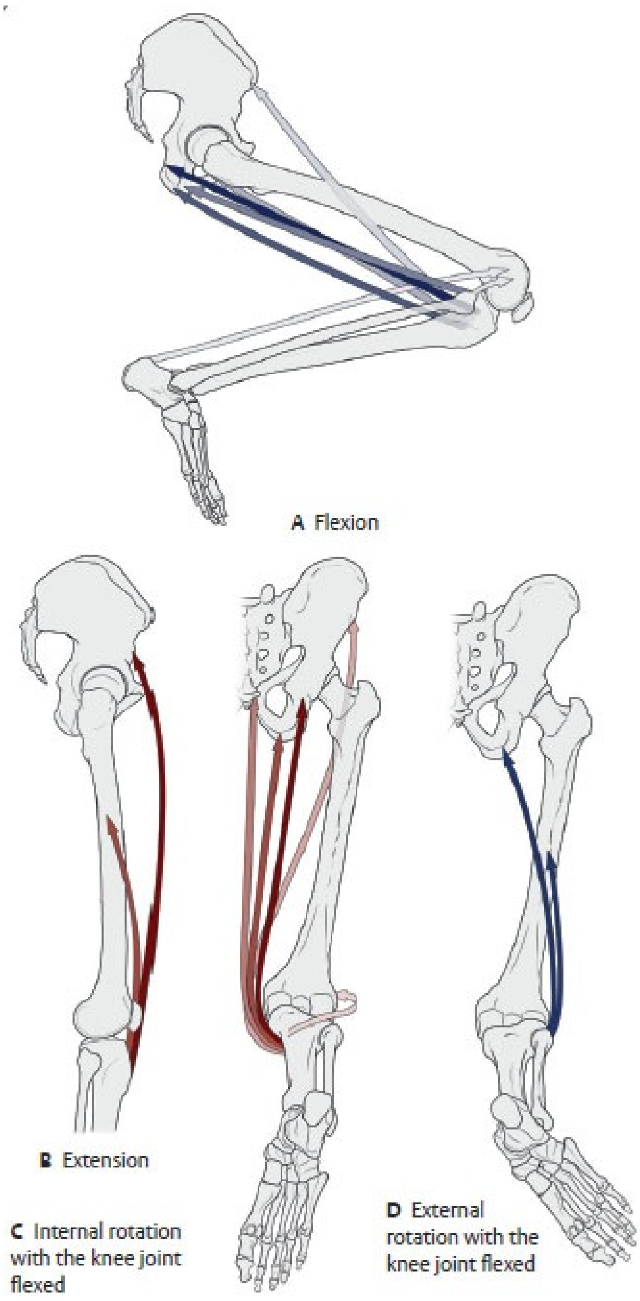


MRI of a Baker’s cyst in the popliteal fossa
Transverse section, inferior view. (From Vahlensieck M, Reiser M. MRT des Bewegungsapparates. 4. Aufl. Stuttgart: Thieme Publishers; 2014.)

- the **suprapatellar bursa** (pouch), which lies deep to the quadriceps femoris tendon and communicates with the cavity of the knee joint;
- the **prepatellar bursa**, which is subcutaneous over the patella;
- the **superficial infrapatellar bursa**, which is subcutaneous over the patellar ligament;
- the **deep infrapatellar bursa**, which lies deep to the patellar ligament; and
- the **anserine bursa**, which lies between the pes anserinus and tibial

collateral ligament.

- Additional bursae around the knee communicate with the joint cavity. They include the **subpopliteal recess**, the **semimembranosus bursa**, and the **medial subtendinous** bursa of the gastrocnemius (**Fig. 22.22**).



A Flexion

B Extension

C Internal rotation with the knee joint flexed

D External rotation with the knee joint flexed

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

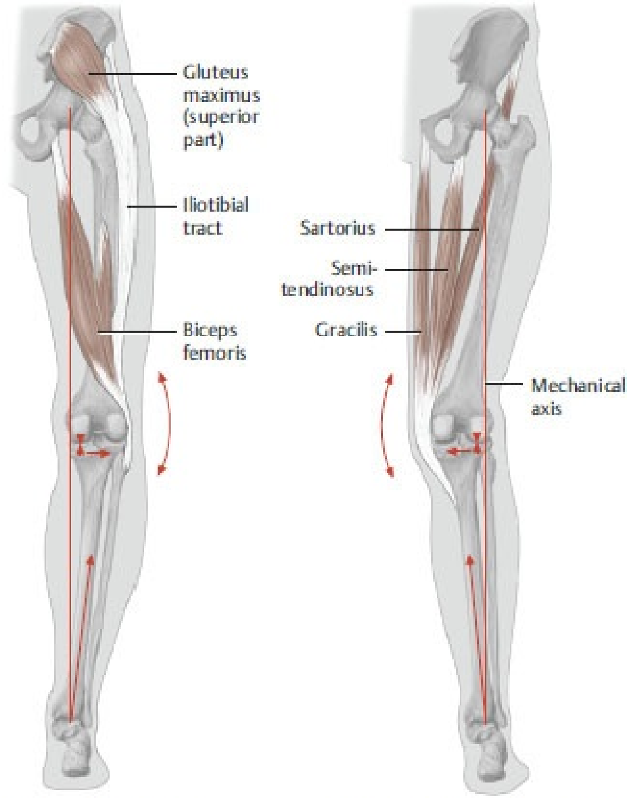
Table 22.7 Movements of the Knee Joint

Action	**Primary Muscles**
Flexion	Biceps femoris—short and long heads Semimembranosus Semitendinosus Sartorius Gracilis Gastrocnemius Popliteus
Extension	Quadriceps femoris
Internal rotation	Semimembranosus Semitendinosus Sartorius Gracilis Popliteus (of nonbearing leg)
External rotation	Biceps femoris

BOX 22.9: CLINICAL CORRELATION

GENU VARUM AND GENU VALGUM

Although the femur lies diagonally within the thigh, the tibia is nearly vertical in the leg. This creates a Q angle at the knee between the long axes of the two bones. The angle varies with developmental stage and sex, but it can also be altered by disease. Normally, the head of the femur sits over the center of the knee joint, distributing weight evenly on the tibial plateau. In genu varum (bowleg), the Q angle is smaller than normal because the femur is more vertical. This increases the weight on the medial side of the knee, putting additional stress on the medial meniscus and medial (tibial) collateral ligament. When a person is standing upright with feet and ankles together, the knees are wide apart. In genu valgum (knock knee), the Q angle is larger because the femur is more diagonal. Greater weight is put on the lateral side of the knee, stressing the lateral meniscus and lateral (fibular) collateral ligament. In the upright position, the knees touch, but the ankles do not.


Gluteus maximus (superior part)
Iliotibial tract
Biceps femoris
Sartorius
Semi-tendinosus
Gracilis
Mechanical axis

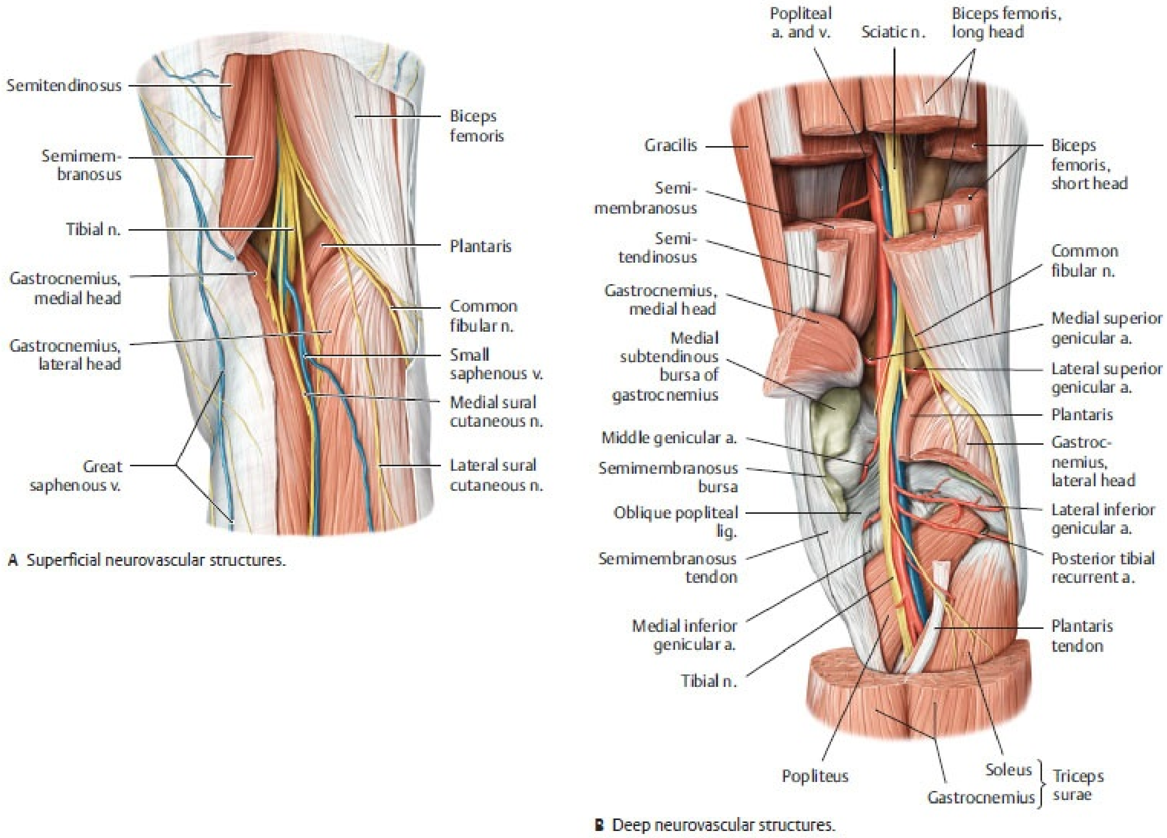
A Axis in genu varum, posterior view.

B Axis in genu valgum, posterior view.

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

The Popliteal Fossa

The popliteal fossa is a diamond-shaped space posterior to the knee joint (**Fig. 22.23**).


Semitendinosus
Semimembranosus
Tibial n.
Gastrocnemius, medial head
Gastrocnemius, lateral head
Great saphenous v.
Biceps femoris
Plantaris
Common fibular n.
Small saphenous v.
Medial sural cutaneous n.
Lateral sural cutaneous n.
Popliteal a. and v.
Sciatic n.
Biceps femoris, long head
Gracilis
Semi-membranosus
Semi-tendinosus
Gastrocnemius, medial head
Medial subtendinous bursa of gastrocnemius
Middle genicular a.
Semimembranosus bursa
Oblique popliteal lig.
Semimembranosus tendon
Medial inferior genicular a.
Tibial n.
Popliteus
Biceps femoris, short head
Common fibular n.
Medial superior genicular a.
Lateral superior genicular a.
Plantaris
Gastrocnemius, lateral head
Lateral inferior genicular a.
Posterior tibial recurrent a.
Plantaris tendon
Soleus
Gastrocnemius
Triceps surae

A Superficial neurovascular structures.

B Deep neurovascular structures.

Fig. 22.23 Popliteal fossa

Right leg, posterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- Its muscular boundaries are
  - superomedially, the semimembranosus muscle;
  - superolaterally, the biceps femoris muscle; and
  - inferiorly, the medial and lateral heads of the gastrocnemius muscle.
- The contents of the fossa, which are embedded within popliteal fat, include
  - the popliteal artery and vein and their genicular branches,
  - popliteal lymph nodes, and
  - tibial and common fibular nerves.
- At the superior apex of the popliteal fossa, the sciatic nerve splits into its two terminal branches.
  - The tibial nerve descends into the posterior leg compartment with the popliteal vessels.
  - The common fibular nerve courses laterally along the edge of the biceps

femoris muscle to enter the lateral leg compartment.

22.5 The Leg

The leg extends from the knee to the ankle; it contains the tibia and fibula and the muscles of the leg (crural) compartments.

Tibiofibular Joints

at the ankle. Unlike the extensive movement at the radioulnar joints in the forearm, only slight movement occurs at each tibiofibular joint, and no muscles are directly associated with them.

- The proximal **tibiofibular joint** is a plane-type synovial joint between the fibular head and an articular facet of the lateral condyle of the tibia. **Anterior** and **posterior ligaments of the fibular head** secure the joint (see **Fig. 22.16**).
- The distal **tibiofibular joint**, a compound fibrous joint, creates a mortise formed by the medial and lateral malleoli that cups the talus and stabilizes the ankle joint. Ligaments of the tibiofibular joint (**Fig. 22.24**) include
  - a deep **interosseous tibiofibular ligament**, the primary support of the joint, which is continuous with the interosseous membrane of the leg, and
  - the external **anterior tibiofibular** and **posterior tibiofibular ligaments**.
- An interosseous membrane unites the shafts of the tibia and fibula and provides stability to the distal tibiofibular and ankle joints.

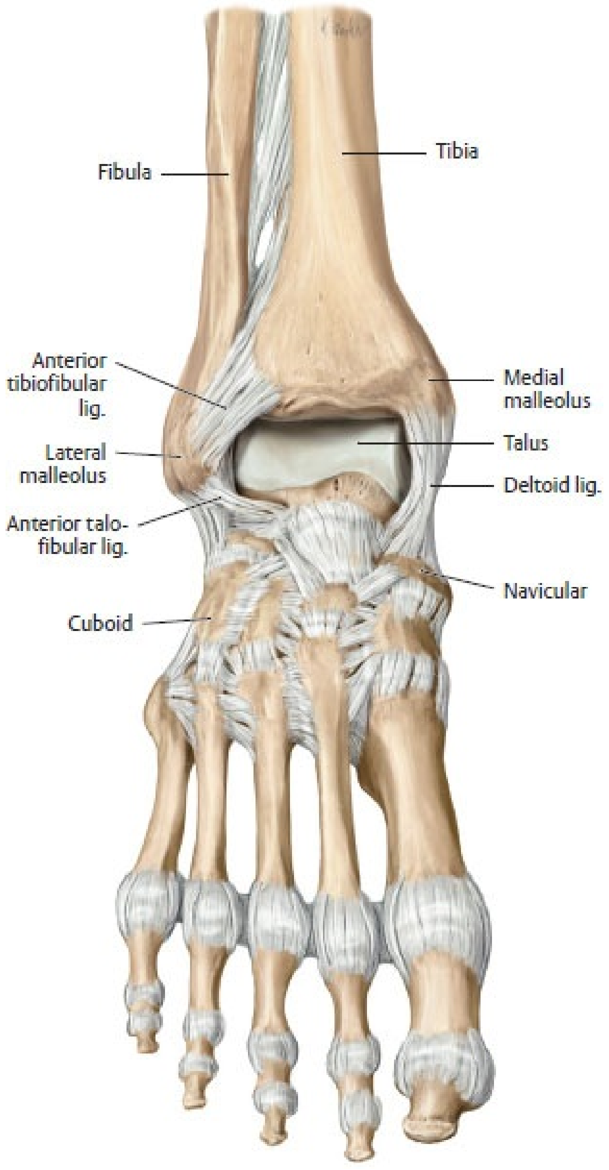

Fibula
Tibia
Anterior tibiofibular lig.
Medial malleolus
Talus
Lateral malleolus
Deltoid lig.
Anterior talo-fibular lig.
Navicular
Cuboid

Fig. 22.24 Ligaments of the ankle and foot

Right foot. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Muscles of the Leg

Muscles of the leg, which move the knee, ankle, and foot, are divided into four crural compartments (see **Fig. 22.45B**).

— The anterior compartment contains
  - muscles that dorsiflex the foot and toes and invert the foot (**Table 22.8**),
  - the deep fibular nerve, and

  - the anterior tibial artery and veins.
- The lateral compartment contains
  - muscles that evert and plantar flex the foot (**Table 22.9**),
  - the superficial fibular nerve, and
  - the muscular branches of the fibular artery and veins from the posterior compartment.

BOX 22.10: CLINICAL CORRELATION

SHIN SPLINTS

Shin splints result from chronic trauma of the tibialis anterior, usually incurred by overuse of the muscle during athletic activities. In what is considered a mild form of anterior compartment syndrome, small tears of the periosteum cause pain and swelling over the distal two thirds of the tibial shaft.

- The superficial posterior compartment contains
  - muscles that plantar flex the foot, two of which, the gastrocnemius and soleus, form the triceps surae and share a common tendon of insertion, the **calcaneal tendon** (Table 22.10);
  - the tibial nerve; and
  - the muscular branches of the posterior tibial artery and veins from the deep posterior compartment.
- The deep posterior compartment contains
  - muscles that plantar flex the foot and toes and invert the foot (**Table 22.11**) (only one muscle, the popliteus, crosses the knee and laterally rotates the femur),

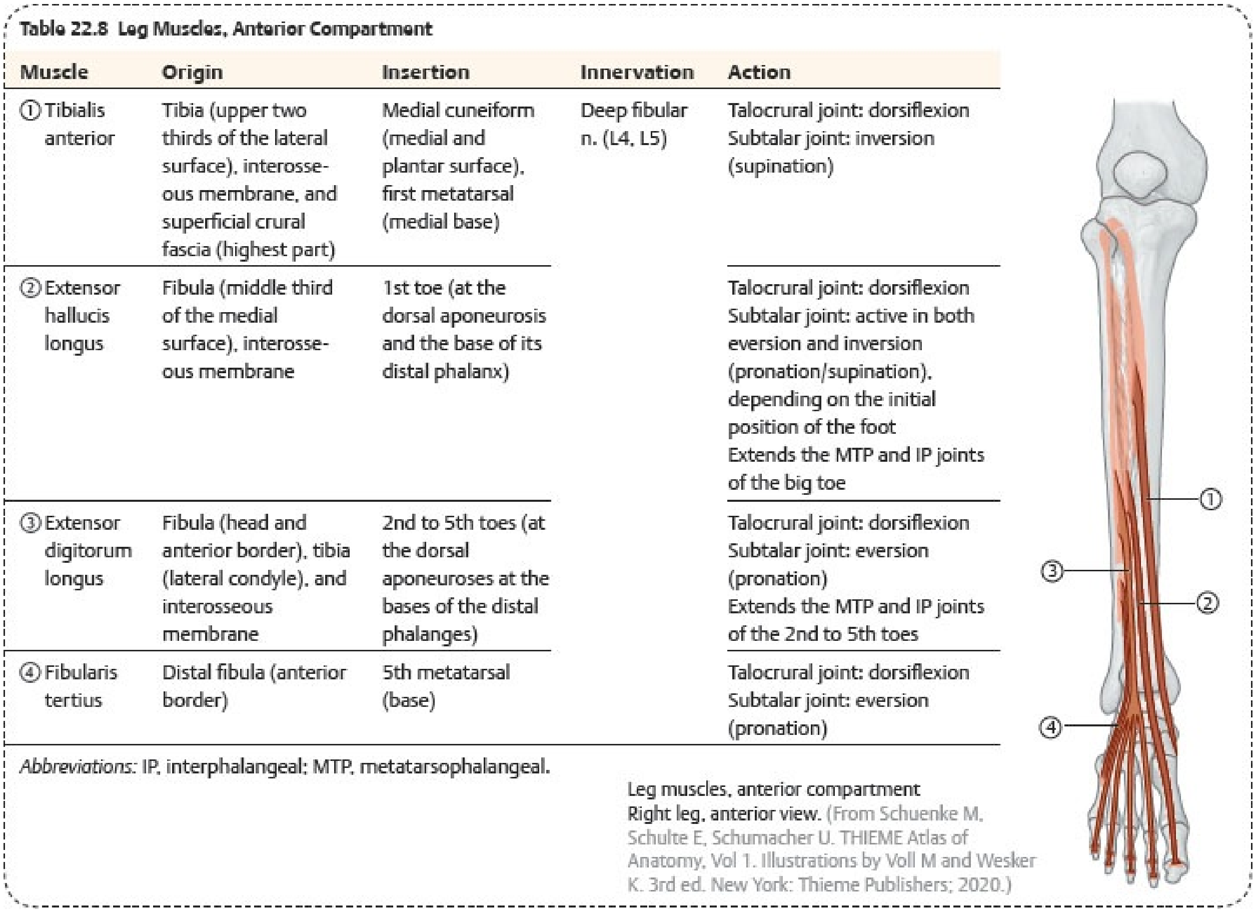


Table 22.8 Leg Muscles, Anterior Compartment

Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Innervation	Action
① Tibialis anterior	Tibia (upper two thirds of the lateral surface), interosseous membrane, and superficial crural fascia (highest part)	Medial cuneiform (medial and plantar surface), first metatarsal (medial base)	Deep fibular n. (L4, L5)	Talocrural joint: dorsiflexion Subtalar joint: inversion (supination)
② Extensor hallucis longus	Fibula (middle third of the medial surface), interosseous membrane	1st toe (at the dorsal aponeurosis and the base of its distal phalanx)		Talocrural joint: dorsiflexion Subtalar joint: active in both eversion and inversion (pronation/supination), depending on the initial position of the foot Extends the MTP and IP joints of the big toe
③ Extensor digitorum longus	Fibula (head and anterior border), tibia (lateral condyle), and interosseous membrane	2nd to 5th toes (at the dorsal aponeuroses at the bases of the distal phalanges)		Talocrural joint: dorsiflexion Subtalar joint: eversion (pronation) Extends the MTP and IP joints of the 2nd to 5th toes
④ Fibularis tertius	Distal fibula (anterior border)	5th metatarsal (base)		Talocrural joint: dorsiflexion Subtalar joint: eversion (pronation)

Abbreviations: IP, interphalangeal; MTP, metatarsophalangeal.

Leg muscles, anterior compartment
Right leg, anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 22.11: CLINICAL CORRELATION

RUPTURE OF THE CALCANEAL TENDON

Rupture of the calcaneal tendon tends to occur following sudden forced plantar flexion of the foot, unexpected dorsiflexion of the foot, or violent dorsiflexion of a plantar-flexed foot in people unaccustomed to exercise or who exercise intermittently. The rupture disables the gastrocnemius, soleus, and plantaris muscles, rendering the patient unable to plantar flex the foot.

- the tibial nerve, and
- the posterior tibial and fibular artery and veins.

— Retinacula, thickened bands of the crural fascia, bind the tendons of the long extensor and flexor muscles as they cross the ankle (Fig. 22.25).

- **Superior extensor** and **inferior extensor retinacula** bind muscles of the anterior compartment.
- Medially, a **flexor retinaculum** binds muscles of the deep posterior

compartment.

- **Superior fibular** and **inferior fibular retinacula** bind muscles of the lateral compartment.

BOX 22.12: CLINICAL CORRELATION

COMPARTMENT SYNDROME

Compartment syndrome is a condition that may follow burns, hemorrhage, complex fractures, or crush injuries. Swelling, infection, or bleeding into the compartment can increase intracompartmental pressure and, when high enough, compress the small vascular structures that supply the compartment contents. Nerves are particularly vulnerable to ischemia, and permanent loss of motor and sensory functions distal to the compartment can result. Symptoms include severe pain that is out of proportion to the injury, paresthesia (tingling and numbness), pallor of the skin, paralysis of muscles affected, and loss of distal pulses in the affected limb. Treatment is prompt surgery to decompress the compartment by making long cuts through the fascia (fasciotomy).

— The **tarsal tunnel** is a passageway on the medial side of the ankle formed by the flexor retinaculum and its attachments to the medial malleolus and calcaneus. It transmits

- muscle tendons of the deep posterior compartment,
- posterior tibial artery and veins and their medial plantar and lateral plantar branches, and
- the tibial nerve and its medial plantar and lateral plantar branches.

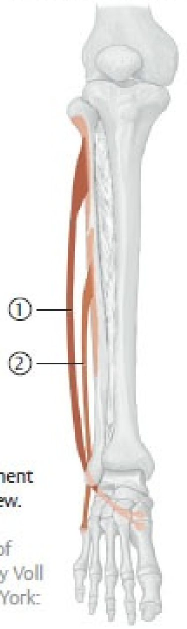
BOX 22.13: CLINICAL CORRELATION

TARSAL TUNNEL SYNDR

Tarsal tunnel syndrome, similar to carpal tunnel syndrome of the hand, results from swelling of the synovial sheaths of the long flexor tendons within the tarsal tunnel. Compression of the tibial nerve can result in burning pain, numbness, and tingling that radiates to the heel.

Table 22.9 Leg Muscles, Lateral Compartment

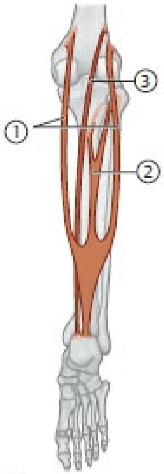
Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Innervation	Action
① Fibularis longus	Fibula (head and proximal two thirds of the lateral surface, arising partly from the intermuscular septa)	Medial cuneiform (plantar side), 1st metatarsal (base)	Superficial fibular n. (L5, S1)	Talocrural joint: plantar flexion Subtalar joint: eversion (pronation) Supports the transverse arch of the foot
② Fibularis brevis	Fibula (distal half of the lateral surface), intermuscular septa	5th metatarsal (tuberosity at the base, with an occasional division to the dorsal aponeurosis of the 5th toe)		Talocrural joint: plantar flexion Subtalar joint: eversion (pronation)



Leg muscles, lateral compartment
Right leg and foot, anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Table 22.10 Leg Muscles, Posterior Compartment: Superficial Flexors

Muscle		Origin	Insertion	Innervation	Action
Triceps surae	① Gastrocnemius	Femur (medial head: superior posterior part of the medial femoral condyle. lateral head: lateral surface of lateral femoral condyle)	Calcaneal tuberosity via the calcaneal (Achilles) tendon	Tibial n. (S1, S2)	Talocrural joint: plantar flexion when knee is extended (gastrocnemius) Knee joint: flexion (gastrocnemius)
	② Soleus	Fibula (head and neck, posterior surface), tibia (soleal line via a tendinous arch)	Calcaneal tuberosity		Talocrural joint: plantar flexion (soleus)
③ Plantaris		Femur (lateral epicondyle, proximal to lateral head of gastrocnemius)			Negligible; may act with gastrocnemius in plantar flexion

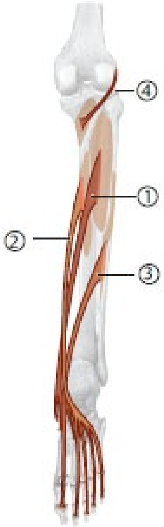


Superficial flexors, posterior compartment of leg
Right leg with foot in plantar flexion, posterior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th Edition. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

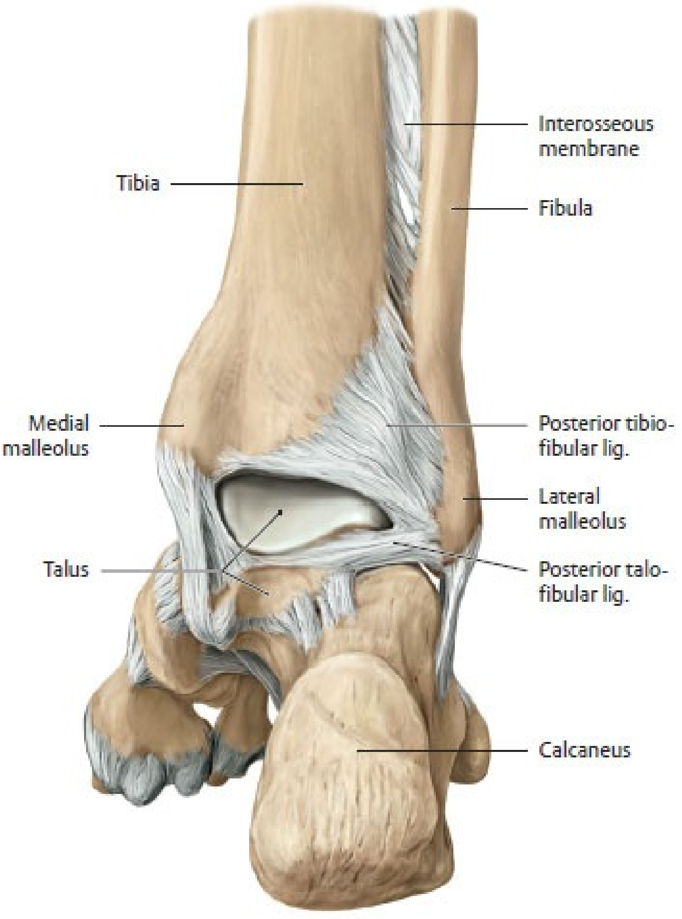
Table 22.11 Leg Muscles, Posterior Compartment: Deep Flexors

Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Innervation	Action
① Tibialis posterior	Interosseous membrane, adjacent borders of tibia and fibula	Navicular tuberosity; cuneiforms (medial, intermediate, and lateral); 2nd to 4th metatarsals (bases)	Tibial n. (L4, L5)	Talocrural joint: plantar flexion Subtalar joint: inversion (supination) Supports the longitudinal and transverse arches
② Flexor digitorum longus	Tibia (middle third of posterior surface)	2nd to 5th distal phalanges (bases)	Tibial n. (L5–S2)	Talocrural joint: plantar flexion Subtalar joint: inversion (supination) MTP and IP joints of the 2nd to 5th toes: plantar flexion
③ Flexor hallucis longus	Fibula (distal two thirds of posterior surface), adjacent interosseous membrane	1st distal phalanx (base)		Talocrural joint: plantar flexion Subtalar joint: inversion (supination) MTP and IP joints of the 1st toe: plantar flexion Supports the medial longitudinal arch
④ Popliteus	Lateral femoral condyle, posterior horn of the lateral meniscus	Posterior tibial surface (above the origin at the soleus)	Tibial n. (L4–S1)	Knee joint: flexes and unlocks the knee by externally rotating the femur on the fixed tibia 5 degrees

Abbreviations: IP, interphalangeal; MTP, metatarsophalangeal.



Deep flexors, posterior compartment of leg
Right leg with foot in plantar flexion, posterior view.
(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Interosseous membrane
Tibia
Fibula
Medial malleolus
Posterior tibio-fibular lig.
Lateral malleolus
Talus
Posterior talo-fibular lig.
Calcaneus

B Posterior view with foot in neutral (0-degree) position.

Fig. 22.25 Tendon sheaths and retinacula of the ankle

Right foot. The superior and inferior extensor retinacula retain the long extensor tendons, the fibularis retinacula hold the fibular muscle tendons in place, and the flexor retinaculum retains the long flexor tendons through the tarsal tunnel. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

22.6 The Ankle (Talocrural) Joint

The weight of the body is transferred along the tibia of the leg, through the talus at the ankle joint, and onto the heel and ball of the foot. Strong bony and ligamentous supports stabilize the ankle and facilitate this transfer of weight.

The **ankle joint** includes articulations between the distal tibia and fibula and the talus (**Figs. 22.26**, **22.27**, **22.28**, **22.29**).

— At the ankle joint, the ankle mortise, which is formed by the distal tibiofibular joint, hugs the body of the talus. Tibiofibular ligaments that stabilize the ankle mortise also contribute to the stability of the ankle joint.

— The ankle joint is tighter and more stable with the foot in dorsiflexion, when the wider anterior part of the trochlea (of the talus) is wedged within the ankle mortise. Accordingly, the joint is looser and less stable in plantar flexion.

— Strong collateral talocrural ligaments connect the tibia and fibula to the tarsal bones and support the talocrural articulations (**Fig. 22.30**).

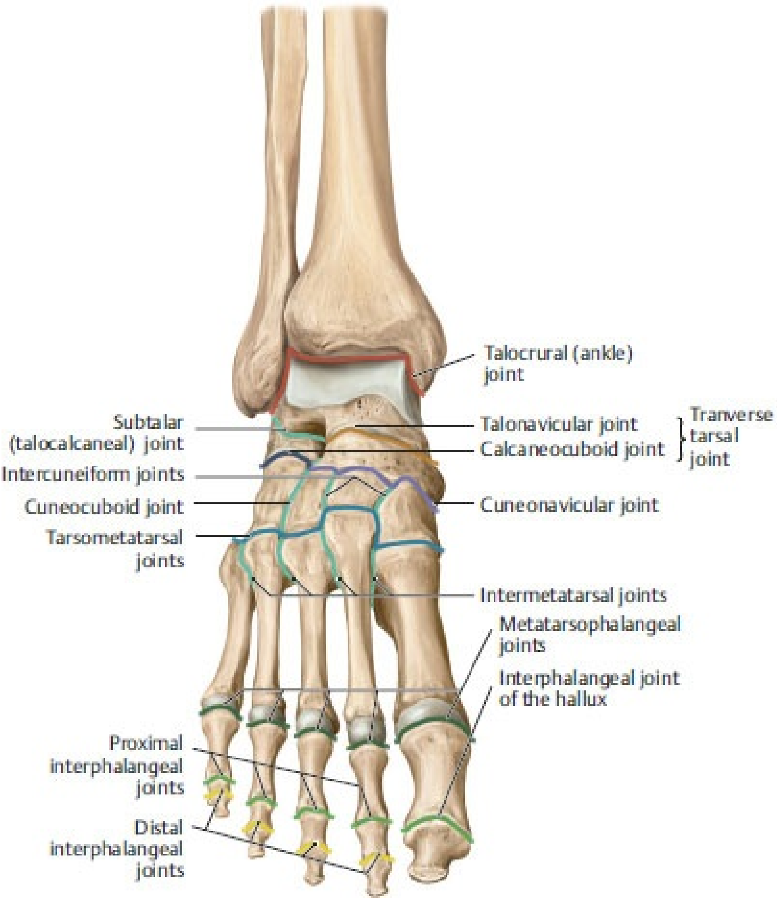

Talocrural (ankle) joint
Subtalar (talocalcaneal) joint
Talonavicular joint
Calcaneocuboid joint
Tranverse tarsal joint
Intercuneiform joints
Cuneocuboid joint
Cuneonavicular joint
Tarsometatarsal joints
Intermetatarsal joints
Metatarsophalangeal joints
Interphalangeal joint of the hallux
Proximal interphalangeal joints
Distal interphalangeal joints

Fig. 22.26 Joints of the foot

Right foot with talocrural joint in plantar flexion, anterior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- The medial **deltoid ligament** of the ankle extends from the medial malleolus of the tibia to the talus, calcaneus, and navicular. Its components are
  - the **anterior tibiotalar part,**

  - the **posterior tibiotalar part,**
  - the **tibiocalcaneal part,** and
  - the **tibionavicular part**.
- The **lateral ligament of the ankle** extends from the lateral malleolus of the fibula to the talus and calcaneus. Its parts are
  - the **anterior talofibular ligament**,
  - the **posterior talofibular ligament,** and
  - the **calcaneofibular ligament**.
- Movement at the ankle joint, provided by muscles of the leg, is limited primarily to dorsiflexion (extension) and plantar flexion (**Table 22.12**).

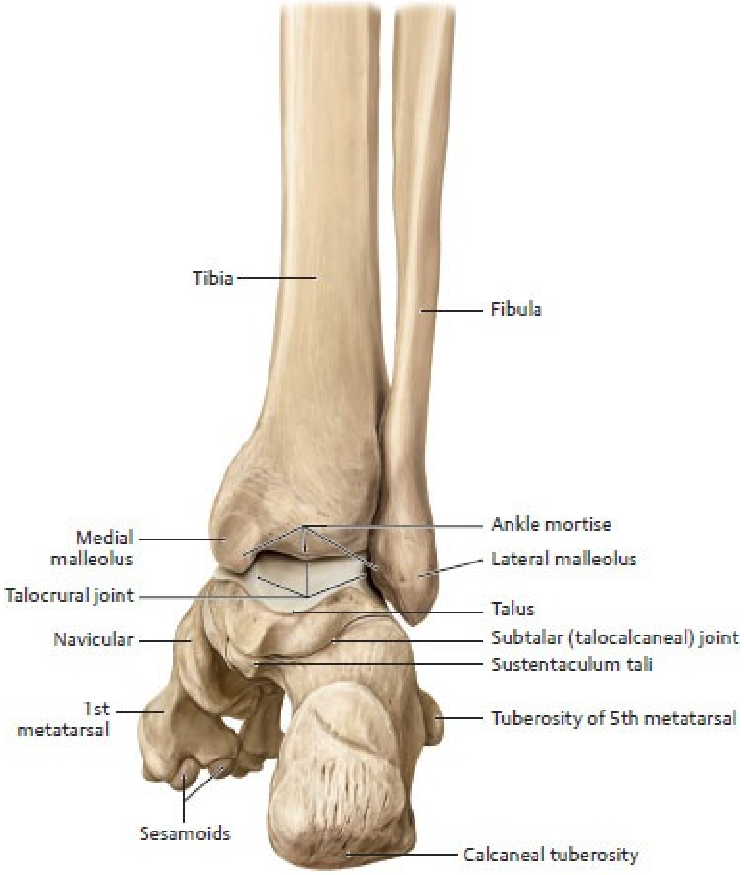
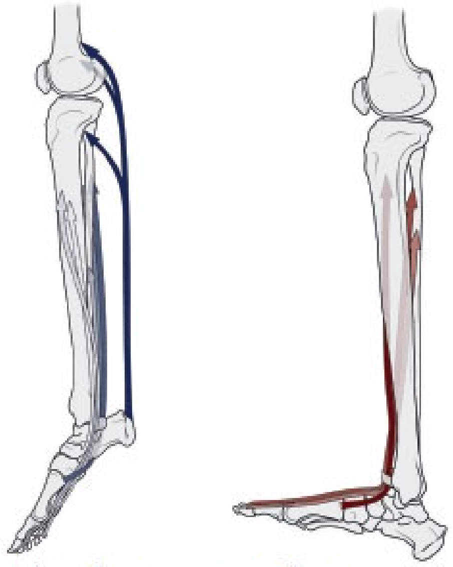

Tibia
Fibula
Medial malleolus
Ankle mortise
Lateral malleolus
Talocrural joint
Talus
Navicular
Subtalar (talocalcaneal) joint
Sustentaculum tali
1st metatarsal
Tuberosity of 5th metatarsal
Sesamoids
Calcaneal tuberosity

Fig. 22.27 Talocrural and subtalar joints

Right foot with foot in neutral (0-degree) position, posterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)



(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Table 22.12 Movements of the Ankle Joint

Action	Primary Muscles
Plantar flexion	Gastrocnemius Soleus Posterior tibialis Flexor digitorum longus Flexor hallucis longus
Dorsiflexion	Tibialis anterior Extensor hallucis longus Extensor digitorum longus Fibularis tertius

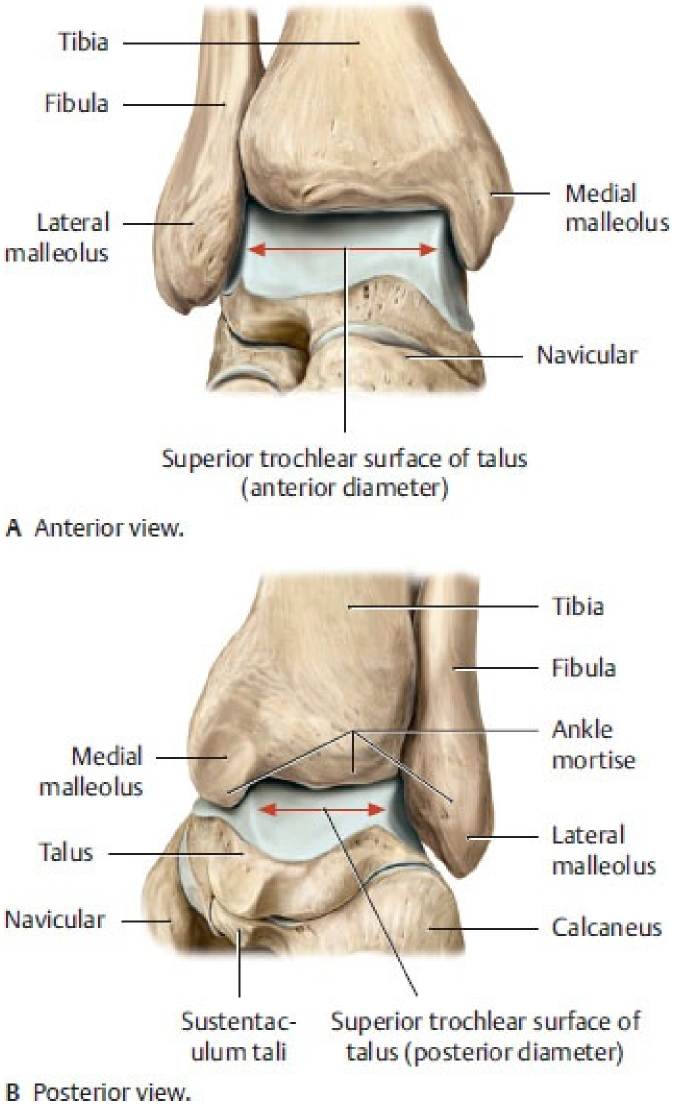
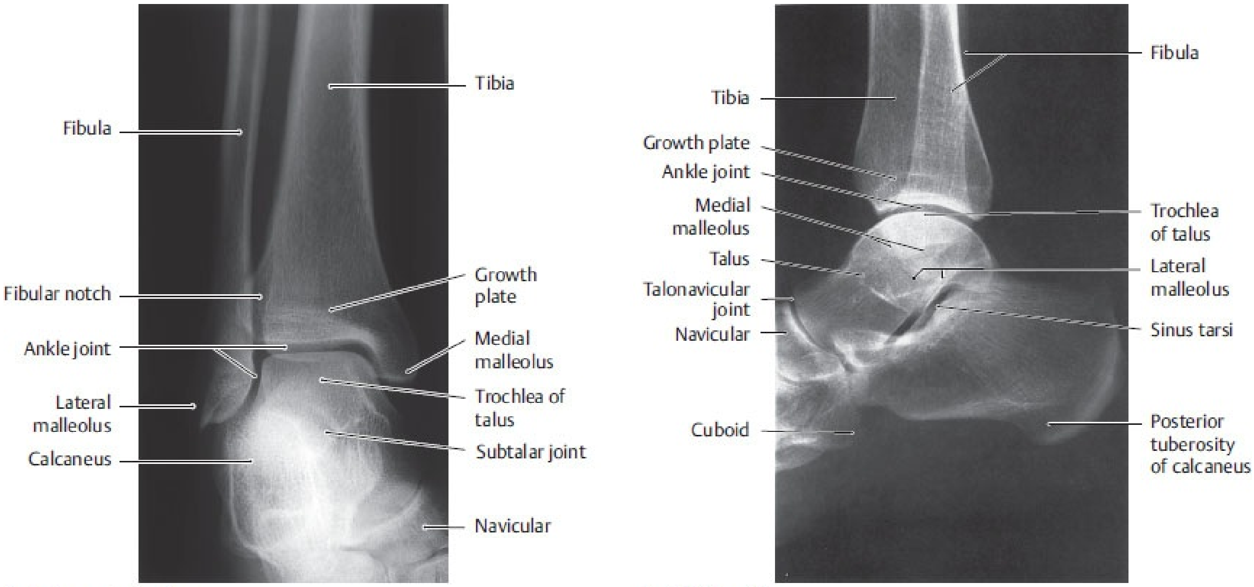

Tibia
Fibula
Lateral malleolus
Medial malleolus
Navicular
Superior trochlear surface of talus (anterior diameter)
A Anterior view.
Tibia
Fibula
Ankle mortise
Medial malleolus
Lateral malleolus
Talus
Navicular
Calcaneus
Sustentac- ulum tali
Superior trochlear surface of talus (posterior diameter)
B Posterior view.

Fig. 22.28 Talocrural joint

Right foot. The talocrural (ankle) joint is tighter and more stable with the foot in dorsiflexion, when the wider, anterior part of the trochlea (of the talus) is wedged within the ankle mortise. Accordingly, the joint is looser and less stable in plantar flexion. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

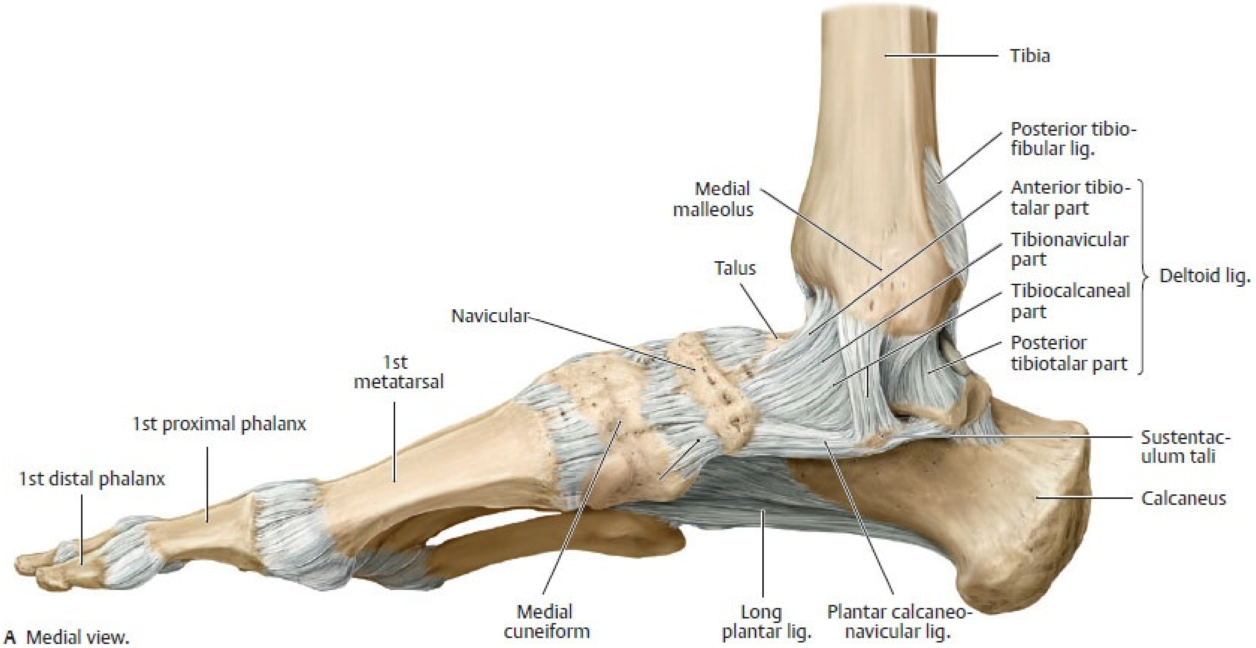

Tibia
Fibula
Fibular notch
Growth plate
Ankle joint
Medial malleolus
Trochlea of talus
Lateral malleolus
Calcaneus
Subtalar joint
Navicular
Fibula
Tibia
Growth plate
Ankle joint
Medial malleolus
Trochlea of talus
Talus
Lateral malleolus
Talonavicular joint
Navicular
Sinus tarsi
Cuboid
Posterior tuberosity of calcaneus

A Anteroposterior view.

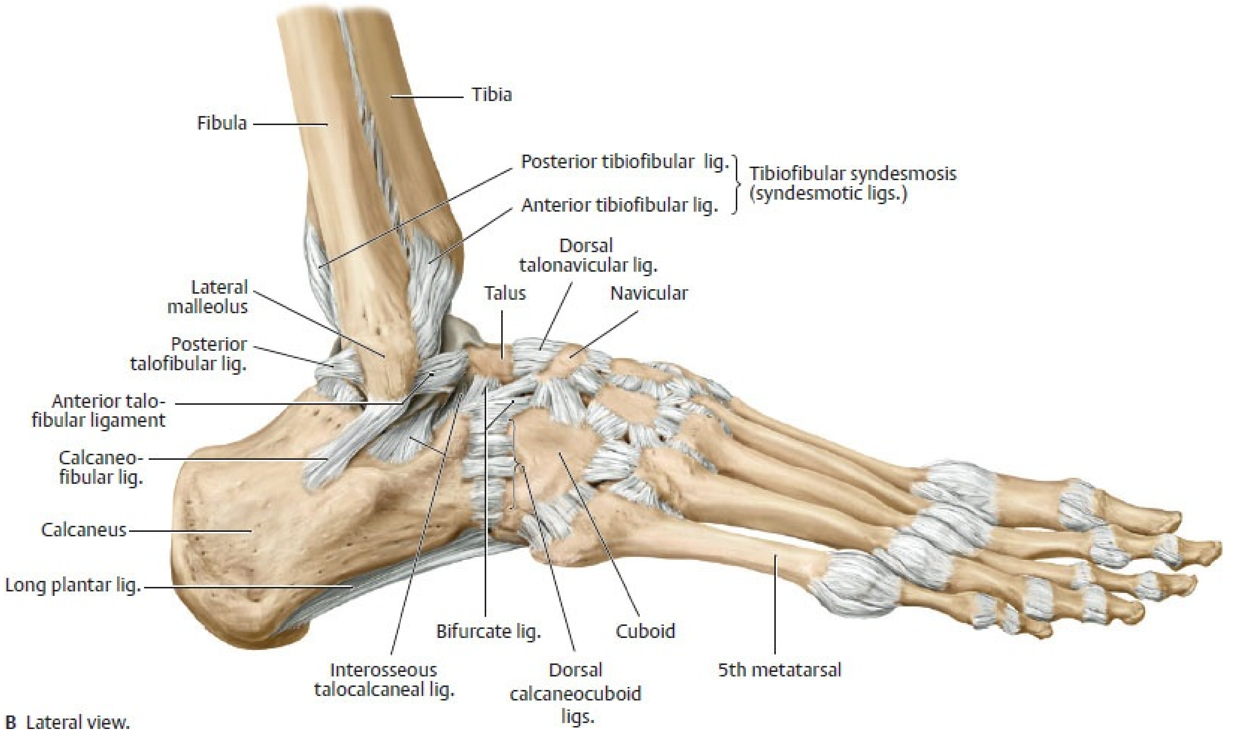
B Left lateral view.

Fig. 22.29 Radiograph of the ankle

(From Moeller TB, Reif E. Pocket Atlas of Sectional Anatomy: The Musculoskeletal System. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2009.)


Tibia
Posterior tibio-fibular lig.
Medial malleolus
Anterior tibio-talar part
Tibionavicular part
Tibiocalcaneal part
Posterior tibiotalar part
Deltoid lig.
Talus
Navicular
1st metatarsal
1st proximal phalanx
1st distal phalanx
Sustentac-ulum tali
Calcaneus
Medial cuneiform
Long plantar lig.
Plantar calcaneo-navicular lig.

A Medial view.


Tibia
Fibula
Posterior tibiofibular lig.
Anterior tibiofibular lig.
Tibiofibular syndesmosis (syndesmotic ligs.)
Dorsal talonavicular lig.
Lateral malleolus
Talus
Navicular
Posterior talofibular lig.
Anterior talo-fibular ligament
Calcaneo-fibular lig.
Calcaneus
Long plantar lig.
Bifurcate lig.
Cuboid
Interosseous talocalcaneal lig.
Dorsal calcaneocuboid ligs.
5th metatarsal

B Lateral view.

Fig. 22.30 Ligaments of the ankle and foot

Right foot. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 22.14: CLINICAL CORRELATION

ANKLE SPRAINS

Ankle sprains (torn ligaments) are caused most often by forced inversion of the foot (e.g., walking on uneven ground). Damage to the lateral talocrural ligaments is correlated with the severity of the injury and proceeds from anterior to posterior: the anterior talofibular ligament is the most easily injured, followed by the calcaneofibular and the least frequently injured, the posterior talofibular ligament. Fracture of the lateral malleolus can also accompany inversion injuries.

22.7 The Foot

The numerous joints of the foot create a flexible unit that effectively absorbs shock, distributes the weight of vertical loads, and participates in locomotion.

Joints of the Foot and Toes

Movements at the joints of the foot, particularly the intertarsal (subtalar and transverse tarsal), metatarsophalangeal, and interphalangeal joints, contribute to smooth locomotion and maintenance of balance (see **Fig. 22.26**).

— The **subtalar joint** is an articulation between the inferior surface of the talus and underlying calcaneus (**Figs. 22.31** and **22.32**; see also **Fig. 22.29B**).

  - It is a compound joint that has anterior and posterior compartments.
    - The anterior compartment contains the talocalcaneal component of the talocalcaneonavicular articulation.
    - The posterior compartment contains the posterior talocalcaneal articulation.
  - A strong **interosseous talocalcaneal ligament** joins the bones and separates the anterior and posterior parts of the joint.
  - This joint is the main articulation that allows inversion and eversion of the foot.

— The **transverse tarsal joint** is a compound joint that combines the talonavicular and calcaneocuboid articulations.

  - Movement at this joint rotates the front of the foot relative to the heel, augmenting the inversion and eversion at the subtalar joint.
  - This joint is a common site for surgical amputation of the foot.

— **The tarsometatarsal** and **intermetatarsal joints** are small and relatively immobile.

— **Metatarsophalangeal joints** are condyloid synovial joints between the heads of the metatarsals and base of the phalanges.

  - Flexion, extension, and some abduction and adduction occur at this joint.
- **Interphalangeal joints** are hinge–type synovial joints that primarily allow flexion and extension of the toes.
  - Digits 2 through 4 have **proximal interphalangeal** (**PIP**) and **distal interphalangeal (DIP) joints**.
  - The great toe has only a single interphalangeal joint.
- Muscles of the leg and foot move the joints of the foot (**Tables 22.13** and **22.14**).

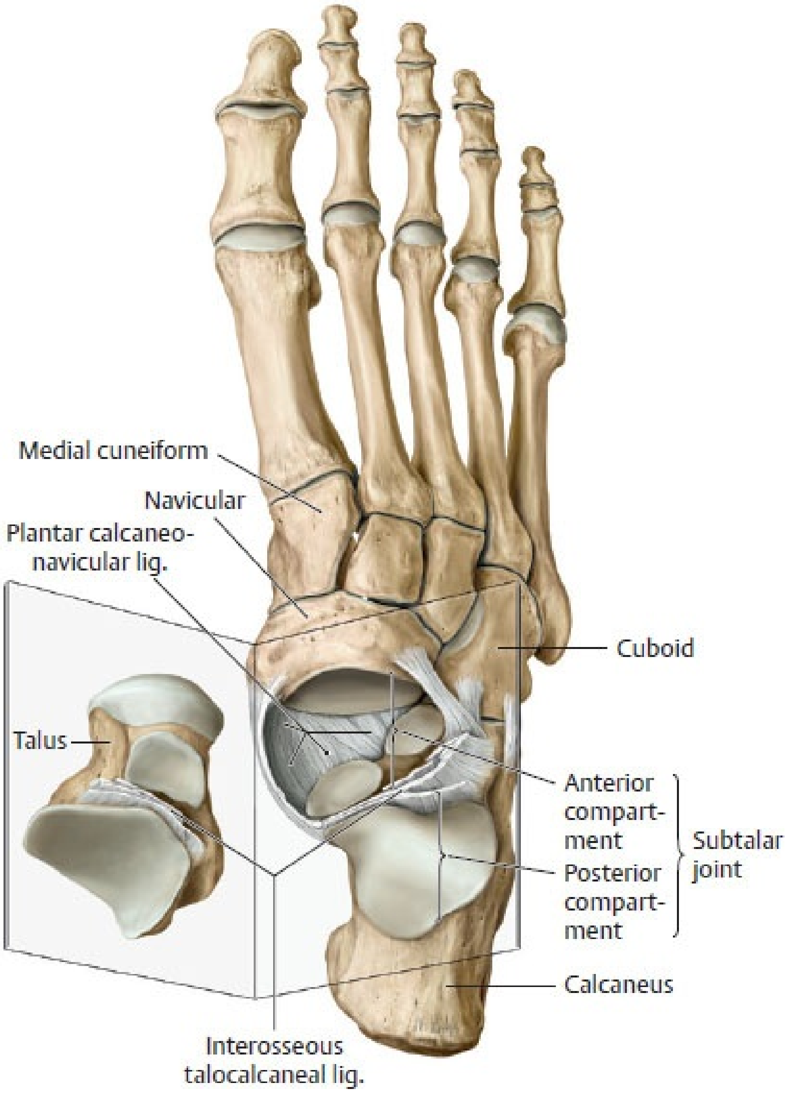

Medial cuneiform
Navicular
Plantar calcaneo-navicular lig.
Talus
Cuboid
Anterior compart-ment
Posterior compart-ment
Subtalar joint
Calcaneus
Interosseous talocalcaneal lig.

Fig. 22.31 Subtalar joint and ligaments

Right foot with opened subtalar joint, dorsal view. The subtalar joint consists of two distinct articulations separated by the interosseous talocalcaneal ligament:

the posterior compartment (talocalcaneal joint) and the anterior compartment (talocalcaneonavicular joint). (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

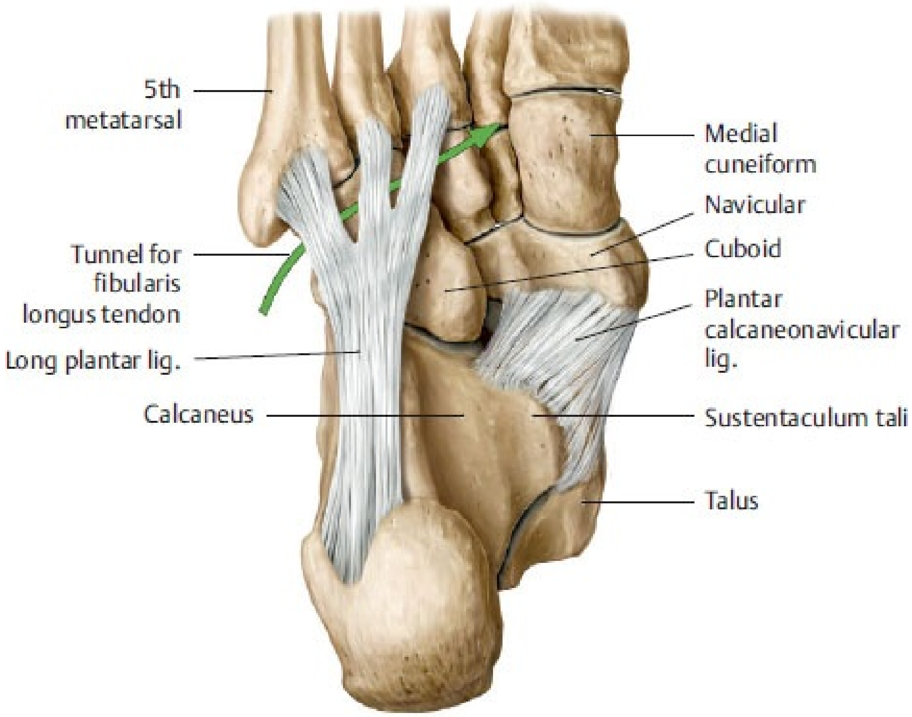
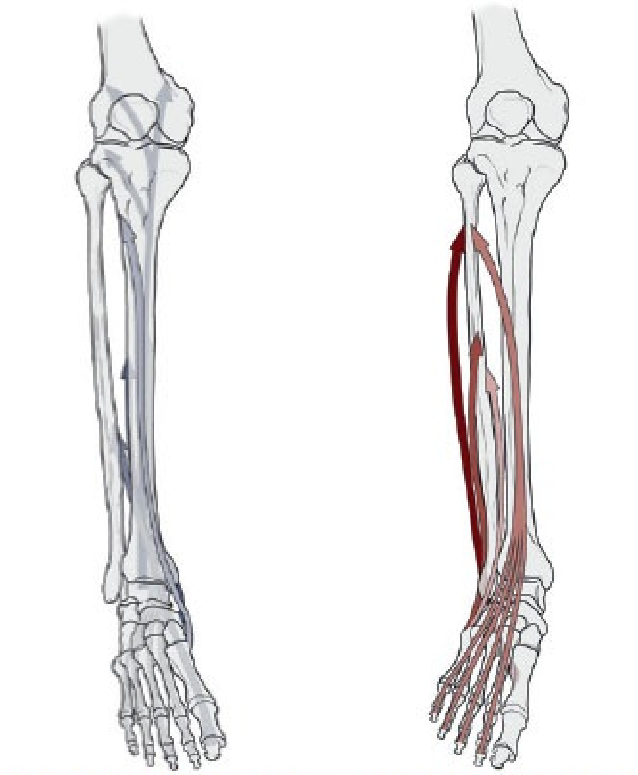

5th metatarsal
Tunnel for fibularis longus tendon
Long plantar lig.
Calcaneus
Medial cuneiform
Navicular
Cuboid
Plantar calcaneonavicular lig.
Sustentaculum tali
Talus

Fig. 22.32 Ligaments of the plantar surface

Plantar view. The plantar calcaneonavicular (“spring”) ligament completes the bony socket of the talocalcaneal joint. The long plantar ligament converts the tuberosity of the cuboid bone into a tunnel for the tibialis longus tendon (*arrow*). (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)



A Inversion and supination (lifting the medial border of the foot)

B Eversion and pronation (lifting the lateral border of the foot)

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Table 22.13 Movements of the Subtalor and Transverse Tarsal Joints

Action	Primary Muscles
Inversion and supination	Tibialis anterior Tibialis posterior Flexor hallucis longus Flexor digitorum longus
Eversion and pronation	Fibularis longus Fibularis brevis Fibularis tertius

Arches of the Foot

The tarsal and metatarsal bones form flexible longitudinal and transverse arches on the sole of the foot.

- The arches function as a unit to
  - distribute weight onto the heel and ball of the foot,
  - act as shock absorbers during locomotion, and
  - enhance the flexibility of the foot when planted on uneven surfaces.
- The longitudinal arch has medial and lateral parts (**Fig. 22.33**).
  - The medial arch is the highest part of the longitudinal arch, formed by the talus, navicular, three cuneiforms, and medial metatarsals. The head of the talus is the keystone of the arch.

Table 22.14 Movements of the Metatarsophalangeal (MTP) and Interphalangeal (IP) Joints

Action	Action
Flexion (MTP and IP joints)	Flexor hallucis longus Flexor hallucis brevis Flexor digitorum longus Flexor digitorum brevis Lumbricals Dorsal and palmar interossei
Extension (MTP and IP joints)	Extensor hallucis longus Extensor hallucis brevis Extensor digitorum longus Extensor digitorum brevis
Abduction (MTP joints)	Abductor hallucis Abductor digiti minimi Dorsal interossei
Adduction (MTP joints)	Adductor hallucis Plantar interossei

  - The lateral arch is flatter than the medial arch and is formed by the calcaneus, cuboid, and lateral metatarsals.
- The transverse arch, formed by the cuboid, cuneiforms, and bases of the metatarsals, crosses the midfoot (**Fig. 22.34**.
- The arches are supported by active and passive stabilizers (**Fig. 22.35**).
  - The primary active stabilizers of the arches are muscles of the leg and foot:

    - The tibialis posterior and fibularis longus of the leg
    - The short flexors, abductors, and adductors of the foot
- The primary passive stabilizers of the arches are ligaments of the foot:
    - The plantar aponeurosis
    - The **plantar calcaneonavicular ligament** (spring ligament)
    - The **long plantar ligament**

BOX 22.15: CLINICAL CORRELATION

PES PLANUS

Pes planus, or flatfoot, is a condition in which both the active and the passive stabilizers of the medial longitudinal arch are lax or absent. Because the head of the talus is not supported, it can displace inferomedially, and the forefoot everts and abducts, putting increased stress on the plantar calcaneonavicular (spring) ligament. Pes planus commonly occurs in older individuals who stand for long periods. Flatfoot is normal in children younger than 3 years, but this resolves with maturity.

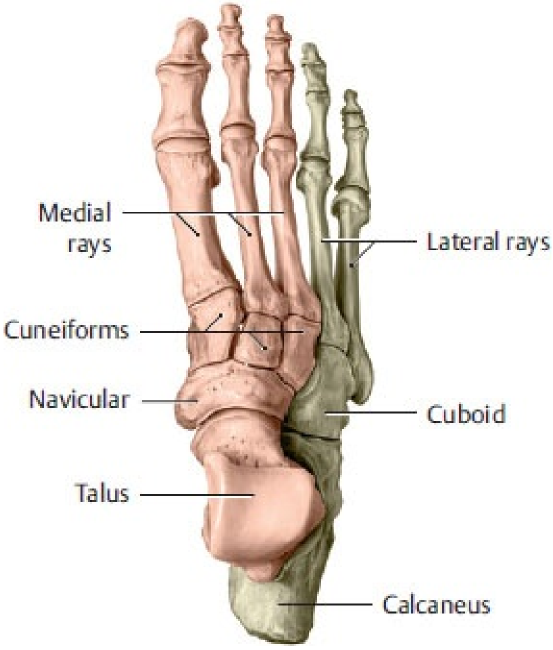


Fig. 22.33 Plantar vault

Right foot, dorsal view. The forces of the foot are distributed between two lateral and three medial rays. The arrangement of these rays creates a longitudinal and transverse arch in the sole of the foot, helping the foot absorb vertical loads.

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

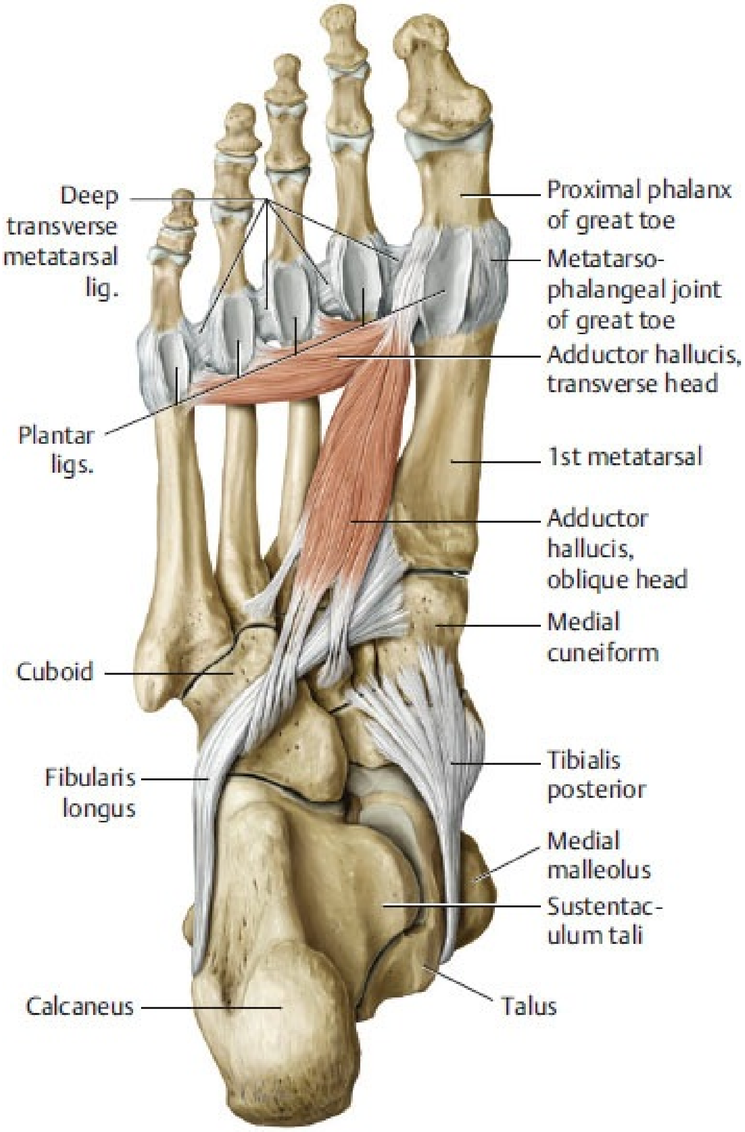
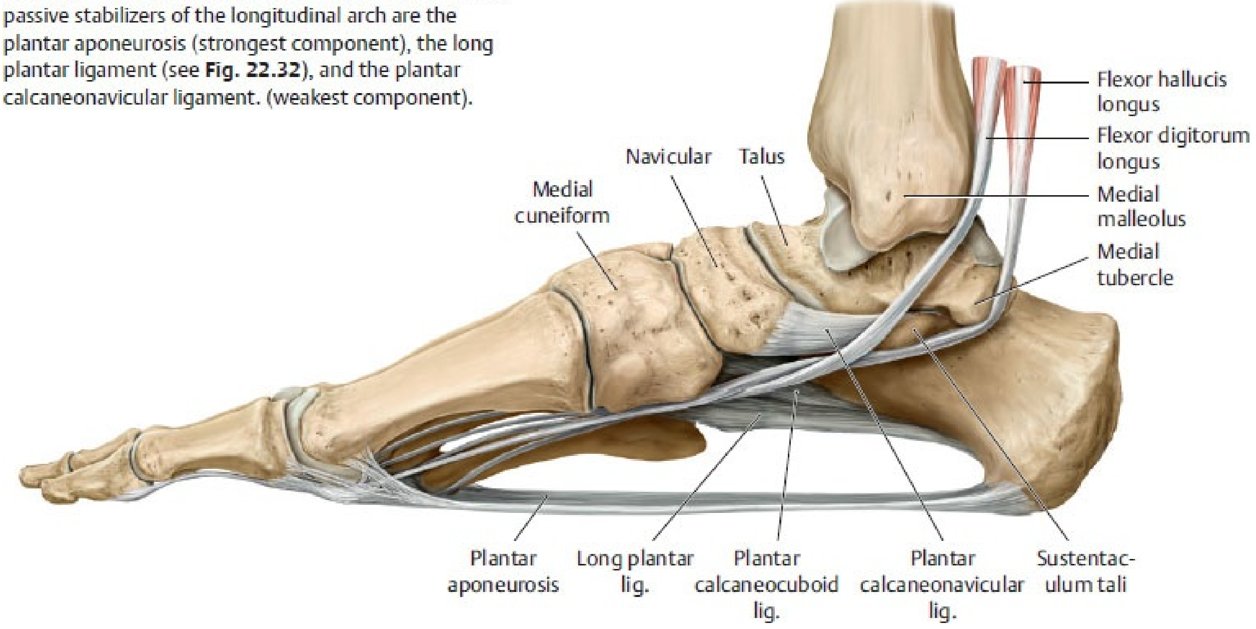

Deep transverse metatarsal lig.
Proximal phalanx of great toe
Metatarso-phalangeal joint of great toe
Adductor hallucis, transverse head
Plantar ligs.
1st metatarsal
Adductor hallucis, oblique head
Medial cuneiform
Cuboid
Fibularis longus
Tibialis posterior
Medial malleolus
Sustentaculum tali
Calcaneus
Talus

Fig. 22.34 Stabilizers of the transverse arch

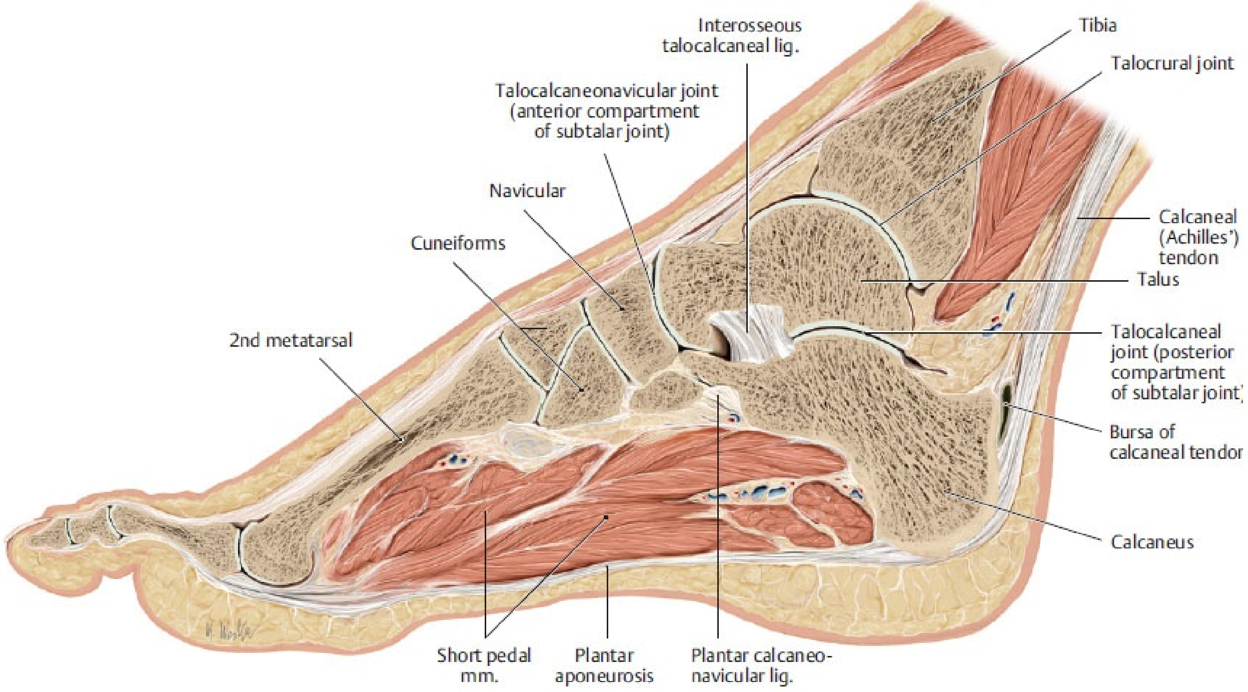
Right foot, plantar view. The transverse pedal arch is supported by both active and passive stabilizing structures (muscles and ligaments, respectively). Note: The arch of the forefoot has only passive stabilizers, whereas the arches of the metatarsus and tarsus have only active stabilizers. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Flexor hallucis longus
Flexor digitorum longus
Navicular
Talus
Medial cuneiform
Medial malleolus
Medial tubercle
Plantar aponeurosis
Long plantar lig.
Plantar calcaneocuboid lig.
Plantar calcaneonavicular lig.
Sustentaculum tali

A Passive stabilizers of the longitudinal arch. The main passive stabilizers of the longitudinal arch are the plantar aponeurosis (strongest component), the long plantar ligament (see **Fig. 22.32**), and the plantar calcaneonavicular ligament. (weakest component).

Fig. 22.35 Stabilizers of the longitudinal arch

Right foot, medial view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Interosseous talocalcaneal lig.
Tibia
Talocrural joint
Talocalcaneonavicular joint (anterior compartment of subtalar joint)
Navicular
Cuneiforms
Calcaneal (Achilles') tendon
Talus
2nd metatarsal
Talocalcaneal joint (posterior compartment of subtalar joint)
Bursa of calcaneal tendon
Calcaneus
Short pedal mm.
Plantar aponeurosis
Plantar calcaneonavicular lig.

B Active stabilizers of the longitudinal arch. The main active stabilizers are the short muscles of the foot: abductor hallucis, flexor hallucis brevis, flexor digitorum brevis, quadratus plantae, and abductor digiti minimi.

Fig. 22.35 (*continued*) Stabilizers of the longitudinal arch

Dorsum of the Foot

— Surface anatomy on the dorsum of the foot reveals
- skin that is thin and loose,
- a superficial dorsal venous arch that is the origin of the great saphenous and small saphenous veins, and
- tendons of extensor muscles of the anterior leg compartment.

— A **dorsal muscular compartment** of the foot contains two intrinsic muscles, the **extensor digitorum brevis** and the **extensor hallucis brevis**, which extend the toes (**Table 22.15**).

Table 14.4 Radiographic Densities

Sole of the Foot

— Surface anatomy on the sole of the foot reveals
- tough, thickened skin, particularly on the heel, lateral side, and ball of the foot;
- skin that is firmly attached to the underlying plantar aponeurosis; and
- subcutaneous tissue divided by fibrous septa into fatfilled areas that act as shock absorbers, especially in the heel.

— The tough, longitudinal plantar aponeurosis (see **Fig. 22.42**)
- attaches tightly to the skin of the sole,
- originates at the calcaneus and is continuous distally with the fibrous digital sheaths that contain the flexor tendons of the toes,
- protects the sole of the foot from injury, and
- acts as a tie rod that supports the arches of the foot.

— The musculature of the sole is usually described as having four layers (**Tables 22.16** and **22.17**). However, as in the palm of the hand, the deep fascia separates the muscles of the sole into four fascial compartments:
- The **medial compartment**, which contains the abductor and flexors of the 1st digit (hallux)
- The **central compartment**, which contains the short and long flexors of the 2nd through 4th digits, the adductor hallucis, the lumbricals, and the quadratus plantae
- The **lateral compartment**, which contains the abductor and flexor of the 5th digit
- The **interosseous compartment**, which contains the interossei muscles

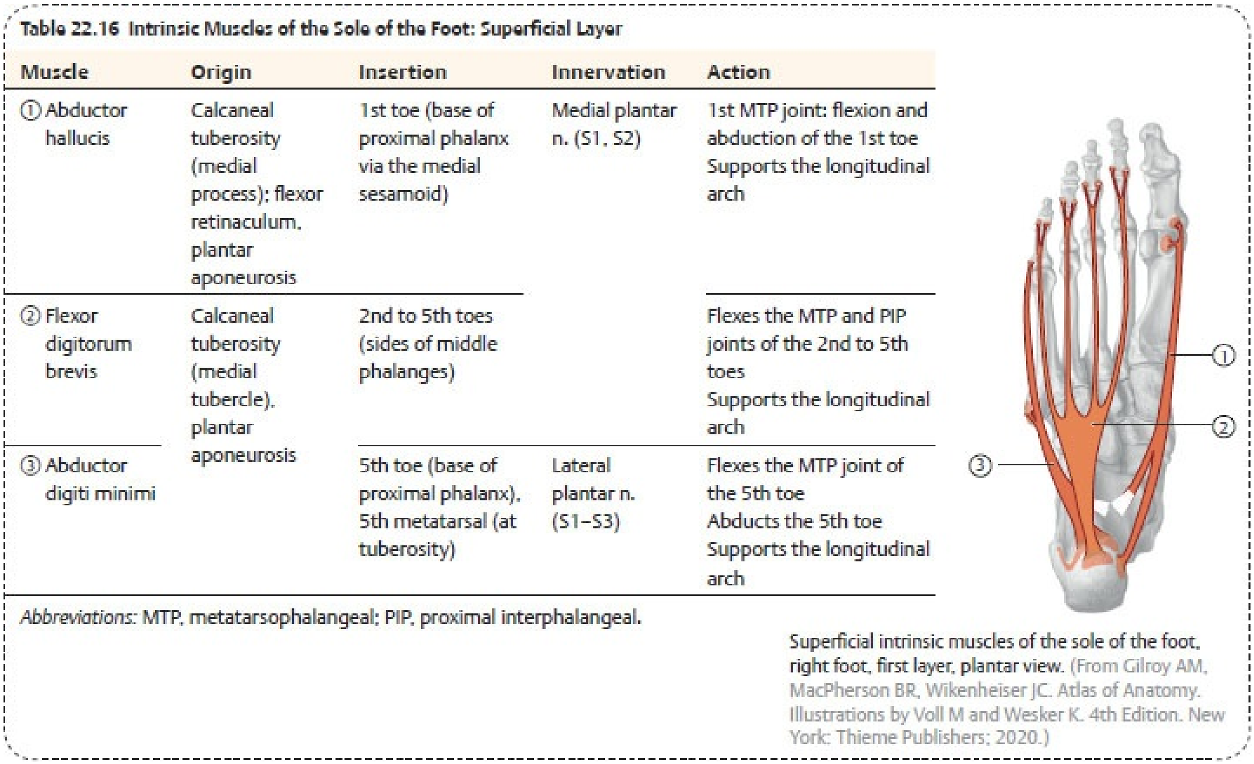


Table 22.16 Intrinsic Muscles of the Sole of the Foot: Superficial Layer

Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Innervation	Action
① Abductor hallucis	Calcaneal tuberosity (medial process); flexor retinaculum, plantar aponeurosis	1st toe (base of proximal phalanx via the medial sesamoid)	Medial plantar n. (S1, S2)	1st MTP joint: flexion and abduction of the 1st toe Supports the longitudinal arch
② Flexor digitorum brevis	Calcaneal tuberosity (medial tubercle), plantar aponeurosis	2nd to 5th toes (sides of middle phalanges)		Flexes the MTP and PIP joints of the 2nd to 5th toes Supports the longitudinal arch
③ Abductor digiti minimi		5th toe (base of proximal phalanx), 5th metatarsal (at tuberosity)	Lateral plantar n. (S1–S3)	Flexes the MTP joint of the 5th toe Abducts the 5th toe Supports the longitudinal arch

Abbreviations: MTP, metatarsophalangeal; PIP, proximal interphalangeal.

Superficial intrinsic muscles of the sole of the foot, right foot, first layer, plantar view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th Edition. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 22.16: CLINICAL CORRELATION

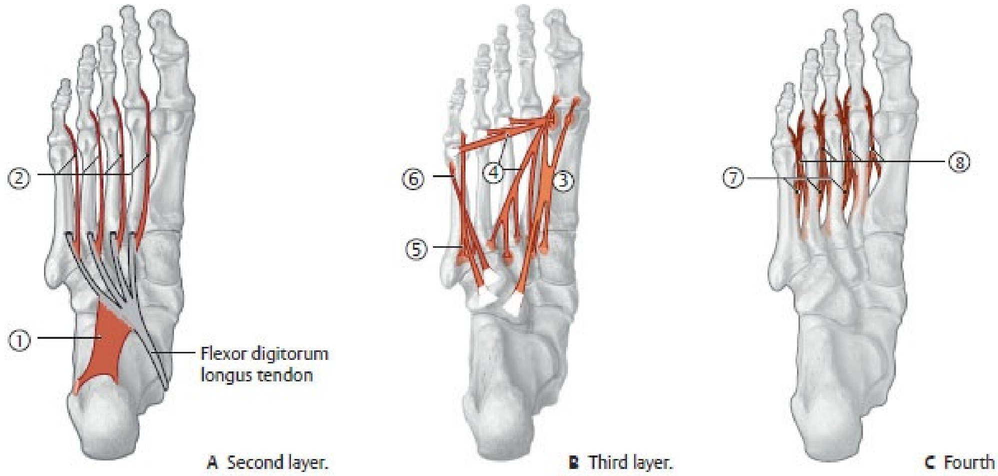
PLANTAR FASCIITIS

Inflammation of the plantar aponeurosis is a common and painful affliction of runners that is characterized by tenderness on the sole, particularly on the calcaneus. Pain is usually greatest following rest and may dissipate with activity.

BOX 22.17: CLINICAL CORRELATION

THE PLANTAR REFLEX

The plantar reflex tests the integrity of the L4–S2 nerve roots. It is performed by firmly stroking the lateral aspect of the sole from the heel and across the foot to the base of the big toe. In the normal individual, this elicits flexion of the toes. Extension of the big toe with flaring of the 2nd through 5th digits is called the Babinski sign, an abnormal response in adults, indicating brain damage. Because of the immaturity of their central nervous system, the Babinski sign is a normal response in young children (under 4 years).



A Second layer. **B** Third layer. **C** Fourth layer.

Deep intrinsic muscles of the sole of the foot, right foot, plantar view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th Edition. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Table 22.17 Intrinsic Muscles of the Sole of the Foot: Deep Layers

Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Innervation	Action
① Quadratus plantae	Calcaneal tuberosity (medial and plantar borders on plantar side)	Flexor digitorum longus tendon (lateral border)	Lateral plantar n. (S1–S3)	Redirects and augments the pull of flexor digitorum longus
② Lumbricals (four muscles)	Flexor digitorum longus tendons (medial borders)	2nd to 5th toes (at dorsal aponeuroses)	1st lumbrical: medial plantar n. (S2, S3) 2nd and 4th lumbrical: lateral plantar n. (S2, S3)	Flexes the MTP joints of 2nd to 5th toes Extension of IP joints of 2nd to 5th toes Adducts 2nd to 5th toes toward the big toe
③ Flexor hallucis brevis	Cuboid, lateral cuneiforms, and plantar calcaneocuboid lig.	1st toe (at base of proximal phalanx via medial and lateral sesamoids)	Medial head: medial plantar n. (S1, S2) Lateral head: lateral plantar n. (S1, S2)	Flexes the first MTP joint Supports the longitudinal arch
④ Adductor hallucis	Oblique head: 2nd to 4th metatarsals (at bases) cuboid and lateral cuneiforms Transverse head: MTPs of 3rd to 5th toes, deep transverse metatarsal lig.	1st proximal phalanx (at base, by a common tendon via the lateral sesamoid)	Lateral plantar n., deep branch (S2, S3)	Flexes the first MTP joint Adducts big toe Transverse head: supports transverse arch Oblique head: supports longitudinal arch
⑤ Flexor digiti minimi brevis	5th metatarsal (base), long plantar lig.	5th toe (base of proximal phalanx)	Lateral plantar n., superficial branch (S2, S3)	Flexes the MTP joint of the little toe
⑥ Opponens digiti minimi*	Long plantar lig.; fibularis longus (at plantar tendon sheath)	5th metatarsal		Pulls 5th metatarsal in plantar and medial direction
⑦ Plantar interossei (three muscles)	3rd to 5th metatarsals (medial border)	3rd to 5th toes (medial base of proximal phalanx)	Lateral plantar n. (S2, S3)	Flexes the MTP joints of 3rd to 5th toes Extension of IP joints of 3rd to 5th toes Adducts 3rd to 5th toes toward 2nd toe
⑧ Dorsal interossei (four muscles)	1st to 5th metatarsals (by two heads on opposing sides)	1st interosseus: 2nd proximal phalanx (medial base) 2nd to 4th interossei: 2nd to 4th proximal phalanges (lateral base), 2nd to 4th toes (at dorsal aponeuroses)		Flexes the MTP joints of 2nd to 4th toes Extension of IP joints of 2nd to 4th toes Abducts 3rd and 4th toes from 2nd toe

Abbreviations: IP, interphalangeal; MTP, metatarsophalangeal.

*May be absent.

22.8 The Gait Cycle

Gait is a complex activity that requires the coordinated action of muscles of the hip, thigh, and leg. **Table 22.18** provides a summary of muscle action during the gait cycle.

- Gait is described in two phases: in normal walking, the stance phase makes up ~ 60%, and the swing phase makes up ~ 40%.
- One cycle of gait consists of the action of one leg through each of the two phases.

Table 22.18 Muscle Action Sequence During the Gait Cycle

Activity	**Active Muscle Groups**
Stance phase This phase begins with the heel strike.	Hip extensors Dorsiflexors
The foot begins to accept the weight of the body, and the pelvis is stabilized.	Hip adductors Knee extensors Plantar flexors
At midstance, the pelvis, knee, and ankle are stabilized.	Hip abductors Knee extensors Plantar flexors
This phase ends with the push off that includes “heel lift” and “toe off.” Pelvis is stabilized.	Hip abductors Plantar flexors
Throughout the stance phase, the arches of the foot are preserved.	Long tendons of the foot Intrinsic muscles of the foot
Swing phase This phase begins with forward acceleration of the thigh.	Hip flexors
The foot needs to clear the ground as it	Dorsiflexors

swings forward.	
The thigh decelerates in preparation for landing.	Hip extensors
As the foot prepares for heel strike, the knee extends and positions the foot.	Knee extensor Dorsiflexors

22.9 Topographic Anatomy of Lower Limb Musculature

Thigh, Hip, and Gluteal Region

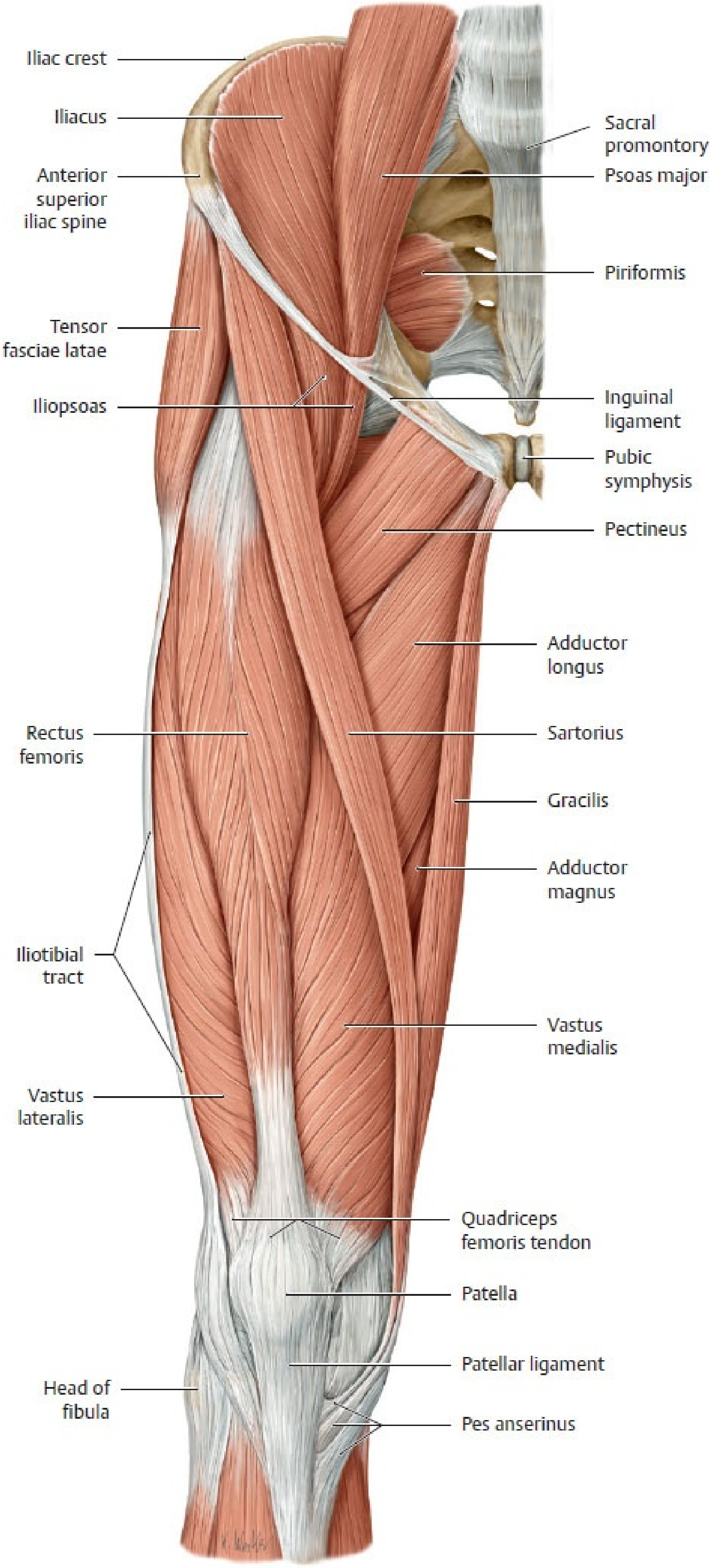

Iliac crest
Iliacus
Anterior superior iliac spine
Tensor fasciae latae
Iliopsoas
Rectus femoris
Iliotibial tract
Vastus lateralis
Head of fibula
Sacral promontory
Psoas major
Piriformis
Inguinal ligament
Pubic symphysis
Pectineus
Adductor longus
Sartorius
Gracilis
Adductor magnus
Vastus medialis
Quadriceps femoris tendon
Patella
Patellar ligament
Pes anserinus

Fig. 22.36 Muscles of the hip and thigh

Right limb, anterior view. Muscle origins are shown in *red*, insertions in *gray*. *Removed*: Fascia lata of the thigh (to the lateral iliotibial tract). (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

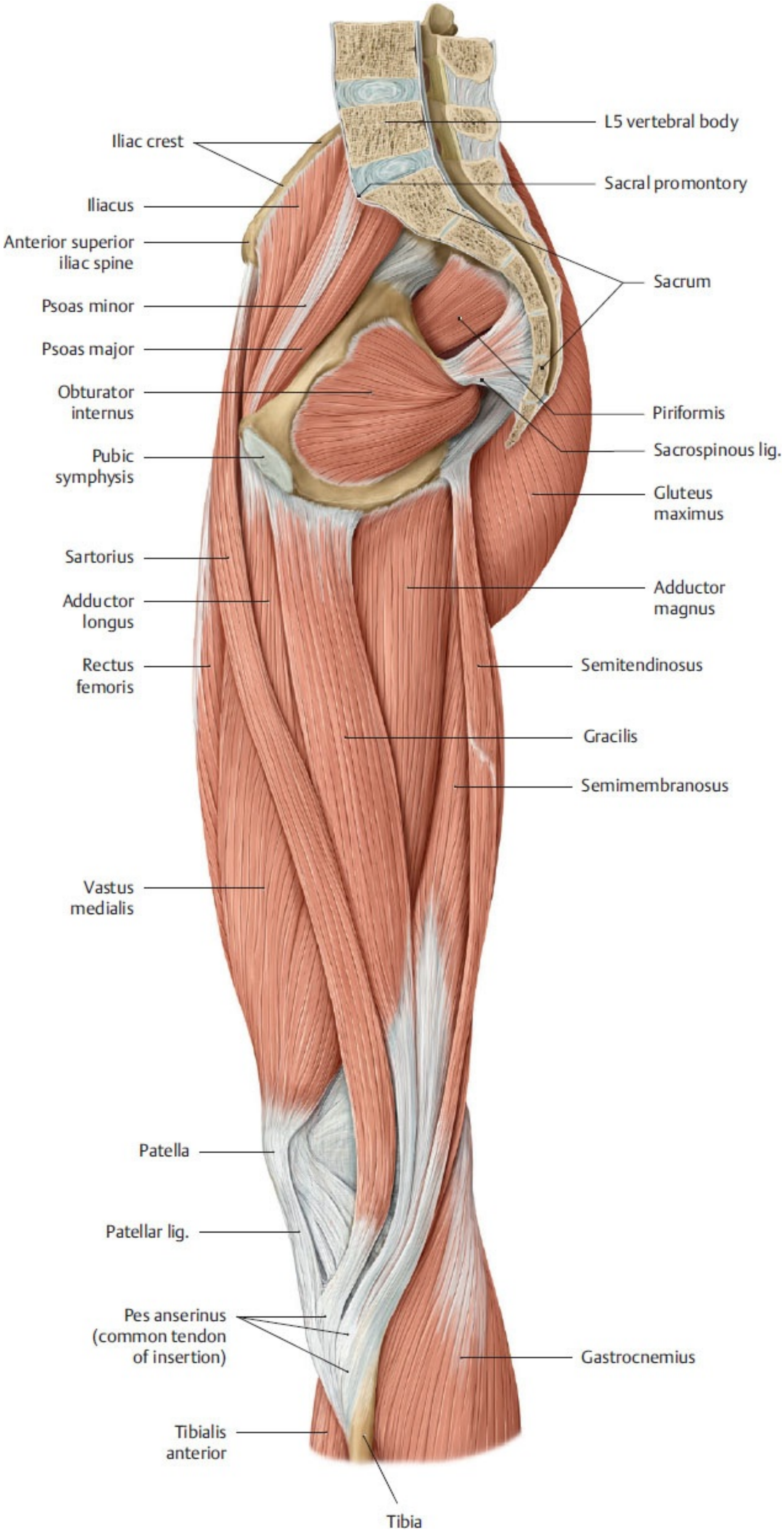

L5 vertebral body
Iliac crest
Sacral promontory
Iliacus
Anterior superior iliac spine
Sacrum
Psoas minor
Psoas major
Obturator internus
Piriformis
Sacrospinous lig.
Pubic symphysis
Gluteus maximus
Sartorius
Adductor magnus
Adductor longus
Rectus femoris
Semitendinosus
Gracilis
Semimembranosus
Vastus medialis
Patella
Patellar lig.
Pes anserinus (common tendon of insertion)
Gastrocnemius
Tibialis anterior
Tibia

Fig. 22.37 Muscles of the hip, thigh, and gluteal region

Midsagittal section, medial view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

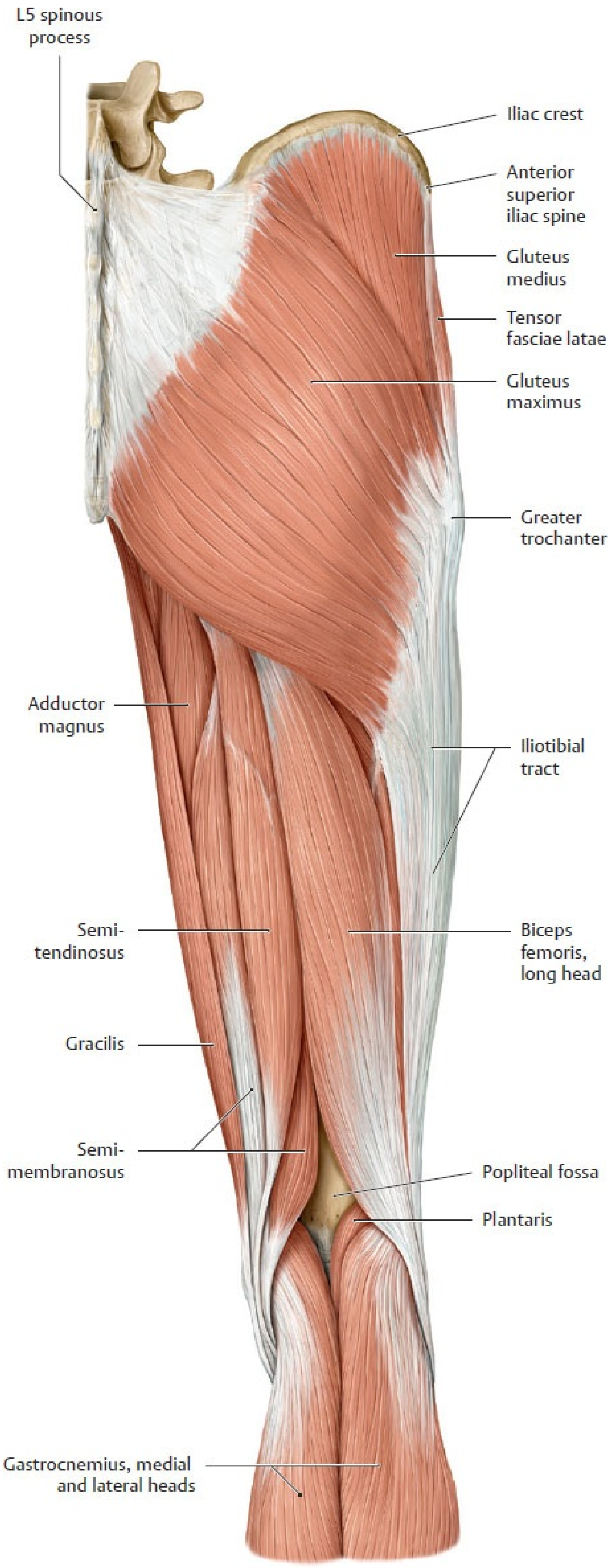

L5 spinous process
Iliac crest
Anterior superior iliac spine
Gluteus medius
Tensor fasciae latae
Gluteus maximus
Greater trochanter
Adductor magnus
Iliotibial tract
Semi-tendinosus
Biceps femoris, long head
Gracilis
Semi-membranosus
Popliteal fossa
Plantaris
Gastrocnemius, medial and lateral heads

Fig. 22.38 Muscles of the hip, thigh, and gluteal region

Right limb, posterior view.

Removed: Fascia lata (to iliotibial tract). (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

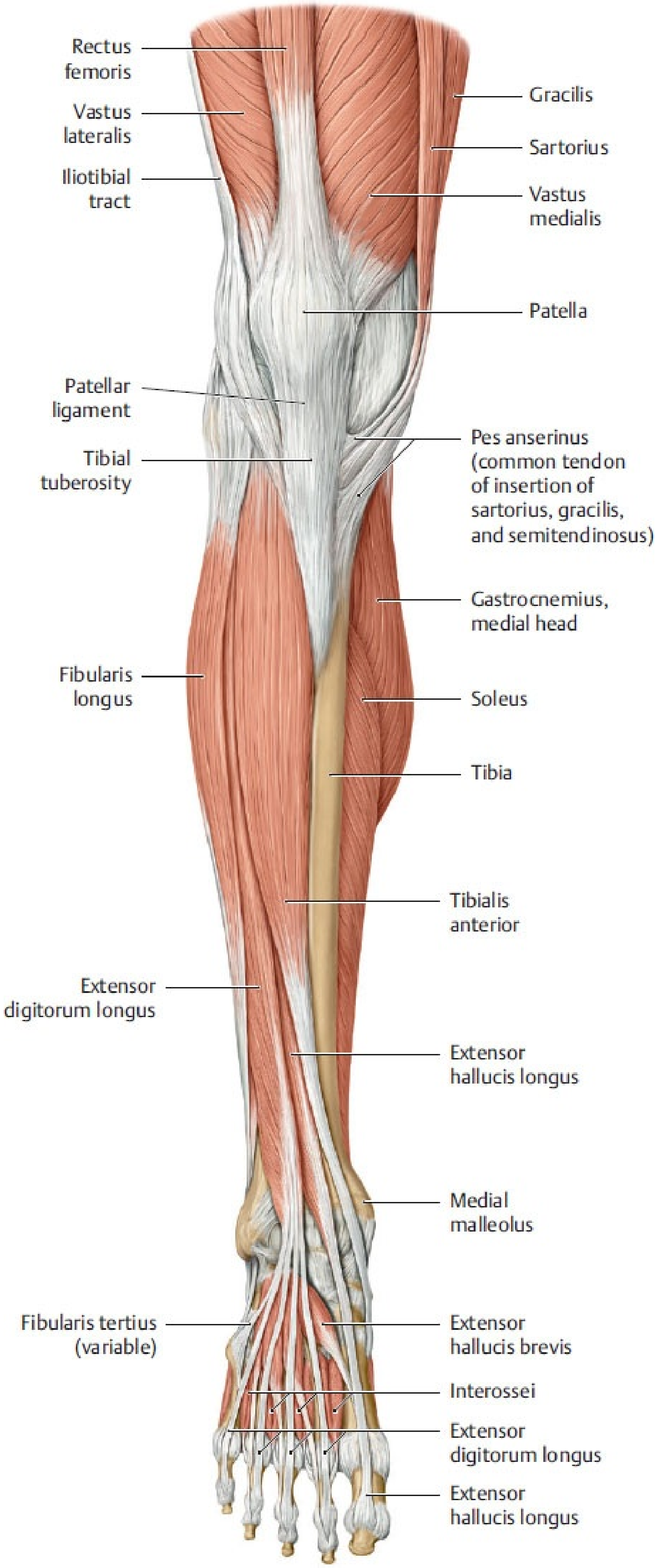

Rectus femoris
Vastus lateralis
Iliotibial tract
Gracilis
Sartorius
Vastus medialis
Patella
Patellar ligament
Tibial tuberosity
Pes anserinus (common tendon of insertion of sartorius, gracilis, and semitendinosus)
Gastrocnemius, medial head
Fibularis longus
Soleus
Tibia
Tibialis anterior
Extensor digitorum longus
Extensor hallucis longus
Medial malleolus
Fibularis tertius (variable)
Extensor hallucis brevis
Interossei
Extensor digitorum longus
Extensor hallucis longus

Fig. 22.39 Muscles of the leg

Right leg, anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

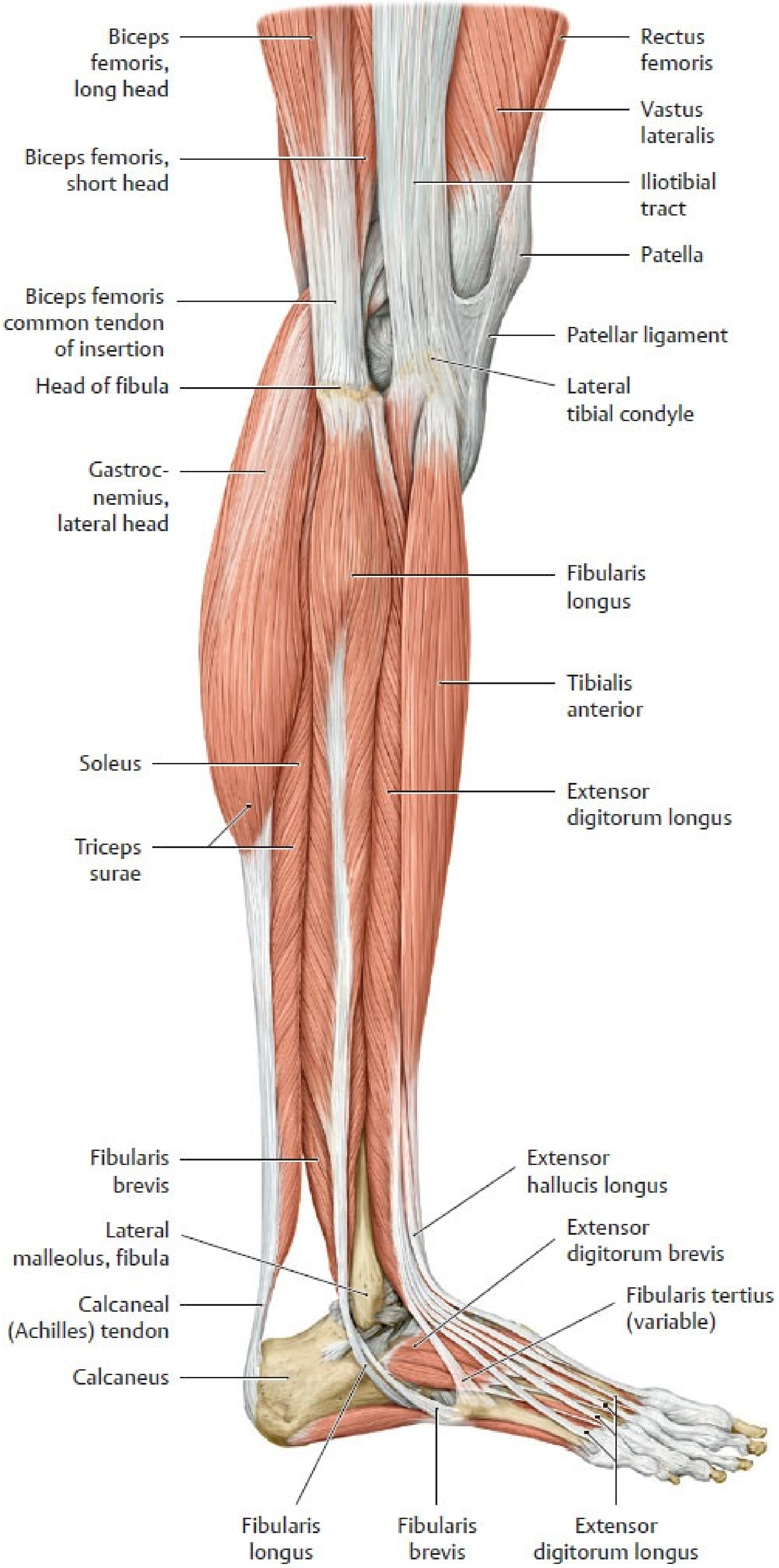
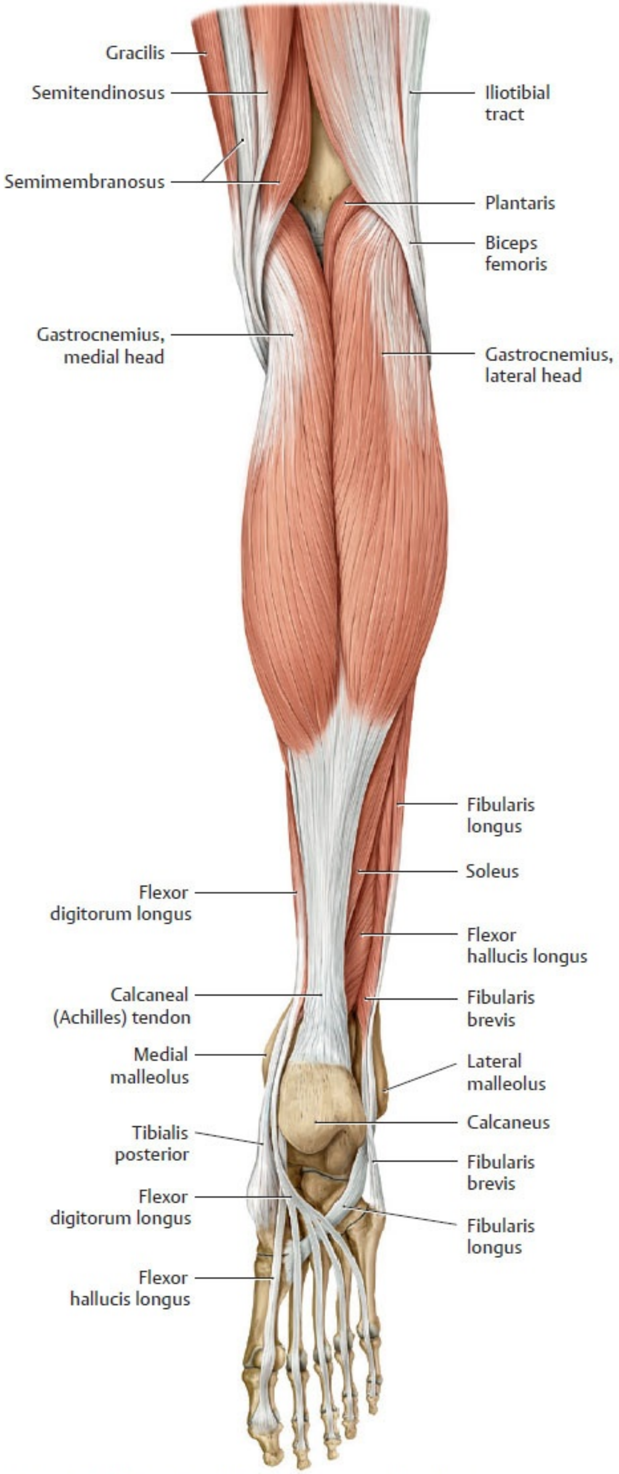
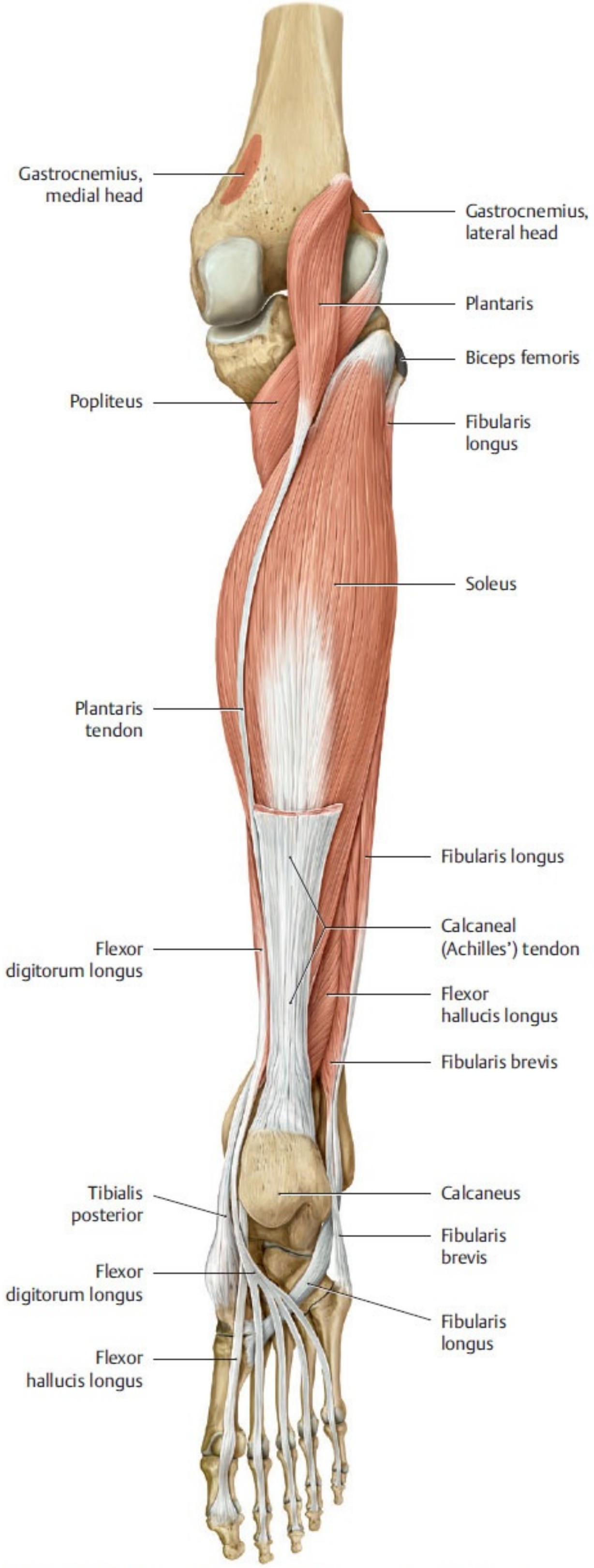

Biceps femoris, long head
Biceps femoris, short head
Biceps femoris common tendon of insertion
Head of fibula
Gastrocnemius, lateral head
Soleus
Triceps surae
Fibularis brevis
Lateral malleolus, fibula
Calcaneal (Achilles) tendon
Calcaneus
Rectus femoris
Vastus lateralis
Iliotibial tract
Patella
Patellar ligament
Lateral tibial condyle
Fibularis longus
Tibialis anterior
Extensor digitorum longus
Extensor hallucis longus
Extensor digitorum brevis
Fibularis tertius (variable)
Fibularis longus
Fibularis brevis
Extensor digitorum longus

Fig. 22.40 Muscles of the leg

Right leg, lateral view.


Gracilis
Semitendinosus
Semimembranosus
Iliotibial tract
Plantaris
Biceps femoris
Gastrocnemius, medial head
Gastrocnemius, lateral head
Fibularis longus
Soleus
Flexor digitorum longus
Flexor hallucis longus
Calcaneal (Achilles) tendon
Fibularis brevis
Medial malleolus
Lateral malleolus
Calcaneus
Tibialis posterior
Fibularis brevis
Flexor digitorum longus
Fibularis longus
Flexor hallucis longus

A *Note:* The bulge of the calf is produced mainly by the triceps surae (soleus and the two heads of the gastrocnemius). (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Gastrocnemius, medial head
Gastrocnemius, lateral head
Plantaris
Biceps femoris
Popliteus
Fibularis longus
Soleus
Plantaris tendon
Fibularis longus
Calcaneal (Achilles') tendon
Flexor digitorum longus
Flexor hallucis longus
Fibularis brevis
Tibialis posterior
Calcaneus
Fibularis brevis
Flexor digitorum longus
Fibularis longus
Flexor hallucis longus

B *Removed:* Gastrocnemius (both heads). (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Fig. 22.41 Muscles of the leg

Right leg, posterior view.

The Foot

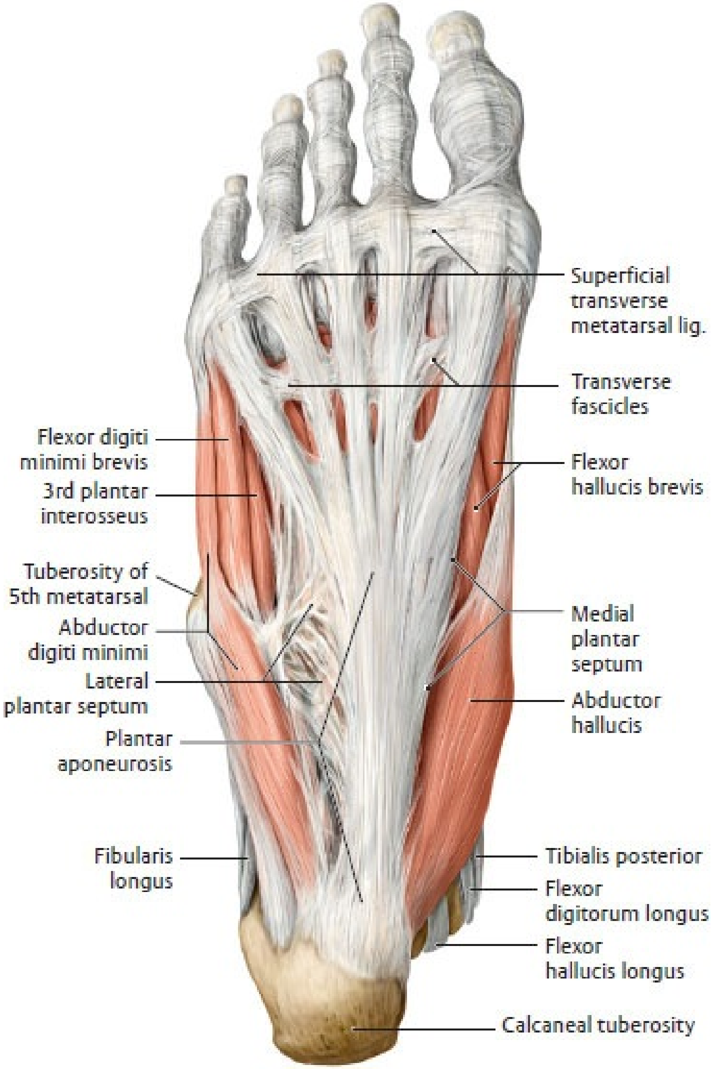

Superficial transverse metatarsal lig.
Transverse fascicles
Flexor digiti minimi brevis
3rd plantar interosseus
Flexor hallucis brevis
Tuberosity of 5th metatarsal
Medial plantar septum
Abductor digiti minimi
Lateral plantar septum
Abductor hallucis
Plantar aponeurosis
Fibularis longus
Tibialis posterior
Flexor digitorum longus
Flexor hallucis longus
Calcaneal tuberosity

Fig. 22.42 Plantar aponeurosis

Right foot, plantar view. The plantar aponeurosis is a tough aponeurotic sheet, thickest at the center, that blends with the dorsal fascia (not shown) at the borders of the foot. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

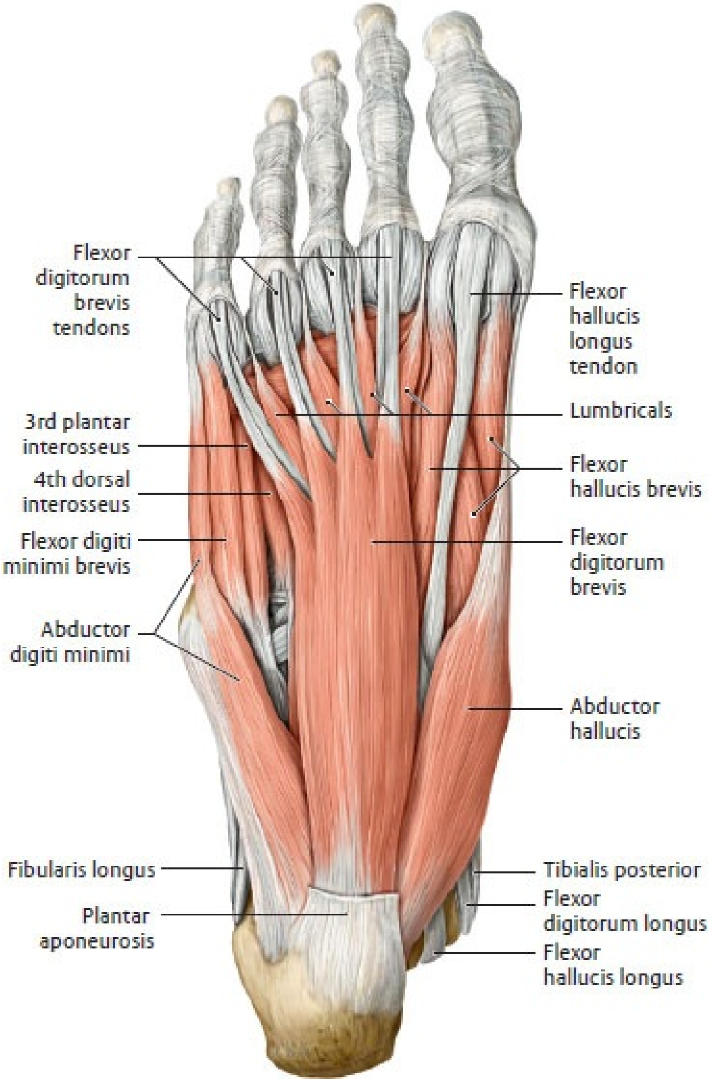

Flexor digitorum brevis tendons
Flexor hallucis longus tendon
Lumbricals
3rd plantar interosseus
4th dorsal interosseus
Flexor hallucis brevis
Flexor digiti minimi brevis
Flexor digitorum brevis
Abductor digiti minimi
Abductor hallucis
Fibularis longus
Tibialis posterior
Plantar aponeurosis
Flexor digitorum longus
Flexor hallucis longus

Fig. 22.43 Intrinsic muscles of the sole of the foot

Right foot, plantar view.

Superficial (first) layer. *Removed*: Plantar aponeurosis, including the superficial transverse metacarpal ligament. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Compartments of the Thigh and Leg

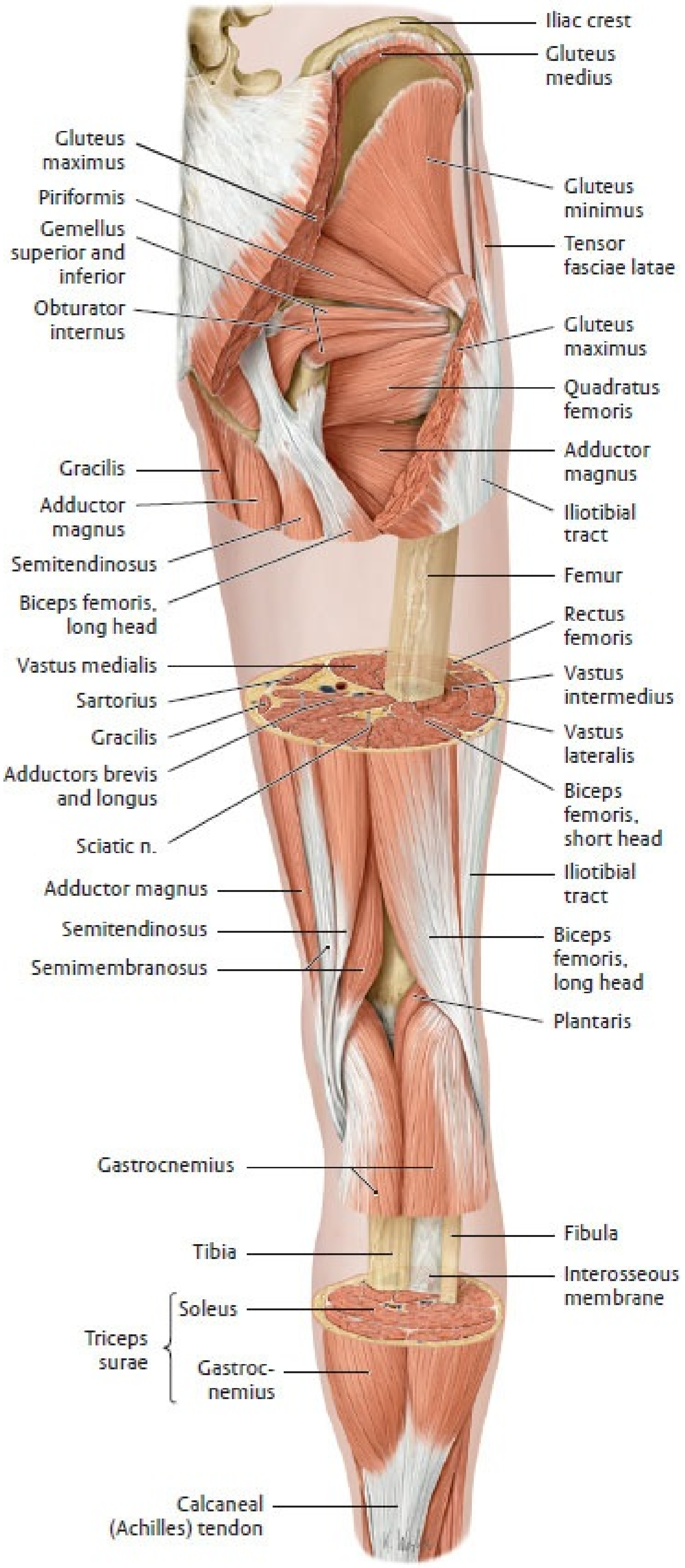
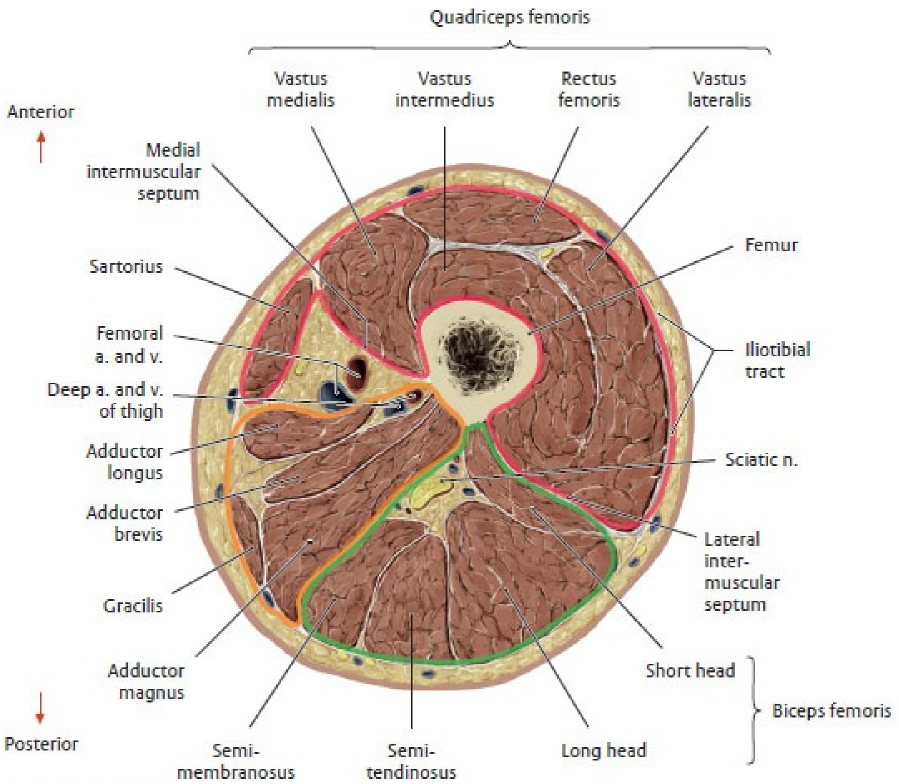
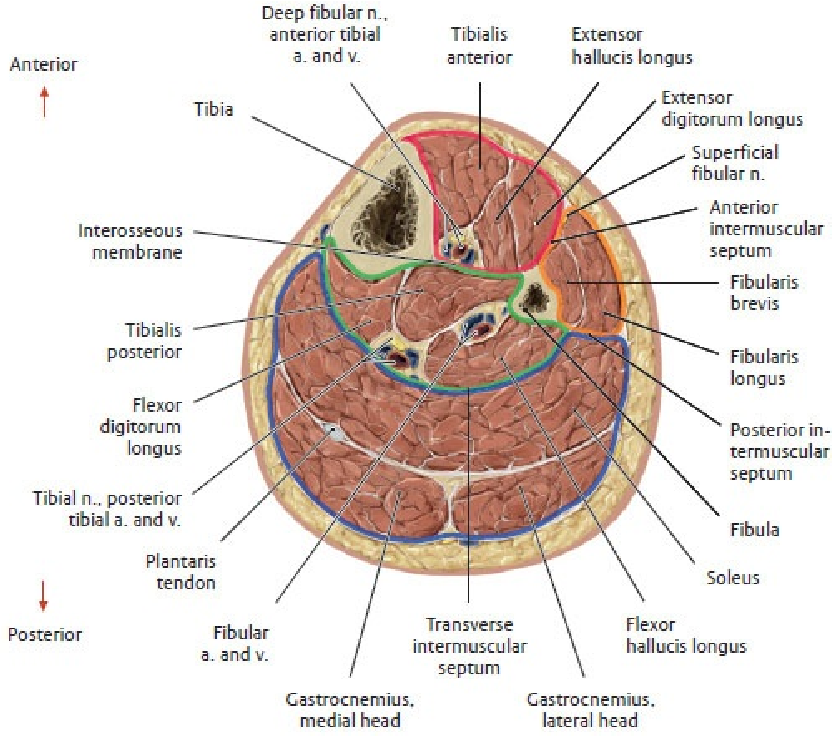

Iliac crest
Gluteus medius
Gluteus maximus
Piriformis
Gemellus superior and inferior
Obturator internus
Gluteus minimus
Tensor fasciae latae
Gluteus maximus
Quadratus femoris
Adductor magnus
Iliotibial tract
Gracilis
Adductor magnus
Semitendinosus
Biceps femoris, long head
Femur
Rectus femoris
Vastus medialis
Sartorius
Gracilis
Adductors brevis and longus
Sciatic n.
Vastus intermedius
Vastus lateralis
Biceps femoris, short head
Iliotibial tract
Adductor magnus
Semitendinosus
Semimembranosus
Biceps femoris, long head
Plantaris
Gastrocnemius
Tibia
Fibula
Interosseous membrane
Triceps surae
Soleus
Gastroc- nemius
Calcaneal (Achilles) tendon

Fig. 22.44 Windowed dissection

Right limb, posterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Quadriceps femoris
Vastus medialis
Vastus intermedius
Rectus femoris
Vastus lateralis
Anterior
Medial intermuscular septum
Sartorius
Femoral a. and v.
Deep a. and v. of thigh
Adductor longus
Adductor brevis
Gracilis
Adductor magnus
Posterior
Semi-membranosus
Semi-tendinosus
Long head
Short head
Biceps femoris
Femur
Iliotibial tract
Sciatic n.
Lateral inter-muscular septum

A Thigh (plane of upper section in **Fig. 22.44**). The anterior compartment is outlined in *pink*, the posterior compartment in *green*, and the medial compartment in *orange*.


Anterior
Deep fibular n., anterior tibial a. and v.
Tibialis anterior
Extensor hallucis longus
Extensor digitorum longus
Superficial fibular n.
Anterior intermuscular septum
Tibia
Interosseous membrane
Fibularis brevis
Fibularis longus
Tibialis posterior
Flexor digitorum longus
Posterior in-termuscular septum
Tibial n., posterior tibial a. and v.
Fibula
Plantaris tendon
Soleus
Posterior
Fibular a. and v.
Transverse intermuscular septum
Flexor hallucis longus
Gastrocnemius, medial head
Gastrocnemius, lateral head

B Leg (plane of lower section in **Fig. 22.44**). The anterior compartment is outlined in *pink*, the lateral compartment in *orange*, the deep posterior compartment in *green*, and the superficial posterior compartment in *blue*.

Fig. 22.45 Transverse sections

Right limb, proximal (superior) view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 1. Illustrations by Voll M and

Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

23 Clinical Imaging Basics of the Lower Limb

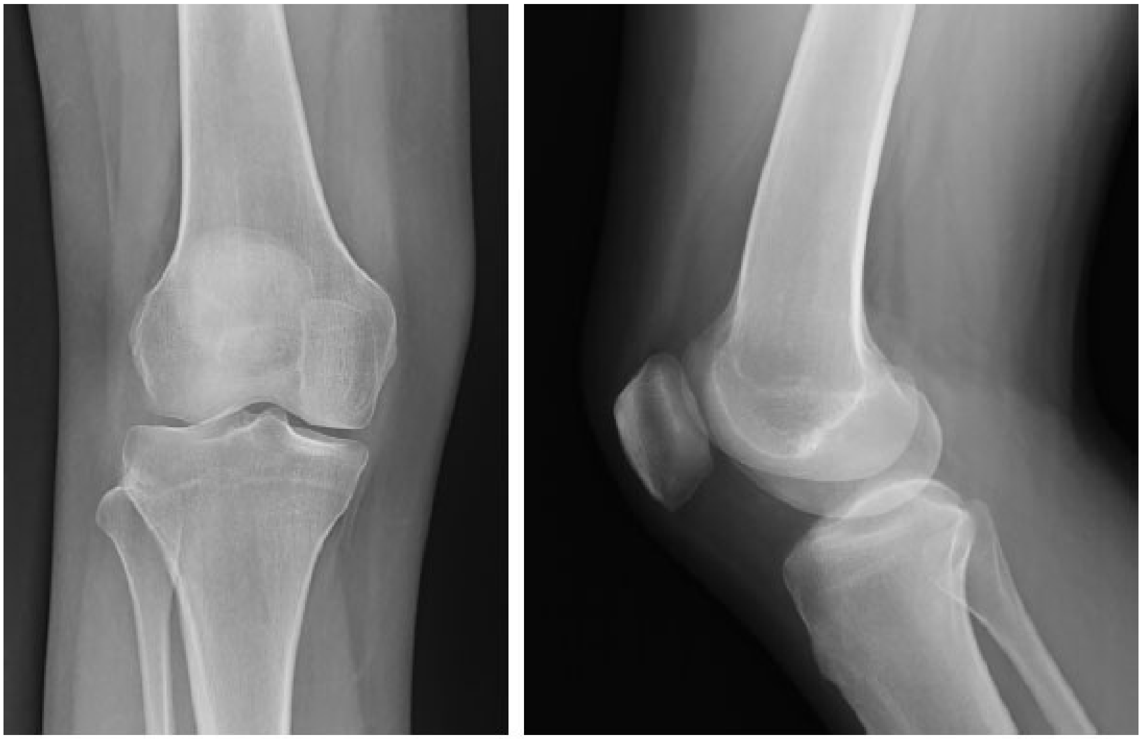
As in the upper extremity, radiographs are always the first imaging choice in evaluation of bones and joints in the setting of trauma or pain, and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) is the primary method for evaluating the soft tissue components of the joints. In infants, ultrasound is used to diagnose developmental hip dysplasia and to assess for abnormal joint fluid (**Table 23.1**).

The principles and practices used in evaluating images of bones, joints, and soft tissues in the lower limb are similar to those used in the upper limb, except lower limb radiographs are often obtained with the patient standing or in a weight-bearing position. This distinction is important especially in the evaluation of weight-bearing joints (hips, knees, and ankles) because the joint is evaluated under the stress of everyday use (**Figs. 23.1** and **23.2**). MRIs cannot be taken with the patient in a weight-bearing position; nonetheless, they provide excellent detail of the internal soft tissue structures of the joint (**Fig. 23.3**).

Table 23.1 Suitability of Imaging Modalities for the Lower Limb

Modality	Clinical Uses
Radiographs (X-rays)	First-line imaging evaluation tool for the extremities; used primarily to evaluate for fractures, bone lesions, and alignment of joints
CT (computed tomography)	Reserved as a troubleshooting tool to evaluate for subtle nondisplaced fractures
MRI (magnetic resonance imaging)	One of the most important imaging modalities for the evaluation of joints, specifically the non-osseous components of the joint, e.g., cartilage, ligaments, tendons, and muscles
Ultrasound	In children, due to their small size, it plays a larger role in diagnosis of hip disorders

(developmental dysplasia, toxic synovitis, or joint effusion) and in evaluation of cartilaginous growth plates. Ultrasound has a limited role in evaluation of superficial soft tissue abnormalities and for guidance of interventional procedures involving the joints.



A Anteroposterior view.

B Lateral view.

Fig. 23.1 Radiograph of the right knee

Knee radiographs are usually performed with the patient upright in order to assess the knee joint in a weight-bearing stance. The articular surfaces of the bones should be smooth and the medial and lateral joint compartments should be equally spaced. There should be no bone fragments in the joint spaces. The cortical edge of each bone should be traced around the entire bone and should be smooth. Note how the patella overlaps the femur in the frontal projection (A) and is difficult to see clearly. The lateral view (B) affords a non-overlapping view of the patella. (Courtesy of Joseph Makris, MD, Baystate Medical Center.)

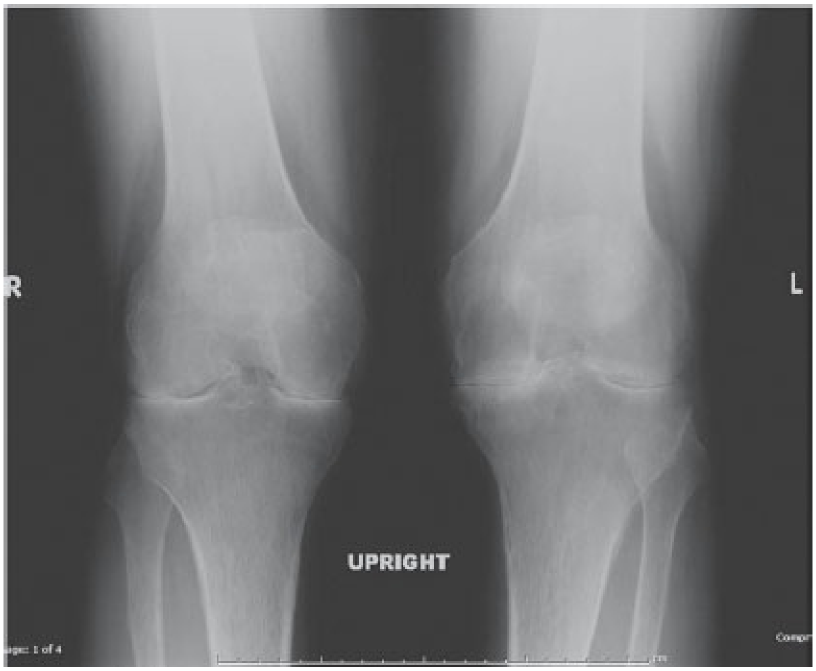
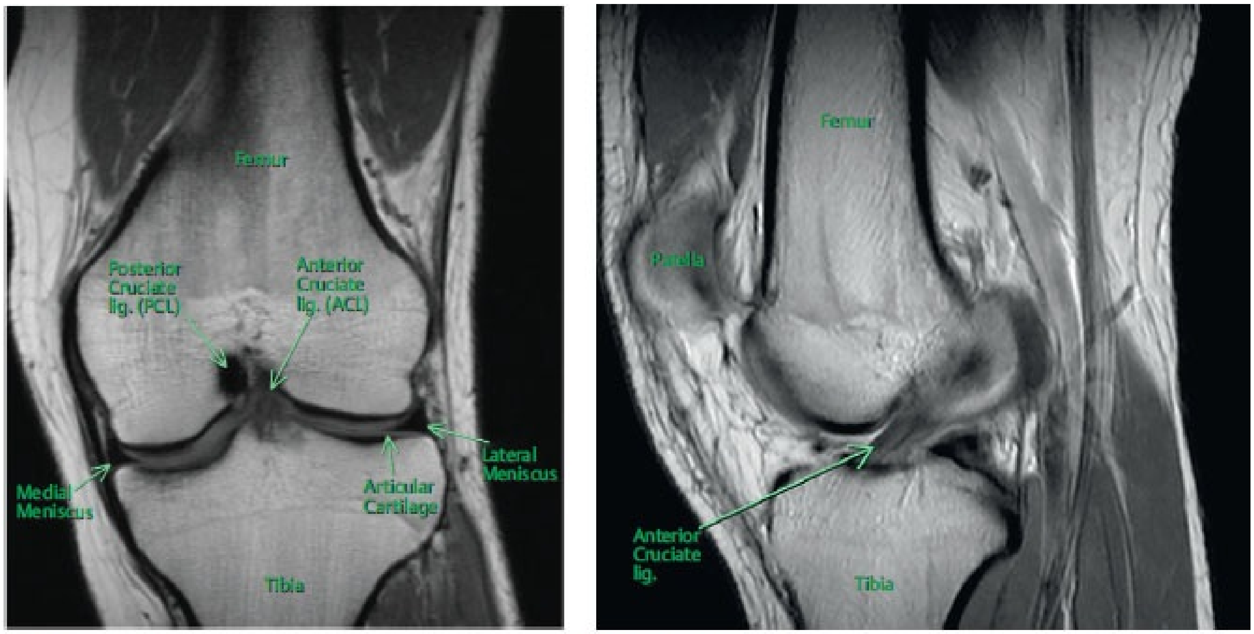


Fig. 23.2 Standing frontal radiographs of both knees in a 60-year-old man with chronic knee pain

Note the "bone on bone" appearance of the joint due to marked joint space narrowing. Compare this with the normal joint space appearance in **Fig. 23.1**. Although we don't see articular cartilage itself on an x-ray, we do see the space it creates between the bones, or, in this case, we see the results of chronic degenerative cartilage loss. (From Garcia G, ed. RadCases: Musculoskeletal Radiology 2nd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2017.)


Femur
Posterior Cruciate lig. (PCL)
Anterior Cruciate lig. (ACL)
Lateral Meniscus
Medial Meniscus
Articular Cartilage
Tibia
Femur
Patella
Anterior Cruciate lig.
Tibia

A Coronal section.

B Midsagittal section.

Fig. 23.3 MRI of the knee

In this sequence fat is bright (*white*), cortical bone is *black*, most normal ligaments and tendons are dark gray or black, and muscle is *dark gray*. The normal anterior cruciate ligament (ACL) has a unique striated appearance due to its linear bands of fibers. Note that the bone marrow is white because of its high fat content. (Courtesy of Joseph Makris, MD, Baystate Medical Center)

Unit VII Review Questions: Lower Limb

1. A young girl has recovered well from the severe injuries she sustained in a motor vehicle accident 9 months ago, but because of some lingering nerve problems, she still has difficulty walking. She is balanced during the midstance phase but has difficulty bringing her limb forward to initiate movement. What nerve seems to be affected?

- **A.** Superior gluteal
- **B.** Inferior gluteal
- **C.** Femoral
- **D.** Obturator
- **E.** Tibial

2. A young woman searching for driftwood walked several miles on the soft sandy beach of a Caribbean island. While walking on this uneven surface, the balance between inversion and eversion at her subtalar joint was maintained by the opposing actions of the fibularis longus and the

- **A.** fibularis brevis
- **B.** fibularis tertius
- **C.** soleus
- **D.** tibialis anterior
- **E.** extensor digitorum longus

3. Structures at the knee that are not attached to the joint capsule include the

- **A.** medial meniscus
- **B.** medial collateral ligament
- **C.** lateral collateral ligament
- **D.** patellar retinacula
- **E.** All of the above (A–D) are attached to the joint cavity.

4. A woman in her early 40s discovered a small lump at the top of her thigh that was later diagnosed as a femoral hernia. Where would this hernia be located?

- **A.** Retroinguinal space
- **B.** Femoral canal
- **C.** Femoral sheath
- **D.** Femoral ring
- **E.** All of the above

5. An elderly woman shopping with her daughter fell in the mall parking lot. After examining the woman, the paramedics who responded to the call noted that the limb was pulled upward, and the hip was rotated laterally. They confided to the daughter that it appeared that the woman had fractured her femoral neck. Which of the following muscles would be responsible for the lateral (external) rotation?

- **A.** Gluteus medius
- **B.** Tensor of the fascia lata
- **C.** Pectineus
- **D.** Vastus lateralis
- **E.** All of the above

6. The strongest and most supportive ligament of the hip joint is the

- **A.** transverse ligament of the acetabulum
- **B.** ligament of the head of the femur
- **C.** pubofemoral ligament
- **D.** ischiofemoral ligament
- **E.** iliofemoral ligament

7. A young man running on the beach severely lacerated his foot when he accidentally stepped into a pit with broken glass left by late-night partygoers. Surgery was required to remove the glass fragments and treat the lacerations. You opt to use regional anesthesia, injecting anesthetic near each of the nerves that cross the ankle. Where would you anesthetize the sural nerve?

- **A.** Anterior to the medial malleolus
- **B.** Posterior to the medial malleolus
- **C.** Posterior to the lateral malleolus
- **D.** Anterior to the lateral malleolus
- **E.** First web space

8. Sensation along the lateral side of the first toe is transmitted by branches of the

- **A.** saphenous nerve
- **B.** medial plantar nerve
- **C.** deep fibular nerve
- **D.** superficial fibular nerve
- **E.** lateral plantar nerve

9. Superficial veins of the lower limb

- **A.** lie deep to the fascia lata
- **B.** include the great saphenous vein that terminates at the popliteal vein
- **C.** include the small saphenous vein whose course runs anterior to the lateral malleolus
- **D.** drain to deep veins via perforating veins
- **E.** originate from the plantar venous arch on the sole

10. The dorsal pedal artery is a continuation of the

- **A.** posterior tibial artery
- **B.** fibular artery
- **C.** anterior tibial artery
- **D.** popliteal artery
- **E.** inferior medial genicular artery

11. The deep plantar arch of the foot is an anastomosis between the dorsal pedal artery and which structure on the sole of the foot?

- **A.** Fibular artery
- **B.** Lateral plantar artery
- **C.** Plantar metatarsal arteries
- **D.** Plantar digital arteries
- **E.** Arcuate artery

12. An obese woman suffers from peripheral edema (swelling of the legs) and large varicose veins in her leg. Which of the following might be coexisting symptoms related to her condition?

- **A.** Incompetent valves in the great saphenous vein
- **B.** Reversed flow in the perforating veins
- **C.** Deep vein thrombosis
- **D.** Thrombophlebitis
- **E.** All of the above

13. “Footdrop” occurs when the plantar flexor muscles are unopposed. This condition may be caused by damage to which of the following nerves?

- **A.** Superficial fibular
- **B.** Deep fibular
- **C.** Sural
- **D.** Tibial
- **E.** Medial plantar

14. As she was riding her bike home from her job as a camp counselor, Kristin was sideswiped by a large pickup trunk. She suffered multiple bruises, a fractured tibia, and a fractured pelvis. Several months later she still had an area of numbness on the medial side of her thigh and walked with a lateral swing to her gait. Which muscle was affected by her injury?

- **A.** Gluteus medius
- **B.** Gluteus maximus
- **C.** Semimembranosus
- **D.** Adductor longus
- **E.** Rectus femoris

15. In the anatomy laboratory you have just dissected the gluteal region of your cadaver. You are surprised to discover that in your cadaver the lateral component of the sciatic nerve passes through the piriformis muscle instead of inferior to it. Being a dedicated student, you investigate this further and find this anomaly can cause a piriformis syndrome in which the nerve is compressed by contraction of the muscle. What symptom might this particular patient have experienced?

- **A.** Paresthesia (tingling) on the sole of the foot
- **B.** Loss of knee flexion
- **C.** Loss of knee extension
- **D.** Footdrop
- **E.** Sagging of the unsupported hip when walking

16. The adductor magnus muscle

- **A.** extends and adducts the hip joint
- **B.** is innervated by the femoral and obturator nerves
- **C.** inserts on the linea aspera of the femur and adductor tubercle of the tibia
- **D.** forms the anterior wall of the adductor canal
- **E.** originates from the superior pubic ramus

17. Which muscle(s) of the lower limb is/are capable of producing flexion at one joint and extension at a second joint?

- **A.** Semimembranosus
- **B.** Rectus femoris
- **C.** Lumbricals of foot
- **D.** Long head of biceps femoris
- **E.** All of the above

18. During a street fight between two local gangs, one boy received a violent blow to the anterior knee that knocked him to the ground. In the emergency department, the physical exam of his knee revealed a positive posterior drawer sign. What structure appears to be injured?

- **A.** Anterior cruciate ligament
- **B.** Posterior cruciate ligament
- **C.** Patellar ligament
- **D.** Medial collateral ligament
- **E.** Lateral collateral ligament

19. A single woman looking for adventure signed up for a walking tour of the Scottish highlands. She was unprepared for the effort that it required but kept up with the more experienced walkers. After a few days she began to experience extreme tenderness in her anterior leg deep to the ridge of the tibia. The tour guide had seen this in previous clients and suggested that her pain was due to shin splints. Her pain originated from overuse of the

- **A.** extensor digitorum longus
- **B.** extensor digitorum brevis
- **C.** extensor hallucis longus
- **D.** fibularis tertius
- **E.** tibialis anterior

20. Which fibrous structure on the sole of the foot originates at the calcaneus and continues distally as digital fibrous sheaths?

- **A.** Plantar aponeurosis
- **B.** Plantar calcaneonavicular ligament
- **C.** Long plantar ligament
- **D.** Short plantar ligament
- **E.** Deltoid ligament

21. A man was on a hunting trip with friends when he was accidentally shot in the midthigh. He bled profusely from his femoral artery until his friends applied constant pressure over the wound and drove him to a local emergency clinic. Although examination of the wound site in surgery revealed a badly torn femoral artery, the man continued to have distal pulses in his leg. What vessel arises proximal to the injury site and can provide collateral blood supply to the distal limb?

A. Medial circumflex femoral artery
B. Lateral circumflex femoral artery
C. Obturator artery
D. Descending genicular artery
E. Popliteal artery

22. An elderly woman slipped on a patch of ice in her driveway when she went to pick up the morning newspaper. Her neighbor witnessed the accident and called an ambulance. In the emergency department, X-rays revealed that she had fractured the neck of her femur. Her physician explained to her that avascular necrosis was a common complication of this injury in elderly women and convinced her to agree to a hip replacement. What vessel contributes most significantly to the blood supply of the hip joint?

A. Obturator
B. Superior gluteal
C. Inferior gluteal
D. Medial circumflex femoral
E. Lateral circumflex femoral

23. Which of the following spaces contain the femoral nerve?

A. Femoral sheath
B. Adductor hiatus
C. Popliteal fossa
D. Femoral canal
E. Retroinguinal space

24. The inferior gluteal nerve innervates the

A. gluteus maximus
B. gluteus medius
C. gluteus minimus
D. piriformis
E. All of the above

25. Which of the following muscles insert on the iliotibial tract?

- **A.** Gluteus maximus
- **B.** Gluteus medius
- **C.** Gluteus minimus
- **D.** Quadratus femoris
- **E.** None of the above

26. Your 13-year-old son who studies martial arts is particularly flexible and is praised for his high kicks. After several weeks of training in preparation for an upcoming tournament, he complains of tenderness in his lower buttocks during practice and even when he sits on the hard stadium benches. As his pediatrician, how do you explain his problem?

- **A.** Inflammation of the ischial tuberosity
- **B.** Rupture of the obturator internus tendon from its insertion
- **C.** Compression of the sciatic nerve in the gluteal region
- **D.** Irritation of the tibial nerve in the thigh
- **E.** Irritation of the inferior gluteal nerve

27. Which of the following muscles are involved in knee flexion?

- **A.** Flexor hallucis longus
- **B.** Soleus
- **C.** Tibialis posterior
- **D.** Biceps femoris
- **E.** Rectus femoris

28. The lateral border of the femoral triangle is formed by the

- **A.** tensor fasciae latae
- **B.** femoral nerve
- **C.** sartorius
- **D.** adductor longus
- **E.** rectus femoris

29. An 18-year-old marathon runner finished fourth in the Detroit marathon but limped away from the finish line. He had been suffering from excruciating pain on the sole of his foot and immediately sought advice from the medical volunteers. Following a thorough exam, the EMTs explained that the muscle tendons running through his tarsal tunnel had swollen and were compressing the nerve that accompanies them. What bones form the wall of this tunnel?

A. Navicular and talus
B. Cuboid and calcaneus
C. Talus and calcaneus
D. Medial malleolus of the tibia and calcaneus
E. Talus and base of the 1st metatarsal

30. An experienced 24-year-old backpacker has spent the last 4 months hiking the entire Appalachian trail. Although he has sturdy hiking boots, he often changes to the lightweight sneakers he brought as a backup. For the last few miles of the trek, he has been experiencing shooting pain along the side of his foot at the apex of his medial arch. What structure is probably the cause of the pain?

A. Plantar calcaneonavicular (spring) ligament
B. Deltoid ligament
C. Posterior talofibular ligament
D. Superior extensor retinaculum
E. Tendon of fibularis longus

31. After retirement your uncle quickly grew bored with home activities and began working at a local hardware store. He was a social person and enjoyed remaining active in the community but the long hours of standing on his feet was difficult. At his recent physical exam, he complained of foot pain and his physician explained that he was suffering from pes planus, or flatfoot. Which of the following are characteristics of this condition?

A. Increased laxity of the active stabilizers of the medial longitudinal arch
B. Increased laxity of the passive stabilizers of the medial longitudinal

arch

- **C.** Eversion of the forefoot puts additional stress on the plantar calcaneonavicular ligament
- **D.** Inferomedial displacement of the talus
- **E.** All of the above

32. Crests, prominences, and depressions on bones are important for the attachment sites they provide for muscles or the passageways used by nerves and vessels. Which of the following are correctly paired with the bone to which they belong?

- **A.** Medial malleolus: tibia
- **B.** Linea aspera: fibula
- **C.** Intercondylar eminence: femur
- **D.** Sustentaculum tali: talus
- **E.** Adductor tubercle: tibia

33. A 19-year-old soccer player felt a sudden pain in his knee when, with his right foot planted, he pivoted to the left to avoid an opposing player. Later at the emergency clinic, he learned that he would be out for the remainder of the season because he had ruptured his anterior cruciate ligament and one of the menisci. The orthopedist informed him that this was a fairly common type of knee injury. Which of the menisci is most likely injured and why?

- **A.** The lateral meniscus because it’s tightly adherent to the fibrous capsule and lateral collateral ligament
- **B.** The lateral meniscus because it’s more mobile during flexion of the knee
- **C.** The medial meniscus because it’s relatively immobile and attached to the tibial collateral ligament
- **D.** The medial meniscus because it’s more mobile during flexion and extension of the knee

34. Following an explosion at the local fertilizer factory, you volunteered to triage patients at the local hospital. A young female victim was brought in with minor burns on her lower torso and a broken leg that appeared to be the cause of her intense pain. After a quick exam of the limb that revealed paresthesia and absence of a dorsal pedal pulse, you recognize that she was suffering from a compartment syndrome of her deep posterior compartment and called in the trauma surgeon. Without swift intervention, what would likely be the functional outcome of this case?

- **A.** Weakening of the medial arch of the foot
- **B.** Loss of dorsiflexion during the swing phase of gait
- **C.** Weakened eversion of the foot
- **D.** Loss of sensation on the dorsum of the foot
- **E.** All of the above

35. Malia has been experiencing constant nagging pain in her left knee ever since she landed the high jump in her track meet a week ago. An initial x-ray series did not reveal any obvious fractures or dislocations, but since the pain persists, her physician is concerned about the possibility of a meniscal tear. What further imaging studies would be useful?

- **A.** CT
- **B.** MRI
- **C.** Ultrasound
- **D.** Additional radiographic (x-ray) views

Answers and Explanations

1. **C.** Forward movement at the beginning of the swing phase depends on the action of her hip flexors, particularly the rectus femoris, which is innervated by the femoral nerve (Sections 22.2, 22.3, and 22.8).

A. The superior gluteal nerve innervates the abductors of the hip. Damage to this nerve would cause a sagging of the hip on the contralateral side just before the midstance.

B. The inferior gluteal nerve innervates the gluteus maximus. Injury to this nerve would affect the deceleration of the swing phase.

D. Injury to the obturator nerve, which innervates the adductors of the hip, would cause an outward swing of the limb but would not inhibit acceleration of the thigh.

E. The tibial nerve innervates the hamstring muscles of the posterior thigh, which are responsible for the deceleration at the end of the swing phase.

2. **D.** The tibialis anterior and tibialis posterior are the strong inverters of the foot that counter the action of the fibularis longus and fibularis brevis (Section 22.7).

A. The fibularis brevis, in the lateral crural compartment, inserts on the base of the 5th metatarsal, which allows it to evert the foot.

B. The fibularis tertius, a muscle of the anterior crural compartment, inserts on the base of the 5th metatarsal and everts the foot.

C. The soleus, in the posterior crural compartment, plantar flexes the foot.

E. The extensor digitorum, in the anterior crural compartment, everts the foot.

3. **C.** The lateral (fibular) collateral ligament is an extracapsular ligament that extends from the lateral epicondyle of the femur to the head of the fibula and remains separate from the joint capsule of the knee (Section 22.4).

A. The medial and lateral menisci attach along their outer rims to the joint capsule.

B. The medial (tibial) collateral ligament is a capsular ligament that extends from the medial epicondyle of the femur to the medial condyle and superior part of the medial tibia. It attaches to the joint capsule and to the medial meniscus.

D. The patellar retinacula are fibrous expansions of the tendons of the quadriceps femoris muscle. They form the joint capsule on either side of the patella.

E. Only the lateral (fibular) collateral ligament (C) is correct.

4. **E.** A vascular compartment of the retroinguinal space contains the femoral sheath and the femoral canal. The femoral ring defines the upper edge of the femoral canal. A femoral hernia protrudes into the femoral canal (Section 22.3).

A. The retroinguinal space contains the femoral canal, the site of the femoral hernia. B through D are also correct (E).

B. The femoral canal is a space within the femoral sheath that normally contains loose connective tissue, fat, and often a deep inguinal lymph node. A, C, and D are also correct (E).

C. The femoral sheath contains the femoral vessels and the femoral canal. A, B, and D are also correct (E).

D. The femoral ring defines the superior opening of the femoral canal. A, B, and C are also correct (E).

5. **C.** The pectineus in the medial thigh compartment adducts and laterally rotates the hip (Section 22.3).

A. The gluteus medius is an abductor of the hip.

B. The tensor fascia lata abducts, flexes, and internally rotates the hip.

D. The vastus lateralis extends the knee and has no influence over the hip joint.

E. A, B, and D are incorrect.

6. **E.** The iliofemoral ligament attaches proximally to the anterior inferior iliac spine and rim of the acetabulum and distally to the intertrochanteric line of the femur. It supports the hip joint during standing (Section 22.3).

A. The transverse ligament completes the rim of the C-shaped acetabulum inferiorly.

B. The ligament of the head of the femur attaches to the acetabulum within the joint but provides little support. A small artery runs within the ligament to the femoral head.

C. The pubofemoral ligament runs laterally from the inferior aspect of the acetabular rim to merge with the iliofemoral ligament. It assists the iliofemoral ligament and limits abduction of the joint.

D. The ischiofemoral ligament is the weakest of the three ligaments of the capsule. It arises from the ischial part of the acetabular rim and spirals anteriorly to insert on the femoral neck.

7. **C.** The sural nerve innervates the lateral side of the foot and runs posterior to the lateral malleolus (Section 21.4).

A. The saphenous nerve runs anterior to the medial malleolus.

B. The tibial nerve courses through the tarsal tunnel posterior to the medial malleolus.

D. The superficial fibular nerve runs onto the dorsum of the foot anterior to the lateral malleolus.

E. The deep fibular nerve accompanies the dorsal pedal artery onto the dorsum of the foot. It innervates the skin of the first web space.

8. **C.** The deep fibular nerve, a branch of the common fibular nerve, supplies cutaneous innervation to the first web space, including the skin adjacent to the first and second digits. It also supplies motor innervation to the muscles of the anterior compartment of the leg (Section 21.4).

A. The saphenous nerve transmits sensation from the medial side of the foot.

B. The medial plantar branch of the tibial nerve supplies cutaneous innervation to a large area of skin on the medial side of the foot and the medial three and a half digits.

D. The superficial fibular nerve supplies cutaneous innervation to the dorsum of the foot.

E. The lateral plantar branch supplies cutaneous innervation to the lateral foot and the lateral one and a half digits.

9. **D.** Similar to superficial veins of the upper limb, superficial veins of the lower limb drain to deep veins via perforating veins (Section 15.4).

A. Superficial veins lie in the subcutaneous tissue, superficial to the deep fascia (fascia lata).

B. The great saphenous vein pierces the fascia lata at the saphenous hiatus in the proximal thigh and terminates in the femoral vein.

C. The small saphenous vein runs posterior to the lateral malleolus and superiorly to the popliteal fossa.

E. The large superficial veins, the great and small saphenous veins, originate from the venous arch on the dorsum of the foot.

10. **C.** The anterior tibial artery descends within the anterior crural compartment and emerges onto the dorsum of the foot as the dorsal pedal artery (Section 21.4).

A. The posterior tibial artery descends within posterior crural compartment and branches into the medial plantar and lateral plantar arteries that supply the sole of the foot.

B. The fibular artery arises in the lateral part of the posterior leg and anastomoses with the anterior tibial artery to supply the ankle.

D. The popliteal artery lies posterior to the knee. It gives rise to the genicular and tibial arteries.

E. The inferior medial genicular artery is a branch of the popliteal artery and supplies blood to the patella and insertions of the sartorius, gracilis, and semitendinosus.

11. **B.** The lateral plantar artery, similar to the ulnar artery in the hand, is the largest branch of the posterior tibial artery. It supplies the lateral side of the foot and forms the deep plantar arch with the dorsal pedal artery (Section 21.4).

A. The fibular artery supplies muscles in the posterior and lateral compartments of the leg and forms an anastomosis with the anterior tibial artery at the ankle, but it has no branches on the sole of the foot.

C. The plantar metatarsal arteries arise from the deep plantar arch.

D. Proper digital arteries arise from the plantar metatarsal arteries, which are branches of the deep plantar arch.

E. The arcuate artery, a branch of the dorsal pedal artery, forms a loop on the dorsum of the foot and supplies the 2nd, 3rd, and 4th dorsal metatarsal arteries.

12. E. Varicose, or dilated, veins can occur in conjunction with deep vein thromboses. When the deep veins are obstructed, the normal superficial-to-deep flow in the perforating veins reverses. With the increased volume, the superficial veins dilate, and their valves become incompetent. Thrombophlebitis, or venous inflammation, often occurs with thrombus formation (Section 21.4).

A. When venous valves are incompetent, upward flow is impeded, and blood pools in the veins. The resulting dilated veins are known as varicose veins. B through D are also correct (E).

B. Superficial veins normally drain into the deep venous system through the perforating veins. If the deep veins are obstructed by thrombus, blood flows outward through the perforating veins into the superficial system, dilating the superficial veins. A, C, and D are also correct (E).

C. When thrombus obstructs the deep veins of the leg, blood flows outward into the superficial veins, causing them to dilate. A, B, and D are also correct (E).

D. Inflammation of veins can occur with thrombus formation. A through C are also correct (E).

13. B. Footdrop is caused by an injury to the deep (or common) fibular nerve causing paralysis of the dorsiflexor muscles in the foot, leaving the plantar flexor muscles unopposed (Section 21.4).

A. Injury to the superficial fibular nerve results in an inability to evert the foot and therefore an overall loss of balance and loss of sensation on the dorsum of the foot.

C. Injury to the sural nerve causes loss of sensation over the skin on the lateral side of the foot.

D. Injury to the tibial nerve causes paralysis of all of the muscles of the posterior thigh (except the short head of the biceps femoris) and posterior leg.

E. Injury to the medial plantar nerve causes paralysis of the muscles on the medial side of the foot and loss of sensation over a large area of skin on the medial side of the foot and the medial three and a half digits.

14. **D.** A lateral swinging gait is caused by unopposed hip abduction, which occurs when the adductors are paralyzed. The obturator nerve innervates the adductor muscles of the thigh and can be injured by pelvic fractures. The area of numbness on the medial thigh also suggests an obturator nerve injury (Section 21.4).

A. The gluteus medius is an abductor of the hip. Injury to this muscle results in a gluteal, or waddling, gait.

B. The injury to the inferior gluteal nerve, which innervates the gluteus maximus, impairs extension of the hip but does not cause any sensory loss.

C. Injury to the semimembranosus or its nerve, the tibial nerve, impairs hip extension, knee flexion, and sensation on the sole of the foot.

E. Injury to the femoral nerve, which innervates the rectus femoris, weakens flexion of the hip and extension of the knee. There is a sensory loss from the anterior thigh and the medial side of the leg and foot.

15. **D.** The common fibular nerve is the lateral component of the sciatic nerve. Compression will affect the dorsiflexors of the anterior leg compartment (through its deep fibular branch), resulting in footdrop (Sections 21.4 and 22.2).

A. Paresthesia on the sole of the foot would be a consequence of compression of the tibial nerve.

B. The tibial nerve, the medial component of the sciatic nerve, innervates the hamstring muscles, which flex the knee. This action would remain intact.

C. The knee extensors on the anterior thigh extend the knee and would not be affected by this anomaly.

E. Sagging of the unsupported hip is characteristic of an injury to the superior gluteal nerve.

16. **A.** The adductor magnus is the largest adductor of the hip but also works with the gluteus maximus to provide powerful extension of the hip joint (Section 22.3).

B. The adductor magnus has a dual innervation, the obturator and tibial nerves.

C. The adductor magnus inserts entirely on the femur; the adductor tubercle is a feature on the distal femur.

D. The adductor canal passes between the anterior and medial thigh compartments. The vastus medialis forms the anterior wall, and the adductor muscles form the posterior wall.

E. The adductor magnus originates on the ischiopubic ramus, which includes the inferior pubic ramus and ischial ramus.

17. **E.** Semimembranosus (A) produces flexion at the knee joint and extension at the hip joint. Rectus femoris (B) produces flexion at the hip joint and extension at the knee joint. The lumbricals of the foot (C) produce flexion of the metatarsophalangeal (MTP) joints of the 2nd to 5th toes and extension of the interphalangeal (IP) joints of the 2nd to 5th toes. The long head of the biceps femoris (D) produces extension of the hip joint and flexion of the knee joint (Sections 22.3 and 22.7).

A. Semimembranosus produces flexion at the knee joint and extension at the hip joint. B through D are also correct (E).

B. Rectus femoris produces flexion at the hip joint and extension at the knee joint. A, C, and D are also correct (E).

C. The lumbricals of the foot produce flexion of the MTP joints of the 2nd to 5th toes and extension of the IP joints of the 2nd to 5th toes. A, B, and D are also correct (E).

D. The long head of the biceps femoris produces extension of the hip joint and flexion of the knee joint. A through C are also correct (E).

18. **B.** The posterior displacement of the tibia is a positive posterior drawer sign that indicates an injury to the posterior cruciate ligament (Section 22.4).

A. Injury to the anterior cruciate ligament is recognized by the positive anterior drawer sign in which the tibia can be pulled anteriorly from under the femur.

C. A positive drawer sign suggests anterior or posterior displacement of the tibia relative to the femur. Rupture of the patellar ligament destabilizes the knee joint but does not disrupt the alignment of the tibia and femur.

D. Although the medial collateral ligament may be damaged by a forceful blow, it is not diagnosed by a posterior drawer sign.

E. The lateral collateral ligament is unlikely to be damaged by a blow to the anterior knee and is not diagnosed by either anterior or posterior drawer signs.

19. **E.** Shin splints are a result of inflammation of the tibialis anterior and small tears of the periosteum where the muscle attaches to the bone (Section

22.5).

A. The extensor digitorum originates from the head of the fibula, lateral condyle of the tibia, and interosseous membrane.

B. The extensor digitorum brevis is an intrinsic muscle of the foot. It arises from the calcaneus.

C. The extensor hallucis longus arises from the middle of the fibular shaft and the interosseous membrane.

D. Fibularis tertius is a lateral muscle within the anterior compartment that arises from the distal fibula.

20. **A.** The plantar aponeurosis is a thick fibrous band on the sole that is continuous with the deep fascia of the leg (Section 22.7).

B. The plantar calcaneonavicular ligament, or spring ligament, supports the head of the talus and maintains the medial side of the longitudinal arch of the foot.

C. The long plantar ligament supports the lateral side of the longitudinal arch of the foot and extends from the calcaneus to the bases of the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd metatarsals.

D. The short plantar ligament, or plantar calcaneocuboid ligament, supports the lateral arch of the foot.

E. The deltoid ligament is a four-part ligament that supports the medial side of the ankle joint.

21. **B.** The lateral circumflex femoral artery a rises from the deep artery of the thigh in the proximal thigh. It supplies structures around the hip as well as a descending branch that anastomoses with the genicular arteries at the knee. Reverse flow in these branches could supply the popliteal artery and its branches in the leg (Section 21.4).

A. The medial circumflex femoral artery arises from the deep artery of the thigh and supplies the hip joint. It does not anastomose with the popliteal artery or other branches of the knee and leg.

C. The obturator artery supplies the medial compartment of the thigh and does not anastomose with vessels of the leg.

D. The descending genicular artery is a branch of the femoral artery, but it arises distal to the site of injury and therefore cannot provide collateral circulation.

E. The popliteal artery anastomoses with the proximal femoral artery only through the lateral circumflex femoral artery.

22. **D.** Although the medial and lateral circumflex femoral arteries and inferior gluteal artery anastomose around the hip, branches that supply the hip joint arise primarily from the medial circumflex femoral artery (Section 21.4).

A. The obturator artery supplies the medial thigh muscles and a small artery to the head of the femur. It is not a significant blood supply to the joint.

B. The superior gluteal artery supplies muscles of the gluteal region but does not supply the hip joint.

C. The inferior gluteal artery contributes to an anastomosis around the hip and primarily supplies muscles of the gluteal region.

E. The lateral circumflex femoral artery anastomoses with the medial circumflex artery around the femoral neck, but it contributes less to the hip joint and more to the muscles of the lateral thigh.

23. **E.** The femoral nerve enters the anterior thigh through the muscular compartment of the retroinguinal space. It branches immediately to innervate the muscles of the anterior thigh (Section 21.4).

A. The femoral sheath encloses only the femoral artery and vein.

B. The femoral artery and vein pass through the adductor hiatus into the popliteal fossa.

C. The popliteal fossa contains the tibial and common fibular nerves.

D. The femoral canal lies medially within the femoral sheath and contains only loose connective tissue, fat, and lymph nodes.

24. **A.** The inferior gluteal nerve innervates only the gluteus maximus muscle (Section 21.4).

B. The superior gluteal nerve innervates the gluteus medius and minimus and tensor of the fascia lata.

C. The superior gluteal nerve innervates the gluteus medius and minimus and tensor of the fascia lata.

D. The piriformis is innervated by the S1 and S2 branches of the sacral plexus.

E. B, C, and D are incorrect

25. **A.** The upper fibers of the gluteus maximus insert onto the iliotibial tract (Section 22.2).

B. Gluteus medius inserts onto the lateral surface of the greater trochanter of the femur.

C. Gluteus minimus inserts onto the anterolateral surface of the greater trochanter of the femur.

D. Quadratus femoris inserts onto the intertrochanteric crest of the femur.

E. Not applicable.

26. **A.** The hamstring muscles originate at the ischial tuberosity and insert on the tibia and fibula. Repetitive stretching of these muscles over two joints (the flexed hip and extended knee) can irritate the site of origin (Section 22.3).

B. Pain from a tear at the insertion site of the obturator internus tendon would be focused over the greater trochanter of the femur.

C. The sciatic nerve emerges from behind the piriformis muscle and can be compressed at this location. However, pain would reflect the sensory areas of the tibial and common fibular nerves, which include the anterolateral and posterior leg and the dorsum and sole of the foot.

D. Irritation of the tibial nerve would manifest as pain in the sole of the foot.

E. The inferior gluteal nerve does not have a sensory component. Injury to the nerve would affect the gluteus maximus muscle and manifest as weakened extension and lateral rotation.

27. **D.** The biceps femoris is one of the hamstring muscles (biceps femoris, semitendinosus, semimembranosus), which are the primary flexors of the knee (Section 22.3).

A. The flexor hallucis longus flexes the 1st digit and plantar flexes the foot.

B. The soleus does not cross the knee joint and only plantar flexes the foot at the ankle.

C. The tibialis posterior plantar flexes and inverts the foot.

E. The rectus femoris extends the leg at the knee.

28. **C.** The borders of the femoral triangle are the sartorius, adductor longus, and inguinal ligament (Section 22.3).

A. The tensor fasciae latae is the lateral boundary of the anterior thigh. The femoral triangle lies between the anterior and medial thigh compartments.

B. The femoral nerve is one of the contents (lateral) of the femoral triangle but not a boundary.

D. The adductor longus is the medial border of the triangle.

E. The rectus femoris is lateral to the femoral triangle and lies inside the anterior compartment of the thigh.

29. **D.** The tarsal tunnel is formed by the flexor retinaculum and its attachments to the calcaneus and medial malleolus of the tibia (Section 22.5).

A. The navicular and talus lie distal to the tarsal tunnel, and neither provide attachment for the flexor retinaculum, which forms the roof of the tunnel.

B. The cuboid lies on the lateral side of the foot; the tarsal tunnel lies on the medial side of the ankle.

C. The talus is not part of the tarsal tunnel.

E. Neither the talus nor the 1st metatarsal is part of the tarsal tunnel.

30. **A.** The plantar calcaneonavicular ligament supports the head of the talus, which forms the apex of the medial longitudinal arch (Section 22.7).

B. The deltoid ligament is the collateral ligament on the medial side of the ankle. It is not associated with the medial arch.

C. The posterior talofibular ligament is part of the lateral ligament of the ankle and is not associated with the medial arch.

D. The superior extensor retinaculum restrains the tendons on the dorsum of the foot (dorsiflexors).

E. The tendon of the fibularis longus supports the transverse arch on the lateral side of the sole of the foot.

31. **E.**

A. B. Pes planus is a condition that occurs most commonly in older adults who stand for long periods. It’s characterized by laxity in both active and passive stabilizers of the medial arch.

C. As the forefoot everts and abducts, additional pressure is put on the plantar calcaneonavicular ligament.

D. The lack of support for the head of the talus causes it to displace inferiorly and medially.

32. **A.** The medial malleolus of the distal tibia forms part of the talocrural joint (Section 21.2 and 22.6).

B. The linea aspera are paired ridges on the posterior surface of the femur that serve as attachments sites for thigh muscles.

C. The intercondylar eminence, part of the tibial plateau, separates the medial and lateral condyles.

D. The sustentaculum tali is a part of the calcaneus, which forms part of the medial arch of the foot.

E. The adductor tubercle is an attachment site for the adductor magnus on the distal femur.

33. **C.** The medial meniscus is relatively immobile during flexion and extension because of its attachment to the tibial collateral ligament. This makes it more vulnerable to injury and is frequently injured in conjunction with the anterior cruciate and tibial collateral ligaments (Section 22.4).

A. The lateral meniscus is attached to the joint capsule but not to the collateral ligament.

B. The lateral meniscus is more mobile during movements of the knee joint and therefore less vulnerable to injury.

D. The medial meniscus is relatively immobile during movements at the knee.

34. **A.** The tibial nerve, which passes through the deep posterior compartment, innervates many of the active stabilizers of the medial longitudinal arch including the posterior tibialis and intrinsic muscles of the foot (Section 22.5 and 22.7).

B. Dorsiflexion is a function of muscles of the anterior compartment, which would remain intact in this patient.

C. Eversion of the foot is a function primarily of muscles of the lateral compartment.

D. Sensation on the dorsum of the foot is mediated by the branches of the superficial fibular neve, which travel in the anterior and lateral compartments.

35. **B.** The soft tissue contrast of MRI makes it the most effective imaging modality for assessing non-osseous structures, such as ligaments, tendons and cartilaginous structures like menisci (Chapter 23).

A. CT would be most useful for evaluating subtle fractures but MRI is the modality of choice for assessing the integrity of cartilaginous structures.

C. Ultrasound is useful for evaluating superficial soft tissue abnormalities but is limited by the depth of structures and doesn’t provide the soft tissue contrast of MRIs.

D. Cartilaginous structures are not visible on x-rays.

Unit VIII Head and Neck

- **24 Overview of the Head and Neck**
  - 24.1 Bones of the Head: The Skull
    - 24.1 Bones of the Neurocranium and Viscerocranium
    - 24.2 Landmarks of the Skull
    - 24.1 Clinical Correlation: Fractures of the Face
    - 24.2 Developmental Correlation: Craniosynostosis
    - 24.3 Clinical Correlation: Skull Fractures at the Pterion
  - 24.2 Bones of the Neck
  - 24.3 Arteries of the Head and Neck
    - 24.3 Anterior, Medial, and Posterior Branches of the External Carotid Artery
    - 24.4 Terminal Branches of the External Carotid Artery
    - 24.4 Clinical Correlation: Subclavian Steal Syndrome
    - 24.5 Clinical Correlation: Anastomoses between External Carotid and Internal Carotid Arteries
  - 24.4 Veins of the Head and Neck

    - 24.6 Clinical Correlation: Venous Anastomoses as Portals of Infection
- 24.5 Lymphatic Drainage of the Head and Neck
    - 24.5 Superficial Cervical Lymph Nodes
    - 24.6 Deep Cervical Lymph Nodes
- 24.6 Nerves of the Head and Neck

25 The Neck

- 25.1 Regions of the Neck
    - 25.1 Regions of the Neck
- 25.2 Deep Fascia of the Neck
    - 25.2 Deep Cervical Fascia
- 25.3 Muscles of the Neck
    - 25.3 Superficial Muscles of the Neck
    - 25.4 Infrahyoid Muscles
    - 25.5 Deep Muscles of the Neck
    - 25.1 Clinical Correlation: Congenital Torticollis
- 25.4 Nerves of the Neck
    - 25.6 Branches of the Spinal Nerves in the Neck
- 25.5 Esophagus
- 25.6 Larynx and Trachea
    - 25.7 Actions of the Laryngeal Muscles

25.2 Clinical Correlation: Tracheostomy and Cricothyroidotomy

25.3 Clinical Correlation: Recurrent Laryngeal Nerve Paralysis with Thyroidectomy

25.7 Thyroid and Parathyroid Glands

25.4 Developmental Correlation: Thyroglossal Duct Cyst

25.8 Topography of the Neck

26 Meninges, Brain, and Cranial Nerves

26.1 The Meninges

26.1 Principal Dural Sinuses

26.1 Clinical Correlation: Tentorial Herniation

26.2 Clinical Correlation: Cavernous Sinus Thrombophlebitis

26.3 Clinical Correlation: Extracerebral Hemorrhage

26.2 The Brain

26.2 Distribution of the Cerebral Arteries

26.4 Clinical Correlation: Hydrocephalus

26.5 Clinical Correlation: Stroke

26.3 Cranial Nerves

26.3 Classification of Cranial Nerve Fibers

26.4 Cranial Nerves: Function Overview

26.5 Glossopharyngeal Nerve Branches

26.6 Vagus Nerve Branches in the Neck

26.6 Clinical Correlation: Trigeminal Neuralgia

26.7 Clinical Correlation: Bell’s Palsy

26.8 Clinical Correlation: Branching Pattern of the Facial Nerve: Diagnostic Significance in Temporal Bone Fractures

26.9 Anatomic Notes: Petrosal Nerves of the Head

26.10 Clinical Correlation: Injury to the Hypoglossal Nerve

26.4 Autonomic Nerves of the Head

26.7 Sympathetic Fibers in the Head

26.8 Parasympathetic Ganglia in the Head

27 Anterior, Lateral, and Deep Regions of the Head

27.1 The Scalp and Face

27.1 Muscles of Facial Expression: Forehead, Nose, and Ear

27.2 Muscles of Facial Expression: Mouth and Neck

27.1 Clinical Correlation: Scalp Infections

27.2 The Temporomandibular Joint and Muscles of Mastication

27.3 Muscles of Mastication

27.2 Clinical Correlation: Dislocation of the Temporomandibular Joint

27.3 Parotid Region

- 27.4 Temporal Fossa
- 27.5 Infratemporal Fossa
  - 27.4 Branches of the Maxillary Artery
  - 27.5 Nerves of the Infratemporal Fossa
- 27.6 Pterygopalatine Fossa
  - 27.6 Communications of the Pterygopalatine Fossa
  - 27.7 Nerves of the Pterygopalatine Fossa
- 27.7 Nasal Cavity
  - 27.8 Nasal Passages into which Sinuses Empty
  - 27.3 Clinical Correlation: Infection of the Maxillary Sinuses
  - 27.4 Clinical Correlation: Epistaxis
- 27.8 Oral Region
  - 27.9 Suprahyoid Muscles
  - 27.10 Muscles of the Soft Palate
  - 27.11 Muscles of the Tongue
  - 27.12 Lymphatic Drainage of the Tongue
  - 27.13 Innervation of the Tongue
  - 27.5 Developmental Correlation: Cleft Lip
  - 27.6 Developmental Correlation: Cleft Palate
- 27.9 Pharynx and Tonsils

27.14 Muscles of the Pharynx: Pharyngeal Constrictors

27.15 Muscles of the Pharynx: Pharyngeal Elevators

27.7 Clinical Correlation: Piriform Recesses

27.8 Clinical Correlation: Tonsillectomy

27.9 Clinical Correlation: Gag Reflex

27.10 Clinical Correlation: Fasciae and Potential Tissue Spaces in the Head

28 The Eye and Ear

28.1 The Eye

28.1 Openings in the Orbit for Neurovascular Structures

28.2 Actions of the Extraocular Muscles

28.3 Nerves of the Orbit

28.1 Clinical Correlation: Presbyopia and Cataracts

28.2 Clinical Correlation: Glaucoma

28.3 Clinical Correlation: Corneal Reflex

28.4 Clinical Correlation: Pupillary Light Reflex

28.5 Clinical Correlation: Oculomotor Nerve Injury

28.6 Clinical Correlation: Horner’s Syndrome

28.2 The Ear

28.7 Clinical Correlation: Otitis Media

28.8 Clinical Correlation: Hyperacusis

28.9 Clinical Correlation: Meniere’s Disease

28.10 Clinical Correlation: Vertigo, Tinnitus, and Hearing Loss

29 Clinical Imaging Basics of the Head and Neck

29.1 Suitability of Imaging Modalities for the Head and Neck

Review Questions: Head and Neck

24 Overview of the Head and Neck

The head and neck region contains the brain, cranial meninges, cranial nerves, and sensory organs, as well as components of the respiratory, gastrointestinal, and endocrine systems. The skull encloses the brain, provides the bony framework for soft tissues of the head, and contains the nasal and oral cavities and bony orbits. The head and neck communicate with the thorax through the superior thoracic aperture and with the upper limb through the cervicoaxillary canal.

24.1 Bones of the Head: The Skull

The skull is made up of two parts: the large **neurocranium** and the smaller **viscerocranium** (**Fig. 24.1** and **Table 24.1**).

— The neurocranium, which makes up the largest part of the skull, houses and protects the brain.

— The viscerocranium includes the lower jaw and the thinwalled bones of the facial skeleton.

The Neurocranium

The neurocranium is formed by eight bones: the frontal, occipital, sphenoid, and ethmoid bones, and paired parietal and temporal bones.

— The **frontal bone** (**Figs. 24.2** and **24.3**) forms the forehead, the roof, and the superior rim of the orbit (eye socket), and the floor of the anterior cranial fossa.

— The paired **parietal bones** (see **Figs. 24.2**, **24.5**, **24.6**) are flat bones that form the superolateral parts of the calvaria. Their internal surface has grooves for the middle meningeal arteries and the superior sagittal sinus.

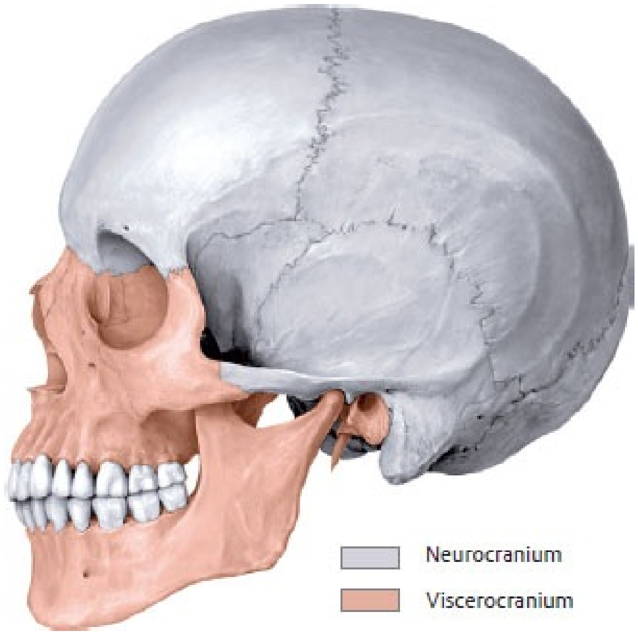


Fig. 24.1 Bones of the neurocranium and viscerocranium
Left lateral view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Table 24.1 Bones of the Neurocranium and Viscerocranium

Neurocranium	Viscerocranium
• Frontal bone • Sphenoid bone (excluding the pterygoid processes) • Temporal bone (squamous part, petrous part) • Parietal bone • Occipital bone • Ethmoid bone (cribriform plate) • Auditory ossicles	• Nasal bone • Lacrimal bone • Ethmoid bone (excluding the cribriform plate) • Sphenoid bone (pterygoid processes) • Maxilla • Zygomatic bone • Temporal bone (tympanic part, styloid process) • Mandible • Vomer • Inferior nasal concha • Palatine bone • Hyoid bone

Most of the ethmoid bone is in the viscerocranium; most of the sphenoid bone is in the neurocranium. The temporal bone is divided between the two (see **Fig. 24.1**).

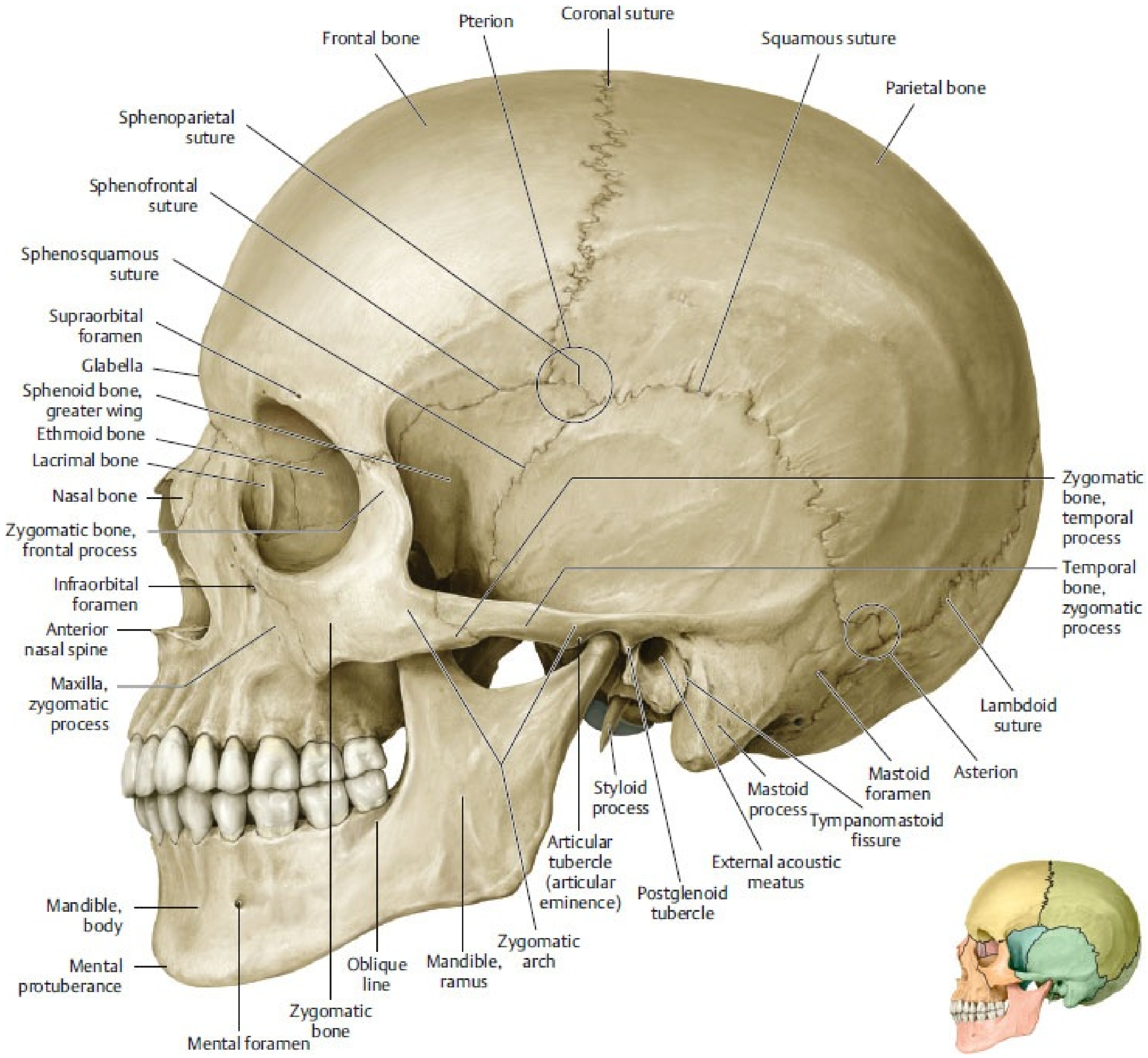

Frontal bone
Pterion
Coronal suture
Squamous suture
Parietal bone
Sphenoparietal suture
Sphenofrontal suture
Sphenosquamous suture
Supraorbital foramen
Glabella
Sphenoid bone, greater wing
Ethmoid bone
Lacrimal bone
Nasal bone
Zygomatic bone, frontal process
Infraorbital foramen
Anterior nasal spine
Maxilla, zygomatic process
Mandible, body
Mental protuberance
Mental foramen
Zygomatic bone
Oblique line
Mandible, ramus
Zygomatic arch
Articular tubercle (articular eminence)
Styloid process
Postglenoid tubercle
External acoustic meatus
Mastoid process
Tympanomastoid fissure
Mastoid foramen
Asterion
Lambdoid suture
Zygomatic bone, temporal process
Temporal bone, zygomatic process

Fig. 24.2 Lateral skull

Left lateral view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

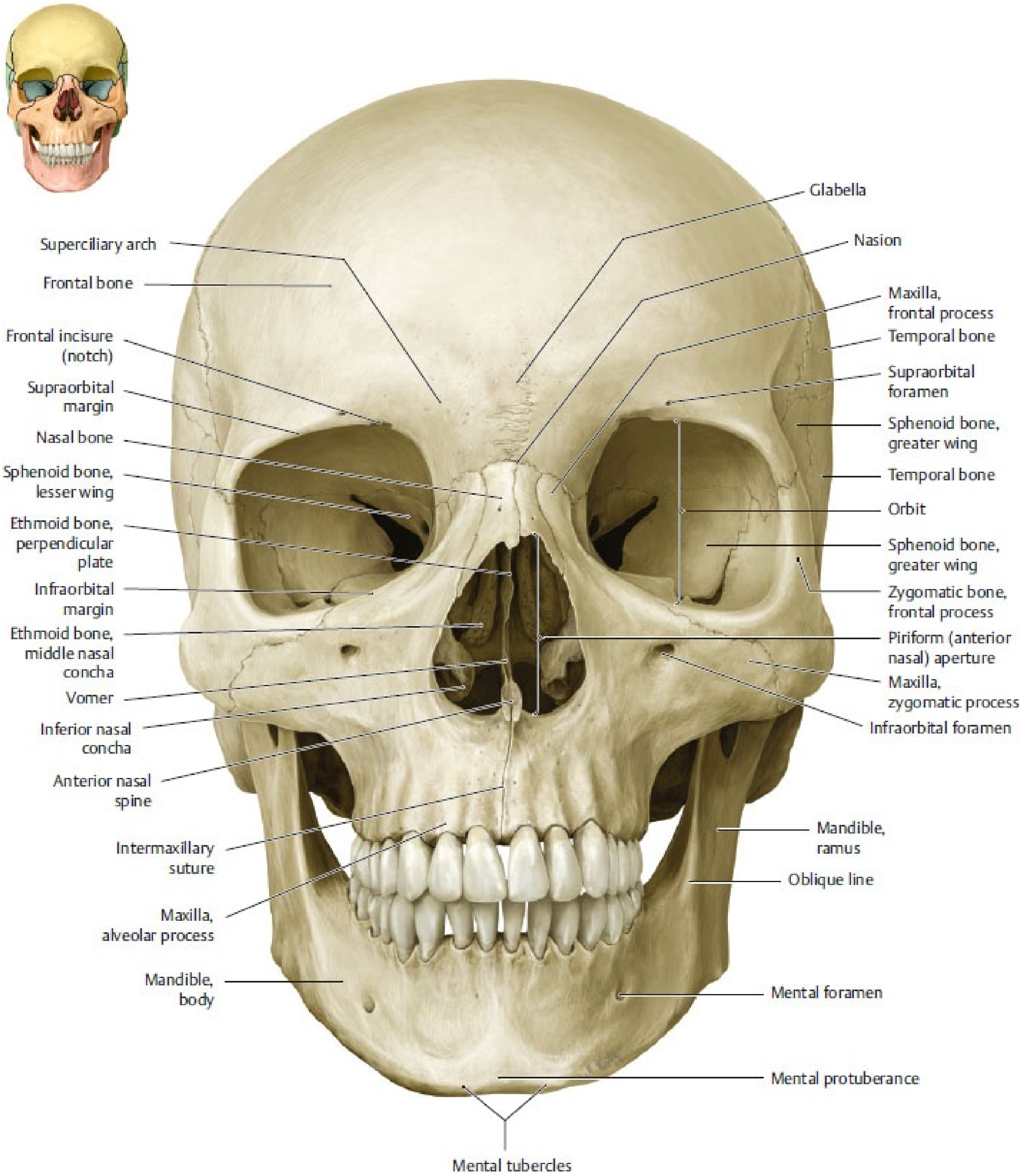

Glabella
Superciliary arch
Nasion
Frontal bone
Maxilla, frontal process
Frontal incisure (notch)
Temporal bone
Supraorbital foramen
Supraorbital margin
Sphenoid bone, greater wing
Nasal bone
Temporal bone
Sphenoid bone, lesser wing
Orbit
Ethmoid bone, perpendicular plate
Sphenoid bone, greater wing
Zygomatic bone, frontal process
Infraorbital margin
Piriform (anterior nasal) aperture
Ethmoid bone, middle nasal concha
Maxilla, zygomatic process
Vomer
Infraorbital foramen
Inferior nasal concha
Anterior nasal spine
Mandible, ramus
Intermaxillary suture
Oblique line
Maxilla, alveolar process
Mandible, body
Mental foramen
Mental protuberance
Mental tubercles

Fig. 24.3 Anterior skull

Anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

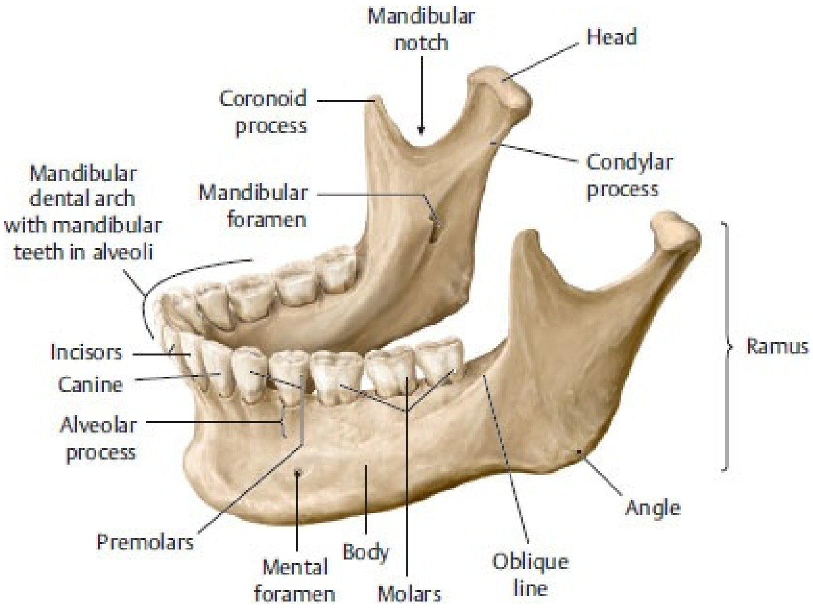

Mandibular notch
Head
Coronoid process
Condylar process
Mandibular dental arch with mandibular teeth in alveoli
Mandibular foramen
Ramus
Incisors
Canine
Alveolar process
Angle
Premolars
Mental foramen
Body
Molars
Oblique line

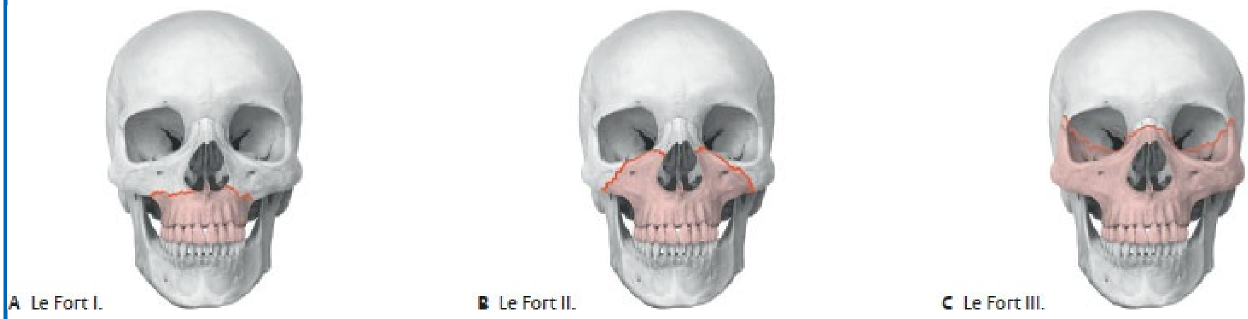
Fig. 24.4 Mandible

Oblique, left lateral view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 24.1: CLINICAL CORRELATION

FRACTURES OF THE FACE

The framelike construction of the facial skeleton leads to characteristic patterns for fracture lines (classified as Le Fort I, II, and III fractures).


A Le Fort I.
B Le Fort II.
C Le Fort III.

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th Edition. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

— The **occipital bone** (**Figs. 24.6**, **24.7**, **24.8**) forms the posterior cranial fossa of the skull base.

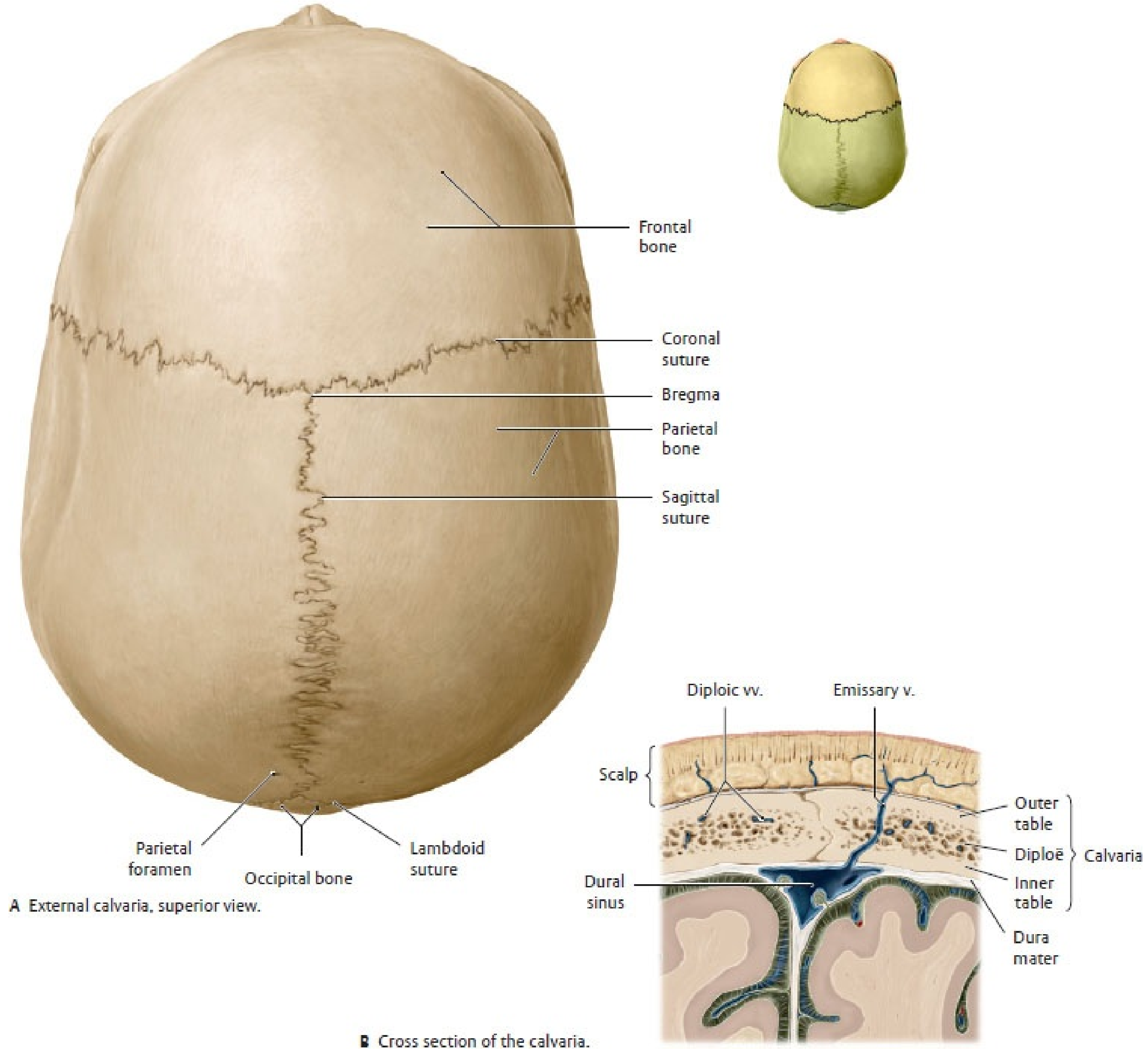
  - A small anterior portion is called the **clivus**.
  - Foramina (openings) include the large **foramen magnum** and the **condylar canals**. The **jugular foramen** is formed partly by the occipital bone and partly by the petrous part of the temporal bone.
  - Inferiorly, **occipital condyles** articulate with the first cervical vertebra.
  - The internal surface has grooves for the sigmoid and transverse dural sinuses.
  - The external surface is marked with **superior** and **inferior nuchal lines** and an **external occipital protuberance**.

— The paired **temporal bones** (**Figs. 24.2**, **24.7**, **24.8**, **24.9**, **24.10**) form part of the middle and posterior cranial fossae.

  - An outer **squamous part** forms the lateral skull, an inner **petrous part** encloses the middle and inner ear (neurocranium), and a **tympanic part** encloses the external auditory canal and tympanic membrane (viscerocranium).
  - Processes include a **mastoid process** composed of a mesh of **mastoid air cells**, the posterior part of the **zygomatic arch**, and a long, pointed **styloid process**.
  - Foramina (openings) include an **internal acoustic meatus**, **external acoustic meatus, carotid canal**, and **stylomastoid foramen**.
  - A **mandibular fossa** and **articular tubercle** articulate with the mandible.

— The **sphenoid bone** (**Figs. 24.11** and **24.12**) forms the posterior part of the orbit and the floor and the lateral wall of the middle cranial fossa between the frontal and temporal bones.

  - It has two **greater wings** that form parts of the middle cranial fossa and lateral walls of the skull.
  - Two **lesser wings** form the posterior part of the anterior cranial fossa and end in **anterior clinoid processes**.
  - The **sphenoid body** encloses the **sphenoid sinus**.
  - A midline saddle-shaped formation, the **sella turcica**, contains the **hypophyseal fossa** and is limited anteriorly by the **tuberculum sellae** and posteriorly by the **dorsum sellae** and its **posterior clinoid processes**.
  - Paired **pterygoid processes**, each with a **medial** and a **lateral pterygoid plate**, project inferiorly (viscerocranium).
  - Paired openings include the **optic canal, superior orbital fissure, foramen rotundum, foramen ovale**, and **foramen spinosum**.


Frontal bone
Coronal suture
Bregma
Parietal bone
Sagittal suture
Parietal foramen
Occipital bone
Lambdoid suture
Diploic vv.
Emissary v.
Scalp
Outer table
Diploë
Calvaria
Inner table
Dural sinus
Dura mater

A External calvaria, superior view.

B Cross section of the calvaria.

Fig. 24.5 Calvaria

The bones of the calvaria—the frontal, occipital, and two parietal bones—are composed of three layers: a dense outer table, a thin inner table, and a middle diploë layer. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

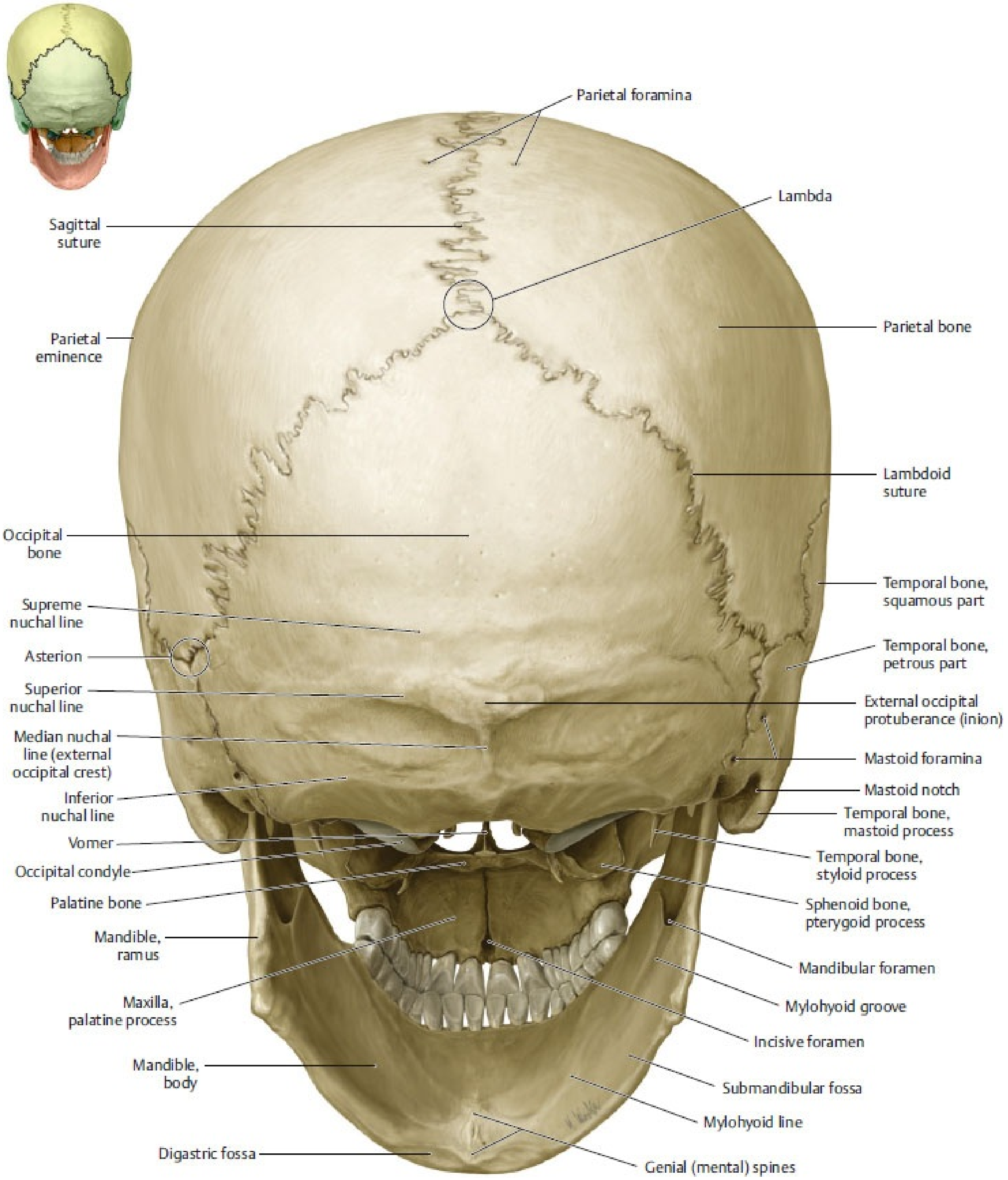

Parietal foramina
Lambda
Sagittal suture
Parietal bone
Parietal eminence
Lambdoid suture
Occipital bone
Temporal bone, squamous part
Supreme nuchal line
Asterion
Temporal bone, petrous part
Superior nuchal line
External occipital protuberance (inion)
Median nuchal line (external occipital crest)
Mastoid foramina
Mastoid notch
Inferior nuchal line
Temporal bone, mastoid process
Vomer
Occipital condyle
Temporal bone, styloid process
Palatine bone
Sphenoid bone, pterygoid process
Mandible, ramus
Mandibular foramen
Maxilla, palatine process
Mylohyoid groove
Incisive foramen
Mandible, body
Submandibular fossa
Mylohyoid line
Digastric fossa
Genial (mental) spines

Fig. 24.6 Posterior skull

Posterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

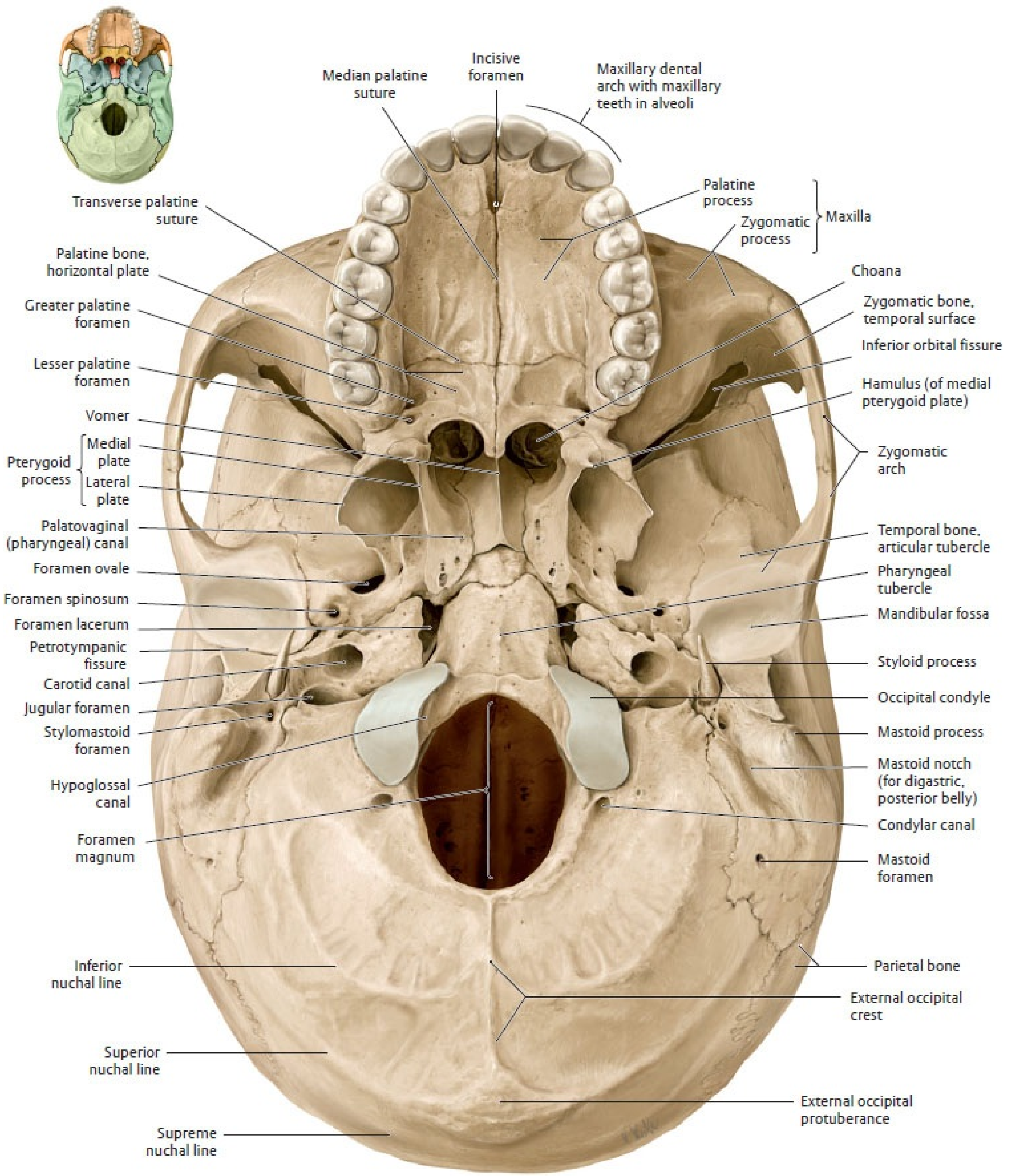

Median palatine suture
Incisive foramen
Maxillary dental arch with maxillary teeth in alveoli
Transverse palatine suture
Palatine process
Zygomatic process
Maxilla
Palatine bone, horizontal plate
Choana
Greater palatine foramen
Zygomatic bone, temporal surface
Inferior orbital fissure
Lesser palatine foramen
Hamulus (of medial pterygoid plate)
Vomer
Pterygoid process
Medial plate
Lateral plate
Zygomatic arch
Palatovaginal (pharyngeal) canal
Temporal bone, articular tubercle
Foramen ovale
Pharyngeal tubercle
Foramen spinosum
Foramen lacerum
Mandibular fossa
Petrotympanic fissure
Styloid process
Carotid canal
Occipital condyle
Jugular foramen
Mastoid process
Stylomastoid foramen
Mastoid notch (for digastric, posterior belly)
Hypoglossal canal
Condylar canal
Foramen magnum
Mastoid foramen
Inferior nuchal line
Parietal bone
External occipital crest
Superior nuchal line
External occipital protuberance
Supreme nuchal line

Fig. 24.7 Base of the skull: exterior

Inferior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

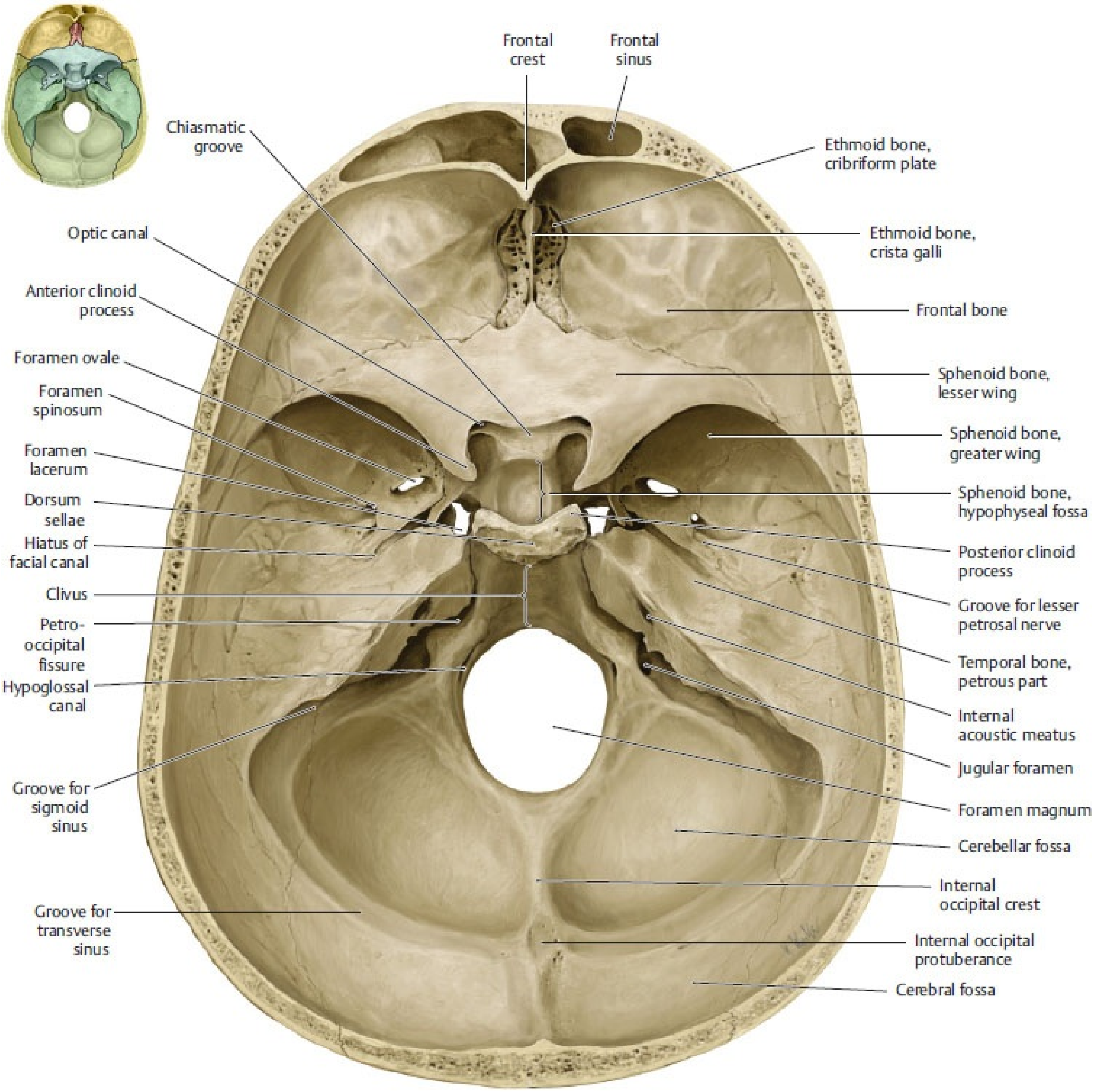
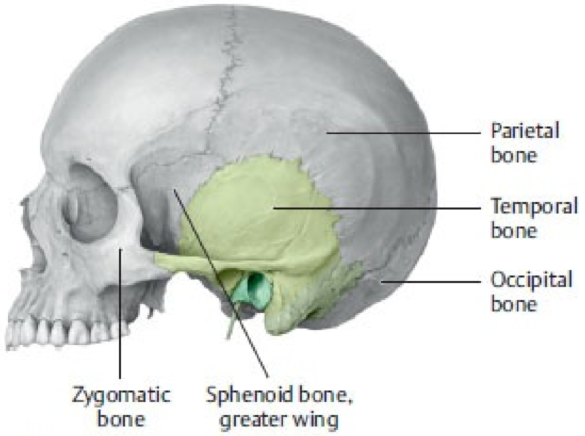
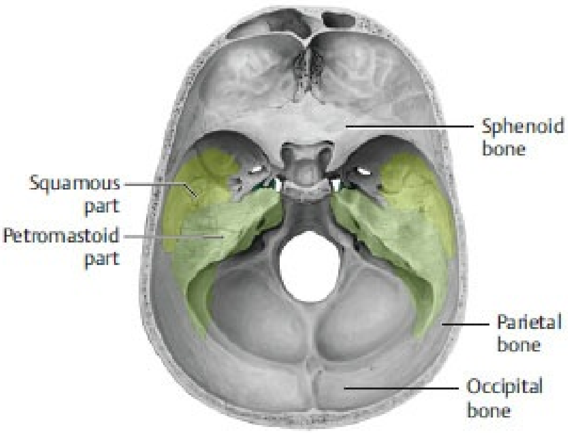

Frontal crest
Frontal sinus
Chiasmatic groove
Ethmoid bone, cribriform plate
Optic canal
Ethmoid bone, crista galli
Anterior clinoid process
Frontal bone
Foramen ovale
Sphenoid bone, lesser wing
Foramen spinosum
Sphenoid bone, greater wing
Foramen lacerum
Sphenoid bone, hypophyseal fossa
Dorsum sellae
Posterior clinoid process
Hiatus of facial canal
Clivus
Groove for lesser petrosal nerve
Petro-occipital fissure
Temporal bone, petrous part
Hypoglossal canal
Internal acoustic meatus
Jugular foramen
Groove for sigmoid sinus
Foramen magnum
Cerebellar fossa
Internal occipital crest
Groove for transverse sinus
Internal occipital protuberance
Cerebral fossa

Fig. 24.8 Base of the skull: Interior

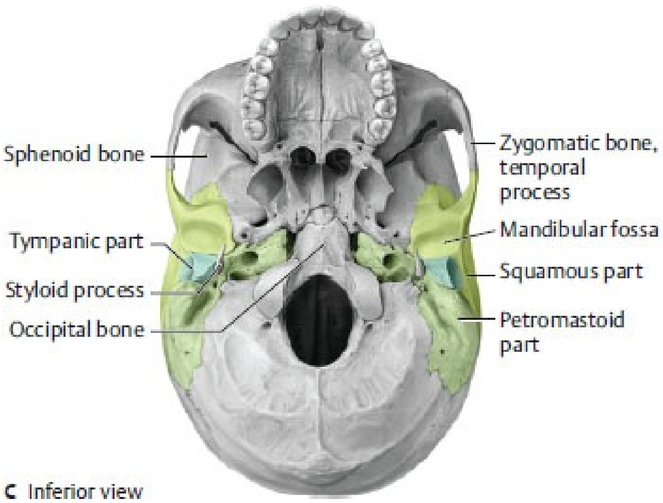
Superior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Parietal bone
Temporal bone
Occipital bone
Zygomatic bone
Sphenoid bone, greater wing

A Left lateral view


Sphenoid bone
Squamous part
Petromastoid part
Parietal bone
Occipital bone

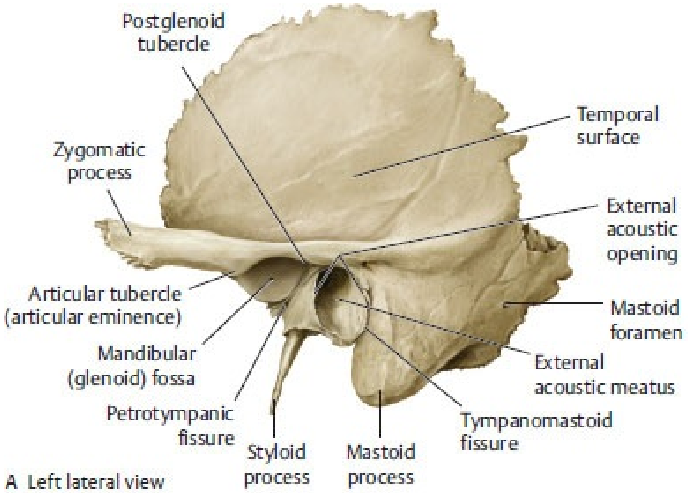
B Superior view


Sphenoid bone
Tympanic part
Styloid process
Occipital bone
Zygomatic bone, temporal process
Mandibular fossa
Squamous part
Petromastoid part

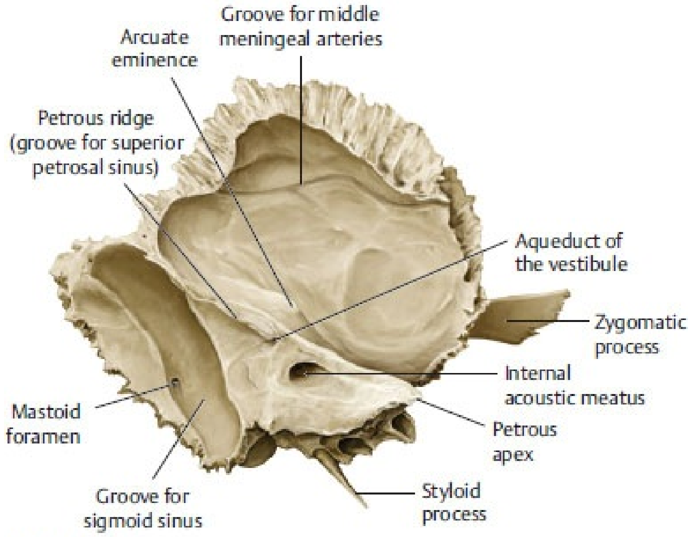
C Inferior view

Fig. 24.9 Temporal bone in situ

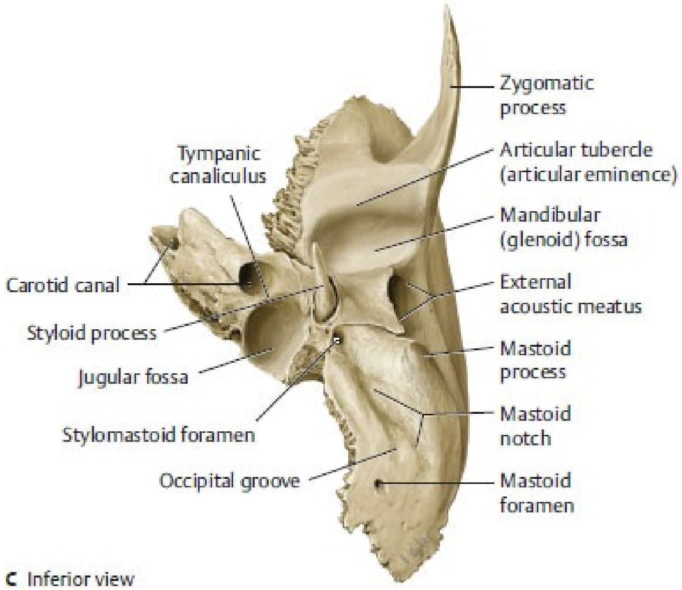
Squamous part (light green), petromastoid part (pale green), tympanic part (dark green). (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Postglenoid tubercle
Temporal surface
Zygomatic process
External acoustic opening
Articular tubercle (articular eminence)
Mastoid foramen
Mandibular (glenoid) fossa
External acoustic meatus
Petrotympanic fissure
Tympanomastoid fissure
Styloid process
Mastoid process

A Left lateral view


Groove for middle meningeal arteries
Arcuate eminence
Petrous ridge (groove for superior petrosal sinus)
Aqueduct of the vestibule
Zygomatic process
Internal acoustic meatus
Mastoid foramen
Petrous apex
Groove for sigmoid sinus
Styloid process

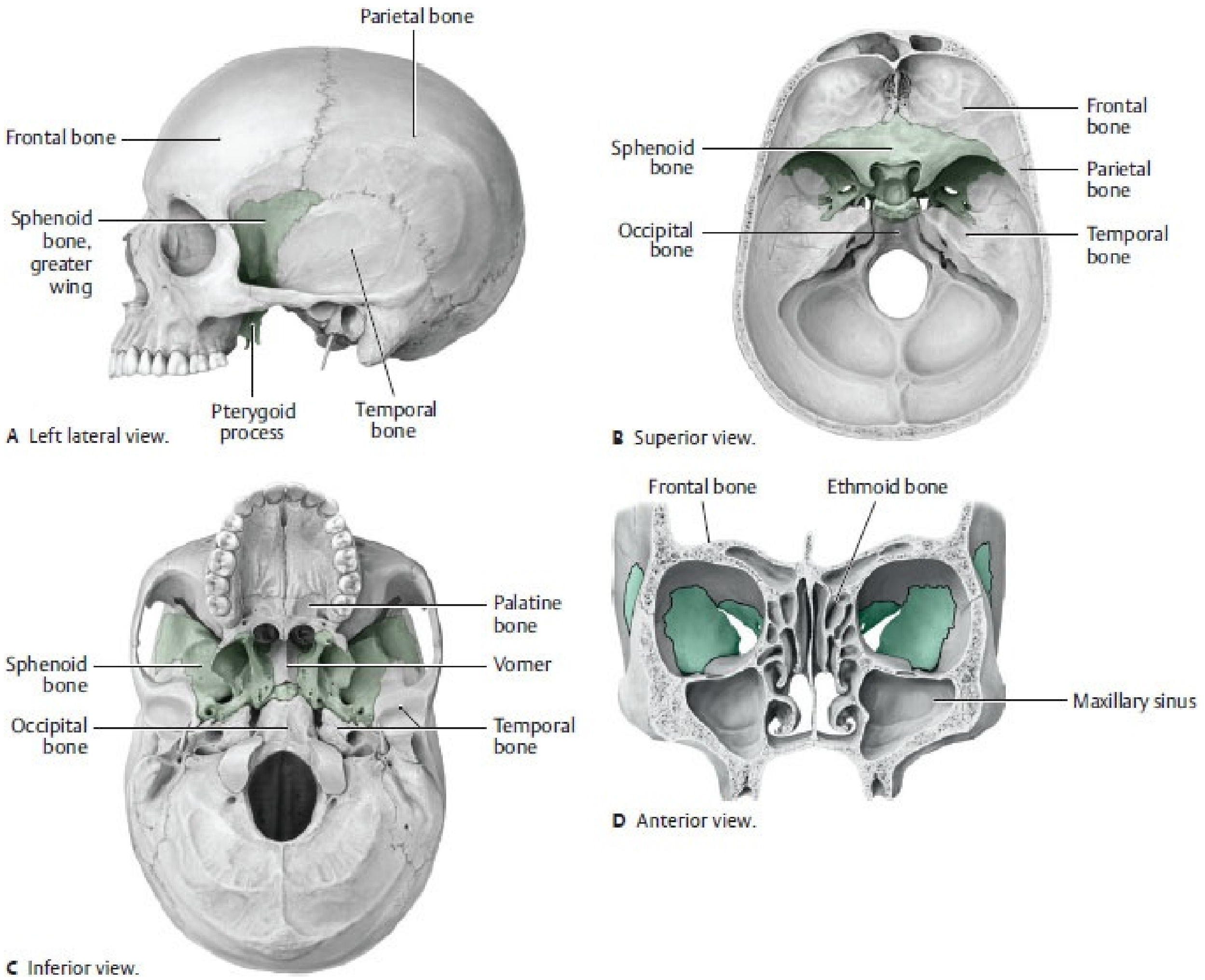
B Medial view


Zygomatic process
Tympanic canaliculus
Articular tubercle (articular eminence)
Mandibular (glenoid) fossa
Carotid canal
External acoustic meatus
Styloid process
Mastoid process
Jugular fossa
Mastoid notch
Stylomastoid foramen
Occipital groove
Mastoid foramen

C Inferior view

Fig. 24.10 Temporal bone

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Parietal bone
Frontal bone
Sphenoid bone, greater wing
Pterygoid process
Temporal bone
Frontal bone
Sphenoid bone
Parietal bone
Occipital bone
Temporal bone
Palatine bone
Sphenoid bone
Vomer
Occipital bone
Temporal bone
Frontal bone
Ethmoid bone
Maxillary sinus

A Left lateral view.

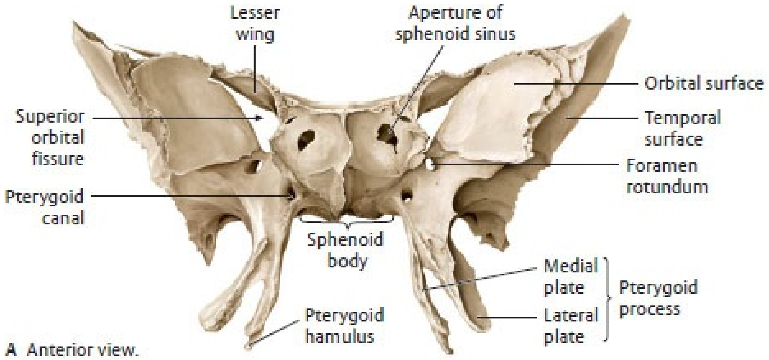
B Superior view.

C Inferior view.

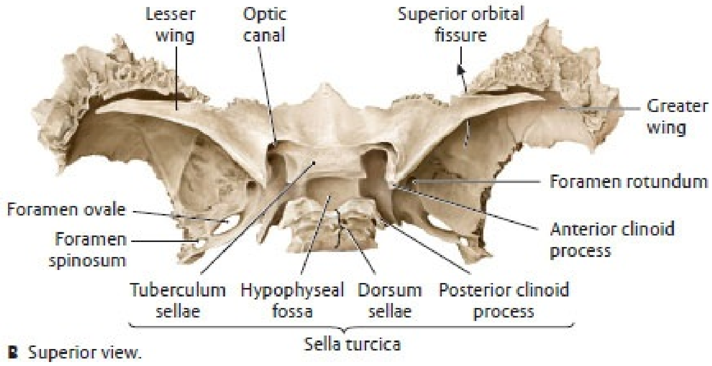
D Anterior view.

Fig. 24.11 Sphenoid bone in situ

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Lesser wing
Aperture of sphenoid sinus
Orbital surface
Superior orbital fissure
Temporal surface
Foramen rotundum
Pterygoid canal
Sphenoid body
Medial plate
Lateral plate
Pterygoid process
Pterygoid hamulus

A Anterior view.


Lesser wing
Optic canal
Superior orbital fissure
Greater wing
Foramen rotundum
Anterior clinoid process
Foramen ovale
Foramen spinosum
Tuberculum sellae
Hypophyseal fossa
Dorsum sellae
Posterior clinoid process
Sella turcica

B Superior view.

Fig. 24.12 Sphenoid bone

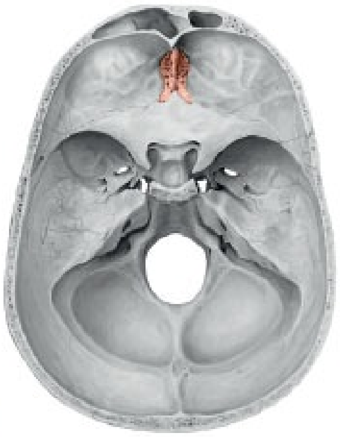
(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

The Viscerocranium

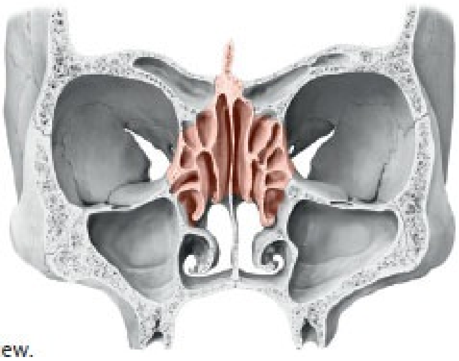
The **viscerocraniun**, or facial skeleton, is composed of 15 bones: the ethmoid, mandible, and vomer, and the paired inferior nasal concha, maxillary, nasal, lacrimal, zygomatic, and palatine bones (see **Figs. 24.2**, **24.3**, **24.15**).

- The **ethmoid bone** (**Figs. 24.13** and **24.14**) forms part of the anterior cranial fossa, the medial walls of the orbits, and parts of the nasal septum and lateral nasal walls.
  - The **cribriform plate** (neurocranium) sits in the anterior cranial fossa above the nasal cavity.
  - The **perpendicular plate** forms part of the nasal septum.
  - Ethmoid processes include the **crista galli** superiorly and **superior** and **middle nasal concha** inferiorly on the lateral wall of the nasal cavity.
  - Numerous thin-walled **ethmoid air cells** form the **ethmoid sinuses**.
- Paired **maxillary bones** (maxilla) (**Figs. 24.2**, **24.3**, **24.15**) form the upper jaw, floors of the orbits, and parts of the nose and palate.
  - The **maxillary dental arch** contains **alveoli** (sockets) for the upper teeth.

  - **Palatine processes** form the anterior part of the palate, and **frontal processes** form part of the external nose.
  - An **infraorbital foramen** opens onto the face.
  - A large **maxillary sinus** within the maxilla sits below each orbit.
- The **mandible** (**Figs. 24.2** and **24.4**) forms the lower jaw.
  - A horizontal **body** connects posteriorly with a vertical **ramus** on each side.



A Superior view.



B Anterior view.

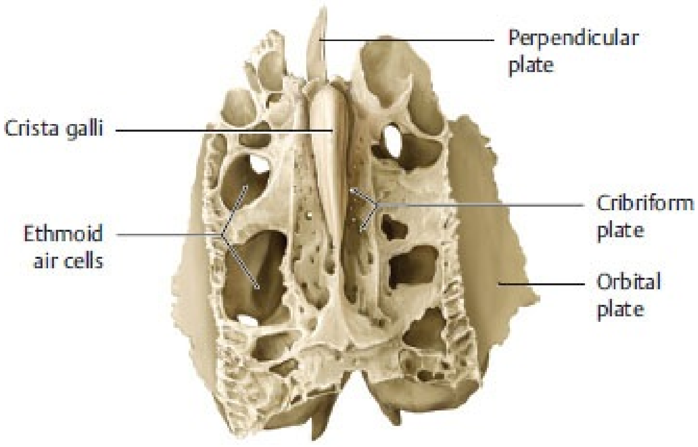
Fig. 24.13 Ethmoid bone in situ

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

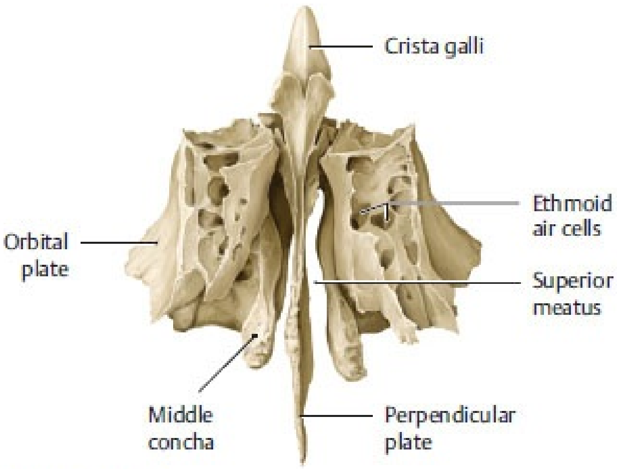
  - An **angle** forms on each side at the junction between the body and the ramus.
  - The superior end of each ramus has an anterior **coronoid process** that is separated from the posterior **condylar process** by a **mandibular notch**.
  - The **head** of the condylar process articulates with the mandibular fossa of the temporal bone.
  - Foramina include a **mental foramen** externally and a **mandibular**

foramen internally.

  - The **mandibular dental arch** contains alveoli that house the lower teeth.
- Paired **nasal bones** (**Fig. 24.3**) form the bridge of the nose.
- Paired **lacrimal bones** (**Fig. 24.2**) form the anterior medial walls of the orbits and contain **fossae for the lacrimal sacs**.
- Paired **zygomatic bones** (**Fig. 24.2**) form the bony prominences of the cheeks, anterior parts of the zygomatic arches, and lateral walls of the orbits.
- Paired **palatine bones** (**Fig. 24.7**) have vertical parts that form the posterior lateral walls of the nasal cavity and **horizontal processes** that form the posterior parts of the palate.
- The **vomer** (**Fig. 24.15**) forms the inferior and posterior part of nasal septum.
- Paired **inferior nasal conchae** (**Fig. 24.15**) form the lowest scroll-like processes on the lateral walls of the nasal cavity.


Perpendicular plate
Crista galli
Cribriform plate
Ethmoid air cells
Orbital plate

A Superior view.


Crista galli
Ethmoid air cells
Orbital plate
Superior meatus
Middle concha
Perpendicular plate

B Anterior view.

Fig. 24.14 Ethmoid bone
(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

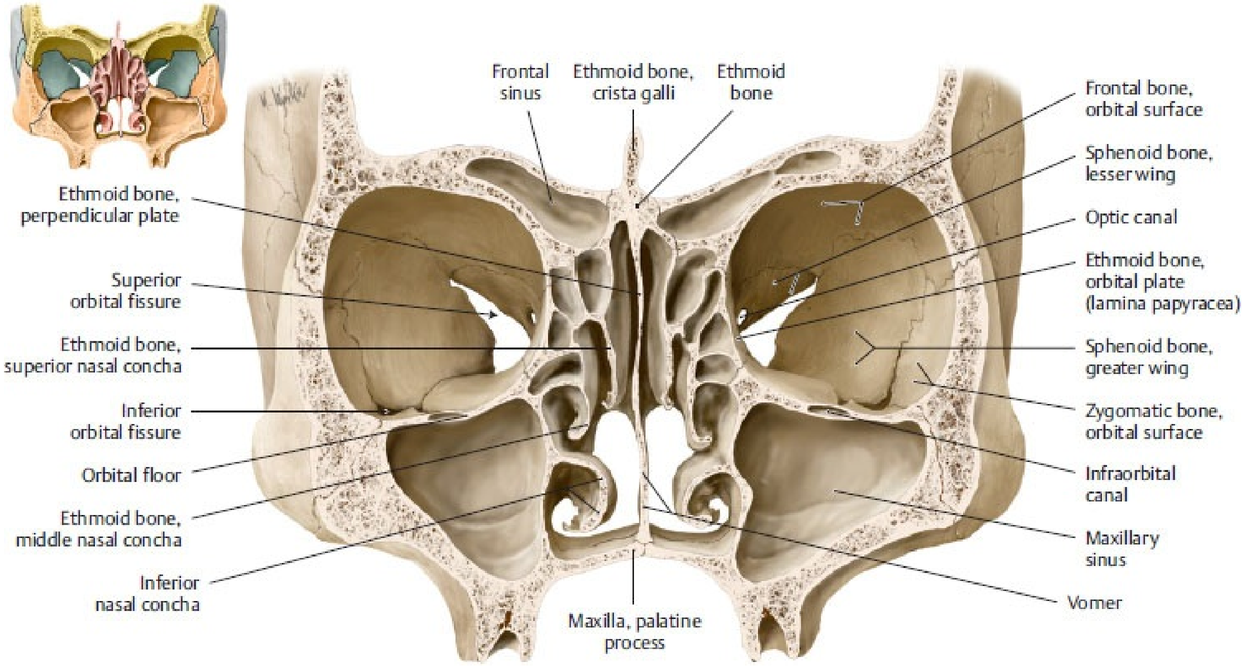

Frontal sinus
Ethmoid bone, crista galli
Ethmoid bone
Ethmoid bone, perpendicular plate
Superior orbital fissure
Ethmoid bone, superior nasal concha
Inferior orbital fissure
Orbital floor
Ethmoid bone, middle nasal concha
Inferior nasal concha
Maxilla, palatine process
Frontal bone, orbital surface
Sphenoid bone, lesser wing
Optic canal
Ethmoid bone, orbital plate (lamina papyracea)
Sphenoid bone, greater wing
Zygomatic bone, orbital surface
Infraorbital canal
Maxillary sinus
Vomer

Fig. 24.15 Bones of the orbit and nasal cavities
Coronal section, anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Sutures of the Skull

— During development, the bones of the calvaria grow outward from their center toward adjacent bones; the bones eventually fuse to form fibrous joints called **sutures**.

— Although there are many smaller sutures, the major sutures of the calvaria (see **Figs. 24.2**, **24.3**, **24.5**, **24.6**) are

- the **sagittal suture** between the right and left parietal bones,
- the **coronal suture** between the frontal and parietal bones,
- the **lambdoid suture** between the occipital and parietal bones, and
- the **squamous sutures** between the parietal and temporal bones.

— At birth, growth of the skull bones and formation of the sutures are incomplete. Large fibrous areas, known as **fontanelles**, remain between the bones and allow for continued growth of the brain. The largest of these, the **anterior fontanelle** at the junction of the frontal and parietal bones, closes between 18 and 24 months of age (**Fig. 24.16**).

BOX 24.2: DEVELOPMENTAL CORRELATION

CRANIOSYNOSTOSIS

Premature closure of the cranial sutures, a condition known as craniosynostosis, results in a variety of skull malformations, the shape of which depends on the suture involved. Plagiocephaly, the most common deformity, indicates premature closure of the coronal or lambdoid suture on one side and creates an asymmetrical appearance. Scaphocephaly is characterized by a long, narrow cranium produced by early closure of the sagittal suture. If untreated, craniosynostosis may lead to increased intracranial pressure, seizures, and delayed development of the skull and brain. Surgery is typically the recommended treatment to reduce the intracranial pressure and correct the deformities of the face and skull bones.

— Junctions of the sutures and other prominent points of the skull are useful for measuring growth of the skull and brain; determining race, gender, and age; and locating deep cranial structures (**Table 24.2**).

BOX 24.3: CLINICAL CORRELATION

SKULL FRACTURES AT THE PTERION

The thin bones that make up the pterion overlie the anterior branches of the middle meningeal artery, a branch of the maxillary artery that runs deep to the bone in the epidural space. Because of this relationship, skull fractures at the pterion can lead to a life-threatening epidural hemorrhage (see **Box 26.3**).

Table 24.2 Landmarks of the Skull

Landmark	Location of Point or Area
Nasion	Junction of frontonasal and internasal sutures
Glabella	Most anterior prominence of frontal bone above the nasion
Bregma	Junction of coronal and sagittal sutures

Pterion	Area encompassing junction of frontal, parietal, sphenoid, and temporal bones along the sphenoparietal suture
Vertex	Most superior point of the skull along the sagittal suture
Lambda	Junction of lambdoid and sagittal sutures
Asterion	Junction of sutures joining occipital, temporal, and parietal bones

(see **Figs. 24.2**, **24.3**, **24.5**, **24.6**)

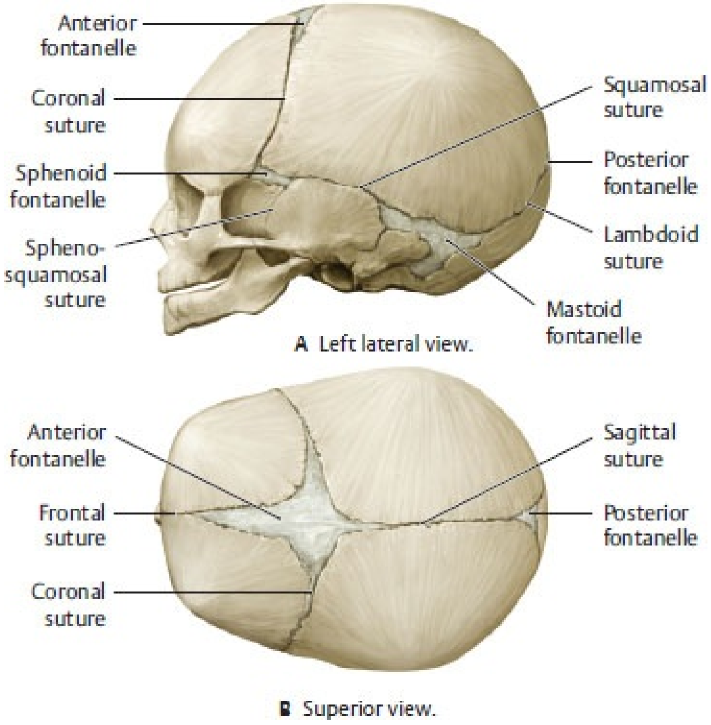

Anterior fontanelle
Coronal suture
Sphenoid fontanelle
Spheno-squamosal suture
Squamosal suture
Posterior fontanelle
Lambdoid suture
Mastoid fontanelle
A Left lateral view.
Anterior fontanelle
Frontal suture
Coronal suture
Sagittal suture
Posterior fontanelle
B Superior view.

Fig. 24.16 The neonatal skull

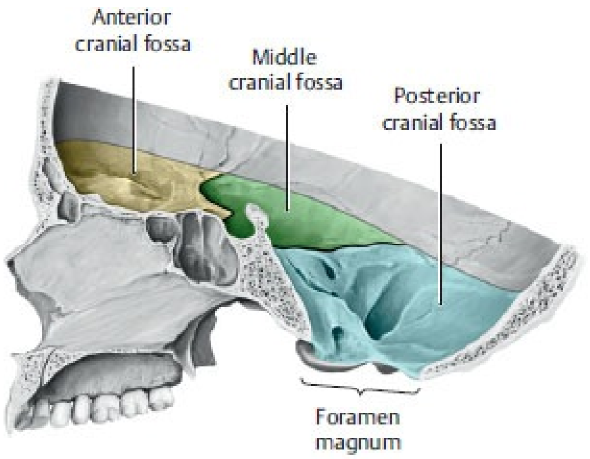
(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Cranial Fossae

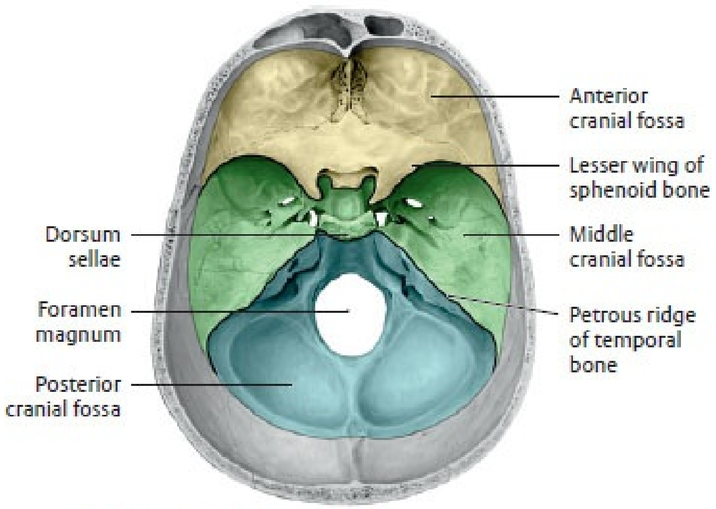
- The floor of the cranial cavity is divided into three fossae, or spaces (**Fig. 24.17**; see also **Fig. 24.8**).
  - The **anterior cranial fossa**, formed by the frontal and ethmoid bones

and lesser wing of the sphenoid bone, contains the frontal lobe of the brain and the olfactory bulbs (see Section 26.2 for a description of the brain).

- The **middle cranial fossa**, formed by the greater and lesser wings of the sphenoid bone and squamous and petrous parts of the temporal bones, contains the temporal lobes of the brain, the optic chiasm, and the pituitary gland. The hypophyseal fossa separates the right and left halves of the middle cranial fossa.
- The **posterior cranial fossa**, formed primarily by the occipital bone and petrous parts of the temporal bones, contains the pons, medulla oblongata, and cerebellum of the brain. The medulla oblongata exits the skull through the foramen magnum located on the floor of the fossa, and grooves on the posterior and lateral walls accommodate the transverse and sigmoid dural venous sinuses.


Anterior cranial fossa
Middle cranial fossa
Posterior cranial fossa
Foramen magnum

A Midsagittal section, left lateral view.

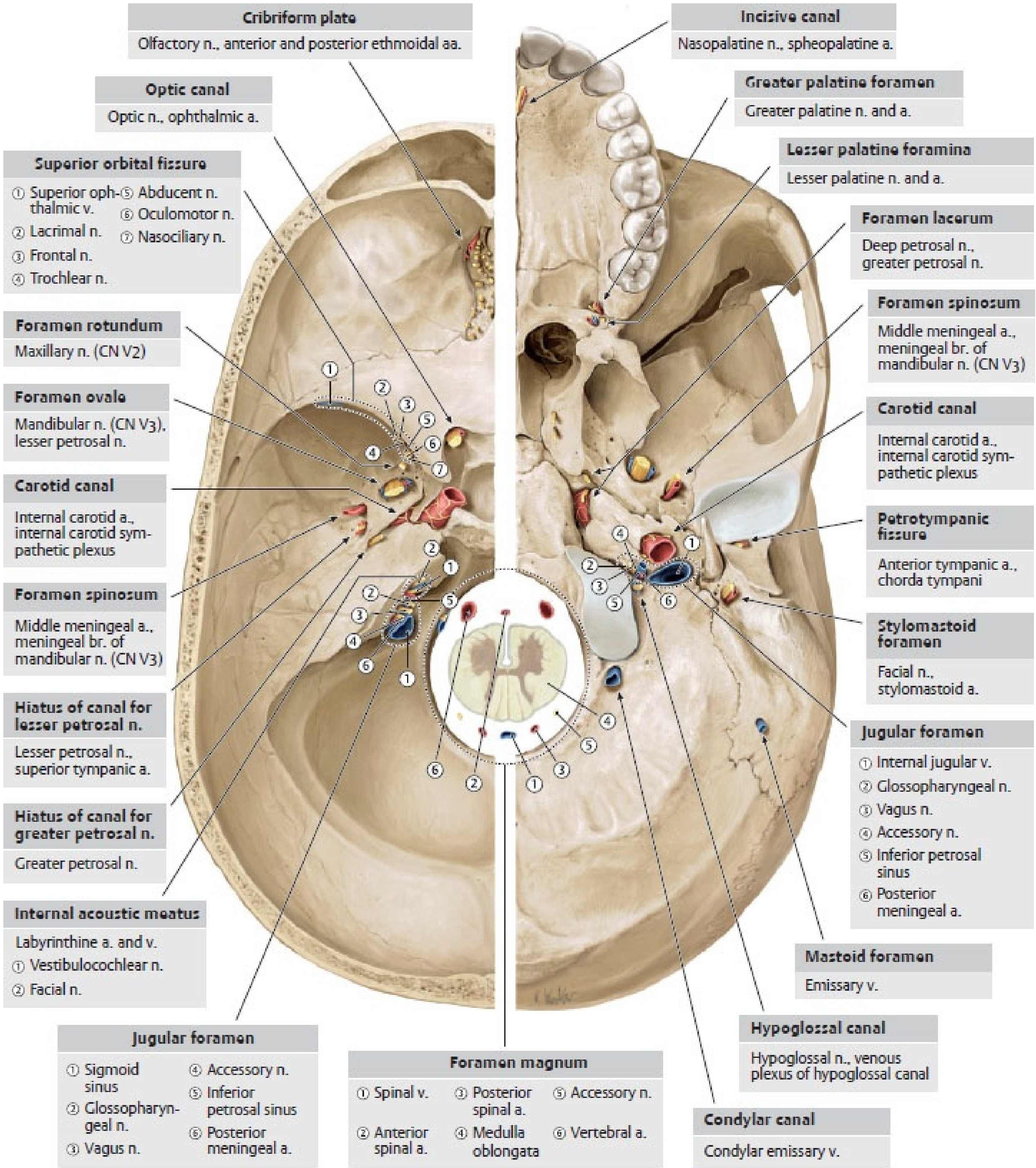

Anterior cranial fossa
Lesser wing of sphenoid bone
Dorsum sellae
Middle cranial fossa
Foramen magnum
Petrous ridge of temporal bone
Posterior cranial fossa

B Superior view of opened skull.

Fig. 24.17 Cranial fossae

The interior of the skull base consists of three successive fossae that become progressively deeper in the frontal-to-occipital direction. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- Foramina within the anterior, middle, and posterior fossae allow blood vessels and nerves to pass through the skull (**Fig. 24.18**). (See Sections 24.3, 24.4 and 26.3 for arteries of the head, veins of the head, and cranial nerves, respectively.)


Cribriform plate
Olfactory n., anterior and posterior ethmoidal aa.
Optic canal
Optic n., ophthalmic a.
Superior orbital fissure
① Superior ophthalmic v.
② Lacrimal n.
③ Frontal n.
④ Trochlear n.
⑤ Abducent n.
⑥ Oculomotor n.
⑦ Nasociliary n.
Foramen rotundum
Maxillary n. (CN V2)
Foramen ovale
Mandibular n. (CN V3), lesser petrosal n.
Carotid canal
Internal carotid a., internal carotid sympathetic plexus
Foramen spinosum
Middle meningeal a., meningeal br. of mandibular n. (CN V3)
Hiatus of canal for lesser petrosal n.
Lesser petrosal n., superior tympanic a.
Hiatus of canal for greater petrosal n.
Greater petrosal n.
Internal acoustic meatus
Labyrinthine a. and v.
① Vestibulocochlear n.
② Facial n.
Jugular foramen
① Sigmoid sinus
② Glossopharyngeal n.
③ Vagus n.
④ Accessory n.
⑤ Inferior petrosal sinus
⑥ Posterior meningeal a.
Foramen magnum
① Spinal v.
② Anterior spinal a.
③ Posterior spinal a.
④ Medulla oblongata
⑤ Accessory n.
⑥ Vertebral a.
Incisive canal
Nasopalatine n., spheopalatine a.
Greater palatine foramen
Greater palatine n. and a.
Lesser palatine foramina
Lesser palatine n. and a.
Foramen lacerum
Deep petrosal n., greater petrosal n.
Foramen spinosum
Middle meningeal a., meningeal br. of mandibular n. (CN V3)
Carotid canal
Internal carotid a., internal carotid sympathetic plexus
Petrotympanic fissure
Anterior tympanic a., chorda tympani
Stylomastoid foramen
Facial n., stylomastoid a.
Jugular foramen
① Internal jugular v.
② Glossopharyngeal n.
③ Vagus n.
④ Accessory n.
⑤ Inferior petrosal sinus
⑥ Posterior meningeal a.
Mastoid foramen
Emissary v.
Hypoglossal canal
Hypoglossal n., venous plexus of hypoglossal canal
Condylar canal
Condylar emissary v.
①
②
③
④
⑤
⑥
⑦

A Cranial cavity (interior of skull base). Left side, superior view. **B** Exterior of skull base. Left side, inferior view.

Fig. 24.18 Neurovascular structures entering or exiting the cranial cavity

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

24.2 Bones of the Neck

Most bones of the neck are parts of the vertebral column, thoracic skeleton, or pectoral girdle (see **Fig. 1.5A**).

- The seven cervical vertebrae support the head on the vertebral column and provide attachment for neck muscles.
- The manubrium of the sternum forms the inferior midline boundary of the anterior neck.
- The clavicles form the lateral boundaries of the neck.
- The **hyoid bone**, a small U-shaped bone, lies anterior to the C3 vertebra in the neck (**Fig. 24.19**).
  - It has a **body** and paired **lesser** and **greater horns**.
  - The hyoid does not articulate directly with any other bones of the skeleton, but muscles and ligaments attach it to the mandible, styloid processes of the temporal bones, larynx, clavicles, sternum, and scapulae.

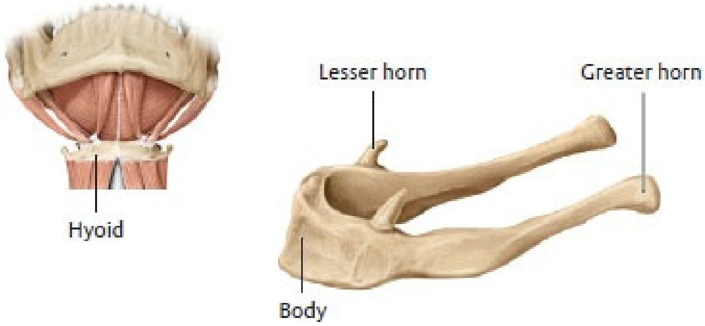


Fig. 24.19 Hyoid bone

The hyoid bone is suspended in the neck by muscles between the floor of the mouth and the larynx. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

24.3 Arteries of the Head and Neck

Arteries of the head and neck are branches of the right and left **subclavian** and **common carotid arteries** (see **Fig. 5.6**).

- The brachiocephalic trunk arises from the aortic arch and divides behind the right sternoclavicular joint to form the right subclavian and right common carotid arteries.
- The left subclavian and left common carotid arteries are direct branches of

the aortic arch in the superior mediastinum of the thorax.

The Subclavian Artery

The subclavian arteries enter the neck through the superior thoracic aperture and pass laterally between the anterior and middle scalene muscles. Two branches, the vertebral artery and the thyrocervical trunk, arise medial to the anterior scalene muscles on each side and supply structures in the head and neck (**Fig. 24.20**). Other branches supply structures at the base of the neck and thoracic outlet.

— The **vertebral artery** passes posteriorly in the neck to ascend through the transverse foramina of C1–C6 vertebrae and enters the foramen magnum at the base of the skull.
  - In the neck, it contributes the single anterior spinal artery and paired posterior spinal arteries that supply the upper spinal cord.
  - In the skull, it gives off the **posteroinferior cerebellar arteries**.
  - It terminates by joining the contralateral vertebral artery to form a single **basilar artery**, which supplies the posterior circulation of the brain.

— The **thyrocervical trunk** is a short trunk that branches into four arteries:
  - the **inferior thyroid artery**, the largest branch, which turns medially to supply the larynx, trachea, esophagus, and thyroid and parathyroid glands;
  - the **suprascapular** and **transverse cervical arteries**, which supply muscles of the back and scapular region; and
  - the **ascending cervical artery**, a small branch that supplies muscles in the neck.

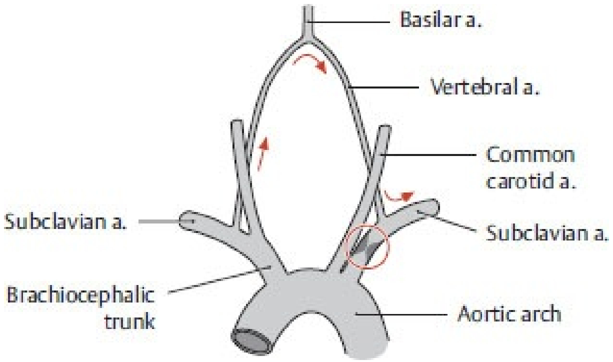
— The **costocervical trunk** arises posteriorly from the subclavian artery and branches into
  - the **deep cervical artery**, which supplies muscles of the posterior neck.
  - the **supreme intercostal artery**, which supplies the muscles of the first intercostal space.

— The internal thoracic artery arises from the inferior side of the subclavian artery. It descends into the thorax on either side of the sternum to supply muscles of the thorax and sternum (see Section 5.2).

BOX 24.4: CLINICAL CORRELATION

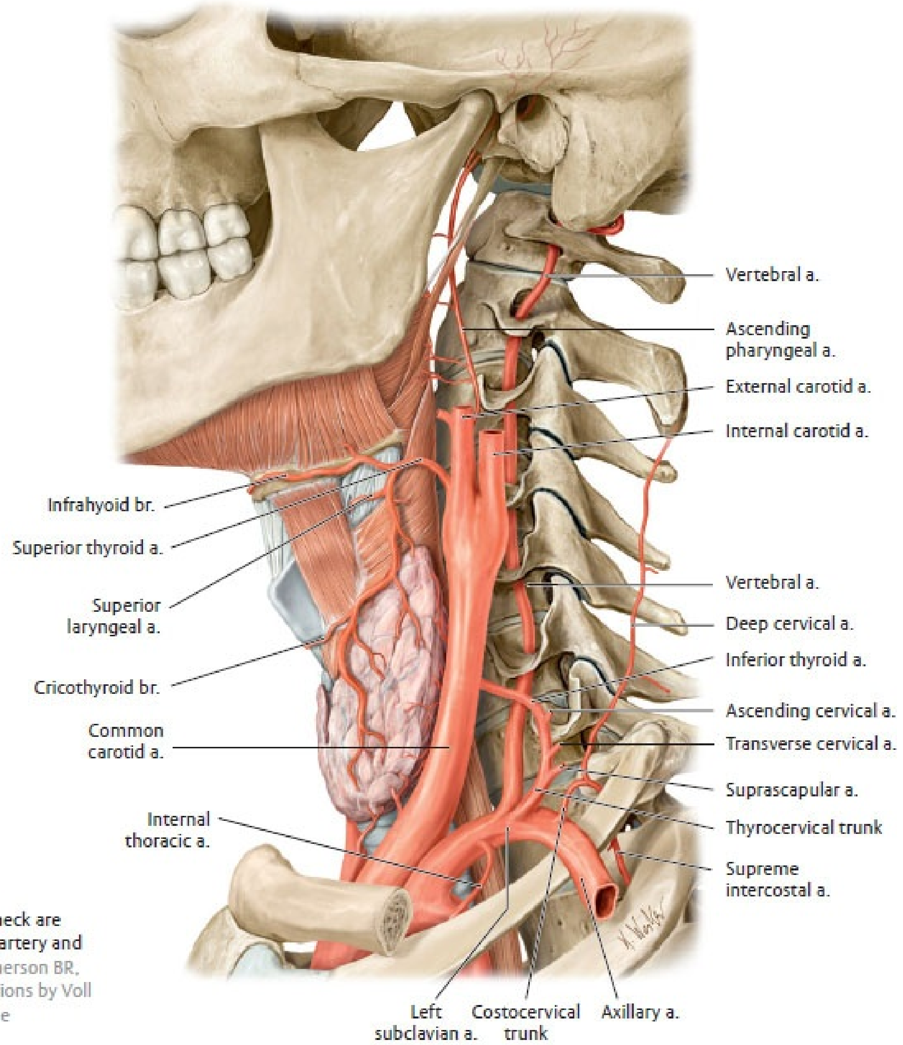
SUBCLAVIAN STEAL SYNDROME

“Subclavian steal” usually results from a stenosis of the left subclavian artery located proximal to the origin of the vertebral artery. When the left arm is exercised, there may be insufficient blood flow to the arm. As a result, blood is “stolen” from the vertebral artery circulation, causing a reversal of flow in the vertebral artery on the *affected* side. This leads to a deficient blood flow in the basilar artery and may deprive the brain of blood, producing a feeling of lightheadedness.

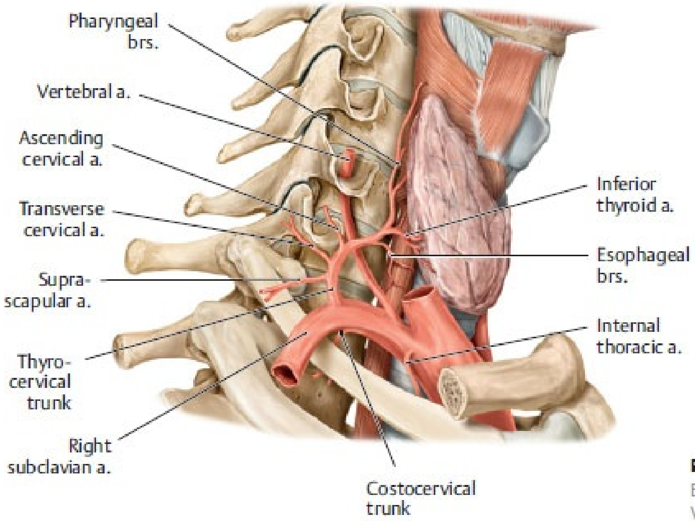

Basilar a.
Vertebral a.
Common carotid a.
Subclavian a.
Subclavian a.
Brachiocephalic trunk
Aortic arch

Subclavian steal syndrome

Red circle indicates area of stenosis; *arrows* indicate direction of blood flow. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Vertebral a.
Ascending pharyngeal a.
External carotid a.
Internal carotid a.
Infrahyoid br.
Superior thyroid a.
Superior laryngeal a.
Vertebral a.
Deep cervical a.
Inferior thyroid a.
Cricothyroid br.
Ascending cervical a.
Common carotid a.
Transverse cervical a.
Suprascapular a.
Thyrocervical trunk
Internal thoracic a.
Supreme intercostal a.
Left subclavian a.
Costocervical trunk
Axillary a.

A Left lateral view. The structures of the neck are primarily supplied by the external carotid artery and subclavian artery. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Pharyngeal brs.
Vertebral a.
Ascending cervical a.
Inferior thyroid a.
Transverse cervical a.
Esophageal brs.
Supra-scapular a.
Internal thoracic a.
Thyro-cervical trunk
Right subclavian a.
Costocervical trunk

B Branches of the thyrocervical trunk. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

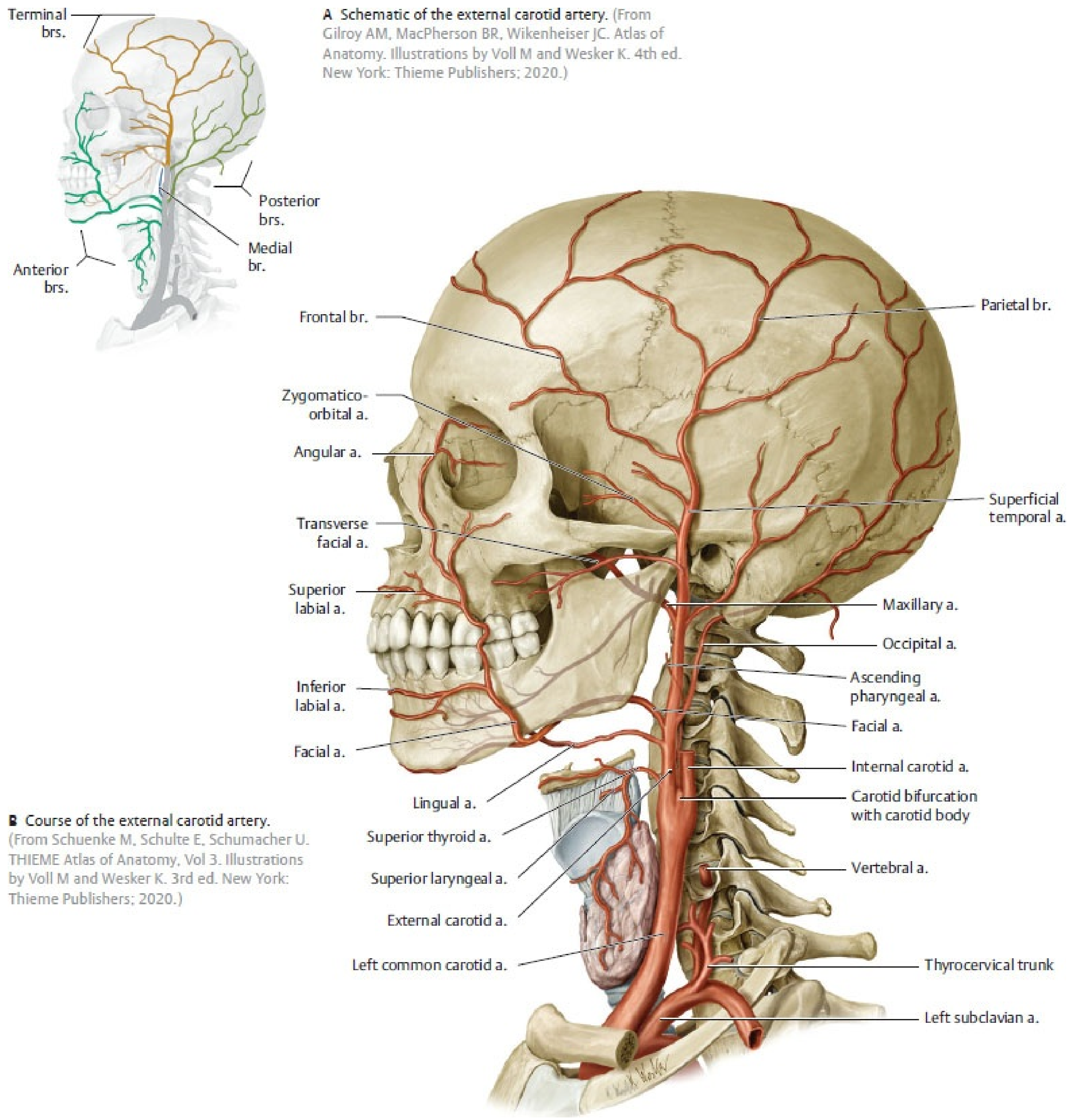
Fig. 24.20 Arteries of the neck

The Carotid Artery System

The carotid artery system supplies structures of the neck, face, skull, and brain and consists of paired common carotid, external carotid, and internal carotid arteries and their branches.

— The **common carotid artery** enters the neck from the thorax and ascends, with the internal jugular vein and vagus nerve, within a fascial sleeve, the **carotid sheath**.

  - Its only branches, the **external carotid** and **internal carotid arteries**, arise from its bifurcation at the C4 vertebral level (**Fig. 24.21**).



A Schematic of the external carotid artery. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

B Course of the external carotid artery. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Terminal brs.
Posterior brs.
Medial br.
Anterior brs.
Frontal br.
Parietal br.
Zygomatico-orbital a.
Angular a.
Transverse facial a.
Superficial temporal a.
Superior labial a.
Maxillary a.
Occipital a.
Ascending pharyngeal a.
Inferior labial a.
Facial a.
Facial a.
Internal carotid a.
Lingual a.
Carotid bifurcation with carotid body
Superior thyroid a.
Superior laryngeal a.
Vertebral a.
External carotid a.
Left common carotid a.
Thyrocervical trunk
Left subclavian a.

Fig. 24.21 External carotid artery
Left lateral view.

— The **external carotid artery** supplies most structures of the face and head except the brain and the orbits. Six branches arise from the external carotid artery in the neck before it passes behind the mandible and finally bifurcates into two terminal branches, the **maxillary** and **superficial temporal arteries** (Table 24.3).

1. The **superior thyroid artery** supplies the thyroid gland and, through its

    superior laryngeal artery, the larynx.
  2. The **lingual artery** supplies the posterior tongue and floor of the mouth, parts of the oral cavity, the tonsil, soft palate, epiglottis, and sublingual gland.
  3. The **facial artery** ascends deep to the submandibular gland, which it supplies, and crosses the mandible from below to enter the face. It passes lateral to the corners of the mouth and terminates near the medial angle of the eye as the **angular artery**. The branches of the facial artery include
     - the **submental** and **tonsillar branches** in the neck, and
     - the **superior** and **inferior labial arteries** and a **lateral nasal artery** on the face.
  4. The **occipital artery** supplies branches to the posterior neck muscles.
  5. The **ascending pharyngeal artery** sends branches to the pharynx, ear, and deep neck muscles.
  6. The **posterior auricular artery** passes posteriorly to supply the scalp behind the ear.
- The maxillary artery arises posterior to the mandible and passes medially through the **infratemporal** and **pterygopalatine fossae** (see Sections 27.5 and 27.6). Branches from its three parts, the **mandibular, pterygoid**, and **pterygopalatine parts**, supply most structures of the face (**Table 24.4**; **Figs. 24.22** and **24.23**).
- The superficial temporal artery passes superiorly through the temporal region anterior to the ear and terminates as **frontal** and **parietal arteries** on the scalp. Its branches on the face (**Fig. 24.21**; see **Table 24.4**) include the following:
  - The **transverse facial artery**, which supplies the parotid gland and duct and crosses anteriorly to supply the skin of the face
  - The **zygomatico-orbital artery**, which supplies the lateral orbit
  - The **middle temporal artery**, which supplies the temporal region
- The **internal carotid artery** is the continuation of the common carotid artery (**Figs. 24.24** and **24.25**).
  - It is described in four parts:
    - A cervical part in the neck that has no branches
    - A petrous part that courses within the carotid canal of the temporal bone
    - A cavernous part that passes through the **cavernous sinus** (a venous sinus lateral to the sella turcica; see **Figs. 26.6** and **26.7**)
    - A cerebral part that emerges into the middle cranial fossa posterior

to the orbit

- Two receptors are located within the internal carotid artery near its origin.
    - The **carotid sinus**, a baroreceptor that responds to changes in arterial pressure, is noticeable as a small dilation near the origin of the internal carotid artery.
    - The **carotid body**, a small mass of tissue located near the carotid sinus, is a chemoreceptor that monitors blood oxygen levels. Stimulation of the carotid body initiates an increase in heart rate, respiration rate, and blood pressure.

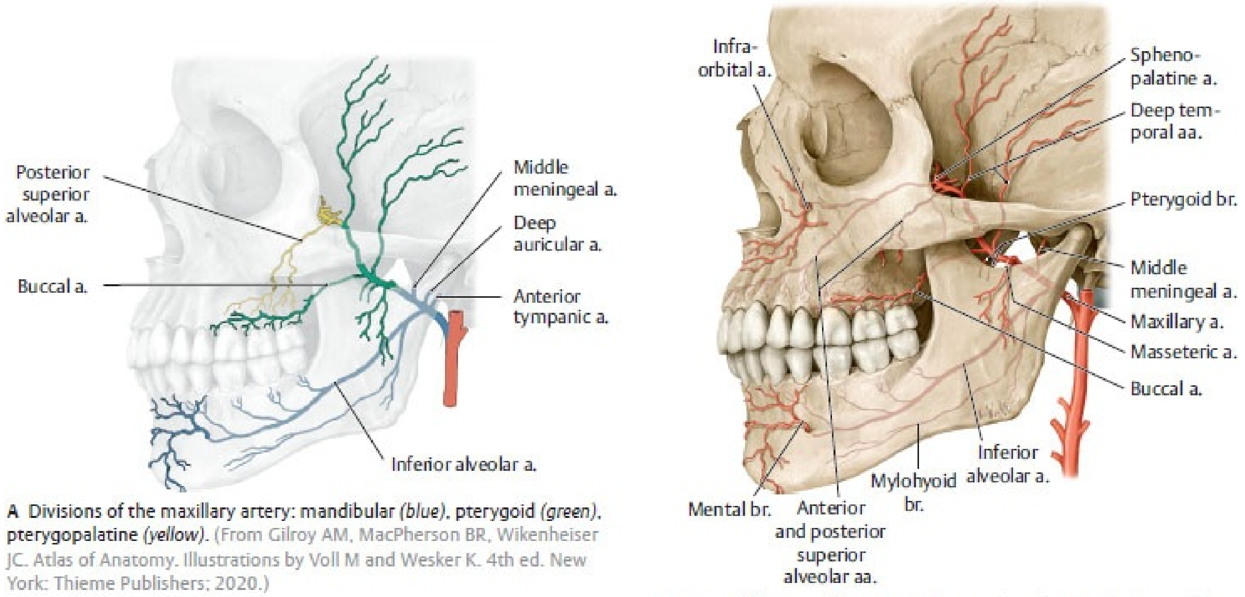
Table 24.3 Anterior, Medial, and Posterior Branches of the External Carotid Artery

Branch	Artery	Divisions and Distributions
Anterior brs.	Superior thyroid a.	Glandular br. (to thyroid gland); superior laryngeal a.; sternocleidomastoid br.
	Lingual a.	Dorsal lingual brs. (to base of tongue, palatoglossal arch, tonsil, soft palate, epiglottis); sublingual a. (to sublingual gland, tongue, oral floor, oral cavity); deep lingual a.
	Facial a.	Ascending palatine a. (to pharyngeal wall, soft palate, pharyngotympanic tube); tonsillar branch (to palatine tonsils); submental a. (to oral floor, submandibular gland); labial aa.; angular a. (to nasal root)
Medial br.	Ascending pharyngeal a.	Pharyngeal brs.; inferior tympanic a. (to mucosa of inner ear); posterior meningeal a.
Posterior brs.	Occipital a.	Occipital brs.; descending br. (to posterior neck muscles)
	Posterior auricular a.	Stylomastoid a. (to facial n. in facial canal); posterior tympanic a.; auricular br.; occipital br.; parotid br.

Note: For terminal brs, see **Table 24.4**.

Table 24.4 Terminal Branches of the External Carotid Artery

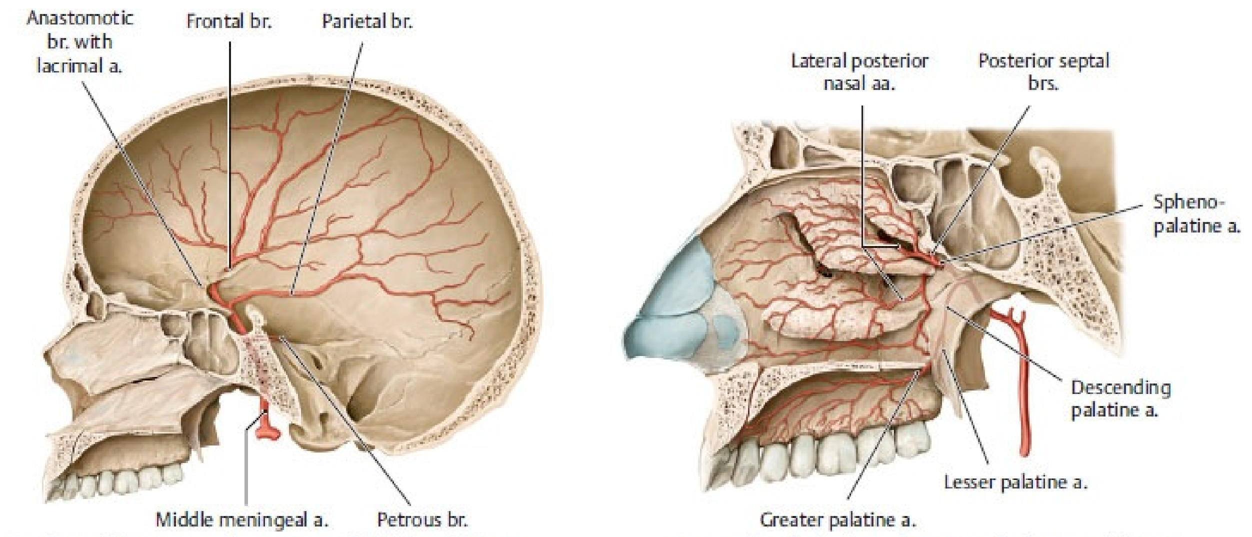
Artery		Divisions and Distribution	
Superficial temporal a.		Transverse facial a. (to soft tissues below the zygomatic arch); frontal branches; parietal branches; zygomaticoorbital a. (to lateral orbital wall)	
Maxillary a.	Mandibular part	Inferior alveolar a. (to mandible, teeth, gingiva); middle meningeal a.; deep auricular a. (to temporomandibular joint, external auditory canal); anterior tympanic a.	
	Pterygoid part	Masseteric a.; deep temporal branches; pterygoid branches; buccal a.	
	Pterygopalatine part	Posterior superior alveolar a. (to maxillary molars, maxillary sinus, gingiva); infraorbital a. (to maxillary alveoli)	
		Descending palatine a.	Greater palatine a. (to hard palate)
			Lesser palatine a. (to soft palate, palatine tonsil, pharyngeal wall)
		Sphenopalatine a.	Lateral posterior nasal aa. (to lateral wall of nasal cavity, conchae)
			Posterior septal branches (to nasal septum)


Posterior superior alveolar a.
Buccal a.
Middle meningeal a.
Deep auricular a.
Anterior tympanic a.
Inferior alveolar a.
Infra-orbital a.
Spheno-palatine a.
Deep temporal aa.
Pterygoid br.
Middle meningeal a.
Maxillary a.
Masseteric a.
Buccal a.
Inferior alveolar a.
Mylohyoid br.
Mental br.
Anterior and posterior superior alveolar aa.

A Divisions of the maxillary artery: mandibular *(blue)*, pterygoid *(green)*, pterygopalatine *(yellow)*. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

B Course of the maxillary artery. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Fig. 24.22 Maxillary artery
Left lateral view.


Anastomotic br. with lacrimal a.
Frontal br.
Parietal br.
Middle meningeal a.
Petrous br.
Lateral posterior nasal aa.
Posterior septal brs.
Spheno-palatine a.
Descending palatine a.
Lesser palatine a.
Greater palatine a.

A Right middle meningeal artery. Opened skull, medial view.

B Lateral wall of right nasal cavity and palate, medial view.

Fig. 24.23 Deep branches of the maxillary artery

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- The **ophthalmic artery**, which arises within the skull as the first major branch of the internal carotid artery, passes through the optic canal to supply the orbital contents, including the retina of the eye through its **central retinal artery**.
    - Branches of the ophthalmic artery, the **supraorbital** and **supratrochlear arteries** to the anterior scalp and **ethmoidal arteries** to the nasal cavity, anastomose with branches of the external carotid artery (**Box 24.5**).
- The **anterior** and **middle cerebral arteries** arise from the internal carotid artery to supply the anterior circulation of the brain (see Section 26.2).

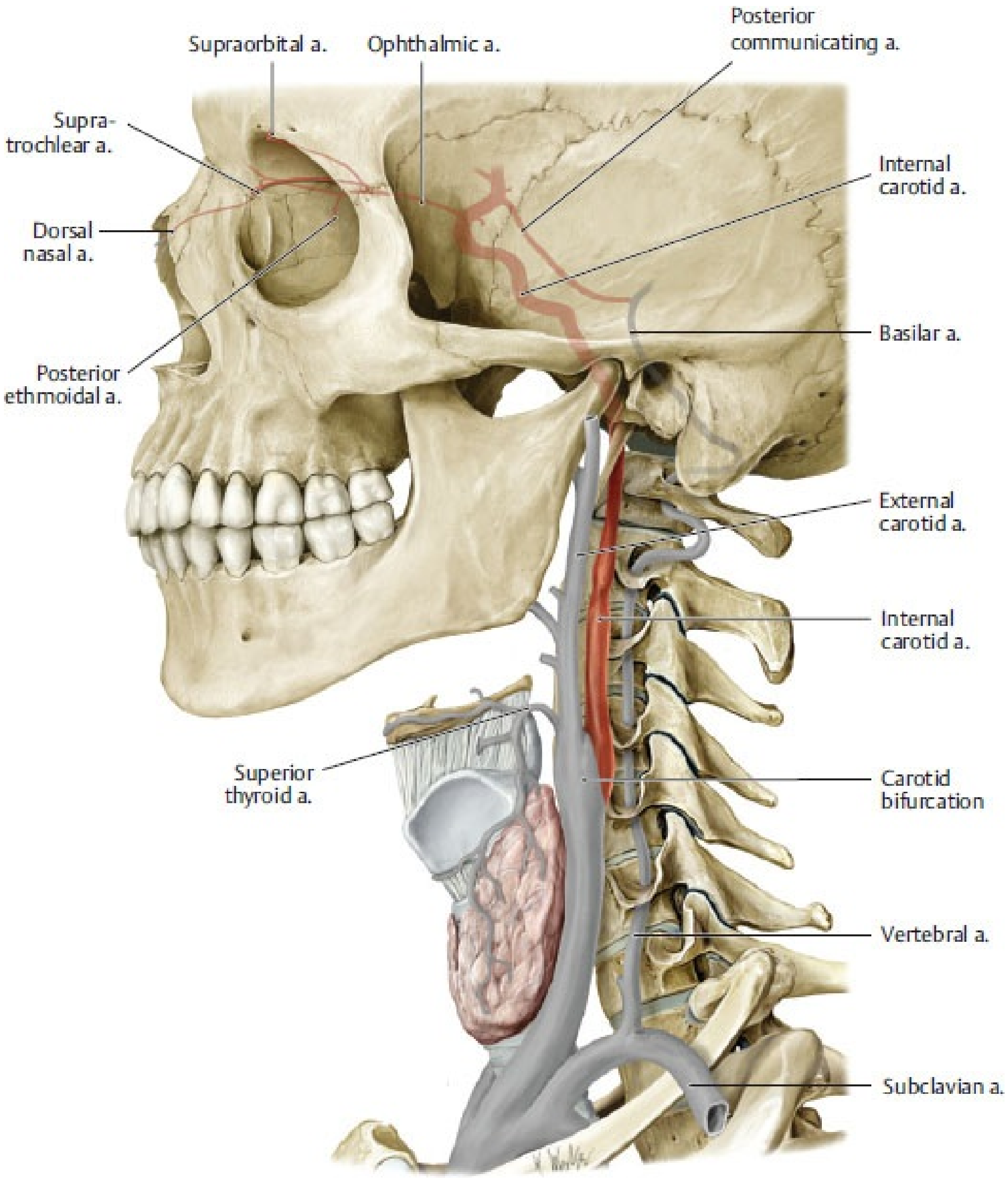

Supraorbital a.
Ophthalmic a.
Posterior communicating a.
Supra-trochlear a.
Internal carotid a.
Dorsal nasal a.
Basilar a.
Posterior ethmoidal a.
External carotid a.
Internal carotid a.
Superior thyroid a.
Carotid bifurcation
Vertebral a.
Subclavian a.

Fig. 24.24 Internal carotid artery

Left lateral view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

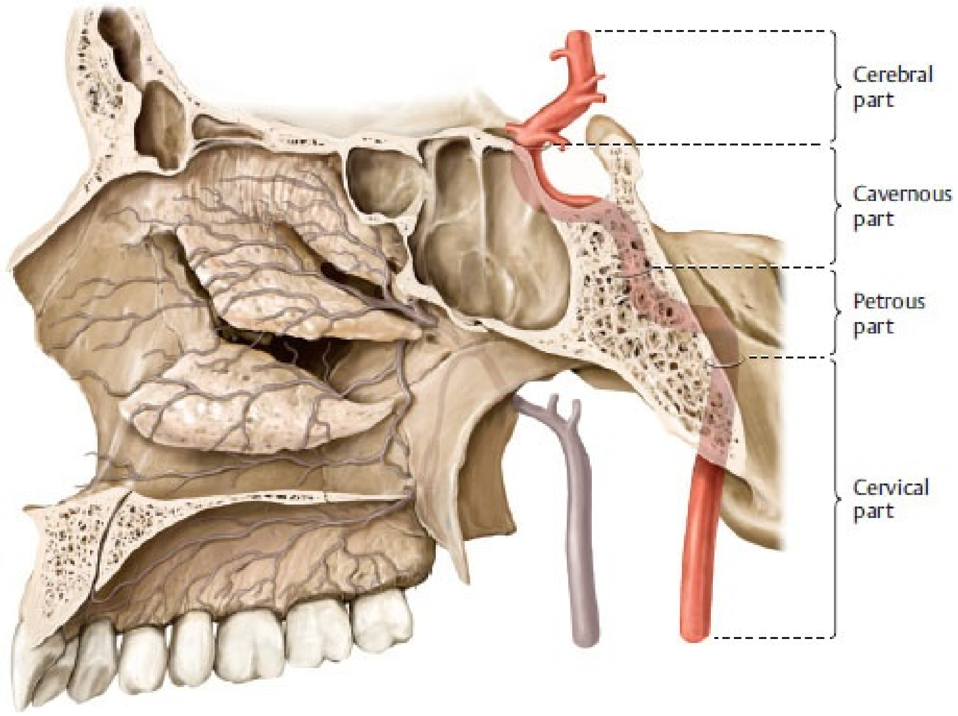
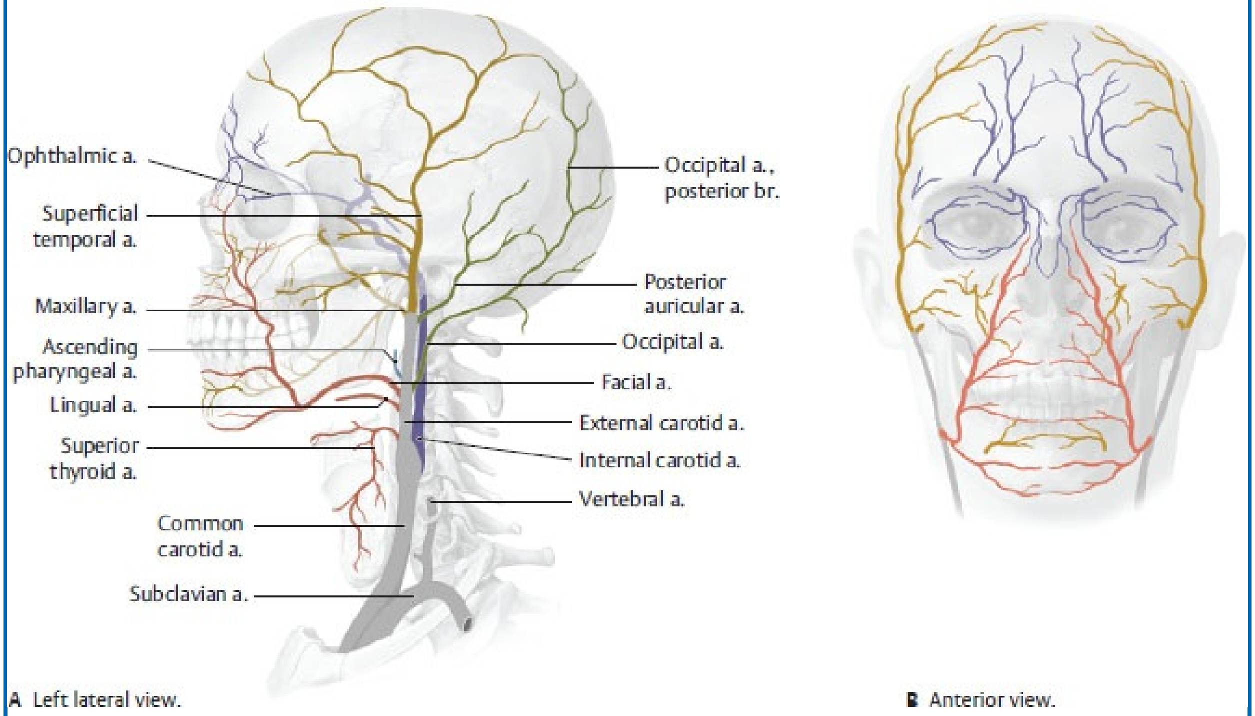


Fig. 24.25 Course of the internal carotid artery in the skull
Right side, medial view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 24.5: CLINICAL CORRELATION

ANASTOMOSES BETWEEN EXTERNAL CAROTID AND INTERNAL CAROTID ARTERIES

The external carotid artery supplies superficial and deep regions of the face, the nasal and oral cavities, and the neck, while the internal carotid artery supplies the brain and the orbit. There are areas of overlap and important anastomoses between these circulations that can become clinically significant, such as the collateralization of blood supply to the brain, the transmission of infections from the face to the cerebral circulation, and accurate ligation of the source of a nosebleed. Primary areas of anastomoses include branches of the facial artery and ophthalmic arteries in the orbit and the sphenopalatine and ethmoidal arteries on the nasal septum.


Ophthalmic a.
Superficial temporal a.
Maxillary a.
Ascending pharyngeal a.
Lingual a.
Superior thyroid a.
Common carotid a.
Subclavian a.
Occipital a., posterior br.
Posterior auricular a.
Occipital a.
Facial a.
External carotid a.
Internal carotid a.
Vertebral a.
A Left lateral view.
B Anterior view.

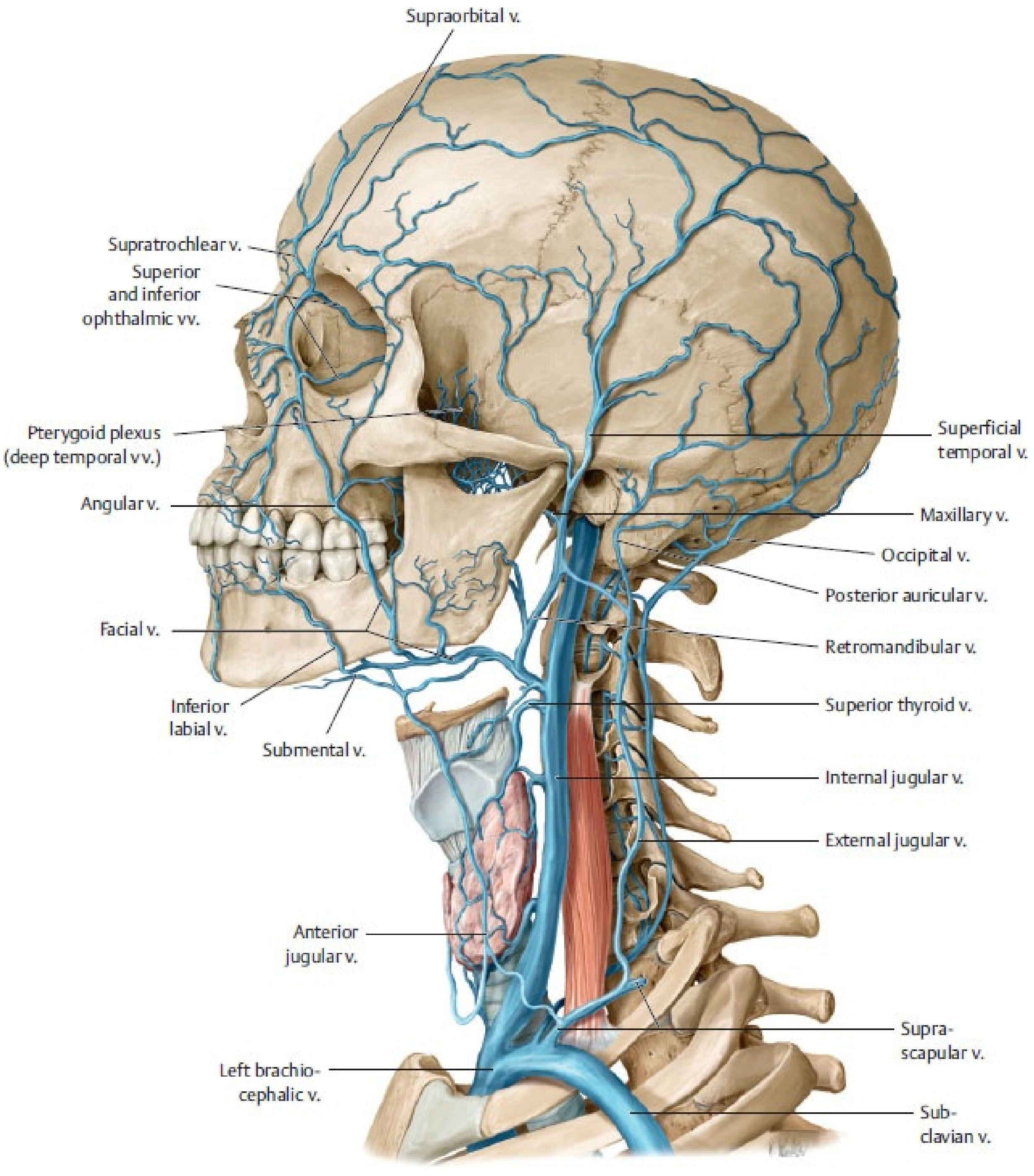
Anastomoses between branches of the external carotid and internal carotid arteries

Branches of the external carotid artery are grouped by color: anterior = red; medial = blue; posterior = green; terminal = brown. Branches of the external carotid artery (e.g. the facial artery, red) communicate with terminal branches of the internal carotid artery (e.g. the ophthalmic artery, purple). (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

24.4 Veins of the Head and Neck

- Superficial and deep veins of the head and neck drain almost exclusively to the external and internal jugular veins, although some also communicate with the vertebral venous plexus of the vertebral column (**Figs. 24.26** and **24.27**).
- Superficial veins generally follow the course of the arteries, but the veins are usually more numerous, more variable, and more interconnected than the arteries.
- The most prominent superficial veins on each side of the head include
  - the **supratrochlear** and **supraorbital veins**, which drain to the angular vein;

  - the **angular vein**, which joins with the deep facial vein and continues inferiorly as the facial vein;
  - the **pterygoid venous plexus**, which drains areas supplied by the maxillary artery, including the orbit, nasal cavity, and oral cavity (it drains to the maxillary and deep facial veins);
  - the **deep facial vein** which arises from the pterygoid venous plexus and drains to the facial vein;
  - the **facial vein**, which drains to the **internal jugular vein**;
  - the **superficial temporal** and **maxillary veins**, which join to form the retromandibular vein;
  - the **retromandibular vein**, which joins the **posterior auricular vein** to form the **external jugular vein**; and
  - the **occipital vein**, which drains to the external jugular vein.
- — Right and left external jugular veins form posterior to the angle of the mandible by the union of the posterior auricular veins and the posterior division of the retromandibular veins.
  - They cross the sternocleidomastoid muscle in the neck and drain into the subclavian vein.
  - They drain the scalp and side of the face.
  - Their tributaries include the retromandibular, posterior auricular, occipital, transverse cervical, suprascapular, and anterior jugular veins.
- — A right and left **internal jugular vein** forms at the jugular foramen at the skull base and descends within the carotid sheath with the common carotid artery and vagus nerve.
  - It joins the subclavian vein in the root of the neck to form the brachiocephalic vein. The junction of the internal jugular and subclavian veins is called the **jugulosubclavian junction**, or **venous angle**. The thoracic duct and right lymphatic duct terminate at this junction, respectively.
  - It drains the brain, the anterior face and scalp, and the viscera and deep muscles of the neck.



Supraorbital v.
Supratrochlear v.
Superior and inferior ophthalmic vv.
Pterygoid plexus (deep temporal vv.)
Angular v.
Facial v.
Inferior labial v.
Submental v.
Anterior jugular v.
Left brachio-cephalic v.
Superficial temporal v.
Maxillary v.
Occipital v.
Posterior auricular v.
Retromandibular v.
Superior thyroid v.
Internal jugular v.
External jugular v.
Supra-scapular v.
Sub-clavian v.

Fig. 24.26 Superficial veins of the head and neck

Left lateral view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- Its tributaries include the dural venous sinuses, facial vein, lingual vein, pharyngeal veins, and superior and middle thyroid veins.

- A small **anterior jugular vein** originates from superficial veins on each side near the hyoid bone.
  - It descends to the base of the neck and terminates in the external jugular or subclavian vein.
  - A **jugular venous arch** may connect the right and left anterior jugular veins at the base of the neck, above the sternum.
- Deep veins of the orbit and brain drain to **dural venous sinuses**, venous channels formed within the outer covering of the brain that have no arterial counterpart (see Section 18.1). Dural venous sinuses drain eventually to the internal jugular vein.

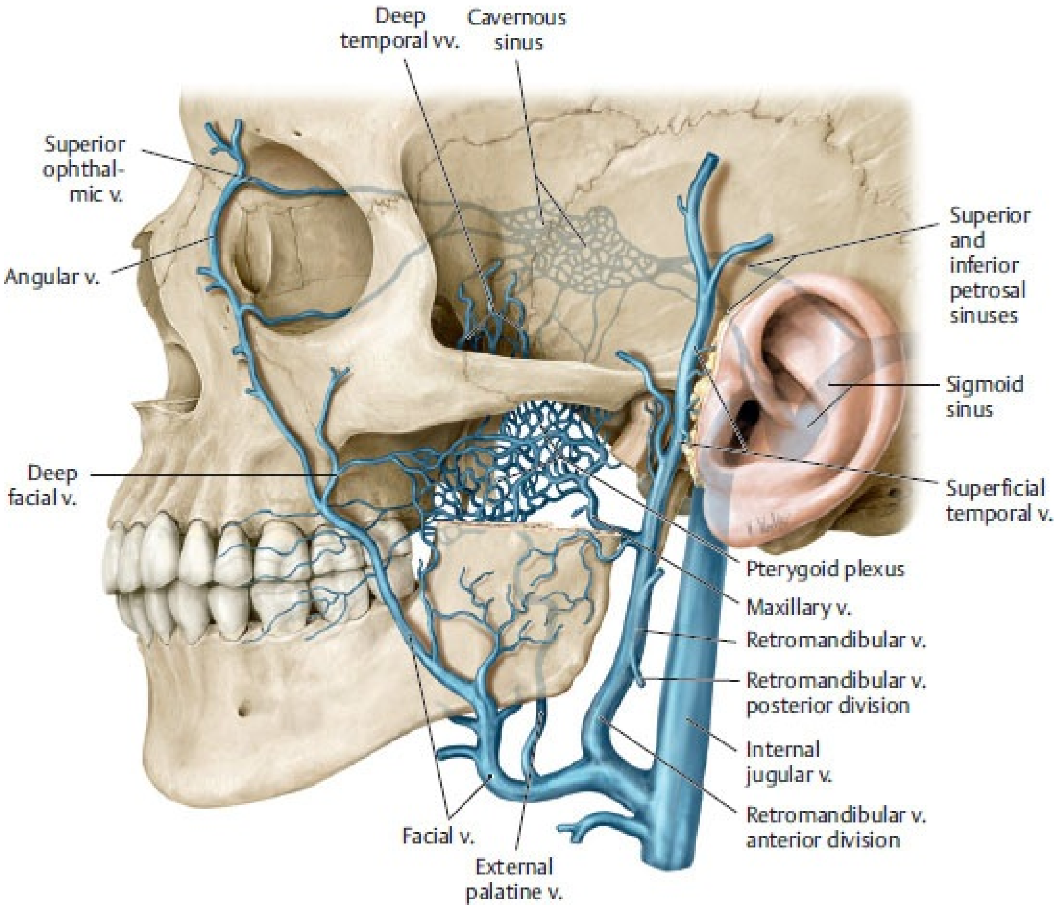

Deep temporal vv.
Cavernous sinus
Superior ophthal-mic v.
Angular v.
Deep facial v.
Superior and inferior petrosal sinuses
Sigmoid sinus
Superficial temporal v.
Pterygoid plexus
Maxillary v.
Retromandibular v.
Retromandibular v. posterior division
Internal jugular v.
Retromandibular v. anterior division
Facial v.
External palatine v.

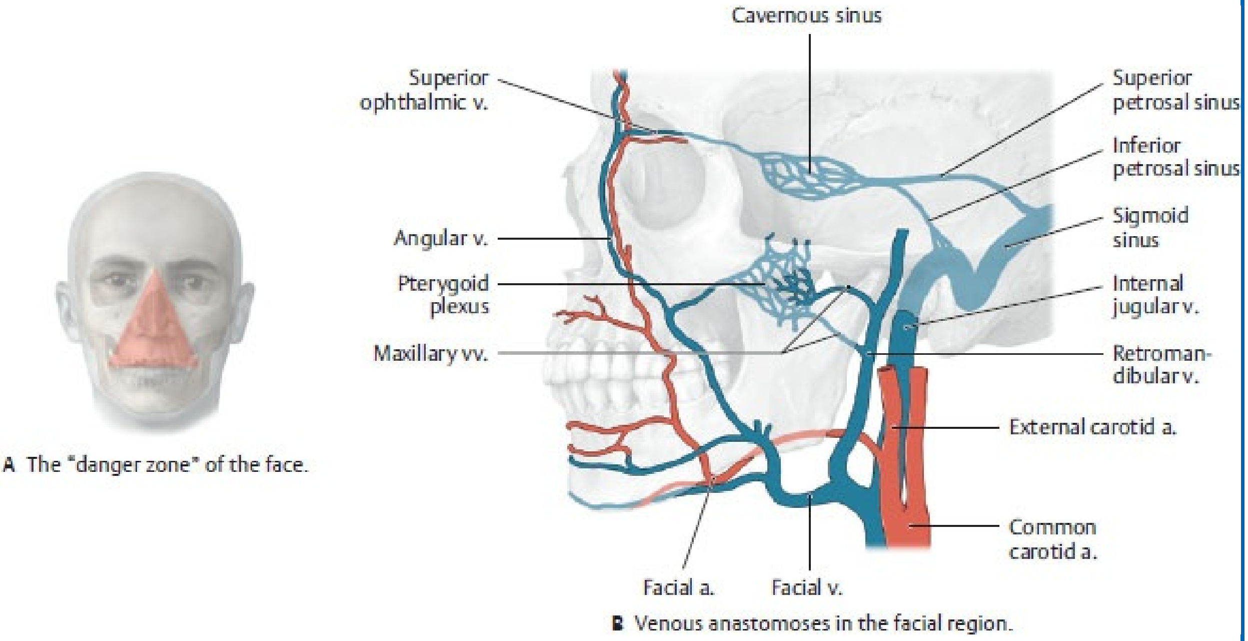
Fig. 24.27 Deep veins of the head

Left lateral view. The pterygoid plexus is a venous network situated between the mandibular ramus and the muscles of mastication. The cavernous sinus connects branches of the facial vein to the sigmoid sinuses. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 24.6: CLINICAL CORRELATION

VENOUS ANASTOMOSES AS PORTALS OF INFECTION

The extensive anastomoses between superficial veins of the face, and the deep veins of the head (e.g., pterygoid plexus) and dural sinuses (e.g., cavernous sinus) is clinically very important. Veins in the triangular danger zone of the face are, in general, valveless. Thus, bacterial infections from the face are easily disseminated into the cranial cavity. An infection on the lip, for example, may travel via the facial vein to the cavernous sinus, resulting in a cavernous sinus thrombosis (infection leading to clot formation that may occlude the sinus) or even meningitis.


Cavernous sinus
Superior ophthalmic v.
Superior petrosal sinus
Inferior petrosal sinus
Angular v.
Sigmoid sinus
Pterygoid plexus
Internal jugular v.
Maxillary vv.
Retromandibular v.
External carotid a.
Common carotid a.
Facial a.
Facial v.

A The "danger zone" of the face.

B Venous anastomoses in the facial region.

The "danger zone" and venous anastomoses in the facial region

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

24.5 Lymphatic Drainage of the Head and Neck

— Superficial lymph nodes of the head and neck extend along the external jugular vein.
  - They receive lymph from local areas and drain to the deep cervical

nodes.

- Superficial node groups include occipital, retroauricular, mastoid, parotid, anterior cervical, and lateral cervical nodes (**Fig. 24.28**; **Table 24.5**).

Table 24.5 Superficial Cervical Lymph Nodes

Lymph Node (l.n.)	Drainage Region
Retroauricular l.n.	Occiput
Occipital l.n.	
Mastoid l.n.	
Superficial parotid l.n.	Parotid-auricular region
Deep parotid l.n.	
Anterior superficial cervical l.n.	Sternocleidomastoid region
Lateral superficial cervical l.n.	

- Lymph from structures in the head and neck ultimately drains into **deep cervical lymph nodes** that lie along the internal jugular vein deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle (**Fig. 24.29**; **Table 24.6**). There are two groups of deep cervical nodes:
  - **Superior deep cervical nodes**, known as the jugulodigastric group, lie near the facial and internal jugular veins and posterior belly of the digastric muscle. Submandibular and submental nodes also drain to this group. Superior deep cervical nodes drain either to the inferior deep cervical nodes or directly to the jugular lymphatic trunks.
  - **Inferior deep cervical nodes** are usually associated with the lower internal jugular vein, but some nodes also reside in the area around the subclavian vein and brachial plexus. Inferior deep cervical nodes drain directly to the **jugular lymphatic trunks**.
- Lymphatic vessels from the deep cervical nodes join to form jugular lymphatic trunks.
  - On the right, these trunks drain directly or indirectly (via the right lymphatic duct) into the right jugulosubclavian junction (right venous angle).

- On the left, these trunks join the thoracic duct, which drains into the left jugulosubclavian junction (left venous angle).

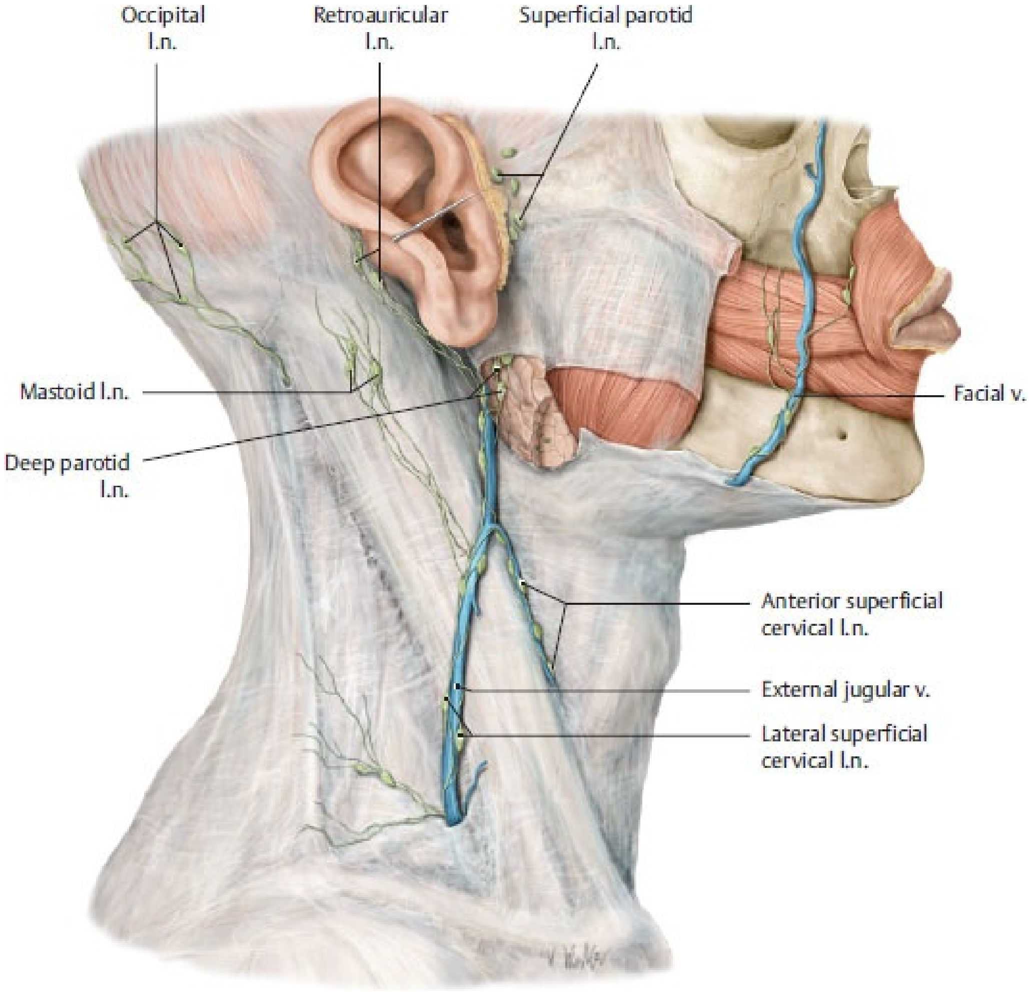

Occipital l.n.
Retroauricular l.n.
Superficial parotid l.n.
Mastoid l.n.
Deep parotid l.n.
Facial v.
Anterior superficial cervical l.n.
External jugular v.
Lateral superficial cervical l.n.

Fig. 24.28 Superficial cervical lymph nodes
Right lateral view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

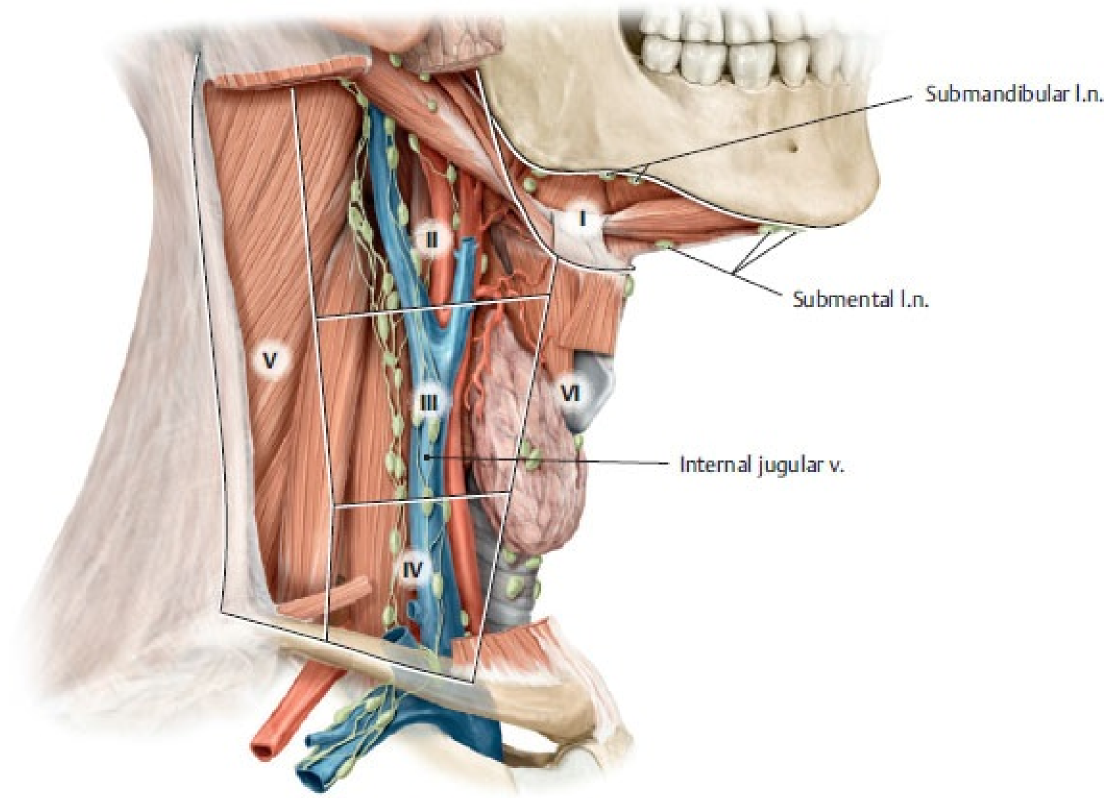


Fig. 24.29 Deep cervical lymph nodes
Right lateral view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

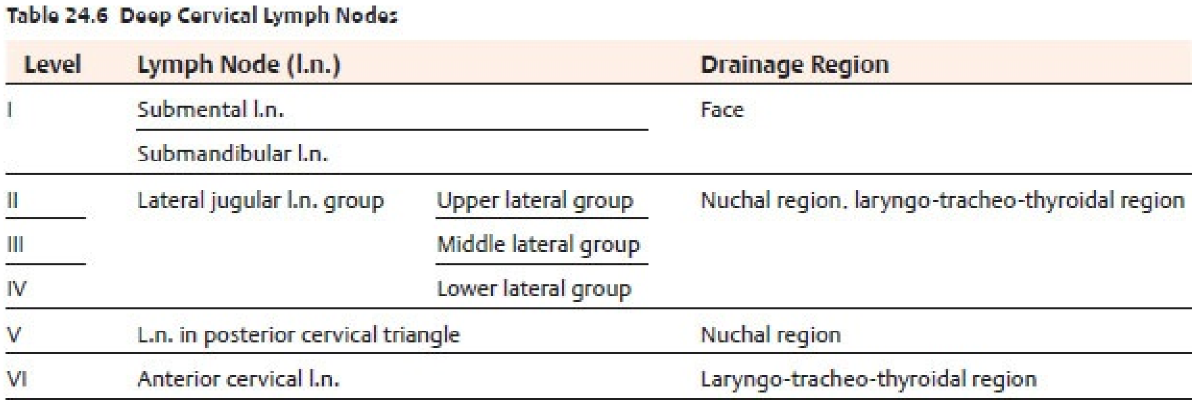


Table 24.6 Deep Cervical Lymph Nodes

Level	Lymph Node (l.n.)		Drainage Region
I	Submental l.n.		Face
	Submandibular l.n.		
II	Lateral jugular l.n. group	Upper lateral group	Nuchal region, laryngo-tracheo-thyroidal region
III		Middle lateral group	
IV		Lower lateral group	
V	L.n. in posterior cervical triangle		Nuchal region
VI	Anterior cervical l.n.		Laryngo-tracheo-thyroidal region

24.6 Nerves of the Head and Neck

Innervation of head and neck structures is a complex combination of somatic and autonomic nerves arising from the cervical spinal cord, cranial nerves, and the sympathetic trunk. A brief overview is provided here. For more detailed discussions see Section 26.3 (cranial nerves), Section 26.4 (autonomic innervation), and Section 25.4 (nerves of the neck).

- Somatic nerves of the head and neck include the following:
  - spinal nerves C1 through C4, which innervate structures in the head and neck
    - The **cervical plexus** is derived from anterior rami of cervical spinal nerves C1–C4.
    - The **suboccipital, greater occipital**, and **third occipital nerves** are derived from posterior rami of cervical spinal nerves.
  - spinal nerves C5 through T1, whose anterior rami form the brachial plexus that innervates the upper limb (see Section 18.4)
  - Cranial nerves (CN I to CN XII), which arise from the brain.
- Autonomic nerves of the head and neck include
  - parasympathetic nerves, which arise in association with four of the cranial nerves (CN III, VII, XI, and X), and
  - sympathetic nerves, which arise from the cervical sympathetic trunk.

25 The Neck

The neck extends from the base of the skull to the clavicles and manubrium. It contains vital neurovascular structures that supply the head, the thorax, and the upper limb. The neck also contains musculoskeletal elements that support and move the head and viscera of the gastrointestinal, respiratory, and endocrine systems.

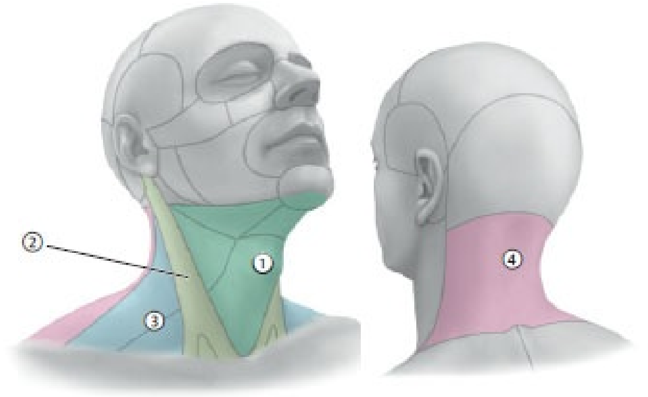
25.1 Regions of the Neck

The regions of the neck, defined by muscular and skeletal boundaries, are largely descriptive rather than functional, but they are useful for understanding the topographic relationships in the neck, which often play a significant role in medical practice (**Table 25.1**; **Figs. 25.1**). Refer to Section 25.8 for detailed anatomic relations of these regions.

- The **anterior cervical region** (anterior triangle) extends from the midline of the neck to the anterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle.
  - The region is further divided into **submandibular, submental, muscular**, and **carotid triangles**.
  - The anterior region contains most of the cervical viscera, which includes the lower pharynx, esophagus, larynx, trachea, thyroid, and parathyroid glands.
- The **sternocleidomastoid region** is a narrow area defined by the anterior and posterior borders of the sternocleidomastoid muscle.
  - Inferiorly, the sternal and clavicular heads of the muscle define the small **lesser supraclavicular fossa**.
  - This region contains parts of the major vascular structures of the neck.
- The **lateral cervical region** (posterior triangle) extends from the posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle to the anterior border of the trapezius muscle.
  - The posterior belly of the omohyoid muscle divides this region into **omoclavicular** and **occipital triangles**.
  - The scalene muscles and cervical and brachial plexuses are located in

this region.

- The **posterior cervical region** extends from the anterior border of the trapezius muscle to the posterior midline of the neck.
  - It contains the trapezius and suboccipital muscles, the vertebral artery, and posterior branches of the cervical plexus.
- The **root of neck**, a transition area for structures passing between the thorax and neck, is enclosed by the superior thoracic aperture, which is formed by the manubrium, the first ribs and their costal cartilages, and the first thoracic vertebra.
  - It contains the trachea, esophagus, common carotid and subclavian arteries, brachiocephalic veins, vagus and phrenic nerves, the sympathetic trunk, the thoracic duct, and the apex of each lung.



A Right anterior oblique view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

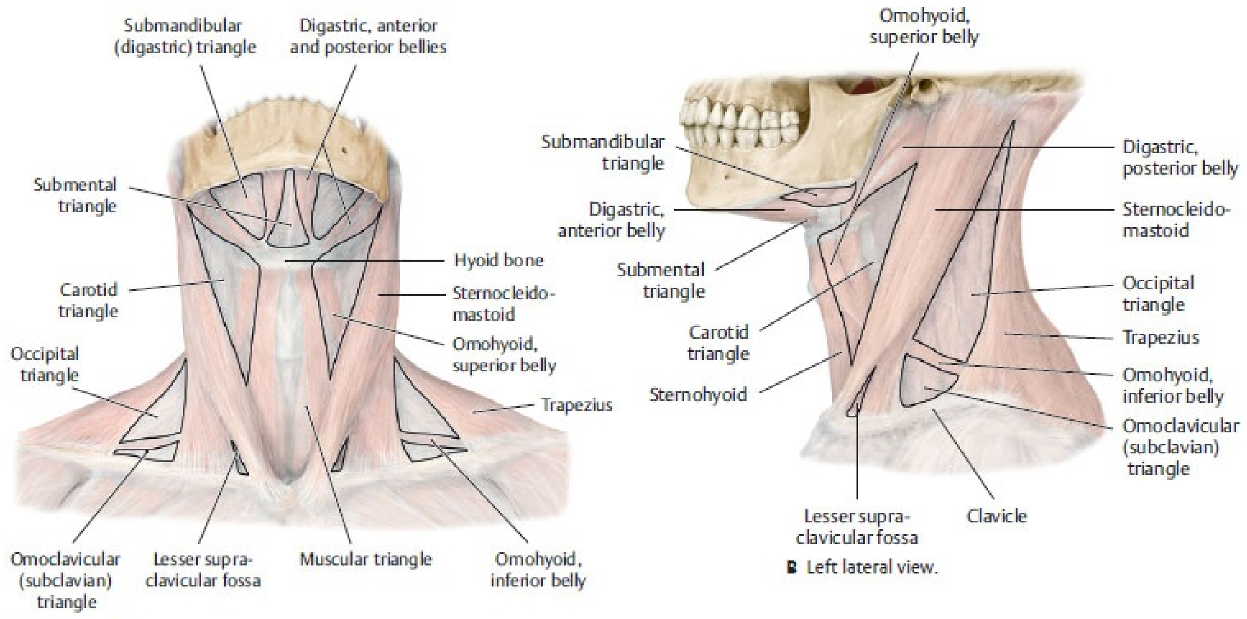
B Left posterior oblique view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Table 25.1 Regions of the Neck

Region	Divisions	Contents
① Anterior cervical region (triangle)	Submandibular (digastric) triangle	Submandibular gland and lymph nodes, hypoglossal n. (CN XII), facial a. and v.
	Submental triangle	Submental lymph nodes
	Muscular triangle	Sternothyroid and sternohyoid muscles,

			thyroid and parathyroid glands
		Carotid triangle	Carotid bifurcation, carotid body, hypoglossal (CN XII) and vagus (CN X) nn.
②	Sternocleidomastoid region*		Sternocleidomastoid, common carotid a., internal jugular v., vagus n. (CN X), jugular lymph nodes
③	Lateral cervical region (posterior triangle)	Omoclavicular (subclavian) triangle	Subclavian a., subscapular a., supraclavicular l.n.
		Occipital triangle	Accessory n. (CN XI), trunks of brachial plexus, transverse cervical a., cervical plexus (posterior branches)
④	Posterior cervical region		Nuchal muscles, vertebral a., cervical plexus

* The sternocleidomastoid region also contains the lesser supraclavicular fossa.


Submandibular (digastric) triangle
Digastric, anterior and posterior bellies
Submental triangle
Hyoid bone
Carotid triangle
Sternocleido-mastoid
Omohyoid, superior belly
Occipital triangle
Trapezius
Omoclavicular (subclavian) triangle
Lesser supra-clavicular fossa
Muscular triangle
Omohyoid, inferior belly
Omohyoid, superior belly
Submandibular triangle
Digastric, anterior belly
Submental triangle
Carotid triangle
Sternohyoid
Digastric, posterior belly
Sternocleido-mastoid
Occipital triangle
Trapezius
Omohyoid, inferior belly
Omoclavicular (subclavian) triangle
Lesser supra-clavicular fossa
Clavicle

A Anterior view.

B Left lateral view.

Fig. 25.1 Cervical regions
(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

25.2 Deep Fascia of the Neck

The **deep cervical fascia** is divided into four layers that surround and compartmentalize the structures of the neck (**Fig. 25.2**; **Table 25.2**).

- The **investing** (superficial) **layer of the deep fascia** of the neck, a thin layer that lies deep to the skin, surrounds the entire neck but splits to enclose the sternocleidomastoid and trapezius muscles and contains cutaneous nerves, superficial vessels, and superficial lymphatics of the neck.
- The **pretracheal fascia** in the anterior neck has a muscular lamina (layer) that encloses the infrahyoid muscles and a visceral lamina that encloses the viscera of the anterior neck.
- The **prevertebral fascia** surrounds the vertebral column and the deep neck muscles and is continuous with the **nuchal fascia** posteriorly.
- The **carotid sheath**, a condensation of the pretracheal, prevertebral, and investing fasciae, forms a narrow cylindrical tube that encloses the neurovascular bundle of the neck: the internal jugular vein, common carotid artery, and vagus nerve.
- The **retropharyngeal space**, a potential space between the visceral layer of the pretracheal fascia and the prevertebral fascia, extends from the base of the skull superiorly to the superior mediastinum inferiorly.

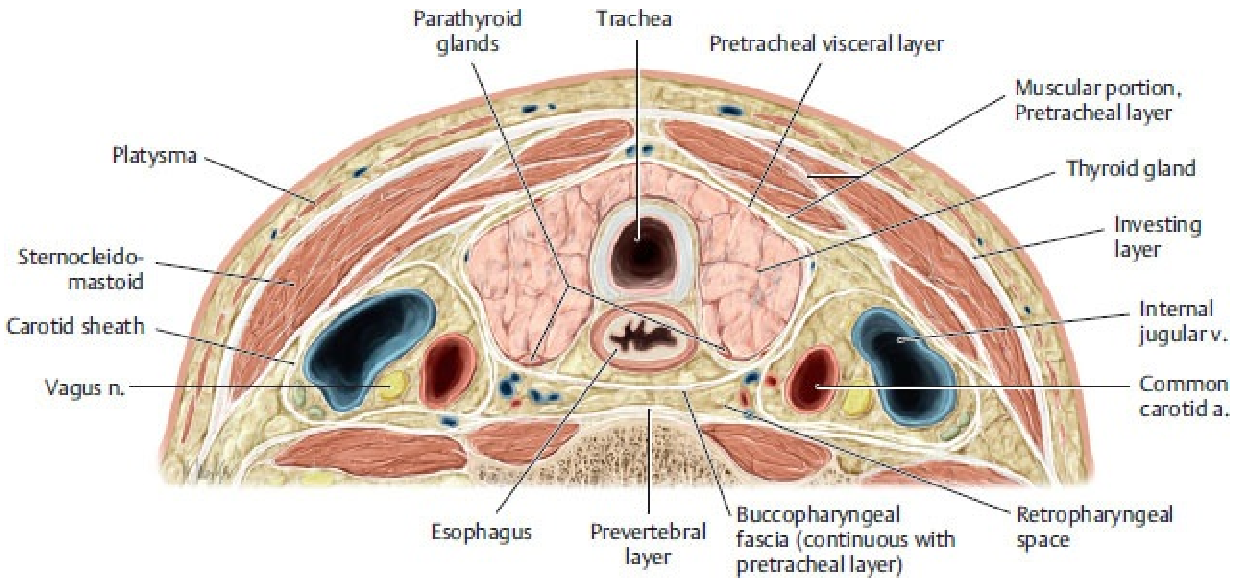
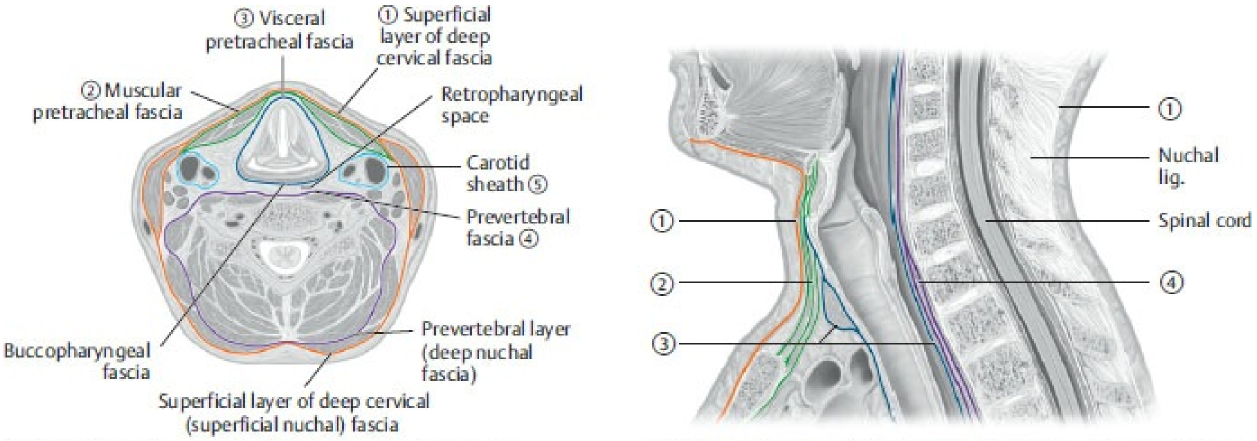

Parathyroid glands
Trachea
Pretracheal visceral layer
Muscular portion, Pretracheal layer
Platysma
Thyroid gland
Investing layer
Sternocleido-mastoid
Internal jugular v.
Carotid sheath
Vagus n.
Common carotid a.
Esophagus
Prevertebral layer
Buccopharyngeal fascia (continuous with pretracheal layer)
Retropharyngeal space

Fig. 25.2 Fascial layers in the anterior neck
Transverse section of the neck at the level of C6, superior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


③ Visceral pretracheal fascia
① Superficial layer of deep cervical fascia
② Muscular pretracheal fascia
Retropharyngeal space
Carotid sheath ⑤
Prevertebral fascia ④
Buccopharyngeal fascia
Prevertebral layer (deep nuchal fascia)
Superficial layer of deep cervical (superficial nuchal) fascia
①
Nuchal lig.
Spinal cord
①
②
④
③

A Transverse section at level of C5 vertebra. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

B Midsagittal section, left lateral view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Table 25.2 Deep Cervical Fascia
The deep cervical fascia is divided into four layers that enclose the structures of the neck.

Layer	Type of Fascia	Description
○ ① Investing (superficial) layer	Muscular	Envelopes entire neck; splits to enclose sternocleidomastoid and

		trapezius muscles
Pretracheal layer	○ ② Muscular	Encloses infrahyoid muscles
	○ ③ Visceral	Surrounds thyroid gland, larynx, trachea, pharynx, and esophagus
○ ④ Prevertebral layer	Muscular	Surrounds cervical vertebral column and associated muscles
○ ⑤ Carotid sheath	Neurovascular	Encloses common carotid artery, internal jugular vein, and vagus nerve

25.3 Muscles of the Neck

- Three muscles form the most superficial muscular layer of the neck (**Fig. 25.3**; **Table 25.3**):
  - The **platysma**, enclosed within the superficial fascia of the neck, is a muscle of facial expression, and therefore a subcutaneous muscle, that extends onto the anterolateral surfaces of the neck.
  - The **sternocleidomastoid muscle**, enclosed within the investing layer of the deep cervical fascia, is a visible landmark that divides the neck into anterior and lateral cervical regions.
  - The trapezius, also within the investing fascial layer, is a muscle of the shoulder girdle that extends onto the neck and forms the posterior border of the lateral cervical region.
- Muscles attached to the hyoid bone lie between the superficial and deep neck muscles.
  - **Suprahyoid muscles**, the **digastric, stylohyoid, mylohyoid, geniohyoid**, and **hyoglossus**, form the floor of the mouth and elevate the hyoid and larynx during swallowing and phonation (see **Table 27.9**).
  - **Infrahyoid muscles** in the neck, **omohyoid, sternohyoid, sternothyroid**, and **thyrohyoid**, depress the hyoid and larynx during swallowing and phonation (**Fig. 25.4**; **Table 25.4**).
- The deep muscles of the neck lie deep to the prevertebral fascia and include the prevertebral and scalene muscles (**Fig. 25.5**; **Table 25.5**).

BOX 25.1: CLINICAL CORRELATION

CONGENITAL TORTICOLLIS

Congenital torticollis (wryneck) is a condition in which one of the sternocleidomastoid (SCM) muscles is abnormally short, causing the head to tilt to one side with the chin pointing upward to the opposite side. This shortening is thought to be the result of trauma at birth (tears or stretching of the SCM muscle) causing bleeding and swelling within the muscle and subsequent scar tissue formation.

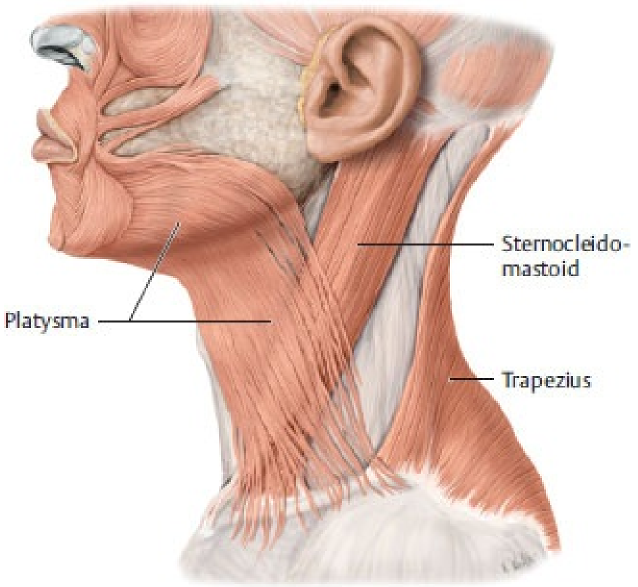


Fig. 25.3 Superficial musculature of the neck

Left lateral view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

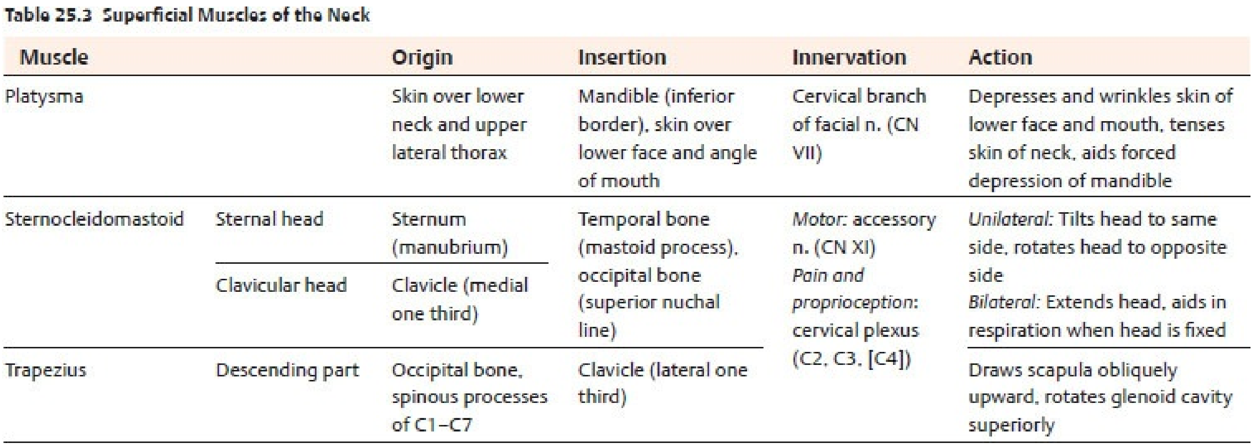


Table 25.3 Superficial Muscles of the Neck

Muscle		Origin	Insertion	Innervation	Action
Platysma		Skin over lower neck and upper lateral thorax	Mandible (inferior border), skin over lower face and angle of mouth	Cervical branch of facial n. (CN VII)	Depresses and wrinkles skin of lower face and mouth, tenses skin of neck, aids forced depression of mandible
Sternocleidomastoid	Sternal head	Sternum (manubrium)	Temporal bone (mastoid process), occipital bone (superior nuchal line)	*Motor:* accessory n. (CN XI) *Pain and proprioception:* cervical plexus (C2, C3, [C4])	*Unilateral:* Tilts head to same side, rotates head to opposite side *Bilateral:* Extends head, aids in respiration when head is fixed
	Clavicular head	Clavicle (medial one third)			
Trapezius	Descending part	Occipital bone, spinous processes of C1–C7	Clavicle (lateral one third)		Draws scapula obliquely upward, rotates glenoid cavity superiorly

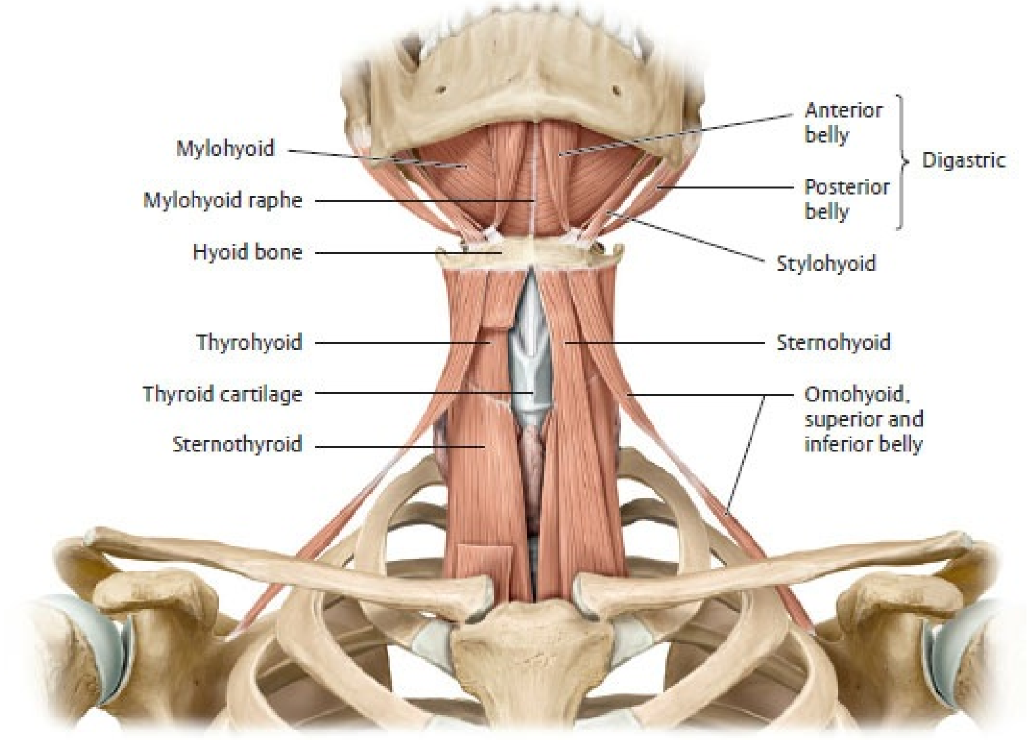

Mylohyoid
Mylohyoid raphe
Hyoid bone
Thyrohyoid
Thyroid cartilage
Sternothyroid
Anterior belly
Posterior belly
Digastric
Stylohyoid
Sternohyoid
Omohyoid, superior and inferior belly

Fig. 25.4 Suprahyoid and infrahyoid muscles
Anterior view. The sternohyoid has been cut on the right side. See Table 27.9 for the suprahyoid muscles. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

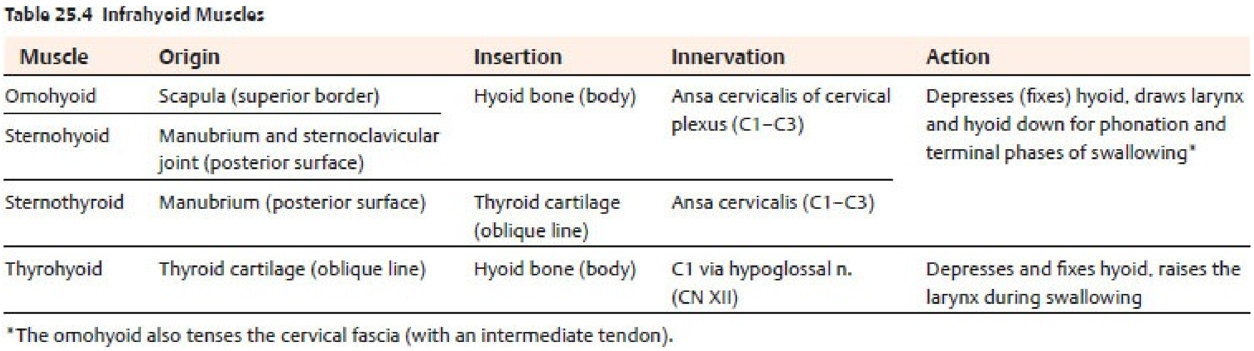


Table 25.4 Infrahyoid Muscles

Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Innervation	Action
Omohyoid	Scapula (superior border)	Hyoid bone (body)	Ansa cervicalis of cervical plexus (C1–C3)	Depresses (fixes) hyoid, draws larynx and hyoid down for phonation and terminal phases of swallowing*
Sternohyoid	Manubrium and sternoclavicular joint (posterior surface)			
Sternothyroid	Manubrium (posterior surface)	Thyroid cartilage (oblique line)	Ansa cervicalis (C1–C3)	
Thyrohyoid	Thyroid cartilage (oblique line)	Hyoid bone (body)	C1 via hypoglossal n. (CN XII)	Depresses and fixes hyoid, raises the larynx during swallowing

*The omohyoid also tenses the cervical fascia (with an intermediate tendon).

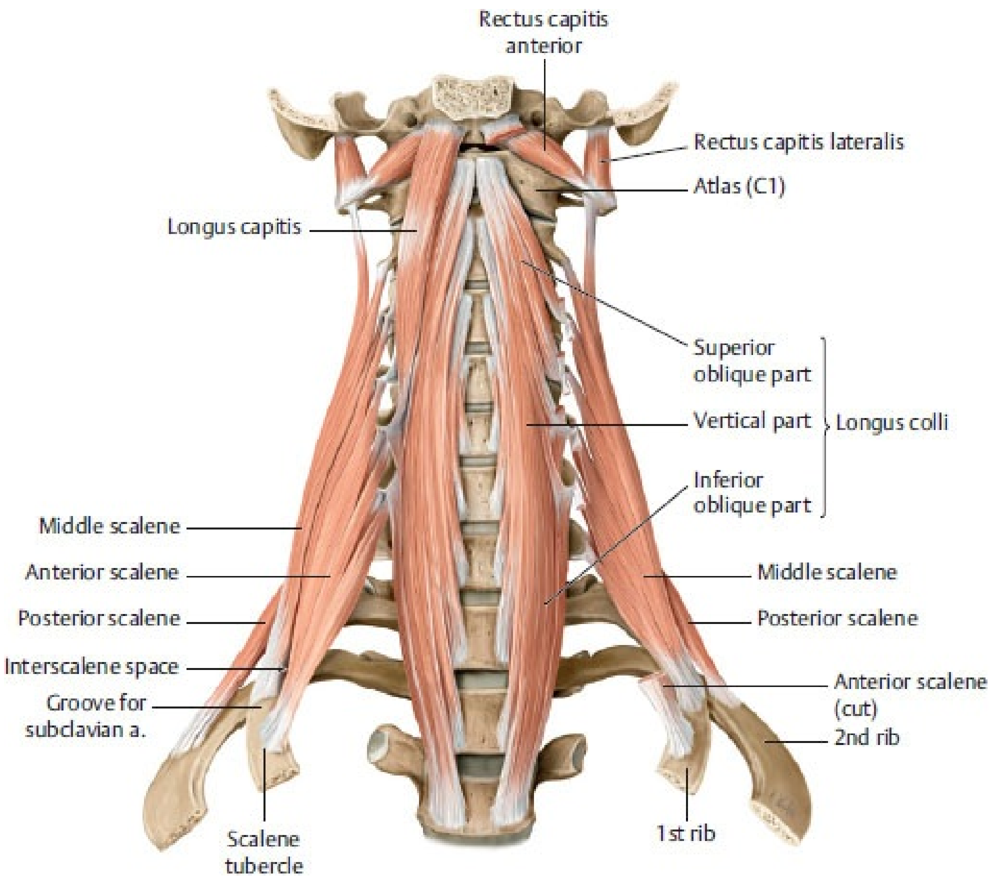

Rectus capitis anterior
Rectus capitis lateralis
Atlas (C1)
Longus capitis
Superior oblique part
Vertical part
Inferior oblique part
Longus colli
Middle scalene
Anterior scalene
Posterior scalene
Interscalene space
Groove for subclavian a.
Scalene tubercle
Middle scalene
Posterior scalene
Anterior scalene (cut)
2nd rib
1st rib

Fig. 25.5 Deep muscles of the neck
Prevertebral and scalene muscles, anterior view. *Removed from left side*: Longus capitis and anterior scalene. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

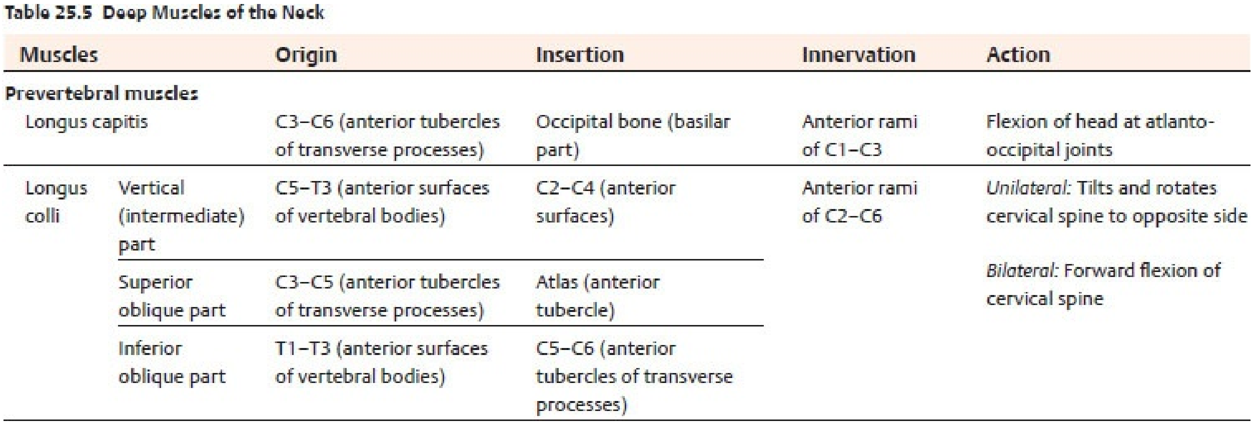
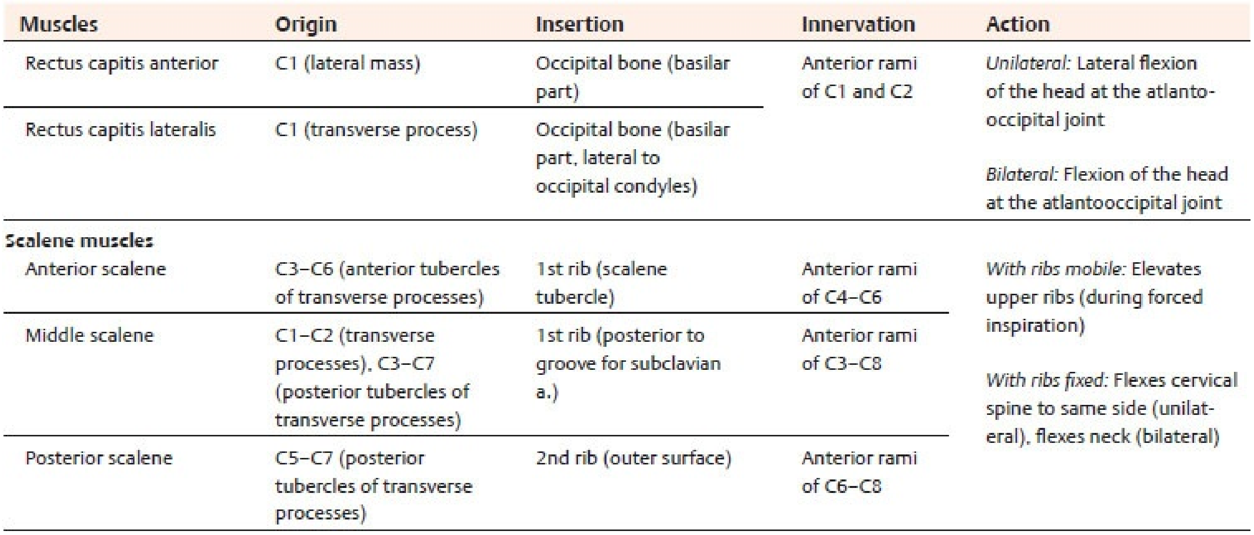


Table 25.5 Deep Muscles of the Neck

Muscles		Origin	Insertion	Innervation	Action
Prevertebral muscles					
Longus capitis		C3–C6 (anterior tubercles of transverse processes)	Occipital bone (basilar part)	Anterior rami of C1–C3	Flexion of head at atlanto-occipital joints
Longus colli	Vertical (intermediate) part	C5–T3 (anterior surfaces of vertebral bodies)	C2–C4 (anterior surfaces)	Anterior rami of C2–C6	*Unilateral:* Tilts and rotates cervical spine to opposite side *Bilateral:* Forward flexion of cervical spine
	Superior oblique part	C3–C5 (anterior tubercles of transverse processes)	Atlas (anterior tubercle)		
	Inferior oblique part	T1–T3 (anterior surfaces of vertebral bodies)	C5–C6 (anterior tubercles of transverse processes)		

Table 25.5 *(continued)* **Deep Muscles of the Neck**



Muscles	Origin	Insertion	Innervation	Action
Rectus capitis anterior	C1 (lateral mass)	Occipital bone (basilar part)	Anterior rami of C1 and C2	*Unilateral:* Lateral flexion of the head at the atlanto-occipital joint *Bilateral:* Flexion of the head at the atlantooccipital joint
Rectus capitis lateralis	C1 (transverse process)	Occipital bone (basilar part, lateral to occipital condyles)		
Scalene muscles				
Anterior scalene	C3–C6 (anterior tubercles of transverse processes)	1st rib (scalene tubercle)	Anterior rami of C4–C6	*With ribs mobile:* Elevates upper ribs (during forced inspiration) *With ribs fixed:* Flexes cervical spine to same side (unilateral), flexes neck (bilateral)
Middle scalene	C1–C2 (transverse processes), C3–C7 (posterior tubercles of transverse processes)	1st rib (posterior to groove for subclavian a.)	Anterior rami of C3–C8	
Posterior scalene	C5–C7 (posterior tubercles of transverse processes)	2nd rib (outer surface)	Anterior rami of C6–C8	

25.4 Nerves of the Neck

Nerves of the neck include cervical and thoracic spinal nerves, nerves from the cervical sympathetic trunk, and cranial nerves.

Cervical Nerves

The C1–C4 spinal nerves supply the regions of the neck (**Table 25.6**).

— Anterior rami of C1–C4 cervical spinal nerves form the **cervical plexus**, which has sensory and motor components.

  - The sensory nerves of the plexus, the **lesser occipital** (C2), **great auricular** (C2–C3), **transverse cervical** (C2–C3), and **supraclavicular nerves** (C3–C4), innervate the skin of the anterior and lateral neck and lateral scalp. They emerge from behind the midpoint of the posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle, a location known as the **nerve point of the neck** (or Erb’s point) (**Fig. 25.6**).
  - The **ansa cervicalis** (C1–C3), the motor part of the plexus, which has a superior and inferior root, innervates all of the infrahyoid muscles except the thyrohyoid and usually lies anterior to the internal jugular vein (**Fig. 25.7**).

— The phrenic nerve, which arises from anterior rami of C3–C5 spinal nerves, descends on the surface of the anterior scalene muscle and enters the thorax, where it supplies the diaphragm with sensory and motor innervation. It also transmits sensation from the mediastinal and diaphragmatic pleura and fibrous and parietal pericardium.

— Posterior rami of cervical spinal nerves C1 through C3 form three nerves that provide motor and cutaneous innervation to the posterior neck and scalp: the **suboccipital** (C1), **greater occipital** (C2), and **3rd occipital nerves** (C3) (**Fig. 25.8**).

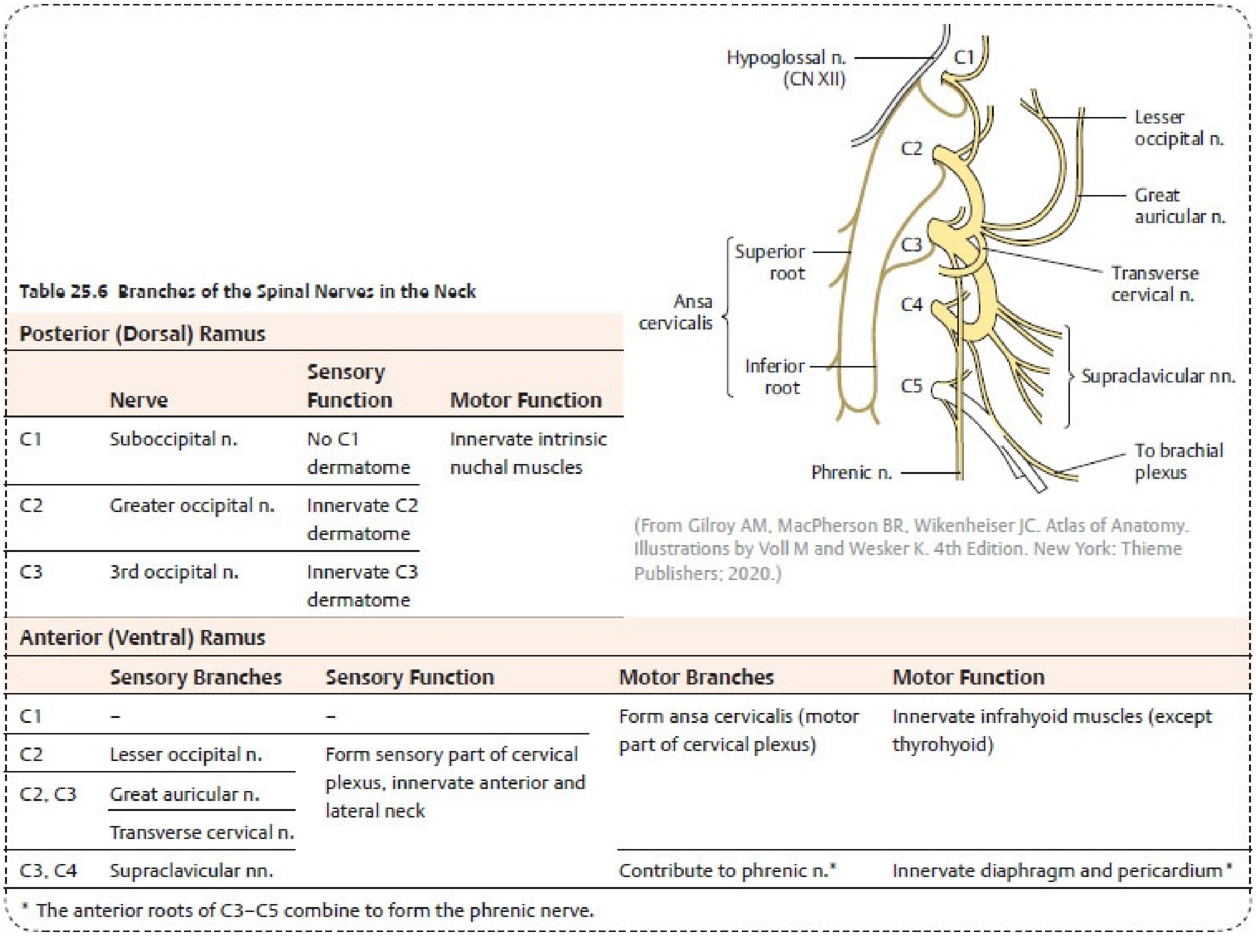
Brachial Plexus

The brachial plexus, which innervates the upper limb, forms from the anterior rami of C5–T1. It emerges through the **interscalene groove** (the space between the anterior and middle scalene muscles) in the lateral region of the neck before continuing into the axilla (see Section 18.4). Normally four branches arise from the supraclavicular part of the plexus to supply muscles of the shoulder and pectoral girdle as it traverses the neck: the dorsal scapular n., suprascapular n., n. to the subclavius, and long thoracic n.

The Cervical Sympathetic Trunk

The cervical sympathetic trunk, a continuation of the thoracic sympathetic trunk, extends into the neck to the level of the C1 vertebra, where it lies anterolateral to the vertebral column and posterior to the carotid sheath (see **Figs. 25.18** and **25.20**).

— The cervical sympathetic trunk receives no white rami communicans from cervical spinal nerves. The preganglionic fibers that synapse in the cervical ganglia originate in thoracic spinal nerves and ascend in the sympathetic trunk to the cervical region.


Hypoglossal n. (CN XII)
C1
C2
C3
C4
C5
Lesser occipital n.
Great auricular n.
Transverse cervical n.
Superior root
Ansa cervicalis
Inferior root
Supraclavicular nn.
To brachial plexus
Phrenic n.

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th Edition. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Table 25.6 Branches of the Spinal Nerves in the Neck

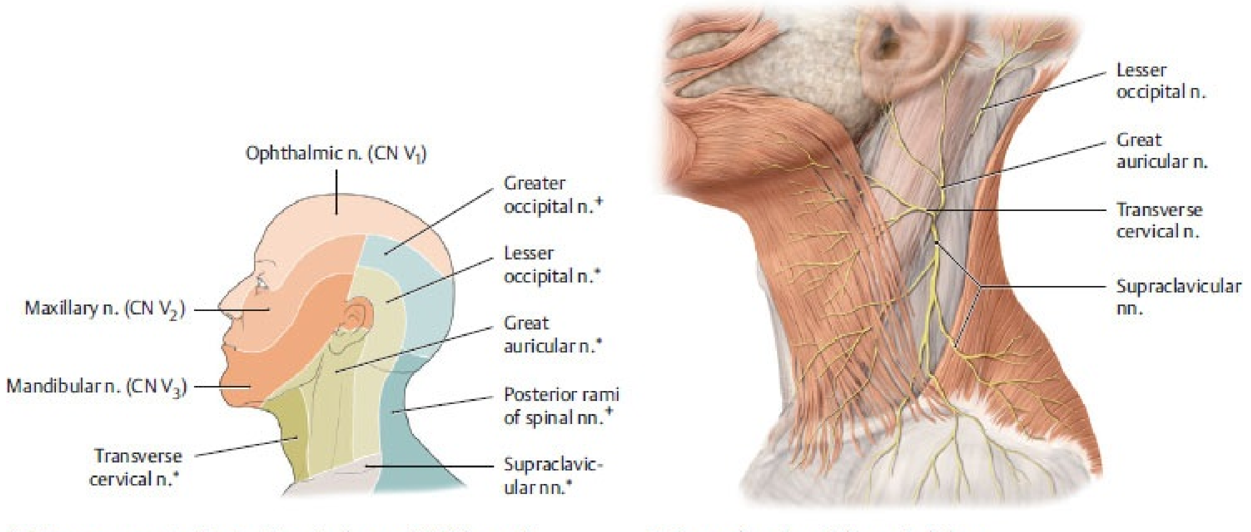
Posterior (Dorsal) Ramus

	Nerve	Sensory Function	Motor Function
C1	Suboccipital n.	No C1 dermatome	Innervate intrinsic nuchal muscles
C2	Greater occipital n.	Innervate C2 dermatome	
C3	3rd occipital n.	Innervate C3 dermatome	

Anterior (Ventral) Ramus

	Sensory Branches	Sensory Function	Motor Branches	Motor Function
C1	–	–	Form ansa cervicalis (motor part of cervical plexus)	Innervate infrahyoid muscles (except thyrohyoid)
C2	Lesser occipital n.	Form sensory part of cervical plexus, innervate anterior and lateral neck		
C2, C3	Great auricular n.			
	Transverse cervical n.			
C3, C4	Supraclavicular nn.		Contribute to phrenic n.*	Innervate diaphragm and pericardium*

* The anterior roots of C3–C5 combine to form the phrenic nerve.


Ophthalmic n. (CN V_1)
Greater occipital n.+
Maxillary n. (CN V_2)
Lesser occipital n.*
Great auricular n.*
Mandibular n. (CN V_3)
Posterior rami of spinal nn.+
Transverse cervical n.*
Supraclavicular nn.*
Lesser occipital n.
Great auricular n.
Transverse cervical n.
Supraclavicular nn.

A Cutaneous nerve territories. Trigeminal nerve, CN V_3 (*orange*), posterior rami (+), anterior rami (*).

B Sensory branches of the cervical plexus.

Fig. 25.6 Sensory innervation of the anterolateral neck

Left lateral view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme

Publishers; 2020.)

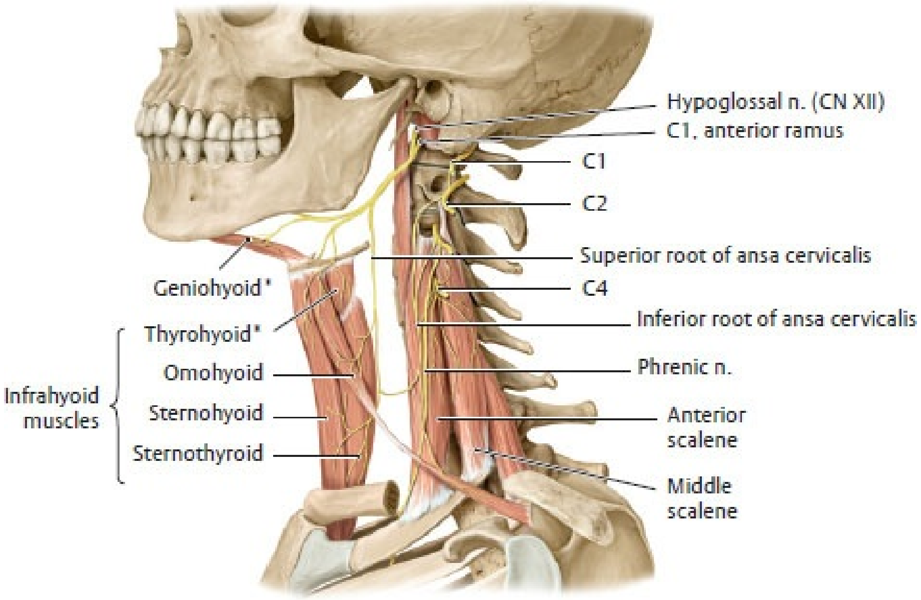
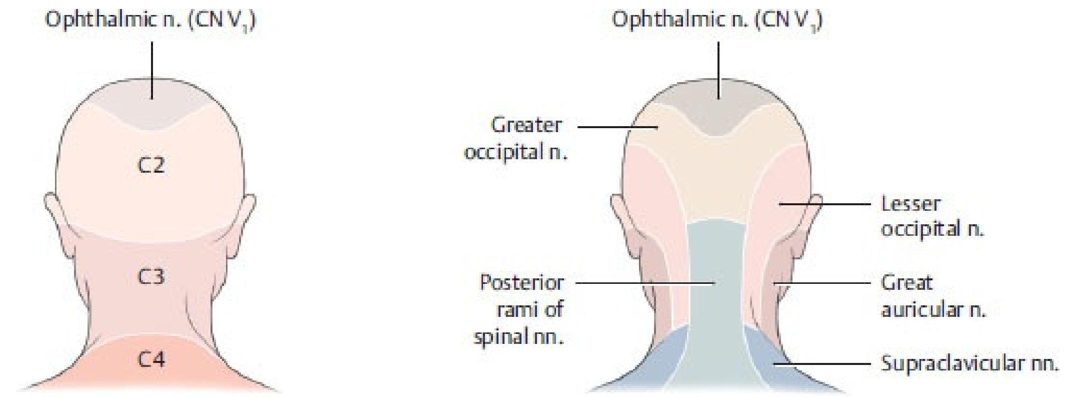

Hypoglossal n. (CN XII)
C1, anterior ramus
C1
C2
Superior root of ansa cervicalis
C4
Inferior root of ansa cervicalis
Phrenic n.
Anterior scalene
Middle scalene
Geniohyoid*
Thyrohyoid*
Omohyoid
Sternohyoid
Sternothyroid
Infrahyoid muscles

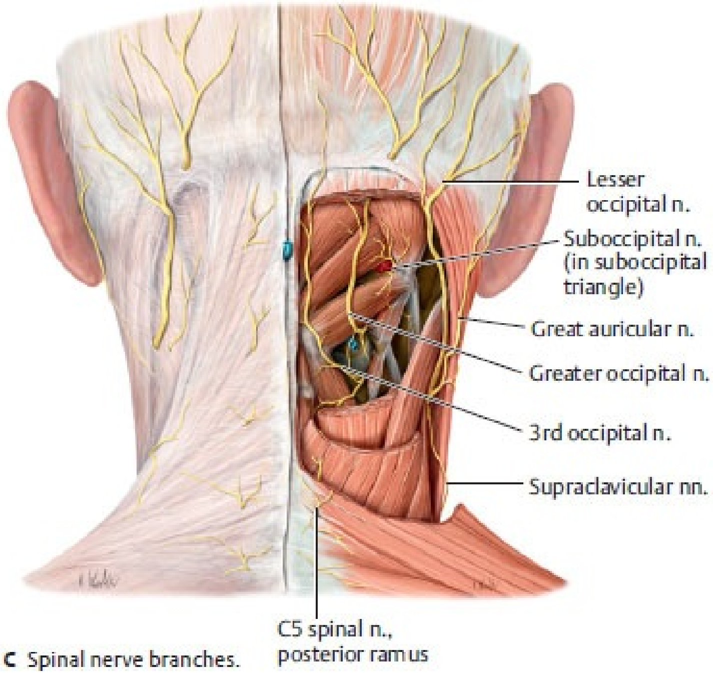
Fig. 25.7 Motor nerves of the cervical plexus

Left lateral view. *Innervated by the anterior ramus of C1 (distributed by the hypoglossal n.). (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Ophthalmic n. (CN V_1)
C2
C3
C4
Ophthalmic n. (CN V_1)
Greater occipital n.
Lesser occipital n.
Posterior rami of spinal nn.
Great auricular n.
Supraclavicular nn.

A Dermatomes.

B Cutaneus nerve territories.


Lesser occipital n.
Suboccipital n. (in suboccipital triangle)
Great auricular n.
Greater occipital n.
3rd occipital n.
Supraclavicular nn.
C5 spinal n., posterior ramus

C Spinal nerve branches.

Fig. 25.8 Sensory innervation of the nuchal region

Posterior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

— Postganglionic fibers from the cervical sympathetic ganglia are distributed along three routes:
  - Via gray rami communicans to join cervical spinal nerves
  - Via cervical cardiac (cardiopulmonary) nerves to the cardiac plexus in the thorax
  - Via sympathetic nerve plexuses surrounding vessels (periarterial plexuses), especially along the external carotid, internal carotid, and vertebral arteries, to supply structures of the head and neck (see Section

26.4)

- The cervical sympathetic trunk has superior, middle, and inferior ganglia.
  - The **superior cervical ganglion** lies anterior to C1 vertebra and posterior to the internal carotid artery. Its branches include
    - the **superior cervical sympathetic cardiac nerve**,
    - branches to the **pharyngeal nerve plexus**,
    - an **internal carotid nerve** that forms the **internal carotid plexus**, and
    - an **external carotid nerve** that forms the **external carotid plexus**.
    - gray rami communicans that join anterior rami of C1–C4 spinal nerves.
  - The **middle cervical ganglion** lies at the level of the C6 vertebra and gives off the **middle cervical sympathetic cardiac nerve**, which joins the cardiac plexus in the thorax, and gray rami communicans to anterior rami of C5 and C6 spinal nerves.
  - The **inferior cervical ganglion** usually combines with the most superior thoracic ganglion (T1) to form the **stellate ganglion**, which lies anterior to the transverse process of the C7 vertebra. It gives off the **inferior cervical sympathetic cardiac nerve**, which descends into the thorax, and gray rami communicans to anterior rami of C7 and C8 spinal nerves.

Cranial Nerves in the Neck

Four of the cranial nerves are found in the neck.

- The glossopharyngeal nerve (cranial nerve [CN] IX) sends branches to the tongue and pharynx in the head and descends into the neck to innervate the carotid body and carotid sinus (see **Fig. 26.28**). It innervates one muscle, the stylopharyngeus.
- The vagus nerve (CN X) descends within the carotid sheath in the neck before entering the thorax. Its branches to cervical structures arise from both thoracic and cervical parts of the nerve (see **Fig. 26.30**).
  - **A superior laryngeal nerve** arises from the cervical part of each vagus nerve and innervates the upper larynx through its internal and external branches.
  - The **right recurrent laryngeal nerve** arises from the inferior cervical part of the right vagus nerve and recurs around the subclavian artery in the neck.
  - The **left recurrent laryngeal nerve** arises from the thoracic part of the left vagus nerve. It recurs around the arch of the aorta and ascends in the

    neck between the trachea and esophagus.
  - Cervical **cardiac nerves** carry visceral motor (presynaptic parasympathetic) fibers and visceral sensory fibers to the cardiac plexus.
- The spinal accessory nerve (CN XI), which is derived from roots of the upper cervical spinal cord segments, enters the skull through the foramen magnum. After exiting the skull through the jugular foramen, it innervates the sternocleidomastoid muscle, then crosses the lateral region of the neck to innervate the trapezius muscle (see **Fig. 26.31**).
  - The cranial root joins the vagus nerve.
  - The spinal root innervates the sternocleidomastoid muscle, then crosses the lateral region of the neck to innervate the trapezius muscle.
- The hypoglossal nerve (CN XII), which exits the skull through the hypoglossal canal and courses anteriorly to the submandibular region, enters the oral cavity to innervate muscles of the tongue.
  - Along its course, fibers from C1 join the hypoglossal nerve briefly, eventually diverging from it to innervate the geniohyoid and thyrohyoid muscles and to form the superior root of the ansa cervicalis (see **Fig. 25.7**).

25.5 Esophagus

The esophagus is a muscular tube that connects the pharynx in the neck to the stomach in the abdomen (see Section 7.7).

- The cervical esophagus begins at the C6 vertebral level, which corresponds to the inferior border of the cricoid cartilage. The cervical esophagus is posterior to the trachea, anterior to the cervical vertebrae, and continuous with the laryngopharynx superiorly.
- At the pharyngoesophageal junction, the **cricopharyngeus**, the lowest part of the inferior pharyngeal constrictor, forms the superior esophageal sphincter.
- The inferior thyroid arteries, branches of the subclavian arteries via the thyrocervical trunks, supply the cervical part of the esophagus. Veins of similar name accompany the arteries.
- Lymphatic vessels from the cervical esophagus drain to paratracheal and deep cervical nodes.
- The recurrent laryngeal nerves, branches of the vagus nerve (CN X), and vasomotor fibers from the cervical sympathetic trunk innervate the esophagus in the neck.

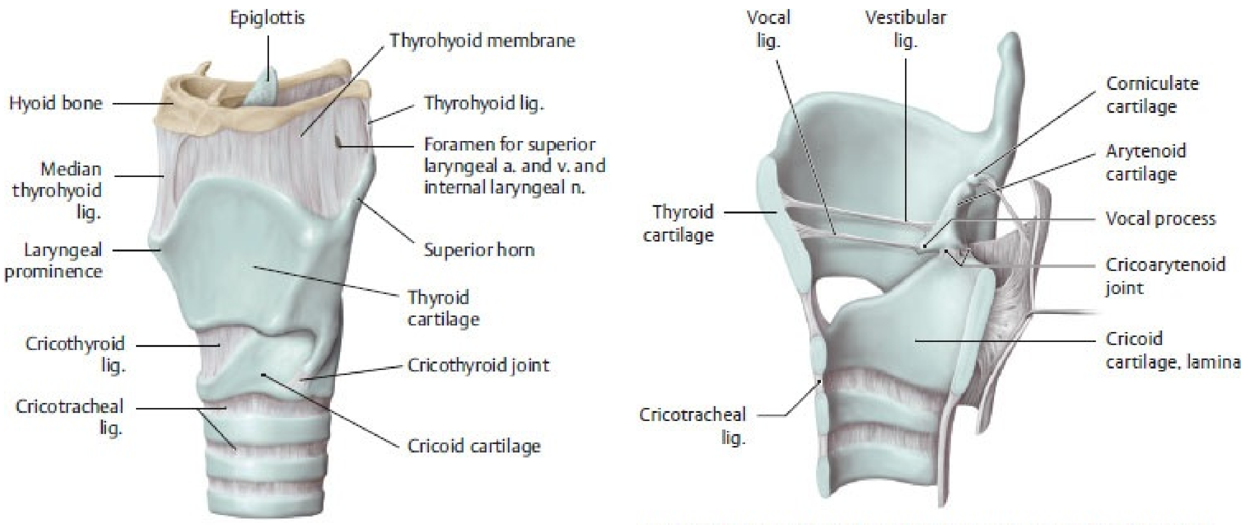
25.6 Larynx and Trachea

The larynx, part of the upper airway, is responsible for sound production. It communicates superiorly with the pharynx and inferiorly with the trachea and lies anterior to the C3–C6 vertebrae. The trachea, the upper part of the tracheobronchial tree, descends into the thorax, where it is continuous with the bronchi of the lungs.

Laryngeal Skeleton

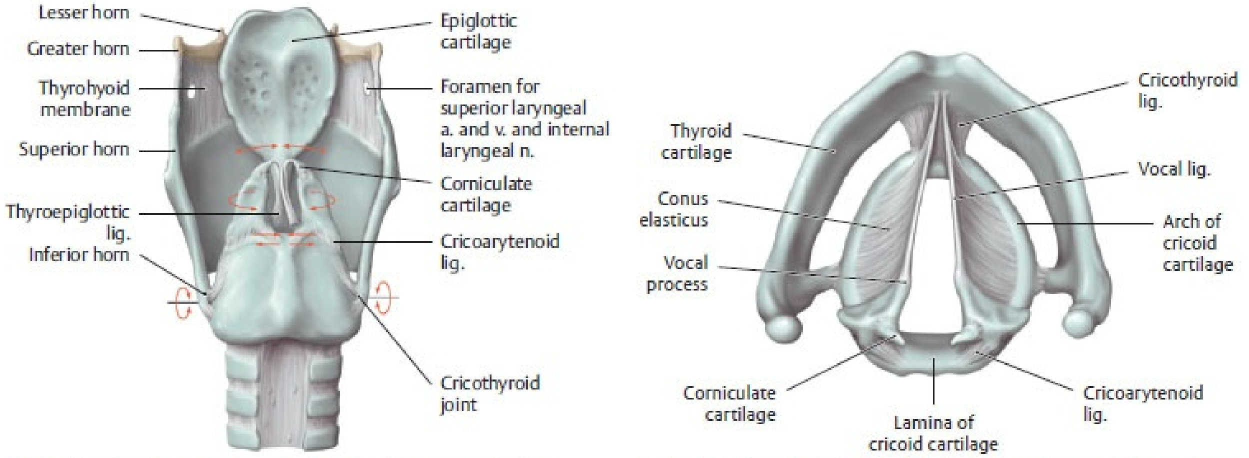
Three single cartilages and two sets of paired cartilages form the laryngeal skeleton (**Fig. 25.9**). All except the epiglottis (elastic cartilage) are formed of hyaline cartilage.

- The **thyroid cartilage**, the largest of the nine cartilages, has two **laminae** that join at the midline to form a **laryngeal prominence** (Adam’s apple). The **superior horn** of the thyroid cartilage attaches to the hyoid bone, and the **inferior horn** articulates with the cricoid cartilage at the **cricothyroid joint**.
- The **cricoid cartilage**, the only part of the laryngeal skeleton to form a complete ring around the airway, articulates superiorly with the thyroid cartilage and is attached inferiorly to the first tracheal ring. The anterior part of the cricoid cartilage, the **arch,** is short, and the **lamina**, its posterior part, is tall.
- The **epiglottis**, a leaf-shaped cartilage that forms the anterior wall of the laryngeal inlet at the root of the tongue, is attached inferiorly to the thyroid cartilage and anteriorly to the hyoid bone.


Epiglottis
Thyrohyoid membrane
Hyoid bone
Thyrohyoid lig.
Foramen for superior laryngeal a. and v. and internal laryngeal n.
Median thyrohyoid lig.
Laryngeal prominence
Superior horn
Thyroid cartilage
Cricothyroid lig.
Cricothyroid joint
Cricotracheal lig.
Cricoid cartilage
Vocal lig.
Vestibular lig.
Corniculate cartilage
Arytenoid cartilage
Thyroid cartilage
Vocal process
Cricoarytenoid joint
Cricoid cartilage, lamina
Cricotracheal lig.

A Left anterior oblique view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

B Sagittal section viewed from the left medial aspect. *Removed:* Hyoid bone and thyrohyoid ligament. The arytenoid cartilage alters the position of the vocal folds during phonation. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Lesser horn
Greater horn
Thyrohyoid membrane
Superior horn
Thyroepiglottic lig.
Inferior horn
Epiglottic cartilage
Foramen for superior laryngeal a. and v. and internal laryngeal n.
Corniculate cartilage
Cricoarytenoid lig.
Cricothyroid joint
Cricothyroid lig.
Thyroid cartilage
Vocal lig.
Conus elasticus
Arch of cricoid cartilage
Vocal process
Corniculate cartilage
Lamina of cricoid cartilage
Cricoarytenoid lig.

C Posterior view. *Arrows* indicate the direction of movement in the various joints. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

D Superior view of thyrohyoid, cricoid, and corniculate cartilages. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Fig. 25.9 Structure of the larynx

- The paired pyramidal **arytenoid cartilages**, which articulate with the superior border of the cricoid lamina, have an apex that articulates with the tiny **corniculate cartilages** and a **vocal process** that attaches to the thyroid cartilage through the **vocal ligaments**.
- The small, paired corniculate and **cuneiform cartilages** appear as tubercles within the **aryepiglottic fold**. Although the corniculate cartilages articulate with the arytenoids, the cuneiform cartilages do not articulate with the other cartilages.

Membranes and Ligaments of the Larynx

Membranes of the larynx connect the laryngeal cartilages to each other and to the hyoid bone and trachea (**Figs. 25.9**, **25.10, 25.11**).

- The **thyrohyoid membrane** attaches the thyroid cartilage to the hyoid bone superiorly.
- The **cricotracheal ligament** attaches the cricoid cartilage to the first tracheal ring inferiorly.
- The **quadrangular membrane** extends posteriorly from the lateral border of the epiglottis to the arytenoid cartilage on each side.
  - The superior free margin of this membrane forms the **aryepiglottic ligament**, which, when covered by mucosa, is known as the **aryepiglottic fold**.
  - The inferior free margin is the **vestibular ligament**, which, when covered by mucosa, is known as the **vestibular fold** or false vocal cord.
- The **cricothyroid membrane** connects the cricoid and thyroid cartilages and extends superiorly deep to the thyroid cartilage as the **conus elasticus** (see **Figs. 25.9D** and **25.12C**).
- The free superior border of the conus elasticus forms the **vocal ligament**, which extends from the midpoint of the thyroid cartilage to the vocal processes of the arytenoid cartilage. The vocal ligament and the **vocalis muscle** form the **vocal fold** or **vocal cord**.

BOX 25.2: CLINICAL CORRELATION

TRACHEOSTOMY AND CRICOTHYROIDOTOMY

When the upper airway is obstructed, airway access can be reestablished using two different approaches. *Tracheostomy* is a surgical procedure in which a tracheostomy tube is inserted through an incision in the proximal trachea. This procedure is generally used for long-term management of the airway. *Cricothyroidotomy* is a related procedure in which an incision is made in the cricothyroid membrane. This procedure, usually performed in emergency situations, is less technically difficult than tracheostomy and has fewer complications.

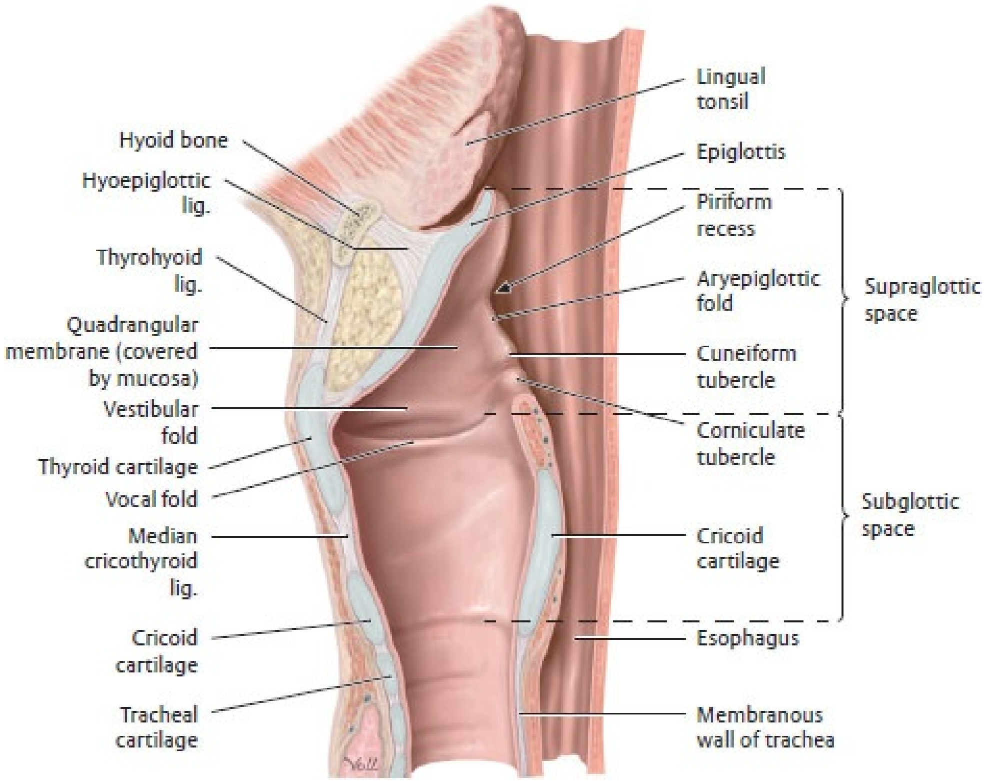

Hyoid bone
Hyoepiglottic lig.
Thyrohyoid lig.
Quadrangular membrane (covered by mucosa)
Vestibular fold
Thyroid cartilage
Vocal fold
Median cricothyroid lig.
Cricoid cartilage
Tracheal cartilage
Lingual tonsil
Epiglottis
Piriform recess
Aryepiglottic fold
Cuneiform tubercle
Corniculate tubercle
Cricoid cartilage
Esophagus
Membranous wall of trachea
Supraglottic space
Subglottic space

Fig. 25.10 Cavity of the larynx

Midsagittal section viewed from the left side. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Laryngeal Cavity

The laryngeal cavity begins at the laryngeal inlet and extends to the inferior border of the cricoid cartilage (see Figs. 25.10 and 25.11).

— The vestibular and vocal folds define spaces within the laryngeal cavity.
  - The **supraglottic space** (laryngeal vestibule) or supraglottic space lies above the vestibular folds.
  - The **rima vestibuli** is the aperture between the two vestibular folds.
  - The **laryngeal ventricles** are recesses of the laryngeal cavity between the vestibular and vocal folds.
  - **Laryngeal saccules** are the blind ends of the laryngeal ventricles.
  - The **rima glottidis** is the aperture between the two vocal folds.
  - The **subglottic space** (infraglottic cavity) is the inferior part of the laryngeal cavity, which lies below the vocal folds and extends to the inferior border of the cricoid cartilage.

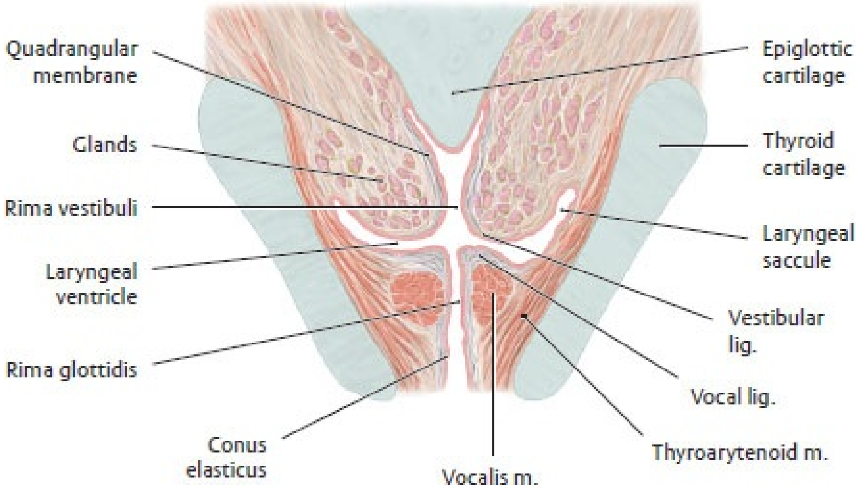

Quadrangular membrane
Glands
Rima vestibuli
Laryngeal ventricle
Rima glottidis
Conus elasticus
Vocalis m.
Thyroarytenoid m.
Vocal lig.
Vestibular lig.
Laryngeal saccule
Thyroid cartilage
Epiglottic cartilage

Fig. 25.11 Vestibular and vocal folds

Coronal section. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- Sound is produced as air passes through the laryngeal cavity between the vocal folds. Variations in sound arise from changes in the position, tension, and length of these folds.
- The vestibular folds protect the airway but have no role in sound production.

Muscles of the Larynx

The larynx has extrinsic and intrinsic muscle groups.

- Extrinsic muscles are attached to the hyoid bone and move the larynx and hyoid bone together. These include the suprahyoid muscles (see **Table 27.9**), which form the floor of the mouth and elevate the larynx, and the infrahyoid muscles (see **Table 25.4**), which depress the larynx.
- Intrinsic muscles move the laryngeal cartilages, which changes the length and tension of the vocal ligaments and size of the rima glottidis (**Table 25.7**; **Fig. 25.12**).
- Two muscles are particularly clinically and anatomically significant:
  - The **posterior cricoarytenoid muscle** is the only muscle that abducts the vocal folds and opens the rima glottidis.
  - The **cricothyroid muscle**, innervated by the external branch of the superior laryngeal nerve, is the only intrinsic muscle that is not innervated by the inferior laryngeal nerve (a continuation of the recurrent laryngeal nerve).

Neurovasculature of the Larynx (Figs. 25.13, 25.15, 25.16)

- The superior and inferior laryngeal arteries are branches of the superior and inferior thyroid arteries, respectively. Veins of the larynx follow the laryngeal arteries and join the thyroid veins.
- The superior and inferior laryngeal branches of the vagus nerve (CN X) provide all of the motor and sensory innervation of the larynx.
  - The superior laryngeal nerve splits into an internal sensory branch, which supplies the mucosa of the vestibule and superior surface of the vocal folds, and an external motor branch, which innervates the cricothyroid muscle.
  - The **inferior laryngeal nerve**, a continuation of the recurrent laryngeal nerve, supplies the mucosa of the infraglottic larynx and innervates all intrinsic muscles of the larynx except the cricothyroid.

BOX 25.3: CLINICAL CORRELATION

RECURRENT LARYNGEAL NERVE PARALYSIS WITH THYROIDECTOMY

The recurrent laryngeal nerves in the neck are vulnerable to damage during thyroidectomy because they run immediately posterior to the thyroid gland. Unilateral damage results in hoarseness; bilateral damage causes respiratory distress and aphonia (inability to speak). Aspiration pneumonia may occur as a complication.

Trachea

The trachea, the extension of the airway inferior to the larynx, extends from the inferior border of the cricoid cartilage to the level of the T4–T5 intervertebral disks in the thorax, where it bifurcates into the two primary bronchi of the lungs (see Section 7.7). In the cervical region (see **Fig. 25.18**)

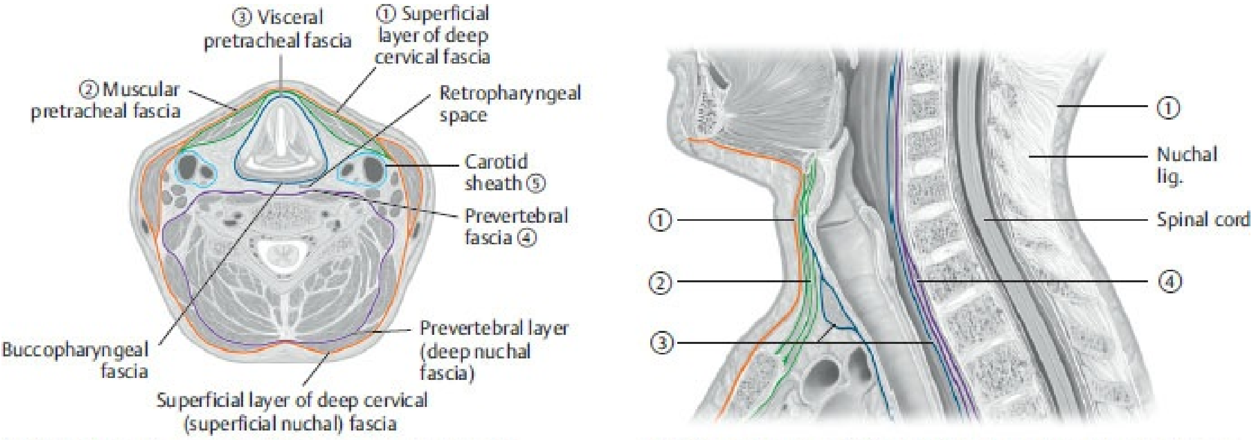
- it lies deep to the superficial and deep cervical fascia, and sternohyoid and sternothyroid muscles.
- the isthmus of the thyroid gland crosses its 2nd to 4th tracheal cartilages. The lobes of the thyroid are lateral to it and descend to the fifth or sixth tracheal cartilage.
- the esophagus lies posterior and separates it from the vertebral column.

Table 25.7 Actions of the Laryngeal Muscles

Muscle	Action	Effect on Rima

			Glottidis
①	Cricothyroid m.*	Tightens the vocal folds	None
②	Vocalis m.		
③	Thyroarytenoid m.	Adducts the vocal folds	Closes
④	Transverse arytenoid m.		
⑤	Posterior cricoarytenoid m.	Abducts the vocal folds	Opens
⑥	Lateral cricoarytenoid m.	Adducts the vocal folds	Closes

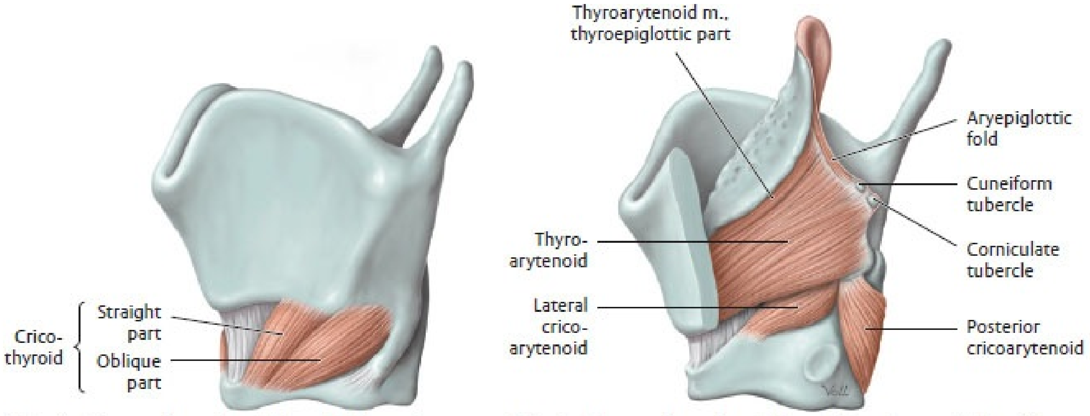
*The cricothyroid m. is innervated by the external laryngeal n. All other intrinsic mm. are innervated by the recurrent laryngeal n.


③ Visceral pretracheal fascia
① Superficial layer of deep cervical fascia
② Muscular pretracheal fascia
Retropharyngeal space
Carotid sheath ⑤
Prevertebral fascia ④
Buccopharyngeal fascia
Prevertebral layer (deep nuchal fascia)
Superficial layer of deep cervical (superficial nuchal) fascia
①
②
③
①
Nuchal lig.
Spinal cord
④

A Transverse section at level of C5 vertebra. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

B Midsagittal section, left lateral view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

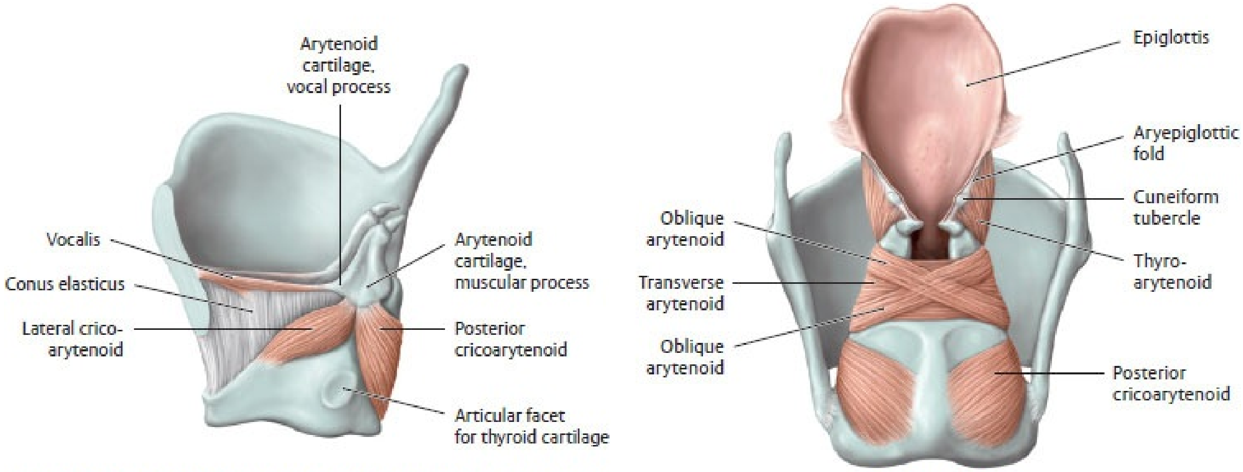
(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)



Crico-
thyroid
Straight part
Oblique part
Thyroarytenoid m., thyroepiglottic part
Aryepiglottic fold
Cuneiform tubercle
Corniculate tubercle
Thyro-arytenoid
Lateral crico-arytenoid
Posterior cricoarytenoid
Voll

A Extrinsic laryngeal muscles, left lateral oblique view. *Removed*: Epiglottis.

B Intrinsic laryngeal muscles, left lateral view. Removed: Thyroid cartilage (left lamina). *Revealed*: Epiglottis and thyroarytenoid muscle.



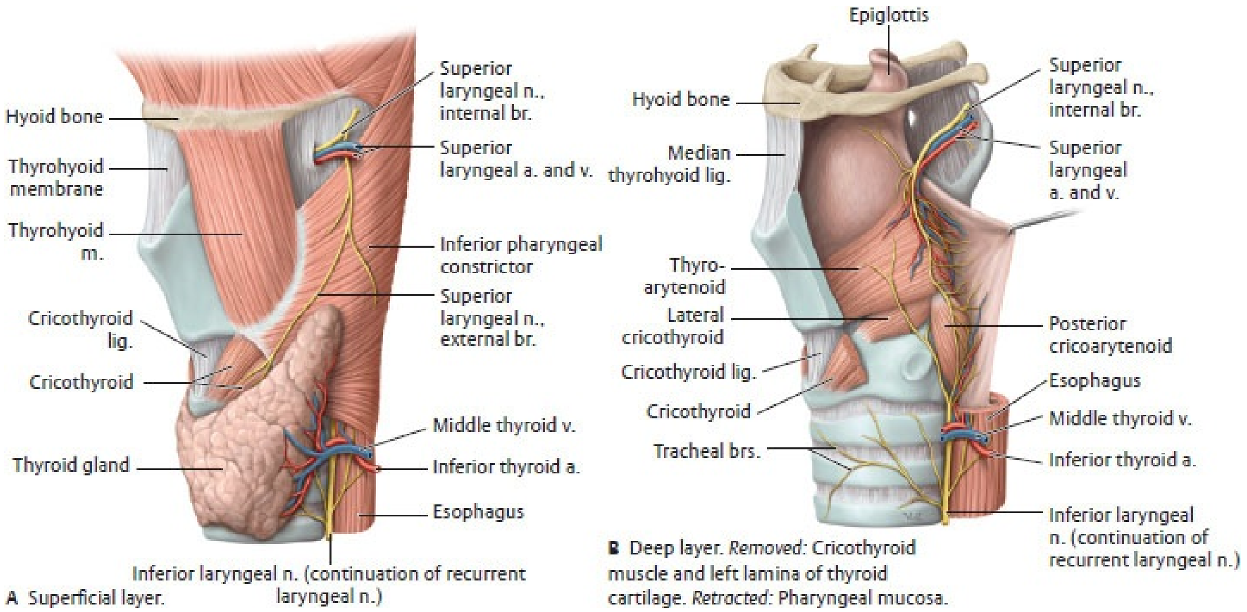
Arytenoid cartilage, vocal process
Vocalis
Conus elasticus
Lateral crico-arytenoid
Arytenoid cartilage, muscular process
Posterior cricoarytenoid
Articular facet for thyroid cartilage
Epiglottis
Aryepiglottic fold
Cuneiform tubercle
Oblique arytenoid
Thyro-arytenoid
Transverse arytenoid
Oblique arytenoid
Posterior cricoarytenoid

C Left lateral view. *Removed*: Thyroid cartilage (left lamina) and epiglottis.

D Posterior view.

Fig. 25.12 Laryngeal muscles

The laryngeal muscles move the laryngeal cartilages relative to one another, affecting the tension and/or position of the vocal folds. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Hyoid bone
Thyrohyoid membrane
Thyrohyoid m.
Cricothyroid lig.
Cricothyroid
Thyroid gland
Superior laryngeal n., internal br.
Superior laryngeal a. and v.
Inferior pharyngeal constrictor
Superior laryngeal n., external br.
Middle thyroid v.
Inferior thyroid a.
Esophagus
Inferior laryngeal n. (continuation of recurrent laryngeal n.)
Epiglottis
Hyoid bone
Median thyrohyoid lig.
Thyro-arytenoid
Lateral cricothyroid
Cricothyroid lig.
Cricothyroid
Tracheal brs.
Superior laryngeal n., internal br.
Superior laryngeal a. and v.
Posterior cricoarytenoid
Esophagus
Middle thyroid v.
Inferior thyroid a.
Inferior laryngeal n. (continuation of recurrent laryngeal n.)

A Superficial layer.

B Deep layer. *Removed:* Cricothyroid muscle and left lamina of thyroid cartilage. *Retracted:* Pharyngeal mucosa.

Fig. 25.13 Neurovasculature of the larynx

Left lateral view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- — the common carotid arteries ascend lateral to it.
- — the recurrent laryngeal nerves ascend lateral or posterolateral to it (in the groove between the trachea and esophagus).
- — it is supplied by the inferior thyroid artery and drained by the inferior thyroid veins.
- — lymph drains to pretracheal and paratracheal nodes.
- — it receives innervation from branches of the vagus n. and the sympathetic trunk.

25.7 Thyroid and Parathyroid Glands

The thyroid and parathyroid glands are endocrine glands that reside in the anterior cervical region (**Fig. 25.14**).

The Thyroid Gland

The **thyroid gland**, the largest endocrine gland in the body, secretes **thyroid hormone**, which regulates the rate of metabolism, and **calcitonin**, which regulates the metabolism of calcium.

- — The thyroid lies deep to the sternohyoid and sternothyroid muscles (infrahyoid muscles) and anterolateral to the larynx and trachea between C5 and T1 vertebral levels.

- The thyroid has right and left (lateral) lobes connected by a narrow **isthmus** that lies anterior to the second and third tracheal rings.
- A **pyramidal lobe**, present in ~ 50% of the population, is a remnant of the embryonic thyroglossal duct that extends from the isthmus toward the hyoid bone.

BOX 25.4: DEVELOPMENTAL CORRELATION

THYROGLOSSAL DUCT CYST

A thyroglossal duct cyst is a fluid-filled cavity in the midline of the neck, just inferior to the hyoid bone. It results from the proliferation of epithelium left behind from the thyroglossal duct during the descent of the thyroid gland from its embryonic origin on the tongue to its postnatal position in the neck. The cyst can enlarge and press on the trachea and esophagus, in which case it can be surgically removed.

- A fibrous capsule encloses the thyroid gland. The pretracheal fascia of the neck lies outside the thyroid capsule (see **Fig. 25.2**).

The Parathyroid Glands

Parathyroid glands, small, ovoid endocrine glands that lie on the posterior surface of the thyroid gland, secrete **parathormone**, which regulates the metabolism of phosphorus and calcium (**Fig. 25.14B**).

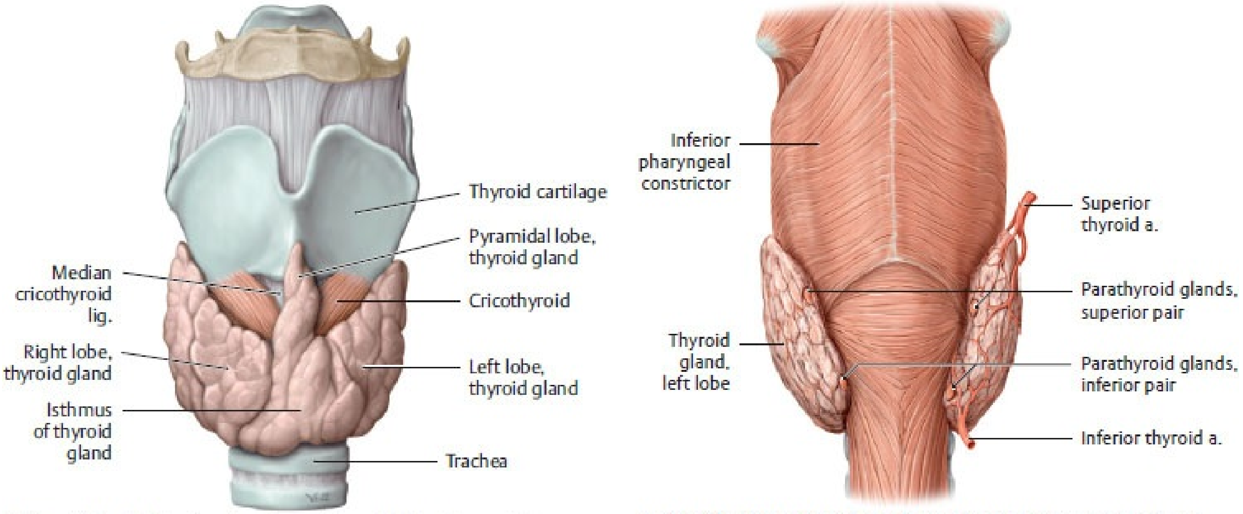
- There are normally four glands, two superior and two inferior, although the number can range from two to six glands.
- The superior parathyroid glands are constant in position near the lower border of the cricoid cartilage. The position of the inferior parathyroid glands may vary, ranging from the lower pole of the thyroid gland to the superior mediastinum.

Neurovasculature of the Thyroid and Parathyroid Glands

- The superior thyroid artery, a branch of the external carotid artery, and the inferior thyroid artery from the thyrocervical trunk supply the thyroid gland (**Fig. 25.15**). The inferior thyroid artery is usually the main supply to the parathyroid glands.
- **Superior** and **middle thyroid veins** drain into the internal jugular veins; **inferior thyroid veins** drain into the brachiocephalic veins in the mediastinum (**Fig. 25.16**). Venous drainage from the parathyroid glands

joins the thyroid veins.

- — Lymphatic vessels of the thyroid may drain directly into the superior and inferior deep cervical nodes or indirectly, passing first through prelaryngeal, pretracheal, and paratracheal nodes.
- — The parathyroid glands drain with the thyroid into the inferior deep cervical and paratracheal lymph nodes.
- — Cardiac and superior and inferior thyroid sympathetic plexuses arise from the superior, middle, and inferior cervical sympathetic ganglia to supply vasomotor innervation to the thyroid and parathyroid glands.
- — The thyroid and parathyroid glands are under hormonal control and therefore lack secretomotor innervation.


Thyroid cartilage
Pyramidal lobe, thyroid gland
Median cricothyroid lig.
Cricothyroid
Right lobe, thyroid gland
Left lobe, thyroid gland
Isthmus of thyroid gland
Trachea
Inferior pharyngeal constrictor
Superior thyroid a.
Parathyroid glands, superior pair
Thyroid gland, left lobe
Parathyroid glands, inferior pair
Inferior thyroid a.

A Thyroid gland. Anterior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

B Thyroid and parathyroid glands, posterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Fig. 25.14 Thyroid and parathyroid glands

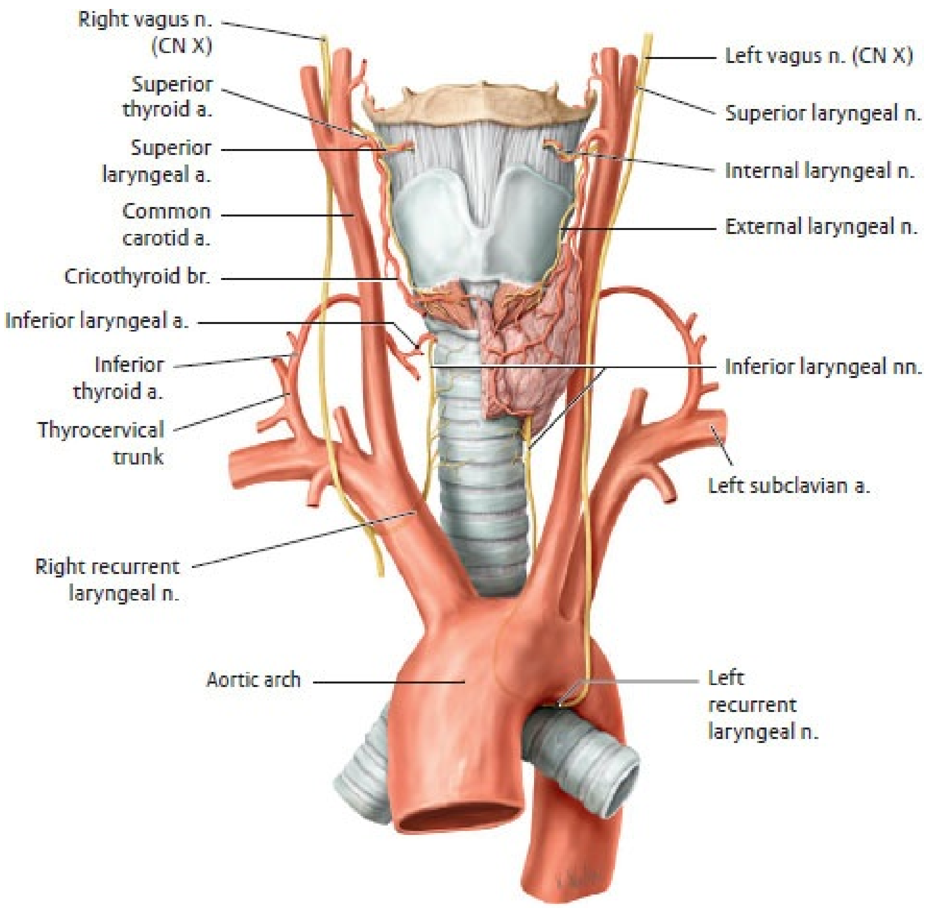

Right vagus n. (CN X)
Superior thyroid a.
Superior laryngeal a.
Common carotid a.
Cricothyroid br.
Inferior laryngeal a.
Inferior thyroid a.
Thyrocervical trunk
Right recurrent laryngeal n.
Aortic arch
Left vagus n. (CN X)
Superior laryngeal n.
Internal laryngeal n.
External laryngeal n.
Inferior laryngeal nn.
Left subclavian a.
Left recurrent laryngeal n.

Fig. 25.15 Arteries and nerves of the larynx, thyroid, and parathyroids
Anterior view. *Removed*: Thyroid gland (right half). (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

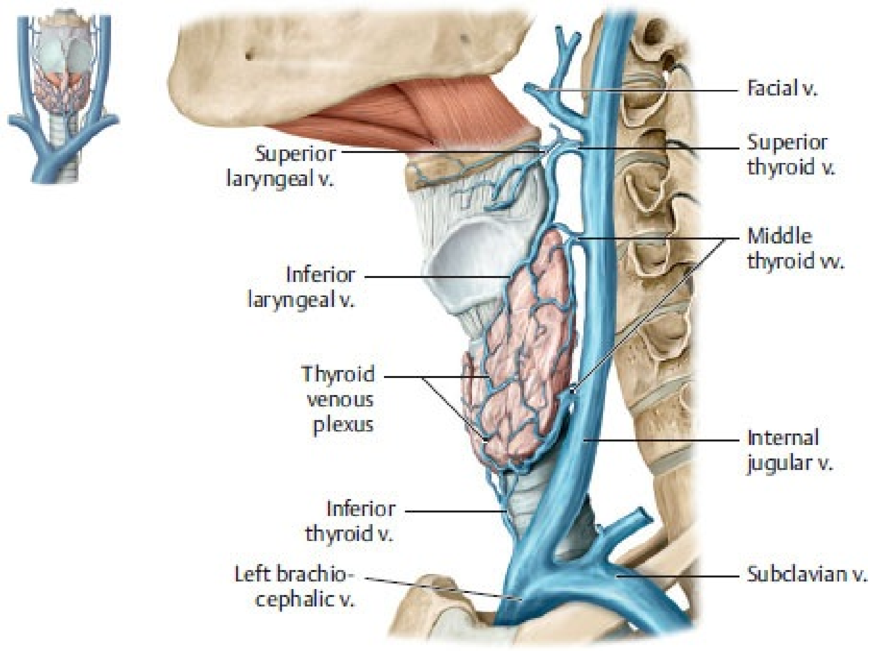
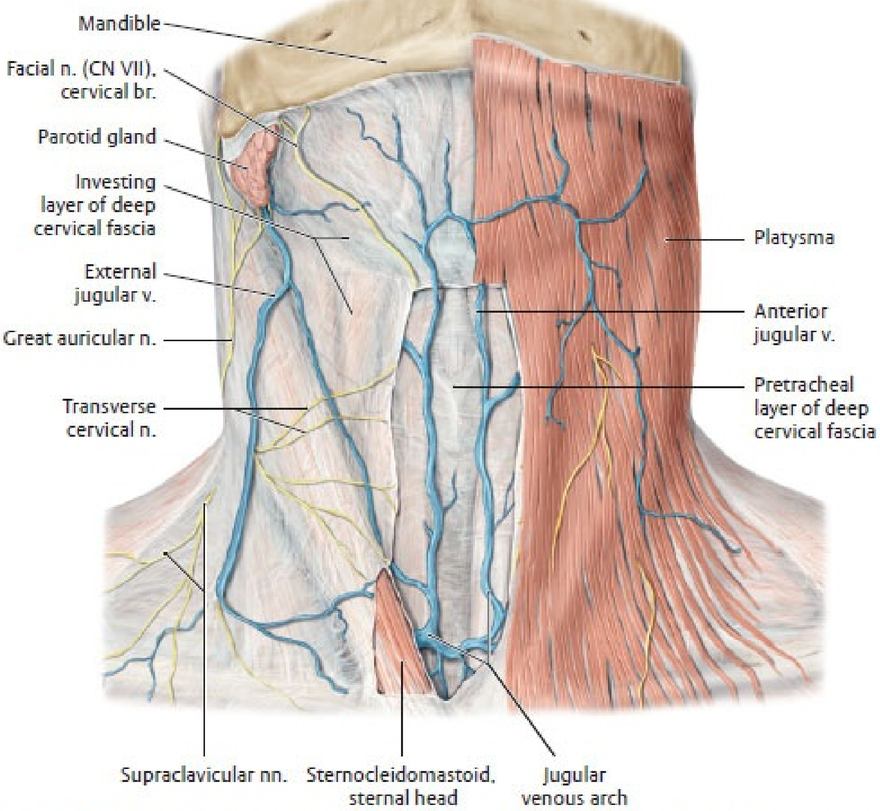

Superior laryngeal v.
Inferior laryngeal v.
Thyroid venous plexus
Inferior thyroid v.
Left brachiocephalic v.
Facial v.
Superior thyroid v.
Middle thyroid vv.
Internal jugular v.
Subclavian v.

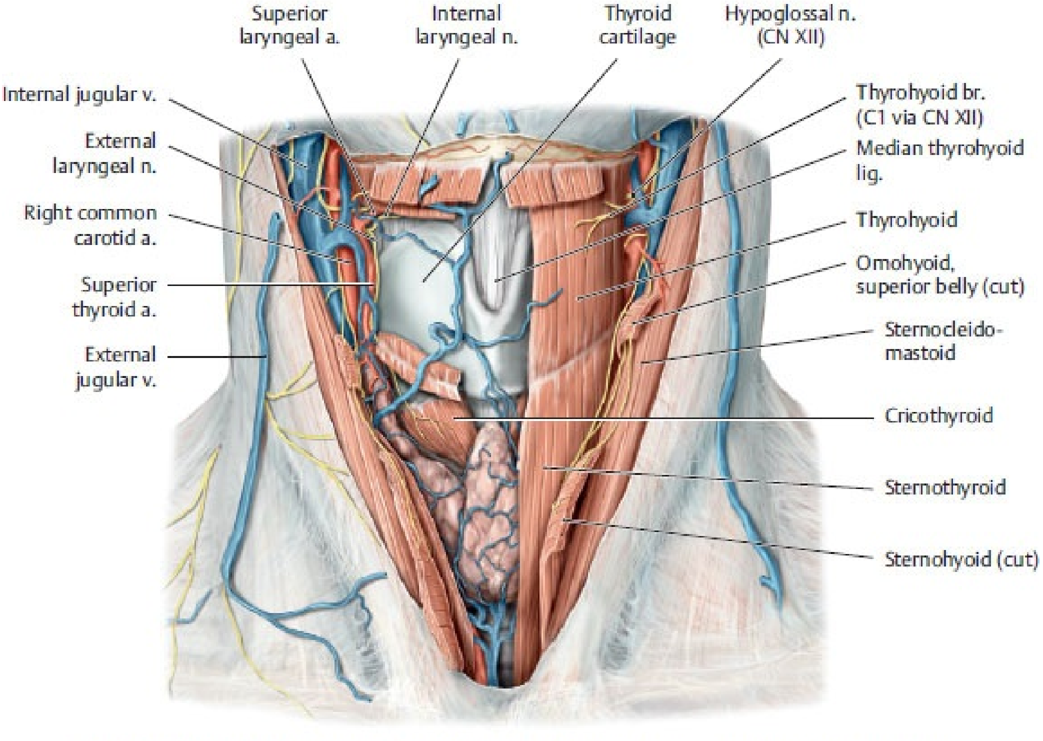
Fig. 25.16 Veins of the larynx, thyroid, and parathyroid glands
Left lateral view. *Note*: The inferior thyroid vein generally drains into the left brachiocephalic vein. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

25.8 Topography of the Neck



Mandible
Facial n. (CN VII), cervical br.
Parotid gland
Investing layer of deep cervical fascia
External jugular v.
Great auricular n.
Transverse cervical n.
Platysma
Anterior jugular v.
Pretracheal layer of deep cervical fascia
Supraclavicular nn.
Sternocleidomastoid, sternal head
Jugular venous arch

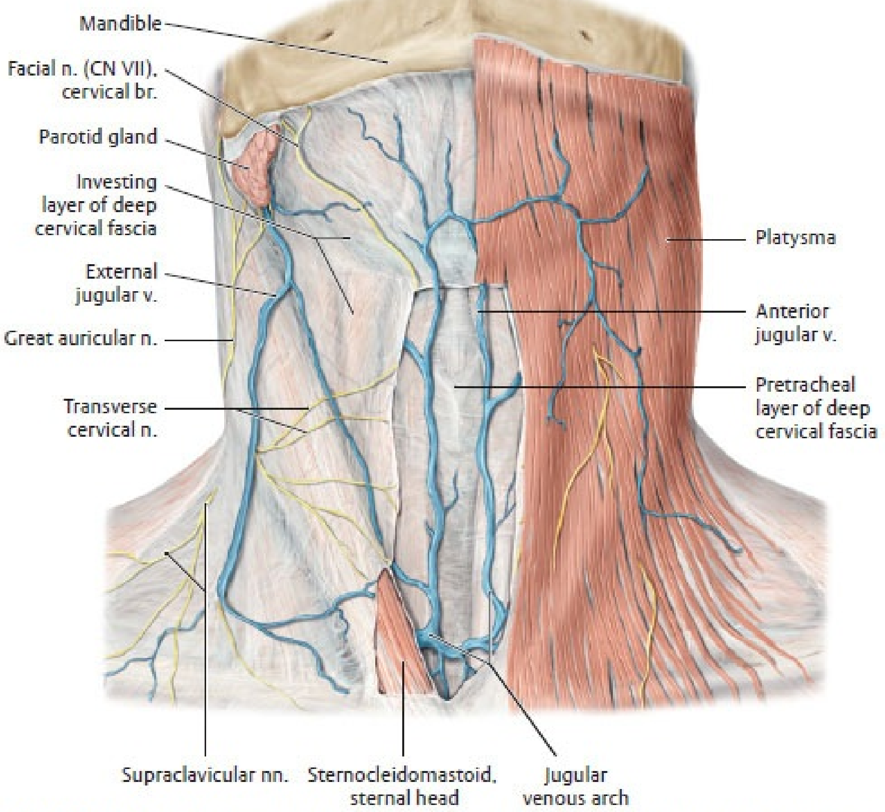
A Superficial dissection. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)



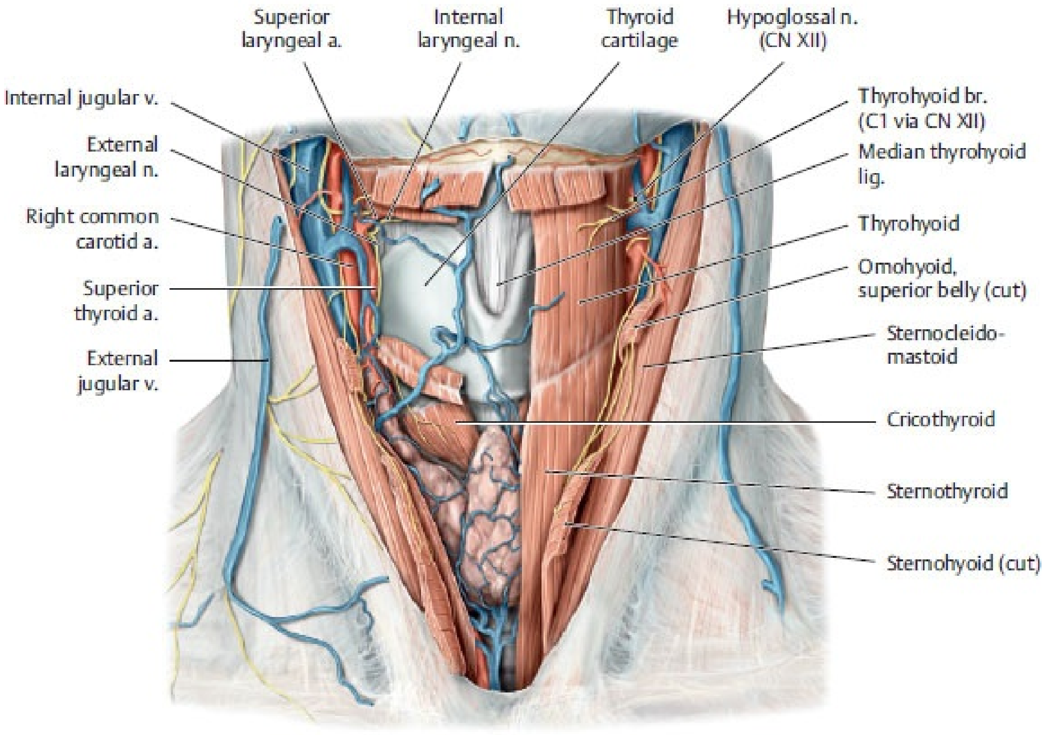
Superior laryngeal a.
Internal laryngeal n.
Thyroid cartilage
Hypoglossal n. (CN XII)
Internal jugular v.
External laryngeal n.
Right common carotid a.
Superior thyroid a.
External jugular v.
Thyrohyoid br. (C1 via CN XII)
Median thyrohyoid lig.
Thyrohyoid
Omohyoid, superior belly (cut)
Sternocleido-mastoid
Cricothyroid
Sternothyroid
Sternohyoid (cut)

B Deep dissection. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Fig. 25.17 Topography of the anterior cervical region (continued on page 470)
Anterior view.


Mandible
Facial n. (CN VII), cervical br.
Parotid gland
Investing layer of deep cervical fascia
External jugular v.
Great auricular n.
Transverse cervical n.
Platysma
Anterior jugular v.
Pretracheal layer of deep cervical fascia
Supraclavicular nn.
Sternocleidomastoid, sternal head
Jugular venous arch

A Superficial dissection. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Superior laryngeal a.
Internal laryngeal n.
Thyroid cartilage
Hypoglossal n. (CN XII)
Internal jugular v.
External laryngeal n.
Right common carotid a.
Superior thyroid a.
External jugular v.
Thyrohyoid br. (C1 via CN XII)
Median thyrohyoid lig.
Thyrohyoid
Omohyoid, superior belly (cut)
Sternocleido-mastoid
Cricothyroid
Sternothyroid
Sternohyoid (cut)

B Deep dissection. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Fig. 25.17 (*continued*) Topography of the anterior cervical region

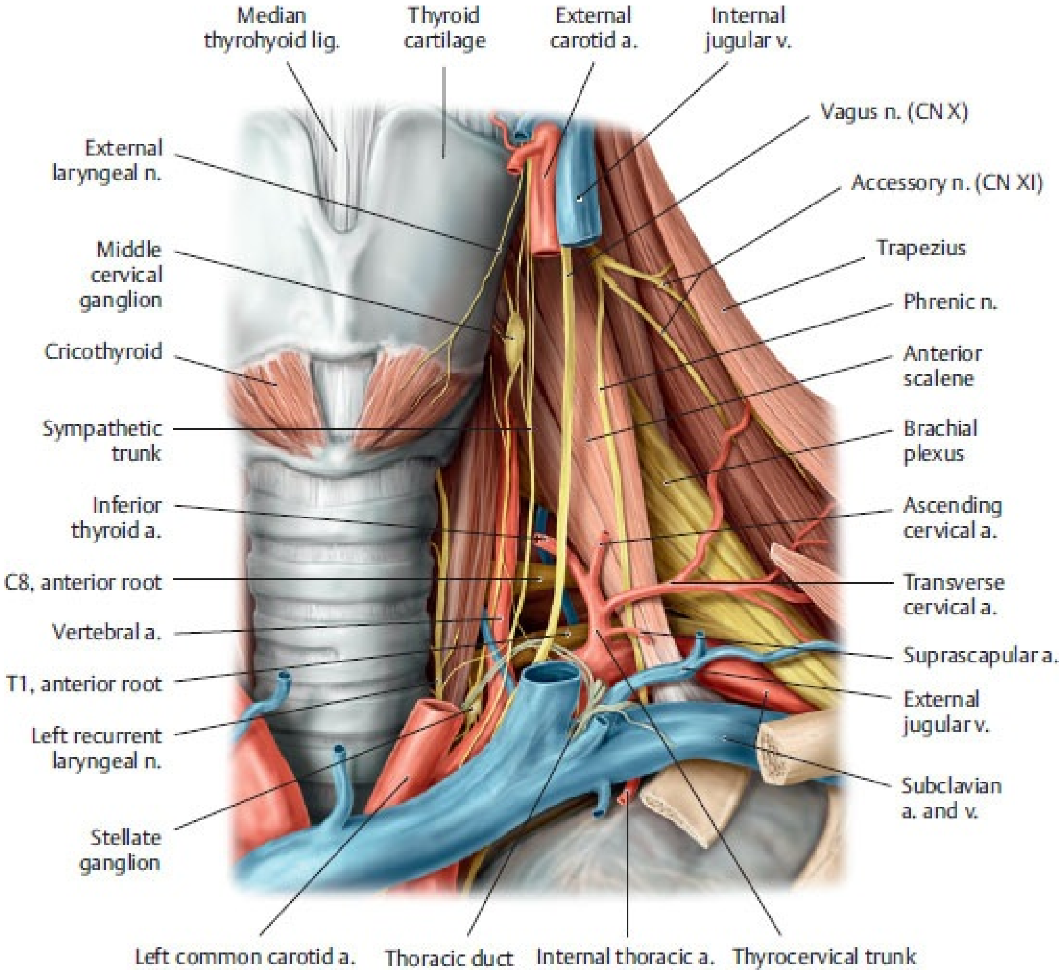

Median thyrohyoid lig.
Thyroid cartilage
External carotid a.
Internal jugular v.
Vagus n. (CN X)
Accessory n. (CN XI)
Trapezius
Phrenic n.
Anterior scalene
Brachial plexus
Ascending cervical a.
Transverse cervical a.
Suprascapular a.
External jugular v.
Subclavian a. and v.
External laryngeal n.
Middle cervical ganglion
Cricothyroid
Sympathetic trunk
Inferior thyroid a.
C8, anterior root
Vertebral a.
T1, anterior root
Left recurrent laryngeal n.
Stellate ganglion
Left common carotid a.
Thoracic duct
Internal thoracic a.
Thyrocervical trunk

Fig. 25.18 Root of the neck

Anterior view, left side. The thyroid gland has been removed and the common carotid artery and internal jugular vein have been cut to reveal the deep structures in the root of the neck. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

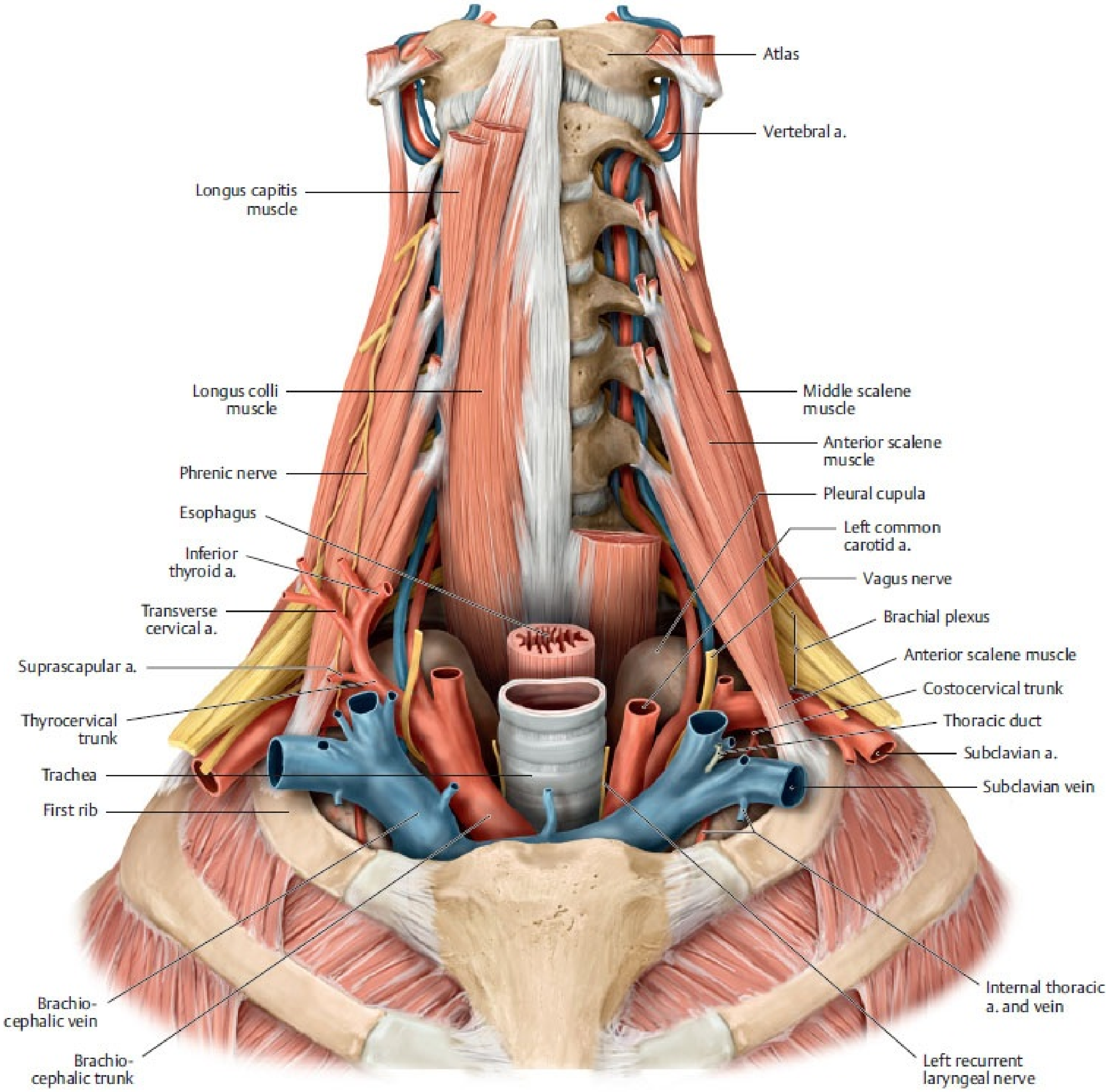
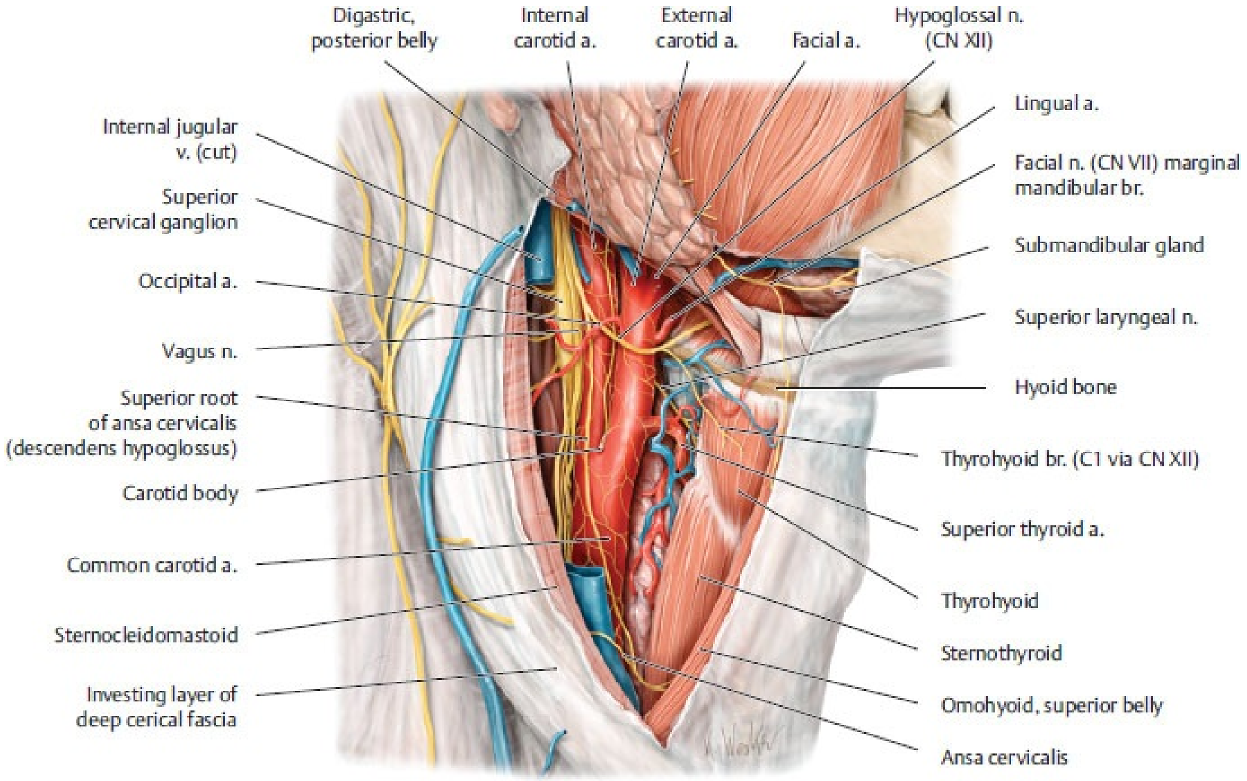
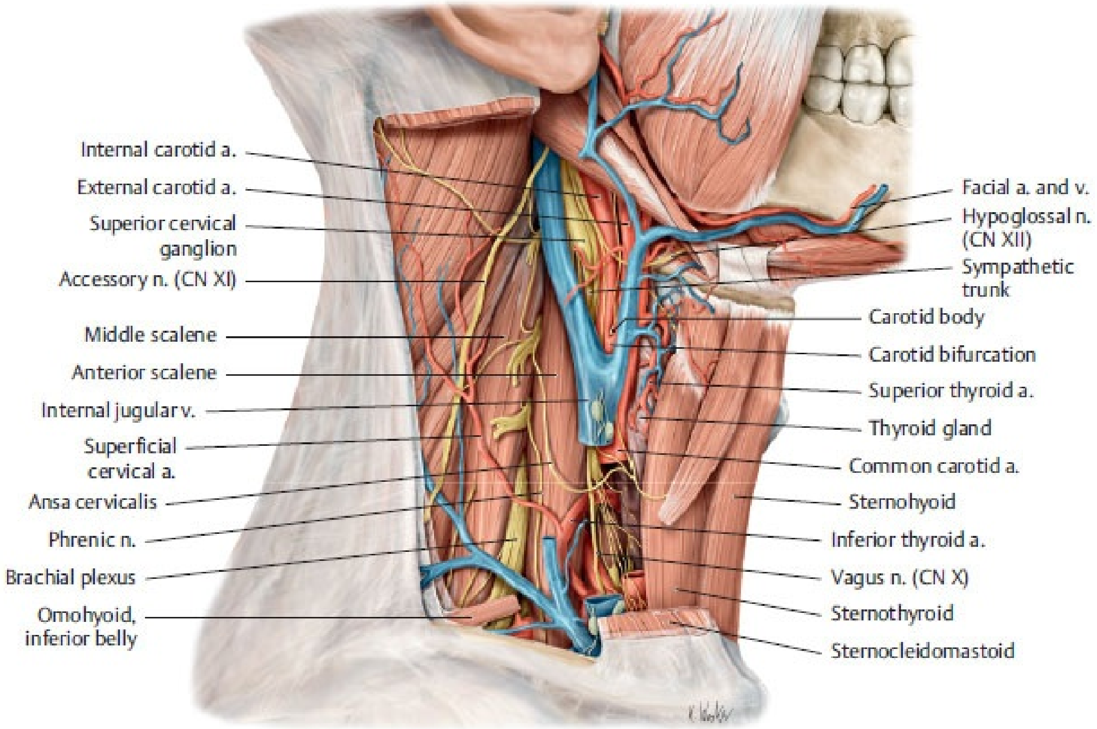

Atlas
Vertebral a.
Longus capitis muscle
Longus colli muscle
Middle scalene muscle
Anterior scalene muscle
Phrenic nerve
Pleural cupula
Esophagus
Left common carotid a.
Inferior thyroid a.
Vagus nerve
Transverse cervical a.
Brachial plexus
Suprascapular a.
Anterior scalene muscle
Costocervical trunk
Thyrocervical trunk
Thoracic duct
Subclavian a.
Trachea
Subclavian vein
First rib
Internal thoracic a. and vein
Brachio-cephalic vein
Brachio-cephalic trunk
Left recurrent laryngeal nerve

Fig. 25.19 The thoracic inlet

Anterior view. The viscera of the neck have been removed and the esophagus, trachea, common carotid artery and jugular veins have been dissected to show the relations of structures passing through the thoracic inlet. The prevertebral muscles on the left side have been cut to show the course of the vertebral artery. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Digastric, posterior belly
Internal carotid a.
External carotid a.
Facial a.
Hypoglossal n. (CN XII)
Lingual a.
Facial n. (CN VII) marginal mandibular br.
Submandibular gland
Superior laryngeal n.
Hyoid bone
Thyrohyoid br. (C1 via CN XII)
Superior thyroid a.
Thyrohyoid
Sternothyroid
Omohyoid, superior belly
Ansa cervicalis
Internal jugular v. (cut)
Superior cervical ganglion
Occipital a.
Vagus n.
Superior root of ansa cervicalis (descendens hypoglossus)
Carotid body
Common carotid a.
Sternocleidomastoid
Investing layer of deep cerical fascia

A Carotid triangle, right lateral view. *Removed:* Internal jugular and facial veins. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Internal carotid a.
External carotid a.
Superior cervical ganglion
Accessory n. (CN XI)
Middle scalene
Anterior scalene
Internal jugular v.
Superficial cervical a.
Ansa cervicalis
Phrenic n.
Brachial plexus
Omohyoid, inferior belly
Facial a. and v.
Hypoglossal n. (CN XII)
Sympathetic trunk
Carotid body
Carotid bifurcation
Superior thyroid a.
Thyroid gland
Common carotid a.
Sternohyoid
Inferior thyroid a.
Vagus n. (CN X)
Sternothyroid
Sternocleidomastoid

B The sternocleidomastoid has been cut to reveal structures in the carotid triangle and root of the neck. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

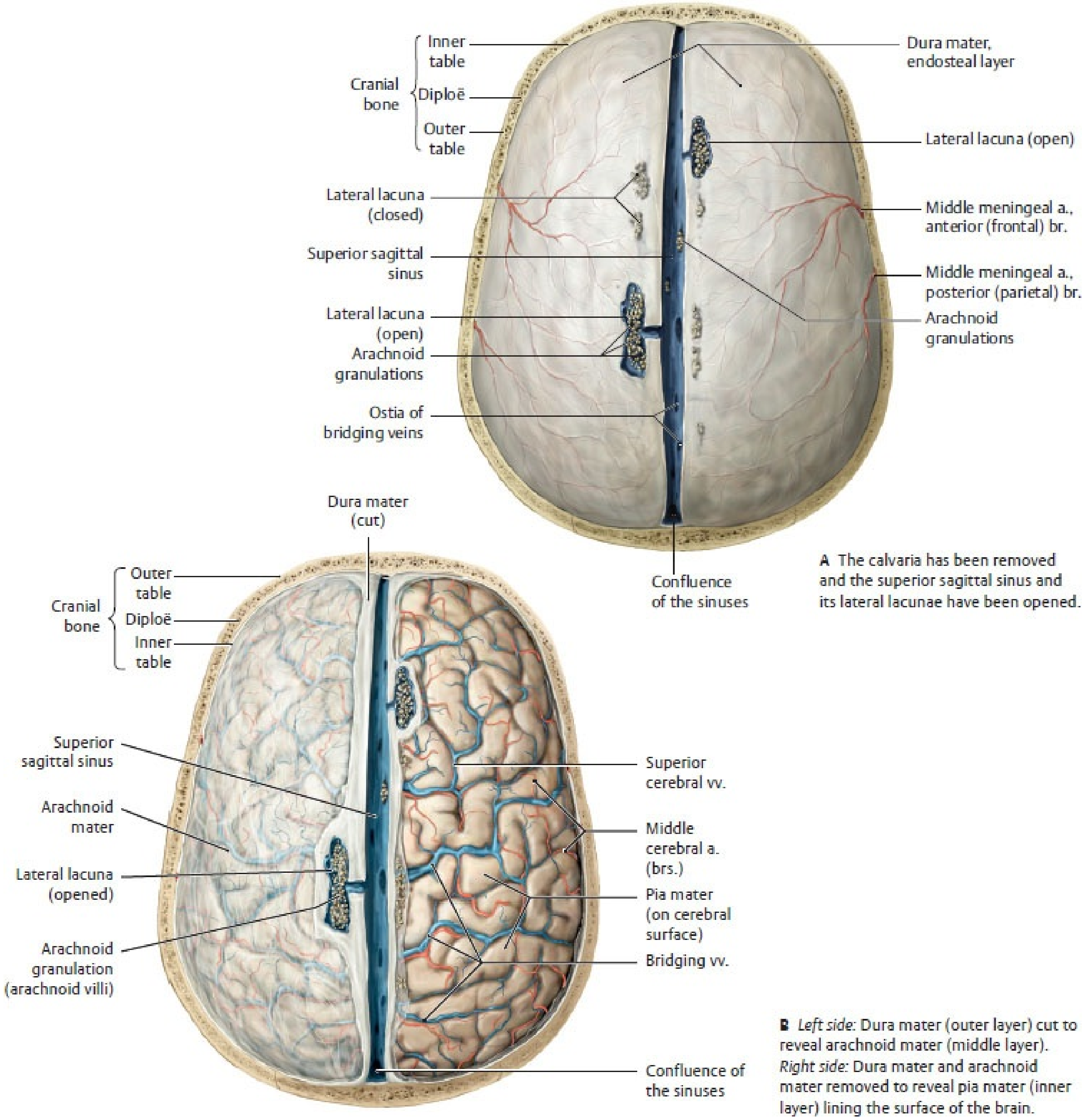
Fig. 25.20 Lateral cervical region
Right lateral view.

26 Meninges, Brain, and Cranial Nerves

The cranial meninges continuous with the meninges of the spinal cord, as well as the 12 cranial nerves that arise from the brain, are essential parts of the gross anatomy of the head and neck region and are discussed in detail in this unit. The study of the brain, however, is generally confined to the neuroanatomy curriculum, and only a brief overview is provided here.

26.1 The Meninges

The cranial meninges, coverings that protect the brain, consist of the external fibrous **dura mater**, the thin intermediate **arachnoid mater**, and the delicate inner **pia mater** (**Fig. 26.1**).


Inner table
Cranial bone
Diploë
Outer table
Dura mater, endosteal layer
Lateral lacuna (open)
Lateral lacuna (closed)
Middle meningeal a., anterior (frontal) br.
Superior sagittal sinus
Middle meningeal a., posterior (parietal) br.
Lateral lacuna (open)
Arachnoid granulations
Arachnoid granulations
Ostia of bridging veins
Dura mater (cut)
Confluence of the sinuses
Outer table
Cranial bone
Diploë
Inner table
Superior sagittal sinus
Superior cerebral vv.
Arachnoid mater
Middle cerebral a. (brs.)
Lateral lacuna (opened)
Pia mater (on cerebral surface)
Arachnoid granulation (arachnoid villi)
Bridging vv.
Confluence of the sinuses

A The calvaria has been removed and the superior sagittal sinus and its lateral lacunae have been opened.

B *Left side:* Dura mater (outer layer) cut to reveal arachnoid mater (middle layer). *Right side:* Dura mater and arachnoid mater removed to reveal pia mater (inner layer) lining the surface of the brain.

Fig. 26.1 Layers of the meninges

Opened cranium, superior view. Arachnoid granulations, sites for reabsorption of cerebral spinal fluid into the venous blood, are protrusions of the arachnoid layer of the meninges into the venous sinus system. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Dura mater

— The dura mater, or dura, a tough outer membrane surrounding the brain, is composed of a **periosteal (endosteal) layer** and a **meningeal layer**. The two layers are inseparable except where they enclose the venous sinuses that drain the brain (e.g., the superior sagittal sinus; see **Fig. 26.4**).

  - The outer periosteal layer, formed by the periosteum of the skull, adheres tightly to the inner surface of the skull, particularly at the sutures. This layer ends at the foramen magnum and is not continuous with the dura around the spinal cord.
  - The inner meningeal layer, a strong membranous sheet that adheres to the inner surface of the periosteal layer, provides sheaths for the cranial nerves as they pass through the skull foramina. It is closely applied, although not attached, to the underlying **arachnoid mater**. It continues into the vertebral canal as dura of the spinal cord (**Fig. 26.2**).
- The middle meningeal arteries, branches of the maxillary arteries, supply most of the dura, with contributions from the ophthalmic, occipital, and vertebral arteries. Veins accompany the arteries and drain into the pterygoid venous plexus.
- Branches of the trigeminal nerve (cranial nerve [CN] V) transmit sensation from the dura of the anterior and middle cranial fossa. Spinal nerves C1, C2, and C3 and small branches of the vagus nerve (CN X) innervate the dura of the posterior cranial fossa.

Dural Partitions

Infoldings of the meningeal layer of the dura form incomplete membranous partitions that separate and support parts of the brain (**Fig. 26.3**).

- The **falx cerebri**, a vertical sickle-shaped partition separating the right and left cerebral hemispheres, is attached anteriorly to the crista galli and the inner crest of the frontal bone and is continuous posteriorly with the tentorium cerebelli. The inferior, free edge of the falx cerebri is unattached.
- The **tentorium cerebelli**, a horizontal continuation of the falx cerebri, separates the occipital lobes of the cerebrum from the cerebellar hemispheres in the posterior cranial fossae.

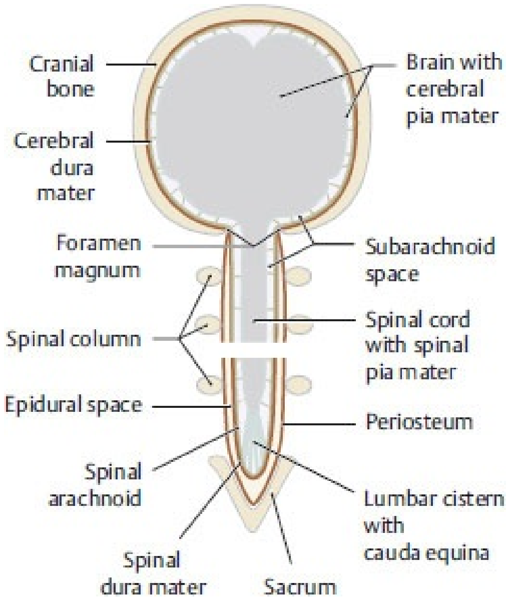

Cranial bone
Cerebral dura mater
Foramen magnum
Spinal column
Epidural space
Spinal arachnoid
Spinal dura mater
Sacrum
Brain with cerebral pia mater
Subarachnoid space
Spinal cord with spinal pia mater
Periosteum
Lumbar cistern with cauda equina

Fig. 26.2 Meninges in the cranial cavity and spinal cord
The two layers of the dura mater (periosteal and meningeal) form a single structural unit in the cranial cavity that adheres to the inner surface of the skull. In the spinal canal, however, the dura is separated from the periosteum of the vertebrae by the epidural space. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

  - It is attached to the posterior clinoid processes and the petrous part of the temporal bones anteriorly and to the parietal and occipital bones posterolaterally.
  - A U-shaped **tentorial notch** separates the attachments to the petrous ridge on each side and connects the middle and posterior cranial fossae.
- The **falx cerebelli**, a vertical partition separating the cerebellar hemispheres, is continuous superiorly with the tentorium cerebelli and is attached posteriorly to the occipital crest.
- The **diaphragma sellae**, a small dural fold attached to the anterior and posterior clinoid processes, forms a roof over the sella turcica, which encloses the hypophysis (pituitary gland).

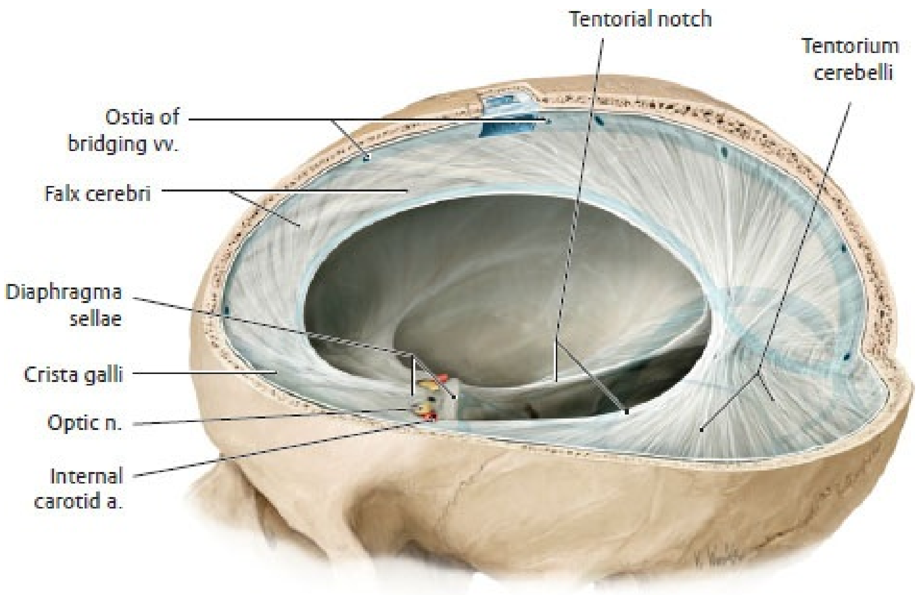
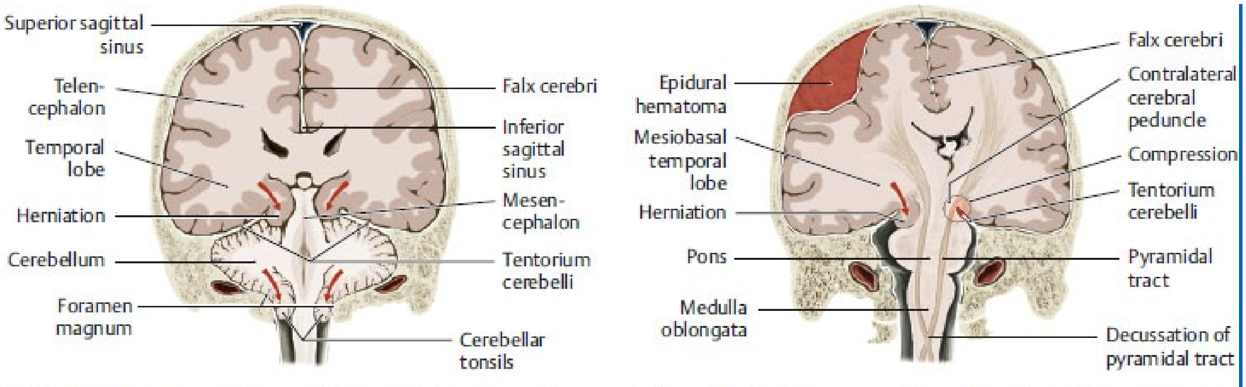

Tentorial notch
Tentorium cerebelli
Ostia of bridging vv.
Falx cerebri
Diaphragma sellae
Crista galli
Optic n.
Internal carotid a.

Fig. 26.3 Dural septa (folds)
Left anterior oblique view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 26.1: CLINICAL CORRELATION

TENTORIAL HERNIATION

Increased pressure within the middle cranial fossa created by edema or a space-occupying lesion such as a tumor can squeeze the brain tissue and force part of the temporal lobe to herniate through the tentorial notch. Pressure on the adjacent brainstem can be fatal in this situation. The oculomotor nerve (CN III) can also be stretched or damaged, leading to fixed pupil dilation (loss of parasympathetic function) and a “down and out” gaze due to paralysis of most of the extraocular muscles.


Superior sagittal sinus
Telencephalon
Temporal lobe
Herniation
Cerebellum
Foramen magnum
Falx cerebri
Inferior sagittal sinus
Mesencephalon
Tentorium cerebelli
Cerebellar tonsils
Epidural hematoma
Mesiobasal temporal lobe
Herniation
Pons
Medulla oblongata
Falx cerebri
Contralateral cerebral peduncle
Compression
Tentorium cerebelli
Pyramidal tract
Decussation of pyramidal tract

A Axial herniations are usually caused by general brain edema and can be life threatening. As the lower parts of the temporal lobes are pushed through the tentorial notch, pressure is exerted on the brainstem, which contains the respiratory and circulatory centers.

B Lateral herniations are caused by a unilateral mass (e.g., tumor or intracranial hemorrhage). As one temporal lobe herniates through the tentorial notch, the contralateral side can be compressed against the edge of the tentorium, resulting in symptoms developing on the side opposite the injury.

Potential sites of herniation beneath the free edges of the meninges
Coronal section, anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Dural Venous Sinuses

Dural venous sinuses are valveless venous spaces that form as a result of the separation of the periosteal and meningeal layers of the dura. Most of the large veins of the brain, skull, orbit, and inner ear drain through the dural sinuses and into the internal jugular veins in the neck (**Figs. 26.4** and **26.5**; **Table 26.1**).

— The **confluence of sinuses** at the posterior edge of the tentorium cerebelli is a junction of the superior sagittal, straight, occipital, and transverse sinuses.

— The **superior sagittal sinus** runs in the attached superior border of the falx cerebri and ends in the confluence of sinuses.

— The **inferior sagittal sinus** runs in the free inferior edge of the falx cerebri and ends in the straight sinus.

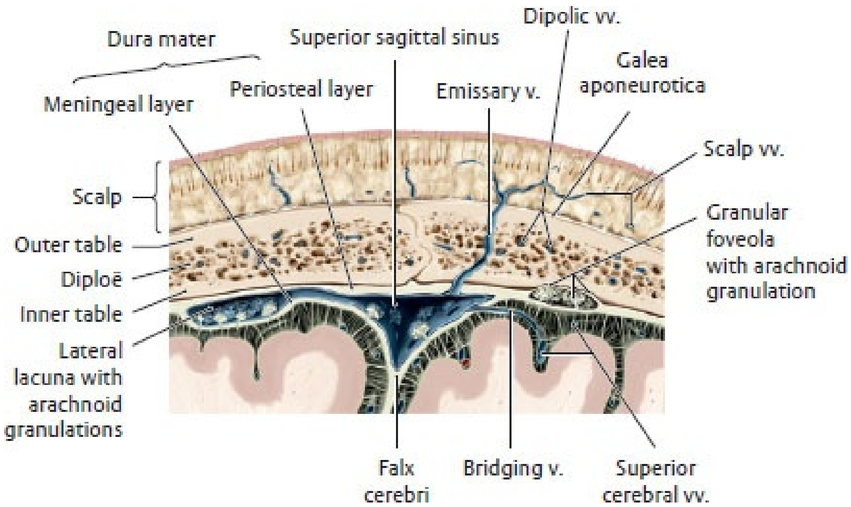

Dura mater
Superior sagittal sinus
Dipolic vv.
Galea aponeurotica
Meningeal layer
Periosteal layer
Emissary v.
Scalp vv.
Scalp
Outer table
Diploë
Inner table
Lateral lacuna with arachnoid granulations
Granular foveola with arachnoid granulation
Falx cerebri
Bridging v.
Superior cerebral vv.

Fig. 26.4 Structure of a dural sinus

Superior sagittal sinus, coronal section, anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- The **straight sinus** runs in the space formed by the union of the falx cerebri and tentorium cerebelli. It receives the inferior sagittal sinus and **great cerebral vein** and drains into the confluence of sinuses.
- The paired **transverse sinuses** run along the attached posterolateral margins of the tentorium cerebelli. Posteriorly, they join at the confluence of sinuses, and anteriorly they drain into the sigmoid sinuses, forming grooves in the occipital and parietal bones along their course.
- The paired **sigmoid sinuses** run in deep grooves of the occipital and temporal bones and drain into the internal jugular veins at the jugular foramen.
- The **occipital sinus** runs in the free edge of the falx cerebelli and ends in the confluence of sinuses.

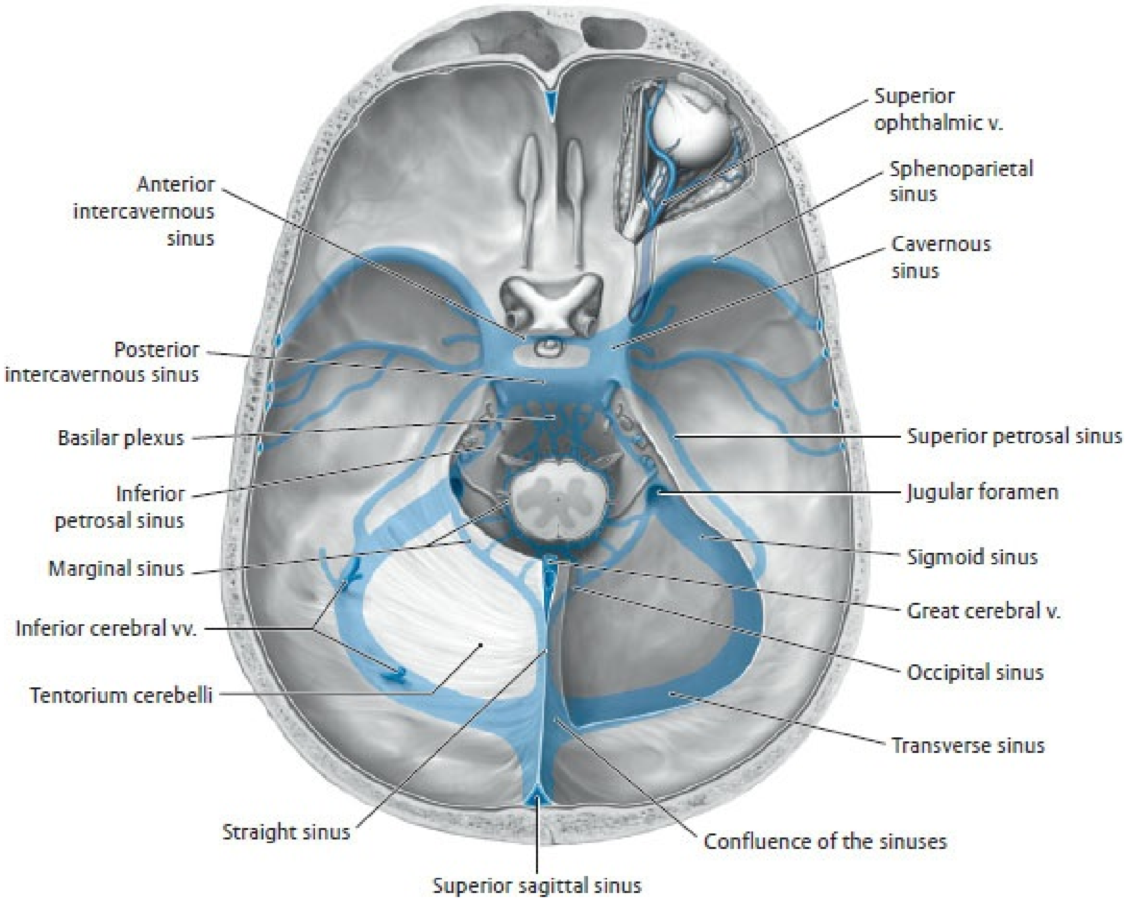
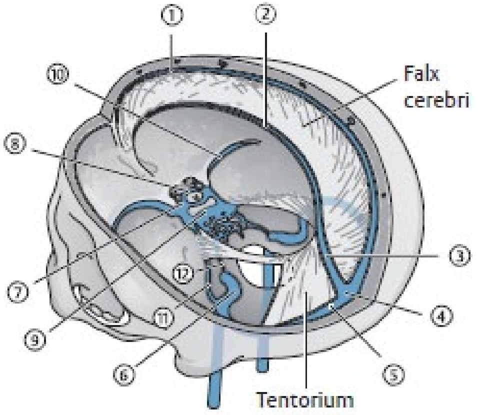

Anterior intercavernous sinus
Posterior intercavernous sinus
Basilar plexus
Inferior petrosal sinus
Marginal sinus
Inferior cerebral vv.
Tentorium cerebelli
Straight sinus
Superior sagittal sinus
Confluence of the sinuses
Transverse sinus
Occipital sinus
Great cerebral v.
Sigmoid sinus
Jugular foramen
Superior petrosal sinus
Cavernous sinus
Sphenoparietal sinus
Superior ophthalmic v.

Fig. 26.5 Dural sinuses in the cranial cavity

Opened cranial cavity with dural sinus system ghosted in *blue*, superior view. *Removed from the right side*: Tentorium cerebelli and roof of the orbit. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


①
②
⑩
Falx cerebri
⑧
③
⑫
⑦
④
⑪
⑨
⑤
⑥
Tentorium cerebelli

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th Edition. New York: Thieme

Publishers; 2020.)

Table 26.1 Principal Dural Sinuses

Upper Group	Lower Group
① Superior sagittal sinus	⑦ Cavernous sinus
② Inferior sagittal sinus	⑧ Anterior intercavernous sinus
③ Straight sinus	⑨ Posterior intercavernous sinus
④ Confluence of the sinuses	⑩ Sphenoparietal sinus
⑤ Transverse sinus	⑪ Superior petrosal sinus
⑥ Sigmoid sinus	⑫ Inferior petrosal sinus

Note: The occipital sinus is also included in the upper group.

— The paired **cavernous sinuses**, located on either side of the sella turcica, have characteristics that distinguish them from other dural sinuses (**Figs. 26.6** and **26.7**).

- Each cavernous sinus contains a large plexus of thinwalled veins.
- Several important structures are associated with each cavernous sinus:
  - Internal carotid artery, which is surrounded by the sympathetic internal carotid nerve plexus
  - Oculomotor nerve (CN III)
  - Trochlear nerve (CN IV)
  - Ophthalmic and maxillary divisions (CN V_1, V_2) of the trigeminal nerve
  - Abducent nerve (CN VI)

BOX 26.2: CLINICAL CORRELATION

CAVERNOUS SINUS THROMBOPHLEBITIS

Cavernous sinus thrombophlebitis can occur secondary to thrombophlebitis of the facial vein. Although blood from the angle of the eye, lips, nose, and face usually drains inferiorly, it can also drain through the veins of the orbit to the cavernous sinus. Infections from the face, particularly from the danger zone of the face (which extends from the bridge of the nose to the angles of the mouth) can spread infected thrombi to the cavernous sinus (see **Box 24.6**). This can affect the nerves that traverse the sinus (CN III, CN IV, CN V1 and V2, and CN VI) and result in acute meningitis.

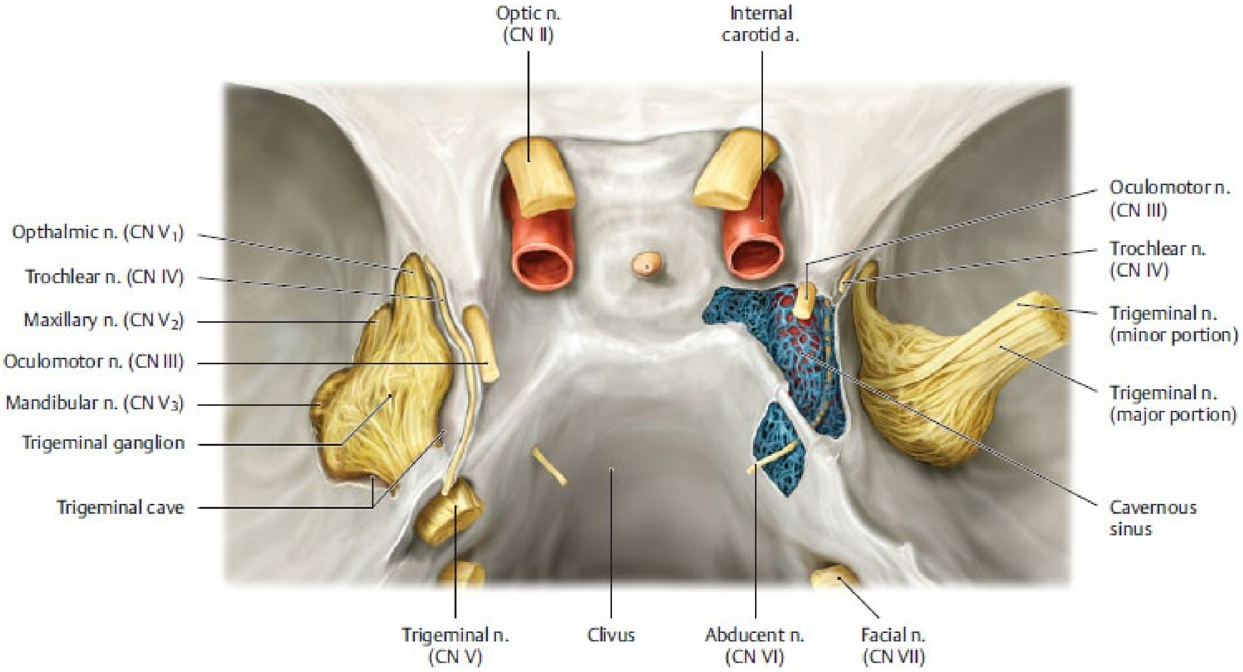

Optic n. (CN II)
Internal carotid a.
Opthalmic n. (CN V_1)
Trochlear n. (CN IV)
Maxillary n. (CN V_2)
Oculomotor n. (CN III)
Mandibular n. (CN V_3)
Trigeminal ganglion
Trigeminal cave
Oculomotor n. (CN III)
Trochlear n. (CN IV)
Trigeminal n. (minor portion)
Trigeminal n. (major portion)
Cavernous sinus
Trigeminal n. (CN V)
Clivus
Abducent n. (CN VI)
Facial n. (CN VII)

Fig. 26.6 Course of the cranial nerves through the cavernous sinus

Cranial view.

Sella turcica with partially opened cavernous sinus on the right side. On the right side, the lateral dural wall and roof of the cavernous sinus is removed and the trigeminal ganglion is cut and retracted laterally. CN = Cranial nerve. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

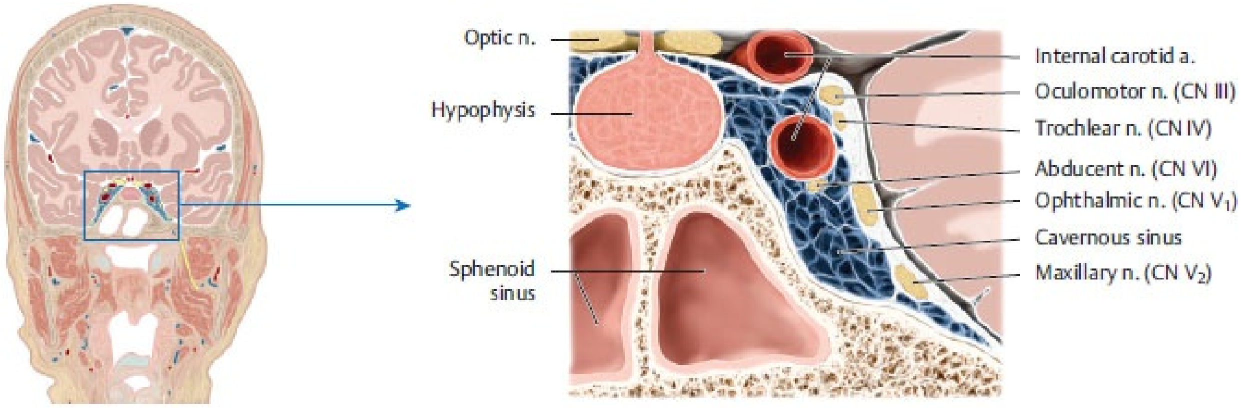

Optic n.
Hypophysis
Sphenoid sinus
Internal carotid a.
Oculomotor n. (CN III)
Trochlear n. (CN IV)
Abducent n. (CN VI)
Ophthalmic n. (CN V_1)
Cavernous sinus
Maxillary n. (CN V_2)

Fig. 26.7 Cavernous sinus

Middle cranial fossa, coronal section, anterior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

  - The cavernous sinuses receive the superior and inferior ophthalmic veins, the sphenoparietal sinuses, the superficial middle cerebral veins, and the central veins of the retina.
  - The cavernous sinuses drain into the superior and inferior petrosal sinuses posteriorly and the pterygoid venous plexus inferiorly.
  - Anterior and posterior **intercavernous sinuses** (see **Fig. 26.5**) connect the right and left cavernous sinuses.
- Paired **superior petrosal sinuses**, which drain the cavernous sinuses, travel within the attached margins of the tentorium cerebelli along the top of the petrous part of the temporal bones and empty into the sigmoid sinuses.
- Paired **inferior petrosal sinuses** drain the cavernous sinuses, passing through a groove between the petrous part of the temporal bones and the basilar part of the occipital bone and emptying into the sigmoid sinuses at the origin of the internal jugular veins. The inferior petrosal sinuses communicate, through a **basilar plexus**, with the vertebral venous plexus.

Arachnoid and Pia Mater (see Figs. 26.1, 26.4, 26.8)

- **Arachnoid** is a thin, avascular, fibrous layer underlying the meningeal layer of the dura.
  - Cerebrospinal fluid in the subarachnoid space presses the arachnoid against the overlying dura, but the two layers are not attached. Weblike **arachnoid trabeculae** attach the arachnoid to the underlying **pia mater**.
  - Delicate fingers of the arachnoid layer, the **arachnoid villi**, pierce the dura to allow the reabsorption of cerebrospinal fluid into the venous circulation and are especially numerous in the superior sagittal sinus. They form aggregations called **arachnoid granulations** that protrude into the largest dural venous sinuses and can push the dura ahead of them into the parietal bone, forming “pits.”
  - Congregations of arachnoid granulations also occur in **lateral lacunae**, lateral expansions of the superior sagittal sinus.
- **Pia mater**, or pia, is a thin, highly vascular layer that adheres to the surface of the brain and closely follows its contours.

Meningeal Spaces (Fig. 26.8)

- The **epidural space** between the cranium and dura is not a natural space because the dura adheres to the skull. Meningeal vessels that supply the skull and dura travel in this space.

- The **subdural space** between the dura and arachnoid is a potential space, open only in pathologic conditions such as a subdural hematoma. Superficial cerebral veins (“bridging veins”) cross this space, connecting the venous circulation of the brain with the dural venous sinuses.

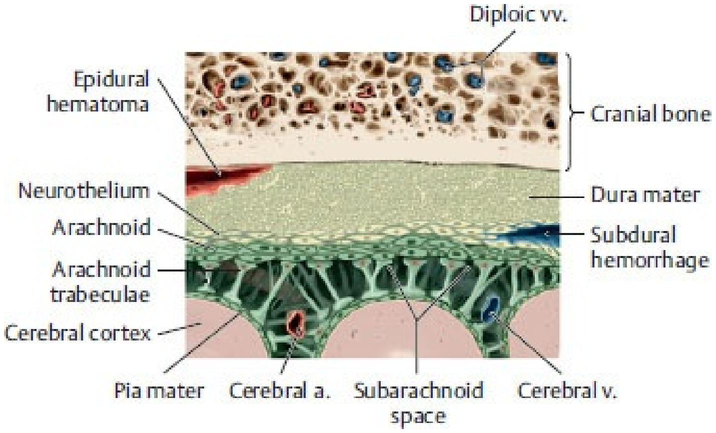

Diploic vv.
Epidural hematoma
Cranial bone
Neurothelium
Dura mater
Arachnoid
Subdural hemorrhage
Arachnoid trabeculae
Cerebral cortex
Pia mater
Cerebral a.
Subarachnoid space
Cerebral v.

Fig. 26.8 Meningeal spaces

Meninges, coronal section, anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- The **subarachnoid space**, between the arachnoid and pia layers, contains cerebrospinal fluid, arteries, and veins.
  - **Subarachnoid cisterns** are spaces that form where the subarachnoid space enlarges around large infoldings of the brain. The largest of these include the **cerebellomedullary, pontomedullary, interpeduncular, chiasmatic, quadrigeminal**, and **ambient cisterns** (see Section 26.2; see **Fig. 26.11**).

BOX 26.3: CLINICAL CORRELATION

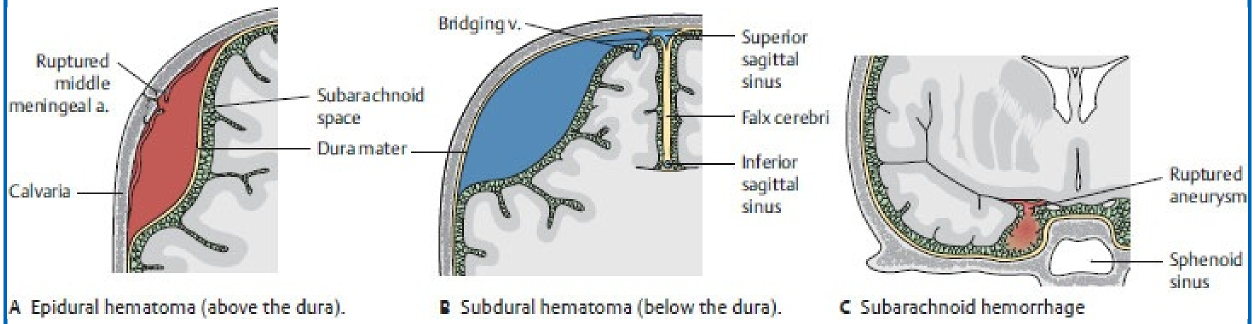
EXTRACEREBRAL HEMORRHAGE

Bleeding from vessels between the bony skull and the brain (extracerebral hemorrhage) increases intracranial pressure and can damage brain tissue. Three types of cerebral hemorrhages are distinguished based on their relationship to the meningeal layers.

Epidural hemorrhages commonly originate from a torn middle meningeal artery following a skull fracture at the pterion and result in bleeding into the epidural space. The hemorrhagic spread is usually limited by suture lines because the dura is attached to the skull at these points. As a result, the local accumulation of blood causes compression of the brain in that area.

Subdural hematomas result from tearing of the bridging veins as they traverse the gap between the dural sinus and cerebral cortex. The elderly are more susceptible to this type of hemorrhage because with brain shrinkage these veins bridge a larger gap and are more vulnerable to injury from head trauma. This condition may mimic a slowly evolving stroke with a fluctuating level of consciousness and localizing neurologic signs.

Most subarachnoid hemorrhages occur due to the rupture of aneurysms associated with vessels of the circle of Willis and most frequently with vessels of the anterior cerebral circulation. These hemorrhages into the subarachnoid space begin with a sudden, severe headache, neck stiffness, and drowsiness but can progress to severe consequences such as hemiplegia and coma.



A Epidural hematoma (above the dura). B Subdural hematoma (below the dura). C Subarachnoid hemorrhage

Extracerebral hemorrhages

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

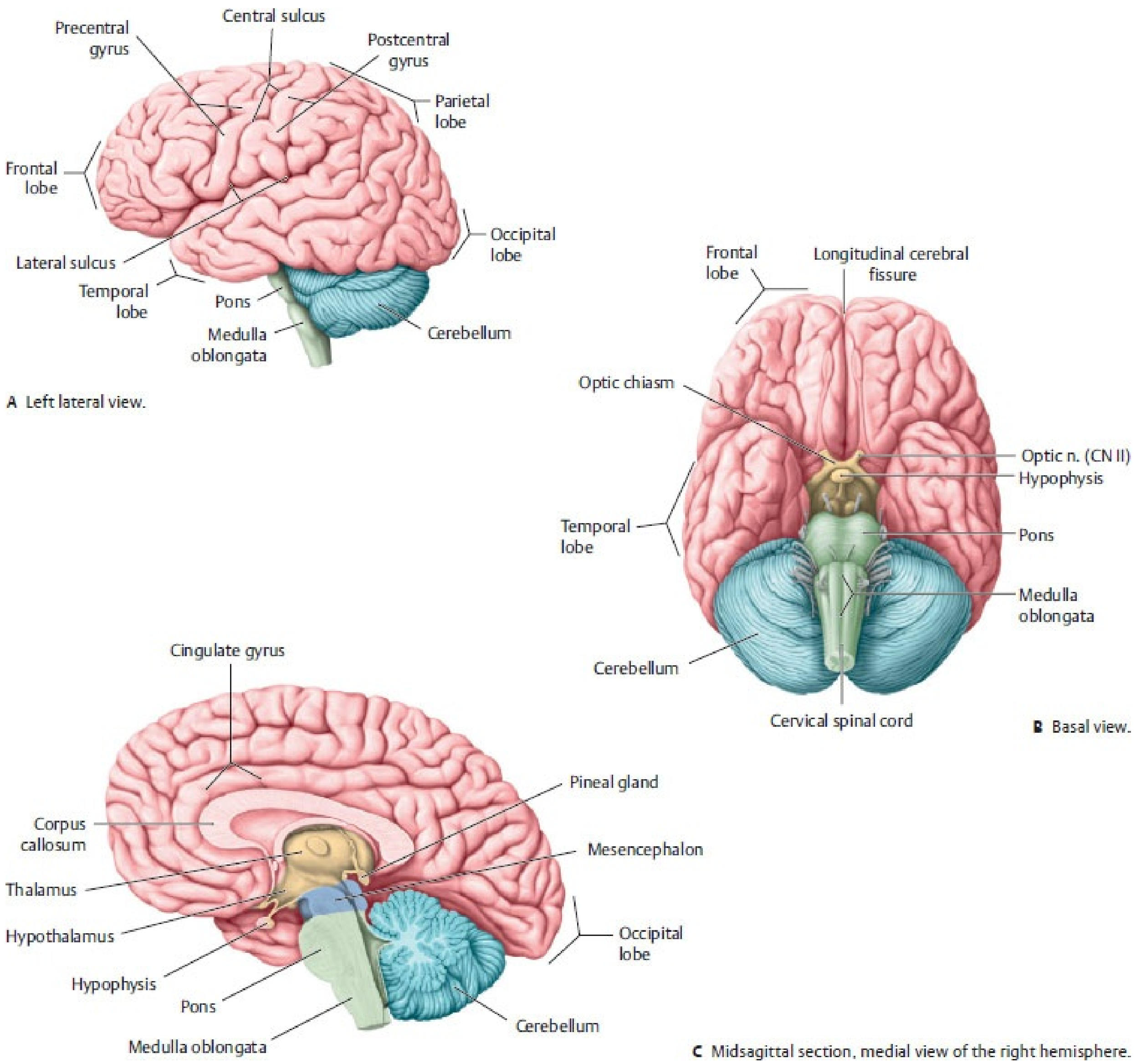
26.2 The Brain

The brain, enclosed within the bony skull, is the largest part of the central nervous system. It communicates with the peripheral nervous system through the spinal cord and spinal nerves and through the 12 pairs of cranial nerves.

Regions of the Brain

The major regions of the brain are the cerebrum, diencephalon, brainstem (mesencephalon, pons, medulla oblongata), and cerebellum (**Fig. 26.9**).

- The **cerebrum** is the largest part of the brain and the center for integration within the central nervous system.
  - The falx cerebri lies in a **longitudinal fissure** between the **right** and **left cerebral hemispheres**.
  - Each cerebral hemisphere is further divided into **frontal, parietal, occipital**, and **temporal lobes** that occupy the anterior and middle cranial fossae.
  - Posteriorly, the cerebrum rests on the tentorium cerebelli.
  - The surface layer of the cerebrum (cortex) forms **gyri** (folds) separated by sulci (grooves).
- The **diencephalon** forms the central core of the brain and consists of the **thalamus, hypophysis**, and **hypothalamus**.
- The **mesencephalon** (midbrain), the most anterior part of the brainstem, passes through the tentorial notch between the middle and posterior cranial fossae.
  - It is associated with the oculomotor (CN III) and trochlear (CN IV) nerves.
- The **pons**, the middle part of the brainstem, lies in the anterior part of the posterior cranial fossa below the mesencephalon.


Precentral gyrus
Central sulcus
Postcentral gyrus
Parietal lobe
Frontal lobe
Occipital lobe
Lateral sulcus
Temporal lobe
Pons
Medulla oblongata
Cerebellum
Frontal lobe
Longitudinal cerebral fissure
Optic chiasm
Optic n. (CN II)
Hypophysis
Temporal lobe
Pons
Medulla oblongata
Cerebellum
Cervical spinal cord
Cingulate gyrus
Pineal gland
Corpus callosum
Mesencephalon
Thalamus
Hypothalamus
Occipital lobe
Hypophysis
Pons
Cerebellum
Medulla oblongata

A Left lateral view.

B Basal view.

C Midsagittal section, medial view of the right hemisphere.

Fig. 26.9 Adult brain

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

  - Several ascending and descending fiber tracts connect the pons to the cerebellum.
  - The pons is associated with the trigeminal (CN V), abducent (CN VI), and facial (CN VII) nerves.
- The **medulla oblongata**, the most posterior part of the brainstem, connects the brain and spinal cord.
  - It contains nuclei for the vestibulocochlear (CN VIII), glossopharyngeal

(CN IX), vagus (CN X), and hypoglossal (XII) nerves.

— The **cerebellum**, which occupies most of the posterior cranial fossa, lies inferior to the cerebrum and is separated from it by the tentorium cerebelli.
  - It consists of paired hemispheres and a small middle section, the vermis.

Ventricular System and Cerebrospinal Fluid

The brain and spinal cord are suspended in cerebrospinal fluid (CSF). The buoyant environment created by the CSF reduces the pressure of the brain on the nerves and vessels on its inferior surface.

— CSF is produced in the **choroid plexuses**, vascular networks within four ventricles (spaces) of the brain. The first two of these ventricles are large and paired; the third and fourth are smaller and lie in the midline (**Fig. 26.10**).
  - The **1st** and **2nd** (**lateral**) **ventricles**, paired cavities that occupy a large portion of each cerebral hemisphere, communicate with the 3rd ventricle through the **interventricular foramina**.
  - The **3rd ventricle**, a slitlike space between the two halves of the diencephalon, communicates posteriorly with the 4th ventricle through a narrow passage, the **cerebral aqueduct**, which passes through the mesencephalon.
  - The **4th ventricle**, a pyramidally shaped space that extends from the pons to the medulla oblongata, is continuous with the spinal canal inferiorly and with the subarachnoid space through the **median** and **lateral apertures** in its roof.

— CSF circulates through the ventricles and passes into the subarachnoid space and subarachnoid cisterns through the median and lateral apertures of the 4th ventricle. It flows superiorly through the fissures and sulci of the cerebrum and is reabsorbed into the venous circulation through the arachnoid granulations that protrude into the superior sagittal sinus (**Fig. 26.11**).

BOX 26.4: CLINICAL CORRELATION

HYDROCEPHALUS

Hydrocephalus, an excessive accumulation of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) in the ventricles of the brain, can occur as a result of partial obstruction of the flow of CSF within the ventricular system, interference of CSF reabsorption into the venous circulation, or, in rare cases, overproduction of CSF. Excess CSF in the ventricles causes them to dilate and exert pressure on the surrounding cortex, causing the bones of the calvaria to separate, thus creating the characteristic increase in head size. Treatment involves the placement of a shunt between the ventricles and the abdomen, which allows CSF to drain to the peritoneal cavity, where it can be easily absorbed.

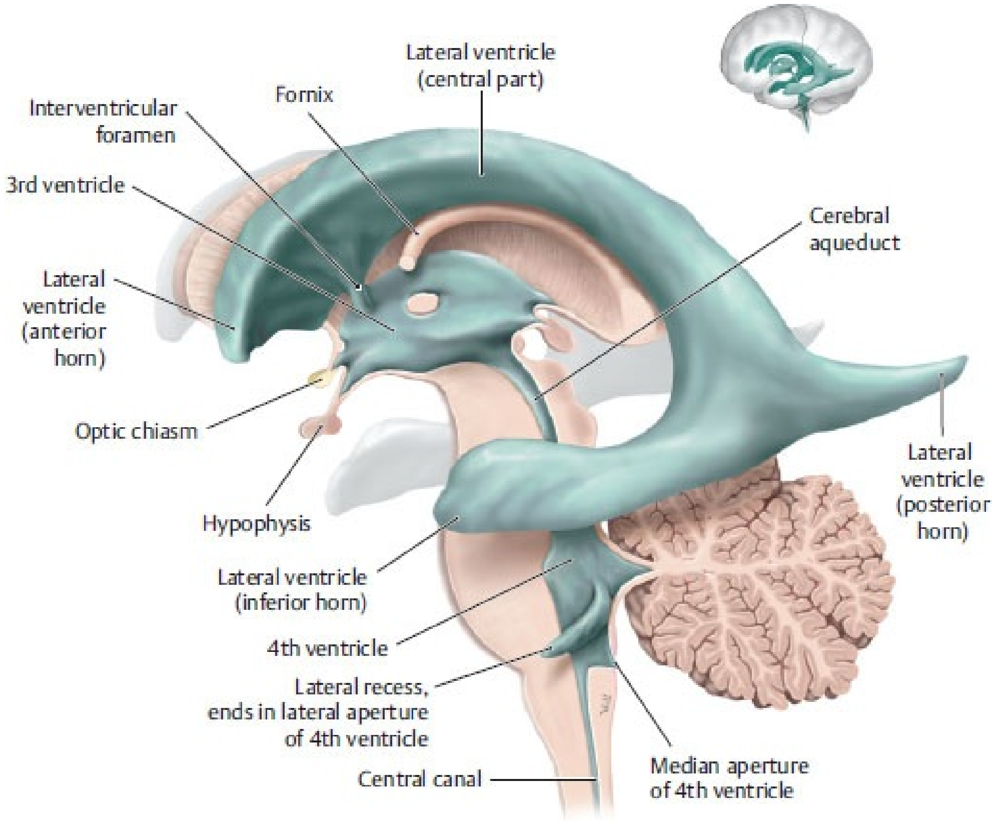

Lateral ventricle (central part)
Fornix
Interventricular foramen
3rd ventricle
Lateral ventricle (anterior horn)
Cerebral aqueduct
Optic chiasm
Hypophysis
Lateral ventricle (posterior horn)
Lateral ventricle (inferior horn)
4th ventricle
Lateral recess, ends in lateral aperture of 4th ventricle
Central canal
Median aperture of 4th ventricle

Fig. 26.10 Ventricular system in situ
Ventricular system with neighboring structures, left lateral view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

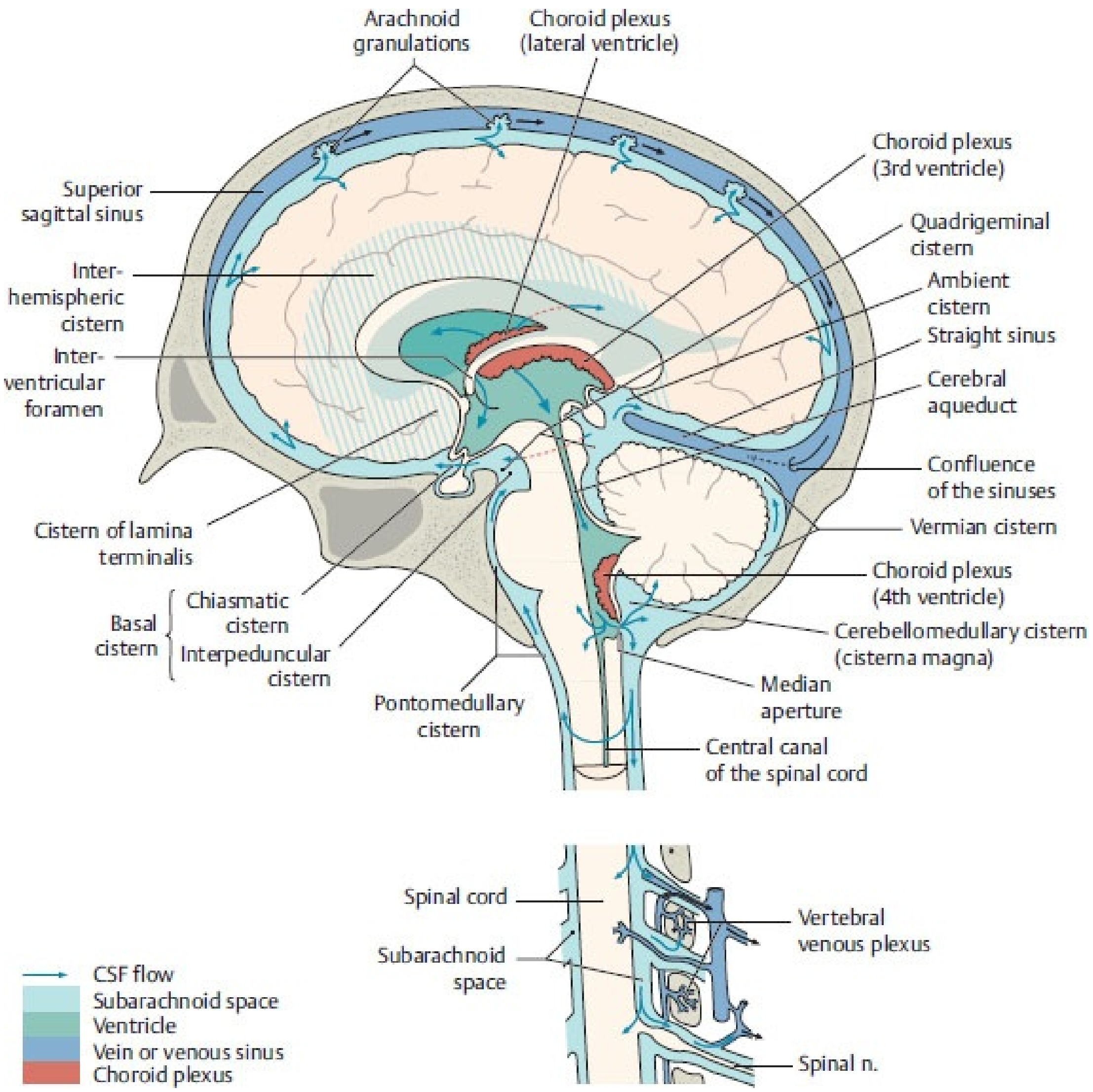

Arachnoid granulations
Choroid plexus (lateral ventricle)
Choroid plexus (3rd ventricle)
Superior sagittal sinus
Quadrigeminal cistern
Inter-hemispheric cistern
Ambient cistern
Straight sinus
Inter-ventricular foramen
Cerebral aqueduct
Confluence of the sinuses
Vermian cistern
Cistern of lamina terminalis
Choroid plexus (4th ventricle)
Basal cistern
Chiasmatic cistern
Interpeduncular cistern
Cerebellomedullary cistern (cisterna magna)
Median aperture
Pontomedullary cistern
Central canal of the spinal cord
Spinal cord
Vertebral venous plexus
Subarachnoid space
CSF flow
Subarachnoid space
Ventricle
Vein or venous sinus
Choroid plexus
Spinal n.

Fig. 26.11 Circulation of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF)

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Arteries of the Brain

As a result of its high metabolic demand, the brain receives one sixth of the cardiac output and one fifth of the oxygen consumed by the body at rest. This blood supply, derived from the internal carotid and vertebral arteries, is divided into **anterior** and **posterior cerebral circulations** (**Fig. 26.12**), which unite on the ventral surface of the brain to form a **cerebral arterial circle** (of Willis).

— The internal carotid artery supplies the anterior cerebral circulation (see **Fig. 24.25**).

  - Its **petrous part** has a tortuous course as it enters the skull and follows the carotid canal horizontally and medially within the temporal bone. Small branches pass into the middle ear and pterygoid canal.

  - The **cavernous part** crosses over the foramen lacerum and runs anteriorly within the cavernous sinus (**Fig. 26.13**). Small branches supply the meninges, hypophysis, and cranial nerves within the cavernous sinus.
  - The **cerebral part** in the middle cranial fossa gives off the ophthalmic artery (see **Fig. 28.12**) and immediately makes a U-turn to run posteriorly, where it divides into the anterior cerebral and middle cerebral arteries.
- The vertebral and basilar arteries supply the posterior cerebral circulation.
  - The vertebral artery enters the skull through the foramen magnum and supplies branches to the spinal cord and cerebellum before merging with the opposite vertebral artery to form a single basilar artery.
    - Intracranial branches of the vertebral artery include the posterior inferior cerebellar artery and the anterior and posterior spinal arteries.

BOX 26.5: CLINICAL CORRELATION

STROKE

A stroke is the manifestation of a neurologic deficiency resulting from a cerebral vascular impairment. *Ischemic strokes* are usually caused by an embolus obstructing one of the major cerebral arteries. Although the vessels of the circle of Willis can provide collateral circulation to circumvent the obstruction, anastomoses between the vessels are often incomplete or of insufficient size to provide adequate flow. *Hemorrhagic strokes* are usually due to rupture of an aneurysm, most often a saccular, or berry, aneurysm that bleeds into the subarachnoid space. Symptoms occur shortly after the cerebral event and relate to the area of brain affected. They may include difficulty speaking, understanding language, or walking; vision problems; contralateral paralysis or numbness; and headache.

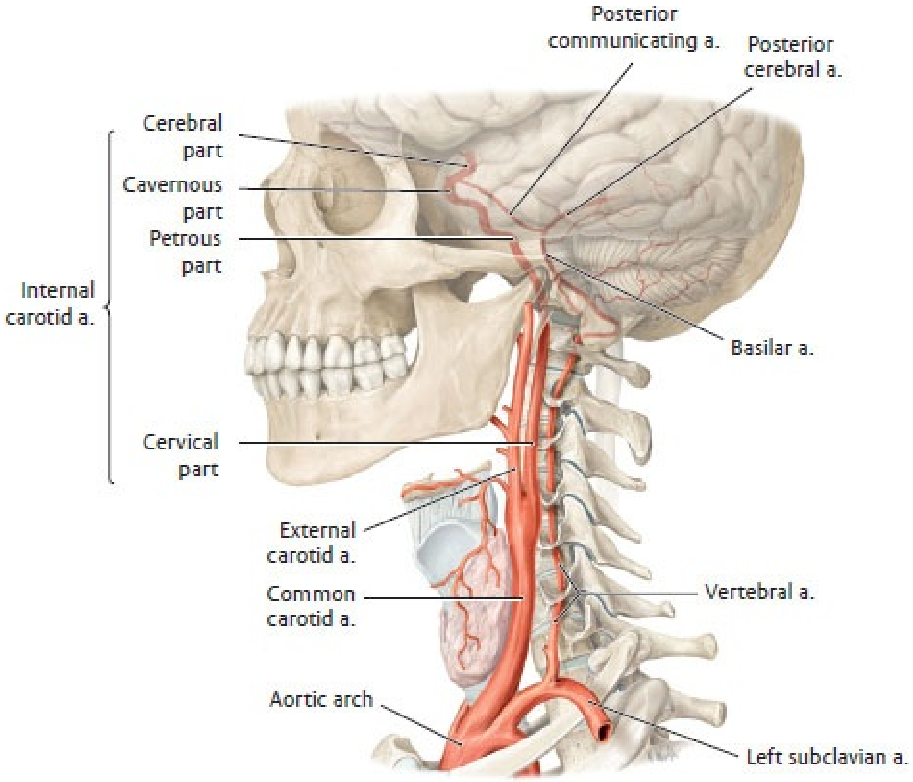

Posterior communicating a.
Posterior cerebral a.
Cerebral part
Cavernous part
Petrous part
Internal carotid a.
Basilar a.
Cervical part
External carotid a.
Common carotid a.
Vertebral a.
Aortic arch
Left subclavian a.

Fig. 26.12 Internal carotid artery
Left lateral view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- The **basilar artery** ascends on the ventral surface of the brainstem, distributing branches to the brainstem, cerebellum, and cerebrum. It terminates as the right and left **posterior cerebral arteries**.
  - Major branches of the basilar artery are the **anterior inferior cerebellar artery** and the **superior cerebellar artery**.

— The **cerebral arterial circle** (of Willis), an important arterial anastomosis on the ventral surface of the brain, supplies the brain and connects the circulations of the internal carotid and vertebral arteries (**Figs. 26.14** and **26.15**).

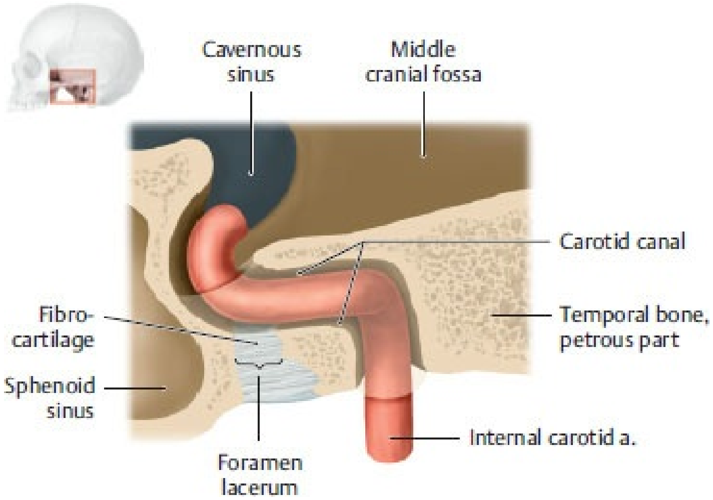

Cavernous sinus
Middle cranial fossa
Carotid canal
Fibro-cartilage
Temporal bone, petrous part
Sphenoid sinus
Internal carotid a.
Foramen lacerum

Fig. 26.13 The foramen lacerum and the internal carotid artery in the carotid canal

Left lateral view. The foramen lacerum is not a true aperture, being occluded in life by a layer of fibrocartilage; it appears as an opening only in the dried skull. It is closely related to the internal carotid artery that traverses the canal. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- A small **anterior communicating artery** connects the two anterior cerebral arteries, linking the right and left anterior cerebral circulations.
- A pair of **posterior communicating arteries** connects the internal carotid and posterior cerebral arteries on each side, completing the communication between the anterior and posterior cerebral circulations.
- The vessels that form the circle are
  - the anterior communicating arteries,
  - the anterior cerebral arteries,
  - the internal carotid arteries,
  - the posterior communicating arteries, and
  - the posterior cerebral arteries.

— The cerebral arteries that arise from the cerebral arterial circle provide the blood supply to the cerebral hemispheres (Table 26.2).

Table 26.2 Distribution of the Cerebral Arteries

Artery	Origin	Distribution
Anterior cerebral	Internal carotid artery	Frontal pole and medial

		and superior surfaces of the cerebral hemispheres
Middle cerebral	Internal carotid artery	Most of the lateral surfaces of the cerebral hemispheres
Posterior cerebral	Basilar artery	Occipital pole and inferior part of temporal lobe

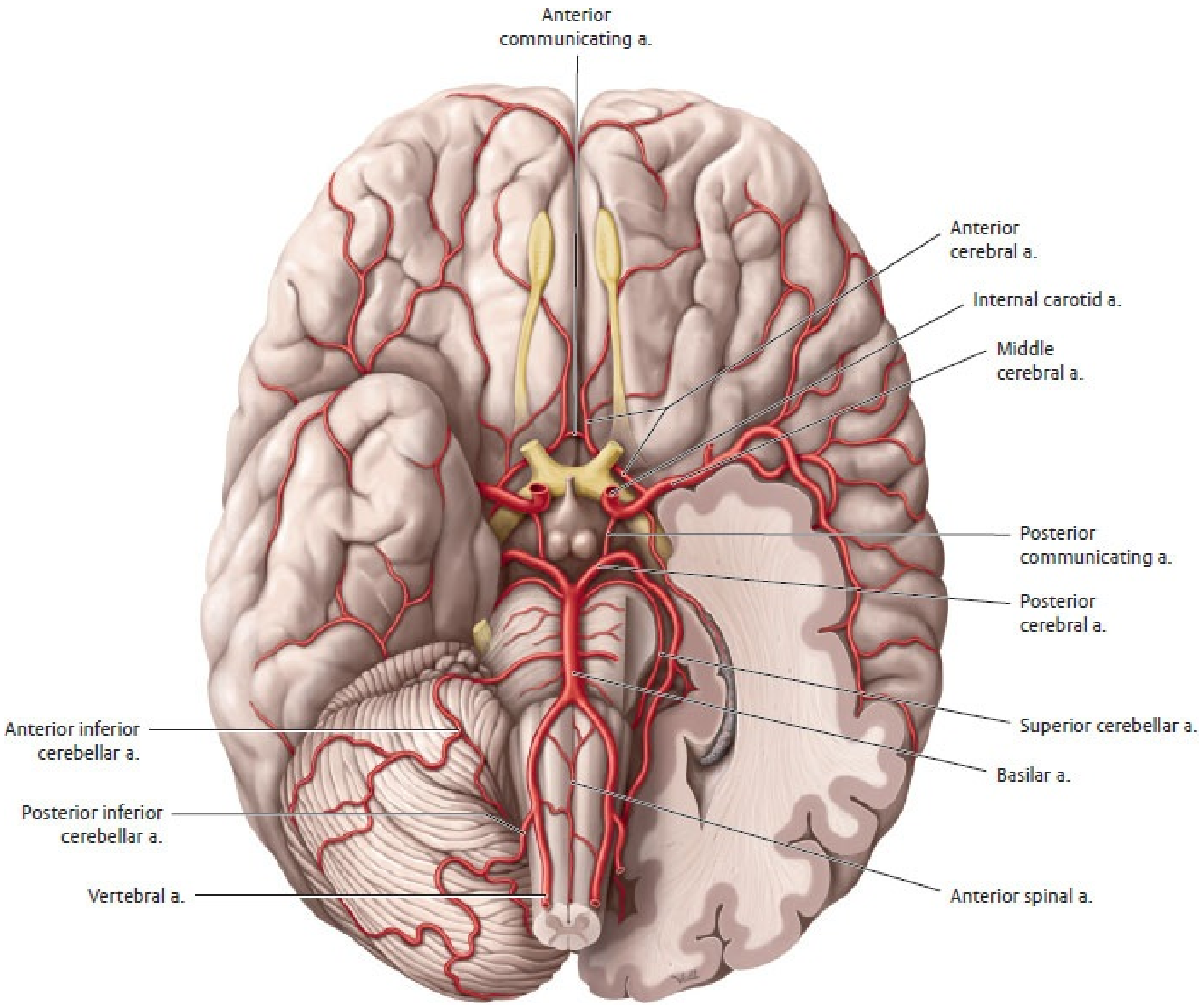

Anterior communicating a.
Anterior cerebral a.
Internal carotid a.
Middle cerebral a.
Posterior communicating a.
Posterior cerebral a.
Superior cerebellar a.
Basilar a.
Anterior spinal a.
Anterior inferior cerebellar a.
Posterior inferior cerebellar a.
Vertebral a.

Fig. 26.14 Arteries of the brain
Inferior (basal) view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

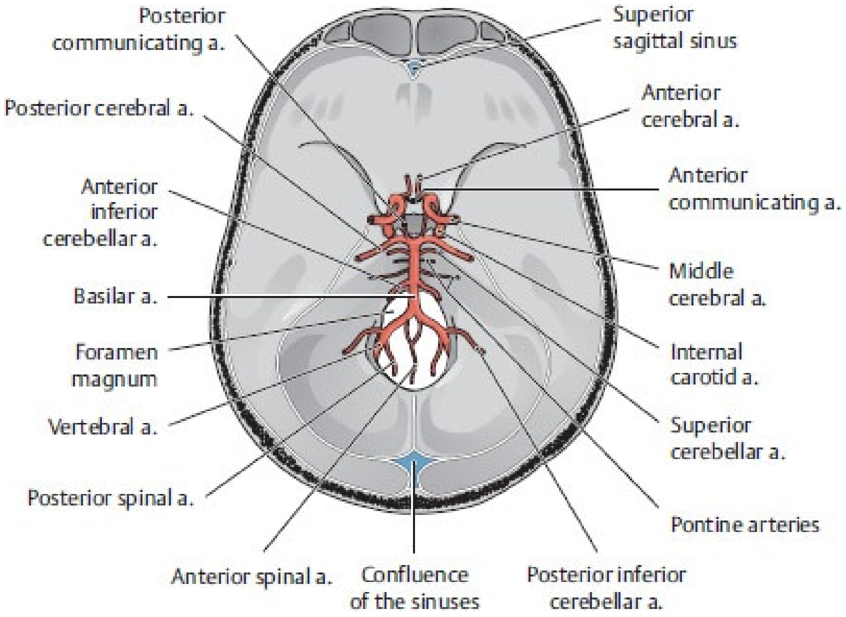

Posterior communicating a.
Superior sagittal sinus
Posterior cerebral a.
Anterior cerebral a.
Anterior communicating a.
Anterior inferior cerebellar a.
Middle cerebral a.
Basilar a.
Foramen magnum
Internal carotid a.
Vertebral a.
Superior cerebellar a.
Posterior spinal a.
Pontine arteries
Anterior spinal a.
Confluence of the sinuses
Posterior inferior cerebellar a.

Fig. 26.15 Projection of the circle of Willis onto the base of the skull

Superior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Veins of the Brain

Veins that drain the brain are thin-walled and valveless and usually drain into one of the dural venous sinuses (**Fig. 26.16**).

- Superficial (external) veins that drain the cerebral hemispheres include
  - the **superior cerebral veins**, which drain the supralateral and medial aspects. These “bridging veins” traverse the subdural space and drain into the superior sagittal sinus (**Fig. 26.17**);
  - the **middle cerebral veins**, which drain the lateral hemispheres and empty into the cavernous sinus and from there into the petrosal and transverse sinuses; and
  - the **inferior cerebral veins**, which drain inferior aspects of the brain and join either the superior cerebral or the **basilar veins**.
- Basilar veins drain the small anterior cerebral veins and deep middle cerebral veins.
- **Internal cerebral veins** drain the 3rd and 4th ventricles and deep parts of the cerebrum. These unite to form the **great cerebral vein**.
- The great cerebral vein receives the basilar veins and merges with the inferior sagittal sinus to form the straight sinus.
- **Superior** and **inferior cerebellar veins** drain the cerebellum into adjacent dural sinuses or superficially into the great cerebral vein.

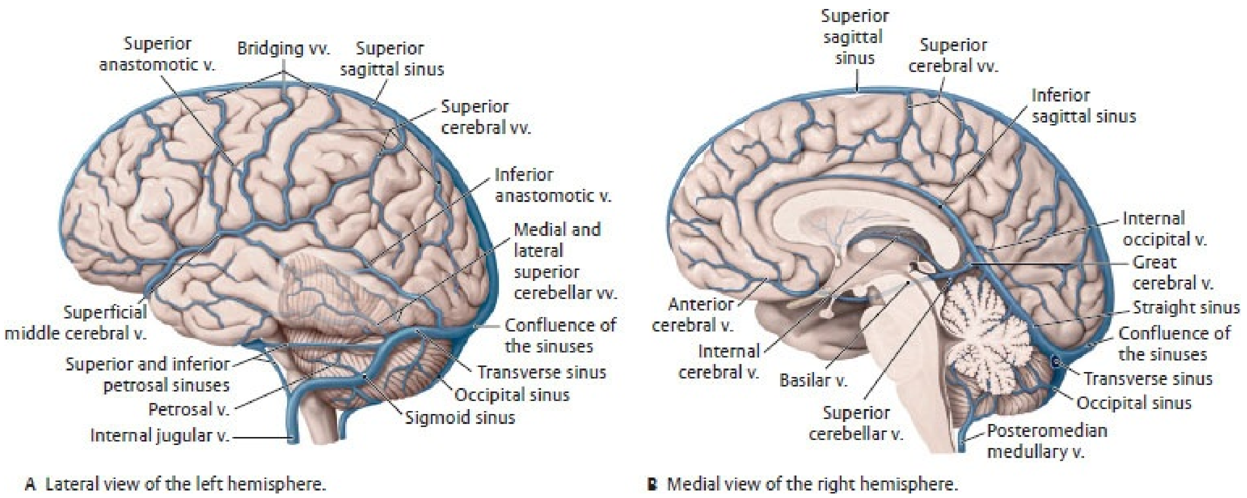

Superior anastomotic v.
Bridging vv.
Superior sagittal sinus
Superior cerebral vv.
Inferior anastomotic v.
Medial and lateral superior cerebellar vv.
Superficial middle cerebral v.
Confluence of the sinuses
Superior and inferior petrosal sinuses
Transverse sinus
Petrosal v.
Occipital sinus
Internal jugular v.
Sigmoid sinus
A Lateral view of the left hemisphere.
Superior sagittal sinus
Superior cerebral vv.
Inferior sagittal sinus
Internal occipital v.
Great cerebral v.
Straight sinus
Anterior cerebral v.
Confluence of the sinuses
Internal cerebral v.
Basilar v.
Transverse sinus
Occipital sinus
Superior cerebellar v.
Posteromedian medullary v.
B Medial view of the right hemisphere.

Fig. 26.16 Cerebral veins

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

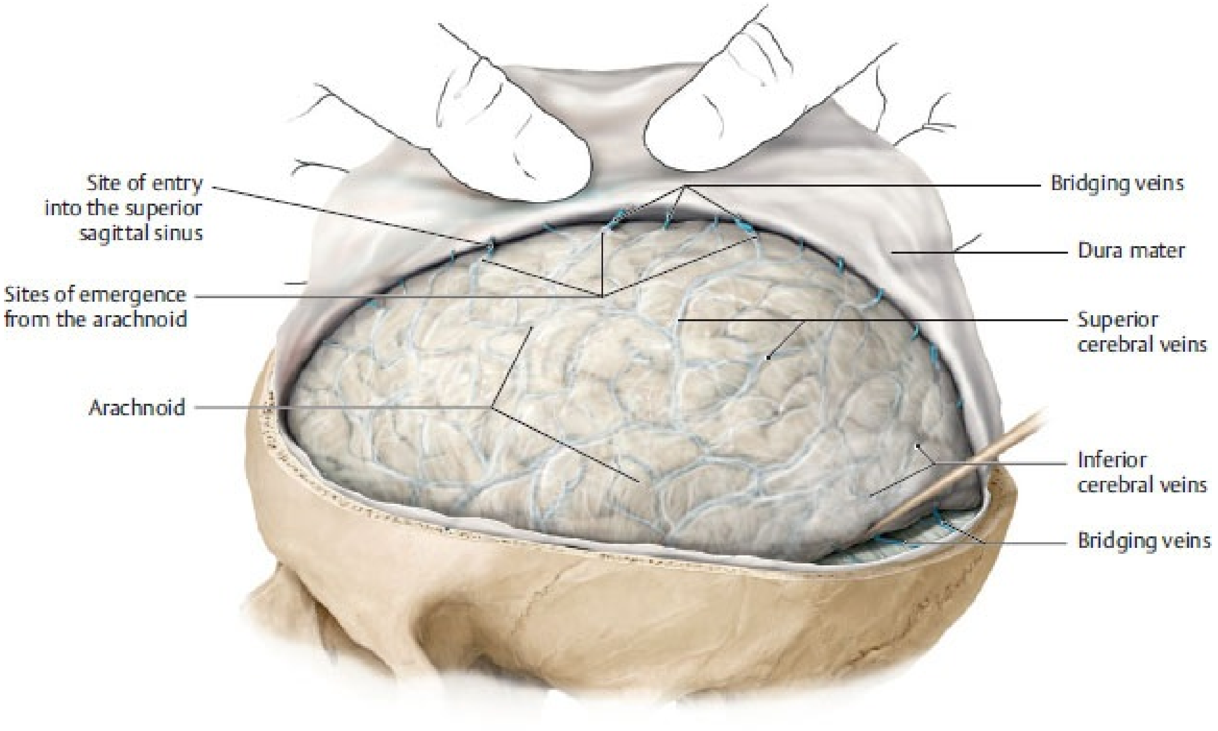

Site of entry into the superior sagittal sinus
Bridging veins
Dura mater
Sites of emergence from the arachnoid
Superior cerebral veins
Arachnoid
Inferior cerebral veins
Bridging veins

Fig. 26.17 Bridging veins

Viewed from upper left; the dura has been opened and reflected upward. Before superficial cerebral veins terminate in the dural sinus, they leave the subarachnoid space for a short distance and course between the arachnoid and meningeal layers of the dura to the superior sagittal sinus. Injury to these segments of cerebral veins, called “bridging veins,” leads to subdural hemorrhage. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

26.3 Cranial Nerves

The 12 cranial nerves arise from the base of the brain (**Figs. 26.18** and **26.19**; **Tables. 26.3** and **26.4**). Like spinal nerves, cranial nerves can stimulate muscles or transmit sensation from a peripheral structure to the central nervous system. Some cranial nerves also carry fibers from the cranial portion of the parasympathetic nervous system. Seven types of nerve fibers are found (alone or in combination) in cranial nerves.

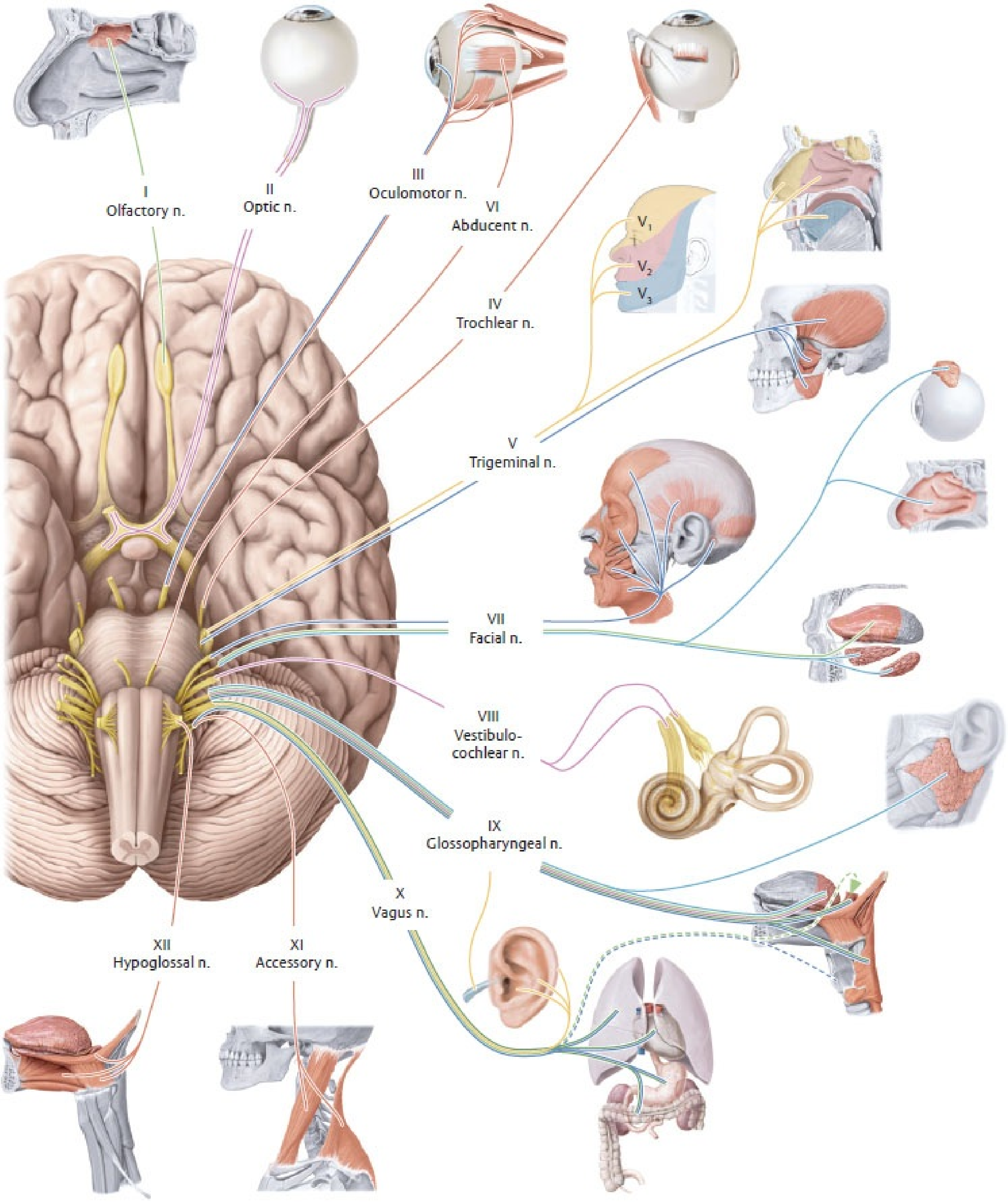

I
Olfactory n.
II
Optic n.
III
Oculomotor n.
VI
Abducent n.
IV
Trochlear n.
V_1
V_2
V_3
V
Trigeminal n.
VII
Facial n.
VIII
Vestibulo-cochlear n.
IX
Glossopharyngeal n.
X
Vagus n.
XII
Hypoglossal n.
XI
Accessory n.

Fig. 26.18 Cranial nerves

Inferior (basal) view. The 12 pairs of cranial nerves (CN) are numbered according to their emergence from the brainstem. (*See* ***Table 26.3*** *for explanation of color coding*.) (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York:

Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

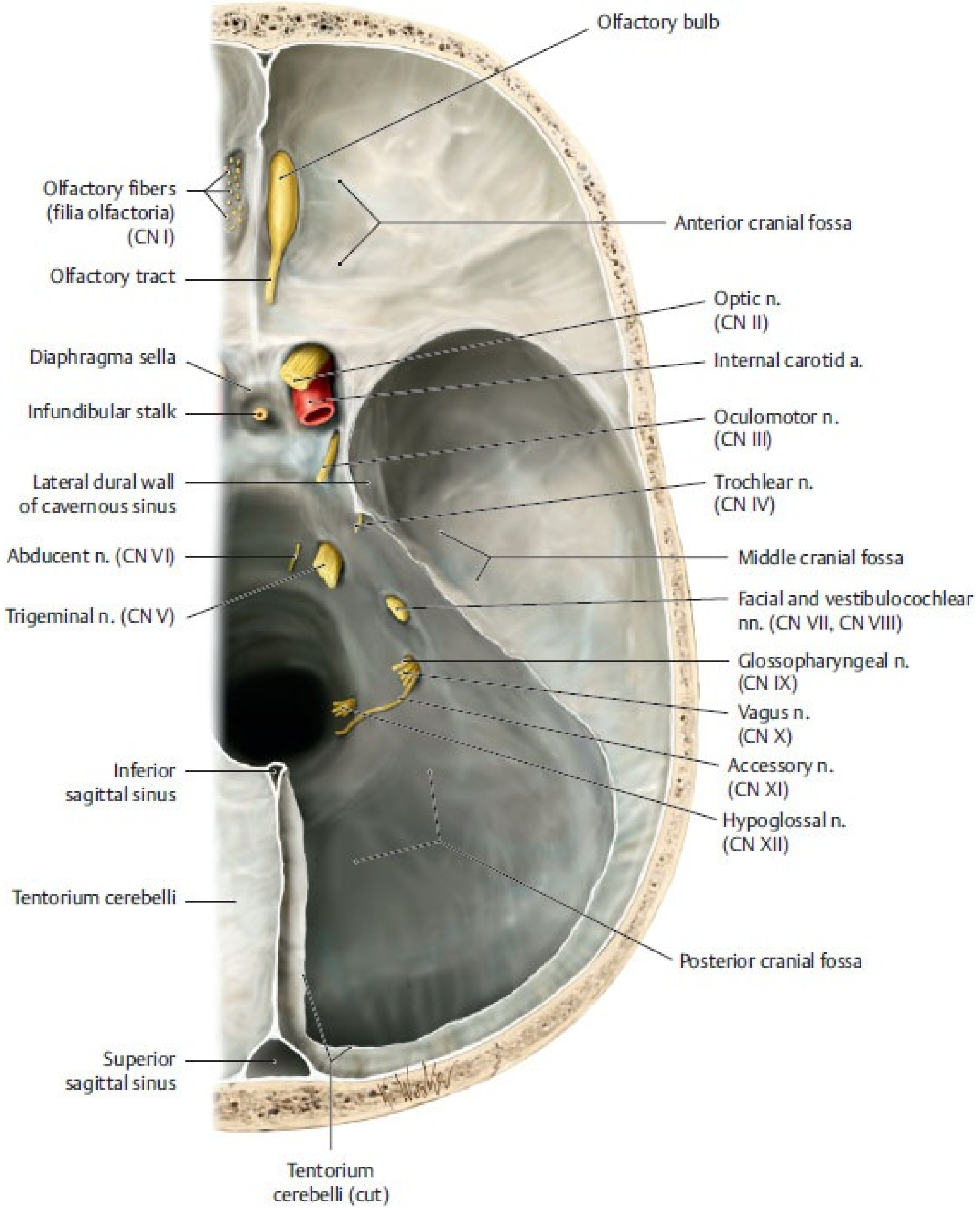

Olfactory bulb
Olfactory fibers (filia olfactoria) (CN I)
Anterior cranial fossa
Olfactory tract
Optic n. (CN II)
Diaphragma sella
Internal carotid a.
Infundibular stalk
Oculomotor n. (CN III)
Lateral dural wall of cavernous sinus
Trochlear n. (CN IV)
Abducent n. (CN VI)
Middle cranial fossa
Trigeminal n. (CN V)
Facial and vestibulocochlear nn. (CN VII, CN VIII)
Glossopharyngeal n. (CN IX)
Vagus n. (CN X)
Accessory n. (CN XI)
Inferior sagittal sinus
Hypoglossal n. (CN XII)
Tentorium cerebelli
Posterior cranial fossa
Superior sagittal sinus
Tentorium cerebelli (cut)

Fig. 26.19 Cranial nerves exiting the cranial cavity

Cranial cavity (superior view of interior skull base), right side. *Removed*: Brain and tentorium cerebelli. The ends of the cranial nerves have been cut to reveal the fissures, fossa, or dural cave where they pass through the cranial fossa. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers;

2020.)

Table 26.3 Classification of Cranial Nerve Fibers

Fiber Type	Function
General somatomotor	○ Innervate voluntary muscle
General visceromotor (parasympathetic)	○ Constitute the cranial component of the parasympathetic system, innervate involuntary muscles and glands
Special visceromotor (branchiomotor)	○ Innervate muscles that developed from the primitive pharynx (pharyngeal arches)
General somatosensory	○ Carry sensations such as touch, temperature, pain, and pressure
Special somatosensory	○ Carry impulses from the eye for sight and from the ear for hearing and balance
General viscerosensory	○ Transmit information from viscera such as carotid bodies, the heart, esophagus, trachea, and gastrointestinal tract
Special viscerosensory	○ Transmit information regarding smell and taste

See **Fig. 26.18** for explanation of color coding.

Table 26.4 Cranial Nerves: Function Overview

Cranial Nerve		Passage Through Skull	Sensory Territory (Afferent)/Target Organ (Efferent)
CN I: Olfactory n.		Ethmoid bone (cribriform plate)	Smell: special viscerosensory fibers from olfactory mucosa of nasal cavity
CN II: Optic n.		Optic canal	Sight: special somatosensory fibers from retina
CN III: Oculomotor n.		Superior orbital fissure	Somatomotor innervation: to levator palpebrae superioris and four extraocular mm. (superior, medial, and inferior rectus, and inferior oblique)
			Parasympathetic innervation: preganglionic fibers to ciliary ganglion; postganglionic fibers to intraocular mm. (ciliary mm. and pupillary sphincter)
CN IV: Trochlear n.		Superior orbital fissure	Somatomotor innervation: to one extraocular m. (superior oblique)
CN V: Trigeminal n.	CN V_1	Superior orbital fissure	General somatic sensation: from orbit, nasal cavity, paranasal sinuses, dura of anterior and middle cranial fossae, and face
	CN V_2	Foramen rotundum	General somatic sensation: from nasal cavity, paranasal sinuses, superior nasopharynx, upper oral cavity, dura of anterior and middle cranial fossae, and face
	CN V_3	Foramen ovale	General somatic sensation: from lower oral cavity, ear, dura of anterior and middle cranial fossae, and face
			Branchiomotor innervation: to the eight mm. derived from the 1st pharyngeal (branchial) arch (including mm. of mastication)
CN VI: Abducent n.		Superior orbital fissure	Somatomotor innervation: to one extraocular m. (lateral rectus)
CN VII: Facial n.		Internal acoustic meatus	General somatic sensation: from external ear
			Taste: special viscerosensory fibers from tongue (anterior two thirds) and soft palate
			Parasympathetic innervation: preganglionic fibers to submandibular and pterygopalatine ganglia; postganglionic fibers to glands (e.g., lacrimal, submandibular, sublingual, palatine) and mucosa of nasal cavity, palate, and paranasal sinuses
			Branchiomotor innervation: to mm. derived from the 2nd pharyngeal arch (including mm. of facial expression, stylohyoid, posterior digastric, and stapedius)
CN VIII: Vestibulocochlear n.		Internal acoustic meatus	Hearing and balance: special somatosensory fibers from cochlea (hearing) and vestibular apparatus (balance)
CN IX: Glossopharyngeal n.		Jugular foramen	General somatic sensation: from oral cavity, pharynx, tongue (posterior third), and middle ear
			Taste: special visceral sensation from tongue (posterior third)
			General visceral sensation: from carotid body and sinus
			Parasympathetic innervation: preganglionic fibers to otic ganglion; postganglionic fibers to parotid gland and buccal and labial glands
			Branchiomotor innervation: to the one m. derived from the 3rd pharyngeal arch (stylopharyngeus)
CN X: Vagus n.		Jugular foramen	General somatic sensation: from ear and dura of posterior cranial fossa
			Taste: special visceral sensation from epiglottis and root of tongue
			General visceral sensation: from aortic body, laryngopharynx and larynx, respiratory tract, and thoracoabdominal viscera
			Parasympathetic innervation: preganglionic fibers to small, unnamed ganglia near target organs or embedded in smooth muscle walls; postganglionic fibers to glands, mucosa, and smooth muscle of pharynx, larynx, and thoracic and abdominal viscera
			Branchiomotor innervation: to pharyngeal and laryngeal mm. derived from the 4th and 6th pharyngeal arches; also distributes branchiomotor fibers from CN XI
CN XI: Accessory n.		Jugular foramen	Spinal root: somatomotor innervation: to trapezius and sternocleidomastoid
			Cranial root (now considered part of the vagus n. (CN X)): branchiomotor innervation: to laryngeal mm. (except cricothyroid) via pharyngeal plexus and CN X
CN XII: Hypoglossal n.		Hypoglossal canal	Somatomotor innervation: to all intrinsic and extrinsic lingual mm. (except palatoglossus)

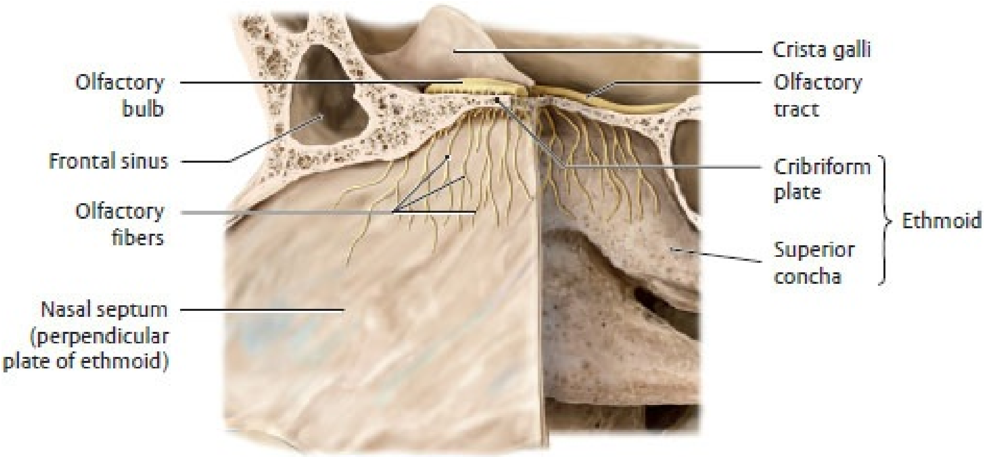

Crista galli
Olfactory bulb
Olfactory tract
Frontal sinus
Cribriform plate
Olfactory fibers
Ethmoid
Superior concha
Nasal septum (perpendicular plate of ethmoid)

Fig. 26.20 Olfactory nerve (CN I)
Olfactory fibers, bulb, and tract. Portion of left nasal septum and lateral wall of right nasal cavity, left lateral view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

CN I, the **olfactory nerve**, carries special sensory fibers that transmit sensation of smell from the superior aspect of the lateral and septal walls of the nasal cavity (**Fig. 26.20**).

— Olfactory neurons pass through the cribriform plate of the ethmoid bone and synapse with secondary neurons in the **olfactory bulbs**.
  - The axons of these secondary neurons form the **olfactory tracts**.
  - The olfactory bulbs and tracts are extensions of the cerebral cortex.

CN II, the **optic nerve**, is a collection of special sensory nerve fibers that originate on the **retina** of the eye and converge at the **optic disk** at the back of the eyeball (**Fig. 26.21**; see also Section 28.1).

— The nerve exits the orbit through the optic canal and joins the contralateral optic nerve to form the **optic chiasm**.

— The optic chiasm is a redistribution center where nerve fibers from the medial half of each optic nerve cross to the opposite side.

— Two **optic tracts** diverge from the chiasm. Each tract contains nerve fibers from the medial half of one eye and the lateral half of the other eye.

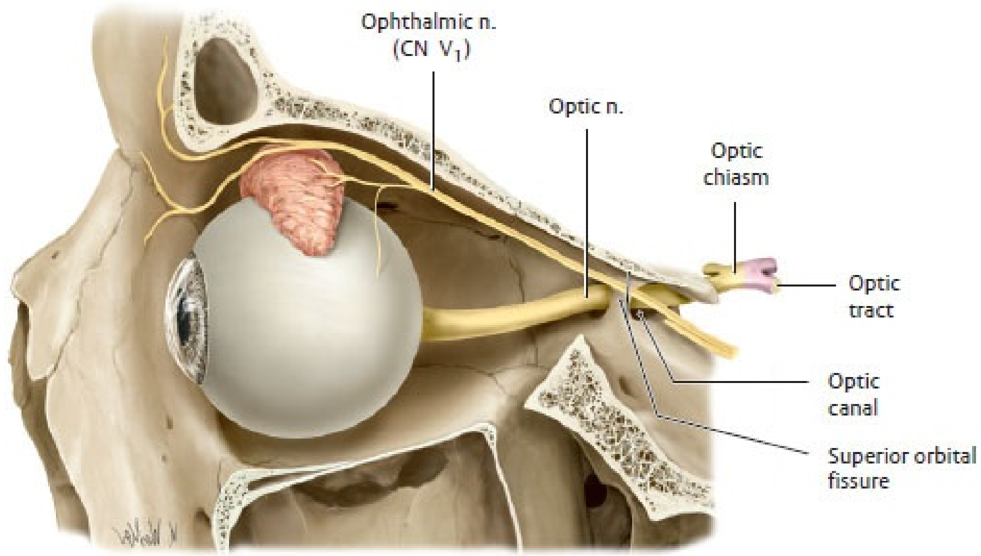


Fig. 26.21 Optic nerve (CN II)
Optic nerve in the left orbit, left lateral view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

CN III, the **oculomotor nerve; CN IV**, the **trochlear nerve**; and **CN VI**, the **abducent (abducens) nerve** innervate structures of the orbit (**Fig. 26.22**; see also Section 28.1). They pass through the cavernous sinus before entering the orbit through the superior orbital fissure.

— The oculomotor nerve has somatic and visceral components.
  - General somatic motor fibers innervate four of the extraocular muscles (superior rectus, medial rectus, inferior rectus, and inferior oblique), which move the eyeball, and the levator palpebrae superioris muscle, which elevates the eyelid.
  - General visceral motor fibers carry preganglionic parasympathetic fibers that synapse in the **ciliary ganglion** and innervate the **pupillary sphincter muscle** (which constricts the pupil) and **ciliary body** (which changes the curvature of the lens of the eye) (see **Fig. 28.7**).

— The trochlear nerve carries general somatic motor fibers and innervates the superior oblique muscle, which depresses and medially rotates the eye.

— The abducent nerve carries general somatic motor fibers and innervates the lateral rectus muscle, which abducts the eye.

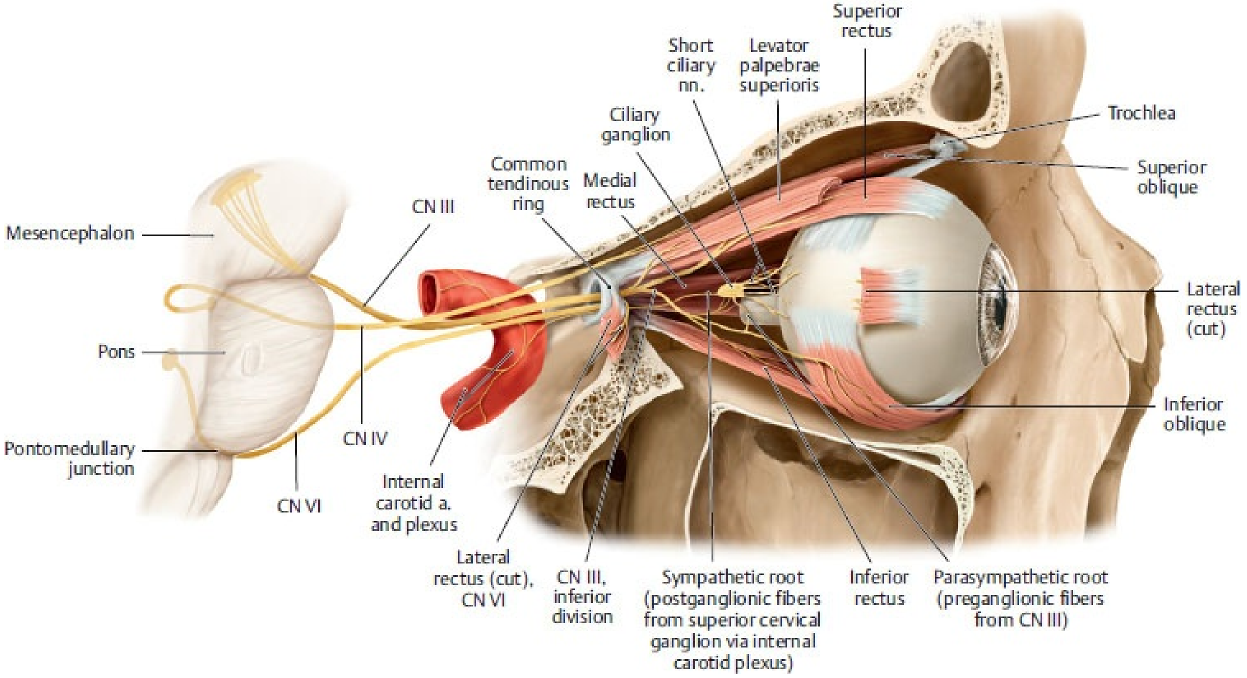

Superior rectus
Short ciliary nn.
Levator palpebrae superioris
Trochlea
Ciliary ganglion
Superior oblique
Common tendinous ring
Medial rectus
CN III
Mesencephalon
Lateral rectus (cut)
Pons
Inferior oblique
CN IV
Pontomedullary junction
CN VI
Internal carotid a. and plexus
Lateral rectus (cut), CN VI
CN III, inferior division
Sympathetic root (postganglionic fibers from superior cervical ganglion via internal carotid plexus)
Inferior rectus
Parasympathetic root (preganglionic fibers from CN III)

Fig. 26.22 Oculomotor (CN III), trochlear (IV), and abducent (VI) nerves
Course of the nerves innervating the extraocular muscles, right orbit, lateral view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

CN V, the **trigeminal nerve**, is the primary sensory nerve of the face (**Figs. 26.23** and **26.24**). Its small motor component innervates the muscles of mastication.

— The general somatic sensory neurons, which form the sensory root, synapse in sensory nuclei that are distributed along the brainstem and down into the cervical spinal cord.

— A small motor root in the mandibular division (CN V_3) contains branchial motor fibers.

— Branches of the trigeminal nerve are spatially associated with the parasympathetic ganglia of the head and distribute postganglionic parasympathetic fibers to their target organs.

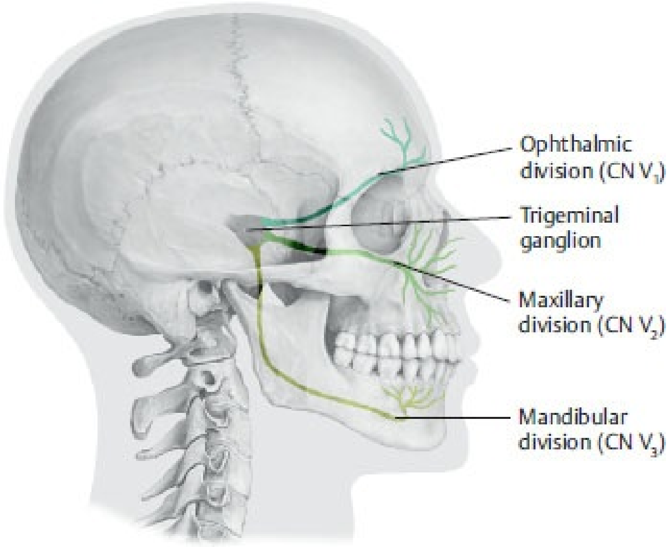

Ophthalmic division (CN V_1)
Trigeminal ganglion
Maxillary division (CN V_2)
Mandibular division (CN V_3)

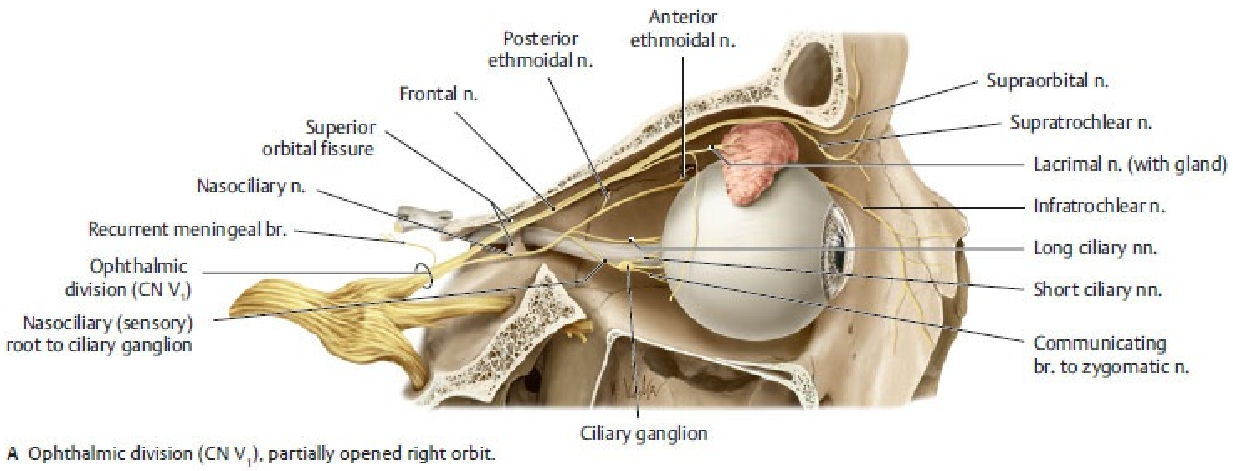
Fig. 26.23 Divisions of the trigeminal nerve
Right lateral view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

— The trigeminal nerve has three divisions:
  1. The **ophthalmic division (CN V_1)** (see Section 28.1)
     - contains only somatic sensory fibers;
     - passes through the wall of the cavernous sinus and superior orbital fissure into the orbit;
     - is associated with the **ciliary ganglion** (see Section 24.4);
     - distributes visceral motor fibers from the facial nerve (CN VII) to the lacrimal gland via the lacrimal nerve;
     - innervates the orbit, the cornea, and the skin on the top of the nose, forehead, and scalp;
     - functions as the sensory component of the corneal reflex via the **nasociliary branch**; and
     - has **lacrimal, frontal**, and **nasociliary** branches.

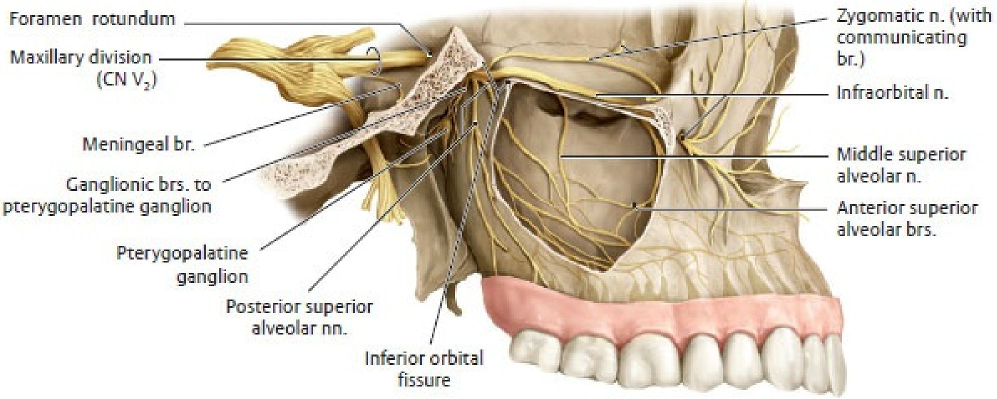
BOX 26.6: CLINICAL CORRELATION

TRIGEMINAL NEURALGIA

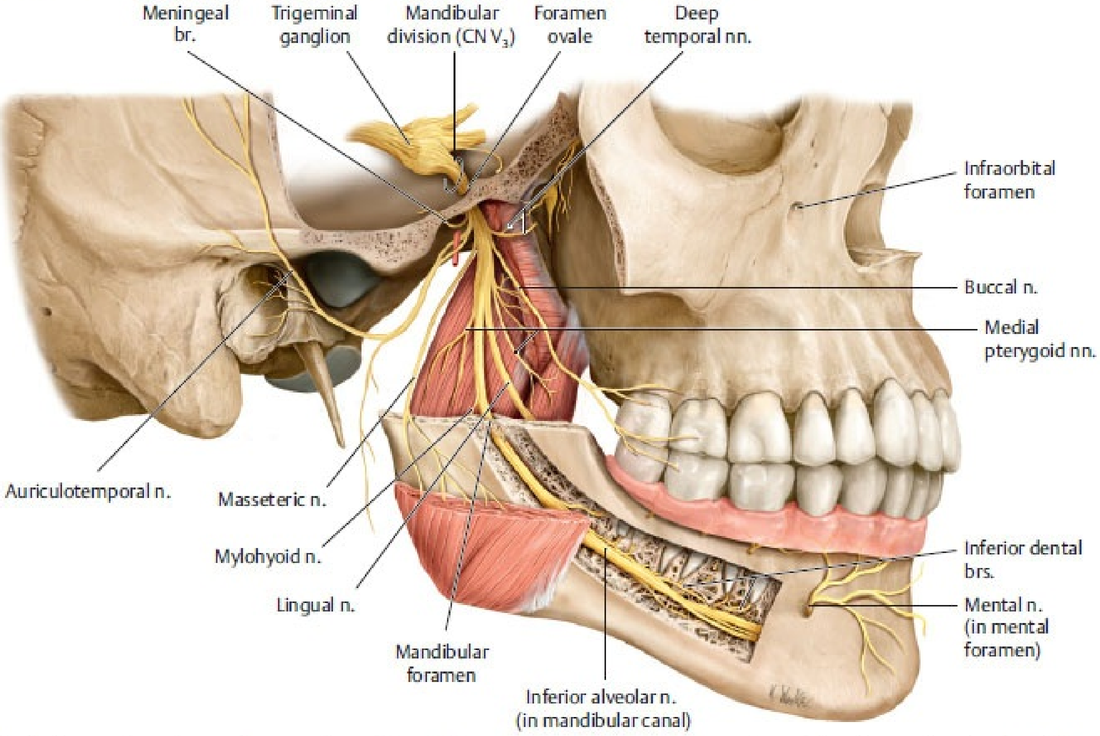
Trigeminal neuralgia, a pathology of the sensory root of the trigeminal nerve (CN V), most commonly affects the maxillary division (CN V2) and least frequently affects the ophthalmic division (CN V1). The disorder is characterized by unilateral electric shock-like pain in the area supplied by the nerve. It usually lasts several seconds to several minutes. As the condition progresses, the pain may last longer, and there may be a shorter period between attacks. The pain may be initiated by touching a trigger point in the face by eating, talking, brushing teeth, or shaving. It is believed that trigeminal neuralgia is caused by the loss of myelin on the sensory root due to the pressure from an abnormal blood vessel. Surgery to destroy the nerve root or ganglion may be effective but may lead to permanent facial numbness.


Anterior ethmoidal n.
Posterior ethmoidal n.
Frontal n.
Superior orbital fissure
Nasociliary n.
Recurrent meningeal br.
Ophthalmic division (CN V$_1$)
Nasociliary (sensory) root to ciliary ganglion
Supraorbital n.
Supratrochlear n.
Lacrimal n. (with gland)
Infratrochlear n.
Long ciliary nn.
Short ciliary nn.
Communicating br. to zygomatic n.
Ciliary ganglion

A Ophthalmic division (CN V$_1$), partially opened right orbit.


Foramen rotundum
Maxillary division (CN V$_2$)
Meningeal br.
Ganglionic brs. to pterygopalatine ganglion
Pterygopalatine ganglion
Posterior superior alveolar nn.
Inferior orbital fissure
Zygomatic n. (with communicating br.)
Infraorbital n.
Middle superior alveolar n.
Anterior superior alveolar brs.

B Maxillary division (CN V$_2$), partially opened right maxillary sinus with the zygomatic arch removed.


Meningeal br.
Trigeminal ganglion
Mandibular division (CN V$_3$)
Foramen ovale
Deep temporal nn.
Infraorbital foramen
Buccal n.
Medial pterygoid nn.
Auriculotemporal n.
Masseteric n.
Mylohyoid n.
Lingual n.
Mandibular foramen
Inferior alveolar n. (in mandibular canal)
Inferior dental brs.
Mental n. (in mental foramen)

C Mandibular division (CN V$_3$), partially opened mandible with the zygomatic arch removed. *Note*: The mylohyoid nerve branches from the inferior alveolar nerve just before the mandibular foramen.

Fig. 26.24 Trigeminal nerve (CN V)
Course of the trigeminal nerve divisions. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

2. The **maxillary division (CN V_2)** (see Section 27.6)
    - contains only somatic sensory fibers;
    - travels through the cavernous sinus and the foramen rotundum to enter the **pterygopalatine fossa**;
    - is associated with the **pterygopalatine ganglion** (see Section 26.4);
    - distributes visceral motor fibers to the palatal and nasal glands via the nasopalatine and greater and lesser palatine nerves;
    - distributes visceral motor fibers to the lacrimal gland via the zygomatic branch which joins the lacrimal nerve of CN V_1;
    - innervates the skin of the midface (from the lower eyelid to the upper lip) and structures associated with the maxilla, such as the maxillary sinus, hard palate, nasal cavity, and maxillary teeth; and
    - has **infraorbital, zygomatic, greater** and **lesser palatine, superior alveolar**, and **nasopalatine** branches.
3. The **mandibular division** (**CN V_3**) (see Sections 27.4 and 27.5)
    - contains somatic sensory and branchial motor fibers;
    - passes through the foramen ovale into the **infratemporal fossa**;
    - is associated with the **otic** and **submandibular ganglia** (see Section 26.4);
    - distributes visceral motor fibers of the facial nerve (CN VII) to the submandibular and sublingual glands via the lingual nerve;
    - distributes visceral motor fibers of the glossopharyngeal nerve (CN IX) to the parotid gland via the auriculotemporal nerve;
    - has a sensory component that innervates skin over the lower jaw and lateral face and structures associated with the mandible, such as the lower teeth, **temporomandibular joint**, floor of the mouth, and anterior tongue;
    - has a motor component that innervates the **digastric** (anterior belly), **mylohyoid, tensor veli palatini**, and **tensor tympani muscles** and the **muscles of mastication** (see Sections 27.2 and 27.8); and
    - has **meningeal, buccal, auriculotemporal, lingual, inferior alveolar**, and **muscular branches** (to muscles noted above).

CN VII, the facial nerve, is the primary motor nerve of the face but also has sensory and visceral components (**Figs. 26.25**, **26.26**, **26.27**). It contains a motor root that innervates the muscles of facial expression, and an intermediate nerve that carries special sensory (for taste) and visceral motor fibers (parasympathetic) and somatic sensory fibers. Both the motor root and the intermediate nerve pass through the internal acoustic meatus into the **facial canal** of the temporal bone.

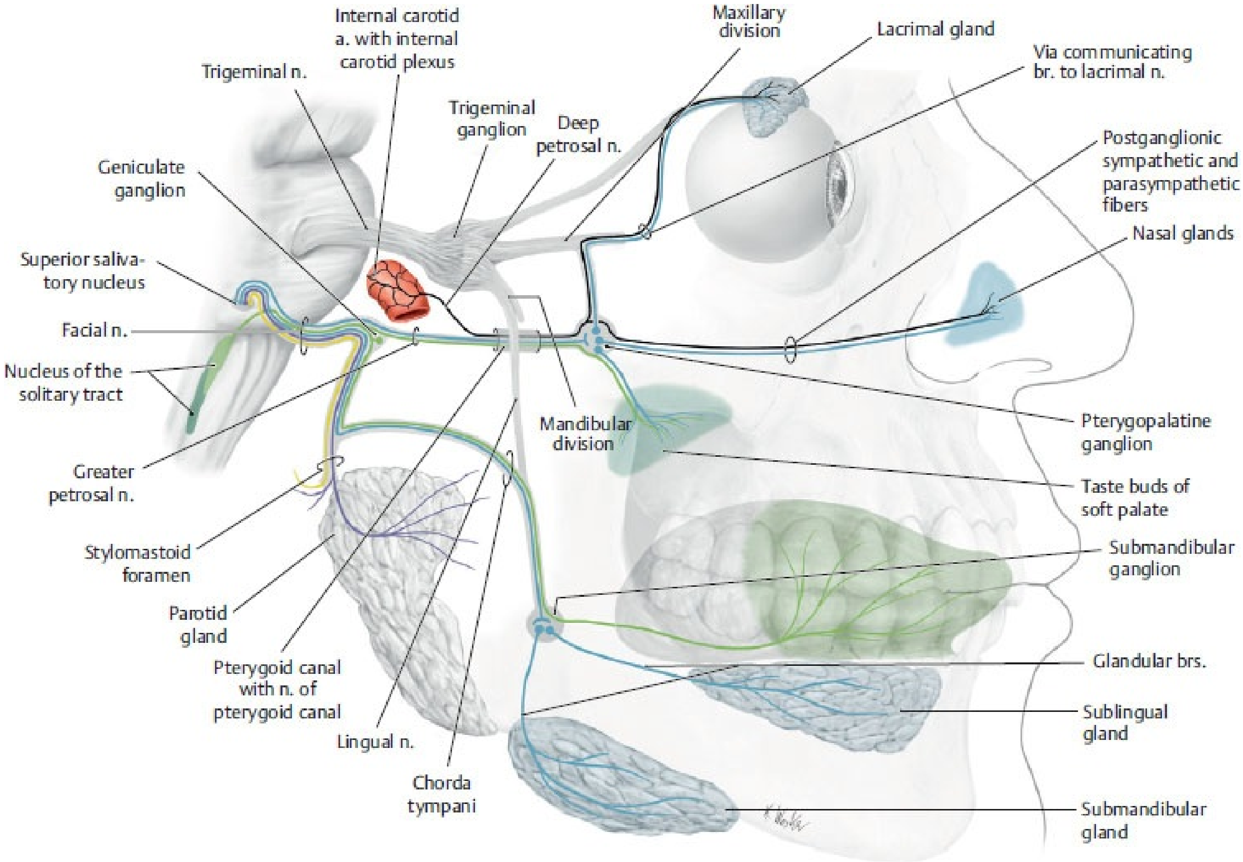
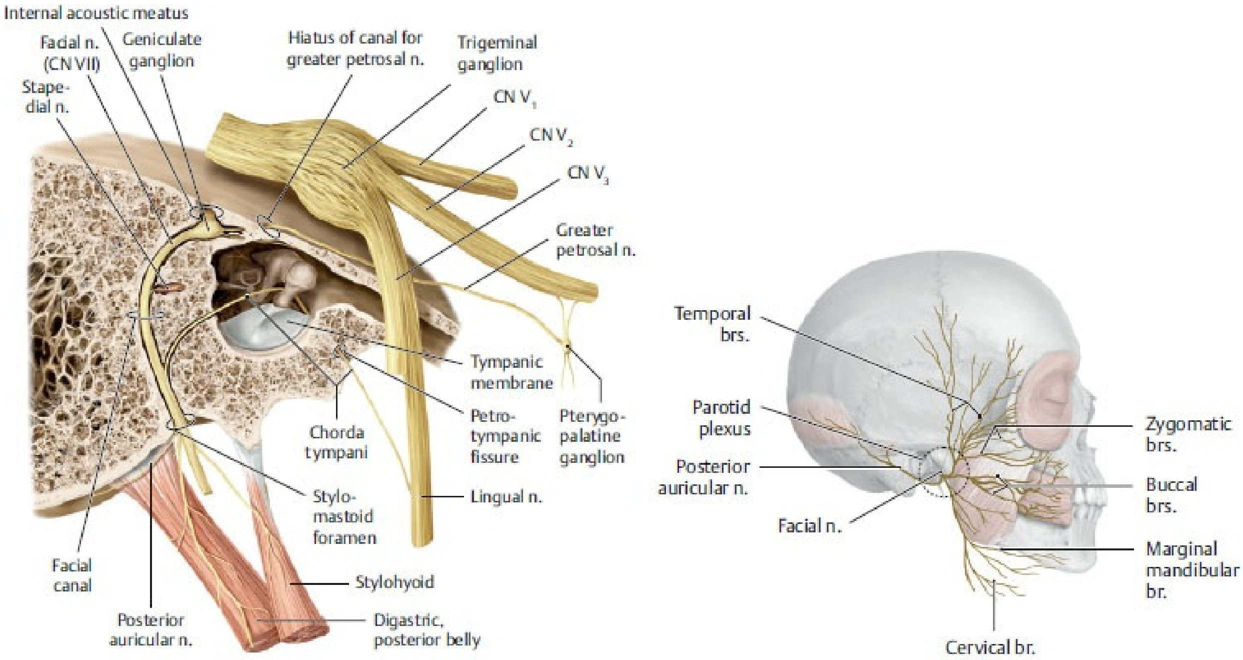

Internal carotid a. with internal carotid plexus
Maxillary division
Lacrimal gland
Via communicating br. to lacrimal n.
Trigeminal n.
Trigeminal ganglion
Deep petrosal n.
Geniculate ganglion
Postganglionic sympathetic and parasympathetic fibers
Nasal glands
Superior salivatory nucleus
Facial n.
Nucleus of the solitary tract
Pterygopalatine ganglion
Mandibular division
Greater petrosal n.
Taste buds of soft palate
Stylomastoid foramen
Submandibular ganglion
Parotid gland
Glandular brs.
Pterygoid canal with n. of pterygoid canal
Sublingual gland
Lingual n.
Chorda tympani
Submandibular gland

Fig. 26.25 Course of the facial nerve
Visceral motor (parasympathetic) and special visceral sensory (taste) fibers shown in blue and green respectively. Postganglionic sympathetic fibers are shown in black, right lateral view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Internal acoustic meatus
Facial n. (CN VII)
Geniculate ganglion
Stape-dial n.
Hiatus of canal for greater petrosal n.
Trigeminal ganglion
CN V$_1$
CN V$_2$
CN V$_3$
Greater petrosal n.
Tympanic membrane
Chorda tympani
Petro-tympanic fissure
Pterygo-palatine ganglion
Stylo-mastoid foramen
Lingual n.
Facial canal
Stylohyoid
Posterior auricular n.
Digastric, posterior belly
Temporal brs.
Parotid plexus
Posterior auricular n.
Facial n.
Zygomatic brs.
Buccal brs.
Marginal mandibular br.
Cervical br.

A Facial nerve in the temporal bone. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

B Parotid plexus. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Fig. 26.26 Facial nerve (CN VII)
Branches of the facial nerve, right lateral view.

- The motor root
  - exits the skull through the stylomastoid foramen
  - contains branchiomotor fibers, which
    - innervate the **stylohyoid, stapedius**, and **digastric** (posterior belly) **muscles** (see Figs. 27.28 and 27.29);
    - form most of the posterior auricular nerve, which innervates the posterior auricular muscles and the posterior belly of the occipitofrontalis; and
    - form the nerves of the **intraparotid plexus** within the parotid gland, which innervates the muscles of facial expression (see Section 27.1). Branches of the parotid plexus include the **temporal, zygomatic, buccal, marginal mandibular**, and **cervical branches**.
- The three branches of the intermediate nerve (**nervus intermedius**) arise within the facial canal, including
  - the **greater petrosal nerve** (parasympathetic), which passes through the middle cranial fossa and combines with the **deep petrosal nerve** (sympathetic) to form the **nerve of the pterygoid canal** (see Section 27.6). The visceral motor (parasympathetic) fibers synapse in the pterygopalatine ganglion and are distributed to glands of the nasal

mucosa and palate and to the lacrimal gland.

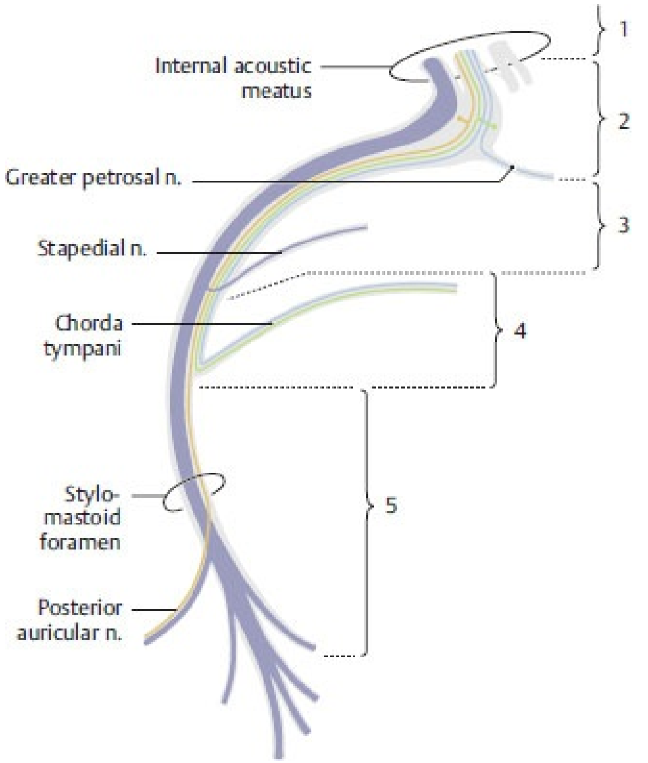
- the **chorda tympani**, which passes through the middle ear cavity, exits through the petrotympanic fissure to the infratemporal fossa and travels with the lingual nerve of CN V_3. It carries
    - visceral motor fibers that synapse in the submandibular ganglion and supply the submandibular and sublingual salivary glands, and
    - special visceral sensory fibers for taste from the anterior part of the tongue and palate.
- general somatic sensory fibers carried by the posterior auricular nerve, which transmit sensations from the external ear to the **geniculate ganglion**, the sensory ganglion of the facial nerve, located in the temporal bone.

BOX 26.7: CLINICAL CORRELATION

BELL'S PALSY

Bell's palsy is paralysis of the facial muscles due to a lesion of the facial nerve (CN VII). Symptoms usually begin suddenly and affect one side of the face only. They include drooping of the corner of the mouth, eyebrow, and lower eyelid, and the inability to smile, whistle, blow out cheeks, wrinkle the forehead, blink, or close the eyes forcefully. Taste is impaired on the anterior two thirds of the tongue (due to involvement of the chorda tympani), decreased tear production leads to dry eyes (due to involvement of the greater petrosal nerve), sensitivity to sounds is increased (due to paralysis of the stapedius), and the lower jaw and tongue deviate to the opposite side (due to paralysis of the posterior belly of the digastric muscle).

BOX 26.8: CLINICAL CORRELATION



(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.

BRANCHING PATTERN OF THE FACIAL NERVE: DIAGNOSTIC SIGNIFICANCE IN TEMPORAL BONE FRACTURES

Blue: visceral motor (parasympathetic); *purple*: branchial motor; *yellow*: general somatic sensory; *green*: special visceral sensory. The principal signs and symptoms are different depending upon the exact site of the lesion in the course of the facial nerve through the petrous bone.

Note: Only the principal signs and symptoms associated with a particular lesion site are described here. The more peripheral the site of the nerve injury, the less diverse the signs and symptoms become.

1 A lesion at this level affects the facial nerve in addition to the vestibulochochlear nerve. As a result, peripheral motor facial paralysis is accompanied by hearing loss (deafness) and vestibular dysfunction (dizziness).

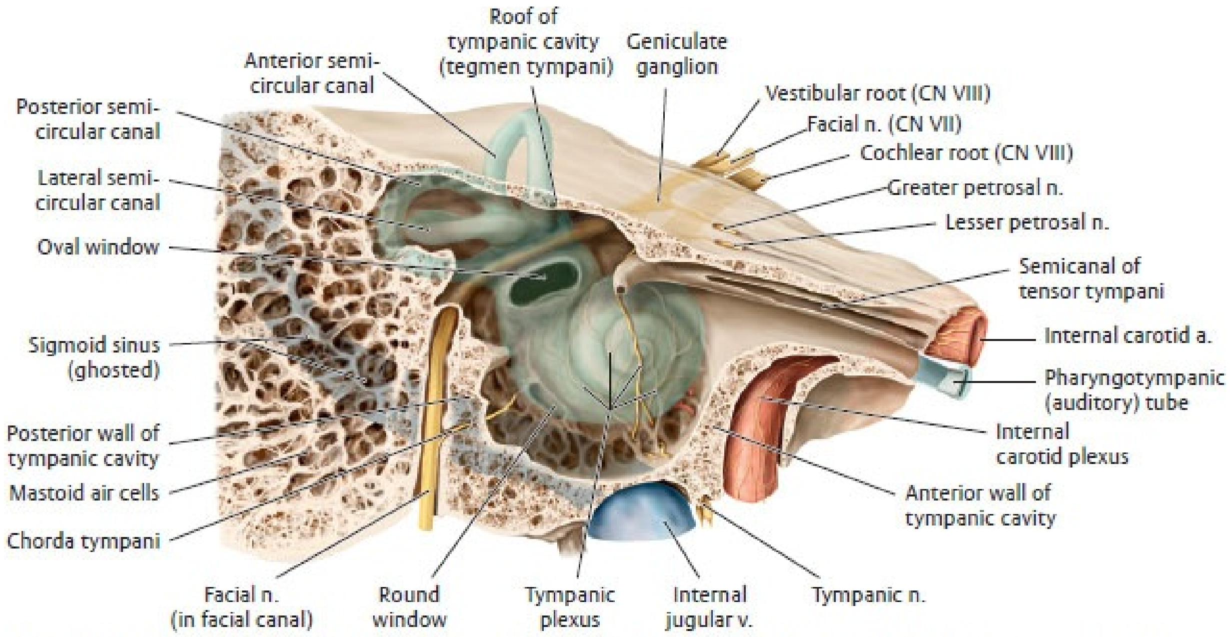
2 Peripheral motor facial paralysis is accompanied by disturbances of taste sensation (chorda tympani), lacrimation, and salivation.

3 Motor paralysis is accompanied by disturbances of salivation and

taste. Hyperacusis results from paralysis of the stapedius muscle.
4 Peripheral motor paralysis is accompanied by disturbances of taste and salivation.
5 Peripheral motor (facial) paralysis is the only manifestation of a lesion at this level.

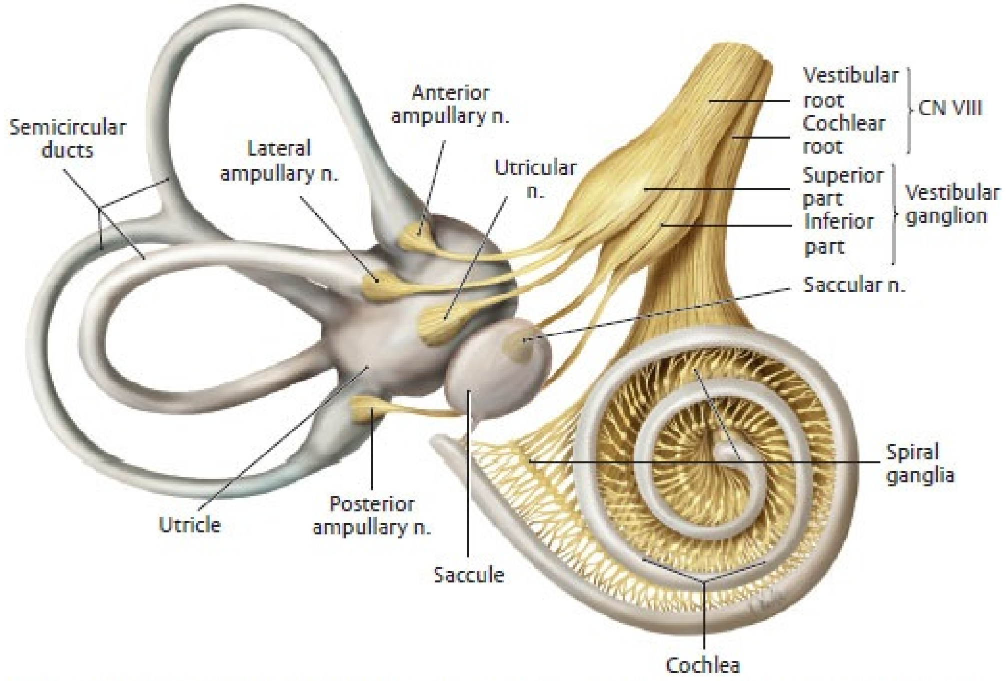
CN VIII, the **vestibulocochlear nerve**, is the sensory nerve of hearing and balance. The nerve enters the temporal bone with the facial nerve through the internal acoustic meatus.

— The two branches of the vestibulocochlear nerve carry special sensory fibers (**Fig. 26.27**; see Section 28.2):
  - The **cochlear root** supplies the **cochlea** and its **spiral organ**, the organ of hearing.
  - The **vestibular root**, which contains the **vestibular ganglia**, supplies the **utricle, saccule**, and **semicircular ducts**, the organs of balance.


Roof of tympanic cavity (tegmen tympani)
Geniculate ganglion
Anterior semi-circular canal
Posterior semi-circular canal
Vestibular root (CN VIII)
Facial n. (CN VII)
Cochlear root (CN VIII)
Lateral semi-circular canal
Greater petrosal n.
Lesser petrosal n.
Oval window
Semicanal of tensor tympani
Internal carotid a.
Sigmoid sinus (ghosted)
Pharyngotympanic (auditory) tube
Posterior wall of tympanic cavity
Internal carotid plexus
Mastoid air cells
Anterior wall of tympanic cavity
Chorda tympani
Facial n. (in facial canal)
Round window
Tympanic plexus
Internal jugular v.
Tympanic n.

A Vestibulocochlear nerve in the temporal bone, medial wall of the tympanic cavity, oblique sagittal section. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Fig. 26.27 Vestibulocochlear nerve (CN VIII)


Semicircular ducts
Lateral ampullary n.
Anterior ampullary n.
Utricular n.
Vestibular root
Cochlear root
CN VIII
Superior part
Inferior part
Vestibular ganglion
Saccular n.
Spiral ganglia
Utricle
Posterior ampullary n.
Saccule
Cochlea

B Vestibular and cochlear (spiral) ganglia. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Fig. 26.27 (*continued*) Vestibulocochlear nerve (CN VIII)

CN IX, the **glossopharyngeal nerve**, leaves the skull through the jugular foramen and contains special sensory (taste), visceral sensory, somatic motor, and visceral motor components (**Figs. 26.28** and **26.29**; **Table 26.5**).

- Somatic motor fibers innervate the **stylopharyngeus muscle**.
- Visceral motor fibers arise with the **tympanic nerve**, a branch of the glossopharyngeal nerve. Carrying sensory and visceral motor fibers, it runs through the **tympanic cavity** of the **middle ear** (see Section 28.2), where it contributes to the **tympanic plexus**. It gives rise to the lesser petrosal nerve.
  - The **lesser petrosal nerve** passes through the middle cranial fossa and foramen ovale carrying visceral motor (preganglionic parasympathetic) fibers that synapse in the otic ganglion. Postganglionic fibers travel with the auriculotemporal nerve (CN V_3) to innervate the parotid gland.
  - Sensory fibers of the tympanic plexus supply the tympanic cavity and **pharyngotympanic** (auditory) **tube**.
- Special sensory fibers transmit taste from the posterior third of the tongue.
- Visceral sensory fibers transmit information from the **tonsils, soft palate**, posterior third of the tongue, **pharynx**, and, via the **branch to the carotid sinus**, from receptors in the carotid body and carotid sinus at the bifurcation of the common carotid artery.

BOX 26.9: ANATOMIC NOTES

PETROSAL NERVES OF THE HEAD

Three petrosal nerves are associated with autonomic innervation of the head. Two nerves carry *preganglionic parasympathetic nerves*:

- The greater petrosal nerve, a branch of CN VII, forms the parasympathetic part of the nerve of the pterygoid canal, which synapses in the pterygopalatine ganglion. Postganglionic fibers travel via the zygomatic n. (CN V_2) to the lacrimal n. (CN V_1) in the orbit where they innervate the lacrimal gland. They also innervate glands in the nasal cavity via branches of the maxillary nerve (CN V_2).
- The lesser petrosal nerve, a branch of CN IX, arises from the tympanic plexus in the middle ear and synapses in the otic ganglion. Postganglionic fibers travel briefly with the auriculotemporal n. (CN V_3) before innervating the parotid gland.

One nerve carries *postganglionic sympathetic fibers*:

- The deep petrosal nerve arises from the internal carotid plexus and forms the sympathetic component of the nerve of the pterygoid canal. These fibers pass through the pterygopalatine fossa without synapsing in the ganglion, and are distributed to the lacrimal gland and nasal glands along the same routes as the greater petrosal nerve.

Table 26.5 Glossopharyngeal Nerve Branches

①	Tympanic n.
②	Br. to carotid sinus
③	Br. to stylopharyngeus muscle
④	Tonsillar brs.
⑤	Lingual brs.
⑥	Pharyngeal brs.

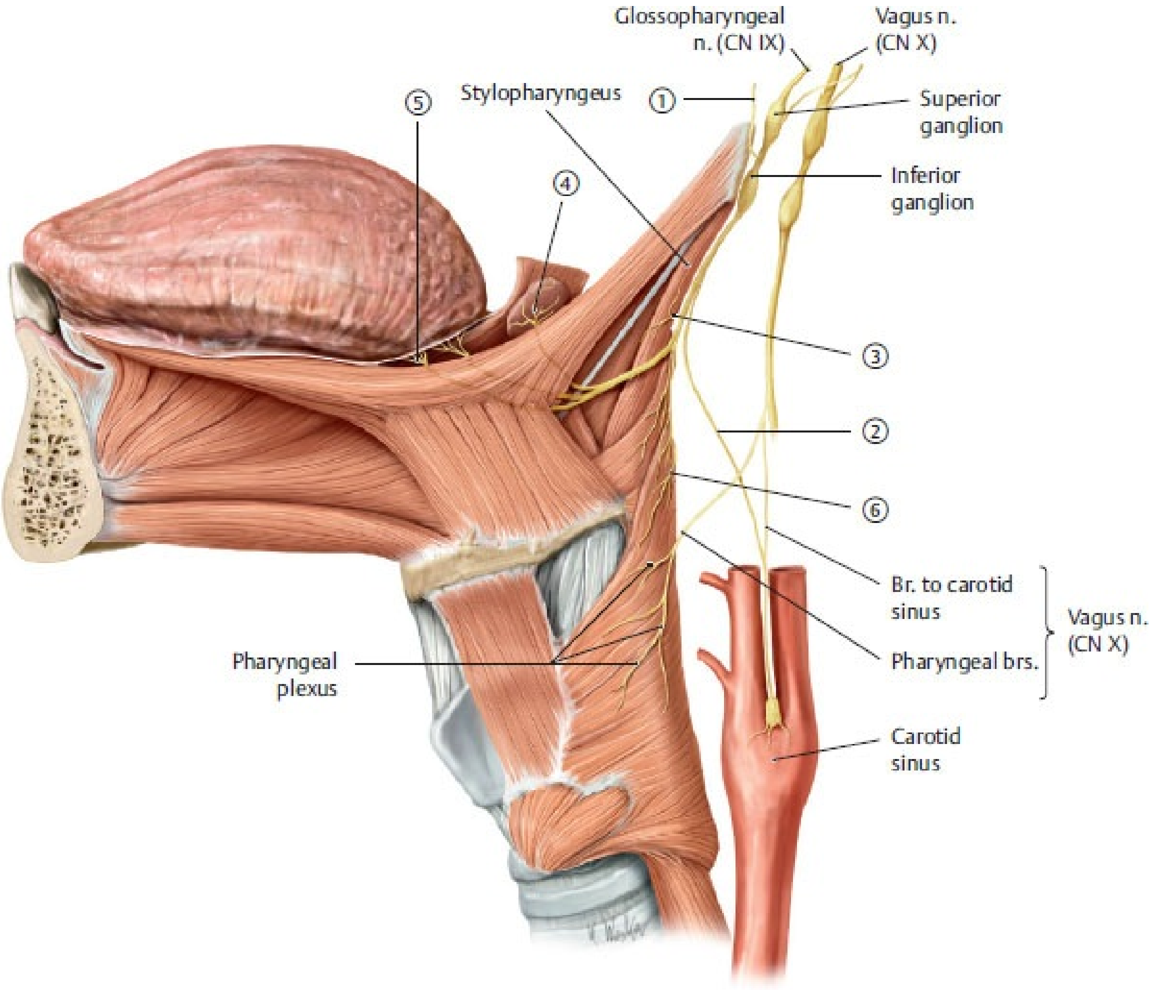
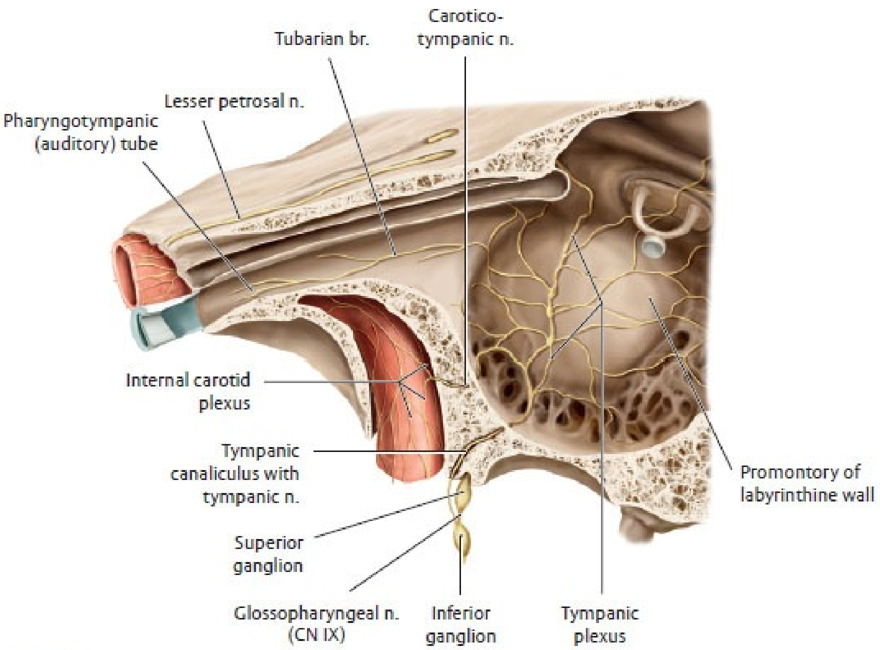
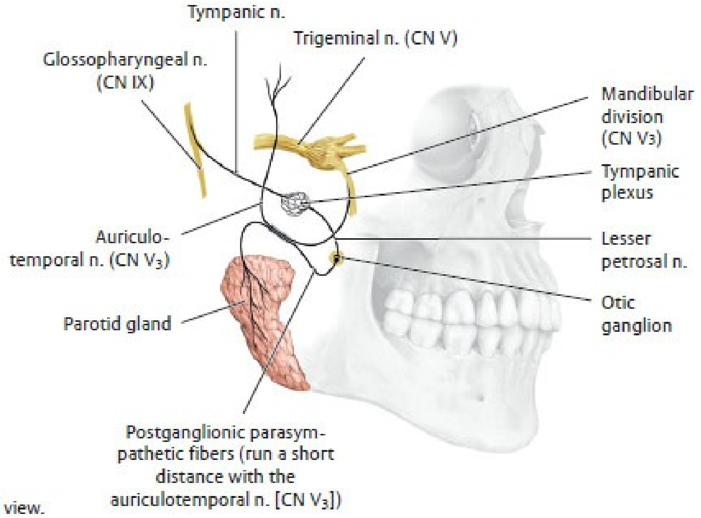

Glossopharyngeal n. (CN IX)
Vagus n. (CN X)
⑤
Stylopharyngeus
①
Superior ganglion
Inferior ganglion
④
③
②
⑥
Br. to carotid sinus
Pharyngeal brs.
Vagus n. (CN X)
Pharyngeal plexus
Carotid sinus

Fig. 26.28 Glossopharyngeal nerve (CN IX)
Course of the glossopharyngeal nerve, left lateral view. The numbers are explained in **Table 26.5**. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Carotico-
tympanic n.
Tubarian br.
Lesser petrosal n.
Pharyngotympanic
(auditory) tube
Internal carotid
plexus
Tympanic
canaliculus with
tympanic n.
Superior
ganglion
Glossopharyngeal n.
(CN IX)
Inferior
ganglion
Tympanic
plexus
Promontory of
labyrinthine wall

A Glossopharyngeal nerve in the tympanic cavity, left anterolateral view.


Tympanic n.
Trigeminal n. (CN V)
Glossopharyngeal n.
(CN IX)
Mandibular
division
(CN V3)
Tympanic
plexus
Auriculo-
temporal n. (CN V3)
Lesser
petrosal n.
Otic
ganglion
Parotid gland
Postganglionic parasym-
pathetic fibers (run a short
distance with the
auriculotemporal n. [CN V3])

B Visceral motor fibers of the glossopharyngeal nerve, right lateral view.

Fig. 26.29 Branches of the glossopharyngeal nerve

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

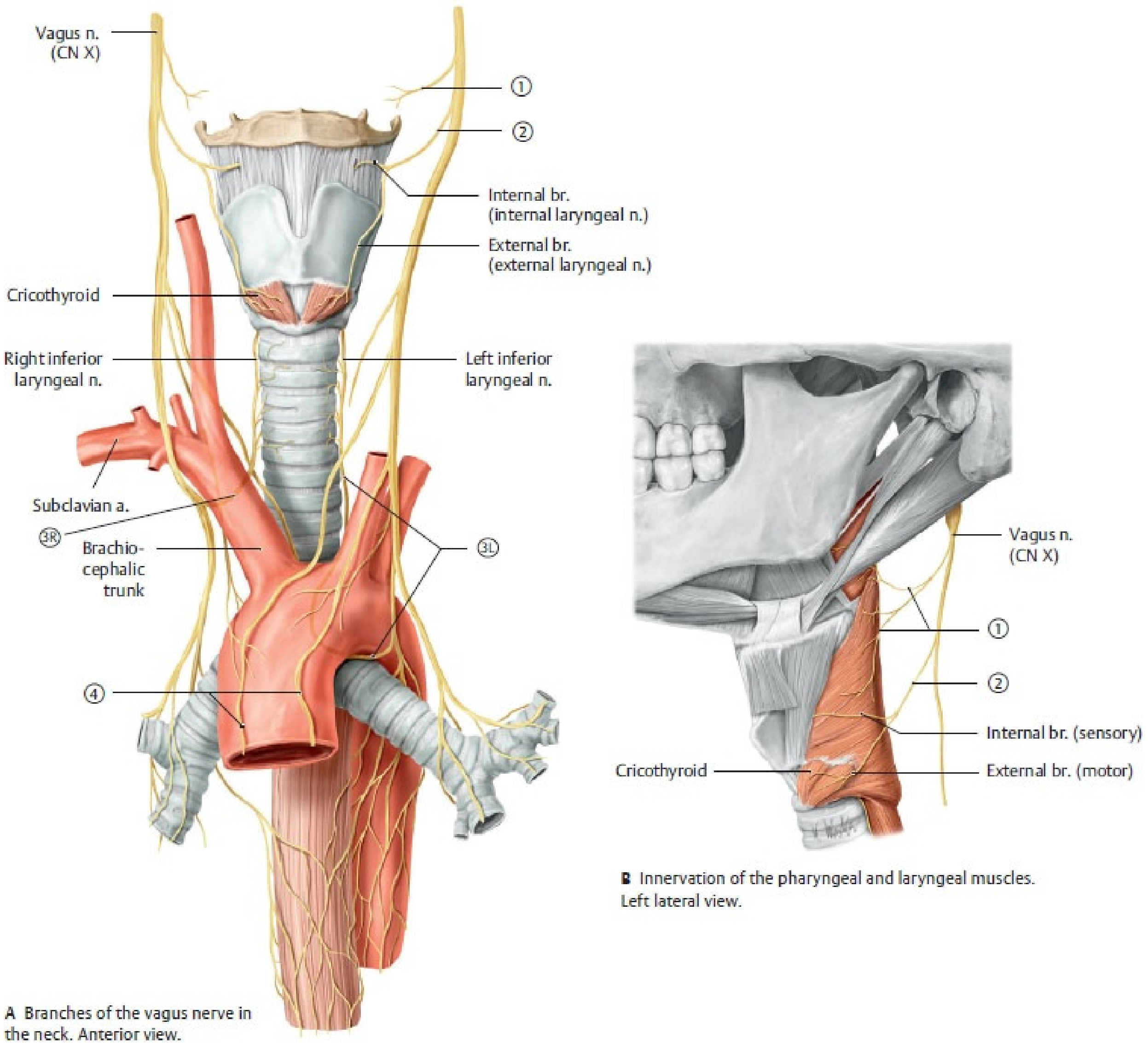
CN X, the **vagus nerve**, has the most extensive distribution of the cranial nerves (**Fig. 26.30**; **Table 26.6**).

- Branchial motor fibers innervate the muscles of the soft palate (except tensor veli palatini), pharynx (except stylopharyngeus), and larynx, and the palatoglossus muscle of the tongue.
- Visceral motor fibers innervate smooth muscle and glands of the pharynx, larynx, thoracic organs, and abdominal foregut and midgut.

- General somatic sensory fibers transmit sensation from the dura in the posterior cranial fossa, the skin of the external ear, and the external auditory canal.
- Visceral sensory fibers transmit sensation from mucosa of the lower pharynx, the larynx, lungs and airway, the heart, the abdominal foregut and midgut, and the chemoreceptors of the aortic body and baroreceptors of the aortic arch.
- Special sensory fibers carry taste from the epiglottis.
- The vagus nerve has cervical, thoracic, and abdominal segments.
  - In the neck
    - each vagus nerve leaves the skull through the jugular foramen and descends within the carotid sheath of the neck, and
    - its branches are **pharyngeal branches**, the **superior laryngeal nerve, cervical cardiac** (parasympathetic) **branches**, and the **right recurrent laryngeal nerve** (which arises from the right vagus and recurs around the right subclavian artery).

Table 26.6 Vagus Nerve Branches in the Neck

①	Pharyngeal brs.
②	Superior laryngeal n.
3R	Right recurrent laryngeal n.
3L	Left recurrent laryngeal n.
④	Cervical cardiac brs.


Vagus n. (CN X)
①
②
Internal br. (internal laryngeal n.)
External br. (external laryngeal n.)
Cricothyroid
Right inferior laryngeal n.
Left inferior laryngeal n.
Subclavian a.
3R
Brachio-cephalic trunk
3L
④
Vagus n. (CN X)
①
②
Internal br. (sensory)
Cricothyroid
External br. (motor)

A Branches of the vagus nerve in the neck. Anterior view.

B Innervation of the pharyngeal and laryngeal muscles. Left lateral view.

Fig. 26.30 Vagus nerve (CN X)

The numbers are explained in Table 26.6. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- In the thorax
    - the right and left vagus nerves enter the thorax posterior to the sternoclavicular joints and merge on the surface of the esophagus as the esophageal plexus (see Section 5.2), and
    - their branches are the left recurrent laryngeal nerve (which arises from the left vagus and recurs around the arch of the aorta, where it becomes known as the **inferior laryngeal nerve**) and the thoracic cardiac and pulmonary branches (parasympathetic).

- In the abdomen
  - right and left vagal trunks arise from the esophageal plexus and pass through the esophageal hiatus of the diaphragm as the anterior and posterior vagal trunks; and
  - their parasympathetic branches are distributed to organs of the foregut, midgut, and retroperitoneum.

CN XI, the **accessory nerve**, contains general somatic motor fibers, which originate in a nucleus of the upper segments of the spinal cord (**Fig. 26.31**).

— The nerve emerges with the upper five or six cervical spinal nerves and ascends within the vertebral canal. It enters the skull through the foramen magnum and exits through the jugular foramen with the vagus (CN X) and glossopharyngeal (CN IX) nerves.

— It innervates the sternocleidomastoid muscle and then crosses the lateral region of the neck to innervate the trapezius muscle.

— Traditionally this nerve was believed to have a spinal root, as described above, and a cranial root, arising from the nucleus ambiguous in the medulla. The two roots travel together through the jugular foramen before the cranial root splits off to join the vagus nerve. Current thinking distinguishes the cranial root as part of the vagus nerve; the spinal root is now considered to be the accessory nerve (CN XI).

CN XII, the **hypoglossal nerve**, contains only general somatic motor fibers (**Fig. 26.32**).

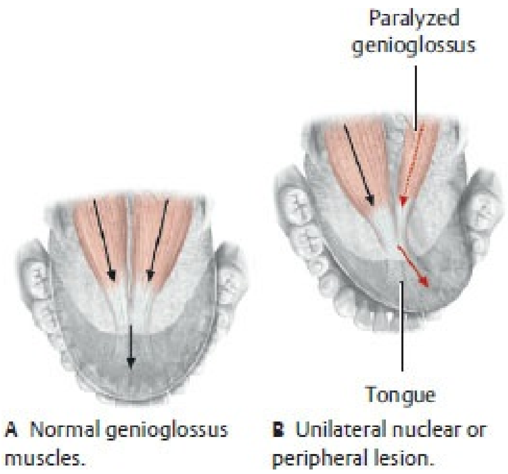
— The hypoglossal nerve leaves the skull through the hypoglossal canal and runs forward, medial to the angle of the mandible, to enter the oral cavity.

— It innervates all of the muscles of the tongue except the palatoglossus.

BOX 26.10: CLINICAL CORRELATION

INJURY TO THE HYPOGLOSSAL NERVE

Injury to the hypoglossal nerve causes ipsilateral paralysis of half of the tongue. When the tongue is protruded, the tip deviates toward the paralyzed side because the action of the genioglossus muscle on the unaffected side is unopposed. Symptoms mainly manifest as slurring of speech. Over time, the tongue becomes weak and atrophies.


Paralyzed genioglossus
Tongue
A Normal genioglossus muscles.
B Unilateral nuclear or peripheral lesion.

Hypoglossal nerve lesions

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

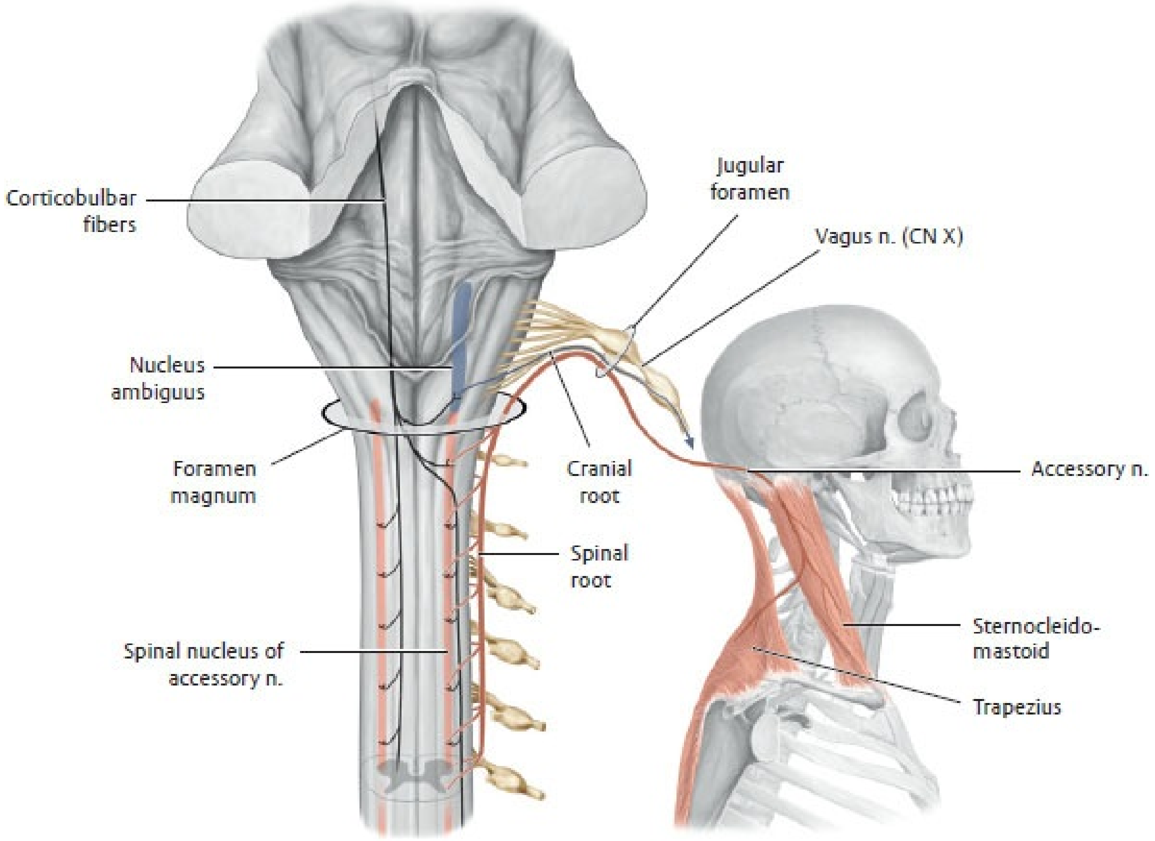

Corticobulbar fibers
Nucleus ambiguus
Foramen magnum
Spinal nucleus of accessory n.
Jugular foramen
Vagus n. (CN X)
Cranial root
Spinal root
Accessory n.
Sternocleido-mastoid
Trapezius

Fig. 26.31 Accessory nerve (CN XI)

Brainstem with the cerebellum removed, posterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by

Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

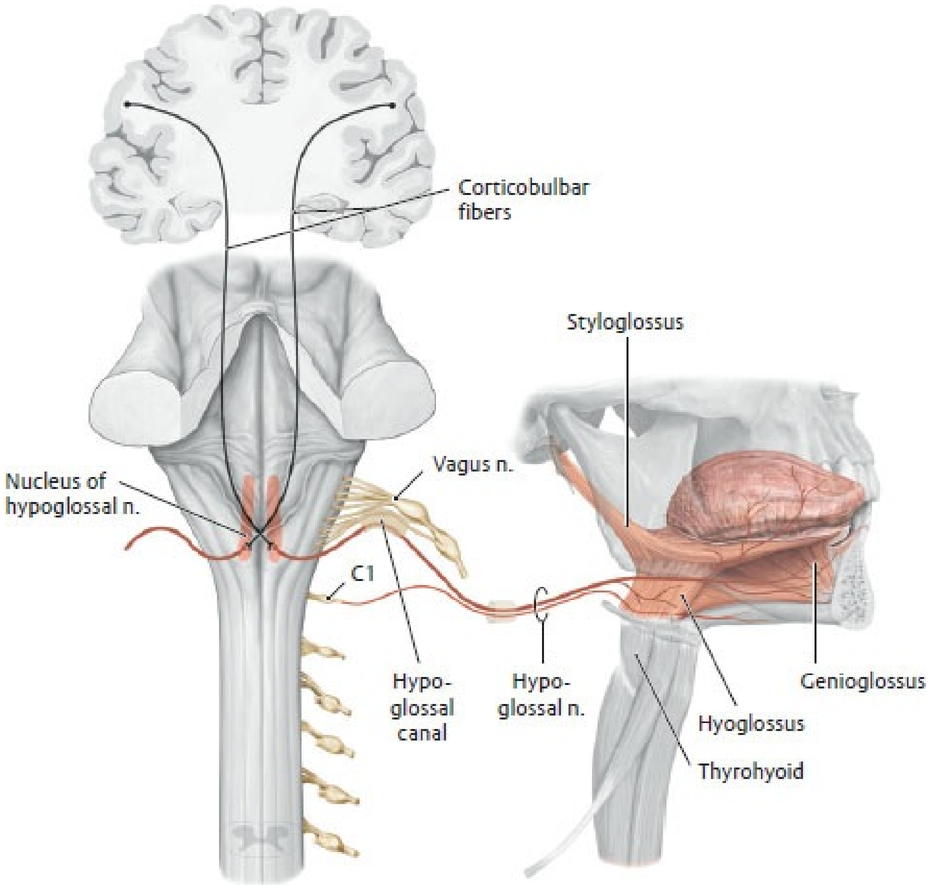

Corticobulbar fibers
Styloglossus
Vagus n.
Nucleus of hypoglossal n.
C1
Hypo-glossal canal
Hypo-glossal n.
Genioglossus
Hyoglossus
Thyrohyoid

Fig. 26.32 Hypoglossal nerve (CN XII)
Brainstem with the cerebellum removed, posterior view. *Note*: C1, which innervates the thyrohyoid and geniohyoid, runs briefly with the hypoglossal nerve. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

26.4 Autonomic Nerves of the Head

— Sympathetic nerves of the head arise as postganglionic fibers from the superior cervical ganglia (**Fig. 26.33**; **Table 26.7**; see Section 25.4).
  - The **internal carotid plexus** of sympathetic fibers surrounds the internal carotid artery and its branches within the skull. A similar **external carotid plexus** follows the branches of the external carotid artery on the face.
  - Sympathetic fibers often travel with the parasympathetic nerves, but

they do not synapse in the parasympathetic ganglia.

- The cranial portion of the parasympathetic (visceral motor) system is associated with the oculomotor (CN III), facial (CN VII), glossopharyngeal (CN IX), and vagus (CN X) nerves (**Fig. 26.34**; **Table 26.8**).
  - Preganglionic parasympathetic fibers traveling with the oculomotor (CN III), facial (CN VII), and glossopharyngeal (CN IX) nerves synapse in the four parasympathetic ganglia of the head: the ciliary, pterygopalatine, submandibular, and otic ganglia.
  - Parasympathetic nerves traveling with the vagus nerve (CN X) extend into the thorax and abdomen and synapse in ganglia of nerve plexuses in those regions.
  - Parasympathetic ganglia of the head are usually attached to, or in close association with, a branch of the trigeminal nerve (CN V). The postganglionic parasympathetic fibers travel to their target organ by “piggybacking” on these trigeminal branches.

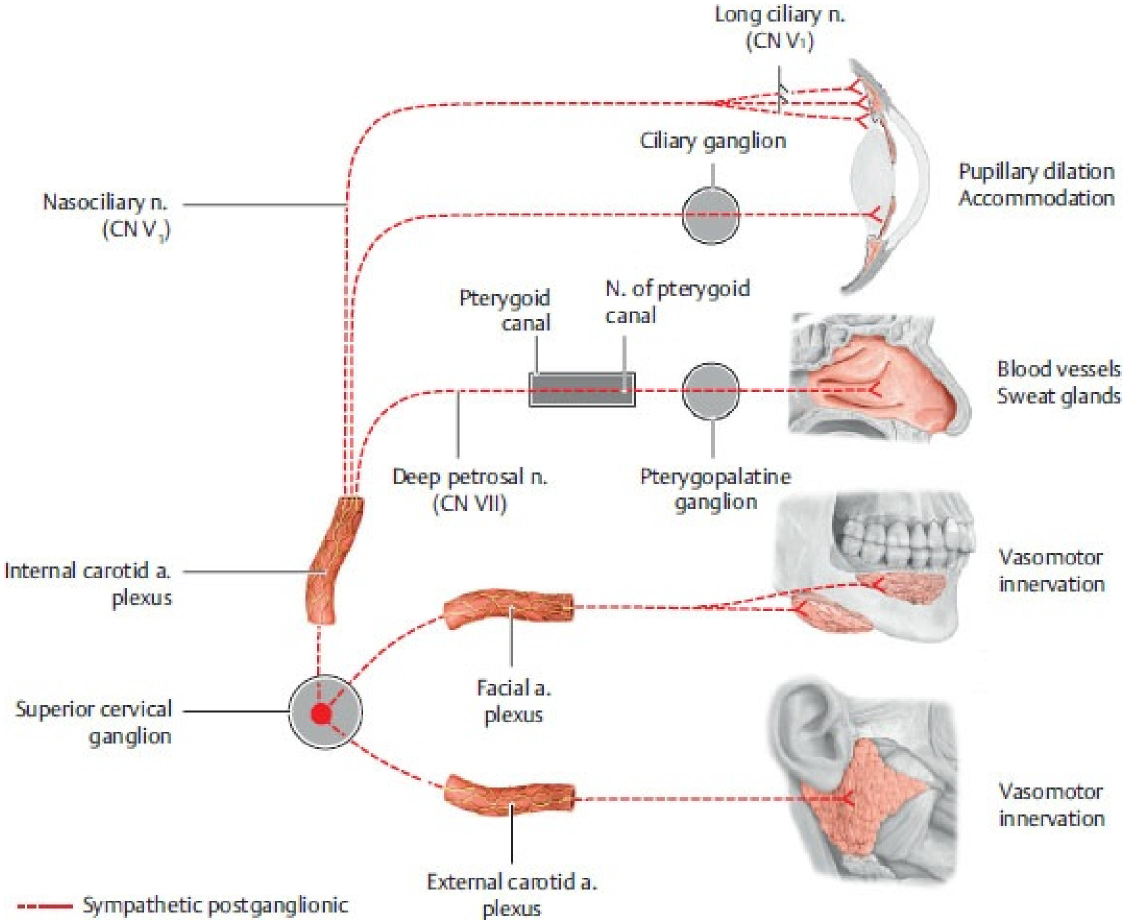

Long ciliary n. (CN V_1)
Ciliary ganglion
Pupillary dilation
Accommodation
Nasociliary n. (CN V_1)
Pterygoid canal
N. of pterygoid canal
Blood vessels
Sweat glands
Deep petrosal n. (CN VII)
Pterygopalatine ganglion
Internal carotid a. plexus
Vasomotor innervation
Facial a. plexus
Superior cervical ganglion
Vasomotor innervation
External carotid a. plexus
Sympathetic postganglionic

Fig. 26.33 Sympathetic innervation of the head

Sympathetic preganglionic fibers of the head originate in the lateral horn of the

T1–T3 spinal cord. They exit into the sympathetic trunk and ascend to synapse in the superior cervical ganglion. Postganglionic fibers then travel with arterial plexuses (internal carotid a., facial a., and external carotid a.). Although these fibers often travel with parasympathetic fibers through the parasympathetic ganglia, they do not synapse in these ganglia. Similar to parasympathetic fibers, sympathetic nerves may “piggyback” on branches of the trigeminal nerve (CN V) to reach their target organ. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

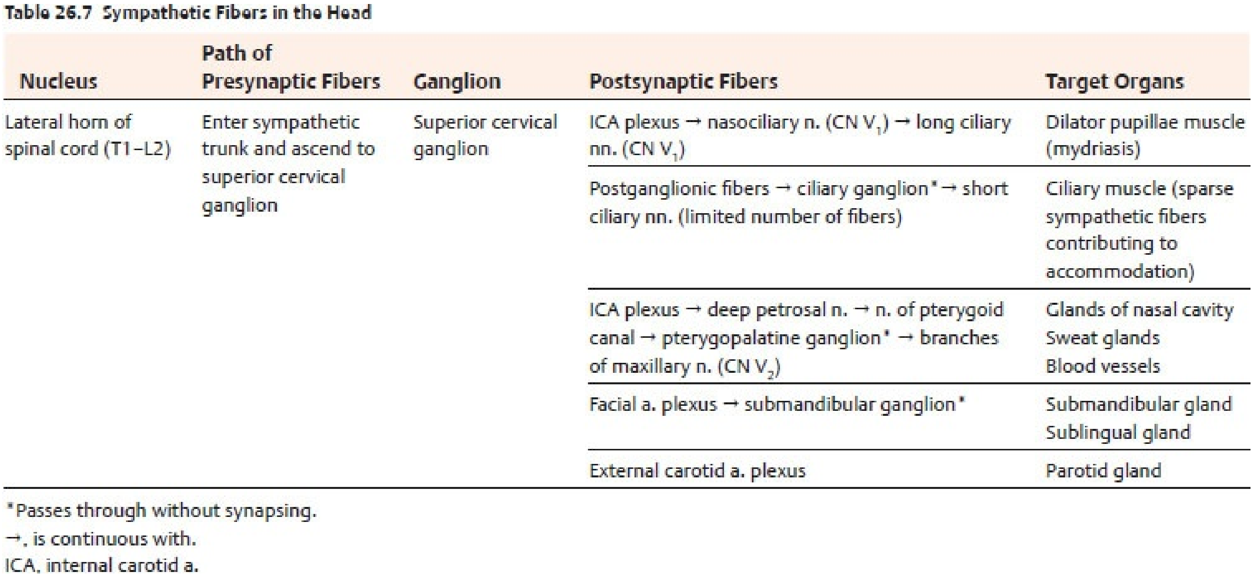


Table 26.7 Sympathetic Fibers in the Head

Nucleus	Path of Presynaptic Fibers	Ganglion	Postsynaptic Fibers	Target Organs
Lateral horn of spinal cord (T1–L2)	Enter sympathetic trunk and ascend to superior cervical ganglion	Superior cervical ganglion	ICA plexus → nasociliary n. (CN V_1) → long ciliary nn. (CN V_1)	Dilator pupillae muscle (mydriasis)
			Postganglionic fibers → ciliary ganglion* → short ciliary nn. (limited number of fibers)	Ciliary muscle (sparse sympathetic fibers contributing to accommodation)
			ICA plexus → deep petrosal n. → n. of pterygoid canal → pterygopalatine ganglion* → branches of maxillary n. (CN V_2)	Glands of nasal cavity Sweat glands Blood vessels
			Facial a. plexus → submandibular ganglion*	Submandibular gland Sublingual gland
			External carotid a. plexus	Parotid gland

*Passes through without synapsing.

→, is continuous with.

ICA, internal carotid a.

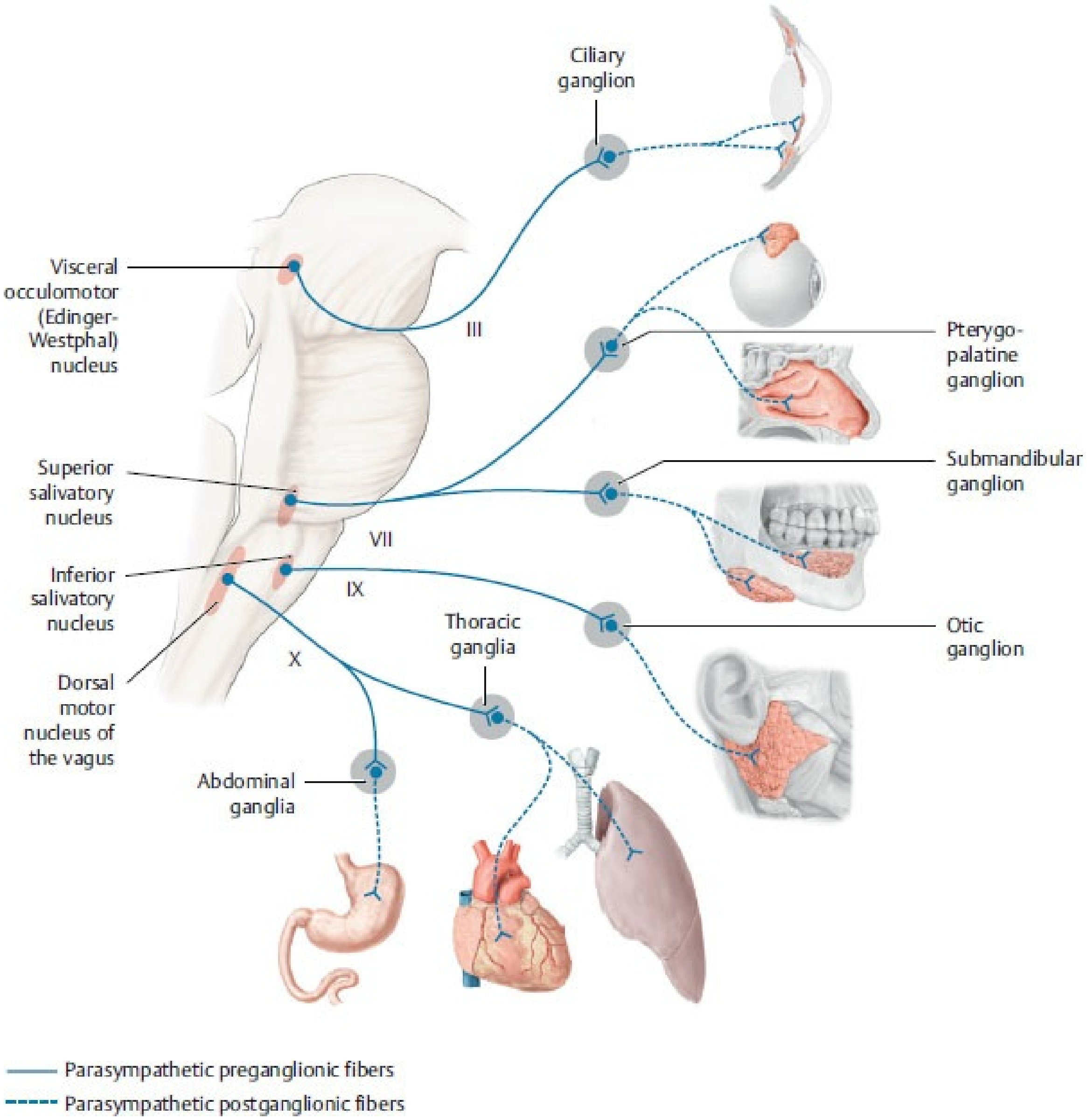

Ciliary ganglion
Visceral occulomotor (Edinger-Westphal) nucleus
III
Pterygo-palatine ganglion
Superior salivatory nucleus
Submandibular ganglion
VII
Inferior salivatory nucleus
IX
Otic ganglion
Thoracic ganglia
X
Dorsal motor nucleus of the vagus
Abdominal ganglia
Parasympathetic preganglionic fibers
Parasympathetic postganglionic fibers

Fig. 26.34 Parasympathetic nervous system (cranial part): Overview
There are four parasympathetic nuclei in the brainstem. The visceral motor fibers of these nuclei travel along specific cranial nerves as shown. The postganglionic fibers often travel with branches of the trigeminal nerve (CN V) to reach their target organs. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Table 26.8 Parasympathetic Ganglia in the Head

Nucleus	Path of Presynaptic Fibers	Ganglion	Postsynaptic Fibers	Target Organs
Edinger-Westphal nucleus	Oculomotor n. (CN III)	Ciliary ganglion	Short ciliary nn. (CN V_1)	Ciliary muscle (accommodation) Pupillary sphincter (miosis)
Superior salivatory nucleus	Nervus intermedius (CN VII root) → greater petrosal n. → n. of pterygoid canal	Pterygopalatine ganglion	• Maxillary n. (CN V_2) → zygomatic n. → anastomosis → lacrimal n. (CN V_1) • Orbital branches • Posterior superior nasal brs. • Nasopalatine nn. • Greater and lesser palatine nn.	• Lacrimal gland • Glands of nasal cavity and paranasal sinuses • Glands of gingiva • Glands of hard and soft palate • Glands of pharynx
	Nervus intermedius (CN VII root) → chorda tympani → lingual n. (CN V_3)	Submandibular ganglion	Glandular branches	Submandibular gland Sublingual gland
Inferior salivatory nucleus	Glossopharyngeal n. (CN IX) → tympanic n. → lesser petrosal n.	Otic ganglion	Auriculotemporal n. (CN V_3)	Parotid gland
Dorsal motor (vagal) nucleus	Vagus n. (X)	Ganglia near organs	Fine fibers in organs, not individually named	Thoracic and abdominal viscera

→, is continuous with.

27 Anterior, Lateral, and Deep Regions of the Head

The anatomy of the head can be divided into smaller regions that lie anterior and lateral to the neurocranium and form the superficial and deep structures of the face. They include the scalp; the parotid region; the temporal, infratemporal, and pterygopalatine fossae; and the nasal and oral cavities.

27.1 The Scalp and Face

The **scalp** covers the neurocranium and extends from the superior nuchal lines of the occipital bone, which mark the superior limit of the neck, to the supraorbital ridge of the frontal bone. The face extends from the forehead to the chin and to the ears on either side.

— The scalp is composed of five layers **(Fig. 27.1)**:
  - Skin
  - Connective tissue containing the vessels of the scalp
  - Aponeurosis of the **occipitofrontalis, temporoparietalis,** and **superior auricular** muscles (gala aponeurotica)
  - Loose areolar tissue
  - Periosteum of the skull (pericranium)

Note that the first letter of each layer spells **“SCALP”—**a handy mnemonic.

— Muscles of facial expression lie in the loose connective tissue layer of the face and scalp. Their origin on bones of the face and insertion into the overlying skin allows them to create facial movements **(Fig. 27.2; Tables 27.1** and **27.2).**

— Most arteries that supply the face and scalp are branches of the external carotid artery (see **Fig. 24.21**) and include the following:
  - The superior and inferior labial arteries, the lateral nasal artery, and the angular branches of the facial artery, which supply the face between the eye and lower lip
  - The mental branch of the inferior alveolar artery, which supplies the chin

  - The superficial temporal, posterior auricular, and occipital arteries, which supply the lateral and posterior parts of the scalp
  - The supratrochlear and supraorbital branches of the ophthalmic artery (a branch of the internal carotid artery), which supply the anterior scalp. These arteries anastomose with the angular artery on the face and form a connection between internal carotid and external carotid circulations (see **Box 24.5**).

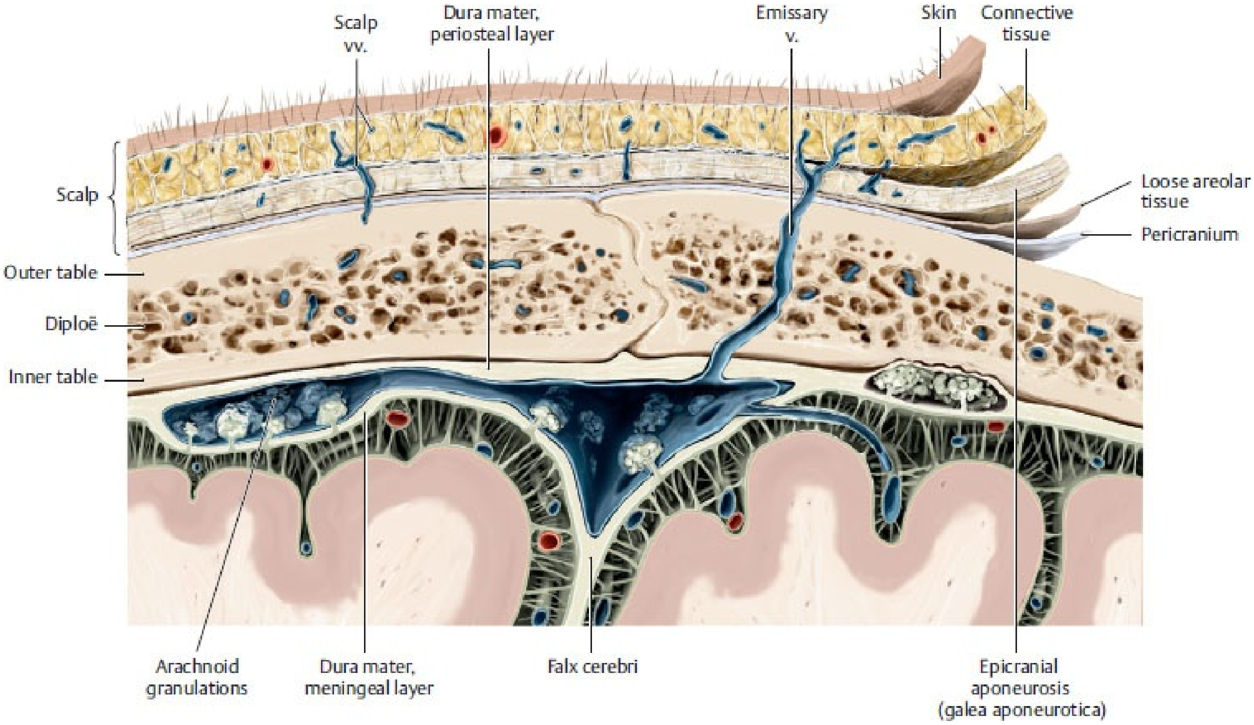

Scalp vv.
Dura mater, periosteal layer
Emissary v.
Skin
Connective tissue
Scalp
Loose areolar tissue
Pericranium
Outer table
Diploë
Inner table
Arachnoid granulations
Dura mater, meningeal layer
Falx cerebri
Epicranial aponeurosis (galea aponeurotica)

Fig. 27.1 The scalp

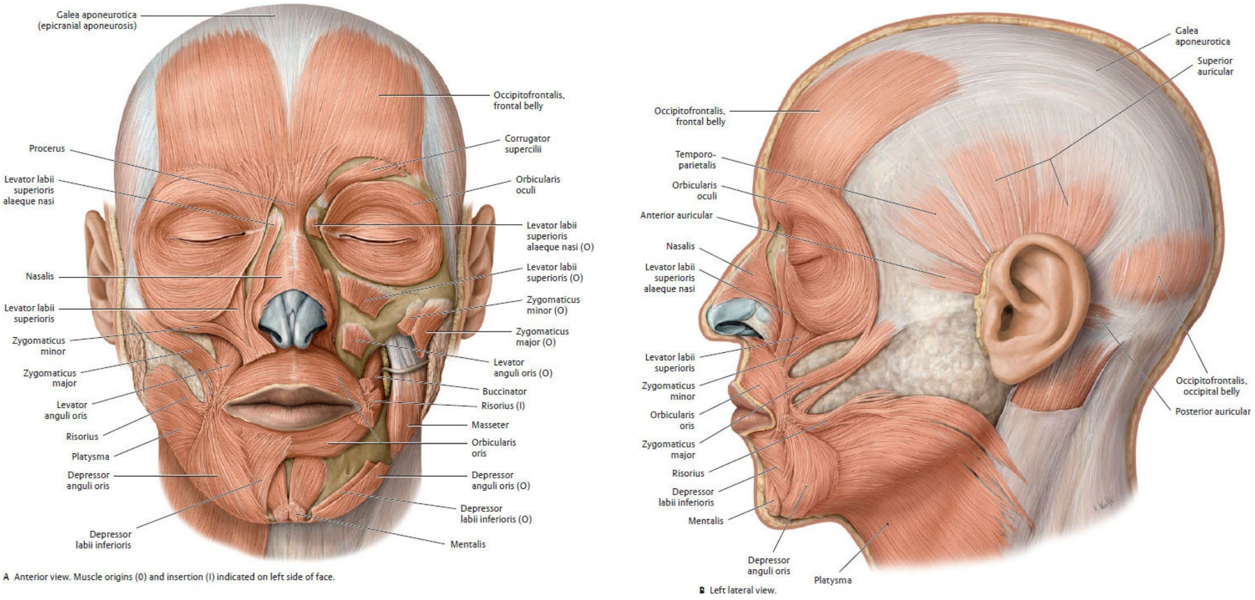
(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- Superficial veins of the head drain the face and scalp. Most of these veins follow the arteries of similar name and territory but drain to the facial and retromandibular veins, which terminate in the internal and external jugular veins, respectively.
- Veins of the scalp have deep connections to
  - **diploic veins,** which run within the diploë layer of the skull, and
  - **emissary veins,** which drain through the skull from the dural venous sinuses.

BOX 27.1: CLINICAL CORRELATION

SCALP INFECTIONS

Infections of the scalp spread easily over the calvaria through the loose connective tissue layer. Spread into the posterior neck is inhibited by the attachment of the occipitofrontalis muscle to the occipital and temporal bones. Laterally, spread is inhibited beyond the zygomatic arches by the attachment of the epicranial aponeu-rosis to the zygomatic arches via the temporal fascia. Anteriorly, however, infections can spread to the eyelids and nose under the frontalis muscle. Additionally, emissary veins may carry infections intracranially to the dural sinuses and can result in meningitis.


Galea aponeurotica (epicranial aponeurosis)
Occipitofrontalis, frontal belly
Procerus
Corrugator supercilii
Levator labii superioris alaeque nasi
Orbicularis oculi
Levator labii superioris alaeque nasi (O)
Nasalis
Levator labii superioris (O)
Levator labii superioris
Zygomaticus minor (O)
Zygomaticus minor
Zygomaticus major (O)
Zygomaticus major
Levator anguli oris (O)
Levator anguli oris
Buccinator
Risorius (I)
Risorius
Masseter
Platysma
Orbicularis oris
Depressor anguli oris
Depressor anguli oris (O)
Depressor labii inferioris (O)
Depressor labii inferioris
Mentalis
Galea aponeurotica
Superior auricular
Occipitofrontalis, frontal belly
Temporo-parietalis
Orbicularis oculi
Anterior auricular
Nasalis
Levator labii superioris alaeque nasi
Levator labii superioris
Zygomaticus minor
Orbicularis oris
Zygomaticus major
Risorius
Depressor labii inferioris
Mentalis
Occipitofrontalis, occipital belly
Posterior auricular
Depressor anguli oris
Platysma

A Anterior view. Muscle origins (0) and insertion (I) indicated on left side of face.

B Left lateral view.

Fig. 27.2 Muscles of facial expression (*continued on page 504*)

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Table 27.1 Muscles of Facial Expression: Forehead, Nose, and Ear

Muscle	Origin	Insertion*	Main Action(s)**
Calvaria			
Occipitofrontalis (frontal belly)	Epicranial aponeurosis	Skin and subcutaneous tissue of eyebrows and forehead	Elevates eyebrows, wrinkles skin of forehead
Palpebral fissure and nose			
Procerus	Nasal bone, lateral nasal cartilage (upper part)	Skin of lower forehead between eyebrows	Pulls medial angle of eyebrows inferiorly, producing transverse wrinkles over bridge of nose
Orbicularis oculi	Medial orbital margin, medial palpebral ligament; lacrimal bone	Skin around margin of orbit, superior and inferior tarsal plates	Acts as orbital sphincter (closes eyelids) • Palpebral portion gently closes • Orbital portion tightly closes (as in winking)
Nasalis	Maxilla (superior region of canine ridge)	Nasal cartilages	Flares nostrils by drawing ala (side) of nose toward nasal septum
Levator labii superioris alaeque nasi	Maxilla (frontal process)	Alar cartilage of nose and upper lip	Elevates upper lip
Ear			
Anterior auricular muscles	Temporal fascia (anterior portion)	Helix of the ear	Pull ear superiorly and anteriorly
Superior auricular muscles	Epicranial aponeurosis on side of head	Upper portion of auricle	Elevate ear
Posterior auricular muscles	Mastoid process	Convexity of concha of ear	Pull ear superiorly and posteriorly

* There are no bony insertions for the muscles of facial expression.

** All muscles of facial expression are innervated by the facial nerve (CN VII) via temporal, zygomatic, buccal, mandibular, or cervical branches arising from the parotid plexus.

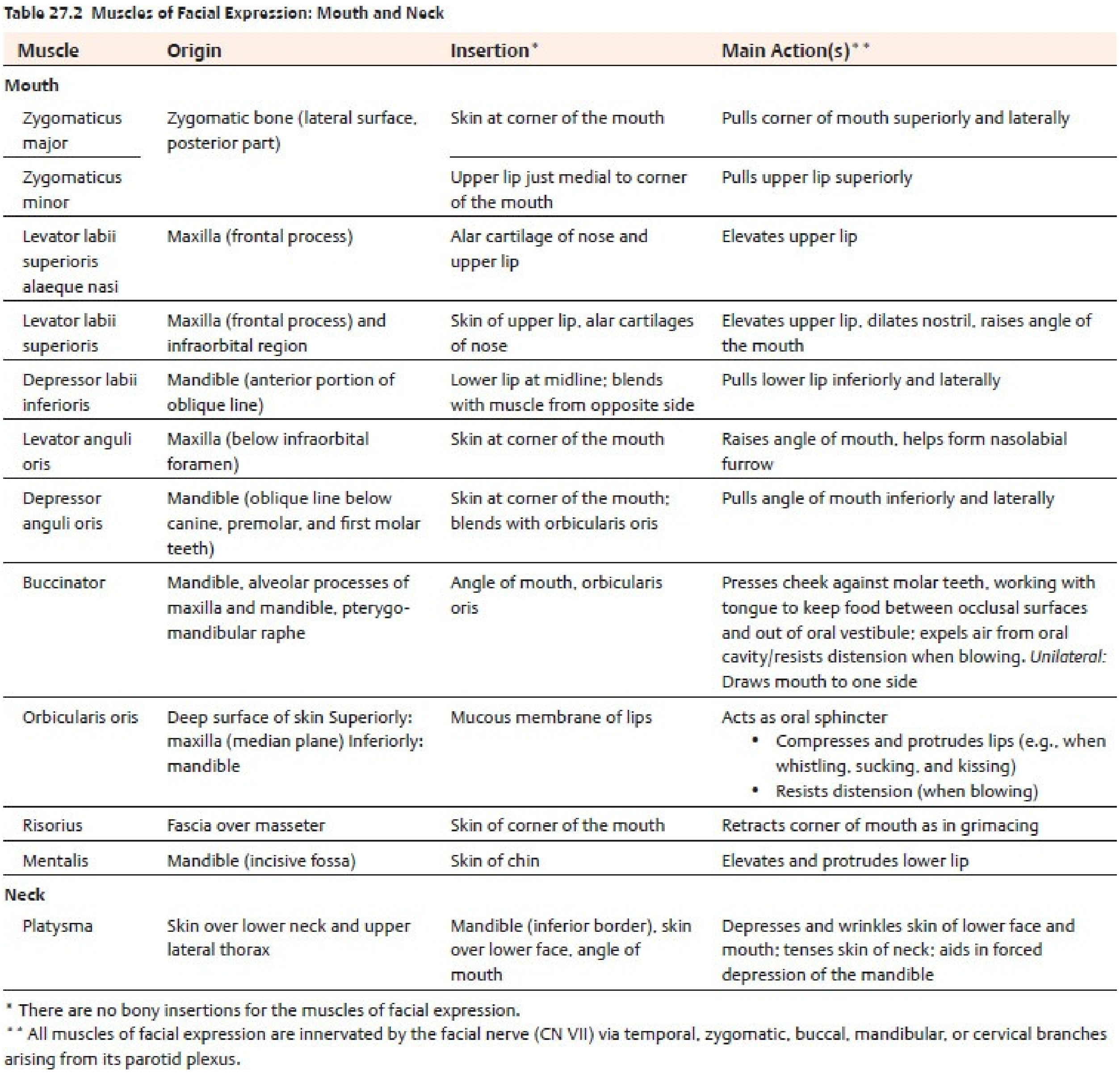


Table 27.2 Muscles of Facial Expression: Mouth and Neck

Muscle	Origin	Insertion*	Main Action(s)**
Mouth			
Zygomaticus major	Zygomatic bone (lateral surface, posterior part)	Skin at corner of the mouth	Pulls corner of mouth superiorly and laterally
Zygomaticus minor		Upper lip just medial to corner of the mouth	Pulls upper lip superiorly
Levator labii superioris alaeque nasi	Maxilla (frontal process)	Alar cartilage of nose and upper lip	Elevates upper lip
Levator labii superioris	Maxilla (frontal process) and infraorbital region	Skin of upper lip, alar cartilages of nose	Elevates upper lip, dilates nostril, raises angle of the mouth
Depressor labii inferioris	Mandible (anterior portion of oblique line)	Lower lip at midline; blends with muscle from opposite side	Pulls lower lip inferiorly and laterally
Levator anguli oris	Maxilla (below infraorbital foramen)	Skin at corner of the mouth	Raises angle of mouth, helps form nasolabial furrow
Depressor anguli oris	Mandible (oblique line below canine, premolar, and first molar teeth)	Skin at corner of the mouth; blends with orbicularis oris	Pulls angle of mouth inferiorly and laterally
Buccinator	Mandible, alveolar processes of maxilla and mandible, pterygomandibular raphe	Angle of mouth, orbicularis oris	Presses cheek against molar teeth, working with tongue to keep food between occlusal surfaces and out of oral vestibule; expels air from oral cavity/resists distension when blowing. *Unilateral:* Draws mouth to one side
Orbicularis oris	Deep surface of skin Superiorly: maxilla (median plane) Inferiorly: mandible	Mucous membrane of lips	Acts as oral sphincter • Compresses and protrudes lips (e.g., when whistling, sucking, and kissing) • Resists distension (when blowing)
Risorius	Fascia over masseter	Skin of corner of the mouth	Retracts corner of mouth as in grimacing
Mentalis	Mandible (incisive fossa)	Skin of chin	Elevates and protrudes lower lip
Neck			
Platysma	Skin over lower neck and upper lateral thorax	Mandible (inferior border), skin over lower face, angle of mouth	Depresses and wrinkles skin of lower face and mouth; tenses skin of neck; aids in forced depression of the mandible

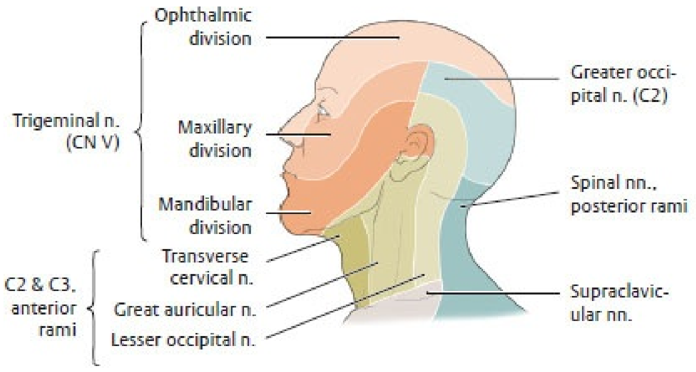
* There are no bony insertions for the muscles of facial expression.
** All muscles of facial expression are innervated by the facial nerve (CN VII) via temporal, zygomatic, buccal, mandibular, or cervical branches arising from its parotid plexus.

— Primary sensory nerves of the face and scalp **(Fig. 27.3)** include

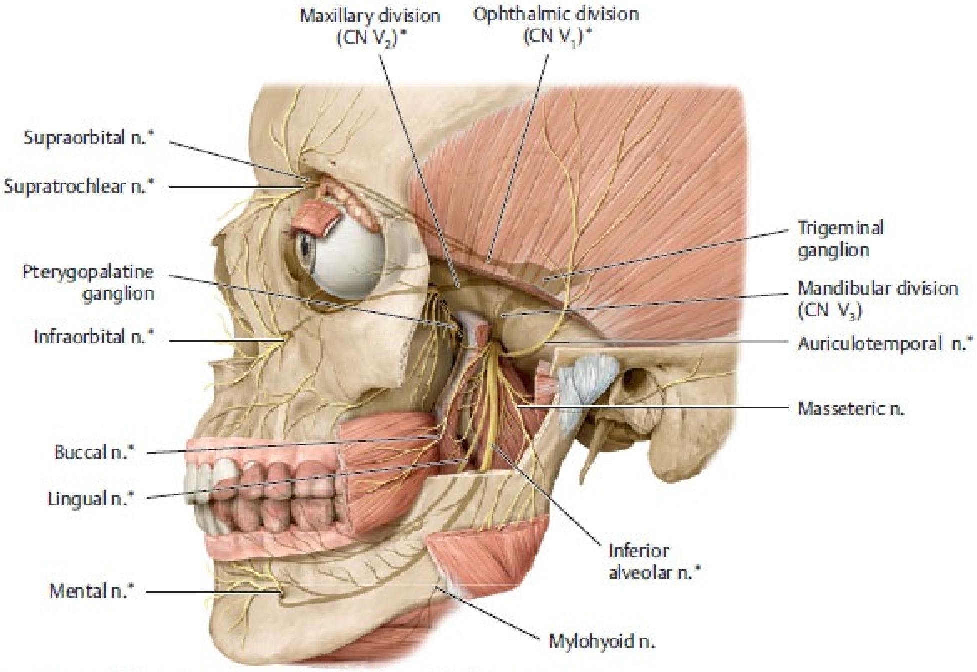
- the **supraorbital** and **supratrochlear nerves** (cranial nerve [CN] V1);
- the infraorbital nerve and **zygomaticotemporal** and **zygomaticofacial nerves** (V_2);
- the auriculotemporal, buccal, and **mental** (a branch of the inferior alveolar nerve) nerves (V_3);
- the **great auricular** and **lesser occipital nerve,** which are anterior rami of C2 and C3 via the cervical plexus; and
- the **greater occipital** and **third occipital nerves,** which are posterior rami of C2 and C3, respectively.

— Motor nerves of the face and scalp (**Fig. 27.4**) include

- the temporal, zygomatic, buccal, and marginal mandibular branches of the facial nerve (CN VII), which innervate muscles of the face;
- the temporal and posterior auricular branches of the facial nerve, which innervate muscles of the scalp; and
- the muscular branches of the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve (CN V3), which innervate the muscles of mastication.


Ophthalmic division
Trigeminal n. (CN V)
Maxillary division
Mandibular division
C2 & C3, anterior rami
Transverse cervical n.
Great auricular n.
Lesser occipital n.
Greater occipital n. (C2)
Spinal nn., posterior rami
Supraclavicular nn.

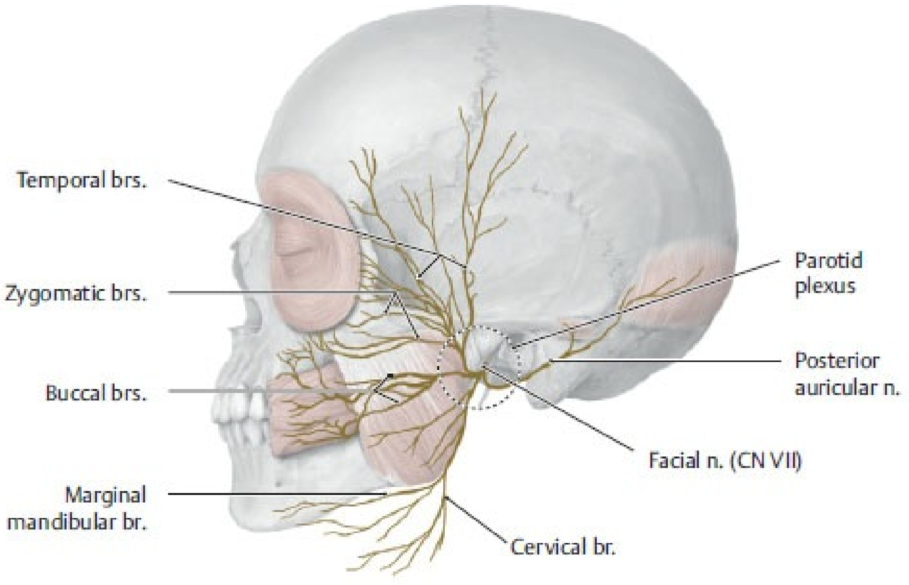
A Cutaneous innervation of the head and neck, left lateral view. The occiput and nuchal regions are supplied by the dorsal rami *(blue)* of the spinal nerves (the greater occipital nerve is the dorsal ramus of C2).


Maxillary division (CN V_2)*
Ophthalmic division (CN V_1)*
Supraorbital n.*
Supratrochlear n.*
Pterygopalatine ganglion
Infraorbital n.*
Buccal n.*
Lingual n.*
Mental n.*
Trigeminal ganglion
Mandibular division (CN V_3)
Auriculotemporal n.*
Masseteric n.
Inferior alveolar n.*
Mylohyoid n.

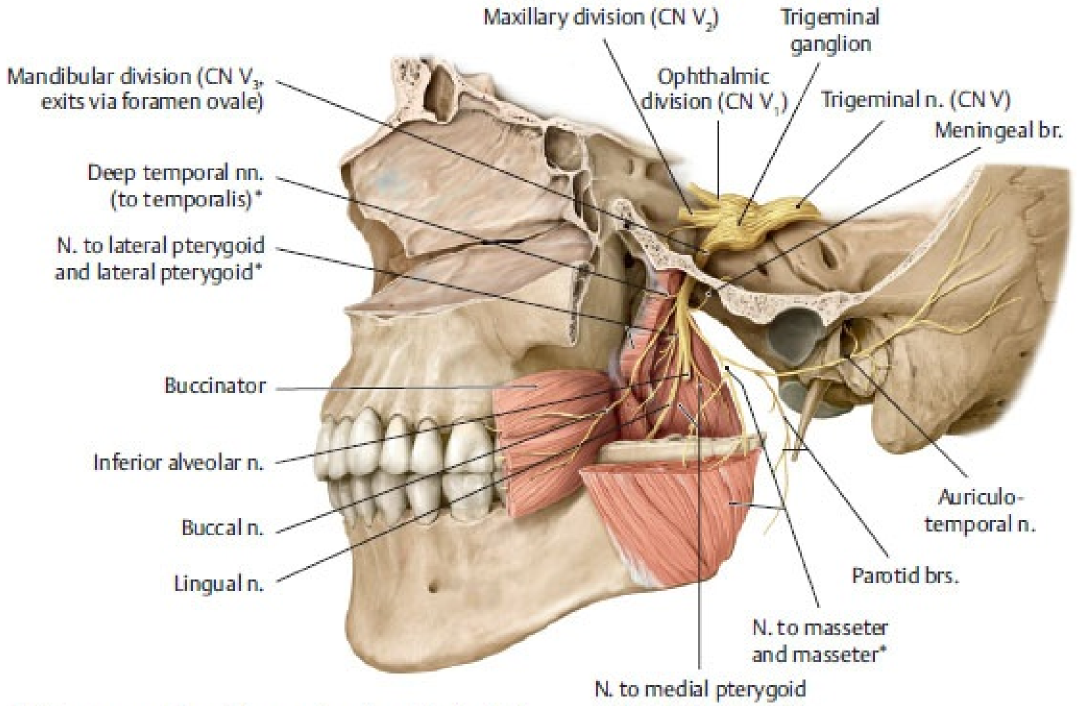
B Divisions of the trigeminal nerve, left lateral view. *Indicates sensory nn.

Fig. 27.3 Cutaneous innervation of the face

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Temporal brs.
Zygomatic brs.
Buccal brs.
Marginal mandibular br.
Parotid plexus
Posterior auricular n.
Facial n. (CN VII)
Cervical br.

A Motor innervation of the muscles of facial expression.


Maxillary division (CN V_2)
Trigeminal ganglion
Mandibular division (CN V_3, exits via foramen ovale)
Ophthalmic division (CN V_1)
Trigeminal n. (CN V)
Meningeal br.
Deep temporal nn. (to temporalis)*
N. to lateral pterygoid and lateral pterygoid*
Buccinator
Inferior alveolar n.
Buccal n.
Lingual n.
Auriculo-temporal n.
Parotid brs.
N. to masseter and masseter*
N. to medial pterygoid and medial pterygoid*

B Motor innervation of the muscles of mastication (*).

Fig. 27.4 Motor innervation of the face

Left lateral view. (A) Five branches of the facial nerve (CN VII) provide motor innervation to the muscles of facial expression. (B) The mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve (CN V_3) supplies motor innervation to the muscles of mastication. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New

York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

27.2 The Temporomandibular Joint and Muscles of Mastication

The **temporomandibular joint** (TMJ), the articulation between the head of the mandible and mandibular fossa of the temporal bone, is located within the infratemporal fossa. The mandibular fossa is a depression in the squamous part of the temporal bone; the articular tubercle lies anteriorly, and the external auditory canal lies posteriorly (**Fig. 27.5**).

- The joint is enclosed by a fibrous joint capsule and stabilized externally by several ligaments: the **lateral ligament**, the strongest of these, strengthens the fibrous capsule that surrounds the joint. **Sphenomandibular** and **stylomandibular ligaments** support the joint during chewing (**Fig. 27.6**).
- Within the joint and attached to the joint capsule a fibrocarti laginous articular disk divides the joint space into an upper part for gliding movements and a lower part for hinge movements.
- Four muscles—**temporalis**, **masseter**, **lateral pterygoid**, and **medial pterygoid**—act at the temporomandibular joint to move the mandible during chewing (**Figs. 27.7**, **27.8**, **27.9**, **27.10**; **Table 27.3**). They reside in the parotid region and in the temporal and infratemporal fossae. All are innervated by CN V_3, the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve.

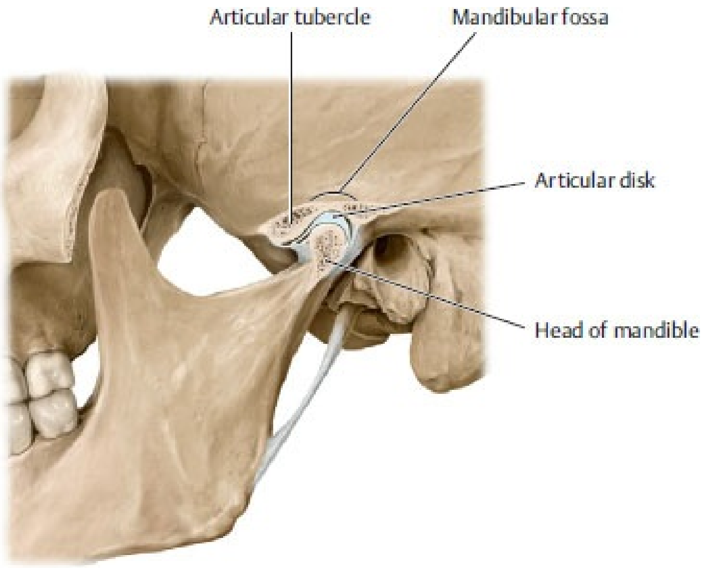
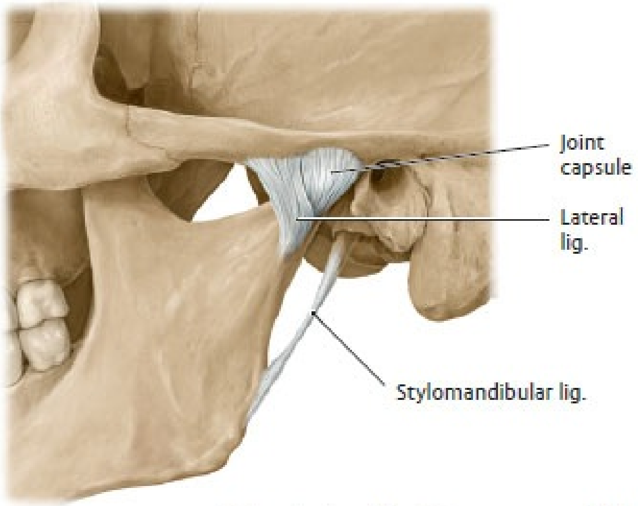
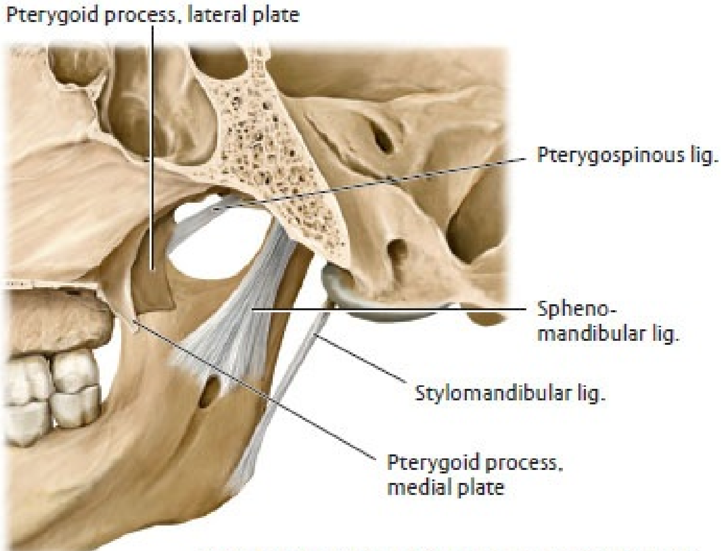


Fig. 27.5 Temporomandibular joint

The head of the mandible articulates with the mandibular fossa in the temporomandibular joint. Sagittal section, left lateral view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Joint capsule
Lateral lig.
Stylomandibular lig.

A Lateral view of the left temporomandibular joint.


Pterygoid process, lateral plate
Pterygospinous lig.
Spheno-mandibular lig.
Stylomandibular lig.
Pterygoid process, medial plate

B Medial view of the right temporomandibular joint.

Fig. 27.6 Ligaments of the temporomandibular joint

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

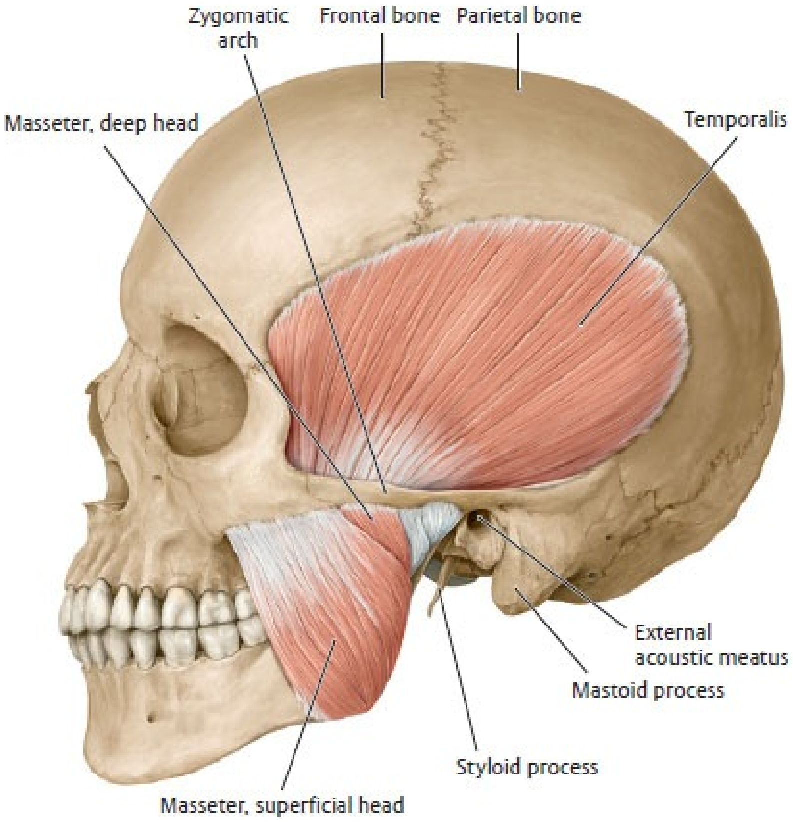
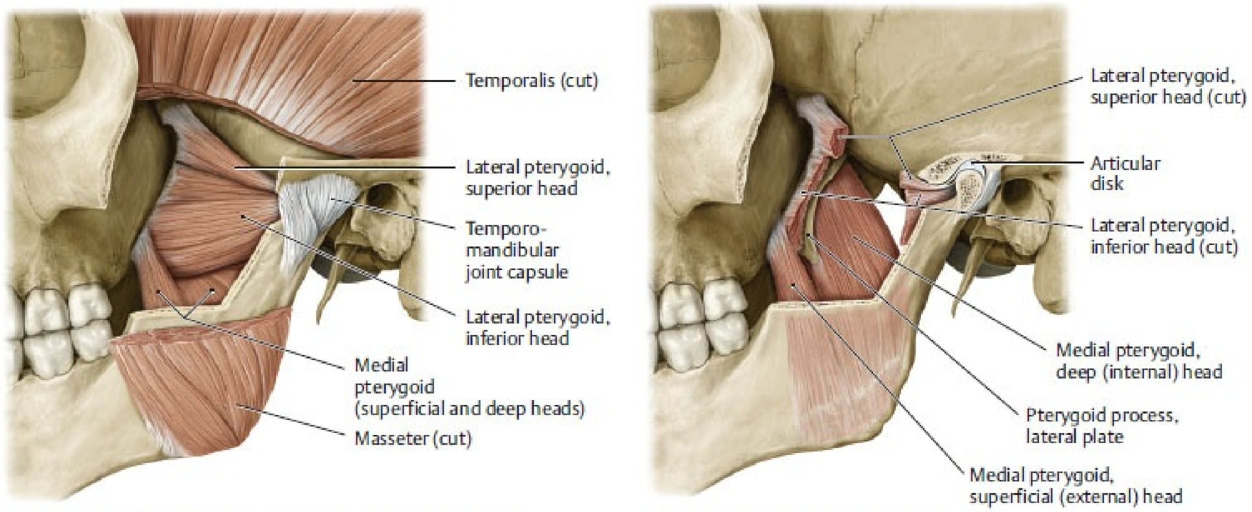

Zygomatic arch
Frontal bone
Parietal bone
Masseter, deep head
Temporalis
External acoustic meatus
Mastoid process
Styloid process
Masseter, superficial head

Fig. 27.7 Masseter and temporalis muscles

Left lateral view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Temporalis (cut)
Lateral pterygoid, superior head
Temporo-mandibular joint capsule
Lateral pterygoid, inferior head
Medial pterygoid (superficial and deep heads)
Masseter (cut)
Lateral pterygoid, superior head (cut)
Articular disk
Lateral pterygoid, inferior head (cut)
Medial pterygoid, deep (internal) head
Pterygoid process, lateral plate
Medial pterygoid, superficial (external) head

A Lateral pterygoid m. *Removed:* Coronoid process of mandible.

B Medial pterygoid m. *Removed:* Temporalis, masseter; *Cut:* Lateral pterygoid.

Fig. 27.8 Lateral and medial pterygoid muscles

Left lateral view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York:

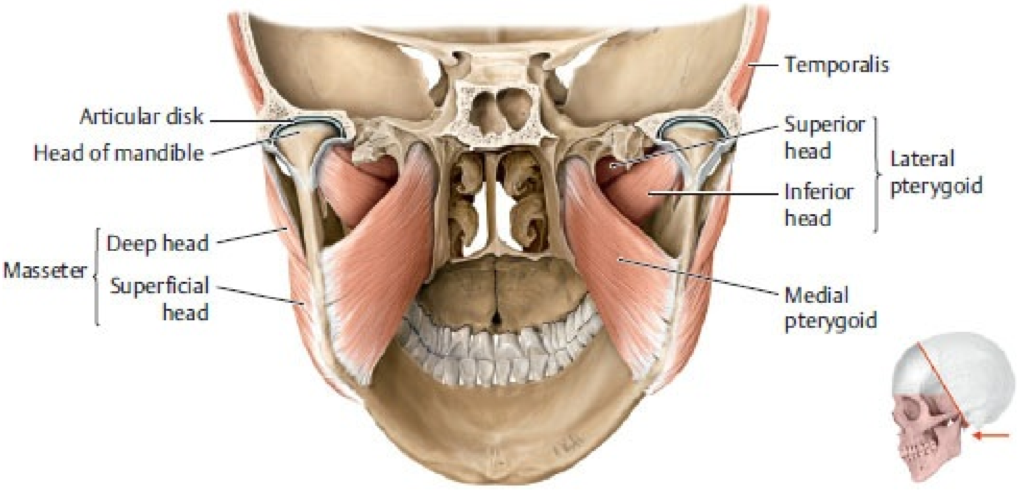


Fig. 27.9 Masticatory muscular sling

Oblique posterior view. *Revealed:* Muscular sling formed by the masseter and medial pterygoid muscles that embed the mandible. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

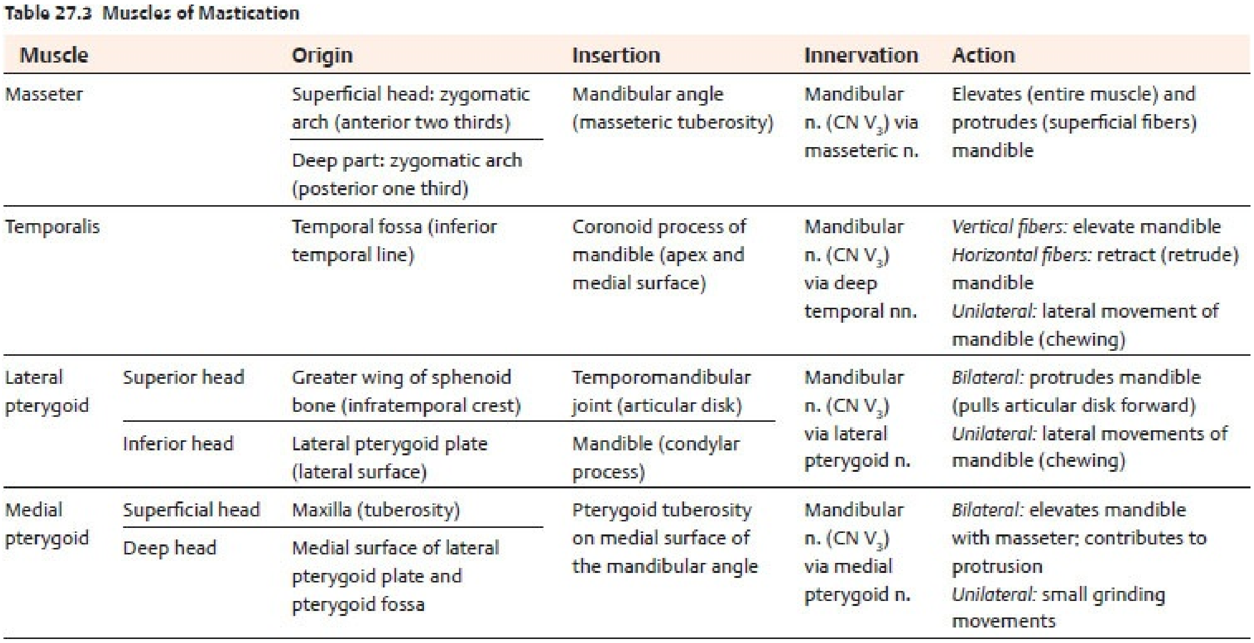
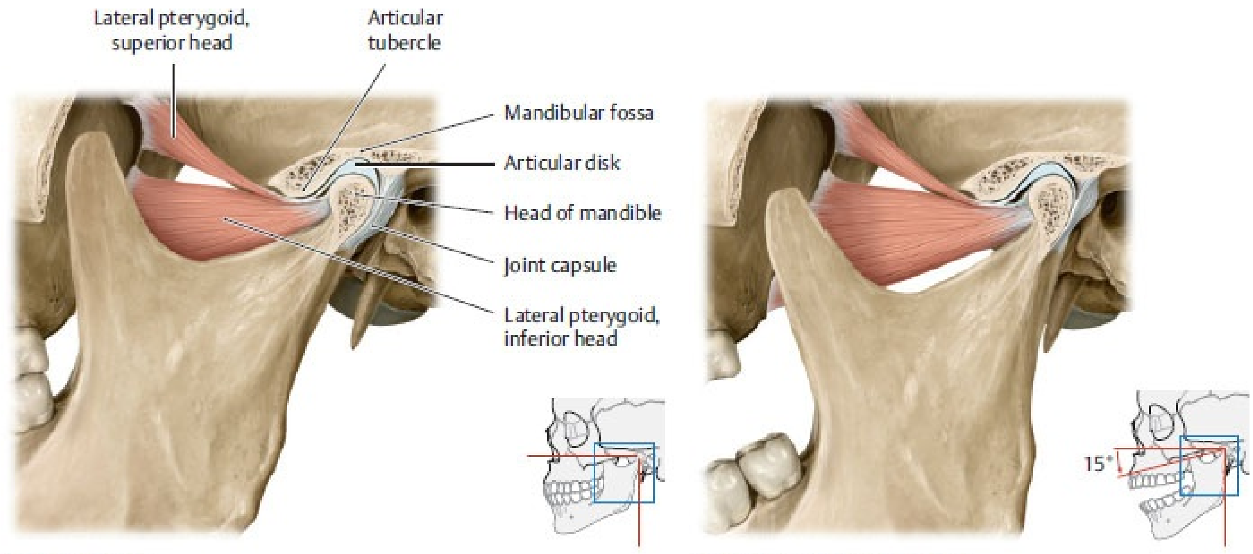


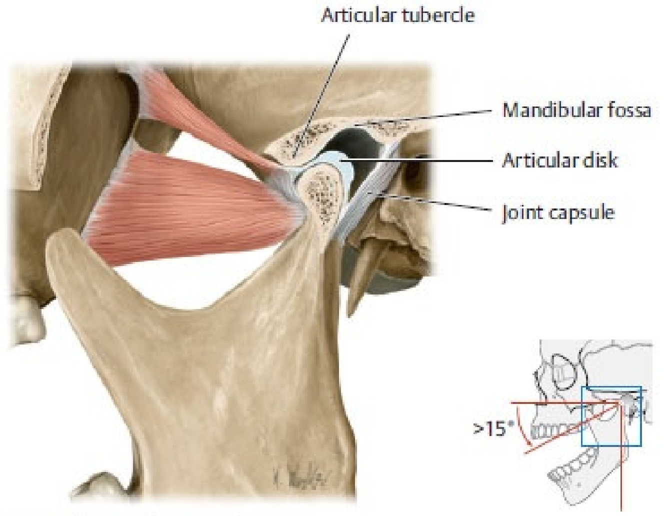
Table 27.3 Muscles of Mastication

Muscle		Origin	Insertion	Innervation	Action
Masseter		Superficial head: zygomatic arch (anterior two thirds)	Mandibular angle (masseteric tuberosity)	Mandibular n. (CN V_3) via masseteric n.	Elevates (entire muscle) and protrudes (superficial fibers) mandible
		Deep part: zygomatic arch (posterior one third)			
Temporalis		Temporal fossa (inferior temporal line)	Coronoid process of mandible (apex and medial surface)	Mandibular n. (CN V_3) via deep temporal nn.	*Vertical fibers:* elevate mandible *Horizontal fibers:* retract (retrude) mandible *Unilateral:* lateral movement of mandible (chewing)
Lateral pterygoid	Superior head	Greater wing of sphenoid bone (infratemporal crest)	Temporomandibular joint (articular disk)	Mandibular n. (CN V_3) via lateral pterygoid n.	*Bilateral:* protrudes mandible (pulls articular disk forward) *Unilateral:* lateral movements of mandible (chewing)
	Inferior head	Lateral pterygoid plate (lateral surface)	Mandible (condylar process)		
Medial pterygoid	Superficial head	Maxilla (tuberosity)	Pterygoid tuberosity on medial surface of the mandibular angle	Mandibular n. (CN V_3) via medial pterygoid n.	*Bilateral:* elevates mandible with masseter; contributes to protrusion *Unilateral:* small grinding movements
	Deep head	Medial surface of lateral pterygoid plate and pterygoid fossa			


Lateral pterygoid, superior head
Articular tubercle
Mandibular fossa
Articular disk
Head of mandible
Joint capsule
Lateral pterygoid, inferior head
15°

A Mouth closed.

B Mouth opened to 15 degrees.


Articular tubercle
Mandibular fossa
Articular disk
Joint capsule
>15°

C Mouth opened past 15 degrees.

Fig. 27.10 Movement of the temporomandibular joint

Left lateral view. During the first 15 degrees of mandibular depression (opening of the mouth), the head of the mandible remains in the mandibular fossa. Past 15 degrees, the head of the mandible glides forward onto the articular tubercle. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 27.2: CLINICAL CORRELATION

DISLOCATION OF THE TEMPOROMANDIBULAR JOINT

During yawning (or other activities in which the mouth opens very widely), the head of the mandible moves forward from the mandibular fossa onto the articular tubercle. In some individuals this may cause the head of the mandible to slide in front of the anterior tubercle, where it locks the mandible in the protruded position. The ligaments supporting the joint become stretched, which causes severe spasm (trismus) of the masseter, medial pterygoid, and temporalis muscles.

- The muscles of mastication act primarily to close the jaw and move the upper teeth against the lower teeth in a grinding motion. The mouth is opened primarily by the suprahyoid muscles with the assistance of the lateral pterygoid.
- The temporalis is the most powerful of these muscles and does approximately half of the work of mastication.
- The masseter, which has superficial and deep parts, raises the mandible and closes the mouth.
- The lateral pterygoid initiates opening of the mouth, which is then continued by the suprahyoid muscles. Because it's attached to the articular disk, it guides the movement of the joint.
- The medial pterygoid muscle runs almost perpendicular to the lateral pterygoid and contributes to the **masticatory muscular sling**.
- The masseter and medial pterygoid form a muscular sling that suspends the mandible. By combining the actions of both muscles, the sling enables powerful closure of the jaws.

27.3 Parotid Region

The parotid region lies superficial to the ramus of the mandible and includes the parotid gland and its surrounding structures **(Figs. 27.11** and **27.12)**.

— The **parotid gland,** the largest of the three salivary glands, lies anterior to the ear on the lateral side of the face.
  - A superficial part of the gland lies on the masseter muscle.
  - A deep part of the gland curves around the posterior edge of the ramus of the mandible.
  - A tough parotid fascia derived from the deep cervical fascia encloses the gland.
  - Secretomotor (parasympathetic) fibers to the parotid gland arise with the glossopharyngeal nerve (CN IX) and synapse in the otic ganglion. Postganglionic fibers hitchhike on the auriculotemporal nerve of CN V_3.

— The **parotid (Stensen's) duct** crosses the masseter muscle superficially to pierce the buccinator muscle and enter the mouth, where it opens into the oral vestibule opposite the second upper molar tooth.

- The parotid plexus, formed by the facial nerve (CN VII), is embedded within the parotid gland and gives rise to five branches that supply muscles of the face: the temporal, zygomatic, buccal, marginal mandibular, and cervical branches (see **Fig. 27.24**).

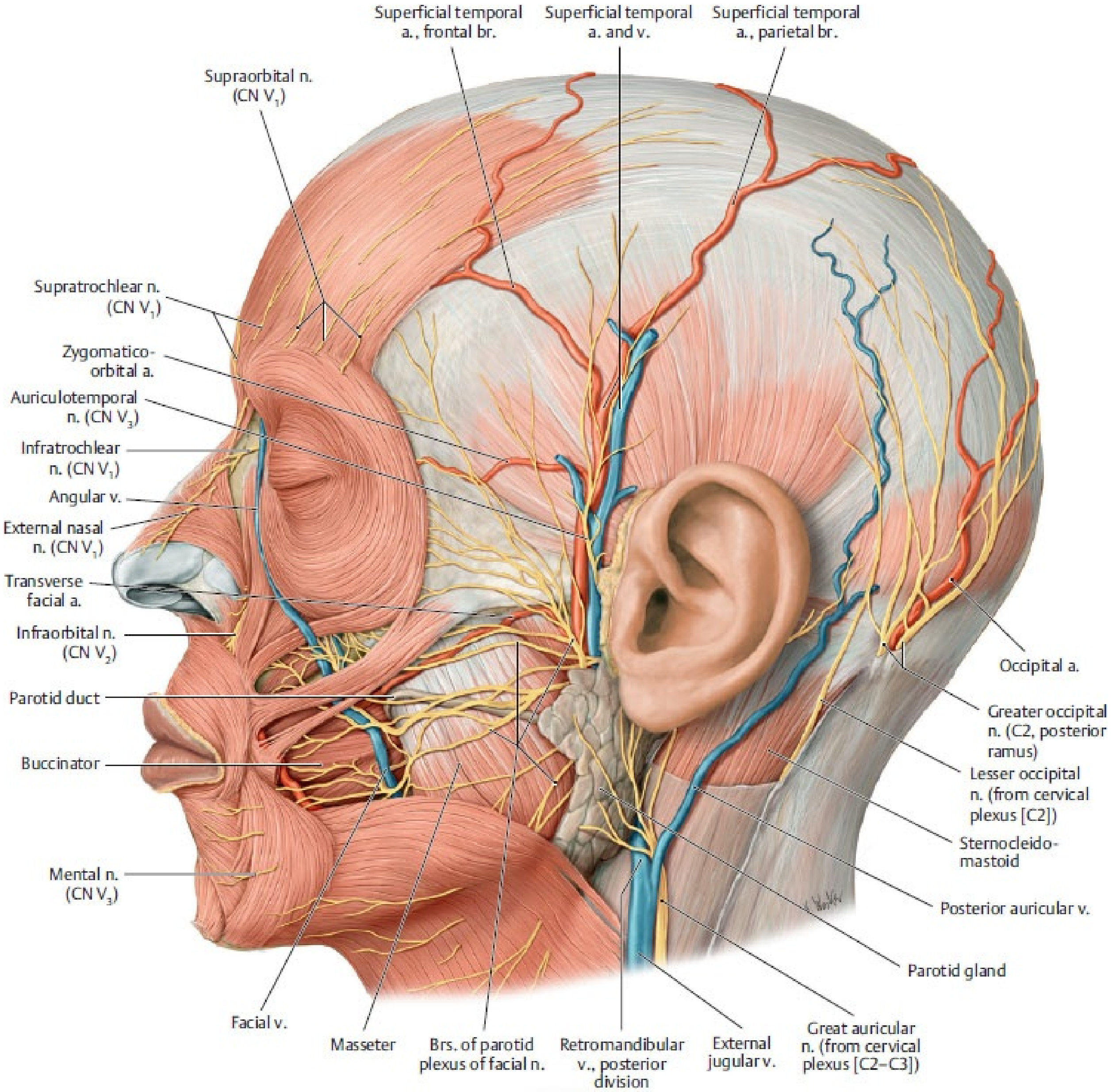

Superficial temporal a., frontal br.
Superficial temporal a. and v.
Superficial temporal a., parietal br.
Supraorbital n. (CN V_1)
Supratrochlear n. (CN V_1)
Zygomatico-orbital a.
Auriculotemporal n. (CN V_3)
Infratrochlear n. (CN V_1)
Angular v.
External nasal n. (CN V_1)
Transverse facial a.
Infraorbital n. (CN V_2)
Parotid duct
Buccinator
Mental n. (CN V_3)
Occipital a.
Greater occipital n. (C2, posterior ramus)
Lesser occipital n. (from cervical plexus [C2])
Sternocleido-mastoid
Posterior auricular v.
Parotid gland
Facial v.
Masseter
Brs. of parotid plexus of facial n.
Retromandibular v., posterior division
External jugular v.
Great auricular n. (from cervical plexus [C2–C3])

Fig. 27.11 Parotid gland

Left lateral view. *Note:* The parotid duct penetrates the buccinator muscle to open opposite the second upper molar. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

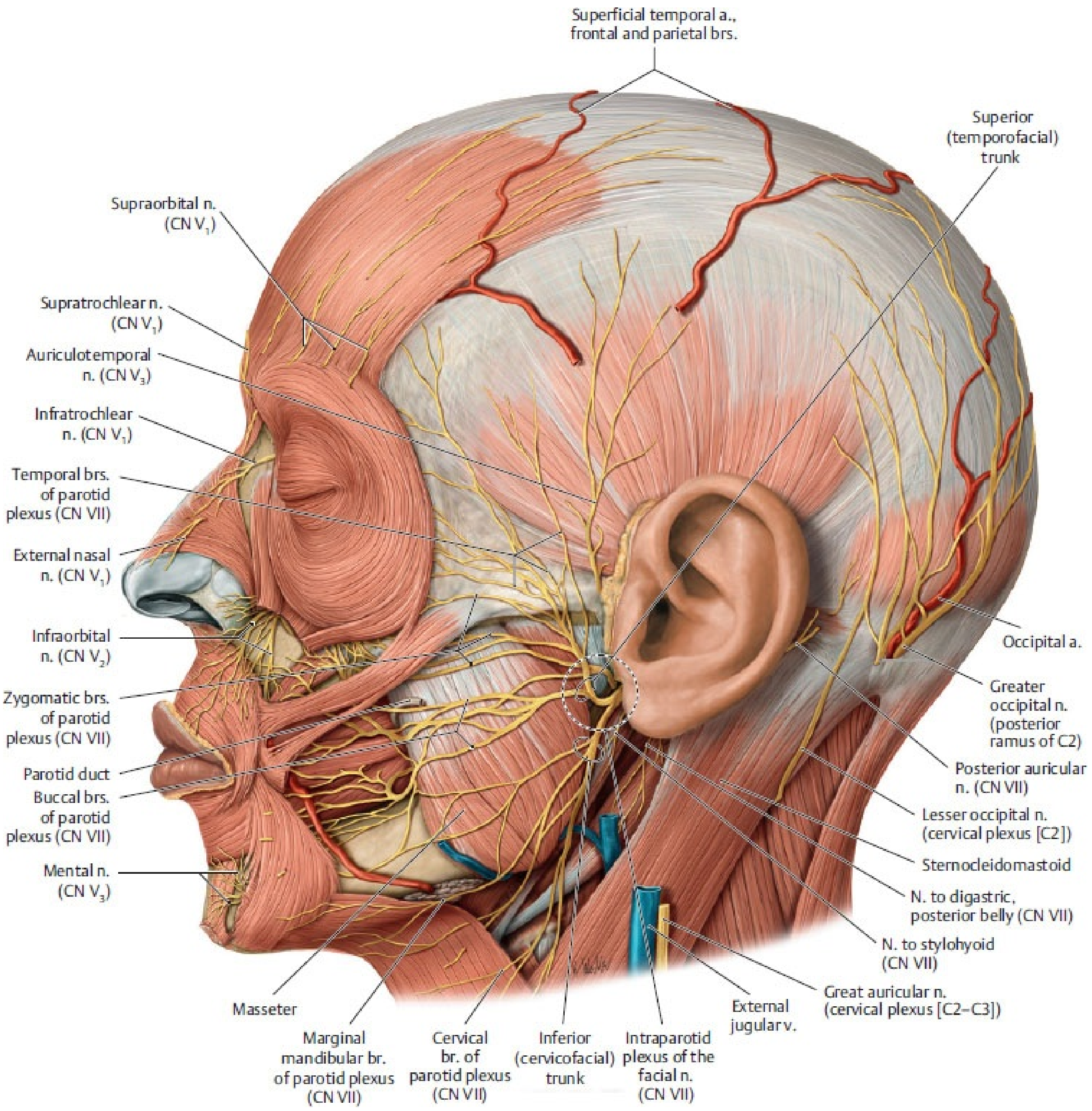

Superficial temporal a., frontal and parietal brs.
Superior (temporofacial) trunk
Supraorbital n. (CN V_1)
Supratrochlear n. (CN V_1)
Auriculotemporal n. (CN V_3)
Infratrochlear n. (CN V_1)
Temporal brs. of parotid plexus (CN VII)
External nasal n. (CN V_1)
Infraorbital n. (CN V_2)
Zygomatic brs. of parotid plexus (CN VII)
Parotid duct
Buccal brs. of parotid plexus (CN VII)
Mental n. (CN V_3)
Occipital a.
Greater occipital n. (posterior ramus of C2)
Posterior auricular n. (CN VII)
Lesser occipital n. (cervical plexus [C2])
Sternocleidomastoid
N. to digastric, posterior belly (CN VII)
N. to stylohyoid (CN VII)
Great auricular n. (cervical plexus [C2–C3])
External jugular v.
Masseter
Marginal mandibular br. of parotid plexus (CN VII)
Cervical br. of parotid plexus (CN VII)
Inferior (cervicofacial) trunk
Intraparotid plexus of the facial n. (CN VII)

Fig. 27.12 Parotid region

Left lateral view. *Removed:* Parotid gland, sternocleidomastoid, and veins of the head. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

— Structures traversing, or embedded within, the parotid gland include
  - the parotid plexus of the facial nerve (CN VII);
  - the retromandibular vein, formed by the superficial temporal and

maxillary veins;

- the external carotid artery and the origin of its terminal branches, the superficial temporal and maxillary arteries; and
- the parotid lymph nodes, which drain the parotid gland, the external ear, the forehead, and the temporal region.

27.4 Temporal Fossa

The temporal fossa lies superior and medial to the parotid region and covers the lateral aspect of the head **(Figs. 27.13** and **27.14)**.

— The boundaries of the temporal fossa are

- anteriorly, the frontal process of the zygomatic bone and zygomatic process of the frontal bone;
- laterally, the zygomatic arch;
- medially, the frontal bone, parietal bone, greater wing of the sphenoid bone, and squamous part of the temporal bone; and
- inferiorly, the infratemporal fossa.

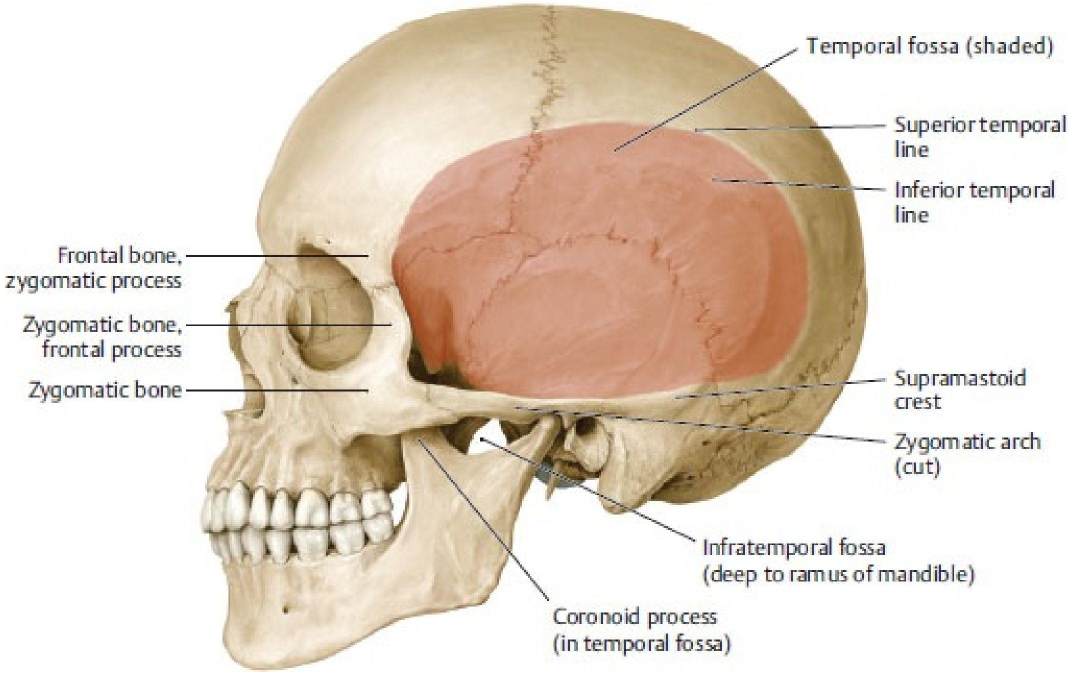

Temporal fossa (shaded)
Superior temporal line
Inferior temporal line
Frontal bone, zygomatic process
Zygomatic bone, frontal process
Zygomatic bone
Supramastoid crest
Zygomatic arch (cut)
Infratemporal fossa (deep to ramus of mandible)
Coronoid process (in temporal fossa)

Fig. 27.13 Temporal fossa

Left lateral view. The temporal fossa lies on the lateral surface of the skull, medial and superior to the zygomatic arch. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll

M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

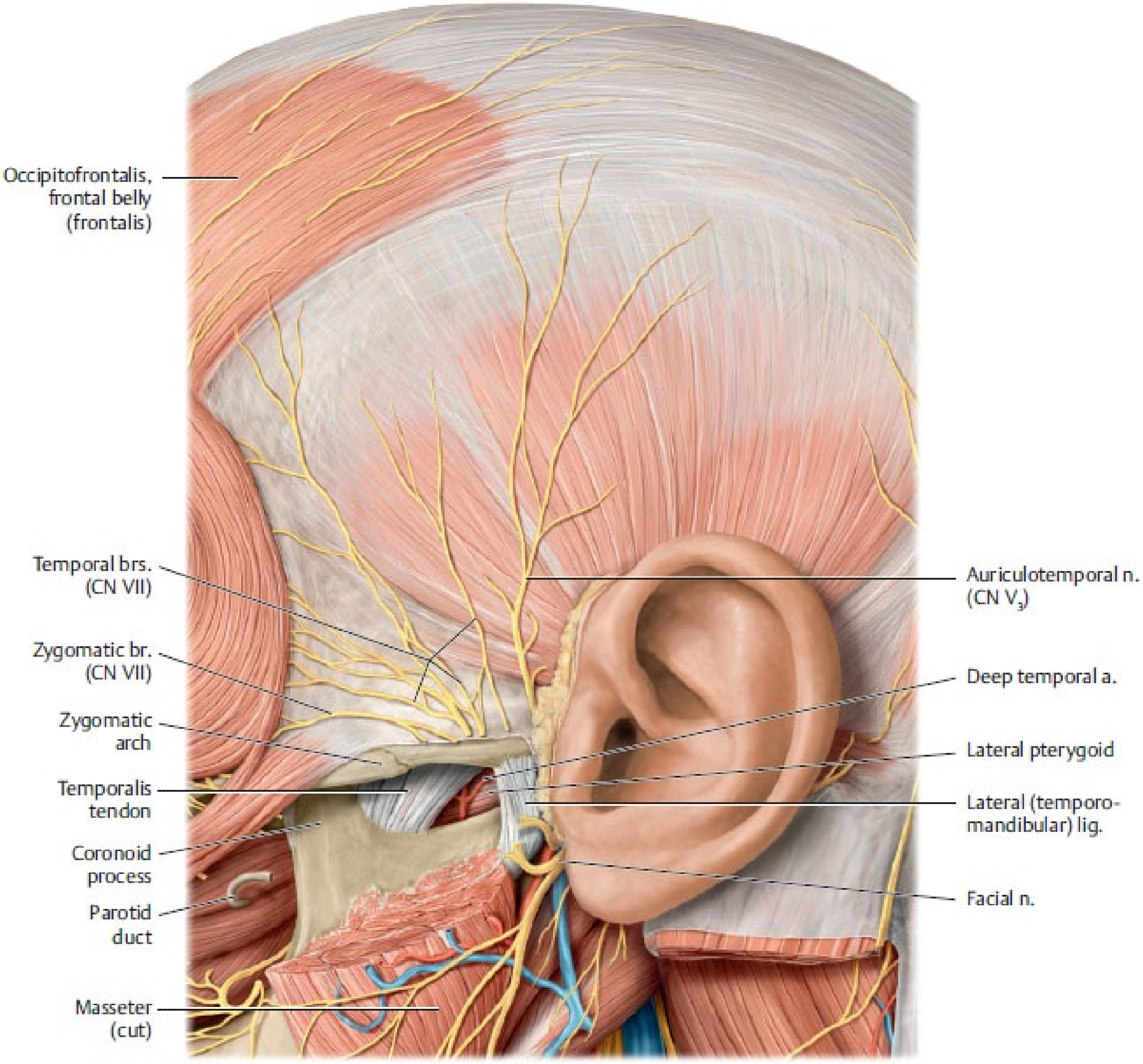

Occipitofrontalis, frontal belly (frontalis)
Temporal brs. (CN VII)
Zygomatic br. (CN VII)
Zygomatic arch
Temporalis tendon
Coronoid process
Parotid duct
Masseter (cut)
Auriculotemporal n. (CN V3)
Deep temporal a.
Lateral pterygoid
Lateral (temporo-mandibular) lig.
Facial n.

Fig. 27.14 Topography of the temporal fossa

Left lateral view. *Cut:* Masseter. *Revealed:* Temporal fossa and temporomandibular joint. (From Baker EW. Anatomy for Dental Medicine, 2nd ed. New York: Thieme; 2015)

— The temporal fossa contains
  - the temporalis muscle and **temporal fascia,**
  - the **deep temporal branches** of the maxillary artery, and
  - the **deep temporal nerves** and auriculotemporal nerve of the

mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve (CN V_3).

27.5 Infratemporal Fossa

The infratemporal fossa lies deep to the ramus of the mandible and is continuous superiorly with the temporal fossa **(Fig. 27.15)**.

— The bony boundaries of the infratemporal region are
  - anteriorly, the posterior wall of the maxilla;
  - posteriorly, the mandibular fossa of the temporal bone;
  - medially, the lateral pterygoid plate of the sphenoid bone;
  - laterally the ramus of the mandible; and
  - superiorly, the temporal bone and greater wing of the sphenoid bone.

— The infratemporal fossa communicates with the orbit anteriorly, the pterygopalatine fossa medially, and the middle cranial fossa superiorly.

— The contents of the infratemporal fossa (**Figs. 27.16** and **27.17**) include
  - the temporomandibular joint,
  - the medial and lateral pterygoid muscles and the inferior part of the temporalis muscle,
  - the maxillary artery and its branches (**Table 27.4**),
  - the pterygoid venous plexus,
  - the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve (CN V3) and its branches,
  - the otic ganglion, and
  - the chorda tympani of the facial nerve (CN VII).

— The mandibular nerve (CN V3), the nerve of the infratemporal fossa and the only division of the trigeminal nerve that carries general sensory and somatic motor fibers, distributes postganglionic parasympathetic (visceral motor) fibers that arise from the otic and submandibular ganglia (**Fig. 27.18, Table 27.5**; see **Fig. 27.4**).

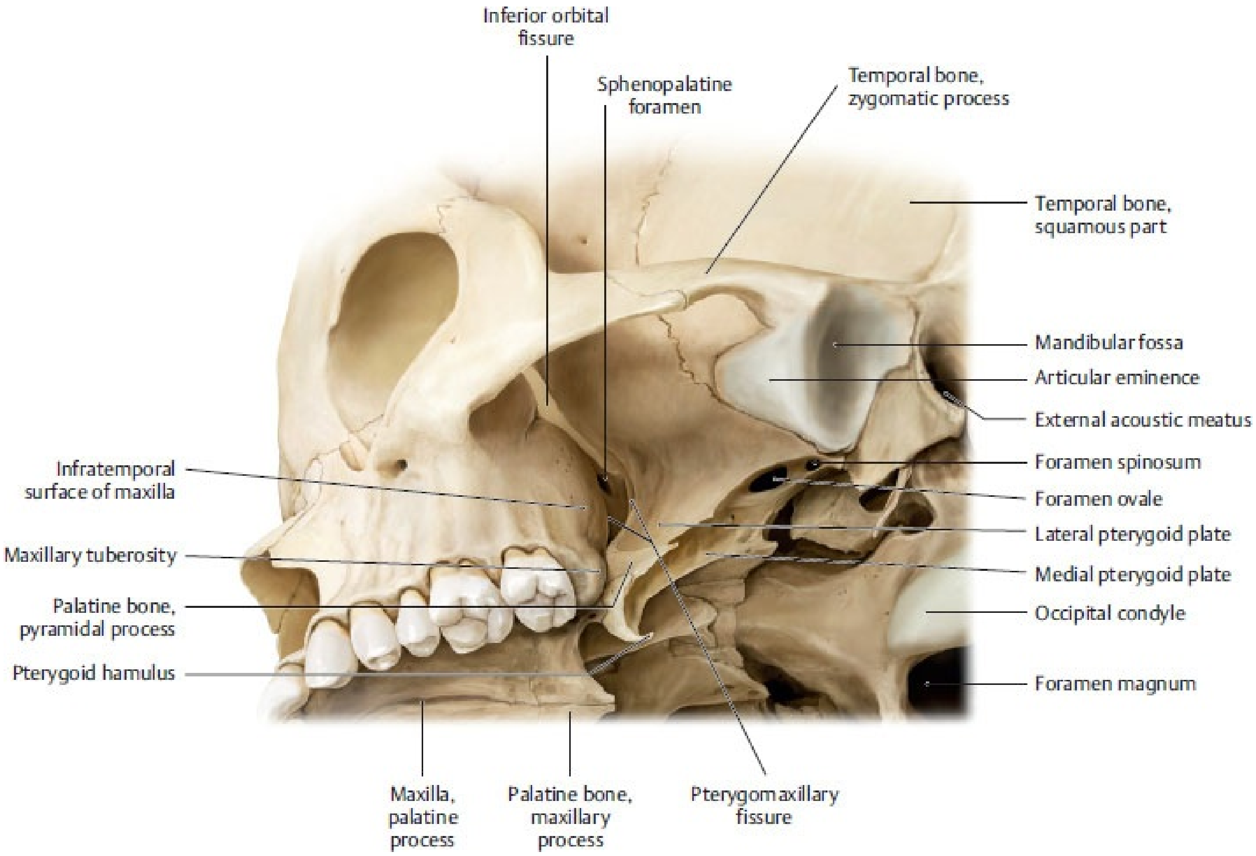

Inferior orbital fissure
Sphenopalatine foramen
Temporal bone, zygomatic process
Temporal bone, squamous part
Mandibular fossa
Articular eminence
External acoustic meatus
Foramen spinosum
Foramen ovale
Lateral pterygoid plate
Medial pterygoid plate
Occipital condyle
Foramen magnum
Infratemporal surface of maxilla
Maxillary tuberosity
Palatine bone, pyramidal process
Pterygoid hamulus
Maxilla, palatine process
Palatine bone, maxillary process
Pterygomaxillary fissure

Fig. 27.15 Bony boundaries of the infratemporal fossa

Oblique external view of the base of the skull. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

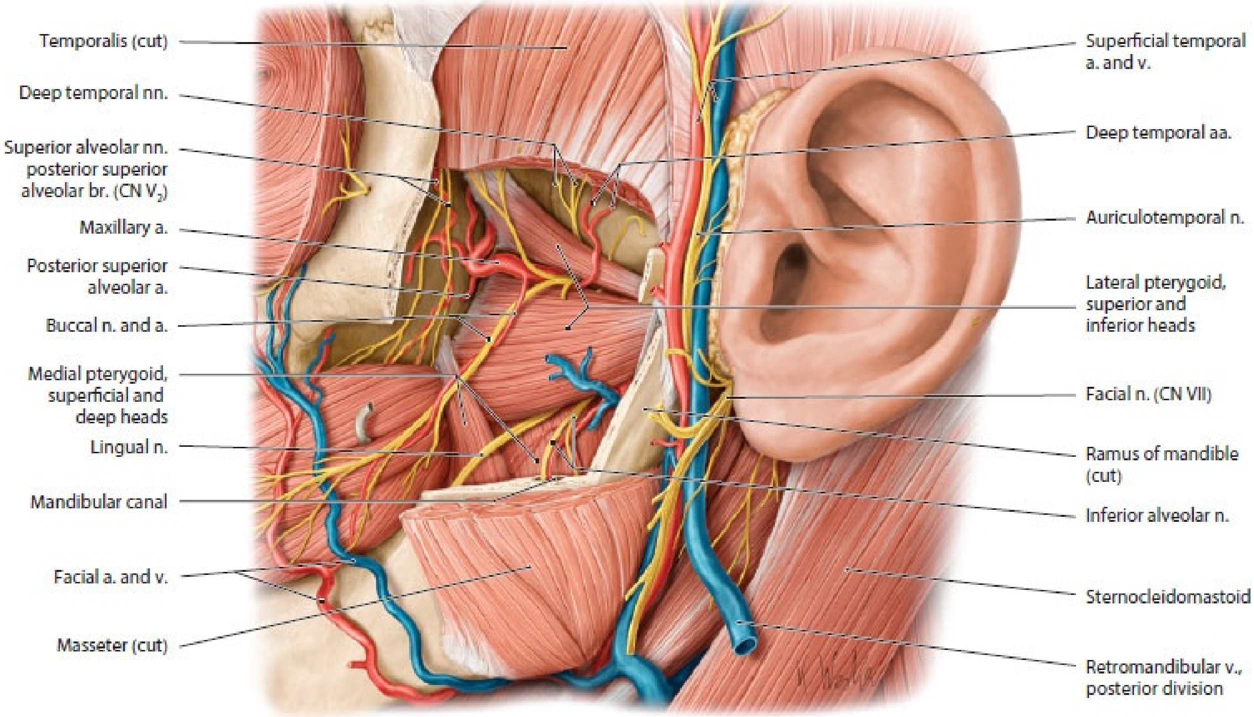

Temporalis (cut)
Deep temporal nn.
Superior alveolar nn. posterior superior alveolar br. (CN V$_2$)
Maxillary a.
Posterior superior alveolar a.
Buccal n. and a.
Medial pterygoid, superficial and deep heads
Lingual n.
Mandibular canal
Facial a. and v.
Masseter (cut)
Superficial temporal a. and v.
Deep temporal aa.
Auriculotemporal n.
Lateral pterygoid, superior and inferior heads
Facial n. (CN VII)
Ramus of mandible (cut)
Inferior alveolar n.
Sternocleidomastoid
Retromandibular v., posterior division

Fig. 27.16 Infratemporal fossa: Superficial layer

Left lateral view. *Removed:* Ramus of the mandible. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

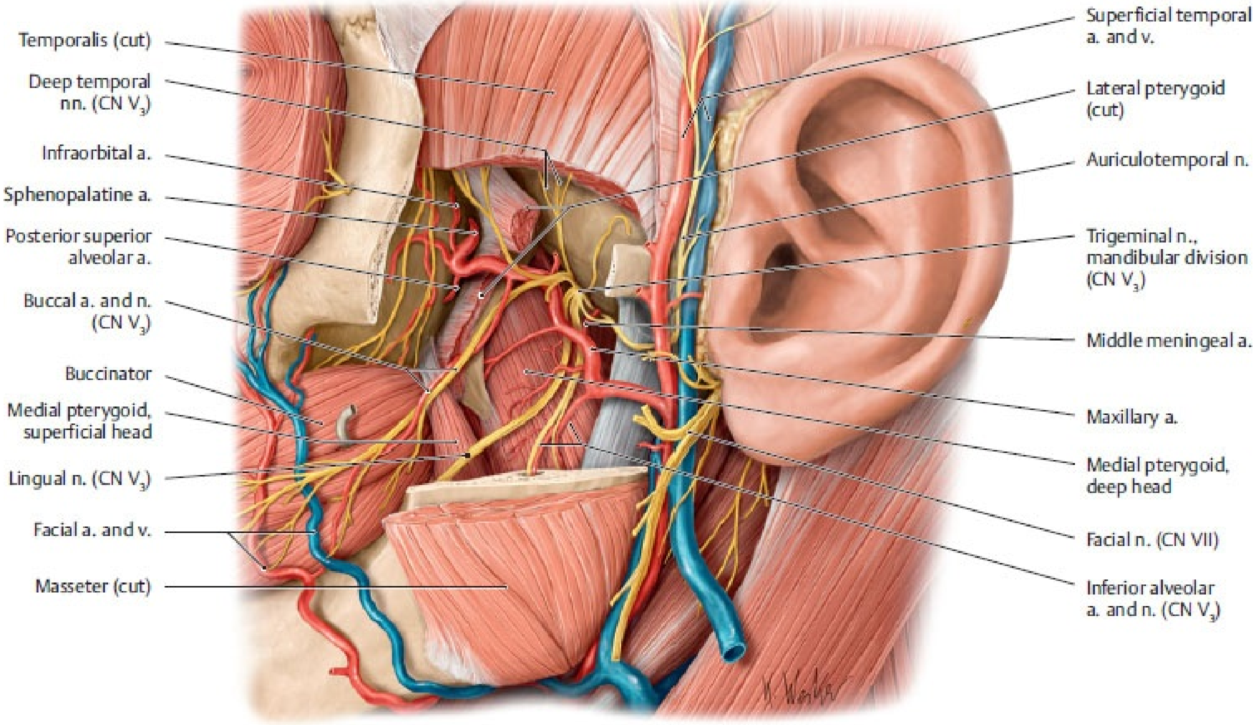
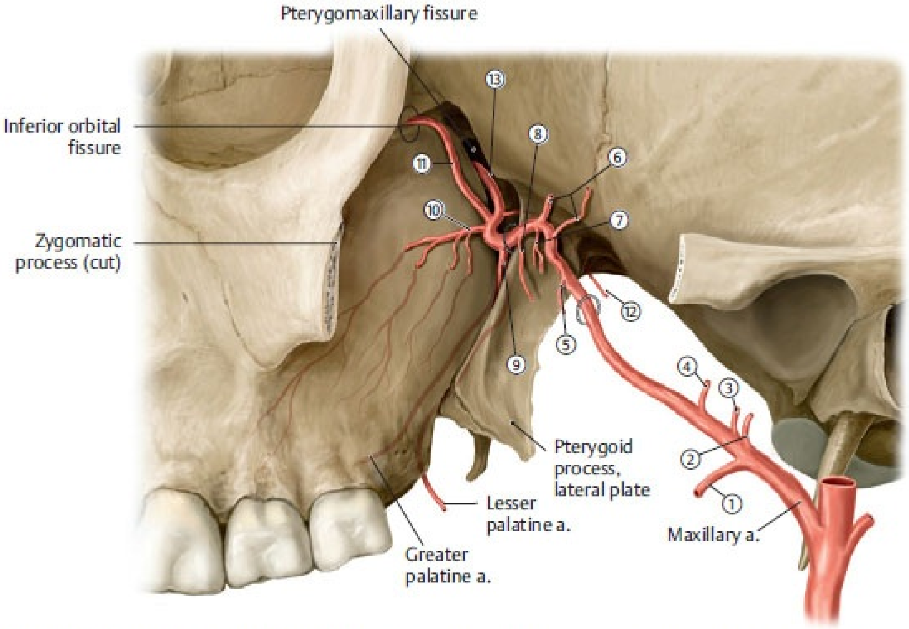

Temporalis (cut)
Deep temporal nn. (CN V$_3$)
Infraorbital a.
Sphenopalatine a.
Posterior superior alveolar a.
Buccal a. and n. (CN V$_3$)
Buccinator
Medial pterygoid, superficial head
Lingual n. (CN V$_3$)
Facial a. and v.
Masseter (cut)
Superficial temporal a. and v.
Lateral pterygoid (cut)
Auriculotemporal n.
Trigeminal n., mandibular division (CN V$_3$)
Middle meningeal a.
Maxillary a.
Medial pterygoid, deep head
Facial n. (CN VII)
Inferior alveolar a. and n. (CN V$_3$)

Fig. 27.17 Infratemporal fossa: Deep dissection

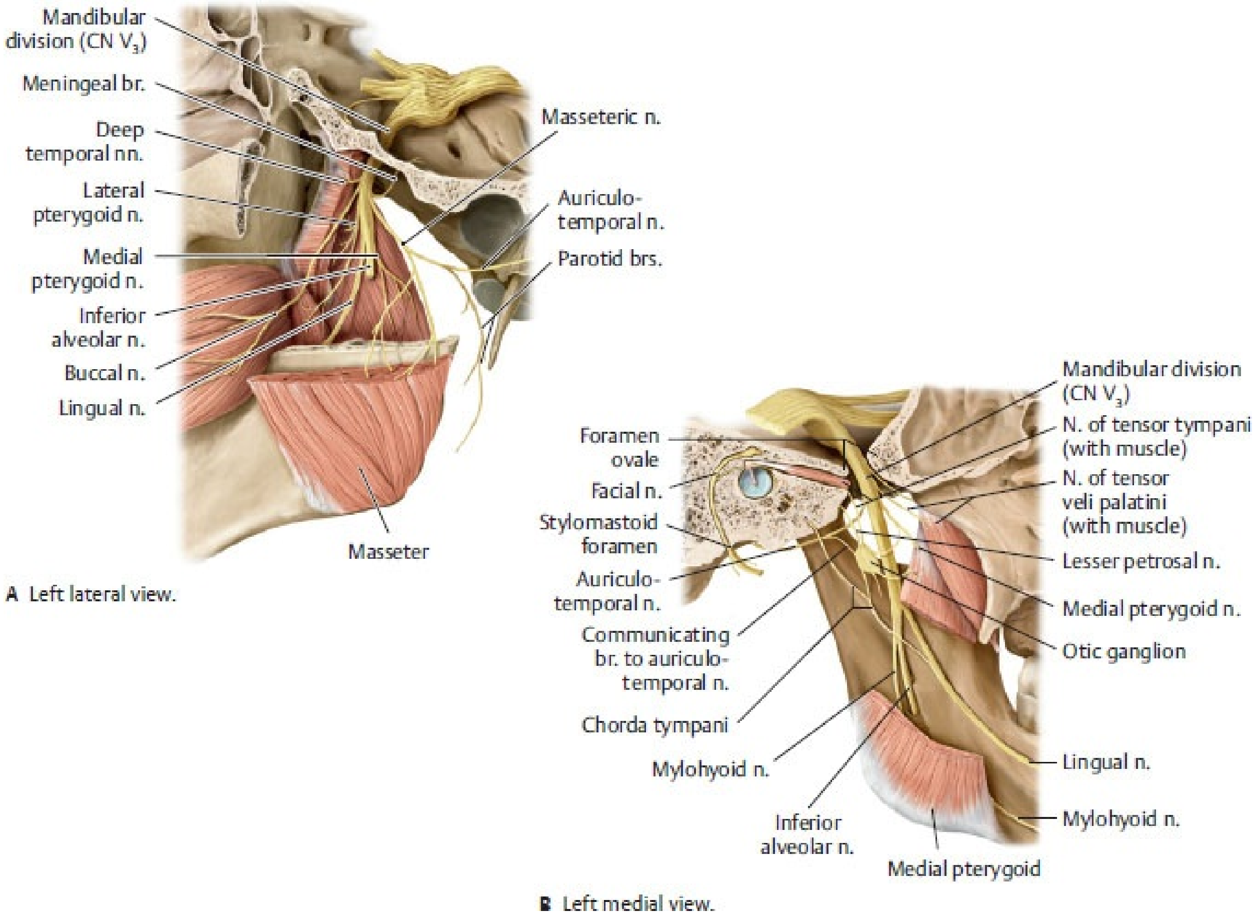
Left lateral view. *Removed:* Lateral pterygoid muscle (both heads). *Revealed:* Deep infratemporal fossa and mandibular nerve as it enters the mandibular canal via the foramen ovale in the roof of the fossa.


Pterygomaxillary fissure
Inferior orbital fissure
Zygomatic process (cut)
⑬
⑧
⑥
⑪
⑩
⑦
⑫
⑤
⑨
④
③
②
①
Pterygoid process, lateral plate
Lesser palatine a.
Greater palatine a.
Maxillary a.

Branches of the maxillary artery, left lateral view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Table 27.4 Branches of the Maxillary Artery

Part	Artery		Distribution
Mandibular part (between the origin and the first circle around artery)	① Inferior alveolar a.		Mandible, teeth, gingiva
	② Anterior tympanic a.		Tympanic cavity
	③ Deep auricular a.		Temporomandibular joint, external auditory canal
	④ Middle meningeal a.		Calvaria, dura, anterior and middle cranial fossae
Pterygoid part (between circles around the artery)	⑤ Masseteric a.		Masseter muscle
	⑥ Deep temporal aa.		Temporalis muscle
	⑦ Pterygoid branches		Pterygoid muscles
	⑧ Buccal a.		Buccal mucosa
Pterygopalatine part (from second circle through the pterygomaxillary fissure)	⑨ Descending palatine a.	Greater palatine a.	Hard palate
		Lesser palatine a.	Soft palate, palatine tonsil, pharyngeal wall
	⑩ Posterior superior alveolar a.		Maxillary molars, maxillary sinus, gingiva
	⑪ Infraorbital a.		Maxillary alveoli, maxillary incisors and canines, maxillary sinus, and skin of the midface
	⑫ A. of pterygoid canal		Upper nasopharynx, auditory tube, and sphenoid sinus
	⑬ Sphenopalatine a.	Lateral posterior nasal aa.	Lateral wall of nasal cavity, choanae
		Posterior septal branches	Nasal septum


Mandibular division (CN V3)
Meningeal br.
Deep temporal nn.
Lateral pterygoid n.
Medial pterygoid n.
Inferior alveolar n.
Buccal n.
Lingual n.
Masseteric n.
Auriculo-temporal n.
Parotid brs.
Masseter
Foramen ovale
Facial n.
Stylomastoid foramen
Auriculo-temporal n.
Communicating br. to auriculo-temporal n.
Chorda tympani
Mylohyoid n.
Inferior alveolar n.
Medial pterygoid
Mandibular division (CN V3)
N. of tensor tympani (with muscle)
N. of tensor veli palatini (with muscle)
Lesser petrosal n.
Medial pterygoid n.
Otic ganglion
Lingual n.
Mylohyoid n.

A Left lateral view.

B Left medial view.

Fig. 27.18 Mandibular nerve (CN V_3) in the infratemporal fossa

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Table 27.5 Nerves of the Infratemporal Fossa

Nerve	Nerve Fibers	Distribution
Muscular branches (CN V_3)	Branchial motor	Muscles of mastication; mylohyoid; tensor tympani; tensor veli palatini; anterior belly of digastric
Auriculotemporal (CN V_3)	General sensory	Auricle, temporal region, and temporomandibular joint
	Visceral motor	Parotid gland

	from glossopharyngeal n. (CN IX)	
Inferior alveolar (CN V$_3$)	General sensory	Mandibular teeth; mental branch supplies skin of lower lip and chin
Lingual (CN V$_3$)	General sensory	Anterior two thirds of tongue, floor of mouth, and lingual mandibular gingiva
Buccal (CN V$_3$)	General sensory	Skin and mucous membrane of cheek
Meningeal (CN V$_3$)	General sensory	Dura of middle cranial fossa
Chorda tympani (CN VII)	Special sensory taste	Anterior two thirds of tongue
	Visceral motor	Submandibular and sublingual glands via submandibular ganglion and lingual n. (CN V$_3$).

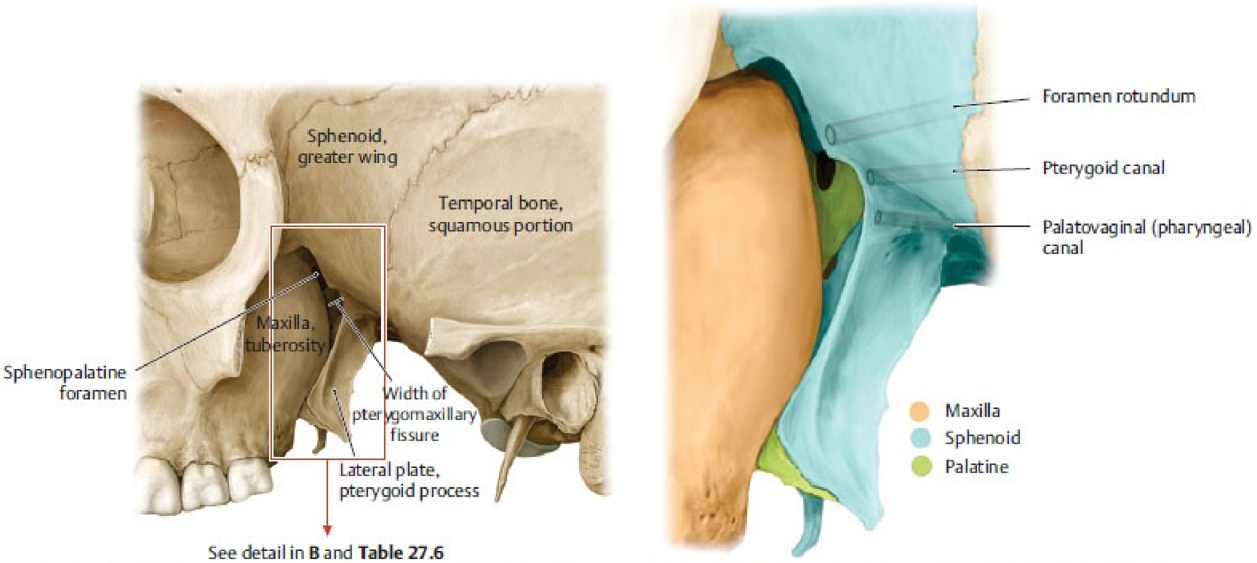
27.6 Pterygopalatine Fossa

The **pterygopalatine fossa,** a narrow space located medial to the infratemporal fossa, is an important distribution center for branches of the maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve (CN V$_2$) and the accompanying branches of the maxillary artery.

— The bony boundaries of the pterygopalatine fossa **(Fig. 27.19)** are
  - superiorly, the apex of the orbit;
  - anteriorly, the maxillary sinus;
  - posteriorly, the lateral pterygoid plate of the sphenoid bone;
  - laterally, the **pterygomaxillary fissure**; and
  - medially, the vertical plate of the palatine bone.

— Contents of the pterygopalatine fossa include
  - the pterygopalatine part of the maxillary artery, its branches, and its accompanying veins;
  - the nerve of the pterygoid canal;

  - the pterygopalatine ganglion; and
  - the maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve (CN V_2) and its branches.
- The pterygopalatine fossa communicates anteriorly with the orbit, medially with the nasal cavity and palate, and posteriorly with the middle cranial fossa and base of the skull **(Table 27.6)**.
- The maxillary artery passes from the infratemporal fossa to the pterygopalatine fossa through the pterygomaxillary fissure (see **Table 27.4**). Its branches accompany the branches of the maxillary nerve (CN V_2) to supply the nose, palate, and pharynx.
- The **nerve of the pterygoid canal,** which enters the pterygo palatine fossa from the middle cranial fossa, is an autonomic nerve that carries
  - preganglionic parasympathetic fibers from the **greater petrosal nerve,** a branch of the facial nerve (CN VII); and
  - postganglionic sympathetic fibers from the **deep petrosal nerve,** which arises from the internal carotid plexus.
- The pterygopalatine ganglion receives general sensory fibers from the maxillary nerve (CN V_2) and parasympathetic and sympathetic fibers from the nerve of the pterygoid canal. Only the parasympathetic fibers synapse in the ganglion; general sensory and sympathetic fibers pass through the ganglion but do not synapse there **(Table 27.7)**.
- The maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve (CN V_2)
  - passes from the middle cranial fossa to the pterygopalatine fossa through the **foramen rotundum;**
  - suspends the pterygopalatine ganglion by two small **ganglionic nerves,** which transmit general sensory fibers of the maxillary nerve;
  - distributes postganglionic parasympathetic (secretomotor) and sympathetic (vasoconstrictive) fibers to the lacrimal, nasal, palatal, and pharyngeal glands; and
  - distributes general sensory fibers to the midface, maxillary sinus, maxillary teeth, nasal cavity, palate, and superior pharynx.

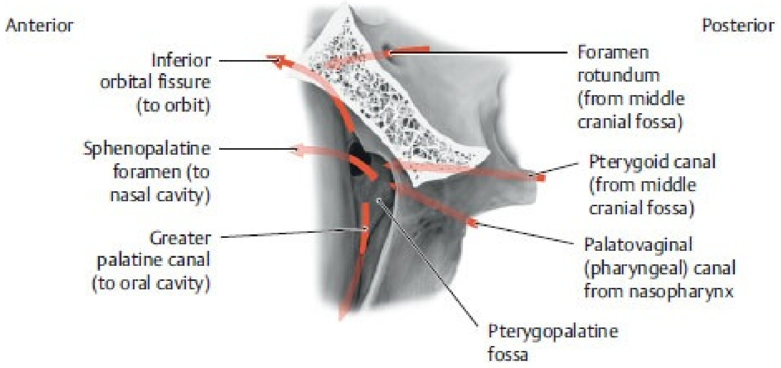

Sphenoid, greater wing
Temporal bone, squamous portion
Maxilla, tuberosity
Sphenopalatine foramen
Width of pterygomaxillary fissure
Lateral plate, pterygoid process
See detail in B and **Table 27.6**
Foramen rotundum
Pterygoid canal
Palatovaginal (pharyngeal) canal
Maxilla
Sphenoid
Palatine

A Left lateral view. The lateral approach through the infratemporal fossa via the pteryomaxillary fissure.

B Left lateral view. This color-coded version shows the location of the role of palatine bone.

Fig. 27.19 Pterygopalatine fossa

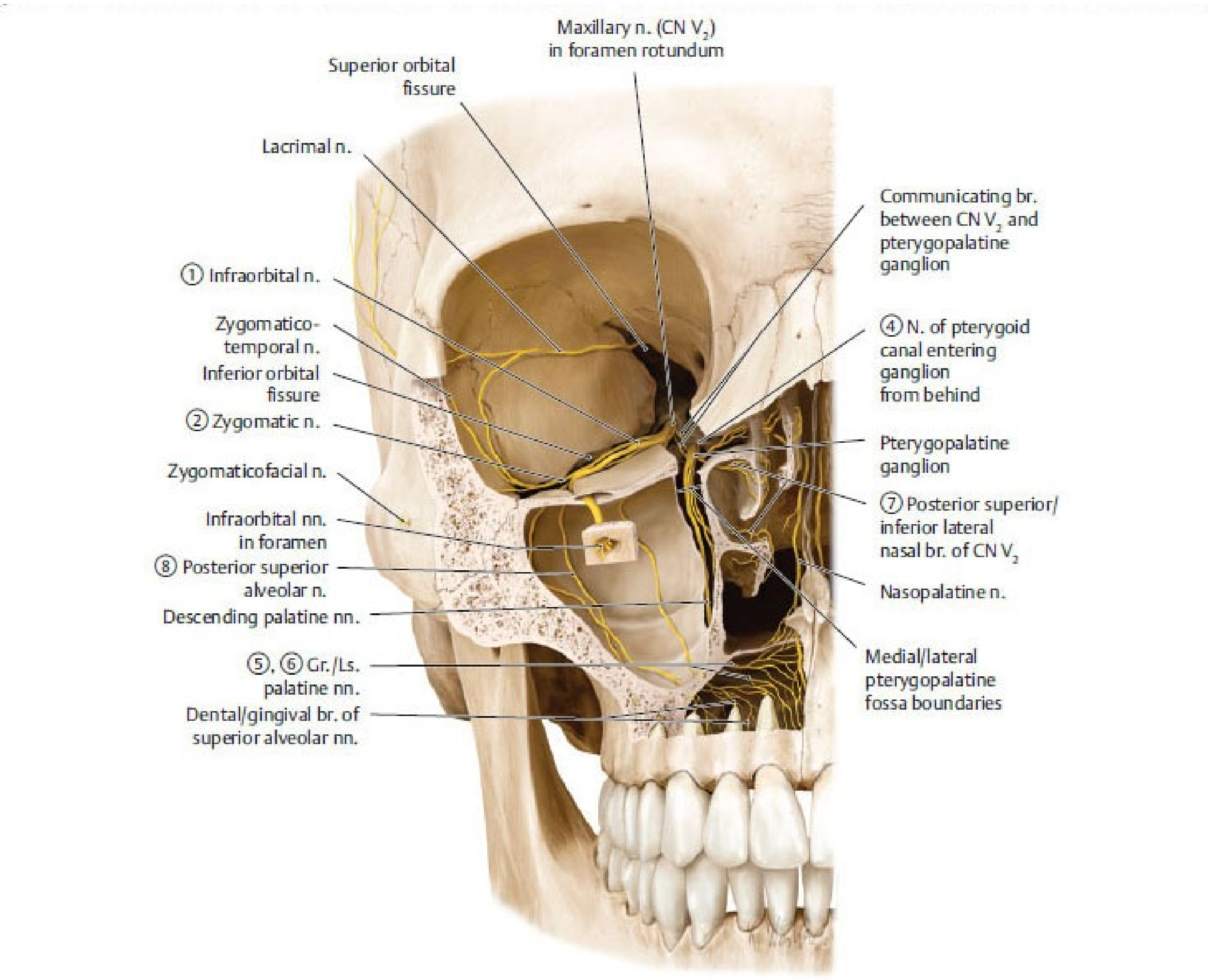
(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th Edition. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Anterior
Posterior
Inferior orbital fissure (to orbit)
Foramen rotundum (from middle cranial fossa)
Sphenopalatine foramen (to nasal cavity)
Pterygoid canal (from middle cranial fossa)
Greater palatine canal (to oral cavity)
Palatovaginal (pharyngeal) canal from nasopharynx
Pterygopalatine fossa

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th Edition. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Table 27.6 Communications of the Pterygopalatine Fossa

Communication	Direction	Via	Transmitted structures
Middle cranial fossa	Posterosuperiorly	Foramen rotundum	• Maxillary n. (CN V_2)
Middle cranial fossa	Posteriorly in anterior wall of foramen lacerum	Pterygoid (vidian) canal	• N. of pterygoid canal, formed from: ◦ Greater petrosal n. (preganglionic parasympathetic fibers from CN VII) ◦ Deep petrosal n. (postganglionic sympathetic fibers from internal carotid plexus) • A. of pterygoid canal • Vv. of pterygoid canal
Orbit	Anterosuperiorly	Inferior orbital fissure	• Branches of maxillary n. (CN V_2): ◦ Infraorbital n. ◦ Zygomatic n. • Infraorbital a. and vv. • Communicating vv. between inferior ophthalmic v. and pterygoid plexus of vv.
Nasal cavity	Medially	Sphenopalatine foramen	• Nasopalatine n. (CN V_2), lateral and medial superior posterior nasal branches • Sphenopalatine a. and vv.
Oral cavity	Inferiorly	Greater palatine canal (foramen)	• Greater (descending) palatine n. (CN V_2) and a. • Branches that emerge through lesser palatine canals: ◦ Lesser palatine nn. (CN V_2) and aa.
Nasopharynx	Inferoposteriorly	Palatovaginal (pharyngeal) canal	• Pharyngeal branches of maxillary n. (V_2) and pharyngeal a.
Infratemporal fossa	Laterally	Pterygomaxillary fissure	• Maxillary a., pterygopalatine (third) part • Posterior superior alveolar n., a., and v.


Maxillary n. (CN V_2) in foramen rotundum
Superior orbital fissure
Lacrimal n.
① Infraorbital n.
Zygomatico-temporal n.
Inferior orbital fissure
② Zygomatic n.
Zygomaticofacial n.
Infraorbital nn. in foramen
⑧ Posterior superior alveolar n.
Descending palatine nn.
⑤, ⑥ Gr./Ls. palatine nn.
Dental/gingival br. of superior alveolar nn.
Communicating br. between CN V_2 and pterygopalatine ganglion
④ N. of pterygoid canal entering ganglion from behind
Pterygopalatine ganglion
⑦ Posterior superior/inferior lateral nasal br. of CN V_2
Nasopalatine n.
Medial/lateral pterygopalatine fossa boundaries

Coronal view of the pterygopalatine fossa

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Table 27.7 Nerves of the Pterygopalatine Fossa

Nerve	Motor Innervation	Sensory Distribution
① Infraorbital n. (CN V_2)		Skin of the midface, maxillary sinus, teeth, and gingiva
② Zygomatic n. (CN V2)–communicating branch from zygomaticotemporal n.		Skin of lateral cheek, temple
③ Orbital branches (CN V_2)		Orbit, ethmoid and

		sphenoid sinuses
④ N. of the pterygoid canal (CN VII)	Visceral motor (preganglionic parasympathetic and postganglionic sympathetic) to glands of the nasal mucosa, and palate; lacrimal gland	
⑤ Greater palatine n. (CN V_2)		Hard palate and palatal gingiva
⑥ Lesser palatine n. (CN V_2)		Soft palate, palatine tonsil
⑦ Medial and lateral posterior superior and posterior inferior nasal nn. (CN V_2)		Nasal septum, upper lateral nasal wall, ethmoid sinuses
⑧ Posterior superior alveolar n. (CN V_2)		Maxillary sinus, cheeks, buccal gingiva, maxillary molars

27.7 Nasal Cavity

The **nasal cavity** is located in the middle of the face between the orbits and maxillary sinuses and above the oral cavity.

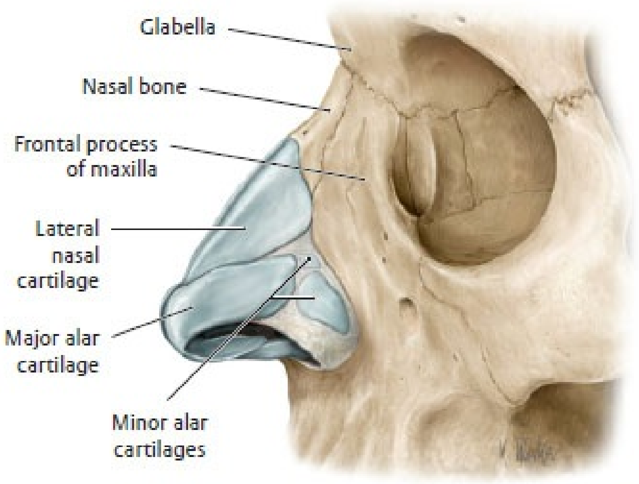
Structure of the Nasal Cavity

The nose has an external portion and paired internal nasal cavities that are separated by a nasal septum **(**Figs. 27.20 and 27.21**)**.

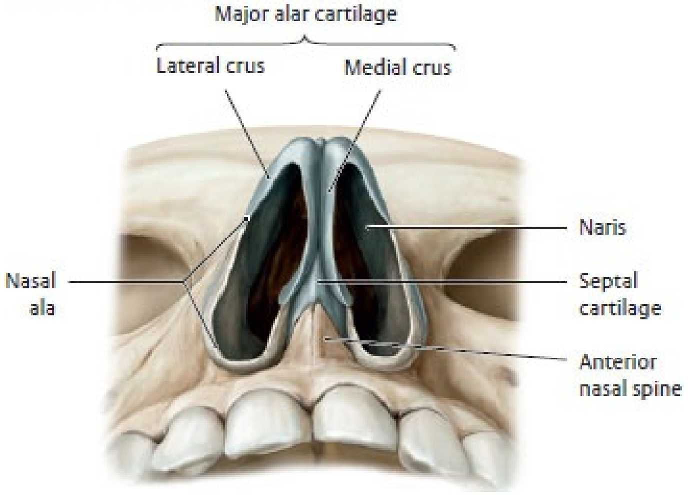
— The external nose consists of
  - anteriorly, the **alar** and **lateral nasal cartilages,** which form the nasal **ala** and **crura** surrounding the nostrils and the **apex,** or tip of the nose; and
  - posteriorly, the frontal, maxillary, and nasal bones, which form the **root,** or bridge, of the nose.

— The nasal cavities are pyramidally shaped spaces that communicate anteriorly with the outside through the **nares (**anterior nasal apertures) and posteriorly with the nasopharynx through the **choanae.**

- The lateral walls of the nasal cavities are formed by the superior and middle nasal conchae of the ethmoid bone; the inferior nasal conchae; and the maxillary, palatine, lacrimal, and nasal bones.
    - The superior, middle, and inferior nasal conchae are scrolllike bony processes that project into the nasal cavity.
    - The **superior, middle,** and **inferior nasal meatuses** are recesses below the respective nasal conchae.
- The nasal septum forms the medial wall of each nasal cavity and consists of the vomer, the perpendicular plate of the ethmoid bone, and the septal cartilage.
- The **hard palate,** consisting of the maxilla and palatine bones, forms the floor of the nasal cavities and separates them from the oral cavity (see Section 27.8).
- **Paranasal sinuses** are air-filled cavities within bones of the skull that communicate with the nasal cavities **(Fig. 27.22; Table 27.8)**.
    - Paired **frontal sinuses,** which are usually asymmetrical, lie above the root of the nose and drain into the middle meatus through a **frontonasal duct** into the **hiatus semilunaris.**
    - **Sphenoid sinuses,** which form within the body of the sphenoid bone, lie between the right and left cavernous sinuses and drain into the **sphenoethmoidal recess** in the posterosuperior part of the nasal cavities above the superior concha.
    - **Ethmoid sinuses** compose the medial wall of the orbit and are formed by numerous thin-walled ethmoid air cells. They lie between the orbits above the nasal cavities and drain into the superior and middle meatuses.
    - Paired **maxillary sinuses,** the largest of the paranasal sinuses, lie on either side of the nasal cavities, inferior to the orbits, and drain into the middle meatuses.
- A **nasolacrimal duct** drains tears from the medial corner of each eye and empties into the inferior meatus on each side.


Glabella
Nasal bone
Frontal process of maxilla
Lateral nasal cartilage
Major alar cartilage
Minor alar cartilages

A Left lateral view.


Major alar cartilage
Lateral crus
Medial crus
Naris
Nasal ala
Septal cartilage
Anterior nasal spine

B Inferior view.

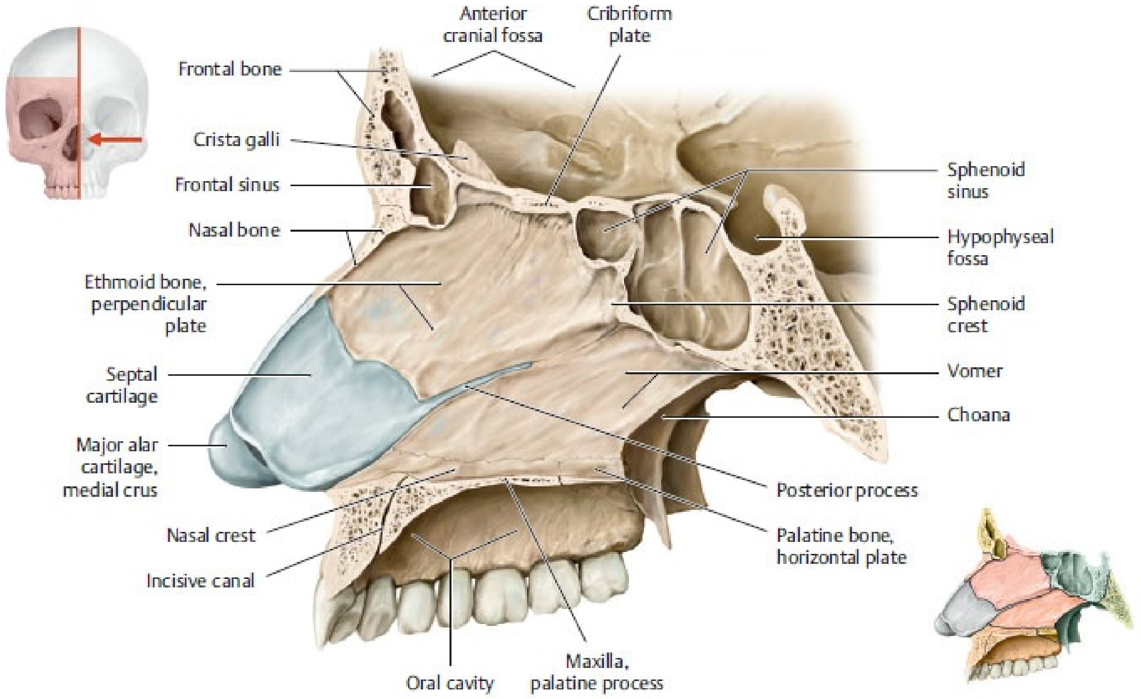
Fig. 27.20 Skeleton of the nose

The skeleton of the nose is composed of an upper bony portion and a lower cartilaginous portion. The proximal portions of the nostrils (alae) are composed of connective tissue with small embedded pieces of cartilage. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

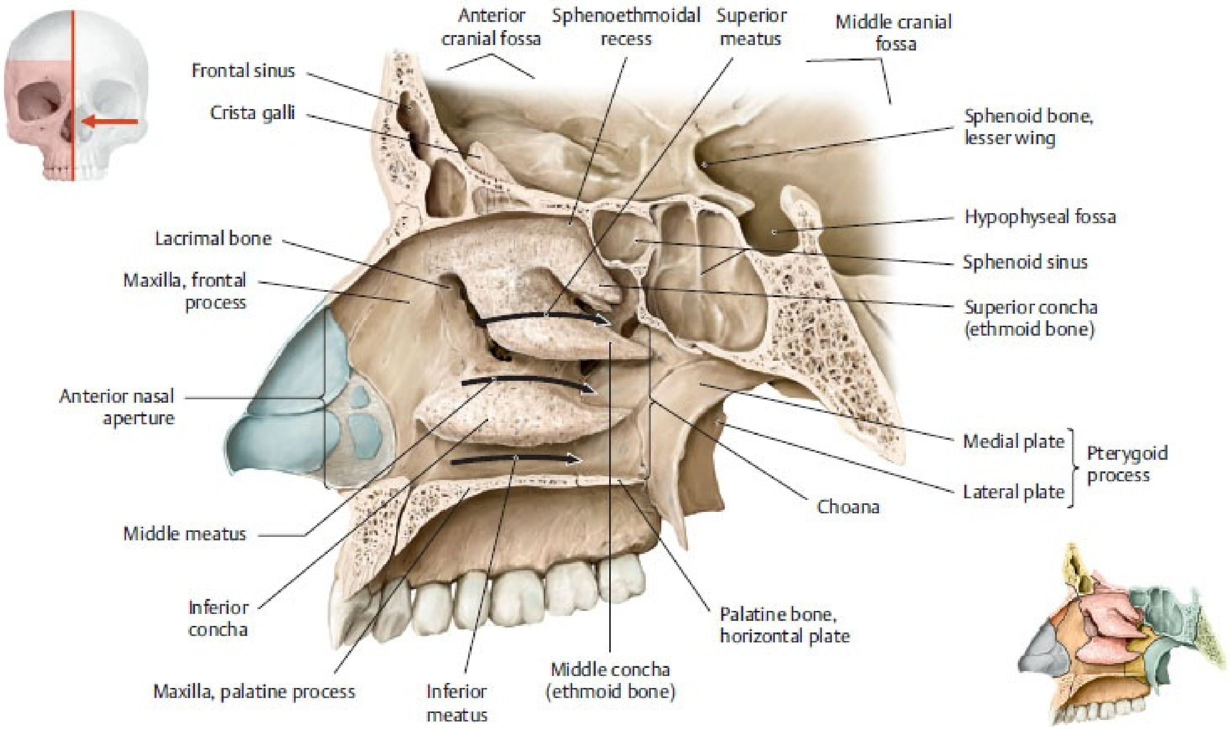
BOX 27.3: CLINICAL CORRELATION

INFECTION OF THE MAXILLARY SINUSES

Infections arising in the nasal cavity may spread to any of the paranasal sinuses, but the maxillary sinuses are the most com-monly affected. Mucus builds up within the maxillary sinuses and is unable to drain because their ostia are located high on the superomedial walls. The ostia are also commonly obstructed by inflammation of the mucous membranes of the sinuses (maxillary sinusitis). Maxillary sinusitis usually follows the common cold or influenza virus but may also arise from the spread of infections from posterior maxillary teeth.


Anterior cranial fossa
Cribriform plate
Frontal bone
Crista galli
Frontal sinus
Nasal bone
Ethmoid bone, perpendicular plate
Septal cartilage
Major alar cartilage, medial crus
Nasal crest
Incisive canal
Oral cavity
Maxilla, palatine process
Sphenoid sinus
Hypophyseal fossa
Sphenoid crest
Vomer
Choana
Posterior process
Palatine bone, horizontal plate

A Nasal septum in left nasal cavity, parasagittal section, viewed from left side.


Anterior cranial fossa
Sphenoethmoidal recess
Superior meatus
Middle cranial fossa
Frontal sinus
Crista galli
Sphenoid bone, lesser wing
Hypophyseal fossa
Sphenoid sinus
Lacrimal bone
Maxilla, frontal process
Superior concha (ethmoid bone)
Anterior nasal aperture
Medial plate
Lateral plate
Pterygoid process
Choana
Middle meatus
Inferior concha
Palatine bone, horizontal plate
Middle concha (ethmoid bone)
Maxilla, palatine process
Inferior meatus

B Lateral wall of the right nasal cavity, sagittal section, medial view. *Removed*: Nasal septum. *Note*: The superior and middle conchae are parts of the ethmoid bone, whereas the inferior nasal conchae is a separate bone. *Arrows* indicate the direction of airflow through the nasal conchae.

Fig. 27.21 Bones of the nasal cavity

The left and right nasal cavities are flanked by lateral walls and separated by the nasal septum. Air enters the nasal cavity through the anterior nasal aperture and travels through three passages: the superior, middle, and inferior meatuses (**B**, *arrows*). These passages are separated by the superior, middle, and inferior conchae. Air leaves the nose through the choanae, entering the nasopharynx. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

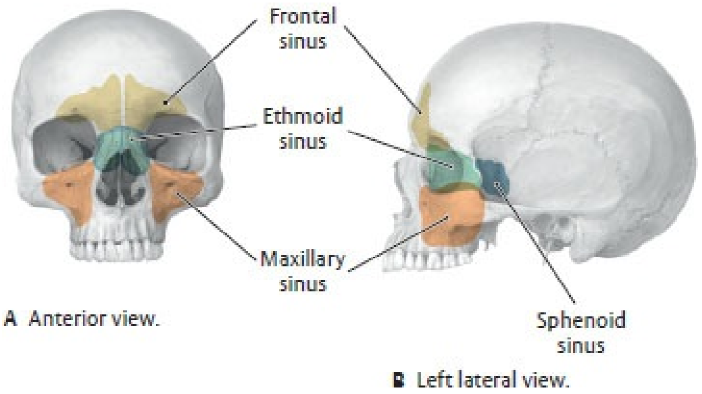


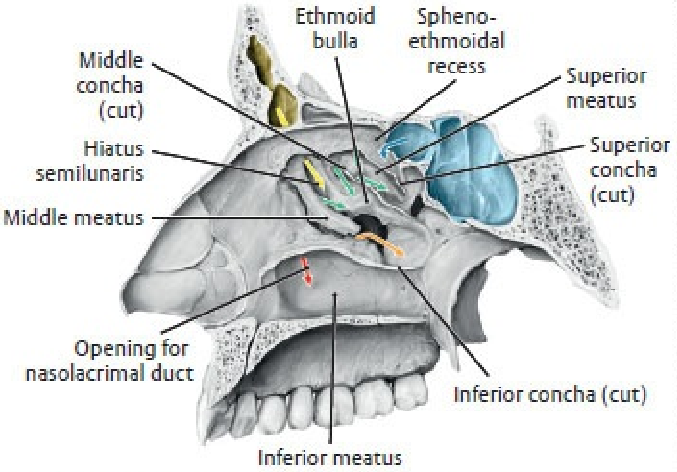
Fig. 27.22 Location of the paranasal sinuses

The paranasal sinuses (frontal, ethmoid, maxillary, and sphenoid) are air-filled cavities that reduce the weight of the skull. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Neurovasculature of the Nasal Cavity

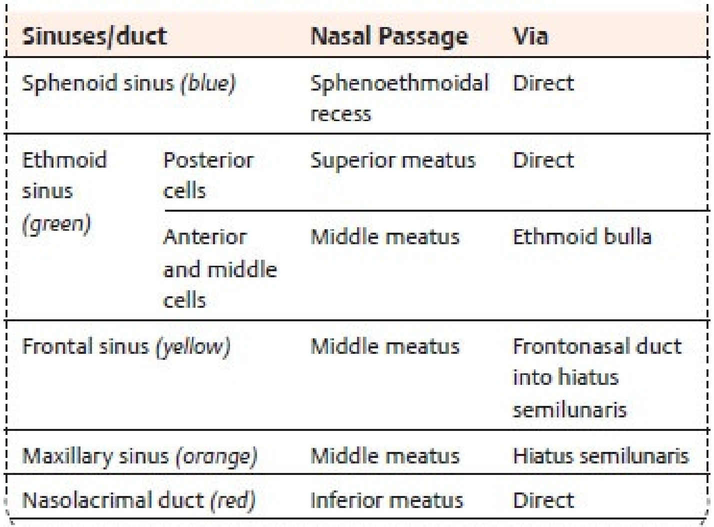
- The external carotid artery, via its maxillary and facial branches, and the internal carotid artery, via its ophthalmic branch, supply the nasal cavity. The area of overlap between the external and internal circulations is referred to as Kiessel-bach’s area (**Fig. 27.23**).
  - Nasal branches of the maxillary artery include
    - the lateral posterior nasal and posterior septal arteries, branches of the sphenopalatine artery; and
    - the greater palatine artery, a branch of the descending palatine artery.
  - Branches of the facial artery include the lateral nasal artery and a septal artery, a branch of the superior labial artery.
  - Branches of the ophthalmic artery include anterior and posterior ethmoidal arteries.

- Veins that drain the nasal cavity form a submucosal venous plexus that drains into the ophthalmic, facial, and spheno palatine veins.
- The olfactory nerve (CN I) and the ophthalmic (CN V_1) and maxillary (CN V_2) divisions of the trigeminal nerve innervate the nose **(Fig. 27.24)**.
  - Olfactory nerves, which are responsible for smell, arise from the olfactory epithelium in the roof of the nasal cavity. They pass through the cribriform plate and end in the olfactory bulbs.
  - Infratrochlear and anterior ethmoid branches of CN V_1 and the infraorbital branch of CN V_2 innervate the external nose.
  - The anterior and posterior ethmoidal branches of CN V_1 innervate the external nose and the mucosa of the anterosuperior nasal cavity through internal, external, medial, and lateral nasal branches.
  - The posterior nasal branches of the nasopalatine nerve on the septum and nasal branches of the greater pala-tine nerve on the lateral walls (both branches of CN V_2) innervate the mucosa of the posteroinferior nasal cavity.


Ethmoid bulla
Spheno-ethmoidal recess
Middle concha (cut)
Superior meatus
Hiatus semilunaris
Superior concha (cut)
Middle meatus
Opening for nasolacrimal duct
Inferior concha (cut)
Inferior meatus

Openings of the paranasal sinuses and nasolacrimal duct
Right nasal cavity, sagittal section, medial view. Mucosal secretions from the sinuses and nasolacrimal duct drain into the nose. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Table 27.8 Nasal Passages into which Sinuses Empty

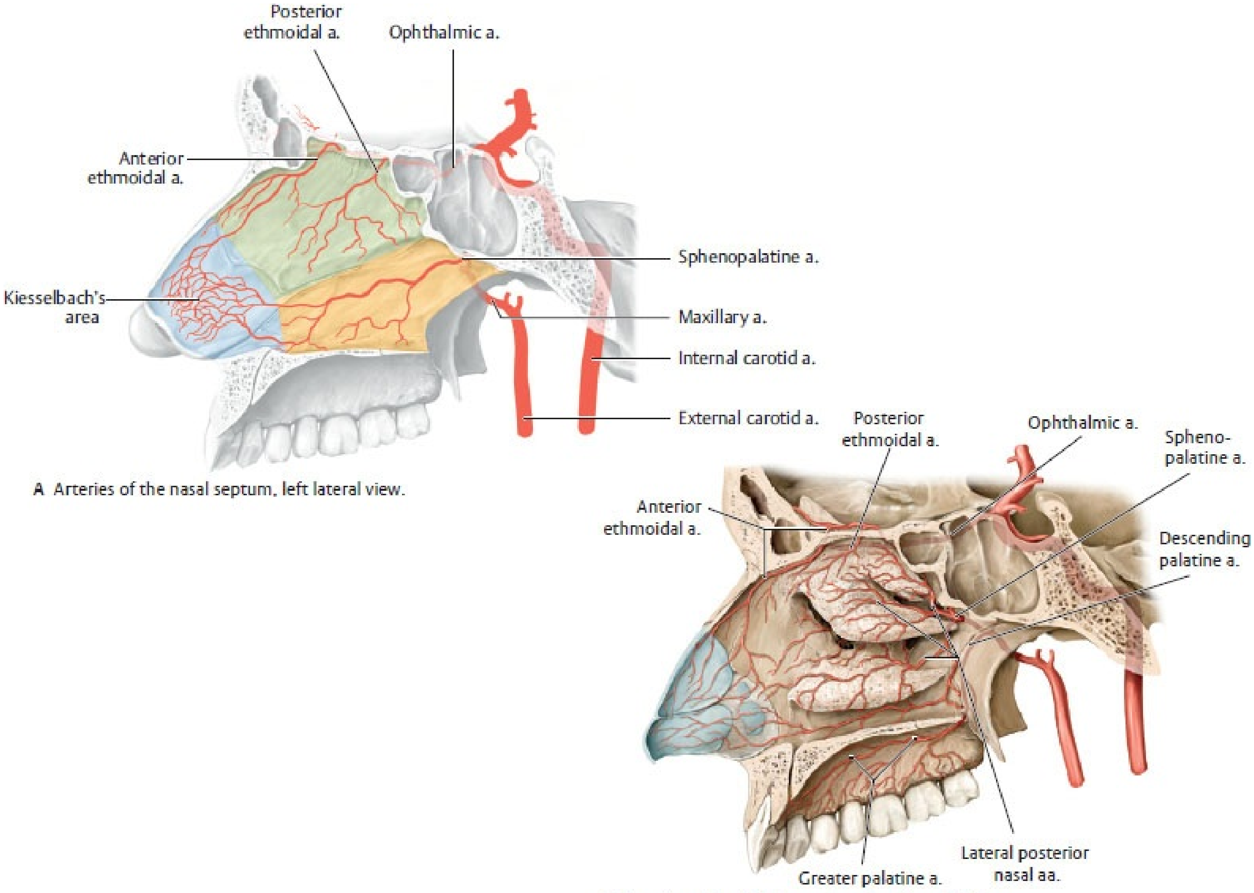


Sinuses/duct		Nasal Passage	Via
Sphenoid sinus *(blue)*		Sphenoethmoidal recess	Direct
Ethmoid sinus *(green)*	Posterior cells	Superior meatus	Direct
	Anterior and middle cells	Middle meatus	Ethmoid bulla
Frontal sinus *(yellow)*		Middle meatus	Frontonasal duct into hiatus semilunaris
Maxillary sinus *(orange)*		Middle meatus	Hiatus semilunaris
Nasolacrimal duct *(red)*		Inferior meatus	Direct

BOX 27.4: CLINICAL CORRELATION

EPISTAXIS

Bleeding, or epistaxis, of the highly vascular nasal mucosa is a com-mon consequence of nasal trauma, and even minor trauma can disrupt the veins in the vestibule. Most bleeding originates from the arteries of Kiesselbach’s area, where branches of the internal carotid and external carotid arteries anastomose in the anterior third of the nasal cavity. These include the sphenopalatine, greater palatine, anterior ethmoidal, and superior labial arteries.

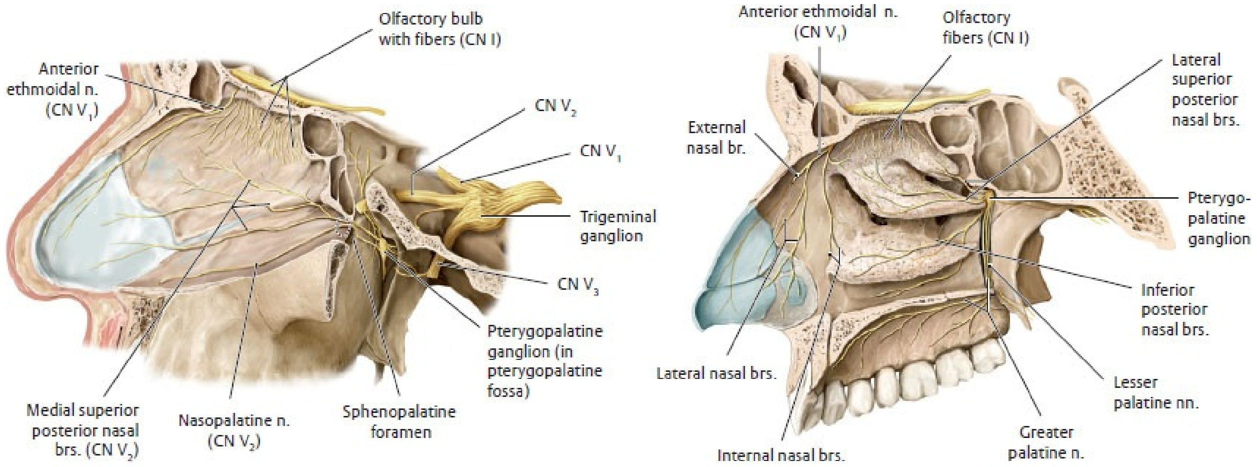

Posterior ethmoidal a.
Ophthalmic a.
Anterior ethmoidal a.
Kiesselbach's area
Sphenopalatine a.
Maxillary a.
Internal carotid a.
External carotid a.
Posterior ethmoidal a.
Ophthalmic a.
Spheno-palatine a.
Anterior ethmoidal a.
Descending palatine a.
Lateral posterior nasal aa.
Greater palatine a.

A Arteries of the nasal septum, left lateral view.

B Arteries of the right lateral nasal wall, medial view.

Fig. 27.23 Arteries of the nasal cavity

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Olfactory bulb with fibers (CN I)
Anterior ethmoidal n. (CN V_1)
CN V_2
CN V_1
Trigeminal ganglion
CN V_3
Pterygopalatine ganglion (in pterygopalatine fossa)
Medial superior posterior nasal brs. (CN V_2)
Nasopalatine n. (CN V_2)
Sphenopalatine foramen
Anterior ethmoidal n. (CN V_1)
Olfactory fibers (CN I)
External nasal br.
Lateral superior posterior nasal brs.
Pterygo-palatine ganglion
Inferior posterior nasal brs.
Lateral nasal brs.
Lesser palatine nn.
Greater palatine n.
Internal nasal brs.

A Nerves of the nasal septum, left lateral view.

B Nerves of the right lateral nasal wall, medial view.

Fig. 27.24 Nerves of the nasal cavity

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

27.8 Oral Region

The oral cavity, located below the nasal cavity and anterior to the pharynx, is bounded superiorly by the palate, inferiorly by the tongue and muscular floor, anteriorly by the lips, posteriorly by the uvula, and laterally by the cheeks **(Fig. 27.25)**.

Lips, Cheeks, Gingiva, Teeth, and Oral Cavity

— The **lips** frame the mouth and surround the **oral fissure,** the opening into the oral cavity.

- The lips contain the sphincter-like obicularis oris muscle and superior and inferior labial muscles. Externally, they are covered by skin; internally, they are covered by the mucous membrane of the oral cavity.
- The **philtrum,** an external midline depression on the upper lip, extends superiorly to the nasal septum.
- **Labial frenula** are midline folds of mucous membrane that attach the inner surfaces of the upper and lower lips to the gums.

BOX 27.5: DEVELOPMENTAL CORRELATION

CLEFT LIP

Cleft lip is a congenital defect that occurs early in embryonic life when the maxillary prominence and the median nasal promi-nence fail to fuse. It is seen in ~ 1:1,000 live births and is more common in males than females. The cleft may be unilateral or bilateral and is described as complete when it extends into the nose and incomplete when it appears as a notch in the lip. Corrective surgery is usually performed when the infant is around 10 weeks old.

— The **cheeks,** continuous with the lips, form the walls of the mouth and the **buccal region** of the face.

- The buccinator muscle, innervated by the buccal branch of the facial nerve (CN VII), forms the movable wall of the cheek.
- Buccal fat pads, encapsulated cushions of fat that lie superficial to the buccinator muscles, are proportionately large in infants and reduced in adults.
- The zygomatic bone and zygomatic arch form the “cheek bone.”

- Teeth are anchored in **alveoli** (sockets) of the **maxillary** and **mandibular dental arches (Figs. 27.26)**.
    - Children have 20 deciduous teeth, which are replaced at predictable intervals between ages 7 and 25 years.
    - Adult have 32 teeth, consisting of incisors, canines, premolars, and molars. Teeth are numbered 1 to 16 from right to left along the maxillary arch, and 17 to 32 from left to right along the mandibular arch.
- The **gingivae,** or gums, made of fibrous tissue covered by the mucous membrane of the oral cavity, are firmly attached to the maxilla and mandible.
- The oral cavity, or mouth, is divided into two regions: the **oral vestibule** and the **oral cavity proper (Fig. 27.27)**.
    - The oral vestibule is the narrow space between the lips and cheeks and the dental arches of the maxilla and mandible.
    - The oral cavity proper is the space bounded anteriorly and laterally by the upper and lower dental arches. Superiorly, the **palate** forms the roof, and inferiorly, the tongue rests on a muscular floor.
- The oral cavity connects posteriorly to the pharynx through a narrow space, the **faucial isthmus.**
- Muscles that form the floor of the mouth, the **suprahyoid muscles,** are attached to the hyoid bone in the neck **(Fig. 27.28; Table 27.9)**. They have a complex innervation with contributions from the trigeminal and facial nerves and the C1 spinal nerve via the hypoglossal nerve (**Fig. 27.29;** see also **Fig. 25.7**).
- The lingual, facial, and maxillary branches of the external carotid artery supply the lips, cheeks, floor of the mouth, and upper and lower teeth.

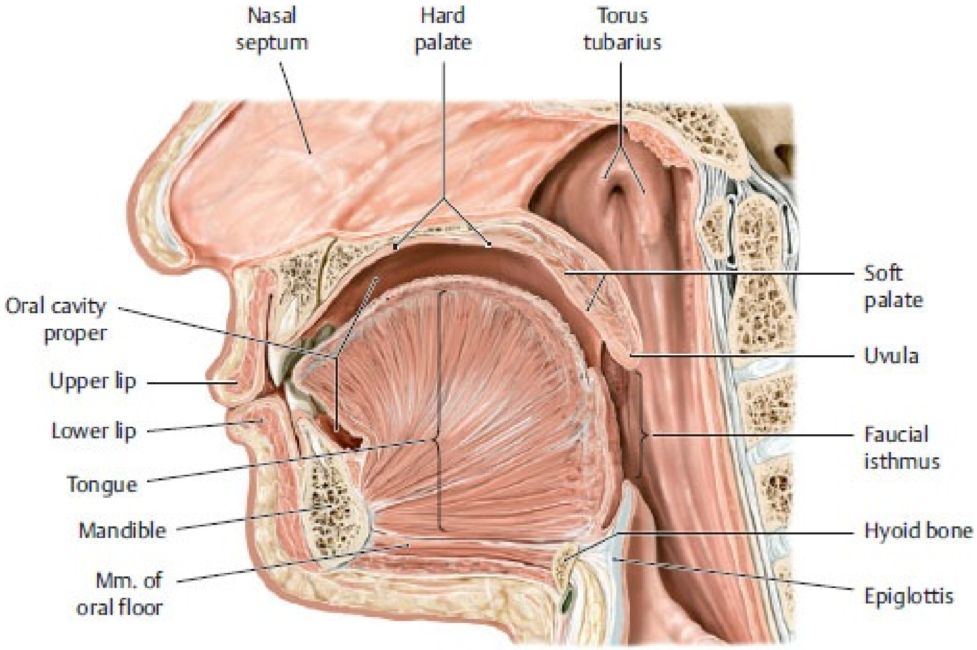
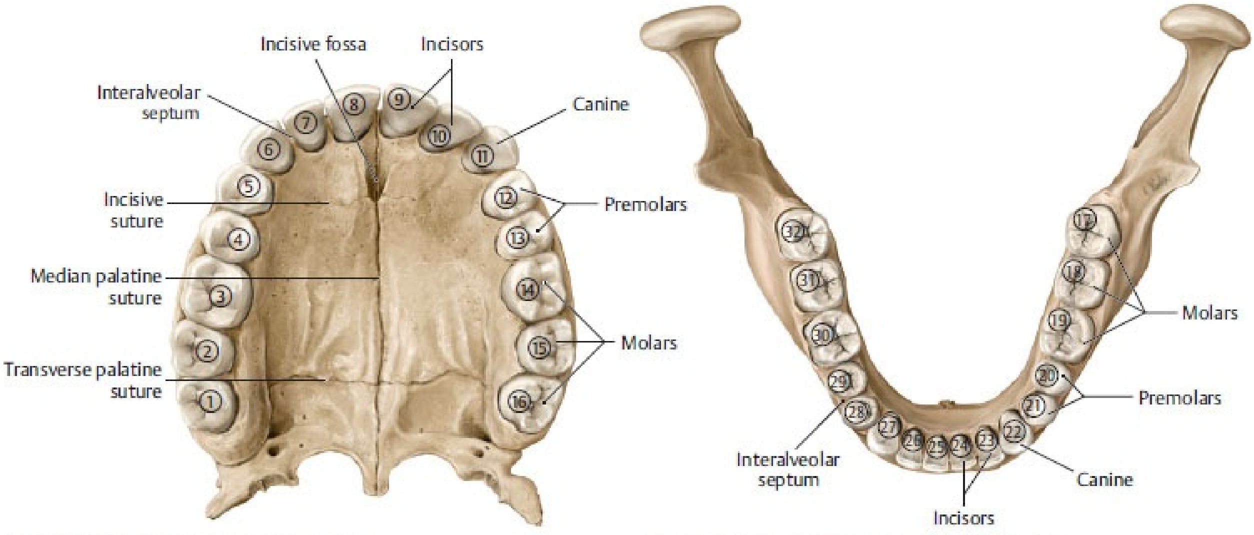

Nasal septum
Hard palate
Torus tubarius
Oral cavity proper
Upper lip
Lower lip
Tongue
Mandible
Mm. of oral floor
Soft palate
Uvula
Faucial isthmus
Hyoid bone
Epiglottis

Fig. 27.25 Organization and boundaries of the oral cavity

Midsagittal section, left lateral view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Incisive fossa
Incisors
Interalveolar septum
Canine
Incisive suture
Premolars
Median palatine suture
Molars
Transverse palatine suture
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
Molars
Premolars
Interalveolar septum
Canine
Incisors

A Maxillary teeth. Inferior view of the maxilla.

B Mandibular teeth. Superior view of the mandible.

Fig. 27.26 Permanent teeth

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

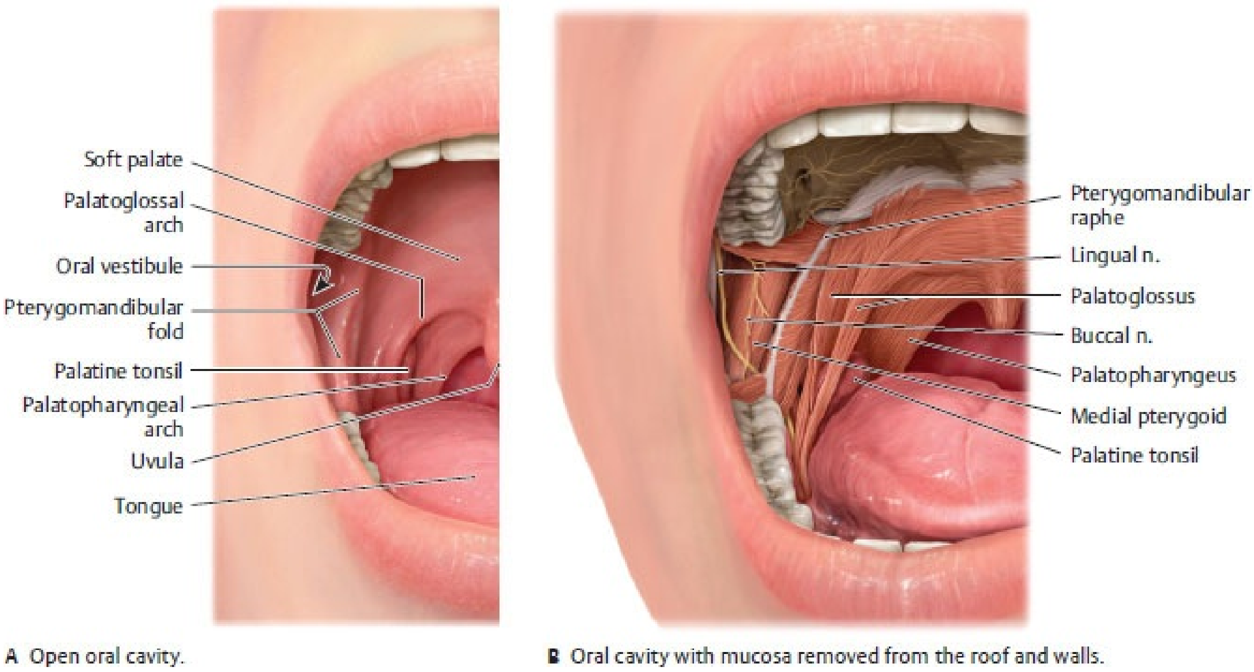

Soft palate
Palatoglossal arch
Oral vestibule
Pterygomandibular fold
Palatine tonsil
Palatopharyngeal arch
Uvula
Tongue
A Open oral cavity.
Pterygomandibular raphe
Lingual n.
Palatoglossus
Buccal n.
Palatopharyngeus
Medial pterygoid
Palatine tonsil
B Oral cavity with mucosa removed from the roof and walls.

Fig. 27.27 Oral cavity topography

Right side, anterior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

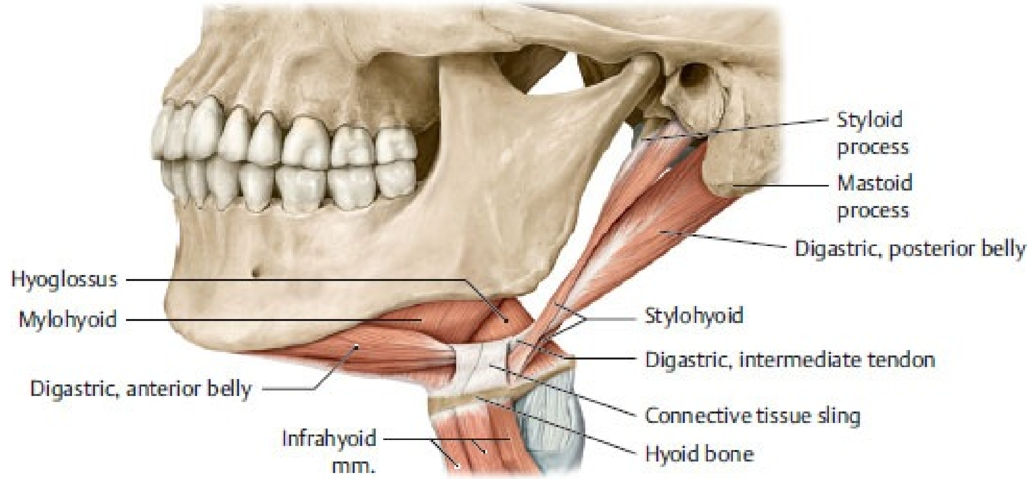
- The trigeminal nerve (CN V) transmits sensation from the mouth.
  - The superior alveolar branch of the maxillary division (CN V_2) innervates the upper teeth.
  - Inferior alveolar, lingual, and buccal branches of the mandibular division (CN V_3) innervate the cheek, lower teeth, and floor of the mouth.
- Visceral motor fibers carried by the chorda tympani (CN VII) synapse in the submandibular ganglion in the floor of the mouth. Postganglionic fibers travel via the lingual nerve to innervate the submandibular and sublingual glands **(Fig. 27.29)**.

The Palate

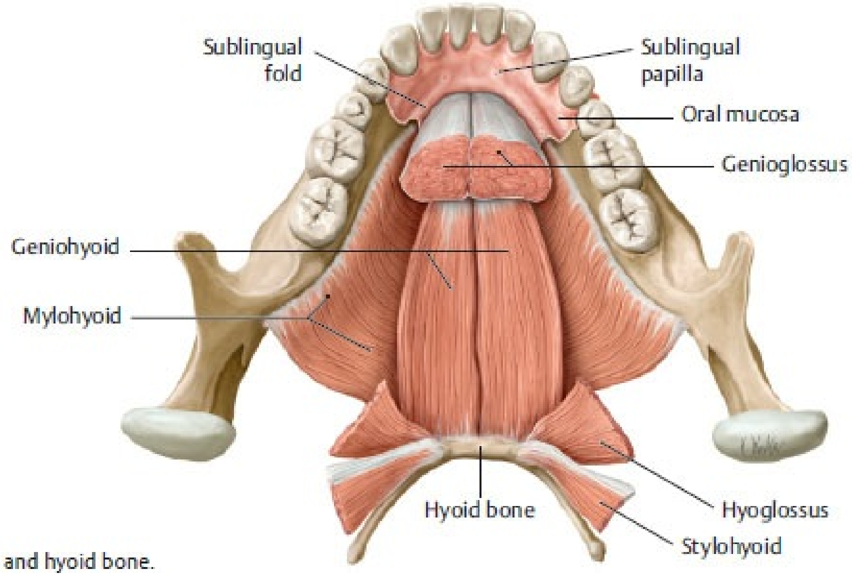
The palate forms the roof of the oral cavity and the floor of the nasal cavity and separates the oral cavity from the pharynx posteriorly.

- Nasal mucosa covers the superior surface, and oral mucosa, densely packed with mucus-secreting palatine glands, covers the inferior surface.
- The palate has anterior and posterior regions.
  - The **hard palate,** formed by the palatine processes of the maxillary

bones and the horizontal processes of the palatine bones, makes up the anterior two thirds of the palate (**Fig. 27.30**).


Styloid process
Mastoid process
Digastric, posterior belly
Hyoglossus
Mylohyoid
Stylohyoid
Digastric, intermediate tendon
Digastric, anterior belly
Connective tissue sling
Infrahyoid mm.
Hyoid bone

A Left lateral view.

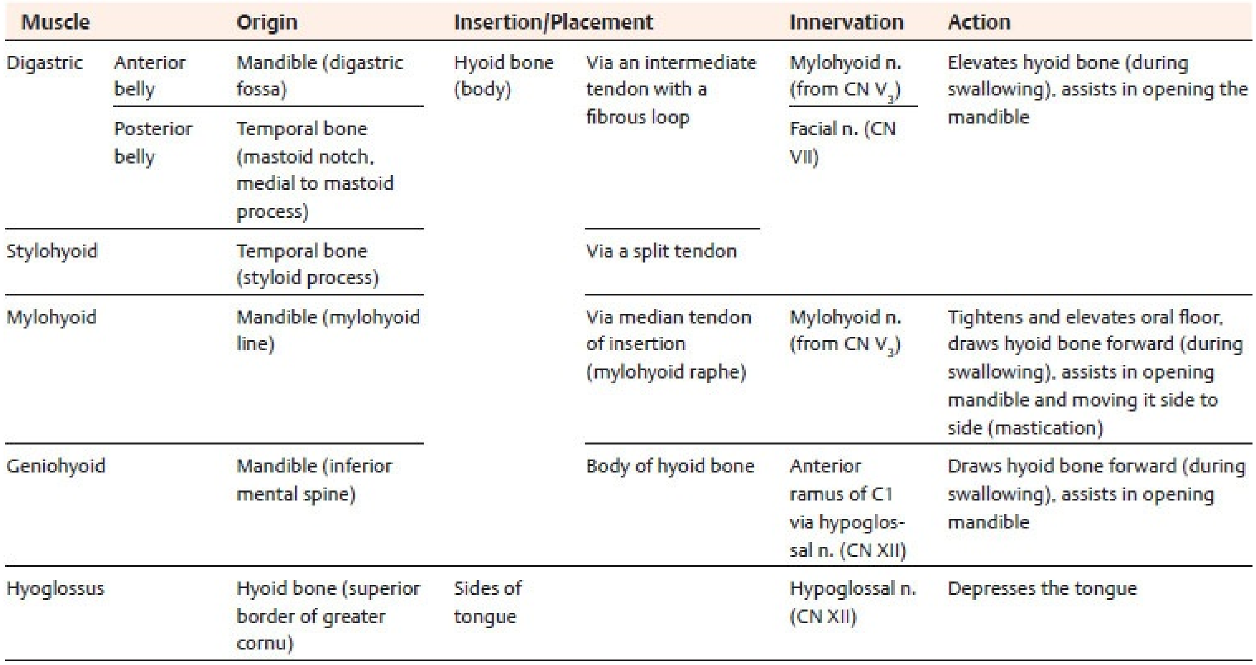

Sublingual fold
Sublingual papilla
Oral mucosa
Genioglossus
Geniohyoid
Mylohyoid
Hyoid bone
Hyoglossus
Stylohyoid

B Superior view of the mandible and hyoid bone.

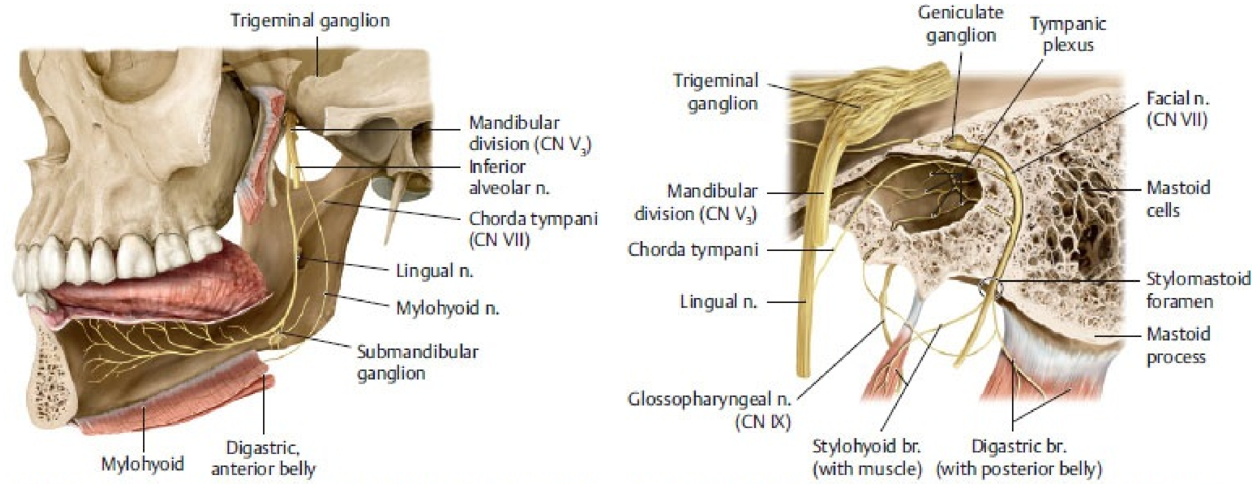
Fig. 27.28 Muscles of the oral floor: suprahyoid muscles

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Table 27.9 Suprahyoid Muscles



Muscle		Origin	Insertion/Placement		Innervation	Action
Digastric	Anterior belly	Mandible (digastric fossa)	Hyoid bone (body)	Via an intermediate tendon with a fibrous loop	Mylohyoid n. (from CN V_3)	Elevates hyoid bone (during swallowing), assists in opening the mandible
	Posterior belly	Temporal bone (mastoid notch, medial to mastoid process)			Facial n. (CN VII)	
Stylohyoid		Temporal bone (styloid process)		Via a split tendon		
Mylohyoid		Mandible (mylohyoid line)		Via median tendon of insertion (mylohyoid raphe)	Mylohyoid n. (from CN V_3)	Tightens and elevates oral floor, draws hyoid bone forward (during swallowing), assists in opening mandible and moving it side to side (mastication)
Geniohyoid		Mandible (inferior mental spine)		Body of hyoid bone	Anterior ramus of C1 via hypoglossal n. (CN XII)	Draws hyoid bone forward (during swallowing), assists in opening mandible
Hyoglossus		Hyoid bone (superior border of greater cornu)	Sides of tongue		Hypoglossal n. (CN XII)	Depresses the tongue


Trigeminal ganglion
Mandibular division (CN V_3)
Inferior alveolar n.
Chorda tympani (CN VII)
Lingual n.
Mylohyoid n.
Submandibular ganglion
Mylohyoid
Digastric, anterior belly
Geniculate ganglion
Tympanic plexus
Trigeminal ganglion
Facial n. (CN VII)
Mandibular division (CN V_3)
Mastoid cells
Chorda tympani
Lingual n.
Stylomastoid foramen
Mastoid process
Glossopharyngeal n. (CN IX)
Stylohyoid br. (with muscle)
Digastric br. (with posterior belly)

A Mylohyoid nerve (CN V_3). Left lateral view with left half of the mandible removed.

B Facial nerve (CN VII). Sagittal section through the left petrous bone at the level of the mastoid process, lateral view.

Fig. 27.29 Nerves in the floor of the mouth

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

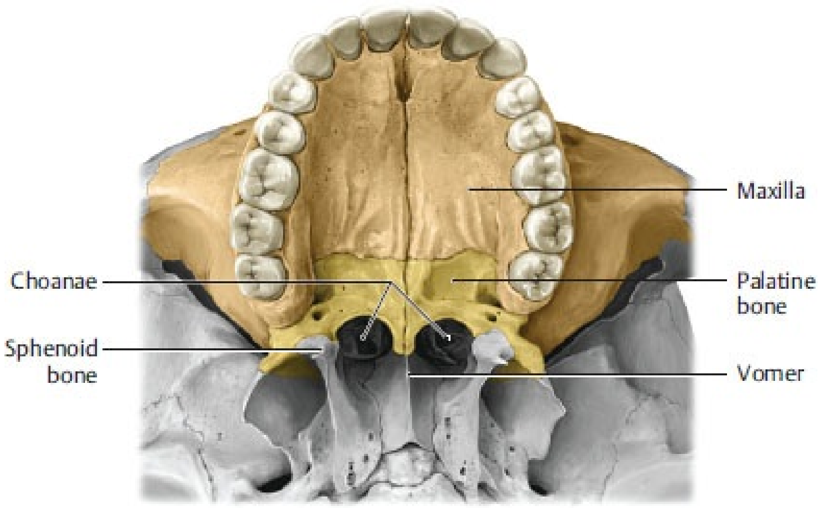


Fig. 27.30 Hard palate

Inferior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 27.6: DEVELOPMENTAL CORRELATION

CLEFT PALATE

Cleft palate is a congenital defect that occurs early in embryonic life when the lateral palatine processes fail to fuse with each other, with the nasal septum, and/or with the median palatine pro-cesses. It is seen in ~ 1:2,500 live births and is more common in females than males. The cleft (a fissure or opening) is described as complete when it involves the soft and hard palate and incom-plete when it appears as a “hole” in the roof of the mouth (usually in the soft palate). In each case the uvula is usually also split. The cleft connects the oral cavity directly to the nasal cavity. Initial treatment involves the use of a prosthetic device called a palatal obturator to seal the cleft until corrective surgery is performed when the infant is between 6 and 12 months old.

- The **soft palate,** the posterior third of the palate, has an anterior aponeurotic part that is attached to the hard palate and a posterior muscular part with an unattached posterior margin that ends in a conical projection, the **uvula** (see Fig. 27.25).

— During swallowing, muscles of the soft palate can tense and elevate it against the posterior pharyngeal wall to prevent food from passing into the nasal cavity. They can also draw the palate downward against the tongue to prevent food from entering the pharynx. Muscles of the soft palate include the **tensor veli palatini, levator veli palatini, musculus uvulae, palatoglossus,** and **palatopharyngeus (**Fig. 27.31; Table 27.10**)**.

— The paired **palatoglossal** and **palatopharyngeal arches,** formed by the

palatoglossus and **palatopharyngeus muscles,** respectively, anchor the soft palate to the tongue and pharynx (see **Fig. 27.27**).

- Greater palatine, lesser palatine, and sphenopalatine branches of the maxillary artery supply the palate **(Fig. 27.32; **see also **Fig. 27.23B)**.
- The greater palatine, lesser palatine, and nasopalatine branches of the maxillary division (CN V_2) carry sensory innervation from the palate (see **Fig. 27.24B**).

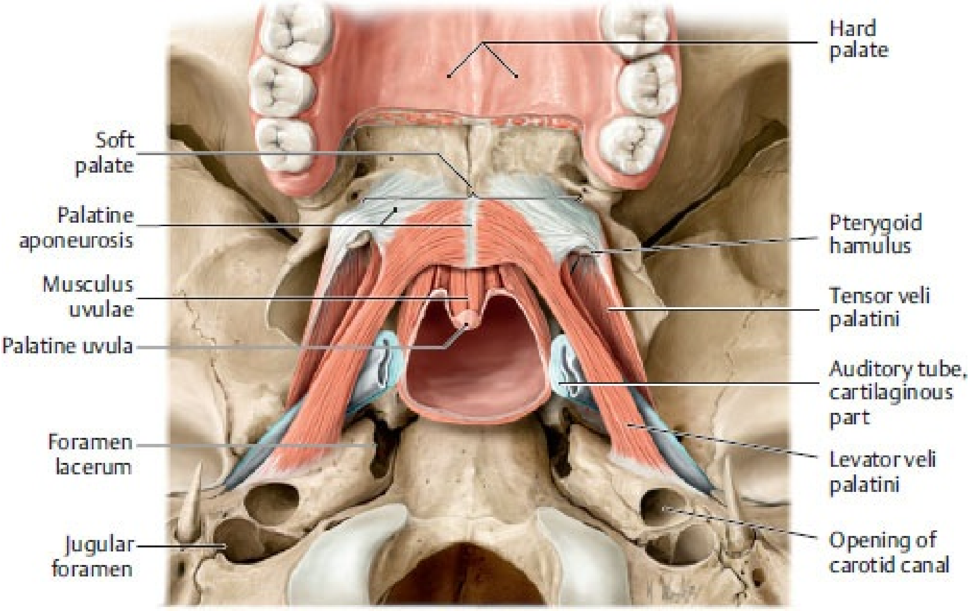
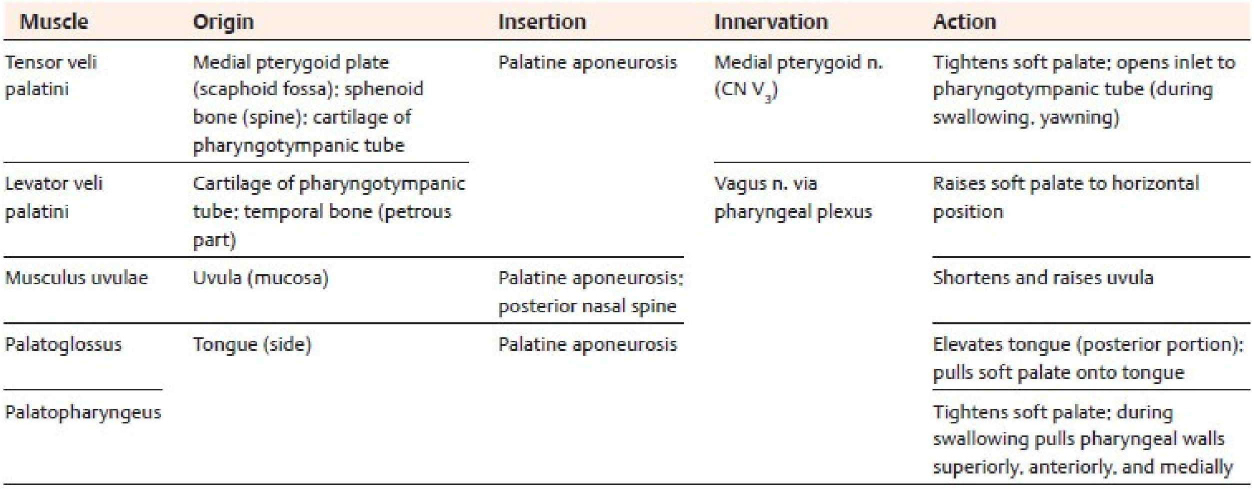

Hard palate
Soft palate
Palatine aponeurosis
Pterygoid hamulus
Musculus uvulae
Tensor veli palatini
Palatine uvula
Auditory tube, cartilaginous part
Foramen lacerum
Levator veli palatini
Jugular foramen
Opening of carotid canal

Fig. 27.31 Muscles of the soft palate

Inferior view. The soft palate forms the posterior boundary of the oral cavity, separating it from the oropharynx. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Table 27.10 Muscles of the Soft Palate



Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Innervation	Action
Tensor veli palatini	Medial pterygoid plate (scaphoid fossa); sphenoid bone (spine); cartilage of pharyngotympanic tube	Palatine aponeurosis	Medial pterygoid n. (CN V_3)	Tightens soft palate; opens inlet to pharyngotympanic tube (during swallowing, yawning)
Levator veli palatini	Cartilage of pharyngotympanic tube; temporal bone (petrous part)		Vagus n. via pharyngeal plexus	Raises soft palate to horizontal position
Musculus uvulae	Uvula (mucosa)	Palatine aponeurosis; posterior nasal spine		Shortens and raises uvula
Palatoglossus	Tongue (side)	Palatine aponeurosis		Elevates tongue (posterior portion); pulls soft palate onto tongue
Palatopharyngeus				Tightens soft palate; during swallowing pulls pharyngeal walls superiorly, anteriorly, and medially

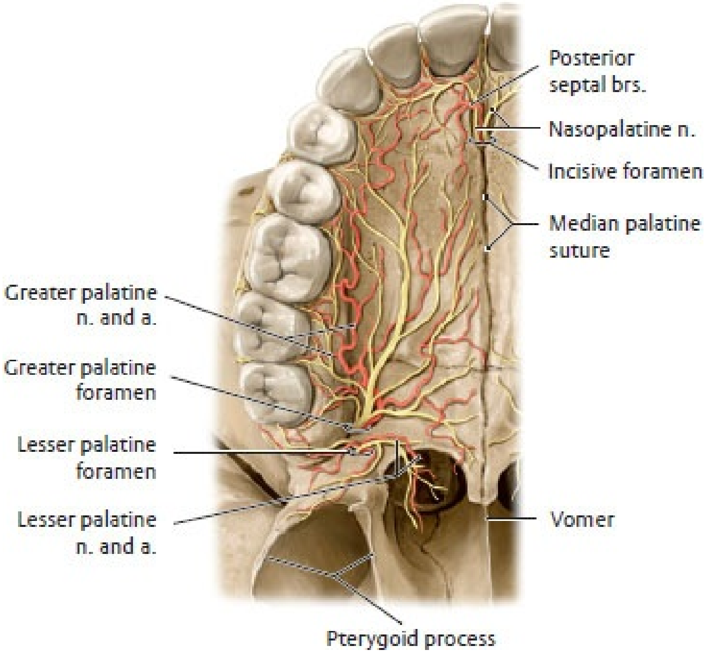

Posterior septal brs.
Nasopalatine n.
Incisive foramen
Median palatine suture
Greater palatine n. and a.
Greater palatine foramen
Lesser palatine foramen
Lesser palatine n. and a.
Vomer
Pterygoid process

Fig. 27.32 Neurovasculature of the hard palate

Inferior view. The hard palate receives sensory innervation primarily from terminal branches of the maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve (CN V_2). The arteries of the hard palate arise from the maxillary artery. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

The Tongue

The tongue is a muscular organ that is involved in speech, taste, and manipulation of food during the initial phase of swallowing. Two thirds of the tongue lies in the oral cavity; the remainder forms the anterior wall of the oropharynx, the part of the pharynx posterior to the oral cavity.

- The tongue has three parts **(Fig. 27.33)**:
  - the **root,** the attached posterior portion;
  - the **body,** the largest portion, between the root and apex; and
  - the **apex,** the anterior tip.
- The **sulcus terminalis,** a groove on the dorsum of the tongue, divides the anterior two thirds of the tongue from the posterior third. A small pit at the center of the groove, the **foramen cecum,** marks the embryonic origin of the thyroid gland.
- Numerous lingual papillae, many containing taste buds, give the mucosa of the anterior two thirds of the tongue its rough texture.
  - **Vallate papillae,** the largest of the lingual papillae, are arranged in a row directly anterior to the sulcus terminalis.
  - **Foliate papillae** are found on the small lateral folds of the lingual mucosa and are not well developed.
  - **Filiform papillae** contain afferent nerve endings that are sensitive to touch but not to taste. These are highly keratinized and facilitate rasplike licking activity.
  - **Fungiform papillae** are most numerous at the apex and margins of the tongue.
- The **lingual tonsil** is a collection of lymphoid nodules distributed over the mucosa of the posterior part of the tongue. Lingual tonsils have crypts that are flushed by glands below them.
- The **frenulum of the tongue,** a midline mucosal fold, attaches the inferior surface of the tongue to the floor of the oral cavity and restricts its movement.
- Extrinsic muscles of the tongue, which originate outside the tongue and are responsible primarily for tongue movements, include the **genioglossus, hyoglossus,** and **styloglossus** muscles **(Fig. 27.34; Table 27.11)**. The palatoglossus muscle acts on the tongue but is actually a muscle of the palate and is innervated accordingly by the vagus nerve (CN X).
- Intrinsic muscles of the tongue have no bony attachments and are responsible for changing the shape of the tongue. They include the **superior** and **inferior longitudinal muscles** and the **transverse** and **vertical muscles**.

Table 27.11 Muscles of the Tongue*

Extrinsic muscles	Extrinsic muscles
• Genioglossus	• Superior longitudinal muscle
• Hyoglossus	• Inferior longitudinal muscle
• Styloglossus	• Transverse muscle
	• Vertical muscle

* All extrinsic and intrinsic muscles of the tongue are innervated by the hypoglossal n. (CN XII).

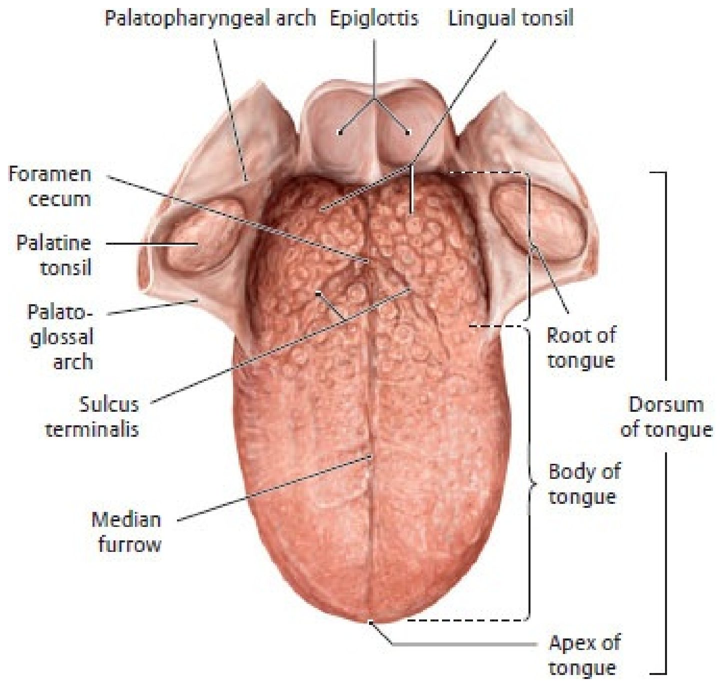

Palatopharyngeal arch
Epiglottis
Lingual tonsil
Foramen cecum
Palatine tonsil
Palato-glossal arch
Sulcus terminalis
Median furrow
Root of tongue
Dorsum of tongue
Body of tongue
Apex of tongue

Fig. 27.33 Structure of the tongue

Superior view. The V-shaped sulcus terminalis divides the tongue into an anterior (oral, presulcal) and a posterior (pharyngeal, postsulcal) part. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

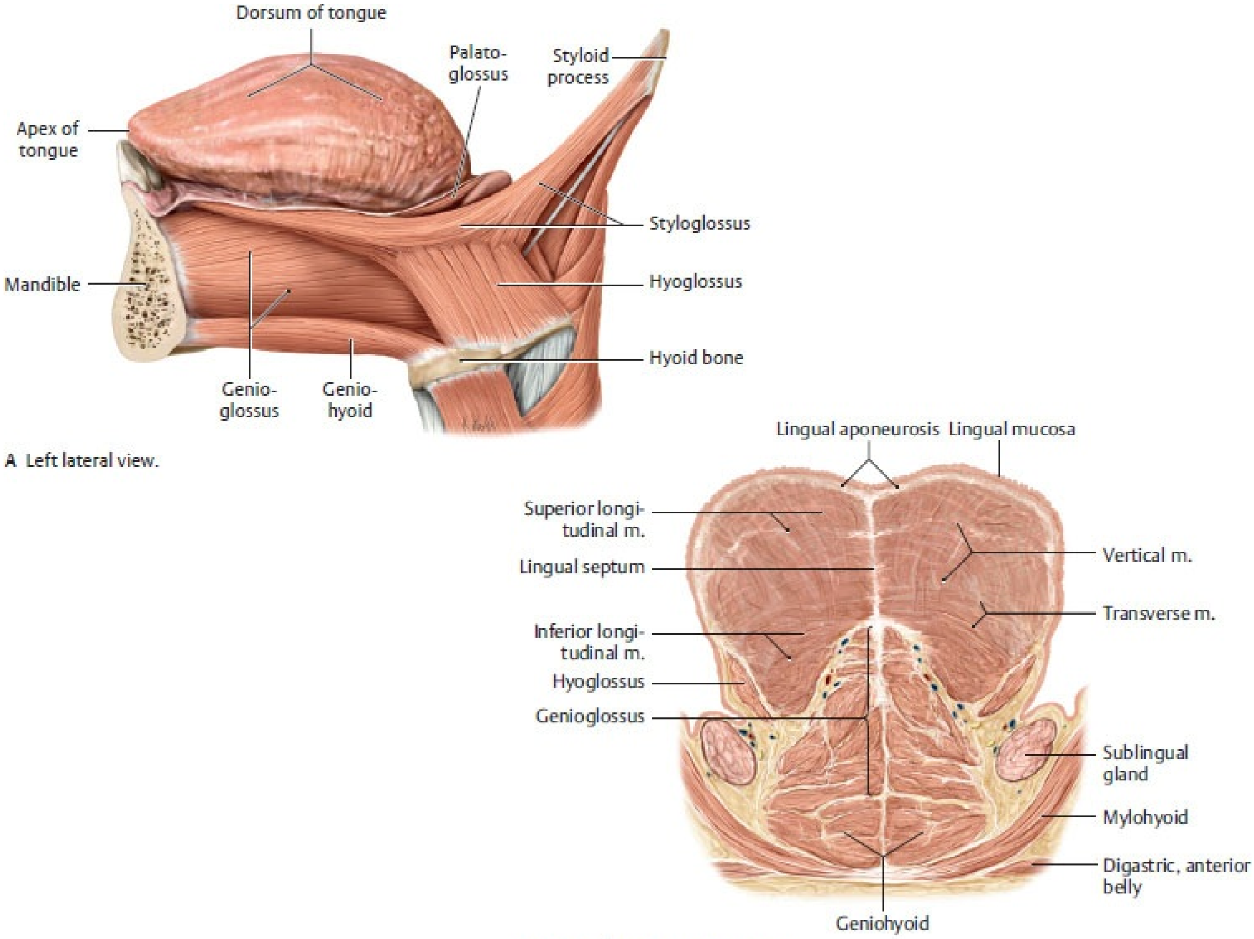
- All extrinsic and intrinsic muscles of the tongue are innervated by the hypoglossal nerve (CN XII).
- The lingual arteries, branches of the external carotid arteries, supply the tongue. The lingual veins accompany the arteries and drain into the internal jugular vein.
- Lymph from the tongue ultimately drains to deep cervical and jugular nodes in the neck, although the drainage from the various parts of the tongue follows four different pathways **(Fig. 27.35; Table 27.12)**. These drainage

routes can be clinically important in the metastasis of lingual tumors.

- The five cranial nerves (trigeminal, facial, glossopharyngeal, vagus, and hypoglossal) that innervate the tongue carry motor, general sensory, and special sensory fibers **(Fig. 27.36; Table 27.13)**.

Table 27.12 Lymphatic Drainage of the Tongue

Area of the Tongue	Drainage Pattern	Primary Nodes
Root	Bilaterally	Superior deep cervical
Medial part of the body	Bilaterally	Inferior deep cervical
Lateral parts of the body	Ipsilaterally	Submandibular
Apex and frenulum	Midline—bilaterally Sides—ipsilaterally	Submental


Dorsum of tongue
Palato-glossus
Styloid process
Apex of tongue
Styloglossus
Mandible
Hyoglossus
Hyoid bone
Genio-glossus
Genio-hyoid
Lingual aponeurosis
Lingual mucosa
Superior longitudinal m.
Lingual septum
Vertical m.
Transverse m.
Inferior longitudinal m.
Hyoglossus
Genioglossus
Sublingual gland
Mylohyoid
Digastric, anterior belly
Geniohyoid

A Left lateral view.

B Coronal section, anterior view.

Fig. 27.34 Extrinsic muscles of the tongue

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

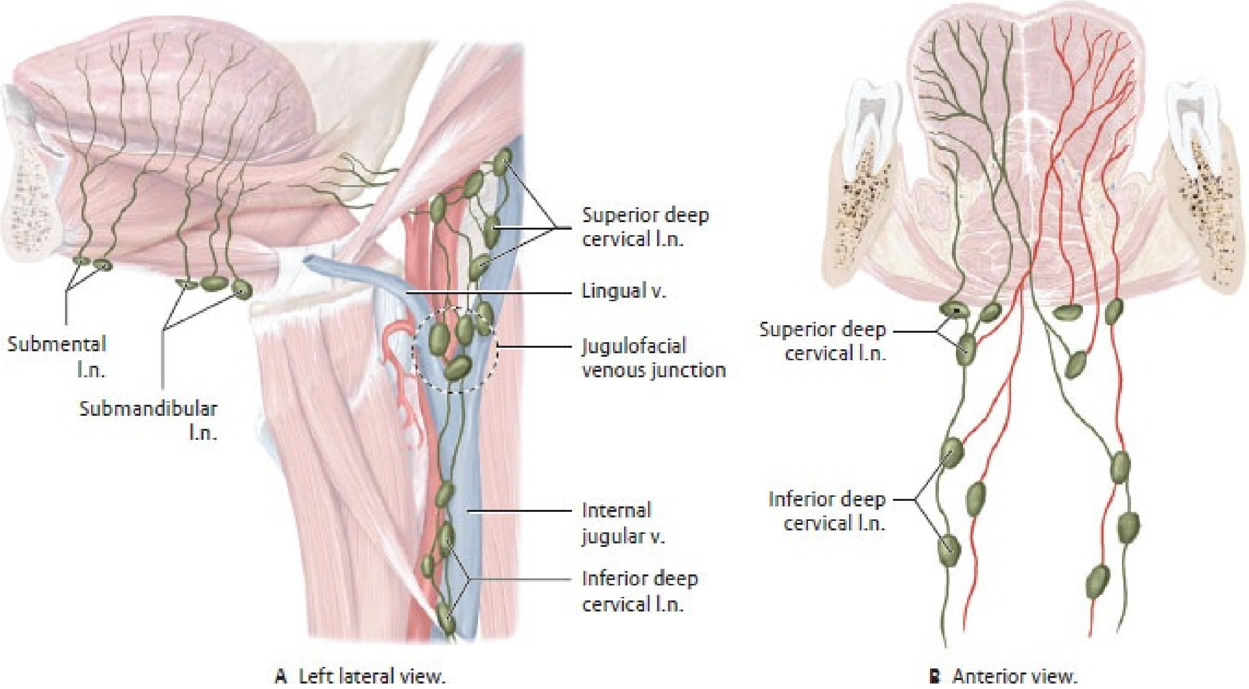

Superior deep cervical l.n.
Lingual v.
Submental l.n.
Jugulofacial venous junction
Submandibular l.n.
Internal jugular v.
Inferior deep cervical l.n.
A Left lateral view.
Superior deep cervical l.n.
Inferior deep cervical l.n.
B Anterior view.

Fig. 27.35 Lymphatic drainage of the tongue and oral floor

Lymph flows to the submental and submandibular lymph nodes of the tongue and oral floor, which ultimately drain into the jugular lymph nodes along the internal jugular vein. Because the lymph nodes receive drainage from both the ipsilateral and contralateral sides **(B)**, tumor cells may become widely disseminated in this region (e.g., metastatic squamous cell carcinoma, especially on the lateral border of the tongue, frequently metastasizes to the opposite side). (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

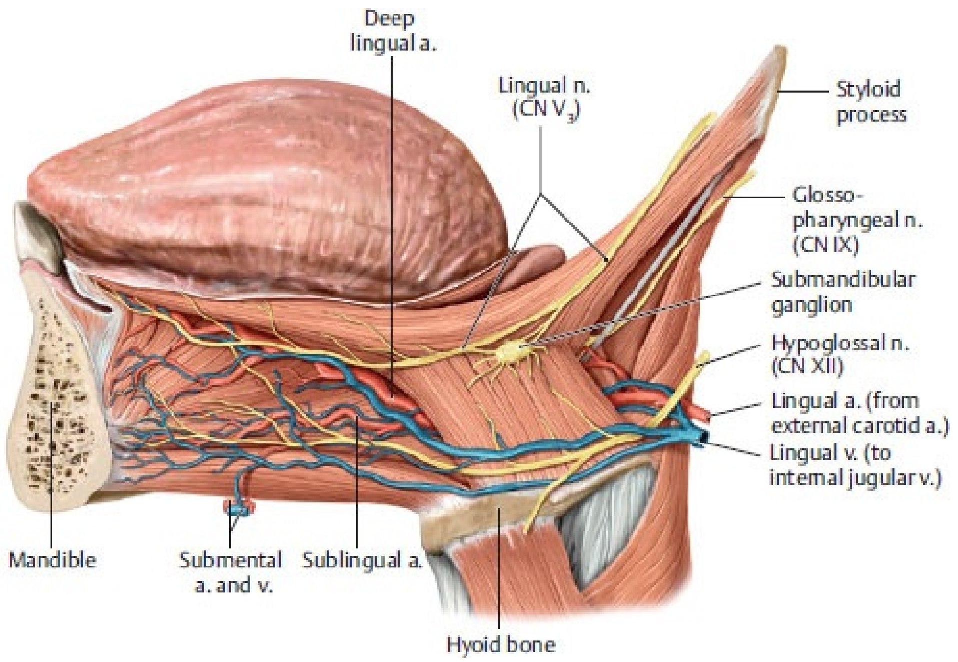
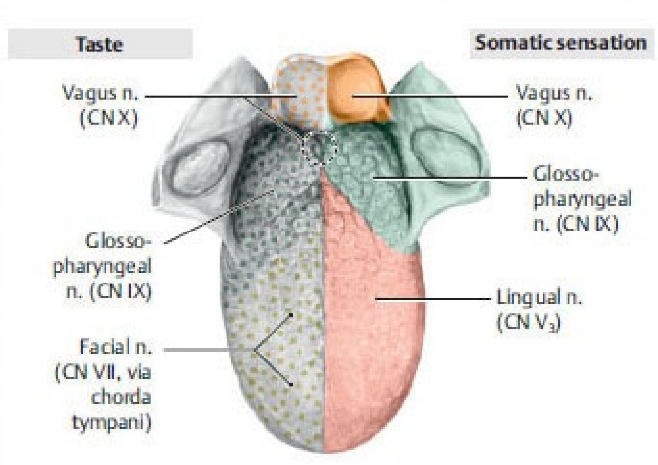

Deep lingual a.
Lingual n. (CN V$_3$)
Styloid process
Glosso-pharyngeal n. (CN IX)
Submandibular ganglion
Hypoglossal n. (CN XII)
Lingual a. (from external carotid a.)
Lingual v. (to internal jugular v.)
Mandible
Submental a. and v.
Sublingual a.
Hyoid bone

Fig. 27.36 Neurovasculature of the tongue

Left lateral view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Taste
Somatic sensation
Vagus n. (CN X)
Vagus n. (CN X)
Glosso-pharyngeal n. (CN IX)
Glosso-pharyngeal n. (CN IX)
Lingual n. (CN V$_3$)
Facial n. (CN VII, via chorda tympani)

Somatosensory and taste innervation of the tongue

Superior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Table 27.13 Innervation of the Tongue

Nerve	Nerve Fibers	Distribution
Lingual nerve (CN V_3)	General sensory	Anterior two thirds of the tongue
Chorda tympani (CN VII)	Special sensory	Anterior two thirds of the tongue
Glossopharyngeal nerve (CN IX)	General sensory and special sensory	Posterior third of the tongue
Vagus nerve (CN X)	General sensory and special sensory	Root of the tongue
Hypoglossal nerve (CN XII)	Somatic motor	Muscles of the tongue, except the palatoglossus, which is innervated by the vagus nerve (CN X)

Salivary Glands

Three pairs of salivary glands, the parotid, sublingual, and sub mandibular, produce and secrete saliva into the mouth **(Fig. 27.37)**.

— The **sublingual gland,** the smallest of the three glands, lies deep to the mucosa of the floor of the mouth, forming the **sublingual folds,** onto which it secretes saliva through numerous small ducts.

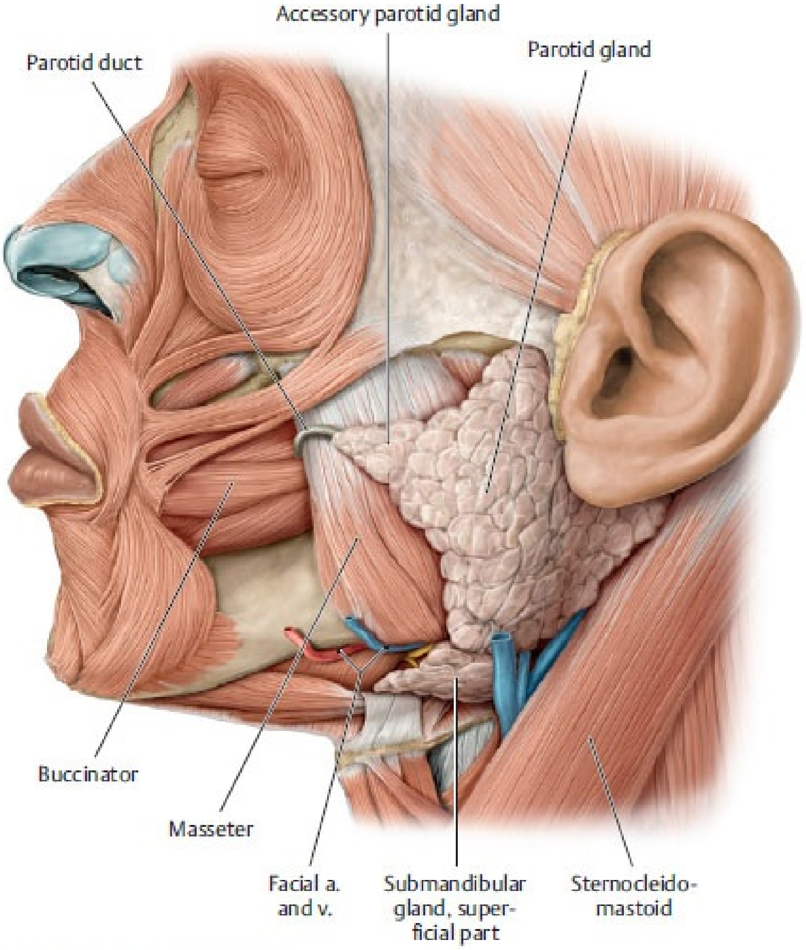
— The **submandibular gland** has a superficial part located in the neck and a deep part located in the floor of the mouth, which connect around the posterior border of the mylohyoid muscle. The **submandibular (Wharton's) duct** opens via the **sublingual papilla** at the base of the lingual frenulum.

— The parotid gland, the largest of the three glands, is located in the parotid region on the lateral side of the head, anterior to the ear. The parotid duct opens into the vestibule of the mouth at the parotid papilla located opposite to the second maxillary molar (see Section 27.3).

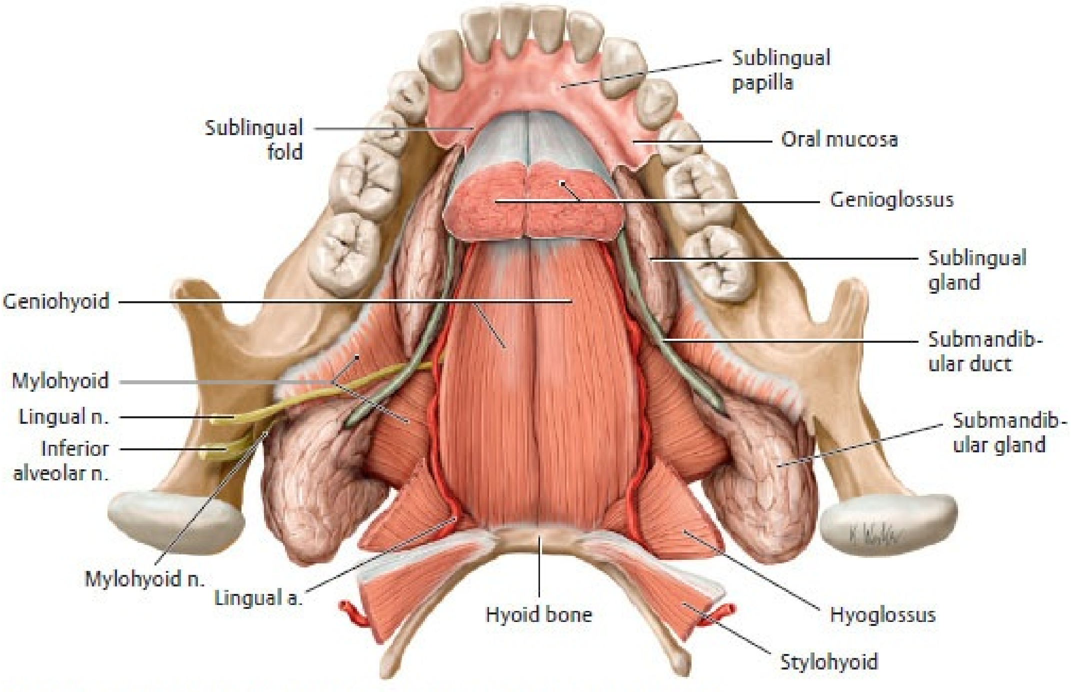
— The facial, lingual, maxillary, and superficial temporal arteries supply the salivary glands. Veins of similar names accompany the arteries and drain into the retromandibular vein.

— The sublingual and submandibular glands receive parasympa thetic secretomotor fibers via the chorda tympani (a branch of CN VII) and submandibular ganglion.

- The parotid gland receives secretomotor (parasympathetic) fibers of the glossopharyngeal nerve (CN IX) that synapse in the otic ganglion.
- Sympathetic innervation to the glands arises as postganglionic fibers from the superior cervical ganglion and follows the branches of the external carotid artery.


Accessory parotid gland
Parotid duct
Parotid gland
Buccinator
Masseter
Facial a. and v.
Submandibular gland, superficial part
Sternocleidomastoid

A Parotid gland, left lateral view.


Sublingual papilla
Sublingual fold
Oral mucosa
Genioglossus
Sublingual gland
Geniohyoid
Submandibular duct
Mylohyoid
Lingual n.
Submandibular gland
Inferior alveolar n.
Mylohyoid n.
Lingual a.
Hyoid bone
Hyoglossus
Stylohyoid

B Submandibular and sublingual glands, superior view with tongue removed.

Fig. 27.37 Salivary glands

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers;

27.9 Pharynx and Tonsils

The **pharynx,** a fibromuscular tube that forms part of the upper airway and the upper digestive tract, transmits air from the nasal cavity to the trachea and food from the oral cavity to the esophagus.

Regions of the Pharynx

The pharynx, which extends from the base of the skull to the inferior aspect of the larynx (cricoid cartilage), is divided into three regions **(Figs. 27.38** and **27.39)**: the nasopharynx, the orophar ynx, and the laryngopharynx.

— The **nasopharynx,** the uppermost part of the pharynx, lies posterior to the nasal cavity and above the soft palate. The body of the sphenoid forms its roof. Anteriorly, the nasopharynx communicates with the nasal cavity through the paired choanae.
  - The orifices (openings) of the pharyngotympanic tubes are located on the lateral pharyngeal wall. Above the orifice, the cartilaginous part of the tube protrudes into the pharynx to form a bulge, the **torus tubarius.**
  - A **salpingopharyngeal fold,** formed by the **salpingopha-ryngeus muscle** deep to the mucosa, extends inferiorly from the torus tubarius.

— The **oropharynx,** which lies posterior to the oral cavity, extends superiorly to the soft palate and inferiorly to the top of the larynx. The posterior tongue forms the anterior boundary.
  - Two arches, the anterior palatoglossal arch (fold) and the posterior palatopharyngeal arch (fold), formed by the palatoglossus and palatopharyngeal muscles, respectively, separate the oropharynx from the oral cavity. Both muscles are innervated by the vagus nerve (CN X).

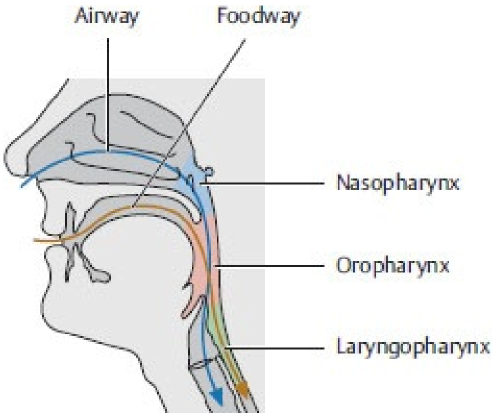

Airway
Foodway
Nasopharynx
Oropharynx
Laryngopharynx

Fig. 27.38 Regions of the pharynx

Midsagittal section, left lateral view. The *blue arrow* indicates flow of air and the *red arrow*, passage of food. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- The palatine tonsil lies between these arches in the tonsillar fossa.
- A median fold of mucosa divides the space between the base of the tongue and the epiglottis. The spaces on either side of the fold are called **valleculae.**

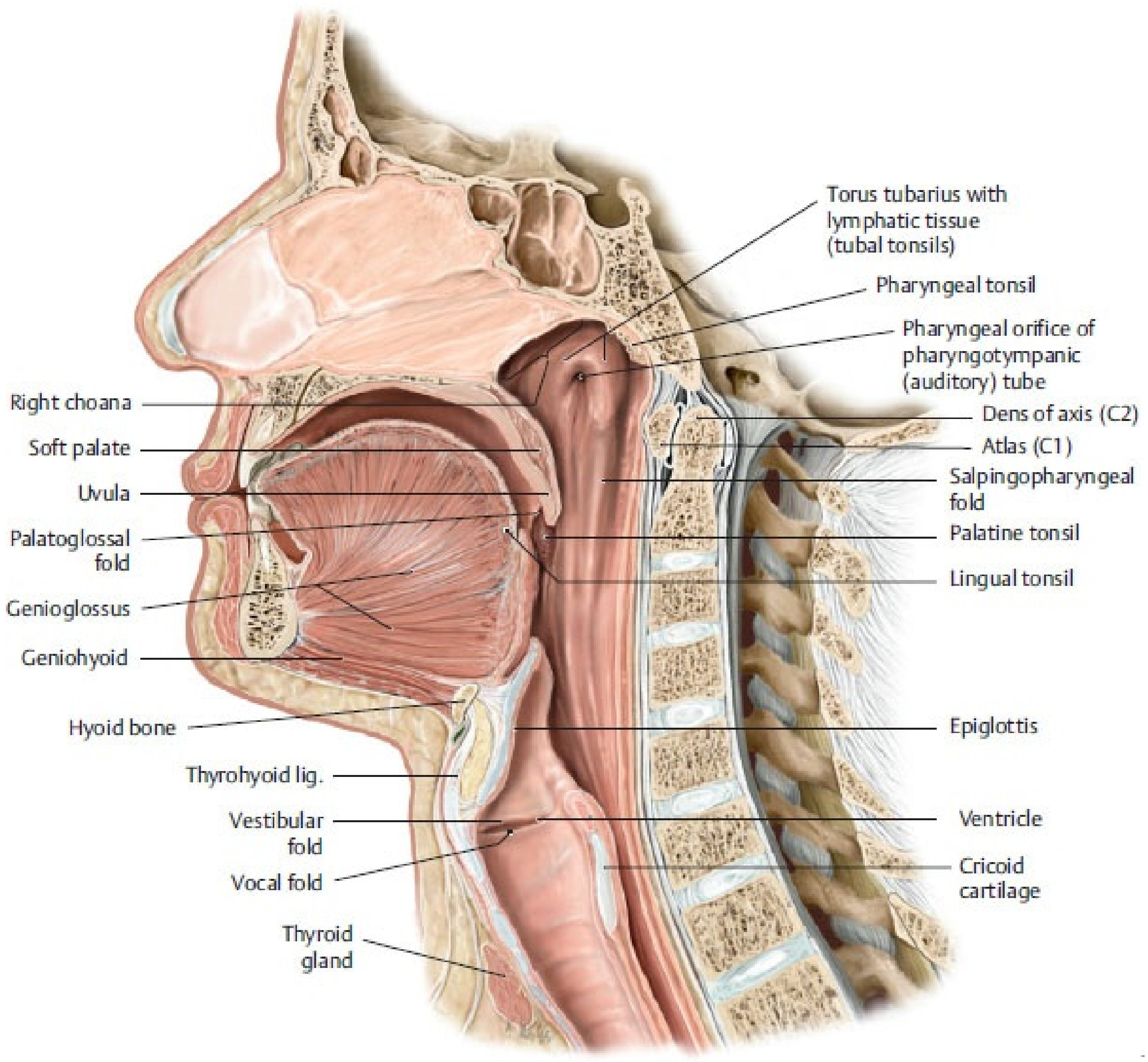

Right choana
Soft palate
Uvula
Palatoglossal fold
Genioglossus
Geniohyoid
Hyoid bone
Thyrohyoid lig.
Vestibular fold
Vocal fold
Thyroid gland
Torus tubarius with lymphatic tissue (tubal tonsils)
Pharyngeal tonsil
Pharyngeal orifice of pharyngotympanic (auditory) tube
Dens of axis (C2)
Atlas (C1)
Salpingopharyngeal fold
Palatine tonsil
Lingual tonsil
Epiglottis
Ventricle
Cricoid cartilage

Fig. 27.39 Pharynx Midsagittal section, left lateral

Midsagittal section, left lateral view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

— The **laryngopharynx,** which lies posterior to the larynx, extends from the epiglottis to the inferior border of the cricoid cartilage, where it narrows and is continuous with the esophagus.

  - The laryngopharynx communicates with the larynx through the **laryngeal inlet.**
  - **Aryepiglottic folds** separate the laryngeal inlet from mucosal-lined fossae on the lateral walls of the pharynx called **piriform recesses.**

BOX 27.7: CLINICAL CORRELATION

PIRIFORM RECESSES

The piriform recesses are small fossae that lie on either side of the laryngeal inlet. Occasionally small foreign objects that are swal-lowed or inhaled or bits of food (such as a peanut) can become lodged in these spaces. In such cases, the internal laryngeal and inferior laryngeal nerves, which lie deep to the mucosa in this area, can be vulnerablcongenital defect that occurs early ine to injury.

Muscles of the Pharynx

An outer circular layer and inner longitudinal layer of skeletal muscles form the walls of the pharynx **(Figs. 27.40** and **27.41; Tables 27.14** and **27.15)**. Pharyngeal muscles coordinate with muscles of the floor of the mouth and soft palate during swallowing **(Fig. 27.42)**.

- Circular **superior, middle, and inferior pharyngeal constric-tor muscles** propel a bolus of food downward through the oropharynx and laryngopharynx; all are innervated by the vagus nerve (CN X).
- Longitudinal muscles, the **salpingopharyngeus** and **palatopharyngeus** innervated by the vagus nerve (CN X) and pharyngeal plexus, and the **stylopharyngeus** innervated by the glossopharyngeal nerve (CN IX), elevate the pharynx to prevent food from entering the nasopharynx.

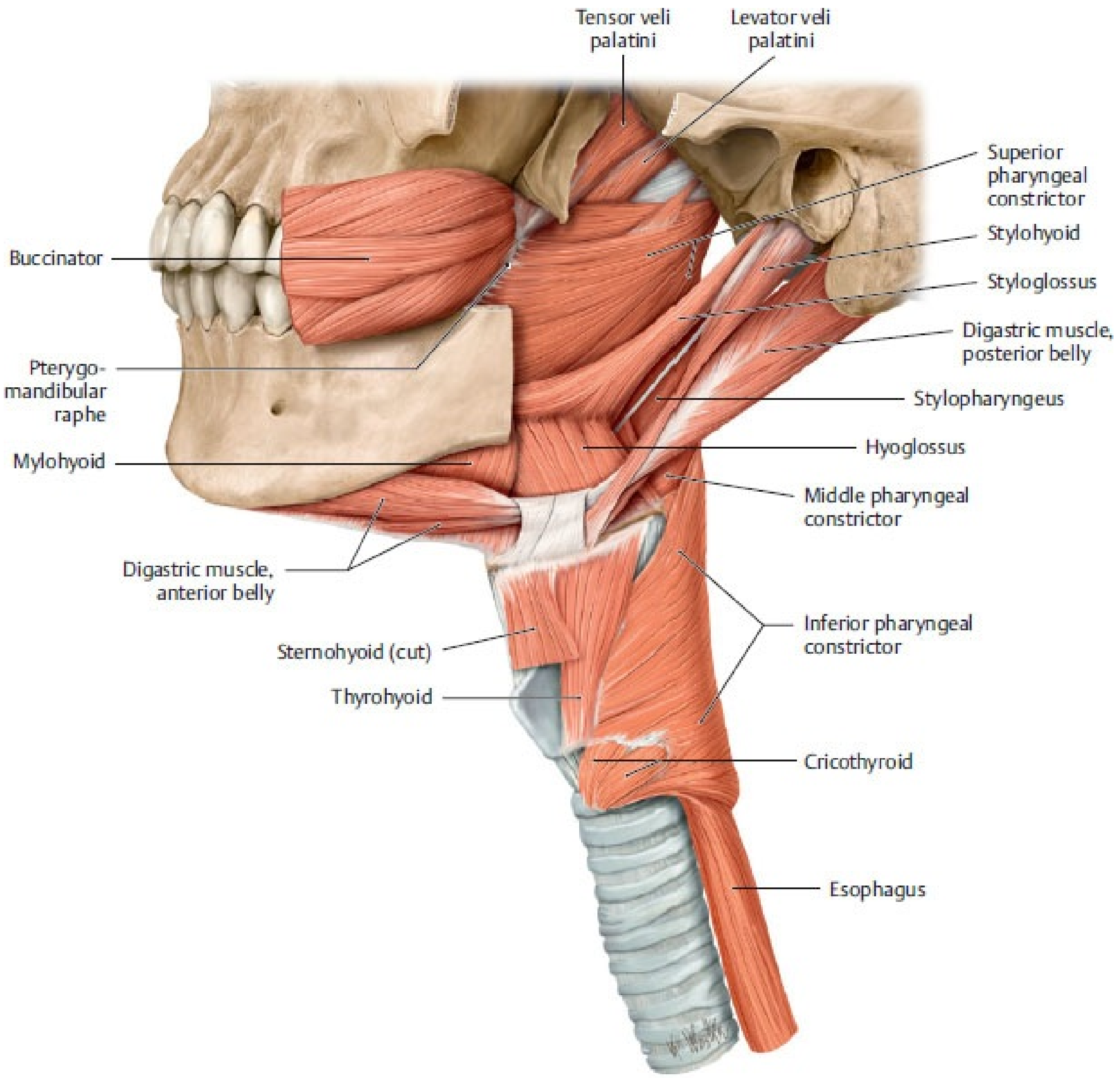
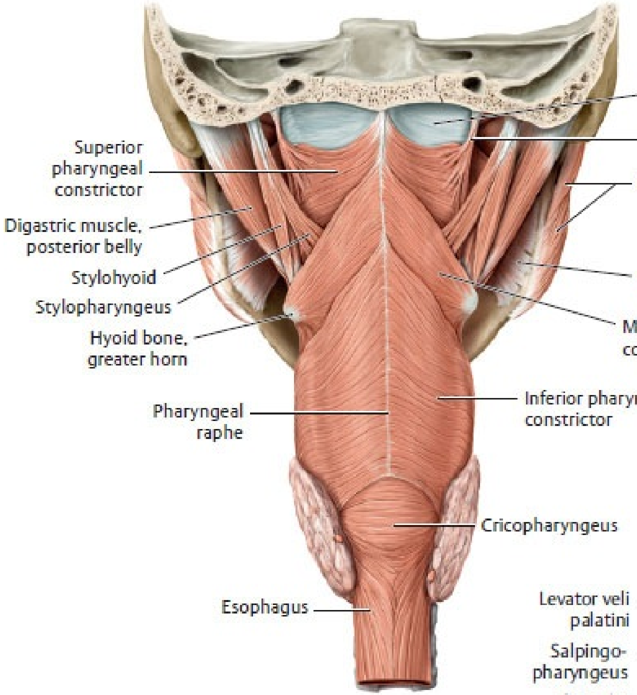

Tensor veli palatini
Levator veli palatini
Superior pharyngeal constrictor
Stylohyoid
Styloglossus
Digastric muscle, posterior belly
Stylopharyngeus
Hyoglossus
Middle pharyngeal constrictor
Inferior pharyngeal constrictor
Cricothyroid
Esophagus
Buccinator
Pterygo-mandibular raphe
Mylohyoid
Digastric muscle, anterior belly
Sternohyoid (cut)
Thyrohyoid

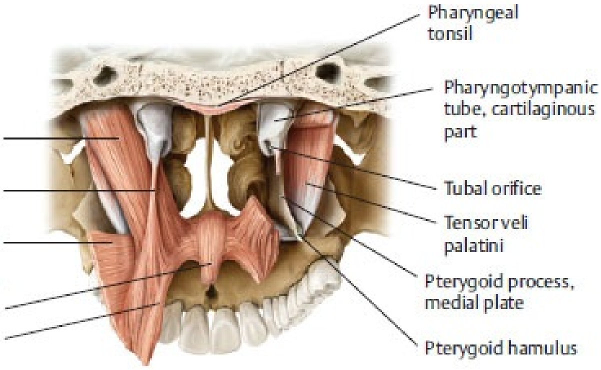
Fig. 27.40 Pharyngeal muscles

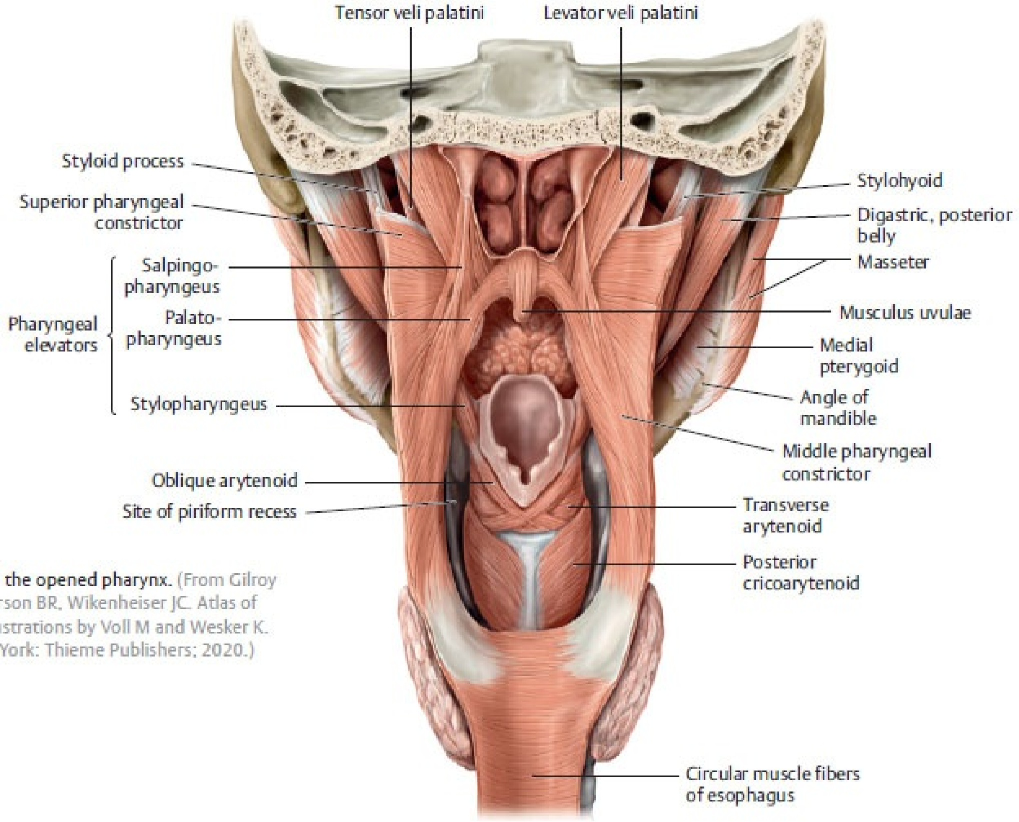
Left lateral view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Pharyngobasilar fascia
Accessory muscle bundle
Superior pharyngeal constrictor
Masseter
Digastric muscle, posterior belly
Stylohyoid
Medial pterygoid
Stylopharyngeus
Middle pharyngeal constrictor
Hyoid bone, greater horn
Pharyngeal raphe
Inferior pharyngeal constrictor
Cricopharyngeus
Esophagus

A **Muscles in the posterior pharynx.** (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

B Muscles of the soft palate and pharyngotympanic tube. The muscles of the fauces form the posterior boundary of the oral cavity. *Cut on right side:* Levator veli palatini and salpingopharyngeus. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Pharyngeal tonsil
Pharyngotympanic tube, cartilaginous part
Levator veli palatini
Tubal orifice
Salpingo-pharyngeus
Tensor veli palatini
Superior pharyngeal constrictor
Pterygoid process, medial plate
Musculus uvulae
Palato-pharyngeus
Pterygoid hamulus


Tensor veli palatini
Levator veli palatini
Styloid process
Stylohyoid
Superior pharyngeal constrictor
Digastric, posterior belly
Salpingo-pharyngeus
Masseter
Pharyngeal elevators
Palato-pharyngeus
Musculus uvulae
Medial pterygoid
Stylopharyngeus
Angle of mandible
Middle pharyngeal constrictor
Oblique arytenoid
Site of piriform recess
Transverse arytenoid
Posterior cricoarytenoid
Circular muscle fibers of esophagus

C **Muscles in the opened pharynx.** (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Fig. 27.41 Pharyngeal muscles

Posterior view.

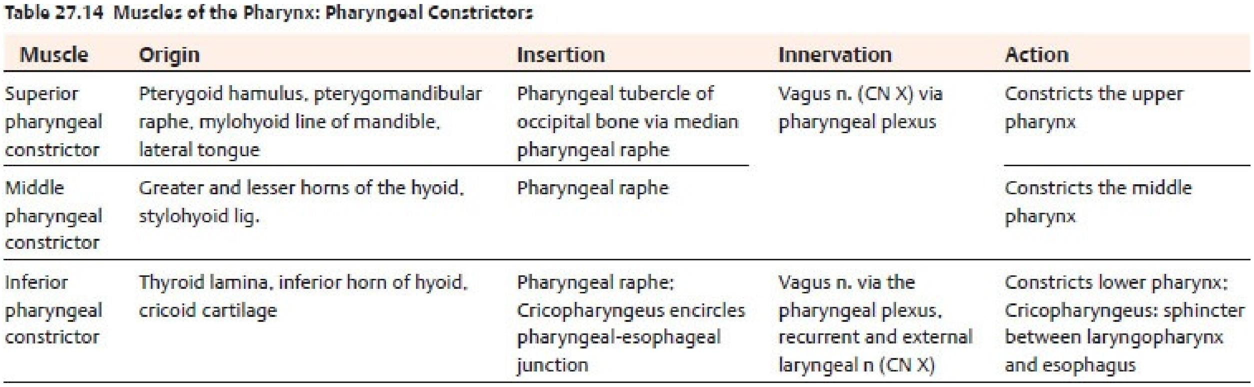


Table 27.14 Muscles of the Pharynx: Pharyngeal Constrictors

Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Innervation	Action
Superior pharyngeal constrictor	Pterygoid hamulus, pterygomandibular raphe, mylohyoid line of mandible, lateral tongue	Pharyngeal tubercle of occipital bone via median pharyngeal raphe	Vagus n. (CN X) via pharyngeal plexus	Constricts the upper pharynx
Middle pharyngeal constrictor	Greater and lesser horns of the hyoid, stylohyoid lig.	Pharyngeal raphe		Constricts the middle pharynx
Inferior pharyngeal constrictor	Thyroid lamina, inferior horn of hyoid, cricoid cartilage	Pharyngeal raphe; Cricopharyngeus encircles pharyngeal-esophageal junction	Vagus n. via the pharyngeal plexus, recurrent and external laryngeal n (CN X)	Constricts lower pharynx; Cricopharyngeus: sphincter between laryngopharynx and esophagus

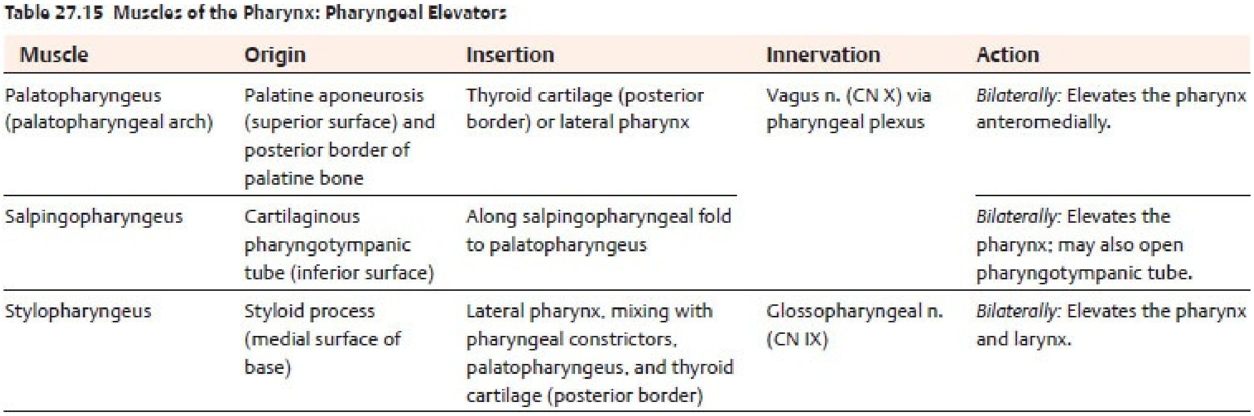


Table 27.15 Muscles of the Pharynx: Pharyngeal Elevators

Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Innervation	Action
Palatopharyngeus (palatopharyngeal arch)	Palatine aponeurosis (superior surface) and posterior border of palatine bone	Thyroid cartilage (posterior border) or lateral pharynx	Vagus n. (CN X) via pharyngeal plexus	*Bilaterally:* Elevates the pharynx anteromedially.
Salpingopharyngeus	Cartilaginous pharyngotympanic tube (inferior surface)	Along salpingopharyngeal fold to palatopharyngeus		*Bilaterally:* Elevates the pharynx; may also open pharyngotympanic tube.
Stylopharyngeus	Styloid process (medial surface of base)	Lateral pharynx, mixing with pharyngeal constrictors, palatopharyngeus, and thyroid cartilage (posterior border)	Glossopharyngeal n. (CN IX)	*Bilaterally:* Elevates the pharynx and larynx.

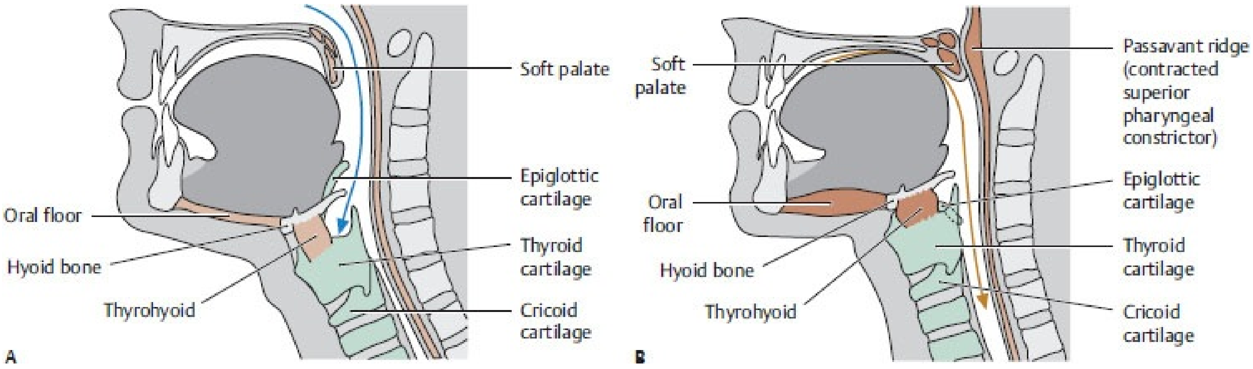

Soft palate
Epiglottic cartilage
Oral floor
Thyroid cartilage
Hyoid bone
Thyrohyoid
Cricoid cartilage
A
Soft palate
Passavant ridge (contracted superior pharyngeal constrictor)
Epiglottic cartilage
Oral floor
Thyroid cartilage
Hyoid bone
Thyrohyoid
Cricoid cartilage
B

Fig. 27.42 Anatomy of swallowing

As part of the airway, the larynx in the adult is located at the inlet to the digestive tract **(A)**. During swallowing, therefore, the airway must be briefly occluded to keep food from entering the trachea. During the reflexive phase of swallowing, muscles on the floor of the mouth and the thyrohyoid elevate the larynx while the epiglottis covers the laryngeal inlet, sealing off the lower airway. In addition, the soft palate tightens, elevates, and opposes the posterior pharyngeal wall, sealing off the upper airway **(B)**. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustra-tions by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Tonsils

- **Tonsils,** masses of lymphoid tissue found in the mucosal lining of the pharynx, form an incomplete circular ring called the **pharyngeal lymphatic ring** (Waldeyer's ring) around the superior part of the pharynx **(Fig. 27.43)**. They include
  - one **pharyngeal tonsil** (also known as adenoid) in the mucous membrane of the roof and posterior wall of the pharynx;
  - paired **tubal tonsils**, extensions of the pharyngeal tonsil, near the orifices of the pharyngotympanic tube;
  - paired **palatine tonsils** in the fossae between the palatoglossal and palatopharyngeal arches;
  - **lingual tonsils** on the posterior one third of the dorsum of the tongue; and
  - pairs of **lateral bands** that lie along the salpingopharyn geal folds.
- Tonsils are supplied by branches of the facial, ascending palatine, lingual, descending palatine, and ascending pharyngeal arteries.

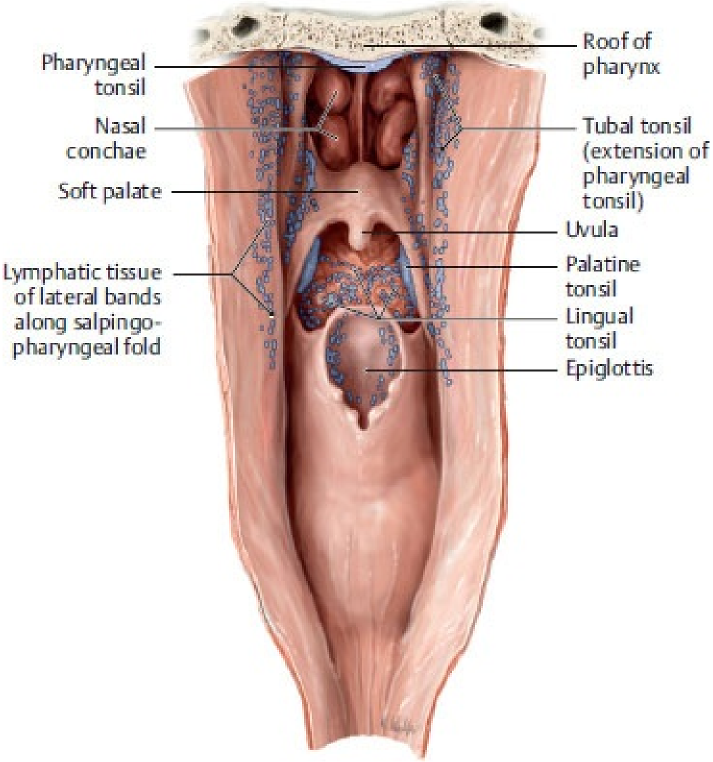

Pharyngeal tonsil
Nasal conchae
Soft palate
Lymphatic tissue of lateral bands along salpingo-pharyngeal fold
Roof of pharynx
Tubal tonsil (extension of pharyngeal tonsil)
Uvula
Palatine tonsil
Lingual tonsil
Epiglottis

Fig. 27.43 Tonsils: Waldeyer's ring

Posterior view of the opened pharynx. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- Tonsillar lymphatic vessels drain to the jugulodigastric node near the angle of the mandible before draining to the deep cervical lymph nodes.
- A tonsillar nerve plexus is formed by the glossopharyngeal (CN IX) and vagus (CN X) nerves.

BOX 27.8: CLINICAL CORRELATION

TONSILLECTOMY

During a tonsillectomy, the palatine tonsils are removed from the tonsillar bed along with their accompanying fascia. The glosso-pharyngeal nerve, which lies on the lateral wall of the pharynx, is vulnerable to injury during the procedure and may result in loss of sensation and taste from the posterior one third of the tongue. Bleeding may occur from the large external palatine vein or from the tonsillar branches of the facial, ascending pharyngeal, maxil-lary, and lingual arteries. The internal carotid artery may also be vulnerable because it runs just lateral to the tonsil.

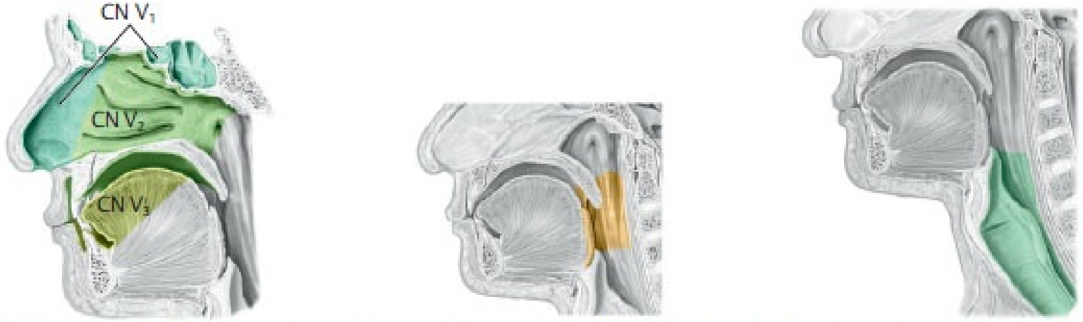
Neurovasculature of the Pharynx

- Direct and indirect branches of the external carotid artery supply the pharynx. These include the facial, lingual, ascending palatine, descending palatine, and ascending pharyngeal arteries (see **Fig. 24.21**).
- Venous drainage of the pharynx passes through the pharyngeal venous plexus to the internal jugular vein (see **Fig. 24.26**).
- Sensory innervation of the pharyngeal mucosa varies by region **(Fig. 27.44)**.
  - The maxillary nerve (CN V_2) innervates the upper part of the nasopharynx.
  - The glossopharyngeal nerve (CN IX) primarily innervates the oropharynx, although its territory extends into both the nasopharynx and laryngopharynx.
  - The vagus nerve (CN X) via its internal laryngeal branch innervates the laryngopharynx.

BOX 27.9: CLINICAL CORRELATION

GAG REFLEX

The gag reflex is a reflexive contraction of the pharyngeal muscles that protects the airway by preventing accidental ingestion and aspiration. It is elicited by touching the soft palate or back of the tongue. The glossopharyngeal nerve (CN IX) is the afferent limb, and the vagus nerve (CN X) serves as the efferent limb of the reflex.


CN V_1
CN V_2
CN V_3

A Maxillary n. in the nasopharynx. B Glossopharyngeal n. in the oropharynx. C Vagus n. in the laryngopharynx.

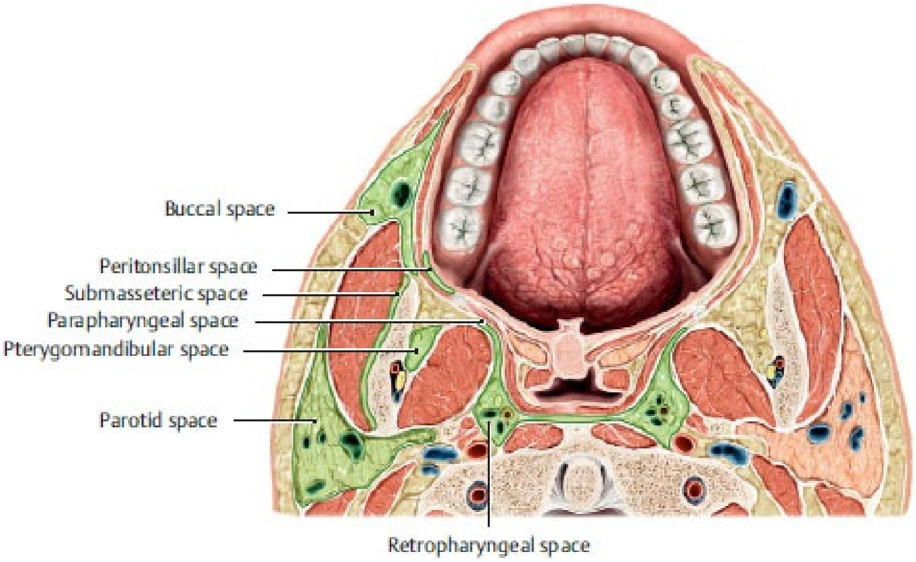
Fig. 27.44 Sensory innervation of the pharynx

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 27.10: CLINICAL CORRELATION

FASCIA AND POTENTIAL TISSUE SPACES IN THE HEAD

Fascial boundaries are the key to outlining pathways for the spread of infection. Potential spaces in the head, shown on this figure, become true spaces when they are infiltrated by products of infection. These spaces are defined by bones, muscles and fascia and initially confine an infection but eventually allow it to spread through communications between spaces.


Buccal space
Peritonsillar space
Submasseteric space
Parapharyngeal space
Pterygomandibular space
Parotid space
Retropharyngeal space

Transverse section at the level of the tonsillar fossa, superior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th Edition. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

28 The Eye and Ear

The eye, the organ of vision, and the ear, which contains the organs for hearing and balance, are anatomically the most complex of the sense organs. The eyes, enclosed within the bony orbits, are prominent features of the face. The ears have superficial and deep components that are related to the temporal bones on the sides of the head.

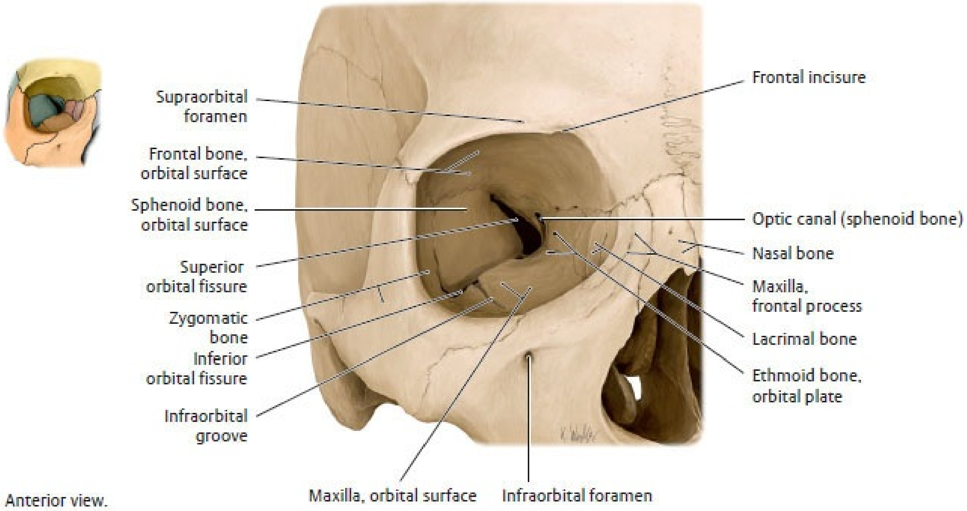
28.1 The Eye

The anatomy of the eye includes the bony orbit, the eyelids and lacrimal apparatus, the eyeball, and six extraocular muscles.

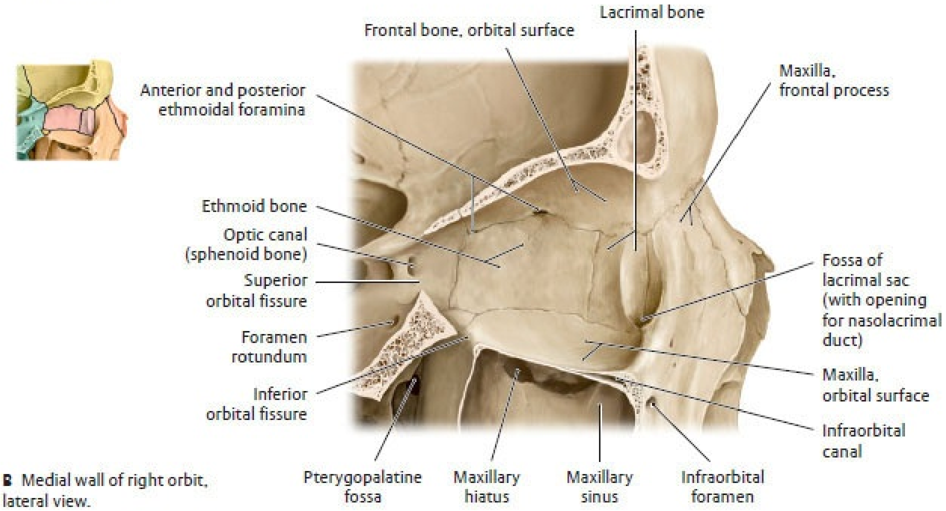
The Bony Orbit

The paired **orbits** lie on either side of the superior part of the nasal cavity, above the maxillary sinuses and below the anterior cranial fossae (see **Fig. 24.15**). These cavities are shaped like quadrangular pyramids with the apex directed posteriorly and the base opening onto the face (**Fig. 28.1**).

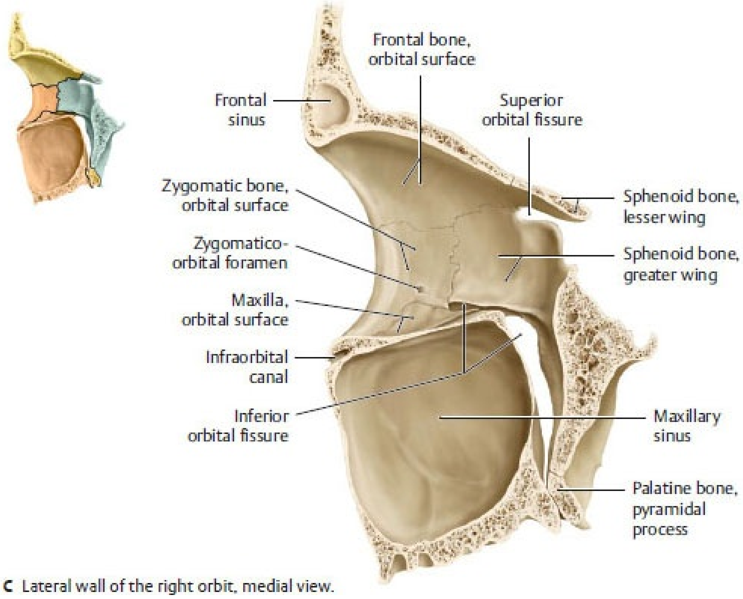
— Seven bones of the skull form the bony orbit:
  1. the frontal bone, which forms the roof;
  2. the maxilla, which forms the floor;
  3. the ethmoid,


Supraorbital foramen
Frontal bone, orbital surface
Sphenoid bone, orbital surface
Superior orbital fissure
Zygomatic bone
Inferior orbital fissure
Infraorbital groove
Maxilla, orbital surface
Infraorbital foramen
Frontal incisure
Optic canal (sphenoid bone)
Nasal bone
Maxilla, frontal process
Lacrimal bone
Ethmoid bone, orbital plate

A Anterior view.


Frontal bone, orbital surface
Lacrimal bone
Maxilla, frontal process
Anterior and posterior ethmoidal foramina
Ethmoid bone
Optic canal (sphenoid bone)
Superior orbital fissure
Foramen rotundum
Inferior orbital fissure
Fossa of lacrimal sac (with opening for nasolacrimal duct)
Maxilla, orbital surface
Infraorbital canal
Pterygopalatine fossa
Maxillary hiatus
Maxillary sinus
Infraorbital foramen

B Medial wall of right orbit, lateral view.


Frontal bone, orbital surface
Frontal sinus
Superior orbital fissure
Zygomatic bone, orbital surface
Sphenoid bone, lesser wing
Zygomatico-orbital foramen
Sphenoid bone, greater wing
Maxilla, orbital surface
Infraorbital canal
Inferior orbital fissure
Maxillary sinus
Palatine bone, pyramidal process

C Lateral wall of the right orbit, medial view.

Fig. 28.1 Bones of the orbit

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

4. lacrimal,
5. palatine, and
6. sphenoid bones, which form the medial wall; and
7. the zygomatic bone, which, along with the sphenoid bone, forms the lateral wall.

- The eyeball occupies the anterior part of the orbit, accompanied by six extraocular muscles, ophthalmic vessels, and six cranial nerves (optic [CN II], oculomotor [CN III], trochlear [CN IV], trigeminal [CN V], abducent [CN VI], and facial [CN VII]) (**Fig. 28.2**). Periorbital fat supports and surrounds these structures.
- Three openings at the apex of the orbit allow passage of nerves and vessels between the middle cranial fossa and the orbit: the **optic canal, superior orbital fissure,** and **inferior orbital fissure** (Table 28.1).
- Several other openings transmit nerves and vessels onto the face—**supraorbital** and **infraorbital foramina, frontal incisure,** and **zygomatico-orbital foramen**—and into the nasal cavity—**anterior** and **posterior ethmoidal foramina**. The **nasolacrimal canal,** a passageway between the orbit and nasal cavity, transmits the **nasolacrimal duct**.

Table 28.1 Openings in the Orbit for Neurovascular Structures

Opening*	Nerves	Vessels
Optic canal	Optic n. (CN II)	Ophthalmic a.
Superior orbital fissure	Oculomotor n. (CN III) Trochlear n. (CN IV) Abducent n. (CN VI) Trigeminal n., ophthalmic division (CN V_1) • Lacrimal n. • Frontal n. • Nasociliary n.	

Inferior orbital fissure	Infraorbital n. (CN V_2) Zygomatic n. (CN V_2)	Infraorbital a. and v., inferior ophthalmic v.
Infraorbital canal	Infraorbital n. (CN V_2)	Infraorbital a. and v.
Supraorbital foramen	Supraorbital n. (lateral branch)	Supraorbital a.
Frontal incisure	Supraorbital n. (medial branch)	Supratrochlear a.
Anterior ethmoidal foramen	Anterior ethmoidal n.	Anterior ethmoidal a. and v.
Posterior ethmoidal foramen	Posterior ethmoidal n.	Posterior ethmoidal a. and v.

* The nasolacrimal canal transmits the nasolacrimal duct.

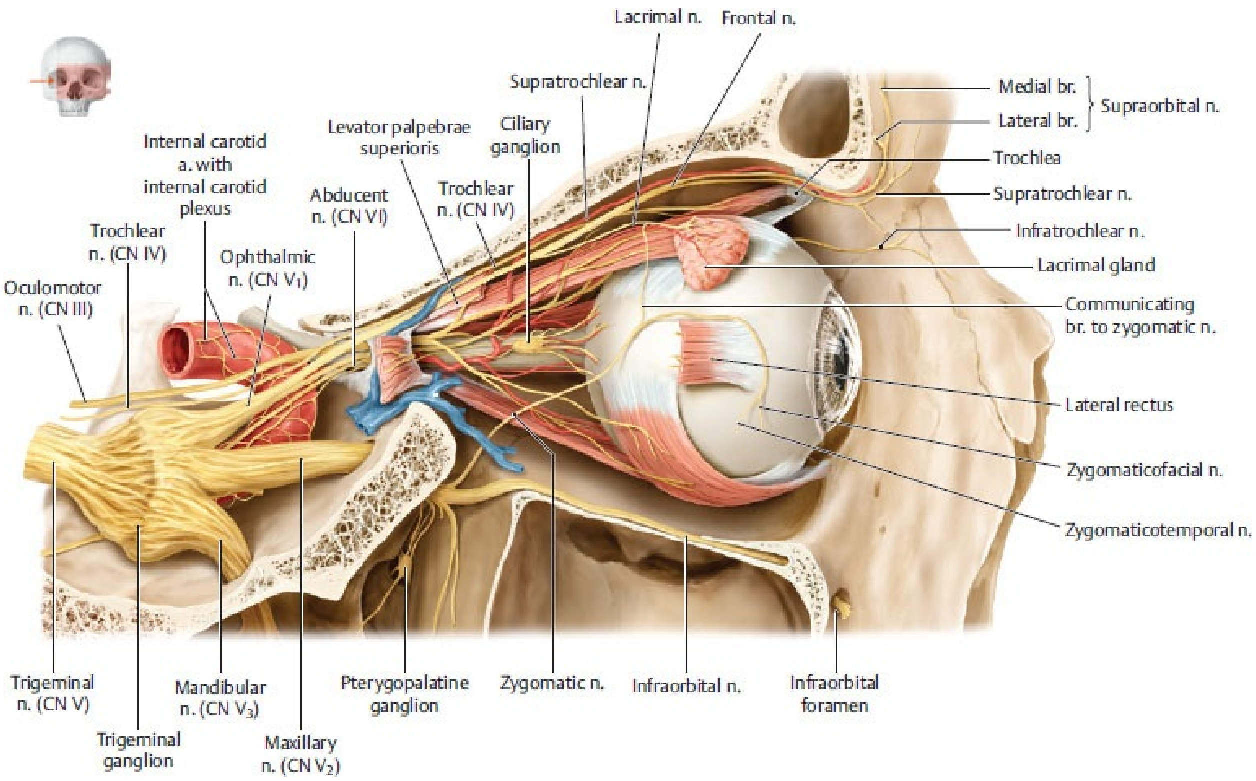

Lacrimal n.
Frontal n.
Supratrochlear n.
Medial br.
Lateral br.
Supraorbital n.
Internal carotid a. with internal carotid plexus
Levator palpebrae superioris
Ciliary ganglion
Abducent n. (CN VI)
Trochlear n. (CN IV)
Trochlea
Supratrochlear n.
Trochlear n. (CN IV)
Ophthalmic n. (CN V₁)
Infratrochlear n.
Lacrimal gland
Oculomotor n. (CN III)
Communicating br. to zygomatic n.
Lateral rectus
Zygomaticofacial n.
Zygomaticotemporal n.
Trigeminal n. (CN V)
Mandibular n. (CN V₃)
Pterygopalatine ganglion
Zygomatic n.
Infraorbital n.
Infraorbital foramen
Trigeminal ganglion
Maxillary n. (CN V₂)

Fig. 28.2 Topography of the orbit

Right orbit, lateral view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

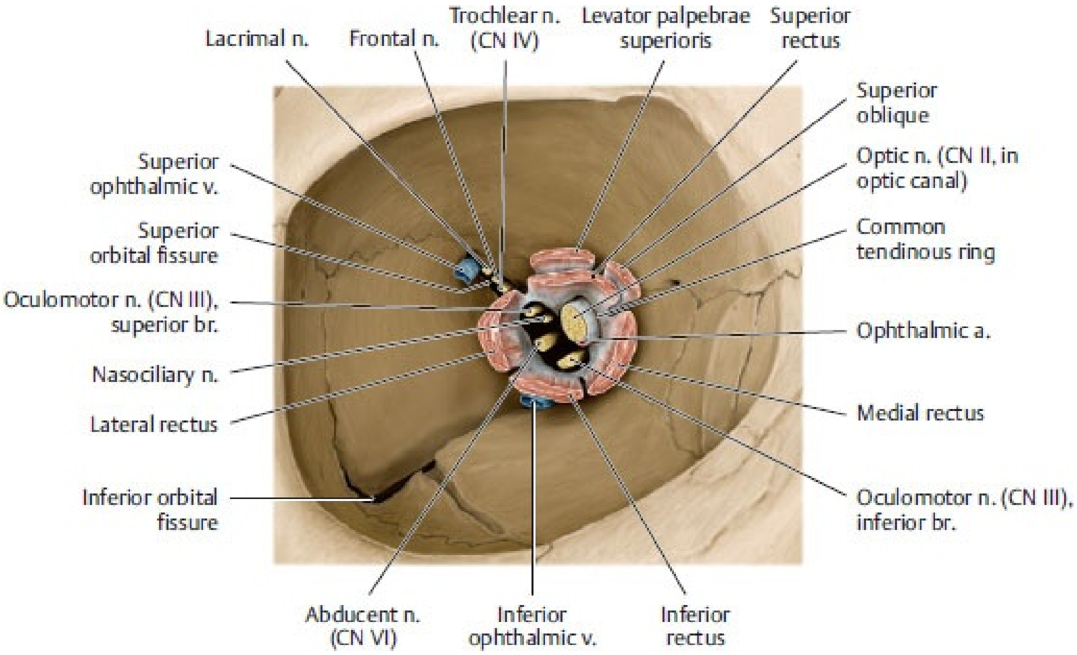

Lacrimal n.
Frontal n.
Trochlear n. (CN IV)
Levator palpebrae superioris
Superior rectus
Superior oblique
Optic n. (CN II, in optic canal)
Common tendinous ring
Ophthalmic a.
Medial rectus
Oculomotor n. (CN III), inferior br.
Superior ophthalmic v.
Superior orbital fissure
Oculomotor n. (CN III), superior br.
Nasociliary n.
Lateral rectus
Inferior orbital fissure
Abducent n. (CN VI)
Inferior ophthalmic v.
Inferior rectus

Fig. 28.3 Passage of neurovascular structures through the apex of the orbit

Anterior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

— A **common tendinous ring** at the apex of the orbit surrounds the optic canal and part of the superior orbital fissure and serves as the origin for four of the extraocular muscles (**Fig. 28.3**). The optic nerve (CN II) and ophthalmic artery enter the orbit through the optic canal and thus pass through the tendinous ring. Other structures entering through part of the superior orbital fissure enclosed by the ring include the **superior** and **inferior branches** of the oculomotor nerve (CN III), the **nasociliary branch** of the ophthalmic nerve (CN V_1), and the abducens nerve (CN VI).

Orbital Region, Eyelids, and Lacrimal Apparatus

The upper and lower **eyelids** are movable folds of skin that protect the eyeball from injury, irritation, and light. They are separated from each other by the **palpebral fissure (Fig. 28.4)**.

— The eyelids are covered externally by skin and internally by the **palpebral**

conjunctiva. This thin inner membrane reflects at the **superior** and **inferior fornices** onto the anterior eyeball as the **bulbar (ocular) conjunctiva**. When the eyes are closed, the palpebral and bulbar conjunctivae form the **conjunctival sac**.

- **Tarsal plates** or **tarsus**, bands of dense connective tissue that provide support for both the upper and lower eyelids, are attached to **medial** and **lateral palpebral ligaments**, which connect to the medial and lateral margins of the orbit, respectively. Tarsal glands within the tarsal plates lubricate the edges of the eyelids to prevent them from sticking together.
- The **orbicularis oculi muscle** (see **Fig. 27.2**), innervated by the facial nerve (cranial nerve [CN] VII), closes the eye in a sphincter-like fashion. The **levator palpebrae superioris muscle**, innervated by the oculomotor nerve (CN III) and attached to the superior tarsal plate, opens the eye by lifting the upper eyelid.
- The **orbital septum**, a thin membranous sheet, extends from the orbital rim, where it’s continuous with the periosteum, into the tarsal plates of the eyelids. On the upper eyelid it also blends with the tendon of the levator palpebrae superioris. The septum holds the orbital fat within the orbit and helps limit the spread of infection to and from the orbit.

The **lacrimal apparatus** produces and drains tears that cleanse and lubricate the outer surface of the eye **(Fig. 28.5)**.

- The **lacrimal gland**, which produces and secretes tears, resides in the lacrimal fossa in the supralateral aspect of the orbit. Secretomotor parasympathetic fibers from the facial nerve (CN VII) stimulate the gland (see **Fig. 26.25**).
- Blinking of the eye sweeps the tears across the eye toward the medial angle, where they drain via **superior** and **inferior puncta** (openings) into **lacrimal canaliculi** and the **lacrimal sac**, the dilated superior part of the nasolacrimal duct.

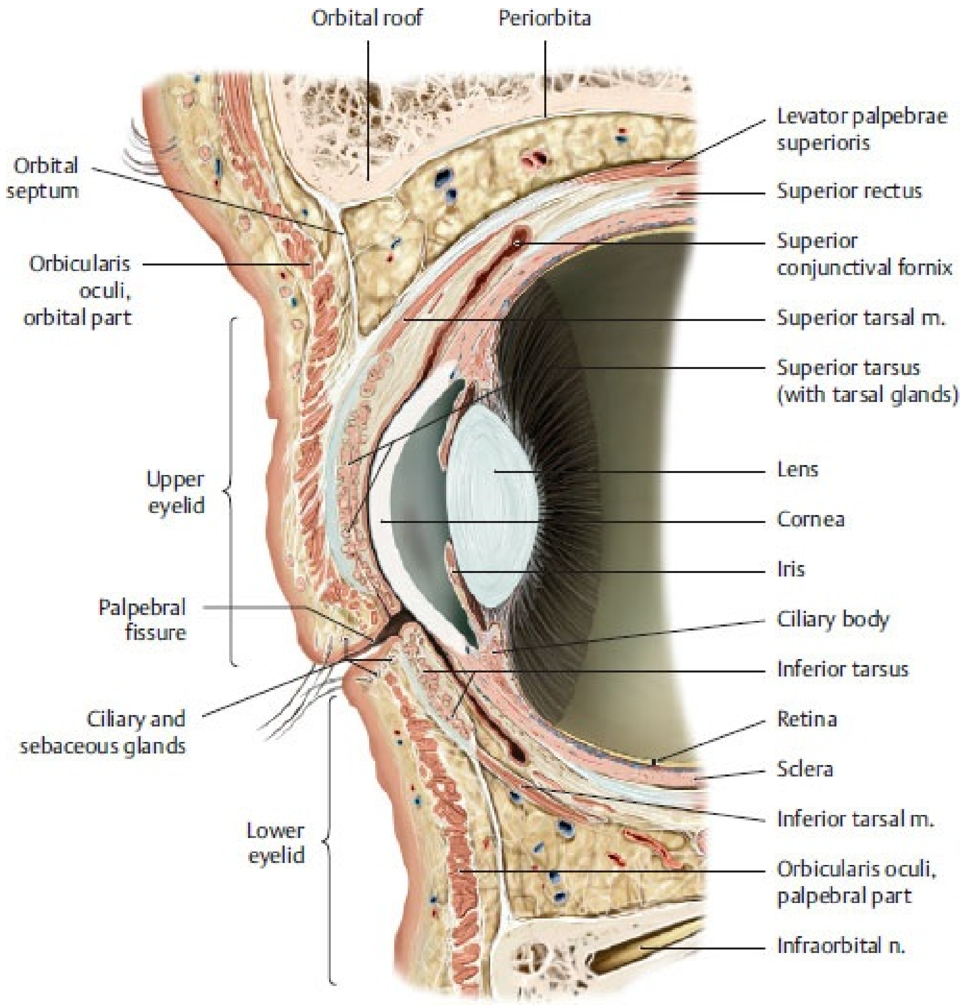

Orbital roof
Periorbita
Orbital septum
Orbicularis oculi, orbital part
Upper eyelid
Palpebral fissure
Ciliary and sebaceous glands
Lower eyelid
Levator palpebrae superioris
Superior rectus
Superior conjunctival fornix
Superior tarsal m.
Superior tarsus (with tarsal glands)
Lens
Cornea
Iris
Ciliary body
Inferior tarsus
Retina
Sclera
Inferior tarsal m.
Orbicularis oculi, palpebral part
Infraorbital n.

Fig. 28.4 Eyelids and conjunctiva

Sagittal section through the anterior orbital cavity.

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

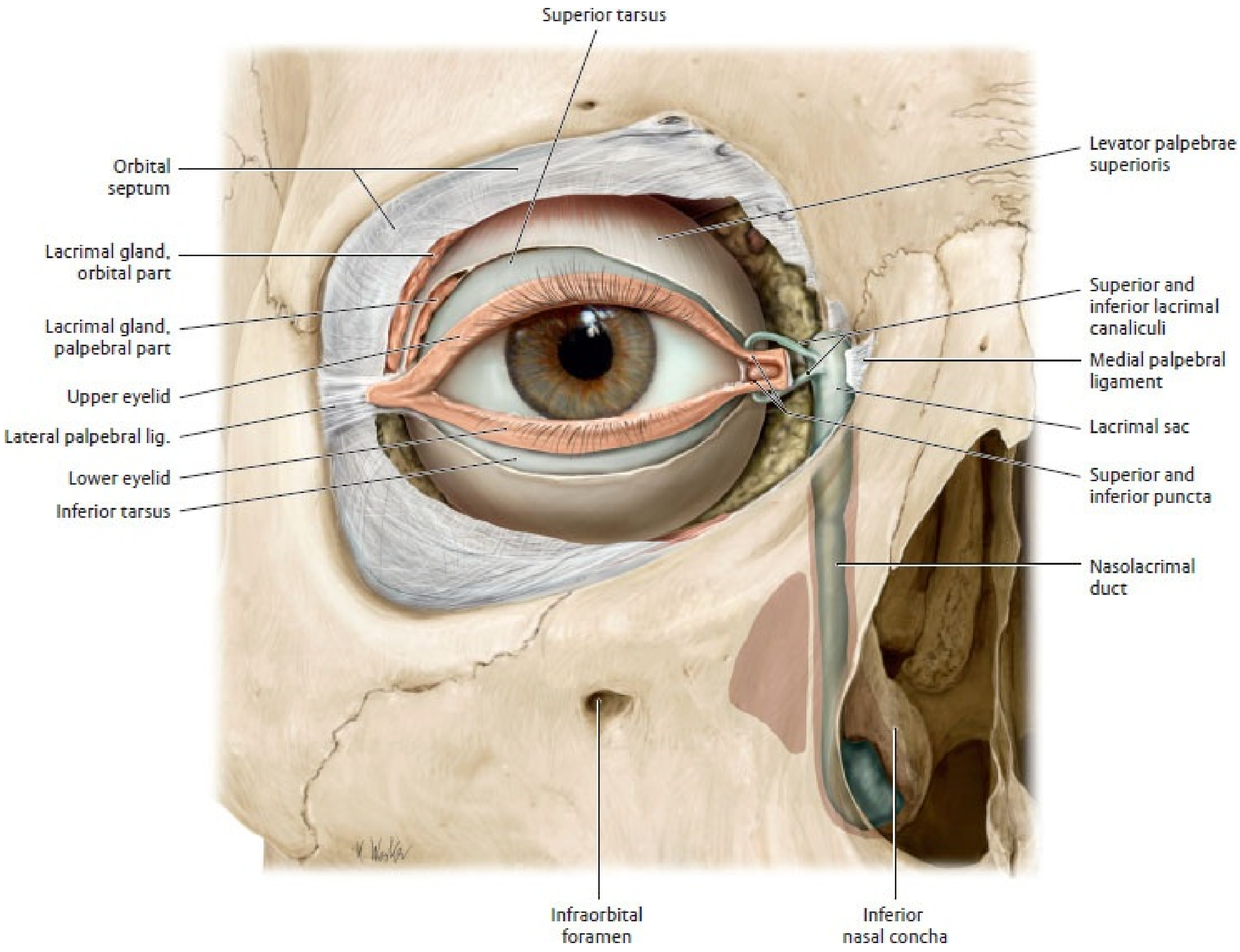

Superior tarsus
Orbital septum
Lacrimal gland, orbital part
Lacrimal gland, palpebral part
Upper eyelid
Lateral palpebral lig.
Lower eyelid
Inferior tarsus
Levator palpebrae superioris
Superior and inferior lacrimal canaliculi
Medial palpebral ligament
Lacrimal sac
Superior and inferior puncta
Nasolacrimal duct
Infraorbital foramen
Inferior nasal concha

Fig. 28.5 Lacrimal apparatus

Right eye, anterior view.

Removed: Orbital septum (partial). *Divided:* Levator palpebrae superioris (tendon of insertion). (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

— The **nasolacrimal duct** is a membranous structure that begins in the medial angle of the eye and terminates in the inferior meatus of the nasal cavity. Tears drain into the nasal cavity via this duct.

The Eyeball

The eyeball, the organ of vision, has three concentric layers that form its outer walls: the sclera, the choroid, and the retina **(Fig. 28.6)**.

— The **sclera**, the white part of the eye, forms the posterior five sixths of the outer fibrous layer of the eye; the **cornea**, the transparent part of the sclera, forms the anterior sixth. This outer layer is largely avascular but provides structure to the eyeball.

- The **choroid**, the middle vascular layer, provides oxygen and nutrients to the underlying retina **(Fig. 28.7)**.
  - The **ciliary body** connects the choroid with the circum ference of the iris. Short, smooth muscle fibers, **zonular fibers**, which attach the ciliary body to the lens, control the thickness and refractive power of the lens and therefore the focus of the eye.
  - The **iris**, an adjustable muscular diaphragm, surrounds a central aperture, the **pupil** (**Fig. 28.8**).
    - The **pupillary sphincter muscle** of the iris responds to parasympathetic stimulation to constrict the pupil.
    - The **pupillary dilator muscle** of the iris responds to sympathetic stimulation to dilate the pupil.
- The **retina**, the inner sensory layer, has a posterior **optic part** that is sensitive to light and a **nonvisual part** that continues anteriorly over the ciliary body and iris.
  - The **optic disk**, a point on the retina where the optic nerve exits the eyeball, lacks photoreceptors and therefore is insensitive to light and is known as the **blind spot**.
  - The **macula** of the retina, a spot lateral to the optic disk, is an area of intense visual acuity.
  - The **fovea centralis**, a depression in the macula, is the area of greatest visual acuity.
- Light passes through four refractive media before focusing on the retina of the eye:
  1. The cornea, the primary refractive medium for light entering the eye

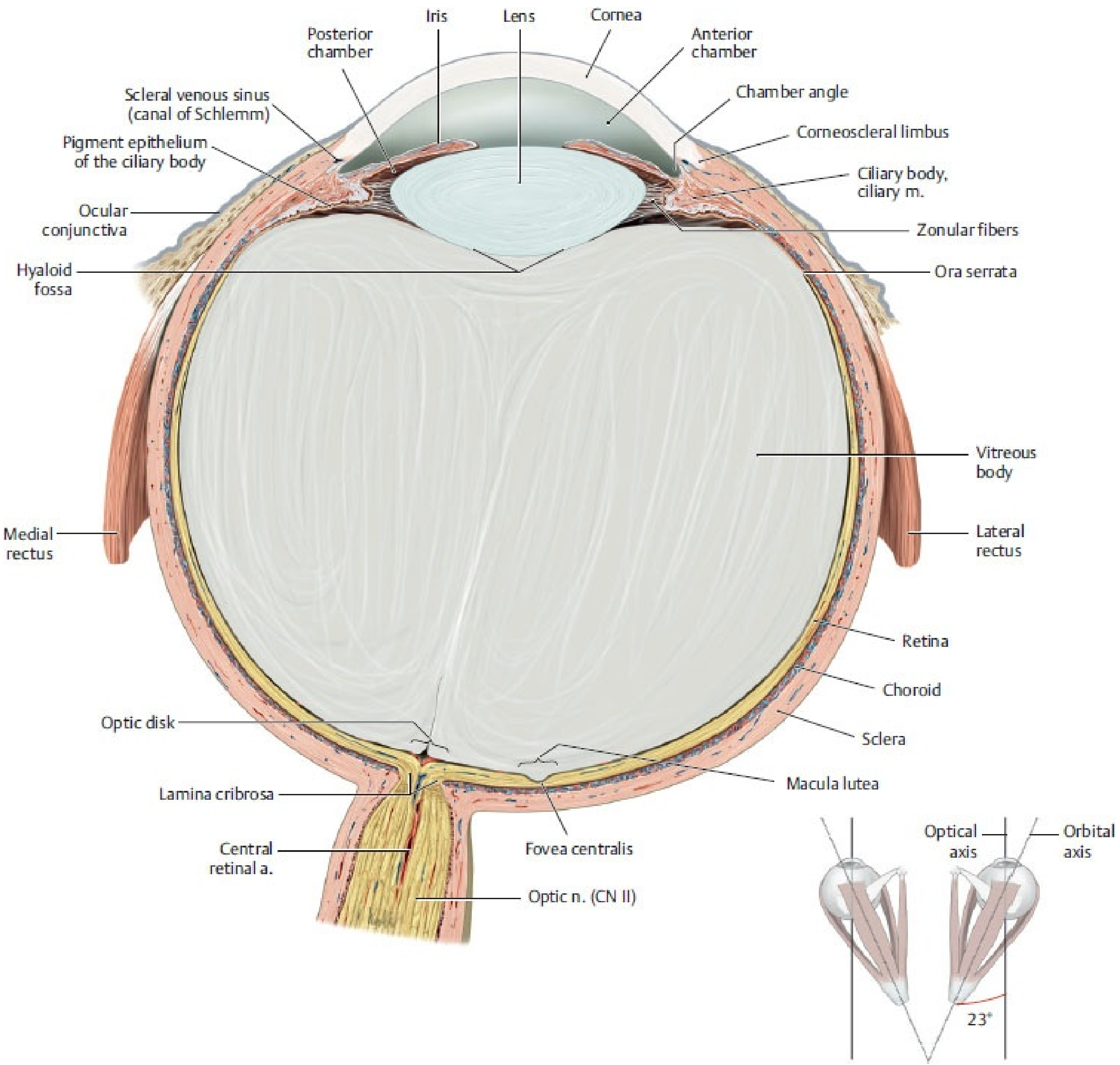

Iris
Lens
Cornea
Posterior chamber
Anterior chamber
Scleral venous sinus (canal of Schlemm)
Chamber angle
Corneoscleral limbus
Pigment epithelium of the ciliary body
Ciliary body, ciliary m.
Ocular conjunctiva
Zonular fibers
Hyaloid fossa
Ora serrata
Vitreous body
Medial rectus
Lateral rectus
Retina
Choroid
Optic disk
Sclera
Macula lutea
Lamina cribrosa
Central retinal a.
Fovea centralis
Optic n. (CN II)
Optical axis
Orbital axis
23°

Fig. 28.6 Structure of the eyeball

Transverse section through the right eyeball, superior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

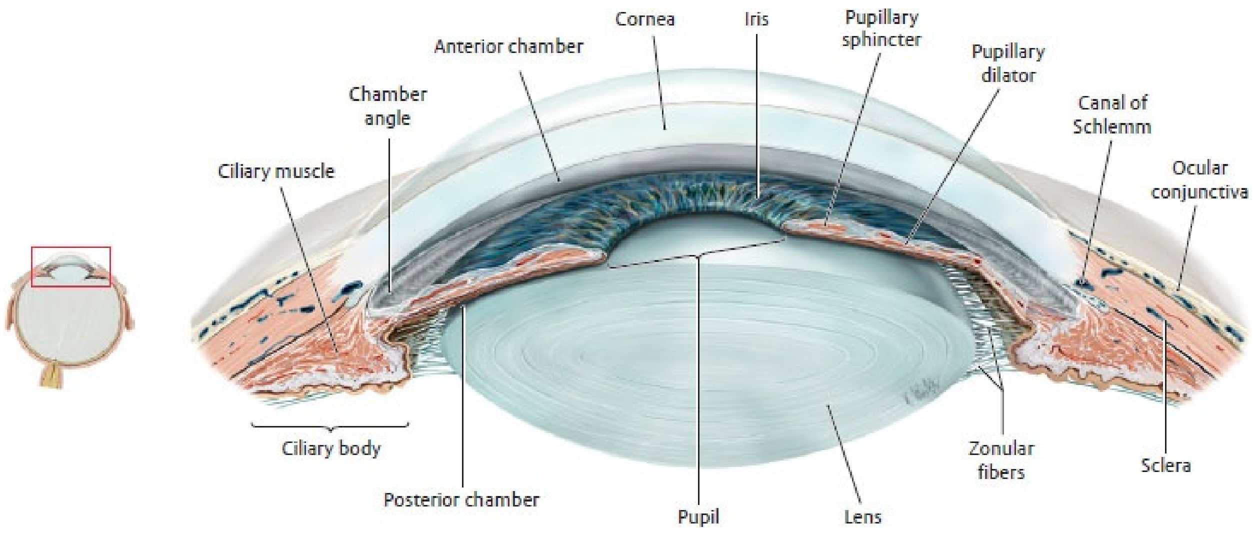

Cornea
Iris
Pupillary sphincter
Anterior chamber
Pupillary dilator
Chamber angle
Canal of Schlemm
Ciliary muscle
Ocular conjunctiva
Ciliary body
Posterior chamber
Pupil
Lens
Zonular fibers
Sclera

Fig. 28.7 Cornea, iris, and lens

Transverse section through the anterior segment of the eye, anterosuperior view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

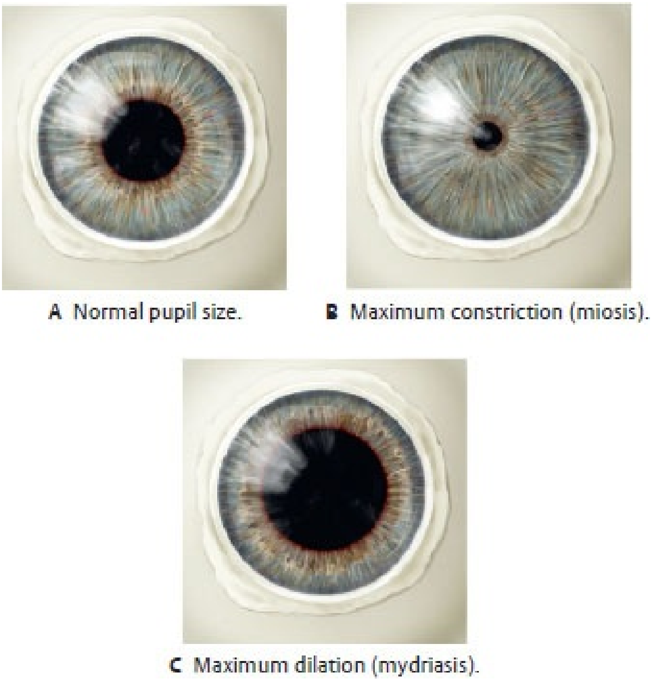

A Normal pupil size.
B Maximum constriction (miosis).
C Maximum dilation (mydriasis).

Fig. 28.8 Pupil

Pupil size is regulated by two intraocular muscles of the iris: the pupillary sphincter, which narrows the pupil (parasympathetic innervation), and the pupillary dilator, which enlarges it (sympathetic innervation). (From

Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

2. The **aqueous humor**, a watery solution that fills the **anterior** and **posterior chambers** of the eye that lie anterior to the lens and ciliary body. The balance between its production and drainage determines the intraocular pressure.
3. The **lens**, a transparent biconcave disk that focuses objects on the retina by changing its thickness. In the process of **accommodation**, which is mediated by parasympathetic stimulation, the ciliary muscle contracts, causing the lens to thicken and bring near objects into focus. When the ciiary muscle relaxes, the lens flattens, allowing the eye to focus on far objects (**Fig. 28.9**).
4. The **vitreous body**, a jelly-like substance that fills the chamber of the eye posterior to the lens.

BOX 28.1: CLINICAL CORRELATION

PRESBYOPIA AND CATARACTS

The lens of the eye undergoes age-related changes that affect vision in the older patient. The loss of elasticity of the lens, and the subsequent loss of accommodation, diminishes a patient's ability to focus on near objects, a condition known as presbyopia. Opacities of the lens or its capsule, known as cataracts, reduce the amount of light that reaches the retina, resulting in blurred, cloudy vision. Treatment involves surgical removal of the affected lens and replacement with a plastic lens implant.

BOX 28.2: CLINICAL CORRELATION

GLAUCOMA

Glaucoma refers to a group of eye diseases that involve increased intraocular pressure and atrophy of the optic nerve. In primary open-angle glaucoma, the most common form, venous channels in the angle between the cornea and the iris that allow drainage of the aqueous humor from the anterior and posterior cham-bers are blocked. The subsequent buildup of aqueous humor results in raised intraocular pressure and eventual damage to the optic nerve. This leads to a gradual loss of peripheral vision that progresses to tunnel vision. Pressure on the retina can lead to blindness.

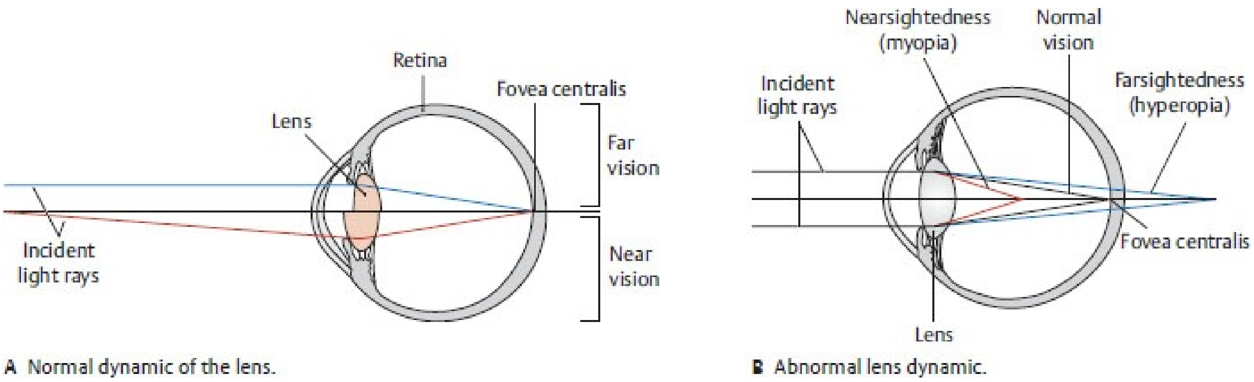

Retina
Fovea centralis
Lens
Far vision
Incident light rays
Near vision
A Normal dynamic of the lens.
Nearsightedness (myopia)
Normal vision
Incident light rays
Farsightedness (hyperopia)
Fovea centralis
Lens
B Abnormal lens dynamic.

Fig. 28.9 Light refraction by the lens

Transverse section, superior view.

In the normal (emmetropic) eye, light rays are refracted by the lens (and cornea) to a focal point on the retinal surface (fovea centralis). Tensing of the zonular fibers, with ciliary muscle relaxation, flattens the lens in response to parallel rays arriving from a distant source (far vision). Contraction of the ciliary muscle, with zonular fiber relaxation, causes the lens to assume a more rounded shape (near vision). (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenhe-iser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

BOX 28.3: CLINICAL CORRELATION

CORNEAL REFLEX

A positive corneal reflex is the bilateral contraction of the orbi-cularis oculi muscles (a blink) when the cornea is touched or exposed to bright light. The afferent limb is the nasociliary nerve of the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal nerve (CN V1); the efferent limb is the facial nerve (CN VII). The reflex protects the eye from foreign bodies and bright light.

BOX 28.4: CLINICAL CORRELATION

PUPILLARY LIGHT REFLEX

The pupillary light reflex is rapid constriction (miosis) of both pupils (via the constrictor pupillae muscle) in response to shining a light into the eye. The afferent limb of the reflex is the optic nerve (CN II). The efferent limb is the parasympathetic fibers of the oculomotor nerve (CN III). Both pupils constrict because each retina sends fibers into the optic tracts of both sides. If the para-sympathetic fibers are interrupted, both pupils dilate (mydriasis) as a result of the unopposed sympathetic outflow to the dilator pupillae muscle. This reflex mediates papillary aperture variation and is therefore one of the means by which the eye adapts to changes in light intensity (see Fig. 28.9).

Extraocular Muscles

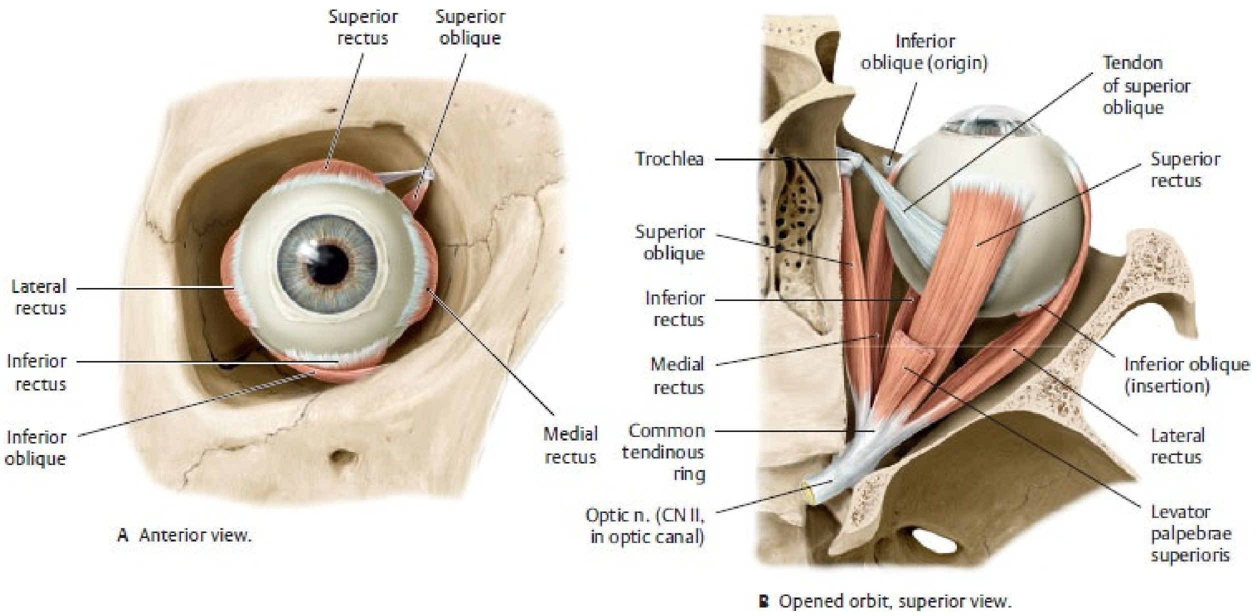
- The six extraocular muscles that control the movement of the eyeball (**Fig. 28.10**; **Table 28.2**) include
  - four rectus muscles, the **superior rectus**, **medial rectus**, **inferior rectus**, and **lateral rectus**, that originate from a **common tendinous ring** at the apex of the orbit; and
  - two oblique muscles, the **superior oblique** that arises near the apex and reflects back via the trochlea to attach to the eyeball, and the **inferior oblique** that arises from the medial aspect of the orbital floor.
- The muscles allow six cardinal directions of gaze, which are the normal movements of the eyeball tested during clinical evaluation of ocular mobility.

Neurovasculature of the Orbit

The orbital region is an area of arterial and venous anastomoses (**Fig. 28.11**; see Sections 24.3 and 24.4).

  - Branches of the external carotid artery, the infraorbital (a branch of the maxillary artery), and facial arteries, anastomose with the supraorbital branch of the internal carotid artery. This potential anastomosis can serve an important function if the maxillary artery is ligated (such as for severe nosebleeds).
  - The anastomosis between the extracranial angular vein and intracranial superior ophthalmic veins can serve as a conduit for bacterial infections of the face passing into intracranial venous pathways.

- The ophthalmic artery supplies most structures of the orbit (**Fig. 28.12**). One of its branches, the **central retinal artery**, runs within the optic nerve and is the sole arterial supply to the retina through its terminal branches.
  - The ophthalmic artery anastomoses with the facial artery through its supratrochlear branch and with the maxillary artery through its anterior and posterior ethmoidal and middle meningeal branches.
- The **superior** and **inferior ophthalmic veins**, which drain structures in the orbit, primarily drain into the cavernous sinus but also communicate with the facial vein and pterygoid venous plexus (**Fig. 28.13**).

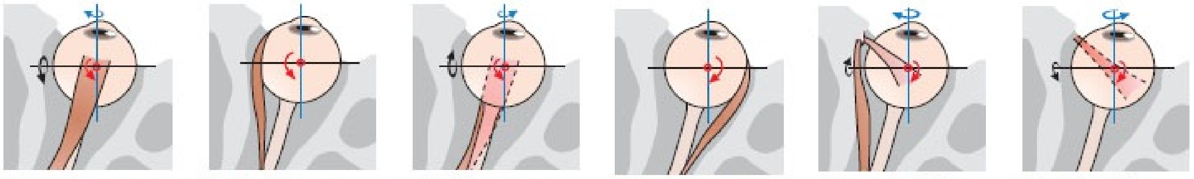

Superior rectus
Superior oblique
Lateral rectus
Inferior rectus
Inferior oblique
Medial rectus
Inferior oblique (origin)
Tendon of superior oblique
Trochlea
Superior rectus
Superior oblique
Inferior rectus
Medial rectus
Common tendinous ring
Optic n. (CN II, in optic canal)
Inferior oblique (insertion)
Lateral rectus
Levator palpebrae superioris

A Anterior view.

B Opened orbit, superior view.

Fig. 28.10 Extraocular muscles

Right eye. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)



A Superior rectus. B Medial rectus. C Inferior rectus. D Lateral rectus. E Superior oblique. F Inferior oblique.

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

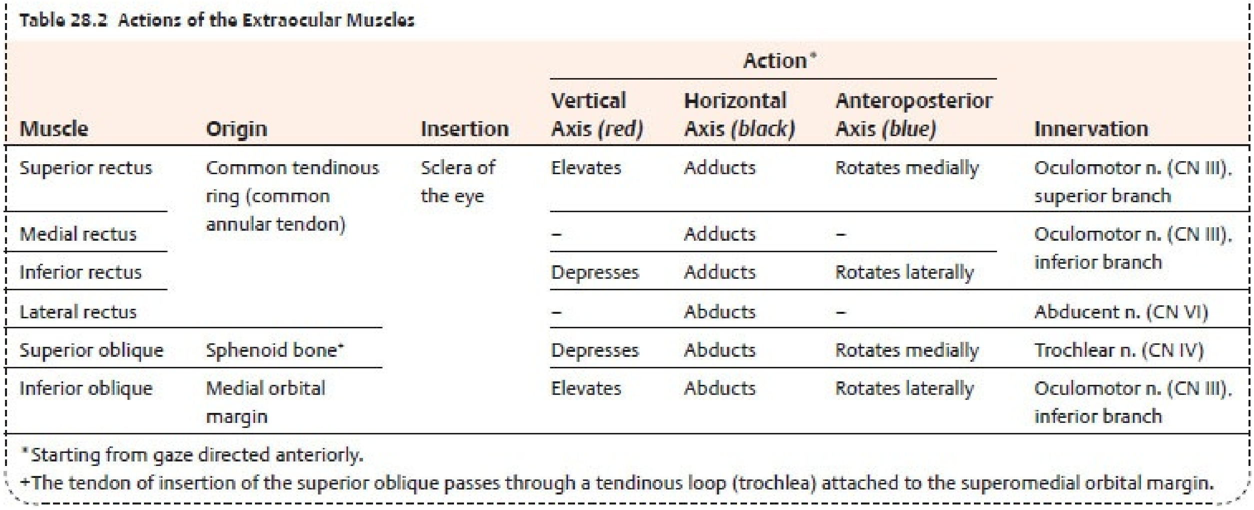


Table 28.2 Actions of the Extraocular Muscles

			Action*			
Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Vertical Axis *(red)*	Horizontal Axis *(black)*	Anteroposterior Axis *(blue)*	Innervation
Superior rectus	Common tendinous ring (common annular tendon)	Sclera of the eye	Elevates	Adducts	Rotates medially	Oculomotor n. (CN III), superior branch
Medial rectus			–	Adducts	–	Oculomotor n. (CN III), inferior branch
Inferior rectus			Depresses	Adducts	Rotates laterally	
Lateral rectus			–	Abducts	–	Abducent n. (CN VI)
Superior oblique	Sphenoid bone+		Depresses	Abducts	Rotates medially	Trochlear n. (CN IV)
Inferior oblique	Medial orbital margin		Elevates	Abducts	Rotates laterally	Oculomotor n. (CN III), inferior branch

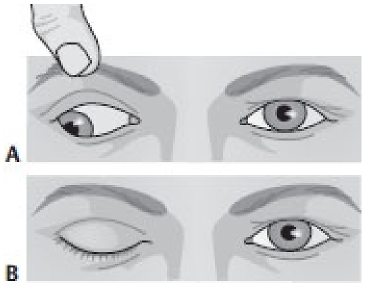
*Starting from gaze directed anteriorly.

+The tendon of insertion of the superior oblique passes through a tendinous loop (trochlea) attached to the superomedial orbital margin.

BOX 28.5: CLINICAL CORRELATION

OCULOMOTOR NERVE INJURY

The oculomotor nerve innervates most of the extraocular mus-cles. With paralysis of these muscles, the eye is directed down-ward and outward because of the unopposed action of the lateral rectus (innervated by the abducent nerve) and superior oblique (innervated by the trochlear nerve) (A). The dilator pupillae is also unopposed, so the pupil remains fully dilated. Paralysis of the levator palpebrae superior causes the superior eyelid to droop (B).



(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

— Six cranial nerves (optic, oculomotor, trochlear, trigeminal, abducent, and facial) innervate structures in the orbit. All of these nerves pass through the cavernous sinus before entering the orbit at its apex (**Table 28.3**; **Figs. 28.14** and **28.15**).

- The optic nerve (CN I) transmits images from the retina.
- The oculomotor nerve (CN III), trochlear nerve (CN IV), and abducent nerve (CN VI) innervate the extraocular muscles.
- The ophthalmic division of the trigeminal nerve (CN V_1) carries general sensory fibers from structures in the orbit and distributes postganglionic autonomic fibers to target organs of the orbit and face.
- The facial nerve (CN VII) provides secretomotor (parasympathetic) innervation to the lacrimal gland.

— Autonomic innervation of structures in the orbit includes the following:

- Sympathetic fibers from the carotid plexus innervate the ciliary body and pupillary dilator muscle (responsible for pupil dilation).
- Parasympathetic fibers from the oculomotor nerve (CN III) synapse in the ciliary ganglion and travel via the short ciliary nerves to innervate the ciliary body and pupillary sphincter muscles (responsible for pupil constriction).
- Parasympathetic fibers from the facial nerve (CN VII) synapse in the

pterygopalatine ganglion and travel via the zygomatic nerve (CN V_2) to innervate the lacrimal gland (responsible for tear secretion).

BOX 28.6: CLINICAL CORRELATION

HORNER'S SYNDROME

Horner's syndrome is a kaleidoscope of symptoms resulting from disruption of the cervical sympathetic trunk in the neck. The absence of sympathetic innervation is manifested on the affected side of the face as pupillary constriction (miosis), a sunken eye (enophthalmos), drooping of the upper eyelid (ptosis), loss of sweating (anhydrosis), and vasodilation.

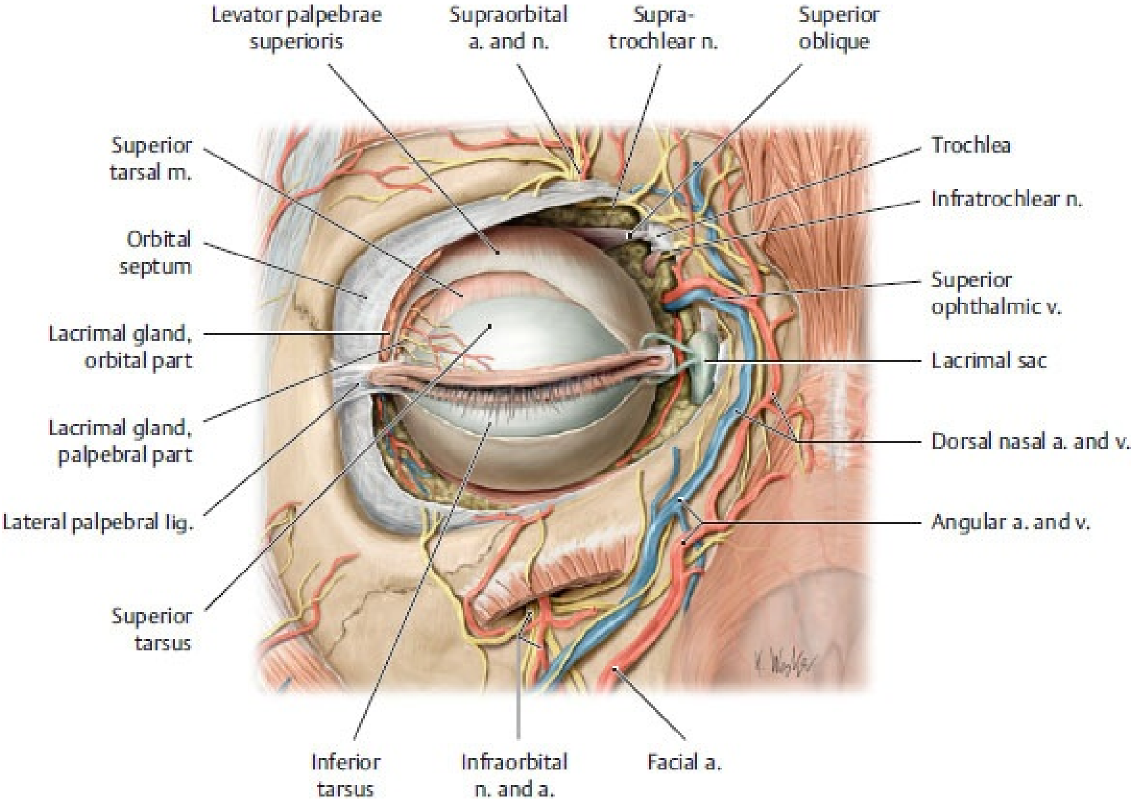

Levator palpebrae superioris
Supraorbital a. and n.
Supra-trochlear n.
Superior oblique
Superior tarsal m.
Orbital septum
Lacrimal gland, orbital part
Lacrimal gland, palpebral part
Lateral palpebral lig.
Superior tarsus
Trochlea
Infratrochlear n.
Superior ophthalmic v.
Lacrimal sac
Dorsal nasal a. and v.
Angular a. and v.
Inferior tarsus
Infraorbital n. and a.
Facial a.

Fig. 28.11 Neurovascular structures of the orbital region

Anterior orbital structures have been exposed by partial removal of the orbital septum. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

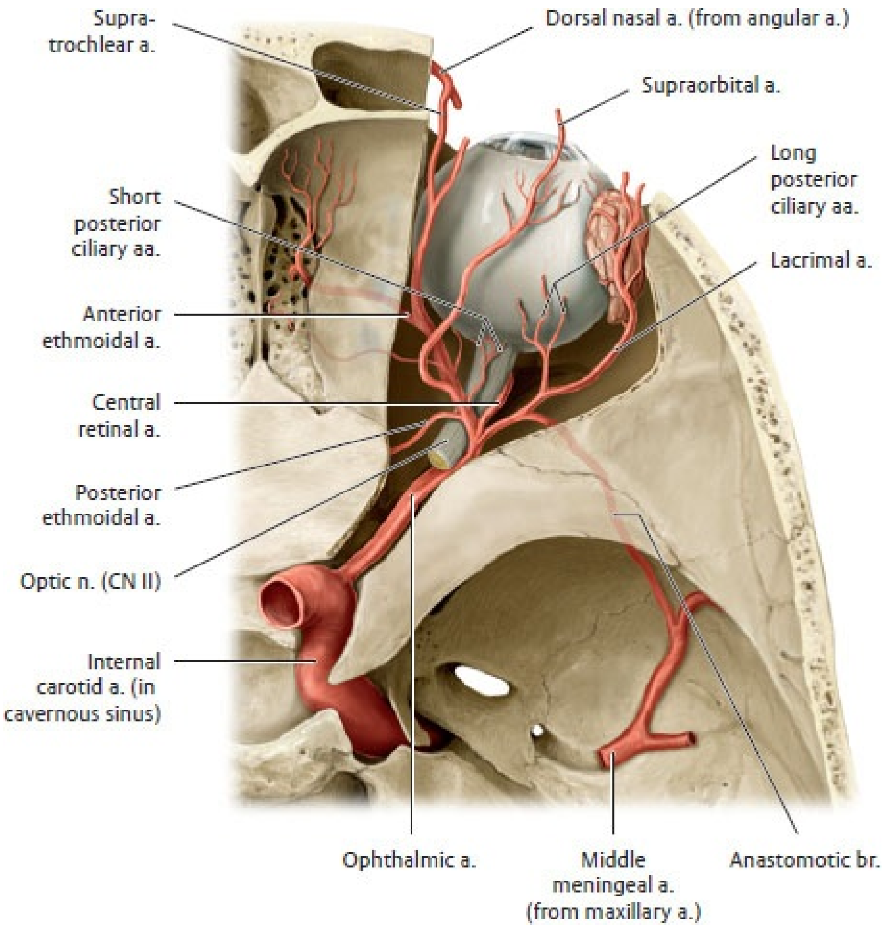

Supra-trochlear a.
Dorsal nasal a. (from angular a.)
Supraorbital a.
Long posterior ciliary aa.
Short posterior ciliary aa.
Lacrimal a.
Anterior ethmoidal a.
Central retinal a.
Posterior ethmoidal a.
Optic n. (CN II)
Internal carotid a. (in cavernous sinus)
Ophthalmic a.
Middle meningeal a. (from maxillary a.)
Anastomotic br.

Fig. 28.12 Arteries of the orbit

Right orbit, superior view. *Opened:* optic canal and orbital roof. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustra-tions by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

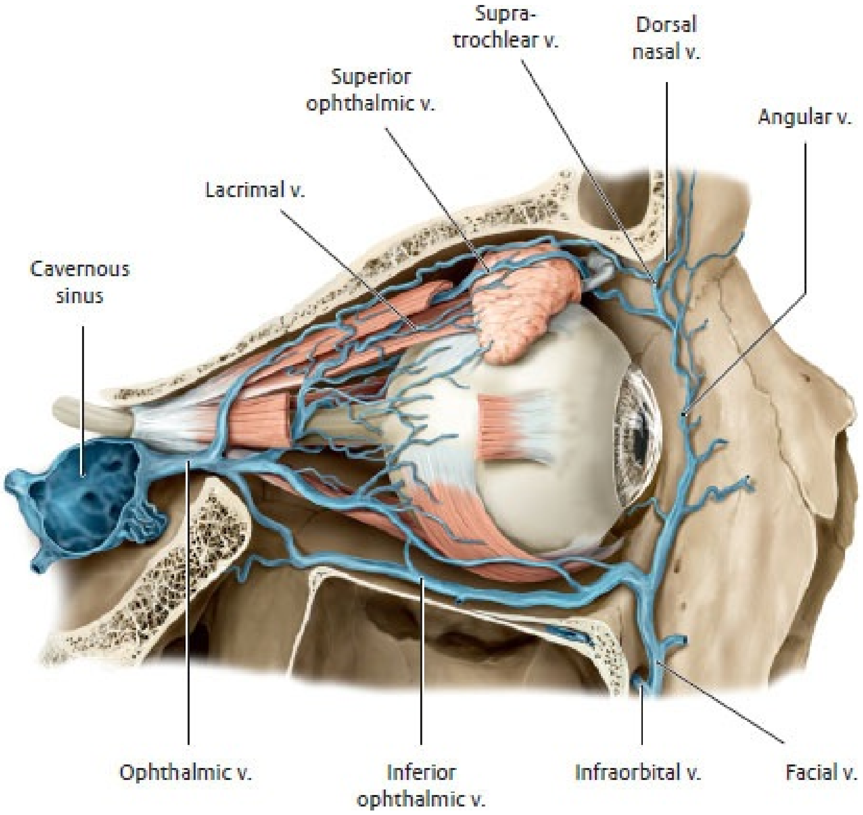

Supra-
trochlear v.
Dorsal
nasal v.
Superior
ophthalmic v.
Angular v.
Lacrimal v.
Cavernous
sinus
Ophthalmic v.
Inferior
ophthalmic v.
Infraorbital v.
Facial v.

Fig. 28.13 Veins of the orbit

Right orbit, lateral view. *Removed:*lateral orbital wall. **Opened:** maxillary sinus. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

Table 28.3 Nerves of the Orbit

Nerve	Nerve Fibers	Distribution
Optic (CN II)	Special sensory for vision	Retina
Oculomotor (CN III)	Somatic motor	Muscles of the orbit, except the lateral rectus and superior oblique muscles
	Parasympathetic: synapse in ciliary ganglion; postsynaptic	Pupilary sphincter muscle and ciliary body

	fibers travel with short ciliary nn. (CN V_1)	
Trochlear (CN IV)	Somatic motor	Superior oblique muscle
Ophthalmic (CN V_1)		
Lacrimal	General sensory	Lacrimal gland, upper lateral eyeball
Frontal		
- Supratrochlear	General sensory	Anterior scalp
- Supraorbital	General sensory	Anterior scalp
Short ciliary	General sensory	Ciliary body and iris
	Parasympathetic (CN III) and sympathetic	
Nasociliary		
- Anterior and posterior ethmoidal	General sensory	Nasal cavity, ethmoid and sphenoid sinuses
- Infratrochlear	General sensory	External nose, conjunctiva, lacrimal sac
- Long ciliary	General sensory	Iris and cornea
	Sympathetic (carotid plexus)	Pupil dilator
Abducent (CN VI)	Somatic motor	Lateral rectus muscle
Facial (CN VII)	Parasympathetic: synapse in pterygopalatine ganglion; postsynaptic fibers travel with zygomatic n. (CN V_2)	Lacrimal gland

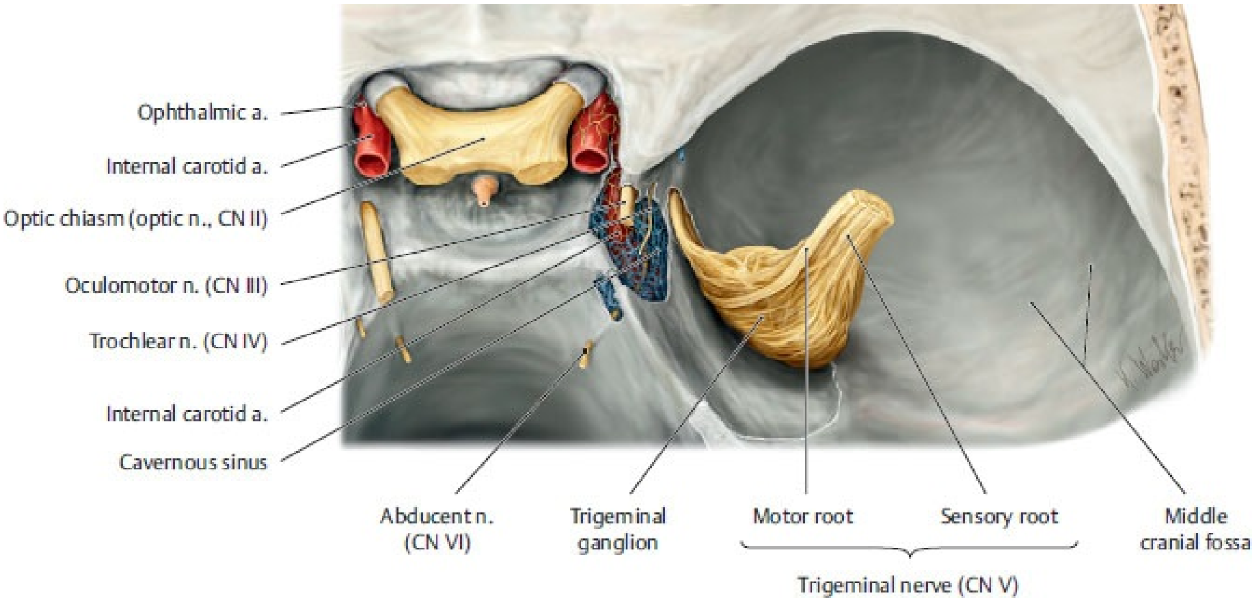

Ophthalmic a.
Internal carotid a.
Optic chiasm (optic n., CN II)
Oculomotor n. (CN III)
Trochlear n. (CN IV)
Internal carotid a.
Cavernous sinus
Abducent n. (CN VI)
Trigeminal ganglion
Motor root
Sensory root
Middle cranial fossa
Trigeminal nerve (CN V)

Fig. 28.14 Intracavernous course of the cranial nerves that enter the orbit

Superior view of the sella turcica and middle cranial fossae, right side. The lateral and superior walls of the cavernous sinus have been opened and the trigeminal ganglion has been retracted laterally. The three cranial nerves that supply the ocular muscles (CN III, CN IV, and CN VI) pass through the cavernous sinus with CN V_1 and CN V_2 and the internal carotid artery. All of the nerves course along the lateral wall of the sinus except CN VI, which runs directly through the sinus in close proximity to the artery. Because of this relationship, the CN VI may be damaged as a result of a sinus thrombosis or an intracavernous aneurysm of the internal carotid artery. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

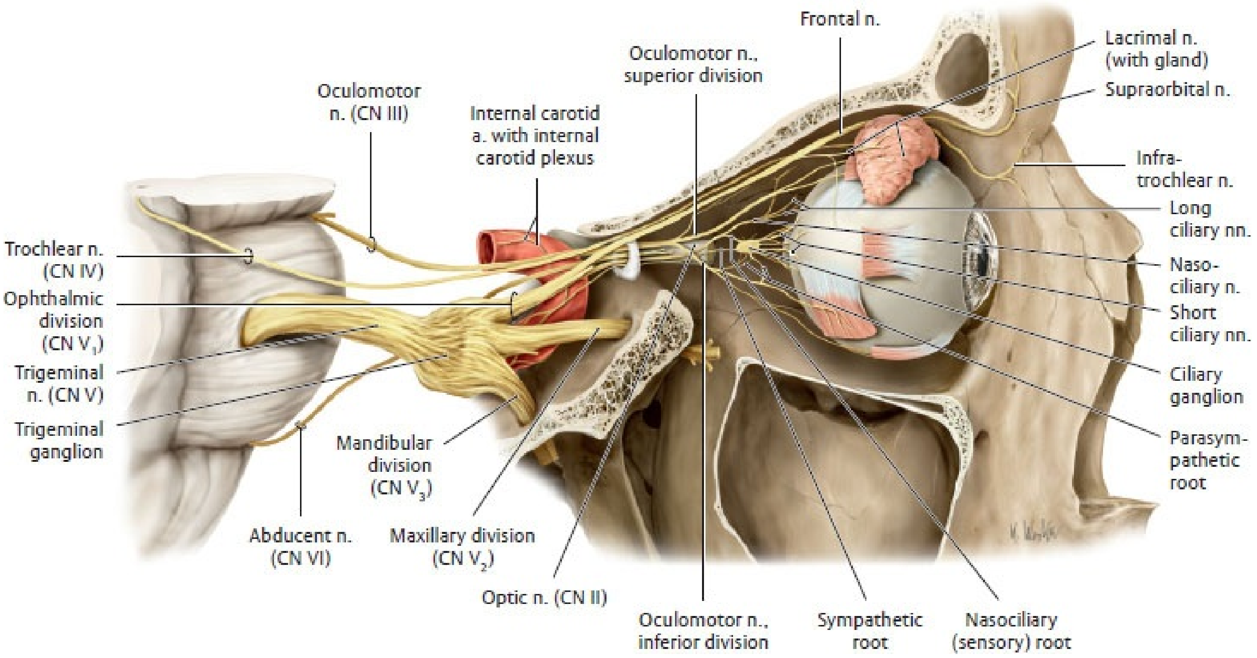

Frontal n.
Oculomotor n., superior division
Lacrimal n. (with gland)
Supraorbital n.
Oculomotor n. (CN III)
Internal carotid a. with internal carotid plexus
Infra-trochlear n.
Long ciliary nn.
Trochlear n. (CN IV)
Naso-ciliary n.
Ophthalmic division (CN V_1)
Short ciliary nn.
Trigeminal n. (CN V)
Ciliary ganglion
Trigeminal ganglion
Mandibular division (CN V_3)
Parasym-pathetic root
Abducent n. (CN VI)
Maxillary division (CN V_2)
Optic n. (CN II)
Oculomotor n., inferior division
Sympathetic root
Nasociliary (sensory) root

Fig. 28.15 Innervation of the orbit

Right orbit, lateral view. *Removed:* Temporal bony wall. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

28.2 The Ear

The ear, which contains the organs for hearing and equilibrium, is divided into external, middle, and internal parts **(**Fig. 28.16**)**.

The External Ear

The external ear collects and conducts sound.

— The auricle, the visible external part of the ear, is composed mostly of a skeleton of elastic cartilage that is covered by skin (Fig. 28.17).
  - Inferiorly is the soft (non-cartilaginous) **lobule**.
  - Anteriorly, the small part projecting posteriorly over the opening of the auditory canal is the **tragus**, which is separated from the **antitragus** by a small notch.
  - The posterior margin of the auricle is defined by the **helix**, which curves around the **scaphoid fossa** and ends at the **concha**, a depression at the entrance to the auditory canal.
  - The rim of the **antihelix** begins at the antitragus and curves superiorly,

forming the **cymba concha**. Superiorly its crura diverge to form the **triangular fossa**.

- The **external acoustic meatus** (external auditory canal), a canal that extends 2 to 3 cm from the auricle to the tympanic membrane, conducts sound waves toward the middle ear. The outer third of the canal is cartilaginous, and the inner two thirds are formed by the temporal bone. Ceruminous and sebaceous glands in the subcutaneous tissue lining the cartilaginous part secrete earwax.

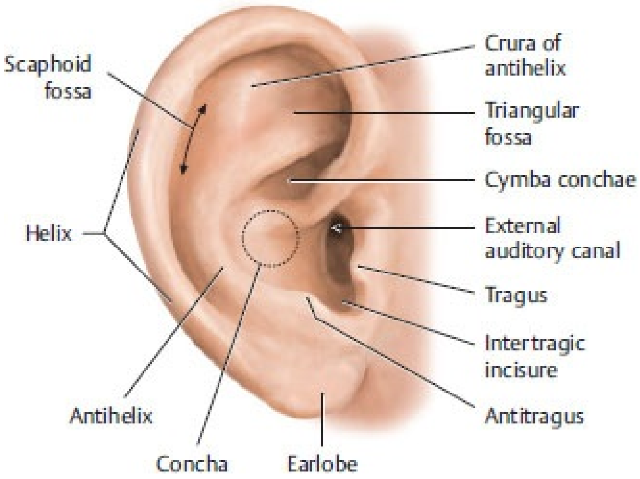

Scaphoid fossa
Crura of antihelix
Triangular fossa
Cymba conchae
Helix
External auditory canal
Tragus
Intertragic incisure
Antihelix
Antitragus
Concha
Earlobe

Fig. 28.17 Structure of the auricle

Right auricle, lateral view. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- The **tympanic membrane**, a thin, transparent membrane, separates the external and middle ear.
  - Skin covers the tympanic membrane externally, and a mucous membrane lines it internally.
  - The concave outer surface of the membrane has a central conelike depression, the **umbo**.
  - A thin, superior portion of the membrane, the **flaccid part** (pars flaccida), is distinct from the rest of the membrane, the **tense part** (pars tensa).

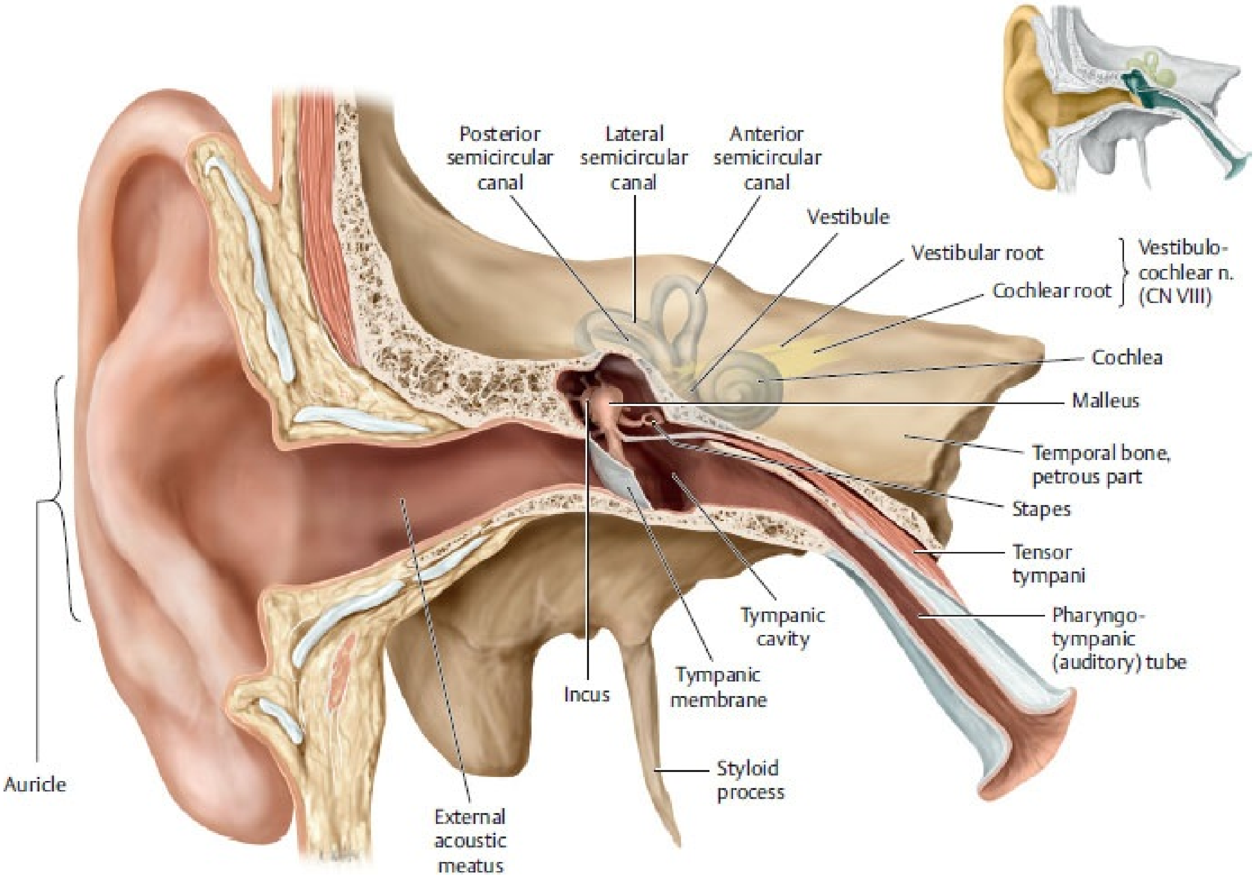
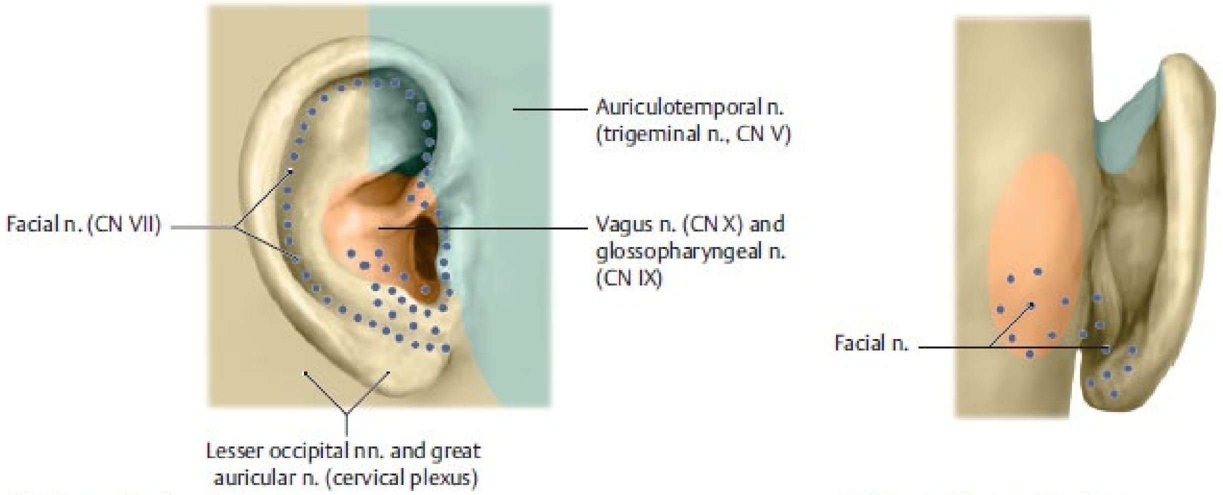

Posterior semicircular canal
Lateral semicircular canal
Anterior semicircular canal
Vestibule
Vestibular root
Cochlear root
Vestibulo-cochlear n. (CN VIII)
Cochlea
Malleus
Temporal bone, petrous part
Stapes
Tensor tympani
Pharyngo-tympanic (auditory) tube
Tympanic cavity
Tympanic membrane
Incus
Styloid process
External acoustic meatus
Auricle

Fig. 28.16 Ear

Coronal section through the right ear, anterior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Auriculotemporal n. (trigeminal n., CN V)
Facial n. (CN VII)
Vagus n. (CN X) and glossopharyngeal n. (CN IX)
Lesser occipital nn. and great auricular n. (cervical plexus)
Facial n.

A Right auricle, lateral view.

B Right auricle, posterior view.

Fig. 28.18 Innervation of the auricle

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- Posterior auricular and anterior auricular arteries, branches of the superficial temporal artery, supply the external ear.
- Sensation from the external ear is transmitted by the cervical plexus and three cranial nerves **(Fig. 28.18)**:
  - the great auricular nerve (cervical plexus) from the auricle;
  - the auriculotemporal nerve, a branch of CN V_3, from the auricle and external surface of the tympanic membrane;
  - the auricular branch of the vagus nerve (CN X) from the external surface of the tympanic membrane; and
  - the glossopharyngeal nerve (CN IX) from the internal surface of the tympanic membrane.

The Middle Ear

- The middle ear, also known as the **tympanic cavity**, is an air-filled chamber housed in the petrous portion of the temporal bone **(Figs. 28.19, 28.20, 28.21)**.
  - Anteriorly, a **pharyngotympanic tube**, which connects the tympanic cavity to the nasopharynx, helps equalize pressure in the middle ear.
  - Posteriorly, the **aditus** (inlet) to the **mastoid antrum** (a cavity in the mastoid process of the temporal bone) connects the tympanic cavity to the bony meshwork of **mastoid air cells**.

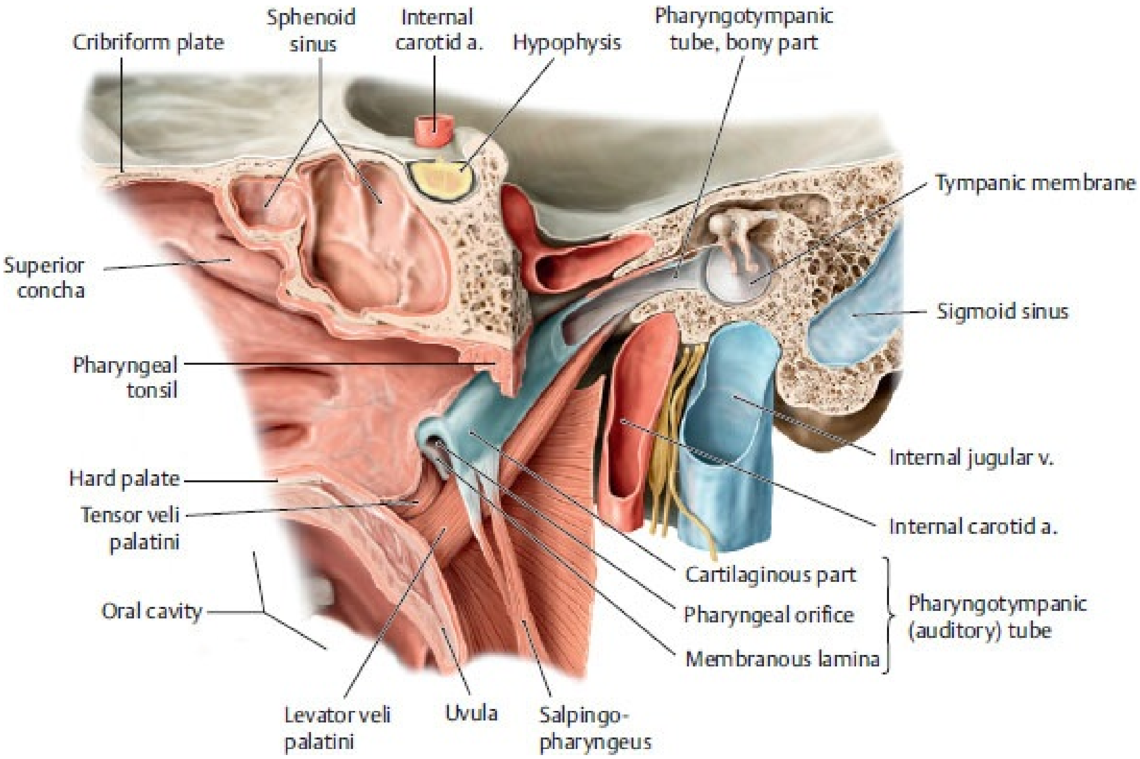

Cribriform plate
Sphenoid sinus
Internal carotid a.
Hypophysis
Pharyngotympanic tube, bony part
Tympanic membrane
Superior concha
Sigmoid sinus
Pharyngeal tonsil
Internal jugular v.
Hard palate
Tensor veli palatini
Internal carotid a.
Oral cavity
Cartilaginous part
Pharyngeal orifice
Membranous lamina
Pharyngotympanic (auditory) tube
Levator veli palatini
Uvula
Salpingo-pharyngeus

Fig. 28.19 Tympanic cavity and pharyngotympanic tube

Medial view of opened tympanic cavity. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

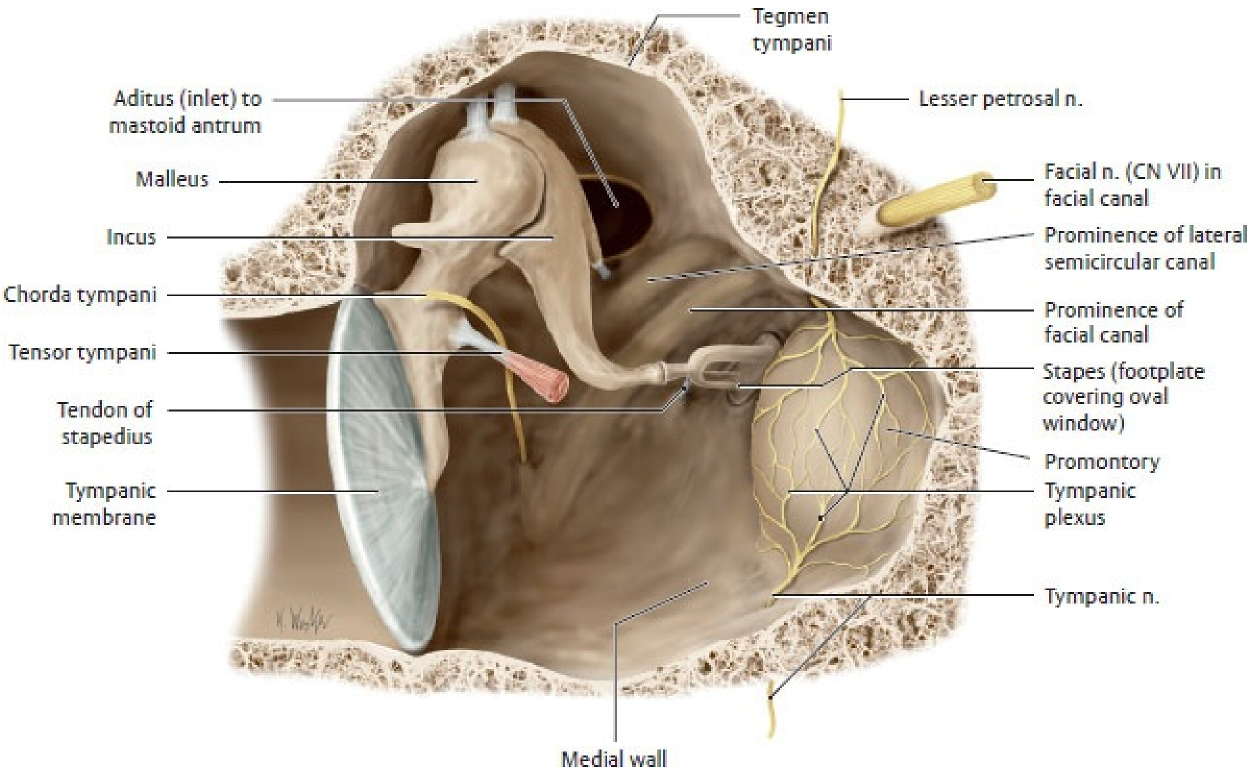

Tegmen tympani
Aditus (inlet) to mastoid antrum
Lesser petrosal n.
Malleus
Facial n. (CN VII) in facial canal
Incus
Prominence of lateral semicircular canal
Chorda tympani
Prominence of facial canal
Tensor tympani
Stapes (footplate covering oval window)
Tendon of stapedius
Promontory
Tympanic membrane
Tympanic plexus
Tympanic n.
Medial wall

Fig. 28.20 Tympanic cavity

Right tympanic cavity, anterior view. *Removed:* Anterior wall. (From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

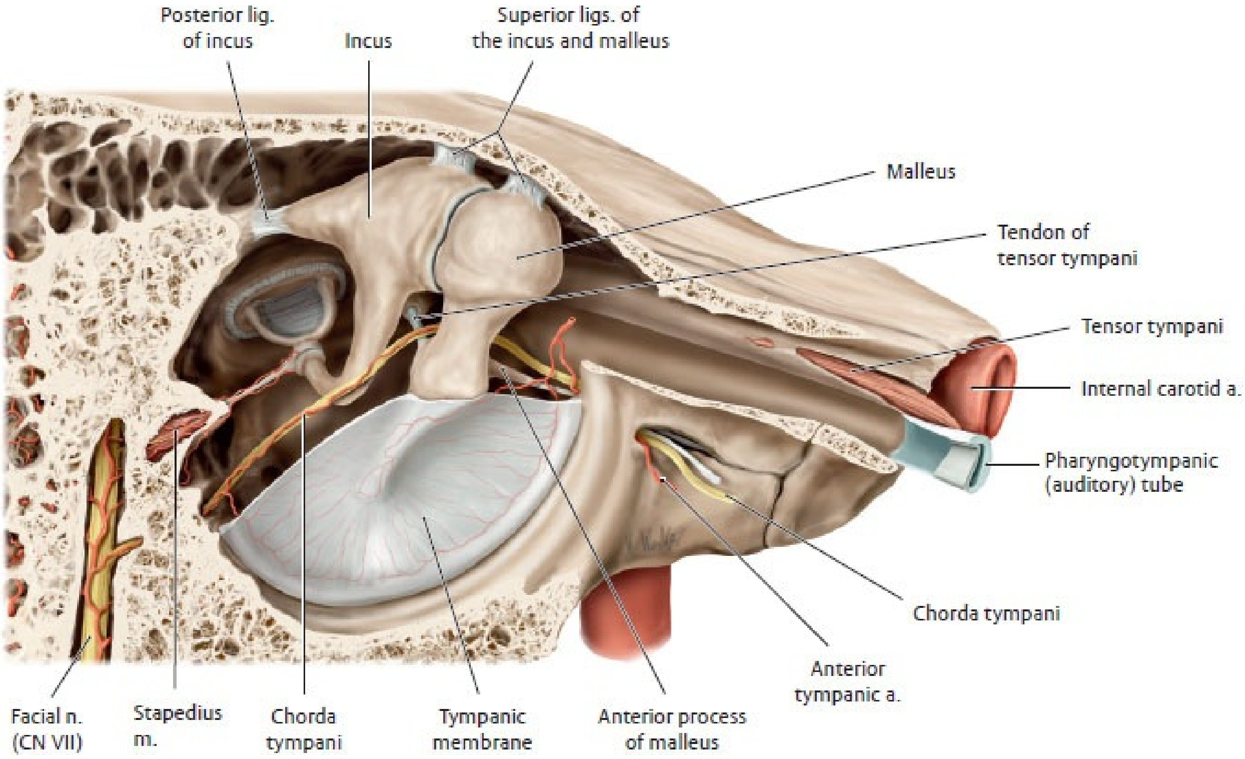

Posterior lig. of incus
Incus
Superior ligs. of the incus and malleus
Malleus
Tendon of tensor tympani
Tensor tympani
Internal carotid a.
Pharyngotympanic (auditory) tube
Chorda tympani
Anterior tympanic a.
Facial n. (CN VII)
Stapedius m.
Chorda tympani
Tympanic membrane
Anterior process of malleus

Fig. 28.21 Muscles and neurovascular relations in the tympanic cavity

Right middle ear, lateral view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

  - A thin bony plate, the **tegmen tympani**, forms the roof of the tympanic cavity and separates it from the middle cranial fossa.
  - The medial wall, which separates the tympanic cavity from the internal ear, has a **promontory**, covered by the tympanic nerve plexus, and two openings, the **oval** and **round windows** (see Fig. 28.20).

— The **auditory ossicles**, the **malleus**, **incus**, and **stapes** bones of the middle ear, articulate with each other through synovial joints and form a bony chain between the tympanic mem-brane and the oval window of the internal ear.

  - The handle of the malleus is embedded in the tym-panic membrane, and its head articulates with the incus.
  - The **incus** articulates with the malleus and stapes.
  - The head of the **stapes** articulates with the incus, and its base fits into the oval window of the bony labyrinth of the internal ear.

— Muscles of the middle ear dampen the movements of the auditory ossicles, thereby lessening the sound transmitted from the external ear.

  - The **tensor tympani**, which is innervated by a branch of the mandibular nerve (CN V_3), lessens the damage from loud sounds by tensing the tympanic membrane.

  - The **stapedius**, which is innervated by a branch of the facial nerve (CN VII), dampens the vibrations of the stapes on the oval window.

- The ascending pharyngeal, maxillary, and posterior auricular branches of the external carotid artery and a small branch of the internal carotid artery supply the middle ear.
- The chorda tympani, a branch of the facial nerve (CN VII), has no branches in the middle ear but passes between the malleus and incus to exit the cavity through a small opening in the temporal bone.
- The glossopharyngeal nerve (CN IX) transmits sensation from the tympanic cavity and pharyngotympanic tube. Pregangli-onic parasympathetic fibers carried in the tympanic nerve (a branch of the glossopharyngeal nerve) synapse in the otic ganglion. The postganglionic fibers join with sympathetic fibers of the internal carotid plexus to form the tympanic plexus (see **Fig. 26.29**).

BOX 28.7: CLINICAL CORRELATION

OTITIS MEDIA

Otitis media is an infection of the middle ear that occurs com-monly in children often following an upper respiratory tract infec-tion. Fluid that accumulates in the middle ear can temporarily diminish hearing, and inflammation of the lining of the tympanic cavity can block the pharyngotympanic tube.

BOX 28.8: CLINICAL CORRELATION

HYPERACUSIS

The stapedius muscle protects the delicate inner ear by modi-fying the vibrations of very loud sounds as they are transmitted through the middle ear to the stapes. Paralysis of the muscle resulting from a lesion of the facial nerve causes an extreme sen-sitivity to sound, a condition known as hyperacusis.

The Internal Ear

- The internal ear, which contains the organ for hearing, the auditory apparatus, and the organ for balance, the vestibular apparatus, is encased within the petrous part of the temporal bone **(Figs. 28.22** and **28.23)** and consists of the following:
  - A bony **otic capsule**, which forms the walls of the bony labyrinth

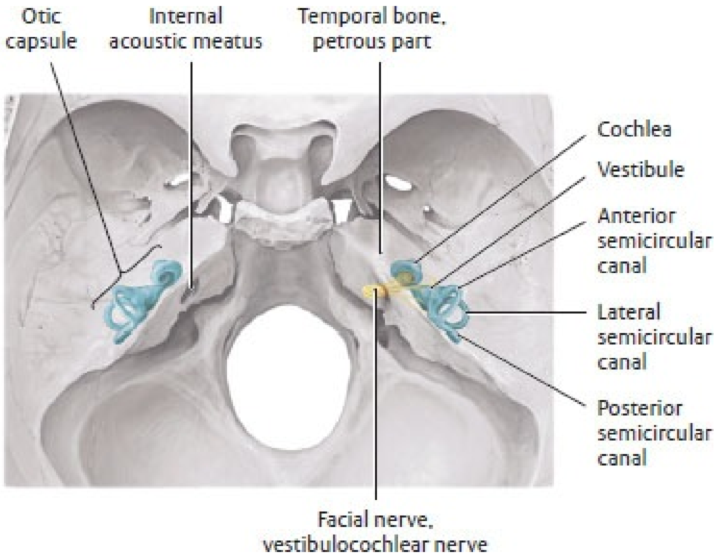

Otic capsule
Internal acoustic meatus
Temporal bone, petrous part
Cochlea
Vestibule
Anterior semicircular canal
Lateral semicircular canal
Posterior semicircular canal
Facial nerve, vestibulocochlear nerve

Fig. 28.22 Projection of the otic capsule of the inner ear onto the skull

Petrous part of the temporal bone, superior view. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

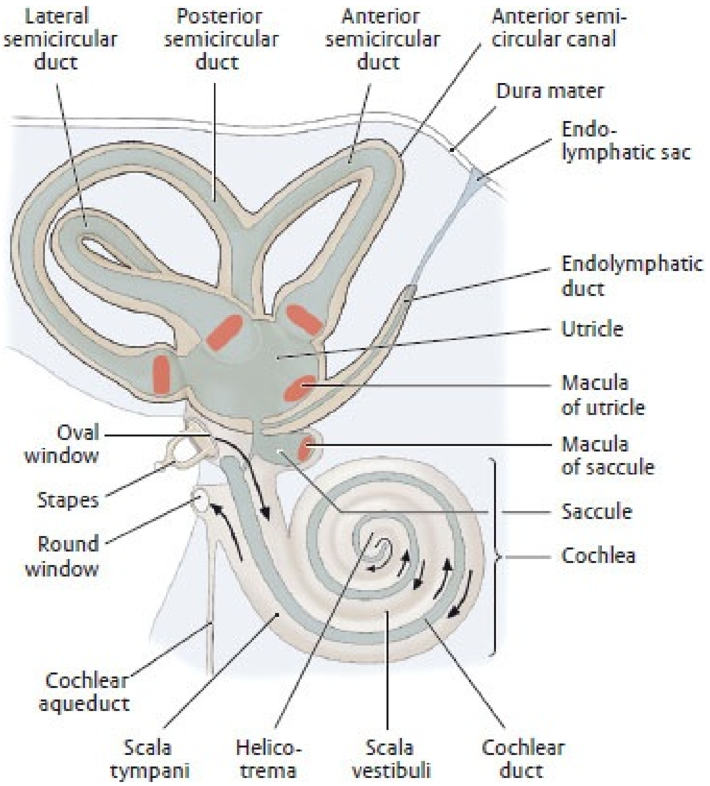
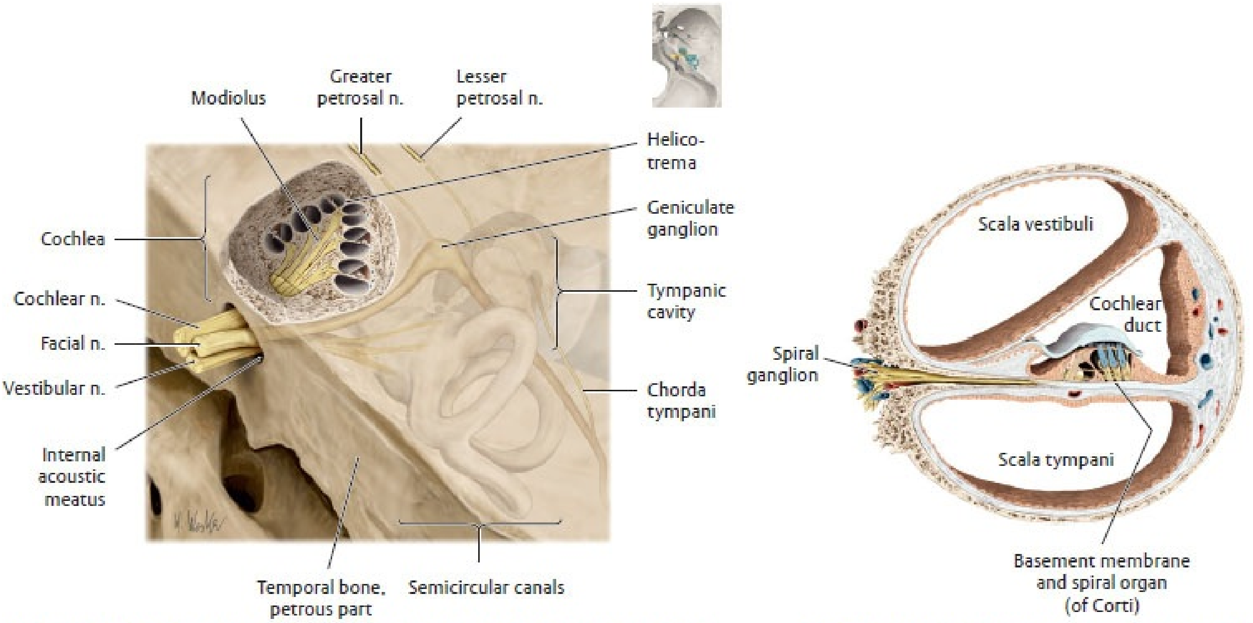

Lateral semicircular duct
Posterior semicircular duct
Anterior semicircular duct
Anterior semi-circular canal
Dura mater
Endo-lymphatic sac
Endolymphatic duct
Utricle
Macula of utricle
Oval window
Macula of saccule
Stapes
Saccule
Round window
Cochlea
Cochlear aqueduct
Scala tympani
Helico-trema
Scala vestibuli
Cochlear duct

Fig. 28.23 Schematic of the inner ear

Right lateral view. The inner ear is embedded within the petrous part of the temporal bone. It is composed of a membranous labyrinth filled with endolymph floating within a similarly shaped bony labyrinth filled with perilymph. (From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)


Modiolus
Greater petrosal n.
Lesser petrosal n.
Helico-trema
Geniculate ganglion
Cochlea
Cochlear n.
Facial n.
Vestibular n.
Tympanic cavity
Chorda tympani
Internal acoustic meatus
Temporal bone, petrous part
Semicircular canals
Scala vestibuli
Cochlear duct
Spiral ganglion
Scala tympani
Basement membrane and spiral organ (of Corti)

A Location of the cochlea. Superior view of the petrous part of the temporal bone with the cochlea sectioned transversely.

B Compartments of the cochlear canal, cross section.

Fig. 28.24 Auditory apparatus

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

- A **bony labyrinth**, a series of chambers and canals within the otic capsule containing the fluid **perilymph**. It includes the **cochlea**, the **vestibule**, and the **semi-circular canals**.
- A **membranous labyrinth**, a series of sacs and ducts sus-pended within the bony labyrinth, and filled with a fluid, **endolymph**. The membranous labyrinth is made up of
  - the **cochlear duct** contained within the cochlea,
  - the **utricle** and **saccule** contained within the vestibule, and
  - the **semicircular ducts** contained within the semi circular canals.

— The auditory apparatus consists of the following:

- The **cochlea**, a space within the bony labyrinth that includes the bony **cochlear** (spiral) **canal**, which makes 2.5 turns around its axis, the

modiolus (**Fig. 28.24**). The basal turn of the cochlea forms the promontory on the medial wall of the middle ear and contains the round window, which is closed by a membrane.

- The **cochlear duct**, part of the membranous labyrinth, which is a blind-ended duct filled with endolymph and suspended within the cochlear canal (**Fig. 28.24**):
  - The cochlear duct divides the cochlear canal into two channels, the **scala vestibuli** and **scala tympani**, which are continuous with each other at the helicotrema, a space at the apex of the canal.
  - At the base of the cochlea, the scala vestibuli lies against the oval window, and the scala tympani lies against the round window.
- The **spiral organ** (of Corti), which contains the sensory receptors for hearing, and is embedded in the **basement membrane** on the floor of the cochlear duct

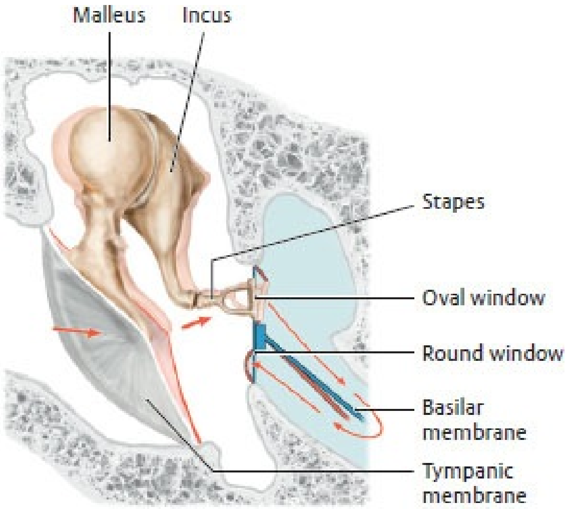


Fig. 28.25 Propagation of sound waves by the ossicular chain

(From Schuenke M, Schulte E, Schumacher U. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy, Vol 3. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 3rd ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

— The sequence of sound transmission through the ear involves (**Fig. 28.25**) the following:

1. Transmission of sound waves from the external ear and external acoustic meatus to the tympanic membrane of the middle ear. The waves vibrate the auditory ossicles and, in turn, the oval window that is attached to the base of the stapes.
2. Transmission of vibrations of the oval window to the perilymph of the

scala vestibuli, which creates pressure waves that displace the basement membrane and spiral organ of the cochlear duct. Nerve endings in the spiral organ transmit impulses to the brain along the cochlear nerve.

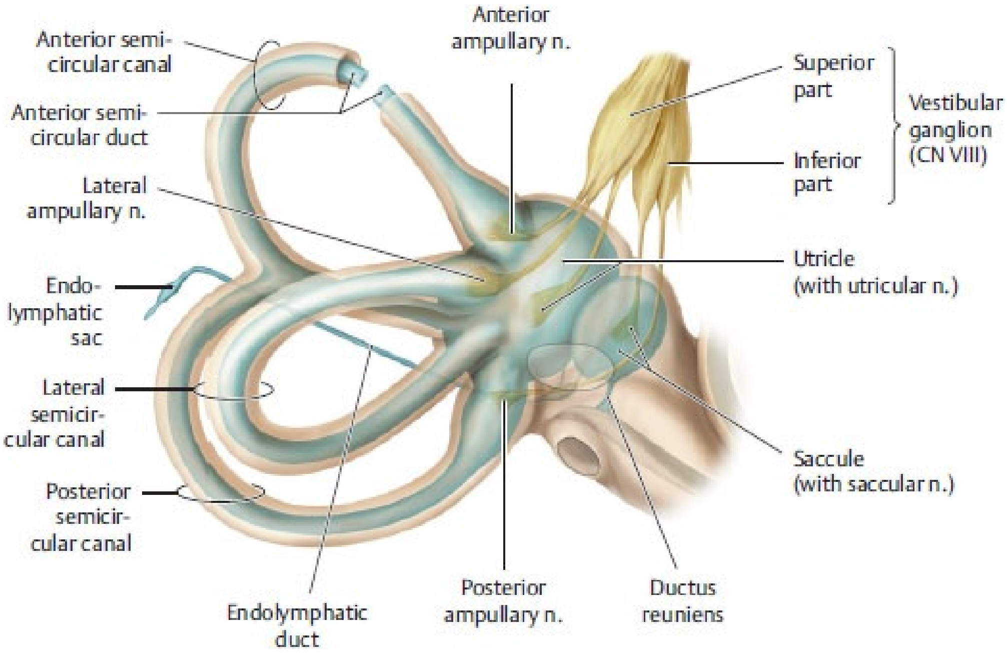

Anterior semicircular canal
Anterior ampullary n.
Superior part
Vestibular ganglion (CN VIII)
Anterior semicircular duct
Inferior part
Lateral ampullary n.
Utricle (with utricular n.)
Endolymphatic sac
Lateral semicircular canal
Saccule (with saccular n.)
Posterior semicircular canal
Endolymphatic duct
Posterior ampullary n.
Ductus reuniens

Fig. 28.26 Structure of the vestibular apparatus

(From Gilroy AM, MacPherson BR, Wikenheiser JC. Atlas of Anatomy. Illustrations by Voll M and Wesker K. 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2020.)

3. Transmission of the pressure waves of the perilymph from the scala vestibuli along the scala tympani to the round window, with dissipation into the tympanic cavity.

— The vestibular apparatus consists of the following (Fig. 28.26):

- The vestibule of the bony labyrinth that communicates with the cochlea and semicircular canals
    - A small extension, the **vestibular aqueduct**, communi-cates with the posterior cranial fossa and contains the **endolymphatic sac**, a membranous storage space for excess endolymph.
- The utricle and saccule, part of the membranous labyrinth, which lie within the vestibule
    - The utricle communicates with the semicircular ducts; the saccule communicates with the cochlear duct.
    - Both the uticle and saccule contain specialized sensory fields called

        maculae, which occupy different positions in space and are sensitive to movement of the endo-lymph in the horizontal and vertical planes.
    - Three semicircular canals of the bony labyrinth, which are arranged perpendicular to one another and communicate with the vestibule. Each canal has a swelling at one end, the **bony ampulla**.
    - Three semicircular ducts, parts of the membranous labyrinth contained within the semicircular canals, that communicate with the utricle
        - An **ampulla** at one end of each semicircular duct contains the **ampullary crest**, an area of sensory epithelium. The ampullary crests respond to motion of the endolymph within the ducts caused by rotation of the head.
- The membranous labyrinth receives its blood supply from the internal auditory artery, a branch of the basilar artery via its anterior inferior cerebellar artery.
- The **vestibular** and **cochlear nerves** within the internal acoustic meatus form the vestibulocochlear nerve (CN VIII) (see **Fig. 26.27**)
    - The vestibular nerve innervates organs of the vestibular apparatus: the maculae of the utricle and saccule and the ampullary crests of the semicircular canals. Neuron cell bodies lie within the vestibular ganglion in the internal acoustic meatus.
    - The cochlear nerve innervates the spiral organ (of Corti) in the cochlea. Neuron cell bodies lie in the spiral ganglion of the cochlea at the modiolus.

BOX 28.9: CLINICAL CORRELATION

MENIERE’S DISEASE

Meniere’s disease is an inner ear disorder resulting from block-age of the cochlear duct. Recurring episodes are characterized by tinnitus (ringing or buzzing in the ear), vertigo (the illusion of movement), and hearing loss. The hearing loss may fluctuate in intensity and from ear to ear but eventually becomes permanent.

BOX 28.10: CLINICAL CORRELATION

VERTIGO, TINNITUS, AND HEARING LOSS

Trauma to the ear can cause three types of symptoms: vertigo, tinnitus, and hearing loss. Vertigo refers to the illusion of move-ment, or dizziness, and results from injury to the semicircular canals. Tinnitus refers to a ringing in the ears and is a disorder involving the cochlear duct. Causes of hearing loss can be either peripheral or centrally located. Conductive hearing loss occurs when there is impaired transmission of sound waves through the auditory canal to the auditory ossicles. Sensorineural hearing loss occurs when there is damage to the pathway between the cochlea and the brain.

29 Clinical Imaging Basics of the Head and Neck

Ultrasound provides excellent high-resolution detail of superficial structures of the neck (such as the thyroid **(Fig. 29.1)** and neck blood vessels) quickly, inexpensively, and safely—that is, without radiation exposure. Evaluation of deeper and intracranial struc-tures requires computed tomography (CT) or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI). CT is fast, and best for emergent situations, such as trauma or other acute clinical scenarios (**Fig. 29.2**). CT is also superior in evaluation of the bones of the skull and skull base. MRI, however, is the workhorse for nonemergent imaging of the head and neck. MRI's superior soft tissue contrast makes it highly suitable for the brain, and for evaluating tumors of the head and neck **(Table 29.1)**.

Vascular structures are an important focus in the radiology of the head and neck anatomy. Vessels can be imaged by ultrasound **(Fig. 29.3),** CT angiogram, MRI angiogram, or fluoroscopic cathe-ter-based angiogram **(Fig. 29.4)**. For evaluating the bone and air-filled spaces of the skull, CT provides the clearest detail **(Fig. 29.5)** but the soft tissues of the brain are seen best with MRI **(Figs. 29.6** and **29.7)**.

X-rays of the skull have a limited clinical role but can be useful as a screening evaluation for developmental or acquired abnor-malities of the cranium (such as abnormal skull shape or size) in children (**Fig. 29.8**).

Table 29.1 Suitability of Imaging Modalities for the Head and Neck

Modality	Clinical Uses
Radiographs (X-rays)	Used primarily for evaluation of the skull, and the soft tissues of the neck in children. Also used with angiographic studies (fluoroscopy) of the neck and intracranial vessels
CT (computed tomography)	Excellent for high detail evaluation of the skull and skull base, sinuses, cervical spine, and for evaluation of the deeper spaces of the

	neck
MRI (magnetic resonance imaging)	Excellent for evaluation of the soft tissues of the neck, orbits, cranial nerves and brain
Ultrasound	Used primarily for the thyroid and neck vessels. Also used for evaluation of other abnormalities in the more peripheral soft tissue structures of the neck especially in children (e.g., lymph nodes, branchial cleft cysts, thyroglossal duct cysts).

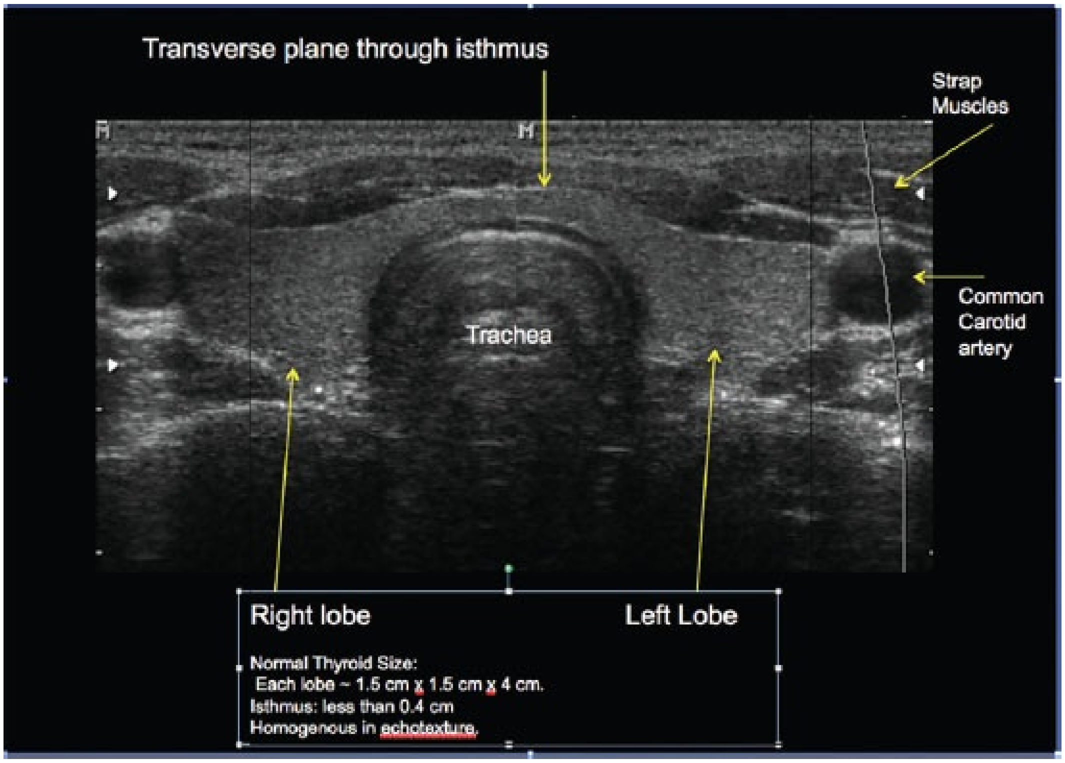

Transverse plane through isthmus
Strap Muscles
Common Carotid artery
Trachea
Right lobe
Left Lobe
Normal Thyroid Size:
Each lobe ~ 1.5 cm x 1.5 cm x 4 cm.
Isthmus: less than 0.4 cm
Homogenous in echotexture.

Fig. 29.1 Ultrasound of the thyroid gland

Transverse (axial) plane.

The thyroid gland is perfectly suited for ultrasound because of its position deep to the skin and subcutaneous tissues of the neck. This allows the use of a high-frequency linear transducer probe, which gives the highest resolution possible with ultrasound. The thyroid gland is homogeneously echoic, slightly more echogenic (whiter) than muscle. Note how the echogenic fascial planes delineate the strap muscles. The common carotid artery appears black because of the fluid (blood) it contains.

Ultrasound waves do not travel well through air, so the trachea is seen as a curved line anteriorly where the sound waves bounce off the air-filled structure. (Courtesy of Joseph Makris, MD, Baystate Medical Center.)

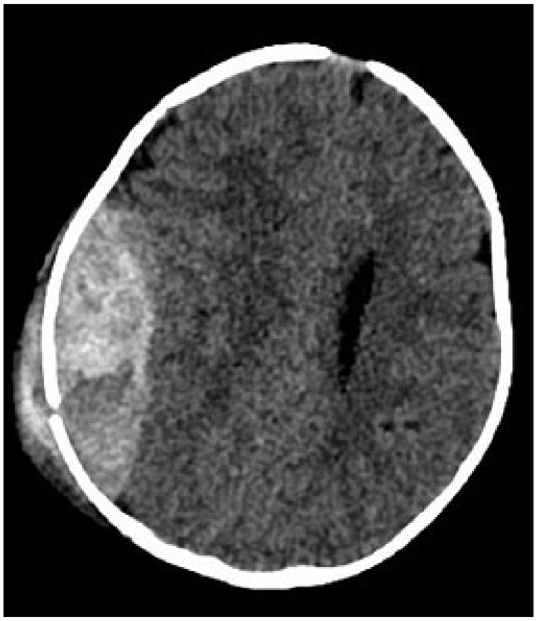
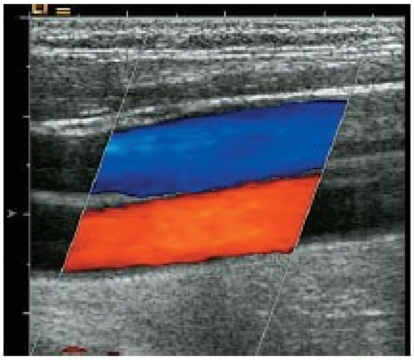
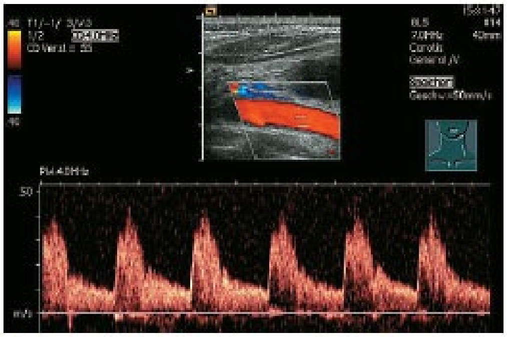


Fig. 29.2 CT of the head showing large epidural hematoma

This is a single axial image from a CT scan of the head in an unconscious patient after a severe motor vehicle accident. There is a large right-sided epidural hematoma (*white* = acute blood in the brain) compressing and displacing the brain. This patient requires immediate surgical evacuation of the hematoma. (Courtesy of Joseph Makris, MD, Baystate Medical Center.)



A Color Doppler is used to assess motion, more specifically, flow within a blood vessel. The trapezoid-shaped box within the image is the color Doppler "window." Outside of this window is simply gray scale ultrasound. Notice that in gray scale, blood vessels are *black*. The *red* and *blue* color scales indicate direction of flow and give an estimate of velocity. (From Schmidt G. Clinical Companions Ultrasound, Stuttgart: Thieme Publishers; 2007.)



B Spectral ultrasound is used to give a graphical representation of the flow velocity vs. time. In this image, the spectral window is the small parallel lines placed within the deeper vessel. The waveform shown is arterial. Note the systolic peak and diastolic plateau. This deeper vessel is the common carotid artery. (From Schmidt G. Clinical Companions Ultrasound. Stuttgart: Thieme Publishers; 2007.)

Fig. 29.3 Ultrasound of the common carotid artery and jugular vein

The skin surface is at the top of the image.

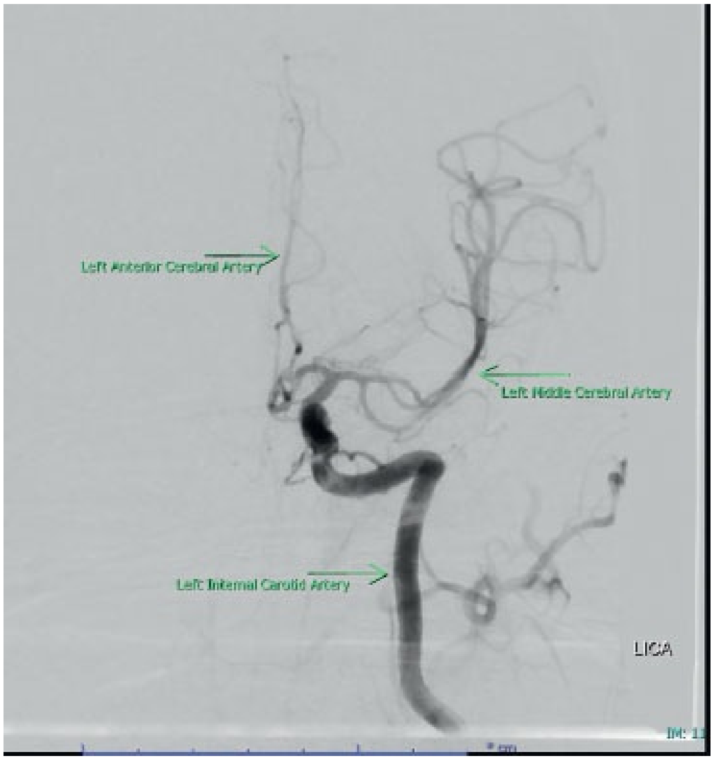

Left Anterior Cerebral Artery
Left Middle Cerebral Artery
Left Internal Carotid Artery
LICA
IM: 11
cm

Fig. 29.4 Angiogram of the left internal carotid artery

Anteroposterior view.

In this fluoroscopic study, bones are digitally subtracted in order to isolate the vessels. The image is a photo negative of the x-ray in which contrast in the vessels appears black. The catheter, inserted into the patient's groin and threaded through the aorta, enters the left internal carotid artery. Contrast material is then injected directly into the artery, and fluoroscopic x-rays are taken of the area during the injection. Note that in the normal condition, blood vessels are smooth and without focal or diffuse dilation and the caliber of the vessels is uniform, tapering slightly as they progress distally, without narrowing or ending abruptly. (Courtesy of Joseph Makris, MD, Baystate Medical Center.)

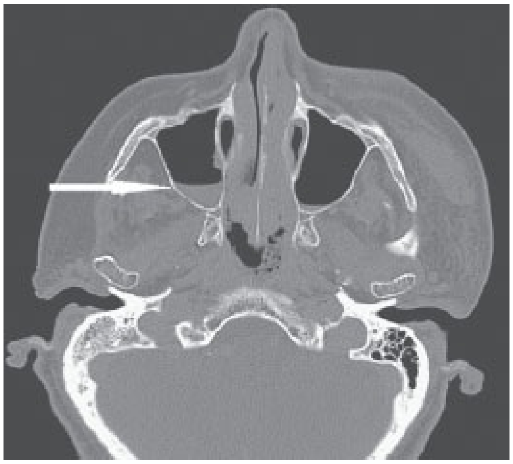


Fig. 29.5 CT of the head through the nasal cavity and maxillary sinuses

Transverse (axial) plane, inferior view.

CT is superior for imaging the paranasal sinuses because the high contrast readily differentiates air and bone from other structures. The air-filled sinuses are sharply contrasted against the soft tissues and even more so against the white bones. This feature also makes CT optimal for skull base imaging. Note in this patient there is some fluid in the right maxillary sinus producing an air-fluid level (patient is supine, so the fluid settles in the posterior aspect of the sinus) and the mastoid air cells on the right are filled with fluid instead of air. Compare the normal left side with the abnormal right side. This patient has right maxillary sinusitis and mastoiditis. (Courtesy of Joseph Makris, MD, Baystate Medical Center.)

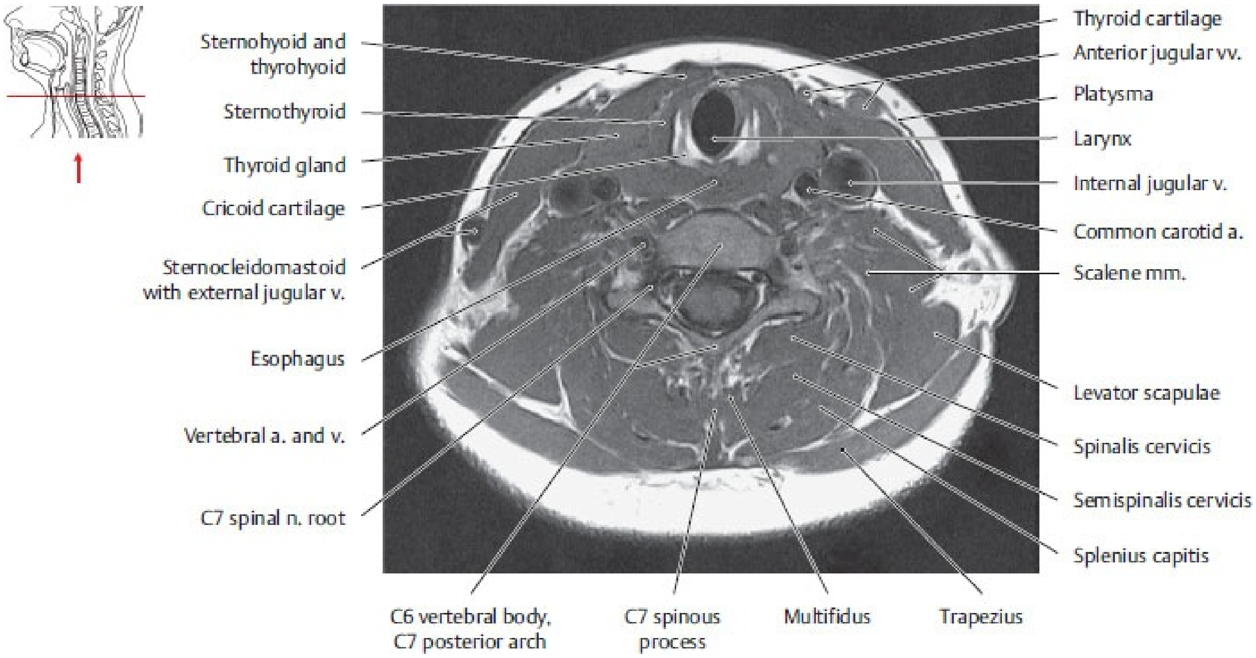

Sternohyoid and thyrohyoid
Sternothyroid
Thyroid gland
Cricoid cartilage
Sternocleidomastoid with external jugular v.
Esophagus
Vertebral a. and v.
C7 spinal n. root
C6 vertebral body, C7 posterior arch
C7 spinous process
Multifidus
Trapezius
Thyroid cartilage
Anterior jugular vv.
Platysma
Larynx
Internal jugular v.
Common carotid a.
Scalene mm.
Levator scapulae
Spinalis cervicis
Semispinalis cervicis
Splenius capitis

Fig. 29.6 MRI of the neck

Transverse (axial) plane, inferior view.

In this MRI sequence, fat is bright and muscles are *gray*. The fat planes between muscles allow differentiation of the adjacent muscles and identification of the spaces of the neck. (From Moeller TB, Reif E. Pocket Atlas of Sectional Anatomy, Vol 1, 4th ed. New York: Thieme Publishers; 2013.)

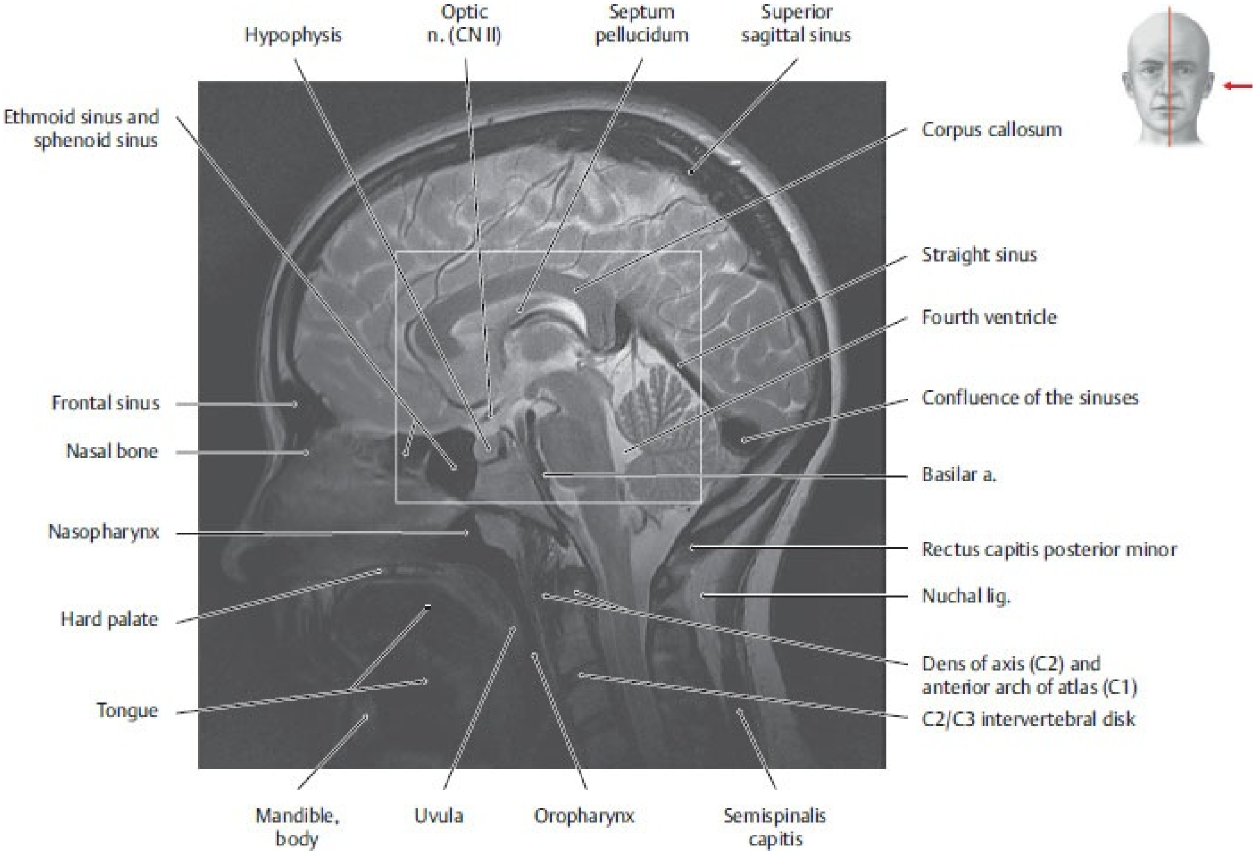

Hypophysis
Optic n. (CN II)
Septum pellucidum
Superior sagittal sinus
Ethmoid sinus and sphenoid sinus
Corpus callosum
Straight sinus
Fourth ventricle
Frontal sinus
Confluence of the sinuses
Nasal bone
Basilar a.
Nasopharynx
Rectus capitis posterior minor
Nuchal lig.
Hard palate
Dens of axis (C2) and anterior arch of atlas (C1)
Tongue
C2/C3 intervertebral disk
Mandible, body
Uvula
Oropharynx
Semispinalis capitis

Fig. 29.7 MRI of the head

Midsagittal section.

In this MRI sequence, fluid is bright (note the bright CSF in the 4th ventricle) and soft tissues are shades of *gray*. However, note the subtle differences in gray scale that allow differentiation of the various soft tissues. This feature makes MRI superior to CT for use in imaging the brain. The brainstem structures and corpus callosum are sharply defined. The small amount of fluid interdigitating between the sulci of the cerebrum highlights the gross architecture of the brain. The layers of the scalp and skull are also well differentiated. (From Moeller TB, Reif E. Pocket Atlas of Sectional Anatomy, Vol 1, 4th ed. New York: Thieme

Publishers; 2013.)

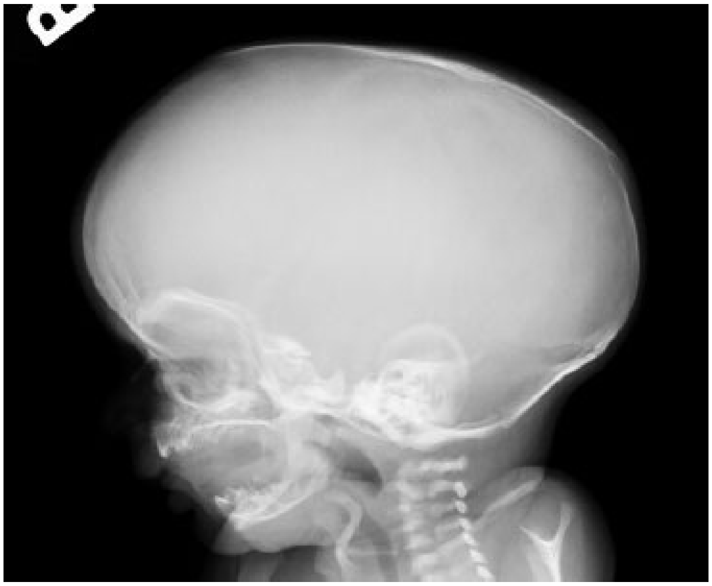


Fig. 29.8 Skull x-ray in infant

This infant was imaged for “abnormal head shape.” Note the elongated appearance of the skull (scaphocephaly) in this child with sagittal suture craniosynostosis—premature fusion of the sagittal suture. The sutures of the skull normally remain open during childhood to allow for brain and head growth. Premature fusion of the sagittal suture limits transverse growth of the skull. To compensate, the skull grows abnormally long. These infants require surgical correction by re-opening the affected fused suture. (Courtesy of Joseph Makris, MD, Baystate Medical Center.)

Unit VIII Review Questions: Head and Neck

1. Which bone of the skull contains the optic foramen, foramen ovale, and foramen spinosum?

A. Frontal
B. Temporal
C. Sphenoid
D. Ethmoid
E. Occipital

2. The internal jugular vein

A. is located within the carotid sheath
B. receives venous drainage from the brain
C. is a tributary of the brachiocephalic vein
D. receives blood from the facial vein
E. All of the above

3. The following structure runs within the falx cerebri.

A. Inferior sagittal sinus
B. Transverse sinus
C. Sigmoid sinus
D. Cavernous sinus
E. 3rd ventricle

4. The vertebral artery

A. ascends through the transverse foramina of all seven cervical vertebra
B. arises from the first part of the axillary artery
C. terminates by joining with the posterior cerebellar artery
D. supplies branches to the thyroid gland
E. supplies the posterior cerebral circulation

5. A man is taken to the emergency department after his wife noticed something wrong with the left side of his face during breakfast. He is found to have a problem with the nerve exiting the stylomastoid foramen, a disorder called Bell's palsy. Which of the following problems is this patient likely to have?

A. He is unable to open his left eye.
B. He is unable to raise his eyebrow on the left side.
C. He is unable to protrude his tongue to the right.
D. He is unable to chew.
E. He is unable to feel pressure on his left cheek.

6. A patient came to the emergency department with a broken mandible resulting from an over-swung baseball bat. Which nerve is most likely affected by this injury?

A. Lingual nerve
B. Hypoglossal nerve
C. Zygomatic branches of facial nerve
D. Inferior alveolar nerve
E. Chorda tympani nerve

7. The muscle of mastication that inserts into the condylar process of the mandible and its articular disk and the capsule of the temporomandibular joint (TMJ) is the

A. medial pterygoid muscle
B. lateral pterygoid muscle
C. temporalis muscle
D. masseter muscle
E. buccinator muscle

8. A man develops acromegaly secondary to a tumor in his pituitary gland secreting growth hormone. A transsphen oidal resection of the tumor is scheduled. During this process, part of the inferior and posterior nasal septum is removed. Which bone forms this part of the nasal septum?

A. Vomer
B. Ethmoid
C. Palatine
D. Temporal
E. Sphenoid

8. The lacrimal gland is innervated by

A. the facial nerve (VII)
B. the postganglionic neurons with the cell bodies in the pterygopalatine ganglion
C. the parasympathetic neurons
D. the lacrimal nerve
E. All of the above

10. A 2-year-old boy seen by his pediatrician was noticeably irritable and tugging at his ear. When his mother asked him in a normal tone to sit quietly, he covered his ears screaming in pain and asked her not to shout at him. On exam he was found to have a fever, and his tympanic membrane was red and bulging. He was diagnosed with otitis media and started on antibiotics. The child's extreme sensitivity to sound (hyperacusis) suggests that the infection affected the stapedius muscle. The nerve that innervates this muscle is a branch of what nerve?

A. Maxillary division of trigeminal nerve
B. Mandibular division of trigeminal nerve
C. Facial nerve
D. Glossopharyngeal nerve
E. Vagus nerve

11. The innervation for the sternothyroid muscle is the

A. ansa cervicalis
B. facial nerve
C. hypoglossal nerve
D. accessory nerve

E. recurrent laryngeal nerve

12. A man was having an animated discussion with his friends when he started coughing after swallowing a piece of chicken at a fast-food restaurant. He soon became unable to speak or cough. Two paramedics who were taking a break at a nearby table quickly came to his help, and one stood behind the man and performed forceful abdominal thrusts (Heimlich maneuver). After several unsuccessful attempts to dislodge the aspirated food, the paramedics decide to perform an emergency airway procedure. What is the most superior site to perform this procedure so that the airway is secured below the vocal folds?

A. Superior to the hyoid bone
B. Between the hyoid bone and the thyroid cartilage
C. Between the thyroid cartilage and the cricoid cartilage
D. Between the thyroid cartilage and the arytenoid cartilage
E. Superior to the manubrium in the jugular fossa

13. A man is found to have a nodule in his neck. His calcitonin level is elevated, and a biopsy reveals medullary carcinoma of the thyroid. A thyroidectomy is performed. After surgery the patient’s voice is found to be hoarse. What nerve was most likely injured during surgery?

A. The glossopharyngeal
B. The hypoglossal
C. The ansa cervicalis
D. The recurrent laryngeal
E. The phrenic

14. A boy who has been vomiting is diagnosed with an obstruction in his gastrointestinal tract. He becomes severely dehydrated, and a sunken anterior fontanelle is felt. What is the youngest age at which this sign no longer would appear in a dehydrated child?

A. 1 month
B. 3 months
C. 6 months

D. 12 months
E. 24 months

15. The jugulodigastric lymph nodes that lie near the facial and internal jugular veins are also known as

A. parotid nodes
B. superior deep cervical nodes
C. inferior deep cervical nodes
D. retroauricular nodes
E. lateral cervical nodes

16. A patient develops severely elevated intracranial pressure due to a brain tumor obstructing the flow of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF). A shunt is placed to relieve this pressure because the CSF is blocked from being returned to the venous system. Where would this resorption normally take place?

A. At the choroid plexus
B. At the interventricular foramen
C. At the cerebral aqueduct
D. At the lateral apertures
E. At the arachnoid granulations

17. The vagus nerve (cranial nerve X)

A. leaves the skull through the carotid foramen
B. innervates the carotid sinus
C. is transmitted through the superior orbital fissure
D. innervates all of the muscles of the soft palate
E. None of the above

18. A 40-year-old obese woman has frequent headaches. At an eye exam, she is found to have papilledema (swelling of the optic disk). It is suspected that she has elevated intracranial pressure. CT scan is negative for any strokes or tumors. She is diagnosed with idiopathic intracranial hypertension (pseudotumor cerebri). One complication of this disorder is downward displacement of the brainstem, which leads to stretching of the abducent nerve. How would you diagnose if this complication occurred in this patient?

- **A.** She would be unable to move her eyes laterally.
- **B.** She would be unable to move her eyes medially.
- **C.** She would be unable to move her eyes superiorly.
- **D.** She would be unable to move her eyes inferiorly
- **E.** She would be unable to rotate her eyes internally.

19. A 61-year-old firefighter was trapped for 12 hours in a collapsed building following an earthquake. Although he suffered a fractured tibia, the emergency department physician was also concerned about a deep scalp laceration that extended across the top of the patient’s head. Infection from this laceration could spread

- **A.** to dural venous sinuses through emissary veins
- **B.** into the neck in the loose areolar tissue
- **C.** laterally beyond the zygomatic arches
- **D.** to the epidural space
- **E.** All of the above

20. A dentist who specializes in relief of facial pain is experimenting with a procedure to inject anesthetic into the pterygopalatine fossa through a lateral approach. The needle passes through the mandibular notch of the mandible, traverses the infratemporal fossa, and enters the pterygomaxillary fissure. Which of the following structures would be at risk during the procedure?

- **A.** Maxillary artery
- **B.** Mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve (CN III)
- **C.** Pterygoid venous plexus
- **D.** Otic ganglion
- **E.** All of the above

21. Which of the following drains into the inferior meatus of the nasal cavity?

- **A.** Nasolacrimal duct
- **B.** Frontal sinus
- **C.** Ethmoid sinus
- **D.** Sphenoid sinus
- **E.** Maxillary sinus

22. Which of the following vessels accompanies the optic nerve through the optic canal?

- **A.** Supratrochlear artery
- **B.** Supraorbital artery
- **C.** Ophthalmic artery
- **D.** Ophthalmic vein
- **E.** Ophthalmic nerve

23. The nerve that innervates the middle ear muscle that changes the shape of the tympanic membrane is the

- **A.** optic nerve
- **B.** oculomotor nerve
- **C.** trochlear nerve
- **D.** trigeminal nerve
- **E.** facial nerve

24. The branches of the cervical plexus

- **A.** originate from the anterior rami of C1 through C4
- **B.** innervate the sternocleidomastoid
- **C.** carry preganglionic fibers that synapse in parasympathetic ganglia of the head
- **D.** include only cutaneous nerves
- **E.** include the greater occipital nerve

25. Intubation is necessary during surgery because, due to muscle relaxants and other drugs administered during the procedure, patients are unable to fully relax the vocal folds. Paralysis of which muscle prevents the relaxation of the vocal folds?

- **A.** Thyroarytenoid muscles
- **B.** Posterior cricoarytenoid muscles
- **C.** Cricothyroid muscles
- **D.** Transverse arytenoid muscles
- **E.** Lateral arytenoids muscles

26. All of the innervation of the larynx, both sensory and motor, is supplied by

- **A.** the vagus nerve
- **B.** the glossopharyngeal nerve
- **C.** the recurrent laryngeal nerve
- **D.** the superior laryngeal nerve
- **E.** None of the above

27. Which is the only laryngeal cartilage to completely encircle the airway?

- **A.** Thyroid
- **B.** Cricoid
- **C.** Epiglottic
- **D.** Arytenoid
- **E.** Corniculate

28. A man is in a knife fight and receives a stab wound between the sternocleidomastoid muscle and the superior belly of the omohyoid muscle. Profuse bleeding ensues due to penetration of the common carotid artery. Which structure within the same fascial sheath may also have been injured?

- **A.** External jugular vein
- **B.** Phrenic nerve
- **C.** Internal jugular vein
- **D.** Superior thyroid artery
- **E.** Sympathetic trunk

29. A man with a long history of tobacco use goes to the dentist for a cleaning. The dentist notices a lesion on the lateral part of the body of the tongue and refers the patient to an otolaryngologist (ENT), who biopsies the lesion and determines that the patient has squamous cell carcinoma of the tongue. A CT of the patient's head and neck demon-strates metastasis to the lymph nodes. The primary group of lymph nodes for the drainage of this patient's cancer is

A. superior deep cervical
B. inferior deep cervical
C. anterior superficial cervical
D. submandibular
E. submental

30. All of the following bones form a part of the nasal walls or floor except

A. Frontal
B. Ethmoid
C. Maxilla
D. Vomer
E. Palatine

31. The action of the medial pterygoid muscle is to

A. elevate the mandible
B. tense the soft palate
C. elevate the soft palate
D. elevate the hyoid bone
E. retract the mandible

32. A 63-year-old man complains of difficulty speaking, chewing, and swallowing. On physical exam, you note that the patient's tongue is atrophied, and when asked to stick out his tongue and say "ahh," the patient's tongue deviates to the left. In obtaining a medical history, you learn that the patient underwent recent surgery on his common carotid artery. Damage to which nerve has most likely caused the observed deficits?

- **A.** Right glossopharyngeal nerve
- **B.** Right hypoglossal nerve
- **C.** Left hypoglossal nerve
- **D.** Right lingual nerve
- **E.** Left lingual nerve

33. The mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve (V_3) passes through the foramen ovale into the

- **A.** infratemporal fossa
- **B.** pterygopalatine fossa
- **C.** orbit
- **D.** nasal cavity
- **E.** oral cavity

34. A man with hypertension and a long history of smoking suffers a series of transient ischemic attacks (TIAs). In the evaluation, a carotid bruit is heard. Further testing reveals severe stenosis of his internal carotid artery due to atherosclerosis. The TIAs were due to embolism of the atherosclerotic plaque. Which of the following is the first branch of the internal carotid artery likely to be affected by an embolism?

- **A.** Superior thyroid
- **B.** Lingual
- **C.** Facial
- **D.** Maxillary
- **E.** Ophthalmic

35. A patient has thrombophlebitis of the right cavernous sinus due to a facial skin infection. The infection traveled via the angular vein to the superior ophthalmic vein and into the cavernous sinus. Which of the following is an additional symptom that this patient might exhibit?

- **A.** Jugular venous distension on the right
- **B.** Inability to smile

C. Inability to chew on the right
D. Loss of vision in the right eye
E. Loss of sensation to the right cheek

36. Which of the following arteries is a branch of the internal carotid artery?

A. Posterior cerebral artery
B. Occipital artery
C. Labyrinthine artery
D. Ophthalmic artery
E. Middle meningeal artery

37. A patient undergoes an ultrasound of the blood vessels in the neck. How can the sonographer quickly distinguish a normal jugular vein from the carotid artery?

A. The vein is blue on color doppler.
B. The vein is easily collapsed by gentle pressure.
C. The vein is black on grayscale ultrasound.
D. The normal vein is echogenic.

38. A patient with hearing loss after trauma is suspected of having a fracture of the skull base and possible injury of the middle ear ossicles. Which imaging modality would be best to evaluate this?

A. Ultrasound
B. MRI
C. X-ray
D. Angiography
E. CT

Answers and Explanations

1. **C.** The sphenoid forms the posterior orbit and the floor of the middle cranial fossa between the frontal and temporal bones. Foramina of the sphenoid include the optic foramen, foramen ovale, foramen rotundum, foramen spinosum, and superior orbital fissure (Section 24.1).

A. The frontal bone forms the forehead, the roof and superior rim of the orbit, and the floor of the anterior cranial fossa.

B. The temporal bone forms part of the middle and posterior cranial fossa. Its foramina include the internal and external acoustic meatuses, carotid canal, and stylomastoid foramen.

D. The ethmoid bone forms part of the anterior cranial fossa, medial walls of the orbit, and parts of the nasal septum and lateral nasal walls,

E. The occipital bone forms most of the posterior cranial fossa. Its foramina include the foramen magnum, condylar canals, and jugular foramina.

2. **E.** The internal jugular vein is located within the carotid sheath (A), contains venous drainage from the brain (B), is a tributary of the brachiocephalic vein (C), and receives blood from the facial vein (D) (Section 24.4).

A. The internal jugular vein runs within the carotid sheath with the common carotid artery and vagus nerve. B, C, and D are also correct (E).

B. Cerebral venous drainage flow primarily to the internal jugular veins. A, C, and D are also correct (E).

C. The internal jugular veins join the subclavian veins to form the brachiocephalic veins. A, B, and D are also correct (E).

D. The facial vein is a tributary of the internal jugular vein. A through C are also correct (E).

3. **A.** The inferior sagittal sinus runs in the inferior edge of the falx cerebri and ends as the straight sinus (Section 26.1).

B. The transverse sinus runs along the posterolateral margins of the tentorium cerebelli.

C. The sigmoid sinuses run in grooves of the occipital and temporal bones.

D. The cavernous sinuses lie lateral to the sella turcica between the meningeal and periosteal dura.

E. The 3rd ventricle lies between the right and left thalami of the diencephalon.

4. **E.** The right and left vertebral arteries join to form the basilar artery.

Together these arteries supply the posterior circulation of the brain (Section 26.2).

A. The vertebral artery ascends through the transverse foramina of C1–C6 vertebrae.

B. The vertebral artery is a branch of the subclavian artery.

C. The vertebral artery terminates by joining with the contralateral vertebral artery to form the basilar artery.

D. The vertebral artery does not supply branches to the thyroid gland.

5. **B.** CN VII, the facial nerve, exits the stylomastoid foramen and is

responsible for the muscles of facial expression, including the occipitofrontalis muscle, which elevates the eyebrows (Section 26.3).

A. he levator palpebrae superioris muscle elevates the eyelid and is innervated by CN III, the oculomotor nerve. In addition to the levator palpebrae superioris, the occipitofrontalis muscle assists in raising the eyebrow, but because CN III is not affected the patient is able to open his eye. He is not, however, able to close his eye completely due to the paralysis of the orbicularis oculi muscle.

C. CN XII, the hypoglossal nerve, innervates most of the tongue musculature. A left-sided hypoglossal injury would lead to the inability to protrude his tongue to the right.

D. The muscles of mastication are innervated by the mandibular division of CN V, the trigeminal nerve. Although his ability to chew is unaffected, the patient does have some trouble eating because of paralysis to the buccinator muscle, which assists in positioning food in the oral cavity.

E. Sensation to the cheek is conveyed through the maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve.

6. **D.** The inferior alveolar nerve courses within the mandibular canal of

the mandible and would be injured in this patient (Section 26.3).

A. The lingual nerve courses through the infratemporal fossa and into the floor of the mouth.

B. The hypoglossal nerve courses anteriorly below the angle of the mandible before entering the mouth at the posterior border of the mylohyoid muscle.

C. Zygomatic branches of the facial nerve pass lateral to the masseter muscle as they cross the cheek.

E. The chorda tympani travels with the lingual nerve in the infratemporal fossa and floor of the mouth.

7. **B.** The lateral pterygoid muscle inserts into the condylar process of the mandible and its articular disk and the capsule of the temporomandibular joint (TMJ) (Section 27.2).

A. The medial pterygoid inserts into the pterygoid tuberosity on the medial surface of the angle of the mandible.

C. The temporalis inserts into the apex and medial surface of the coronoid process of the mandible.

D. The masseter inserts into the masseteric tuberosity at the angle of the mandible.

E. The buccinator inserts into the angle of the mouth and orbicularis oris.

8. **A.** The vomer makes up the inferior and posterior parts of the nasal septum (Section 27.7).

B. The ethmoid bone, through its perpendicular plate, makes up the superior and posterior parts of the nasal septum.

C. The palatine forms the posterior palate and does not contribute to the nasal septum.

D. The temporal forms the base and lateral side of the skull and does not contribute to the nasal septum.

E. Although some of the sphenoid bone will be removed as a part of the procedure, it does not contribute to the nasal septum.

9. **E.** The lacrimal gland is innervated by visceral motor fibers (preganglionic parasympathetic [C]) of the greater petrosal branch of the facial nerve (A). The postganglionic neuron is the zygomatic branch of the maxillary nerve (V_2), which has its cell body in the pterygopalatine ganglion (B) and is then distributed to the lacrimal gland. The lacrimal nerve (D) provides sensory innervation to the lacrimal gland, conjunctiva, and upper eyelids (Section 26.3).

A. The lacrimal gland is innervated by visceral motor fibers (preganglionic parasympathetic of the greater petrosal branch of the facial nerve). B through D are also correct (E).

B. The zygomatic branch of the facial nerve carries postganglionic parasympathetic fibers from the pterygo-palatine ganglion to the lacrimal gland. A, C, and D are also correct (E).

C. Parasympathetic fibers of the zygomatic nerve inner-vate the lacrimal gland. A, B, and D are also correct (E).

D. The lacrimal nerve provides sensory innervation to the lacrimal gland, conjunctiva, and upper eyelids. A through C are also correct (E).

10. **C.** The stapedius nerve arises from the facial nerve in the facial canal to innervate the stapedius muscle, which dampens sound waves transmitted through the middle ear (Section 28.2).

A. The maxillary nerve is distributed to the orbit, nasal cavity, and oral cavity, but it has no branches in the middle ear.

B. The mandibular nerve innervates the tensor tympani, which tenses the tympanic membrane.

D. The glossopharyngeal nerve transmits sensation from the tympanic cavity and pharyngotympanic tube and joins with sympathetic fibers of the internal carotid plexus to form the tympanic plexus.

E. The vagus nerve transmits sensation from the external surface of the tympanic membrane.

11. **A.** The ansa cervicalis innervates all of the infrahyoid muscles except the thyrohyoid (Section 25.3 and **Table 21.4**).

B. The cervical branch of the facial nerve innervates the platysma.

C. The hypoglossal nerve innervates only muscles of the tongue, including the genioglossus, hyoglossus, and intrinsic tongue muscles.

D. The accessory nerve innervates the trapezius and the sternocleidomastoid muscles and contributes to the pharyngeal plexus that helps to control the pharyngeal muscles.

E. The recurrent laryngeal nerve, a branch of the vagus nerve, innervates the intrinsic muscles of the larynx.

12. **C.** An emergency tracheotomy (or cricothyrotomy) is performed to secure an airway in a patient with respiratory failure who does not have time to have a procedure per-formed in the operating room. The quickest access to secure an airway is by incising the cricothyroid membrane (Section 25.6).

A. Superior to the hyoid bone is superior to the vocal folds and is also a difficult access site given the presence of the mylohyoid muscles.

B. The thyrohyoid membrane is between the hyoid bone and the thyroid cartilage and is superior to the vocal folds.

D. Between the thyroid and arytenoid cartilages is too posterior to access the airway and is also at the level of the vocal folds.

E. Superior to the manubrium in the jugular fossa is a potential site for an airway (tracheostomy) but is more inferior to the cricothyroid membrane. Also, incising the tracheal cartilage or trying to access the airway between the tracheal cartilages is too difficult without the benefit of being in the operating room. Another benefit of a crico- thyrotomy versus a tracheostomy is that there are fewer structures at risk for injury such as blood vessels, the recurrent laryngeal nerve, the thyroid gland, and the esophagus.

13. **D.** The recurrent laryngeal nerve is a branch of the vagus nerve, which travels in the tracheoesophageal groove, lateral and posterior to the thyroid gland. Injury to this nerve causes hoarseness, among other complications (Sections 25.6 and 26.3).

A.A., **B.**, **C.**, and **E.** The glossopharyngeal nerve, hypo glossal nerve, nerves of the ansa cervicalis, and the phrenic nerve do not travel close enough to the thyroid gland to be at risk during careful thyroid surgery.

14. E. The anterior fontanelle is the fibrous area at the junction of the frontal and parietal bones. It closes at 18 to 24 months of age (Section 24.1).

A., **B.**, **C.**, **D.** The anterior fontanelle remains open until 18 to 24 months of age.

15. **B.** The superior deep cervical nodes lie between the jugular and facial veins and the anterior belly of the digastric (Section 24.5).

A. The parotid nodes are superficial nodes that overlie the parotid gland on the side of the face.

C. The inferior deep cervical nodes lie in the neck near the inferior part of the internal jugular vein.

D. The retroauricular nodes are superficial nodes that lie along the posterior margin of the auricle.

E. The lateral cervical nodes are superficial nodes that lie along the external jugular vein in the neck.

16. **E.** The CSF is reabsorbed into the venous system by the arachnoid granulations, which protrude into the superior sagittal sinus (Section 26.2).

A. The choroid plexus is the site of CSF production in each of the four ventricles (the first and second [or lateral], the third, and the fourth).

B. The interventricular foramen is the communication between the lateral ventricles.

C. The cerebral aqueduct is the communication between the third and fourth ventricles.

D. The lateral apertures are the communication between the fourth ventricle and the subarachnoid space.

17. **E.** None of the answers above describes the vagus nerve correctly (Section 26.3).

A. The vagus nerve leaves the skull through the jugular foramen with the glossopharyngeal and spinal accessory nerves.

B. The carotid sinus is innervated by the glossopharyn-geal nerve.

C. The oculomotor nerve (III), trochlear nerve (IV), abducent nerve (VI), ophthalmic nerve (V_1), and ophthal-mic vein are transmitted through the superior orbital fissure.

D. The vagus nerve innervates all of the muscles of the soft palate except the tensor veli palatini, which is supplied by the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve.

18. **A.** The abducent nerves innervate the lateral rectus muscles, which move the eyes laterally (Section 26.3).

B. Medial movement of the eyes is controlled by the oculomotor nerves via the medial rectus muscles.

C. Superior movement of the eyes is controlled by the oculomotor and trochlear nerves via the superior rectus and inferior oblique muscles.

D. Inferior movement of the eyes is controlled by the oculomotor nerves via the inferior rectus and the superior oblique muscles.

E. Internal rotation of the eyes, also called intorsion or rotation along the long axis of the eye, is controlled by the trochlear nerves via the superior oblique muscles. This movement is normally prevented by the action of the inferior oblique muscles.

19. **A.** Emissary veins communicate with veins of the scalp and can carry infections intracranially to the dural venous sinuses (Section 27.1).

B. The attachment of the occipitofrontalis muscle to the skull prevents infections of the scalp from spreading into the neck.

C. The attachment of the epicranial aponeurosis to the zygomatic arches prevents further lateral spread of infection.

D. Spread of infection intracranially occurs through the emissary veins, which communicate with the dural sinuses, not with the epidural space.

E. Not applicable.

20. **E.** The infratemporal fossa contains the maxillary artery and many of its branches, the mandibular nerve, the pterygoid plexus, and the otic ganglion, as well as the medial and lateral pterygoid muscles (Section 27.5).

A. The infratemporal fossa contains the maxillary artery, but choices B, C, and D are also correct (E).

B. The infratemporal fossa contains the mandibular nerve, but choices

A, C, and D are also correct (E).

C. The infratemporal fossa contains the pterygoid plexus, but choices A, B, and D are also correct (E).

D. The infratemporal fossa contains the otic ganglion, but choices A, B, and C are also correct (E).

21. **A.** The nasolacrimal duct drains tears from the medial corner of each eye into the inferior meatus (Sections 27.7 and 28.1).

B. The frontal sinus drains into the middle meatus through a frontonasal duct.

C. The ethmoid sinus drains into the superior and middle meatuses.

D. The sphenoid sinus drains into the sphenoethmoidal recess in the posterosuperior part of the nasal cavity.

E. The maxillary sinus drains into the middle meatus.

22. **C.** Only the ophthalmic artery and optic nerve enter the orbit through the optic canal (Sections 24.1 and 28.1).

A. The supratrochlear artery is a branch of the ophthalmic artery in the orbit that supplies the scalp.

B. The supraorbital artery is a branch of the ophthalmic artery in the orbit that supplies the scalp.

D. The ophthalmic vein enters the orbit through the superior orbital fissure.

E. The ophthalmic nerve (CN V_1) enters the orbit through the superior orbital fissure.

23. **D.** The mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve innervates the tensor tympani muscle, which lessens damage from loud sounds by tensing the tympanic membrane (Section 28.2).

A. The optic nerve carries sensory innervation from the neural retina to the lateral geniculate nucleus.

B. The oculomotor nerve innervates most of the extraocular muscles of the eye and the intrinsic muscles of the eye.

C. The trochlear nerve innervates the superior oblique extraocular muscle of the eye.

E. The facial nerve innervates the stapedius muscle, which dampens the vibrations of the stapes on the oval window.

24. **A.** The cervical plexus originates from the anterior rami of C1–C4 (Section 25.4).

B. The accessory nerve (CN XI) innervates the sternocleidomastoid.

C. Only the oculomotor, facial, and glossopharyngeal nerves carry preganglionic parasympathetic nerves that synapse in the head.

D. The cervical plexus has both sensory and motor components. The sensory nerves of the plexus, the lesser occipital, great auricular, transverse cervical, and supracla-vicular nerves innervate the skin of the anterior and lateral neck and lateral scalp. The ansa cervicalis, the motor part of the plexus, innervates most of the infrahyoid muscles.

E. The greater occipital nerve is supplied by the posterior rami of spinal nerves C1–C3 and is therefore not a branch of the cervical plexus.

25. **B.** The only muscles that relax the vocal folds are the posterior cricoarytenoid muscles. Note that there are other results of anesthesia that also necessitate intubation (Section 25.6).

A. The thyroarytenoid closes the vocal folds.

C. The cricothyroid muscles tighten the vocal folds.

D. The transverse arytenoid muscles close the vocal folds.

E. The lateral arytenoid muscles close the vocal folds.

26. **A.** All of the innervation of the larynx, both sensory and motor, is supplied by the superior and inferior (recurrent) laryngeal branches of the vagus nerve (CN X) (Section 25.6).

B. The glossopharyngeal nerve (IX) innervates the tympanic cavity and pharyngotympanic (auditory) tube; the pharynx (sensory and motor), the tonsils, palate, posterior one third of the tongue (sensory and taste), and the stylopharyngeus muscle. It also innervates the carotid body and carotid sinus.

C. The recurrent laryngeal nerve is a branch of the vagus nerve that innervates all of the muscles of the larynx except the cricothyroid and carries sensation from the lower half of the larynx (from the vocal cords downward).

D. The superior laryngeal nerve innervates the cricothyroid muscle, which helps to tense the vocal folds, and provides sensation to the upper half of the larynx (above the vocal cords).

E. Not applicable.

27. **B.** The only laryngeal cartilage to completely encircle the airway is the cricoid cartilage (Section 25.6).

A. The U-shaped thyroid cartilage has two laminae that join in the anterior midline to form a laryngeal prominence.

C. The epiglottic cartilage, a single leaf-shaped cartilage, forms the anterior wall of the laryngeal inlet at the root of the tongue.

D. Paired arytenoid cartilages articulate with the superior borders of the cricoid laminae. Their vocal processes attach to the thyroid cartilage through the vocal ligaments.

E. Corniculate cartilages appear as small tubercles within the aryepiglottic fold.

28. **C.** The common carotid artery, internal jugular vein, and vagus nerve are contained within the carotid sheath (Section 25.2).

A. The external jugular vein is not within the carotid sheath.

B. The phrenic nerve lies on the anterior scalene muscle behind the carotid sheath.

D. The superior thyroid artery is a branch of the external carotid artery and does not travel in the carotid sheath.

E. The sympathetic trunk lies behind the carotid sheath.

29. **D.** The submandibular lymph nodes are the primary nodes of the lateral part of the body of the tongue (Section 27.8).

A. The superior deep cervical nodes are the primary nodes of the root of the tongue.

B. The inferior deep cervical are the primary nodes of the medial parts of the body of the tongue.

C. The anterior superficial cervical nodes are the primary nodes of the skin anterior muscles of the neck and are not the primary lymph nodes of any part of the tongue.

E. The submental nodes are the primary nodes of the apex and frenulum of the tongue.

30. **A.** The ethmoid, maxilla, vomer, palatine, lacrimal, nasal, and inferior nasal concha form the bony skeleton of the nasal cavity (Section 27.7).

B. The ethmoid forms the cribriform plate at the roof of the nasal cavity, the superior and middle nasal concha of the lateral walls, and part of the nasal septum.

C. The maxilla forms the anterior part of the palate on the floor of the nasal cavity.

D. The vomer forms part of the nasal septum.

E. The palatine bone forms the posterior part of the palate on the floor of the nasal cavity.

31. **A.** The medial pterygoid muscle forms a sling with the masseter muscle to elevate the mandible (Section 27.2 and **Table 27.3**).

B. The tensor veli palatini tenses the soft palate.

C. The levator veli palatini elevates the soft palate.

D. The suprahyoid muscles, including digastric, geniohyoid, stylohyoid, and mylohyoid, elevate the hyoid. The medial pterygoid can only elevate the hyoid second-arily by first elevating the mandible.

E. The posterior part of the temporalis muscle retracts the mandible.

32. **C.** The hypoglossal nerve (CN XII) innervates all muscles of the tongue except for the palatoglossus. When damaged, muscles on the affected side atrophy and fail to contribute to protrusion of the tongue. This causes the tongue to deviate to the side of the lesion (left side in this patient). The nerve is at risk during surgery on the common carotid artery because of its proximity to the carotid bifurcation (Section 26.3).

A. The stylopharyngeus is the only muscle innervated by the glossopharyngeal nerve.

B. Damage to the right hypoglossal nerve would cause atrophy of the right side of the tongue and deviation to the right side with protrusion.

D. The right lingual nerve, a branch of the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve, transmits sensation from the anterior tongue. It also carries parasympathetic fibers via the chorda tympani to the submandibular and sublingual glands and taste from the anterior tongue.

E. The left lingual nerve, a branch of the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve, transmits sensation from the anterior tongue. It also carries parasympathetic fibers via the chorda tympani to the submandibular and sublingual glands and taste from the anterior tongue.

33. **A.** The mandibular division enters the infratemporal fossa where it sends motor branches to muscles of mastication and sensory branches to the tongue, mandibular teeth, oral cavity, and skin of the lower and lateral face (Section 26.3).

B. The maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve passes through the foramen rotundum to the pterygopalatine fossa.

C. The ophthalmic branch of the trigeminal nerve passes through the superior orbital fissure to the orbit.

D. The maxillary branch of the trigeminal nerve innervates the nasal cavity.

E. The lingual nerve passes from the infratemporal fossa into the oral cavity.

34. **E.** The internal carotid arteries do not have branches in the neck. The ophthalmic arteries are the first major branches of the internal carotid arteries (Section 26.2).

A. The superior thyroid is a branch of the external carotid artery.

B. The lingual artery is a branch of the external carotid artery.

C. The facial artery is a branch of the external carotid artery.

D. The maxillary artery is a branch of the external carotid artery.

35. **E.** The cavernous sinus contains the oculomotor, trochlear, abducent, and ophthalmic and maxillary divisions of the trigeminal nerve. The maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve supplies sensation to the cheek

(Section 26.1).

A. Jugular venous distension is caused by a decrease of venous return to the heart.

B. The inability to smile is caused by a lesion to the facial nerve.

C. The inability to chew is caused by a lesion to the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve.

D. Loss of vision is caused by a lesion to the optic nerve, which does not travel through the cavernous sinus. Note that there are additional causes of loss of vision, none of which are related to the cavernous sinus.

36. **D.** The ophthalmic artery is the first major branch of the internal carotid artery in the anterior cranial fossa (Section 24.3).

A. The posterior cerebral is the terminal branch of the basilar artery.

B. The occipital artery is a branch of the external carotid artery.

C. The labyrinthine artery is a branch of the basilar artery.

E. The middle meningeal artery is a branch of the maxillary artery, which is a branch of the external carotid artery.

37. **B.** Ultrasound is a dynamic modality in which the structures are seen in real time as the sonographer manipulates the probe. Veins and arteries can be quickly and easily distinguished from each other by the application of gentle pressure on the probe. This will cause the veins with lower internal pressure to collapse temporarily, but the higher pressure arteries remain distended (Chapter 21).

A. The blue and red colors only indicate direction of blood flow relative to the transducer (red toward the transducer).

C. Although a normal vein is black (anechoic), a normal artery is black as well. Fluid, including un-clotted normal blood is black on grayscale ultrasound.

D. A normal vein is not echogenic. This would indicate a blood clot or other abnormality.

38. **E.** CT has excellent spatial resolution and is optimal for evaluating the bones of the skull base and assessing the anatomy/integrity of the tiny middle ear ossicles (Chapter 21).

A. Ultrasound would be a poor choice for bony evalua-tion and for deep structures.

B. Although MRI would be sensitive to the edema seen with skull base injuries, it has lower specificity for fractures and decreased spatial resolution compared with CT.

C. X-rays would not show the skull base or ossicles well, due to the overlapping cranium.

D. Angiography may be used to assess vascular integrity after trauma, but would not be helpful in this case.

Index

Note: Italicized page numbers represent clinical or developmental correlations and anatomic notes. Figures and tables are indicated by f and t, respectively, immediately following the page number.

A
AAA. *See* Abdominal aortic aneurysm (AAA)
Abdomen arteries of,167–172,167*f*
  autonomic nervous system and,180–181,180*f*,181*t*,182*t*
  autonomic plexus of,166–167,167*f*,180–181,180*f*,181*t*
  clinical correlations abdominal aortic aneurysm, *168*
  abscesses, *165*
  anastomoses, large intestine, *172*
  appendicitis, *195*,210
  ascites, *165*
  bacterial contamination/ infection, *165*
  calculi of kidneys and ureter, *207*
  cholecystectomy, *200*
  cirrhosis of liver, *198*
  common bile and pancreatic ducts, implications of shared emptying, *200*
  cremasteric reflex, absent or reduced, *159*
  duodenal ulcers, *190*
  esophageal varices, *176*
  gallstones, *200*
  gastric ulcers, *188*
  hydrocele, *158*
  inflammatory bowel disease, *195*
  inguinal hernia, *156*
  mesenteric ischemia, *171*
  pancreatic carcinoma, *202*
  peptic ulcers, *190*
  peritoneal abscess, *165*
  peritoneal infections, *165*
  peritonitis, *165*
  portal hypertension, *176*
  renal calculi, *207*

renal vein entrapment, *205*
splenic trauma, *203*
testicular cancer, *159*
ulcerative colitis, *195*
varicocele, *159*
cremasteric reflex,158, *159*
criteria for dividing,145*f*
CT of,26*f*,201*f*,209*t*,212*f*
developmental correlations accessory spleen, *203*
common renal anomalies, *206*
ileal diverticulum, *192*
midgut tube rotation, *187*
pain localization, *187*
epigastrium,145*f*
fluoroscopy of,209*t*
hypogastrium,145*f*
imaging,209,209*t*
lymphatic drainage of,177–179,178*f*
mesogastrium,145*f*
MRI of,209*t*,212*f*
nerves of,179–185
neurovasculature of,167–176
organs of,160*t*,186*f* (*See also specific organ*) extraperitoneal,160*f*,160*t*
intraperitoneal,160,160*f*,160*t*,184*f*,202,202*f*
parasympathetic nervous system in,182*f*,182*t*
parietal lymph nodes in,177*f*
peritoneal relationships in,144*f*
plexuses in,180*f*,181*t*
autonomic,166–167,167*f*,180–181,180*f*,181*t*
lumbar,52*f*,149,179,368*t*,369*f*
quadrants of,145*f*
radiographs of,209*t*
with barium,211*f* (*See also* Double contrast barium enema) as regional subdivision,2*f*
sympathetic nervous system in,182*f*,182*t*
transverse section,201*f*
ultrasound of,209*t*,210*f*
vagus (CN X) nerve in,497
veins,173–176

viscera of,145*f*,186–208,186*f*
wall of (*See* Wall(s))
Abdominal
aorta,45*f*,74*f*,76*f*–77*f*,114*f*,115*f*,160*f*,166*f*–167*f*,167,168*t*,169*f*,172*f*,174*f*,177*f*,17
CT of,212*f*
Abdominal aortic aneurysm (AAA), *168*
Abdominal fascia, superficial,145,146*f*,154*f*,245*f*
Abdominal ganglion,501*f*
Abdominal radiograph,209*t*,210*f*,211*f*
Abdominal viscera developmental correlations accessory spleens, *203*
common renal anomalies, *206*
ileal diverticulum, *192*
localization of pain from foregut, midgut, and hindgut derivatives, *187*
rotation of the midgut tube, *187*
transpyloric plane and,145*f*
Abdominopelvic cavity,144–145,144*f*,160
Abducent nerve (CN VI),442*f*,477*f*,485*f*,486*f*,487*t*,488,489*f*,541,542*f*,548,550*t*,551*f*
Abduction at digits2
through5,327*t*
of foot joints,402*t*
at glenohumeral joint,312*t*
of hip joint,378*t*
of interphalangeal joint,327*t*,402*t*
of metatarsophalangeal joint,402*t*
at thumb joint,328*t*
of upper limb joints,284
at wrist joint,323*t*
Abductor digiti minimi,321*f*,325*f*,330*f*,331*t*,339*f*,405*t*,413*f*
Abductor hallucis,403*f*,405*t*,413*f*
Abductor pollicis brevis,299*t*,325*f*,328*t*,330*f*,331*t*,339*f*
longus,13*f*,320*t*,324*f*,326*f*,338*f*,339*f*,340*f*,341*f*,344*f*
Abscesses, *165*
Accessory hemiazygos vein,46*f*,51*f*,75,76*f*,77*f*,89*f*,97*f*
Accessory muscle bundle,536*f*
Accessory nerve (CN XI),442*f*,470*f*,472*f*,485*f*,487*t*,498,498*f*
cranial root,498*f*
spinal root,462,498*f*
Accessory organs, of gastrointestinal tract,196–199

Accessory pancreatic duct,189,189*f*,199*f*–200*f*,202
Accessory parotid gland,533*f*
Accessory sex glands,245*f*
Accessory spleens,202, *203*
Accommodation,500*f*,546
Accompanying veins,295,295*f*
Acetabular fossa,226*f*,359*f*,377*f*,382*f*
Acetabular labrum,10,359*f*,374,376*f*,377*f*
Acetabular notch,226*f*
Acetabular rim,226*f*,375*f*
Acetabulum,7*f*,225,225*f*,229*f*,359*f*,375*f*,376*f*
  surfaces of gluteal,226*f*
  lunate,226*f*
  transverse ligament of,374,377*f*
Achalasia, *119*
Achilles' tendon,394,397*f*,403*f*,404*f*,411*f*,412*f*,414*f*
  rupture of, *394*
Acinus,127*f*
Acoustic meatus external,430*f*,432,437*f*,508*f*,514*f*,552,552*f*
  internal,432,436*f*,437*f*,442*f*,492*f*,493*f*,514*f*,555*f*,556*f*
Acromial angle,287*f*
Acromial branches,293*f*,294*f*
Acromial end, of clavicle,286*f*,304*f*
Acromioclavicular joint,285*f*,286*f*,303,303*f*,304*f*
Acromioclavicular ligaments,303,308*f*,309*f*
Acromion,13*f*,286,286*f*,287*f*,304*f*,308*f*,309*f*,311*f*,311*t*,313*f*,337*f*
Adduction at digits2
  through5,327*t*
  of fingers,327*t*,328*t*
  at glenohumeral joint,312*t*
  of hip joint,378*t*
  of interphalangeal joint,327*t*,402*t*
  of metatarsophalangeal joint,402*t*
  at thumb joints,328*t*
  of upper limb,284
  at wrist,323*t*
Adductor brevis,380*t*,414*f*,415*f*
Adductor canal,366*f*,383,383*f*
Adductor compartment,291,329

Adductor hallucis, 368*t*, 403*f*, 405*t*, 406*t*
  oblique head, 406*t*
  transverse head, 406*t*
Adductor hiatus, 363, 363*f*, 364*f*, 365*f*, 366*f*, 383
Adductor longus, 12*f*, 380*t*, 383*f*, 408*f*, 409*f*, 414*f*, 415*f*
Adductor magnus, 238*f*, 239*f*, 363, 363*f*, 364*f*, 365*f*, 366*f*, 380*t*, 408*f*–410*f*, 414*f*, 415*f*
Adductor pollicis, 12*f*, 330*f*, 331*t*, 339*f*
  oblique head, 339*f*
  transverse head, 339*f*
Adductor tubercle, of femur, 357, 358*f*
Adipose tissue, 6, 477*f*
  of orbit, 551*f*
Aditus, 553, 554*f*. *See also* Inlet, to mastoid antrum
Adventitia, 256*f*
Afferent peripheral lymphatics, 17*f*
Agonist, 10*f*
Air cells ethmoid, 439, 439*f*
  mastoid, 432, 528*f*, 553
Alar cartilage, 521
  major, 521*f*, 522*f*
  minor, 521*f*
Alar folds, 389*f*
Alar ligaments, 41
Alveolar arteries, 515*f*, 516*t*
  anterior, 447*f*
  inferior, 447*f*, 515*f*, 516*t*
  mental branch, 447*f*
  posterior superior, 447*f*, 515*f*
Alveolar branch inferior, of mandibular nerve, 491
  superior, of maxillary nerve, 491
Alveolar ducts, 127*f*
Alveolar nerves, 528*f*, 533*f*
  inferior, 490*f*, 506*f*, 507*f*, 515*f*, 517*f*, 517*t*, 533*f*
  superior, 515*f*
  anterior, 490*f*
  middle, 490*f*
  posterior, 490*f*, 520*t*
Alveolar process, 431*f*, 432*f*
Alveolar sacs, 126, 127*f*

Alveoli of bronchial tree,127*f*
  collapse of, *126*
  capillary bed on,129*f*
  of mammary gland,82
  pulmonary,126,127*f*,129*f*
  for teeth,432*f*,439,525,526*f*
Ambient cistern,478,481*f*
Ampulla bony,557
  of ductus deferens,159,245*f*,255*f*
  hepatopancreatic (of Vater),198
  sphincter of,199*f*
  of rectum,258,260*f*,266*f*,270*f*
  of semicircular duct,557
  urethral,257,257*f*
  of uterine tube,247,249*f*
Ampullary crest,557
Ampullary nerve anterior,494*f*,557*f*
  lateral,494*f*,557*f*
  posterior,494*f*,557*f*
Anal canal,193,258,259*f*,260*f*,266*f*,270–271,270*f*
  dentate line in,270*f*,271,272*f*
  innervation of,259,271
  lymphatic drainage of,259,271
  muscularis mucosae,272*f*
  neurovasculature of,271
  sphincters of,260*f* (*See also* Anal sphincter)
Anal cleft,261*f*
Anal columns,270*f*,271
Anal fissures, *271*
Anal gland,270*f*
Anal pecten,270*f*,271,272*f*
Anal sinuses,270*f*,271
Anal sphincter
  external,234*f*,238*f*,239*f*,240*f*,244*f*,248*f*,258*f*,259*f*,260*f*,261*f*,262*f*,263*f*,263*t*,271,
    deep part of,260*f*,270*f*
    subcutaneous part of,260*f*,270*f*
    superficial part of,260*f*,270*f*
  internal,240*f*,259*f*,260*f*,270*f*,271,272*f*
Anal triangle,222,224*f*,263*t*,270–272,270*f*

Anal valves,270*f*,271
Anastomoses,16
  arterial in abdomen,172*f*
  cruciate,363, *364*
  genicular,364
  inferior mesenteric–superior mesenteric artery,14*f*,170*f*,171*f*,186*f*,189*f*,208*f*,212*f*
  inferior pancreatic,170*f*
  superior mesenteric–inferior pancreatic,170*f*
  in ureter,172*f*
  of celiac arterial trunk,168
  clinical correlations, *172*
  external–internal carotid artery, *449*
  large intestine, clinical correlations, *172*
  phrenic vein–suprarenal vein,208*f*
  venous infection and, *451*
  umbilical–portal veins,114*f*
Anastomotic vein inferior,484*f*
  superior,484*f*
Anatomic neck, of humerus,288,288*f*
Anatomic notes extra-articular and intraarticular structures of synovial joints, *10*
  functional aspects of circulatory system, *15*
  petrosal nerves of the head, *494*
Anatomic position,3,3*f*,3*t*
Anatomic snuffbox,292,325,326*f*
Anconeus,314*t*,336*f*,338*f*
Anesthesia epidural, *48*
  lumbar and epidural, *48*
  spinal, *48*
Aneurysm abdominal aortic, *168*
  popliteal, *364*
Angina, *111*
Angiogram, aortic arch,73*f*
Angle of chamber of eye,545*f*
  costal,85*f*
  inferior, of scapula,5*t*,286*f*,287*f*,310*t*
  of mandible,432*f*,439,536*f*
  Q, genu varum and genu valgum and, *391*
  of scapula acromial,287*f*

- inferior,5*t*,286*f*,287*f*,310*t*
- superior,287*f*,304*f*,305*t*
- sternal,5*t*,84,84*f*
- venous,449
- left,17
- right,17

Angular artery,445*f*,446,549*f*

Angular notch, of stomach,187,188*f*

Angular vein,449,450*f*,451*f*,511*f*,549*f*,550*f*

Ankle,398–400. *See also* Talocrural joint dorsiflexion of,399*t*
- growth plate in,399*f*
- joints of,398,398*f*
- movements of,398,399*t*
- ligaments of,393*f*,397*f*,398,400*f*
- mortise of,357*f*,360*f*,398*f*,399*f*
- movement at,398,399*t*
- plantar flexion of,399*t*
- radiograph of,399*f*
- retinacula of,397*f*
- sprains of, *400*
- tendon sheaths of,397*t*

Annular/anular ligaments of digits,333*f*
- of elbow,315,316*f*,317*f*,318
- of trachea,124,126*f*

Anococcygeal ligament,228,261*f*,262*f*

Anococcygeal nerves,238*f*,239*f*

Anococcygeal raphe,229*f*

Anocutaneous line,270*f*,271,272*f*

Anorectal junction,258,260*f*,270*f*

ANS. *See* Autonomic nervous system (ANS)

Ansa cervicalis,459,472*f*
- inferior root,460*t*,461*f*
- superior root,460*t*,461*f*

Anserine bursa,378,390

Antagonist,10*f*

Antebrachial cutaneous nerve,301
- anterior,300
- lateral,299,300,315*f*
- medial,54*f*,299*t*,301*f*,302*f*,315*f*

  posterior,301
Antebrachial fascia,291,341*f*,363*f*
Antebrachial region,284,284*f*
Antebrachial veins, median,295*f*,296,315*f*
Anterior, location/direction term,3*f*,3*t*
Anterior axillary line,4*t*
Anterior midline,4*t*
Anterior root,48*f*,49*f*,51,92*f*,297*f*
  spinal nerves,51,51*f*,57*f*,61*f*,92*f*
Anterior (pelvic) surface of sacrum,38*f*
Anterior tubercle, of cervical spine,35*f*
Antihelix, of ear,552,552*f*
Antitragus,552,552*f*
Antrum mastoid,553,554*f*
  pyloric,187,188*f*,199*f*
Anulus fibrosus disk herniation and, *40*
  of intervertebral disk,41,41*f*
  of lumbar spine,41,42*f*
Anus,224*f*,234*f*,238*f*,239*f*,244*f*,248*f*,268*f*,270,270*f*
  canal of (*See* Anal canal) fissures of, *271*
  structural design,2*f*
Aorta,15*f*,16,16*f*,61*f*,72*f*,116*f*,196*f*
  abdominal,45*f*,74*f*,76*f*–77*f*,114*f*,115*f*,160*f*,166*f*,166*f*–167*f*,167,168*t*,169*f*,172*f*,
  aneurysm of, *168*
  CT of,212*f*
  arch of,25*f*,71*f*,72,73*f*,74*f*,74*t*,79*f*,94*f*,97*f*,99*f*,101*f*,103*f*,105*f*,108*f*,113*f*,115*f*,118*f*,
  angiogram,73*f*
  parts of,73*f*
  ascending,14*f*,25*f*,72,73*f*,74*f*,74*t*,77*f*–78*f*,99*f*,100*f*,101*f*,103*f*,104*f*,105*f*,106*f*,
  with aortic sinus coarctation, *117*
  coarctation of,117,117*f*
  descending,14*f*,72,73*f*,74*f*,74*t*,124*f*
  in situ,74*f*
  thoracic,45*f*,72,74*f*,74*t*,76*f*,77*f*,79*f*,88*f*,89*f*,91*f*,97*f*,118*f*,293*f*
  anterior view of,73*f*
  plexus,78*f*,80*f*
  vestibule of,106
  wall of,15*f*

Aortic hiatus,74*f*,76*f*,87*f*,88,149*f*,167*f*,168*f*
Aortic lymph nodes,177*f*,237*t*
Aorticorenal ganglion,180*f*,181*t*,185*f*
Aortic semilunar valves,104*f*,106*f*,107,107*f*
Aortic valve,104*f*,106*f*,107,107*f*
    stenosis, *107*
Ape hand,300*f*
Aperture(s). *See also* Hiatus; Opening(s) median, of ventricle,481*f*
    nasal, anterior,431*f*,522*f*
    piriform (anterior nasal),431*f*,522*f*
    of sphenoid sinus,438*f*
    thoracic,85
    inferior,71*f*,84*f*,85
    superior,84*f*,85 (*See also* Thoracic inlet) of ulnar tunnel,325*f*
    of ventricle of brain lateral,480,480*f*
    median,480
Apex of bladder,245*f*,254,255*f*
    of heart,25*f*,101,101*f*,102*t*,103*f*,105*f*,106*f*,108*f*
    of lungs,123,123*f*
    of nose,521
    of patella,357,359*f*
    petrous, of temporal bone,437*f*
    of prostate,246,246*f*
    of sacrum,38*f*
    of tongue,530,530*f*,531*f*
    of urinary bladder,245*f*,254,255*f*
Apical, location/direction term,3*t*
Apical axillary nodes,296,296*f*
Apical ligament, of dens,44*f*
Aponeurosis,11
    bicipital,314,314*t*,315*f*,338*f*,340*f*
    epicranial (galea aponeurotica),475*f*,502,502*f*,503*f*,504*f*,504*t*,505*t*
    external oblique,145,146*f*,147,148*f*,153,153*t*,154,154*f*,155,155*t*,156*f*,382*f*
    internal oblique,146*f*,147,148*f*
    lingual,531*f*
    palatine,529*f*,529*t*,537*t*
    palmar,291,319*t*,325*f*,329,330*f*,331*t*,340*f*
    plantar,363,402,403*f*,404*f*,405,405*t*,413*f*
    transversus abdominis,145,146*f*,147,148*f*,149

at T1–T4
spinous processes,305*t*
Apophysis,8,8*f*
Apparatus auditory,556*f*
lacrimal,543–544
vestibular,557*f*
Appendicitis, *195*,210
Appendicular artery,171*f*,194*f*
Appendicular skeleton,7,7*f*
Appendicular vein,176*f*
Appendix/appendices epiploic,193,194*f*
fibrous, of liver,197*f*
inflammation of, *195*
vermiform,17,17*f*,162*f*,178*t*,193,194*f*,195
vesicular,249*f*
Aqueduct cerebral,480,480*f*,481*f*
cochlear,555*f*
vestibular,437*f*,557
Aqueous humor,546
Arachnoid,474*f*,484*f*
sites of emergence from,484*f*
Arachnoid granulations,473*f*,475*f*,478,481*f*,502*f*
Arachnoid mater,47,48*f*,61*f*,473,473*f*,474,478
Arachnoid trabeculae,47,478,478*f*
Arachnoid villi,478
Arcade, scapular,292,294*f*
Arch
aortic,25*f*,71*f*,72,73*f*,74*f*,74*t*,79*f*,94*f*,97*f*,99*f*,101*f*,103*f*,105*f*,108*f*,113*f*,115*f*,118*f*,
angiogram,73*f*
parts of,73*f*
of atlas,561*f*
anterior,44*f*
posterior,35*f*,41*f*,44*f*
coracoacromial,304*f*,308*f*–309*f*
costal,335*f*
of cricoid cartilage,463*f*
dental mandibular,432*f*,439,525
maxillary,435*f*,439,525
dorsal carpal,294

  dorsal venous, 365, 366*f*
  of foot longitudinal, 402
  stabilizers of, 403*f*–404*f*
  transverse, 402
  stabilizers of, 403*f*
  iliopectineal, 150*f*, 382*f*
  jugular venous, 450, 469*f*
  of limb, upper, 294
  palatoglossal, 526*f*, 528, 530*f*
  palatopharyngeal, 526*f*, 528, 530*f*
  palmar (arterial) deep, 292, 293*f*, 294, 294*f*
  superficial, 293*f*, 294, 294*f*, 325*f*
  palmar (venous), deep, 295*f*
  plantar, deep, 364*f*, 365
  posterior, 44*f*
  superciliary, 431*f*
  tendinous of levator ani, 223*t*, 228, 229*f*, 230*t*, 231*f*, 252*f*, 254*f*
  of pelvic fascia, 230, 231*f*, 252*f*
  venous dorsal, 365, 366*f*
  jugular, 450, 469*f*
  vertebral, 34*f*, 35*f*, 39*t*, 42*f*, 42*t*
  pedicles of, 34*f*
  zygomatic, 430*f*, 432, 435*f*, 439, 503, 508*f*, 509*t*, 512, 513*f*, 525
Arcuate artery, 365, 365*f*
Arcuate eminence, 437*f*
Arcuate ligaments lateral, 87, 87*f*, 149*f*, 179*f*
  medial, 87, 87*f*, 149*f*, 179*f*
  median, 87*f*, 88, 88*f*, 149*f*
Arcuate line, 146*f*, 147, 148*f*, 150*f*, 161*f*, 226*f*, 228*f*, 229*f*
  of bony pelvis, 225
Arcuate popliteal ligament, 383, 390*f*, 392*f*
Arcuate pubic ligament, 234*f*
Area(s) bare, of liver, 144*f*, 166*f*, 186*f*, 196, 197*f*, 198
  Kiesselbach’s, 523, 524*f*
Areola, 82, 82*f*
Areolar glands, 82*f*–83*f*
Areolar tissue, 6, 502*f*
Areolar venous plexus, 92*f*
Arm, 7*f*, 284

  - anterior region, 284*f*
  - arteries of, 293*f*
  - compartments of, 313, 314*t*, 340*f*–341*f*
  - anterior, 291, 341*f*
  - posterior, 291, 341*f*
  - deep artery of, 292, 293*f*, 313*f*
  - muscles of, 313, 314*t*
  - musculature of, topographic views, 334–337
  - posterior, 336*f*–337*f*
  - posterior region, 284*f*
  - topographic views of, 334–337
- Arteries (general) autonomic nervous system and, 182*t*
  - end, 16, 16*f*
  - functional aspects of, 16
  - lumen of, 15*f*
  - overview, 14*f*
- Arteries (named), 14
  - alveolar, 515*f*, 516*t*
  - anterior, 447*f*
  - inferior, 447*f*, 515*f*, 516*t*
  - mental branch, 447*f*
  - posterior superior, 447*f*, 515*f*
  - angular, 445*f*, 446, 549*f*
  - appendicular, 171*f*, 194*f*
  - arcuate, 365, 365*f*
  - ascending cervical, 44, 50*f*, 292, 292*f*, 443, 444*f*, 470*f*
  - of atrioventricular (AV) node, 111
  - auricular deep, 447*f*, 516*t*
  - posterior, 446, 446*t*, 449*f*, 553
  - axillary, 14*f*, 91*f*, 151*f*–152*f*, 292, 292*f*, 293*f*, 294*f*, 297*f*, 298*f*, 306*f*, 307, 307*f*, 444*f*
  - lateral thoracic branch, 82
  - superior thoracic branch, 292
  - thoracodorsal branches, 82
  - basilar, 50*f*, 443, 448*f*, 481–482, 482*f*, 483*f*, 561*f*
  - brachial, 14*f*, 292, 293*f*, 294*f*, 296*f*, 307*f*, 315*f*, 341*f*
  - brachiocephalic
    trunk, 14*f*, 18*f*, 45*f*, 72, 73*f*, 74*f*, 74*t*, 76*f*–79*f*, 91*f*, 94*f*, 98*f*, 101*f*, 103*f*, 104*f*, 105*f*, 11
  - bronchial, 74*f*, 128, 129*f*
  - esophageal branch of, 117

buccal,447*f*,515*f*,516*t*
carotid angiogram of,559*f*
bifurcation of,445,445*f*,448*f*,472*f*
color Doppler of,559*f*
common,14*f*,45*f*,71*f*,72,76*f*–77*f*,89*f*,91*f*,94*f*,98*f*,292*f*,293*f*,443,444*f*,445,445*f*,4
cricothyroid branch,444*f*
esophageal branch,444*f*
infrahyoid branch,444*f*
left,72,73*f*,74*f*,74*t*,78*f*,79*f*,101*f*,103*f*,471*f*
right,72,74*f*,74*t*,94*f*
ultrasound of,558*f*,559*f*
external,78*f*,444*f*,445*f*,446,446*t*,448*f*,449*f*,451*f*,470*f*,472*f*,482*f*,523,524*f*
anterior branches of,446*t*
medial branches of,446*t*
posterior branches of,446*t*
terminal branches of,446,446*t*
internal,442*f*,444*f*,445,445*f*,446,448*f*,449*f*,472*f*,474*f*,477*f*,481,482*f*,483*f*,486*f*,
angiogram of,559*f*
cavernous part of,446,448*f*,481,482*f*
cerebral part of,446,448*f*,481,482*f*
cervical part of,446,448*f*,482*f*
petrous part of,446,448*f*,481,482*f*
system,445–449
ultrasound of,558*f*,559*f*
carpal dorsal,292
palmar,292
cecal,172*f*,194*f*
anterior,171*f*
posterior,171*f*
celiac
trunk,14*f*,74*f*,77*f*,88,89*f*,144,163*f*,164*t*,167,167*f*,168,168*t*,169*f*,170*f*,174*f*,17
central retinal,447,545*f*,547,549*f*
cerebellar anterior,483*f*,559*f*
inferior anterior,482,483*f*
posterior,483*f*
posterior,482*f*
posteroinferior,443
superior,482,483*f*
cerebral,478*f*

anterior,447,482*t*,483*f*,559*f*
distribution of,482*t*
middle,447,473*f*,482*t*,483*f*,559*f*
posterior,482,482*f*,482*t*,483*f*
cerebral arterial circle (of Willis),481,482,483*f*
cervical,444*f*
ascending,44,50*f*,292,292*f*,443,444*f*,470*f*
deep,91*f*,292*f*,443,444*f*
superficial,292*f*,472*f*
transverse,292,292*f*,294*f*,443,444*f*,470*f*,471*f*
dorsal scapular branch of,292
ciliary, posterior long,549*f*
short,549*f*
circumflex,106*f*,111
femoral ascending branch,363*f*
descending branch,363*f*
lateral,363,363*f*
medial,363,363*f*
humeral anterior,292,293*f*,294*f*
posterior,292,293*f*,294*f*,313*f*
iliac deep,150*f*–151*f*,151,167*f*,168,235*f*
superficial,151,152*f*,363,363*f*,383*f*
scapular,292,293*f*,294*f*,307*f*,312,313*f*
stenosis of,111*f*
clitoral,232
deep,269*f*,270
dorsal,234*f*,238*f*,269*f*,270
colic,166*f*
left,168*t*,172*f*,190*f*
middle,163*f*,168,168*t*,171*f*,172*f*,186*f*
right,168,168*t*,171*f*,172*f*,190*f*
collateral middle,293*f*
radial,293*f*
ulnar,292
inferior,315*f*
superior,315*f*
communicating anterior,482,483*f*
posterior,448*f*,482,482*f*,483*f*
coronary,74*t*,109–111,109*f*,110*f*

angina pectoris, *111*
atrial branch,109*f*
branches of,111*t*
coronary artery disease, *111*
left,101*f*,105*f*,106*f*
anterior interventricular branch,109*f*,110*f*
atrial branch,109*f*–110*f*
branches,109*f*,110*f*,111*t*
circumflex branch,109*f*
right,106*f*,109*f*,110*f*,111
atrial branch,106*f*,109*f*,110*f*
branches of,111,111*t*
conus branch,106*f*,109*f*
cremasteric,157,157*f*,158*f*,159
cystic,169*f*,170*f*,197*f*,198
deep of arm,292,293*f*,313*f*
of thigh,363,383*f*,415*f*
digital dorsal (of foot),365,365*f*
dorsal (of hand),294,294*f*
palmar,294
common,293*f*,294*f*
proper,294*f*
plantar common,364*f*,365
proper,364*f*,365
dorsal carpal,292
digital (of foot),365,365*f*
digital (of hand),294,294*f*
metacarpal,294,294*f*
pedal,14*f*,365
epigastric,150*f*
inferior,150*f*–152*f*,156*f*,167*f*,168,168*f*,231*f*,235*f*,363*f*,382*f*
left,168*t*
superficial,150*f*,151,151*f*,363,363*f*
superior,72,91*f*,150*f*–151*f*,152*f*
esophageal,74*f*
ethmoidal,447,448*f*
anterior,524*f*
posterior,524*f*,549*f*
facial,445*f*,446*t*,449*f*,451*f*,472*f*,500*f*,515*f*,523,533*f*,549*f*

plexus, 500*f*
submental branches, 446
tonsillar branches, 446
transverse, 446, 511*f*
femoral, 14*f*, 151*f*, 155*f*, 167*f*, 168, 168*f*, 235*f*, 264*f*, 363, 382*f*, 383*f*, 415*f*
branches of, 363*f*
circumflex ascending branch, 363*f*
descending branch, 363*f*
lateral, 363, 363*f*
medial, 363, 363*f*
course of, 363*f*
deep, 14*f*
pubic branch, 363*f*
fibular, 14*f*, 364, 364*f*, 415*f*
calcaneal branches, 364*f*
malleolar branches, 364, 364*f*
Arteries (named) (*continued*) muscular branches, 364*f*
perforating branches, 364, 364*f*, 365*f*
frontal, 446
gastric, 167, 167*f*, 170*f*, 175*f*
left, 163*f*, 167, 167*f*, 168*t*, 169*f*, 170*f*, 171*f*, 176*f*, 190*f*, 203*f*, 204*f*, 208*f*
posterior, 170*f*
right, 168*t*, 169*f*, 170*f*, 171*f*, 176*f*
short, 170*f*, 188
gastroduodenal, 168*t*, 169*f*, 170*f*, 171*f*, 175*f*, 175*t*, 176*f*, 190
superior pancreaticoduodenal branch, 190
gastro-omental, 175*f*
left, 169*f*, 170*f*, 188
right, 169*f*, 171*f*, 188
genicular descending, 109*f*, 110*f*, 363, 363*f*
lateral inferior, 363*f*, 364*f*, 365*f*, 392*f*
superior, 363*f*, 364*f*, 365*f*, 392*f*
medial inferior, 363*f*, 364*f*, 365*f*, 392*f*
superior, 363*f*, 364*f*, 365*f*, 392*f*
middle, 364*f*, 392*f*
gluteal, 167*f*, 363*f*
inferior, 235*f*, 363
left, 236*f*
right, 167*f*, 233*f*, 236*f*

superior,236*f*,363
left,167*f*
right,233*f*,236*f*
great anterior segmental medullary,50,50*f*
helicine,266,267*f*
hepatic,166*f*,168,199*f*
common,163*f*,167,167*f*,168*t*,169*f*,170*f*,171*f*,190*f*,204*f*,208*f*
left,169*f*,176*f*
proper,168*t*,169*f*,170*f*,171*f*,176*f*,196,197*f*,199*f*,204*f*,208*f*
right,169*f*,176*f*
humeral, circumflex anterior,292,293*f*,294*f*
posterior,292,293*f*,294*f*,313*f*
ileal,168,168*t*,171*f*,190
ileocolic,168,168*t*,171*f*,172*f*
iliac,14*f*
circumflex deep,150*f*,151,151*f*,167*f*,168,235*f*
superficial,151,151*f*,152*f*,363,363*f*,383*f*
common,14*f*,45*f*,63*f*,114*f*,166*f*,167,167*f*,168*t*,177*f*,179*f*,235*f*,244*f*,363*f*
left,186*f*,232,233*f*,234*f*,236,248*f*,258*f*
right,168*f*,172*f*,206*f*,232,233*f*,236,236*f*,248*f*
external,14*f*,45*f*,150*f*,151*f*,166*f*,167*f*,168,168*t*,179*f*,232,235*f*,253*f*,255*f*,259*f*,3
left,206*f*,234*f*,236*f*
right,168*f*,233*f*,236*f*,248*f*,253*f*,258*f*
internal,14*f*,44,45*f*,114*f*,167*f*,168,168*t*,179*f*,206*f*,231*f*,232,235*f*,253*f*,254,255*f*,
anterior division,232,232*t*,233*f*
branches of,232*t*
left,234*f*
posterior division,232,232*t*
right,168*f*,206*f*,233*f*
iliolumbar,44,167*f*
right,233*f*
infraorbital,447*f*,515*f*,516*t*,549*f*
intercostal,44,74*f*,79*f*,91*f*,96*f*,97*f*,152*f*,444*f*
anterior,45*f*,72,74*t*
highest,444*f*
posterior,45*f*,50*f*,72,74*f*,74*t*,91*f*
superior,74*t*
supreme,292*f*,443,444*f*
interosseous,341*f*

anterior,293*f*,294*f*
posterior branch,294*f*
common,292,294*f*
posterior,292,293*f*,294*f*
recurrent,294*f*
interventricular anterior,101*f*,106*f*,109*f*,110*f*,111
posterior,109*f*–110*f*,111
jejunal,168,168*t*,171*f*,190
labial inferior,445*f*,446
superior,445*f*,446*f*
labyrinthine,442*f*
lacrimal,549*f*
anastomotic branch with,447*f*
laryngeal inferior,468*f*
superior,444*f*,445,445*f*,466*f*,468*f*,470*f*
foramen for,446,463*f*
lingual,445,445*f*,446*t*,449*f*,472*f*,530,532*f*,533*f*
lumbar,44,50*f*,74*f*,167,167*f*,168*t*
ascending,175*f*
left,168*f*
posterior,59
malleolar lateral, anterior,365*f*
medial, anterior,365*f*
marginal, in abdomen (artery of Drummond),168,171*f*,172*f*,195
marginal branch of coronary arteries left,109*f*–110*f*,111,111*t*
right,111,111*t*
masseteric,447*f*,516*t*
maxillary,445,445*f*,447*f*,449*f*,515*f*,523,524*f*
branches of,516*t*
deep branches of,447*f*,514
divisions of,447*f*
mandibular part of,446,446*t*,516*t*
mylohyoid branch,447*f*
pterygoid branch,447*f*
pterygoid part of,446,446*t*,516*t*
pterygopalatine part of,446,446*t*,516*t*
medial,44
mediastinal branch,74*t*
meningeal,437*f*,447*f*

middle,473*f*,515*f*,516*t*
anastomotic branch,447*f*,549*f*
frontal branch,447*f*
parietal branch,447*f*
petrous branch,447*f*
posterior,442*f*
mesenteric,201*f*
inferior,14*f*,165*f*,166*f*,167*f*,168,168*f*,168*t*,172*f*,174*f*,176*f*,195,199*f*,206*f*,233*f*,2
anastomoses with superior mesenteric
    artery,14*f*,170*f*,171*f*,186*f*,189*f*,208*f*,212*f*
branches of,202
superior,14*f*,166*f*,167,167*f*,168*t*,169*f*,170*f*,171*f*,172*f*,174*f*,176*f*,186*f*,189*f*,190*f*,
metacarpal dorsal,294,294*f*
palmar,294,294*f*
metatarsal dorsal,365,365*f*
plantar,364*f*,365
musculophrenic,72,88,89*f*
nasal dorsal,448*f*,549*f*
lateral,446
lateral posterior,447*f*,524*f*
nasopalatine,442*f*
obturator,167*f*,168*f*,231*f*,234*f*–235*f*,255*f*,363,363*f*
left,236*f*
right,168*f*,233*f*
occipital,445*f*,446,446*t*,449*f*,472*f*,511*f*,512*f*
ophthalmic,447,448*f*,449*f*,477*f*,524*f*,542*f*,549*f*,551*f*
ovarian,167*f*,168,168*t*,175*f*,231*f*,232,249*f*,255*f*,258*f*
left,175*f*,206*f*,208*f*,235*f*
right,174*f*,206*f*,208*f*,233*f*
palatine descending,447*f*,516*t*,524*f*
greater,442*f*,447*f*,516*t*,524*f*
lesser,442*f*,447*f*,516*t*,524*f*
palmar,292
superficial,294*f*,324*f*
pancreatic dorsal,168,170*f*
great,170*f*
inferior,168,170*f*,176*f*
anastomoses,170*f*
pancreaticoduodenal,172*f*,190

inferior,168,168*t*,169*f*,170*f*,171*f*
anterior,170*f*
posterior,170*f*
superior anterior,169*f*,170*f*,171*f*,176*f*
duodenal branch of,170*f*
posterior,169*f*,170*f*,176*f*
parietal,446
pedal dorsal,14*f*,365,365*f*
dorsal pulse of, *365*
penile of bulb,266
deep,257,257*f*,264*f*–265*f*,266,267*f*
dorsal,232,233*f*,235*f*,264,264*f*,265*f*,266*f*,267*f*
perforating, of lower limb,363,363*f*
pericardiacophrenic,74*t*,88,89*f*,94*f*,96*f*–98*f*,99,100*f*,121*f*
perineal,232,233*f*,253*f*,264*f*,267,269*f*
pharyngeal, ascending,444*f*,445*f*,446,446*t*,449*f*
phrenic inferior,74*f*,88,89*f*,167,167*f*,168*t*,208*f*
left,168*f*,174*f*
right,174*f*
superior,74*t*,89*f*
plantar,365*f*
common,364*f*
deep,365
lateral,364,364*f*
medial,364,364*f*
deep branch,364*f*
superficial branch,364*f*
proper,364*f*
pontine,483*f*
popliteal,14*f*,363,363*f*,364,364*f*,365*f*,392*f*,417*f*
aneurysm, *364*
genicular branches,363,365
posterior descending,109*f*,110*f*
posterolateral, right,109*f*–110*f*
princeps pollicis,294,294*f*
pudendal external,157,232,235*f*,264*f*,266*f*,363*f*
deep,363
internal,167*f*,223*f*,232,234*f*,235*f*,259*f*,264*f*,267,269*f*
branches,223*t*,257,262,269*f*

left,233*f*,236*f*,262
superficial,363
pulmonary,16,16*f*,72,72*f*–73*f*,94*f*,104*f*,114*f*,115*f*,118*f*,124*f*,128,129*f*
branches of,72,73*f*
left,73*f*,97*f*,98*f*,101*f*,103*f*,105*f*,123*f*
branches of,105*f*,123*f*
right,96*f*,99*f*,101*f*,103*f*,104*f*,105*f*,123*f*
branches of,105*f*
radial,14*f*,293*f*,294*f*,325*f*,326*f*,344*f*
recurrent,292,293*f*,315*f*
superficial palmar branch,293*f*,325*f*
radialis indicis,294,294*f*
radicular anterior,50
posterior,50
rectal,167*f*,195
inferior,172*f*,232,233*f*,235*f*,236*f*,255*f*,264*f*,269*f*,271
left,258
middle,168*f*,172*f*,233*f*,234*f*,235*f*,236*f*,255*f*,258,264*f*
right,258
superior,168,168*t*,172*f*,232,233*f*,236*f*,258,272*f*
recurrent interosseous,294*f*
radial,292,293*f*,315*f*
tibial anterior,364,364*f*
posterior,364,364*f*,392*f*
ulnar,292
renal,14*f*,168,168*t*,175*f*,201*f*,205*f*
division of,205
left,166*f*,171*f*,174*f*,176*f*,186*f*,204*f*,206*f*,208*f*
right,174*f*,201*f*,204*f*,208*f*
retinal, central,447,545*f*,547,549*f*
sacral lateral,44,45*f*,167*f*
median,44,45*f*,167,167*f*,168*t*,233*f*–236*f*
scapular circumflex,292,293*f*,294*f*,307*f*,313*f*
in triangular space,312
dorsal,292*f*,294*f*
scrotal anterior,264*f*
posterior,233*f*
segmental of kidney,205*f*
of spinal cord,50*f*

segmental medullary anterior,50,50*f*
great anterior,50,50*f*
posterior,50,50*f*
sigmoid/sigmoidal,168,168*t*,172*f*,236*f*
sinoatrial (SA) nodal,111,111*t*
sphenopalatine,442*f*,447*f*,515*f*,516*t*,524*f*
posterior septal branches,446*t*
spinal,50*f* (*See also* Spinal arteries) anterior,48*f*,50,50*f*,442*f*,483*f*
posterior,50,50*f*,442*f*,483*f*
splenic,14*f*,163*f*,166*f*,167,167*f*,168,168*t*,169*f*,170*f*,171*f*,176*f*,186*f*,190*f*,202,20
pancreatic branches,170*f*
stylomastoid,442*f*
subclavian,44,45*f*,50*f*,71*f*,73*f*,77*f*–79*f*,91*f*,98*f*,151*f*,291–292,292*f*,293*f*,294*f*,44
branches of,291
left,14*f*,71*f*,72,74*f*,74*t*,89*f*,94*f*,97*f*,101*f*,103*f*,118*f*,445*f*,468*f*,482*f*
right,14*f*,72,74*t*,79*f*,96*f*,111*t*
subcostal,45*f*
sublingual,532*f*
submental,532*f*
subscapular,292,294*f*
sulcal,50*f*
supraorbital,447,448*f*,549*f*
suprarenal,167,167*f*,168*f*
inferior,168*t*,174*f*,205*f*,208*f*
middle,167,167*f*,168*t*,174*f*,205*f*,208*f*
superior,174*f*,205*f*,208*f*
suprascapular,292,292*f*,293*f*,294*f*,313*f*,443,444*f*,446,470*f*,471*f*,472*f*
acromial branches,294*f*
in scapular notch,312,313*f*
supratrochlear,447,448*f*,549*f*
tarsal, lateral,365,365*f*
temporal,512*f*
deep,447*f*,513*f*,515*f*,516*t*
middle,446
superficial,445,445*f*,446*t*,449*f*,511*f*,515*f*
parietal bone branch,446
testicular,150*f*,155*f*,155*t*,156*f*,157*f*,158*f*,167,167*f*,168*t*,175*f*,232,235*f*
left,175*f*,206*f*,208*f*
right,174*f*,206*f*,208*f*

thigh, deep artery of,363,363*f*
thoracic,89*f*,91*f*,151,151*f*,307*f*,470*f*
internal,45*f*,72,74*t*,91*f*,94*f*,120*f*,121*f*,151*f*–152*f*,176*f*,292*f*,293*f*,443,444*f*,470*f*,
branches,72
lateral,91*f*,151*f*–152*f*,292,293*f*
superior,151*f*–152*f*,293*f*
thoracoacromial,82,292,293*f*,307*f*
acromial branch,293*f*
deltoid branch,293*f*
pectoral branch,293*f*
thoracodorsal,151*f*–152*f*,292,293*f*,294*f*,307*f*
thymic branch,74*t*
thyrocervical trunk,45*f*,73*f*,74*f*,74*t*,292,292*f*,294*f*,443,444*f*–445*f*,468*f*,470*f*,471*f*
thyroid,444*f*,445*f*
inferior,74*t*,292,292*f*,443,444*f*,466*f*,467*f*,468*f*,470*f*,471*f*
superior,444*f*,445,446*t*,449*f*,467*f*,468*f*,469*f*,470*f*,472*f*
tibial,14*f*,415*f*
anterior,14*f*,363*f*,364,364*f*
recurrent branches,364*f*,365
posterior,14*f*,364,364*f*
calcaneal branches,364*f*
tympanic,554*f*
anterior,442*f*,447*f*,516*t*
superior,442*f*
ulnar,14*f*,293*f*,294*f*,315*f*,324*f*,325*f*,341*f*,344*f*
collateral,292,315*f*
deep palmar branch,294
dorsal carpal branch,294*f*
recurrent,292
umbilical,114*f*,115*t*,167*f*,233*f*,235*f*,255*f*
urethral,264*f*,265*f*,267*f*
uterine,167*f*,168*f*,231*f*,233*f*,235*f*,251,255*f*
tubal branches,249*f*
vaginal,235*f*,253*f*
right,233*f*
vertebral,35,45*f*,49*f*,50*f*,74*t*,91*f*,292,292*f*,293*f*,294*f*,442*f*,443,444*f*,445*f*,448*f*,
groove for,35,35*f*
right,73*f*,74*f*

transverse foramina and,35,35*f*,443
vesical,167*f*,235*f*
inferior,168*f*,231*f*,233*f*,234*f*,255*f*
superior,231*f*,233*f*,234*f*,255*f*
vestibular bulb,234*f*,253*f*,267,269*f*,270
zygomatico-orbital,445*f*,446,511*f*
Arteries (of region or structure) of abdomen,167–172,167*f*
of abdominal wall,151,151*f*–152*f*
of arm, deep,293*f*
in triceps hiatus,313*f*
of brain,481–483,483*f*
distribution of,482*t*
of bronchial tree,128–130
in circulatory system,14
defined,14
of ductus deferens,233*f*
of forearm,294*f*
of hand,294*f*
of head and neck,443–449,448*f*
of knee and posterior leg,364,364*f*
of larynx,466*f*,468*f* (*See also* Laryngeal artery) of leg,364*f*–365*f*
of liver,196–198
of lower limb,363–365
of lungs,128–130
of neck,444*f*,445–449
of orbit,547,549*f*
overview,14*f*
of pancreatic tail,170*f*
of parathyroids,468*f*
of pelvis,232–236
of penis,264
of posterior leg,364,365*f*
prostatic,247
of pterygoid canal,516*t*
of round ligament (of uterus),154*f*
of scalp,502–503
of small intestine,189–190
of spinal cord,50*f*
of stomach,169*f*,188

  of thigh, 363*f*, 364*f*
  of thorax, 72–76
  of thyroid, 468*f* (*See also* Thyroid artery) of trunk, 45*f*
  of upper limb, 291–294
  forearm, 292, 293*f*, 294*f*
  hand, 292, 293*f*, 294*f*
  of ureters, 207
  of vertebral column, 35 (*See also* Vertebral arteries) of vestibular bulb, 234*f*, 253*f*, 269*f*, 271
Arterioles, 14, 15*f*
Arteriovenous coupling, 15
Articular cartilage, 8*f*, 10*f*, 417*f*
Articular circumference, 316*f*
Articular disk, 10, 304*f*, 508*f*, 509*f*, 510*f*
Articular eminence, 514*f*
Articular facets inferior, 35, 35*f*, 36*f*–37*f*, 37*f*, 42*f*
  posterior, 35*f*
  superior, 35, 35*f*, 36*f*, 37*f*, 38*f*, 42*f*, 44*f*
  of sacrum, 38*f*
  of thoracic vertebrae, 35
  for thyroid cartilage, 466*f*
Articular fovea, 317*f*
Articularis genu, 379*t*
Articular labra, 10
Articular processes, 32*f*
  inferior, 34, 34*f*, 35*f*–37*f*, 43*f*, 63*f*
  superior, 34, 34*f*, 35*f*–37*f*, 38*f*, 41*f*, 42*f*, 43*f*, 63*f*
Articular surface, of patella, 359*f*, 389*f*
Articular tubercle, 430*f*, 432, 435*f*, 437*f*, 508*f*, 510*f*
Aryepiglottic folds, 463, 464*f*, 466*f*, 535
Aryepiglottic ligament, 463
Arytenoid oblique, 466*f*, 536*f*
  transverse, 465*t*, 466*f*, 536*f*
Arytenoid cartilage, 126*f*, 463, 463*f*
  muscular process, 466*f*
  vocal process, 463, 463*f*, 466*f*
Ascending
  aorta, 14*f*, 25*f*, 72, 73*f*, 74*f*, 74*t*, 77*f*–78*f*, 99*f*, 100*f*, 101*f*, 103*f*, 104*f*, 105*f*, 106*f*, 109*f*, 112
Ascending cervical artery, 44, 50*f*, 292, 292*f*, 443, 444*f*, 470*f*

Ascending
 colon,71*f*,145*f*,161*f*,162*f*,163*f*,165*f*,172*f*,190*f*,191*f*,192*f*,193,193*f*,194*f*,196*f*,199
  attachment of,166*f*,204*f*
  lymphatic drainage of,178*t*
Ascending lumbar veins,46*f*,75,173,174*t*,176*f*
Ascites, *165*
ASD. *See* Atrial septal defect (ASD) Asterion,430*f*,434*f*,440*t*
Atelectasis, *126*
Atlantoaxial joint,39
  lateral,39*f*
  median,39,39*f*
Atlanto-occipital joints,39,39*f*
Atlanto-occipital membranes,41,41*f*,44*f*
Atlas (C1),35*f*,39*f*,46*f*,471*f*,534*f*
  arch of,561*f*
  anterior,44*f*
  posterior,35*f*,41*f*,44*f*
  posterior tubercle of,35*f*,60*f*
  superior view,35*f*
  transverse ligament of,41*f*,44*f*
  transverse process of,34*f*,35,42*f*,59,60*f*,305*t*
Atrial septal defect (ASD), *116*,116*f*
Atrial vein,112*f*
Atrioventricular (AV) bundle left branch,108
  right branch,108
Atrioventricular heart block, *108*
Atrioventricular (AV) node,108,108*f*,111*t*,113*f*
  artery of,111
Atrioventricular valve,104*f*–107*f*,106–107
  left,106*f*,107*f*
  right,105*f*,106*f*,107*f*
Atrium,70,72*f*,104
  auricles of left,100*f*,101*f*,102,102*t*,103*f*,104,105*f*,106*f*,109*f*
  right,100*f*,101*f*,102,102*t*,103*f*,104,105*f*,106*f*,109*f*,112*f*,124*f*
  left,16*f*,72*f*,99*f*,100*f*,101*f*,102,103*f*,105*f*,106*f*,110*f*,114*f*,115*f*,116*f*,124*f*
  proper,104
  right,16*f*,25*f*,72*f*,101*f*,102,103*f*,104*f*,105*f*,106*f*,109*f*,110*f*,114*f*,115*f*,116*f*,124*f*
Auditory apparatus,556*f*
Auditory canal, external,552*f*

Auditory ossicles,554*f*,555
Auditory tube. *See* Pharyngotympanic (auditory) tube
Auricles of ear,552*f*
  innervation of,553*f*
  of heart left,100*f*,101*f*,102,102*t*,103*f*,104,105*f*,106*f*,109*f*
  as atrial appendage,100*f*,101*f*,106*f*
  right,100*f*,101*f*,102,102*t*,103*f*,104,105*f*,106*f*,109*f*,112*f*,124*f*
  as atrial appendage,101*f*,106*f*
Auricular artery anterior,553
  deep,447*f*,516*t*
  posterior,446,446*t*,449*f*,553
Auricular muscle,504*f*
  anterior,505*t*
  posterior,505*t*
  superior,502,505*t*
Auricular nerve,60*f*
  great,54*f*,60*f*,459,460*f*,460*t*,461*f*,469*f*,506,506*f*,511*f*,512*f*,553*f*
  posterior,492*f*,493*f*
Auricular surface,9*f*
  of coxal bone,9*f*,225*f*
  of ilium,226*f*
  of sacrum,38*f*
Auricular veins, posterior,449,450*f*,511*f*
Auriculotemporal nerve,490*f*,491,494,496*f*,506*f*,507*f*,511*f*,512*f*,513*f*,514,515*f*,517*f*,517*t*,553,553*f*
Auscultation sites, *107*,107*f*,107*t*
  of cardiac valves, *107*,107*f*,107*t*
Autonomic innervation of abdomen,180*f*,181*t*
  of head,499–501
  of heart,80*f*,113*f*
  of intraperitoneal organs,184*f*
  of kidneys and ureters,56*f*,185*f*
  of lungs,131*t*
  of pelvis,180*f*,181*t*,182*t*
  of stomach,56*f*,183*f*
Autonomic nervous system (ANS),18,56*f*
  in abdomen,180*f*,181*t*
  sympathetic and parasympathetic effects,182*f*,182*t*
  abdomen and,182*t*

- arteries and, 182*t*
- circuitry of, 57*f*
- ductus deferens and, 182*t*
- gastrointestinal tract and, 182*t*
- liver and, 56*f*, 182*t*
- neurons of, 57*f*
- nociceptive fibers in, 55
- overview, 56*f*
- pancreas and, 56*f*, 182*t*, 183*f*
- parasympathetic division, 55, 56*t* (*See also* Parasympathetic nervous system)
  - effect on organs, 56*t*, 182*f*, 182*t*
- structure of, 501*f*
- pelvis and, 180*f*, 181*t*, 182*t*
- peripheral nerve pathways of, 55–57, 56*f*–57*f*, 56*t*
- seminal gland and, 182*t*
- splenic capsule and, 182*t*
- suprarenal glands and, 182*t*
- sympathetic division, 55 (*See also* Sympathetic nervous system) effect on
  - organs, 56*t*, 182*f*, 182*t*
- structure of, 22
- urinary bladder, 182*t*
- urinary tract and, 182*t*
- uterus and, 182*t*

Autonomic plexus(es), 23
- of abdomen, 166–167, 167*f*, 180–181, 180*f*, 181*t*
- cardiac, 78*f*, 80–81, 80*f*, 113*f*, 131*f*
- of pelvis, 166–167, 167*f*, 180–181, 180*f*, 181*t*
- pulmonary, 78*f*, 80*f*, 81, 131, 131*f*

AV. *See* Atrioventricular (AV) bundle; Atrioventricular (AV) node Axes, of body, 3–4
- cardinal, 3–4, 3*f*–4*f*
- longitudinal, 4, 4*f*, 250*f*
- cervical (in cervical canal), 250*f*
- uterine (in cavity of uterus), 250*f*
- vaginal, 250*f*
- sagittal, 4, 4*f*

Axial, location/direction term, 3*t*

Axial skeleton, 7, 7*f*

Axilla, 284, 306–307

    boundaries of,306–307
    dissection of,307*f*
    walls of,306*f*
Axillary
  artery,14*f*,91*f*,151*f*–152*f*,292,292*f*,293*f*,294*f*,297*f*,298*f*,306*f*,307,307*f*,444*f*
    lateral thoracic branch,82
    superior thoracic branch,292
    thoracodorsal branches,82
Axillary fascia,291
Axillary fold anterior,284*f*,306
    posterior,284*f*,307
Axillary fossa,284*f*
Axillary line anterior,4*t*
    posterior,4*t*
Axillary lymphatic plexus,296*f*
Axillary lymph nodes,17*f*,83*f*,152*f*,296*f*
    apical,296,296*f*
    brachial,296*f*
    central,296,296*f*
    humeral,296,296*f*
    interpectoral,296,296*f*
    pectoral,296*f*
    subscapular,296,296*f*
Axillary nerve,54*f*,60*f*,297,297*f*,298*f*,299*t*,301*f*,302*f*,313*f*
    injury, *301*
    in quadrangular space,312
Axillary recess,308*f*,311*f*
Axillary region,284,284*f*
Axillary sheath,307
Axillary tail,82
Axillary vein,14*f*,76*f*,83*f*,91*f*–92*f*,295,295*f*,306*f*,307*f*
Axis/axes. *See also* Axes, of body C2
    dens of,33*f*,39*f*,44*f*,534*f*,560*f*
    lateral mass of,39*f*
    left lateral view,35*f*
    spinous process of,32*f*,60*f*
    structural elements,34*f*
    condylar,376*f*
    of pronation,317*f*

- of supination,317*f*

Axons,19,20*f*
- myelinated,20*f*
- unmyelinated,20*f*

Azygos system,59,75,76*f*

Azygos vein,46*f*,51*f*,75,76*f*,77*f*,88,89*f*,92*f*,93*f*,118*f*–119*f*,124*f*,174*f*,176*f*

B

Back. *See also* Spinal cord; Spine; Vertebral column clinical correlations age-related changes in vertebrae, *41*
- cervical spine injury, *39*
- disk herniation in lumbar spine, *40*
- epidural anesthesia, *48*
- herniation of intervertebral disk, *40*
- lumbar puncture, *48*,48*f*
- metastasis and vertebral venous plexus, *44*
- osteoporosis, *34*
- referred pain, *57*
- scoliosis, *34*
- spondylolisthesis, *37*
- spondylolysis, *37*
- CT of,62*t*
- cutaneous innervation of,60*f*
- developmental correlation developmental changes of the spinal cord, dural sac, and vertebral column, *49*
- spinal development, *33*
- general features,32
- innervation of,44,45*f*,51*f*
- cutaneous,54*f*,60*f*
- muscles of,58–59,58*f*,58*f*–61*f*,58*t*
- imaging modalities,62*t*
- MRI of,62*t*
- muscles of,58–59,58*t*,60*f*–61*f*
- extrinsic,58
- intrinsic,58
- nerves of,60*f*–61*f*
- radiograph of,62*f*,62*t*
- ultrasound of,62*f*,62*t*
- veins of,51*f*

Baker’s (popliteal) cyst, *390*

MRI of, *390*
BALT (bronchus-associated lymphatic tissue),17
Bands, lateral of digits,333,333*f*
of salpingopharyngeal folds,538
Bare area, of liver,144*f*,166*f*,186*f*,196,197*f*,198
Barium, radiographs with,211*f*. *See also* Double contrast barium enema
Bartholin’s glands,267,268*f*
Basal, location/direction term,3*t*
Basal cistern,481*f*
Basal ganglia,20,21*f*
Base of heart,101
of lungs,123,123*f*
of metacarpals,290
of patella,357,359*f*
of phalanx (foot),406*t*
of phalanx (hand),328*f*
of prostate,246
of sacrum,38*f*
of skull exterior,435*f*
interior,436*f*
Basement membrane,556,557
Basilar artery,50*f*,443,448*f*,481,482,482*f*,483*f*,561*f*
Basilar membrane,556*f*
Basilar plexus,476*f*,477
Basilar veins,484,484*f*
Basilic hiatus,295*f*,296
Basilic vein,14*f*,295,295*f*,296,296*f*,315*f*
Basivertebral vein,46*f*
Bell’s palsy, *492*
Benign prostatic hypertrophy, *247*
Biceps
brachii,12*f*,292,296*f*,306*f*,307*f*,308*f*,309,314*t*,315*f*,334*f*,335*f*,338*f*,340*f*,341*f*
fascia,315*f*
long head,308*f*,309*f*,341*f*
short head,308*f*,309*f*,312*t*,314*t*,340*f*,341*f*
tendon of,308*f*,315*f*,338*f*,340*f*
Biceps femoris,13*f*,381*t*,391*t*,392*f*,409*f*–410*f*,411*f*,412*f*,414*f*
long head,368*t*,381*t*,391*t*,392*f*,410*f*,411*f*,414*f*,415*f*
short head,368*t*,370,381*t*,391*t*,392*f*,411*f*,414*f*,415*f*

Bicipital aponeurosis,314,314*t*,315*f*,338*f*,340*f*
Bicornuate uterus, *249*
Bicuspid valve,106*f*,107, *107*,108*f*
Bifurcate ligament,400*f*
Bifurcation carotid,445,445*f*,448*f*,472*f*
  tracheal,118*f*,119,126*f*
Bile duct,161,169*f*,196,197*f*,198,199*f*,201*f*,208*f*
  common,189*f*
Biliary sphincter system,199*f*
Biliary system, extrahepatic,198–199
  ducts,198,199*f*
Biliary tract, in situ,199*f*
Bipartite patella, *359*,359*f*
Birth, cardiovascular changes at,115–116
Bladder,
 urinary,150*f*,186*f*,206*f*,223*f*,230*f*–231*f*,244*f*,248*f*,250*f*,251*f*,253*f*,254–256,254*f*,
  apex of,245*f*,254,255*f*
  autonomic nervous system and,56*f*,182*t*
  blood supply to,235*f*
  body of,245*f*,254*f*,255*f*,256
  in female,255*f*,258*f*
  fundus of,245*f*,255*f*,256
  intravenous pyelogram,207*f*
  lateral ligaments of,230,252*f*
  lymphatic drainage of,178*t*,256
  in male,235*f*,254*f*,255*f*,257*f*
  MRI,275*f*
  mucosa of,255*f*,256*f*
  neck of,245*f*,246*f*,255*f*,256,256*f*
  parasympathetic stimulation of,256
  referred pain and,185*f*
  structure of,2*f*,255*f*
  sympathetic stimulation of,256
  trigone of,256,256*f*
  uvula of,256*f*
  visceral peritoneum of,250,255*f*
  visceral sensory fibers,256
Blind spot,544
Blood, and interstitial fluid, exchange between,15

Blood flow in adult circulation,16*f*,87*f*,88
    disturbed, in coronary arteries, *111*
    local, regulation of,15
    in prenatal circulation,114–115,114*f*
Blood supply to female external genitalia,269*f*
    to gallbladder,199*f*
    to genitalia in female,234*f*–235*f*,269*f*
    in male,235*f*,264*f*
    to kidneys,174*f*
    of liver,196–198
    to pancreas,202
    to pelvis,233*f*
    in female,233*f*–235*f*,254,269*f*
    in male,233*f*,235*f*
    of pleura,120
    of rectum,235*f*–236*f*,258
    to spinal cord,50,51*f*
    to spleen,202
    to ureters,207,254
    to urethra,257
    to urinary bladder,257
    to uterus,251
    to vagina,254
Blood vessels. *See also* Arteries (general); Veins (general); specific arteries and veins of genitalia female,234*f*–235*f*,269*f*
    male,235*f*,264*f*
    oxygen poor,16,16*f*
    oxygen rich,16,16*f*
    of pelvis,233*f*–235*f*,254,269*f*
    of rectum,235*f*–236*f*
    structure of,15,15*f*
    of testes,158*f*
Body/bodies carotid,445*f*,446,472*f*
    ciliary,488,543*f*,544,545*f*
    of clitoris,267,268*f*–269*f*
    of epididymis,157*f*
    erectile, of urogenital triangle in female,267,269*f*
    in male,264–267,266*f*
    of gallbladder,198,199*f*

  of hyoid bone,443,443*f*,527*t*
  of ilium,225*f*,226*f*
  of ischium,225*f*,226*f*
  of mandible,430*f*,431*f*,432*f*,434*f*,439,561*f*
  of pancreas,166*f*,199*f*,200,200*f*,203*f*
  of penis,264,265*f*,266*f*
  perineal,232*f*,238*f*,239*f*,244*f*,248*f*,261*f*,262,262*f*,271
  of pubis,225*f*,226*f*
  of ribs,85*f*
  of sphenoid,432,438*f*
  of sternum,7*f*,71*f*,84,84*f*,86*f*,87*f*,146*f*,149*f*,334*f*,335*f*
  of stomach,187,187*f*,199*f*
  with longitudinal rugal folds,188*f*
  of talus,357,361*f*,362*f*
  of tongue,530,530*f*
  of urinary bladder,245*f*,255*f*
  of uterus,248*f*,249,253*f*,258*f*
  ligaments arising from,250
  vertebral,34*f*,36*f*–37*f*,42*f*,44*f*
  vitreous,545*f*,546
Bones (general),6
  cancellous,7,8*f*
  compact,7,8*f*
  fat marrow,8*f*
  formation of,8
  hematopoietic marrow,8*f*
  layers of,8
  long,8
  typical structure of,8*f*
  marrow,7,8*f*,17*f*
Bones (named) calcaneus,7*f*,357,361*f*,362*f*,393*f*,399*f*,400*f*,401*f*,403*f*,404*f*,412*f*
  capitate,289,290*f*,291*f*,321*f*,323*f*,324*f*,328*f*,344*f*
  capitulum,288*f*,289,316*f*,343*f*
  carpal,7*f*,285*f*,289
  clavicle,7*f*,13*f*,96*f*,97*f*,285,285*f*,292*f*,296*f*,303,304*f*,308*f*,309*f*,313*f*,334*f*,335*f*,
  coxal (hip bone),7*f*,9*f*,222*f*,226*f*,356,357*f*,372*f*
  cartilage of,225*f*
  features of,225
  gluteal surface of,226*f*

relation to bones of trunk,372*f*
surfaces of auricular,9*f*,225*f*
symphyseal,9*f*,222*f*,226*f*
cranial,473*f*,478*f*
cuboid,357,361*f*,362*f*,393*f*,399*f*,401*f*,403*f*
cuneiform,403*f*,404*f*
intermediate,357,361*f*,362*f*
lateral,357,361*f*,362*f*
medial,357,361*f*,362*f*,400*f*,401*f*
tubercle,464*f*,466*f*
ethmoid bone,430*f*,431*f*,436*f*,439,440*f*,522*f*
anterior view,438*f*,439*f*
cribriform plate,436*f*,439,439*f*,442*f*,488,488*f*,522*f*,553*f*
crista galli,436*f*,439,439*f*,440*f*,474*f*,488*f*,522*f*
middle nasal concha,431*f*
orbital plate,439*f*,440*f*,540*f*
perpendicular plate,431*f*,439,439*f*,440*f*,488*f*,522*f*
in situ,439*f*
superior concha,488*f*
superior view,439*f*
femur,274*f*,356,357*f*–358*f*,384*f*,385*f*,385*f*,386*f*,387*f*,389*f*,390*f*,414*f*,415*f*,417*f*
adductor tubercle of,357,358*f*
anterior view of,358*f*
condyles lateral,357,358*f*,376*f*,384*f*,385*f*,386*f*,387*f*,389*f*,417*f*
medial,357,357*f*,358*f*,376*f*,384*f*,385*f*,386*f*,387*f*,389*f*,417*f*
fovea of,358*f*,376*f*,377*f*
head of,275*f*,356,358*f*,359*f*,375*f*,376*f*
ligament of,359*f*,374,375*f*,377*f*
necrosis, *364*
neck of,356, *358f*,359*f*,372*f*,375*f*
fracture of, *359*
patellar surface of,376*f*,387*f*,389*f*
posterior view of,358*f*
rotation of,376*f*
shaft of,356,358–359*f*
trochanters greater,7*f*,356,358*f*–359*f*,372*f*,375*f*,376*f*,377*f*,410*f*
lesser,7*f*,356,358*f*,375*f*,376*f*,377*f*
fibula,357*f*,360*f*,385*f*
frontal,7*f*,429,430*f*,431*f*,433*f*,436*f*,438*f*,440*f*,508*f*,513*f*,522*f*,540*f*,541*f*

zygomatic process of,513*f*
hamate,289,290*f*,291*f*,321*f*,323*f*,324*f*,325*f*,328*f*,344*f*
hip (coxal),222*f*,226*f*,356 (*See also* Coxal bone)
humerus,6*f*,7*f*,285*f*,288,309*f*,311*f*,340*f*,341*f*,343*f*
anatomic neck of,288,288*f*
anterolateral surface of,288*f*
anteromedial surface of,288*f*
borders lateral,288*f*,316*f*
medial,288*f*
crest of greater tubercle,288*f*
crest of lesser tubercle,288*f*
fractures of, *288*
head of,288,288*f*,304*f*,306*f*,308*f*,311*f*,345*f*
intertubercular groove of,288,288*f*,304*f*,308*f*
tendon sheath in,309*f*
radial groove of,288*f*,289
shaft of,288*f*
supracondylar ridge lateral,288*f*,316*f*
medial,288*f*,316*f*
surgical neck of,288,288*f*
tubercles,288
greater,288,288*f*,304*f*,308*f*,335*f*
lesser,288,288*f*,304*f*,308*f*
ulnar groove of,288*f*,289,316*f*
hyoid,443,455*f*,457*f*,463*f*,464*f*,466*f*,472*f*,525*f*,527*f*,527*t*,531*f*,532*f*,533*f*,534*f*,5
body,443,527*t*
greater horn,443,443*f*
lesser horn,443,443*f*
incus,552*f*,554*f*,555,556*f*
ischiopubic,7*f*
lacrimal,430*f*,439,522*f*,540*f*
lunate,289,290*f*,291*f*,321*f*,323*f*,328*f*
dislocation, *289*
malleus,552*f*,554*f*,555,556*f*
mandible,7*f*,430*f*,431*f*,434*f*,439,469*f*,470*f*,508*f*,509*f*,525*f*,531*f*,532*f*,561*f*
alveolar process of,431*f*,432*f*
angle of,432*f*,439,536*f*
body,430*f*,431*f*,432*f*,434*f*,439,561*f*
condylar process of,432,432*f*,439,442*f*,509*t*

coronoid process of,432*f*,439,508*f*,509*t*,513*f*
lateral view of,432*f*
ramus of,430*f*,431*f*,432*f*,434*f*,439,515*f*
manubrium, of sternum,7*f*,71*f*,84,84*f*,285,286*f*,334*f*,335*f*
maxilla,7*f*,44*f*,430*f*,431*f*,522*f*,528*f*,540*f*
alveolar process,431*f*
frontal process of,431*f*,439
orbital surface of,540*f*,541*f*
palatine process of,434*f*,435*f*,440*f*,514*f*,522*f*
teeth,526*f*
tuberosity of,514*f*,518*f*
zygomatic process of,430*f*,431*f*,435*f*,437*f*
maxillary,439
metacarpals,7*f*,285*f*,290*f*,291*f*,328*f*
bases of,290
heads of,290,333*f*
metatarsals,7*f*,357*f*,361*f*,362,362*f*,397*f*–399*f*,400*f*
nasal,430*f*,431*f*,439,440*f*,521*f*,522*f*,540*f*,561*f*
navicular,357,361*f*,362*f*,393*f*,398*f*,399*f*,400*f*,401*f*,403*f*–404*f*
occipital,7*f*,41*f*,432,433*f*,434*f*,437*f*,438*f*
basilar part of,44*f*
palatine,434*f*,438*f*,439,514*f*,522*f*,528*f*,541*f*
parietal,7*f*,429,430*f*,433*f*,434*f*,435*f*,437*f*,438*f*,508*f*
patella,7*f*,357*f*,376*f*,384*f*,386*f*,387*f*,388*f*,408*f*,408*f*–409*f*,411*f*,417*f*
apex of,357,359*f*
base of,357,359*f*
bipartite, *359*,359*f*
phalanges,7*f*,357*f*
of foot,361*f*–362*f*,362,400*f*
of hand,285*f*,289,290,290*f*
base of,328*f*
distal,290*f*,291*f*,321*f*,328*f*
head of,328*f*
middle,290*f*,291*f*,321*f*,328*f*
proximal,290*f*,291*f*,321*f*,328*f*
shaft of,290*f*,321*f*,328*f*
pisiform,289,290*f*,321*f*,322*f*,323*f*,324*f*,325,325*f*,328*f*
pubic,274*f*
radius,7*f*,285*f*,289,289*f*,290*f*,291*f*,328*f*,340*f*,343*f*

  head of,285*f*,289,316*f*,344*f*
  subluxation of, *318*
  ribs,9*f*,85,90*f*
  articulation joints of,85
  body of,85*f*
  classification of,85
  false,85,85*f*
  floating,85,85*f*
  heads of,85,85*f*
  neck of,85*f*
  numbering,84,85
  true,85,85*f*
  types of,85,85*f*
  scaphoid,289,290*f*,291*f*,321*f*,323*f*,324*f*,326*f*,328*f*
  sesamoid,290*f*,362,362*f*,398*f*,399*f*
  sphenoid,430*f*,431*f*,432,432*f*,434*f*,436*f*,437*f*,438*f*,441*f*,518*f*,528*f*,540*f*,541*f*
  stapes,552*f*,554*f*,555,555*f*,556*f*
  sternum,7*f*,71*f*,84,84*f*,86*f*,87*f*,146*f*,334*f*,335*f*
  talus,357,361*f*,362*f*,393*f*,398*f*–401*f*,403*f*,404*f*
  trochlea of,399*f*
  temporal,429*t*,430*f*,431*f*,432,434*f*,435*f*,436*f*,437*f*,
Bones (named) (*continued*)438*f*,441,441*f*,474,477,482*f*,514*f*,518*f*,552*f*
  styloid process of,39*f*,430*f*,432,434*f*,435*f*,437*f*,508*f*,527*f*,531*f*,532*f*,536*f*,552*f*
  tibia,7*f*,357*f*,360*f*,385*f*,404*f*,417f condyles lateral,360*f*,384*f*,411*f*
  medial,360*f*,384*f*
  interosseous membrane,357
  shaft of,357,360*f*
  trapezium,289,290*f*,291*f*,321*f*,324*f*,326*f*,344*f*
  tubercle of,290*f*,323*f*,328*f*
  trapezoid,289,291*f*,321*f*,323*f*,344*f*
  triquetrum,289,290*f*,291*f*,321*f*,323*f*,324*f*,328*f*
  ulna,7*f*,285*f*,289*f*,290*f*,291*f*,328*f*,340*f*,341*f*
  coronoid process of,289*f*,316*f*,317*f*,343*f*,344*f*
  head of,289*f*,290*f*,317*f*
  interosseous border of,317*f*
  interosseous membrane,289
  radial notch of,289,289*f*
  shaft of,289*f*,317*f*
  styloid process of,289,290*f*,291*f*,317*f*,328*f*

  - tuberosity of,289*f*,315*f*,316*f*
  - vomer,431*f*,434*f*,435*f*,438*f*,439,440*f*,522*f*,528*f*,529*f*
  - zygomatic,430*f*,431*f*,435*f*,437*f*,439,513*f*,525,540*f*,541,541*f*
- Bones (of region or structure) of calvaria,433*f*
  - carpal,7*f*,285*f*,289
  - of foot,361*f*,362*f*
  - of hand,290*f*,291*f*
  - fractures involving, *289*, *290*,342*t*
  - of lower limb,356–362
  - of lumbar spine,36*f*,37*f*
  - of nasal cavities,431*f*,440*f*,522*f*
  - of neck,443 (*See also* Vertebral column) of neurocranium,429*f*,429*t*
  - of orbit,431*f*,440*f*,540*f*–541*f*
  - tarsal,7*f*,357,357*f*
  - of thoracic spine,36*f*
  - of trunk, hip bones in relation to,372*f*
  - of upper limb,285–291
  - of viscerocranium,429*f*,429*t*
- Bone window, on CT,63*f*
- Bony ampulla,557
- Bony labyrinth,556
- Bony pelvis,225–228
  - apertures of,222
  - arcuate line of,225
  - components of,225
  - joints of,225
  - pectineal line of,225
- Borders of heart inferior,102*t*
  - left,102*t*
  - right,102*t*
  - of humerus lateral,288*f*,316*f*
  - medial,288*f*
  - of kidney, medial,205*f*
  - of lung anterior,123*f*,124
  - inferior on full expiration,128*f*
  - on full inspiration,128*f*
  - of pubic symphysis, superior,5*t*
  - of radius anterior,289*f*
  - interosseous,317*f*

  lateral, 317*f*
  posterior, 317*f*
  of scapula lateral, 287*f*, 308*f*
  medial, 13*f*, 287*f*, 304*f*, 305*t*, 312*f*, 313*f*, 337*f*
  superior, 287*f*
  of spleen, 17*f*
  inferior, 202*f*
  superior, 202*f*
  of tibia, anterior, 360*f*
  of ulna, interosseous, 317*f*
Bottle sign, 300*f*
Brachial artery, 14*f*, 292, 293*f*, 294*f*, 296*f*, 307*f*, 315*f*, 341*f*
Brachial cutaneous nerve, 298*f*
  inferior lateral, 301
  medial, 54*f*, 299*t*, 301*f*, 302*f*, 315*f*
  posterior, 301
Brachial fascia, 291, 341*f*
Brachialis, 12*f*, 314*t*, 315*f*, 334*f*, 338*f*, 339*f*, 340*f*, 341*f*, 344*f*
Brachial lymph nodes, 296, 296*f*
Brachial plexus, 19*f*, 52*f*, 79*f*, 94*f*, 96*f*, 97*f*, 118*f*, 297–302, 299*t*, 459, 470*f*, 471*f*, 472*f*
  anterior view, 302*f*
  cords of lateral, 297, 297*f*, 298*f*, 299*t*, 302*f*, 306*f*, 307*f*
  medial, 297, 297*f*, 298*f*, 299*t*, 302*f*, 306*f*
  posterior, 297, 297*f*, 299*t*, 302*f*
  infraclavicular part of, 297, 299*t*
  injury, *298*
  nerves of, 299*t*
  roots, 297
  superior division of, 553*f*
  supraclavicular part of, 297, 299*t*
  terminal nerves, 297
  trunks lower, 297, 297*f*
  middle, 297, 297*f*
  upper, 297, 297*f*
Brachial region, 284
Brachial vein, 14*f*, 295*f*, 296*f*, 307*f*, 315*f*, 341*f*
  deep, 296
Brachiocephalic lymph node, 96*f*
Brachiocephalic

  trunk,14*f*,18*f*,45*f*,72,73*f*,74*f*,74*t*,76*f*,77*f*–78*f*,79*f*,91*f*,94*f*,98*f*,101*f*,103*f*,104*f*,105
Brachiocephalic vein,18*f*,71*f*,75,76*f*–77*f*,84*f*,98*f*,468*f*,471*f*
  left,14*f*,46*f*,51*f*,71*f*,77*f*,89*f*,94*f*,96*f*,99*f*,101*f*,118*f*,450*f*
  right,46*f*,71*f*,76*f*–77*f*,94*f*,96*f*,98*f*,101*f*,118*f*
Brachioradialis,12*f*,315*f*,320*t*,338*f*,340*f*,341*f*,344*f*
Brain,19*f*
  adult,479*f*
  arteries of,481–483,483*f*
  distribution of,482*t*
  coronal section through,21*f*
  CT of,27*f*
  lobes,21*f*
  frontal,479,479*f*
  occipital,479,479*f*
  parietal,479,479*f*
  temporal,475*f*,479,479*f*
  MRI of,27*f*
  regions of,479–480
  stroke, *481*
  structural design,2*f*
  subdivisions of,20
  veins of,484
Brainstem,20,21*f*,56*f*,57*f*
  preganglionic fibers,81*t*
Branchiomotor fibers,486*t*
Breast (female) acini,83*f*
  carcinoma of, *84*
  general features of,82
  innervation,82
  lymphatic drainage of,82,83*f*
  mammary gland components,82
  mammogram of,84*f*
  neurovasculature of,82
  stroma,82
  structures of,83*f*
  surface anatomy of,83*f*
  terminal duct lobular unit (TDLU),83*f*
  tumors, origin of, by quadrant,84*f*
Breast cancer, *84*

Bregma, of skull, 433*f*, 440*t*
Bridging veins, 473*f*, 474*f*, 475*f*, 484, 484*f*
Brim, pelvic, 222
Broad ligament, of uterus, 250, 251*f*, 255*f*
    mesenteries of, 251*f*
Bronchial arteries, 74*f*, 117, 128, 129*f*
Bronchial tree, 119, 127*f*, 128
    arteries of, 128
    autonomic innervation of, 131*t*
    lymphatic drainage of, 76*f*, 130, 130*f*
    movements of, 128*f*
    nerves of, 130
    neurovasculature of, 128–130, 129*f*, 131*t*
    respiratory portion of, 128
Bronchial veins, 75, 130
Bronchioles conducting, 126
    respiratory, 126, 127*f*, 129*f*
    terminal, 126, 127*f*
Bronchomediastinal trunk, 18, 18*f*, 77, 77*f*, 83*f*, 130, 130*f*
    lymphatic drainage to, 18, 18*f*, 77, 77*f*, 83*f*, 130, 130*f*
Bronchopulmonary lymph nodes, 77, 78*f*, 113*f*, 130, 130*f*
Bronchopulmonary segments, of lung, 123, 125*f*
Bronchus-associated lymphatic tissue (BALT), 17
Bronchus/bronchi, 118*f*
    left, 73*f*, 74*f*, 79*f*, 97*f*, 119, 119*f*, 126, 126*f*, 131*f*
    lobar, 125, 126
    inferior, 96*f*, 118*f*, 123*f*, 124*f*, 126*f*
    middle, 96*f*, 123*f*, 126*f*
    superior, 96*f*, 118*f*, 123*f*, 126*f*
    main, 125
    left, 126*f*, 131*f*
    right, 126*f*, 131*f*
    right, 73*f*, 74*f*, 79*f*, 119, 119*f*, 126, 126*f*, 131*f*
    segmental, 126, 127*f*
    trachea with, 125*f*
    subsegmental, 127*f*
Buccal arteries, 447*f*, 515*f*, 516*t*
Buccal branches of facial nerve (CN VII), 492
    of mandibular nerve (CN V3), 491

  of parotid plexus,492,492*f*
Buccal nerve,490*f*,491,506*f*,507*f*,515*f*,517*f*,517*t*,526*f*
Buccinator,503*f*,505*t*,507*f*,511*f*,515*f*,533*f*,535*f*
Buccopharyngeal fascia,455*f*,456*f*
Bulb duodenal,189,189*f*
  olfactory,486*f*,488,488*f*,524*f*
  of penis,223*f*,230*f*,257*f*,264*f*,265*f*,266,266*f*
  vestibular,223*f*,234*f*,253*f*,261,267,269*f*
Bulbar conjunctiva,543,545*f*
Bulbospongiosus,223*f*,234*f*,238*f*,239*f*,244*f*,245*f*,253*f*,261,261*f*,262*f*,263*f*,263*t*,26
Bulbourethral glands,234*f*,245*f*,246*f*,257,257*f*,261,266
Bulla, ethmoid,523*f*
Bundle accessory muscle,536*f*
  atrioventricular,108
  branch left,108*f*
  right,108*f*
  of His,104*f*,105*f*
  interatrial,108*f*
  internodal anterior,108*f*
  middle,108*f*
  neurovascular, of rectum,231*f*
  skeletal muscle primary bundle,11*f*
  secondary bundle,11*f*
Bursa/bursae,9
  anserine,378,390
  calcaneal,404*f*
  of glenohumeral joint,308*f*,309*f*
  iliopectineal,375*f*,382*f*
  infrapatellar,389*f*
  deep,390
  superficial,390
  of knee,390,390*f*
  omental,144*f*,163*f*–164*f*,164,186*f*,201*f*
  boundaries of,164*t*
  in situ,163*f*
  prepatellar,390
  semimembranosus,390*f*,392*f*
  of shoulder,309*f*
  subacromial,308,308*f*,309*f*,311*f*

  subcutaneous acromial,308*f*
  subdeltoid,308,308*f*,309*f*,311*f*
  subtendinous of gastrocnemius lateral,390*f*
  medial,390,390*f*,392*f*
  of subscapularis muscle,308,308*f*,309*f*
  suprapatellar,389*f*,390
  supratendinous,308*f*
  trochanteric,359*f*,375*f*
C
CABG. *See* Coronary artery bypass graft (CABG)
Calcaneal branches, of arteries,364*f*
Calcaneal bursa,404*f*
Calcaneal region,356*f*
Calcaneal tendon,394,397*f*,403*f*,404*f*,411*f*,412*f*,414*f*
  rupture of, *394*
Calcaneal tuberosity,361*f*,397*f*,398*f*,399*f*,413*f*
Calcaneocuboid joint,398*f*
Calcaneocuboid ligaments dorsal,400*f*
  plantar,402,403*f*
Calcaneofibular ligaments,398,400*f*
Calcaneonavicular ligament, plantar,401*f*,401*f*,403*f*–404*f*
Calcaneus,7*f*,357,361*f*,362*f*,393*f*,399*f*,400*f*,401*f*,403*f*,404*f*,411*f*,412*f*
Calcitonin,467
Calculi renal,207
  of ureters,207
Calvaria,429
  bones of,433*f*
  cross section of,433*f*
  diploë layer of,433*f*
  inner table of,433*f*,473*f*,502*f*
  muscles of,504*t*
  outer table of,433*f*,473*f*,502*f*
Calyces, renal major,205,205*f*,207*f*
  minor,205,205*f*
Camper’s fascia,145
Canal(s) adductor,366*f*,383,383*f*
  femoral vessels in,383*f*
  anal,193,258,259*f*,260*f*,266*f*,270–271,270*f*
  dentate line in,270*f*,271,272*f*

innervation of, 259, 271
lymphatic drainage of, 259, 271
muscularis mucosae, 272*f*
neurovasculature of, 271
sphincters of, 260*f* (*See also* Anal sphincter) carotid, 432, 435*f*, 437*f*, 442*f*, 482*f*
opening, 529*f*
central, of spinal cord, 480*f*, 481*f*
cervical, 248*f*, 249, 250*f*
cervicoaxillary, 306
cochlear, 556
condylar, 432, 435*f*, 442*f*
facial, 492, 492*f*
hiatus of, 436*f*
prominence of, 554*f*
femoral, 381
Guyon’s, 323
hypoglossal, 44*f*, 435*f*, 436*f*, 442*f*, 499*f*
venous plexus of, 442*f*
incisive, 442*f*, 522*f*
infraorbital, 431*f*, 440*f*, 540*f*, 541*f*, 541*t*
inguinal, 153–154, 154*f*, 156*f*, 159*f*
boundaries of, 153–154
male, and abdominal wall relationships, 156*f*
openings in, 153*t*, 154
structures of, 153*t*
mandibular, 515*f*
nasolacrimal, 541
obturator, 225, 228, 228*f*, 229*f*, 252*f*
optic, 431*f*, 432, 436*f*, 438*f*, 440*f*, 442*f*, 540*f*, 541, 541*t*
palatovaginal (pharyngeal), 435*f*, 518*f*
pterygoid, 438*f*, 491*f*, 492, 500*f*, 518, 518*f*
artery of, 516*t*
nerve of, 490*f*, 491*f*, 492, 494, 500*f*, 518, 520*t*
pudendal, 272
pyloric, 187, 188*f*, 199*f*
sacral, 35, 38*f*, 228*f*
of Schlemm, 545*f*
semicircular anterior, 493*f*, 552*f*, 555*f*, 557*f*
lateral, 493*f*, 494*f*, 552*f*, 554*f*, 555*f*, 557*f*

  prominence of,554*f*
  posterior,493*f*,494*f*,552*f*,555*f*,557*f*
  ulnar,292,301
  vertebral,32,33*f*,42*f*,44*f*
Canaliculus/canaliculi lacrimal,543,544*f*
  tympanic,437*f*,496*f*
Cancellous bone,7,8*f*
Cancer. *See also* Carcinoma testicular, *159*
Canine teeth,432*f*,526*f*
Capillaries,15,15*f*,16,16*f*
  lymphatic,17
  regions,16*f*
Capillary bed, on alveoli,129*f*
Capillary regions of lower body,16*f*
  of lung,16*f*
  of upper limb,16*f*
Capitate,289,290*f*,291*f*,321*f*,323*f*,324*f*,328*f*,344*f*
Capitulotrochlear groove,316*f*
Capitulum,288*f*,289,316*f*,343*f*
Capsule Glisson's,196
  of joint,9,10*f*
  of elbow joint,316*f*
  of facet joint,44*f*
  of glenohumeral joint,308*f*
  of hip joint,377*f*
  of interphalangeal joint,322*f*
  of knee,10*f*,389–390,389*f*
  of metacarpophalangeal joint,322*f*
  of shoulder,313*f*
  of zygapophyseal joint,42*f*
  prostatic,246,246*f*
  renal,204
  fibrous,205*f*
Carcinoma of breast, *84*
  of lungs, *131*
  of pancreas, *202*
  of prostate, *247*
  testicular, *159*
Cardia, gastric,161*f*,166*f*,187,188*f*,199*f*

Cardiac apex,25*f*,101,101*f*,102*t*,103*f*,105*f*,106*f*,108*f*

Cardiac borders inferior,102*t*

  left,102*t*

  right,102*t*

Cardiac cycle,106*f*,108–109,109*f*

  conduction system in,70

  pulmonary circulation in,70

  systemic circulation in,70

Cardiac muscle,11

Cardiac nerve inferior cervical sympathetic,462

  middle cervical sympathetic,462

  superior cervical sympathetic,462

  thoracic branches,292

Cardiac notch,123*f*,124

Cardiac orifice,165*f*,187

Cardiac plexus,78*f*,80–81,80*f*,113*f*,131*f*

Cardiac skeleton,102,105*f*

Cardiac sphincter,117

Cardiac tamponade, *100*

Cardiac valves,106–107,106*f*

  aortic,104*f*,106*f*,107,107*f*

  closed,106*f*

  open,106*f*

  stenosis of, *107*

  atrioventricular,104*f*–107*f*,106–107

  left,106*f*,107*f*

  closed,106*f*

  open,106*f*

  right,105*f*,106*f*,107*f*

  auscultation sites of, *107*,107*f*,107*t*

  bicuspid (mitral),106*f*,107, *107*

  open,108*f*

  prolapse of, *107*

  characteristic sounds of,107

  auscultation sites of, *107*,107*f*,107*t*

  mitral,106*f*,107, *107*

  open,108*f*

  prolapse of, *107*

  position of,107*f*

  pulmonary,104*f*,106*f*,107,107*f*,109*f*
  semilunar,107
  tricuspid,104*f*,106*f*,107
Cardiac veins,106*f*,109*f*–110*f*
  anterior,113
  great,106*f*,109*f*–110*f*,112,112*f*
  middle,110*f*,112,112*f*
  small,109*f*–110*f*,112*f*,113
Cardinal (transverse cervical) ligaments,231*f*,250,251,252*f*,253*f*,254
Cardinal planes,3–4,3*f*–4*f*
Cardiovascular system, at birth,115–116
Carina,119,119*f*,126*f*
  at tracheal bifurcation,119
Caroticotympanic nerve,496*f*
Carotid artery angiogram of,559*f*
  bifurcation of,445,445*f*,448*f*,472*f*
  color Doppler of,559*f*
  common,14*f*,45*f*,71*f*,72,76*f*–77*f*,89*f*,91*f*,94*f*,98*f*,292*f*,293*f*,443,444*f*,445,445*f*,4
  cricothyroid branch,444*f*
  esophageal branch,444*f*
  infrahyoid branch,444*f*
  left,72,73*f*,74*f*,74*t*,78*f*,79*f*,101*f*,103*f*,471*f*
  right,72,74*f*,74*t*,94*f*
  ultrasound of,558*f*,559*f*
  external,78*f*,444*f*,445*f*,446,446*t*,448*f*,449*f*,451*f*,470*f*,472*f*,482*f*,523,524*f*
  anterior branches of,446*t*
  medial branches of,446*t*
  posterior branches of,446*t*
  terminal branches of,446,446*t*
  external/internal carotid artery anastomoses, *449*
  internal,442*f*,444*f*,445,445*f*,446,448*f*,449*f*,472*f*,474*f*,477*f*,481,482*f*,483*f*,486*f*,
  angiogram of,559*f*
  cavernous part of,446,448*f*,481,482*f*
  cerebral part of,446,448*f*,481,482*f*
  cervical part of,446,448*f*,482*f*
  petrous part of,446,448*f*,481,482*f*
  system,445–449
  ultrasound of,558*f*,559*f*
Carotid bifurcation,445,445*f*,448*f*,472*f*

Carotid body, 445*f*, 446, 472*f*
Carotid canal, 432, 435*f*, 437*f*, 442*f*, 482*f*
  opening, 529*f*
Carotid nerve external, 462
  internal, 462
Carotid plexus, 551*f*
  common, 80*f*
  external, 80*f*, 462, 499, 500*f*
  internal, 80*f*, 462, 491*f*, 493*f*, 496*f*, 499, 500*f*, 542*f*
Carotid sheath, 445, 455, 455*f*, 456*t*
  nuchal, 455
Carotid sinus, 446, 495*f*
  branches to, 494
Carotid sympathetic plexus, 442*f*, 476
Carotid triangle, 454, 454*t*, 455*f*, 472*f*
Carpal artery dorsal, 292
  palmar, 292
Carpal bones, 7*f*, 285*f*, 289
Carpal region, 284
  anterior, 284*f*, 325*f*
  joints of, 321–323
  posterior, 284*f*
Carpal tendon sheath, dorsal, 325, 326*f*
Carpal tunnel, 323, 323*f*
  anterior, 325*f*
  bony boundaries of, 323*f*
  contents within, 324*f*
  ligaments of, 323*f*
  syndrome, *324*
Carpometacarpal compartment, 322*f*
Carpometacarpal joints, 321*f*, 323*f*, 327, 328*f*
Carpometacarpal ligaments, palmar, 322*f*
Cartilage, 6
  alar, 521
  major, 521*f*, 522*f*
  lateral crus, 521*f*
  medial crus, 521*f*
  minor, 521*f*
  articular, 8*f*, 10*f*, 417*f*

  arytenoid, 126*f*, 463, 463*f*
    muscular process, 466*f*
    vocal process, 463, 463*f*, 466*f*
  corniculate, 463, 463*f*
  costal, 9*f*, 84–85, 84*f*–85*f*, 86*f*, 146*f*, 335*f*
  of coxal bone, 225*f*
Cartilage (*continued*) cricoid, 118*f*, 126*f*, 462, 463*f*, 464*f*, 534*f*, 560*f*
  arch of, 463*f*
  cuneiform, 463
  epiglottic, 463*f*, 464*f*
  lateral nasal, 521, 521*f*
  nasal major alar, 521*f*, 522*f*
  minor alar, 521*f*
  septal, 521*f*, 522*f*
  thyroid, 74*f*, 94*f*, 126*f*, 131*f*, 457*f*, 462, 463*f*, 464*f*, 467*f*, 469*f*, 470*f*, 560*f*
  articular facet for, 466*f*
  lamina of, 74*f*, 94*f*, 126*f*, 462, 463*f*, 466*f*, 470*f*
  tracheal, 119*f*, 126*f*, 464*f*
  triradiate, 225*f*
Cartilaginous joints (synchondroses), 8–9, 9*f*
Cartilaginous plate, 127*f*
Cataracts, *546*
Cauda equina, 40*f*, 46*f*, 49*f*, 51, 474*f*
  MRI of, 33*f*
Caudal, location/direction term, 3*f*, 3*t*
Caudate process, 197*f*
Caval lymph nodes, right lateral, 177*f*
Caval opening, 79*f*, 87*f*, 88, 149*f*
Caval system, 16, 173, 173*f*
Cavernous nerves, 237
  of penis, 241*f*–243*f*
Cavernous sinus, 446, 451*f*, 476–477, 477*f*, 482*f*, 550*f*, 551*f*
  cranial nerves and, 477*f*
  lateral dural wall, 486*f*
  thrombophlebitis, *476*
Cavity, 23
  abdominopelvic, 144–145
  peritoneal relationships in, 144*f*, 160
  serous membrane of, 160

cranial cranial nerves and,486*f*
dural sinuses in,476,476*f*
meninges in,474*f*
neurovascular structures,442*f*
glenoid,286,287*f*,304*f*,308*f*,311*f*,345*f*
joint,9,10*f*
of glenohumeral joint,308*f*
of knee,10*f*,389–390,389*f*
laryngeal,464–465,464*f*
medullary,7,8*f*
nasal,519*t*
arteries of,524*f*
bleeding from, *523*
bones of,431*f*,440*f*,522*f*
nerves of,524*f*
neurovasculature of,523–524,524*f*
structure of,521–523
oral,519*t*,522*f*,525–526,526*f*,553*f*
floor of lymphatic drainage of,531*f*
muscles of,509*t*,527*f*,527*t*,528*f*
organization/boundaries,525*f*
proper,525
roof of (*See* Palate) topography,526*f*
pelvic,222,223*t*,224*f*
false pelvis,222,222*f*,223*t*
true pelvis,222,222*f*
pericardial,23,99*f*,100–101,100*f*
cardiac tamponade and, *100*
posterior,100*f*
peritoneal,23,144*f*,160,160*f*,165*f*
drainage spaces within,165*t*
mesenteries of,162*f*
organs of,186–208
posterior wall of,165*f*
structures of,166–167,167*f*
subdivisions of,164
viscera of,166–167,167*f*
pleural,23,120–121,120*f*–121*f*,130*f*
pulmonary,70,70*f* (*See also* Pleura) in expiration,128

  in inspiration,128
  scrotal,156*f*
  synovial,307,324*f*
  thoracic,94*f*
  lower limit,5*t*
  structures of,95*t*
  tympanic,494,552*f*,553,553*f*,554*f*,556*f*
  anterior wall of,493*f*
  clinical correlations involving hyperacusis, *555*
  otitis media, *555*
  muscles of,554*f*
  neurovasculature of,554*f*
  posterior wall of,493*f*
  promontory in,554*f*,555
  roof of,493*f*
  structure of,554*f*
  uterine,249,249*f*
Cecal artery,172*f*,194*f*
  anterior,171*f*
  posterior,171*f*
Cecum,162*f*,191*f*,192*f*,193,193*f*,194*f*,251*f*
  lymphatic drainage of,178*t*
Celiac ganglion,56*f*,180*f*,181*t*,182*f*,183*f*,184*f*,241*f*
Celiac lymph nodes,177,177*f*,178*f*,178*t*
Celiac plexus,181*t*,182*f*–183*f*
Celiac
 trunk,14*f*,74*f*,77*f*,88,89*f*,144,163*f*,164*t*,167,167*f*,168,168*t*,169*f*,170*f*,174*f*,175*f*,1
  branches of,202
Cell(s) air ethmoid,439,439*f*
  mastoid,432,528*f*,553
  chromaffin,207
  muscle,11
  of nervous system (*See* Neuroglia; Neurons) Cell body(ies) aggregates of
   (*See* Ganglion/ ganglia; Nucleus/nuclei) nerve cell,19
Central canal, of spinal cord,480*f*,481*f*
Central compartment,291,329
Central nervous system (CNS),20,21*f*
  defined,18
  glial cells in,19,20*f*

gray matter in,20,21*f*
information flow in,23*f*
overview,20
structure of,20*f*
tracts in,19
white matter in,20,21*f*,51*f*
Central nodes,296,296*f*
Central retinal artery,447,545*f*,547,549*f*
Central slip,333,333*f*
Central tendon,87,87*f*–88*f*,100*f*,118*f*,146*f*,148*f*,149*f*
Central zone, of prostate,246
Cephalic vein,14*f*,91*f*–92*f*,152*f*,295,295*f*,307*f*,315*f*
Cerebellar artery anterior,483*f*,559*f*
inferior anterior,482,483*f*
posterior,483*f*
posterior,482*f*
posteroinferior,443
superior,482,483*f*
Cerebellar fossa,436*f*
Cerebellar tonsils,475*f*
Cerebellar veins great,476*f*,484*f*
inferior,484
superior,484,484*f*
lateral,484*f*
medial,484*f*
Cerebellomedullary cistern,478,481*f*
Cerebellum,20,475*f*,479*f*,480
Cerebral aqueduct,480,480*f*,481*f*
Cerebral arterial circle (of Willis),481,482,483*f*
Cerebral artery,478*f*
anterior,447,482*t*,483*f*,559*f*
distribution of,482
middle,447,473*f*,482*t*,483*f*,559*f*
posterior,482,482*f*,482*t*,483*f*
Cerebral circulations,443–451,481
Cerebral cortex,20,21*f*
Cerebral fissure, longitudinal,479,479*f*
Cerebral fossa,436*f*
Cerebral gyrus/gyri,479,479*f*

Cerebral hemispheres,20,21*f*
- left,479
- right,479

Cerebral peduncle,475*f*

Cerebral vein,475*f*,478*f*
- anterior,484*f*
- great,475,476*f*,484
- inferior,476*f*,484,484*f*
- internal,484,484*f*
- middle,484
- superficial,484*f*
- superior,473*f*,484,484*f*

Cerebrospinal fluid (CSF),480
- circulation of,481*f*
- excessive, *480*

Cerebrum,479

Cervical artery ascending,44,50*f*,292,292*f*,443,444*f*,470*f*
- deep,91*f*,292*f*,443,444*f*
- superficial,292*f*,472*f*
- transverse,292,292*f*,294*f*,443,444*f*,470*f*,471*f*
- dorsal scapular branch,292

Cervical canal,248*f*,249,250*f*

Cervical cardiac branches,497

Cervical enlargement,46*f*,47

Cervical fascia,469*f*
- deep carotid sheath,445,455,455*f*,456*t*
- pretracheal layer,455*t*,456*f*,469*f*
- prevertebral layer,455*f*,455*t*,456*f*,456*t*,472*f*

Cervical ganglion,79*f*,131*f*
- inferior,462,495*f*
- middle,80*f*,113*f*,131*f*,462,470*f*
- superior,80*f*,113*f*,182*f*,462,472*f*,495*f*,500*f*

Cervical lymph nodes,17*f*,83*f*,152*f*,296*f*
- anterior,453*t*
- deep,452,453*f*,453*t*,531*f*
- superficial,452,452*f*,452*t*

Cervical nerves,459–462
- inferior,113*f*
- middle,113*f*

  superior,113*f*
  transverse,459,460*f*,460*t*,469*f*,506*f*
Cervical plexus,52,453
  motor nerves of,461*f*
  sensory nerves of,460*f*
Cervical region,455*f*
  anterior,454,454*t*
  topography,469*f*–470*f*
  lateral,284,454,454*t*,472*f*
  posterior,454,454*t*
  sternocleidomastoid,454,454*t*
Cervical space, deep,23
Cervical spine arthrosis, uncovertebral, *41*
  bones of,35*f*
CT of,62*t*,63*f*
  enlargement of,46*f*,47
  injuries of, *39*
  innervation of,90*f*
  ligaments of,41–42,41*f*,43*f*,44*f*
  MRI of,33*f*,62*t*,63*f*
  radiograph of,62*f*
  segments and vertebral levels,47*f*
  structural design,2*f*,47*f*
  ultrasound of,62*f*,62*t*
  uncinate process of,35*f*
  vascular supply to,45*f*
Cervical sympathetic trunk,459–462
Cervical vein, deep,51*f*,292*f*
Cervical vertebrae,34–35,35*f*. *See also* Atlas (C1); Axis/axes Cervicoaxillary canal,306
Cervicofacial trunk,512*f*
Cervicothoracic ganglion,131*f*
Cervix, of uterus,231*f*,248*f*–253*f*,249,255*f*,258*f*,275*f*
  ligaments arising from,248*f*
  vaginal part of,249*f*,252*f*
Chambers of eye,545*f*
  angle of,545*f*
  anterior,546
  posterior,546

of heart,102,105*f*
Cheeks,525–526
Chest tube/drain, *122*
insertion, *93*
Chest X-ray,15*f*,132,132*f*–133*f*
Chiasm, optic,479*f*,480*f*,488,488*f*,551*f*
Chiasmatic cistern,478,481*f*
Chiasmatic groove,436*f*
Choanae,435*f*,521,522*f*,528*f*,534*f*
Cholecystectomy, *200*
Chondro-osseous junction,86*f*
Chorda tympani,442*f*,491*f*,492,492*f*,493*f*,517*f*,517*t*,528*f*,532*t*,554*f*,556*f*
Choroid,544,545*f*
Choroid plexus,480,481*f*
Chromaffin cells,207
Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), *127*
Chylothorax, *122*
Ciliary arteries, posterior long,549*f*
short,549*f*
Ciliary body,488,543*f*,544,545*f*
Ciliary ganglion,488,489,489*f*,490*f*,500*f*,501*f*,542*f*,551*f*
nasociliary root to,490*f*
Ciliary muscles,500*t*,545*f*
Ciliary nerves,489*f*,550*t*,551*f*
long,490*f*,500*f*
short,490*f*,551*f*
Cingulate gyrus,479*f*
Circle, cerebral arterial (circle of Willis),481,482,483*f*
Circular folds (plicae circulares),190
Circulation,16*f*
cerebral,481
anterior,443–451
posterior,443–451
of cerebrospinal fluid,481*f*
coronary, dominance in,111
developmental correlations atrial septal defect, *116*,116*f*
coarctation of the aorta, *117*
patent ductus arteriosus, *116*,116*f*
ventricular septal defect, *116*,116*f*

  in fetus,114
  changes at birth,115–116
  structures of, derivatives of,115*t*
  portal,16
  postnatal,115*f*
  prenatal,114–115,114*f*
  pulmonary,15*f*,16,70,72*f*
  systemic,16,70,72*f*
  in cardiac cycle,70
Circulatory system,14–16
  anastomosis,16
  anatomic notes, *15*
  arteries,14 (*See also* Arteries (general); Arteries (named)) arteriole,14
  capillaries,15,15*f*,16,16*f*
  circuits of,15*f*
  elastic recoil, *15*,15*f*
  functional aspects of, *15*,15*f*
  metabolic exchange,15*f*
  overview,14*f*
  pressure gradients in, *15*,15*f*
  pulmonary,15*f*,16,70,72*f*
  reservoir function, *15*,15*f*
  supply function, *15*,15*f*
  terminal vascular beds,14, *15*,15*f*,16
  variable pumping action,15*f*
  veins,14 (*See also* Veins (general); Veins (named)) venule,14,15*f*
Circumduction, of upper limb,284
Circumflex artery,106*f*,111
  femoral ascending branch,363*f*
  descending branch,363*f*
  lateral,363,363*f*
  medial,363,363*f*
  humeral anterior,292,293*f*,294*f*
  posterior,292,293*f*,294*f*,313*f*
  iliac deep,150*f*–151*f*,151,167*f*,168,235*f*
  superficial,151,152*f*,363,363*f*,383*f*
  scapular,292,293*f*,294*f*,307*f*,312,313*f*
  stenosis of,111*f*
Circumflex iliac artery deep,150*f*–151*f*,151,167*f*,168,235*f*

  superficial,151,151*f*,152*f*,363,363*f*,383*f*
Circumflex veins femoral lateral,366*f*
  medial,366*f*
  iliac deep,150*f*,235*f*
  superficial,92*f*,152*f*,366*f*
  of penis,267*f*
Cirrhosis of liver, *198*
Cistern ambient,478,481*f*
  basal,481*f*
  cerebellomedullary,478,481*f*
  chiasmatic,478,481*f*
  interhemispheric,481*f*
  interpeduncular,478,481*f*
  of lamina terminalis,481*f*
  lumbar,47,474*f*
  pontomedullary,478,481*f*
  quadrigeminal,478,481*f*
  subarachnoid,478,480
  vermian,481*f*
Cisterna chyli,17,17*f*,18*f*,76*f*–77*f*,177,177*f*,178*f*
Cisterna magna,481*f*
Clavicle,7*f*,13*f*,96*f*,97*f*,285,285*f*,292*f*,296*f*,303,304*f*,308*f*,309*f*,313*f*,334*f*,335*f*,337
  acromial end,286*f*,304*f*
  fractures of, *285*
  shaft of,286*f*
  sternal articular surface of,286*f*
  sternal end,304*f*
Clavicular notch,84*f*,285
Clavipectoral fascia,291
Clavipectoral triangle,284*f*
Claw hand,300, *324*
Cleft anal,261*f*
  pudendal,267
Cleft lip, *525*
Cleft palate, *528*
Clinical correlations abdomen abdominal aortic aneurysm, *168*
  abscesses, *165*
  anastomoses, large intestine, *172*
  appendicitis, *195*,210

ascites, *165*
bacterial contamination/ infection, *165*
calculi of kidneys and ureter, *207*
cholecystectomy, *200*
cirrhosis of liver, *198*
colon carcinoma, *195*
common bile and pancreatic ducts, implications of shared emptying, *200*
cremasteric reflex, absent or reduced, *159*
duodenal ulcers, *190*
esophageal varices, *176*
gallstones, *200*
gastric ulcers, *188*
hydrocele, *158*
inflammatory bowel disease, *195*
inguinal hernia, *156*
mesenteric ischemia, *171*
pancreatic carcinoma, *202*
peptic ulcers, *190*
peritoneal infections, *165*
peritonitis, *165*
portal hypertension, *176*
renal calculi, *207*
renal vein entrapment, *205*
splenic trauma, *203*
testicular cancer, *159*
ulcerative colitis, *195*
varicocele, *159*
back age-related changes in vertebrae, *41*
cervical spine injuries, *39*
cervical spine injury, *39*
disk herniation in lumbar spine, *40*
epidural anesthesia, *48*
herniation of intervertebral disk, *40*
lumbar puncture, *48*,48*f*
metastasis and vertebral venous plexus, *44*
osteoporosis, *34*
referred pain, *57*
scoliosis, *34*
spondylolisthesis, *37*

spondylolysis, *37*
spondylosis, *41*
vertebral column, abnormal curvatures, *34*
eye and ear corneal reflex, *547*
glaucoma, *546*
hearing loss, *557*
Horner’s syndrome, *548*
hyperacusis, *555*
Ménière’s disease, *557*
oculomotor nerve injury, *548*
otitis media, *555*
presbyopia, *546*
pupillary light reflex, *547*
tinnitus, *557*
vertigo, *557*
head and neck Bell’s palsy, *492*
cavernous sinus thrombophlebitis, *476*
congenital torticollis, *456*
corneal reflex, *547*
cricothyroidotomy, *464*
dislocation of temporomandibular joint, *510*
epistaxis, *523*
external/internal carotid artery anastomoses, *449*
extracerebral hemorrhage, *478*
facial fractures, *432*
fascia and potential tissue spaces in head, and infection, *539*
foreign body aspiration, *126*
gag reflex, *538*
glaucoma, *546*
Horner’s syndrome, *548*
hydrocephalus, *480*
hyperacusis, *555*
hypoglossal nerve injury, *498*
maxillary sinus infection, *521*
Ménière’s disease, *557*
middle ear infection, *555*
oculomotor nerve injury, *548*
otitis media, *555*
piriform recesses, *535*

presbyopia and cataracts, *546*
pupillary light reflex, *547*
recurrent laryngeal nerve paralysis with thyroidectomy, *465*
scalp infections, *503*
skull fractures at pterion, *440*
stroke, *481*
subclavian steal syndrome, *443*
temporal bone fractures, *493*
tentorial herniation, *475*
thyroidectomy, *465*
tonsillectomy, *538*
tracheostomy, *464*
trigeminal neuralgia, *489*
venous anastomoses and infection, *451*
vertigo, tinnitus, and hearing loss, *557*
inguinal region cremasteric reflex, absent or reduced, *159*
testicular cancer, *159*
testicular torsion, *159*
varicocele, *159*
limb (lower) acquired hip dislocation, *376*
ankle sprains, *400*
Baker’s cyst, *390*
calcaneal tendon rupture, *394*
common fibular nerve injury, *370*
compartment syndrome, *395*
congenital hip dislocation, *374*
deep vein thromboses, *366*
dorsal pedal pulse, *365*
femoral head necrosis, *364*
femoral hernias, *382*
femoral neck fracture, *359*
femoral nerve injury, *368*
fibular nerve injury, *370–371*
genu varum and genu valgum, *391*
gluteal nerve injury, *370*
hamstring strains, *378*
hip dislocation, acquired, *376*
hip dislocation/hip dysplasia, *374*
ischemia, *365*

ligamentous injuries of knee, *388*
obturator nerve injury, *369*
patellar tendon reflex, *383*
pes planus, *402*
piriformis syndrome, *374*
plantar fasciitis, *405*
plantar reflex, *405*
popliteal aneurysm, *364*
popliteal (Baker’s) cyst, *390*
sciatic nerve injury, *370*
shin splints, *394*
superficial and deep fibular nerve injury, *371*
tarsal tunnel syndrome, *395*
tibial nerve injury, *370*
varicose veins, *367*
limb (upper) axillary nerve injury, *301*
carpal tunnel syndrome, *324*
Clinical correlations (*continued*) clavicular fractures, *285*
Colles’ fractures, *289*
comminuted fracture, *288*
Dupuytren’s disease, *329*
extra-articular fracture, *288*
glenohumeral dislocation, *309*
humeral fractures, *288*
intra-articular fracture, *288*
lateral epicondylitis, *318*
long thoracic nerve injury, *306*
lunate dislocation, *289*
median nerve injury, *300*
musculocutaneous nerve injury, *299*
nursemaid’s elbow, *318*
radial (Colles’) fractures, *289*
radial nerve injury, *301*
root- /trunk-level injuries, *298*
rotator cuff tears, *310*
scaphoid fractures, *290*
subluxation of radial head, *318*
tendon sheath communication, *329*
tennis elbow, *318*

tenosynovitis, *329*
ulnar nerve compression, *324*
ulnar nerve injury, *300*
pelvis and perineum anal fissures, *271*
benign prostatic hypertrophy, *247*
carcinoma of prostate, *247*
culdocentesis, *254*
ectopic pregnancy, *247*
episiotomy, *262*
hemorrhoids, *271*
pain transmission during labor and delivery, *240*
pelvic diameters,224*f*, *225*
pregnancy, ligament laxity and increased mobility during, *228*
prolapse of pelvic organs, *262*
prostatectomy, *247*
pudendal nerve block, *240*
rectal examination, *259*
retrograde ejaculation, *267*
urethral rupture in males, *257*
thorax achalasia, *119*
angina pectoris, *111*
aortic valve stenosis, *107*
atelectasis, *126*
atrioventricular heart block, *108*
breast cancer, *84*
cardiac tamponade, *100*
chest tube insertion, *93*
chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, *127*
coronary artery bypass graft, *112*
coronary artery disease, *111*
heart sounds auscultation sites, *107*
lung cancer, *131*
mitral valve prolapse, *107*
pericarditis, *99*
pleural effusion, *122*
pleuritis, *120*
pneumothorax, *122*
pulmonary embolism, *129*
superior vena cava syndrome, *76*

- tension pneumothorax, *122*
- thoracentesis, *122*
- transverse pericardial sinus, *101*

Clinoid process,436*f*
- anterior,432,438*f*
- posterior,432,438*f*

Clitoral artery,232
- deep,269*f*,270
- dorsal,234*f*,238*f*,269*f*,270

Clitoral nerve,237
- dorsal,234*f*,238*f*,270

Clitoral vein deep,233*f*,269*f*,270
- deep dorsal,233*f*,269*f*,270,300,301*f*,302*f*

Clitoris,223*f*,248*f*,258*f*,261
- body of,267,268*f*–269*f*
- corpus cavernosum of,234*f*,267
- crus of,223*f*,234*f*,253*f*,269*f*
- frenulum of,268*f*
- glans of,224*f*,238*f*,267,268*f*,269*f*
- prepuce of,224*f*,267,268*f*,269*f*

Clivus,432,436*f*,477*f*

Clunial nerve,238*f*,239*f*,371*f*
- inferior,54*f*,60*f*,369*f*,370
- middle,54*f*,60*f*
- superior,54*f*,60*f*

CN. *See* Cranial nerves (CN) CNS. *See* Central nervous system (CNS)

Coarctation, of aorta,117,117*f*

Coccygeal nerve,369*f*

Coccygeal plexus,369*f*

Coccygeus,223*t*,227*f*,228,229*f*,230*t*

Coccyx,7*f*,32*f*,35,38*f*,45*f*,222*f*,224*f*,227*f*,228*f*,229*f*,248*f*,261*f*,270*f*,275*f*,372*f*
- MRI of,33*f*

Cochlea,493,494*f*,552*f*,555*f*,556

Cochlear aqueduct,555*f*

Cochlear canal,556

Cochlear duct,555*f*,556,556*f*

Cochlear nerves,556*f*,557

Cochlear root, of vestibulocochlear nerve (CN VIII),493,493*f*,494*f*,552*f*

Colic artery,166*f*

  left,168*t*,172*f*,190*f*
  middle,163*f*,168,168*t*,171*f*,172*f*,186*f*
  right,168,168*t*,171*f*,172*f*,190*f*
Colic branch, left,168
Colic flexure,171*f*,190*f*
  left (splenic),161*f*,162*f*,190*f*,192*f*,193,193*f*,194*f*,199*f*,201*f*,203*f*
  right (hepatic),163*f*,190*f*,192*f*,193,193*f*,194*f*,199*f*
Colic plexus, left,181*t*
Colic veins,166*f*,173,175*f*,175*t*,176*f*
  left,176*f*,190*f*
  middle,163*f*,176*f*
  right,176*f*
Collateral artery middle,293*f*
  radial,293*f*
  ulnar,292
  inferior,315*f*
  superior,315*f*
Collateral ligaments,10,321*f*,383,387*f*
  of knee joint,10*f*,383,385*f*–386*f*
  lateral (fibular),10,383,385*f*,387*f*,388*f*,389*f*,390*f*,417*f*
  medial (tibial),10,344*f*,383,385*f*,387*f*,388*f*,390*f*
  radial,315,316*f*,317*f*,318,321
  ulnar,315,316*f*,317*f*,321,321*f*
Colles' fascia,145,153,223*f*,261*f*,262*f*,264
Colles' fractures, *289*
Colliculus, seminal,246*f*,257,257*f*
Colon,193
  ascending,71*f*,145*f*,161*f*,162*f*,163*f*,165*f*,172*f*,190*f*,191*f*,192*f*,193,193*f*,194*f*,19
  attachment of,166*f*,204*f*
  carcinoma, *195*
  descending,71*f*,162*f*,165*f*,166*f*,190*f*,192*f*,193,193*f*,194*f*,199*f*,201*f*,203*f*
  attachment of,166*f*,204*f*
  lymphatic drainage of,178*t*
  mesocolon sigmoid,161,165*f*,166*f*,192*f*–193*f*,193,232*f*,244*f*,248*f*,259*f*
  transverse,161,162*f*,163*f*–165*f*,166*f*,170*f*,186*f*,191*f*,192*f*,193*f*,194*f*
  sigmoid,162*f*,193,193*f*,194*f*,232*f*,244*f*,248*f*,251*f*,253*f*,259*f*
  volvulus, *195*
  structural design,2*f*
  transverse,71*f*,161*f*–164*f*,172*f*,186*f*,190*f*,191*f*,192*f*,193,193*f*,194*f*,196*f*,201*f*,20

Color Doppler, of carotid artery,559*f*
Column(s) anal,270*f*,271
  renal,205,205*f*
  vertebral (*See* Vertebral column) Comminuted fracture, *288*
Commissure, labial,224*f*
  anterior,267,268*f*
  posterior,267,268*f*
Common fibular nerve, injury, *370*
Common hepatic duct,198
Common peroneal nerve,54*f*
Communicating artery anterior,482,483*f*
  posterior,448*f*,482,482*f*,483*f*
Compact bone,7,8*f*
Compartments adductor,291,329
  of arm,340*f*–341*f*
  anterior,291,341*f*
  muscles of,292,341*f*
  posterior,291,341*f*
  carpometacarpal,322*f*
  central,291,329
  dorsal, of wrist,325,326*f*
  extensor retinaculum and,326*f*
  for extensor tendons,325
  of foot central,363,405
  dorsal,363
  dorsal muscular,404
  interosseous,363,405,405*t*
  lateral,363,405
  medial,363,405
  of forearm,340*f*–341*f*
  anterior,291,318,341*f*
  muscles of,318,341*f*
  posterior,291,318,341*f*
  windowed dissection,340*f*
  hypothenar,291,329
  infracolic,164
  of leg anterior,363
  deep posterior,363
  lateral,363

  superficial posterior,363
  of lower limb,362–363
  windowed dissection,414*f*
  of palm of hand adductor,329
  central,329
  hypothenar,291,329
  interosseous,291,329
  thenar,291,329
  muscles of,291,329,331*t*,339*f*,340*f*
  of peritoneal cavity infracolic,164
  supracolic,164
  of retroinguinal space muscular,382*f*
  vascular,382*f*
  of sole of foot,405
  central,363,405
  lateral,363,405
  medial,363,405
  suboccipital, of neck,59
  of subtalar joint anterior,401*f*,404*f*
  posterior,401*f*,404*f*
  thenar,291,329
  muscles of,291,329,331*t*,339*f*,340*f*
  of thigh anterior,363,379*t*
  medial,363,380*t*
  posterior,363,381*t*
  transverse section,415*f*
  of upper limb,291,339*f*,341*f*
  of wrist,322*f*
Compartment syndrome, *395*
Compression, ulnar nerve, *324*
Computed tomography (CT),25–26
  of abdomen,26*f*,201*f*,209*t*,212*f*
  of abdominal aorta,212*f*
  applications,62
  of back,62*t*
  bone window,63*f*
  of brain,27*f*
  of cervical spine,62*t*,63*f*
  of epidural hematoma,475*f*,559*f*

  of female pelvis, 274*f*
  function of, 26*f*
  of head, 558*t*, 559*f*, 560*f*
  of inferior vena cava, 212*f*
  of jejunum, 212*f*
  of kidneys, 212*f*
  of liver, 212*f*
  of lower limb, 416*t*
  of lungs, 124*f*, 133, 134*f*
  of maxillary sinus, 560*f*
  of nasal cavities, 560*f*
  of neck, 558*t*
  of pancreas, 212*f*
  of paranasal sinuses, 560*f*
  of pelvis, 273*t*, 274*f*
  of spleen, 212*f*
  of thorax, 124*f*, 132*t*, 133, 134*f*
  of upper limb, 342*t*
Concentric contractions, 11
Concha(e) of ear, 552, 552*f*, 553*f*
  nasal, 538*f*
  inferior, 431*f*, 439, 440*f*, 522*f*, 544*f*
  middle, 431*f*, 439, 439*f*, 440*f*, 522*f*, 523*f*
  superior, 431*f*, 439, 440*f*, 522*f*, 523*f*
Conduction system in cardiac cycle, 70
  of heart, 107–108, 108*f*
Condylar axis, 376*f*
Condylar canals, 432, 435*f*, 442*f*
Condylar process, of mandible, 432, 432*f*, 439, 442*f*, 509*t*
  head of, 439
Condyles femoral lateral, 357, 358*f*, 376*f*, 384*f*, 385*f*, 386*f*, 387*f*, 389*f*, 417*f*
  medial, 357, 357*f*, 358*f*, 376*f*, 384*f*, 385*f*, 386*f*, 387*f*, 389*f*, 417*f*
  occipital, 39*f*, 432, 434*f*, 435*f*, 514*f*
  tibial lateral, 360*f*, 384*f*, 411*f*
  medial, 360*f*, 384*f*
Congenital heart defects, 116*f*
Congenital hip dislocation, *374*
Congenital torticollis, *456*
Conjoined tendon, 145

Conjunctiva ocular,543,545*f*
    palpebral,543
Conjunctival fornix,543,543*f*
Conjunctival sac,543
Connective tissue,6,6*f*,129*f*,502*f*. *See also* Fascia Connective tissue sling,527*f*
Conoid ligament,303,304*f*
Conoid tubercle,286*f*
Constrictions esophageal,117,118*f*
    of ureter,207,207*f*
Contamination, peritoneal, *165*
Continence,271–272,272*f*
Contractions, muscle concentric,11
    eccentric,11
    isometric,11
    phasic,11
    reflexive,11
    tonic,11
Conus arteriosus,104,105*f*,123*f*
Conus branch, of coronary artery,106*f*,109*f*,110*f*
Conus elasticus,463,463*f*,464*f*,466*f*
Conus medullaris,46*f*,49
    in adult,46*f*,49
    at birth,49
    MRI of,33*f*
Cooper's ligaments,82,83*f*
COPD. *See* Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) Coracoacromial arch,304*f*,308*f*–309*f*
Coracoacromial ligament,197*f*,303*f*,304*f*,307,308,308*f*–309*f*
Coracobrachialis,12*f*,306*f*,308*f*–309*f*,309,310*t*,312*t*,334*f*,335*f*,340*f*
Coracoclavicular ligament,303,304*f*,308*f*–309*f*
Coracohumeral ligament,307,308*f*
Coracoid process,286,286*f*,287*f*,304*f*,308*f*,309*f*,335*f*
Cord(s) of brachial plexus lateral,297,297*f*,298*f*,299*t*,302*f*,306*f*,307*f*
    medial,297,297*f*,298*f*,299*t*,302*f*,306*f*
    posterior,297,297*f*,299*t*,302*f*
    spermatic,146*f*,154,154*f*,155,155*f*,155*t*,156*f*,158*f*,233*f*,234*f*
    spinal,19*f*,21*f*,46–51,48*f*,51*f*,57*f*,201*f*,500*t* (*See also* Spinal cord)
        tendinous,105*f*
    atrioventricular valve and,106

  - umbilical,115*f*
  - vocal,464
- Cornea,543*f*,544,545*f*
- Corneal reflex, *547*
- Corneoscleral limbus,545*f*
- Corniculate cartilage,463,463*f*
- Corniculate tubercle,464*f*,466*f*
- Cornua, sacral,35,38*f*
- Corona, of glans penis,266
- Coronal, location/direction term,3*t*
- Coronal plane,3*f*,4*f*
- Coronal suture,430*f*,433*f*,441*f*
- Coronary arteries,106*f*,109–111,109*f*–110*f*
  - atrial branch,109*f*
  - branches of,111
  - conus branch,106*f*,109*f*,110*f*
  - disease, *111*
  - left,104*f*,105*f*,106*f*
  - atrial branches,109*f*–110*f*
  - atrioventricular branch,110*f*
  - branches,109*f*–110*f*,111*t*
  - circumflex branch,109*f*–110*f*
  - interventricular branches,109*f*–110*f*
  - margin branch,109*f*–110*f*,111,111*t*
  - posterolateral branch,109*f*–110*f*
  - proximal lateral branch,110*f*
  - right,104*f*,109*f*–110*f*,111
  - atrial branch,106*f*,109*f*–110*f*
  - atrioventricular nodal branch,110*f*
  - branches,111,111*t*
  - conus branch,106*f*,109*f*
  - marginal branch,110*f*,111
  - posterior interventricular branch,109*f*–110*f*,111
- Coronary artery bypass graft (CABG), *112*
- Coronary ligament,196,197*f*
- Coronary sinus,100*f*,103*f*,106*f*,109*f*–110*f*,112,112*f*
- Coronary sulcus,102,105*f*
- Coronoid fossa,288*f*,316*f*,343*f*
- Coronoid process of mandible,432*f*,439,508*f*,509*t*,513*f*

- of ulna,289*f*,316*f*,317*f*,343*f*,344*f*

Corpus callosum,479*f*,561*f*

Corpus cavernosum/corpora cavernosa of clitoris,234*f*,267
- of penis,158*f*,257,257*f*,265*f*,266,266*f*,267*f*

Corpus spongiosum, of penis,157*f*–158*f*,234*f*,245*f*,257,257*f*,265*f*,266,266*f*,267*f*

Corrugator ani,272*f*

Corrugator supercilii,503*f*

Cortex cerebral,20,21*f*
- renal,205*f*,212*f*
- of suprarenal glands,207

Corticobulbar fibers,498*f*–499*f*

Costal angle,85*f*

Costal arch,335*f*

Costal cartilages,9*f*,84–85,84*f*–85*f*,86*f*,146*f*,335*f*

Costal facets,32*f*
- inferior,35,36*f*
- superior,35,36*f*

Costal groove,92,93*f*

Costal margin,84*f*,85,145*f*,196,202

Costal pleura,89*f*,96*f*,97*f*,120*f*,121*f*

Costal processes,36*f*,40*f*,44*f*,59*f*

Costal surface of lung,123*f*
- of scapula,287*f*,304*f*,308*f*

Costal tubercle,85,85*f*

Costocervical trunk,45*f*,74*t*,91*f*,292*f*,443,444*f*,471*f*

Costochondral joint,85,85*f*

Costoclavicular ligament,304*f*

Costodiaphragmatic recess,121,121*f*,166*f*

Costomediastinal recess,121,121*f*

Costovertebral joints,85,85*f*

Coxal bone,7*f*,9*f*,222*f*,226*f*,356,357*f*,372*f*
- cartilage of,225*f*
- features of,225
- gluteal surface of,226*f*
- relation to bones of trunk,372*f*
- surfaces of auricular,9*f*,225*f*
- symphyseal,9*f*,222*f*,226*f*

Cranial, location/direction term,3*f*,3*t*

Cranial bones,473*f*,478*f*. *See also* Calvaria; Skull cranial nerves and,486*f*

- diploë layer of,433*f*,473*f*,475*f*,502*f*
- dural sinuses in,476 (*See also* Dural sinuses) inner table of,433*f*,473*f*,502*f*
- meninges in,474*f*
- neurovascular structures,442*f*
- outer table,433*f*,473*f*,502*f*

Cranial cavity cranial nerves and,486*f*
- dural sinuses in,476,476*f*
- meninges in,474*f*
- neurovascular structures,442*f*

Cranial fossa,441*f*
- anterior,440,441,441*f*,486*f*,522*f*
- middle,441,441*f*,482*f*,486*f*,519*t*,522*f*,551*f*
- posterior,441,441*f*,486*f*

Cranial nerves (CN),22,22*f*,485–499,486*f*. *See also specific nerve* cavernous sinus and,477*f*
- classification of,486*t*
- cranial cavity and,486*f*
- functions of,487*t*
- intracavernous course of,551*f*
- in neck,453,462

Cranial root, of accessory nerve,498*f*

Craniosacral component, of parasympatheti nervous system,55

Craniosynostosis, *440*

Craniovertebral joints,39,39*f*,41,41*f*
- ligaments of,41,41*f*
- muscles of,60*f*

Creases DIP joint,329*f*
- flexion,328,329*f*
- of hand middle,329*f*
- thenar (“life line”),329*f*
- transverse distal,329*f*
- proximal,329*f*
- of interphalangeal and metacarpophalangeal joints,328,329*f*
- IP joint,329*f*
- MCP joint,329*f*
- PIP joint,328,329*f*
- thenar,329*f*
- of wrist distal,329*f*
- proximal,329*f*

Cremasteric artery,157,157*f*,158*f*,159
Cremasteric fascia,154*f*,155*f*,155*t*,156*f*,157*f*
Cremasteric reflex,158
  absent or reduced, *159*
Cremasteric vein,158*f*
Cremaster muscle,146*f*,154*f*,155*f*,155*t*,156*f*,157*f*
Crest ampullary,557
  frontal,436*f*
  iliac,5*t*,7*f*,58*f*,145*f*,204*f*,222*f*,223*t*,225,225*f*,226*f*,227*f*,336*f*,375*f*,408*f*–410*f*,414
  intertrochanteric,356,358*f*,375*f*,377*f*
  nasal,522*f*
  occipital,436*f*
  external,434*f*,435*f*
  sacral,35
  lateral,35
  medial,35
  median,35
  sphenoid,522*f*
  supramastoid,513*f*
  supraventricular,104,105*f*
  terminal,104,105*f*
  urethral,257,257*f*
Cribriform plate,436*f*,439,439*f*,442*f*,488,488*f*,522*f*,553*f*
Cricoarytenoid lateral,465*t*,466*f*
  posterior,465,465*t*,466*f*,536*f*
Cricoarytenoid joint,463*f*
Cricoarytenoid ligament,463*f*
Cricoid cartilage,118*f*,126*f*,462,463*f*,464*f*,534*f*,560*f*
  arch of,463*f*
Cricopharyngeus,462,536*f*
Cricothyroid,465,465*t*,466*f*,467*f*,469*f*,470*f*,497*f*,535*t*
Cricothyroid branch of common carotid artery,444*f*
  of laryngeal artery,468*f*
Cricothyroid joint,462,463*f*
Cricothyroid ligament,126*f*,463*f*,464*f*,466*f*,467*f*
Cricothyroid membrane,463
Cricothyroid muscle,465,465*t*,466*f*,467*f*,469*f*,470*f*,497*f*,535*t*
Cricothyroidotomy, *464*
Cricotracheal ligament,463,463*f*

Crista galli,436*f*,439,439*f*,440*f*,474*f*,488*f*,522*f*
Crohn’s disease, *195*
Cruciate anastomosis,363, *364*
Cruciate ligaments, of knee joint,10,10*f*,386,387*f*–389*f*,417*f*
  anterior,386,387*f*,388*f*,389*f*,417*f*
  posterior,386,387*f*,388*f*
Cruciform ligament, of atlas,42
Crural fascia,362
Crural sling,88*f*
Crus/Crura of antihelix,521,552*f*
  of clitoris,223*f*,234*f*,253*f*,269*f*
  of diaphragm left,87,87*f*,149*f*,189*f*
  right,87,87*f*–88*f*,149*f*
  of nose,521*f*,522*f*
  of penis,223*f*,230*f*,257*f*,264,265*f*
  of superficial inguinal ring lateral,154*f*,382*f*
  medial,154*f*,382*f*
Crux, of heart,102,103*f*
CSF. *See* Cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) CT. *See* Computed tomography (CT) Cubital fossa,314–315
  deep,315*f*
Cubital joint. *See* Elbow joint Cubital lymph nodes,296*f*
Cubital region,284
  anterior,284*f*
  posterior,284*f*
Cubital veins, median,295*f*,296
Cuboid,357,361*f*,362*f*,393*f*,399*f*,401*f*,403*f*
Culdocentesis, *254*
Cuneiform,403*f*,404*f*
  cartilage,463
  intermediate,357,361*f*,362*f*
  lateral,357,361*f*,362*f*
  medial,357,361*f*,362*f*,400*f*,401*f*
  tubercle,464*f*,466*f*
Cuneocuboid joint,398*f*
Cuneonavicular joint,398*f*
Curvature kyphotic,32, *33*,*34*
  lordotic,32, *33*,*34*
  of spine,32*f*,33, *34*

of stomach greater,161*f*,187,199*f*
lesser,161*f*,187,199*f*
of uterus,250*f*
Cusp of aortic valve left,106*f*
posterior,106*f*
right,106*f*
of atrioventricular valve anterior left,106*f*
right,106*f*
posterior left,106*f*
right,106*f*
septal, right,106
of pulmonary valve left,106*f*
right,106*f*
Cutaneous branch of intercostal arteries lateral,45*f*
medial,45*f*
of spinal nerve lateral,60*f*,61*f*
medial,60*f*,61*f*
Cutaneous innervation of anterior abdominal wall,153*f*
of back,60*f*
of face,506,506*f*
of lower limb,371*f*
of thoracic wall,93*f*
of upper limb,301,302*f*
Cutaneous nerves antebrachial anterior,300
lateral,299,300,315*f*
medial,54*f*,299*t*,301*f*,302*f*,315*f*
posterior,301
brachial,298*f*,301
inferior lateral,301
medial,54*f*,299*t*,301*f*,302*f*,315*f*
posterior,301
dorsal,301,302*f*
lateral, of thigh,368,368*t*,369*f*
palmar,301,302*f*
posterior, of thigh,368*t*,370
sural,54*f*,368*t*
lateral,369*f*,371,392*f*
medial,392*f*
Cymba conchae,552,552*f*

Cyst popliteal (Baker’s), *390*
    of thyroglossal duct, *467*
Cystic artery,169*f*,170*f*,197*f*,198
Cystic duct,197*f*,198,199*f*
Cystic vein,175*t*
Cystohepatic triangle,199*f*,200,284*f*
D
Dartos fascia,156*f*,157*f*,264
Dartos muscle,155*t*,156f Decussation, of pyramidal tract,475*f*
Deep, location/direction term,3*t*
Deep artery of the arm,292,293*f*,313*f*
Deep palmar arch arterial,292,293*f*,294,294*f*
    venous,295*f*
Deep palmar branch, of ulnar artery,294
Deep pelvis, ligaments of, in female,252*f*
Deep pouch, of pelvis,222,223*f*,223*t*
Deep segmental muscle group,58,58*t*
Deep veins,14,16
    of lower limb,365,366*f*
    of upper limb,295,295*f*
Deep vein thrombosis (DVT), *366*
Defecation,271–272,272*f*
Deferential plexus,181*t*,242*f*,242*t*
Degenerative diseases, of spine, *34*
Deltoid ligament,393*f*,398,400*f*
Deltoid
  muscle,12*f*,13*f*,91*f*,307*f*,308*f*,309,309*f*,311*f*,311*t*,313*f*,334*f*,335*f*,336*f*,340*f*
    acromial part,311*t*,312*t*,335*f*
    clavicular part,311*t*,312*t*,335*f*
    spinal part,311*t*,312*t*
Deltoid region,284,284*f*
Deltoid tuberosity,288*f*,289
Deltopectoral groove,295,295*f*
Dendrites,19,20*f*
Dens apical ligament of,44*f*
    of axis (C2),39*f*,44*f*,534*f*,561*f*
    MRI of,33*f*
Dense connective tissue,6
Dental arch mandibular,432*f*,439,525

maxillary,435*f*,439,525
with teeth in alveoli,432*f*
Dentate line,270*f*,271,272*f*
Denticulate ligament,47,48*f*
Depression, of pectoral girdle,306*t*
Depressor anguli oris,12*f*,503*f*,504*f*,505*t*
Depressor labii inferioris,12*f*,503*f*,504*f*,505*t*
Depressor labii oris,503*f*
Dermatomes,53,53*f*
of abdominal wall,53*f*,60*f*,151,153*f*
of anterior abdominal wall,153*f*
of back, cutaneous innervation,60*f*
of head, trunk, and limbs,53*f*,60*f*
of limbs,53*f*,60*f*,302*f*,371*f*
of lower limb,53*f*,371*f*
of neck,461*f*
of thoracic wall,53*f*,92,93*f*
of upper limb,53*f*,60*f*,302*f*
Dermis,6
Descendens hypoglossus,472*f*
Descending aorta,14*f*,72,73*f*,74*f*,74*t*,124*f*
Descending artery genicular,109*f*,110*f*,363,363*f*
palatine,447*f*,516*t*,524*f*
posterior,109*f*,110*f*
Descending colon,71*f*,162*f*,165*f*,166*f*,190*f*,192*f*,193,193*f*,194*f*,199*f*,201*f*,203*f*
attachment of,166*f*,204*f*
lymphatic drainage of,178*t*
Detrusor,182*t*,256,256*f*
Developmental correlations accessory spleens, *203*
atrial septal defect, *116*,116*f*
bicornuate uterus, *249*
bipartite patella, *359*,359*f*
cleft lip, *525*
cleft palate, *528*
coarctation of the aorta, *117*
common renal anomalies, *206*
craniosynostosis, *440*
developmental changes of the spinal cord, dural sac, and vertebral column, *49*

ileal diverticulum, *192*
midgut tube rotation, *187*
neonatal respiratory distress syndrome, *127*
pain localization from foregut, midgut, and hindgut derivatives, *187*
patent ductus arteriosus, *116*
renal anomalies, *206*
spinal development, *33*
tetralogy of Fallot, *106*
thyroglossal duct cyst, *467*,*467*
ventricular septal defects,104, *116*,116*f*
Deviation radial,284,323*f*
ulnar,284,323*f*
Diaphragm,71*f*,76*f*–77*f*,87*f*–89*f*,95*t*,96*f*,97*f*,98*f*,118*f*,128*f*,130*f*,146*f*,147,148*f*,163
costal part,146*f*,148*f*,149*f*
crus of left,87*f*–88*f*
right,87*f*–88*f*
drainage through,130*f*
expiratory position,88,88*f*,128*f*
hepatic surface of,165*f*–166*f*,190*f*
innervation of,90*f*
inspiratory position,88,88*f*,128*f*
lumbar part of,149*f*,179*f*
lymphatic drainage of,178*t*
neurovasculature of,89*f*
pelvic,222,223*f*,228,260*f*
fascia of,223*f*,230*f*,254*f*,259*f*,261*f*,262*f*
inferior,260*f*
superior,260*f*
muscles of,230*t*
surfaces,102
thoracic,74*f*,76*f*,79*f*,87–90,87*f*,95*t*,101*f*,118*f*,128*f*,130*f*,150*f*,199*f*,203*f*,204*f*,21
apertures of,71*f*,85
costal part of,146*f*,149*f*
crus/crura of left,87*f*
right,87*f*–88*f*
domes of,87–88,87*f*
left,87*f*
right,87*f*
Diaphragma sellae,474,474*f*,486*f*

Diaphragmatic fascia,99*f*,149
Diaphragmatic nodes,90
Diaphragmatic pleura,89*f*,94*f*,98*f*,118*f*,120,120*f*,121*f*,146*f*,148*f*,196*f*
Diaphragmatic surface of heart,100*f*,102,103*f*
  of liver,196,197*f*
  of lungs,130
Diaphysis, of long bone,8,8*f*
Diastole,108–109
  in cardiac cycle,106*f*,108–109,109*f*
  ventricular,106*f*
Diencephalon,20,21*f*,479
Digastric,455*f*,456,457*f*,492,527*t*,536*f*
  anterior belly,455*f*,457*f*,491,527*f*,527*t*,528*f*,531*f*,535*f*
  intermediate tendon,527*f*
  nerve to,512*f*
  posterior belly,455*f*,457*f*,472*f*,492*f*,527*f*,527*t*,528*f*,535*f*,536*f*
Digastric fossa,434*f*
Digital artery dorsal of foot,365,365*f*
  of hand,294,294*f*
  palmar,294
  common,293*f*,294*f*
  proper,294*f*
  plantar common,364*f*,365
  proper,364*f*,365
Digital fibrous sheaths,291,363
Digital nerves dorsal,301*f*,302*f*
  palmar,301*f*,302*f*
  common,302*f*
  proper,302*f*
  plantar,370
Digital veins dorsal,295*f*
  palmar,295*f*
Digits,357*f*
Dilator pupillae muscle,500*t*
Dilator urethrae,257*f*
Dilator urethrae, of urethra,256
DIP joint creases,329*f*
DIP joints, of hand,321*f*–322*f*,327,327*t*,328,329*f*
Diploë layer,433*f*,473*f*,475*f*,502*f*

Diploic veins,433*f*,475*f*,478*f*,503
Disk articular,10,304*f*,508*f*–510*f*
  intervertebral,9*f*,32*f*,41,41*f*–43*f*,44*f*,63*f*,228*f*
  herniation of, *40*,40*f*,63*f*
  optic,488,544,545*f*
  ulnocarpal, of wrist,321,322*f*
Dislocation glenohumeral, *309*
  of hip acquired, *376*
  congenital, *374*
  with hip dysplasia, *374*
  of lunate, *289*
  of temporomandibular joint, *510*
Distal, location/direction term,3*f*,3*t*
Distal interphalangeal (DIP) joint of foot,398*f*,401
  of hand,321*f*–322*f*,327,327*t*,329*f*
Diverticulum/diverticula ileal, *192*
  Meckel’s, *192*
Dominance, in coronary circulation,111
Dominant circulation,111
Doppler effect,26
Dorsal, location/direction term,3*f*,3*t*
Dorsal carpal network,294,294*f*
Dorsal digital artery of foot,365,365*f*
  of hand,294,294*f*
Dorsal digital expansion,333,333*f*,338*f*
Dorsal interossei,332*t*,333*f*,406*t*
Dorsal metatarsal artery,365,365*f*
Dorsal motor nucleus,131*f*,501*f*,501*t*
Dorsal muscular compartment, of foot,404
Dorsal pedal pulse, *365*
Dorsal rami, of spinal nerves,51–52,51*f*,297*f*
Dorsal root, of spinal nerve,297*f*
Dorsal veins, deep,232,266,270
Dorsal venous arch,365,366*f*
Dorsal venous network of foot,366*f*,404
  of hand,295,295*f*,333,333*f*
Dorsiflexion,356
  of ankle,399*t*
Dorsum of fingers,328*f*,333,333*f*

- of foot, 356*f*, 404
  - muscles of, 404, 404*t*
- of hand, 284*f*, 333
  - anatomic snuffbox, 292, 325, 326*f*
  - digital expansion and, 333, 333*f*, 338*f*
  - surface anatomy of, 333*f*
- of penis, 235*f*, 266
- of tongue, 530*f*, 531*f*

Dorsum sellae, 432, 436*f*, 438*f*, 441*f*

Double contrast barium enema, of large intestine, 194*f*

Down syndrome, 116

Drainage spaces, peritoneal cavity, 165*t*

Duct(s) accessory pancreatic, 189, 189*f*, 199*f*–200*f*, 202
- alveolar, 127*f*
- bile, 161, 169*f*, 196, 197*f*, 198, 199*f*, 201*f*, 208*f*
  - common, 189*f*
    - shared emptying with pancreatic duct, *200*
  - hepatic, 197*f*, 198, 199*f*
  - sphincter of, 200
- cochlear, 555*f*, 556, 556*f*
- cystic, of gallbladder, 197*f*, 198, 199*f*
- ejaculatory, 159, 245, 245*f*, 246*f*, 257, 257*f*
- endolymphatic, 555*f*, 557*f*
- extrahepatic biliary, 198, 199*f*
- frontonasal, 521
- hepatic, 199*f*
  - common, 198
  - left, 197*f*
  - right, 197*f*
- hepatopancreatic, 189, 199*f*
- lactiferous, 82, 83*f*
- lymphatic, 17, 17*f*, 77, 83*f*, 95*t*, 97*f*, 118*f*
  - right, 17, 76*f*, 77, 77*f*
  - thoracic, 17–18, 17*f*, 18*f*, 70, 70*f*, 77, 77*f*, 95*t*, 97*f*, 118*f*, 178*f*, 470*f*, 471*f*
- nasolacrimal, 521, 523*f*, 523*t*, 541, 544, 544*f*, 549*f*
- pancreatic, 199*f*
  - accessory (of Santorini), 189, 189*f*, 199*f*–200*f*, 202
  - main (of Wirsung), 189*f*, 198, 200*f*, 202
  - sphincter of, 199*f*

  parotid,511,511*f*,512*f*,513*f*,532,533*f*
  semicircular,493,494*f*,555*f*,556,557*f*
  ampulla of,557
  Stensen’s,511
  submandibular (Wharton’s),532,533*f*
  thoracic,17–18,17*f*,18*f*,70*f*,77,77*f*,95*t*,97*f*,118*f*,178*f*,470*f*,471*f*
  thyroglossal, *467*
  Wharton’s,532,533*f*
Ductules efferent,157,157*f*,159
  prostatic,246*f*,257,257*f*
Ductus arteriosus,104,114,114*f*,115*t*
  patent, *116*,116*f*
Ductus deferens,150*f*,155*f*,155*t*,156*f*,157*f*,158*f*,159,206*f*,230*f*,233*f*,235*f*,242*f*,244*f*,246*f*
  ampulla of,159,245*f*,255*f*
  artery of,233*f*
  autonomic nervous system and,182*t*
  epididymis and,159
Ductus reuniens,557*f*
Ductus venosus,114,114*f*,115*t*
  obliterated,115*f*
Duodenal bulb,189,189*f*
Duodenal flexure, superior,189*f*
Duodenal papilla major,189,189*f*,199*f*,202
  minor,189,189*f*,199*f*,202
Duodenal recess,190*f*
  inferior,162*f*,165*f*
  superior,162*f*,165*f*
Duodenal ulcers, *190*
Duodenojejunal flexure,189*f*,192*f*
Duodenum,145*f*,163*f*,165*f*,169*f*,172*f*,186*f*,188*f*,189,199*f*,201*f*,204*f*,208*f*
  ascending part of,166*f*,189,189*f*,190*f*,199*f*
  autonomic nervous system and,183*f*
  celiac trunk and,170*f*,202
  descending part of,163*f*,189,189*f*,190*f*,199*f*–200*f*
  horizontal part of,166*f*,189,189*f*,190*f*,192*f*,199*f*,200*f*
  lymphatic drainage of,178*t*
  muscular coat,189*f*
  in situ,190*f*

- superior part of,166*f*,189,189*f*,190*f*,192*f*,199*f*–200*f*
- suspensory ligament of,189,189*f*
- ulcers of, *190*
- wall of,199*f*

Dupuytren’s disease, *329*

Dural partitions,475–476

Dural sac,40*f*,47,49*f*
- developmental changes, *49*

Dural sinuses,433*f*,450,475–477
- confluence of,476*t*
- in cranial cavity,476,476*f*
- principal,476*t*
- structure of,475*f*

Dural sleeve,40*f*

Dura mater cerebral,433*f*,473,474,474*f*,475*f*,478,478*f*,484*f*,502*f*,555*f*
- endosteal layer,473*f*,474
- meningeal layer,474,475*f*
- partitions in,474
- periosteal layer,474,474*f*,475*f*,502*f*
- spinal,40*f*,47,48*f*,49*f*,61*f*,474*f*

DVT. *See* Deep vein thrombosis (DVT)

E

Ear. *See also* Acoustic meatus auditory apparatus,556*f*
- auricles of,552*f*
- innervation of,553*f*
- clinical correlations hearing loss, *557*
- hyperacusis, *555*
- Ménière’s disease, *557*
- otitis media, *555*
- tinnitus, *557*
- vertigo, *557*
- concha of,552,552*f*,553*f*
- external,552–553
- flaccid part of,552
- tense part of,552
- helix of,552
- inner bony labyrinth of,556
- membranous labyrinth of,556
- schematic,555*f*

    internal, 555–557
    projection of otic capsule onto, skull, 555*f*
    vestibule of, 556
    middle, 553–555
    infection of, *555*
    innervation of, 494
    muscles in, 556
    muscles of, 504*t*, 505*t*
    scaphoid fossa of, 552
    sound transmission through, 555–557
    triangular fossa of, 552, 552*f*
    tympanic cavity (*See* Tympanic cavity) umbo of, 552
    vestibule of, 552*f*, 555*f*
Earlobe, 552*f*
Eccentric contractions, 11
Echocardiogram, of heart, 135*f*
Echogenic (ultrasound image), 26
Ectopic pregnancy, *247*
Edinger-Westphal nucleus, 501*f*, 501*t*
Efferent ductules, 157, 157*f*, 159
Effusion, pleural, *122*
Ejaculation, 267
    retrograde, *267*
Ejaculatory ducts, 159, 245, 245*f*, 246*f*, 257, 257*f*
Elastic fibers, 127*f*
Elastic recoil, of circulatory system, 15, 15*f*
Elbow joint, 7*f*, 285*f*, 315, 315*f*, 316*f*
    MRI of, 344*f*
    radiograph of, 343*f*
Elevation, of pectoral girdle, 306*t*
Embolism, pulmonary, *129*
Eminence arcuate, 437*f*
    articular, 514*f*
    hypothenar, 324*f*, 328, 329*f*
    intercondylar, of tibia, 357, 360*f*, 384*f*
    parietal, 434*f*
    radial carpal, 323*f*
    thenar, 324*f*, 328, 329*f*
    ulnar carpal, 323*f*

Emissary veins,46*f*,267*f*,433*f*,475*f*,502*f*,503
    condylar,442*f*
Emission,267
    neurovascular and muscle mechanisms during,267
Emphysema, *127*
End arteries,16,16*f*
Endoabdominal fascia,149
Endocardium,102
Endochondral ossification,8
Endolymph,556
Endolymphatic duct,555*f*,557*f*
Endolymphatic sac,555*f*,557,557*f*
Endometrium,248*f*,249*f*,250*f*
Endomysium,11
Endopelvic fascia, *225*,230,230*f*
Endothoracic fascia,93*f*
Enlargement, of spine cervical,46*f*,47
    lumbosacral,46*f*,47
Entrapment, renal vein, *205*
Epicardium,99,99*f*,102
Epicondyle femoral lateral,357,358*f*,383,384*f*,386*f*,396*t*
    medial,357,358*f*,383,384*f*,386*f*
    humeral lateral,288*f*,289,301,314,314*t*,315,316*f*,320*t*,335*f*,343*f*,344*f*,357,358*f*
    medial,288*f*,289,296,300,314,315,316*f*,319*t*,334*f*,335*f*,338*f*,340*f*,343*f*,344*f*,35
Epicondylitis, lateral, *318*
Epicranial aponeurosis (galea aponeurotica),475*f*,502,502*f*,503*f*,504*f*,504*t*,505*t*
Epidermis,6
Epididymis,155*f*,155*t*,156*f*,157,157*f*,235*f*
    ductus deferens and,159
    efferent ductules,157,157*f*,159
    left lateral view,157*f*
    lymphatic drainage of,178*t*
    in situ,157*f*
    tail of,157*f*
Epidural anesthesia, *48*
Epidural fat,40*f*
Epidural hematoma,475*f*,478*f*,559*f*
Epidural hemorrhage, *440*,*478*
Epidural space,47,49*f*,474*f*,478

Epigastric arteries,150*f*
  inferior,150*f*,151*f*,152*f*,156*f*,167*f*,168,168*f*,168*t*,231*f*,235*f*,363*f*,382*f*
  superficial,150*f*–151*f*,151,363,363*f*
  superior,72,91*f*,150*f*–151*f*,152*f*
Epigastric veins,150*f*
  inferior,150*f*,151,152*f*,156*f*,176*f*,231*f*,235*f*,382*f*
  superficial,92*f*,152*f*,366*f*
  superior,91*f*,151,152*f*,176*f*
Epigastrium,145*f*
Epiglottic cartilage,463*f*,464*f*
Epiglottis,462,463*f*,464*f*,466*f*,525*f*,530*f*,534*f*,538*f*
Epimysium,11
Epiphyseal lines,8,8*f*,359*f*
Epiphyseal plates,8,9*f*
Epiphysis,8,8*f*
  distal,8*f*
  proximal,8*f*
Epiploic appendices,193,194*f*
Epiploic foramen,164
Episiotomy, *262*
Epistaxis, *523*
Epoöphoron,249*f*
Erb-Duchenne palsy, *298*
Erb’s point,459,472*f*
Erection,267
  neurovascular and muscle mechanisms during,267,267*f*
Erector spinae,58,63*f*,337*f*
Esophageal artery,74*f*
Esophageal constriction lower,117,118*f*
  middle,117,118*f*
  upper,118*f*
Esophageal hiatus,87*f*,88,149*f*
Esophageal inlet,118*f*
Esophageal plexus,79*f*–80*f*,80–81,117,118*f*
Esophageal sphincter,117,462
Esophageal varices, *176*
Esophageal veins,75,173,175*t*,176*f*
Esophagus,61*f*,73*f*,74*f*,88*f*,96*f*,97*f*,99*f*,117,118*f*–119*f*,124*f*,167*f*,168*f*,177*f*,186*f*,18
  achalasia, *119*

  cervical part of,78*f*–79*f*,95*t*,118*f*
  circular muscle fibers of,536*f*
  constrictions,117,118*f*
  location,117,118*f*
  lymphatic drainage of,178*t*
  in situ,118*f*
  thoracic part of,79*f*,95*t*,118*f*
  varices of, *198*
  venous collaterals,119*f*
Ethmoid air cells,439,439*f*
Ethmoidal artery,447,448*f*
  anterior,524*f*
  posterior,524*f*,549*f*
Ethmoidal foramen,541*t*
  anterior,540*f*,541
  posterior,540*f*,541
Ethmoidal nerve,524*f*
  anterior,490*f*
  posterior,490*f*
Ethmoid bone,430*f*,431*f*,436*f*,439,440*f*,522*f*
  anterior view,438*f*,439*f*
  cribriform plate,436*f*,439,439*f*,442*f*,488,488*f*,522*f*,553*f*
  crista galli,436*f*,439,439*f*,440*f*,474*f*,488*f*,522*f*
  middle nasal concha,431*f*
  orbital plate,439*f*,440*f*,540*f*
  perpendicular plate,431*f*,439,439*f*,440*f*,488*f*,522*f*
  in situ,439*f*
  superior concha,488*f*
  superior view,439*f*
Ethmoid bulla,523*f*
Ethmoid sinuses,439,521,523*f*,523*t*,561*f*
Eustachian valve,105*f*,114
Eversion,356
  of foot,402*t*
  of subtalar joint,402*t*
  of transverse tarsal joint,402*t*
Expansion, dorsal digital,333,333*f*,338*f*
Expiration diaphragm in,88*f*,128*f*
  forced,128

  mechanics of, 128, 128*f*
  muscles of, 86*t*
  pulmonary cavities in, 128
  quiet, 128
Extension of fingers, 328*t*
  of foot joints, 402*t*
  of glenohumeral joint, 312*t*
  of hip joint, 378*t*
  at humeroulnar and humeroradial joints, 316*t*
  of interphalangeal joint, 327*t*, 402*t*
  of knee joint, 391*t*
  of menisci, 388*f*
  of metatarsophalangeal joint, 402*t*
  of thumb joints, 328*t*
  of upper limb joints, 284
  of wrist joint, 323*t*
Extensor carpi radialis brevis, 13*f*, 320*t*, 324*f*, 326*f*, 336*f*, 338*f*, 340*f*, 341*f*
  longus, 13*f*, 315*f*, 320*t*, 324*f*, 326*f*, 336*f*, 338*f*, 340*f*, 341*f*, 344*f*
  tendons, 324*f*, 326*f*
Extensor carpi ulnaris, 13*f*, 320*t*, 324*f*, 326*f*, 336*f*, 341*f*
  tendon, 324*f*, 326*f*
Extensor digiti minimi, 13*f*, 320*t*, 324*f*, 333*f*, 341*f*
Extensor digitorum, 320*t*, 326*f*, 333*f*, 336*f*, 338*f*, 341*f*, 344*f*
  brevis, 12*f*, 368*t*, 397*f*, 404, 404*t*, 411*f*
  longus, 12*f*, 368*t*, 394*t*, 397*f*, 411*f*, 415*f*
  tendon, 324*f*, 326*f*, 333*f*, 338*f*, 397*f*
Extensor hallucis brevis, 12*f*, 368*t*, 397*f*, 404, 404*t*, 411*f*
  longus, 12*f*, 368*t*, 394*t*, 397*f*, 411*f*, 415*f*
Extensor indicis, 320*t*, 324*f*, 326*f*
Extensor pollicis brevis, 13*f*, 320*t*, 324*f*, 326*f*, 333*f*, 338*f*, 339*f*, 341*f*
  longus, 320*t*, 324*f*, 326*f*, 333*f*, 341*f*
Extensor retinacula, 291, 326*f*, 333*f*
  inferior, 394, 397*f*
  superior, 394, 397*f*
External, location/direction term, 3*t*
External oblique aponeurosis, 145, 146*f*, 147, 148*f*, 153, 153*t*, 154, 154*f*, 155, 155*t*, 156*f*, 382*f*
External occipital protuberance, 39*f*, 44*f*, 432, 434*f*, 435*f*
External os, of uterine cervix, 249, 249*f*

External rotation at glenohumeral joint,312*t*
  of hip joint,378*t*
  of knee joint,391*t*
  of upper limb,284
External urethral sphincter,230*f*,256,257,257*f*,261,263*f*,263*t*
External vertebral venous plexuses anterior,44,46*f*
  posterior,44
Extra-articular fracture, *288*
Extracapsular ligament,10,10*f*,383
Extracerebral hemorrhage, *478*
Extrahepatic biliary ducts,198,199*f*
Extrahepatic biliary system,198–199
  ducts,198,199*f*
Extraocular muscles,547
  actions of,548*t*
Extraperitoneal organs,160*f*,160*t*
Extraperitoneal structures,160
Extrinsic muscles of back,58
  of tongue,530,530*t*,531*f*
  of upper limb,284
Eye. *See also individual named structures* anatomy of,540
  autonomic innervation of,56*f*
  bony orbit of,440*f*,540–543
  clinical correlations cataracts, *546*
  corneal reflex, *547*
  glaucoma, *546*
  Horner’s syndrome, *548*
  oculomotor nerve injury, *548*
  presbyopia, *546*
  pupillary light reflex, *547*
  lacrimal apparatus,543–544
  light refraction by lens,546*f*
  orbit, topography,542*f*
  orbital region,543–544
  retina,488,543*f*,544,545*f*,548
  sympathetic/parasympathetic innervation,56*t*
Eyeball,544–546
  chambers,545*f*
  anterior,546

- posterior, 546
- choroid of, 544, 545*f*
- iris of, 543*f*, 544, 545*f*
- lens of, 543*f*, 545*f*, 546
- retina of, 488, 543*f*, 544, 545*f*, 548
- sclera of, 543*f*, 544, 545*f*
- structure of, 545*f*

Eyelids, 543–544
- lower, 543*f*
- upper, 543*f*

F

Face buccal region of, 525
- cutaneous innervation of, 506, 506*f*
- danger zone, 451*f*
- fractures, *432*
- motor innervation of, 507*f*
- muscles of of facial expression, 503*f*–504*f*, 504*t*–505*t*
- of forehead, nose, and ear, 504*t*
- of mastication, 491, 507–510
- nerves of, 491–492, 491*f*
- of facial expression, 491–492
- veins of, 449–451

Facet(s) articular inferior, 35, 35*f*, 36*f*–37*f*, 37*f*, 42*f*
- posterior, 35*f*
- superior, 35, 35*f*, 36*f*, 37*f*, 38*f*, 42*f*, 44*f*
- for thyroid cartilage, 466*f*
- of axis (C2), 35*f*
- costal, 32*f*
- inferior, 35, 36*f*
- superior, 35, 36*f*

Facet joints. *See also* Zygapophyseal joint capsule, 44*f*

Facial artery, 445*f*, 446*t*, 449*f*, 451*f*, 472*f*, 500*f*, 515*f*, 523, 533*f*, 549*f*
- plexus, 500*f*
- submental branches, 446
- tonsillar branches, 446
- transverse, 446, 511*f*

Facial canal, 492, 492*f*
- hiatus of, 436*f*
- prominence of, 554*f*

Facial expression muscles of,503*f*–504*f*,504*t*–505*t*
    nerves of,491–492
Facial nerve (CN VII),442*f*,469*f*,477*f*,485*f*–486*f*,487*t*,492*f*,493*f*,499,507*f*,511*f*,512*f*,513*f*,515*f*,51
  See also Chorda tympani branching pattern of,493*f*
    buccal branches,492
    cervical branch,492
    course of,491*f*
    glandular branches,491*f*
    marginal mandibular branches,492
    parotid plexus,511–512
    in temporal bone fractures, *493*
    temporal branches,492,492*f*,513*f*
    zygomatic branches,492,513*f*
Facial vein,450*f*,451*f*,452*f*,468*f*,472*f*,511*f*,515*f*,523,533*f*,550*f*
    deep,449,451*f*
Falciform ligament,150*f*,151,161*f*,187*f*,196,196*f*,197*f*,199*f*
Falx cerebelli,474,475*f*,502*f*
Falx cerebri,474,474*f*,475*f*
Fascia,6,6*f*
    antebrachial,291,341*f*,363*f*
    anterior vagina,252*f*
    axillary,291
    brachial,291,341*f*
    buccopharyngeal,455*f*,456*f*
    Buck’s,264
    Camper’s,145
    cervical,59,469*f*
    deep,455,456*t*
    carotid sheath,445,455,455*f*,456*t*
    investing layer,456*f*,469*f*,472*f*
    investing (superficial) layer,455,456*t*
    pretracheal layer,455*t*,456*f*,469*f*
    prevertebral layer,455*f*,455*t*,456*f*,456*t*,472*f*
    clavipectoral,291
    Colles’,145,153,223*f*,261*f*,262*f*,264
    cremasteric,154*f*,155*f*,155*t*,156*f*,157*f*
    crural,362
    dartos,155*t*,157*f*,264

diaphragmatic,149
attachment of fibrous pericardium to,99*f*
endoabdominal,149
endopelvic,230,230*f*
in subperitoneal space,225
endothoracic,93*f*
Gerota’s,166*f*,204,204*f*
lata,152*f*,154*f*,362
of lower limb,362–363
membranous,230
muscle,11,11*f*
of neck, deep,455
nuchal,59,455
obturator,228,229*f*,230*t*,261*f*,262*f*
obturator internus,229*f*,252*f*
pectoral,83*f*,291
of pelvic diaphragm,223*f*,230*f*,254*f*,259*f*,261*f*,262*f*
inferior,260*f*
superior,260*f*
of pelvis,230–231
endopelvic, *225*,230,230*f*
male,230*f*
parietal,230,231*f*
tendinous arch of,230,231*f*,252*f*
visceral,230,231*f*,244*f*,248*f*,255*f*
on rectum,244*f*,248*f*
on urinary bladder,244*f*,248*f*
penile deep (Buck’s),245*f*,264*f*,265*f*,266,266*f*
superficial,153,264*f*
of perineum, male,262*f*
pharyngobasilar,536*f*
pretracheal,455
prevertebral,455
psoas,149,231*f*
rectoprostatic,231,244*f*,245*f*
rectovesical,266*f*
renal (Gerota’s),166*f*,204,204*f*
anterior layer,166*f*
retrorenal layer,166*f*

  Scarpa's,145,264
  spermatic,155*t*,156*f*
  external,155*f*,157*f*,264*f*
  internal,155*f*,157*f*,235*f*
  superficial,157*f*
  abdominal,145,146*f*,154*f*,245*f*
  deep membranous layer,145,146*f*,148*f*
  superficial fatty layer,145,146*f*
  of abdominal wall,145
  investing,156*f*
  perineal,145,153,223*f*,223*t*,253*f*,261,261*f*
  thoracolumbar,13*f*
  temporal,514
  thoracolumbar,13*f*,58,59,336*f*,337*f*
  transversalis,146*f*,148*f*,149,150*f*,156*f*,382*f*
  of upper limb,291
Fascicle anterior,108*f*
  longitudinal,41*f*,44*f*
  middle,108*f*
  posterior,108*f*
  transverse,413*f*
Fasciitis, plantar, *405*
Fat epidural,40*f*
  periorbital,541
  preperitoneal,147,148*f*
Fat capsule, perirenal,201*f*,204,204*f*,206*f*
Fat pad of female inguinal region,154*f*
  Hoffa's,387*f*
  infrapatellar,389*f*,417*f*
  ischioanal,261
Fatty layer, subcutaneous connective tissue,6*f*
Faucial isthmus,525,525*f*
Female bladder,255*f*
  deep pelvis, ligaments of,252*f*
  genitalia blood vessels of,234*f*–235*f*,269*f*
  coronal section,253*f*
  external,268*f*
  nerves of,238*f*
  structures,247–254

  tissue of,268*f*
  inguinal region,154*f*
  pelvis,233*f*
  CT of,274*f*
  fascia of,231*f*,251*f*
  innervation of,238*f*
  ligaments of,252*f*
  MRI of,248*f*,275*f*
  parasagittal section,248*f*
  peritoneal relationships in,251*f*
  peritoneum in,250*f*
  sagittal section,248*f*
  perineum nerves of,237,238*f*
  neurovasculature of,234*f*
  ureters,254,255*f*
  urethra,255*f*,256*f*,257,258*f*
  urogenital triangle,223*f*,224*f*,225,267–270,269*f*
  lymphatic drainage,270
Femoral artery,14*f*,151*f*,154*f*,155*f*,167*f*,168,168*f*,235*f*,264*f*,363,382*f*,383*f*,415*f*
  branches of,363*f*
  course of,363*f*
  deep,14*f*
  lateral circumflex,363,363*f*
  medial circumflex,363,363*f*
  pubic branch,363*f*
Femoral canal,381
Femoral cutaneous nerve lateral,54*f*,153*f*,179*f*,368,368*t*,369*f*,371*f*,382*f*
  posterior,54*f*,238*f*,239*f*,369*f*,371*f*
Femoral head necrosis, *364*
Femoral hernias, *382*
Femoral neck fracture, *359*
Femoral nerve,54*f*,150*f*,153*f*,154*f*,179*f*,368,368*t*,369*f*,371*f*,382*f*,383*f*
  injury, *368*
  saphenous branch,368
Femoral ring,150*f*,381,382*f*
Femoral sheath,363,381
Femoral triangle,381
Femoral trigone,356*f*
Femoral vein,14*f*,92*f*,93*f*,154*f*,155*f*,167*f*,168*f*,235*f*,264*f*,365,367*f*,382*f*,383*f*,415*f*

circumflex lateral,366*f*
medial,366*f*
cutaneous,366*f*
Femoropatellar joint,384*f*,386*f*
Femoropopliteal vein,366*f*
Femur,274*f*,356,357*f*–358*f*,384*f*,385*f*,386*f*,387*f*,389*f*,390*f*,414*f*,415*f*,417*f*
adductor tubercle of,357,358*f*
anterior view of,358*f*
condyles lateral,357,358*f*,376*f*,384*f*,385*f*,386*f*,387*f*,389*f*,417*f*
medial,357,357*f*,358*f*,376*f*,384*f*,385*f*,386*f*,387*f*,389*f*,417*f*
fovea of,358*f*,376*f*,377*f*
head of,275*f*,356,358*f*,359*f*,375*f*,376*f*
ligament of,359*f*,374,375*f*,377*f*
necrosis, *364*
neck of,7*f*,356, *358f*,359*f*,372*f*,375*f*
fracture of, *359*
patellar surface of,376*f*,387*f*,389*f*
posterior view of,358*f*
rotation of,376*f*
shaft of,356,358*f*–359*f*
trochanters greater,7*f*,356,358*f*–359*f*,372*f*,375*f*,376*f*,377*f*,410*f*
lesser,7*f*,356,375*f*,376*f*,377*f*
Fetal circulatory structures,115*t*
Fetus, circulation in,114,114*f*
changes at birth,115–116
structures of, derivatives of,115*t*
Fibers branchiomotor,486*t*
corticobulbar,498*f*–499*f*
of cranial nerves,486*t*
elastic,127*f*
of hypoglossal nerve,498
intercrural, superficial inguinal ring,153*t*,154*f*,155*f*
motor,22
somatic,22,23*f*
nociceptive,55
olfactory,486*f*,524*f*
parasympathetic,55,486*t*
postganglionic sympathetic,494
prerectal,229*f*

  Purkinje, 108, 108*f*
  secretomotor, 511
  somatomotor, 486*t*
  somatosensory general, 486*t*
  special, 486*t*
  sympathetic, 500*t*
  tendinous relaxed, 106*f*
  tensed, 106*f*
  visceromotor general, 486*t*
  special, 486*t*
  viscerosensory (visceral sensory), 22, 23*f*, 113, 257, 486*t*
  of bladder, 256
  of urethra, 257
  zonular, 544, 545*f*
Fibrocartilage, 482*f*
Fibromuscular isthmus, 246
Fibrous anuli (cardiac), 101*f*, 102, 104, 104*f*
Fibrous appendix, of liver, 197*f*
Fibrous membrane, 10*f*
Fibrous pericardium, 88, 94*f*, 96*f*, 98*f*, 99, 100*f*, 101*f*, 103*f*, 120*f*, 121*f*, 196*f*
  outer, 99*f*
Fibrous septum, 129*f*
Fibrous tendon sheaths, 329
Fibrous trigone, 104*f*
Fibula, 7*f*, 10*f*, 357*f*, 360*f*, 386*f*, 389*f*, 393*f*, 397*f*, 399*f*, 400*f*, 414*f*
  head of, 357, 360*f*, 363*f*, 383, 384*f*, 385*f*, 387*f*, 388*f*, 408*f*, 411*f*
  ligaments of, 386*f*
  lateral surface, 360*f*
  medial surface, 360*f*
  neck of, 357, 360*f*, 384*f*
  posterior surface, 360*f*
  shaft of, 360*f*
Fibular, location/direction term, 3*f*, 3*t*
Fibular artery, 14*f*, 364, 364*f*, 415*f*
  calcaneal branches, 364*f*
  malleolar branches, 364, 364*f*
  muscular branches, 364*f*
  perforating branches, 364, 364*f*, 365*f*
Fibularis brevis, 13*f*, 395*t*, 397*f*, 411*f*, 412*f*, 415*f*

- longus,12*f*,13*f*,395*t*,397*f*,401*f*,403*f*,411*f*,412*f*,413*f*,415*f*
- tertius,394*t*,397*f*,411*f*

Fibular nerve,370–371,392*f*,415*f*
- common,368*t*,369*f*,370, *370*,371*f*,392*f*
- deep,368*t*,369*f*,370, *371*
- injury, *370*–*371*
- superficial,368*t*,369*f*,370, *371*

Fibular notch,399*f*

Fibular retinacula,394
- inferior,397*f*
- superior,397*f*

Fibular veins,366*f*,415*f*

Filiform papillae,530

Filum terminale,47

Fimbriae, at abdominal ostium,249*f*

Finger(s),328–332
- adduction of,327*t*,328*t*
- dorsum of,328*f*,333,333*f*
- Dupuytren's disease and, *329*
- extension of,328*t*
- extensor tendons of,284
- flexion of,328*t*
- joints of,327–328,333*f*
- opposition of,328*t*
- surface anatomy,333

Fissure(s) anal, *271*
- cerebral, longitudinal,479,479*f*
- hepatic,196
- horizontal, of lung,123*f*
- of lung,123*f*,124,125*f*
- oblique, of lung,123*f*,124
- oral,540*f*
- orbital,440*f*,490*f*
- inferior,435*f*,490*f*,514*f*,540*f*,541,541*f*,541*t*,542*f*
- superior,432,438*f*,440*f*,442*f*,488*f*,490*f*,540*f*,541,541*f*,541*t*,542*f*
- palpebral,504*t*,543,543*f*
- petro-occipital,436*f*
- petrotympanic,435*f*,437*f*,442*f*,492*f*
- pterygomaxillary,514*f*,518,518*f*

  tympanomastoid,430*f*,437*f*
Flaccid part, tympanic membrane,552
Flexion of fingers,328*t*
  of foot joints,402*t*
  of glenohumeral joint,312*t*
  of hip joint,378*t*
  at humeroulnar and humeroradial joints,316*t*
  of interphalangeal joint,327*t*,396*t*,402*t*
  of knee joint,391*t*
  of menisci,388*f*
  of metatarsophalangeal joint,396*t*,402*t*
  plantar,356,399*t*
  of talocrural joint,396*t*
  of thumb,328*t*
  of upper limb joints,284
  of uterus,250
  at wrist joint,323*t*
Flexion creases,328,329*f*
Flexor carpi radialis,315*f*,319*t*,324*f*,325*f*,338*f*,339*f*,340*f*,344*f*
  ulnaris,12*f*,13*f*,315*f*,319*t*,322*f*,325*f*,330*f*,336*f*,338*f*,339*f*,340*f*,341*f*
Flexor digiti minimi brevis,12*f*,325*f*,330*f*,331*t*,339*f*,406*t*,413*f*
Flexor digitorum brevis,405*t*,413*f*
  longus,13*f*,396*t*,397*f*,403*f*,412*f*,413*f*,415*f*
  profundus,319*t*,324*f*,333*f*,338*f*,339*f*,341*f*,344*f*
  superficialis,319*t*,324*f*,325*f*,333*f*,338*f*,340*f*,341*f*,344*f*
Flexor hallucis brevis,368*t*,406*t*,413*f*
  longus,13*f*,396*t*,397*f*,403*f*,412*f*,413*f*,415*f*
Flexor pollicis brevis,330*f*,331*t*,339*f*339*f*,325*f*,325*f*
  longus,12*f*,319*t*,324*f*,325*f*,330*f*,338*f*,339*f*,340*f*,341*f*
Flexor retinacula,291,323*f*,324*f*,325*f*,330*f*,339*f*,340*f*,344*f*,394,397*f*
Flexure colic,171*f*,190*f*
  left (splenic),161*f*,162*f*,172*f*,190*f*,192*f*,193,193*f*,194*f*,199*f*,201*f*,203*f*
  right (hepatic),163*f*,190*f*,192*f*,193,193*f*,194*f*,199*f*
  duodenal, superior,189*f*
  duodenojejunal,189*f*,192*f*
  perineal,270,270*f*
Floating ribs,85,85*f*
Floor of oral cavity lymphatic drainage of,531*f*
  muscles of,509*t*,527*f*,527*t*,528*f*

of orbit,431*f*,440*f*,547
of pelvis,228–230,229*f* (*See also under* Diaphragm) muscles of,229*f*,230*t*
Fluid accumulation of, cardiac tamponade and, *100*
cerebrospinal (*See* Cerebrospinal fluid (CSF)) interstitial, and blood, exchange between,15
synovial,9,10
Fluoroscopy, of abdomen,209*t*
Fold alar,389*f*
aryepiglottic,463,464*f*,466*f*,535
axillary anterior,284*f*,306
posterior,284*f*,307
circular,190
in jejunum,192*f*
of walls of small intestine,192*f*
interureteral,255*f*
palatoglossal,534*f*
peritoneal,147,149
pterygomandibular,526*f*
rectal,258
transverse,259*f*
inferior,260*f*,270*f*
middle,260*f*
superior,260*f*
rectouterine (uterosacral),249*f*,251*f*,255*f*,259*f*
rugal, of stomach,188*f*
salpingopharyngeal,534,534*f*,538
semilunar, of walls of large intestine,194*f*
sublingual,527*f*,532,533*f*
umbilical lateral,149,150*f*,156*f*,161*f*,251*f*
medial,149,150*f*,156*f*,161*f*,251*f*
median,149,150*f*,161*f*,251*f*
uterosacral (rectouterine),249*f*,251*f*,255*f*,259*f*
vestibular,464,464*f*,525*f*,534*f*
vocal,464,464*f*,525*f*,534*f*
Foliate papillae,530
Follicles, lymphatic,192*f*
Fontanelles,440
anterior,8*f*,440,441*f*
mastoid,441*f*

posterior,8*f*,441*f*
sphenoid,441*f*
Foot,7*f*,356,357*f*
arches of,402–404
longitudinal,402
stabilizers of,403*f*–404*f*
pes planus, *402*
plantar, deep,364*f*,365
stabilizers of,402
transverse,402
stabilizers of,403*f*
bones of,361*f*,362*f*
compartments of anterior,401
central,363,405
dorsal muscular,404
interosseous,363,405,405*t*
lateral,363,405
medial,363,405
posterior,401
dorsum of,403*f*,404,404*t*
eversion of,402*t*
joints of,398*f*,401,401*f*
movements,402*t*
ligaments of,393*f*,400*f*
muscles of,404,405*t*
nerves of,368*t*
phalanges of,361*f*–362*f*,361*f*–362*f*,362,400*f*
sole of,405–406
muscles of,405*t*–406*t*,413*f*
supination of,402*t*
topographic anatomy of,413*f*
veins of,365
Foramen cecum,530,530*f*
Foramen lacerum,435*f*,436*f*,442*f*,482*f*,529*f*
Foramen magnum,35,432,435*f*,436*f*,441*f*,442*f*,474*f*,475*f*,483*f*,498*f*,514*f*
Foramen ovale (oval foramen),104,114*f*,115*f*,115*t*,432,435*f*,436*f*,438*f*,442*f*,490*f*,514*f*,517*f*
Foramen rotundum,432,438*f*,442*f*,490*f*,518,518*f*,540*f*
Foramen spinosum,432,435*f*,436*f*,438*f*,442*f*,514*f*

Foramina/foramen. *See also* Opening(s) anterior,541
  epiploic,164
  ethmoidal,541*t*
  anterior,540*f*,541
  posterior,540*f*,541
  foramen cecum,530,530*f*
  foramen lacerum,435*f*,436*f*,442*f*,482*f*,529*f*
  foramen magnum,35,432,435*f*,436*f*,441*f*,442*f*,474*f*,475*f*,483*f*,498*f*,514*f*
  foramen ovale (oval foramen),104,114*f*,115*t*,432,435*f*,436*f*,438*f*,442*f*,490*f*,514*f*,517*f*
  foramen rotundum,432,438*f*,442*f*,490*f*,518,518*f*,540*f*
  foramen spinosum,432,435*f*,436*f*,438*f*,442*f*,514*f*
  incisive,434*f*,435*f*,529*f*
  infraorbital,430*f*,431*f*,439,490*f*,540*f*,541,542*f*,544*f*
  interventricular,480,480*f*,481*f*
  intervertebral,19*f*,22,32,32*f*,36*f*–37*f*,40*f*,41*f*,43*f*,44*f*,63*f*
  jugular,432,435*f*,436*f*,442*f*,476*f*,498*f*,529*f*
  laryngeal artery,446,463*f*
  laryngeal nerve,463*f*
  laryngeal vein,463*f*
  mandibular,432*f*,434*f*,439,490*f*
  mastoid,430*f*,434*f*,435*f*,437*f*,442*f*
  mental,430*f*,431*f*,439
  obturator,225,225*f*,226*f*,265*f*,266*f*
  omental,163*f*,164,186*f*,199*f*
  boundaries of,164*t*
  palatine,435*f*
  greater,529*f*
  lesser,529*f*
  parietal,433*f*,434*f*
  sacral,38*f*
  anterior,35,38*f*
  posterior,35,38*f*
  sciatic,374*f*
  greater,225,227,227*f*,228*f*,374*f*
  lesser,227*f*,228,228*f*,374*f*
  sphenopalatine,514*f*,518*f*,524*f*
  stylomastoid,432,435*f*,437*f*,442*f*,491*f*,492*f*,493*f*,517*f*,528*f*
  supraorbital,430*f*,431*f*,540*f*,541*t*

  suprapiriform,374*f*
  transverse,35,35*f*,443
  vertebral,34*f*,35*f*,40*f*
  zygomatico-orbital,541,541*f*
Forced expiration,128
Forced inspiration,128
Forearm,7*f*,284,316–320
  anterior (antebrachial) region,284*f*
  arteries of,294*f*
  bones of,285*f*
  compartments in, topographic views,319*f*,340*f*–341*f*
  transverse section,341*f*
  windowed dissection,340*f*
  compartments of,318,340*f*
  anterior,291,341*f*
  posterior,291,341*f*
  muscles of,318–320,338*f*
  anterior,338*f*
  deep,319*t*,320*t*
  intermediate,319*t*
  superficial,319*t*,320*t*
  topographic views,338*f*
  posterior (antebrachial) region,284*f*
  in pronation,317*f*
  radioulnar joints of,316–318,317*f*,318*t*,343*f*
  in supination,317*f*
Foregut,182*f*,187,190
  derivatives, pain localization from, *187*
Foreign body aspiration, *126*
Fornix/fornices,480*f*
  in cerebral ventricular system,480*f*
  conjunctival,543,543*f*
  ocular,543,543*f*
  vaginal,252*f*,253*f*,254
  anterior,248*f*,250*f*,252*f*,254,258*f*
  lateral part,249*f*
  posterior,248*f*,250*f*,252*f*,254,258*f*
Fossa acetabular,226*f*,359*f*,377*f*,382*f*
  axillary,284*f*

cerebellar,436*f*
cerebral,436*f*
coronoid,288*f*,316*f*,343*f*
cranial,441*f*
anterior,440,441,441*f*,486*f*,522*f*
middle,441,441*f*,482*f*,486*f*,519*t*,522*f*,551*f*
posterior,441,441*f*,486*f*
cubital,314–315
deep,315*f*
digastric,434*f*
hyaloid,545*f*
hypophyseal,432,436*f*,438*f*,522*f*
iliac,225,226*f*
incisive,526*f*
infraclavicular,284*f*
infraspinous,286,287*f*,308*f*
infratemporal,446,491,513*f*,514–517,515*f*,519*t*
bony boundaries of,514*f*
nerves of,517*f*,517*t*
inguinal,156*f*
lateral,150*f*,151
medial,150*f*,151
ischioanal,225,230*f*,259*f*,272
jugular,437*f*
for lacrimal sacs,439,540*f*
malleolar, lateral,360*f*
mandibular,432,435*f*,437*f*,508*f*,510*f*,514*f*
navicular, of urethra,245*f*,257,257*f*,265*f*,266
olecranon,288*f*,316*f*,336*f*,343*f*
oval (fossa ovalis),104,105*f*,116,116*f*
in postnatal circulation,115*t*
paravesical,251*f*
peritoneal,151
popliteal,363,364,392,410*f*
neurovasculature of,364,392*f*
pterygopalatine,446,491,494,513*f*,518–520,540*f*
ganglionic branches of,490*f*,491
nerves of,520*t*
radial,315*f*,316*f*

scaphoid, of ear, 552
  splenic, 166*f*, 204*f*
  submandibular, 434*f*
  subscapular, 286, 286*f*
  supraclavicular, 454, 455*f*
  supraspinous, 286, 287*f*
  supravesical, 150*f*, 151
  temporal, 512–514
  boundaries of, 512
  topography of, 513*f*
  triangular, of ear, 552, 552*f*
  trochanteric, 358*f*
  umbilical, lateral, 150*f*
Fovea articular, 317*f*
  centralis, 544, 545*f*
  of femoral head, 358*f*, 376*f*, 377*f*
Fractures. *See also* Spondylolysis clavicular, *285*
  Colles', *289*
  of face, *432*
  of femoral neck, *359*
  of hand and forearm, *289*
  of humerus, *288*
  at pterion, *440*
  of radius (Colles' fracture), *289*
  of scaphoid, *290*
  skull, *440*, *493*
  temporal bone, *493*
  urethral rupture in males and, *257*
Frenulum/frenula of clitoris, 268*f*
  labial, 525
  of tongue, 530, 530*t*
Froment sign, 300
Frontal artery, 446
Frontal bone, 7*f*, 429, 430*f*, 431*f*, 433*f*, 436*f*, 438*f*, 440*f*, 508*f*, 513*f*, 522*f*
  orbital surface of, 440*f*, 540*f*, 541*f*
Frontal branch, of trigeminal nerve, 489
Frontal crest, 436*f*
Frontal incisure, 431*f*, 540*f*, 541, 541*t*
Frontal lobe, 479, 479*f*

Frontal nerve,442*f*,490*f*,542*f*,550*t*,551*f*
Frontal process of maxilla,431*f*,439,521*f*,522*f*,540*f*
    of zygomatic bone,431*f*,513*f*
Frontal sinuses,431*f*,436*f*,440*f*,488*f*,521,522*f*,523*f*,523*t*,541*f*,561*f*
Frontal suture,441*f*
Frontonasal duct,521
Fundiform ligament,146*f*
Fundus of bladder,245*f*,255*f*,256
    of gallbladder,197*f*,198,199*f*
    of stomach,187,188*f*,199*f*
    of uterus,249,249*f*,250*f*,251*f*,253*f*,255*f*,258*f*
Fungiform papillae,530
Furrow, of tongue,530*f*
G
Gag reflex, *538*
Gait cycle,407
    muscle action during,407*t*
    stance phase,407,407*t*
    swing phase,407*t*
Galea aponeurotica (epicranial aponeurosis),475*f*,502,502*f*,503*f*,504*f*,504*t*,505*t*
Gallbladder,161*f*,163*f*,169*f*,187*f*,196*f*,198–199,199*f*,201*f*
    autonomic nervous system and,183*f*
    blood supply to,199*f*
    body of,198,199*f*
    celiac trunk and,169*f*
    fundus of,197*f*,198,199*f*
    infundibulum of,198,199*f*
    innervation of,198
    lymphatic drainage of,178*t*
    neck of,198,199*f*
Gallstones, *200*
GALT (gut-associated lymphatic tissue),17
Ganglion/ganglia,19
    abdominal,501*f*
    aorticorenal,180*f*,181*t*,185*f*
    basal,20,21*f*
    celiac,56*f*,180*f*,181*t*,182*f*,183*f*,184*f*,241*f*
    cervical,79*f*,131*f*
    inferior,462,495*f*

middle,80*f*,113*f*,131*f*,462,470*f*
superior,80*f*,113*f*,182*f*,462,472*f*,495*f*,500*f*
cervicothoracic,131*f*
ciliary,488,489,489*f*,490*f*,500*f*,501*f*,542*f*,551*f*
nasociliary root to,490*f*
ganglion impar,237
geniculate,491*f*,492,492*f*,493*f*,528*f*,556*f*
inferior, of glossopharyngeal nerve,496*f*
intramural,57*f*
lumbar,180*f*,241*f*–243*f*
mesenteric,181*t*,182*f*
inferior,56*f*,180*f*,184*f*,241*f*–243*f*
superior,56*f*,180*f*,183*f*,184*f*,241*f*–243*f*
nerves,518
otic,491,494,496*f*,501*f*,517*f*
parasympathetic,56*f*
of head,501*t*
paravertebral,55
gray rami communicans connecting,55
white rami communicans connecting,55
pelvic,181*t*,184*f*
prevertebral,55,57*f*
pterygopalatine,490*f*,491,491*f*,492*f*,494,500*f*,501*f*,506*f*,524*f*,542*f*
ganglionic branches to,490*f*,491
renal,185*f*,241*f*
sacral,243*f*
sensory,57*f*
spinal,19*f*,48*f*,49*f*,57*f*,63*f*,92*f*
spiral,494*f*,556*f*
splanchnic nerves and,23
stellate,56*f*,80*f*,113*f*,462,470*f*
submandibular,491,491*f*,501*f*,528*f*,532*f*
superior, of glossopharyngeal nerve,496*f*
suprarenal glands and,201*f*
sympathetic,51*f*,61*f*,80*f*,92*f*,131*f*,182*f*
thoracic,78*f*,79*f*,96*f*,501*f*
trigeminal,477*f*,490*f*,491*f*,492*f*,506*f*,524*f*,528*f*,542*f*,551*f*
vestibular,493,494*f*,557*f*
inferior part of,494*f*,557*f*

  superior part of,494*f*,557*f*
Gastric artery,167,167*f*,170*f*,175*f*
  left,163*f*,167,167*f*,168*t*,169*f*,170*f*,171*f*,176*f*,190*f*,203*f*,204*f*,208*f*
  posterior,170*f*
  right,168*t*,169*f*,170*f*,171*f*,176*f*
  short,170*f*,188
Gastric plexus,181*t*
  anterior,79*f*
  posterior,79*f*,183*f*
Gastric ulcers, *188*
Gastric veins,119*f*,175*t*
  left,175*t*,176*f*
  right,175*t*,176*f*
  short,175*t*
Gastrocnemius,12*f*,13*f*,390*f*,391*t*,392*f*,396*t*,409*f*–410*f*,411*f*,412*f*,414*f*,415*f*
  lateral head,387*f*
  subtendinous bursa,390,390*f*,392*f*
Gastrocolic ligament,161,163*f*
Gastroduodenal artery,168*t*,169*f*,170*f*,171*f*,175*f*,175*t*,190
Gastrointestinal tract,16*f*
  accessory organs of,196–199
  autonomic nervous system and,182*t*
  divisions of,187
  ileal diverticulum, *192*
  inflammatory bowel disease, *195*
  midgut tube rotation in, *187*
  organs of,187–195
  accessory,196–199
  pain localization in, *187*
  sympathetic/parasympathetic innervation,56*t*
Gastro-omental arteries,175*f*
  left,169*f*,170*f*,188
  right,169*f*,171*f*,188
Gastro-omental vein,175*f*,175*t*
  left,175*f*
  right,175*f*
Gastrosplenic ligament,161,163*f*,165*f*,166*f*,202
Gemellus,373*t*
  inferior,373*t*,414*f*

  superior, 373*t*, 414*f*
Genial (mental) spines, 434*f*
Genicular anastomosis, 364
Genicular artery, 364*f*
  descending, 109*f*, 110*f*, 363, 363*f*
  lateral inferior, 363*f*, 364*f*, 365*f*, 392*f*
  lateral superior, 363*f*, 364*f*, 365*f*, 392*f*
  medial inferior, 363*f*, 364*f*, 365*f*, 392*f*
  medial superior, 363*f*, 364*f*, 365*f*, 392*f*
  middle, 364*f*, 392*f*
Genicular veins, 366*f*
Geniculate ganglion, 491*f*, 492, 492*f*, 493*f*, 528*f*, 556*f*
Genioglossus, 498*f*–499*f*, 527*f*, 530, 531*f*, 533*f*, 534*f*
Geniohyoid, 456, 461*f*, 527*f*, 527*t*, 531*f*, 533*f*, 534*f*
Genitalia autonomic innervation of, 56*f*
  blood supply to in female, 234*f*–235*f*, 269*f*
  in male, 235*f*, 264*f*
  female blood vessels of, 234*f*–235*f*, 269*f*
  coronal section, 253*f*
  external, 268*f*
  muscles of, 268*f*
  nerves of, 238*f*
  structures, 247–254
  tissue of, 268*f*
  male blood vessels of, 235*f*, 264*f*
  nerves of, 239*f*
  structures, 155–159, 244–247
  structures (*See also specific structure*) in female, 247–254
  in male, 155–159, 244–247
  urogenital triangle
Genitalia (*continued*) in female, 223*f*, 224*f*, 225, 267–270, 269*f*
  in male, 223*f*, 224*f*, 264–267, 266*f*
Genitofemoral
 nerve, 54*f*, 153*f*, 154*f*, 155*f*, 179*f*, 180, 208*f*, 238*f*, 239*f*, 368*t*, 369*f*, 371*f*, 382*f*
  femoral branch, 153*f*, 382*f*
  genital branch, 368
Genual region, 356, 356*f*
Genu valgum, *391*
Genu varum, *391*

Gerdy’s tubercle,357,360*f*
Gerota’s fascia,166*f*,204,204*f*
Gingivae,525–526
Girdle pectoral (shoulder),284,285,285*f*,303–305
  joints of,303,303*f*–305*f*
  movements of,306*t*
  muscles of,304–305,305*t*,306*f*
  in situ,286*f*
  pelvic,222*f*,225,356,357*f*,372*f*,377*f* (*See also* Coxal (hip) bone) functional anatomy of,372*f*
  joints of,222*f*,225
  ligaments of,377*f*
Glabella,430*f*,431*f*,440*t*,521*f*
Gland(s) accessory sex, in male,245*f*
  anal,270*f*
  areolar,82*f*–83*f*
  Bartholin’s,267,268*f*
  bulbourethral,234*f*,245*f*,246*f*,257,257*f*,261,266
  ciliary,545*f*
  lacrimal,56*f*,491*f*,494,542*f*,543,544*f*,549*f*,551*f*
  mammary,82,83*f*
  components of,82
  nasal,491*f*,494,500*t*
  parathyroid,455*f*,467–469,468*f*
  arteries of,468*f*
  para-urethral,257
  parotid,469*f*,470*f*,491*f*,494,496*f*,500*t*,511,511*f*
  accessory,533*f*
  pineal,479*f*
  proctodeal,272*f*
  salivary,56*f*,56*t*,532,533*f*
  seminal,233*f*,242*f*–243*f*,245,245*f*,246*f*,266*f*
  sublingual,491*f*,500*t*,531*f*,532,533*f*
  submandibular,472*f*,491*f*,500*t*,532,533*f*
  suprarenal (adrenal),71*f*,165*f*–166*f*,190*f*,199*f*,201*f*,203*f*,204*f*,205*f*,206*f*,207–208,208*f*
  thymus,17*f*,74*t*,94*f*,96*f*,98,98*f*
  thyroid,94*f*,98*f*,455*f*,466*f*,467*f*,472*f*,525*f*,534*f*,560*f*
  arteries of,468*f* (*See also* Thyroid artery) left lobe,558*f*

  lobes of,94*f*,467,467*f*,558*f*
  neurovasculature of,467,468*f*
  pyramidal lobe,467,467*f*
  right lobe,558*f*
  tracheal,126*f*
  urethral, orifices of,256*f*,257*f*
  vestibular,261,267,268*f*,269*f*
Glans,157*f*
  of clitoris,224*f*,238*f*,267,268*f*,269*f*
  of penis,157*f*,224*f*,235*f*,245*f*,257*f*,265*f*,266,266*f*
Glaucoma, *546*
Glenohumeral joint. *See under* Joints (named) Glenohumeral ligaments,307,308*f*
Glenoid cavity,286,287*f*,304*f*,308*f*,311*f*,345*f*
Glenoid labrum,10,307,308*f*,311*f*
Glial cells,19,20*f*
Glisson's capsule,196
Glossopharyngeal nerve (CN IX),442*f*,485*f*,487*t*,494,496*f*,499,528*f*,532*f*,532*t*,538,539*f*,553,553*f*,555
  branches of,494,495*f*–496*f*,495*t*
Gluteal arteries,167*f*,363*f*
  inferior,235*f*,363
  left,236*f*
  right,167*f*,233*f*,236*f*
  superior,236*f*,363
  left,167*f*
  right,233*f*,236*f*
Gluteal nerve inferior,368*t*,369*f*,370
  injury, *370*
  superior,368*t*,369*f*,370
Gluteal region,356,356*f*
  functional anatomy of,373–374
  muscles of,373*t*,409*f*
  topographic anatomy of,409*f*–410*f*
Gluteal surface of coxal bone,226*f*
  of ilium,227*f*
Gluteal tuberosity,376*f*
Gluteal veins inferior,236*f*,365
  superior,233*f*,365
Gluteus maximus,13*f*,63*f*,234*f*,238*f*,239*f*,261*f*,262*f*,275*f*,373*t*,409*f*–410*f*,414*f*

- medius, 373*t*, 410*f*, 414*f*
- minimus, 368*t*, 373*t*, 414*f*

Gracilis, 12*f*, 13*f*, 238*f*, 239*f*, 378, 380*t*, 383*f*, 391*t*, 392*f*, 408*f*–412*f*, 414*f*, 415*f*
Granular foveola, 475*f*
Granulations, arachnoid, 473*f*, 475*f*, 478, 481*f*, 502*f*
Gray matter, 21*f*, 51*f*
- of anterior horn, 20, 21*f*, 50*f*–51*f*
- in central nervous system, 20, 21*f*
- of lateral horn, 20, 500*t*
- of posterior horn, 20, 21*f*, 50*f*–51*f*

Gray rami communicans, 48*f*, 51*f*, 57*f*, 61*f*, 92*f*, 96*f*, 241*f*–242*f*
- paravertebral ganglia connected by, 55

Great anterior segmental medullary artery, 50, 50*f*
Greater sac, 164
Groove capitulotrochlear, 316*f*
- chiasmatic, 436*f*
- costal, 92, 93*f*
- deltopectoral, 295, 295*f*
- for fibularis longus tendon, 362*f*
- infraorbital, 540*f*
- interscalene, 459
- intertubercular, 288, 288*f*, 304*f*, 308*f*
- for meningeal arteries, 437*f*
- mylohyoid, 434*f*
- occipital, 437*f*
- for petrosal nerve, 436*f*
- radial, 288*f*, 289
- for sigmoid sinus, 436*f*
- for subclavian artery, 458*f*
- for transverse sinus, 436*f*
- ulnar, 288*f*, 289, 316*f*
- for vertebral artery, 35*f*

Growth plate, 9*f*
- in ankle, 399*f*

Gut-associated lymphatic tissue (GALT), 17
Gutter, paracolic, 164, 165*f*–166*f*, 165*t*
Guyon’s canal, 323
Gyrus/gyri. *See also* Fold cerebral, 479, 479*f*
- cingulate, 479*f*

  postcentral,479*f*
  precentral,479*f*
H
Hallux,362
  interphalangeal joint of,398*f*
Hamate,289,290*f*,291*f*,321*f*,323*f*,324*f*,325*f*,328*f*,344*f*
  hook of,290*f*,323*f*,325*f*
Hamstring strains, *378*
Hamulus, medial pterygoid plate,435*f*,438*f*,514*f*,529*f*,536*f*
Hand,7*f*,284
  anteroposterior view of,322*f*,342*f*
  arteries of,294*f*
  of benediction,300
  bones of,285*f*,290*f*,291*f*
  claw,300, *324*
  dorsum of,284*f*,325,326*f*,333,333*f*
  surface anatomy of,333*f*
  joints of,322*f*,327–328
  musculature of, topographic views,339*f*
  palm of,284*f*,328–332
  surface anatomy,329*f*
  phalanges of,285*f*,289,290,290*f*
  distal,290*f*,291*f*,321*f*,328*f*
  middle,290*f*,291*f*,321*f*,328*f*
  proximal,290*f*,291*f*,321*f*,328*f*
  radiograph of,342*f*
  sensory innervation of,301*f*
Hard palate,521,525,525*f*,526,553*f*,561*f*
  neurovasculature of,529*f*
Haustra, of colon,193,194*f*
Head. *See also* Skull anatomic notes, petrosal nerves, *494*
  anterior and lateral regions of (*See specific structure*) arteries of,443–449
  autonomic nerves of,499–501
  clinical correlations Bell’s palsy, *492*
  cataracts, *546*
  cavernous sinus thrombophlebitis, *476*
  corneal reflex, *547*
  cricothyroidotomy, *464*
  dislocation of temporomandibular joint, *510*

  epistaxis, *523*
  external/internal carotid artery anastomoses, *449*
  extracerebral hemorrhage, *478*
  facial fractures, *432*
  fascia and potential tissue spaces, and infection, *539*
  glaucoma, *546*
Horner’s syndrome, *548*
  hydrocephalus, *480*
  hyperacusis, *555*
  hypoglossal nerve injury, *498*
  maxillary sinus infection, *521*
  Ménière’s disease, *557*
  middle ear infection, *555*
  oculomotor nerve injury, *548*
  presbyopia and cataracts, *546*
  pupillary light reflex, *547*
  scalp infections, *503*
  skull fractures at pterion, *440*
  stroke, *481*
  subclavian steal syndrome, *443*
  tentorial herniation, *475*
  tonsillectomy, *538*
  tracheostomy, *464*
  trigeminal neuralgia, *489*
  venous anastomoses and infection, *451*
  vertigo, tinnitus, and hearing loss, *557*
  CT of,558*t*,559*f*,560*f*
  dermatomes of,53*f*
  developmental correlations cleft lip, *525*
  cleft palate, *528*
  craniosynostosis, *440*
  external/internal carotid artery anastomoses, *449*
  fascia and potential tissue spaces in, and infection, *539*
  lymphatic drainage of,452–453
  MRI of,558*t*,561*f*
  nerves of,453
  parasympathetic ganglia in,501*t*
  radiographs of,558*t*
  as regional subdivision,2*f*,2*t*

  - sympathetic innervation of,56*t*,500*f*,500*t*
  - terminology related to,3*t*
  - ultrasound of,558*t*
  - veins of,449–451
  - deep,451*f*
  - superficial,450*f*
- Head (of structure) condylar, of mandible,432,432*f*,439,442*f*,509*t*
  - of femur,275*f*,356,358*f*,359*f*,375*f*,376*f*
  - of fibula,357,360*f*,384*f*,387*f*
  - of humerus,288,288*f*,304*f*,306*f*,308*f*,311*f*,345*f*
  - of mandible,508*f*,509*f*,510*f*
  - of metacarpal,290*f*
  - of pancreas,200,200*f*
  - of phalanx, of hand,290*f*
  - of radius,285*f*,289,289*f*,316*f*,344*f*
  - subluxation of, *318*
  - of ribs,85,85*f*
  - of talus,357,361*f*,362*f*
  - of tibia,360*f*
  - of ulna,289*f*,290*f*,317*f*
- Hearing loss, *557*
- Heart,71*f*
  - anterior view,108*f*
  - apex of,25*f*,101,101*f*,102*t*,103*f*,105*f*,106*f*,108*f*
  - atria (*See* Atrium)
  - auscultation sites of, *107*,107*f*,107*t*
  - autonomic innervation of,56*f*,80*f*,113,113*f*
  - base of,101
  - block, atrioventricular, *108*
  - borders of,102*t*
  - cardiac tamponade and, *100*
  - cardiac ventricles,15*f*
  - chambers of,102,105*f*
  - changes at birth,115–116
  - circulatory system and,14,70
  - conduction system of,107–108,108*f*
  - congenital defects, *116*,116*f*
  - crux of,102,103*f*
  - developmental correlations atrial septal defect, *116*,116*f*

  patent ductus arteriosus, *116*,116*f*
  tetralogy of Fallot, *106*
  ventricular septal defect, *116*,116*f*
  diaphragmatic surface of,100*f*,102,103*f*
  echocardiogram of,135*f*
  fibrous anuli (skeleton) of,101*f*,102,104,104*f*
  general features of,100–104
  innervation of,113
  lateral views,108*f*
  layers of,102
  lymphatic drainage of,113,113*f*
  MRI of,104*f*,117*f*,133,135*f*
  neurovasculature of,109–113,109*f*–110*f*,111*t*
  normal,116*f*
  radiographic appearance of,102*f*
  septal defects in,104, *116*,116*f*
  in situ,101*f*
  sounds,107
  surfaces of,101*f*,102,103*f*
  anterior (sternocostal),102,103*f*
  inferior (diaphragmatic),100*f*,102,103*f*
  posterior (base),102,103*f*
  sympathetic/parasympathetic innervation,56*t*
  valves of,106–107 (*See also* Cardiac valves) venous return to,15,15*f*
Heart sounds and auscultation sites, *107*,107*f*,107*t*
Helicine arteries,266,267*f*
Helicotrema,555*f*,556*f*
Helix, of ear,552
Hematoma epidural,475*f*,478*f*,559*f*
  subdural, *478*,478*f*
Hemiazygos vein,46*f*,51*f*,75,76*f*,77*f*,88,89*f*,97*f*,174*f*,176*f*
Hemisphere(s), cerebral,20,21*f*,479
Hemorrhage epidural, *440*,*478*
  extracerebral, *478*
  subarachnoid, *478*,478*f*
  subdural, *478*,478*f*
Hemorrhoidal plexus,258,260*f*,270*f*,272*f*
Hemorrhoids external, *271*
  internal, *271*

- Hepatic artery,166*f*,168,199*f*
  - common,163*f*,167,167*f*,168*t*,169*f*,170*f*,171*f*,190*f*,204*f*,208*f*
  - left,169*f*,176*f*
  - proper,168*t*,169*f*,170*f*,171*f*,176*f*,196,197*f*,199*f*,204*f*,208*f*
  - right,169*f*,176*f*
- Hepatic bile duct,199*f*
  - common,198
  - left,197*f*
  - right,197*f*
- Hepatic nerve plexus,181*t*,182*f*,198
- Hepatic portal system,173,173*f*
- Hepatic portal vein,173,173*f*
- Hepatic vein,16*f*,76*f*,114*f*,115*f*,165*f*,173,174*f*,190*f*,196,197*f*,199*f*
  - proper, branches of,169*f*,170*f*,171*f*,197*f*,204*f*,208*f*
- Hepatoduodenal ligament,161,161*f*,165*f*,166*f*,187*f*,190*f*,195
- Hepatoesophageal ligament,199*f*
- Hepatogastric ligament,161,161*f*,186*f*,187*f*,195
- Hepatopancreatic ampulla,198,199*f*
- Hepatopancreatic duct,189,199*f*
- Hepatorenal recess,164,165*t*,204*f*
- Hernial sac,382*f*
- Herniation,475*f*
  - femoral, *382*
  - inguinal, *156*
  - direct,156
  - indirect,156
  - of intervertebral disks, *40,*40*f*,63*f*
  - central,40*f*
  - posterior,40*f*
  - in lumbar spine, *40*,40*f*,63*f*
  - meningeal, *475*
  - sites of, cerebral, *475*
  - tentorial, *475*
  - axial, *475*
  - lateral, *475*
- Hesselbach‘s triangle,150*f*,151,156*f*
- Hiatus. *See also* Aperture; Opening(s) adductor,363,363*f*,364*f*,365*f*,366*f*,383
  - aortic,74*f*,76*f*,87*f*,88,149*f*,167*f*,168*f*
  - basilic,295*f*,296

- esophageal,87*f*,88,149*f*
- of facial canal,436*f*
- levator,228,229*f*
- maxillary,540*f*
- rectal,229,229*f*
- sacral,35,38*f*,228*f*
- semilunaris,521,523*f*
- triceps,312,312*f*,313*f*
- urogenital,229*f*

Hilum of lungs,70,121*f*,123,123*f*
- renal,204–205,204*f*,205*f*
- of spleen,202,202*f*

Hindgut,187
- innervation of,182*f*
- pain localization from derivatives of, *187*

Hip (coxal) bone. *See* Coxal bone Hip joint,7*f*,357*f*,372*f*,374–378
- abduction of,378*t*
- adduction of,378*t*
- capsule of,377*f*
- dislocation, *374*
- acquired, *376*
- congenital, *374*
- dysplasia, *374*
- extension of,378*t*
- external rotation of,378*t*
- flexion of,378*t*
- functional anatomy of,374–378
- internal rotation of,378*t*
- knee joint and,376*f*
- ligaments of,377*f*
- movements of,378*t*
- muscles of,409*f*
- position,377*f*
- right,375*f*
- topographic anatomy of,408*f*–410*f*

His, bundle of,104*f*
- opening for,105*f*

Hoffa’s fat pad,387*f*

Horizontal, location/direction term,3*t*

Horizontal fissure, of lung,123*f*
Horizontal plate, of palatine bone,435*f*,522*f*
Horizontal processes, of palatine bone,439
Hormone, thyroid,467
Horner’s syndrome, *548*
Horns gray matter anterior,20,21*f*,50*f*–51*f*
    lateral,20,500*t*
    posterior,20,21*f*,50*f*–51*f*
    of hyoid bone greater,443,443*f*
    lesser,443,443*f*
    of thyroid cartilage inferior,462,463*f*
    superior,462,463*f*
Horseshoe kidneys,206
Human body functional subdivisions locomotor system,2*t*
    nervous system,2*t*
    skin,2*t*
    viscera,2*t*
    regional subdivisions of head,2*t*
    lower limb,2*t*
    neck,2*t*
    upper limb,2*t*
    structural design of,2,2*f*,2*t*
Humeral artery anterior circumflex,292,293*f*,294*f*
    posterior circumflex,292,293*f*,294*f*,313*f*
Humeral nodes,296,296*f*
Humeroradial joint,315,316*t*,343*f*
    flexion at,316*t*
Humeroulnar joint,315,316*t*,343*f*,344*f*
    flexion at,316*t*
Humerus,6*f*,7*f*,285*f*,288,309*f*,311*f*,340*f*,341*f*,343*f*
    anatomic neck of,288,288*f*
    anterolateral surface of,288*f*
    anteromedial surface of,288*f*
    borders lateral,288*f*,316*f*
    medial,288*f*
    crest of greater tubercle,288*f*
    crest of lesser tubercle,288*f*
    fractures of, *288*
    head of,288,288*f*,304*f*,306*f*,308*f*,311*f*,345*f*

  intertubercular groove of,288,288*f*,304*f*,308*f*
  tendon sheath in,309*f*
  radial groove of,288*f*,289
  shaft of,288*f*
  supracondylar ridge lateral,288*f*,316*f*
  medial,288*f*,316*f*
  surgical neck of,288,288*f*
  tubercles greater,288,288*f*,304*f*,308*f*,335*f*
  lesser,288,288*f*,304*f*,308*f*
  ulnar groove of,288*f*,289,316*f*
Hunchback. *See* Kyphosis Hyaloid fossa,545*f*
Hydrocele, *158*
Hydrocephalus, *480*
Hyoglossus,456,499*f*,527*f*,527*t*,530,531*f*,533*f*,535*f*
Hyoid bone,443,455*f*,457*f*,463*f*,464*f*,466*f*,472*f*,525*f*,527*f*,527*t*,531*f*,532*f*,533*f*,534*f*,53
  body,443,443*f*,527*t*
  greater horn,443,443*f*
  lesser horn,443,443*f*
Hyperacusis, *555*
Hyperextension injury, *39*
Hypertension, portal, *176*
Hypoechoic/hyperechoic (ultrasound image),26
Hypoepiglottic ligament,464*f*
Hypogastric nerves,180*f*,181*t*,237,241*f*–243*f*
Hypogastric plexus,237
  distribution,184*f*
  inferior,56*f*,181*t*,182*f*,184*f*,237,240*f*,241*f*–243*f*,256
  superior,180*f*,181*t*,184*f*,237,241*f*–243*f*
Hypogastrium,145*f*
Hypoglossal canal,44*f*,435*f*,436*f*,442*f*,499*f*
Hypoglossal nerve (CN XII),442*f*,460*t*,461*f*,462,467*f*,469*f*,472*f*,485*f*–486*f*,487*t*,498,499*f*,532*f*,532*t*
  fibers of,498
  injury to, *498*
  nucleus of,499*f*
Hypoglossus,527*f*,527*t*,531*f*
Hypophyseal fossa, of sphenoid bone (sella turcica),432,436*f*,438*f*,522*f*
Hypophysis,477*f*,479,479*f*,480*f*,553*f*,561*f*

- Hypothalamus,479,479*f*
- Hypothenar,325*f*
  - compartment,291,329
  - muscles,329,331*t*
- Hypothenar eminence,324*f*,328,329*f*

I

- IBD. *See* Inflammatory bowel disease (IBD) Ileal arteries,168,168*t*,171*f*,190
- Ileal branch, of superior mesenteric artery,168,168*t*,171*f*,175*t*,190
- Ileal diverticulum, *192*
- Ileocecal junction,190
- Ileocecal orifice,193,194*f*
- Ileocecal recess,162*f*
  - inferior,162*f*,165*f*
  - superior,162*f*,165*f*
- Ileocolic artery,168,168*t*,171*f*,172*f*
- Ileocolic vein,175*t*,176*f*
- Ileum,161*f*,186*f*,189,191*f*
  - diverticula of, *192*
  - lymph nodes of,134*f*
  - MRI of,191*f*
  - Peyer’s patches in,17,17*f*
  - in situ,191*f*
  - terminal,192*f*,194*f*
  - wall structures,192*f*
- Iliac arteries,14*f*
  - circumflex deep,150*f*–151*f*,151,168,235*f*
  - superficial,151,151*f*,152*f*,363,363*f*,383*f*
  - common,14*f*,45*f*,63*f*,114*f*,166*f*,167,167*f*,168*t*,177*f*,179*f*,235*f*,244*f*,363*f*
  - left,186*f*,232,233*f*,234*f*,236,248*f*,258*f*
  - right,168*f*,172*f*,206*f*,232,233*f*,236*f*,248*f*
  - deep circumflex,150*f*–151*f*,151,167*f*,168,235*f*
  - external,14*f*,45*f*,150*f*,151*f*,166*f*,167*f*,168,168*t*,179*f*,232,235*f*,253*f*,255*f*,259*f*,36
  - left,206*f*,234*f*,236*f*
  - right,168*f*,233*f*,236*f*,248*f*,253*f*,258*f*
  - internal,14*f*,44,45*f*,114*f*,167*f*,168,168*t*,179*f*,206*f*,231*f*,232,235*f*,253*f*,254,255*f*,
  - anterior division,232,232*t*,233*f*
  - branches of,232*t*
  - left,234*f*
  - posterior division,232,232*t*

    right, 168*f*, 206*f*, 233*f*
    superficial circumflex, 151, 151*f*, 152*f*, 363, 363*f*, 383*f*
Iliac
  crest, 5*t*, 7*f*, 58*f*, 145*f*, 204*f*, 222*f*, 223*t*, 225, 225*f*, 226*f*, 227*f*, 336*f*, 375*f*, 408*f*–410*f*, 414
Iliac fossa, 225, 226*f*
Iliac lymph nodes, 178*t*, 237*t*
    common, 177, 177*f*, 178*f*, 179, 367*f*
    external, 177*f*, 367*f*
    internal, 177*f*, 367*f*
Iliac plexus, 241*f*–243*f*
Iliac spine anterior inferior, 226*f*, 227*f*
    anterior superior, 145, 146*f*, 225, 226*f*, 227*f*, 228*f*, 374*f*, 375*f*, 383*f*, 408*f*–410*f*
    posterior inferior, 226*f*, 227*f*, 375*f*
    posterior superior, 5*t*, 225, 226*f*, 227*f*, 374*f*, 375*f*, 377*f*
Iliac tubercle, 227*f*
Iliac tuberosity, 226*f*
Iliacus, 147, 147*t*, 148*f*–150*f*, 179*f*, 206*f*, 235*f*, 253*f*, 379*t*, 382*f*, 408*f*–409*f*
Iliac veins circumflex deep, 150*f*, 235*f*
    superficial, 92*f*, 152*f*, 366*f*
    common, 14*f*, 51*f*, 92*f*, 93*f*, 166*f*, 176*f*, 244*f*, 367*f*
    left, 76*f*, 174*f*, 186*f*, 233*f*, 234*f*, 236, 245*f*, 258*f*
    right, 236, 236*f*, 248*f*
    external, 14*f*, 46*f*, 92*f*, 93*f*, 150*f*, 173, 236, 253*f*, 255*f*, 259*f*, 366*f*, 367*f*
    left, 206*f*, 234*f*, 236*f*
    right, 233*f*, 258*f*
    internal, 14*f*, 46*f*, 173, 206*f*, 231*f*, 235*f*, 236, 253*f*, 255*f*, 264*f*, 367*f*
    left, 234*f*
    right, 206*f*, 233*f*, 236*f*
Iliac wing, 225, 225*f*
Iliococcygeus, 228, 229*f*, 230*t*
Iliocostalis, 58, 58*f*, 58*t*
Iliofemoral ligament, 374, 377*f*
Iliohypogastric
  nerve, 54*f*, 60*f*, 93*f*, 153*f*, 179*f*, 180, 203*f*, 204*f*, 208*f*, 368, 368*t*, 369*f*, 371*f*
Ilioinguinal
  nerve, 54*f*, 153*f*, 154*f*, 155*f*, 179*f*, 180, 203*f*, 208*f*, 238*f*, 239*f*, 264*f*, 368, 368*t*, 369*f*, 371*f*
Iliolumbar artery, 44, 167*f*
    right, 233*f*
Iliolumbar ligaments, 227, 227*f*

Iliopectineal arch,150*f*,382*f*
Iliopectineal bursa,375*f*,382*f*
Iliopsoas,147,149*f*,150*f*,154*f*,379*t*,382*f*,383*f*,408*f*
Iliopubic tract,147,148*f*,149,150*f*
Iliotibial tract,362,383*f*,410*f*,411*f*,412*f*,414*f*,415*f*
Ilium,7*f*,9*f*,194*f*,225,225*f*,226*f*,252*f*,253*f*,274*f*,359*f*
    auricular surface of,226*f*
    gluteal surface of,227*f*
Imaging. *See specific modality by name* Incisive canal,442*f*,522*f*
Incisive foramen,434*f*,435*f*,529*f*
Incisive fossa,526*f*
Incisive suture,526*f*
Incisors,432*f*,526*f*
Incisure frontal,431*f*,540*f*,541,541*t*
    intertragic,552*f*
Incus,552*f*,554*f*,555,556*f*
    posterior ligament of,554*f*
    superior ligament of,554*f*
Infarction, of spleen,202
Infection of digital synovial sheath, *329*
    fascia and potential tissue spaces in head and, *539*
    of maxillary sinus, *521*
    of middle ear, *555*
    peritoneal, *165*
    of scalp, *503*
    venous anastomoses and, *451*
Inferior, location/direction term,3*t*
Inferior lobe, of lung,123*f*
Inferior lymph nodes, of inguinal region,367*f*
Inferior mesenteric
  artery,14*f*,165*f*,166*f*,167*f*,168,168*f*,168*t*,172*f*,174*f*,176*f*,195,199*f*,206*f*,233*f*,234
    anastomoses with superior mesenteric
      artery,14*f*,170*f*,171*f*,186*f*,189*f*,208*f*,212*f*
    branches of,202
    sigmoidal branch of,168
    superior rectal branch of,168
Inferior mesenteric vein,14*f*,173,175*f*,175*t*,176*f*,236*f*
    tributaries of,175*t*
Inferior vena

cava,14*f*,16*f*,18*f*,51*f*,63*f*,72*f*,75,87*f*,88,88*f*,92*f*,93*f*,100*f*,101*f*,103*f*,105*f*,109*f*–11
  CT of,212*f*
  tributaries of,173,174*t*
  wall of,15*f*
Inflammatory bowel disease (IBD), *195*
Infraclavicular fossa,284*f*
Infraclavicular part, of brachial plexus,297,299*t*
Infracolic compartment,164
Infracolic space,165*t*
Infraglenoid tubercle,287*f*,308*f*
Infrahyoid,455,456,456*t*,457*f*,458*t*,461*f*,465,527*f*
Infraorbital artery,447*f*,515*f*,516*t*,549*f*
Infraorbital branch of maxillary nerve,491,523
  of trigeminal nerve,491,523
Infraorbital canal,431*f*,440*f*,540*f*,541*f*,541*t*
Infraorbital foramen,430*f*,431*f*,439,490*f*,540*f*,541,542*f*,544*f*
Infraorbital groove,540*f*
Infraorbital margin,431*f*
Infraorbital nerve,490*f*,506*f*,511*f*,512*f*,520*t*,542*f*,543*f*,549*f*
Infraorbital vein,550*f*
Infrapatellar bursa,389*f*,390
Infrapatellar fat pad,389*f*,417*f*
Infraspinatus,13*f*,309,311*t*,313*f*,337*f*
Infraspinous fossa,286,287*f*,308*f*
Infratemporal fossa,446,491,513*f*,514–517,519*t*
  bony boundaries of,514*f*
  deep dissection,515*f*
  nerves of,517*f*,517*t*
  superficial layer,515*f*
Infratrochlear nerve,490*f*,511*f*,512*f*,542*f*,549*f*,551*f*
Infundibular stalk, of pituitary,486*f*
Infundibulum of gallbladder,198,199*f*
  of uterine tube,247,249*f*
Inguinal canal,153–154,153*t*,154*f*,156*f*,159*f*
  boundaries of,153–154
  male, and abdominal wall relationships,156*f*
  openings of,153*t*,154
  structures of,153*t*
Inguinal fossa,156*f*

  lateral,150*f*,151
  medial,150*f*,151
Inguinal hernia, *156*
  direct,156
  indirect,156
Inguinal ligament,145,145*f*,146*f*,152*f*,154*f*,155*f*,177*f*,227*f*,235*f*,366*f*,377*f*,382*f*,383*f*,408*f*
  reflected,154*f*
Inguinal lymph nodes,17*f*,237*t*
  deep,177*f*,367*f*
  inferior,367*f*
  superficial,152*f*,177*f*,367*f*
Inguinal region,153–154
  female,154*f*
  male,154*f*
Inguinal ring deep,146*f*,150*f*,153*t*,154,156*f*,251*f*
  superficial,146*f*,154,154*f*,155*f*,156f,264*f*,382*f*
  lateral crus of,154*f*,382*f*
  medial crus of,154*f*,382*f*
Inguinal triangle of Hesselbach,150*f*,151,156*f*
Injury axillary nerve, *301*
  brachial plexus, *298*
  of cervical spine, *39*
  fibular nerve, *370–371*
  to hypoglossal nerve, *498*
  of knee joint, *388*
  to long thoracic nerve, *306*
  median nerve, *300*
  musculocutaneous nerve, *299*
  obturator nerve, *369*
  oculomotor nerve, *548*
  radial nerve, *301*
  sciatic nerve, *370*
  tibial nerve, *370*
  ulnar nerve, *300*
Inlet. *See also* Aditus esophageal,118*f*
  laryngeal,535
  to mastoid antrum,553,554*f*
  pelvic interspinous diameter,224*f*

  left oblique diameter, 224*f*
  plane of, 222, 224*f*
  right oblique diameter, 224*f*
  transverse diameter, 224*f*
  thoracic, 70*f*–71*f*, 85, 95*t*
Innervation of anal canal, 271
  of anterior abdominal wall, 147*t*
  of auricles, 553*f*
  autonomic of bronchial tree, 131*t*
  of heart, 80*f*, 113*f*
  of intraperitoneal organs, 184*f*
  of kidneys, 56*f*, 185*f*
  of lungs, 131*t*
  of upper ureters, 185*f*
  of back, 61*f*
  cutaneous, 60*f*
  of bronchial tree, 131*t*
  of cervical spine, 90*f*
  cutaneous of anterior abdominal wall, 153*f*
  of back, 60*f*
  of face, 506*f*
  of head and neck, 460*f*, 506*f*
  of lower limb, 371*f*
  of thoracic wall, 93*f*
  of upper limb, 301, 302*f*
  of foregut, 182*f*
  of gallbladder, 198
  of hand, 301*f*
  of heart, 113
  autonomic, 80*f*, 113*f*
  of hindgut, 182*f*
  of large intestine, 195
  of lungs, 131*t*
  of midgut, 182*f*
  monosegmental, 53, 55*f*, 56*f*
  motor, of face, 507*f*
  of nuchal region, 461*f*
  anterolateral, motor innervation of, 461*f*
  of oral floor muscles, 509*t*, 528*f*

  of orbit, 548, 550*t*, 551*f*
  of pancreas, 202
  parasympathetic of eye, 56*t*
  of gastrointestinal tract, 56*t*
  of heart, 56*t*
  of lungs, 56*t*
  of male sex organs, 56*t*
  of pancreas, 56*t*
  of rectum, 259
  of pelvis female, 238*f*, 241*f*–243*f*
  male, 239*f*, 243*f*
  of pleura, 120
  polysegmental, 53, 55*f*
  of scrotum, 264
  sensory of hand, 301*f*
  of pharynx, 539*f*
  of stomach, 56*f*, 182*f*, 183*f*, 188
  sympathetic of eye, 56*t*
  of gastrointestinal tract, 56*t*
  of head, 56*t*, 500*f*, 500*t*
  of heart, 56*t*
  of lungs, 56*t*
  of male sex organs, 56*t*
  of pancreas, 56*t*
  of rectum, 259
  of thoracic wall, 93*f*
  of tongue, 530, 532*t*
  of vertebrae, 44
Inspiration diaphragm position during, 88, 88*f*, 128*f*
  forced, 128
  mechanics of, 128, 128*f*
  muscles of, 86*t*
  pulmonary cavities in, 128
  quiet, 128
Integumentary system, 6
Interalveolar septum, 127*f*, 526*f*
Interarticular part, lumbar vertebrae, 35
Interatrial bundle, 108*f*
Interatrial septum, 102, 105*f*

Intercarpal joint,321
Intercarpal ligaments, palmar,322*f*
Intercavernous sinus anterior,476*f*,476*t*,477
  posterior,476*f*,476*t*,477
Interclavicular ligaments,303,304*f*
Intercondylar eminence,357,360*f*,384*f*
Intercondylar notch,357,358*f*,384*f*,385*f*,387*f*
Intercostal arteries,44,74*f*,79*f*,91*f*,96*f*,97*f*,152*f*,444*f*
  anterior,45*f*,72,74*t*
  highest,444*f*
  posterior,45*f*,50*f*,61*f*,72,74*f*,74*t*,91*f*
  superior,74*t*
  supreme,292*f*,443,444*f*
Intercostal lymphatics,18*f*,76*f*–78*f*,130*f*
Intercostal lymph nodes,18*f*,76*f*–78*f*,90,130*f*
Intercostal muscles,12*f*,83*f*,85–87,86*f*,90*f*,96*f*,97*f*
  external,85–87,86*f*,86*t*,93*f*,146*f*
  innermost,85–87,86*f*,86*t*,93*f*
  internal,12*f*,85–87,86*f*,86*t*,93*f*,146*f*
Intercostal nerves,52,52*f*,54*f*,60*f*,78,79*f*,90*f*,91*f*,93*f*,96*f*,97*f*,153*f*
  branches,92*f*
  cutaneous branches,60*f*
  anterior,91*f*–92*f*,302*f*
  lateral,91*f*,302*f*
  posterior,78
Intercostal veins,46*f*,51*f*,92*f*,96*f*,152*f*
  anterior,76*f*,91*f*
  posterior,75,76*f*,89*f*,91*f*
  superior,97*f*
Intercostobrachial nerve,297,302*f*
Intercrural fibers,153*t*,154*f*,155*f*
Intercuneiform joints,398*f*
Interfoveolar ligament,150*f*
Interganglionic trunk,180*f*
Interhemispheric cistern,481*f*
Intermaxillary suture,431*f*
Intermediate nerve,492
Intermesenteric plexus,180*f*,184*f*,241*f*–243*f*
Intermetacarpal joints,322*f*

Intermetatarsal joints,398*f*,401
Intermodal bundles,108*f*
Intermuscular septa,313*f*,341*f*
  anterior,415*f*
  lateral,6*f*,415*f*
  medial,6*f*
  transverse,415*f*
Internal, location/direction term,3*t*
Internal oblique aponeurosis,146*f*,147,148*f*
Internal occipital protuberance,436*f*
Internal organ systems,23
Internal os, of uterine cervix,249,249*f*
Internal plexuses (vertebral venous) anterior,44,46*f*
  posterior,44,46*f*
Internal rotation at glenohumeral joint,312*t*
  of hip joint,378*t*
  of knee joint,391*t*
  of upper limb,284
Internal urethral sphincter,256,257,257*f*
Interossei,12*f*
  dorsal,332*t*,333*f*,406*t*
  palmar,332*t*
  plantar,406*t*,411*f*,413*f*
Interosseous artery,341*f*
  anterior,293*f*,294*f*
  common,292,294*f*
  posterior,292,293*f*,294*f*
  recurrent,294*f*
Interosseous compartment of foot,363,405,405*t*
  of hand,291,329
Interosseous ligaments sacroiliac,227
  talocalcaneal,400f,401*f*,404*f*
  tibiofibular,393
  of wrist,321
Interosseous membrane at radioulnar joints,317*f*,318
  between radius and ulna,8*f*,289,289*f*,294*f*,317*f*,318,321*f*,341*f*
  of tibia,357
  between tibia and fibula,357,360*f*,365*f*,385*f*,387*f*,393*f*,414*f*,415*f*
  transverse section,415*f*

- of ulna, 289

Interosseous nerve, 341*f*
- anterior, 298*f*, 302*f*
- posterior, 301

Interosseous slip, 333*f*

Interosseous vein, 295*f*, 341*f*

Interpectoral nodes, 296, 296*f*

Interpeduncular cistern, 478, 481*f*

Interphalangeal joint capsule distal, 322*f*
- proximal, 322*f*

Interphalangeal joints of foot, 398*f*, 401, 402*t*
- distal, 398*f*, 401
- proximal, 398*f*, 401, 404*t*
- of hand (*See also under* Joints (named)) distal, 321*f*–322*f*, 327, 327*t*, 329*f*
- proximal, 321*f*–322*f*, 327, 327*t*, 328, 329*f*
- of thumb, 321*f*, 327

Interscalene groove, 459

Interscalene space, 458*f*

Intersections, tendinous, 146*f*

Intersigmoidal recess, 162*f*, 165*f*

Interspinalis, 58*t*
- cervicis, 59*f*
- lumborum, 59*f*

Interspinal plane, 5*t*

Interspinous diameter, pelvic, 224*f*

Interspinous ligaments, 42*f*, 44*f*
- MRI of, 33*f*

Interstitial fluid, and blood, exchange between, 15

Intertendinous connections, 326*f*, 338*f*

Intertragic incisure, 552*f*

Intertransversarii, 58, 58*t*
- cervicis, posterior, 59*f*
- lumborum lateral, 59*f*
- medial, 59*f*

Intertransverse ligaments, 42*f*–43*f*

Intertrochanteric crest, 356, 358*f*, 375*f*, 377*f*

Intertrochanteric line, 356, 358*f*, 375*f*, 377*f*

Intertubercular groove, of humerus, 288, 288*f*, 304*f*, 308*f*
- tendon sheath in, 309*f*

Intertubercular plane,5*t*
Interureteral fold,255*f*
Interventricular artery anterior,106*f*,109*f*,110*f*,111
  posterior,109*f*–110*f*,111
Interventricular foramina,480,480*f*,481*f*
Interventricular septa,102,104,104*f*,105*f*,108*f*
Interventricular sulcus anterior,101*f*,102
  posterior,102,103*f*
Interventricular vein anterior,112*f*
  posterior,112,112*f*
Intervertebral disks,9*f*,32*f*,41,41*f*–43*f*,44*f*,63*f*,228*f*
  herniation of, *40*,40*f*,63*f*
Intervertebral disk space,37*f*
Intervertebral foramina,19*f*,22,32,32*f*,36*f*–37*f*,40*f*,41*f*,43*f*,44*f*,63*f*
Intervertebral joints,39*t*,41,41*f*
Intervertebral veins,44
Intestinal lymph nodes,17*f*,195
Intestinal trunk,18*f*,177*f*,178*f*
Intestine large (*See* Large intestine) small (*See* Small intestine) Intima,10,10*f*
Intra-articular fracture, *288*
Intracapsular ligaments,10,10*f*
Intracapsular structures, of synovial joint,9,10*f*
Intracranial branches, of vertebral artery,481
Intracranial veins,14*f*
Intramural ganglion,57*f*
Intraparotid plexus,492,512*f*
Intraperitoneal organs,160,160*f*,160*t*,202,202*f*
  autonomic innervation of,184*f*
Intrapulmonary lymph nodes,76*f*,78*f*,130*f*
Intravenous pyelogram,207*f*
Intrinsic muscles of back,58
  of upper limbs,284
Inversion,356
  of foot,402*t*
  of subtalar joint,396*t*,402*t*
  of transverse tarsal joint,402*t*
Investing layer,455,455*f*,456*t*
IP joint creases,329*f*
Iris,543*f*,544,545*f*

Ischemia, of lower limb, *365*
Ischial rami,224*f*,225*f*,226*f*
Ischial spine,224*f*,225,225*f*,226*f*,227*f*,228*f*,229*f*,375*f*,382*f*
Ischial
  tuberosity,224*f*,225,225*f*,226*f*,227*f*,228*f*,229*f*,234*f*,238*f*,239*f*,261*f*–262*f*,269*f*,37
Ischioanal fat pads,261
Ischioanal fossa,225,230*f*,259*f*,272
Ischiocavernosus,223*f*,234*f*,238*f*,239*f*,248*f*,253*f*,261,261*f*,262*f*,263*f*,263*t*,265*f*,266
Ischiofemoral ligament,374,377*f*
Ischiopubic bones,7*f*
Ischiopubic ramus,222,253*f*,261,266*f*
Ischium,7*f*,9*f*,225,225*f*,226*f*,274*f*,375*f*
Isometric contractions,11
Isthmus faucial,525,525*f*
  fibromuscular,246
  prostatic,246*f*
  of thyroid,467,467*f*
  of uterine tube,247,249*f*
  of uterus,249
J
Jejunal arteries,168,168*t*,171*f*,190
Jejunal branch, of superior mesenteric artery,168,168*t*,171*f*,190
Jejunal vein,175*t*
Jejunum,186*f*,189,189*f*,190,190*f*,191*f*,199*f*,212*f*
  CT of,212*f*
  lymphatic drainage of,178*t*
  MRI of,191*f*
  in situ,191*f*
  wall structures,192*f*
Joints (general) capsule,9,10*f*
  of elbow joint,316*f*
Joints (general) (*continued*) of facet joint,44*f*
  of glenohumeral joint,308*f*
  of hip joint,377*f*
  of interphalangeal joint,322*f*
  of knee,10*f*,389–390,389*f*
  of metacarpophalangeal joint,322*f*
  of shoulder,313*f*
  of zygapophyseal joint,42*f*

  cartilaginous (synchondroses),8–9,9*f*
  cavity,9,10*f*
  classification of,8
  concave joint member (socket),10*f*
  convex joint member (ball),10*f*
  fibrous (syndesmoses),8,8*f*,357,360*f*,400*f*
  movement of (*See individual movement, e.g.* Abduction) reserve fold,10*f*
  space,10*f*
  synchondroses,8–9,9*f*
  syndesmoses,8,8*f*
  tibiofibular,357,360*f*,400*f*
  synostoses,9,9*f* (*See also* Craniosynostosis) synovial,9
  extra-articular and intraarticular structures of, *10*
  intracapsular structures of,9,10*f*
Joints (named) acromioclavicular,285*f*,286*f*,303,303*f*,304*f*
  atlantoaxial,39
  lateral,39*f*
  median,39,39*f*
  atlanto-occipital,39,39*f*
  calcaneocuboid,398*f*
  carpometacarpal,321*f*,323*f*,327,328*f*
  costochondral,85,85*f*
  costovertebral,85,85*f*
  craniovertebral,39,39*f*,41,41*f*
  ligaments of,41,41*f*
  muscles of,60*f*
  cricoarytenoid,463*f*
  cricothyroid,462,463*f*
  cuneocuboid,398*f*
  cuneonavicular,398*f*
  DIP of foot,398*f*,401
  of hand,321*f*–322*f*,327,327*t*,328,329*f*
  elbow (cubital),7*f*,285*f*,315,315*f*,316*f*
  MRI of,344*f*
  radiograph of,343*f*
  femoropatellar,384*f*,386*f*
  glenohumeral,303*f*,307–309
  abduction of,312*t*
  adduction of,312*t*

bony elements of,308*f*
bursae of,308*f*,309*f*
capsule of,308*f*
cavity of,308*f*
dislocation of, *309*
extension of,312*t*
external rotation at,312*t*
flexion at,312*t*
internal rotation at,312*t*
ligaments of,307,308*f*
movements of,312*t*
hip,7*f*,357*f*,372*f*,374–378,375*f*
abduction of,378*t*
adduction of,378*t*
capsule of,377*f*
extension of,378*t*
external rotation of,378*t*
flexion of,378*t*
internal rotation of,378*t*
knee joint and,376*f*
ligaments of,377*f*
movements of,378*t*
position,377*f*
humeroradial,315,316*t*,343*f*
humeroulnar,315,316*t*,343*f*,344*f*
intercarpal,321
intercuneiform,398*f*
intermetacarpal,322*f*
intermetatarsal,398*f*,401
interphalangeal abduction of,327*t*,402*t*
adduction of,327*t*,402*t*
distal (DIP) of foot,398*f*,401
of hand,321*f*–322*f*,327,327*t*,328,329*f*
extension of,327*t*,402*t*
flexion of,327*t*,396*t*,402*t*
of foot,398*f*,401,402*t*
of hallux,398*f*
of hand,327,327*t*
joint crease,328,329*f*

proximal (PIP) of foot,398*f*,401,404*t*
of hand,321*f*–322*f*,327,327*t*,328,329*f*
of thumb,321*f*,327
intervertebral,39*t*,41,41*f*
knee,7*f*,357*f*,383–392
anterior view of,384*f*
arteries of,364,364*f*
bursae,390,390*f*
capsule of,10*f*,389–390,389*f*
collateral ligaments of,10,10*f*,383,385*f*–389*f*
cruciate ligaments of,10,10*f*,386,387*f*–389*f*,417*f*
extension of,391*t*
external rotation of,391*t*
flexion of,391*t*
hip joint and,376*f*
internal rotation of,391*t*
lateral view of,384*f*
ligamentous injuries of, *388*
ligaments of,385*f*
collateral,10,10*f*,383,385*f*–389*f*
cruciate,10,10*f*,386,387*f*–389*f*,417*f*
injuries, *388*
patellar,10*f*,12*f*,357,383,385*f*,387*f*,388*f*,389*f*,408*f*–409*f*,411*f*
transverse,386,387*f*,388*f*
menisci in,386,387*f*–389*f*
movements of,391*t*
MRI of,387*f*,417*f*
patellar ligament of,10*f*,12*f*,357,383,385*f*,387*f*,388*f*,389*f*,408*f*–409*f*,411*f*
posterior view of,384*f*
radiography of,416*f*–417*f*
stabilization, deficient,385*f*
transverse ligament,386,387*f*,388*f*
manubriosternal,84,84*f*
metacarpophalangeal,290*f*,321*f*–322*f*,327,328,329*f*
metatarsophalangeal,398*f*,401,404*t*
abduction of,402*t*
adduction of,402*t*
extension of,402*t*
flexion of,396*t*,402*t*

midcarpal,321,321*f*
patellofemoral,384*f*,386*f*
PIP of foot,398*f*,401,404*t*
of hand,321*f*–322*f*,327,327*t*,328,329*f*
radiocarpal,321,321*f*
radioulnar,289*f*,316–318
distal,317*f*,318
interosseous membrane at,317*f*,318
movements at,318*t*
pronation at,316,317*f*,318*t*
proximal,317*f*,318,343*f*
supination at,316,317*f*,318*t*
sacrococcygeal,35,38*f*
sacroiliac,7*f*,38*f*,222*f*,225,372*f*
scapulothoracic,303,303*f*,304*f*
shoulder,7*f*,285*f*,303,303*f*–305*f*
capsule of,313*f*
sternoclavicular,286*f*,303,303*f*,304*f*
sternocostal,85
subtalar,398*f*,399*f*,400*f*,401,401*f*,404*f*
anterior compartment,401*f*,404*f*
eversion of,402*t*
inversion of,396*t*,402*t*
posterior compartment,401*f*,404*f*
pronation of,402*t*
supination of,396*t*,402*t*
talocalcaneal,404*f*
talocalcaneonavicular,404*f*
talocrural,357*f*,393*f*,396*t*,398–400,398*f*,399*f*,400*f*
plantar flexion of,396*t*
talonavicular,398*f*–399*f*
tarsal, transverse,398*f*,401,402*t*
inversion of,402*t*
tarsometatarsal,398*f*,401
temporomandibular,491,507–510
dislocation of, *510*
ligaments of,507,508*f*
thumb saddle,322*f*
tibiofibular,357,360*f*,384*f*,388*f*,393

distal,393
ligaments of,393,393*f*
proximal,393
uncovertebral,35*f*,39, *41*
zygapophyseal (facet),35*f*–37*f*,39*t*,41,41*f*,42*f*,63*f*
Joints (of region or structure) of ankle,398,398*f*
movements of,398,399*t*
craniovertebral,39,39*f*,41,41*f*,60*f*
elbow,7*f*,285*f*,315,315*f*,316*f*
MRI of,344*f*
radiograph of,316*f*,343*f*
of fingers,327–328,333*f*
of foot,398*f*,401 (*See also* Interphalangeal joints) movements of,402*t*
of forearm,316–318,316*t*,317*f*,318*t*,343*f*
of hand,327–328 (*See also* Interphalangeal joints) of leg,393*f* (*See also* Tibiofibular joints) of pectoral girdle,303,303*f*–305*f*
of pelvic girdle,222*f*,225
of shoulder,7*f*,285*f*,303,303*f*–305*f*
capsule of,313*f*
of toes,398*f*,401
of vertebral column,39–41,39*f*–41*f*
of wrist,321–323
movements of,323*t*
Jugular foramen/foramina,432,435*f*,436*f*,442*f*,476*f*,498*f*,529*f*
Jugular fossa,437*f*
Jugular lymphatic trunks,17,76*f*–77*f*,83*f*,452,453*t*
left,18*f*
right,18*f*
Jugular lymph nodes,453*t*,530
Jugular notch,5*t*,84,84*f*
Jugular veins,76*f*,113*f*
anterior,450,450*f*,469*f*
external,14*f*,89*f*,91*f*–92*f*,449,450*f*,452*f*,469*f*,470*f*,511*f*,512*f*
internal,14*f*,17*f*,46*f*,51*f*,71*f*,76*f*,89*f*,92*f*,94*f*,98*f*,118*f*,296*f*,442*f*,449,450*f*,451*f*,4
ultrasound of,559*f*
Jugular venous arch,450,469*f*
Jugulodigastric group lymph nodes,452
Jugulofacial junction,531*f*
Jugulosubclavian junction,17,17*f*,449

Junction anorectal,258,260*f*,270*f*
- chondro-osseous,86*f*
- ileocecal,190
- jugulofacial,531*f*
- jugulosubclavian,17,17*f*,449
- pontomedullary,489*f*
- rectosigmoid,258,259*f*
- right subclavian internal jugular vein,113*f*
- thoracolumbar,42*f*
- ureteropelvic,205*f*–206*f*,206,207*f*
- ureterovesical,206*f*,207

K

Kidneys,163*f*,165*f*,190*f*,199*f*,201*f*,203–206,208*f*
- autonomic innervation of,56*f*,185*f*
- blood supply to,174*f*
- calculi of, *207*
- common anomalies, *206*
- CT of,212*f*
- fibrous capsule of,205*f*
- horseshoe,206
- inferior pole,205*f*,207*f*
- left,71*f*,165*f*,166*f*,199*f*,201*f*,203*f*,204*f*,206*f*,211*f*,212*f*
- location of,203*f*
- lymphatic drainage of,178*t*
- medial border,205*f*
- pain from,206
- perirenal fat capsule,201*f*,204,204*f*,206*f*
- posterior surface,205*f*
- referred pain and,185*f*
- in retroperitoneum,204*f*,208*f*
- right,71*f*,166*f*,201*f*,203*f*,204*f*,206*f*,211*f*,212*f*
- in situ,203*f*
- structure of,2*f*,205*f*
- superior pole,203*f*,205*f*
- ultrasound of,212*f*
- vessel variations, *206*

Kiesselbach’s area,523,524*f*

Klumpke’s palsy, *298*

Knee arteries of,364*f*

- chronic pain, MRI of, 417*f*
- functional anatomy of, 383–392
- joint (*See under* Joints (named)) joint capsule/joint cavity, 10*f*, 389–390, 389*f*
- ligaments of, 10*f*, 383, 385*f*–389*f*, 417*f*
- injuries of, *388*
- MRI of, 387*f*, 417*f*
- stabilization, deficient, 385*f*

Knob, aortic, 25*t*, 72, 102*f*. *See also under* Arch, aortic Kyphosis, 32, *33*, *34*

Kyphotic curvatures, 32, *33*, *34*

L

Labial artery (of facial artery) inferior, 445*f*, 446
- superior, 445*f*, 446

Labial branch (of internal pudendal artery), posterior, 269*f*

Labial commissure, 224*f*
- anterior, 267, 268*f*
- posterior, 267, 268*f*

Labial frenula, 525

Labial nerves, 270
- anterior, 234*f*, 270
- posterior, 238*f*, 269*f*, 270

Labial vein, inferior, 450*f*

Labium majus/labia majora, 153, 154*f*, 224*f*, 253*f*, 267, 268*f*

Labium minus/labia minora, 224*f*, 238*f*, 252*f*, 253*f*, 267, 268*f*

Labrum/labra acetabular, 10, 359*f*, 374, 376*f*, 377*f*
- articular, 10
- glenoid, 10, 307*f*, 308*f*, 311*f*
- of shoulder, 10, 345*f*
- anterior, 345*f*
- posterior, 345*f*

Labyrinth, of inner ear bony, 556
- membranous, 556

Labyrinthine artery, 442*f*

Labyrinthine vein, 442*f*

Labyrinthine wall, 496*f*

Lacrimal apparatus, 543–544

Lacrimal artery, 549*f*
- anastomotic branch with, 447*f*

Lacrimal bone, 430*f*, 439, 522*f*, 540*f*

Lacrimal branch, of trigeminal nerve, 489

Lacrimal canaliculi,544*f*
  inferior,543
  superior,543
Lacrimal gland,56*f*,491*f*,494,542*f*,543,544*f*,549*f*,551*f*
Lacrimal nerve,442*f*,490*f*,491*f*,494,542*f*,550*t*,551*f*
Lacrimal sacs,439,543,544*f*,549*f*,550*t*
  fossae for,439,540*f*
Lacrimal vein,550*f*
Lactiferous ducts,82,83*f*
Lactiferous sinus,82,83*f*
Lacunae, lateral,473*f*,478
  with arachnoid granulations,473*f*,475*f*,478,481*f*,502*f*
Lacunar ligament,145,154*f*,382*f*
Lacunar lymph nodes, intermediate,177*f*
Lambda,434*f*,440*t*
Lambdoid suture,430*f*,433*f*,434*f*,440,441*f*
Lamina,63*f*,462
  cribrosa,545*f*
  of cricoid cartilage,118*f*,126*f*,462,463*f*
  membranous, of auditory tube,553*f*
  papyracea,440*f*
  terminalis,481*f*
  of thyroid cartilage,74*f*,94*f*,126*f*,462,463*f*,466*f*,470*f*
  of vertebrae,34*f*–37*f*
Landmarks reference lines,4
  of skull,440*t*
Lanz point,195
Large intestine,193–195,194*f*
  anastomoses, clinical correlations, *172*
  appendicitis and, *195*
  arteries of,195
  double contrast barium enema radiography,194*f*
  innervation of,195
  lymphatic drainage of,17*f*,178*t*,195
  MRI of,194*f*
  referred pain zones,184*f*
  in situ,193*f*
  veins of,195
  volvulus of sigmoid colon, *195*

wall structure,193*f*,194*f*
Laryngeal artery cricothyroid branch,468*f*
inferior,468*f*
superior,444*f*,445,445*f*,446,466*f*,468*f*,470*f*
Laryngeal cavity,464–465,464*f*
Laryngeal inlet,535
Laryngeal nerve,463,470*f*,472*f*
external,469*f*,497*f*
inferior,465,466*f*,468*f*,497
left,79*f*,497*f*
right,497*f*
internal,468*f*,469*f*,497*f*
recurrent,79*f*–80*f*,94*f*,131*f*,468*f*,469*f*,497
left,78*f*,79*f*,80,97*f*,100*f*,462,471*f*
paralysis, *465*
right,78*f*,79*f*,96*f*,462,497
superior,80*f*,131*f*,462,466*f*,468*f*,469*f*
Laryngeal prominence,462,463*f*
Laryngeal saccules,464,464*f*
Laryngeal skeleton,462–463,463*f*
Laryngeal vein,463*f*
inferior,468*f*
superior,466*f*,468*f*
Laryngeal ventricles,464,464*f*,534*f*
Laryngopharyngeal branches, of spinal nerves,131*f*
Laryngopharynx,534*f*,535
Larynx,131*f*,462–465,560*f*
arteries of,466*f*,468*f* (*See also* Laryngeal artery) membranes and ligaments of,463–464,463*f*,464*f*
muscles of,465,466*f*
actions of,465*t*
neurovasculature of,465,466*f*
skeleton of,462–463,463*f*
structure of,463*f*
veins of,463*f*,466*f*,468*f*
vestibule of,464
Lateral, location/direction term,3*f*,3*t*
Lateral antebrachial cutaneous nerve,299,300,315*f*
Lateral bands of digits,333,333*f*

  of salpingopharyngeal folds,538
Lateral cord, of brachial plexus,297,297*f*,298*f*,299*t*,302*f*,306*f*,307*f*
Lateral cutaneous branch(es), of spinal nerve,60*f*,61*f*
Lateral horns, of spinal cord,20,500*t*
Lateral ligaments of ankle,397*f*,398
  of bladder,230,252*f*
  of rectum,230
  of TMJ,507
Lateral thoracic branch, of axillary artery,82
Latissimus dorsi,13*f*,296*f*,309,310*t*,311*f*,312*t*,334*f*,335*f*,336*f*,337*f*
Le Fort classification, *432*
Left lower quadrant (LLQ),145*f*
Left upper quadrant (LUQ),145*f*
Leg,7*f*,356,357*f*
  arteries of,364*f*
  anterior leg,365*f*
  posterior leg,364*f*
  compartments anterior,363,394
  deep posterior,363,396*t*
  lateral,363,395*t*
  superficial posterior,363
  transverse section,415*f*
  functional anatomy of,393–397
  muscles of,393*f*–397*f*,411–412*f*
  anterior compartment,393
  lateral compartment,393
  posterior compartment deep,394,396*t*
  superficial,394
  superficial flexors,396*t*
  topographic anatomy of,411–412*f*
Leg region,356*f*
Lens, of eyeball,543*f*,545*f*,546
  light refraction by,546*f*
Levator anguli oris,503*f*,505*t*
Levator
 ani,223*f*,228,229*f*,230*f*,230*t*,234*f*,235*f*,236*f*,238*f*,239*f*,244*f*,248*f*,253*f*,258*f*,259*f*,
  tendinous arch of,223*t*,228,229*f*,230*t*,231*f*,252*f*,254*f*
Levatores costarum,58*t*
  breves,59*f*

- longi, 59*f*

Levator hiatus, 228, 229*f*

Levator labii superioris, 12*f*, 503*f*, 504*f*, 505*t*

Levator labii superioris alaeque nasi, 503*f*, 504*f*, 505*t*

Levator palpebrae superioris, 489*f*, 542*f*, 543, 543*f*, 544*f*, 547*f*, 549*f*

Levator plate, 228, 271

Levator scapulae, 304, 305*t*, 337*f*, 560*f*

Levator veli palatini, 528, 529*f*, 529*t*, 535*f*, 536*f*, 553*f*

Ligamenta flava, 42, 42*f*–43*f*, 44*f*

Ligaments (named), 8
- acromioclavicular, 303, 308*f*, 309*f*
- alar, 41
- annular/anular, 315, 316*f*, 317*f*, 318, 333*f*
- of trachea, 124, 126*f*
- anococcygeal, 228, 261*f*, 262*f*
- apical, of the dens, 44*f*
- arcuate lateral, 87, 87*f*, 149*f*, 179*f*
- medial, 87, 87*f*, 149*f*, 179*f*
- median, 87*f*, 88, 88*f*, 149*f*
- popliteal, 383, 390*f*
- pubic, 234*f*
- aryepiglottic, 463
- bifurcate, 400*f*
- broad, of uterus, 250, 251*f*, 255*f*
- calcaneocuboid dorsal, 400*f*
- plantar, 402, 403*f*
- calcaneofibular, 398, 400*f*
- calcaneonavicular, plantar, 400*f*, 401*f*, 403*f*, 404*f*
- cardinal (transverse cervical), 231*f*, 250, 251, 252*f*, 253*f*, 254
- carpal palmar, 323*f*, 325, 325*f*
- transverse, 323*f*, 324*f*, 325*f*, 330*f*, 339*f*, 340*f*
- carpometacarpal, 322*f*
- collateral, 10, 321*f*, 383, 387*f*
- of knee joint, 10, 10*f*, 383, 385*f*–389*f*
- lateral (fibular), 10, 383, 385*f*, 387*f*, 388*f*, 389*f*, 390*f*, 417*f*
- medial (tibial), 10, 344*f*, 383, 385*f*, 387*f*, 388*f*, 390*f*
- radial, 315, 316*f*, 317*f*, 318, 321
- ulnar, 315, 316*f*, 317*f*, 321, 321*f*
- conoid, 303, 304*f*

  Cooper’s,82,83*f*
  coracoacromial,197*f*,303*f*,304*f*,307,308,308*f*–309*f*
  coracoclavicular,303,304*f*,308*f*–309*f*
  conoid,303,304*f*
  trapezoid,303,304*f*
  coracohumeral,307,308*f*
  coronary,196,197*f*
  costoclavicular,304*f*
  cricoarytenoid,463*f*
  cricothyroid,126*f*,463*f*,464*f*,466*f*,467*f*
  cricotracheal,463,463*f*
  cruciate, of knee joint,10,10*f*,386,387*f*–389*f*,417*f*
  anterior,386,387*f*–389*f*,417*f*
  posterior,386,387*f*–388*f*
  cruciform, of atlas,42
  deltoid,393*f*,398,400*f*
  tibiocalcaneal part of,398,400*f*
  tibionavicular part of,398,400*f*
  tibiotalar part of anterior,398,400*f*
  posterior,398,400*f*
  denticulate,47,48*f*
Ligaments (named) (*continued*) extracapsular,10,10*f*,383
  falciform,150*f*,151,161*f*,187*f*,196,196*f*,197*f*,199*f*
  of fibular head anterior,393
  posterior,393
  fundiform,146*f*
  gastrocolic,161,163*f*
  gastrosplenic,161,163*f*,165*f*,166*f*,202
  glenohumeral,308*f*
  inferior,307
  middle,307
  superior,307
  hepatoduodenal,161,161*f*,165*f*,166*f*,187*f*,190*f*,195
  hepatoesophageal,199*f*
  hepatogastric,161,161*f*,186*f*,187*f*,195
  hypoepiglottic,464*f*
  iliofemoral,374,377*f*
  iliolumbar,227,227*f*
  inguinal,145,145*f*,146*f*,152*f*,154*f*,155*f*,177*f*,227*f*,235*f*,366*f*,377*f*,382*f*,383*f*,408

reflected,154*f*
intercarpal,322*f*
interclavicular,303,304*f*
interfoveolar,150*f*
interspinous,33*f*,42*f*,44*f*
intertransverse,42*f*–43*f*
intracapsular,10,10*f*
ischiofemoral,374,377*f*
lacunar,145,154*f*,382*f*
lateral of ankle,397*f*,398
of bladder,230,252*f*
of rectum,230
of TMJ,508*f*
longitudinal anterior,42,42*f*,43*f*,44*f*,227*f*
posterior,41*f*,42,44*f*
long plantar,400*f*,401*f*,403*f*
meniscofemoral,388*f*
posterior,385*f*,386,387*f*
metacarpal dorsal,322*f*
palmar,322*f*
transverse,329,330*f*
deep,322*f*,333*f*,339*f*,401*f*
superficial,322*f*
metatarsal, transverse deep,403*f*
superficial,413*f*
nuchal,41*f*,42,44*f*,457*f*,561*f*
MRI of,33*f*
of ovary,247,248*f*,249*f*,253*f*,255*f*,258*f*
palmar,322*f*
carpal,324*f*,325,325*f*
intercarpal,322*f*
palpebral,543,544*f*,549*f*
patellar,10*f*,12*f*,357,383,385*f*,387*f*,388*f*,389*f*,408*f*–409*f*,411*f*
pectineal,150*f*,227*f*
perineal, transverse,234*f*
peritoneal,161
phrenicocolic,163*f*,193
phrenicosplenic,190*f*,202,203*f*
plantar, long,400*f*,401*f*,403*f*

plantar calcaneocuboid,402,403*f*
plantar calcaneonavicular,400*f*,401*f*,403*f*,404*f*
popliteal,383
arcuate,383,390*f*
oblique,383,390*f*,392*f*
posterior of fibular head,387*f*
of incus,554*f*
longitudinal,41*f*,42,44*f*
pterygospinous,508*f*
pubic arcuate,234*f*
inferior,229*f*
pubofemoral,374,377*f*
puboprostatic,230,246,254*f*
pubovesical,230,231*f*,252*f*,255*f*,256
pulmonary,120,123*f*
radiocarpal dorsal,321
palmar,321,322*f*
radioulnar,317*f*
dorsal,317*f*
palmar,317*f*,322*f*
rectouterine,252*f*
round,197*f*
of liver (ligamentum teres hepatis),115*f*,115*t*,150*f*,161*f*,162*f*,192*f*,196,196*f*,197*f*,199*f*
of uterus,154,154*f*,233*f*,235*f*,248*f*,250,251,252*f*,253*f*,255*f*,258*f*
artery of,154*f*
sacroiliac anterior,227,227*f*–229*f*,377*f*
interosseous,227
posterior,227,227*f*,377*f*
sacrospinous,227,227*f*,228*f*,374*f*,377*f*,409*f*
sacrotuberous,227,227*f*,228*f*,374*f*,377*f*
sphenomandibular,507,508*f*
splenocolic,202,203*f*
splenorenal,202,203*f*
sternoclavicular,303*f*
anterior,303,304*f*
posterior,303
stylomandibular,507,508*f*
subtalar,401*f*

superior, of incus,554*f*
supraspinatus,309
supraspinous,33*f*,42,42*f*,44*f*
suspensory,83*f*
Cooper's,82,83*f*
of duodenum,189,189*f*
of ovaries,232,247,251*f*,253*f*,258*f*
of penis,235*f*,264*f*
syndesmotic,400*f*
talocalcaneal, interosseous,400*f*,401*f*,404*f*
talofibular anterior,398
posterior,393*f*,398
talonavicular,400*f*
thyroepiglottic,463*f*
thyrohyoid,463*f*,464*f*,534*f*
median,466*f*,469*f*,470*f*
tibiofibular anterior,393,400*f*
interosseous,393
posterior,393,393*f*,400*f*
transverse,44*f*
of acetabulum,374,377*f*
of atlas (C1),41*f*,44*f*
cardinal (transverse cervical),231*f*,250,251,252*f*,253*f*,254
carpal,323*f*,324*f*,325*f*,330*f*,339*f*,340*f*
of humerus,308*f*
of knee,386,387*f*,388*f*
perineal,234*f*
of scapula,308*f*,312*f*
trapezoid,303,304*f*
triangular,196,197*f*
ulnar collateral,315,316*f*,317*f*,321,321*f*
ulnocarpal,321,322*f*
umbilical,254*f*,255*f*
medial,115*f*,149,206*f*,231*f*
median,149,254*f*,255*f*
uterosacral,231*f*,249*f*,250,252*f*
of vena cava,197*f*
vesicouterine,252*f*
vesicular, lateral,231*f*

vestibular,463,463*f*,464,464*f*
vocal,463,463*f*,464,464*f*
of wrist, interosseous,321
Ligaments (of region or structure) of acetabulum,374,377*f*
of ankle,393*f*,397*f*,398,400*f*
lateral,397*f*,398
of bladder,230
of carpal tunnel,323*f*
of cervical spine,41–42,41*f*,43*f*,44*f*
of deep pelvis, in female,252*f*
extracapsular,10,10*f*,383
of female pelvis,252*f*
of fibular head anterior,385*f*,387*f*,393
posterior,385*f*,387*f*,393
of foot,393*f*,397*f*,400*f*
of glenohumeral joint,307,308*f*
of hip joint,377*f*
of incus,554*f*
of knee joint,385*f*
collateral,10,10*f*,383,385*f*–389*f*
cruciate,10,10*f*,386,387*f*–389*f*,417*f*
injuries to, *388*
meniscofemoral,385*f*,386,387*f*,388*f*
patellar,10*f*,12*f*,357,383,385*f*,387*f*,388*f*,389*f*,408*f*–409*f*,411*f*
transverse,386,387*f*,388*f*
of larynx,463–464,463*f*,464*f*
of malleus,554*f*
of ovary,247,248*f*,249*f*,253*f*,255*f*,258*f*
of pelvic girdle,377*f*
of pelvis,227*f*,252*f*
of rectum,230
of subtalar joint,401*f*
of synovial joints,10
extra-capsular,10
intra-capsular,10
of temporomandibular joint,507,508*f*
uterine,250,250*f*
of vertebral column,41–42,42*f*–43*f*
cervical spine,41–42,41*f*,43*f*,44*f*

    craniovertebral joint,41,41*f*
Ligamentum arteriosum,11,80,97*f*,100*f*,101*f*,103*f*,115*f*,116,116*f*,118*f*
Ligamentum teres hepatis. *See* Round ligament, of liver Ligamentum venosum,115*f*,196,197*f*
Light reflex, pupillary, *547*
Limb (lower) arteries of,363–365,365*f*
    bones of,356–362,360*f*,362*f* (*See also specific bone*) clinical correlations
        acquired hip dislocation, *376*
    ankle sprains, *400*
    Baker's cyst, *390*
    calcaneal tendon rupture, *394*
    common fibular nerve injury, *370*
    compartment syndrome, *395*
    congenital dislocation of hip, *374*
    deep vein thromboses, *366*
    dorsal pedal pulse, *365*
    femoral head necrosis, *364*
    femoral hernias, *382*
    femoral neck fracture, *359*
    femoral nerve injury, *368*
    fibular nerve injury, *370*
    genu varum and genu valgum, *391*
    hamstring strains, *378*
    hip dislocation, acquired, *376*
    hip dislocation/hip dysplasia, *374*
    ischemia, *365*
    ligamentous injuries of the knee, *388*
    obturator nerve injury, *369*
    patellar tendon reflex, *383*
    pes planus, *402*
    piriformis syndrome, *374*
    plantar fasciitis, *405*
    plantar reflex, *405*
    popliteal aneurysm, *364*
    popliteal (Baker's) cyst, *390*
    sciatic nerve injury, *370*
    shin splints, *394*
    superficial and deep fibular nerve injury, *371*
    superior gluteal nerve injury, *370*

tarsal tunnel syndrome, *395*
tibial nerve injury, *370*
varicose veins, *367*
compartments of,362–363
windowed dissection,414*f*
CT of,416*t*
cutaneous innervation of,371*f*
deep veins of,365,366*f*
dermatomes of,53*f*,371*f*
developmental correlation, bipartite patella, *359*,359*f*
fascia of,362–363
general features of,356,356*f*
imaging modalities,416*t*
innervation of,374*f*,379*t*,380*t*,381*t*
ischemia, *365*
lymphatic drainage of,367,367*f*
movements at,356
MRI of,416*t*
muscles of,373*t*
nerves of,368–371
neurovasculature of,363–367,368–371,368*t*,369*f*,370,371*f*
radiographs of,416*t*
as regional subdivision,2*f*
terminology relating to,2*t*,3*f*,3*t*
ultrasound of,416*t*
veins of,365–367
deep,365,366*f*
superficial,365,366*f*
Limb (upper) abduction of,284
adduction of,284
arteries of,291–294,294*f*
bones of,285–291,285*f*,286*f*,291*f*
circumduction of,284
clinical correlations axillary nerve injury, *301*
carpal tunnel syndrome, *324*
clavicular fractures, *285*
Colles’ fractures, *289*
dislocation of glenohumeral joint, *309*
Dupuytren’s disease, *329*

glenohumeral dislocation, *309*
humeral fractures, *288*
lateral epicondylitis, *318*
long thoracic nerve injury, *306*
lunate dislocation, *289*
median nerve injury, *300*
musculocutaneous nerve injury, *299*
nursemaid's elbow, *318*
radial (Colles') fractures, *289*
radial nerve injury, *301*
root- /trunk-level nerve injuries, *298*
rotator cuff tears, *310*
scaphoid fractures, *290*
subluxation of radial head, *318*
tendon sheath communication, *329*
tennis elbow, *318*
tenosynovitis, *329*
ulnar nerve compression, *324*
ulnar nerve injury, *300*
compartments of,291,341*f*
CT of,342*t*
cutaneous innervation of,301,302*f*
deep veins of,295,295*f*
dermatomes of,53*f*,60*f*,302*f*
extension of,284
extrinsic muscles of,284
fascia of,291
flexion of,284
functional anatomy of,303
general features of,284,284*f*
imaging modalities,342–345
innervation of,297–302,299*t*,301*f*,302*f*
joint movement in,284,303,303*f*,312*t*,316*t*,321,327,328*t*
lymphatic drainage of,296,296*f*
MRI of,342*t*
muscles of,318,319*t*,320*t*
musculature of, topographic views,334–337,339*f*
nerves of,297–302,301*f*
neurovasculature of,291–296,297–302,299*t*,300,301*f*

opposition of, 284
pronation of, 284, *300*, 316, 317*f*, 318*t*
radial deviation of, 284, 323*f*
radiographs, 342*t*
as regional subdivision, 2*f*, 2*t*
regions of, 284, 284*f*
rotation of external, 284
internal, 284
skeleton of, 285*f*
superficial veins of, 295*f*
supination of, 284
tendons of, 284, 291, 308, 308*f*, 309
terminology relating to, 3*t*, 284
ultrasound of, 342*t*
veins of, 295–296
deep, 295, 295*f*
Line(s) anocutaneous, 270*f*, 271, 272*f*
anterior midline, 4*t*
arcuate, 146*f*, 147, 148*f*, 150*f*, 161*f*, 226*f*, 228*f*, 229*f*
axillary, 4*t*
dentate, 270*f*, 271, 272*f*
epiphyseal, 8, 8*f*, 359*f*
intertrochanteric, 356, 358*f*, 375*f*, 377*f*
midaxillary, 4*t*
midclavicular, 4*t*, 145*f*
mylohyoid, 434*f*
nuchal inferior, 59*f*, 60*f*, 432, 434*f*, 435*f*
median, 434*f*
superior, 39*f*, 59*f*, 60*f*, 337*f*, 432, 434*f*, 435*f*
supreme, 434*f*, 435*f*
oblique, 430*f*, 431*f*
parasternal, 4*t*
pectinate, 270*f*, 271, 272*f*
pectineal, 222, 225, 226*f*, 228*f*, 376*f*
pelvic pain, 237
reference, on trunk, 4*t*
semilunar, 147
soleal, 360*f*
sternal, 4*t*

- supracondylar, 356, 358*f*
- temporal, 513*f*
- transverse, of sacrum, 38*f*

Linea alba, 145, 146*f*, 148*f*, 149*f*, 154*f*
Linea aspera, 356, 358*f*, 375*f*, 376*f*
Linea terminalis, 224*f*, 225
Lingual aponeurosis, 531*f*
Lingual artery, 445, 445*f*, 446*t*, 449*f*, 472*f*, 530, 532*f*, 533*f*
Lingual branches, of mandibular nerve, 491
Lingual mucosa, 531*f*
Lingual nerve, 490*f*, 491*f*, 492*f*, 506*f*, 507*f*, 515*f*, 517*f*, 517*t*, 528*f*, 532*f*, 532*t*, 533*f*
Lingual septum, 531*f*
Lingual tonsils, 17*f*, 464*f*, 525*f*, 530, 530*f*, 534*f*, 538, 538*f*
Lingual vein, 532*f*
Lingula, 123*f*, 124
Lip cleft, *525*
- labial frenula, 525
- lower, 525*f*
- philtrum of, 525
- upper, 525*f*

Lister’s tubercle, 338*f*
Liver, 71*f*, 115*f*, 145*f*, 163*f*–164*f*, 169*f*, 186*f*, 196–198, 204*f*, 211*f*
- arteries of, 14, 114*f*, 197*f*
- autonomic nervous system and, 56*f*, 182*t*, 183*f*
- bare area of, 144*f*, 166*f*, 186*f*, 196, 197*f*, 198
- blood supply of, 196–198
- celiac trunk and, 169*f*
- cirrhosis of, *198*
- CT of, 212*f*
- diaphragmatic surface, 196, 197*f*
- falciform ligament of, 150*f*, 151, 161*f*, 187*f*, 196, 196*f*, 197*f*, 199*f*
- fibrous appendix of, 197*f*
- fissures of, 196
- lobes of, 161*f*, 163*f*, 196*f*, 197*f*, 199*f*
- caudate, 196, 197*f*, 199*f*
- left, 187*f*, 196, 197*f*, 203*f*, 212*f*
- quadrate, 196, 197*f*
- right, 187*f*, 196, 197*f*, 199*f*, 201*f*, 212*f*
- lymphatic drainage of, 178*t*, 196, 198

  - peritoneal reflections on, 196
  - posterior view of, 197*f*
  - round ligament of, 115*f*, 115*t*, 150*f*, 161*f*, 162*f*, 192*f*, 196, 196*f*, 197*f*, 199*f*
  - segmentation of, 198*f*, 198*t*
  - in situ, 196*f*
  - structural design, 2*f*
  - surfaces of, 197*f*
  - transverse fissure, 196
  - ultrasound of, 210*f*
  - veins of, 114*f*, 197*f*, 198
- LLQ. *See* Left lower quadrant Lobe(s) of brain, 21*f*, 479, 479*f*
  - frontal, 479, 479*f*
  - of liver, 161*f*, 163*f*, 196*f*, 197*f*, 199*f*
  - caudate, 196, 197*f*, 199*f*
  - left, 187*f*, 196, 197*f*, 203*f*, 212*f*
  - quadrate, 196, 197*f*
  - right, 187*f*, 196, 197*f*, 199*f*, 201*f*, 212*f*
  - of lung, 120*f*, 123*f*
  - lymphatic drainage of, 130
  - mammary, 82, 83*f*
  - occipital, 479, 479*f*
  - parietal, 479, 479*f*
  - of prostate, 178*t*, 246, 246*f*
  - temporal, 475*f*, 479, 479*f*
  - of thyroid gland, 94*f*, 467, 467*f*, 558*f*
- Lobule(s) of external ear, 552
  - pulmonary, fibrous septum between, 129*f*
  - testicular, 155*t*, 157*f*
- Location, general terms of, 3*f*, 3*t*
- Locomotor system, as functional subdivision, 2*t*
- Long bone, 8, 8*f*
- Longissimus, 58, 58*f*, 58*t*
- Longitudinal, location/direction term, 3*t*
- Longitudinal arch, of foot, 402
  - stabilizers of, 403*f*–404*f*
- Longitudinal axis, 4, 4*f*
  - cervical (in cervical canal), 250*f*
  - uterine (in cavity of uterus), 250*f*
  - vaginal, 250*f*

Longitudinal fascicles,41*f*,44*f*
Longitudinal fissure,479,479*f*
Longitudinal ligament anterior,42,42*f*,43*f*,44*f*,227*f*
  posterior,41*f*,42,44*f*,44*f*
Longitudinal muscles, of tongue,530,530*t*,531*f*
Long plantar ligament,400*f*,401*f*,403*f*
Long thoracic nerve,298*f*,299*t*,307*f*
  injury to, *306*
Longus capitis,458*f*,458*t*,459*t*,471*f*
Longus colli,458*f*,458*t*,471*f*
  inferior oblique part of,458*f*
  superior oblique part of,458*f*
  vertical part of,458*f*
Loose (areolar) connective tissue,6,502*f*
Lordosis,32, *33*, *34*
Lordotic curvatures,32, *33*, *34*
Lower limb. *See* Limb (lower) Lower trunk, of brachial plexus,297,297*f*
Lumbar arteries,44,50*f*,74*f*,167,167*f*,168*t*
  ascending,175*f*
  left,168*f*
  posterior,59
Lumbar cistern,47,474*f*
Lumbar ganglion,180*f*,241*f*–243*f*
Lumbar lordosis,32, *33*, *34*
Lumbar lymph nodes,16*f*,154*f*,177,178*f*,178*t*,179,367*f*
  intermediate,177*f*
  left,178*f*
  right,178*f*
Lumbar nerves,55,56*f*
  anterior rami,241*f*–242*f*
Lumbar plexus,52*f*,149,368*t*,369*f*
  in abdomen,52*f*,149,179,368*t*,369*f*
  dissection,179*f*
  nerves of,179*f*,368*t*
  in situ,179*f*
Lumbar puncture, *48*,48*f*
Lumbar spine,41,42*f*,160*f*. *See also* Lumbar vertebrae bones of,36*f*,37*f*
  herniation of disks in, *40*,40*f*,63*f*
  MRI of,33*f*,40*f*,63*f*

- radiograph of,63*f*
- segments and vertebral levels,47*f*
- structural design,2*f*

Lumbar splanchnic nerves,55,180,182*f*,184*f*–185*f*,240*f*–243*f*

Lumbar trunk,18*f*,76*f*,177*f*
- left,76*f*–77*f*,177*f*,178*f*
- right,76*f*–77*f*,177*f*,178*f*
- sympathetic,180

Lumbar veins,46*f*,76*f*
- ascending,46*f*,75,173,174*t*,176*f*
- left,76*f*,174*t*
- right,76*f*,174*t*

Lumbar vertebrae,34*f*–37*f*,35,47*f*,63*f*
- characteristics of,63*f*
- interarticular part,35
- lamina of,34*f*–37*f*

L1–L5,32*f*

L4
- spinous process,5*t*
- pars interarticularis,35

Lumbosacral enlargement,46*f*,47

Lumbosacral plexus,19*f*,368–371,369*f*

Lumbosacral trunk,241*f*–242*f*

Lumbricals,332*t*,339*f*,406*t*,413*f*
- slip,333*f*

Lunate,289,290*f*,291*f*,321*f*,323*f*,328*f*
- dislocation of, *289*

Lunate surface, of acetabulum,226*f*

Lungs apex of,123,123*f*
- arteries of,128
- autonomic innervation of,131*t*
- autonomic nervous system and,56*f*
- base of,123,123*f*
- bronchopulmonary segments,123,125*f*
- carcinoma of, *131*
- cardiac impression on,123*f*
- cardiac notch,123*f*,124
- CT of,124*f*
- disease, CT of,133,134*f*

- fissures, 125*f*
  - horizontal, 123*f*
  - oblique, 123*f*, 124
- on full expiration, 128*f*
- on full inspiration, 128*f*
- general features of, 70, 70*f*, 73*f*, 123–124
- gross anatomy of, 123*f*
- hilum of, 70, 121*f*, 123, 123*f*
- left, 70*f*–71*f*, 94*f*, 99*f*, 124, 124–125, 124*t*, 125*f*, 130*f*
- lobes of, 120*f*, 123*f*, 125*f*, 130
- lymphatic drainage of, 17*f*, 76*f*, 77, 78*f*, 130
- lymphatics of, 130
- movement of, 128*f*
- nerves of, 131, 131*f*
- neurovasculature of, 128–130, 129*f*
- respiratory volume changes in, 128*f*
- right, 70*f*, 71*f*, 94*f*, 98*f*, 101*f*, 124, 124*t*, 125*f*, 130*f*, 204*f*
- root of, 121*f*, 123
- segments of, bronchopulmonary, 123, 125*f*
- in situ, 120*f*
- structure of, 2*f*, 124*t*, 125*f*
- surfaces of, 123*f*
  - costal, 123*f*
  - diaphragmatic, 130
  - mediastinal, 123*f*
- sympathetic/parasympathetic innervation, 56*t*
- unique features of, 125*f*
- volume, respiratory changes in, 128*f*

Lung window, on CT, 134*f*
Lunule, 107
LUQ. *See* Left upper quadrant Lymph circulation of, 17, 17*f*
- in thoracic structures, 76*f*, 77

Lymphatic capillaries, 17
Lymphatic drainage, 17*f*
- of abdomen, 177–179
- of abdominal wall, 151, 152*f*
- of anal canal, 259, 271
- of bladder, 178*t*, 256
- by body quadrants, 17*f*

of breast (female),82,83*f*
of bronchial tree,76*f*,130,130*f*
to bronchomediastinal trunk,18,18*f*,77,77*f*,83*f*,130,130*f*
of diaphragm,178*t*
of duodenum,178*t*
of epididymis,178*t*
of esophagus,178*t*
from female urogenital triangle,270
of gallbladder,178*t*
of head and neck,452–453
of heart,113,113*f*
to inferior tracheobronchial lymph node,76*f*,78*f*,130*f*
intercostal,18*f*,76*f*–78*f*,130*f*
of jejunum,178*t*
of kidneys,178*t*
of large intestine,17*f*,178*t*,195
of liver,178*t*,196,198
of lower limbs,367,367*f*
of lung,17*f*,76*f*,77,78*f*,130
of neck,452–453
of omentum,178*t*
of oral floor,531*f*
of ovaries,178*t*,247
of pancreas,178*t*,202
of pelvis,77,202,236
of penis,266
of perineum,236,237*t*,270
in male,264
of pleural cavity,130*f*
of prostate,247
of rectum,178*t*,259
of retroperitoneum,178*t*
of scrotum,264
of sigmoid colon,178*t*
of small intestine,190
of spleen,178*t*
of stomach,178*t*,188
of suprarenal glands,178*t*,207
of testis,178*t*

- of tongue, 530*t*, 531*f*
- of tonsils, 538
- of transverse colon, 178*t*
- in trunk wall, 152*f*
- of upper limb, 296, 296*f*
- of ureter, 178*t*
- of uterus, 178*t*, 251
- of vagina, 254
- of vermiform appendix, 178*t*
- from vertebrae and vertebral ligaments, 44

Lymphatic pathways, 17, 17*f*, 152*f*

Lymphatic plexus axillary, 296*f*
- deep, 130
- superficial, 130

Lymphatics/lymphatic vessels, 16*f*, 17, 17*f*
- of bronchial tree, 76*f*, 130, 130*f*
- intercostal, 18*f*, 76*f*–78*f*, 130*f*
- of lower limb, 367
- of lungs, 130
- of pelvis, 236
- of perineum, 236
- of thorax, 77–78, 77*f*–78*f*
- of vagina, 254

Lymphatic system, 17–18
- afferent peripheral, 17*f*
- collecting vessels of, 177, 177*f*, 178*f*, 178*t*
- ducts in, 17, 17*f*, 76*f*, 77, 77*f*, 83*f*, 95*t*, 97*f*, 118*f* (*See also* Duct(s)) function of, 17*f*

Lymphatic trunks, 17
- in abdomen, 178*f*
- bronchomediastinal, 18, 18*f*, 77, 77*f*, 83*f*, 130, 130*f*
- intestinal, 18*f*, 177, 177*f*, 178*f*
- jugular, 17, 18*f*, 76*f*–77*f*, 83*f*, 452, 453*t*
- lumbar, 18*f*, 76*f*–77*f*, 177, 177*f*, 178*f*
- in pelvis, 178*f*
- subclavian, 18*f*, 77*f*, 83*f*
- thoracic duct, 17, 17*f*, 18*f*, 70, 70*f*, 77, 77*f*, 95*t*, 97*f*, 118*f*, 178*f*, 470*f*, 471*f*
- in thorax, 76*f*

Lymph nodes (general), 17*f*

Lymph nodes (named) of abdominal wall, 152*f*

aortic,177*f*,237*t*
axillary,17*f*,83*f*,152*f*,296*f*
apical,296,296*f*
brachial,296*f*
central,296,296*f*
humeral,296,296*f*
interpectoral,296,296*f*
pectoral,296*f*
subscapular,296,296*f*
brachial,296*f*
brachiocephalic,96*f*
bronchopulmonary,77,78*f*,113*f*,130,130*f*
caval, right lateral,177*f*
celiac,177,177*f*,178*f*,178*t*
central,296,296*f*
cervical,17*f*,83*f*,152*f*,296*f*
anterior,453*t*
deep,452,452*t*,453*f*,531*f*
inferior deep,452,452*t*,531*f*
superficial,452,452*f*,452*t*
superior deep,452
cubital,296*f*
groups,178*f*,178*t*
humeral,296,296*f*
iliac,178*t*,237*t*
common,177,177*f*,178*f*,179,367*f*
external,177*f*,367*f*
internal,177*f*,367*f*
inguinal,17*f*,237*t*
deep,177*f*,367*f*
inferior,367*f*
superficial,152*f*,177*f*,367*f*
intercostal,18*f*,76*f*–78*f*,90,130*f*
interpectoral,296,296*f*
intestinal,17*f*
intrapulmonary,76*f*,78*f*,130*f*
jugular, lateral,453*t*,530
lacunar, intermediate,177*f*
lumbar,16*f*,154*f*,177,178*f*,178*t*,179,367*f*

  intermediate, 177*f*
  left, 178*f*
  right, 178*f*
  mastoid, 452*f*, 452*t*
  mesenteric inferior, 177, 177*f*, 178*f*, 178*t*
  superior, 177, 177*f*, 178*f*, 178*t*
  occipital, 452*f*, 452*t*
  paraesophageal, 76*f*, 78*f*
  parasternal, 76*f*, 78*f*, 83*f*, 90, 130*f*, 152*f*
  paratracheal, 76*f*, 78*f*, 130, 130*f*
  parietal in abdomen, 177*f*
  in pelvis, 177*f*
  parotid, 512
  deep, 452*f*, 452*t*
  superficial, 452*f*, 452*t*
  pectoral, 82, 296
  pericardial, lateral, 97*f*
  phrenic, 130*f*
  inferior, 177*f*
  superior, 97*f*
  popliteal, 367*f*
  deep, 367*f*
  superficial, 367*f*
  preaortic, 177, 236
  retroaortic, 177*f*
  retroauricular, 452*f*, 452*t*
  retrocaval, 177*f*
  Rosenmüller’s, 382*f*
  sacral, 177*f*, 237*t*
  submandibular, 453*f*, 453*t*, 531*f*
  submental, 453*f*, 453*t*, 531*f*
  subscapular, 296, 296*f*
  superolateral, 367*f*
  superomedial, 367*f*
  supraclavicular, *84*, 296*f*
  supratrochlear, 296*f*
  thoracic, 76*f*, 78*f*
  tracheobronchial, 76*f*, 78*f*, 130, 130*f*
Lymph nodes (of region or structure) of abdomen, 77, 178*f*

  - of anterior trunk wall, 152*f*
  - of head and neck, 452–453
    - cervical anterior, 453*t*
    - deep, 452, 453*f*, 453*t*, 531*f*
    - superficial, 452, 452*f*, 452*t*
  - of ileum, 134*f*
  - jugulodigastric group, 452
  - of limb (lower), 367, 367*f*
  - lumbar, 16*f*, 154*f*, 177, 177*f*, 178*f*, 178*t*, 179, 367*f*
  - parasternal, 76*f*, 78*f*, 83*f*, 90, 130*f*, 152*f*
  - of pelvis, 17, 77, 177, 177*f*, 178*t*, 236, 237*t*
  - of perineum, 236
- Lymph nodules, 17*f*

M

- Macula/maculae, 557
  - lutea, 545*f*
  - of retina, 544
  - of saccule, 555*f*, 557
  - of utricle, 555*f*, 557
- Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), 26
  - of abdomen, 209*t*, 212*f*
  - applications, 62
  - axial slice, of brain, 27*f*
  - of back, 62*t*
  - of Baker’s cyst, *390*
  - of bladder, 275*f*
  - of brain, 27*f*
  - of cervical spine, 33*f*, 62*t*, 63*f*
  - of elbow joint, 344*f*
  - of female pelvis, 248*f*, 275*f*
  - of head, 558*t*, 561*f*
  - of heart, 104*f*, 117*f*, 133, 135*f*
  - of ileum, 191*f*
  - of jejunum, 191*f*
  - of knee joint, 387*f*, 417*f*
  - of large intestine, 194*f*
  - of lower limb, 416*t*
  - of lumbar spine, 33*f*, 40*f*, 63*f*
  - of male pelvis, 266*f*

- of neck, 33*f*, 558*t*, 560*f*
- of osteomyelitis, 345*f*
- of pelvis, 273*t*
- female, 248*f*, 275*f*
- of small intestine, 191*f*
- of spine, 33*f*, 40*f*, 63*f*
- of testes, 158*f*
- of thorax, 132*t*, 133
- of upper limb, 342*t*
- of wrist, 344*f*

Main pancreatic duct, 189*f*, 198, 200*f*, 202

Male accessory sex glands for, 245*f*
- bladder, 235*f*, 254*f*, 255*f*, 257*f*
- genitalia blood vessels of, 235*f*, 264*f*
- nerves of, 239*f*
- structures, 155–159, 244–247
- inguinal region, 154*f*
- pelvis, 230*f*, 233*f*, 244
- innervation of, 239*f*, 243*f*
- perineum fascia of, 262*f*
- muscles of, 262*f*
- nerves of, 237, 239*f*
- neurovasculature of, 234*f*
- sex organs, sympathetic/ parasympathetic innervation, 56*t*
- sexual responses ejaculation, 267
- emission, 267
- erection, 267, 267*f*
- ureters, 254, 254*f*
- urethra, 158*f*, 256–257, 257*f*
- urethral rupture in, 257
- urogenital triangle, 223*f*, 224*f*, 264–267, 266*f*

Malleolar arteries lateral, anterior, 365*f*
- medial, anterior, 365*f*

Malleolar branch, of fibular artery, 364
- lateral, 364*f*
- medial, 364*f*

Malleolus, 393*f*
- lateral, 357, 360*f*, 397*f*–400*f*, 411*f*, 412*f*
- medial, 357, 360*f*, 397*f*–400*f*, 403*f*, 411*f*, 412*f*

Malleus, 552*f*, 554*f*, 555, 556*f*
  anterior process, 554*f*
  superior ligament of, 554*f*
MALT (mucosa-associated lymphatic tissue), 17
Mammary gland, 82, 83*f*
  alveoli of, 82
  components of, 82
Mammary lobes, 82, 83*f*
Mammogram, 84*f*
Mandible, 7*f*, 430*f*, 431*f*, 434*f*, 439, 469*f*, 470*f*, 508*f*, 509*f*, 525*f*, 531*f*, 532*f*, 561*f*
  alveolar process of, 431*f*, 432*f*
  angle of, 432*f*, 439, 536*f*
  body of, 430*f*, 431*f*, 432*f*, 434*f*, 439, 561*f*
  condylar process of, 432, 432*f*, 439, 442*f*, 509*t*
  coronoid process of, 432*f*, 439, 508*f*, 509*t*, 513*f*
  head of, 508*f*, 509*f*, 510*f*
  lateral view of, 432*f*
  ramus of, 430*f*, 431*f*, 432*f*, 434*f*, 439, 515*f*
  teeth, 526*f*
Mandibular canal, 515*f*
Mandibular dental arch, 432*f*, 439, 525
  with teeth in alveoli, 432*f*
Mandibular division (CN V3), 54*f*, 460*f*, 477*f*, 489*f*, 490*f*, 491, 506*f*, 507*f*, 514, 515*f*, 517*f*, 528*f*, 539*f*, 542*f*, 551*f*
  auriculotemporal branches, 491
  buccal branches, 491
  inferior alveolar branches, 491
  lingual branches, 491
  muscular branches, 491
Mandibular foramen, 432*f*, 434*f*, 439, 490*f*
Mandibular fossa, 432, 435*f*, 437*f*, 508*f*, 510*f*, 514*f*
Mandibular notch, 432*f*, 439
Mandibular part, 446, 516*t*
Manubriosternal joint, 84, 84*f*
Manubrium, of sternum, 7*f*, 71*f*, 84, 84*f*, 86*f*, 285, 286*f*, 334*f*, 335*f*
Marginal artery, 106*f*, 109*f*–110*f*, 168, 171*f*, 172*f*, 195
  in abdomen (artery of Drummond), 168, 171*f*, 172*f*, 195
  branch of coronary artery, 111
  left, 109*f*–110*f*, 111, 111*t*

  - right,109*f*–110*f*,111,111*t*
- Marginal sinus,476*f*
- Marginal veins,106*f*,109*f*–110*f*
  - left,109*f*–110*f*,112*f*
  - right,109*f*
- Margins costal,84*f*,85,145*f*,196,202
  - infraorbital,431*f*
  - supraorbital,431*f*
- Masses, lateral,34,35*f*
- Masseter,12*f*,503*f*,507,507*f*,509*f*,509*t*,510,511*f*,512*f*,513*f*,515*f*,517*f*,533*f*,536*f*
  - deep head,508*f*
  - superficial head,508*f*
- Masseteric artery,447*f*,516*t*
- Masseteric nerve,490*f*,506*f*,517*f*
- Mastication, muscles of,491,507–510
- Masticatory muscular sling,509*f*,510
- Mastoid air cells,432,528*f*,553
- Mastoid antrum,553,554*f*
- Mastoid fontanelle,441*f*
- Mastoid foramen,430*f*,434*f*,435*f*,437*f*,442*f*
- Mastoid lymph node,452*f*,452*t*
- Mastoid notch,434*f*,435*f*,437*f*
- Mastoid process,39*f*,430*f*,432,434*f*,435*f*,437*f*,508*f*,527*f*,528*f*
- Maxilla,7*f*,44*f*,430*f*,431*f*,522*f*,528*f*,540*f*
  - alveolar process,431*f*
  - frontal process of,431*f*,439,521*f*,522*f*,540*f*
  - infratemporal surface of,514*f*
  - orbital surface of,540*f*,541*f*
  - palatine process of,434*f*,435*f*,440*f*,514*f*,522*f*
  - teeth,526*f*
  - tuberosity,514*f*,518*f*
  - zygomatic process of,430*f*,431*f*,435*f*,437*f*
- Maxillary artery,445,445*f*,447*f*,449*f*,515*f*,523,524*f*
  - branches of,516*t*
  - deep branches of,447*f*,514
  - divisions of,447*f*
  - mandibular part of,446,446*t*,516*t*
  - mylohyoid branch,447*f*
  - pterygoid branch,447*f*

- pterygoid part of,446,446*t*,516*t*
- pterygopalatine part of,446,446*t*,516*t*

Maxillary bones,439

Maxillary dental arch,435*f*,439,525

Maxillary division (CN V2),54*f*,442*f*,460*f*,477*f*,489*f*,490*f*,491,494,506*f*,507*f*,519*t*,523,538,539*f*,542*f*,55
- infraorbital branches,491,523
- nasopalatine branches,491
- orbital branches,491,519*t*
- palatine branches, greater and lesser,491
- superior alveolar branches of,491
- zygomatic branches,491

Maxillary hiatus,540*f*

Maxillary nerve. *See* Maxillary division (CN V2) Maxillary sinus,431*f*,438*f*,439,440*f*,521,523*f*,523*t*,540*f*,541*f*
- CT of,560*f*
- infection of, *521*

Maxillary vein,449,450*f*,451*f*

McBurney point,195

MCP joint creases,329*f*

Meatus acoustic external,430*f*,432,437*f*,508*f*,514*f*,552,552*f*
- internal,432,436*f*,437*f*,442*f*,492*f*,493*f*,514*f*,555*f*,556*f*
- nasal inferior,521,522*f*,523*f*
- middle,521,522*f*,523*f*
- superior,439*f*,521,522*f*,523*f*

Meckel’s diverticulum, *192*

Medial, location/direction term,3*f*,3*t*

Medial antebrachial cutaneous nerve,54*f*,299*t*,301*f*,302*f*,315*f*

Medial brachial cutaneous nerve,54*f*,299*t*,301*f*,302*f*,315*f*

Medial cord, of brachial plexus,297,297*f*,298*f*,299*t*,302*f*,306*f*

Medial cutaneous branch(es), of spinal nerve,60*f*,61*f*

Medial plantar nerve,54*f*,368*t*,369*f*

Medial sacral crest,35

Median, location/direction term,3*t*

Median nerve,54*f*,91*f*,297,297*f*,298*f*,299*t*,300,307*f*,315*f*,324*f*,325*f*,341*f*,344*f*
- injury, *300*
- palmar branch,300,301*f*,302*f*
- palmar digital branches of,300,301*f*,302*f*
- recurrent branch,300,302*f*

    root of,307*f*
Median sacral artery,44,45*f*,167,167*f*,168*t*,233*f*,235*f*,236*f*
Median sacral crest,35
Mediastinal pleura,89*f*,94*f*,97*f*,98*f*,99*f*,100*f*,101*f*,118*f*,120*f*,121*f*,196*f*
Mediastinal veins,75
Mediastinum,23,70,94–119. *See also specific structures* anterior,95,95*t*,98
    view of,98*f*
    contents of,95*t*
    division of,96*f*,97*f*
    inferior,70*f*,95
    middle,95,95*t*,99–113
    parasagittal section,97*f*
    posterior,74*t*,95,95*t*,117
    nerves of,79*f*
    regions of,95–97,95*t*,96*f*–97*f*,96*t*
    superior,70*f*,95,95*t*,117
    testis,155*t*,157,157*f*
    of testis, rete testis in,155*f*,155*t*,157,157*f*
Medulla, of suprarenal glands,182*t*,207
Medulla oblongata,21*f*,46*f*,442*f*,475*f*,479*f*,480
Medullary cavity,7,8*f*
Medullary rays,205*f*
Medullary vein, posteromedian,484*f*
Membrane(s) atlanto-occipital,41,44*f*
    anterior,41*f*,44*f*
    posterior,41,41*f*,44*f*
    basement,556
    basilar,556*f*
    cricothyroid,463
    fibrous,10*f*
    interosseous at radioulnar joints,317*f*,318
    between radius and ulna,8*f*,289,289*f*,294*f*,317*f*,318,321*f*,341*f*
    of tibia,357
    between tibia and fibula,357,360*f*,365*f*,385*f*,387*f*,393*f*,414*f*,415*f*
    transverse section,415*f*
    of ulna,289
    of larynx,463,463*f*,464*f*
    obturator,227*f*,228,228*f*,230*t*,373*t*,377*f*,380*t*
    perineal,222,223*f*,223*t*,230*f*,234*f*,238*f*,253*f*,257,258*f*,261,261*f*,262*f*,265*f*,266*f*,

    quadrangular,463,464*f*
    serous, layers of,160
    synovial,9,10,10*f*,11,307
    tectorial,41*f*,42,44*f*
    thyrohyoid,463,463*f*,464,466*f*
    tympanic,492*f*,552,552*f*,554*f*,556*f*
Membranous labyrinth,556
Membranous layer, subcutaneous connective tissue,6,6*f*
Membranous ossification,8
Membranous part of trachea,118*f*
    of urethra,246*f*,257,257*f*
Ménière’s disease, *557*
Meningeal arteries,437*f*,447*f*
    groove for,437*f*
    middle,473*f*,515*f*,516*t*
    anastomotic branch,447*f*,549*f*
    frontal branch,447*f*
    parietal branch,447*f*
    petrous branch,447*f*
    posterior,442*f*
Meningeal branch of mandibular nerve,442*f*,491,517*f*
    of spinal nerve,51*f*,61*f*
Meningeal layer, of dura,474,475*f*
Meningeal nerve,517*t*
Meningeal spaces,478,478*f*
Meninges,473–478
    in cranial cavity,474*f*
    herniation, *475*
    layers of,473*f*
    of spinal cord,46–47,48*f*,474*f*
Meniscofemoral ligament,388*f*
    posterior,385*f*,386,387*f*
Meniscus/menisci,10,386,387*f*–389*f*
    extension of,388*f*
    external,417*f*
    flexion of,388*f*
    internal,417*f*
Meniscus/menisci (*continued*) lateral,10*f*,386,386*f*,387*f*,388*f*,389*f*,417*f*
    medial,10*f*,386,387*f*,388*f*,389*f*,417*f*

  movements of,388*f*
  outer,387*f*,388*f*
  structure of,10
  ulnocarpal,321,322*f*
Mental branch, of alveolar arteries,447*f*
Mental foramen,430*f*,431*f*,439
Mentalis,503*f*,504*f*,505*t*
Mental nerve,490*f*,506*f*,511*f*,512*f*
Mental protuberance,430*f*,431*f*
Mental tubercles,431*f*
Mesencephalon,475*f*,479,479*f*,489*f*
Mesenchyme, in bone formation,7
Mesenteric arteries CT of,212*f*
  inferior,14*f*,165*f*,166*f*,167*f*,168,168*f*,168*t*,172*f*,174*f*,176*f*,195,199*f*,206*f*,233*f*,2
  anastomoses with superior mesenteric artery,14*f*,170*f*,171*f*,186*f*,189*f*,208*f*,212*f*
  branches of,202
  superior,14*f*,166*f*,167,167*f*,168*t*,169*f*,170*f*,171*f*,172*f*,174*f*,176*f*,186*f*,189*f*,190*f*,
  anastomoses,170*f*
  branches of,202
Mesenteric ganglion,181*t*,182*f*
  inferior,56*f*,180*f*,184*f*,241*f*–243*f*
  superior,56*f*,180*f*,183*f*,184*f*,241*f*–243*f*
Mesenteric ischemia, *171*
Mesenteric lymph nodes inferior,177,177*f*,178*f*,178*t*
  superior,177,177*f*,178*f*,178*t*
Mesenteric plexus distribution,184*f*
  inferior,181*t*,182*f*,184*f*,241*f*–243*f*
  superior,181*t*,182*f*,183*f*,184*f*
Mesenteric veins inferior,14*f*,173,175*f*,175*t*,176*f*,236*f*
  superior,14*f*,119*f*,166*f*,170*f*,173,176*f*,189*f*,190*f*,199*f*,200*f*,201*f*,208*f*
  tributaries of,175*t*
Mesenteries,144*f*,160,160*f*,163*f*,186*f*,192*f*,194*f*
  of broad ligament of uterus,251*f*
  of peritoneal cavity,162*f*
  peritoneum and,144*f*,160,160*t*,161,162*f*,163*f*,164,165*f*,168*f*
  root of,162*f*,165*f*,166*f*,190*f*,204*f*
  of small intestine,161,164*f*,192*f*
Mesoappendix,162*f*,165*f*,166*f*,194*f*

Mesocolon,193
  appendix and,193
  sigmoid,161,165*f*,166*f*,192*f*–193*f*,193,232*f*,244*f*,248*f*,259*f*
  transverse,161,162*f*,163*f*–165*f*,166*f*,170*f*,186*f*,191*f*,192*f*,193*f*,194*f*
Mesogastrium,145*f*
Mesometrium,249*f*,250
Mesorectal space,231*f*
Mesosalpinx,249*f*,250,251*f*,255*f*
Mesovarium,247,249*f*,250,251*f*
Metacarpal artery dorsal,294,294*f*
  palmar,294,294*f*
Metacarpal ligaments dorsal,322*f*
  palmar,322*f*
  transverse,329,339*f*
  deep,322*f*,333*f*,339*f*,401*f*
  superficial,322*f*
Metacarpal muscles,332*t*
Metacarpals,7*f*,285*f*,290*f*,291*f*,328*f*
  bases of,290
  heads of,290,333*f*
Metacarpal veins, palmar,295*f*
Metacarpophalangeal joint,290*f*,321*f*–322*f*,327,328,329*f*
  capsule of,322*f*
  creases,328,329*f*
Metastasis in breast cancer, *84*
  vertebral venous plexus and, *44*
Metatarsal artery dorsal,365,365*f*
  plantar,364*f*,365
Metatarsal ligaments deep transverse,403*f*
  superficial transverse,413*f*
Metatarsals,7*f*,357*f*,361*f*,362,362*f*,397*f*–399*f*
  base of,7*f*,361*f*,362
  of foot,400*f*
  shaft of,362
  tuberosity of,361*f*
Metatarsophalangeal joint,398*f*,401,404*t*
  abduction of,402*t*
  adduction of,402*t*
  extension of,402*t*

flexion of,396*t*,402*t*
Micturition,256
Midaxillary line,4*t*
Midbrain,21*f*
Midcarpal joint,321,321*f*
Midclavicular line,4*t*,145*f*
Middle ear,553–555
  infection of, *555*
  innervation of,494
  muscles in,556
  promontory of,554*f*,555
Middle suprarenal arteries,167,167*f*,168*t*,174*f*,205*f*,208*f*
Middle trunk, of brachial plexus,297,297*f*
Midgut,187,190
  pain localization from derivatives of, *187*
Midgut tube, rotation of, *187*
Midpalmar space,329
Mitral valve,106*f*,107,108*f*
  prolapse, *107*
Mixed nerves, in PNS,22
Modiolus,556,556*f*
Molars,432*f*,526*f*
Monosegmental innervation,53,55*f*,56*f*
Mons pubis,224*f*,267,268*f*
Motor end plates,11*f*
Motor innervation of face,506,507*f*
  of nuchal region, anterolateral,461*f*
Motor nerves,19,506,507*f*
  of cervical plexus,461*f*
Motor nucleus, dorsal,131*f*,501*f*,501*t*
Motor unit,11
Mouth, muscles of,504*t*,505*t*
Movement at ankle,398,399*t*
  of glenohumeral joint,312*t*
  of hip joint,378*t*
  of joints,306*t*,312*t*,356,378*t*,388*f*,391*t*,398 (*See also individual types of movement e.g.* Abduction) of knee joint,391*t*
  at lower limb,356
  of menisci,388*f*

- of pectoral girdle, 306*t*
- at wrist, 323*t*

MR cholangiopancreatography, 200*f*

MRI. *See* Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) MRI arthrography, 344, 345*f*

Mucosa in bladder, 255*f*, 256*f*
- lingual, 531*f*
- oral, 527*f*, 530, 533*f*
- of urethra, 256*f*

Mucosa-associated lymphatic tissue (MALT), 17

Multifidus, 58*t*, 59*f*, 63*f*, 560*f*

Muscles (general) cells, 11
- classification criteria, 11
- fascia of, 11
- skeletal, 11, 12*f*–13*f*
- structure of, 11, 11*f*
- smooth, 11, 127*f*
- somatic, 11
- structure of, 11*f*
- system overview, 11–14, 12*f*–13*f*
- visceral, 11

Muscles (named), 12*f*–13*f*, 457*f*, 503*f*, 504*f*
- abductor digiti minimi, 321*f*, 330*f*, 331*t*, 339*f*, 405*t*, 413*f*
- abductor hallucis, 403*f*, 405*t*, 413*f*
- abductor pollicis brevis, 299*t*, 325*f*, 328*t*, 330*f*, 331*t*, 339*f*
- longus, 13*f*, 320*t*, 324*f*, 326*f*, 338*f*, 339*f*, 340*f*, 341*f*, 344*f*
- adductor brevis, 380*t*, 414*f*, 415*f*
- adductor hallucis, 368*t*, 403*f*, 405*t*, 406*t*
- oblique head, 406*t*
- transverse head, 406*t*
- adductor longus, 12*f*, 380*t*, 383*f*, 408*f*, 409*f*, 414*f*, 415*f*
- adductor magnus, 238*f*, 239*f*, 363, 364*f*, 365*f*, 366*f*, 380*t*, 409*f*–410*f*, 414*f*, 415*f*
- adductor pollicis, 12*f*, 330*f*, 331*t*, 339*f*
- anconeus, 314*t*, 336*f*, 338*f*
- articularis genu, 379*t*
- arytenoid oblique, 466*f*, 536*f*
- transverse, 465*t*, 466*f*, 536*f*
- auricular, 504*f*
- anterior, 505*t*
- posterior, 505*t*

superior,502,505*t*
biceps
brachii,12*f*,292,296*f*,306*f*,307*f*,308*f*,309,314*t*,315*f*,334*f*,335*f*,338*f*,340*f*,341
fascia,315*f*
long head,308*f*,309*f*,341*f*
short head,308*f*,309*f*,312*t*,314*t*,340*f*,341*f*
tendon of,308*f*,315*f*,338*f*,340*f*
biceps femoris,13*f*,381*t*,391*t*,392*f*,409*f*–410*f*,411*f*,412*f*,414*f*
long head,368*t*,381*t*,391*t*,392*f*,410*f*,411*f*,414*f*,415*f*
short head,368*t*,370,381*t*,391*t*,392*f*,411*f*,414*f*,415*f*
brachialis,12*f*,314*t*,315*f*,334*f*,338*f*,340*f*,341*f*,344*f*
brachioradialis,12*f*,315*f*,320*t*,338*f*,340*f*,341*f*,344*f*
buccinator,503*f*,505*t*,507*f*,511*f*,515*f*,533*f*,535*f*
bulbospongiosus,223*f*,234*f*,238*f*,239*f*,244*f*,245*f*,253*f*,261,261*f*,262*f*,263*f*,263*t*, *265f*,266*f*,268*f*–269*f*
ciliary,500*t*,545*f*
coccygeus,223*t*,227*f*,228,229*f*,230*t*
compressor urethrae,262
coracobrachialis,12*f*,306*f*,308*f*–309*f*,309,310*t*,312*t*,334*f*,335*f*,340*f*
corrugator ani,272*f*
corrugator supercilii,503*f*
cremaster,146*f*,154*f*,155*f*,155*t*,156*f*,157*f*
cricoarytenoid lateral,465*t*,466*f*
oblique part of,536*f*
posterior,465,465*t*,466*f*,536*f*
cricopharyngeus,462,536*f*
cricothyroid,465,465*t*,466*f*,467*f*,469*f*,470*f*,497*f*,535*t*
dartos,155*t*,156*f*
deltoid,12*f*,13*f*,91*f*,307*f*,308*f*,309,309*f*,311*f*,311*t*,313*f*,334*f*,335*f*,336*f*,340*f*
acromial part of,311*t*,312*t*,335*f*
clavicular part of,311*t*,312*t*,335*f*
spinal part of,311*t*,312*t*
depressor anguli oris,12*f*,503*f*,504*f*,505*t*
origin,503*f*
depressor labii inferioris,12*f*,503*f*,504*f*,505*t*
depressor labii oris,503*f*
detrusor (detrusor vesicae),182*t*,256,256*f*
digastric,455*f*,456,457*f*,492,527*t*,536*f*
anterior belly,455*f*,457*f*,491,527*f*,527*t*,528*f*,531*f*,535*f*

intermediate tendon,527*f*
nerve to,512*f*
posterior belly,455*f*,457*f*,472*f*,527*f*,527*t*,528*f*,535*f*,536*f*
dilator pupillae,500*t*
erector spinae,58,63*f*,337*f*
extensor carpi radialis,324*f*
brevis,13*f*,320*t*,324*f*,326*f*,336*f*,338*f*,340*f*,341*f*
longus,13*f*,315*f*,320*t*,324*f*,326*f*,336*f*,338*f*,340*f*,341*f*,344*f*
extensor carpi ulnaris,13*f*,320*t*,324*f*,326*f*,336*f*,341*f*
extensor digiti minimi,13*f*,320*t*,324*f*,333*f*,341*f*
extensor digitorum,320*t*,326*f*,333*f*,336*f*,338*f*,341*f*,344*f*
brevis,12*f*,397*f*,404,404*t*,411*f*
longus,12*f*,368*t*,394*t*,397*f*,411*f*,415*f*
tendon,324*f*,326*f*,333*f*,338*f*,397*f*
extensor hallucis brevis,12*f*,368*t*,397*f*,404,404*t*,411*f*
longus,12*f*,368*t*,394*t*,397*f*,411*f*,415*f*
extensor indicis,320*t*,324*f*,326*f*
extensor pollicis brevis,13*f*,320*t*,324*f*,326*f*,333*f*,338*f*,339*f*,341*f*
longus,320*t*,324*f*,326*f*,333*f*,341*f*
fibularis brevis,13*f*,395*t*,397*f*,411*f*,412*f*,415*f*
longus,12*f*,13*f*,395*t*,397*f*,401,403*f*,411*f*,412*f*,413*f*,415*f*
tertius,394*t*,397*f*,411*f*
flexor carpi radialis,315*f*,319*t*,324*f*,325*f*,338*f*,339*f*,340*f*,344*f*
ulnaris,12*f*–13*f*,315*f*,319*t*,322*f*,325*f*,330*f*,336*f*,338*f*,339*f*,340*f*,341*f*
flexor digiti minimi brevis,12*f*,325*f*,330*f*,331*t*,339*f*,406*t*,413*f*
of foot,413*f*
of hand,12*f*,331*t*,339*f*
flexor digitorum brevis,405*t*,413*f*
longus,13*f*,396*t*,397*f*,403*f*,412*f*,413*f*,415*f*
profundus,319*t*,324*f*,333*f*,338*f*,339*f*,341*f*,344*f*
superficialis,319*t*,324*f*,325*f*,333*f*,338*f*,340*f*,341*f*,344*f*
humeral-ulnar head,319*t*
radial head,319*t*
flexor hallucis brevis,368*t*,406*t*,413*f*
lateral head,368*t*
medial head,368*t*
longus,13*f*,396*t*,397*f*,403*f*,412*f*,413*f*,415*f*
flexor pollicis brevis,330*f*,331*t*,339*f*
head,325*f*,339*f*

longus,12*f*,319*t*,324*f*,325*f*,330*f*,338*f*–340*f*,341*f*
gastrocnemius,12*f*,13*f*,387*f*,390*f*,391*t*,392*f*,396*t*,409*f*–410*f*,411*f*,412*f*,414*f*,415
gemellus,373*t*
inferior,373*t*,414*f*
superior,373*t*,414*f*
genioglossus,498*f*–499*f*,527*f*,530,531*f*,533*f*,534*f*
geniohyoid,456,461*f*,527*f*,527*t*,531*f*,533*f*,534*f*
gluteus maximus,13*f*,63*f*,234*f*,238*f*,239*f*,261*f*,262*f*,275*f*,373*t*,409*f*–410*f*,414*f*
medius,373*t*,410*f*,414*f*
minimus,368*t*,373*t*,414*f*
gracilis,12*f*,13*f*,238*f*,239*f*,378,380*t*,383*f*,391*t*,392*f*,408*f*–412*f*,414*f*,415*f*
hyoglossus,456,499*f*,527*f*,527*t*,530,531*f*,533*f*,535*f*
iliacus,147,147*t*,148*f*–150*f*,179*f*,206*f*,235*f*,253*f*,379*t*,382*f*,408*f*–409*f*
iliococcygeus,228,229*f*,230*t*
iliocostalis,58,58*f*,58*t*
iliopsoas,147,149*f*,150*f*,154*f*,379*t*,382*f*,383*f*,408*f*
infrahyoid,455,456,456*t*,457*f*,458*t*,461*f*,465,527*f*
infraspinatus,13*f*,309,311*t*,313*f*,337*f*
intercostal,12*f*,83*f*,85–87,86*f*,90*f*,96*f*,97*f*
external,85–87,86*f*,86*t*,93*f*,146*f*
innermost,85–87,86*f*,86*t*,93*f*
internal,12*f*,85–87,86*f*,86*t*,93*f*,146*f*
interossei,12*f*
dorsal,332*t*,333*f*,406*t*
palmar,332*t*
plantar,406*t*,411*f*,413*f*
interspinalis,58*t*
cervicis,59*f*
lumborum,59*f*
interspinalis group,58*t*
intertransversarii,58,58*t*
cervicis, posterior,59*f*
lumborum lateral,59*f*
medial,59*f*
ischiocavernosus,223*f*,234*f*,238*f*,239*f*,248*f*,253*f*,261,261*f*,262*f*,263*f*,263*t*,265*f*
latissimus dorsi,13*f*,296*f*,309,310*t*,311*f*,312*t*,334*f*,335*f*,336*f*,337*f*
costal part of,310*t*
iliac part of,310*t*
scapular part of,310*t*

vertebral part of,310*t*
levator anguli oris,503*f*,505*t*
levator ani,223*f*,228,229*f*,230*f*,230*t*,234*f*,235*f*,236*f*,238*f*,239*f*,244*f*,248*f*,253*f*,258*f*,2
tendinous arch of,223*t*,228,229*f*,230*t*,231*f*,252*f*,254*f*
levatores costarum,58*t*
breves,59*f*
longi,59*f*
levator labii superioris,12*f*,503*f*,504*f*,505*t*
levator labii superioris alaeque nasi,503*f*,504,505*t*
levator palpebrae superioris,489*f*,542*f*,543,543*f*,544*f*,547*f*,549*f*
levator scapulae,304,305*t*,337*f*,560*f*
levator veli palatini,528,529*f*,529*t*,535*f*,536*f*,553*f*
longissimus,58,58*f*,58*t*
longitudinal, of tongue,530,530*t*,531*f*
longus capitis,458*f*,458*t*,459*t*,471*f*
longus colli,458*f*,458*t*,471*f*
inferior oblique part of,458*f*
superior oblique part of,458*f*
vertical part of,458*f*
lumbricals,332*t*,333*f*,339*f*,406*t*,413*f*
masseter,12*f*,503*f*,507,507*f*,509*f*,509*t*,510,511*f*,512*f*,513*f*,515*f*,517*f*,533*f*,536*f*
deep head,508*f*
superficial head,508*f*
mentalis,503*f*,504*f*,505*t*
multifidus,58*t*,59*f*,63*f*,560*f*
musculus uvulae,528,529*f*,529*t*,536*f*
mylohyoid,456,457*f*,491,527*f*,527*t*,528*f*,531*t*,533*f*,535*f*
nasalis,12*f*,503*f*–504*f*,504*t*
oblique abdominal external,12*f*,58*f*,91*f*,145,146*f*,147*t*,148*f*,149*f*,152*f*,154*f*,156*f*,166*f*,208*f*,334*f*,
internal,12*f*,58*f*,91*f*,145,146*f*,147*t*,148*f*,149*f*,152*f*,154*f*,156*f*,166*f*,208*f*,336*f*,33
extraocular inferior,489*f*,547,547*f*,548*t*
superior,489*f*,542*f*,547,547*f*,548*t*,549*f*
obliquus capitis inferior,58*t*,59,60*f*
superior,58*t*,59,60*f*
obturator externus,380*t*
internus,13*f*,223*f*,228,229*f*,230*f*,230*t*,253*f*,259*f*,261*f*,262*f*,275*f*,373*t*,409*f*,414*f*
fascia,229*f*,252*f*

occipitofrontalis,12*f*,502,503*f*,504*f*,504*t*,513*f*
frontal belly,12*f*,503*f*,504*f*,504*t*,513*f*
occipital belly,504*f*
omohyoid,296*f*,455*f*,456,457*f*,458*t*,461*f*,469*f*,472*f*
inferior belly,296*f*,457*f*,472*f*
superior belly,457*f*
opponens digiti minimi,331*t*,339*f*,406*t*
opponens pollicis,12*f*,321*f*,325*f*,330*f*,331*t*,339*f*
ora serrata,545*f*
orbicularis oculi,12*f*,503*f*,504*f*,504*t*,543,543*f*
oris,12*f*,503*f*,504*f*,505*t*
palatoglossus,526*f*,527*f*,528,529*t*,530,531*f*
palatopharyngeus,94*f*,528,529*t*,535,536*f*,537*t*
palmaris brevis,325*f*,330*f*,331*t*,340*f*
longus,319*t*,325*f*,330*f*,338*f*,339*f*,340*f*,341*f*
papillary,106*f*
anterior,104,105*f*,108*f*
posterior,104,105*f*
septal,104
pectinate,105*f*
pectineus,12*f*,154*f*,380*t*,383*f*,408*f*
pectoralis
  major,12*f*,83*f*,85,93*f*,146*f*,296*f*,306*f*,307*f*,309,310*f*,310*t*,312*t*,334*f*,335*f*
minor,12*f*,83*f*,85,146*f*,292,296*f*,304,305*t*,306*f*,335*f*
perineal deep transverse,229*f*,245*f*,246*f*,253*f*,261,263*f*,263*t*,265f,266*f*
superficial transverse,238*f*,239*f*,261,261*f*,262*f*,263*f*,268*f*,269*f*
pharyngeal constrictors,466*f*,537*t*
inferior,467*f*,535,535*f*,536*f*,537*t*
middle,535,535*f*,536*f*,537*t*
superior,535,535*f*,536*f*,537*t*
piriformis,228,229*f*,230*t*,252*f*,363*f*,366*f*,373*t*,374*f*,409*f*,414*f*
syndrome, *374*
plantaris,392*f*,396*t*,409*f*–410*f*,412*f*,414*f*,415*f*
platysma,12*f*,455*f*,456,457*f*,457*t*,458*f*,469*f*,503*f*,504*f*,505*t*,560*f*
popliteus,13*f*,390*f*,391*t*,392*f*,396*t*,412*f*
procerus,503*f*,504*t*
pronator, teres,12*f*,315*f*,319*t*,340*f*,341*f*
humeral head,315*f*
ulnar head,315*f*

pronator quadratus,319*t*,325*f*,330*f*
psoas major,147,147*t*,149*f*,150*f*,179*f*,206*f*,231*f*,235*f*,379*t*,382*f*,408*f*–409*f*
minor,147,147*t*,149*f*,179*f*,409*f*
pterygoid lateral,507,507*f*,509*f*,509*t*,510,510*f*,513*f*,515*f*
medial,507,507*f*,509*f*,509*t*,510,515*f*,517*f*,526*f*,536*f*
pubococcygeus,228,229*f*,230*t*,270*f*
puborectalis,228,229*f*,230*t*,270*f*,272*f*
pubovesical,256
pupillary dilator,544,545*f*
pupillary sphincter,488,544,545*f*
pyramidalis,146*f*,147,147*t*
rectus sheath and,147*t*
quadratus femoris,13*f*,373*t*,414*f*
lumborum,87*f*,147,147*t*,149*f*,179*f*
plantae,406*t*
quadriceps femoris,379*t*,383*f*,385*f*,391*t*,415*f*
radialis,320*t*
rectus inferior,547,547*f*,548*t*
lateral,489*f*,542*f*,545*f*,547,547*f*,548*t*
medial,489*f*,542*f*,545*f*,547,547*f*,548*t*
superior,542*f*,543*f*,547,547*f*,548*t*
rectus abdominis,12*f*,91*f*,146*f*,147,147*t*,148*f*,149*f*,150*f*,152*f*,154*f*,156*f*,161*f*,
Muscles (named) (*continued*)186*f*,191*f*,193*f*,244*f*,251*f*,258*f*,266*f*
rectus sheath and,146*f*,147,148*f*
rectus capitis anterior,458*f*,459*t*
lateralis,45*t*,458*f*,459*t*
posterior major,58*t*,59,60*f*
posterior minor,58*t*,59,60*f*,560*f*,561*f*
rectus femoris,12*f*,379*t*,408*f*–409*f*,411*f*,414*f*,415*f*
rhomboid major,13*f*,304,305*t*,337*f*
minor,304,305*t*,337*f*
risorius,503*f*,504*f*,505*t*
rotatores brevis,58*t*,59*f*
longus,58*t*,59*f*
salpingopharyngeus,534,535,535*f*,536*f*,537*t*,553*f*
sartorius,12*f*,378,379*t*,383*f*,391*t*,408*f*–409*f*,411*f*,414*f*,415*f*
scalene,470*f*,560*f*
anterior,74*f*,85,86*t*,90*f*,94*f*,118*f*,292*f*,458*f*,459*t*,461*f*,470*f*,471*f*,472*f*
middle,74*f*,85,86*f*,86*t*,292*f*,458*f*,459*t*,461*f*,471*f*,472*f*

posterior,85,86*f*,86*t*,292*f*,458*f*,459*t*
semimembranosus,13*f*,381*t*,391*t*,392*f*,409*f*–410*f*,412*f*,414*f*,415*f*
semispinalis,58*t*
capitis,13*f*,59*f*,336*f*,337*f*,560*f*,561*f*
cervicis,59*f*,337*f*,560*f*
thoracis,59*f*
semitendinosus,13*f*,378,381*t*,391*t*,392*f*,409*f*–410*f*,412*f*,414*f*,415*f*
serratus anterior,12*f*,85,146*f*,304,304*f*,306*f*,334*f*,335*f*,337*f*
inferior part of,305*t*
intermediate part of,305*t*
superior part of,304*f*,305*t*
serratus posterior,13*f*,337*f*
soleus,12*f*–13*f*,392*f*,396*t*,411*f*,412*f*,414*f*,415*f*
spinalis,58,58*f*,58*t*
splenius,58,58*t*
capitis,58*t*,336*f*,337*f*,560*f*
cervicis,13*f*,58*t*
stapedius,492,554*f*,555
sternocleidomastoid,12*f*,334*f*,335*f*,336*f*,337*f*,455,455*f*,456,457*f*,457*t*,469*f*,470
clavicular head,457*t*
sternal head,457*t*
sternohyoid,456,457*f*,458*t*,461*f*,469*f*,535*f*
sternothyroid,455*f*,456,457*f*,458*t*,461*f*,469*f*,472*f*,560*f*
strap muscles, ultrasound of,558*f*
styloglossus,499*f*,527*f*,530,531*f*,535*f*
stylohyoid,456,457*f*,492,492*f*,527*f*,527*t*,528*f*,533*f*,535*f*,536*f*
nerve to,512*f*
stylopharyngeus,494,495*f*,496*f*,535,536*f*,537*t*
subclavius,304,307*f*,335*f*
nerve to,298*f*,299*t*,302*f*,305*t*
subcostal,86*t*,87
subscapularis,304*f*,306*f*,308*f*,309,309*f*,311*f*,311*t*,335*f*
subtendinous bursa of,308,308*f*,309*f*
supinator,12*f*,315*f*,320*t*,344*f*
suprahyoid,456,457*f*,525,527*f*,527*t*
supraspinatus,13*f*,309,311*f*,311*t*–312*t*,313*f*,335*f*,337*f*
temporalis,507,508*f*,509*f*,509*t*,510,515*f*
temporoparietalis,502,504*f*
tensor fasciae latae,12*f*,13*f*,373*t*,383*f*,408*f*,410*f*,414*f*

tensor tympani,491,493*f*,494*f*,517*f*,552*f*,554*f*,555,556
tensor veli palatini,491,517*f*,528,529*f*,529*t*,536*f*,553*f*
teres
major,4*t*,13*f*,292,299*t*,307,309,309*f*,310*f*,310*t*,311*f*,312,312*t*,313*f*,334*f*,335*f*
minor,13*f*,309,311*t*,312*t*,313*f*,337*f*
thyroarytenoid,464*f*,465*t*,466*f*
thyroepiglottic part of,466*f*
thyrohyoid,456,457*f*,458*t*,461*f*,466*f*,469*f*,470*f*,472*f*,499*f*,535*f*,560*f*
tibialis anterior,12*f*,394*t*,397*f*,409*f*,411*f*,415*f*
posterior,13*f*,396*t*,397*f*,403*f*,412*f*,413*f*,415*f*
transverse, of tongue,530,530*t*,531*f*
transversus
abdominis,12*f*,87*f*,145,146*f*–149*f*,147*t*,149,150*f*,152*f*,154*f*,156*f*,165*f*,166*f*,1
transversus thoracis,86*f*,86*t*,87
trapezius,12*f*–13*f*,304,305*t*,309*f*,311*f*,334*f*–337*f*,344*f*,455*f*,456,457*f*,457*t*,458*f*,
ascending part of,305*t*,336*f*
descending part of,305*t*,336*f*
transverse part of,305*t*,336*f*
triceps brachii,13*f*,309,313*f*,314*t*,315*f*,336*f*,338*f*,341*f*
lateral head,314*t*,336*f*
long head,312*t*,314*t*,336*f*,341*f*
medial head,341*f*
triceps surae,392*f*,396*t*,411*f*,414*f*
vastus intermedius,379*t*,385*f*,414*f*,415*f*
lateralis,12*f*,379*t*,385*f*,408*f*,411*f*,414*f*,415*f*
medialis,12*f*,379*t*,385*f*,409*f*,411*f*,414*f*,415*f*
vertical, of tongue,530,530*t*,531*f*
vocalis,464,464*f*,465*t*,466*f*
zygomaticus major,12*f*,503*f*,504*f*,505*t*
minor,12*f*,503*f*,504*f*,505*t*
Muscles (of region or structure) of abdominal wall,145–149,146*f*–149*f*,147*t*
anterior,146*f*
superficial,146*f*
of arm,313–314,314*t*
of back,58–61,58*t*
extrinsic,58
intrinsic,58
of suboccipital region,58–61,58*t*
cardiac,11

of cervical region, 455*f*
craniovertebral, 60*f*
of ear, 504*t*, 505*t*
extraocular, 547
actions of, 548*t*
extrinsic of back, 58
of tongue, 530, 530*t*, 531*f*
of upper limb, 284
of facial expression, 503*f*–504*f*, 504*t*–505*t*
of female genitalia, 268*f*
of foot, 413*f*
dorsum of foot, 404, 404*t*
extensor digitorum brevis, 404, 404*t*, 411*f*
extensor hallucis brevis, 12*f*, 368*t*, 397*f*, 404, 404*t*, 411*f*
sole of foot, 405–406, 406*t*, 413*f*
of forearm, 318–320, 338*f*
anterior, 338*f*
anterior compartment, 291, 341*f*
deep, 319*t*, 320*t*
intermediate, 319*t*
posterior, 338*f*
posterior compartment, 291, 341*f*
superficial, 319*t*, 320*t*
forehead, nose, and ear, 503*f*–504*f*, 504*t*
in gait cycle, 407*t*
of genitalia, female, 268*f*
of gluteal region, 373*t*, 409*f*
of hand, 339*f*
of hip region, 409*f*
of hypothenar compartment, 329, 331*t*
intrinsic of back, 58
of upper limbs, 284
of larynx, 465, 466*f*
actions of, 465*t*
of leg, 393*f*–397*f*, 411–412*f*
anterior compartment, 393, 394*t*
lateral compartment, 393, 394*t*
posterior compartment deep, 394, 396*t*
superficial, 394

superficial flexors,396*t*
of mastication,491,507–510
metacarpal,332*t*
of mouth,504*t*,505*t*
of mouth and neck,504*t*,505*t*
of neck,456–459,465
infrahyoid,455,456,456*t*,457*f*,458*t*,461*f*,465,527*f*
sternocleidomastoid,334*f*,335*f*,455,457*t*
suprahyoid,456,457*f*,525,527*f*,527*t*
of nose,503*f*–504*f*,504*t*,505*t*
nuchal joint,60*f*
of oral floor,509*t*,527*f*,527*t*,528*f*
of pectoral girdle,304–305,305*t*,306*f*
of pelvic diaphragm,230*t*
of pelvic floor,229*f*,230*t*
of pelvic wall,230*t*
of perineal body,262*f*
of perineum,262–263,263*f*
in female,261*f*
male,262*f*
of pharynx,534*f*,535–537
of rotator cuff,309,311*t*
shoulder,309–312
anterior,334*f*,334*f*–335*f*
posterior,312–313,336*f*–337*f*
of shoulder region,309–312,310*f*,310*t*
skeletal,11,11*f*,12*f*–13*f*
of soft palate,529*f*,529*t*
of sole of foot,413*f*
suboccipital,58–61,58*t*
of thenar compartment,291,329,331*t*,339*f*,340*f*
of thigh,378–381,381*t*,409*f*,415*f*
anterior compartment,378,379*t*
medial compartment,378,380*t*
posterior compartment,378,381*t*
of thoracic wall,85–87,86*f*,86*t*
of tongue,530*t*,531*f*
of upper limbs extrinsic,284
intrinsic,284

Muscular branches of mandibular nerve,491
  of ulnar nerve,301
Muscular coat of duodenum,189*f*
  of rectum,260*f*,272*f*
  of stomach,189*f*
Muscular compartment, of retroinguinal space,382*f*
Muscularis, urethral,256*f*
Muscularis externa, of small intestine,192*f*
Muscularis mucosae, of anal canal,272*f*
Muscular system,11–13,12*f*–13*f*
Muscular triangle,454,454*t*,455*f*
Musculocutaneous nerve,54*f*,297,297*f*,298*f*,299*t*,301*f*,302*f*,307*f*,315*f*,341*f*
  injury, *299*
  muscular branches,299
Musculophrenic arteries,72,88,89*f*
Musculoskeletal system, as functional subdivision,2*t*
Musculus uvulae,528,529*f*,529*t*,536*f*
Myelin sheath, of axons,19,20*f*,21*f*
Mylohyoid groove,434*f*
Mylohyoid line,434*f*
Mylohyoid muscle,456,457*f*,491,527*f*,527*t*,528*f*,531*f*,533*f*,535*f*
Mylohyoid nerve,490*f*,506*f*,517*f*,528*f*,533*f*
Mylohyoid raphe,457*f*
Myocardium,102,113*f*
  ventricular, contracted,106*f*
Myometrium,248*f*,249*f*,250*f*
Myotomes,53
N
Naris/nares,521,521*f*
Nasal aperture, anterior,431*f*,522*f*
Nasal artery dorsal,448*f*,549*f*
  lateral,446
  lateral posterior,447*f*,524*f*
Nasal bones,430*f*,431*f*,439,440*f*,521*f*,522*f*,540*f*,561*f*
Nasal cartilage,521
  lateral,521,521*f*
  major alar,521*f*,522*f*
  minor alar,521*f*
Nasal cavities,519*t*

arteries of,524*f*
bleeding from, *523*
bones of,431*f*,440*f*,522*f*
CT of,560*f*
glands, innervation of,494,500*t*
nerves of,524*f*
neurovasculature of,523–524,524*f*
structure of,521–523
Nasal concha,431*f*,538*f*
inferior,431*f*,439,440*f*,522*f*,544*f*
middle,431*f*,439,439*f*,440*f*,522*f*,523*f*
superior,431*f*,439,440*f*,522*f*,523*f*
Nasal crest,522*f*
Nasal glands,491*f*,494,500*t*
Nasalis,12*f*,503*f*,504*f*,504*t*
Nasal meatuses inferior,521,522*f*,523*f*
middle,521,522*f*,523*f*
superior,439*f*,521,522*f*,523*f*
Nasal nerve,511*f*,512*f*,520*t*
Nasal septum,488*f*,525*f*
Nasal spine,430*f*
anterior,431*f*,521*f*
Nasal vein, dorsal,549*f*,550*f*
Nasion,431*f*,440*t*
Nasociliary branch, of trigeminal nerve,489,543
Nasociliary nerve,442*f*,490*f*,500*f*,542*f*,550*t*,551*f*
Nasolacrimal canal,541
Nasolacrimal duct,521,523*f*,523*t*,541,544,544*f*,549*f*
Nasopalatine artery,442*f*
Nasopalatine branch, of maxillary nerve,491
Nasopalatine nerve,442*f*,523,524*f*,529*f*
Nasopharynx,519*t*,534,534*f*,561*f*
Navicular,357,361*f*,362*f*,393*f*,398*f*–401*f*,403*f*,404*f*
Navicular fossa, of urethra,245*f*,257,257*f*,265*f*,266
Neck. *See also specific structure* anterior, fascial layers in,455*f*
arteries of,443–449
bones of,443 (*See also* Vertebral column) clinical correlations congenital torticollis, *456*
cricothyroidotomy, *464*

extracerebral hemorrhage, *478*
gag reflex, *538*
Horner’s syndrome, *548*
recurrent laryngeal nerve paralysis with thyroidectomy, *465*
thyroidectomy, *465*
tonsillectomy, *538*
tracheostomy, *464*
cranial nerves in,453,462
CT of,558*t*
deep dissection,469*f*
dermatomes of,461*f*
developmental correlation, thyroglossal duct cyst, *467*
external/internal carotid artery anastomoses, *449*
fascia of, deep cervical,455,456*t*
lymphatic drainage of,452–453
MRI of,33*f*,558*t*,560*f*
muscles of,456–459,461*f*,465
infrahyoid,455,456,456*t*,457*f*,458*t*,461*f*,465,527*f*
sternocleidomastoid,334*f*,335*f*,455,457*t*
superficial,457*t*
suprahyoid,456,457*f*,525,527*f*,527*t*
nerve point of (Erb’s point),459,472*f*
nerves of,453,459–462,485–486*f*,487*t*
vagus (CN X),22,55,57*f*,78,78*f*–79*f*,80,94*f*,96*f*,97*f*,98*f*,99,100*f*,113*f*,118*f*,442*f*,454*t*,455
neurovasculature, anterior lateral cervical region,469*f*
posterior, muscles of,59,60*f*
radiographs of,558*t*
regional contents of,454,454*t*
as regional subdivision,2*f*,2*t*
regions of,454*t*
root of,454,470*f*
spinal nerves in,460*t*
superficial dissection,469*f*
superficial veins of,450*f*
terminology relating to,3*f*,3*t*
topography of, cervical regions,469–472
anterior,454,454*t*
lateral,454,454*t*,472*f*

posterior,454,454*t*
sternocleidomastoid region,454,454*t*
transverse nerve of,54*f*
ultrasound of,558*t*
veins of,449–451
superficial,450*f*
Neck (of structure) of bladder,246*f*,255*f*
of femur,7*f*,356, *358f*,359*f*,372*f*,375*f*
fracture of, *359*
of fibula,360*f*,384*f*
of gallbladder,198,199*f*
of humerus,288,288*f*
anatomic,288*f*
surgical,288,288*f*
of pancreas,186*f*,200,200*f*,204*f*,208*f*
of radius,315,316*f*,317*f*
of rib,85*f*
of scapula,286,308*f*
of talus,361*f*,362*f*
of urinary bladder,245*f*
with uvula,256*f*
Neonatal respiratory distress syndrome (neonatal RSD), *127*
Neonatal skull,441*f*
Nerve block, pudendal, *240*
Nerve cells,18. *See also* Neurons Nerves (general) autonomic, of head,499–501
cell and synapse,20*f*
classification of,486*t*
mixed,22
motor,19,506,507*f*
of cervical plexus,461*f*
motor end plates,11*f*
paraesophageal,76*f*
postganglionic sympathetic fibers,494
preganglionic parasympathetic,494
root- /trunk-level injuries, *298*
sensory,19
of cervical plexus,460*f*
Nerves (named) abducent (CN VI),442*f*,477*f*,485*f*,486*f*,487*t*,488,489*f*,541,542*f*,548,550*t*,551*f*

accessory (CN XI),442f,470f,472f,485f,487t,498,498f
alveolar,528f,533f
inferior,490f,506f,507f,515f,517f,517t,533f
superior,515f
anterior,490f
middle,490f
posterior,490f,520t
ampullary anterior,494f,557f
lateral,494f,557f
posterior,494f,557f
anococcygeal,238f,239f
ansa cervicalis,459,472f
inferior root,460t,461f
superior root,460t,461f
anterior interosseous,298f,302f
auricular,60f
great,54f,60f,459,460f,460t,461f,469f,506,506f,511f,512f,553f
posterior,492f,493f
auriculotemporal,490f,491,494,496f,506f,507f,511f,512f,513f,514,515f,517f,5
axillary,54f,60f,297f,298f,299t,301f–302f,313f
injury, *301*
in quadrangular space,312
buccal,490f,491,506f,507f,515f,517f,517t,526f
cardiac cervical inferior,462
middle,462
superior,462
thoracic branches,292
caroticotympanic,496f
carotid external,462
internal,462
cavernous,237
of penis,241f–243f
cervical,459–462
inferior,113f
middle,113f
superior,113f
transverse,459,460f,460t,469f,506f
ciliary,489f,550t,551f
long,490f,500f

short,490*f*,551*f*
clitoral,237
dorsal,234*f*,238*f*,270
clunial,238*f*,239*f*,371*f*
inferior,54*f*,60*f*,369*f*,370
middle,54*f*,60*f*
superior,54*f*,60*f*
coccygeal,369*f*
cochlear,556*f*,557
cranial,22*f*,485–499,486*f* (*See also specific nerve*) cavernous sinus and,476,477*f*
classification of,486*t*
cranial cavity and,486*f*
fiber classification,486*t*
functions of,487*t*
intracavernous course of,551*f*
in neck,453,462
cutaneous antebrachial,301
anterior,300
lateral,299,300,315*f*
medial,54*f*,299*t*,301*f*,302*f*,315*f*
posterior,301
brachial,298*f*,301
inferior lateral,301
medial,54*f*,299*t*,301*f*,302*f*,315*f*
posterior,301
dorsal,301,302*f*
femoral anterior, of thigh,368*t*
lateral,54*f*,153*f*,179*f*,368,368*t*,369*f*,371*f*,382*f*
posterior,54*f*,238*f*,239*f*,369*f*,371*f*
lateral, of thigh,368*t*,369*f*
palmar,301,302*f*
posterior, of thigh,368*t*,370
sural,54*f*,368*t*,371
lateral,369*f*,371,392*f*
medial,392*f*
digital dorsal,301*f*,302*f*
palmar,301*f*,302*f*
common,302*f*

proper,302*f*
plantar,370
dorsal scapular,298*f*,299*t*,302*f*
ethmoidal,524*f*
anterior,490*f*
posterior,490*f*
facial (CN
VII),442*f*,469*f*,477*f*,485*f*–486*f*,487*t*,492*f*,493*f*,499,507*f*,511*f*,512*f*,513*f*,515
(*See also* Chorda tympani) branching pattern of,493*f*
buccal branches,492
cervical branch,492
course of,491*f*
glandular branches,491*f*
marginal mandibular branches,492
parotid plexus,511–512
in temporal bone fractures, *493*
temporal branches,492,492*f*,513*f*
zygomatic branches,492,513*f*
femoral,54*f*,150*f*,153*f*,154*f*,179*f*,368,368*t*,369*f*,371*f*,382*f*,383*f*
injury, *368*
saphenous branch,368
femoral cutaneous
Nerves (named) (*continued*) anterior, of thigh,368*t*
lateral,54*f*,153*f*,179*f*,368,368*t*,369*f*,371*f*,382*f*
posterior,54*f*,238*f*,239*f*,369*f*,371*f*
fibular,370–371,392*f*,415*f*
common,368*t*,369*f*,371*f*,392*f*
injury, *370*
deep,368*t*,369*f*,370
injury, *371*
superficial,368*t*,369*f*,370
injury, *371*
frontal,442*f*,490*f*,542*f*,550*t*,551*f*
ganglionic,518
genitofemoral,54*f*,153*f*,154*f*,155*f*,179*f*,180,208*f*,238*f*,239*f*,368*t*,369*f*,371*f*,382
femoral branch,153*f*,382*f*
genital branch,368
glossopharyngeal (CN
IX),442*f*,485*f*,487*t*,494,496*f*,499,528*f*,532*f*,532*t*,538,539*f*,553,553*f*,555

branches of,494,495*f*–496*f*,495*t*
gluteal,369*f*
inferior,368*t*,370
injury, *370*
superior,368*t*,370
hypogastric,180*f*,181*t*,237,241*f*–243*f*
left,237
right,237
hypoglossal (CN XII),442*f*,460*t*,461*f*,462,467*f*,469*f*,472*f*,485*f*–486*f*,487*t*,498,499*f*,532*f*,532*t*
fibers of,498
injury to, *498*
iliohypogastric,54*f*,60*f*,93*f*,153*f*,179*f*,180,203*f*,204*f*,208*f*,368,368*t*,369*f*,371*f*
cutaneous branch anterior,371*f*
lateral,371*f*
ilioinguinal,54*f*,153*f*,154*f*,155*f*,179*f*,180,203*f*,208*f*,238*f*,239*f*,264*f*,368,368*t*,36
infraorbital,490*f*,506*f*,511*f*,512*f*,520*t*,542*f*,543*f*,549*f*
infratrochlear,490*f*,511*f*,512*f*,542*f*,549*f*,551*f*
intercostal,52,52*f*,54*f*,60*f*,78,79*f*,90*f*,91*f*,93*f*,96*f*,97*f*,153*f*
cutaneous branches,60*f*
anterior,91*f*–92*f*,302*f*
lateral,91*f*,302*f*
posterior,78
intercostobrachial,297,302*f*
intermediate,492
interosseous,341*f*
anterior,298*f*,302*f*
posterior,301
labial,270
anterior,234*f*,270
posterior,238*f*,269*f*,270
lacrimal,442*f*,490*f*–491*f*,494,542*f*,550*t*,551*f*
laryngeal,463,470*f*,472*f*
external,469*f*,497*f*
inferior,465,466*f*,468*f*,497
left,79*f*,497*f*
right,497*f*
internal,468*f*,469*f*,497*f*
superior,80*f*,131*f*,462,466*f*,468*f*,469*f*

lateral pectoral,298*f*
lingual,490*f*,491*f*,492*f*,506*f*,507*f*,515*f*,517*f*,517*t*,528*f*,532*f*,532*t*,533*f*
long thoracic,298*f*,299*t*,307*f*
injury to, *306*
lumbar,55,56*f*,241*f*–242*f*
lumbar splanchnic,55,180,182*f*,184*f*–185*f*,240*f*–243*f*
mandibular (CN
V3),54*f*,460*f*,477*f*,489*f*,490*f*,491,506*f*,507*f*,514,515*f*,517*f*,528*f*,539*f*,542*f*,55
auriculotemporal branches,491
buccal branches,491
inferior alveolar branches,491
in infratemporal fossa,517*f*
lingual branches,491
meningeal branches,442*f*,491,517*f*
muscular branches,491
oral floor muscles and,527*f*,527*t*
masseteric,490*f*,506*f*,517*f*
maxillary (CN
V2),54*f*,442*f*,460*f*,477*f*,489*f*,490*f*,491,494,506*f*,507*f*,519*t*,523,538,539*f*,542
infraorbital branches,491,523
nasopalatine branches,491
orbital branches,491,519*t*
palatine branches, greater and lesser,491,520*t*,524*f*,529*f*
superior alveolar branches of,491
zygomatic branches,491
medial pectoral,298*f*,299*t*
median,54*f*,91*f*,297,297*f*,298*f*,299*t*,300,307*f*,315*f*,324*f*,325*f*,341*f*,344*f*
injury, *300*
palmar branch,300,301*f*,302*f*
palmar digital branches of,300,301*f*,302*f*
recurrent branch,302*f*
root of,307*f*
meningeal,517*t*
mental,490*f*,506*f*,511*f*,512*f*
musculocutaneous,54*f*,297,297*f*,298*f*,299,299*t*,301*f*,302*f*,307*f*,315*f*,341*f*
injury, *299*
mylohyoid,490*f*,506*f*,517*f*,528*f*,533*f*
nasal,511*f*,512*f*,520*t*
nasociliary,442*f*,490*f*,500*f*,542*f*,550*t*,551*f*

nasopalatine,442*f*,523,524*f*,529*f*
obturator,54*f*,150*f*,179*f*,235*f*,241*f*–243*f*,368*t*,369,369*f*,371*f*
injury, *369*
occipital,506*f*
greater,52*f*,54*f*,60*f*,453,460*f*,460*t*,461*f*,506,511*f*,512*f*
lesser,52*f*,54*f*,60*f*,459,460*f*,460*t*,461*f*,506,511*f*,512*f*,553*f*
third,52*f*,453,460*t*,461*f*,506
oculomotor (CN III),442*f*,477*f*,479,485*f*–486*f*,487*t*,488,489*f*,499,541,542*f*,548,550*t*,551*f*
branches of,543
injury, *548*
olfactory (CN I),442*f*,485*f*,487*t*,488,523
ophthalmic (V1),54*f*,460*f*,461*f*,477*f*,488*f*,489,489*f*,490*f*,506*f*,507*f*,523,542*f*,548,550*t*,55
nasociliary branch,489,543
optic (CN II),474*f*,477*f*,479*f*,485*f*–486*f*,487*t*,488,488*f*,541,542*f*,545*f*,547*f*,548,549*f*,55
palatine,442*f*
greater,491,520*t*,524*f*,529*f*
lesser,491,520*t*,524*f*,529*f*
palmar,300
pectoral lateral,299*t*
medial,298*f*,299*t*,307*f*
penile dorsal,234*f*,237,239*f*,241*f*–243*f*,264*f*,265*f*,266,266*f*
perineal,234*f*,237,238*f*,259*f*,270
peroneal (*See also* Fibular nerve) common,54*f*
deep,54*f*
superficial,54*f*
petrosal,436*f*,442*f*, *494*,554*f*
deep,491*f*,492, *494*,500*f*,518
greater,491*f*,492,492*f*,493*f*, *494*,518,556*f*
hiatus of canal for,442*f*,492*f*
lesser,493*f*, *494*,496*f*,517*f*,556*f*
hiatus of canal for,442*f*
phrenic,78,88,94*f*,98*f*,99,100*f*,121*f*,298*f*,459,460*t*,461*f*,470*f*,471*f*,472*f*
left,89*f*,94*f*,97*f*,100*f*
right,78*f*,89*f*,90*f*,94*f*,96*f*,101*f*
plantar digital,370
lateral,54*f*,368*t*,369*f*

medial,54*f*,368*t*,369*f*
pterygoid lateral,507*f*,517*f*
medial,490*f*,517*f*
of pterygoid canal,490*f*,491*f*,492,494,500*f*,518,520*t*
pudendal,223*f*,234*f*,237,238*f*,239*f*,240*f*,241*f*,242*f*,259*f*,270,368*t*,369*f*,374
block, *240*
deep perineal branch of,254,261
labial branches anterior,234*f*,270
posterior,238*f*,269*f*,270
radial,54*f*,297,297*f*,299*t*,301*f*–302*f*,315*f*,324*f*,341*f*
deep branch,298*f*,302*f*
injury, *301*
muscular branches,302*f*,313*f*
palmar digital branch,302*f*
radial groove for,288*f*,289
superficial branch,298*f*,301,302*f*,326*f*,341*f*
in triceps hiatus,312
rectal,271
inferior,234*f*,237,238*f*,239*f*,240*f*
recurrent,300
recurrent laryngeal,79*f*–80*f*,94*f*,131*f*,468*f*,469*f*,497
left,78*f*,79*f*,80,97*f*,100*f*,462,471*f*
paralysis, *465*
right,78*f*,79*f*,96*f*,462,497
saccular,494*f*,557*f*
sacral, first,241*f*–243*f*
sacral splanchnic,55,182*f*,184*f*,240*f*,243*f*
saphenous,54*f*,368,368*t*,369*f*
sciatic,369*f*,370,371*f*,374*f*,392*f*,414*f*,415*f*
injury, *370*
scrotal posterior,234*f*,239*f*,242*f*
spinal,60*f*,481*f* (*See also* Spinal nerves)
    splanchnic,23,51*f*,55,56*f*,57*f*,79*f*–80*f*,80,97*f*
greater,56*f*,80,80*f*,96*f*,97*f*,131*f*,180*f*,182*f*–183*f*,184*f*
least,80,184*f*–185*f*,241*f*–242*f*
lesser,80,180*f*,184*f*–185*f*,241*f*–242*f*
lumbar,55,180,182*f*,184*f*–185*f*,240*f*–243*f*
pelvic,55,56*f*,180*f*,181,182*f*,237,240*f*,241*f*–243*f*
sacral,55,182*f*,184*f*,240*f*,243*f*

thoracic,55,119,182*f*
stapedial,493*f*
to subclavius,298*f*,299*t*,302*f*,305*t*
subcostal,179,179*f*,203*f*,208*f*,369*f*
suboccipital,52*f*,453,460*t*,461*f*
subscapular lower,299*t*,307*f*
upper,299*t*
supraclavicular,54*f*,60*f*,93*f*,153*f*,302*f*,460*f*,460*t*,461*f*,469*f*
supraorbital,477*f*,490*f*,506,506*f*,511*f*,512*f*,542*f*,549*f*,551*f*
suprascapular,298*f*,313*f*,470*f*
supratrochlear,477*f*,490*f*,506,506*f*,511*f*,512*f*,542*f*,549*f*,551*f*
sural,54*f*,368*t*,369*f*,371,392*f*
temporal, deep,490*f*,512,514,515*f*,517*f*
thoracic,55,56*f*
thoracodorsal,298*f*,299*t*,302*f*,307*f*
tibial,54*f*,368*t*,369*f*,370,371*f*,374*f*,392*f*,415*f*
injury, *370*
transverse cervical,459,460*f*,460*t*,469*f*,506*f*
of neck,54*f*
trigeminal (CN V),477*f*,485*f*–486*f*,487*t*,489–491,491*f*,496*f*,499,507*f*,515*f*,541,542*f*,551*f*
characterization,489–491
deep temporal branch of,514
dental branches,490*f*
divisions of,489–491
frontal branch of,489
infraorbital branch,491,523
lacrimal branch of,489
mandibular division (V_3),54*f*,460*f*,477*f*,489*f*,490*f*,491,506*f*,514,515*f*,517*f*,528*f*,539*f*,542*f*
maxillary division (V_2),54*f*,442*f*,460*f*,477*f*,489*f*,490*f*,491,506*f*,507*f*,519*t*,523,538,539*f*,542*f*,55
meningeal branches,490*f*
motor root of,551*f*
muscular branches,517*t*
nasociliary branch of,489,543
neuralgia, *489*
ophthalmic division

(V1),54*f*,460*f*,461*f*,477*f*,488*f*,489,489*f*,490*f*,506*f*,507*f*,523,542*f*,548,550*t*,55
nasociliary branch,489,543
sensory root of,551*f*
trochlear (CN IV),442*f*,477*f*,485*f*–486*f*,487*t*,488,489*f*,541,542*f*,548,550*t*,551*f*
tympanic,493*f*,494,494*f*,495*f*,496*f*,554*f*
tympanic canaliculus with,437*f*,496*f*
ulnar,54*f*,91*f*,297,297*f*,298*f*,299*t*,300–301,307*f*,315*f*,324*f*,325*f*,341*f*,344*f*
compression, *324*
deep branches of,301,344*f*
dorsal branch,301*f*,302*f*
injury, *300*
muscular branches,301
palmar branch,301*f*,302*f*
superficial branches of,301,302*f*
ulnar groove for,288*f*,289,316*f*
utricular,494*f*,557*f*
vagus (CN
X),22,55,57*f*,78,78*f*,79*f*,94*f*,96*f*,97*f*,98*f*,99,100*f*,113*f*,118*f*,442*f*,454*t*,455*f*,46
abdominal segment,497
branches in neck,497*f*
branch to carotid sinus,495*f*
cervical cardiac branches,497*f*
external branch (external laryngeal),497*f*
inferior ganglion,495*f*
inferior laryngeal branch,465
internal branch (internal laryngeal),497*f*
pharyngeal branches,495*f*,496*f*
superior ganglion,496*f*
superior laryngeal branch,465
thoracic segment,497
vestibular,556*f*,557
vestibulocochlear (CN VIII),442*f*,485*f*–486*f*,487*t*,493,493*f*,494*f*,555*f*
cochlear root of,493,493*f*,494*f*,552*f*
vestibular root of,493,493*f*,494*f*,552*f*
zygomatic,490*f*,491,494,520*t*,542*f*,548
zygomaticofacial,506,542*f*
zygomaticotemporal,506,542*f*
Nerves (of region or structure) of abdomen,179–185
of abdominal wall,153*f*

of anterior abdominal wall,153*f*
of back,60*f*–61*f*
of brachial plexus,299*t*,553*f* (*See also* Brachial plexus) infraclavicular part of,297,299*t*
superior division,553*f*
of bronchial tree,130
of cervical region,470*f*
cranial (*See* Cranial nerves (CN)) of genitalia in female,238*f*,241*f*–243*f*
in male,239*f*
of head,453
of head and neck,453
of infratemporal fossa,517*t*
of internal organs, referred pain and,181,183*f*–185*f*
of intraperitoneal organs,184*f*
of larynx,465,466*f* (*See also* Laryngeal nerve) of lower limb,368–371
lumbar,55,56*f*
of lumbar plexus,179*f*,368*t*
of lungs,131,131*f*
of nasal cavities,524*f*
of neck,453,459–462 (*See also* Brachial plexus) cervical nerves,459–462
cervical sympathetic trunk,459–462
cranial nerves in,462
of orbit,548,550*t*,551*f*
oculomotor nerve injury, *548*
of pelvis,236–243
of perineum,236–243
female,237,238*f*
male,237,239*f*
of posterior mediastinum,79*f*
of pterygoid canal,490*f*,491*f*,492,494,500*f*,518,520*t*
of pterygopalatine fossa,520*t*
of scalp,506*f*
spinal,19*f*,22*f*,51–57 (*See also* Spinal nerves) of thorax,55,56*f*,78–81,78*f*–80*f*,81*t*
wall,90–93
of tongue,530
trunk wall,51*f*,52,52*f*
of upper limb,297–302
of urethra,257

Nervous system,18–23
  autonomic (*See* Autonomic innervation; Autonomic nervous system (ANS))
    cell classes within (*See* Neuroglia; Neurons) central (*See* Central nervous system (CNS)) classification of,18–19,18*f*,19*f*
  as functional subdivision,2*t*
  information flow in,23*f*
  parasympathetic (*See* Parasympathetic nervous system) peripheral (*See* Peripheral nervous system (PNS)) somatic (*See* Somatic nervous system) sympathetic (*See* Sympathetic nervous system) topography,19*f*
Nervus intermedius,492
Network dorsal carpal,294,294*f*
  dorsal venous of foot,366*f*,404
  of hand,295,295*f*,333,333*f*
  palmar,294
Neuralgia, trigeminal, *489*
Neurocranium,429–438
  bones of,429*f*,429*t*
Neuroglia,19
Neurons,18
  of ANS,57*f*
  characteristics of,18–19
Neurothelium,478*f*
Neurovasculature of abdomen,167–176
  of abdominal wall,151,151*f*–153*f*
  of anal canal,271
  of cranial cavity,442*f*
  of diaphragm,89*f*
  of female perineum,234*f*
  of hard palate,529*f*
  of heart,109–113,109*f*–110*f*,111*t*
  of larynx,465,466*f*
  of limb (lower),363–367,368–371,368*t*,369*f*,370,371*f*
  of limb (upper),291–296,297–302,299*t*,300,301*f*
  of lungs,128–130,129*f*
  of male perineum,234*f*
  of nasal cavities,523–524,524*f*
  of neck, anterior cervical region,469*f*
  of orbit,541*t*,547–551
  of parathyroid glands,467,468*f*

- passage into pterygopalatine fossa,541
- of pelvis,232–243
- of penis,264*f*,266*f*
- of perineum,232–242
- in female,234*f*
- in male,234*f*
- of peritoneum,166–167,167*f*
- parietal,166–167,167*f*
- visceral,166–167,167*f*
- of pharynx,538
- of popliteal fossa,364
- deep,392*f*
- superficial,392*f*
- of pterygopalatine fossa,520*t*
- of scrotum,264*f*
- of thoracic wall,72–81,90–92,91*f*–93*f*
- of thorax,72–76,73*f*–76*f*,74*t*,78–81,78*f*,80*f*,90–93
- of thyroid,467,468*f*
- of tympanic cavity,554*f*
- of vertebral column,44,45*f*–46*f*

Newborns, thymus in,98*f*

Nipple,82,82*f*–83*f*,84*f*

Nociceptive fibers, in autonomic nervous system,55

Node atrioventricular (AV),108,108*f*,111*t*,113*f*
- bronchopulmonary,77,78*f*,113*f*,130,130*f*
- lymph (*See* Lymph nodes) sinoatrial (SA),107,108*f*,111*t*,113*f*
- artery of,111
- branch to,109*f*–110*f*,111,111*t*

Nodule(s) of lunule,107
- lymph,17*f*

Nonvisual part, of retina,544

Nose apex of,521
- bleeding from, *523*
- bones of (*See* Nasal bones) internal (*See* Cavity) muscles of,503*f*–504*f*,504*t*,505*t*
- nasal cavity (*See* Nasal cavities) opening of nasal structures into,523*f*,523*t*
- root (bridge) of,521
- skeleton of,521*f*

Notch acetabular,226*f*

angular, of stomach,187,188*f*
cardiac,123*f*,124
clavicular,84*f*,285
fibular,399*f*
intercondylar,357,358*f*,384*f*,385*f*,387*f*
jugular,5*t*,84,84*f*
mandibular,432*f*,439
mastoid,434*f*,435*f*,437*f*
radial,289,289*f*
scapular,287*f*,304*f*,308*f*,312,313*f*
suprascapular artery and nerve in,312,313*f*
sciatic greater,225,226*f*,374*f*
lesser,225,226*f*,374*f*
tentorial,474,474*f*
trochlear,289,289*f*,317*f*
vertebral inferior,36*f*–37*f*
superior,36*f*–37*f*
Nuchal fascia,59,455
Nuchal ligament,41*f*,42,44*f*,457*f*,561*f*
MRI of,33*f*
Nuchal line inferior,59*f*,60*f*,432,434*f*,435*f*
median,434*f*
superior,39*f*,59*f*,60*f*,337*f*,432,434*f*,435*f*
supreme,434*f*,435*f*
Nuchal muscles,60*f*
Nuchal region, innervation of,461*f*
Nucleus/nuclei in CNS,19
dorsal motor,131*f*,501*f*,501*t*
Edinger-Westphal,501*f*,501*t*
oculomotor,501*f*
salivatory inferior,501*f*,501*t*
superior,491*f*,501*f*,501*t*
of solitary tract,491*f*
Nucleus, of hypoglossal nerve,499*f*
Nucleus ambiguus,498*f*
Nucleus pulposus,39,40*f*–42*f*,41
disk herniation and,40*f*,63*f*
Nursemaid's elbow, *318*
Nutcracker syndrome, *205*

O
Oblique abdominal external,12*f*,58*f*,91*f*,145,146*f*,147*t*,148*f*,149*f*,152*f*,154*f*,156*f*,166*f*,208*f*,334*f*,336
  internal,12*f*,58*f*,91*f*,145,146*f*,147*t*,148*f*,149*f*,152*f*,154*f*,156*f*,166*f*,208*f*,336*f*,33
  extraocular inferior,489*f*,547,547*f*,548*t*
  superior,489*f*,542*f*,547,547*f*,548*t*,549*f*
Oblique cord,317*f*
Oblique fissure, of lung,123*f*,124
Oblique line,430*f*,431*f*
Oblique pericardial sinus,100*f*,101
Oblique vein, of left atrium,110*f*
Obliquus capitis inferior,58*t*,59,60*f*
  superior,58*t*,59,60*f*
Obstruction, in superior vena cava syndrome, *76*
Obturator artery,167*f*,168*f*,231*f*,234*f*–235*f*,255*f*,363,363*f*
  left,236*f*
  right,168*f*,233*f*
Obturator canal,225,228,228*f*,229*f*,252*f*
Obturator externus,380*t*
Obturator fascia,228,229*f*,230*t*,261*f*,262*f*
Obturator foramen,225,225*f*,226*f*,265*f*,266*f*
Obturator internus,13*f*,223*f*,228,229*f*,230*f*,230*t*,253*f*,259*f*,261*f*,262*f*,275*f*,373*t*,409*f*,414*f*
  fascia,229*f*,252*f*
Obturator membrane,227*f*,228,228*f*,230*t*,373*t*,377*f*,380*t*
Obturator nerve,54*f*,150*f*,179*f*,235*f*,241*f*–243*f*,368*t*,369,369*f*,371*f*
  injury, *369*
Obturator vein,235*f*
  right,233*f*
Occipital artery,445*f*,446,446*t*,449*f*,472*f*,511*f*,512*f*
Occipital bone,7*f*,41*f*,432,433*f*,434*f*,437*f*,438*f*
  basilar part of,44*f*
Occipital condyles,39*f*,432,434*f*,435*f*,514*f*
Occipital crest external,434*f*,435*f*
  internal,436*f*
Occipital groove,437*f*
Occipital lobe,479,479*f*
Occipital lymph node,452*f*,452*t*
Occipital nerve,506*f*

- greater,52*f*,54*f*,60*f*,453,460*f*,460*t*,461*f*,506,511*f*,512*f*
- lesser,52*f*,54*f*,60*f*,459,460*f*,460*t*,461*f*,506,511*f*,512*f*,553*f*
- third,52*f*,453,460*t*,461*f*,506

Occipital protuberance,39*f*,435*f*,436*f*
- external,39*f*,44*f*,432,434*f*,435*f*
- internal,436*f*

Occipital sinus,475,476*f*,484*f*

Occipital triangle,454,454*t*,455*f*

Occipital veins,449,450*f*
- internal,484*f*

Occipitofrontalis,12*f*,502,503*f*,504*f*,504*t*,513*f*

Ocular conjunctiva,543,545*f*

Ocular fornix,543,543*f*

Oculomotor nerve (CN III),442*f*,477*f*,479,485*f*–486*f*,487*t*,488,489*f*,499,541,542*f*,548,550*t*,551*f*
- branches of,543
- injury, *548*
- nasociliary (sensory) root,551*f*
- parasympathetic root,489*f*,551*f*
- sympathetic root,489*f*,551*f*

Oculomotor nucleus,501*f*

Olecranon,285*f*,289,289*f*,317*f*,336*f*,338*f*,343*f*

Olecranon fossa,288*f*,316*f*,336*f*,343*f*

Olfactory bulb,486*f*,488,488*f*,524*f*

Olfactory fibers,486*f*,524*f*

Olfactory nerve (CN I),442*f*,485*f*,487*t*,488,523

Olfactory tract,486*f*,488,488*f*

Olfactory tracts,486*f*,488,488*f*

Oligodendrocytes,19,20*f*

Omental bursa,144*f*,163*f*–164*f*,164,186*f*,201*f*
- boundaries of,164*t*

Omental foramen,163*f*,164,186*f*,199*f*
- boundaries of,164*t*

Omentum greater,144*f*,161,161*f*,162*f*,163*f*,164*f*,169*f*,172*f*,186*f*,191*f*,192*f*,193*f*,194*f*,196*f*,1
- in situ,161*f*
- lesser,161,161*f*,163*f*–164*f*,169*f*,187*f*,199*f*
- in situ,161*f*
- lymphatic drainage of,178*t*

Omoclavicular (subclavian) triangle,454,454*t*,455*f*
Omohyoid,296*f*,455*f*,456,457*f*,458*t*,461*f*,469*f*,472*f*
Opening(s). *See also* Aperture; Foramina/*f*oramen; Hiatus acoustic, external,437*f*
  carotid canal,529*f*
  caval,79*f*,87*f*,88,149*f*
  of greater vestibular (Bartholin's) glands,268*f*
  in inguinal canal,153*t*,154
  in orbit, for neurovascular structures,541*t*
  of pelvis,228*f*
  saphenous,235*f*,366*f*,367,382*f*
Ophthalmic artery,447,448*f*,449*f*,477*f*,524*f*,542*f*,549*f*,551*f*
Ophthalmic nerve (V1),54*f*,460*f*,461*f*,477*f*,488*f*,489,489*f*,490*f*,506*f*,507*f*,523,542*f*,548,550*t*,551*f*
  nasociliary branch,489,543
Ophthalmic veins,451*f*,523
  inferior,450*f*,542*f*,547,550*f*
  superior,442*f*,450*f*,476*f*,542*f*,547,549*f*,550*f*
Opponens digiti minimi,331*t*,339*f*,406*t*
Opponens pollicis,12*f*,321*f*,325*f*,330*f*,331*t*,339*f*
Opposition of digits,328*t*
  of fingers,328*t*
  at thumb joint,328*t*
  of upper limb joints,284
Optic canal,431*f*,432,436*f*,438*f*,440*f*,442*f*,540*f*,541,541*t*
Optic chiasm,479*f*,480*f*,488,488*f*,551*f*
Optic disk,488,544,545*f*
Optic nerve (CN II),474*f*,477*f*,479*f*,485*f*–486*f*,487*t*,488,488*f*,541,542*f*,545*f*,547*f*,548,549*f*,550*t*,5
Optic part, of retina,544
Optic tract,488,488*f*
Optic tracts,488,488*f*
Oral cavity,519*t*,522*f*,525–526,553*f*
  floor of lymphatic drainage of,531*f*
  muscles of,527*f*,527*t*
  organization/boundaries,525*f*
  proper,525
  topography,526*f*
Oral fissure,540*f*
Oral mucosa,527*f*,530,533*f*

Oral region, 525–533
Oral vestibule, 525, 526*f*
Ora serrata, 545*f*
Orbicularis oculi, 12*f*, 503*f*, 504*f*, 504*t*, 543, 543*f*
Orbicularis oris, 12*f*, 503*f*, 504*f*, 505*t*
Orbit, 7*f*, 431*f*, 519*t*
  adipose tissue of, 551*f*
  arteries of, 547, 549*f*
  bones of, 431*f*, 440*f*, 540*f*–541*f*
  floor of, 431*f*, 440*f*, 547
  innervation of, 548, 550*t*, 551*f*
  nerves of, 548, 550*t*, 551*f*
  oculomotor nerve injury, *548*
  neurovasculature of, 541*t*, 547–551
  openings for neurovascular structures, 541*t*
  periosteum of, 551*f*
  topography, 542*f*
  veins of, 547, 550*f*
Orbital fissure, 440*f*, 490*f*
  inferior, 435*f*, 490*f*, 514*f*, 540*f*, 541, 541*f*, 541*t*, 542*f*
  superior, 432, 438*f*, 440*f*, 442*f*, 488*f*, 490*f*, 540*f*, 541, 541*f*, 541*t*, 542*f*
Orbital floor, 431*f*, 440*f*, 547
Orbital plate, of ethmoid bone, 439*f*, 440*f*, 540*f*
Orbital region, 543–544
Orbital roof, 543*f*
Orbital septum, 543, 543*f*, 544*f*, 549*f*
Orbital surface, of sphenoid bone, 438*f*, 540*f*
Organ(s). *See also individual organs and tracts* of abdomen and pelvis, 23, 160, 160*t*, 186*f*, 244*f*, 248*f*, 249*f*, 250*f*
  accessory, of gastrointestinal tract, 196–199
  autonomic nervous system and, 56*f*
  extraperitoneal, 160*f*, 160*t*
  intraperitoneal, 160, 160*f*, 160*t*, 184*f*, 202, 202*f*
  pelvic prolapse of, *262*
  urinary, 254–258
  referred pain and, *57*, 181, 183*f*–185*f*, 205
  retroperitoneal, 160*f*, 165–166, 166*f*, 173
  spiral (of Corti), 493, 556
Orifice, 249, 249*f*

cardiac,165*f*,187
of ejaculatory duct,246*f*
external os, of uterine cervix,249,249*f*
ileocecal,193,194*f*
internal os, of uterine cervix,249,249*f*
pyloric,188*f*,189,189*f*
right atrioventricular,105*f*
urethral,256*f*,269*f*
external,224*f*,238*f*,252*f*,253*f*,257,258*f*,265*f*,266,268*f*
internal,255*f*,257
of urethral glands,256*f*,257*f*
vaginal,252*f*,267,268*f*,269*f*
Oropharynx,534,534*f*,561*f*
oral cavity opening via faucial isthmus,525
oral cavity organization/ boundaries,525*f*
oral cavity topography,526*f*
Os (orifice), of uterine cervix external,249,249*f*
internal,249,249*f*
Ossicles, auditory,554*f*,555
Ossicular chain, propagation of sound waves by,556*f*
Ossification centers of primary,8
secondary,8
developmental,273*f*
endochondral,8
membranous,8
primary, centers,8
processes of,8
secondary, centers,8
Osteoblasts, *34*
Osteomyelitis,345*f*
Osteoporosis, *34*
Ostium/ostia of bridging veins,473*f*,474*f*
of uterine tube,249*f*
Otic capsule,555*f*
Otic ganglion,491,494,496*f*,501*f*,517*f*
Otitis media, *555*
Outlet pelvic,222,222*f*,224*f*
thoracic,70*f*,85
Oval foramen. *See* Foramen ovale Oval fossa (fossa

ovalis),104,105*f*,115*t*,116,116*f*
Oval window,493*f*,554*f*,555,555*f*,556*f*
Ovarian artery,167*f*,168,168*t*,231*f*,232,249*f*,255*f*,258*f*
  left,175*f*,206*f*,208*f*,235*f*
  right,174*f*,206*f*,208*f*,233*f*
Ovarian plexus,180*t*,181*t*,241*f*,247
Ovarian veins,173,175*f*,231*f*,233*f*,235*f*,236,249*f*,255*f*,258*f*
  left,174*f*,206*f*,208*f*,235*f*
  right,76*f*,174*f*,206*f*,208*f*,233*f*
Ovaries,233*f*,234*f*,249*f*,253*f*
  germinal epithelial covering,251*f*
  ligaments of,247,248*f*,249*f*,251*f*,253*f*,255*f*,258*f*
  lymphatic drainage of,178*t*,247
  suspensory ligament of,232,247,253*f*,258*f*
  ultrasound of,275*f*
P
Pain foregut,187
  hindgut, *187*
  from kidneys,206
  localization in gastrointestinal tract, *187*
  midgut,187
  pericardial,99
  referred, *57*,181,183*f*–185*f*,205
  and kidney,185*f*
  transmission during labor and delivery, *240*
  from ureters,207
Palate,526–529
  cleft, *528*
  hard,521,525,525*f*,526,553*f*,561*f*
  neurovasculature of,529*f*
  soft,494,525*f*,528,534*f*,538*f*
  muscles of,529*f*,529*t*
Palatine aponeurosis,529*f*,529*t*,537*t*
Palatine artery descending,447*f*,516*t*,524*f*
  greater,442*f*,447*f*,516*t*,524*f*
  lesser,442*f*,447*f*,516*t*,524*f*
Palatine bone,434*f*,438*f*,439,514*f*,522*f*,528*f*,541*f*
  horizontal plate,435*f*,522*f*
  maxillary process,514*f*

pyramidal process, 541*f*

Palatine foramen, 435*f*, 529*f*

greater, 435*f*, 442*f*

lesser, 435*f*, 442*f*

Palatine nerve, 442*f*

greater, 491, 520*t*, 524*f*, 529*f*

lesser, 491, 520*t*, 524*f*, 529*f*

Palatine processes, 434*f*, 439

of maxilla, 434*f*, 435*f*, 440*f*, 514*f*, 522*f*

median, 435*f*, 526*f*

transverse, 435*f*, 526*f*

Palatine suture median, 435*f*, 526*f*, 529*f*

transverse, 435*f*, 526*f*

Palatine tonsil, 17*f*, 525*f*, 526*f*, 530*f*, 534*f*, 538, 538*f*

Palatine uvula, 525, 525*f*, 526*f*, 528, 529*f*, 529*t*, 534*f*, 538*f*, 553*f*, 561*f*

Palatine vein, 451*f*

Palatoglossal arch, 526*f*, 528, 530*f*

Palatoglossal fold, 534*f*

Palatoglossus, 526*f*, 527*f*, 528, 529*t*, 530, 531*f*

Palatopharyngeal arch, 526*f*, 528, 530*f*

Palatopharyngeus, 94*f*, 528, 529*t*, 535, 536*f*, 537*t*

Palatovaginal canal, 435*f*, 518*f*

Palm, of hand, 328–332

Palmar (volar), location/direction term, 3*f*, 3*t*

Palmar aponeurosis, 291, 319*t*, 325*f*, 329, 330*f*, 331*t*, 340*f*

Palmar arch deep arterial, 292, 293*f*, 294, 294*f*

deep venous, 295*f*

superficial, 293*f*, 294*f*, 325*f*

Palmar artery, 292

superficial, 294*f*, 324*f*

Palmar branch deep, of ulnar artery, 294

of median nerve, 300, 301*f*, 302*f*

of radial artery, superficial, 293*f*, 325*f*

of ulnar nerve, 301*f*, 302*f*

Palmar carpal ligament, 324*f*, 325, 325*f*

Palmar cutaneous nerves, 301, 302*f*

Palmar digital arteries, 293*f*, 294, 294*f*

Palmar digital branches of median nerve, 300, 301*f*, 302*f*

of radial nerve, 302*f*

Palmar digital nerves,301*f*,302*f*
    common,302*f*
    proper,302*f*
Palmar interossei,332*t*
Palmaris brevis,325*f*,330*f*,331*t*,340*f*
Palmaris longus,319*t*,325*f*,330*f*,338*f*,339*f*,340*f*,341*f*
Palmar ligaments,322*f*
Palmar metacarpal artery,294,294*f*
Palmar network,294
Palmar vein, superficial,324*f*
Palpebral conjunctiva,543
Palpebral fissure,504*t*,543,543*f*
    muscles of,504*t*
Palpebral ligaments,543,544*f*,549*f*
Palsy Erb-Duchenne, *298*
    Klumpke's, *298*
Pampiniform plexus,155*f*,155*t*,156*f*,157,157*f*–158*f*,235*f*,247
    varicocele and, *157*
Pancreas,163*f*–164*f*,165*f*,169*f*,186*f*,189*f*,190*f*,192*f*,199*f*,200–202,201*f*,211*f*,212*f*
    anterior view of,200*f*
    autonomic nervous system and,56*f*,182*t*,183*f*
    bloody supply of,202
    body,166*f*,199*f*,200,200*f*,203*f*
    carcinoma of, *202*
    celiac trunk and,170*f*
    CT of,212*f*
    functions of,200
    head of,200,200*f*
    innervation of,56*t*,202
    location of,202
    lymphatic drainage of,178*t*,202
    main duct,198
    neck of,186*f*,200,200*f*,204*f*,208*f*
    relationship to abdominal vascular structures,202
    structure of,202
    sympathetic/parasympathetic innervation,56*t*
    ultrasound of,210*f*
    uncinate process of,186*f*,200,200*f*
Pancreatic arteries dorsal,168,170*f*

great,170*f*
inferior,168,170*f*,176*f*
anastomoses,170*f*
Pancreatic duct,199*f*
accessory,189,189*f*,199*f*–200*f*,202
main,189*f*,198,199*f*,200*f*,202
sphincter of,199*f*
Pancreaticoduodenal artery,172*f*,190
anterior superior,169*f*,170*f*,171*f*,176*f*
inferior,168,168*t*,169*f*,170*f*,171*f*
posterior superior,169*f*,170*f*,176*f*
Pancreaticoduodenal branch, superior, of gastroduodenal artery,190
Pancreaticoduodenal vein,175*t*
Pancreatic plexus,181*t*,182*f*
Pancreatic tail,168,170*f*,200,200*f*,203*f*,208*f*
artery of,170*f*
Pancreatic veins,175*t*
Papilla/papillae duodenal major,189,189*f*,199*f*,202
minor,189,189*f*,199*f*,202
filiform,530
foliate,530
fungiform,530
renal,205,205*f*
sublingual,527*f*,532,533*f*
vallate,530
Papillary muscle,106*f*
anterior,104,105*f*,108*f*
posterior,104,105*f*
septal,104
Paracolic gutters,164,165*f*–166*f*,165*t*
Paracolpium,230,231*f*,252*f*,254
Paraesophageal lymph node,76*f*,78*f*
Paraesophageal nerve,76*f*
Paralysis, of recurrent laryngeal nerve, *465*
Paranasal sinuses,521
CT of,560*f*
location of,523*f*
Parasternal line,4*t*
Parasternal lymph nodes,76*f*,78*f*,83*f*,90,130*f*,152*f*

Parasympathetic ganglia,56*f*
  in head,501*t*
Parasympathetic innervation of eye,56*t*
  of gastrointestinal tract,56*t*
  of heart,56*t*
  of lungs,56*t*
  of male sex organs,56*t*
  of pancreas,56*t*
  of rectum,259
Parasympathetic nervous system,55,56*t*,182*f*,182*t*
  in abdomen,182*f*,182*t*
  cranial part of,56*f*,486*t*,501*f*
  craniosacral component,55
  effect on organs,56*t*
  in abdomen,182*f*,182*t*
  in pelvis,182*f*,182*t*
  fibers from,55
  peripheral,81*t*
  sacral part of,56*f*
  smooth muscles and,55
  structure of,501*f*
  in thorax,80*f*
Parasympathetic root, of oculomotor nerve,489*f*,551*f*
Parasympathetic visceral responses,22
Parathormone,467
Parathyroid glands,455*f*,467–469,468*f*
  arteries of,468*f*
  neurovasculature of,467,468*f*
  veins of,468*f*
Paratracheal lymph node,76*f*,78*f*,130,130*f*
Paraumbilical veins,150*f*,176*f*
Para-urethral glands,257
Paravertebral ganglia,55
  gray rami communicans connecting,55
  white rami communicans connecting,55
Paravesical fossa,251*f*
Paravesical space,230*f*
Parenchyma,82,134*f*
  of mammary gland,82,83*f*

  parietal bone,7*f*,435*f*,508*f*
Parietal artery,446
Parietal bone,7*f*,429,430*f*,433*f*,434*f*,435*f*,437*f*,438*f*,508*f*
Parietal eminence,434*f*
Parietal foramen,433*f*,434*f*
Parietal layer,23
  of peritoneum,166–167
  of pleura,120
  of serous pericardium,99,99*f*,100*f*
Parietal lobe,479,479*f*
Parietal lymph nodes in abdomen,177*f*
  in pelvis,177*f*
Parietal pelvic fascia,230,231*f*
Parietal peritoneum,144*f*,146*f*,150*f*,160*f*,165*f*,166–167,166*f*,167*f*,190*f*,199*f*,203*f*,204*f*,2
  neurovasculature of,166–167,167*f*
Parietal pleura,71*f*,120
  cervical part of,89*f*,118*f*,121*f*
  costal part of,89*f*,96*f*,97*f*,120*f*,121*f*
  diaphragmatic part of,89*f*,94*f*,98*f*,118*f*,120,120*f*,121*f*,146*f*,148*f*,196*f*
  innervation of,131
  mediastinal part of,89*f*,94*f*,97*f*,98*f*,99*f*,100*f*,101*f*,118*f*,120*f*,121*f*,196*f*
  parts of,121*f*
Parotid duct,511,511*f*,512*f*,513*f*,532,533*f*
Parotid gland,469*f*,470*f*,491*f*,494,496*f*,500*t*,511,511*f*
  accessory,533*f*
Parotid lymph node,512
  deep,452*f*,452*t*
  superficial,452*f*,452*t*
Parotid plexus,492,492*f*,507*f*,511–512,512*f*
  buccal branch,492,492*f*
  cervical branch,492
  marginal mandibular branch,492
  temporal branch,492,492*f*
  zygomatic branches,492,492*f*
Parotid region,511–512
Pars interarticularis, lumbar vertebrae,35
Pars intermedia, of female perineum,269,269*f*
Patella,7*f*,357*f*,376*f*,384*f*,386*f*,387*f*,388*f*,408*f*,408*f*–409*f*,411*f*,417*f*

- anterior surface of,359*f*
- apex of,357,359*f*
- articular surface of,359*f*,389*f*
- base of,357,359*f*
- bipartite, *359*,359*f*
- lateral surface of,359*f*
- medial surface of,359*f*

Patellar ligament,10*f*,12*f*,357,383,385*f*,387*f*,388*f*,389*f*,408*f*–409*f*,411*f*

Patellar retinacula,383
- lateral longitudinal,385*f*
- lateral transverse,385*f*
- medial longitudinal,385*f*
- medial transverse,385*f*

Patellar surface, of femur,357,358*f*

Patellar tendon reflex,53, *383*

Patellofemoral joint,384*f*,386*f*

Patent ductus arteriosus, *116*,116*f*

Pathway(s) lymphatic,17,17*f*,152*f*
- peripheral nerve of autonomic nervous system,55–57,56*f*–57*f*,56*t*
- sensory cutaneous sensation patterns,54*f*
- of somatic nervous system,51–55,51*f*–55*f*
- portosystemic,173,173*f*,174*t*,176*f*

Pecten, anal (white zone),270*f*,271,272*f*

Pectinate (dentate) line,270*f*,271,272*f*

Pectinate muscle,105*f*

Pectineal ligament,150*f*,227*f*

Pectineal line,222,225,226*f*,228*f*,376*f*
- of bony pelvis,225

Pectineus,12*f*,154*f*,380*t*,383*f*,408*f*

Pectoral fascia,83*f*,291

Pectoral girdle,284,285,285*f*,286*f*,303–305
- depression of,306*t*
- elevation of,306*t*
- joints of,303,303*f*–305*f*
- movements of,306*t*
- muscles of,304–305,305*t*,306*f*
- protraction of,306*t*
- retraction,306*t*
- rotation,306*t*

Pectoralis major,12*f*,83*f*,85,93*f*,146*f*,296*f*,306*f*,307*f*,309,310*f*,310*t*,312*t*,334*f*,335*f*
  abdominal part,334*f*
  clavicular part,334*f*,335*f*
  sternocostal part,334*f*,335*f*
  minor,12*f*,83*f*,85,146*f*,292,296*f*,304,305*t*,306*f*,335*f*
Pectoral nerves lateral,298*f*,299*t*,307*f*
  medial,298*f*,299*t*,307*f*
Pectoral nodes,296,296*f*
Pectoral region,284,284*f*
Pedal artery, dorsal,14*f*,365,365*f*
Pedal muscles, short,404*f*
Pedicle(s), vertebral,34*f*,35*f*,36*f*,40*f*,43*f*
Pelvic brim,222
Pelvic cavity,222,223*t*,224*f*
  false pelvis,222,222*f*,223*t*
  true pelvis,222,222*f*
Pelvic diameters,224*f*, *225*
Pelvic diaphragm,222,223*f*,228,260*f*
  fascia of,223*f*,230*f*,254*f*,259*f*,261*f*,262*f*
  inferior,260*f*
  superior,260*f*
  muscles of,230*t*
Pelvic fascia,230–231
  endopelvic,225, *225*,230,230*f*
  female,231*f*,251*f*
  male,230*f*
  parietal,230,231*f*
  tendinous arch of,230,231*f*,252*f*
  visceral,230,231*f*,244*f*,248*f*,255*f*
  on rectum,244*f*,248*f*
  on urinary bladder,244*f*,248*f*
Pelvic floor,228–230
  inferior view of,229*f*
  medial view of,229*f*
  muscles of,229*f*,230*t*
  superior view of,229*f*
Pelvic ganglia,181*t*,184*f*
Pelvic girdle,222*f*,225,356,357*f*,372*f*,377*f*. *See also* Coxal (hip) bone functional anatomy of,372*f*

  joints of,222*f*,225
  ligaments of,377*f*
Pelvic inflammatory disease (PID),254
Pelvic inlet,222,222*f*,223*t*
  interspinous diameter,224*f*
  oblique diameter left,224*f*
  right,224*f*
  plane of,222,224*f*
  transverse diameter,224*f*
Pelvic organs, prolapse of, *262*
Pelvic outlet,222,222*f*,224*f*
Pelvic pain line,237
Pelvic splanchnic nerves,55,56*f*,180*f*,181,182*f*,237,240*f*,241*f*–243*f*
Pelvic urinary organs,254–258
Pelvic viscera,244
  bicornuate uterus, *249*
Pelvic walls,228–230
  muscles of,230*t*
Pelvis,223*f*. *See also* Pelvic floor anterosuperior view of,227*f*
  arteries of,232–236
  autonomic nervous system and,180–181,181*t*,182*t*
  autonomic plexus of,166–167,167*f*,180–181,180*f*,181*t*
  blood supply to,233*f*
  in female,233*f*–235*f*,254,269*f*
  in male,233*f*,235*f*
  bony,225–228
  apertures of,222,224*f*
  arcuate line of,225
  components of,225
  joints of,225
  pectineal line of,225
  clinical correlations anal fissures, *271*
  benign prostatic hypertrophy, *247*
  carcinoma of prostate, *247*
  culdocentesis, *254*
  ectopic pregnancy, *247*
  episiotomy, *262*
  hemorrhoids, *271*
  pain transmission during labor and delivery, *240*

pelvic diameters,224*f*, *225*
pelvic organ prolapse, *262*
pregnancy, ligament laxity and increased mobility during, *228*
prostatectomy, *247*
pudendal nerve block, *240*
rectal examination, *259*
retrograde ejaculation, *267*
urethral rupture in males, *257*
CT of,273*t*,274*f*
developmental correlation, bicornuate uterus, *249*
divisions of,223*t*
false,222,222*f*,223*t*
female,233*f*
CT of,274*f*
fascia of,231*f*
peritoneal relationships,251*f*
genital structures,247–254
innervation of,238*f*,241*f*–242*f*
ligaments of,252*f*
MRI of,248*f*,275*f*
parasagittal section,248*f*
peritoneal relationships in,251*f*
peritoneum in,250*f*
general features of,222–225
girdle of (*See* Pelvic girdle) innervation of female,238*f*,241*f*–242*f*
male,239*f*,243*f*
ligaments of,227*f*,250,252*f*
lymphatic drainage of,77,202,236,237*t*
lymphatic trunks in,178*f*
male,230*f*,233*f*,244
genital structures,155–159
innervation of,239*f*,243*f*
MRI of,266*f*
nerves of,236–243
neurovasculature of,232–243
openings of,228*f*
overview of,222–225
parasympathetic nervous system in,182*f*,182*t*
parietal lymph nodes in,177*f*

  plexuses in,180*f*,181*t*
  posterior view of,227*f*
  radiograph of,273*f*–274*f*
  as regional subdivision,2*f*
  renal,205,205*f*,207*f*
  sagittal section,248*f*
  spaces deep,222
  peritoneal,232*f*
  subperitoneal,23,225,232*f*
  superficial,222
  symphyseal surface of,222*f*
  true,222,222*f*,223*t*
  veins of,232–236
  wall muscles of,229*f*,230*t*
Penile artery of bulb,266
  deep,257,257*f*,264*f*–265*f*,266,267*f*
  dorsal,232,233*f*,235*f*,264,264*f*,265*f*,266*f*,267*f*
Penile fascia deep (Buck’s),245*f*,264*f*,265*f*,266,266*f*
  superficial,153,264*f*
Penile nerve, dorsal,234*f*,237,239*f*,241*f*–243*f*,264*f*,265f,266,266*f*
Penile part, of urethra,265*f*
Penile septum,265*f*
Penile vein,235*f*
  dorsal,234*f*
  deep,233*f*,234*f*,235*f*,264*f*,266*f*,267*f*
  superficial,245*f*,266,266*f*
Penis,224*f*,264–266
  arteries of,264
  body of,264,265*f*,266*f*
  bulb of,223*f*,230*f*,257*f*,264*f*,265*f*,266,266*f*
  artery of,266
  cavernous nerves of,242*f*
  corona,266
  corpus cavernosum of,158*f*,257,257*f*,265*f*,266,266*f*,267*f*
  corpus spongiosum of,157*f*–158*f*,234*f*,245*f*,257*f*,265*f*,266,266*f*,267*f*
  crus of,223*f*,230*f*,257*f*,264,265*f*
  dorsum of,235*f*,266*f*
  erectile bodies,264
  glans of,157*f*,224*f*,235*f*,245*f*,257*f*,265*f*,266,266*f*

lymphatic drainage,266
neurovasculature of,264*f*,266*f*
parts of,264*f*,266*f*
prepuce of,245*f*,265*f*
root of,261,264,265*f*,266*f*
suspensory ligament of,235*f*,264*f*
Peptic ulcers, *190*
Perforating arteries,363,363*f*
Perforating branch of fibular artery,364,364*f*,365*f*
of superficial palmar artery,294*f*
Perforating/perforator veins,16
of upper limb,295,295*f*,315*f*
Perianal plexus,272*f*
Perianal skin,270*f*,271
Peribronchial network,130*f*
Pericardiacophrenic arteries,74*t*,88,89*f*,94*f*,96*f*–98*f*,99,100*f*,121*f*
Pericardiacophrenic vein,89*f*,94*f*,96*f*–98*f*,100*f*,121*f*
Pericardial cavity,23,99*f*,100–101,100*f*
cardiac tamponade and, *100*
Pericardial nodes,97*f*
Pericardial recesses,100,100*f*
Pericardial sac,70,99
Pericardial sinus oblique,100*f*,101
transverse,99*f*,100–101,100*f*
surgical significance of, *101*
Pericarditis, *99*
Pericardium,99–101
cavity of (*See* Pericardial cavity)
fibrous,88,94*f*,96*f*,98*f*,99,100*f*,101*f*,103*f*,120*f*,121*f*,196*f*
outer,99*f*
serous parietal layer of,99,99*f*,100*f*
reflections,99*f*
visceral layer of,99,99*f*,102,103*f*
Perichondrium,7
Pericranium,502*f*
Perikaryon, of nerve cells,20*f*
Perilymph,556
Perimysium,11,11*f*
Perineal artery,232,233*f*,253*f*,264*f*,267,269*f*

Perineal body,232*f*,238*f*,239*f*,244*f*,248*f*,261*f*,262,262*f*,271
Perineal branches deep, of pudendal nerve,254,261
    of internal pudendal artery,262
Perineal fascia, superficial,145,153,223*f*,223*t*,253*f*,261,261*f*
Perineal ligament, transverse,234*f*
Perineal membrane,222,223*f*,223*t*,230*f*,234*f*,238*f*,253*f*,257,258*f*,261,261*f*,262*f*,265*f*,266
Perineal muscles deep transverse,229*f*,245*f*,246*f*,253*f*,261,263*f*,263*t*,265f,266*f*
    superficial transverse,238*f*,239*f*,261,261*f*,262*f*,263*f*,268*f*,269*f*
Perineal nerve,234*f*,237,238*f*,259*f*,270
Perineal raphe,224*f*,268*f*
Perineal region,224*f*
Perineal spaces,261–262,263*t*
    deep,261,263*t*
    superficial,261,263*t*
Perineal vein,233*f*,269*f*
Perineum,222,223*f*,261–272
    anal triangle of,222,224*f*,263*t*,270–272,270*f*
    arteries of,232–236
    boundaries of,224*f*,261,262*f*
    clinical correlations involving anal fissures, *271*
    benign prostatic hypertrophy, *247*
    bicornuate uterus, *249*
    carcinoma of prostate, *247*
    culdocentesis, *254*
    ectopic pregnancy, *247*
    episiotomy, *262*
    hemorrhoids, *271*
    pain transmission during labor and delivery, *240*
    pelvic diameters,224*f*, *225*
    pregnancy, ligament laxity and increased mobility during, *228*
    prolapse of pelvic organs, *262*
    prostatectomy, *247*
    pudendal nerve block, *240*
    rectal examination, *259*
    retrograde ejaculation, *267*
    urethral rupture in males, *257*
    contents of in females only,223*f*
    in males only,223*f*

  divisions of,223*t*
  female,223*f*
  nerves of,238*f*
  neurovasculature of,234*f*
  lymphatic drainage of,236,237*t*,270
  in male,264
  lymphatics of,236
  male,223*f*
  fascia of,262*f*
  muscles of,262*f*
  nerves of,237,239*f*
  neurovasculature of,234*f*
  muscles of,262–263,263*f*
  nerves of,236–243
  in female,238*f*
  in male,237,239*f*
  neurovasculature of,232–242
  in female,234*f*
  in male,234*f*
  overview of,222–225
  regions of,224*f*
  subcutaneous perineal space,223*t*
  urogenital triangle of,222,223*f*,224*f*,225,264–270,266*f*,269*f*
  veins of,236
Periorbita,477*f*,543*f*
Periorbital fat,541
Periosteal layer, cerebral,474,474*f*,475*f*,502*f*
Periosteum,7,8*f*
  of orbit,551*f*
  of skull,502,502*f*
Peripheral, location/direction term,3*t*
Peripheral nerve pathways of autonomic nervous system,55–57,56*f*–57*f*,56*t*
  sensory cutaneous sensation patterns,54*f*
  of somatic nervous system,51–55,51*f*–55*f*
Peripheral nervous system (PNS),22–23
  anatomical components,23
  defined,18
  functional components,23
  glial cells in,19,20*f*

  - information flow in,23*f*
  - mixed nerves in,22
  - nerves in,19
- Peripheral parasympathetic nervous system,81*t*
- Peripheral zone, of prostate,246
- Perirenal fat capsule,201*f*,204,204*f*,206*f*
- Peritoneal abscesses, *165*
- Peritoneal cavity,23,144*f*,160,160*f*,165*f*
  - drainage spaces,165*t*
  - mesenteries of,162*f*
  - organs of,186–208
  - structures of,161,161*f*–163*f*,166–167,166*f*
  - subdivisions of,164
  - viscera of,166–167,167*f*
- Peritoneal folds,147,149
- Peritoneal fossae,151
- Peritoneal infections, *165*
- Peritoneal ligaments,161
- Peritoneal recesses,231
- Peritoneal relationships,144*f*
  - in abdomen,144*f*
  - in female pelvis,251*f*
  - primary,160
  - secondary,160
  - spleen,203,203*f*
  - subperitoneal,160
- Peritoneal space, in pelvis,232*f*
- Peritoneal structures,161,161*f*–163*f*,166–167,166*f*
- Peritoneum,223*f*
  - in female pelvis,250*f*
  - infections of, *165*
  - mesenteries and,144*f*,160,160*t*,161,162*f*,163*f*,164,165*f*,168*f*
  - neurovasculature of,166–167,167*f*
  - parietal,144*f*,146*f*,150*f*,160*f*,165*f*,166–167,166*f*,167*f*,190*f*,199*f*,203*f*,204*f*,230*f*
  - neurovasculature of,166–167,167*f*
  - relationships in female pelvis,250*f*
  - relationship to abdominal structures,144*f*,160,160*f*,160*t*
  - structures of,161,161*f*–163*f*
  - urogenital,255*f*

- uterus and,250,250*f*,253*f*,255*f*
- visceral,144*f*,160*f*,166–167,244*f*,245*f*,248*f*,251*f*,260*f*
- of bladder,248*f*,250,255*f*
- neurovasculature of,166–167
- of rectum,248*f*,250,250*f*
- of uterus,250,250*f*,253*f*,255*f*

Peritonitis, *165*

Periumbilical veins,92*f*,173,176*f*

Periurethral zone, of prostate,246

Permanent teeth,526*f*

Peroneal nerve. *See also* Fibular nerve common,54*f*
- deep,54*f*
- superficial,54*f*

Perpendicular plate, of ethmoid bone,431*f*,439,439*f*,440*f*,488*f*,522*f*

Pes anserinus,378,381*t*,390,408*f*–409*f*,411*f*

Pes planus, *402*

Petromastoid part, of temporal bone,437*f*

Petro-occipital fissure,436*f*

Petrosal nerve,436*f*,442*f*,494,554*f*
- deep,491*f*,492,494,500*f*,518
- greater,491*f*,492,492*f*,493*f*,494,518,556*f*
- hiatus of canals for,442*f*,492*f*
- lesser,493*f*,494,496*f*,517*f*,556*f*

Petrosal sinus,437*f*,484*f*
- inferior,442*f*,451*f*,476*f*,476*t*,477
- superior,451*f*,476*f*,476*t*,477

Petrosal veins,484*f*

Petrotympanic fissure,435*f*,437*f*,442*f*,492*f*

Petrous apex, of temporal bone,437*f*

Petrous part of internal carotid artery,446,448*f*,481,482*f*
- of temporal bone,429*t*,432,434*f*,435*f*,436*f*,437*f*,441,441*f*,474,477,482*f*,552*f*,555*f*

Petrous ridge, of temporal bone,437*f*,482*f*,489

Peyer’s patches,17,190,192*f*
- in ileum,17,17*f*

Phalanges,7*f*,357*f*
- of foot,361*f*–362*f*,362,400*f*
- of hand,285*f*,289,290,290*f*
- base of,328*f*

  distal, 290*f*, 291*f*, 321*f*, 328*f*
  head of, 328*f*
  middle, 290*f*, 291*f*, 321*f*, 328*f*
  proximal, 290*f*, 291*f*, 321*f*, 328*f*
  shaft of, 290*f*, 321*f*, 328*f*
Pharyngeal artery, ascending, 444*f*, 445*f*, 446, 446*t*, 449*f*
Pharyngeal constrictor muscles, 466*f*, 537*t*
  inferior, 467*f*, 535, 535*f*, 536*f*, 537*t*
  middle, 535, 535*f*, 536*f*, 537*t*
  superior, 535, 535*f*, 536*f*, 537*t*
Pharyngeal elevators, 536*f*, 537*t*
Pharyngeal plexus, 80*f*, 495*f*
Pharyngeal raphe, 536*f*
Pharyngeal tonsil, 17*f*, 525*f*, 534*f*, 535*f*, 536*f*, 538, 538*f*, 553*f*
Pharyngeal tubercle, 435*f*
Pharyngobasilar fascia, 536*f*
Pharyngotympanic (auditory) tube, 493*f*, 494, 496*f*, 529*f*, 534*f*, 535*f*, 536*f*, 552*f*, 553, 553*f*, 554*f*
  cartilaginous part, 553*f*
  membranous lamina, 553*f*
  pharyngeal orifice, 553*f*
Pharynx, 494, 525*f*
  airway of, 534
  muscles of, 535–537
  neurovasculature of, 538
  oral cavity and, 525*f*
  regions of, 534–535
  roof of, 538*f*
  sensory innervation of, 539*f*
  tonsils in, 526*f*, 538
Phase, during gait stance, 407, 407*t*
  swing, 407*t*
Phasic contractions, 11
Philtrum, 525
Phrenic artery inferior, 74*f*, 88, 89*f*, 167, 167*f*, 168*t*, 208*f*
  left, 168*f*, 174*f*, 206*f*
  right, 174*f*
  superior, 74*t*, 89*f*
Phrenic lymph node, 130*f*

  inferior,177*f*
  superior,97*f*
Phrenic nerves,78,88,94*f*,98*f*,99,100*f*,121*f*,298*f*,459,460*t*,461*f*,470*f*,471*f*,472*f*
  left,89*f*,94*f*,97*f*,100*f*
  pericardial branches,94*f*
  right,78*f*,89*f*,90*f*,94*f*,96*f*,101*f*
Phrenicocolic ligaments,163*f*,193
Phrenicosplenic ligament,190*f*,202,203*f*
Phrenic vein,174*f*
  anastomosis with suprarenal vein,208*f*
  inferior,208*f*
  left,174*f*,206*f*
  right,174*f*
Pia mater,47,48*f*,473,473*f*,474*f*,478,478*f*
Pigment epithelium,545*f*
Pineal gland,479*f*
PIP joint of foot,398*f*,401,404*t*
  of hand,321*f*–322*f*,327,327*t*,328,329*f*
Piriform aperture,431*f*,522*f*
Piriformis,228,229*f*,230*t*,252*f*,363*f*,366*f*,373*t*,374*f*,408*f*–409*f*,414*f*
Piriformis syndrome, *374*
Piriform recesses,464*f*,535, *535*,536*f*
Pisiform,289,290*f*,321*f*,322*f*,323*f*,324*f*,325,325*f*,328*f*
Pituitary,441,474. *See also* Hypophysis infundibular stalk (stem),486*f*
  portal circulation,16
Placenta,114*f*
Plagiocephaly, *440*
Plane(s) of abdominal wall,144
  cardinal,3–4,3*f*–4*f*
  coronal,4
  interspinal,5*t*
  intertubercular,5*t*
  longitudinal, avascular (Brodel’s white line),205
  of pelvic inlet,222,224*f*
  of pelvic outlet,222*f*
  sagittal,3,4*f*
  subcostal,5*t*
  supracrestal,5*t*
Plane(s) (*continued*) transpyloric,5*t*,144

abdominal viscera and,145*f*
transverse,4,4*f*
on trunk,5*t*
Plantar, location/direction term,3*f*,3*t*
Plantar aponeurosis,363,402,403*f*,404*f*,405,405*t*,413*f*
Plantar arch, deep,364*f*,365
Plantar arteries,365*f*
common,364*f*
deep,365
lateral,364,364*f*
medial,364,364*f*
proper,364*f*
Plantar calcaneocuboid ligament,402,403*f*
Plantar calcaneonavicular ligament,400*f*,401*f*,403*f*–404*f*
Plantar digital arteries common,364*f*,365
proper,364*f*,365
Plantar digital nerves,370
Plantar fasciitis, *405*
Plantar flexion,356
of ankle,399*t*
of talocrural joint,396*t*
Plantar interossei,406*t*,411*f*,413*f*
Plantaris,392*f*,396*t*,409*f*–410*f*,412*f*,414*f*,415*f*
tendon,392*f*,412*f*
Plantar ligaments,403*f*
long,400*f*,401*f*,403*f*
Plantar metatarsal arteries,364*f*,365
Plantar nerve lateral,54*f*,368*t*,369*f*
medial,54*f*,368*t*,369*f*
Plantar reflex, *405*
Plantar septum,413*f*
Plantar vault,403*f*
Plate(s) cartilaginous,127*f*
cribriform,436*f*,439,439*f*,442*f*,488,488*f*,522*f*,553*f*
epiphyseal,8,9*f*
growth,9*f*,399*f*
levator,228,271
orbital, of ethmoid bone,439*f*,440*f*,540*f*
perpendicular, of ethmoid bone,431*f*,439,439*f*,440*f*,488*f*,522*f*

pterygoid lateral,432,435*f*,438*f*,514*f*
medial,432,435*f*,438*f*,514*f*
Plateau, tibial,357,360*f*,384*f*,388*f*
Platysma,12*f*,455*f*,456,457*f*,457*t*,469*f*,503*f*,504*f*,505*t*,560*f*
Pleura,120,120*f*
blood supply of,120
cavity of,23,120–121,120*f*–121*f*
lymphatic drainage of,130*f*
recesses,121*f*
inflammation of, *120*
innervation of,120
mediastinal,89*f*,94*f*,97*f*,98*f*,99*f*,100*f*,101*f*,118*f*,120*f*,121*f*,196*f*
parietal,71*f*,120
cervical part of,89*f*,118*f*,121*f*
costal part of,89*f*,96*f*,97*f*,120*f*,121*f*
diaphragmatic part of,89*f*,94*f*,98*f*,118*f*,120,120*f*,121*f*,146*f*,148*f*,196*f*
innervation of,131
mediastinal part of,89*f*,94*f*,97*f*,98*f*,99*f*,100*f*,101*f*,118*f*,120*f*,121*f*,196*f*
parts of,121*f*
visceral,93*f*,120,120*f*
Pleural cavities,23,120–121,120*f*–121*f*,130*f*
Pleural cupula,471*f*
Pleural effusion, *122*
Pleural sac,70,121*f*
Pleuritis, *120*
Plexus in abdomen,180*f*,181*t*
areolar venous,92*f*
arterial celiac,181*t*,182*f*–183*f*
thoracic aortic,74*t*,77*f*,80*f*
autonomic,23
of abdomen,166–167,167*f*,180–181,180*f*,181*t*
of pelvis,166–167,167*f*,180–181,180*f*,181*t*
pulmonary,78*f*,80*f*,81,131,131*f*
basilar,476*f*,477
brachial,19*f*,52*f*,79*f*,94*f*,96*f*,97*f*,118*f*,297–302,299*t*,459,470*f*,471*f*,472*f*
anterior view,302*f*
infraclavicular part of,297,299*t*
injury, *298*
roots,297

root- /trunk-level injuries, *298*
structure of,297*f*
superior division of,553*f*
supraclavicular part of,297,299*t*
trunks,297,297*f*
cardiac,78*f*,80–81,80*f*,113*f*,131*f*
carotid,551*f*
common,80*f*
external,80*f*,462,499,500*f*
internal,80*f*,462,491*f*,493*f*,496*f*,499,500*f*,542*f*
carotid sympathetic,442*f*,476
celiac,181*t*,182*f*–183*f*
cervical,52,453,459
motor nerves of,461*f*
sensory nerves of,460*f*
choroid,480,481*f*
fourth ventricle,481*f*
lateral ventricle,481*f*
third ventricle,481*f*
coccygeal,369*f*
colic, left,181*t*
deferential,181*t*,242*f*,242*t*
esophageal,79*f*–80*f*,80–81,117,118*f*
facial artery,500*f*
formation, principles of,53*f*
gastric,181*t*
anterior,79*f*
posterior,79*f*,183*f*
hemorrhoidal,258,260*f*,270*f*,272*f*
hepatic nerve,181*t*,182*f*,198
hypogastric distribution,184*f*
inferior,56*f*,181*t*,182*f*,184*f*,237,240*f*,241*f*–243*f*,256
superior,180*f*,181*t*,184*f*,237,241*f*–243*f*
iliac,241*f*–243*f*
intermesenteric,180*f*,184*f*,241*f*–243*f*
intraparotid,492,512*f*
of large intestine,182*f*
lumbar,52*f*,149,179,179*f*,368*t*,369*f*
in abdomen,52*f*,149,179,368*t*,369*f*

dissection, 179*f*
nerves of, 179*f*, 368*t*
lumbosacral, 19*f*, 368–371, 369*f*
lymphatic axillary, 296*f*
deep, 130
superficial, 130
mesenteric distribution, 184*f*
inferior, 181*t*, 182*f*, 184*f*, 241*f*–243*f*
superior, 181*t*, 182*f*, 183*f*, 184*f*
nerve autonomic of abdomen, 166–167, 167*f*, 180–181, 180*f*, 181*t*
of pelvis, 166–167, 167*f*, 180–181, 180*f*, 181*t*
pulmonary, 78*f*, 80*f*, 81, 131, 131*f*
brachial (*See* Brachial plexus) carotid, 551*f*
common, 80*f*
external, 80*f*, 462, 499, 500*f*
internal, 80*f*, 462, 491*f*, 496*f*
ovarian, 180*f*, 181*t*, 241*f*, 247
pampiniform, 155*f*, 155*t*, 156*f*, 157, 157*f*–158*f*, 235*f*, 247
varicocele and, *157*
pancreatic, 181*t*, 182*f*
parotid, 492, 492*f*, 507*f*, 511–512, 512*f*
in pelvis, 180*f*, 181*t*
perianal, 272*f*
pharyngeal, 80*f*, 495*f*
post-fixed, 297
pre-fixed, 297
prostatic, 181*t*, 237, 242*f*–243*f*, 247, 264*f*
pterygoid, 449, 450*f*, 451*f*
pulmonary, 78*f*, 80*f*, 81, 131, 131*f*
rectal nerve, 237, 240*f*
inferior, 181*t*, 182*f*, 184*f*, 242*f*
middle, 181*t*, 182*f*, 184*f*, 242*f*, 243*f*
superior, 181*t*, 182*f*, 184*f*
venous, 232, 236*f*
renal, 180*f*, 181*t*, 185*f*, 206
sacral, 52*f*, 167*f*, 206*f*, 235*f*, 236–237, 238*f*, 240*f*, 368*t*, 369*f*
somatic, 23
splenic, 181*t*, 183*f*, 202
subclavian, 80*f*

- subcutaneous, venous,270*f*
- suprarenal,180*f*,181*t*
- testicular,155*f*,157*f*,158,180*f*,181*t*,242*f*,243*f*
- thoracic aortic,74*t*,77*f*,80*f*
- thyroid venous,468*f*
- tonsillar,538
- tympanic,493*f*,494,494*f*,496*f*,528*f*,554*f*
- ureteral,180*f*,181*t*,185*f*,241*f*–243*f*
- uterine venous,233*f*,251,254
- uterovaginal,181*t*,237,241*f*,254
- vaginal venous,233*f*
- venous areolar,92*f*
- of hypoglossal canal,442*f*
- rectal,236*f*
- subcutaneous,270*f*
- thyroid,468*f*
- uterine,233*f*,251,254
- vaginal,233*f*
- vertebral,80*f*
- vertebral venous,92*f*,236,481*f*
- anterior internal,44,46*f*
- external,46*f*
- anterior,44,46*f*
- posterior,44
- posterior internal,44,46*f*
- veins of,44, *44*,46*f*,49*f*
- vesical,181*t*,229–230,237,241*f*–243*f*,256,264*f*

Plicae circulares,190
Pneumonia, right middle lobe,133*f*
Pneumothorax defined, *122*
- tension, *122*

PNS. *See* Peripheral nervous system (PNS) Polysegmental innervation,53,55*f*
Pons,21*f*,475*f*,479–480,479*f*,489*f*
Pontine artery,483*f*
Pontomedullary cistern,478,481*f*
Pontomedullary junction,489*f*
Popliteal aneurysm, *364*
Popliteal artery,14*f*,363,363*f*,364,364*f*,365*f*,392*f*,417*f*
- genicular branches,363,365

Popliteal (Baker’s) cyst, *390*
Popliteal fossa,363,364,392,410*f*
  neurovascular structures,364
  deep,392*f*
  superficial,392*f*
Popliteal ligaments,383
  arcuate,383,390*f*
  oblique,383,390*f*,392*f*
Popliteal lymph nodes,367
  deep,367*f*
  superficial,367*f*
Popliteal region,356,356*f*,383–392
Popliteal vein,14*f*,365,366*f*,367,367*f*,392*f*,417*f*
Popliteus,13*f*,390*f*,391*t*,392*f*,396*t*,412*f*
Porta hepatis,196
Portal hypertension, *176*
Portal system,16
Portal triad,161,196
Portal vein,14*f*,115*f*,119*f*,169*f*,170*f*,171*f*,173,173*f*,197*f*,201*f*,204*f*,208*f*,212*f*,235*f*
  in situ,175*f*
  tributaries of,175*t*
  and umbilical vein, anastomosis between,114*f*
Portosystemic pathways,173,173*f*,174*t*,176*f*
Position, anatomic,3–4,3*f*–4*f*,3*t*
  general terms of,3*t*
Postcentral gyrus,479*f*
Posterior, location/direction term,3*f*,3*t*
Posterior arch vein,366*f*
Posterior axillary line,4*t*
Posterior cord, of brachial plexus,297,297*f*,299*t*,302*f*
Posterior root,48*f*,49*f*,51,51*f*,57*f*,61*f*,92*f*,297*f*
  spinal nerves,48*f*,51,51*f*,57*f*,61*f*,92*f*
Posterior surface, of sacrum,38*f*
Posteroinferior cerebellar arteries,443
Posterolateral artery,109*f*–110*f*
Post-fixed plexus,297
Postganglionic sympathetic fibers,494
Postglenoid tubercle,430*f*,437*f*
Postnatal circulation,115*f*

Postsynaptic nerve cell,19
Pouch rectouterine (of Douglas),231,232*f*,248*f*,250*f*,251*f*,252*f*,253*f*,255*f*,275*f*
    rectovesical,165*f*,186*f*,231,232*f*,244*f*,245*f*
    suprapatellar,389*f*
    vesicouterine,231,232*f*,248*f*,250,250*f*,251*f*,252*f*,253*f*
Preaortic nodes,177,236
Precapillary sphincter,15
Precentral gyrus,479*f*
Pre-fixed plexus,297
Preganglionic parasympathetic nerves,494
Pregnancy ectopic, *247*
    ligament laxity and increased mobility during, *228*
Premolars,432*f*,526*f*
Prenatal circulation,114–115,114*f*
Prepatellar bursa,390
Preperitoneal fat,148*f*,149
Preprostatic part, of urethra,257,257*f*
Prepuce of clitoris,224*f*,267,268*f*,269*f*
    of penis,245*f*,265*f*
Prerectal fibers,229*f*
Presacral space,231*f*
Presbyopia, *546*
Presynaptic nerve fiber,19
Pretracheal fascia,455
Pretracheal layer,455*f*,456*t*,469*f*
Prevertebral fascia,455
Prevertebral ganglia,55,57*f*
Prevertebral layer,455*f*,455*t*,456*f*,456*t*,472*f*
Primary ossification center,8
Princeps pollicis artery,294,294*f*
Procerus,503*f*,504*t*
Process(es) alveolar, of mandible,431*f*,432*f*
    anterior, of malleus,554*f*
    articular superior, of sacrum,38*f*
    of vertebrae,32*f*
    inferior,34,34*f*,35*f*–37*f*,43*f*,63*f*
    superior,34,34*f*,35*f*–37*f*,38*f*,41*f*,42*f*,43*f*,63*f*
    caudate,197*f*
    clinoid, of sphenoid bone anterior,432,436*f*,438*f*

posterior,432,436*f*,438*f*
condylar of mandible,432,432*f*,439,442*f*,509*t*
coracoid,286,286*f*,287*f*,304*f*,308*f*,309*f*,335*f*
coronoid of mandible,432*f*,439,508*f*,509*t*,513*f*
of ulna,289*f*,316*f*,317*f*,343*f*,344*f*
costal,36*f*,40*f*,44*f*,59*f*
frontal of maxilla,431*f*,439,521*f*,522*f*,540*f*
of zygomatic bone,431*f*,513*f*
horizontal, of palatine bone,439
mammillary,37*f*
mastoid, of temporal bone,39*f*,430*f*,432,434*f*,435*f*,437*f*,508*f*,527*f*,528*f*
muscular,466*f*
palatine,434*f*,439
of maxilla,434*f*,435*f*,440*f*,514*f*,522*f*
posterior of foot,361*f*,362*f*
of talus,393*f*
pterygoid,432,434*f*,435*f*,438*f*,508*f*,509*f*,518*f*,522*f*,529*f*
pyramidal, of palatine bone,541*f*
spinous, of vertebrae,5*t*,32*f*,34*f*,35*f*,42*f*–43*f*,59*f*,63*f*,228*f*
of axis (C2),32*f*,60*f*
styloid of radius,289,289*f*,290*f*,291*f*,317*f*,328*f*
of temporal bone,39*f*,430*f*,432,434*f*,435*f*,437*f*,508*f*,527*f*,531*f*,532*f*,536*f*,552*f*
of ulna,289,290*f*,291*f*,317*f*,328*f*
transverse of atlas (C1),34*f*,35,42*f*,59,60*f*,305*t*
palatine,435*f*,526*f*
of vertebrae,34*f*,59*f*
costal facet on,35,36*f*
with groove for spinal nerve,35*f*
uncinate of cervical spine,35*f*
of pancreas,186*f*,200,200*f*
of vertebral bodies,39
vocal,463,463*f*
xiphoid, of sternum,7*f*,71*f*,84,84*f*,86*f*,87*f*,146*f*,335*f*
zygomatic of frontal bone,513*f*
of maxilla,430*f*,431*f*,435*f*,437*f*
Processus vaginalis,155*f*,156
Proctodeal gland,272*f*
Prolapse mitral valve, *107*
of pelvic organs, *262*

Prominence of facial canal,554*f*
  laryngeal,462,463*f*
  of lateral semicircular canal,554*f*
Promontory of middle ear,554*f*,555
  of sacrum,32*f*,35,38*f*,63*f*,227*f*,377*f*,408*f*–409*f*
  in tympanic cavity,554*f*,555
Pronation axis of,317*f*
  foot,402*t*
  forearm in,317*f*
  at radioulnar joints,316,317*f*,318*t*
  of subtalar joint,402*t*
  of transverse tarsal joint,402*t*
  of upper limb joints,284, *300*,316,317*f*,318*t*
Pronator quadratus,319*t*,325*f*,330*f*
Pronator teres,12*f*,315*f*,319*t*,338*f*,340*f*,341*f*
Proprioception,53
Prostate,150*f*,186*f*,223*f*,230*f*,233*f*,242*f*,244*f*,245*f*,246–247,257*f*,266*f*
  apex of,246,246*f*
  base of,246
  benign prostatic hypertrophy, *247*
  carcinoma of, *247*
  central zone (inner zone) of,246
  clinical divisions of,246*f*
  coronal section,246*f*
  divisions of,246
  lobes of,178*t*,246,246*f*
  lymphatic drainage of,247
  peripheral zone (outer zone) of,246
  periurethral zone of,246
  sagittal section,246*f*
  in situ,245*f*
  transition zone of,246
  transverse section,246*f*
Prostatectomy, *247*
Prostatic arteries,247
Prostatic ductules,246*f*,257,257*f*
Prostatic isthmus,246*f*
Prostatic part, of urethra,159,245,246*f*,257,257*f*
Prostatic plexus,181*t*,237,242*f*–243*f*,247,264*f*

Prostatic urethra,159,245,246*f*,257,257*f*
Protraction, of pectoral girdle,306*t*
Protuberance mental,430*f*,431*f*
  occipital,39*f*,435*f*,436*f*
  external,39*f*,44*f*,432,434*f*,435*f*
  internal,436*f*
Proximal, location/direction term,3*f*,3*t*
Proximal interphalangeal (PIP) joint of foot,398*f*,401,404*t*
  of hand,321*f*–322*f*,327,327*t*,328,329*f*
Psoas major,147,147*t*,149*f*,150*f*,179*f*,206*f*,231*f*,235*f*,379*t*,382*f*,408*f*–409*f*
  minor,147,147*t*,149*f*,179*f*,409*f*
Psoas fascia,149,231*f*
Pterion,430*f*,440*t*
  fractures at, *440*
Pterygoid canal,438*f*,491*f*,492,500*f*,518,518*f*
  artery of,516*t*
  nerve of,490*f*,491*f*,492,494,500*f*,518,520*t*
Pterygoid hamulus,435*f*,438*f*,514*f*,529*f*,536*f*
Pterygoid muscles lateral,507,507*f*,509*f*,509*t*,510,510*f*,513*f*,515*f*
  medial,507,507*f*,509*f*,509*t*,510,515*f*,517*f*,526*f*,536*f*
Pterygoid nerves lateral,507*f*,517*f*
  medial,490*f*,517*f*
Pterygoid part, of maxillary artery,446,446*t*,516*t*
Pterygoid plate lateral,432,435*f*,438*f*,514*f*
  medial,432,435*f*,438*f*,514*f*
Pterygoid plexus,449,450*f*,451*f*
Pterygoid process,432,434*f*,435*f*,438*f*,508*f*,509*f*,522*f*,529*f*
  lateral plate,435*f*,518*f*,522*f*
  medial plate,435*f*,536*f*
Pterygomandibular fold,526*f*
Pterygomandibular raphe,526*f*,535*f*
Pterygomaxillary fissure,514*f*,518,518*f*
Pterygopalatine fossa,446,491,494,513*f*,518–520,540*f*
  ganglionic branches of,490*f*,491
  nerves of,520*t*
Pterygopalatine ganglion,490*f*,491,491*f*,492*f*,494,500*f*,501*f*,506*f*,524*f*,542*f*
Pterygopalatine part, of maxillary artery,446,446*t*,516*t*
Pterygospinous ligament,508*f*
Pubic bone,274*f*

Pubic branch, of external iliac artery,363*f*
Pubic ligament arcuate,234*f*
    inferior,229*f*
Pubic rami,269*f*
    inferior,223*f*,224*f*,225,225*f*,226*f*,229*f*,230*f*,244*f*,248*f*
    superior,224*f*,225,225*f*,226*f*,229*f*,244*f*,248*f*,265*f*
Pubic symphysis,7*f*,9*f*,158*f*,206*f*,222*f*,224*f*,225,227*f*,229*f*,245*f*,248*f*,250*f*,251*f*,252*f*,25
    superior border of,5*t*
Pubic tubercle,145,154*f*,226*f*,227*f*,269*f*,375*f*
Pubis,7*f*,9*f*,158*f*,224*f*,225,225*f*,226*f*,252*f*,254*f*,267
Pubococcygeus,228,229*f*,230*t*,270*f*
Pubofemoral ligament,374,377*f*
Puboprostatic ligaments,230,246,254*f*
Puborectalis,228,229*f*,230*t*,270*f*,272*f*
Pubovesical ligaments,230,231*f*,252*f*,255*f*,256
Pubovesical muscles,256
Pudendal artery,257
    external,157,232,235*f*,264*f*,266*f*,363*f*
    deep,363
    internal,167*f*,223*f*,232,234*f*,235*f*,259*f*,264*f*,267,269*f*
    branches,223*t*,257,262,269*f*
    left,233*f*,236*f*,262
    superficial,363
Pudendal canal,272
Pudendal cleft,267
Pudendal nerve,223*f*,234*f*,237,238*f*,239*f*,240*f*,241*f*,242*f*,259*f*,270,368*t*,369*f*,374
    block, *240*
    deep perineal branch of,254,261
    labial branches anterior,234*f*,270
    posterior,238*f*,269*f*,270
Pudendal vein external,92*f*,264*f*,266*f*,366*f*
    internal,223*f*,232,234*f*,236*f*,259*f*,264*f*,269*f*
    left,233*f*
    right,235*f*
Pulmonary alveolus,126,127*f*,129*f*
Pulmonary arterial trunk,70*f*–73*f*,72,73*f*,100*f*,101*f*,105*f*,115*f*,118*f*,123*f*
Pulmonary arteries,16,16*f*,72,72*f*–73*f*,94*f*,104*f*,114*f*,115*f*,118*f*,124*f*,128,129*f*
    branches of,72,73*f*

left,73*f*,97*f*,98*f*,101*f*,103*f*,105*f*,123*f*
  branches of,105*f*,123*f*
  right,96*f*,99*f*,101*f*,103*f*,104*f*,105*f*,123*f*
  branches of,105*f*
Pulmonary cavities,70,70*f*
  in expiration,128
  in inspiration,128
Pulmonary circulation,15*f*,16,70,72*f*
  in cardiac cycle,70
Pulmonary embolism, *129*
Pulmonary ligament,120,123*f*
Pulmonary plexus,78*f*,80*f*,81,131,131*f*
Pulmonary semilunar valves,104*f*,106*f*,107,107*f*,109*f*
Pulmonary trunk,72,73*f*,78*f*,100*f*,101*f*,103*f*,104*f*,105*f*,114*f*,115*f*,116*f*,118*f*,123*f*
Pulmonary valve,104*f*,106*f*,107,107*f*,109*f*
Pulmonary veins,16,16*f*,71*f*–73*f*,75,100*f*,103*f*,109*f*,114*f*,118*f*,124*f*,128–130,129*f*
  left,71*f*,97*f*,100*f*,105*f*,109*f*–110*f*,114*f*,115*f*,123*f*
  right,71*f*,96*f*,100*f*,103*f*,105*f*,109*f*–110*f*
  valve of,105*f*
Pulse, dorsal pedal, *365*
Puncta inferior,543,544*f*
  superior,543,544*f*
Pupil,545*f*,546*f*
Pupillary dilation,500*f*,546
Pupillary dilator muscle,544,545*f*
Pupillary light reflex, *547*
Pupillary sphincter muscle,488,544,545*f*
Purkinje fibers,108,108*f*
Pyloric antrum,187,188*f*,199*f*
Pyloric canal,187,188*f*,199*f*
Pyloric orifice,188*f*,189,189*f*
Pyloric part, of stomach,187,187*f*,188*f*,199*f*
Pyloric sphincter,187,188*f*,189*f*
Pyloris,187
Pyramidalis,146*f*,147,147*t*
Pyramidal tract,475*f*
  decussation of,475*f*
Pyramids, renal,205,205*f*
Q

Qangle, of knee, *391*
Quadrangular membrane,463,464*f*
Quadrangular space,312,312*f*,313*f*
Quadrant(s) of abdomen,145*f*
  left lower (LLQ),145*f*
  left upper (LUQ),145*f*
  right lower (RLQ),145*f*
  right upper (RUQ),145*f*
  of breast, tumor origin by,84*f*
Quadratus femoris,13*f*,373*t*,414*f*
Quadratus lumborum,87*f*,147,147*t*,149*f*,179*f*
Quadratus plantae,406*t*
Quadriceps femoris,379*t*,383*f*,385*f*,391*t*,415*f*
  tendon,386*f*,389*f*,408*f*
Quadrigeminal cistern,478,481*f*
Quiet expiration,128
Quiet inspiration,128
R
Radial, location/direction term,3*f*,3*t*
Radial artery,14*f*,293*f*,294*f*,315*f*,325*f*,326*f*,341*f*,344*f*
  superficial palmar branch,293*f*,325*f*
Radial carpal eminence,323*f*
Radial deviation, of upper limb,284,323*f*
Radial fossa,315*f*,316*f*
Radial groove, of humerus,288*f*,289
Radialis indicis artery,294,294*f*
Radialis muscles,320*t*
Radial nerve,54*f*,297,297*f*,299*t*,301*f*–302*f*,315*f*,324*f*,341*f*
  deep branch,298*f*,302*f*
  injury, *301*
  muscular branches,302*f*,313*f*
  palmar digital branch,302*f*
  radial groove for,288*f*,289
  superficial branch,298*f*,301,302*f*,326*f*,341*f*
Radial notch,289,289*f*
Radial recurrent artery,292,293*f*,315*f*
Radial tuberosity,289,289*f*,314*t*,315*f*,316*f*,317*f*,343*f*,344*f*
Radial tunnel,315*f*
Radial vein,14*f*,295*f*,344*f*

Radicular arteries anterior,50
  posterior,50
Radicular vein anterior,51*f*
  posterior,51*f*
Radiocarpal joint,321,321*f*. *See also* Wrist Radiocarpal ligaments dorsal,321
  palmar,321,322*f*
Radiography of abdomen,209*t*
  with barium,211*f*
  upright,210*f*
  of ankle,399*f*
  applications,62
  of back,62*f*,62*t*
  bowel obstruction,211*f*
  of cervical spine,62*f*
  chest, anatomy,132*f*
  of chest,25*f*,122*f*,132*f*–133*f*
  densities,25*f*,25*t*
  of double contrast barium enema,194*f*
  of elbow joint,316*f*,343*f*
  foreign objects,25*f*
  of hand,290*f*,342*f*
  of head,558*t*
  of heart,102*f*
  intravenous pyelogram,207*f*
  of knee joint,416*f*–417*f*
  of large intestine,194*f*
  of lower limb,416*t*
  of neck,558*t*
  orientation,25
  patient positions,24–25,25*f*
  of pelvis,273,273*f*–274*f*,273*t*
  schematic,24*f*
  Scottie dog vertebrae, *37*
  skeleton, developmental ossification of,273*f*
  of spine,62*f*
  of stomach,188*f*
  of thoracic spine,63*f*
  of thorax,132*t*
  of upper limb,342*t*

Radioulnar joint,289*f*. *See also under* Joints (named) distal,317*f*,318
    interosseous membrane at,317*f*,318
    proximal,317*f*,318,343*f*
Radioulnar ligaments,317*f*
    dorsal,317*f*
    palmar,317*f*,322*f*
Radius,7*f*,285*f*,290*f*,328*f*,340*f*,341*f*,343f borders anterior,289*f*
    interosseous,317*f*
    lateral,317*f*
    posterior,317*f*
    dorsal (Lister’s) tubercle,338*f*
    fractures of, *289*
    head of,285*f*,289,316*f*,344*f*
    subluxation of, *318*
    lateral surface of,317*f*
    neck of,315,316*f*,317*f*
    posterior surface of,317*f*
    shaft of,289*f*
    styloid process,289,289*f*,290*f*,291*f*,317*f*,328*f*
Ramus communicans,97*f*
    gray,48*f*,51*f*,55,57*f*,61*f*,92*f*,241*f*–242*f*
    white,48*f*,51*f*,57*f*,61*f*,92*f*,96*f*
Ramus/rami anterior (ventral), of spinal nerves,48*f*,51*f*,52,52*f*,57*f*,61*f*,92*f*,241*f*–243*f*,297*f*
    ischial,224*f*,225,226*f*
    ischiopubic,222,253*f*,261,266*f*
    of mandible,430*f*,431*f*,432*f*,434*f*,439,515*f*
    posterior, of spinal nerves,48*f*,51*f*,52,52*f*,57*f*,61*f*,92*f*,297*f*
    pubic,269*f*
    inferior,223*f*,224*f*,225,225*f*,226*f*,229*f*,230*f*,244*f*,248*f*
    superior,224*f*,225,225*f*,226*f*,229*f*,244*f*,248*f*,265*f*
    of spinal nerves anterior (ventral),48*f*,51*f*,52,52*f*,57*f*,61,92*f*,241*f*–243*f*,297*f*
    posterior (dorsal),48*f*,51*f*,52,52*f*,57*f*,61*f*,297*f*
Raphe. *See also* Linea alba anococcygeal,229*f*
    mylohyoid,457*f*
    perineal,224*f*,268*f*
    pharyngeal,536*f*
    pterygomandibular,526*f*,535*f*
    scrotal,264

Rays of foot,403*f*
    medullary,205*f*
Recess(es) axillary,308*f*,311*f*
    costodiaphragmatic,121,121*f*,166*f*
    costomediastinal,121,121*f*
    hepatorenal,164,165*t*,204*f*
    ileocecal,162*f*,165*f*
    intersigmoidal,162*f*,165*f*
    lateral ventricular,480*f*
    pericardial,100,100*f*
    piriform,464*f*,535, *535*,536*f*
    retrocecal,162*f*,165*f*
    sphenoethmoidal,521,522*f*,523*f*,523*t*
    splenic, of omental bursa,163*f*–164*f*,164*t*
    subperitoneal,231
    subphrenic,164,165*f*,165*t*
    subpopliteal,388*f*,390,390*f*
Rectal ampulla,258,260*f*,266*f*,270*f*
Rectal artery,167*f*,195
    inferior,172*f*,232,233*f*,235*f*,236*f*,255*f*,264*f*,269*f*,271
    left,258
    middle,168*f*,172*f*,233*f*,234*f*,235*f*,236*f*,255*f*,258,264*f*
    right,258
    superior,168,168*t*,172*f*,232,233*f*,236*f*,258,272*f*
Rectal branch, superior, of inferior mesenteric artery,168
Rectal folds,258
    transverse,259*f*,260*f*,270*f*
Rectal hiatus,229,229*f*
Rectal nerves,271
    inferior,234*f*,237,238*f*,239*f*,240*f*
Rectal plexus nerve,237,240*f*
    inferior,181*t*,182*f*,184*f*,242*f*
    middle,181*t*,182*f*,184*f*,242*f*,243*f*
    superior,181*t*,182*f*,184*f*
    venous,232,236*f*
Rectal veins,173,175*t*,258,271
    inferior,176*f*,233*f*,234*f*,235*f*,236*f*,259,264*f*,269*f*
    middle,168*f*,176*f*,233*f*,235*f*,236*f*,259
    superior,176*f*,233*f*,236,236*f*,259,272*f*

Rectoprostatic fascia,231,244*f*,245*f*
Rectorectal space,231,232*f*
Rectosigmoid junction,258,259*f*
Rectouterine (uterosacral) fold,249*f*,251*f*,255*f*,259*f*
Rectouterine ligaments,252*f*
Rectouterine pouch,231,232*f*,248*f*,250*f*,251*f*,252*f*,253*f*,255*f*,275*f*
Rectovaginal septum,231,232*f*,253*f*
Rectovaginal space,231*f*
Rectovesical fascia,266*f*
Rectovesical pouch,165*f*,186*f*,231,232*f*,244*f*,245*f*
Rectovesical septum,231,232*f*,246
Rectum,165*f*,166*f*,186*f*,192*f*,193,193*f*,194*f*,206*f*,231*f*–232*f*,234*f*,235*f*,240*f*,244*f*,24
    ampulla of,258,260*f*,266*f*,270*f*
    blood supply of,235*f*–236*f*,258–259
    carcinoma, *195*
    closure mechanism of,270*f*
    coronal section of,260*f*
    examination of, *259*
    lateral ligaments of,230
    lymphatic drainage of,178*t*,259
    muscular coat of,260*f*,272*f*
    neurovascular bundle,231*f*
    parasympathetic innervation of,259
    in situ,259*f*
    sympathetic innervation of,259
    visceral peritoneum of,248*f*,250,250*f*
Rectus (extraocular muscle) inferior,542*f*,547,547*f*,548*t*
    lateral,489*f*,542*f*,545*f*,547,547*f*,548*t*
    medial,489*f*,542*f*,545*f*,547,547*f*,548*t*
    superior,489*f*,542*f*,543*f*,547,547*f*,548*t*
Rectus
  abdominis,12*f*,91*f*,146*f*,147,147*t*,148*f*,149*f*,150*f*,152*f*,154*f*,156*f*,161*f*,186*f*,191*f*,
Rectus capitis anterior,458*f*,459*t*
    lateralis,45*t*,458*f*,459*t*
    posterior major,58*t*,59,60*f*
    posterior minor,58*t*,59,60*f*,560*f*,561*f*
Rectus femoris,12*f*,379*t*,408*f*–409*f*,411*f*,414*f*,415*f*
Rectus femoris tendon,385*f*
Rectus sheath,146*f*,147,147*t*,148*f*,150*f*,154*f*,156*f*,334*f*

Recurrent branch of tibial arteries,364,364*f*
Recurrent laryngeal nerve,79*f*–80*f*,94*f*,131*f*,468*f*,469*f*,497
  left,78*f*,79*f*,80,97*f*,100*f*,462,471*f*
  paralysis, *465*
  right,78*f*,79*f*,96*f*,462,497
Recurrent nerve (branch), of median nerve,300,302*f*
Reference lines, on trunk,4–5,4*t*–5*t*
Referred pain, *57*,181,183*f*–185*f*,205
Reflex,53
  corneal, *547*
  cremasteric,158
  absent or reduced, *159*
  gag, *538*
  patellar tendon,53, *383*
  plantar, *405*
  pupillary light, *547*
Reflexive contractions,11
Region(s). *See* individual regions Renal anomalies, *206*
Renal artery,14*f*,168,168*t*,175*f*,201*f*,205*f*
  division of,205
  left,166*f*,171*f*,174*f*,176*f*,186*f*,204*f*,206*f*,208*f*
  right,174*f*,201*f*,204*f*,208*f*
Renal calculi, *207*
Renal capsule,204,205*f*
Renal columns,205,205*f*
Renal cortex,205*f*,212*f*
Renal (Gerota's) fascia,166*f*,204,204*f*
Renal ganglion,185*f*,241*f*
Renal hilum,204–205,204*f*,205*f*
Renal papilla,205,205*f*
Renal pelvis,205,205*f*,207*f*
Renal plexus,180*f*,181*t*,185*f*,206
Renal pyramids,205,205*f*
Renal sinus,205,205*f*,212*f*
Renal vein,14*f*,175*f*,205*f*
  drainage of,205
  entrapment, *205*
  left,14*f*,76*f*,171*f*,173,174*f*,186*f*,204*f*,206*f*,208*f*
  right,173,174*f*,204*f*,208*f*

Respiration,128*f*
    diaphragm position during,128,128*f*
    lung volume and,128*f*
    mechanics of,128
    thoracic volume and,128*f*
Respiratory bronchioles,126,127*f*,129*f*
Respiratory distress syndrome (RSD), neonatal,127
Rete testis,155*f*,155*t*,157,157*f*
Retina,543*f*,544,545*f*,548
    cranial nerves serving,488
    of eyeball,544
    macula of,544
    nonvisual part of,544
    optic part of,544
Retinaculum/retinacula of ankle,397*f*
    extensor,291,326*f*
    fibular,394,397*f*
    flexor,291,323*f*–325*f*,330*f*,339*f*,340*f*,344*f*,394,397*f*
    patellar,383
    lateral longitudinal,385*f*
    lateral transverse,385*f*
    medial longitudinal,385*f*
    medial transverse,385*f*
Retinal artery, central,447,545*f*,547,549*f*
Retraction, of pectoral girdle,306*t*
Retroaortic lymph nodes,177*f*
Retroauricular lymph node,452*f*,452*t*
Retrocaval lymph nodes,177*f*
Retrocecal recess,162*f*,165*f*
Retroflexion, of uterus,250
Retrograde ejaculation, *267*
Retroinguinal space,381
    compartments of muscular,382*f*
    vascular,382*f*
Retromalleolar region,356*f*
Retromammary space,82
Retromandibular vein,449,450*f*,451*f*,511*f*,512,515*f*
    anterior division,451*f*
    posterior division,451*f*

Retroperitoneal organs,160*f*,165–166,166*f*,173
Retroperitoneal space,23,144*f*,160*f*,231*f*,253*f*
Retroperitoneum kidneys in,204*f*,208*f*
  lymphatic drainage of,178*t*
  organs of,160*f*,165–166,166*f*,173
  primary structures of,205*f*
  suprarenal glands in,204*f*,207
Retropharyngeal space,455,455*f*
Retropubic space,230*f*,231,231*f*,245*f*
Retrorectal space,231*f*
Retroversion, of uterus,250
Rhomboid major,13*f*,304,305*t*,337*f*
  minor,304,305*t*,337*f*
Ribs,9*f*,85,90*f*
  articulation joints of,85
  body of,85*f*
  classification of,85
  false,85,85*f*
  floating,85,85*f*
  heads of,85,85*f*
  neck of,85*f*
  numbering,85
  true,85,85*f*
  types of,85,85*f*
Right lower quadrant (RLQ),145*f*
Right upper quadrant (RUQ),145*f*
Rim, acetabular,226*f*,375*f*
Rima glottidis,464,464*f*,465*t*
Rima vestibuli,464,464*f*
Ring common tendinous,489*f*,542*f*,543,547,547*f*,548*t*
  femoral,150*f*,381,382*f*
  inguinal deep,146*f*,150*f*,153*t*,154,156*f*,251*f*
  superficial,153*t*,154,154*f*,382*f*
  intercrural fibers of,153*t*,154*f*,155*f*
  pharyngeal lymphatic (Waldeyer’s),17,538,538*f*
  umbilical,145
  venous,51*f*
Riolan’s arcade (arc of Riolan),172
Risorius,503*f*,504*f*,505*t*

RLQ. *See* Right lower quadrant Root(s) cochlear, of vestibulocochlear nerve (CN VIII),493,493*f*,494*f*,552*f*
  cranial, of accessory nerve,498*f*
  of lungs,121*f*,123
  of median nerve,307*f*
  of mesenteries,162*f*,165*f*,166*f*,190*f*,204*f*
  motor, of trigeminal nerve (CN V),551*f*
  nasociliary (sensory), oculomotor nerve (CN III),551*f*
  of neck,454,470*f*
  of nose,521
  parasympathetic, of oculomotor nerve (CN III),551*f*
  of penis,261,264,265*f*,266*f*
  sensory, of trigeminal nerve (CN V),551*f*
  spinal, of accessory nerve,462,498*f*
  of spinal nerves,51,51*f*
  anterior,51,51*f*,57*f*,61*f*,92*f*
  dorsal,297*f*
  posterior,48*f*,49*f*,51,51*f*,57*f*,61*f*,92*f*,297*f*
  sympathetic, of oculomotor nerve (CN III),489*f*,551*f*
  of tongue,530,530*f*
  vestibular, of vestibulocochlear nerve (CN VIII),493,493*f*,494*f*,552*f*
Rootlets, of spinal nerves,51*f*
  anterior,48*f*,51*f*
  posterior,51*f*
Root sleeve, of spinal nerve,49*f*
Rosenmüller’s lymph node,382*f*
Rotation external at glenohumeral joint,312*t*
  of hip joint,378*t*
  of knee joint,391*t*
  of upper limb,284
  of femur,376*f*
  of glenohumeral joint external,312*t*
  internal,312*t*
  of hip joint external,378*t*
  internal,378*t*
  internal at glenohumeral joint,312*t*
  of hip joint,378*t*
  of knee joint,391*t*
  of upper limb,284

of knee joint external,391*t*
internal,391*t*
lateral, pectoral girdle,306*t*
medial, pectoral girdle,306*t*
of midgut tube, *187*
of pectoral girdle lateral,306*t*
medial,306*t*
of upper limb joints external (lateral),284
internal (medial),284
Rotator brevis,58*t*,59*f*
Rotator cuff,311*t*
muscles of,309
tears, *310*
Rotator longus,58*t*,59*f*
Round ligament of liver (ligamentum teres hepatis),115*f*,115*t*,150*f*,161*f*,162*f*,192*f*,196,196*f*,197*f*,199*f*
of uterus,154,154*f*,233*f*,235*f*,248*f*,250,251,252*f*,253*f*,255*f*,258*f*
artery of,154*f*
Round window,493*f*,555,555*f*,556*f*
Rugae of stomach,188,188*f*
vaginal,253*f*
Rupture of calcaneal tendon, *394*
urethral, in males, *257*
RUQ. *See* Right upper quadrant
S
Sac(s) alveolar,126,127*f*
conjunctival,543
dural,40*f*,47,49*f*
endolymphatic,555*f*,557,557*f*
greater,164
lacrimal,439,543,544*f*,549*f*,550*t*
fossae for,439,540*f*
lesser,164,186*f* (*See also* Bursa/ bursae, omental) pericardial,70,99
pleural,70,121*f*
synovial, popliteal (Baker’s) cyst of, *390*
Saccular nerve,494*f*,557*f*
Saccule laryngeal,464,464*f*
vestibular,493,494*f*,555*f*,555*f*,556,556,557,557,557*f*,557*f*
Sacral artery lateral,44,45*f*,167*f*

    median,44,45*f*,167,167*f*,168*t*,233*f*,235*f*,236*f*
Sacral canal,35,38*f*,228*f*
Sacral cornua,35,38*f*
Sacral crest lateral,35,38*f*
    medial,35
    median,35,38*f*
Sacral foramina,38*f*
    anterior,35,38*f*
    posterior,35,38*f*
Sacral hiatus,35,38*f*,228*f*
Sacral lymph nodes,177*f*,237*t*
Sacral plexus,52*f*,167*f*,235*f*,236–237,238*f*,240*f*,368*t*,369*f*
Sacral promontory,32*f*,35,38*f*,63*f*,227*f*,377*f*,408*f*–409*f*
    MRI of,33*f*
Sacral spine,35,38*f*,46*f*
Sacral sympathetic trunks,237
Sacral tuberosity,38*f*
Sacral vein lateral,168*f*
    right,233*f*
    median,174*t*,234*f*–236*f*
    posterior,234*f*
Sacrococcygeal joint,35,38*f*
Sacroiliac joint,7*f*,38*f*,222*f*,225,372*f*
Sacroiliac ligaments anterior,227,227*f*–229*f*,377*f*
    interosseous,227
    posterior,227,227*f*,377*f*
Sacrospinous ligaments,227,227*f*,228*f*,374*f*,377*f*
Sacrotuberous ligaments,227,227*f*,228*f*,374*f*,377*f*
Sacrum,7*f*,9*f*,32*f*,35,40*f*,59*f*,194*f*,222*f*,224*f*,229*f*,266*f*,274*f*,372*f*,474*f*
    ala of,521
    apex of,38*f*
    base of,38*f*
    cornua of,35,38*f*
    hiatus in,35,38*f*,228*f*
    lateral part of,38*f*
    MRI of,33*f*
    promontory of,32*f*,35,38*f*,63*f*,227*f*,377*f*,408*f*–409*f*
    segments and vertebral levels,47*f*
    superior articular facet of,38*f*

    surfaces of anterior (pelvic),38*f*
    auricular,38*f*
    posterior,38*f*
    vascular supply to,45*f*
    views of,38*f*
    wing of,38*f*
Sagittal, location/direction term,3*t*
Sagittal axis,4,4*f*
Sagittal plane,3,4*f*
Sagittal sinus,473*f*
    inferior,475,475*f*,476*t*,484*f*,486*f*
    superior,473*f*,475,475*f*,476*t*,481*f*,483*f*,484*f*,486*f*,561*f*
    site of entry into,484*f*
Sagittal suture,433*f*,434*f*,440,441*f*
Salivary glands,532,533*f*
    autonomic nervous system and,56*f*
    sympathetic/parasympathetic innervation,56*t*
Salivatory nucleus inferior,501*f*,501*t*
    superior,491*f*,501*f*,501*t*
Salpingitis, *247*
Salpingopharyngeal fold,534,534*f*,538
Salpingopharyngeus,534,535,535*f*,536*f*,537*t*,553*f*
SA node. *See* Sinoatrial (SA) node Saphenous nerve,54*f*,368,368*t*,369*f*
Saphenous opening,235*f*,366*f*,367,382*f*
Saphenous vein accessory,366*f*
    great,92*f*,152*f*,365,366*f*,367,367*f*,382*f*,392*f*,404
    long,14*f*,367
    short,367
    small,365,366*f*,367,367*f*,392*f*,404
Sartorius,12*f*,378,379*t*,383*f*,391*t*,408*f*–409*f*,411*f*,414*f*,415*f*
Scala tympani,555*f*,556,556*f*
Scala vestibuli,555*f*,556,556*f*
Scalene muscles,470*f*,560*f*
    anterior,74*f*,85,86*f*,86*t*,90*f*,94*f*,118*f*,292*f*,458*f*,459*t*,461*f*,470*f*,471*f*,472*f*
    middle,74*f*,85,86*f*,86*t*,292*f*,458*f*,459*t*,461*f*,471*f*,472*f*
    posterior,85,86*f*,86*t*,292*f*,458*f*,459*t*
Scalene tubercle,458*f*
Scalp,433*f*,502–507,502*f*
    arteries of,502–503

  infections of, *503*
  nerves of,506*f*
  veins of,475*f*,503
Scaphocephaly, *440*,561*f*
Scaphoid,289,290*f*,291*f*,321*f*,323*f*,324*f*,326*f*,328*f*
  fractures of, *290*
  tubercle of,290*f*,323*f*
Scaphoid fossa, of ear,552
Scapula,7*f*,71*f*,285*f*,286,287*f*,311*f*
  angles of acromial,287*f*
  inferior,5*t*,286*f*,287*f*,310*t*
  superior,287*f*,304*f*,305*t*
  borders of lateral,287*f*,308*f*
  medial,13*f*,287*f*,304*f*,305*t*,312*f*,313*f*,337*f*
  superior,287*f*
  costal surface of,287*f*,304*f*,308*f*
  neck of,286,308*f*
  posterior surface of,287*f*
  spine of,286,313*f*,336*f*,337*f*
  structural design,2*f*
  transverse ligament of,308*f*,312*f*
Scapular arcade,292,294*f*
Scapular artery circumflex,292,293*f*,294*f*,307*f*,312,313*f*
  dorsal,292*f*,294*f*
Scapular nerve, dorsal,298*f*,299*t*,302*f*
Scapular notch,287*f*,304*f*,308*f*,312,313*f*
Scapular region,284,284*f*
Scapular spine,5*t*,7*f*,285*f*,286,287*f*,308*f*,336*f*,337*f*
Scapulothoracic joint,303,303*f*,304*f*
Scarpa’s fascia,145,264
Schwann cells,19,20*f*
Sciatic foramen,374*f*
  greater,225,227,227*f*,228*f*,374*f*
  lesser,227*f*,228,228*f*,374*f*
Sciatic nerve,369*f*,370,371*f*,374*f*,392*f*,414*f*,415*f*
  injury, *370*
Sciatic notch greater,225,226*f*,374*f*
  lesser,225,226*f*,374*f*
Sclera,543*f*,544,545*f*

Scoliosis, *34*
Scrotal artery anterior,264*f*
    posterior,233*f*
Scrotal cavity,156*f*
Scrotal nerves, posterior,234*f*,239*f*,242*f*
Scrotal raphe,264
Scrotal septum,155*f*,155*t*,245*f*
Scrotal skin,155*t*,156f Scrotal vein anterior,264*f*
    posterior,233*f*,264*f*
Scrotum,153,155*f*,157*f*,186*f*,224*f*,239*f*,245*f*,264
    innervation of,264
    lymphatic drainage of,264
    neurovasculature of,264*f*
Secondary ossification centers,8
Secretomotor fibers,511
Segmental artery of kidney,205*f*
    of spinal cord,50*f*
Segmental bronchus,125*f*,126,127*f*
Segmental medullary arteries anterior,50,50*f*
    great anterior,50,50*f*
    posterior,50,50*f*
Segmental veins,44,205*f*
Sella(e) diaphragma,474,474*f*,486*f*
    dorsum,432,436*f*,438*f*,441*f*
    tuberculum,432,438*f*
Sella turcica,44*f*,432,438*f*. *See also* Hypophyseal fossa, of sphenoid bone (sella turcica) Semicircular canal,556
    anterior,493*f*,552*f*,555*f*,557*f*
    lateral,493*f*,494*f*,552*f*,554*f*,555*f*,557*f*
    posterior,493*f*,494*f*,552*f*,555*f*,557*f*
Semicircular ducts,493,494*f*,555*f*,556,557*f*
    ampulla of,557
Semilunar folds,194*f*
Semilunar lines,147
Semilunar valves aortic,104*f*,106*f*,107,107*f*
    pulmonary,104*f*,106*f*,107,107*f*,109*f*
Semimembranosus,13*f*,381*t*,391*t*,392*f*,409*f*–410*f*,412*f*,414*f*,415*f*
Semimembranosus bursa,390*f*,392*f*
Seminal colliculus,246*f*,257,257*f*

Seminal gland/vesicle,233*f*,242*f*–243*f*,245,245*f*,246*f*,266*f*
    autonomic nervous system and,182*t*
Seminiferous tubules,157
Semispinalis,58*t*
    capitis,13*f*,59*f*,336*f*,337*f*,560*f*,561*f*
    cervicis,59*f*,337*f*,560*f*
    thoracis,59*f*
Semitendinosus,13*f*,378,381*t*,391*t*,392*f*,409*f*–410*f*,412*f*,414*f*,415*f*
Sensory innervation of hand,301*f*
    of pharynx,539*f*
Sensory nerves,19
    of cervical plexus,460*f*
Septal cartilage,521*f*,522*f*
Septal defect atrial, *116*,116*f*
    ventricular,104, *116*,116*f*
Septomarginal trabecula,104,105*f*,108*f*
Septum/septa fibrous, between pulmonary lobules,129*f*
    interalveolar,127*f*,526*f*
    interatrial,102,105*f*
    intermuscular,313*f*,341*f*
    anterior,415*f*
    lateral,6*f*,415*f*
    medial,6*f*
    transverse,415*f*
    interventricular,102,104,104*f*,105*f*,108*f*
    defects of,104, *116*,116*f*
    trabeculae carneae of,104,105*f*
    lingual,531*f*
    nasal,488*f*,525*f*
    orbital,543,543*f*,544*f*,549*f*
    penile,265*f*
    plantar,413*f*
    lateral,413*f*
    medial,413*f*
    rectovaginal,231,232*f*,253*f*
    rectovesical,231,232*f*,246
    scrotal,155*f*,155*t*,245*f*
    septum pellucidum,561*f*
    vesicovaginal,253*f*

Serosa,192*f*
Serous pericardium parietal layer,99,99*f*,100*f*
    visceral layer,99,99*f*,102,103*f*
Serratus anterior,12*f*,85,146*f*,304,304*f*,305*t*,306*f*,334*f*,335*f*,337*f*
Serratus posterior,13*f*,337*f*
Sesamoid bones,290*f*,362,362*f*,398*f*–399*f*
Sex glands, accessory, in male,245*f*
Sexual responses, male ejaculation,267
    emission,267
    erection,267,267*f*
Shaft of clavicle,286*f*
    of femur,356,358*f*–359*f*
    of humerus,288*f*
    of metacarpal,290*f*
    of metatarsal,362
    of phalanx,328*f*
    middle,290*f*,321*f*
    proximal,321*f*
    of radius,289*f*
    of tibia,357,360*f*
    of ulna,289*f*,317*f*
Sheath. *See also* Synovial tendon sheaths; Tendon sheath axillary,307
    carotid,445,455,455*f*,456*t*
    digital fibrous,291,363
    femoral,363,381
    rectus,146*f*,147,147*t*,148*f*,150*f*,154*f*,156*f*,334*f*
Shin splints, *394*
Shoulder. *See also specific structure* bursae of,309*f*
    coronal section,311*f*
    MRI arthrography,345*f*
    musculature of, topographic views,334–337
    anterior,341*f*
    posterior, spaces of,312–313
Shoulder joint,7*f*,285*f*,303,303*f*–305*f*
    capsule of,313*f*
Shoulder region,284,306–313
    anterior view,309*f*
    muscles of,309–312,310*t*
    anterior,310*f*,335*f*

posterior,310*f*,336*f*,337*f*
posterior nerves and arteries of,313*f*
spaces of,313*f*
spaces of,312
posterior,312–313
topographic views of,334–337
Sigmoidal branch, of inferior mesenteric artery,168
Sigmoid/sigmoidal arteries,168,168*t*,172*f*,236*f*
Sigmoid colon,162*f*,193,193*f*,194*f*,232*f*,244*f*,248*f*,251*f*,253*f*,259*f*
lymphatic drainage of,178*t*
volvulus, *195*
Sigmoid mesocolon,161,165*f*,166*f*,192*f*–193*f*,193,232*f*,244*f*,248*f*,259*f*
Sigmoid sinus,436*f*,437*f*,451*f*,475,476*f*,476*t*,484*f*,493*f*,553*f*
groove for,436*f*
Sigmoid veins,175*t*,236*f*
Sinoatrial (SA) node,107,108*f*,111*t*,113*f*
artery of,111
branch to,109*f*–110*f*,111,111*t*
Sinus(es) anal,270*f*,271
aortic,109*f*
carotid,446,495*f*
branches to,494
cavernous,446,446,451*f*,451*f*,476–477,476–477,477*f*,482*f*,550*f*,551*f*
cranial nerves and,477*f*
lateral dural wall,486*f*
thrombophlebitis,476
confluence of,473*f*,475,476*f*,481*f*,483*f*,484*f*,561*f*
in cranial cavity,476
coronary,100*f*,103*f*,106*f*,109*f*–110*f*,112,112*f*
dural,433*f*,450,475–477
confluence of,476*t*
in cranial cavity,476*f*
principal,476*t*
structure of,475*f*
ethmoid,439,521,523*f*,523*t*,561*f*
frontal,431*f*,436*f*,440*f*,488*f*,521,522*f*,523*f*,523*t*,541*f*,561*f*
intercavernous anterior,476*f*,476*t*,477
posterior,476*f*,476*t*,477
lactiferous,82,83*f*

marginal,476*f*
maxillary,431*f*,438*f*,439,440*f*,521,523*f*,523*t*,541*f*,560*f*
infection of, *521*
oblique pericardial,100*f*,101
occipital,475,476*f*,484*f*
paranasal,521,523*f*
CT of,560*f*
pericardial, transverse,99*f*,100–101,100*f*
petrosal,437*f*,484*f*
inferior,442*f*,451*f*,476*f*,476*t*,477
superior,451*f*,476*f*,476*t*,477
renal,205,205*f*,212*f*
sagittal,473*f*
inferior,475,475*f*,476*t*,484*f*,486*f*
superior,473*f*,475,475*f*,476*t*,481*f*,483*f*,484*f*,486*f*,561*f*
site of entry into,484*f*
sigmoid,436*f*,437*f*,451*f*,475,476*f*,476*t*,484*f*,493*f*,553*f*
sphenoid,44*f*,432,438*f*,477*f*,482*f*,521,522*f*,523*f*,523*t*,553*f*,561*f*
aperture,438*f*
sphenoparietal,476*f*,476*t*
straight,475,476*f*,476*t*,484*f*,561*f*
tarsi,399*f*
transverse,46*f*,436*f*,475,476*f*,476*t*,484*f*
pericardial,99*f*,100–101,100*f*
surgical significance of, *101*
venous,104
confluence of (*See* Sinus(es), confluence of) dural,433*f*,450,475–477
Sinusoids,16
Skeletal muscles,11,11*f*,12*f*–13*f*
Skeletal system,7–10,7*f*
Skeleton appendicular,7,7*f*
axial,7,7*f*
cardiac,102,104*f*
developmental ossification of,273*f*
laryngeal,462–463,463*f*
of nose,521*f*
radiography of,273*f*
system overview of,7–10,7*f*
of upper limb,285*f*

Skin,502*f*
  composition of,6
  as functional subdivision,2*t*
  perianal,270*f*,271
  scrotal,155*t*,156f of shoulder,311*f*
  sympathetic/parasympathetic innervation,56*t*
Skull,429–442
  anterior,431*f*
  asterion of,430*f*,434*f*,440*t*
  base of exterior,435*f*
  interior,436*f*
  bregma of,433*f*,440*t*
  craniosynostosis, *440*
  facial fractures, *432*
  fractures, *440*, *493*
  lambda of,434*f*,440*t*
  landmarks of,440*t*
  lateral,430*f*
  nasion of,431*f*,440*t*
  neonatal,441*f*
  periosteum of,502,502*f*
  posterior,434*f*
  pterion of,430*f*,440*t*
  fractures at, *440*
  structural design,2*f*
  sutures of,440,441*f*
  coronal,430*f*,433*f*,441*f*
  frontal,441*f*
  incisive,526*f*
  intermaxillary,431*f*
  lambdoid,430*f*,433*f*,434*f*,440,441*f*
  palatine median,435*f*,526*f*,529*f*
  transverse,435*f*,526*f*
  sagittal,433*f*,434*f*,440,441*f*
  sphenofrontal,430*f*
  sphenoparietal,430*f*
  sphenosquamous/ sphenosquamosal,430*f*,441*f*
  squamous/squamosal,430*f*,440,441*f*
  vertex of,440*t*

x-rays, in infant,561*f*
Skullcap. *See* Calvaria Slip central,333,333*f*
interosseous,333*f*
lumbrical,333*f*
SMA. *See* Superior mesenteric artery (SMA) Small bowel. *See also* Small intestine structural design,2*f*
Small intestine,145*f*,162*f*,189–192
double contrast barium enema of,194*f*
horizontal part of,189,189*f*,190*f*,192*f*,199*f*,200*f*
innervation,190
lymphatic drainage of,190
mesenteries of,161,164*f*,192*f*
MRI of,191*f*
referred pain zones,184*f*
sections of,189
superior part of,189
wall structure,192*f*
Smooth muscles,11,127*f*
parasympathetic nervous system and,55
Snuffbox, anatomic,292,325,326*f*
Soft palate,494,525*f*,528,534*f*,538*f*
muscles of,529*f*,529*t*
Soleal line,360*f*
Sole of foot,356*f*,405–406
arteries of,364*f*
muscles of,406*t*,413*f*
Soleus,12*f*,13*f*,392*f*,396*t*,411*f*,412*f*,414*f*,415*f*
Solitary tract, nucleus of,491*f*
Soma, of nerve cells,20*f*
Somatic motor fibers,22,23*f*. *See also* Somatomotor fibers Somatic muscles,11
Somatic nervous system,18
peripheral nerve pathways of,51–55,51*f*–55*f*
Somatic plexuses,23
Somatic sensory fibers,22–23,23*f*
Somatomotor fibers,486*t*. *See also* Somatic motor fibers general,486*t*
special,486*t*
Sound transmission,555–557
in laryngeal cavity,465
Special somatic sensory fibers,22

Special visceral motor fibers,22
Special visceral sensory fibers,22
  of spermatic cord,146*f*,154,154*f*,155,158*f*
Spectral Doppler,26
Spermatic cord,146*f*,154,154*f*,155,155*f*,155*t*,156*f*,158*f*,233*f*,234*f*
Spermatic fascia,155*t*,156*f*
  external,154*f*,155*f*,157*f*
  internal,155*f*,157*f*,235*f*
Sphenoethmoidal recess,521,522*f*,523*f*,523*t*
Sphenofrontal suture,430*f*
Sphenoid bone,430*f*,431*f*,432,432*f*,434*f*,436*f*,437*f*,438*f*,441*f*,518*f*,528*f*,540*f*,541*f*
  anterior view,438*f*
  clinoid processes,432,436*f*,438*f*
  greater wing,430*f*,431*f*,432,436*f*,437*f*,438*f*,440*f*,518*f*,541*f*
  inferior view,438*f*
  lesser wing,431*f*,432,436*f*,438*f*,440*f*,441*f*,522*f*,541*f*
  orbital surface of,438*f*,540*f*
  pterygoid process,432,434*f*,435*f*,438*f*,508*f*,509*f*,522*f*,529*f*
  in situ,438*f*
  superior view,438*f*
  temporal surface of,438*f*
Sphenoid crest,522*f*
Sphenoid fontanelle,441*f*
Sphenoid sinuses,44*f*,432,438*f*,477*f*,482*f*,521,522*f*,523*f*,523*t*,553*f*,561*f*
  aperture,438*f*
Sphenomandibular ligament,507,508*f*
Sphenopalatine arteries,442*f*,446*t*,447*f*,515*f*,516*t*,524*f*
Sphenopalatine foramen,514*f*,518*f*,524*f*
Sphenopalatine vein,523
Sphenoparietal sinus,476*f*,476*t*
Sphenoparietal suture,430*f*
Sphenosquamous/ sphenosquamosal suture,430*f*,441*f*
Sphincter anal
  external,234*f*,238*f*,239*f*,240*f*,244*f*,248*f*,258*f*,259*f*,260*f*,261*f*,262*f*,263*f*,263*t*,271,
  deep part of,260*f*,270*f*
  subcutaneous part of,260*f*,270*f*
  superficial part of,260*f*,270*f*
  internal,240*f*,259*f*,260*f*,270*f*,271,272*f*
  of bile duct,200

  - of biliary system,199*f*
- Sphincter (*continued*) cardiac,117
  - esophageal,117,462
  - external urethral,230*f*,256,257*f*,261,263*f*,263*t*
  - in female,257
  - in male,257,257*f*
  - of hepatopancreatic ampulla,199*f*
  - internal urethral,256,257,257*f*
  - of Oddi,198
  - of pancreatic duct,199*f*
  - precapillary,15
  - pyloric,187,188*f*,189*f*
  - urethrovaginal,253*f*,263*f*
- Spinal accessory nerve (CN XI),462,498*f*
- Spinal arteries,50*f*
  - anterior,48*f*,50,50*f*,442*f*,483*f*
  - posterior,50,50*f*,442*f*,483*f*
- Spinal branch (arterial),45*f*
- Spinal cord,19*f*,57*f*,201*f*,481*f*
  - anterior view of,21*f*
  - arteries of,50*f* (*See also* Spinal arteries) blood supply to,50,51*f*
  - cervical,479*f*
  - developmental changes, *49*
  - horns of,20,21*f*
  - anterior,20,21*f*,50*f*–51*f*
  - lateral,20,500*t*
  - posterior,20,21*f*,50*f*–51*f*
  - meninges of,46–47,48*f*,474*f*
  - nerves in,22
  - preganglionic fibers,81*t*
  - segments,47*f*,51*f*
  - in situ,46*f*,49*f*
  - spinal nerves of,19*f*,22*f*,35*f*,51–57 (*See also* Spinal nerves) structure of,46–47,47*f*,51*f*
  - thoracic, MRI of,33*f*
  - topographical and functional organization of,19*f*
  - transverse section through,21*f*
  - veins of,51*f*
  - vertebral levels,47*f*

Spinal ganglia,19*f*,48*f*,49*f*,57*f*,63*f*,92*f*
Spinalis,58,58*f*,58*t*
Spinal nerves,19*f*,22*f*,51–57,481*f*
  anterior root,51,51*f*,57*f*,61*f*,92*f*
  of C1,46*f*
  of C4,46*f*,49*f*,52*f*
  cutaneous branch of lateral,60*f*,61*f*
  medial,60*f*,61*f*
  dorsal rami of,51–52,51*f*,297*f*
  dorsal root of,297*f*
  groove for,35*f*
  of L1,46*f*,57*f*
  laryngopharyngeal branches of,131*f*
  in neck,460*t*
  posterior root,48*f*,51,51*f*,57*f*,61*f*,92*f*
  ramus/rami of anterior (ventral),48*f*,51*f*,52,52*f*,57*f*,61,92*f*,241*f*–243*f*,297*f*
  posterior (dorsal),48*f*,51*f*,52,52*f*,57*f*,61*f*,92*f*,297*f*
  rootlets of,51*f*
  anterior,48*f*,51*f*
  posterior,51*f*
  root sleeve of,49*f*
  of S1,46*f*
  of T12,46*f*
  ventral root of,297*f*
Spinal root, of accessory nerve,462,498*f*
Spinal veins,442*f*
  anterior,48*f*,51*f*
  posterior,51*f*
Spine. *See also* Vertebrae; Vertebral column cervical arthrosis, uncovertebral, *41*
  bones of,35*f*
  CT of,62*t*,63*f*
  enlargement of,46*f*,47
  injuries of, *39*
  innervation of,90*f*
  ligaments of,41–42,41*f*,43*f*,44*f*
  MRI of,33*f*,62*t*,63*f*
  radiograph of,62*f*
  structural design,2*f*,47*f*
  ultrasound of,62*f*,62*t*

  uncinate process of,35f
  vascular supply to,45f
  vertebrae characteristics,34–35,35f
  curvatures of,32f,33, *34*
  development of, *33*
  imaging modalities for,62,62f
  lumbar,41,42f,160f (*See also* Lumbar vertebrae) bones of,36f,37f
  disk herniation in, *40*,40f,63f
  MRI of,33f,40f,63f
  radiograph of,63f
  structural design,2f,47f
  nasal,430f
  anterior,431f,521f
  osteoporosis of, *34*
  radiograph of,62,62f
  sacral,35,38f,46f
  scapular,5t,7f,285f,286,287f,308f,336f,337f
  thoracic,36f,47f
  bones of,36f
  radiographs of,63f
Spine (of structure) iliac inferior anterior,226f,227f
  posterior,226f,227f,375f
  superior anterior,145,146f,225,226f,227f,228f,374f,375f,383f,408f–410f
  posterior,5t,225,226f,227f,374f,375f,377f
  ischial,224f,225,225f,226f,227f,228f,229f,375f,382f
  nasal,430f
  anterior,431f,521f
  of scapula,286,313f,336f,337f
Spinous processes,5t,32f,34f,35f,42f–43f,44f,59f,60f,63f,228f
  of axis (C2),32f,60f
Spiral ganglion,494f,556f
Spiral organ (organ of Corti),493,556
Spiral valve,198
Splanchnic nerves,23,51f,55,57f,79f–80f,80,97f
  greater,56f,80,80f,96f,97f,131f,180f,182f–183f,184f
  least,80,184f–185f,241f–242f
  lesser,80,180f,184f–185f,241f–242f
  lumbar,55,180,182f,184f–185f,240f–243f
  pelvic,55,56f,180f,181,182f,237,240f,241f–243f

  sacral,55,182*f*,184*f*,240*f*,243*f*
  thoracic,55,119,182*f*
Spleen,17*f*,71*f*,119*f*,163*f*,165*f*,169*f*,190*f*,192*f*,199*f*,201*f*,202–203,211*f*,212*f*
  accessory,202, *203*
  blood supply to,202
  CT of,212*f*
  extremity of anterior,202*f*
  posterior,202*f*
  function of,202
  hilum of,202,202*f*
  infarction of,202
  location of,202,203*f*
  lymphatic drainage of,178*t*
  peritoneal relationships,203,203*f*
  in situ,202,203*f*
  surfaces of,202*f*
  trauma to, *203*
  ultrasound of,210*f*
Splenectomy,203
Splenic
 artery,14*f*,163*f*,166*f*,167,167*f*,168,168*t*,169*f*,170*f*,171*f*,176*f*,186*f*,190*f*,202,202*f*,
  pancreatic branches,170*f*
Splenic capsule, autonomic nervous system and,182*t*
Splenic fossa,166*f*,204*f*
Splenic hilum,202,202*f*
Splenic plexus,181*t*,183*f*,202
Splenic recess,163*f*–164*f*,164*t*
Splenic vein,119*f*,166*f*,170*f*,173,186*f*,201*f*,202*f*,203*f*,208*f*,212*f*
  tributaries of,175*t*
Splenius capitis,58*t*,336*f*,337*f*,560*f*
Splenius cervicis,13*f*,58*t*
Splenius muscle group,58
Splenocolic ligament,202,203*f*
Splenorenal ligament,202,203*f*
Spondylolisthesis, *37*
  traumatic, *39*
Spondylolysis, *37*
Spondylophyte,40*f*
Spondylosis, *41*

Spongy part, of urethra,223f,246f,257,257f,265f
Sprains, ankle, *400*
Squamous part, of temporal bone,432,434f,437f,512,514f,518f
Squamous/squamosal suture,430f,440,441f
Stance phase, in gait cycle,407,407t
Stapedial nerve,493f
Stapedius,492,554f,555
Stapes,552f,554f,555,555f,556f
Stellate ganglion,56f,80f,113f,462,470f
Stenosis of aortic valve, *107*
    of circumflex artery,111f
Stensen’s duct,511
Sternal angle,5t,84,84f
Sternal body,7f,71f,84,84f,86f,87f,146f,149f,334f,335f
Sternal end, of clavicle,304f
Sternal line,4t
Sternoclavicular joint,286f,303,303f,304f
Sternoclavicular ligaments,303f
    anterior,303,304f
    posterior,303
Sternocleidomastoid
  muscle,12f,334f,335f,336f,337f,455,455f,456,457f,457t,469f,470f,472f,498f,51
Sternocleidomastoid region,454,454t
Sternocostal joints,85
Sternocostal surface, of heart,102,103f
Sternohyoid muscle,456,457f,458t,461f,469f,535f
Sternothyroid,455f,456,457f,458t,461f,469f,472f,560f
Sternum,9f,84,84f,95t,100f,128f,146f,186f,334f,335f
    body of,7f,71f,84,84f,86f,87f,146f,149f,334f,335f
    manubrium of,7f,71f,84,84f,285,286f,334f,335f
    parts of,84,84f
    xiphoid process of,7f,71f,84,84f,86f,87f,146f,335f
Stomach,79f,101f,118f,145f,161f,163f,164f,169f,186f,187–188,196f
    angular notch of,187,188f
    anterior wall of,188f,201f
    arteries of,169f,188
    autonomic innervation of,56f,183f
    body of,187,187f,188f,199f
    cardia of,161f,166f,187,188f,199f

  celiac trunk and,169*f*
  circular layer,189*f*
  curvature of greater,161*f*,187,199*f*
  lesser,161*f*,187,199*f*
  fundus of,187,188*f*,199*f*
  greater curvature of,161*f*,187,199*f*
  innervation of,56*f*,182*f*,183*f*,188
  lesser curvature of,161*f*,187,199*f*
  longitudinal layer,189*f*
  lymphatic drainage of,178*t*,188
  muscular coat of,189*f*
  parts of,187–188
  posterior wall of,201*f*
  pyloric part of,187,192*f*,201*f*
  radiograph of,188*f*
  rugae of,188,188*f*
  in situ,187*f*
  submucosa of,189*f*
  ulcers of, *188*
  veins of,188
Straight sinus,475,476*f*,476*t*,484*f*,561*f*
Strains, hamstring, *378*
Strap muscles. *See also* Muscles (named), infrahyoid ultrasound of,558*f*
Stroke, *481*
Stroma, of mammary gland,82
Styloglossus,499*f*,527*f*,530,531*f*,535*f*
Stylohyoid,456,457*f*,492,492*f*,527*f*,527*t*,528*f*,533*f*,535*f*,536*f*
  nerve to,512*f*
Styloid process of radius,289,289*f*,290*f*,291*f*,317*f*,328*f*
  of temporal bone,39*f*,430*f*,432,434*f*,435*f*,437*f*,508*f*,527*f*,531*f*,532*f*,536*f*,552*f*
  of ulna,289,290*f*,291*f*,317*f*,328*f*
Stylomandibular ligament,507,508*f*
Stylomastoid artery,442*f*
Stylomastoid foramen,432,435*f*,437*f*,442*f*,491*f*,492*f*,493*f*,517*f*,528*f*
Stylopharyngeus,494,495*f*,496*f*,535,536*f*,537*t*
Subacromial bursa,308,308*f*,309*f*,311*f*
Subarachnoid cistern,478,480
Subarachnoid hematoma,478*f*
Subarachnoid hemorrhage, *478*,478*f*

Subarachnoid space,47,48*f*,49*f*,474*f*,478,478*f*,481*f*
Subclavian
  artery,44,45*f*,50*f*,71*f*,73*f*,77*f*–79*f*,91*f*,98*f*,151*f*,291–292,292*f*,293*f*,294*f*,443,444
    branches of,291
    groove for,458*f*
    left,14*f*,71*f*,72,74*f*,74*t*,89*f*,94*f*,97*f*,101*f*,103*f*,118*f*,445*f*,468*f*,482*f*
    right,14*f*,72,74*t*,79*f*,96*f*,111*t*
Subclavian lymphatic trunk,18*f*,77*f*,83*f*
Subclavian plexus,80*f*
Subclavian steal syndrome, *443*
Subclavian
  vein,14*f*,17*f*,18*f*,51*f*,71*f*,76*f*,83*f*,92*f*,98*f*,113*f*,176*f*,295,295*f*,450*f*,468*f*,470*f*,471*f*
    left,71*f*,76*f*–77*f*,89*f*,94*f*,97*f*,118*f*
    right,74*t*,76*f*–77*f*,96*f*
Subclavius,304,307*f*,335*f*
    nerve to,298*f*,299*t*,302*f*,305*t*
Subcostal artery,45*f*
Subcostal muscle,86*t*,87
Subcostal nerve,179,179*f*,203*f*,208*f*,369*f*
Subcostal plane,5*t*
Subcostal vein,46*f*,76*f*
Subcutaneous connective tissue,6,6*f*
Subcutaneous tissue,148*f*,156*f*,309*f*
Subdeltoid bursa,308,308*f*,309*f*,311*f*
Subdural hematoma, *478*,478*f*
Subdural hemorrhage, *478*,478*f*
Subdural space,47,48*f*,478
Subglottic space,464,464*f*
Subhepatic space,164,165*t*
Subintima,10*f*
Sublingual artery,532*f*
Sublingual folds,527*f*,532,533*f*
Sublingual gland,491*f*,500*t*,531*f*,532,533*f*
Sublingual papilla,527*f*,532,533*f*
Subluxation, of radial head, *318*
Submandibular duct,532,533*f*
Submandibular fossa,434*f*
Submandibular ganglia,491,491*f*,501*f*,528*f*,532*f*
Submandibular gland,472*f*,491*f*,500*t*,532,533*f*

Submandibular lymph node,453*f*,453*t*,531*f*
Submandibular (digastric) triangle,454,454*t*,455*f*
Submental artery,532*f*
Submental branch, of facial artery,446
Submental lymph node,453*f*,453*t*,531*f*
Submental triangle,454,454*t*,455*f*
Submental vein,450*f*,532*f*
Submucosa,189*f*,192*f*
  of stomach,189*f*
  of urethra,255*f*
Suboccipital compartment,59
Suboccipital nerve,52*f*,453,460*t*,461*f*
Suboccipital region, muscles of,58–61,58*t*
Subperitoneal recesses,231
Subperitoneal space,23
  in pelvis,225,232*f*
Subperitoneal structures,160
Subphrenic recess,164,165*f*,165*t*
Subpleural connective tissue,129*f*
Subpleural network, lymphatic,130*f*
Subpopliteal recess,389*f*,390,390*f*
Subscapular artery,292,294*f*
Subscapular fossa,286,286*f*
Subscapularis,304*f*,306*f*,308*f*,309,309*f*,311*f*,311*t*,335*f*
  subtendinous bursa of,308,308*f*,309*f*
Subscapular nerve lower,299*t*,307*f*
  upper,299*t*
Subscapular nodes,296,296*f*
Subscapular vein,295*f*
Subserosa,192*f*
Subtalar joint,398*f*,399*f*,400*f*,401,401*f*,404*f*
  anterior compartment,401*f*,404*f*
  eversion of,402*t*
  inversion of,396*t*,402*t*
  posterior compartment,401*f*,404*f*
  pronation of,402*t*
  supination of,396*t*,402*t*
Subtalar ligaments,401*f*
Subtendinous bursa of gastrocnemius lateral,390*f*

  medial,390,390*f*,392*f*
  of subscapularis,308,308*f*,309*f*
Sulcal artery,50*f*
Sulcal vein,51*f*
Sulcus/sulci. *See also* Groove atrioventricular, right,103*f*
  of brain,479,479*f*
  central,479*f*
  cerebral,479,479*f*
  coronary,102,105*f*
  of heart,102,103*f*
  interventricular anterior,101*f*,102
  posterior,102,103*f*
  lateral,479*f*
  post central,479*f*
  terminal,104,530*f*
Sulcus terminalis,530
Summation shadow,62,62*f*–63*f*
Superciliary arch,431*f*
Superficial, location/direction term,3*t*
Superficial fatty layer, abdominal,145,146*f*
Superficial peroneal nerve,54*f*. *See also* Fibular nerve Superficial pouch, of perineum,222,223*f*,223*t*
Superficial veins,14,16
Superior, location/direction term,3*t*
Superior mesenteric artery (SMA),14*f*,166*f*,167,167*f*,168*t*,169*f*,170*f*,171*f*,172*f*,174*f*,176*f*,186*f*,189*f*,190*f*,19
  branches of,202
  ileal branch of,168,168*t*,171*f*,175*t*,190
  jejunal branch of,168,168*t*,171*f*,190
Superior mesenteric vein,14*f*,119*f*,166*f*,170*f*,173,176*f*,189*f*,190*f*,199*f*,200*f*,201*f*,208*f*
  tributaries of,175*t*
Superior thoracic branch, of axillary artery,292
Superior vena cava,14*f*,16,18*f*,25*f*,46*f*,51*f*,71*f*,72*f*,75,76*f*–78*f*,89*f*,92*f*,93*f*,94*f*,96*f*,98*f*,99,99*f*,10
  syndrome, *76*
Superolateral lymph nodes,367*f*
Superomedial lymph nodes,367*f*
Supination,317*f*

- axis of, 317*f*
- foot, 402*t*
- forearm in, 317*f*
- at radioulnar joints, 316, 317*f*, 318*t*
- of subtalar joint, 396*t*, 402*t*
- of transverse tarsal joint, 402*t*
- of upper limb joints, 284

Supinator, 12*f*, 315*f*, 320*t*, 344*f*
Supraclavicular fossa, lesser, 454, 455*f*
Supraclavicular nerves, 54*f*, 60*f*, 93*f*, 153*f*, 302*f*, 460*f*, 460*t*, 461*f*, 469*f*
Supraclavicular node, *84*, 296*f*
Supraclavicular part, of brachial plexus, 297, 299*t*
Supracolic compartment, 164
Supracondylar lines lateral, 356, 358*f*
- medial, 356, 358*f*

Supracondylar ridge lateral, 288*f*, 316*f*
- medial, 288*f*, 316*f*

Supracrestal plane, 5*t*
Supraglenoid tubercle, 286*f*, 287*f*
Supraglottic space, 464, 464*f*
Suprahyoid muscles, 456, 457*f*, 525, 527*f*, 527*t*
Supramastoid crest, 513*f*
Supraorbital artery, 447, 448*f*, 549*f*
Supraorbital foramen, 430*f*, 431*f*, 540*f*, 541*t*
Supraorbital margin, 431*f*
Supraorbital nerve, 477*f*, 490*f*, 506, 506*f*, 511*f*, 512*f*, 542*f*, 549*f*, 551*f*
Supraorbital vein, 449, 450*f*, 551*f*
Suprapatellar bursa, 389*f*, 390
Suprapatellar pouch, 389*f*
Suprapiriform foramen, 374*f*
Suprarenal artery, 167, 167*f*, 168*f*
- inferior, 168*t*, 174*f*, 205*f*, 208*f*
- middle, 167, 167*f*, 168*t*, 174*f*, 205*f*, 208*f*
- superior, 174*f*, 205*f*, 208*f*

Suprarenal glands, 71*f*, 165*f*–166*f*, 199*f*, 204*f*, 205*f*, 207–208, 208*f*
- autonomic nervous system and, 182*t*
- cortex of, 207
- left, 166*f*, 190*f*, 203*f*, 204*f*, 206*f*, 208*f*
- location of, 203*f*, 204*f*, 207

  lymphatic drainage of,178*t*,207
  medulla of,182*t*,207
  right,166*f*,190*f*,201*f*,206*f*,208*f*
Suprarenal plexus,180*f*,181*t*
Suprarenal vein,173,175*f*,208*f*
  left,206*f*,208*f*
  right,174*f*,205*f*
Suprascapular artery,292,292*f*,293*f*,294*f*,313*f*,443,444*f*,446,470*f*,471*f*,472*f*
  acromial branches,294*f*
Suprascapular nerve,298*f*,313*f*,470*f*
Suprascapular vein,450*f*
Supraspinatus,13*f*,309,311*f*,311*t*–312*t*,313*f*,335*f*,337*f*
Supraspinatus ligament,309
Supraspinatus tendon,309*f*,311*f*
Supraspinous fossa,286,287*f*
Supraspinous ligament,42,42*f*,44*f*
  MRI of,33*f*
Supratendinous bursa,308*f*
Supratrochlear artery,447,448*f*,549*f*
Supratrochlear lymph nodes,296*f*
Supratrochlear nerve,477*f*,490*f*,506,506*f*,511*f*,512*f*,542*f*,549*f*,551*f*
Supratrochlear vein,449,450*f*,550*f*
Supraventricular crest,104,105*f*
Supravesical fossa,150*f*,151
Sural nerve,54*f*,368*t*,369*f*,371,392*f*
Surgical neck, of humerus,288,288*f*
Suspensory ligament,82,83*f*
  Cooper’s,82,83*f*
  of duodenum,189,189*f*
  of ovaries,232,247,251*f*,253*f*,258*f*
  of penis,235*f*,264*f*
Suspensory (Cooper’s) ligaments,82,83*f*
Sustentaculum tali,357,362*f*,398*f*,399*f*,400*f*,401*f*,403*f*
Suture, of skull,440,441*f*
  coronal,430*f*,433*f*,441*f*
  frontal,441*f*
  incisive,526*f*
  intermaxillary,431*f*
  lambdoid,430*f*,433*f*,434*f*,440,441*f*

palatine median,435*f*,526*f*,529*f*
transverse,435*f*,526*f*
sagittal,433*f*,434*f*,440,441*f*
sphenofrontal,430*f*
sphenoparietal,430*f*
sphenosquamous/ sphenosquamosal,430*f*,441*f*
squamous/squamosal,430*f*,440,441*f*
Swallowing,537*f*
Swayback. *See* Lordosis Swing phase, gait cycle,407*t*
Sympathetic ganglion,51*f*,61*f*,80*f*,92*f*,131*f*,182*f*
Sympathetic innervation of eye,56*t*
of gastrointestinal tract,56*t*
of head,56*t*,500*f*,500*t*
of heart,56*t*
of lungs,56*t*
of male sex organs,56*t*
of pancreas,56*t*
of rectum,259
Sympathetic nervous system,55,56*t*
in abdomen,182,182*f*
effect on organs,182*t*,184*f*
effect on organs,56*t*,182*f*,182*t*
in pelvis,182,182*f*
effect on organs,182,182*f*
peripheral,81*t*
structure of,23
in thorax,80*f*
Sympathetic root, of oculomotor nerve,489*f*,551*f*
Sympathetic trunks,55,57*f*,78,78*f*,79*f*,80*f*,89*f*,96*f*,97*f*,179*f*,180*f*,183*f*,184*f*,240*f*,470*f*,472*f*
Sympathetic visceral responses,22
Symphyseal surface,9*f*
Synapse,19,20*f*
Synchondroses,8–9,9*f*
Syndesmosis,8,8*f*
tibiofibular,357,360*f*,400*f*
Synostoses,9,9*f*
craniosynostosis, *440*
Synovial cavity,307,324*f*

Synovial fluid,9,10
Synovial joints,9
  extra-articular and intraarticular structures of, *10*
  intracapsular structures of,9,10*f*
  ligaments of,10
Synovial membrane,9,10,10*f*,11,307
Synovial tendon sheaths,11,284,329
  common flexor,323,330*f*
  digital, infection in, *329*
  intertubercular,308*f*
Systemic circulation,16
  in cardiac cycle,70
Systole,108–109
  in cardiac cycle,106*f*,108–109,109*f*
  ventricular,106*f*
T
Table, of skull inner,433*f*,473*f*,502*f*
  outer,433*f*,473*f*,502*f*
Tail axillary,82
  of epididymis,157*f*
  pancreatic,168,170*f*,200,200*f*,203*f*,208*f*
Talocalcaneal joint,404*f*
Talocalcaneal ligament, interosseous,400*f*,401,404*f*
Talocalcaneonavicular joint,404*f*
Talocrural joint,357*f*,393*f*,396*t*,398–400,398*f*,399*f*,400*f*
  anterior view,398*f*–399*f*
  plantar flexion of,396*t*
  posterior view,398*f*–399*f*
Talofibular ligament anterior,393*f*,398
  posterior,393*f*,398
Talonavicular joint,398*f*–399*f*
Talonavicular ligament,400*f*
Talus,357,361*f*,362*f*,393*f*,398*f*–401*f*,403*f*,404*f*
  body,357,361*f*,362*f*
  head,357,361*f*,362*f*
  neck,361*f*,362*f*
  trochlea of,399*f*
Tarsal arteries, lateral,365,365*f*
Tarsal bones,7*f*,357,357*f*,361*f*

Tarsal joint, transverse,398*f*,401
  eversion of,402*t*
  inversion of,402*t*
  pronation of,402*t*
  supination of,402*t*
Tarsal muscle,549*f*
  inferior,543*f*
  superior,543*f*
Tarsal plates,543
Tarsal tunnel syndrome, *395*
Tarsometatarsal joint,398*f*,401
Tarsus,543,544*f*,549*f*
Taste buds,491*f*
Tectorial membrane,41*f*,42,44*f*
Teeth,525–526
  alveoli for,432*f*,439,525,526*f*
  canine,432*f*,526*f*
  mandibular,526*f*
  maxillary,526*f*
  permanent,526*f*
Tegmen tympani,493*f*,554*f*,555
Telencephalon,21*f*,475*f*
Temporal artery,512*f*
  deep,447*f*,513*f*,515*f*,516*t*
  middle,446
  superficial,445,445*f*,446,446*t*,449*f*,511*f*,515*f*
Temporal bone,430*f*,431*f*,434*f*,435*f*,436*f*,437*f*,438*f*,441*f*,514*f*,552*f*
  aqueduct of vestibule,437*f*,557
  articular tubercle,430*f*,432,435*f*,437*f*,508*f*,510*f*
  fractures, *493*
  inferior view,437*f*
  mastoid process,39*f*,430*f*,432,434*f*,435*f*,437*f*,508*f*,527*f*,528*f*
  medial view,437*f*
  petromastoid part of,437*f*
  petrous part of,429*t*,432,434*f*,435*f*,436*f*,437*f*,441,441*f*,474,477,552*f*,555*f*
  petrous ridge of,437*f*,482*f*,489
  in situ,437*f*
  squamous part of,432,434*f*,437*f*,512,514*f*,518*f*
  styloid process of,39*f*,430*f*,432,434*f*,435*f*,437*f*,508*f*,527*f*,531*f*,532*f*,536*f*,552*f*

- superior view, 437*f*
- tympanic part of, 432, 437*f*
- zygomatic process, 430*f*, 437*f*, 514*f*

Temporal branch deep of maxillary artery, 514
- of trigeminal nerve, 514
- of facial nerve (CN VII), 492, 492*f*, 513*f*
- of parotid plexus, 492, 492*f*

Temporal fascia, 514

Temporal fossa, 512–514
- boundaries of, 512
- topography of, 513*f*

Temporalis, 507, 508*f*, 509*f*, 509*t*, 510, 515*f*

Temporal line, 513*f*

Temporal lobe, 475*f*, 479, 479*f*

Temporal nerves, deep, 490*f*, 512, 514, 515*f*, 517*f*

Temporal vein deep, 451*f*
- superficial, 449, 450*f*, 451*f*, 511*f*, 515*f*

Temporofacial trunk, 512*f*

Temporomandibular joint, 491, 507–510
- dislocation of, *510*
- ligaments of, 507, 508*f*

Temporoparietalis, 502, 504*f*

Tendinous arch of levator ani, 223*t*, 228, 229*f*, 230*t*, 231*f*, 252*f*, 254*f*
- of pelvic fascia, 230, 231*f*, 252*f*

Tendinous cords, 105*f*, 106

Tendinous fibers relaxed, 106*f*
- tensed, 106*f*

Tendinous intersections, 146*f*

Tendinous ring, common, 489*f*, 542*f*, 543, 547, 547*f*, 548*t*

Tendons (named), 11
- abductor pollicis longus, 324*f*, 326*f*, 344*f*
- biceps brachii, 308*f*, 315*f*, 338*f*, 340*f*
- biceps femoris, common, 411*f*
- calcaneal (Achilles’), 394, 397*f*, 403*f*, 404*f*, 411*f*, 412*f*, 414*f*
- rupture of, *394*
- central, of diaphragm, 87, 87*f*–88*f*, 100*f*, 118*f*, 146*f*, 148*f*, 149*f*
- conjoint, 145
- extensor, of fingers, 284
- extensor carpi radialis brevis, 324*f*, 326*f*

  extensor carpi radialis longus,324*f*,326*f*
  extensor carpi ulnaris,324*f*,326*f*
  extensor digiti minimi,324*f*
  extensor digitorum,324*f*,326*f*,333*f*,338*f*
  extensor digitorum longus,397*f*
  extensor hallucis longus,397*f*
  extensor indicis,320*t*,324*f*,326*f*
  extensor pollicis brevis,324*f*,326*f*
  extensor pollicis longus,324*f*,326*f*,338*f*
  fibularis longus,362*f*
  flexor, long,284
  flexor carpi radialis,323*f*,324*f*,330*f*,339–340*f*,344*f*
  flexor carpi ulnaris,339*f*,340*f*
  flexor digitorum brevis,413*f*
  flexor digitorum profundus,324*f*,330*f*,333*f*,338*f*,339*f*
  flexor digitorum superficialis,324*f*,325*f*,330*f*,333*f*,338–340*f*,344*f*
  flexor hallucis longus,412*f*,413*f*
  flexor pollicis longus,324*f*,330*f*,338–340*f*
  palmaris longus,325*f*,330*f*,338*f*,340*f*
  pes anserinus,378,381*t*,390,408*f*,409*f*,411*f*
  plantaris,392*f*,412*f*
  quadriceps femoris,386*f*,389*f*,408*f*
  rectus femoris,385*f*
  semimembranosus,392*f*
  superior oblique,547*f*,548*t*
  supraspinatus,309*f*,311*f*
  temporalis,513*f*
  tensor tympani,554*f*
  vastus intermedius,385*f*
Tendons (of region or structure) of diaphragm,100*f*
  of stapedius,554*f*
  of upper limb,284
  of wrist,325
Tendon sheath,11
  of ankle,397*t*
  communication, *329*
  dorsal carpal,325,326*f*
  fibrous,329
  in intertubercular groove of humerus,309*f*

  synovial,11,284,329
  common flexor,323,330*f*
  digital, infection in, *329*
  intertubercular,308*f*
Teniae coli,161*f*,193,194*f*,244*f*,248*f*,259*f*
Tennis elbow, *318*
Tenosynovitis, *329*
Tense part, tympanic membrane,552
Tension pneumothorax, *122*
Tensor fasciae latae,12*f*,13*f*,373*t*,383*f*,408*f*,410*f*,414*f*
Tensor tympani,491,494*f*,517*f*,552*f*,554*f*,555,556
  semicanal of,493*f*
Tensor veli palatini,491,517*f*,528,529*f*,529*t*,535*f*,536*f*,553*f*
Tentorial herniation, *475*
Tentorial notch,474,474*f*
Tentorium cerebella,474,474*f*,475*f*,476*f*,486*f*
Teres
  major,4*t*,13*f*,292,299*t*,307,309,309*f*,310*f*,310*t*,311*f*,312,312*t*,313*f*,334*f*,335*f*,33
  minor,13*f*,309,311*t*,312*t*,313*f*,337*f*
Terminal branches, of external carotid artery,446,446*t*
Terminal bronchioles,126,127*f*
Terminal crest,104,105*f*
Terminal duct lobular unit (TDLU), of breast (female),83*f*
Terminal ileum,192*f*,194*f*
Terminal nerves, of brachial plexus,297
Terminal sulcus,104,530*f*
Terminal vascular beds,14,15,15*f*,16
Terminology, for location and position,2*t*
Terms of location and direction,3–4,3*f*–4*f*
Testicular artery,150*f*,155*f*,155*t*,156*f*,157*f*,158*f*,167,167*f*,168*t*,175*f*,232,235*f*
  left,175*f*,206*f*,208*f*
  right,174*f*,206*f*,208*f*
Testicular cancer, *159*
Testicular plexus,155*f*,157*f*,158,180*f*,181*t*,242*f*,243*f*
Testicular torsion, *159*
Testicular veins,150*f*,157,158*f*,159*f*,173,174,175*f*,235*f*
  left,159*f*,174*f*,175*f*,206*f*,208*f*
  right,76*f*,174*f*,174*t*,206*f*,208*f*
Testis,156*f*–158*f*,157–158,235*f*,242*f*

  - blood vessels of,158*f*–159*f*
  - carcinoma of, *159*
  - coverings of,155*t*
  - left lateral view,157*f*
  - lymphatic drainage of,178*t*
  - mediastinum of,155*f*,155*t*,157,157*f*
  - MRI of,158*f*
  - in situ,157*f*
  - structural design,2*f*
  - structures of,157,157*f*,159
  - testicular torsion, *159*
- Tetralogy of Fallot, *106*
- Thalamus,479,479*f*
- Thebesian valve,105*f*,112
- Thenar compartment,291,329
  - muscles of,291,329,331*t*,339*f*,340*f*
- Thenar crease,329*f*
- Thenar eminence,324*f*,328,329*f*
- Thenar space,329
- Thigh,7*f*,356,357*f*
  - anterior,383*f*
  - arteries of,363*f*,364*f*
  - compartments anterior,363,379*t*
  - medial,363,380*t*
  - posterior,363,381*t*
  - transverse section,415*f*
  - deep artery of,363,383*f*,415*f*
  - deep vein of,366*f*,415*f*
  - functional anatomy of,378–383
  - lateral cutaneous nerve of,368,368*t*,369*f*
  - muscles of,378–381,381*t*,409*f*,415*f*
  - anterior compartment,378,379*t*
  - medial compartment,378,380*t*
  - posterior compartment,378,381*t*
  - posterior cutaneous nerve of,368*t*,369*f*,370
  - retroinguinal space,381,382*f*
  - spaces of,381–383
  - topographic anatomy of,408*f*–410*f*
- Thigh region,356*f*

Third occipital nerve,52*f*,453,460*t*,461*f*,506
Thoracentesis, *122*. *See also* Chest tube/drain Thoracic
 aorta,45*f*,72,74*f*,74*t*,77*f*,79*f*,88*f*,89*f*,91*f*,97*f*,118*f*,293*f*
Thoracic aortic plexus,74*t*,77*f*,80*f*
Thoracic artery,89*f*,91*f*,151,151*f*,307*f*,470*f*
  internal,45*f*,72,74*t*,91*f*,94*f*,120*f*,121*f*,151*f*–152*f*,176*f*,292*f*,293*f*,443,444*f*,470*f*,
  branches,72
  lateral,91*f*,151*f*–152*f*,292,293*f*
  superior,151*f*–152*f*,293*f*
Thoracic duct,17,17*f*,18*f*,70,70*f*,77,77*f*,95*t*,97*f*,118*f*,178*f*,470*f*,471*f*
Thoracic ganglion,78*f*
Thoracic inlet,70*f*–71*f*,85,95*t*
Thoracic spine,36*f*,47*f*
  bones of,36*f*
  radiographs of,63*f*
Thoracic vertebrae,35,63*f*
T7
  spinous process,5*t*,32*f*
T12
  spinous process,5*t*,32*f*
Thoracoacromial artery,82,292,293*f*,307*f*
  acromial branch,293*f*
  deltoid branch,293*f*
  pectoral branch,293*f*
Thoracodorsal artery,151*f*–152*f*,292,293*f*,294*f*,307*f*
Thoracodorsal nerve,298*f*,299*t*,302*f*,307*f*
Thoracoepigastric vein,90,91*f*–92*f*,152*f*
Thoracolumbar component,55
Thoracolumbar fascia,13*f*,58,59,336*f*,337*f*
Thoracolumbar junction,42*f*
Thorax anterior part of,89*f*
  aorta,45*f*,72,74*f*,74*t*,76*f*,77*f*,79*f*,88*f*,89*f*,91*f*,97*f*,118*f*,293*f*
  anterior view of,73*f*
  plexus,78*f*,80*f*
  aperture inferior,84*f*,85
  superior,84*f*,85 (*See also* Thoracic inlet) arteries of,72–75,94*f*
  inferior,152*f*
  internal,45*f*,72,74*t*,120*f*,121*f*,152*f*,292*f*,293*f*,471*f*
  lateral,152*f*,292,293*f*

superior,152*f*,293*f*
cavity of,94*f*
serous lining of,23
clinical correlations achalasia, *119*
angina pectoris, *111*
aortic valve stenosis, *107*
atelectasis, *126*
atrioventricular heart block, *108*
breast cancer, *84*
carcinoma of lung, *131*
cardiac tamponade, *100*
chest tube insertion, *93*
chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, *127*
coronary artery bypass graft, *112*
coronary artery disease, *111*
heart sounds auscultation sites, *107*,107*f*
mitral valve prolapse, *107*
pericarditis, *99*
pleural effusion, *122*
pleuritis, *120*
pneumothorax, *122*
pulmonary embolism, *129*
superior vena cava syndrome, *76*
tension pneumothorax, *122*
thoracentesis, *122*
transverse pericardial sinus, surgical significance, *101*
clinical imaging basics of,132–135
CT of,124*f*,132*t*,133,134*f*
developmental correlations atrial septal defects, *116*
coarctation of the aorta, *117*
neonatal respiratory distress syndrome, *127*
patent ductus arteriosus, *116*
tetralogy of Fallot, *106*
ventricular septal defects,104, *116*,116*f*
diaphragm of,87–90
duct,17–18,17*f*,76*f*,77,97*f*,118*f*,178*f*,471*f*
features, general,70
ganglion,501*f*
general features of,70*f*–72*f*

inferior view of,134*f*
innervation of,93*f*
lateral view of,88*f*
lumbar part of,88*f*
lymphatics of,77–78,77*f*–78*f*
lymphatic trunks in,76*f*
and mediastinum relationship (*See* Mediastinum) MRI of,33*f*,132*t*,133
muscles of diaphragm,87–88
wall,85–87,86*f*,86*t*
nerves of,55,56*f*,78–81,78*f*–80*f*,81*t*
neurovasculature of,72–76,73*f*–76*f*,74*t*,78–81,78*f*,80*f*,90–93
nodes,76*f*
outlet,70*f*,85
parasympathetic nervous system in,80*f*
pulmonary cavities,70,70*f*,128
radiograph of,132*t*
as regional subdivision,2*f*
segment structure,85*f*
spine bones of,36*f*
lamina of vertebrae,36*f*
radiographs of,62*f*–63*f*
sympathetic nervous system in,80*f*
sympathetic trunks,78,80*f*
ultrasound of,132*t*
vagus (CN X) nerve in,497,497*f* (*See also* Vagus nerve (CN X)) veins of,75,76*f*,94*f*,296*f*
internal,75,76*f*,120*f*,121*f*,152*f*,175*f*–176*f*,471*f*
lateral,152*f*
vertebrae,63*f*,212*f*
inferior articular facet of,35,36*f*–37*f*,42*f*
superior articular facet of,35,36*f*–37*f*,42*f*
volume, respiratory changes in,128*f*
wall of (*See also* Breast (female)) cutaneous innervation of,93*f*
dermatomes of,53*f*,92,93*f*
lymphatics in,76*f*
muscles of,85–87,86*f*,86*t*
neurovasculature of,72–81,90–92,91*f*–93*f*
veins of,75,76*f*
Thrombophlebitis, cavernous sinus, *476*

Thrombosis, deep vein, *366*
Thumb abduction at,328*t*
    adduction at,328*t*
    carpometacarpal joint,321*f*,323*f*,327,328*f*
    extension at,328*t*
    flexion at,328*t*
    interphalangeal joints of,321*f*,327
    joint movements in,327*t*,328*t*
    opposition at,328*t*
    saddle joint,322*f*
Thymus,17*f*,74*t*,94*f*,96*f*,98,98*f*
    in adults,98*f*
    in newborns,98*f*
Thyroarytenoid,464*f*,465*t*,466*f*
Thyrocervical trunk,45*f*,73*f*,74*f*,74*t*,91*f*,292,292*f*,293*f*,294*f*,443,444*f*–445*f*,468*f*,470*f*,471*f*
Thyroepiglottic ligament,463*f*
Thyroglossal duct cyst, *467*
Thyrohyoid,456,457*f*,458*t*,461*f*,466*f*,469*f*,470*f*,472*f*,499*f*,535*f*,560*f*
Thyrohyoid ligaments,463*f*,464*f*,534*f*
    median,466*f*,469*f*,470*f*
Thyrohyoid membrane,463,463*f*,464,466*f*
Thyroid artery,444*f*,445*f*
    inferior,74*t*,292,292*f*,443,444*f*,466*f*,467*f*,468*f*,470*f*,471*f*
    superior,444*f*,445,446*t*,449*f*,467*f*,468*f*,469*f*,470*f*,472*f*
Thyroid cartilage,74*f*,94*f*,126*f*,131*f*,457*f*,462,463*f*,464*f*,467*f*,469*f*,470*f*,560*f*
    horns inferior,462,463*f*
    superior,462,463*f*
    lamina of,74*f*,94*f*,126*f*,462,463*f*,466*f*,470*f*
Thyroidectomy, *465*
Thyroid gland,94*f*,98*f*,455*f*,466*f*,467*f*,472*f*,525*f*,534*f*,560*f*
    arteries of,468*f* (*See also* Thyroid artery) developmental correlation, thyroglossal duct cyst, *467*
    isthmus of,467,467*f*
    lobes of,94*f*,467,467*f*,558*f*
    neurovasculature of,467,468*f*
    pyramidal lobe,467,467*f*
    ultrasound of,558*f*
    veins of,468*f* (*See also* Thyroid veins) venous plexus,468*f*

Thyroid hormone,467
Thyroid veins,468*f*
    inferior,76*f*,89*f*,98*f*,466*f*,467,468*f*,470*f*
    middle,450*f*,466*f*,467,468*f*
    superior,450*f*,467,468*f*,470*f*
Tibia,7*f*,357*f*,360*f*,384*f*,387*f*,389*f*,390*f*,393*f*,*397f*,399*f*,400*f*,404*f*,409*f*,411*f*,414*f*,41
  anterior border,360*f*
    arteries,14*f*
    anterior,14*f*,363*f*,364,364*f*
    posterior,14*f*,364,364*f*
    condyles lateral,360*f*,384*f*,411*f*
    medial,360*f*,384*f*
    interosseous membrane,357
    lateral surface,360*f*
    medial surface,360*f*,386*f*
    nerves,54*f*,368*t*,369*f*,370,371*f*,374*f*,392*f*,415*f*
    injury, *370*
    posterior surface,360*f*
    shaft of,357,360*f*
    veins,415*f*
    anterior,14*f*,366*f*
    posterior,14*f*,366*f*
Tibial, location/direction term,3*f*,3*t*
Tibial arteries,14*f*,415*f*
    anterior,14*f*,363*f*,364,364*f*
    posterior,14*f*,364,364*f*
    recurrent branch, to knee,364*f*,365
Tibialis anterior,12*f*,394*t*,397*f*,409*f*,411*f*,415*f*
    posterior,13*f*,396*t*,397*f*,403*f*,412*f*,413*f*,415*f*
Tibial nerve,54*f*,368*t*,369*f*,370,371*f*,374*f*,392*f*,415*f*
    injury, *370*
Tibial plateau,357,360*f*,384*f*,388*f*
Tibial tuberosity,357,360*f*,384*f*,385*f*,386*f*,411*f*,417*f*
Tibial veins,415*f*
    anterior,14*f*,366*f*
    posterior,14*f*,366*f*
Tibiocalcaneal part, of deltoid ligament,398,400*f*
Tibiofibular joints,357,360*f*,384*f*,388*f*,393
    distal,393

  ligaments of,393,393*f*
  proximal,393
Tibiofibular ligaments anterior,393,400*f*
  interosseous,393
  posterior,393,393*f*,400*f*
Tibiofibular syndesmosis,357,360*f*,400*f*
Tibionavicular part, of deltoid ligament,398,400*f*
Tibiotalar part, of deltoid ligament anterior,398,400*f*
  posterior,398,400*f*
Tinnitus, *557*
Toe(s) great, proximal phalanx,403*f*
  joints of,398*f*,401
Tongue,525*f*,526*f*,530–532,561*f*
  apex of,530,530*f*,531*f*
  body of,530,530*f*
  dorsum of,530*f*,531*f*
  extrinsic muscles,530,530*t*,531*f*
  frenulum of,530,530*t*
  furrow of,530*f*
  innervation of,530,532*t*
  longitudinal muscles,530,530*t*,531*f*
  lymphatic drainage of,530*t*,531*f*
  muscles of,530*t*,531*f*
  root of,530,530*f*
  structure of,530*f*
  transverse muscles,530,530*t*,531*f*
  vertical muscles,530,530*t*,531*f*
Tonic contractions,11
Tonsillar branch, of facial artery,446
Tonsillar plexus,538
Tonsillectomy, *538*
Tonsils,494,538
  cerebellar,475*f*
  innervation,538
  lingual,17*f*,464*f*,524*f*,525*f*,530,530*f*,538,538*f*
  lymphatic drainage of,538
  palatine,17*f*,525*f*,526*f*,530*f*,534*f*,538,538*f*
  pharyngeal,17*f*,525*f*,534*f*,535*f*,536*f*,538,538*f*,553*f*
  tonsillectomy, *538*

  tubal,538,538*f*
  Waldeyer’s ring,17,538,538*f*
Topography of lower limb musculature,408*f*–415*f*
  compartments in,414*f*–415*f*
  foot,413*f*
  hip, thigh, and gluteal region,408*f*–410*f*
  leg,411*f*–412*f*
  of neck,454,454*t*,469–472
  of nervous system,19*f*
  spinal cord organization and,19*f*
  of upper limb musculature compartments in arm and forearm,340*f*
  forearm and wrist,338*f*,339*f*
  hand,339*f*
  shoulder and arm,334–337*f*,341*f*
Torticollis, congenital, *456*
Torus tubarius,525*f*,534,534*f*
Trabeculae arachnoid,47,478,478*f*
  carneae,104,105*f*
  septomarginal,104,105*f*,108*f*
Trachea,73*f*,74*f*,78*f*–79*f*,94*f*,96*f*,98*f*,99*f*,113*f*,119,119*f*,128*f*,130*f*,455*f*,462,465–46
  anular ligaments of,126*f*
  autonomic branches to,131*f*
  bifurcation of,118*f*,119*f*,126*f*
  cervical part of,95*t*,118*f*
  glands,126*f*
  membranous part of,118*f*
  membranous wall of,464*f*
  with segmental bronchi,125*f*
  thoracic part of,95*t*,118*f*
  in tracheobronchial tree,70,119,125–127
  ultrasound of,558*f*
Tracheal cartilage,119*f*,126*f*,464*f*
Tracheobronchial lymph nodes,76*f*,78*f*,130,130*f*
Tracheobronchial tree,70,119,125–127,131*f*
  neonatal respiratory distress syndrome, *127*
Tracheostomy, *464*
Tract biliary, in situ,199*f*
  gastrointestinal (*See* Gastrointestinal tract) iliopubic,147,148*f*,149,150*f*
  iliotibial,362,383*f*,410*f*,411*f*,412*f*,414*f*,415*f*

  olfactory,486*f*,488,488*f*
  optic,488,488*f*
  pyramidal,475*f*
  solitary, nucleus of,491*f*
  urinary, autonomic nervous system and,182*t*
Tragus,552
Transabdominal ultrasound,275*f*
Transpyloric plane,5*t*,144,145*f*
  abdominal viscera and,145*f*
Transvaginal ultrasound,275*f*
Transversalis fascia,146*f*,148*f*,149,150*f*,156*f*,382*f*
Transverse, location/direction term,3*t*
Transverse arch,402
  stabilizers of,403*f*
Transverse axis,4,4*f*
Transverse colon,71*f*,161*f*–164*f*,172*f*,186*f*,190*f*,191*f*,192*f*,193,193*f*,194*f*,196*f*,201*f*,203*f*,20
  lymphatic drainage of,178*t*
Transverse foramina,35,35*f*,443
Transverse ligament,44*f*
  of acetabulum,374,377*f*
  of atlas (C1),41*f*,44*f*
  cardinal (transverse cervical),231*f*,250,251,252*f*,253*f*,254
  carpal,323*f*,324*f*,325*f*,330*f*,339*f*,340*f*
  of humerus,308*f*
  of knee,386,387*f*,388*f*
  perineal,234*f*
  of scapula,308*f*,312*f*
Transverse mesocolon,161,162*f*,163*f*–165*f*,166*f*,170*f*,186*f*,191*f*,192*f*,193*f*,194*f*
Transverse muscles, of tongue,530,530*t*,531*f*
Transverse nerve, of neck,54*f*
Transverse planes,4,4*f*
  on trunk,5*t*
Transverse process,34*f*,36*f*–37*f*,42*f*–43*f*,59*f*
  of atlas (C1),34*f*,35,42*f*,59,60*f*,305*t*
  palatine,435*f*,526*f*
Transverse sinuses,46*f*,475,476*f*,476*t*,484*f*
  groove for,436*f*
Transversospinalis group,58*t*

Transversus
 abdominis,12*f*,87*f*,145,146*f*–149*f*,147*t*,149,150*f*,152*f*,154*f*,156*f*,165*f*,166*f*,179*f*,
Transversus abdominis aponeurosis,145,146*f*,147,148*f*,149
Transversus thoracis,86*f*,86*t*,87
Trapezium,289,290*f*,291*f*,321*f*,324*f*,326*f*,328*f*,344*f*
  tubercle of,290*f*,323*f*,328*f*
Trapezius,12*f*–13*f*,304,305*t*,309*f*,311*f*,334*f*–337*f*,336*f*,344*f*,455*f*,456,457*f*,457*t*,45
  ascending part,305*t*,336*f*
  descending part of,305*t*,336*f*
  transverse part,305*t*,336*f*
Trapezoid,289,291*f*,321*f*,323*f*,344*f*
  ligament,303,304*f*
Trauma, splenic, *203*
Tree bronchial,119,127*f*,128
  arteries of,128
  autonomic innervation of,131*t*
  lymphatic drainage of,76*f*,130,130*f*
  movements of,128*f*
  nerves of,130
  neurovasculature of,128–130,129*f*,131*t*
  respiratory portion of,128
  tracheobronchial,70,119,125–127,131*f*
Triangle anal,222,224*f*,263*t*,270–272,270*f*
  carotid,454,454*t*,455*f*,472*f*
  cervical,472*f*
  clavipectoral,284*f*
  cystohepatic (of Calot),199*f*,200,284*f*
  femoral,381
  Hesselbach’s,150*f*,151,156*f*
  muscular,454,454*t*,455*f*
  occipital,454,454*t*,455*f*
  omoclavicular (subclavian),454,454*t*,455*f*
  submandibular (digastric),454,454*t*,455*f*
  submental,454,454*t*,455*f*
  urogenital, of perineum,222,223*f*,224*f*
  in female,223*f*,224*f*,225,267–270,269*f*
  in male,223*f*,224*f*,264–267,266*f*
Triangular fossa, of ear,552,552*f*
Triangular ligament,196,197*f*

Triangular space,312,312*f*
Triceps brachii,13*f*,309,313*f*,314*t*,315*f*,336*f*,338*f*,341*f*
lateral head,314*t*,336*f*
long head,312*t*,314*t*,336*f*,341*f*
medial head,341*f*
Triceps hiatus,312,312*f*,313*f*
Triceps surae,392*f*,396*t*,411*f*,414*f*
Tricuspid valve,104*f*,106*f*,107
Trigeminal cave,477*f*
Trigeminal ganglion,477*f*,490*f*,491*f*,492*f*,506*f*,524*f*,528*f*,542*f*,551*f*
Trigeminal nerve (CN V),477*f*,485*f*–486*f*,487*t*,489–491,491*f*,496*f*,499,507*f*,515*f*,541,542*f*,551*f*
characterization,489–491
deep temporal branch of,514
dental branches,490*f*
divisions of,489–491
frontal branch of,489
infraorbital branch,491,523
lacrimal branch of,489
mandibular division (V3),54*f*,460*f*,477*f*,489*f*,490*f*,491,506*f*,507*f*,514,515*f*,517*f*,528*f*,539*f*,542*f*,5
maxillary division (V2),54*f*,442*f*,460*f*,477*f*,489*f*,490*f*,491,506*f*,507*f*,519*t*,523,538,539*f*,542*f*,55
meningeal branch,490*f*
motor root of,551*f*
muscular branches,517*t*
nasociliary branch of,489,543
neuralgia, *489*
ophthalmic division (V1),54*f*,460*f*,461*f*,477*f*,488*f*,489,489*f*,490*f*,506*f*,507*f*,523,542*f*,548,550*t*,55
nasociliary branch,489,543
sensory root of,551*f*
Trigone,102
femoral,356*f*
fibrous,104*f*
of urinary bladder,256,256*f*
Triquetrum,289,290*f*,291*f*,321*f*,323*f*,324*f*,328*f*
Triradiate cartilage,225*f*
Trochanteric bursa,359*f*,375*f*

Trochanteric fossa,358*f*
Trochanters greater,7*f*,356,358*f*–359*f*,372*f*,375*f*,376*f*,377*f*,410*f*
  lesser,7*f*,356,358*f*,375*f*,376*f*,377*f*
Trochlea of humerus,288*f*,289,316*f*,343*f*
  of orbit,489*f*,542*f*,547*f*,549*f*
  of talus,399*f*
Trochlear nerve (CN IV),442*f*,477*f*,485*f*–486*f*,487*t*,488,489*f*,541,542*f*,548,550*t*,551*f*
Trochlear notch,289,289*f*,317*f*
Trunk arterial
  brachiocephalic,14*f*,18*f*,45*f*,72,73*f*,74*f*,74*t*,76*f*–79*f*,91*f*,94*f*,98*f*,101*f*,103*f*,104*f*,1
  celiac,14*f*,74*f*,77*f*,88,89*f*,144,163*f*,164*t*,167,167*f*,168,168*t*,169*f*,170*f*,174*f*,175
  anastomoses of,168
  branches of,202
  of pancreas, duodenum, and spleen,170*f*,202
  costocervical,45*f*,74*t*,91*f*,292*f*,443,444*f*,471*f*
  interganglionic,180*f*
  pulmonary,70*f*–73*f*,72,73*f*,100*f*,101*f*,105*f*,115*f*,118*f*,123*f*
  thyrocervical,45*f*,73*f*,74*f*,74*t*,292,292*f*,294*f*,443,444*f*–445*f*,468*f*,470*f*,471*f*
  brachiocephalic,14*f*,18*f*,45*f*,72,73*f*,74*f*,74*t*,76*f*,76*f*–79*f*,77*f*–78*f*,79*f*,91*f*,94*f*,98
  bronchomediastinal,18,18*f*,77,77*f*,83*f*,130,130*f*
  celiac,14*f*,74*f*,77*f*,88,89*f*,144,163*f*,164*t*,167,167*f*,168,168*t*,169*f*,170*f*,174*f*,175
  branches of,202
  cervicofacial,512*f*
  costocervical,45*f*,74*t*,91*f*,292*f*,443,444*f*,471*f*
  intestinal,18*f*,177,177*f*,178*f*
  jugular lymphatic,17,18*f*,76*f*,77*f*,83*f*,452,453*t*
  lower, of brachial plexus,297,297*f*
  lumbar,76*f*,177*f*
  left,76*f*–77*f*,177*f*,178*f*
  right,76*f*–77*f*,178*f*
  sympathetic,180
  lumbosacral,241*f*–242*f*
  lymphatic,17
  in abdomen,178*f*
  bronchomediastinal,18,18*f*,77,77*f*,83*f*,130,130*f*
  coronary, left,113*f*
  intestinal,18*f*,177,177*f*,178*f*
  jugular,17,76*f*,77*f*,83*f*,452,453*t*

left,18*f*
right,18*f*
lumbar,18*f*,76*f*,177,177*f*
left,76*f*–77*f*,177*f*,178*f*
right,76*f*–77*f*,178*f*
in pelvis,178*f*
subclavian,18*f*,77*f*,83*f*
in thorax,76*f*
middle, of brachial plexus,297,297*f*
nerve brachial plexus,297,297*f*
lower,297,297*f*
middle,297,297*f*
upper,297,297*f*
interganglionic,180*f*
lumbosacral,241*f*–242*f*
sympathetic,55,57*f*,78,78*f*,79*f*,80*f*,96*f*,97*f*,179*f*,180*f*,183*f*,184*f*,240*f*,470*f*,472*f*
cervical,459–462
to intraperitoneal organs,184*f*
lumbar,180
vagal,79*f*–80*f*
anterior,80–81,180*f*,183*f*
posterior,80,180*f*,183*f*,184*f*,185*f*
pulmonary,70*f*–71*f*,73*f*,78*f*,100*f*,101*f*,103*f*,104*f*,105*f*,114*f*,115*f*,116*f*,118*f*,123*f*
reference lines on,4*t*
sacral sympathetic,237
subclavian,18*f*,77*f*,83*f*
sympathetic,55,57*f*,78,78*f*,79*f*,80*f*,89*f*,96*f*,97*f*,179*f*,180*f*,183*f*,184*f*,240*f*,470*f*,4
cervical,459–462
intraperioneal organs,182*f*
sacral,237
thoracic,78,80*f*
temporofacial,512*f*
thoracic sympathetic,78,80*f*
thyrocervical,45*f*,73*f*,74*f*,74*t*,292,292*f*,294*f*,443,444*f*–445*f*,468*f*,470*f*,471*f*
upper, of brachial plexus,297,297*f*
vagal,79*f*–80*f*
anterior,80–81,180*f*
posterior,180*f*,183*f*,184*f*,185*f*
Trunk (of body). *See also* Thorax anterior landmarks and transverse planes on,5*t*

lymphatic drainage of wall of,152*f*
neurovasculature of wall of,151,152*f*
arteries of,45*f*
dermatomes of,53*f*,60*f*
hip bones in relation to,372*f*
landmarks on,5*t*
reference lines on,4*t*–5*t*
as regional subdivision,2*f*,2*t*
terminology relating to,2*t*
transverse planes on,5*t*
upper,297
wall nerves,51*f*,52,52*f*
anterior rami of,48*f*,51*f*,52,52*f*,57*f*,92*f*
posterior rami of,48*f*,51*f*,52,52*f*,57*f*,61*f*,92*f*,297*f*
Tubal branches, of uterine artery,249*f*
Tubal orifice, of pharynx,536*f*
Tubal tonsil,538,538*f*
Tubarian branch, of glossopharyngeal nerve,496*f*
Tube midgut, rotation of, *187*
pharyngotympanic (auditory),493*f*,494,496*f*,529*f*,534*f*,535*f*,536*f*,552*f*,553,553*f*,554*f*
cartilaginous part,553*f*
membranous lamina,553*f*
pharyngeal orifice,553*f*
uterine,233*f*,247,248*f*,251*f*,252*f*,253*f*,255*f*,258*f*
ampulla of,247,249*f*
infundibulum of,247,249*f*
isthmus of,247,249*f*
ostium of,249*f*
Tubercle adductor, of femur,357,358*f*
anterior,35*f*
anterolateral,357
articular,430*f*,432,435*f*,437*f*,508*f*,510*f*
conoid,286*f*
corniculate,464*f*,466*f*
costal,85,85*f*
cuneiform,464*f*,466*f*
dorsal of ulna,317*f*
of wrist,326*f*

  Gerdy's, 357, 360*f*
  greater, of humerus, 288, 288*f*, 304*f*, 308*f*, 335*f*
  iliac, 227*f*
  infraglenoid, 287*f*, 308*f*
  lesser, of humerus, 288, 288*f*, 304*f*, 308*f*
  medial, 403*f*
  mental, 431*f*
  pharyngeal, 435*f*
  posterior, 35*f*
  of atlas (C1), 35*f*, 60*f*
  postglenoid, 430*f*, 437*f*
  pubic, 145, 154*f*, 226*f*, 227*f*, 269*f*, 375*f*
  scalene, 458*f*
  of scaphoid, 290*f*, 323*f*
  supraglenoid, 286*f*, 287*f*
  of trapezium, 290*f*, 323*f*, 328*f*
Tuberculum sellae, 432, 438*f*
Tuberosity calcaneal, 361*f*, 397*f*, 398*f*, 399*f*, 413*f*
  of cuboid, 362*f*
  deltoid, 288*f*, 289
  gluteal, 376*f*
  iliac, 226*f*
  ischial, 224*f*, 225, 225*f*, 226*f*, 227*f*, 228*f*, 229*f*, 234*f*, 238*f*, 239*f*, 261*f*–262*f*, 269*f*, 372*f*
  maxillary, 518*f*
  metatarsal, 361*f*, 362*f*, 397*f*, 413*f*
  radial, 289, 289*f*, 314*t*, 315*f*, 316*f*, 317*f*, 343*f*, 344*f*
  sacral, 38*f*
  tibial, 357, 360*f*, 384*f*, 385*f*, 386*f*, 411*f*, 417*f*
  ulnar, 289*f*, 315*f*, 316*f*, 317*f*
Tubule, seminiferous, 157
Tumor metastasis. *See* Metastasis Tunica
 albuginea, 155*f*, 155*t*, 157, 157*f*–158*f*, 264–266, 265f, 266*f*, 267*f*
Tunica dartos, 155*f*, 155*t*
Tunica vaginalis, 155*f*, 155*t*, 157, 157*f*–158*f*
Tunnel carpal, 323, 323*f*, *324*, 324*f*, 325*f*
  radial, 315*f*
  tarsal, *395*
  ulnar, 323, 323*f*, 324*f*, 325*f*
Tympanic artery, 442*f*, 447*f*, 554*f*

- anterior, 516*t*
- superior, 442*f*

Tympanic canaliculus, 437*f*, 496*f*

Tympanic cavity, 494, 552*f*, 553, 553*f*, 554*f*, 556*f*
- anterior wall of, 493*f*
- clinical correlations involving hyperacusis, *555*
- otitis media, *555*
- muscles of, 554*f*
- neurovasculature of, 554*f*
- posterior wall of, 493*f*
- promontory in, 554*f*, 555
- roof of, 493*f*
- structure of, 554*f*

Tympanic membrane, 492*f*, 552, 552*f*, 554*f*, 556*f*
- flaccid part, 552
- tense part, 552

Tympanic nerve, 493*f*, 494, 494*f*, 495*f*, 496*f*, 554*f*

Tympanic part, of temporal bone, 432, 437*f*

Tympanic plexus, 493*f*, 494, 494*f*, 496*f*, 528*f*, 554*f*

Tympanomastoid fissure, 430*f*, 437*f*

U

Ulcer duodenal (peptic), *190*
- gastric, *188*

Ulcerative colitis, *195*

Ulna, 7*f*, 285*f*, 289*f*, 290*f*, 291*f*, 328*f*, 340*f*, 341*f*
- coronoid process, 289*f*, 316*f*, 317*f*, 343*f*, 344*f*
- head of, 289*f*, 290*f*, 317*f*
- interosseous border of, 317*f*
- interosseous membrane, 289
- radial notch of, 289, 289*f*
- shaft of, 289*f*, 317*f*
- styloid process, 289, 290*f*, 291*f*, 317*f*, 328*f*
- tuberosity of, 289*f*, 315*f*, 316*f*

Ulnar, location/direction term, 3*f*, 3*t*

Ulnar artery, 14*f*, 293*f*, 294*f*, 315*f*, 324*f*, 325*f*, 341*f*, 344*f*
- collateral, 292, 315*f*
- deep palmar branch, 294
- dorsal carpal branch, 294*f*
- recurrent, 292

Ulnar canal,292,301
Ulnar carpal eminence,323*f*
Ulnar collateral ligament,315,316*f*,317*f*,321,321*f*
Ulnar deviation, of upper limb,284,323*f*
Ulnar groove, of humerus,288*f*,289,316*f*
Ulnar nerve,54*f*,91*f*,297,297*f*,298*f*,299*t*,300–301,307*f*,315*f*,324*f*,325*f*,341*f*,344*f*
  compression, *324*
  deep branches of,301,344*f*
  dorsal branch,301*f*,302*f*
  injury, *300*
  muscular branches,301
  palmar branch,301*f*,302*f*
  superficial branches of,301,302*f*
  ulnar groove for,288*f*,289,316*f*
Ulnar recurrent artery,292
Ulnar tunnel,323,323*f*,324*f*,325*f*
  apertures of,325*f*
  walls of,325*f*
Ulnar vein,14*f*,295*f*,344*f*
Ulnocarpal complex,321
Ulnocarpal disk, of wrist,321,322*f*
Ulnocarpal ligaments,321,322*f*
Ulnocarpal meniscus,321,322*f*
Ultrasound,26,27*f*
  of abdomen,209*t*,210*f*
  of back,62*f*,62*t*
  of cervical spine,62*f*,62*t*
  of common carotid artery,558*f*–559*f*
  of head,558*t*
  of heart,135*f*
  of internal carotid artery,559*f*
  of jugular vein,559*f*
  of kidney,212*f*
  of liver,210*f*
  of lower limb,416*t*
  of neck,558*t*
  of ovaries,275*f*
  of pancreas,210*f*
  of pelvis,273*t*,274*f*

  probe held against skin,27*f*
  of spleen,210*f*
  of strap muscles,558*f*
  of thorax,132*t*
  of thyroid gland,558*f*
  of trachea,558*f*
  transabdominal,275*f*
  transvaginal,275*f*
  of upper limb,342*t*
  of uterus,275*f*
Umbilical artery,114*f*,115*t*,167*f*,233*f*,235*f*,255*f*
Umbilical cord,115*f*
Umbilical folds lateral,149,150*f*,156*f*,161*f*,251*f*
  medial,149,150*f*,156*f*,161*f*,251*f*
  median,149,150*f*,161*f*,251*f*
Umbilical ligaments,254*f*,255*f*
  medial,115*f*,149,206*f*,231*f*
  median,149,254*f*,255*f*
Umbilical region,145
Umbilical ring,145
Umbilical vein,115*t*
  and portal vein, anastomosis between,114*f*
Umbilicus,114*f*,115*f*,146*f*,148*f*,152*f*
Umbo, of ear,552
Uncinate process(es) of cervical spine,35*f*
  of pancreas,186*f*,200,200*f*
  of vertebral bodies,39
Uncovertebral joints,35*f*,39, *41*
Upper body, terminology relating to,2*t*
Upper esophageal sphincter,117
Upper limb. *See* Limb (upper) Upper trunk, of brachial plexus,297,297*f*
Urachus,147,149
Ureter(s),166*f*,167*f*,174*f*–175*f*,184*f*,206–207,231*f*,235*f*,244*f*,245*f*,249*f*,254,255*f*,2
  abdominal part of,206*f*
  anatomical constriction of,207*f*
  arteries of,207
  autonomic innervation of,185*f*
  blood supply to,207,254
  calculi of, *207*

  constrictions of,207,207*f*
  distal,207*f*
  in female,254,255*f*
  intramural part of,255*f*
  intravenous pyelogram,207*f*
  left,233*f*,235*f*
  lymphatic drainage of,178*t*
  in male,254,254*f*
  pain from,207
  pelvic part of,206*f*
  right,165*f*,205*f*,233*f*,258*f*
  in situ,206*f*
  structural design,2*f*
  upper, autonomic innervation of,185*f*
  veins of,207
Ureteral plexus,180*f*,181*t*,185*f*,241*f*–243*f*
Ureteropelvic junction,205*f*–206*f*,206,207*f*
Ureterovesical junction,206*f*,207
Urethra,245*f*,246*f*,248*f*,252*f*,253*f*,256–258,267*f*
  blood supply to,257
  dilator urethrae of,256
  in female,255*f*,256*f*,257,258*f*
  layers of,256*f*
  midsagittal section,258*f*
  innervation of,257
  in male,158*f*,256–257
  parts of,256–257
  rupture of, *257*
  membranous part of,246*f*,257,257*f*
  mucosa of,256*f*
  navicular fossa,245*f*,257,257*f*,265*f*,266
  nerves of,257
  penile part of,265*f*
  preprostatic part of,257,257*f*
  prostatic part of,159,245,246*f*,257,257*f*
  sphincter mechanism, in male,257,257*f*
  spongy part of,223*f*,246*f*,257,257*f*,265*f*
  submucosa of,255*f*
  visceral sensory fibers of,257

Urethral ampulla,257,257*f*
Urethral artery,264*f*,265*f*,267*f*
Urethral crest,257,257*f*
Urethral glands,256*f*,257*f*
Urethral orifice,256*f*,269*f*
  external,224*f*,238*f*,253*f*,257,258*f*,265*f*,266,268*f*
  internal,255*f*,257
Urethral rupture, in males, *257*
Urethral sphincter external,230*f*,256,257,257*f*,261,263*f*,263*t*
  internal,256,257,257*f*
Urethrovaginal sphincter,253*f*,263*f*
Urinary bladder. *See* Bladder, urinary Urinary organs, pelvic,254–258
Urinary tract, autonomic nervous system and,182*t*
Urogenital hiatus,229*f*
Urogenital peritoneum,255*f*
Urogenital triangle,222,223*f*,224*f*
  female,223*f*,224*f*,*225*,267–270,269*f*
  lymphatic drainage,270
  male,223*f*,224*f*,264–267,266*f*
Uterine artery,167*f*,168*f*,231*f*,233*f*,235*f*,249*f*,251,255*f*
Uterine cavity,249,249*f*
Uterine ligaments,250,250*f*
Uterine pole, of ovary,249*f*
Uterine tube,233*f*,247,248*f*,251*f*,252*f*,253*f*,255*f*,258*f*
  ampulla of,247,249*f*
  infundibulum of,247,249*f*
  isthmus of,247,249*f*
  ostium of,249*f*
Uterine vein,233*f*,249*f*
Uterine venous plexus,233*f*,251,254
Uterosacral (rectouterine) fold,249*f*,251*f*,255*f*,259*f*
Uterosacral ligaments,231*f*,249*f*,250,252*f*
Uterovaginal plexus,181*t*,237,241*f*,254
Uterus,223*f*,232*f*,248*f*,249–251,274*f*. *See also* Cervix, of uterus autonomic nervous system and,182*t*
  bicornuate, *249*
  blood supply to,251
  body of,248*f*,249,253*f*,258*f*
  broad ligament of,250,251*f*,255*f*

  cardinal (transverse cervical) ligaments of,231*f*,250,251,252*f*,253*f*,254
  cavity of,249*f*
  curvature of,250*f*
  flexion of,250
  fundus of,249,249*f*,250*f*,251*f*,253*f*,255*f*,258*f*
  isthmus of,249
  ligaments of,250
  lymphatic drainage of,178*t*,251
  parietal peritoneum and,250*f*
  peritoneum and,250,250*f*,253*f*,255*f*
  positional changes of,249,259*f*
  retroflexion of,250
  retroversion of,250
  round ligament of,154,154*f*,233*f*,235*f*,248*f*,250,251,252*f*,253*f*,255*f*,258*f*
  ultrasound of,275*f*
  version of,250
  visceral peritoneum of,250,250*f*,253*f*,255*f*
Utricle,493,494*f*,555*f*,556,557,557*f*
Utricular nerve,494*f*,557*f*
Uvula palatine,525,525*f*,526*f*,528,529*f*,529*t*,534*f*,538*f*,553*f*,561*f*
  of urinary bladder,256*f*
V
Vagal trunks,79*f*–80*f*
  anterior,80–81,180*f*,183*f*
  posterior,80,180*f*,183*f*,184*f*,185*f*
Vagina,223*f*,224*f*,248*f*,249*f*,250*f*,251–254,251*f*,258*f*
  anterior walls of,249*f*,253*f*
  blood supply to,254
  lymphatic drainage of,254
  midsagittal section,253*f*
  orifice,238*f*,253*f*,268*f*
  posterior walls of,249*f*,253*f*
  rugae,253*f*
  veins of,254
  vestibule of,223*f*,253*f*,267,269*f*
  walls of,249*f*,253*f*
Vaginal artery,235*f*,253*f*
  right,233*f*
Vaginal fornix,252*f*,253*f*,254

  anterior,248*f*,250*f*,252*f*,254,258*f*
  lateral part,249*f*
  posterior,248*f*,250*f*,252*f*,254,258*f*
Vaginal orifice,252*f*,267,268*f*,269*f*
Vaginal venous plexus,233*f*
Vagus nerve (CN X),22,55,57*f*,78,78*f*–79*f*,80,94*f*,96*f*,97*f*,98*f*,99,100*f*,113*f*,118*f*,442*f*,455*f*,468*f*,47
  abdominal segment,497
  branches in neck,497*f*
  branch to carotid sinus,495*f*
  cervical cardiac branches,497*f*
  external branch (external laryngeal),497*f*
  inferior ganglion,495*f*
  inferior laryngeal branch,465
  internal branch (internal laryngeal),497*f*
  pharyngeal branches,495*f*,496,538
  superior ganglion,496*f*
  superior laryngeal branch,465
  thoracic segment,497
Vallate papillae,530
Vallecula,525*f*,534
Valves anal,270*f*,271
  aortic,104*f*,106*f*,107,107*f*
  stenosis, *107*
  atrioventricular,104*f*–107*f*,106–107
  cardiac (*See* Cardiac valves) eustachian,105*f*,114
  of Kerckring,189*f*
  of oval fossa,105*f*
  pulmonary,104*f*,106*f*,107,107*f*,109*f*
  spiral,198
  thebesian,105*f*,112
  tricuspid,104f,106*f*,107
  venous,15,15*f*,105*f*
Valvular heart disease, heart sounds and, *107*
Varices, esophageal, *176*
Varicocele, *159*
Varicose veins, *367*
Vasa recta,171*f*,190
Vascular beds, terminal,14,15,15*f*,16

Vascular compartment, of retroinguinal space,382*f*
Vascular pole, of ovary,249*f*
Vasoconstriction,15
Vasocorona, of spinal cord,50*f*
Vasodilation,15
Vastus intermedius,379*t*,385*f*,414*f*,415*f*
  lateralis,12*f*,379*t*,385*f*,408*f*,411*f*,414*f*,415*f*
  medialis,12*f*,379*t*,385*f*,408*f*,409*f*,411*f*,414*f*,415*f*
Veins (general) in circulatory system,14,14*f*
  classification,14,14*f*
  deep,14,16
  of lower limb,365,366*f*
  of upper limb,295,295*f*
  defined,14
  functional aspects of,16
  of large intestine,195
  overview,14*f*,15–16
  perforator,16
  pulmonary,16,16*f* (*See also* Pulmonary veins)
  return to heart,15,15*f*
  structure of,15,15*f*
  superficial,14,16
  varicose, *367*
  vascular bed, terminal,14,15,15*f*,16
Veins (named) accompanying,295,295*f*
  anastomotic inferior,484*f*
  superior,484*f*
  angular,449,450*f*,451*f*,511*f*,549*f*,550*f*
  antebrachial, median,295*f*,296,315*f*
  anterior, of right ventricle,112*f*
  appendicular,176*f*
  ascending lumbar,46*f*,75,173,174*t*,176*f*
  atrial,112*f*
  auricular, posterior,449,450*f*,511*f*
  axillary,14*f*,76*f*,83*f*,91*f*–92*f*,295,295*f*,306*f*,307*f*
  azygos,46*f*,51*f*,75,76*f*,77*f*,88,89*f*,92*f*,93*f*,118*f*–119*f*,124*f*,174*f*,176*f*
  basilar,484,484*f*
  basilic,14*f*,295,295*f*,296,296*f*,315*f*
  basivertebral,46*f*

brachial,14*f*,295*f*,296*f*,315*f*,341*f*
deep,296
brachiocephalic,18*f*,71*f*,75,76*f*–77*f*,84*f*,98*f*,468*f*,471*f*
left,14*f*,46*f*,51*f*,71*f*,77*f*,89*f*,94*f*,96*f*,99*f*,101*f*,118*f*,450*f*
right,46*f*,71*f*,76*f*–77*f*,94*f*,96*f*,98*f*,101*f*,118*f*
bridging,473*f*,474*f*,475*f*,484,484*f*
bronchial,75,130
cardiac anterior,113
great,106*f*,109*f*–110*f*,112,112*f*
posterior left ventricular branch,112
middle,110*f*,112,112*f*
small,109*f*–110*f*,112*f*,113
cephalic,14*f*,91*f*–92*f*,152*f*,295,295*f*,307*f*,315*f*
cerebellar great,476*f*,484*f*
inferior,484
superior,484,484*f*
lateral,484*f*
medial,484*f*
cerebral,475*f*,478*f*
anterior,484*f*
great,475,476*f*,484
inferior,476*f*,484,484*f*
internal,484,484*f*
middle,484
superficial,484*f*
superior,473*f*,484,484*f*
cervical, deep,51*f*,292*f*
circumflex, of penis,267*f*
clitoral deep,233*f*,269*f*,270
deep dorsal,233*f*,269*f*,270,300,301*f*,302*f*
colic,166*f*,173,175*f*,175*t*,176*f*
left,176*f*,190*f*
middle,163*f*,176*f*
condylar,442*f*
cremasteric,158*f*
cubital, median,295*f*,296
cystic,175*t*
deep, of thigh,366*f*,415*f*
digital dorsal,295*f*

palmar,295*f*
diploic,433*f*,475*f*,478*f*,503
dorsal, deep,232,266
emissary,46*f*,267*f*,433*f*,475*f*,502*f*,503
condylar,442*f*
epigastric,150*f*
inferior,150*f*,151,152*f*,156*f*,176*f*,231*f*,235*f*,382*f*
superficial,92*f*,152*f*,366*f*
superior,91*f*,151,152*f*,176*f*
esophageal,75,173,175*t*,176*f*
facial,450*f*,451*f*,452*f*,468*f*,472*f*,511*f*,515*f*,523,533*f*,550*f*
deep,449,451*f*
femoral,14*f*,92*f*,93*f*,154*f*,155*f*,167*f*,168*f*,235*f*,264*f*,365,367*f*,382*f*,383*f*,415*f*
circumflex lateral,366*f*
medial,366*f*
cutaneous,366*f*
femoropopliteal,366*f*
fibular,366*f*,415*f*
gastric,119*f*,175*t*
left,175*t*,176*f*
right,175*t*,176*f*
short,175*t*
gastro-omental,175*f*,175*t*
left,175*f*
right,175*f*
genicular,366*f*
gluteal inferior,236*f*,365
superior,233*f*,365
hemiazygos,46*f*,51*f*,75,76*f*,77*f*,88,89*f*,97*f*,174*f*,176*f*
accessory,46*f*,51*f*,75,76*f*,77*f*,89*f*,97*f*
hepatic,16*f*,76*f*,114*f*,115*f*,165*f*,173,174*f*,190*f*,196,197*f*,199*f*
proper, branches of,169*f*,170*f*,171*f*,197*f*,204*f*,208*f*
ileocolic,175*t*,176*f*
iliac circumflex deep,150*f*,235*f*
superficial,92*f*,152*f*,366*f*
common,14*f*,51*f*,92*f*,93*f*,166*f*,176*f*,244*f*,367*f*
left,76*f*,174*f*,186*f*,233*f*,234*f*,236,245*f*,258*f*
right,236,236*f*,248*f*
external,14*f*,46*f*,92*f*,93*f*,150*f*,173,236,253*f*,255*f*,259*f*,366*f*,367*f*

left,206*f*,234*f*,236*f*
right,233*f*,258*f*
internal,14*f*,46*f*,173,206*f*,231*f*,235*f*,236,253*f*,255*f*,264*f*,367*f*
left,234*f*
right,206*f*,233*f*,236*f*
inferior mesenteric,14*f*,173,175*f*,175*t*,176*f*,236*f*
tributaries of,175*t*
infraorbital,550*f*
intercostal,46*f*,51*f*,92*f*,96*f*,152*f*
anterior,76*f*,91*f*
posterior,75,76*f*,89*f*,91*f*
superior,97*f*
internal thoracic,75
interosseous,341*f*
anterior,295*f*
interventricular,112,112*f*
intervertebral,44
intracranial,14*f*
jejunal,175*t*
jugular,76*f*,113*f*
anterior,450,450*f*,469*f*
external,14*f*,89*f*,91*f*–92*f*,449,450*f*,452*f*,469*f*,470*f*,511*f*,512*f*
internal,14*f*,17*f*,46*f*,51*f*,76*f*,89*f*,92*f*,94*f*,98*f*,118*f*,296*f*,442*f*,449,450*f*,451*f*,453*f*,
ultrasound of,559*f*
labial, inferior,450*f*
labyrinthine,442*f*
lacrimal,550*f*
laryngeal,463*f*
inferior,468*f*
superior,466*f*,468*f*
lingual,532*f*
lumbar,46*f*,76*f*
ascending,46*f*,75,173,174*t*,176*f*
left,76*f*,174*t*
right,76*f*,174*t*
marginal,106*f*,109*f*–110*f*
left,109*f*–110*f*,112*f*
right,109*f*
maxillary,449,450*f*,451*f*

mediastinal,75
medullary, posteromedian,484*f*
mesenteric,201*f*
inferior,14*f*,173,175*f*,175*t*,176*f*,236*f*
superior,14*f*,119*f*,166*f*,170*f*,173,176*f*,189*f*,190*f*,199*f*,200*f*,201*f*,208*f*
tributaries of,175*t*
metacarpal palmar,295*f*
nasal, dorsal,549*f*,550*f*
oblique, of left atrium,110*f*
obturator,235*f*
right,233*f*
occipital,449,450*f*
internal,484*f*
ophthalmic,451*f*,523
inferior,450*f*,542*f*,547,550*f*
superior,442*f*,450*f*,476*f*,542*f*,547,549*f*,550*f*
ovarian,173,175*f*,231*f*,233*f*,235*f*,236,249*f*,255*f*,258*f*
left,174*f*,206*f*,208*f*,235*f*
right,76*f*,174*f*,206*f*,208*f*,233*f*
palatine, external,451*f*
palmar, superficial,324*f*
pancreatic,175*t*
pancreaticoduodenal,175*t*
paraumbilical,150*f*,176*f*
penile,235*f*
dorsal,234*f*
deep,233*f*,234*f*,235*f*,264*f*,266*f*,267*f*
superficial,245*f*,266,266*f*
perforating/perforator, of upper limb,295,295*f*,315*f*
pericardiacophrenic,89*f*,94*f*,96*f*–98*f*,100*f*,121*f*
perineal,233*f*,269*f*
periumbilical,92*f*,173,176*f*
petrosal,484*f*
phrenic,174*f*
inferior,173,208*f*
left,174*f*,206*f*
right,174*f*
popliteal,14*f*,365,366*f*,367,367*f*,392*f*,417*f*
portal,14*f*,115*f*,119*f*,169*f*,170*f*,171*f*,173,173*f*,175*f*,197*f*,201*f*,204*f*,208*f*,212*f*,23

tributaries of,175*t*
and umbilical vein, anastomosis between,114*f*
posterior, of left ventricle,112*f*
posterior arch,366*f*
pudendal external,92*f*,264*f*,266*f*,366*f*
internal,223*f*,232,234*f*,236*f*,259*f*,264*f*,269*f*
left,233*f*
right,235*f*
pulmonary,16,16*f*,71*f*–73*f*,75,100*f*,103*f*,109*f*,114*f*,118*f*,124*f*,128,129*f*
left,71*f*,97*f*,100*f*,105*f*,109*f*–110*f*,114*f*,115*f*,123*f*
perfused,115*f*
with very little blood flow,114*f*
right,71*f*,96*f*,100*f*,103*f*,105*f*,109*f*–110*f*
radial,14*f*,295*f*,344*f*
radicular anterior,51*f*
posterior,51*f*
rectal,173,175*t*,258,271
inferior,176*f*,233*f*,234*f*,235*f*,236*f*,259,264*f*,269*f*
middle,168*f*,176*f*,233*f*,235*f*,236*f*,259
superior,176*f*,233*f*,236,236*f*,259,272*f*
renal,14*f*,175*f*,205*f*
drainage of,205
entrapment, *205*
left,14*f*,76*f*,171*f*,173,174*f*,186*f*,204*f*,206*f*,208*f*
right,173,174*f*,204*f*,208*f*
retromandibular,449,450*f*,451*f*,511*f*,512,515*f*
anterior division,451*f*
posterior division,451*f*
sacral lateral,168*f*
right,233*f*
median,174*t*,234*f*–236*f*
posterior,234*f*
saphenous accessory,366*f*
great,92*f*,152*f*,365,366*f*,367,367*f*,382*f*,392*f*,404
long,14*f*,367
small,365,366*f*,367,367*f*,392*f*,404
scalp,475*f*,503
scrotal anterior,264*f*
posterior,233*f*,264*f*

    - segmental,44,205*f*
    - sigmoid,175*t*,236*f*
    - sphenopalatine,523
    - spinal,442*f*
    - anterior,48*f*,51*f*
    - posterior,51*f*
- Veins (named) (*continued*)
  - splenic,119*f*,166*f*,170*f*,173,186*f*,201*f*,202*f*,203*f*,208*f*,212*f*
    - tributaries of,175*t*
    - subclavian,14*f*,17*f*,18*f*,51*f*,71*f*,76*f*,83*f*,92*f*,94*f*,98*f*,113*f*,176*f*,295,295*f*,450*f*,468
    - left,71*f*,76*f*–77*f*,89*f*,94*f*,97*f*,118*f*
    - right,74*t*,76*f*–77*f*,96*f*
    - subcostal,46*f*,76*f*
    - submental,450*f*,532*f*
    - subscapular,295*f*
    - sulcal,51*f*
    - supraorbital,449,450*f*,551*f*
    - suprarenal,173,175*f*,208*f*
    - left,206*f*,208*f*
    - right,174*f*,205*f*
    - suprascapular,450*f*
    - supratrochlear,449,450*f*,550*f*
    - temporal deep,451*f*
    - superficial,449,450*f*,451*f*,511*f*,515*f*
    - testicular,150*f*,157,158*f*,159*f*,173,174*t*,175*f*,235*f*
    - left,159*f*,174*f*,175*f*,206*f*,208*f*
    - right,76*f*,174*f*,174*t*,206*f*,208*f*
    - thoracic,121*f*
    - internal,74*t*,75,76*f*,91*f*–92*f*,94*f*,120*f*,152*f*,471*f*
    - lateral,83*f*,91*f*,151,152*f*,296*f*
    - thoracoepigastric,90,91*f*–92*f*,152*f*
    - thyroid,468*f*
    - inferior,76*f*,89*f*,98*f*,466*f*,467,470*f*
    - middle,468*f*
    - superior,468*f*
    - middle,450*f*,466*f*,467,468*f*
    - superior,450*f*,467,468*f*,470*f*
    - tibial,415*f*
    - anterior,14*f*,366*f*

posterior, 14*f*, 366*f*
ulnar, 14*f*, 295*f*, 344*f*
umbilical, 115*t*
and portal vein, anastomosis between, 114*f*
uterine, 233*f*, 249*f*
vena cava (*See* Vena cava) ventricular anterior, 109*f*
posterior, 110*f*
vertebral, 44, 49*f*, 92*f*, 560*f*
right, 51*f*
vesical, 235*f*
inferior left, 233*f*
right, 233*f*
superior, 231*f*, 234*f*
left, 233*f*
right, 233*f*
of vestibular bulb, 269*f*
Veins (of region or structure) of abdomen, 173–176
of abdominal wall, 151, 152*f*, 173–176
of back, 51*f*
of brain, 484
in circulatory system, overview, 15, 15*f*
of face, 503
of head, 449–451
deep, 451*f*
superficial, 450*f*
of head and neck, 449–451
of large intestine, 195
of larynx, 463*f*, 466*f*, 468*f*
of liver, 198
of lower limb, 366*f*
deep, 365, 366*f*
superficial, 365, 366*f*
of neck, 449–451
superficial, 450*f*
of orbit, 547, 550*f*
of parathyroid glands, 468*f*
of pelvis, 232–236
of perineum, 232–236
pulmonary, 16, 16*f*, 71*f*–73*f*, 75, 100*f*, 103*f*, 109*f*, 114*f*, 118*f*, 124*f*, 128–130, 129*f*

  of scalp,475*f*,503
  of spinal cord,51*f*
  of stomach,188
  of thoracic wall,75,76*f*
  of thorax,75,76*f*
  of thyroid gland,466*f* (*See also* Thyroid veins) of upper limb,295–296
  deep,295,295*f*
  superficial,295*f*
  of ureters,207
  of vagina,254
  of vertebral column,92*f*
  of vertebral venous plexus,44, *44*,46*f*,49*f*
Vena cava
  inferior,14*f*,16,18*f*,51*f*,63*f*,72*f*,75,76*f*,87*f*,88,88*f*,92*f*,93*f*,100*f*,101*f*,103*f*,105*f*,109
  CT of,212*f*
  tributaries of,173,174*t*
  wall of,15*f*
  superior,14*f*,16,18*f*,25*f*,46*f*,51*f*,71*f*,72*f*,75,76*f*–78*f*,89*f*,92*f*,93*f*,94*f*,96*f*,98*f*,99,9
  syndrome, *76*
Venae comitantes,295
Venous anastomoses, infection and, *451*
Venous angles,449
  left,17
  right,17
Venous ring,51*f*
Venous sinus,104
  dural,433*f*,450,475–477
Venous valve,15,15*f*,105*f*
Ventral rami,48*f*,51*f*,52,52*f*,57*f*,61,92*f*,241*f*–243*f*,297*f*
Ventral root, of spinal nerve,297*f*
Ventricles,70,104–106
  apertures of,480*f*
  of brain first,480
  fourth,480,480*f*
  lateral anterior horn,480*f*
  central part of,480*f*
  inferior horn,480*f*
  posterior horn,480*f*
  second,480

third,480,480*f*
fourth,561*f*
of heart,16*f*,113*f*
left,25*f*,72*f*,101*f*,102*t*,103*f*,105*f*,109*f*–110*f*,114*f*,115*f*,116*f*
proper,106
right,25*f*,72*f*,101*f*,102*t*,103*f*,104*f*,105*f*,109*f*–110*f*,114*f*,115*f*,116*f*
proper,104
two chamber view of,104*f*
laryngeal,464,464*f*,534*f*
lateral,480,480*f*
left,101*f*,103*f*,109*f*–110*f*,114*f*,115*f*,116*f*,124*f*
outflow tract,105*f*,135*f*
proper,106
right,101*f*,103*f*,104*f*,105*f*,109*f*–110*f*,114*f*,115*f*,116*f*
proper,104
two chamber view of,104*f*
Ventricular diastole,106*f*
Ventricular septal defect (VSD),104, *116*,116*f*
Ventricular system, of brain,480
circulation of CSF in,480,481*f*
excessive CSF in, *480*
in situ,480*f*
Ventricular systole,106*f*
Ventricular vein anterior,109*f*
posterior,110*f*
Venule,14,15*f*
Vermian cistern,481*f*
Vermiform appendix,17,17*f*,178*t*,193,194*f*,195
lymphatic drainage of,178*t*
Version, of uterus,250
Vertebrae age related changes in, *41*
cervical,34–35,35*f* (*See also* Atlas (C1); Axis/axes) developmental changes of, *49*
innervation of,44
lumbar,34*f*–37*f*,35,47*f*,63*f*
interarticular part,35
lamina of,34*f*–37*f*
L1–L5,32*f*
L4

  - spinous process,5*t*
  - pars interarticularis,35
  - regional characteristics of,34–35,34*f*–38*f*,63*f*
  - spinous processes of,5*t*,32*f*,34*f*,35*f*,42*f*–43*f*,44*f*,59*f*,60*f*,63*f*,228*f*
  - thoracic,35,63*f*
  - T7
  - spinous process,5*t*,32*f*
  - T12
  - spinous process,5*t*,32*f*
- Vertebral arch,34*f*,35*f*,39*t*,42*f*,42*t*
  - pedicles of,34*f*
- Vertebral arteries,35,45*f*,49*f*,50*f*,74*t*,91*f*,292,292*f*,293*f*,294*f*,442*f*,443,444*f*,445*f*,448*f*,449*f*
  - groove for,35,35*f*
  - right,73*f*,74*f*
  - transverse foramina and,35,35*f*,443
- Vertebral body,34*f*,36*f*–37*f*,42*f*,44*f*
- Vertebral canal,32,42*f*,44*f*
  - MRI of,33*f*
- Vertebral column,7*f*,32,33*f*–34*f*
  - arteries of,35 (*See also* Vertebral arteries) curvatures of,32*f*,*34*
  - developmental changes of, *49*
  - general features of,32
  - intervertebral disk herniation in, *40*,40*f*,63*f*
  - joints of,39–41,39*f*–41*f*
  - ligaments of,41–42,42*f*–43*f*,44*f*
  - neurovasculature of,44,45*f*–46*f*
  - regions of,35*f*
  - veins of,92*f* (*See also* Vertebral veins) Vertebral foramen,34*f*,35*f*,40*f*
- Vertebral level,32,48*f*
- Vertebral ligaments,41–42,42*f*–43*f*,44*f*
- Vertebral notch,36*f*–37*f*
  - inferior,36*f*–37*f*
  - superior,36*f*–37*f*
- Vertebral veins,44,49*f*,92*f*,560*f*
  - right,51*f*
- Vertebral venous plexus,44,46*f*,49*f*,92*f*,236
  - anterior internal,44,46*f*
  - external,46*f*

    anterior,46*f*
    posterior,44
    metastasis and, *44*
    posterior internal,44,46*f*
    veins of,44, *44*,46*f*,49*f*
Vertebra prominens (C7),5*t*,34,44*f*,46*f*,334*f*
    MRI of,33*f*
Vertex, of skull,440*t*
Vertical, location/direction term,3*t*
Vertigo, *557*
Vesical arteries,167*f*,235*f*
    inferior,231*f*,234*f*,255*f*
    left,233*f*
    right,168*f*,233*f*
    right,233*f*
    superior,231*f*,233*f*,234*f*,255*f*
    left,233*f*
    right,233*f*
Vesical plexus,181*t*,229–230,237,241*f*–243*f*,256,264*f*
Vesical veins,235*f*
    inferior left,233*f*
    right,233*f*
    superior,231*f*,234*f*
    left,233*f*
    right,233*f*
Vesicouterine ligament,252*f*
Vesicouterine pouch,231,232*f*,248*f*,250,250*f*,251*f*,252*f*,253*f*
Vesicovaginal septum,253*f*
Vesicovaginal space,231*f*
Vesicular appendices,249*f*
Vesicular ligament, lateral,231*f*
Vestibular apparatus,557*f*
Vestibular aqueduct,437*f*,557
Vestibular bulb,223*f*,234*f*,253*f*,261,267,268*f*,269*f*
    arteries of,234*f*,253*f*,267,269*f*,270
    veins of,269*f*
Vestibular fold,464,464*f*,525*f*,534*f*
Vestibular ganglia,493,494*f*,557*f*
Vestibular glands greater,261,267,268*f*,269*f*

  lesser, 267, 269*f*
Vestibular ligament, 463, 463*f*, 464, 464*f*
Vestibular nerve, 556*f*, 557
Vestibular root, 493, 493*f*, 494*f*, 552*f*
Vestibular saccule, 493, 494*f*, 555*f*, 556, 557, 557*f*
Vestibule, 552*f*
  of aorta, 106
  of ear, 552*f*, 555*f*
  of internal ear, 556
  of larynx, 464
  of omental bursa, 163*f*
  oral, 525, 526*f*
  of vagina, 223*f*, 253*f*, 267, 269*f*
Vestibulocochlear nerve (CN VIII), 485*f*–486*f*, 487*t*, 493, 493*f*–494*f*, 555*f*
  cochlear root of, 493, 493*f*, 494*f*, 552*f*
  vestibular root of, 493, 493*f*, 494*f*, 552*f*
Villi, arachnoid, 478
Viscera. *See also specific organ* abdominal, 145*f*, 186–208, 186*f*
  as functional subdivision, 2*t*
  pelvic, 244
  of peritoneal cavity, 166–167, 167*f*
Visceral innervation, of anal canal, 271
Visceral layer, 23
  of peritoneum, 144*f*, 160*f*, 166–167, 244*f*, 245*f*, 251*f*, 260*f*
  of pleura, 93*f*, 120, 120*f*
  of serous pericardium, 99, 99*f*, 102, 103*f*
Visceral motor fibers, 22, 23*f*. *See also* Visceromotor fibers Visceral muscles, 11
Visceral nervous system. *See* Autonomic nervous system (ANS) Visceral pelvic fascia, 230, 231*f*, 244*f*, 248*f*, 255*f*
Visceral peritoneum, 144*f*, 160*f*, 166–167, 244*f*, 245*f*, 251*f*, 260*f*
  of bladder, 248*f*, 250, 255*f*
  neurovasculature of, 166–167
  of rectum, 248*f*, 250, 250*f*
  of uterus, 250, 250*f*, 253*f*, 255*f*
Visceral pleura, 93*f*, 120, 120*f*
Visceral sensory fibers, 22–23, 23*f*, 113. *See also* Viscerosensory fibers of bladder, 256
  of spermatic cord, 146*f*, 154, 154*f*, 155, 158*f*
  of urethra, 257

Viscerocranium,439–442
  bones of,429*f*,429*t*
Visceromotor fibers. *See also* Visceral motor fibers general,486*t*
  special,486*t*
Viscerosensory fibers. *See also* Visceral sensory fibers general,486*t*
  special,486*t*
Vitreous body,545*f*,546
Vocal cord,464
Vocal fold,464,464*f*,525*f*,534*f*
Vocalis muscle,464,464*f*,465*t*,466*f*
Vocal ligaments,463,463*f*,464,464*f*
Vocal process,463,463*f*
Vomer,431*f*,434*f*,435*f*,438*f*,439,440*f*,522*f*,528*f*,529*f*
VSDs. *See* Ventricular septal defect Vulva,267
W
Waldeyer's ring,17,538,538*f*
Wall(s) of abdomen anterior/anterolateral,146*f*,148*f*,149–151,153*f*
  muscles of,145–149,147*t*
  arteries of,151,151*f*,152*f*
  cutaneous innervation of,153*f*
  deep membranous layer,145,146*f*
  dermatomes of,53*f*,60*f*,151,153*f*
  fascia of,145
  hydrocele, *158*
  inguinal hernias of, *156*
  innervation of,153*f*
  internal surface anatomy,149–151,150*f*
  lymphatic drainage of,151,152*f*
  lymph nodes of,152*f*
  muscles of,145–149,146*f*–149*f*,147*t*
  nerves of,153*f*
  neurovasculature of,151,151*f*–153*f*
  planes of,144
  posterior,147*t*,165–166,166*f*
  and rectus sheath,146*f*,147,148*f*
  regions of,144
  structure of,145–149
  superficial fatty layer,145,146*f*
  transpyloric plane,5*t*,144,145*f*

- veins of, 151, 152*f*, 173–176
- of aorta, 15*f*
- of axilla, 306*f*
- of blood vessels, 15*f*
- of duodenum, 199*f*
- of heart, layers of, 102
- of inferior vena cava, 15*f*
- labyrinthine, 496*f*
- of large intestine, 193*f*, 194*f*
- pelvic, 228–230
- muscles of, 230*t*
- of pelvis, muscles of, 229*f*, 230*t*
- of peritoneal cavity, 165*f*
- of small intestine, 192*f*
- of stomach anterior, 188*f*, 201*f*
- posterior, 201*f*
- of trunk lymphatic drainage of, 152*f*
- nerves of, 51*f*, 52, 52*f*, 92*f*
- neurovasculature of, 151, 152*f*
- of vagina anterior, 249*f*, 253*f*
- posterior, 249*f*, 253*f*

Watershed, 152*f*

Wharton’s duct, 532, 533*f*

Whiplash injury, *39*

White matter, 20, 21*f*, 51*f*

White rami communicans, 48*f*, 51*f*, 57*f*, 61*f*, 92*f*, 96*f*
- paravertebral ganglia connected by, 55

White zone, 270*f*, 271, 272*f*

Window bone, on CT, 63*f*
- lung, on CT, 134*f*
- oval, 493*f*, 554*f*, 555, 555*f*, 556*f*
- round, 493*f*, 555, 555*f*, 556*f*
- soft tissue, on CT, 134*f*

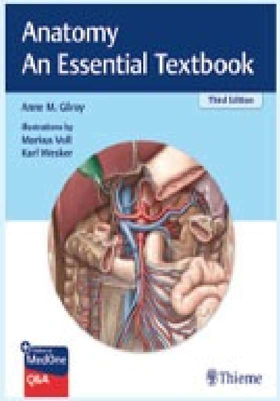
Wings iliac, 225, 225*f*
- of sacrum, 38*f*
- of sphenoid bone greater, 430*f*, 431*f*, 432, 436*f*, 437*f*, 438*f*, 440*f*, 518*f*, 541*f*
- lesser, 431*f*, 432, 436*f*, 438*f*, 440*f*, 441*f*, 522*f*, 541*f*

Wrist, 321–326
- abduction at, 323*t*

  adduction at,323*t*
  carpal region joints,321–323
  carpal tunnel syndrome of, *324*
  creases of,329*f*
  cross section,324*f*
  dorsal compartments of,325,326*f*
  extension at,323*t*
  flexion at,323*t*
  interosseous ligaments,321
  joints of,321–323
  movements of,323*t*
  ligaments of,321,322*f*
  MRI of,344*f*
  musculature of, topographic views,338*f*
  anterior,338*f*,339*f*
  posterior,338*f*
  osteomyelitis,345*f*
  spaces of,323–326
  tendons of,325
Wry neck (congenital torticollis), *456*
X
Xiphoid process, of sternum,7*f*,71*f*,84,84*f*,86*f*,87*f*,146*f*,335*f*
X-rays,24–25,24*f*–25*f*. *See also* Radiography abdominal,25*f*,209*t*
  of bowel obstruction,211*f*
  chest,25*f*,132,132*f*–133*f*
  patient positioning,25*f*
  skull, in infant,561*f*

Z
Zonular fibers,544,545*f*
Zygapophyseal joint,35*f*–37*f*,39*t*,41,41*f*,42*f*,63*f*
  capsule of,42*f*
Zygomatic arch,430*f*,432,435*f*,439,503,508*f*,509*t*,512,513*f*,525
Zygomatic bone,430*f*,431*f*,435*f*,437*f*,439,513*f*,525,540*f*,541,541*f*
  frontal process,431*f*,513*f*
  orbital surface,440*f*,541*f*
  temporal process,430*f*,437*f*,514*f*
  temporal surface of,435*f*,437*f*
Zygomatic branch(es) of maxillary division (CN V2),491

  - of parotid plexus, 492, 492*f*
- Zygomatic nerve (CN V2), 490*f*, 491, 494, 520*t*, 542*f*, 548
  - communicating branch to, 542*f*
- Zygomaticofacial nerves, 506, 542*f*
- Zygomatico-orbital artery, 445*f*, 446, 511*f*
- Zygomatico-orbital foramen, 541, 541*f*
- Zygomaticotemporal nerves, 506, 542*f*
- Zygomatic process of frontal bone, 513*f*
  - of maxilla, 430*f*, 431*f*, 435*f*, 437*f*
- Zygomaticus major, 12*f*, 503*f*, 504*f*, 505*t*
  - minor, 12*f*, 503*f*, 504*f*, 505*t*


Anatomy
An Essential Textbook
Third Edition
Anne M. Gilroy
Illustrations by
Markus Voll
Karl Wesker
MedOne
Q&A
Thieme

Important Notes

- The personal access code is disabled once the e-book is first activated. Use of this product is restricted to the buyer or, for library copies, authorized users.
- Sharing passwords is not permitted. The publisher has the right to take legal steps for violations.
- Access to online material is solely provided to the buyer for private use. Commercial use is not permitted.

MedOne

Medical information how and when you need it.

Access additional media now!

With three easy steps, unlock free access to the additional media for this title on MedOne, Thieme's online platform.

1. Note your personal access code below.

EBPXggrCYmuNg

2. Scan this QR code or enter your access code at medone.thieme.com/code.

3. Set up a username on MedOne and sign in to activate your e-book on most phones, tablets, or PCs.

Quick Access

After you successfully register and activate your code, you can find your book and additional online media at medone.thieme.com/9781684202591 or with this QR code.